





A  
S Y S T E M  
O F  
G E O G R A P H Y :

O R , A  
New & Accurate  
D E S C R I P T I O N  
O F T H E  
E A R T H

In all its Empires, Kingdoms and States.

Illustrated with

**History and Topography,**

And M A P S of every Country,

Fairly Engraven on Copper, according to the latest  
Discoveries and Corrections,

By *HERMAN MOLL.*

---

To which are added Alphabetical Index's of the Names, Ancient  
as well as Modern, of all the Places mention'd in the Work.  
And a General Index of Remarkable Things.

---

L O N D O N :

Printed for TIMOTHY CHILDE at the *White Hart* at the West-end of *St. Paul's*  
Church-yard. MDCCL.



---

# T H E P R E F A C E.

**T**IS needless to speak of the Usefulness of Geography, since every body that Read's, even a Gazette, finds himself perpetually at a Loss without some Knowledge in this Science. And therefore there needs no Apology for publishing a Work on that Subject; at this time especially, when the Actions abroad that are so much the Subject of Conversation, make every Man desire a Knowledge of the Countreys where those great Affairs are Transacted.

And we may Venture to say, a Body of Geography is very much wanting. For notwithstanding the many Books upon this Subject, there is none that can be call'd Compleat: Some being so short that they make no Impression on the Memory, others so unaccurate that they are not to be Depended upon, and others, tho' more Correct, either not Copious enough, or Immethodical. Dr. Heylin's at the time it was written, was undoubtedly the best in our Language. But Geography has receiv'd so many and Great Improvements since his Time, that we hope it will not be call'd Presumption, to Offer at a new Work on the same Subject; wherein, from the many Corrections and Discoveries made of late years by the Skill and Industry of Modern Astronomers and Travellers, the Defects of that may be supply'd. And herein we must observe that

The former Works of this Nature have been very Defective in the Matter of Topography; and yet that is the most necessary Part of Geography. For as great Actions have always happen'd at or near some City or Town, We naturally desire to know something more of it, than meerly it's Name and Situation. Again, by knowing the Condition of the Cities we are able to make a better Judgment of the Wealth, Industry, and Populousness of the Nation. And, in short, 'tis the better Part of what every Body desires to know in Geography. Wherefore in this Work we have been more ample, and set down as particular an Account of every considerable Town as could be procured out of Credible Authors; and as is consistent with the intended Brevity of our Work, which must not be swell'd too Large lest it lose it's Acceptance with the generality of Readers, either thro' the Expence of Money or Time.

That this Topographical Part will be acceptable, we have reason to hope from the Consideration of the kind Reception the Geographical Dictionaries  
a have



## The P R E F A C E.

*have met with; for if those could Please that just give an account of one Town, and then by reason of the Alphabetical Order, must the next step Leap perhaps to the other side the Globe, much more methinks should this be agreeable, wherein all the chief Towns in a Province are seen at one View, and yet by means of the Alphabetical Index any single Place you want is as readily found out.*

*'Tis in this Part at least, to say nothing of it's Accuracy, that we hope this Work will be allowed to exceed what has gone before it.*

*And forasmuch as Geography alone is Dry and Fejune, and makes but small Impression on the Memory; We have intermixt the History of Nations with the Descriptions of Countries; or rather a short Summary of History, wherein the Revolutions that have happen'd, the Princes that have Reign'd, and the considerable Actions and Accidents that have occur'd are briefly noted, for the Entertainment as well as Profit of our Reader. We flatter our selves that this Part will be very acceptable, because it shews by what means and degrees the several Monarchys of Europe arose or fell: how the Roman Dominions were torn in pieces by many Nations of Northern Barbarians: how France once under it's Charlemaign gave Laws to all Europe: how that Empire soon Crumbled into Petty Governments: how large a share of it England was once Master of; and how it again rose to the height we now see it. How Spain, England, Sweden, Denmark, Poland, Muscovy, &c. from a number of small Principalities, became considerable Monarchys. How Italy and Germany came to be divided into such a Number of Principalities and States, and how the several Families have succeeded one another, and especially how that of Austria arriv'd to it's towering grandeur. And lastly, how every Country and City hath either suffer'd thro' Wars, Conflagrations, Earthquakes, Inundations, &c. or been favour'd by Peace, Trade, Wealth, Priviledges, &c. To all which we have also added an Account of the Laws, Government, Policy, and noted Customs of every Nation, and a Chronological List of the Kings. And also been mindful of Antiquity by setting down the Roman Names of People and Places, and mentioning the Remains of Ancient Structures. Nor have we omitted the Natural Curiosities, such as Baths, Medicinal Waters, Mines and Minerals, Caves, Mountains, Lakes, Cataracts, Rocks, &c.*

*But tho' Topography and History do illustrate Geography, it will still be found lame and Defective without Tables and Maps, wherein may be seen at a View the Divisions of Kingdoms into Provinces, Counties and Governments, together with the Situation of the Cities and Towns in each Division. Wherefore in this Work we have by Analytical Tables at the Head of each Description shewn the Divisions, Subdivisions and chief Towns of every Empire, Kingdom or State: and have also added Maps fairly Engraven on Copper by Mr. Herman Moll, whose Skill in Geography is known to most of*



## The P R E F A C E.

of the Masters of the Science, and whose Ingenuity in Graving is seen in every thing he does. But let the Maps speak for themselves, tho' they be small they are comprehensive; and contain all the Provinces, and most of the Cities and great Towns in every Nation: and moreover, are all laid down according to the best and latest Discoveries, with more Corrections of former Errors than we have room to mention here; but will be readily seen in comparing 'em with the old Maps.

And lastly, to Render our Work as Compleat and Useful as may be, We have added Alphabetical Tables of the Names of Places, a General Index of the Remarkable Things mentioned in the Book; and a Table of Ancient Names of Places for the Use of the Students of the Classicks; whereby a Paralela Geographica Antiquo-Moderna may very easily be made. The Table of Modern Names we have divided into two Parts, viz. one of Europe, and the other of the other three Quarters, the former being plac'd at the Beginning, and the latter at the End, where also stand the Table of Ancient Names and the General Index. The reason of our dividing that Table, is because the number of Words under each Letter would be else so large that 'twould be tedious finding what we want: and few Persons are ignorant, whether the Town they seek for be in Europe or not.

As to the Composure of this Work, We have made use of all the Authors that could be any ways serviceable to the Compleat Furnishing and Adorning it, such as the best Histories of every Nation, the most esteem'd Ancient Geographers, and the best Modern ones; and more especially the latest and most approved Travellers, with Memoirs extant in the Philosophical Transactions, Observations by Messieurs de l'Academie Royal at Paris, and elsewhere, communicating many notable Corrections in Geography. And tho' We have not room always to quote out Authors, We can truly assure the Reader, that nothing is set down here but upon good Authority, and what may be found in the best Books on the Subject. But to be more particular, it must be acknowledg'd that Cluverius, Sanson, Luyts, and the English Atlas have been our Patterns in the following Work, but that these have been only Patterns is very visible by the vast Additions we have made. Cluverius's Introduction to Geography is deservedly acknowledg'd the most accurate Compendium extant, especially as it has been improv'd by Buno, Hekelius, and Reiskius. Sanson has adapted his Work more to the Modern Times, and by the Analytical Tables he publish'd with his Maps, has set Geography in a clearer Light. But if we venture to say, That that Author (notwithstanding his Fame) was too much a French man, and according to the Humour of his Country, too superficial, perhaps we should not slander him. Joh. Luyts a Learned Professor in the University of Utrecht, having writ a Body of Modern Geography, wherein he has made use of Sanson so far as was necessary, and hath moreover Consulted the Travel-



## The P R E F A C E.

*Travellers since his Time, and in the whole, Corrected and Improved that Author, we have rather Chosen to follow him, and not only had our Eye upon him and Cluverius throughout all Europe, but have Translated his Description of Asia, Africa and America entire. And because the Concern our English Nation has in the East and West-Indian Trade makes us all more than ordinary Curious of being Inform'd of those Parts, we have added to Mr. Luyts, a very particular, and (we hope accurate) Description of the East-Indies and our Plantations in America, extracted from the most Approved Histories and Travels thither. The English Atlas having the misfortune to suffer under an ill Character (perhaps worse than it deserves) we have been cautious of relying on it without other Authority, but must acknowledge we could not have made our Account of Germany and the Netherlands so perfect without Assistance from thence.*

*And now nothing remains but to bespeak a favourable Reception of what, after great Pains and Expence, we here present the World with: Desiring the judicious Readers to consider the Difficulty of a Work of this Nature; how impossible it is to be absolutely free from Faults; and yet how necessary such a Work is, and therefore some Indulgence ought to be given to the Undertakers. Nevertheless we may without Vanity, take the Liberty to Affirm of our Work, I. That the Method of it is Exact, Clear and Intelligible. II. That by the Intermixture of History it is render'd Delightful and Entertaining as well as Instruſtive. III. The Topographical Part makes it exceeding useful. IV. The Maps are the Compleatest Sett extant that shew the Modern Corrections. And Lastly, the whole Work is, we doubt not, as free from Errors as the Nature of it will admit. However it being impossible to avoid all Faults, we shall be glad to be inform'd of those that have escap'd our Care, and promise not only to Correct 'em, but also very gratefully Acknowledge the Kindness of the Learned Gentlemen that will please to favour Us with such Informations.*



---

# THE CONTENTS.

---

*An Alphabetical Table of the Names of the Kingdoms, Provinces,  
Cities, Rivers and Places of EUROPE mention'd in this Work.*

---

AN INTRODUCTION to GEOGRAPHY; Containing, *viz.*

Chap. I.	OF the World and its Parts.	1	Chap. V.	Of the Parts of Time.	14
	<i>Ptolomy's System of the Universe.</i>	1,2		Of the beginning of the Day according to several Nations.	14
	<i>Copernicus's System of the Universe.</i>	3		Of the Month, according to several Nations.	15
	The Revolution of the Planets.	3		Of the Year differently accounted.	15
	Distance of the Planets from the Sun.	3	Chap. VI.	Of the Terms of Geography, and of the principal Lakes, Rivers and Mountains in the Earth	16
	The magnitude of the Planets.	4		Ocean. Gulph. Straight.	16
Chap. II.	Of the SPHERE and its Circles, &c.	5		Depth and Flowing of the Sea.	16
	Axis. Points Cardinal, Collateral and Vertical.	5		Of the Tides.	17
	Circles. The Æquator, Zodiack, Ecliptick, Colures, Meridian, Horizon.	5		Of Lakes. The chief Lakes in the World.	17
	Of the Right, Oblique, and Parallel Sphere.	5,6		Of Rivers. The chief Rivers in the World.	17,18
	The Tropicks, and Polar Circles.	6		Islands. The chief Islands in the World.	19
	Of Latitude and Longitude.	6		Peninsulæ. The chief Peninsulæ in the World.	19
	A Table of the breadth of Degrees of Longitude.	7		Isthmus. Archipelago. Promontory and Cape.	19
	Of the Zones.	7,8		Mountain. The chief Mountains in the World.	19,20
	Of the Climates and Parallels.	8		Mines. The chief Mines in the Earth.	20
	A Table of the Climates.	9		Forest. The most noted Forests.	20
	Of the different Shadows.	10		Desart. Kingdom. Province. Diocess. Town, City, and Colony.	21
	Of the different Situations.	10	Chap. VII.	Of the several Parts of the Earth, their Bounds and Divisions.	21
Chap. III.	Concerning the EARTH, its Figure, Dimensions, &c. also of Measures.	10		Europe. Asia.	21
	The Globular Form of the Earth proved.	11		Africa. America. Countrys about the Poles, and unknown Countrys.	22
	Its Circuit, Diameter, Surface and Solidity.	11	Chap. VIII.	Containing the Description of the Celestial and Terrestrial Globes.	23
	The length of a Degree.	11		Poles. Brazen Meridian, Wooden Horizon, Horary Circle. Quadrant of Altitude. Mariner's Compass.	23
	The Project of the Gentlemen of the Academy at Paris for fixing a standard for Measures.	11		The Æquator, Ecliptick, Two Tropicks. The Two Polar Circles. Constellations <i>Via Lactea</i> , &c.	24
	A Table of Measures. Ancient Measures.	12		Of the Method of making Globes and Maps.	24
Chap. IV.	Of the Air, and Winds, or Points of the Compass.	12			
	Of the Atmosphere.	12			
	Of the Expansion and Contraction of the Air.	13			
	The Regions of the Air.	13			
	The Points of the Compass.	13,14			

---

## GEOGRAPHY, or a Particular DESCRIPTION of the EARTH.

A	MAP of the WORLD.	
A	MAP of EUROPE, with a General Account of its Situation, Extent, &c.	
	EUROPE in Particular.	
	ENGLAND in General, a Map of it, its Situation, Form, Soil, Mountains, Islands, Inhabitants, their Original, Temper, Religion and Language.	1,2,3
Señ. II.	Of the ancient State of Britain.	3,4

Señ. III.	The Civil Government of Britain, Ancient and Modern.	5
	The Succession of our English Monarchs from Egbert.	5
	The Courts of Judicature.	6
Señ. IV.	The Ecclesiastical Government and Division of England.	6,7
Señ. V.	The Division of England, Ancient and Modern.	7
	Particular	



# The CONTENTS

## Particular Description of the Counties of England

<i>Cambridgeshire.</i>	8
<i>Devonshire.</i>	9
<i>Dorsetshire.</i>	10
<i>Somersetshire.</i>	11
<i>Wiltshire.</i>	12
<i>Hampshire.</i>	13
<i>Berkshire.</i>	14
<i>Surrey.</i>	15
<i>Suffex.</i>	15
<i>Kent.</i>	15
<i>Gloucestershire.</i>	18
<i>Oxfordshire.</i>	19
<i>Buckinghamshire.</i>	20
<i>Bedfordshire.</i>	20
<i>Hertfordshire.</i>	21
<i>Middlesex.</i>	21
<i>Essex.</i>	23
<i>Suffolk.</i>	24
<i>Norfolk.</i>	24, 25
<i>Cambridgeshire.</i>	25
<i>Huntingdonshire.</i>	26
<i>Leicestershire.</i>	27
<i>Rutlandshire.</i>	28
<i>Lincolnshire.</i>	28
<i>Nottinghamshire.</i>	29
<i>Derbyshire.</i>	29
<i>Warwickshire.</i>	30
<i>Worcestershire.</i>	30
<i>Staffordshire.</i>	31
<i>Shropshire.</i>	31
<i>Cheshire.</i>	32
<i>Herefordshire.</i>	33
<i>Yorkshire.</i>	33
<i>Derham.</i>	35
<i>Lancashire.</i>	35
<i>Westmoreland.</i>	37
<i>Cumberland.</i>	37
<i>Northumberland.</i>	38, 39
<i>W A L E S, in General.</i>	40
<i>In Particular. Radnor and Brecknock-shires.</i>	40
<i>Monmouth, Glamorgan-shires.</i>	41
<i>Caermarthen, Pembroke, and Cardigan-shires.</i>	42
<i>Montgomery, Merioneth, and Caernarvon-shires.</i>	43
<i>Anglesey Isle, Denbigh and Flintshire.</i>	44
<i>The Isle of Man.</i>	45
<i>S C O T L A N D in General, with a Map of it; Extent, Soil and Climate. Division of the Country Ancient and Modern. Courts of Judicature, Degrees of Men. Religion and Ecclesiastical Government.</i>	45, 47, 48
<i>A particular Description of the most considerable Places in Alphabetical Order.</i>	48, 49
<i>Ancient Places that are most remarkable in Scotland.</i>	50
<i>Ancient Names and Islands upon this Coast.</i>	51
<i>I R E L A N D in General. A Map of it, its Situation, Extent, Soil, Productions, Inhabitants, Religion, Ancient and Modern State, Government, Division, &amp;c.</i>	52
<i>Particular Descriptions of the most considerable Places.</i>	53
<i>Ancient Places of chiefest Note.</i>	54
<i>J E R S E Y and G A R N S E Y.</i>	55
<i>F R A N C E in General. A Map of it, its Situation, Extent, Air, Soil, Productions, Inhabitants, Religion, Language, &amp;c.</i>	57, 58
<i>SECT. II. Of the ancient State of France.</i>	59
<i>SECT. III. Of the French Kings.</i>	61
<i>SECT. IV. Of the Government, Laws, Courts and Officers of Justice, &amp;c.</i>	62, 63
<i>SECT. V. The Arch-Bishopricks, Bishopricks, and Universities of France.</i>	64, 65

<i>SECT. VI. Extents of the French Dominions, and the Acquisitions of the present King.</i>	65, 66
<i>The Division of France.</i>	67

## F R A N C E in Particular.

<i>Chap. II. Normandy; the several Parts and chief Towns described.</i>	68
<i>Chap. III. Picardy described.</i>	73
<i>Chap. IV. Champagne.</i>	76
<i>Chap. V. The Isle of France.</i>	80
<i>Chap. VI. Bretagne.</i>	87
<i>Chap. VIII. The Government of Orleansois, containing the Countries of Orleansois, Blaisois, Beauce, Perche, Maine, Vendomois, Anjou, Poitou, Aunis, Argemou, Touraine, Berry, Nivernois, Gassinois, &amp;c.</i>	91
<i>Chap. VIII. Burgundy, Comprehending besides the Dutchy, the County of Burgundy or Franche Comte, together with Bresse, Bugey, Gex and Dombes.</i>	98
<i>Chap. IX. The Government of Lyonnois, comprising the Countries of Lyonnois, Forez, Beaujolois, Bourbonnois, Auvergne and Marche.</i>	103
<i>Chap. X. Guienne and Gascony, wherein are contain'd Guienne proper, Bazadois, Agenois, Quercy, Rouergue, Limousin, Perigord, Santoigne, Armagnac, Gascoigne, Condomois, Sandy-Grounds, Territories of Libord, Lower Navarre, Vicounty of Soul, Bearne, Bigorre, Comminge, and Conserans.</i>	106
<i>Chap. XI. Languedoc.</i>	112
<i>Chap. XII. Provence.</i>	117
<i>Chap. XIII. Dauphine.</i>	122
<i>Chap. XIV. Lorraine.</i>	124

<i>The N E T H E R L A N D S in General, Name, Situation, Bounds, Extent, Inhabitants, &amp;c.</i>	125
<i>Of the Ancient State; how the Provinces became United in the House of Burgundy.</i>	127, 128
<i>A Map of the Spanish Netherlands.</i>	125
<i>The Government and present State.</i>	129

## The N E T H E R L A N D S in Particular.

<i>Chap. I. The County of Artois.</i>	130
<i>Chap. II. The Earldom of Flanders.</i>	131
<i>Chap. III. The Dutchy of Brabant.</i>	135
<i>Chap. IV. The Earldom of Hainault.</i>	140
<i>Chap. V. The County of Namur.</i>	143
<i>Chap. VI. The Country of Cambresis.</i>	142
<i>Chap. VII. The Dukedom of Luxemburg.</i>	142
<i>Chap. VIII. The Dutchy of Limburg.</i>	144
<i>Chap. IX. The County of Liege.</i>	144
<i>Chap. X. A Map of the United Netherlands; a short History of the Rise of that Commonwealth.</i>	153
<i>Chap. XI. The Province of Holland.</i>	157
<i>Chap. XII. The Islands of Zeeland.</i>	164
<i>Chap. XIII. The Province of Utrecht.</i>	166
<i>Chap. XIV. Guelderland and Zutphen.</i>	167
<i>Chap. XV. The Province of Overissel.</i>	170
<i>Chap. XVI. The Province of Friesland.</i>	172
<i>Chap. VII. The Province of Groeningen.</i>	173

<i>G E R M A N Y in General. A Map of it, its Bounds, Situation, Soil, Climate, and chief Rivers, Of the Inhabitants of Germany.</i>	174
<i>Religion, Language, Ancient State &amp;c.</i>	175
<i>A Chronological Table of the Emperours.</i>	178
<i>Of the Power of the Emperour.</i>	180
<i>Of the King of the Romans. The Electors and other Princes of Germany.</i>	180, 181
<i>Of the Imperial and Hanse Cities.</i>	181
<i>Of the Diets of the Empire.</i>	182
<i>The Supream Courts of Judicature.</i>	182
<i>The Arch-Bishopricks, Bishopricks and Universities of Germany.</i>	182
<i>The Division of Germany into its Ten Circles, with the particular Countries that compose them.</i>	183

## G E R M A N Y in Particular.

<i>Chap. II. Of the Spiritual Electorates, viz. Cologne, Trier, &amp;c. Mainz.</i>	184
<i>Triers, 125. Mainz.</i>	187
<i>Chap.</i>	



# The CONTENTS.

Chap. III. <i>Hessen</i> , containing <i>Hessen</i> and <i>Weteraw</i> .	188
Chap. IV. The Circle of <i>Franconia</i> , containing the Bishopricks of <i>Wurtzburg</i> , <i>Bamberg</i> , and <i>Aichstat</i> , the Marquisates of <i>Culembach</i> and <i>Ohnspach</i> , the Counties of <i>Hilach</i> , <i>Castel</i> , &c. the Imperial Cities of <i>Frankfurt</i> , <i>Nuremberg</i> , &c.	191
Chap. V. The Palatinate of the <i>Rhine</i> .	193
Seft. 2. The Bishopricks of <i>Spire</i> and <i>Worms</i> , the Dutchy of <i>Zweybruggen</i> , with the other smaller States that make up the rest of the Circle of the Lower <i>Rhine</i> .	194
Chap. VI. <i>Alsatia</i> .	195
Chap. VII. <i>Schwaben</i> , containing the Dutchy of <i>Wurtemberg</i> , the Marquisate of <i>Baden</i> , the Bishopricks of <i>Augsburg</i> and <i>Constance</i> , the Abbies of <i>Kempten</i> , <i>Buchow</i> and <i>Lindaw</i> , the Principalities of <i>Furstenberg</i> and <i>Hohenzollern</i> , with the Counties of <i>Oeting</i> , <i>Papenheim</i> , &c.	197
Chap. VIII. The Circle of <i>Bavaria</i> , comprehending, besides the Estates of that Elector, the Archbishoprick of <i>Salzburg</i> , the Bishopricks of <i>Ratisbone</i> , <i>Paffaw</i> , and <i>Freisingen</i> , and the Dutchy of <i>Newburg</i> .	200
Chap. IX. The Circle of <i>Austria</i> , containing the Arch-Dutchy of <i>Austria</i> , the Dukedoms of <i>Styria</i> , <i>Corinthia</i> and <i>Carniola</i> , the <i>Windismareck</i> , the Counties of <i>Goritia</i> and <i>Tyrol</i> , the Bishoprick of <i>Brixen</i> , <i>Innspruck</i> , and the Bishoprick of <i>Trent</i> .	203
Chap. IX. The Kingdom of <i>Bohemia</i> , with the Dukedom of <i>Silesia</i> , and Marquisate of <i>Moravia</i> .	209
Chap. X. The Marquisate and Electorate of <i>Brandenburg</i> , with <i>Magdeburg</i> , <i>Halberstadt</i> , and <i>Pomerania</i> .	212
Chap. XI. <i>Saxony</i> in General.	216
Seft. II. The Upper <i>Saxony</i> , containing the Dutchy and Electorate of <i>Saxony</i> , the Marquisates of <i>Misnia</i> and <i>Silesia</i> : the Landgraviate of <i>Thuringen</i> , the Principality of <i>Anhalt</i> , the Dutchie of <i>Hall</i> , <i>Mersburg</i> , <i>Naumburg</i> and <i>Altemburg</i> , &c.	217
Seft. III. The Lower <i>Saxony</i> , comprehending the Dutchie of <i>Brunswick</i> , <i>Lunenbug</i> , <i>Hanover</i> , <i>Lawenburg</i> , <i>Bremen</i> , <i>Mecklenburg</i> and <i>Holstein</i> , the Principality of <i>Ferden</i> , and the Bishoprick of <i>Hildesheim</i> , and the Cities of <i>Hamburg</i> and <i>Lubeck</i> .	217
Chap. XII. The Circle of <i>Westphalia</i> , containing the Dutchy of <i>Westphalia</i> , the Bishopricks of <i>Munster</i> , <i>Osnabrug</i> , and <i>Paderborn</i> , the Dukedoms of <i>Cleve</i> , <i>Juliers</i> and <i>Berg</i> , the Counties of <i>East-Frizland</i> , <i>Oldenburg</i> , <i>Bentham</i> , <i>Mark</i> , <i>Diepholt</i> , <i>Schaumburg</i> , &c.	227
<i>SWITZERLAND</i> , or the <i>Swiss-Cantons</i> , together with their Allies and Subjects.	233
Chap. I. <i>Switzerland</i> in General. A History of that People.	233, 234
A Table of the Parts of this Commonwealth.	235
Chap. II. The <i>Swiss-Cantons</i> .	235
Chap. III. The Allies of the <i>Switzers</i> , viz. the <i>Grizons</i> , &c.	240
Chap. IV. The Subjects of the <i>Switzers</i> .	244
<i>SAVOY</i> . A Map of <i>Savoy</i> and <i>Piedmont</i> .	247
The ancient and present State of <i>Savoy</i> . Situation, Soil, Government and Succession of its Dukes.	248
The Provinces and chief Cities describ'd.	249. to 251
<i>ITALY</i> . A Map of it.	252
Chap. I. Of <i>Italy</i> in General. Name, Situation, Climate, Ancient Division of it, &c.	253
Ancient Inhabitants. History of the <i>Roman</i> Commonwealth.	254
A Table of the Emperors from <i>J. Cesar</i> to <i>Augustus</i> .	255
Genius, Customs and Language of the Modern <i>Italians</i> .	256
A Table of the several States; Subdivisions into Provinces, and the chief Cities.	257
Chap. II. Of <i>Piedmont</i> .	258
Chap. III. The Coasts of <i>Genoa</i> .	262
Chap. IV. The Dutchy of <i>Montferrat</i> .	263
Chap. V. The Dutchy of <i>Milan</i> .	264
Chap. VI. The Dutchy of <i>Parma</i> .	267
Chap. VII. The Dutchy of <i>Modena</i> .	268
Chap. VIII. The Dutchy of <i>Mantua</i> .	269
Chap. IX. The Republick of <i>Venice</i> .	269
The City of <i>Venice</i> .	273
The <i>Venitian</i> Dominions on the Coasts of <i>Dalmatia</i> .	278
The <i>Venitian</i> Dominions in the <i>Ionian</i> and <i>Ægean</i> Seas.	279
Chap. X. The Republick of <i>Lucca</i> .	280
Chap. XI. The Dominions of the Great Duke of <i>Tuscany</i> .	281
Chap. XII. The Ecclesiastical State, or Dominions of the Pope.	285
Of the Rise and Progress of the Papal Monarchy.	285
Of the Cardinals.	287
The City of <i>Rome</i> .	288
Chap. XIII. The Kingdom of <i>NAPLES</i> .	297
A History of the Rise and Revolutions of this Kingdom.	297
The Provinces and chief Cities.	290, 291, &c.
Chap. 14. The Islands on the Coasts of <i>Italy</i> .	298
<i>Sicily</i> .	298
<i>Sardinia</i> .	300
<i>Corfica</i> .	301
<i>SPAIN</i> . A Map of <i>Spain</i> and <i>Portugal</i> .	303
Roman Division of <i>Spain</i> .	303
Name, ancient State, <i>Gothick</i> Kingdom.	304
When and how the several Kingdoms became united.	304
Genius of the Modern <i>Spaniards</i> .	305
The Climate, Soil and Commodities of <i>Spain</i> .	305
The Dominions of the King.	305, 306
Rivers. Universities, Religion and Language.	306
The Succession of the <i>Gothick</i> Kings.	307
The Succession of the Kings of <i>Spain</i> .	307, 308
Vice-Roys. Cortes. Councils.	308, 309
Revenues of the King. Forces. Grandees.	309
An Account of the fifteen Kingdoms and Provinces; with the chief Cities in each; viz.	
<i>Biscay</i> , 309. <i>Guipuscoa</i> , 310. <i>Asturia</i> , 311. <i>Galicia</i> , 311. <i>Navarr</i> , 312. <i>Old Castile</i> , 312. <i>Leon</i> , 314. <i>Catalonia</i> , 315. <i>Aragon</i> , 316. <i>Valencia</i> , 317. <i>New Castile</i> , 317. <i>Extremadura</i> , 319. <i>Andalusia</i> , 319. <i>Murcia</i> , 321. <i>Granada</i> , 321. Ill. <i>Majorca</i> <i>Minorca</i> , &c.	322
<i>PORTUGAL</i> . Situation, Climate and Soil.	324
Its Ancient State and Revolutions.	324
Religion and Customs of the <i>Portuguese</i> .	325
King, his Power, Titles and Dominions.	325
Chronological Succession of the Kings.	325
An Account of the Provinces and chief Cities.	326, 327, 328
<i>SCANDINAVIA</i> , comprehending the Kingdoms of <i>Norway</i> and <i>Sweden</i> , and part of <i>Denmark</i> . A Map of it.	
Its Ancient State.	329
<i>DENMARK</i> . A Map of it.	331
Chap. I. Its Situation and Constituent Parts.	331
Climate and Soil. Ancient Inhabitants, Religion and Government.	332
Chronological Table of the Kings.	333
A Table of the Provinces and Cities.	333
Chap. II. Of <i>Holstein</i> .	334
Chap. III. Of South- <i>Jutland</i> or <i>Sleswick</i> .	335
Chap. IV. Of North- <i>Jutland</i> .	338
Of the <i>Baltick</i> Sea.	339
Chap. 5. Of <i>Seeland</i> .	340
Chap. VI. Of <i>Funen</i> .	341
Chap. VII. Of <i>Langeland</i> and <i>Laland</i> and other Islands.	342
<i>NORWAY</i> . Of the Ancient Inhabitants.	344
A Table of the Kings, till united to <i>Denmark</i> .	344
Situation and Extent, Inhabitants and Religion.	345
The Diocesses, Cities and Islands.	345
A particular Account of each.	345, &c.
<i>Iceland</i> .	347
<i>SWEDEN</i> .	



# The CONTENTS.

<b>SWEDEN.</b> A Map of it.	342	<b>PROVINCES</b> recover'd from the Turks, &c.	
Chap. I. <i>Sweden</i> in General. Situation, Climate, Soil, &c.	343	<b>SC L A V O N I A, C R O A T I A, and MORLACHIA.</b>	
Or the Ancient State of <i>Sweden</i> .	349	<i>Sclavonia.</i>	405
A Chronological Table of the Kings.	350	<i>Croatia and Morlachia.</i>	406
Of the Government of <i>Sweden</i> .	351		
A Table of the Provinces and Cities.	352	<b>TURKEY in EUROPE.</b> A Map of it.	408
Chap. II. Of <i>Sweden</i> strictly so called.	352	Chap. I. The Ancient State of it.	408
Chap. III. Of <i>Gotland</i> .	354	An Account of <i>Mahomet</i> , & the rise of the <i>Turks</i> .	409
Chap. IV. <i>Swedish Lapland</i> .	357	The Provinces that constitute the present Empire of	
Chap. V. <i>Frieland</i> .	358	the <i>Turks</i> in <i>Europe</i> .	409
Chap. VI. <i>Livonia</i> .	359	Chap. II. Of <i>G R E E C E</i> . The ancient Name, Climate, Religion	
Chap. VII. <i>Ingria</i> .	361	and Language.	410
Chap. VIII. Islands belonging to <i>Sweden</i> .	362	The Parts, Provinces and Cities of ancient <i>Greece</i> .	411
		The Modern Division of <i>Greece</i> .	411
<b>P O L A N D.</b> A Map of it.	363	<i>Macedon.</i> Its ancient and present State.	412
Chap. I. Of <i>Poland</i> in General. Situation, Extent, Climate,		<i>Albania.</i>	413
Soil, Genius of the People, Religion and Government.	364	<i>Epirus.</i>	414
Nobility, Dyet, Senate, Kings Revenues, &c.	365	<i>Theffaly.</i>	414
A Table of the Succession of the Kings.	365	<i>Achaia.</i>	415
Table of the Provinces and Cities.	366	The Cities <i>Thebes</i> and <i>Athens</i> .	416, 417
Chap. II. Of <i>Poland</i> strictly so called, divided into upper		Chap. III. Of <i>PELOPONNESUS</i> or the <i>MOREA</i> .	419
and Lower.	367	Its ancient and present State.	419
Chap. III. Of <i>Prussia</i> .	369	Provinces and chief Cities.	420
Chap. IV. Of <i>Samogitia</i> and <i>Curland</i> .	371	The City of <i>Lacedemon</i> .	421
Chap. V. Of the Great Dutchy of <i>Lithuania</i> .	372	The City of <i>Corinth</i> .	423
Chap. VI. Of <i>Wolgast</i> , <i>Polechia</i> and <i>Polesia</i> .	374	Chap. IV. Of the <i>I S L A N D S</i> on the Coasts of <i>GREECE</i> .	
Chap. VII. Of <i>Russias</i> , <i>Polesia</i> , <i>Volhynia</i> and the <i>Dnieper</i> .	375	<i>Candia.</i> Its ancient and present State.	426, 427
		<i>Negropont</i> or <i>Eubœa</i> , and <i>Lemnos</i> or <i>Stalimene</i> .	427
<b>R U S S I A</b> or <i>Rossia</i> . A Map of it.	379	Chap. V. Of the Western Part of <i>Turkey</i> in <i>Europe</i> , compre-	
Chap. I. Of <i>Moscow</i> in General. Name, Situation, Extent,		hending the Province of <i>Bosnia</i> , with a small part of	
Climate, Soil, Commodities, Rivers, Inhabitants, Lan-		<i>Sclavonia</i> and <i>Hungary</i> , as also of the Republick of	
guage, Religion, Government and Laws.	380	<i>Ragusia</i> , and part of <i>Dalmatia</i> .	428
An Abstract of the History, and a List of the Princes.	381	<i>Dalmatia.</i> <i>Illyricum</i> , ancient and present State.	428
Revenues and Power of the <i>Czar</i> .	383	Republick of <i>Ragusa</i> .	429
Tables of the Provinces and chief Cities.	383	<i>Bosnia.</i>	429
Chap. II. The Western Provinces between the <i>Volga</i> and the		Part of <i>Sclavonia</i> and <i>Hungary</i> granted to the <i>Turks</i> .	430
<i>Lesser Tartary</i> .	384	Chap. VI. Of <i>S E R V I A</i> and <i>B U L G A R I A</i> , olim	
Chap. III. The Western Provinces Northward between the		<i>Mæsia</i> Superior and Inferior.	430
<i>Volga</i> and the <i>Sea</i> .	385	<i>Servia.</i>	431
Chap. IV. The Eastern Provinces between the <i>Volga</i> and the		<i>Bulgaria.</i>	432
<i>Sea</i> .	387	Chap. VII. <i>R O M A N I A</i> aut <i>T H R A C I A</i> .	433
Chap. V. The Eastern Provinces between the <i>Volga</i> and <i>Lej-</i>		Of the City of <i>Constantinople</i> .	434
<i>ter Tartary</i> .	389	A Chronological Table of the Emperors of the East	
Chap. VI. <i>Siberia</i> , <i>Nova Zembla</i> and <i>Moscovian-Tartary</i> .	390	from <i>Constantine</i> the Great to <i>Constantine Palaeo-</i>	
		<i>logus</i> .	436
<b>H U N G A R Y.</b> A Map of it.	393	The Turkish Emperors that have Reigned at <i>Constan-</i>	
<i>Hungary</i> in General. Its Ancient State.	393	<i>tinople</i> .	436
Climate, Soil, Rivers, Lakes, Inhabitants and Language.	394	Of the Government and Customs of the <i>Turks</i> .	437
Government, Forces, Revenues, Religion.	395	Chap. VIII. Of the North Part of <i>Turkey</i> in <i>Europe</i> , being the	
A Table of the Kings.	395	Provinces of <i>W A L A C H I A</i> , <i>M O L D A V I A</i> ,	
Present State, Division and Chief Cities.	395	Tributary to the <i>Turks</i> . Together with <i>B E S S A-</i>	
<i>Upper Hungary</i> , the Cities describ'd.	396	<i>R A B I A</i> and the <i>O C Z A K O W-T A R T A R Y</i>	
<i>Lower Hungary</i> , the chief Cities.	399	their Subjects.	440
		<i>Walachia.</i>	440
<b>T R A N S I L V A N I A.</b> An Account of its ancient and		<i>Moldavia.</i>	441
Present State.	402	<i>Bessarabia.</i>	441
The chief Cities.	403	<i>Oczakow-Tartary.</i>	442
The chief Towns inhabited by <i>Hungarians</i> , <i>Siculi</i> , &c.	404	Chap. IX. Of <i>T A R T A R I A-M I N O R</i> , or the <i>C R I M-</i>	
		<i>T A R T A R Y</i> allied to the <i>Turks</i> .	442
		Of the <i>Palus Mæotis</i> or <i>Sea of Zabache</i> .	444

## PART II.

### Of the other three Quarters, *ASIA*, *AFRICA*, and *AMERICA*.

<b>A S I A.</b> A Map of it.	1	Chap. II. Of <i>Turkey</i> in <i>Asia</i> . A Map of it.	3
Chap. I. Of <i>Asia</i> in General. Its Situation, Extent,		Tables of its Division and chief Towns.	4, 5, 6
Division, &c.	2	§ 2. <i>Asiatica</i> in General. Its Situation and Extent.	7
			§ 3, 4.



# The CONTENTS.

§ 3, 4. The Parts of <i>Natolia</i> , viz. 1. <i>Notolia</i> proper, containing <i>Galatia</i> , <i>Paphlagonia</i> , <i>Pontus</i> , <i>Bithynia</i> , <i>Myfia</i> , <i>Phrygia</i> , <i>Lydia</i> , <i>Æolia</i> , <i>Ionis</i> and <i>Caria</i> .	7, 8, 9
§ 5. 2. <i>Caramania</i> . Comprehending <i>Lycia</i> , <i>Pamphylia</i> , <i>Pisidia</i> , <i>Lycania</i> , <i>Cilicia</i> .	9, 10
§ 6. 3. <i>Aladulia</i> , part of <i>Cilicia</i> .	10
§ 7. 4. <i>Amasia</i> , part of <i>Cappadocia</i> .	10
§ 8. Mountains. § 9. Rivers. § 10. Islands.	11
§ 11. <i>Rhodes</i> . § 12. <i>Cyprus</i> .	12
Chap. III. Modern <i>SYRIA</i> , divided into <i>Syria Propria</i> , <i>Phœnicia</i> and <i>Judea</i> .	13
Chap. IV. Ancient <i>JUDÆA</i> . A Map of it.	15
Of <i>Judea</i> in General. Its Bounds, Soil, &c.	17
Of <i>Judea</i> beyond <i>Jordan</i> ; viz. the Tribe of <i>Reuben</i> . 18	
the Tribe of <i>Gad</i> , the half Tribe of <i>Manasseh</i> . 19	
Chap. V. <i>Judea</i> on the hither side of <i>Jordan</i> ; viz.	
The Tribe of <i>Naphtali</i> .	20
The Tribe of <i>Asher</i> and <i>Zabulon</i> .	21
Tribe of <i>Issachar</i> . Half Tribe of <i>Manasseh</i> .	22
Tribe of <i>Ephraim</i> . Tribe of <i>Benjamin</i> .	23, 24
Tribe of <i>Judah</i> . 25. Tribe of <i>Dan</i> . Tribe of <i>Simeon</i> . 26	
Chap. VI. <i>Judea</i> as divided by the <i>Romans</i> ; viz.	27
<i>Judea</i> propr. <i>Samaria</i> , <i>Galilee</i> , <i>Decapolis</i> , <i>Trachonitis</i> , <i>Peræa</i> and <i>Idumea</i> .	27, 28
Chap. VII. Ancient <i>PHOENICIA</i> , and <i>SYRIA</i> properly so call'd, with the principal Lakes and Rivers of <i>Syria</i> .	29
§ 1. <i>Syrophœnicia</i> . § 2. <i>Phœnicia Libani</i> . § 3. <i>Phœnicia Maritima</i> .	29
§ 4. Proper <i>Syria</i> . § 5. <i>Cælo-Syria</i> . § 6. <i>Antiochene</i> .	30
§ 7. <i>Comagene</i> . § 8. Lakes of <i>Syria</i> . § 9. Lake of <i>Gennesareth</i> .	30
§ 10. The Dead Sea. § 11, 12. Rivers of <i>Syria</i> .	30, 31
Chap. VIII. <i>DIA RB E C K</i> , and ancient <i>ASSYRIA</i> .	31
§ 1. Bounds. § 2. Division. § 3. <i>Yerack</i> . § 4. <i>Curdistan</i> .	32
§ 5. <i>Affyria</i> . § 6. <i>Mesopotamia</i> . § 7. <i>Babylonia</i> .	33
§ 8. Situation of <i>Paradise</i> . § 9. Proper <i>Affyria</i> .	34, 35
Chap. IX. <i>TURCOMANIA</i> and the Greater <i>ARMENIA</i> , with the Rivers <i>Euphrates</i> , <i>Tigris</i> , &c.	35
§ 1. <i>Turcomania</i> . Its Situation and chief Towns.	35
§ 2. The greater <i>Armenia</i> . <i>ibid</i> .	36
§ 3. <i>Euphrates</i> , and the other Rivers of this Country.	36
Chap. X. <i>Georgia</i> , <i>Mengrelia</i> , <i>Circassia</i> and <i>Comania</i> .	37
§ 1. Table of its Division. 2. <i>Georgia</i> taken at large.	37
§ 3. <i>Georgia</i> strictly taken, its Provinces & Towns.	37
§ 5. <i>Mengrelia</i> . 6. <i>Colchis</i> . 7. <i>Circassia</i> . 8. <i>Comania</i> .	38
§ 9. <i>Albania</i> . 10. <i>Asiatick Sarmatia</i> .	39
Chap. XI. <i>TARTARY</i> .	39
A Table of its Provinces and Towns.	39
A Map of <i>Tartary</i> .	40
§ 1. Situation. 2. Soil. 3. Division.	40, 41
§ 5. Real <i>Tartary</i> . 6. <i>Usbeck</i> . 7. <i>Turkestan</i> .	41
§ 8. <i>Cathay</i> . 9. Other Division of <i>Tartary</i> .	42
§ 10. <i>Serica</i> . 11. <i>Scythia</i> . 12. Rivers.	42
Chap. XII. The Empire of <i>CHINA</i> , and the Land of <i>Jesso</i> .	43
A Map of <i>China</i> . § 1. The Land of <i>Jesso</i> .	43
§ 2. <i>China</i> in General. Situation, Name, Climate, Soil	44
Rivers, Inhabitants, Religion, Government.	45
Emperor, and History.	46
§ 3. Wall of <i>China</i> , number of Cities, Families and People.	46
Description of <i>Pekim</i> .	47
§ 4. Division of <i>China</i> . Table of the Provinces and Cities.	47, 48
§ 5. Provinces on the North-West, viz. <i>Xanfi</i> , <i>Honan</i> , <i>Xenfi</i> .	48
§ 6. Inland Provinces, viz. <i>Suchuen</i> , <i>Tunnan</i> , <i>Queichu</i> , <i>Quangsi</i> , <i>Huguam</i> , and <i>Kiamfi</i> .	
§ 7. Maritime Provinces, viz. <i>Quantum</i> , <i>Fokien</i> , <i>Chekiang</i> .	49
§ 8. Northern Provinces; viz. <i>Nankim</i> , <i>Xantum</i> , <i>Pekin</i> .	49, 50
§ 9. <i>Leatium</i> . 10. <i>Corea</i> .	50
Chap. XIII. The ISLANDS of the Eastern Ocean over against <i>China</i> .	51
A Table of those Islands	51
§ 2, 3. The Islands of <i>Japon</i> .	51, 52
§ 4. The Islands of <i>China</i> , viz. <i>Formosa</i> , <i>Macao</i> and <i>Haynan</i> .	52
§ 5, 6. <i>Phillipine</i> Islands.	53
§ 7. The <i>Ladrones</i> , or Islands of Thieves.	53, 54
§ 8, 9, 10. The <i>Molucca</i> Islands.	54
Chap. XIV. The ISLANDS of the Indian Ocean, over against <i>Siam</i> and the Indian Coasts.	55
A Map of the Islands of the East Indies.	55
A Table of these Islands.	55
§ 2. <i>Sunda</i> Isl. 3. <i>Borneo</i> . 4. <i>Sumatra</i> .	55
§ 5. <i>Java</i> and <i>Bantam</i> . <i>Madura</i> , <i>Banca</i> , &c.	57
§ 7, 8, &c. <i>Ceylon</i> , 57, 58. § 13. The <i>Maldives</i> .	59
Chap. XV. Of the EAST-INDIES in General.	59
§ 1. Extent and Situation. 2. Name. 3. Air. 4. Soil.	59
§ 5. Rivers & Mountains. 6. Religion. 7. Inhabitants	60
§ 8. Discovery. 9. Of the first European Voyages thither.	61
<i>Portuguese</i> Conquests and Settlement there.	61, 62
<i>English</i> Settlement and Factories there.	62
<i>Dutch</i> Factories and Dominions there.	63
§ 10. Division of <i>India</i> .	63, 64
Chap. XVI. Of the Peninsula of <i>India</i> within <i>Ganges</i> .	64
§ 1. Situation. 2. Air and Soil. 3. Table of the Kingdoms and Cities.	64, 65
§ 4. <i>Malabar</i> in General. 5. Its particular Parts; viz. <i>Travancor</i> , <i>Coulam</i> , <i>Caleculam</i> , <i>Porca</i> , <i>Cochin</i> .	65
<i>Cranzanor</i> , <i>Calicut</i> , <i>Tamor</i> , <i>Canamor</i> .	66
§ 6. <i>Decan</i> in General. 66. Its parts, viz. <i>Canara</i> , the City <i>Goa</i> , <i>Cuncan</i> , <i>Decan</i> , <i>Ballagate</i> .	66
§ 7. <i>Golconda</i> .	67
§ 8. <i>Bijnager</i> in General; divided into <i>Bijnagar</i> and <i>Coramandel</i> .	68
<i>Fort St. George</i> , <i>Madraspatan</i> , and <i>St. Thomas</i> .	69
§ 9. The three Principalities of <i>Gingi</i> , <i>Tanjavoor</i> and <i>Madura</i> or the Fishing Coast.	69, 70
Chap. XVII. <i>India</i> beyond the River <i>Ganges</i> .	70
§ 1. Situation. 2. Table of the Kingdoms and Towns.	70
§ 3. <i>Malacca</i> . 4. <i>Siam</i> . 5. <i>Martaban</i> . 6. <i>Cambodia</i> .	71
§ 7. <i>Anna</i> . 8. <i>Cochinchina</i> . <i>Chiampa</i> .	71
§ 9. <i>Tonquin</i> . 10. Empire of <i>Ava</i> , <i>Pegu</i> and <i>Aracan</i> .	72
§ 14. The Rivers of <i>India</i> beyond <i>Ganges</i> .	72
§ 15. Several Opinions about <i>Solomon's Ophir</i> .	73
§ 16. Several Opinions about <i>Solomon's Tinsis</i> .	73
Chap. XVIII. <i>INDOSTAN</i> , or the Empire of the GREAT MUGUL.	74
§ 1. A Map of <i>India</i> .	74
Name, Extent, Climate, Soil and Commodities.	74, 75
§ 2. Of the Emperor. History of his Ancestors.	75, 76
The story of <i>Aurunge Zebe's</i> accession to the Throne.	76
§ 3. The Kingdoms, Provinces and chief Cities of the Empire.	77
The particular Descriptions of them; viz.	
§ 4. The Provinces on the East, viz. <i>Kandiana</i> , <i>Udessa</i> , <i>Jessual</i> , <i>Mevat</i> , <i>Gor</i> , <i>Pitan</i> and <i>Patna</i> .	78
§ 5. Provinces on the South; viz. The Kingdom of <i>Bengal</i> , <i>Orixa</i> , <i>Berar</i> , <i>Chandis</i> , <i>Guzerat</i> .	79, 80
§ 6. Midland Provinces; viz. <i>Chitor</i> , <i>Malvay</i> , <i>R. Ranas</i> , <i>Bando</i> , <i>Gualcor</i> , <i>N. ruar</i> , <i>Maraucha</i> , <i>Sambal</i> , <i>Bacar</i> , <i>Jamba</i> , <i>Agra</i> , <i>Delly</i> , <i>Jempar</i> & <i>Lahor</i> .	81, 82, 83
§ 7. Northern Provinces; viz. <i>Nagracut</i> , <i>Siba</i> , <i>Kakures</i> , <i>Bankish</i> , <i>Cassimeer</i> , <i>Artock</i> and <i>Cabul</i> .	83, 84
§ 8. Western Provinces; viz. <i>Multan</i> , <i>Haican</i> , <i>Buckor</i> , <i>Hendowns</i> , <i>Jessimeer</i> , <i>Sorett</i> and <i>Tatta</i> .	84, 85
§ 9. The Rivers <i>Ganges</i> , <i>Indus</i> , &c.	85, 86
Chap. XIX. <i>PERSIA</i> Modern and Ancient.	87
A Map of <i>Persia</i> . § 1. Name and Extent.	87
Situation and Soil. 88. § 2. People, Religion, Emperor.	88
§ 3. The Division of <i>Persia</i> into Provinces Ancient and Modern, according to different Authors.	89
A Table of the Modern Provinces and Cities.	89
Particular Description of them, viz.	
§ 4. <i>Send</i> . 5. <i>Makron</i> . 6. <i>Sigestan</i> .	90
§ 7. <i>Sablastan</i> and <i>Candabar</i> . 8. <i>Chorassan</i> .	90
§ 9. <i>Estarabad</i> . 10. <i>Mazanderan</i> and <i>Kylan</i> .	90
§ 11. <i>Scirvan</i> . 12. <i>Edzerbayan</i> . 13. <i>Erack Azemi</i> .	91
§ 14. <i>Chusistan</i> . 15. <i>Farsistan</i> and <i>Lhor</i> . 16. <i>Kherman</i> .	92
§ 17. Of ancient <i>Persia</i> . Its Bounds and Provinces.	92



# The CONTENTS.

§ 19. <i>Partbia, Bactriana, Hyrcania, &amp;c.</i>	93	Chap. XX. The Kingdom of <i>Barca</i> .	144
<i>Media, Susiana, Persia, &amp;c.</i>	93	Chap. XXI. Ancient <i>Libya</i> , with the greater and lesser <i>M.</i>	145
Chap. X. C. Modern and Ancient <i>ARABIA</i> .	94	<i>Atlas</i> .	145
§ 1. Bounds and Situation. § 2. Climate and Soil.	94	<i>AMERICA</i> . A Map of it.	148
§ 3. A Table of the Provinces and Cities.	94	Chap. I. Of <i>America</i> in General. § 1. Name. 2, 3, 4, 5. <i>Dis-</i>	149
<i>Arabia Felix</i> , containing <i>Oman, Seyer, Hadramut, Te-</i>	95, 96	<i>covery</i> .	149
<i>hama, Hagar, Jammam, Babaim.</i>	95, 96	§ 5. Bounds. 7. Soil and Productions.	150
<i>Arabia Deserta.</i>	95	§ 8, 9, 10, 11. Of the first Peopling it, several Opini-	151
The Land of <i>Uz, Ophir</i> . The <i>Sarceni</i> .	95, 96	<i>ons</i> .	151
<i>Arabia Petraea.</i>	97	Chap. II. Northern <i>America</i> , and the Arctick Countreys.	152
<i>Ismaelites, Mount Sinai, &amp;c.</i>	97	A Map of <i>Louisiana, New-Mexico, California, &amp;c.</i>	152
<i>AFRICA</i> . Maps of its several Parts. 99, 100, 101, 102		A General Table of the Division of North <i>America</i> .	153, &c.
Chap. I. Of <i>AFRICA</i> in General.	103	§ 3. Arctick Countreys. 4. <i>New-Denmark</i> . 5. <i>New-</i>	157
§ 1. Name and Bounds. 2. Extent. 3. Soil. 4. Division.	103	<i>Wales, &amp;c.</i>	157
Chap. II. Of Modern and Ancient <i>ÆGYPT</i> . A Table of	104	Chap. III. <i>Canada</i> and the Adjacent Islands.	158
its Division.	104	§ 1, 2, 3. <i>Canada</i> in General. 4. <i>Saguenay</i> . 5. <i>Al-</i>	
§ 1. Name and Situation. 2. Soil. 3. Nature of Inha-	104	<i>gonquins and Hurons</i> . 6. <i>Louisiana</i> . 7. <i>Iroquois</i> .	
bitants.	104	8. <i>Erectionens</i> . 9. <i>Acadia</i> . 10. <i>Propr. Canada</i> .	
§ 4. Dominion. 5. Of Lower <i>Ægypt</i> , and its chief	105	11. Lakes and Rivers.	159, 160
Towns.	105	Chap. IV. The English Plantations on the Continent of <i>Ca-</i>	
§ 6. Of Middle <i>Ægypt</i> , and its chief Towns.	105	<i>nada</i> ; viz. <i>New-England</i> . <i>New-Jersey</i> , <i>New-York</i> ,	
§ 7. Upper <i>Ægypt</i> , and the Coasts on the Red Sea.	106	<i>Pennsylvania, Maryland</i> and <i>Virginia</i> . Together with	
§ 9. Ancient <i>Ægypt</i> . 10. <i>Ægyptus infer.</i> Land of	106	the Islands of <i>New-found-land</i> , and other Islands on	
<i>Goshen</i> .	106	the Coast, and <i>Bermudas</i> . A Map of these Countreys.	161
§ 11. <i>Ægyptus media</i> . 12. <i>Ægyptus superior</i> . 13. <i>Nomi.</i>	107	§ 1. <i>New-England</i> , its first Discovery, Situation, Soil,	
Chap. III. <i>ÆTHIOPIA, NUBIA</i> and <i>ABYSSY-</i>		Beasts, Cattle, Commodities, Indians, English Go-	
<i>NIA</i> . Tables of the Division.	108, 109	vernment, &c.	162, 163
§ 1. <i>Æthiopia</i> in General. 2. Upper <i>Æthiopia</i> .	109	§ 2. <i>New Jersey</i> . Its Situation, Soil, Natives, &c.	163
§ 3, 4. <i>Nubia</i> . § 5, 6, 7, 8. <i>Abyssinia</i> .	110	§ 3. <i>New York, Nova Belgia, New Sweden, New Al-</i>	
The Kingdoms and Provinces of <i>Abyssinia</i> .	111, 112	<i>bany</i> .	164
Chap. IV. <i>ZANGUEBAR</i> in General. § 2, 3. <i>Azey Coast</i> .	113	§ 4. <i>Pennsylvania</i> . Situation, Soil, Natives, &c.	165, 166
§ 4. <i>Anjan Coast</i> . 5. <i>Adel Kingd.</i>	113	§ 5. <i>Maryland</i> , Government, chief Towns, &c.	167
§ 5. <i>Adel Kingd.</i> 7. <i>Propr. Zanguebar</i> ; compre-		§ 6. <i>Virginia</i> , Discovery, Plantation, Climate, Soil, &c.	168, 169, &c.
hending the Kingdoms of <i>Chelitia, Pata, Lamor.</i>		§ 7. Islands. 8. <i>New-found-land</i> . 9. <i>Isle de Sable, &amp;c.</i>	172
<i>Melinda, Mumbara, Quila, Mozambique</i> and <i>Mongal.</i>	114	§ 10. <i>Bermudas</i> .	173
Chap. V. ISLANDS over against <i>Zanguebar</i> , viz. <i>Mada-</i>		Chap. V. <i>Florida</i> and <i>Carolina</i> . Discovery, Situation, &c.	174
<i>gasca, &amp;c.</i>	115	§ 5. <i>Carolina</i> . Proprietors, Soil, Natives, chief Towns,	
Chap. VI. The Empires of <i>MONOMUGI</i> and <i>MO-</i>		&c.	175
<i>NOMOTAPA</i> with <i>Cassaria</i> .	116	Chap. VI. The Kingdom of <i>New-Mexico</i> with <i>California, &amp;c.</i>	176
§ 3, 4, 5. <i>Monomugi</i> . 6, 7, 8, 9. <i>Monomutapa</i> .	116, 117	§ 1, 2, 3. <i>New Mexico</i> . 4. <i>Apaches People</i> . 7. <i>C. li-</i>	
§ 10, 11, 12. <i>Cassaria</i> .	117	<i>formia</i> .	177
§ 13. <i>Cape Good-Hope</i> . 15. <i>St. Helena</i> .	118	Chap. VII. <i>New Spain</i> , or the Kingdom of <i>MEXICO</i> .	178
Chap. VII. The Kingdoms of <i>CONGO</i> and <i>BIAFAR</i>		A Map of it. § 1. <i>New Spain</i> . Its Situation and Ex-	
with the Islands near it.	119	tent.	178
§ 1, 2, 3. <i>Congo</i> in General. 4. <i>Angola</i> . 5. <i>Gala</i>		§ 2. Climate, Soil, Natives. 3. Division. 4. <i>Guada-</i>	
<i>People</i> .	119	<i>lajara Audience</i> .	179
§ 5. <i>Congo propr.</i> 7. <i>Loango K.</i> 8, 9. <i>Biatar</i> . 10. The		§ 12. Audience of <i>Mexico</i> . 180, 181. § 20. Audience	
Islands.	120	of <i>Guatemala</i> .	181, 182, 183
Chap. VIII. Ancient <i>Ethiopia</i> , with the principal Rivers.	121	Chap. VIII. The <i>Antilles</i> Islands; comprehending the <i>Lucay,</i>	
§ 1. <i>Ethiopia Ægyptiaca</i> . 2. <i>Ethiopia interior</i> .	121	<i>Great Antilles, Caribbe</i> and <i>Leeward Islands</i> .	183
§ 3, 4, &c. The River <i>Nyle, &amp;c.</i>	121, 122	§ 1. Name. 2. Situation and Climate. 3. <i>Lucaye</i>	
Chap. IX. <i>GUINEA</i> . A Table of its Division.	123	<i>Islands</i> .	183
§ 1. Extent and Situation. 2. Soil. 3. Inhabitants.	123	§ 4. The <i>Great Antilles</i> , viz. <i>Cuba</i> . 5. <i>Jamaica</i> .	184, 185, 186
§ 4. <i>Propr. Guinea</i> . 5. <i>Malaguetta</i> .	124	§ 6. <i>Hispaniola</i> . 7. <i>Porto Rico</i> .	187
Chap. X. <i>Negritia</i> or <i>Negro-land</i> . Table of its Division.	125	§ 8. <i>Caribbe Islands</i> . 9. Names. <i>Anguilla</i> .	187
§ 1, 2. Situation, Soil and Inhabitants. 3, 4, &c. Its		§ 10. <i>St. Christophers</i> . 11. <i>Nevis</i> . 12. <i>Montserrat</i> .	188, 189
several Kingdoms, Provinces and chief Towns.	125, 127	§ 13. <i>Dominica</i> . 14. <i>Barbada</i> . 15. <i>Antego</i> . 16. <i>Bar-</i>	
Chap. XI. The Islands of <i>Cape Verd</i> .	128	<i>Bados</i> .	190, 191
Chap. XII. <i>Zaira</i> . Its Extent. Situation, Soil, &c.	129	§ 17. <i>St. Vincents</i> . 18. <i>Tobago</i> .	193
Its several Provinces and chief Cities.	129, 130	§ 19. <i>French Islands</i> . 20. <i>Dutch Islands</i> . 21. <i>Lee-</i>	
Chap. XIII. <i>BILEDULGERID</i> . A Table of its Division.	130	<i>ward Islands</i> .	194
§ 1, 2, 3. Situation, Extent, Soil, &c.	131	Chap. IX. <i>SOUTHERN AMERICA</i> in General,	
§ 4. <i>Barca Desert</i> . 5. <i>Propr. Biledulgerid</i> . 6. <i>Zeb</i> .	131	and <i>Terra Firma</i> in Particular.	194
§ 7. <i>Tegmaria</i> . 8. <i>Segelmessa</i> . 9. <i>Taffilet</i> . 10. <i>Darba</i> .		General and particular Tables of <i>South America</i> .	195,
11. <i>Teffett</i> .	132	196, 197	
Chap. XIV. The <i>CANARY</i> Islands. <i>Fex, Palma, Gomer, Tene-</i>		§ 1. <i>South America</i> . Situation and Extent. Division.	194
<i>riff, &amp;c.</i>	133	§ 3. <i>Terra Firma</i> . Name, Situation, Soil, &c.	198
Chap. XV. The Islands of <i>Madera, Azores, &amp;c.</i>	134, 135	A Map of it. 199. Its several Governments, and	
Chap. XVI. <i>BARBARY</i> . A Table of its Division.	136	chief Towns.	199 to 202
§ 1, 2. Situation, Soil, &c. 3. Division.	137	Chap.	
<i>Morocco Kingd.</i> Its Provinces and chief Cities.	138		
Chap. XVII. The Kingdom of <i>Fex</i> .	139		
Chap. XVIII. The Kingdom of <i>Algier</i> .	141		
Chap. XIX. The Kingdoms of <i>Tunis</i> and <i>Tripoli</i> .	142		



## The C O N T E N T S.

Chap. X. <i>B R A S I L</i> . A Map of it. . . . .	202	Chap. XVI. The principal Mountains and Rivers of Southern <i>America</i> . . . . .	218
§ 1. Discovery and Name. 2. Situation. 3. Soil.		<b>C O U N T R E Y S</b> about the <i>P O L E S</i> . . . . .	220
4. Natives. . . . .	203	The Arctick or Northern Countreys: . . . . .	220
Its several Captainries and chief Towns. . . . .	204, 205	Discoveries North-East and North-West; viz. . . . .	
Chap. XI. <i>P A R A G U A Y</i> , or <i>R I O D E L A P L A T A</i> .		The Voyages of Sir <i>H. Willoughby</i> , Capt. <i>Burroughs</i> ,	
205		Sir <i>M. Forbisher</i> , Mr. <i>Davis</i> , Mr. <i>Hudson</i> , Capt. <i>Fox</i> ,	
§ 1. Name. 2. Extent, Soil, Natives, &c. . . . .	205	: and Capt. <i>Wood</i> . . . . .	221, 222, 223
A Map of it. 206. The Provinces and chief Towns.		<i>E S T O T I L A N D</i> . <i>G R O E N L A N D</i> . . . . .	224
206, 207		<i>N O V A Z E M B L A</i> ; <i>S P I T Z B E R G</i> or	
Chap. XII. The Country about the Amazon's River or <i>A-</i> <i>mazonia</i> . . . . .	208	<i>G R E E N L A N D</i> . . . . .	224
Chap. XIII. The Kingdom of <i>P E R U</i> . A Map of it. 209		Whale-Fishing describ'd. . . . .	225, &c.
§ 1. Name. 2. Situation, Discovery. 3. Climate		Land of <i>J E S S O</i> . . . . .	228
and Soil. . . . .	210		
§ 4. Natives. 5. Spanish Governments. 6. <i>Quito</i> .		The Antartick or Southern Countreys. . . . .	229
211		<i>New Guinea</i> . <i>States-Iland</i> . <i>Terra Australis incognita</i> ;	
§ 7. <i>Los Reyes</i> . 8. <i>Los Charcas</i> . . . . .	212, 213	<i>New Zealand</i> , <i>New Holland</i> , &c. . . . .	229, &c.
Chap. XIV. <i>C H I L I</i> . § 1. Situation. 2. Climate and		An <b>I N D E X</b> of all the Countreys of <i>A S I A</i> , <i>A F R I-</i>	
Soil. 3. Natives. . . . .	213	<i>C A</i> and <i>A M E R I C A</i> ; with the Provinces, Territo-	
A Map of <i>Chili</i> and <i>Magellanica</i> . . . . .	214	ries, Seas, Coasts, Lakes, Gulphs, Bays, Rivers; Capes,	
§ 4. Spanish Governments. 5. <i>Proper Chili</i> . . . . .	214	Mountains, Valleys, Cities, Towns, Castles, Forts, &c.	
§ 6. <i>Chucuito</i> . 7. <i>Imperiale</i> . . . . .	215	An Index of the ancient Names of all the Countreys, Pro-	
Chap. XV. <i>M A G E L L A N I C A</i> . § 1. Discovery.		vinces, Cities, Towns, &c. in <i>E U R O P E</i> , <i>A S I A</i> and	
§ 2, 3. Extent. . . . .	216	<i>A F R I C A</i> .	
§ 4. Natives. 5. Remarkable Places. . . . .	216	A General Index of the Remarkable Things mention'd in	
§ 6. <i>Magellanick Islands</i> . . . . .	216, 217	this Work.	

*A General INDEX, or Table of the Countries in EUROPE,  
with the respective Provinces, Territories, Cities, Towns,  
Castles, Forts, Mountains, Valleys, Capes, Islands, Harbours,  
Seas, Gulphs, Bays, Lakes, Rivers, &c.*

*Note*, By a neglect of the Printer, the Number of some few Pages in the Description of *Italy* is interrupted and disorder'd, which Numbers are here mark'd with an *Asterisk*.

<b>A.</b>		<b>Addua Fluv.</b>	266	<b>Ahuys</b>	356	<b>Albans Fluv.</b>	249
<b>A Fluv.</b>	126,130,227	<b>Adema</b>	390	<b>Ajazzo Town &amp; Bay</b>	301	<b>St. Albans Town</b>	21
<b>Aade Fluv.</b>	138	<b>Adige Fluv.</b>	207,208,253,277	<b>Aichstadt Bishop</b>	193	<b>Albaizin Castle</b>	322
<b>Aalborg Diocesis</b>	339	<b>Adour Fluv.</b>	106,109	<b>S. Aignan</b>	96	<b>Albarazin</b>	317
<b>City</b>	ibid.	<b>Adria</b>	275,276	<b>Aignes Mortes</b>	115	<b>Albeg County</b>	199
<b>Aar Fluv.</b>	234	<b>St. Adrian Mount</b>	310	<b>Ailsbury</b>	20	<b>Albemarle</b>	69
<b>Aaral</b>	385	<b>Adrianople</b>	433	<b>Aime Fluv.</b>	86	<b>Albenga</b>	262
<b>Aarhus</b>	338	<b>Ægra Fluv.</b>	175	<b>Aire County in Scotland</b>	47	<b>Albenow Mountains</b>	243
<b>S. Aaron Isle</b>	89	<b>Ælbery</b>	336	<b>Town</b>	49	<b>Albigois Peop.</b>	113
<b>Abbeville</b>	75	<b>Ælft</b>	135	<b>Aire in France</b>	109	<b>Albingen</b>	245
<b>Aberdeen County</b>	47	<b>Acth</b>	141	<b>In Artois</b>	131	<b>Albret</b>	110
<b>Town</b>	49	<b>Ætna Mount</b>	299	<b>Airon Fluv.</b>	97	<b>Albuferra</b>	328
<b>Abergavenny</b>	41	<b>Agano Lake</b>	291*	<b>Aisch Fluv.</b>	193	<b>Albury</b>	19
<b>Aber-yfstyth</b>	42	<b>S. Agatha di Gori</b>	293*	<b>Aise-le-Duc</b>	100	<b>Alby</b>	113
<b>Abingdon</b>	14	<b>Agde</b>	115	<b>Aisne Fluv.</b>	77,81	<b>Alcala de Henares</b>	319
<b>Abis Fluv.</b>	432	<b>Agdesinden Government</b>	345	<b>Riso</b>	310	<b>Alcantara</b>	319
<b>Abos</b>	359	<b>Agen</b>	107	<b>Aix in France</b>	117	<b>Ascazaba Castle</b>	322
<b>Abruzzo Prov.</b>	295*	<b>Agensis Territ</b>	ibid.	<b>In Savoy</b>	249	<b>Alchamak Mount.</b>	198
<b>Abydos Fort.</b>	434	<b>Agent Fluv.</b>	113	<b>Aix la Chapelle</b>	231	<b>Alcmaer</b>	156,163
<b>Accia</b>	301	<b>Aggerhule Prov.</b>	345	<b>Aken</b>	231	<b>Aldburrow in Suffolk</b>	24
<b>Acerenza</b>	294*	<b>Aggerhusen</b>	ibid.	<b>Akierman</b>	442	<b>In Yorksh.</b>	34
<b>Acerno</b>	293*	<b>Agios Adrianos</b>	424	<b>Alava Prov.</b>	310	<b>Aldernay Isle</b>	58
<b>Achaia Prov.</b>	415	<b>Agnabat</b>	405	<b>Alaine Fluv.</b>	102	<b>Aleucon</b>	71
<b>Acquapendente</b>	291	<b>Agno Fluv.</b>	281	<b>Aland Isle</b>	362	<b>Alentakia Prov.</b>	360
<b>Acqui</b>	264	<b>Agout Fluv.</b>	112	<b>Alauth</b>	441	<b>Alentejo Prov.</b>	328
<b>Acqs</b>	110	<b>Agram Urbs &amp; Fluv.</b>	406	<b>Alba</b>	264	<b>Alet, or Guid-Aleth</b>	89
<b>Acro-corinchus Castle</b>	423	<b>Agri Fluv.</b>	294*	<b>Alba Regalis.</b>	400	<b>Alet in Languedoc</b>	115
<b>Acropoli Fort</b>	417	<b>Agria Town</b>	398. River	<b>Albano</b>	299	<b>Alessandria de la Paglia</b>	265
<b>Adaia Fluv.</b>	313	<b>Agueda Fluv.</b>	314	<b>Albania Prov.</b>	413	<b>Alessandriano Territ.</b>	265
<b>Adda Fluv.</b>	241,253	<b>Aha Fluv.</b>	173	<b>Albanopoli</b>	414	<b>Alessio</b>	413



# The INDEX.

Aleria defuncta	300,301	Ancenis	88	Arendonck	135	City	ibid.
Algaria Terr.	318	Anchiale	439	Arespagus	417	Astrop	19
Algaria Prov.	328	Ancona Marquis.	293	Arethusa Fount	419	Asturia Prov.	311
Algheri	300	City	ibid.	Arezzo	283	Aterith	55
Alcantara Castle	322	Andalusia Prov.	319	Argentaro Mount.	224,285,	ATHE N.S Dutchy and Ci-	
Alicante Terr. 317 Gulf, ibid.		Andave	310	River	302,453	ty	416,417
Alora	298	Andelfingen B. ill.	235	Argens Fluv.	415	Athlone	54
Alban Fluv.	49	Town	ibid.	Argentan	117	Athos Mount.	413,427
Alber Fluv. Galliz	58,91,103	St. Andero	310	Argentara	72	Atienza Mount.	319
Germaniz	217*, 222	Andora Lake	253	Argentara Isle	279,426	Atri	295*
Al'loz	49	Andover	13	Argentera Cape	300	Atro Fluv.	293*
Almafaray	444	St. Andrews in Scotland.	49	Argenton	97	Avalon River 98. Town	100
Almans	175	In Germany	205	Argo Fluv.	312	Aubegne	118
Alne Fluv.	233,401	Andria	297	Argonne Bailliage	125	Aube Fluv.	78
Almeria	322	Andro Isle and Town	427	Argostoli Port.	279,424	Aubenas	116
Almondbury	34	St. Angelo Mount.	253, 289*	Argoro Territ.	235	Aubetene	109
Alne	39	Castle	225, 289	Town	245	Aubone	236
Alon Fluv.	20,51	Anger Fluv.	213	Arguenon Fluv.	88	Aubre Fluv.	77
Alot	125	Angermania Prov.	353	Ariano	293*	Aubusson	106
Alps Mount.	58,203	Angermund	213	Arienes Mount	72	Auch or Aux	109
Alaria Prov.	195	Angers	94	Ariega Fluv.	113	Aude Fluv.	112
Alen Isle	337	Angles Prop.	537,338	Ariola	237	Aveirou Fluv.	107
Alfeld	129	Anglesey Isle	44	Aris Fluv.	421	Avellino	293*
Alfuz Fluv.	143	Angroine Valley	251	Aranza Fluv.	313	Avenches	233
Al' Fluv.	402	Angoulême	55	Arles	118	Avendi Castrum	125
Alta	354	Angoulême Port.	ibid.	Arles	143	Avyntine Mount.	288
Altemburg	203	Anouen	141	Armagh	54	Aventon	18
Altena	335	Anthalt Princip.	217, 218	Armagnac County	109	Avenzel Bail.	245
Altena	241	Anklam	215	Armançon Fluv.	79,98	Averno Lake	300
Altena	212, 400	Anna Fluv.	236	Armentiers	132	Aversa	300
Alteti	245	Anne Fluv.	71	Armiro	415	Avertre Fluv.	117
Altiaghen	237	Ansbey Town & Lake	242, 243	Arnaut Prov.	413	Avesne-le-Comte	130
Altland Terr.	403	River	ibid.	Arnay-le-Duc	100	Avesnes	141
Altman Fluv.	175, 193, 201	Anse	104	Arne Fluv.	165	Aufen Fluv.	88
Altman Fluv.	191	Ansto	345	Arnhem	168	Augousta	300*
Altman Fluv.	245	Anspach	193	Arnmuyden	165	Augsburg	198,199
Altman Fluv.	192	Antibes	119	Arno Fluv.	253,281	Augst	239
In Swabia	199	St. Antiocha Isle	301	Arnsberg	185	Augustow	375
In Switzerland	237	Anti-Pachfu Isle	414	Arnsburg Castle in Denmark,		Avignon	120
Alt-Sirmium	406	Antiquerula	322	Town in Sweden	338	Avila	313
Altzheim	104	Antivari	413	Arow	245	Aviles	311
Alva de Tormes	514	Antravida	420	Arques Fluv.	69	Avion Fluv.	313
Amaki Isle	340	Antwerp	127, 137	Arran Isle	51	Aviorki	359
Amali	293*	Aste Duchy	250	Arras	130	Auldby	34
St. Amand Town	125,132	Apennine Mount.	253	Artois	342	Aulis Port.	416
Fluv.	ibid.	Apieby	37	Artois	98	Aumale	69
Amantea	295*	Appenrade Bailliage	335	St. Arpino	291	Aunis Isle 58. Prov.	95
Amarinthe Fluv.	419	Town	337	Arfa Fluv.	252,428	Avon Fluv.	11,13,18,30
Ambacht Territ.	133,134	Apt	120	Arfchor Dutchy	135	Auranchis	71
Ambalchi	427	Aquila	295*	Town	137	Auray	91
Amber Fluv.	200	Aquila	272	Arta	414	Aurence Fluv.	74
Amberz	201	Aquina	292*	K. Arthur's round Table	37	Aurich	228
Ambleside	37	Araber	444	Artois Prov.	128,130	Auron Fluv.	96
Ambietente	75	ARAGON Kingd.	315	Arve Fluv.	248	Aufcone	98
Ambluar	145	River	ibid.	Arundel	15	Auf Fluv.	89
Amboise	95	Aranuez	318	Asababa	415	Aur. in Prov.	61,127
Ambria	101	Arbe Isle	279,407	Asala	277	AUSTRIA Circle, 183. 203,	
Ambran	123	Town	279	St. Asaph	44	204,& sequ.	
Ambrunois Territ.	ibid.	Arbeg Count.	245	Aschaffenburg	188,192	Authie Fluv.	73,75
Amelia	292	Arberz	235	Asche	136	Autise Fluv.	95
Amelburg	188	Arbogia	354	Ascoli in Ancona	293	Autun	99
Amersford-bergh	167	Arbois	102	In Capitinata	296*	Autunois Territ.	ibid.
Amersfort	ibid.	Arbon Lordship	245	Alhby de la Zouch	27	Auvergne Prov.	100
Amiens	74	Arc Fluv.	117	Afinaria Isle	301	Auxerre	100
Amont Bailliage	101	Arcadia Town and Gulf	421	Afinelli Tower	296	Auxerrois Territ.	ibid.
Amont Isle	426	Archangel	388	Afo Fluv.	273	Auxois Prov.	100
Amphipoli	412	Arche Fluv.	248	Asopo Fluv.	416,424	Awe Fluv.	229
Ampt Territ.	173	Archipelago Isles	425	Asperofa	433	Axiopoli	432
Ampt	194	Arcos	321	Affens	342	Axtel Territ.	135
Ampt Isle	338	Ardenburg	132	Affisi	292	Ay	77
Ampt Fluv.	158	Ardenne Forest	126,128	Aftarac County	109	Azoph	383,443,444
Amptland	157,163	Ardiere Fluv.	104	Aftemedé Territ.	135		
AMSTERDAM	155,158	Ardofche Fluv.	115	Aftenay	143		
Anagni	290	Andre Fluv.	52,88	Asti County and Town	260		
Anapia	423	Andres	75	Astorga	315		
Anazter	22	ardienne Territ.	142	Astrachan Kingdom	392		
Ance Fluv.	123	Are Fluv.	33				



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Bachiglione Fluv.	276,277	Bath City in England	11	Bern in Bohemia	210	Blackenburg County	218*
Baden in Austria 205.	In	Bavaria Circle 183, 200, 201		Bern-Castle	187	Castle	ibid.
Switzerland, 245.	Marquis.	& sequ. Dutchy	201	Bernard-Castle	35	Black Forest	200,218*
	198	Bavay	141	St. Bernardino Mount.	237	Black-water Fluv.	23
Badenweiler	198	Bauski	372	Bernay	70	Blamont	103
Badis	360	Bauteggio Fluv.	250	Bernburg	218	Le Blanc	96
Badra	420	Bautzenj	218	Bernstaple	9	Blaigucz Territ.	107
Baco Cape	298,299	Bayerne	201	Berre River 112.	Lake 121	Blandford	10
Bacza	320	Bayeux	70	Berry Dutchy	96	Blaisois	92
Bagnaluca	430	Bazadois Territ.	107	Berscho	430	Blaterans	102
Bagnarea	291	Bazas	ibid.	Bersello	268	Blaver River 28.	Town 95
Bagneres	111	Bean Castle	51	Bertinero	295	Blaye	107
Babus Prov. and Town	347	Bearn Princip.	110	St. Bertrand de Cominges	111	Bleking Prov. 353.	Harbor 350
Bajadoz	319	Beaucaire	115	Bertruc	191	Bleonne Fluv.	118
Bailleul	132	Beaufort	94	Berwick upon Tweed	38	Blois	92
Baint Fluv.	35	Beaugency	92	Besancon	102	Blockzil	171
Baiona	312	Beaujeu,	104	Befiers	115	Bobio	265
Bakerriet	238	Beaujolais Territ.	ibid.	Befos Fluv.	315	Bobor Fluv.	211
Bala	43	Beaumaris	44	Bessarabia Prov.	441	Bochna	367
Balacawa	443	Beaumont	142	Bested Castle	347	Boden-zee	175,200
Balagna	388	Beaumont-le-Roger	72	Betricia	397	Bodom-zee	349
Balaton Lake	394,400	Beaune	99	Bethune	131	Bodrock Town and County	398
Balbastro	316	Beauregard	101	Betuwe Territ.	157,168	Bod-Vari	44
Balkan Mount.	443	Beaufse	92	Bender	441	Boegh Fluv.	376
Balfem	239	Beauvais	85	Beveland Prov.	164,165,166	Bog Fluv.	364,442
Baltick Sea	331,339,349	Beauvoisis Territ.	ibid.	Beverley	34	Boglio County and Town	251
Bamfle County 28.	Town 49	Bedford County 20.	Town ib.	Beverwick	163	BOHEMIA Kind.	209
Banbury	19	Beemster Territ.	163	Beurelsbach	198	Boina Fluv.	413
Banchor	32	Beilstein County 190.	Town 191	Bewester Schelde Territ.	164	Bois-le-duc	138
Bandon Fluv.	55	Belac	106	Biala Fluv.	375	Bois de Vincennes	83
Bangor	43	Belem	327	Bialla	ibid.	Boise Fluv.	109
Bano Fluv.	294	Belfort Tower	134	Bialogrod	378,442	Bolano	296*
Bapaume	131	B E L G R A D E	431	Bibrach	199	Bolgoff	384
Bapchild	17	Belingen	238	Bidassoa Fluv.	310	Bologna	296
Bar, or Barraais Dutchy	125	Belinguier Isle	90	Bidasson	119	Bolognese Prov.	295
Bar in Switzerland	238	Belizone Bail.	245	Bidget	369	Bollano Lake	253
Bar Fort	376	Bella More Bay	387	Biele Ozero Prov. 387.	Town ib.	Bolswaert	172
Bar-le-Duc	125	Bellamoreskoy Leporie Prov.	387	Bielefa	260	Bolzano	208
Bar-sur-Aube	79	Bellay	101	Bielha	385	Bomel Isle	138,162
Bar-sur-Seine	100	Belle-garde	99	Bielia	260	Bommel	169
Barange Fluv.	112	Belle-Isle	58,91	Bielica	377	Bommeller-waert	ibid.
Barbaro Mount.	253	Belle-ville	104	Eielsk Palat. 375.	City ibid.	Bommence	166
Barbafieux	109	Bellunese Territ.	273	Bielski Prov.	385	Bonet Abbey	143
Barby Connty	217	Belluno	ibid.	Bienne Town 243.	Lake ibid.	Bonewell	33
Barchan	400	Belvedere Prov. 419.	City 421	Biervliet	132	Bonifacio	301
Barcellona	251	Belz or Belez Palat	375	Bier-bos Lake	16	Boniporto	426
Barcellona Valley	251	Town	ibid.	Biferno Fluv.	296 *	Bonne	185
Barcelona	315	Benefactum	145	Bighion	407	Bonneval	93
Bardalach Fluv.	441	St. Bennet's Island	25	Bigondas	120	Bonneville	250
Barde Fluv.	369	Benstord-bridge	27	Bigorne Castle	111	Boppart	187
Bardewick	220	Bentchem	171,230	Bigorre Prov.	111	Borch	213
Bardfort	250	Bentivoglio	296	Bilbao	310	Borch-loen	152
Bard Territ. and Town	215	Benwall	36	Bilchowise	442	Borcholm	360
Barcga Baths	111	Beoster-Schelde Distrikt.	164	Bilevelt	228	Borchstenford	230
Barfleur	71	Berdiczow	377	Billingwordet-sconce	173	Borg	342
Bargeny	51	Beredt	347	Bilfen	152	Borgo S. Domino 267.	S. Se-
Bari Prov. and Town	297	Beresko	377	Binche	142	pulchro 283.	D'osmo 313
Barjoli	117	Berezina Fluv.	374	Binchefer	36	Borgo in Finland	359
Barkholm	362	Berg Dutchy	231	Bingen	188	Boria	316
Barkshire	14	Berg-Towns in Hungary	396,	Biorneburg	359	Borigliano Fluv.	253
Barmio Fluv.	264		397	Birgues	261	Borilow	374
Baronies of Dauphiné	123	Berg St. Winox	133	Birkenfeld	195	Borlum	336
Barrow Fluv.	55	Bergamo	278	Birtera	298	Bormhouse	132
Basil Canton 238.	City ibid.	Bergen	216	Birze	372	Bormio County 241.	Town ib.
Basilica	424	Bergen-op-Zoom	139	Bifaccia	293*	Bornholm Isle	342
Basilicata Prov.	294*	Bergentz	208	Biscaw woune	8	Town in Oeland Isle	362
Basingstoke	13	Bergerac	108	Biscay Prov.	309	Borfales Lordship	166
Basingwerk	44	Bergheim	194	Bischoffheim	191	Borfelle	231
Basque Prov.	110	Berghen Prov. 346.	Town 141,	Bischoffstach	206	Borftal	20
La Basse	132		346	Biscoffzell Lordship	245	Borwick	39
Basigne Bailiage	125	Bergomese Prov.	278	Bischopsware	346	Bosa	300
Basigny Territ.	79	Bergon	241	Biseglia	297	Bosch 138	138
Bastia	301	Bergster Grr.	396	Bisignano	295*	Bosna Fluv.	429
Bastoigne	143	Bergues Marquis.	136	Bistonian Lake	433	Bosna-Saraya	430
Batavians Peop.	157	Berkel Fluv.	169,228	Bistricz Town	404	Bosnia Prov.	429
Bath County, in Hungary	398	Berlin	213	Fluv.	ibid.	Bosphorus of Thrace	434
Bath-Monster	ibid.	Bern Canton 236.	Town ibid.	Bitonto	297	Bosla Mount.	259
						Bosfur	



# The I N D E X.

Baxter Fluv.	430	Bretagna	312	Town	ibid.	Caintham	111
Boston	28	Bretagne Prov.	87	Buelch Fluv.	122	Calabria Prov.	294*, 295
Bvbriz Prov.	353, 558	Bretenham	24	Bug Fluv.	364, 375, 442	Calahorra	313
Bochnuck Bar	349	Bretton Fluv.	24	Bugey Prov.	101, 250	Calais or Calis	76
Betzberg Mount.	102	Bretueil	72	Bugilla	260	Calamata	421
Bova	295*	Brevince Fluv.	98	Bulgar Kingdom and City	392	Calami	391
Bouchain	141	Breusch Fluv.	195		432	Calatajud	316
Bouchut Territ.	135	Briancon in France	123	Bulgaria Prov.	145	Calcar	230
Bouckzouka	375	In Savoy	250	Bulloigne	38	Calder Fluv.	34
Boverton.	41	Briane Fluv.	71	Bulnefs	219	Calderaon Mount.	328
Boughton	27	Bride-kirk	38	Euman's Hole	70	Caiepio	278
Bouillon	145	Fridgewater	11	Burd Fluv.	169	Calman Town	356
Boulogne or Bolen	75	Brie	79	Buren	98	Channel	ibid.
Bourbon-Lancy 99.	L'Ar-	Brie Francois	84	Burfure Fluv.	199	Calmuc Tartars	392
chambault	105	Brie-comte-Robert	ibid.	Burgaw Marquis.	35	Calore Fluv.	293*
Bourburg	132	Briel	161	Burgh in Richmondshire	24	Calshot Castle	13
Bourdeaux	107	Brienne	79	Burgh-Cattle	339	Calvi	301
Bourdolois Territ.	ibid.	Brennois	100	Burglaw Dice's	ibid.	Calzada	313
Bourg en Bresse	101	Brientz	236	Burgle	245	Cam Fluv.	26
Bourges	95	Briette Fluv.	131	Burglen Lordship	313	Camargue Territ.	118
Bourgeois Fluv.	99	St. Brieux	89	Burgos	60, 103	Cambec Fluv.	38
Bourget Lake	248	Brig-Casterton	28	Burgundians Peop.	98, 99. &	Cambray	142
Bourne	29	Brignoles	117	Burgundy Prov.	sequ.	Cambresis County	142
Bouranger Fort.	173	Brindisi	295		201	Cambridge County	25
Bouronne Fluv.	109	Brinn or Brino	211	Burkhansen	37	Town	ibid.
Bouvinas	144	Briqueras	259	Burning-well	34	Camden	18
Bowes	35	Brifac	197	Burrowbridge	27	Camelot	51
Boyne Fluv.	55	Brifaw Territ.	195	Burrow-hill	ibid.	Camerino	293
Bozolo Dutchy, 267. Town, ibid.		Briffac	94	Burton Lazars	23	Caminice	376
Brabant Prov. 128, 129. & sequ.		Bristow	11	Bury	403	Caminitza	420
Spanish 135. Dutch	138	BRITAIN	1, 45	Burzia Territ.	310	Camnin	215
Bracciano	291	Britains Peop.	2, 35	Busturia Territ.	47	Campagna	293*
Bracchi di Maria Prov.	420	Brive	108	Bute Prov.	215	Campaign of Rome	288, 289, 290
Braciano Lake	253	Brixen Bishp. 207. City	208	Butow Lordship	414	Campanello Cape	292*, 302
Bracklaw Palat.	376	Brockhaw Fluv.	336	Butrinto	221	Campen in Franc	111
City	ibid.	Brockley-hill	22	Buxtehude	29	In Holland	171
Braga	326	Brocksberg Mount.	219	Buxton-wells	123	Campiglia	282
Braganza	327	Brod	406	Buyz or Buyz	369	Can Fluv.	37
Braila	441	Brodzieck	374	Bydgeft	367	Canche Fluv.	73, 131
Braine	86	Broel	186	Byecks	41	Candences	388
Braine le Comptre	142	Brondelo Isle	275	Byrdhin Fluv.		Candenor Isle	ibid.
Brampton	38	Broodwater Fluv.	55			Candia Isle	424, 425, 426
Branchester	25	Brofs	404			City	425
Brandenburg Elest.	212, 213	Brouage	95, 109			Canea Territ.	425. Town 426
& sequ. Town	213	Brough under Stanemore	37			Canina Prov.	414
Branko	386	Broughton	13			Canisia Gov. 396. City	401
Brasala Fluv.	373	Browerhaven	165			Canofa	297
Braschow	440	Brouchaufen	229			Canfac Mount.	108
Braslaw Palat. 2-3. Town	ibid.	Bruck	205			Cantabrians Peop.	304
Braslaw	403	Bruges	127, 134			Cantal Mount.	105
Braunsfeld	192	Brugnetto	263			Cantecroy	136
Braunsilaw	371	Bruck	236			CANTERBURY	16
La Brazza Isle	279	Bransburtle	335			Capaccio	294*
Brav in England	14	Ernstfeld Castle	191			Capanello Cape	293*
In France	69	Brunswick Dutchy	218			Capelle	166
Breches Fluv.	85	Town	ibid.			Capitanata Prov.	296
Brechin	49	B R U S S E L S	136			Capitolino Mount.	288
Brecknock County	40	Brynbiga	41			Capo di Cagliari Prov.	300
Breda	139	Brziefty Palat.	368			Di Lugodori	ibid.
Bredenber	336	Town	ibid.			Capo d'Argere 273. Delle Co-	
Bredon-Hills	31	Bfura Fluv.	369			lonne 295* Di Faro 298	
Breevoort	170	Bua Isle	279			Di Istria 272. de S. Maria	
Brembo Fluv.	278	Bublitz	215			di Luce	279
Bremen Dutchy.	220	Buchaw	199			Capraria Isle	284, 302
Bremerford	221	Bucharest	440			Caprea Isle	302
Bremgarten	245, 246	Buchorn	199			Capri Isle 302. Channel	ibid.
Bremicham	30	Buckenburgh	228			Capua	292*
Brenne Fluv.	98	Buckingham County	20			Caragoza	316
Brenner Mount.	208	Town	ibid.			Caransebes	399, 430
Bresciano Prov.	277	B U D A, Gov.	396			Caravaca	321
Breslaw Dutchy	211	City	399			Carbon Fluv.	419
Bresle River	58, 73	Budingen	191			Carbonara	293*
Town	104	Budoa	429			Carcalez Territ.	115
Bresse Prov.	101	Budweis	410			Carcaflonne	ibid.
Bressini	358	Budziack Tartars	441			Cardigan County & Town, 42	
Brest	90	Buech Fluv.	119			Cardon Fluv.	75
Bresse Prov.	375	Bueil County	251			Cardoner	



# The I N D E X.

Cardoner Fluv.	315	Caigat Bay	345	Chateau Gontier	94	Cinque-Ports	17
Carelia Prov.	358	Cathneis	51	Chateau Dauphin	123	Ciphifus Fluv.	416, 417
Carelogorod	359	Catmore Vale	28	Chateau d'If Isle	121	Cirencester	18
Carentan	70	Catochi Fluv.	414	Chateau-neuf	116	Cirenza	294 *
Carentonne Fluv.	ibid	Cattarick	35	Chateau-Renard	97	Cirixberg Castle	217 *
Caresbrook Castle	13	Cats	166	Chateau-Roux	96	Cirifano	294 *
Cargopolia Prov. 387, Town	ibid	Carzenelbogen County	190	Chateau-Thierri	80	Cirphis Mount.	418
Cariati	294 *	Cavaillon	120	Chatham	17	Cita di Castello 293 Nuovo	
Caricfergus	54	Cavalla	413	Chatillon sur Seine	100	272 di Sole	295
Carignano	259	Cavallo Mount.	288	Chaumont	79, 85, 100	Citadella	276, 323
Carinthia Dutchy	206	Cavarzere	273	St. Chaumont	104	Citcare	99
Caristo Mount 427, Town	ibid	Caude Fluv.	37	Chaunes	74	Citoris Mount.	288
Carleton	25	Caudebec	369	Chauny	87	Cividal di Friuli	272
Carlisle	37, 38	Causse	107	Chebbe	210	Civita Vecchia 291 Castellana	
Carlowitz	406	Caux	69	Checley	31	ibid di Cheti	296 *
Carlstadt	221	Cazarne	377	Chelm Palat. 375 City	376	Clagenfure	206
Carmagniola	261	Cacerigo Isle	279	Chelmsford	23	Clackmannan County 475	39
Carnora Bay	407	Cecina Fluv.	284	Chelminck	376	Claine Fluv.	34
Carniola Dutchy	206	Cedima Fountains	327	Chelfey	22	Clairy Fluv.	85
La Carnia Territ	272	La Cedogna	293 *	Chemnitz	217	Clamecy	97
Carnowf	212	Cefalonia Isle 279, 424	Fort	Chepstow	40	Clare in England 24 in Ire-	
Carolstadt	356	Cefalu	298	Cher Fluv.	58, 91	land	34
Carpathian Mountains	375	Caladon Fluv.	419	Cherafco	259	Clarenza Dutchy 419 City	420
Carpentras	120	Celano Lake	253	Cherbourg	70	S. Claude Mount: 58, Town	101
Carpi Princip. 268, Town	ibid	Celle Fluv.	75	Cherfo Isle and Town	279		102
Carrigo Mount	111	Celio Mount.	288	Cherwell Fluv.	18	Clausenburg	404
Carrion Fluv.	314	Ceneda, ta	273	Cheshire	32	Cleeve Dutchy and City	230
Carfo Territ.	272	Cenis Mount.	99, 250	Chester City	32	Clermont en Beauvoisis	86
Carthagera,	321	Cental	261	Chester on the Street 36, on		en Auvergne 105 Bailli-	
Casal de S. Vaso	264	Cento	296	the Wall	39	age en Lorraine	125
Casan Kingd. 391, Town and		Centorvi	298	Chesterfield	20	Clervaux	79
River	392	Centron	152	Cheteler	101	Cleybrook	27
Caschaw Gov.	396	Ceraunian Mountains	414	Chiamsee	203	Clefma Fluv.	389
City	398	Cerciffigermen	443	Chiana Lake 283, 284, Val-		Cliffa	428
Caseloutre	194	Cerduna Prov.	316	ley	284	S. Cloud	84
Casentino	281	Cereceda Valley	311	Chiarenza	420	Clugia	275
Casolo Castle	296	Cerigo Isle	279, 426	Chiavenna County 241 Town		Clugny	100
Caspaw Fluv.	229	Cervia	295	ibid		Clume Fluv.	32
Cassaccia	241	Cerynea Mount.	420	Chichester	15	Clundert	162
Cassandra	132	Cesena	295	Chieleta	422	Clufano	278
Cassano	294 *	Ceva or Ceba	259	Chieri	258	Cluse	250
Cassel in Flanders 133, in		Cevennes Mount. 58 Prov.		Chiese Fluv.	259	Cluso Fluv.	123
Germany	189		112	Chieti	296 *	Cluson Valley	261
Cassil	54	Ceuta Town and Mount	306	Chillingham Castle	39	Cluyd Fluv.	44
Cassino	292 *	Chaalons sur Marne 77, sur		Chiltern Hills	20	Clyde Fluv.	50
Castalian Fount.	418	Soane	99	Chimay	142	Coblentz	187
Castanovitz	407	Chaalonnois Prov.	99	Chimeray Mount. 414, 428		Coburg County	191
Castelane	118	Chablais Dutchy	249	City and Territ.	ibid	Cochel Fluv.	404
Castel Aragonese	300	Chablis	79	Chinon	96	Coeverden	171
Castelbarico	276	Chal Mount.	250	Chiny County	142	Cognac	95
Castel Durante	295	Chalosse Prov.	109	Chiozza	275	Coimbra	327
Castelnaudary	113	Cham	238	Chiufa	277	Coindrieu	104
Castel Novo	429	Chamb	202	Chiufi	284	Coire	241
Castel Nuovo	279	Chambery	248, 249	Chiuffenge	432	Colberg	213
Castelrosso	427	Chamoux	250	Chlinoff	391	Colchester	23
Castel Selino	426	Champ Fluv.	202	Chlopigrod	386	Colebrook	20
Castel Tornese	421	Champagne Prov. 76, 77, &		Chorzyn	441	Coler	185
Castel Veterano	298	sequ.		Chremnitz	396	Colgoya Isle	388
Castiglione della Stivere	269	Chanonry	49	Christiana	345	Cobigny	101
CASTILE old 312, new	317	Chantillon	250	Christianople	356	Collobricux	118
Castleford	34	La Chappelle	74	Christianpris Territ. 526 Town		Colmar	196
Castleholm Fort	362	Charante Fluv.	91, 106	327		Colmars	118
Castle-Town	45	Charia	424	Christianstadt	356	Colmensee	371
Castor	24, 25	La Charite	97	Chrysa Fluv.	402	Colmogorod	388
Castres	113	Charlemont	144	Chur	241	Coln	213, 215
Castri	418	Charleroy	ibid	Churwalden Jurisd.	241	Colochina Gulf 421, 422	
Castro Dutchy 287, Town	291	Charleville	78	Giben Fluv.	403	Town	422
	291	Charnois	144	Ciculi Peop.	402	Colocza	398
Castromoigorod	389	Charoles	100	Cidacos de Navarra Fluv.	312	Colaghe Elect. 184 City	185
Cassuben Territ.	215	Charolois Territ.	ibid	de Castilla	313	Colombo Isle	424
Cassum Pacha	435	Chartres	93	Cieblow	368	S. Colombs	8
Caracombs of Rome	289	Chatamon	101	Cilley County 204, Town	206	Colomiers	80
Catalonia Prov.	315	Chateleraule	95	Gillorigo Valley	311	Golofwar	404
Carania Town and Gulf	299	Chateau Briant	88	Gimolio Isle	279	Colouri Isle 427 Town	ibid
Catanzaro	295	Chateau Cambresis	142	Gimmersburg	339	Columna	386
		Chateau-Dun	92	Cincelle	291	Colyns Plact	166
				Cinofa	426	Go-	



# An I N D E X of the Countries

Comacino Valley 296	Town	Cosenza	294 *	Czermisse Prov.	350	The Devizes	7	12
	ibid	Coferans	111	Czerniew Dutchy 384	Town	Deulle Fluv.		132
Comasco Territ.	255	Coffacks Pass.	377		ibid	Devershire		9
Comb-Martin	9	Costonazzo Mount.	433	Czernobel	378	Deux Ponts Dutchy 194,	195	
Comenolizari Territ.	412, 414	Cotelenitz	391	Czerskow Palat.	374	Deynle		135
Comines	132	Cotrone	295 *	Town	375	Dezna Fluv.		384
Cominges Prov.	111	Cotwis	218	Czukaw	441	Dia Fluv.		122
Como Lake 253	Town	Coventry	30	Czyrkaffi	378	Die		123
Comorra	400	Covesnon Fluv.	1, 88			Diedenloven		143
Compeigne	85	Coulon Fluv.	120		D.	Dicpe		69
Compostella	311	Couper	47			Diepholt County	220,	229
Concarneau	50	Couriezou	ibid	<b>D</b> Aarfield Mount.	344	Town		ibid
Concordia County	285	Cowland Prov.	372	Dagheroart Castle	359	Dieren		168
Conde	141	Cour Maieur	250	Dagno Isle	350, 352	Diese Fluv.		138
Conexa la Vieja	327	Courtenay	85	Dain Fluv.	105	Diest		137
Condom	109	Courtray	135	Daleborg	355	Diethmold		229
Condomois Territ.	ibid	Cousin Fluv.	100	Dalecarlia Prov.	352	Diest		137
Condria Prov.	388	Cousni Fluv.	98	Dalecarlien Fluv.	354	Dietz		191
Condrotz Territ.	145	Coutance	70	Dalem	144	Diganwy		44
Coneghiano	273	Coutanfe	100	Dalia Prov.	355	Digne		111
Conflent Territ.	114	Cowale	358	Dalmin	213	Dijen		98
Congleton	32	Cowbridge	41	Dam	173	Dijonnois Territ.		ibid
Coni	259	Cows	13	Damme	132	Dile Fluv.	135,	136
Connaught Prov.	54	Cracow Palatine 357	City ib.	Damster-diep	173	Dilla Fluv.		190
Conquest	90	Crainburg	207	Damvillers	143	Dillenburg County 190	Town	
Conserans Prov.	111	Craon	94	Danes Pass.	4		ibid	
Conservano	297	Crapack Mount.	402	Dantry	27	Dillengen		197
Constance Bish.	200	Le Crau Territ.	118	Dantzick	370	Dilma Fluv.	229,	343
Constars	84	Credo Mount.	102	Danube Fluv. 175, 157,	200,	Dilsbo		354
CONSTANTINOPLE		Crema	278		203, 394	Dinant in France 89,	In Liege	
	434, 435	Crema's Prov.	278	Daphni-bouni Hills	417			145
Contado di Aughiera	255	Cremona	265	Dardanel's Strait 433	Prov.	Dio's Territ.		123
Contessa	413	Cremonese Territ.	265		434	Diostein		152
Conty	75	Crempen	335	Dardanel's of Lepanto	418	Dirmenach		238
Conwy	43	Cremfit	211	Dardogne	103	Dirschow		370
Conza	293 *	Crespy	85	Darmstadt Urbs & Fluv.	100	Dissenhow		245
COPENHAGEN	340	Cressy	75	Darro Fluv.	322	Dissentis		241
Coperberget	354	Crevacore	250	Davas Jurisd. 241	Town	Ditmaning		201
Coping	354	Crevant	100	Daventer	171	Ditmasch Prov.		335
Coporio	352	Crevecoeur	142, 152	Davidow	375	Dive Fluv	68,	93
Coquinas Fluv.	300	Creuse Fluv.	91	S. David's	42	Dixmuyde		135
Coranto	423	Creutznach	194	Dauphine Prov. 122,	123, &	S. Dizier		78
Corax Mount.	300, 418	Crews Morthard	9		124	Dobredor		218
Corbach	100	Crim-Territ.	442, 443, 444	Dax or Daq	110	Dobrzin Palat 368	Town	369
Corbelle	84	Crim City	444	Debreczen	309	Doccum		172
Corbert	259	Crio Cape	425	Decise	97	Documer-diep		ibid
Corbey	230	Crispalsberg Mount.	237	De-dieu Isle	58	Doel		132
Corbie in France	75	Croaria Prov.	405	Dee Fluv.	32, 51	Doosburg		170
Corbie or Corvey in Germa-		Crodagh Fluv.	55	Dehune Fluv.	98	Dofrine Mountains		344
ny	75	Crom	385	Dele Fluv.	125	Dogads Prov.		273
Corbridge	39	Cromwell County	40	Delfland Frs.	157	Dol		89
Cordoua	320	Cronach Castle	192	Deltis-haven	ibid	Dolcigno		413
Corese Fluv.	108	Cronchura	359	Delft	155, 151	Dole		102
Corezin	367	Cronchura Castle	341	S. Deli Isle	425	Dol Gelhu		43
Corfu Isle 270, 414	Town	Cronchura	403	Delmenhorst County 229,	343	den Dollert Bay	173,	228
	280, 414	Croft Dutchy 211	Town	Town	ibid	Dombes Princip.		101
Cor	290	Croya	413	Delphi	418	Dombrowicen Fluv.		440
Corinth City 423	ibid	Cuenca	319	Demetriada	415	Domel Fluv.		135
	ibid	Culembach	193	Demer Fluv.	125, 135	S. Domingo de la Calzada		313
Cork	54	Culemburg Marquis.	193	Demoni Valley	298	Don Fluv.	380,	389, 444
Corneto	258, 291	Calenberg Territ.	218 *	Denbigh County 44	Town	Donas	250,	262
Coraisco Cape	424	Culenburg	169	Dender Fluv.	125, 135, 140	Donastein		310
Cornish Men	2	Culm	371	Dendermond	135	Donawert		202
Cornwall County	8	Culmsee	ibid	DENNMARK	331	Doncaster		34
Coron	420	Cumoniza Mount.	433	S. Dennis	84	Done Fluv.		49
Corregio Princip. 252	Town	Cuyck Eard.	193	Deptford	17	Dontere		116
	ibid	Cyck	402	Derby County 29	Town	Dong Fluv.		162
Corfica Isle	300	Cumberland County	37	Derpat	351	Donkagored		389
Corio Cape	300, 301	Curisch-haff Lake	371	Dert Fluv.	9	Donzi		97
Corfuna	443	Curz. Isle 429	Town	Derwent Fluv.	34	Dorat		106
Corre	301	Curo. Isles	429	Deffaw	218	Dorchester in Dorsetsh.	10	
Corrgeen	165	Cyprus Isle	428	Deva	405	In Oxfordshire	19	
Cortona	283	Czanad	430	Deventer	171	Dordonne Fluv.		106
Cortryck	135	Czates-gored	392	Dever-rill Fluv.	12	Dorea Fluv.		250
Corue	32	Czaritza	392	Devil's Arse in Peak	29	Dorea Baltea Fluv.		260
Corunna	311	Czaslaw	211	Devil's Bolts	34			
Corzoma Territ.	310	Czenochow	367	Devil's Dike	24			



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Dormans	77	Dunois Territ.	92	Elin	238	Esia Fluv.	221
Dornach	238	Duns	50	Elis	419	Esseck	405,406
Dornford	26	Dunsby	51	Ell Fluv.	243	Essex County	23
Dornick	132	Dunstable	20	Ellebogen	355	Estampes	97
Dornoch County	48	Dur Fluv.	105	Elnbogen	211	Estaples	76
Doroftero	432	Durance Fluv.	58,117,122	Elne	114	Estayre	133
Dorsetshire	10	Durango Territ.	310	Elorne Fluv.	90	Este	276
Dorsten	186	Town	ibid.	Elrifelden	237	Estella Territ.	312
Dort or Dordrecht	156,161	Durazzo	413	Elstazabern	196	Town	ibi.
Dortmond	231	Durbi	143	Elstaz	195	Esthonia Prov.	360
Douay	132	Dure Fluv.	123	Else Fluv.	142	Estoutville	69
Dover	16,17	Duren	231	Elseigneur, ore	340,341	Estrac County	109
Doulens	75	Durham	35	Elswan Fluv.	354	Estremadura Prov. of Spain	
Dourdan Town	85	Durlach Marquis.	198	Elster Fluv.	217	319. Of Portugal	327
River	108	Dusfeldorp	231	Elva	328	Etienne Valley	251
Dourdonne Fluv.	58	Duytschland	175	Elvira Mount.	321	St. Etienne de Furens	104
Douvarenes	90	Duyveland Isle	164,165	Elwy Fluv.	44	Esch Fluv.	207,208
Doux Fluv.	99,101	Dwina Fluv.	359,361,380,387	Ely	25	Eu River	68
Down	54	Dymel Fluv.	230	Embden County	228	Town	69
Drac Fluv.	122	Dyrn	396	Town	ibid.	Evenus Fluv.	420
Drogobusa	385			Embeck Fluv.	361	Everding	205
Dragonera Isle	323	E.		Emboli	412	Evesham	31
Draguignan	249			Embrick	230	Eulac Fluv.	235
Drammen Fluv.	349			Embrun	123	Eunchen	237
Dranse Fluv.	242,249	E Aston-nefs	24	Emmerlandt County	218	Euora	328
Drave Fluv.	175,203,394	Ebelstoft	338	Enipoli	283	Euphemia Gulf	295*
Draufen Bay	370	Eberberg Castle	202	Ems Fluv.	173	Eure Fluv.	68,93
Drawenow Fluv.	215	Eberimberg Castle	194	Emser Fluv.	186,231	Evreux	72
Drazzi	413	Eberstein County	197	Enchuyzen	156,163,164	Europe Mountains	311
Drenale	433	Ebroth	304,306,315	Endrem	433	EUROPE	1,2,& sequ.
Drent Territ.	170	Echernach	143	Engelberg	238	Euripus Channel	427
Dresden	217	Ecija	321	Engers	187	Eusebio	123
Dreux	93	Eckrenford	327	Enghien	141	Eurym	225
Driessen	213	L'Ecluse	132	Engja Gulf	415,416,423	Ex Fluv.	9
Drin Fluv.	428	Edam	156,163	Isle 427. Town and Port	ibid.	Exeter	ibid.
Drina Fluv.	430	Eden Fluv.	37	ENGLAND	1, 2. & sequ.	Exter Fluv.	229
Drino Fluv.	278,414	EDENBURROW	47,50	English Peop.	2,3	Eyde	345
Drissa Town and River	373	Eder Fluv.	188,189	English Apennine Mount.	2	Eyder Fluv.	331,332
Gulf	417	Ederinon	16	Enguedine	405	Eyderstadt Bail.	336
Drogenaps Toorn	169	Edge-hill	30	Enköping	354	Eeyenberg	190
Drogezyn	375	St. Edmund's-bury	23,24	Enlach	236	Eysenach Dutchy and Town	217*
Droitwich	31	Eems Fluv.	167,227	Ens Fluv.	175,198	Eysenthor Territ.	405
Drome Fluv.	123	Eertl	136	Enscheden	170,204	Ezenburg Fort.	229
Dromele Fluv.	138	Efferding	205	Entella Fluv.	263		
Drontheim Prov.	346	Egen	238	Entre Douro e Minho Prov.	326	F.	
Town	ibid.	Eger Town	398	Entrevaux	119	F Aenza	295
Drone Fluv.	122	Eger River	198,210	Epactos	418	Faento Castle and Vill.	296
Druenow Fluv.	216	Eglifow Bail.	235, Town ibid.	Epirus Prov.	414	Faigne Forest	126
Druio	373	Egly Fluv.	114	Epsom	15	Fair Isle	52
Dubissa Fluv.	372	Egra	210	Epte Fluv.	69	Falaife	71
Dubiza	407	Egripos Isle 427. Town	ibid.	Eraut Fluv.	112	Falckenberg Town	256
D U B L I N	54	Egues Fluv.	120	Erbach	188	River	ibid.
Ducagni	413	Egypten	372	Erdely	402	Falladon	39
Ducans-Bay	51	Ehrenbreitstein	187	Erdwy	401	Falmouth	8
Duderstadt	188	Eichfeld Territ.	188	Erefina Fluv.	313	Falster Isle	342
Duero Fluv.	303,306,324	Eimbeck	219	Erfurdt or Erdfort	187,218	Famenne Territ.	142
Duerster de Wyck	167	Einbachri	418	Erlaw	398	Fardres Fluv.	322
Duglas	45	Einhoven	139	Ertach County and Town	193	Faro	328
Dugles Fluv.	36	Eiseck Fluv.	207	Esaro Fluv.	295*	Farsa	415
Duna Prov. 387. Fluv.	ibid.	Eisenartz	205	L'Escaut Fluv.	126	S. Farseau	97
	388	Eisenbach	397*	Eschalen	245	Favellone Fluv.	295*
Duisburg	231	Eisleben	217*	Eschfeld Territ.	188	Fauquemont	144
Dulichium Isle	424	Ekekeis Feierwa	400	Eschwege	189	Fawey	8
Dumblane	49	Ekesio	356	Escolapio	422	Fecan	72
Dumbriston County	47	Ekolen Lake	353	Escurial	318	Feldon Territ.	30
Dumfries County	ibid.	Elba Isle	284,302	Esens	228	Felicur Isle	301
Dumgarten	215	Elbe Fluv.	175,209,212,217	Esino Fluv.	253	Felkirk	208
Dummor Lake	229	Elbing Urbs & Fluv.	370	Esk Fluv.	38,49	Fellin	361
Dunamund Fort.	361	Elbingrode	219	Esia Fluv.	314	Felstin	375
Dundee	50	Elburg	169	Essingen	198	Felstyr	ibid.
Dunenburg	361	Elche	317	Esperies	397	Feltri	273
Dunesley	35	Elekholm	356	Esperna	77	Feltrino Territ.	273
Dunfrize	50	Eldem-Hole	29	Esperton	93	Femerer Isle	335,342
Dunkel	50	Eldt Fluv.	217*	Esichel Cape	327,328	Fenestrella Mount.	259
Dunkirk	133	Elen Fluv.	38	Esquilino Mount.	228	Ferden Princip.	221
Dunkirk	133	Elenburrow	38			La Fere	
Dun-le-Roy	96	Elfeld	188				
Dunmow	23	Elgin County	48				



# An INDEX of the Countries,

La Ferre	73	Upon Oder	213	Gargano Mount.	296 *	Town and Cape	320
Ferette	195	Franche Comte	101	Garigliano Fluv.	290 *	Gibraltar Vieja	ibid
Fermentia Isle	427	Franchimont	152	Garilenda Tower	296	Gien	97
Fermo	293	S. Francis Mount.	292	Garlesquin	89	Giers Fluv.	109
Fero Isle	347	Francoli Fluv.	316	Garnica Territ.	310	Gieslinger	199
Ferrara Dutchy	295	Francolino	296	Garnsey Isle	55	Gießen	189
	ibid	Francia Circle	183, 191	Garonne Fluv.	51, 106, 112	Giezza	430
La Ferre 69		Franecker Town in Frizeland	342	Gartemp Fluv.	106	Giglio Isle	302
92 Melon 85		172 Fort in Denmark	342	Garstigne Prov.	109	Gihlawa	211
La Ferre in Luxemburg	143	Frankenburg	189	Gastein-bach	202	Gijon	311
Feverham	17	Frankendal	194	Gasteiso	311	Gingin	243
Feurs	104	Frankenhausen	217 *	Gastinois Prov.	85, 97	Giordano Mount.	288
Fichtelburg Mount.	193	Frankenland	191	Gates Cape	322	Girona	315
Fierenzuola	268	Franks	52, 60, 127, 191	Gateshead	39	Gironde Fluv.	107
Fiesole	281, 283	Frana Fluv.	175	Gavardon Territ.	109	Gisburgh	35
Fife Peninsula	47, 49	Fredeler Castle	114	Gave de Pau Fluv.	110	Gisfers	69
Figalo Cape	414	Fredericksburg	341	Susan Fluv.	ibid	Gissia Isle	279
Figeac	108	Frederickfodde	338	Gavenni Fluv.	41	Givia	295 *
Fillec	398	Frederickstadt in Denmark	345	Gavre Territ.	109	Giula Fejerwar	404
Fillefield Mount.	344	337 In Norway	345	Gauls Peop.	85, 59, 62, 62,	Glac Fluv.	206
Fimes	78	Free Provinces of Switzer-	245		253, 254	Glammen Fluv.	345
Final Marquis	262	Land	245	Gaunt	113	Glamorganshire	41
Finis Terra Cape	302, 212	Freisingen Bishp.	202	Gav Fluv.	205	Glandeve	119
Finland Prov.	352, 359	Frierzlar	188	Geblova Slaboda	386	Glarenschberg Mount.	238
Finnmark	246	Freius	119	Geertruydenberg	162	Glaris Canton 238	Town
Fiorentino Territ.	281, 281	French Peop.	60, 62	Gert Fluv.	137	ibid	
Castle	295	Freleati	290	Geiburg County	190	Glasgow	50
S. Fiorenzo	301	Frigeuel Fluv.	112	Goldenike	137	Glassenbury	11
Five-Churches	401	Freiburg in Saxony	218	Geldre Quarter 126	Town	Glashitten	397
Five-lingo Territ.	137	Freybach	206		170	Glatz	211
Il Fiume di S. Eugo	290	Freystadt	205	Gelnhausen	191	Glenwelt	39
Flackeren Isle	137	Fris	313	Gemblours	137	Gleceffer County & City	18
FLANDERS 126, 128, 131		Friburg Canton 233	Town	Genap	136	Glogaw Dutchy	211
French 132	Dutch 125	In F. Prov.	137	Gendolfo Lake	253	Glucksburg	337
Spanish	133	Fri. .	293 *	Genemuden	171	Gluckstadt	335
Flamm Fluv.	207	Frederburg	129	GENEVA County & Lake		Gnesbeck	136
La Fleche	94	Frianana Territ.	268	449 City	243	Gnesna	368
Flens Bay	327	Frisch-haff Bay 369 370, 371		Geneve Mount.	123	Goch	230
Flensburg Bail.	335	Finali Prov.	272	Gengenback	158	S. Godard Mount.	237
Fleri 69	Fleury 85	Frizeland Prov. 128	East-	Gennep	230	Gogna Fluv.	266
Flieland Isle	164	Frizeland 228	West-Frize-	Genna Coast	252	Goiach Fluv.	198
Flintshire	44	land	157	City	ibid & 263	Golderfond Straight	342
Flintz	241	Frizons Peop.	172	S. George's Mount.	417	Goldingen	372
Florence	281, 282	Fuenteravia	310	S. Geran	135	Geldorp	139
Florenas	143	Fuente Garcia Fluv.	306	Geraperra Town and	Cape	Goldfike Spring	37
S. Florentia	79	Fuften	197		425	Il Golio di Engia	415
S. Flour	105	Fuld Territ. 190	Town and	Geraw Territ.	190	Gonelle	84
Flushing	155, 165	River	ibid	Gerbercy	86	Gonten	240
Foari old	33	Fulham	22	Gere Fluv.	123, 217	Goodmanchester	26
Foborg	342	Funde Lake	253	Gergeau	92	Gorcum	156, 162
Foglia Fluv.	294	Farenille	341	Gergenti Town & River	299	Gorecht Lordship	173
Foix	114	Furens Fluv.	104	Gerema	423	Goree Isle	161, 164
Foligno	292	Furnes	133	S. Germain en Lay	84	Gorgona Isle	302
Folkingham	29	Furtemberg Princip.	200	S. German's Eath	291 *	Goritia County 206, 207,	272
Fontain-bleau	84	Fuli Fluv.	219, 220	S. Germano	292	Goritz or Gortz	207
Fontarabia	310			G E R M A N Y 874, 175 &		Gorlitz	218
Fontenay en Orleans	94			sequ.		Gortina	426
En Lorraine	125			Germans Peop.	175, 176	Gofa Fluv.	219
Fontevraut	94	Gabin 369	Gaeta 292 *	Geronster Spring	152	Goflar	219
Fora Isle	338	Gaillardon	93	Geres Fluv.	107	Gotha	217
Forcalquier	119	S. Gal Abbey & Town	242	Gervais	243	Gothland Prov. 354, 355, 356	
Forest of 100 Maids	319	Galata	435	Ges Fluv.	259	Isle	362
Foretz Prov.	104	Galez	389	Geseck	186	Goths Peop.	60, 254, 304
Forfar Prov.	47	Galiego Fluv.	316	Gessinen	237	Gottemburg	356
Forica Fluv.	102	Gallicia Prov.	311	Gesta Viromt	136	Gotteshpune League 240,	241
Forkelm Castle	192	Gallipoli	297, 433	Gestricia Prov.	352	Gatteshusult Lordship	242
Forli	295	Gallo Cape	420, 424	Gevalia Urbs & Fluv.	354	Town	ibid
Foro Cape	300	Galtelli	300	Gevaudan Prov.	116	Gottingen	218 *
Forrieres	121	Galway	54	Geuse Fluv.	144	Gottlebe Lordship	245
Fort Louis	195	Ganner	105	Gex Bail.	101	Gottorp Bail. 336	City 337
Fortunate Islands	2	Gap	123	Geyfa Fluv.	206	Goude	156, 163
Foflano	258	Gapenchois Territ.	123	Geyfmer	189	Goulet	90
Fofligny Prov.	250	Garay	313	Ghent	133	Gournay	69
Foffimbrone	294	Grada Lake 353	Town	S. Ghislain	142	Gowe Fluv.	163
Fougeres	88			Giblou	137	Goyland Prov.	157
FRANCE 57, 58 & sequ.		Gardelebon	213	Gibralfaro Castle	322	Goza River 322	Isle 426
Frankfort on the Main	192	Gardon Fluv.	116	Gibraltar Straight	303	Grabow	



## Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Grabow	270	Guben	218	Hamshire	13	Hermanstein	147
Gracz	205	Gubio Territ. 294. Town	ibid.	Hamstadt	238	Hermerder-waert Isle	162
Gradisca	405, 406	Gudden Fluv.	338	Hamsted	22	Hern-Grundt	397
Grado Isle and Town	275	Gude Fluv.	ibid.	Hamton-Court	22	Herfingen	217*
Graeff	139	Gue Fluv.	250	Hanaw County 189. Town	191	Hertford County and Town	
Graignana Territ.		Guelderland Dutchy	128, 129,	Hancroid Haven	347		21
Graham's Dike	51	167, & sequ. Spanish	170	Hannel Fluv.	229	Hertogenbosch	138
Grafivaudan Prov.	122	Guele Fluv.	134	Hannebon	91	Hertogen-raide	144
Grammont in France	105	Gueranda	88	Hannuye	137	Herty-point	9
In Flanders	132	Gueret	106	Hannover	218*	Hervoden	228
Gran City 400. River	394, 400	Guerva Fluv.	316	Hapsburg	203	Hergwig	341
Granada Kingd. 231. City	322	Guescar Fluv.	319	Harburg	220	Hesdin	131
Grand-lieu Lake	88	Guggisberg	245	Hardendal Prov.	346	Hesse-Cassel Landgrave	189
Grand Recours	125	Guid-Aleth	89	Harderwick	168	Darmstadt	ibid.
La Grande Chartreuse	122,	Guideca Isle	274	Harewood	20	Hessen Prov.	188
	123	Guienne Prov. 106, 107. &	sequ.	Hartleur	69	Het Slaeck Channel	166
Granfon Bail. 245. Town	ib.	Guildford	15	Hargard	215	Hethy Isle	52
Grantcester	26	Guinate Fluv.	93	Harker	339	Het Y, Haven	158
Grantham	28	Guines	76	Harlebeck	135	Hever Gulph	337
Granzbain-hills	47	Guingamp	89	Harlech Castle	43	Heverlee	136
Granville	70	Guipuzcoa Prov.	310	Harlem	156, 159	Heusden	152
Grasse, or Grace	119	Guirene	90	Harlemer-meer Lake	150	Hexam	39
Grati Fluv.	294*	Guise	73	Harlingen	172	Hexamilion Wall	423
Grave	139	Guistandel	414	Harria Territ.	360	Hey	37
Graveling	133	Guittingen Lordship.	245	Harringow	219	Heyde Town and Sand	335
Gravenhague	160	Gulick	231	Harwich	23	Hielmer Lake	354
Gravenspurgh	199	Guntz Fluv.	175	Harcourt	78	Hieres	119
Graviano	297	Guntzburg County.	190	Hastain Lordship	145	Hiesines	71
Gray	101	Gurk Town and River	205	Hate Fluv.	228	High-landers	47
Grecians Peop.	402	Gustal Bail.	215	Hatsrunner Fort.	228	S. Hilary's	56
GREECE 410, 411. & sequ.		Gustrow	227	Hatelt in Liege Bish.	432	Indelheim Bish.	219
Greenock	50	Guash Fluv.	28	In Overijssel	152	Hirschfeld	190
Greenwich	17	Gyula Fluv.	398		170	Hith	17
Grenoble	122			Hastings	17	Hitteren Isle	345
Gretones Fluv.	326			Hatfield	21	Hobro	339
Griffenzee Bail.	355			Hattem	169	Hochstadt	202
Town	ibid.			Haubo	359	Hochstraret	135
Grimault Gulph.	119			Havel Fluv.	212, 218	Hodselbro	338
Grinaa	338			Havelburg	213	Hoeck Fluv.	229
Grinow	237			Haversford-West	42	Hcendwill Castle	198
Gripwald	215			Havre de Grace	69	Hoey	145, 220
Grifons Peop.	240			Haynburg	205	La Hogue	71
League ibid. &	241			Hedumora	354	Hoke-Hills	189
Grodeck	376			Heylingenstadt	188	Hohenburg County	198
Grodno	373			Heidelberg	194	Hohenrechspurg County	200
Groeninghen Prov.	128, 129,			Heiligpeil	371	Hohenstein County	217*
	173			Heist	136	Hohenzollerem Princip.	260
Grolingen	238			Hekla Mount.	347	Town	ibid.
Grolt	170			S. Helen's-head	55	Hola	347
Gronefond Straight	342			S. Helen's-ford	34	Holach County	193
Groppli Lake	368			Heltenstein County	199	Holbeck	341
Grofne Fluv.	100			Helicon Mount.	418	HOLLAND Prov. in the low	
Grosetto	284			Hell-becks Rivers	35	Countries, 128, 155, 156. &	
Grotenhede	337			Hellespont Straight	433, 434	sequ. South 158. North 163	
Grotkaw Dutchy	212			Hell-kettles	35	Holland Divif. of Lincolnsh.	28
Grotta Ferrata del Cane	291*			Helmont	139	Hollander-dorp	340
Di Puzzoli ibid. Della Si-				Helmstadt	219	Hollen	345
bylla	292*			Helchenoer	340	Hollowood-Hill	17
The Groyn	311			Helsingburg Town and Castle	340, 355	Holme-Cultram	38
Grubenhagen Princip.	218				359	HOLSTEIN Dutchy 331, 334,	
Castle	219			Helsingfors	352	335, 336	
Gruninghen Bail.	214			Helsingia Prov.	532	Holstrebo	338
Town	235			Hemingston	24	Holt upon Dee	44
Grustina	391			Henares Fluv.	319	Holywell	ibid.
Grustinsky Prov.	ibid.			Henley	19	Hornburg	189
Gruyeres	239			Hennelberg County	191	Honflour	70
Guacaldane Mine	324			Hennemark Territ.	345	S. Honorat Isle	58, 121
Guadalavia Fluv.	317			Henrichmont	96	Honflaer-dyck	157
Guadalentin Fluv.	321			Herbach Fluv.	405	Hont Fluv.	126, 131
Guadalete Fluv.	ibid.			Herblingen	239	Horn in Brabant	140
Guadalquivir Fluv.	306, 320			Herborn	191	Horn, or Hoorn in Holland	
Guadiana Fluv.	303, 319, 328			Hercules's Pillars	320	156, 163, 164	
Guadiaro Fluv.	322			Hercynian Wood	200, 219	In Westphalia	229
Guadix	ibid.				218*	Horsens	338
Guard Bridge	116					Horton	34
Guastalla	269					Horburg	237
La Guardia	327					Horheim Fluv.	214



# An I N D E X of the Countries,

Hour Staerdyke	161	Jervia Territ.	360	Isle of Man 45.	Of Shepey 17.	Kednitz Fluv.	191
Hoxter	230	Jesi	293	Of Thanet, ibid.	Of Wight	Keil Fort.	196
Howbora Provint.	51	Jetze Fluv.	213		2, 13	Kelnsy	34
Hove County 229.	Town ibid.	Jever	229	L'Isle in Flanders	132	Kelworm	344
Hradise	211	Iglaw River and Town	211	Islands of the Archiepelago		Kempen	186
Hubay Fluv.	117, 251	Ignon Fluv.	74	426. Of the Ægean Sea,		Kempren	199
Huen Isle	342, 362	Ilanz	241	427, 428. Of Engia Gulph,		Kenchester	33
Huesca	317	Iler Fluv.	175, 199, 200	427. Of Greece, 424, 425.		Kendal	37
Huisne Fluv.	93	Ilissus Fluv.	416, 417	& sequ. Of Ligari, 301. Of		Kenemer-land	157
Hull	34	Ilikeley	34	Sweden	362	Kennet Fluv.	12, 14
Hulse or Hulst	135	Ili Fluv.	155, 196, 208	Ilne	159	Kent County	16
Humber Fluv.	2, 34	Ilie Fluv.	107, 108	Isola	235	Kentzing	215
Hundswickwald	354	Illicaones	315	Isolotto d'Albenga	262	Keoritz Fluv.	401
Hunefus Fluv.	173	Ilmen Lake	386	Ifore Bay	340	Keplaurch Port.	347
Hungarians Peop.	394, 402	Ilmenow Fluv.	217, 220	Isotta Fluv.	90	Keretti	337
HUNGARY 393, 394 & sequ.		Ilock	406	Isle	250	Kerez Fluv.	399
Hungerford	14	Ilse Fluv.	214	Issel Fluv.	126	Kerk Fluv.	278
Huniad	402	Ilstadt	202	Iiler Fluv.	175	Kerka Fluv.	428
Huningen Fort.	156	Ilitz Fluv.	ibid.	Iffoudun	96	Kerky Town 444. Straight	ibid.
Huns Peop.	61, 254, 394	Imburg Castle	241	Iffogne	250	Kerment	396
Hunsdruck Distrikt.	155	S. Immer Valley	243	Ifter Fluv.	175	Kesteven	28
Hunfingz Territ.	173	Imola	255	Ithria Prov.	272	Keula	217*
Hunte Fluv.	229, 343	Imithall	208	ITALY 252, 253, & sequ.		Keulen	185
Huntcliff	35	Inchkeith Isle	51	Ithancester	23	Kexholm Prov. 352. Town	359
Huntingdon County	26	Indol Town and River	354	Iton Fluv.	72	Keyser-lautern	194
Town	ibid.	Indre Fluv.	52, 91, 96	Itzehoa	335	Keyserswaert	186
Hurepous	82	Ingria or Ingertmanland Prov.	361, 362	Juanogored	360, 362	Kiburg Bui. 235. Town	236
Harlers Stræt	2	Ingermen	443	Judal Town and River	353,	Kidenleri	444
Hufum Bui. 226. Town	337	Ingolstadt	201	Judenburgh	354	Kiedani	372
Huy Town and River	145	Ingulet Fluv.	442	Judicello Fluv.	299	Kiel	335
Huyzen-waert	163	Iniesta	317	Judoigne	137	Kies	372
Hyeret Mts	52, 119, 121	Inn Fluv.	175, 200, 207, 234,	Ivel Fluv.	11	Kildare	54
			245	Ivelchefer	ibid.	Kilia Nova 442. Vechia	ibid.
I.		Innerara County	47	S. Ives	25	Kilkenny	54
Jablonitz	407	Innerara's County	48, 50	Jugh Fluv.	381, 387, 388	Killair Castle	55
Jaen	321	Inowlecz Palat. 363	Town	Jugoria Prov.	388	Killain Fluv.	51
Jagenidori Dutchy	212	Inspruck	207, 208	Juberski Prov.	388	Kimbolton	56
S. Jago de Compostella	311	Instadt	202	Ivi Mount.	306	Kimi-Lapmark Prov.	ibid.
Jaica	312	Jocelin	89	Ivica Isle 323. Town	ibid.	Kimolo Isle	279
Jalonicza Fluv.	440	S. John Maurienne	250	Ivine Fluv.	97	Kingdon upon Hull	34
Jamagorod	362	S. John's Foreland	55	Juliers Dutchy	231	Upon Thames	15
Jamboli Territ.	412, 443	Town	45, 51	Jumola	295	Kirkardin County	47
Janicoli	433	Jeigny	79	S. Junieu	105	Kinross County	ibid.
Janicu'o Mount.		Joinville	78	Jurea Marquis.	260	Kinsale	55
Jana Prov. 414. Town and		Jokemuka		Town	ibid.	Kintzing Fluv.	191, 198
Lake	415	Jonquiers	120, 121	Jutes Peop.	338	Kiobenhaun	340
Janow	375	Jony Fluv.	77	Jutland Prov.	215, 331	Kiow Palat. 377. City	ibid.
Janra Fluv.	432	Jornike	237	North 332, 333. South	336,	Kirby-Kendal	37
Japhanum	391	Jougne	102		337	Kirby-Thore	ibid.
Jarnac	96	Jourdan Fluv.	105	K.		Kiderbruch	217*
Jaroslav Prov. in Mæcory	386	De Joux Mount.	102, 247	Kader-Idris Mount.	43	Kirk Fluv.	430
City ibid. In Poland	37	Ipres	132	Kacr-Lheion	41	Kloppenburgh	228
Jarratana	298	Ipswich	24	Kæra Ræk	427	Klundert	162
Jasenitz	215	IRELAND Isle and Kingd.	52	Kahenhufen	361	Knock-fergus Bay.	56
Jassy	441	Iria Fluv.	266	Kalchberg Castle	220	Kniphoff	371
Javarin	400	Irk Fluv.	36	Kalish Palat. 368. Town	ibid.	Kockenhaus	361
Javoux	116	Irlische	391	Kallenburg	341	Kockschaga	392
Jayca	430	Iron-Gate	399	Kam Fluv.	391	Kockzubi	442
Jburg	229	Irt Fluv.	38	Kama Fluv.	380, 388	Koden	375
Ice-borough	35	Irthing Fluv.	ibid.	Kameni Boyas Mount.	38	Koelfeldt	228
Ichar Fluv.	432	Irwell Fluv.	36	Kamin	368	Koge	341
Icua Fluv.	377	Ischer Fluv.	135	Kaminiec	376	Kola Town and River	387
Idra	354	Ischia Isle and Town	302	Kandalax	387	Kolding	338
Idstein County 190. Town	191	Iseo Lake	253	Kanischka	401	Komorra	400
S. Jean d'Angeli	109	Isfodar	413	Kansemberg Castle	194	Konicpole	376
De Lanne go. De Luz	110	Island Isle 347. Territ.	170	Karafu	444	Koningratz	211
De Pied de Port	ibid.	Isenach	217*	Kargapol	387	Koningsberg 370, 371, 397	200
Jecker Fluv.	145	Isenburgh County	191	Karnten Dutchy	206	Koningsseck County	200
Jempria Prov.	353	Iseo	277	Kartlia Prov.	207	Koningshoven	191
Jempeland Fluv.	346	Isere Fluv.	58, 122, 248	Karyn Dutchy	206	Konings-Macheren	143
Jena	217*	Isernia	296*	Kasikertment	383, 444	Koningstein	128
Jende Lake	343, 358	Isle-Dieu	98	Katzbach Fluv.	212	Koping	354
Jenekoping	356	Isle de Faisans	310	Kazimiers	368	Kortier	341
Jenesaido Fluv.	380	Du Levant	121	Kedderminster	31	Koskinpas	359
Jeniza	413	Isle of France Prov.	80			Kotema	378
Jerby	38					Kowno	373
Jerlev Isle	56					Kralovihrades	



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Kralovishrades	211	Laon	96	Leone	295*	Lindsey Divis.	28
Kranawlaw	376	LAPLAND Muscovian	387	Leonnois Territ.	90	Ling Fluv.	162
Kregling	191	Norwegian	346,347	Leontari	422	Lingen	230
Krems River and Town	205	Swedish	357,358	Leopoldstadt in Germany	204	Lingre Fluv.	126
Krempach Mount.	364	Laredo	310	In Hungary	396	Linkoping	356
Krempe Town and River	335	Largue Lordship	243	Lepanto City and Gulf	418	Linlithgow County	47
Kremfier	211	Larion Fluv.	93	Lepina	ibid.	Town	50
Krientz	238	Larissa	415	Lergue Fluv.	115	Lintz	204
Kromeritz	211	Larta	414	Lerida	316	Liparcan Isles	301
Kroscian	368	Lasa	304,308	Lerins Isles	51,121	Lipari Isle	301
Krußwick	ibid.	Lascar	111	Lerre Fluv.	105	Lipen	391
Krßini Fluv.	375	Lathom Spaw	37	Lers Fluv.	112	Lippa	398
Krzemienec	377	Latowicz	375	Lersino Lake	253	Lippa Territ. 229. Town	ibid.
Ktingenow	235	Lavagna	263	Lescar	111	River	175,186,227
Kudack	378	Lavanmynd	206	Lefina Isle	279,429	Lire or Liere	138
Kunow	367	Lavant Fluv.	ibid.	Lefneven	90	LISBON	327
Kuntz Fluv.	191	Lavantal Valley	ibid.	Lessen or Lessines	141	Lisca Bianca Isle	301
Kureland	372	Lavaro Prov.	290*	Lessow Isle	339	Lisieux	69
Kufnach	237	Lavafane Fluv.	107	Letheus Fluv.	426	Lismor	55
Kustrim	213	Lavaur	113	Letomeritz	210	L'Isle in Flanders	132
Kydwelli	42	Laubach River and Town	205	Letteri Prov.	250	In Martigues	121
		Lavello	294*	Leuchtenberg	202	Lifonzo Fluv.	273
		Lavenaw	229	La Leude	94	Liffa	373
		Lauffen Bail.	201,235	Leverpoole	36	Litawiski	374
		Lauffenburg County	198	Levin Fluv.	51	LithuaniaDutchy	372,373,374
		Laugingen	202	Leutkirk	199	Livadia Prov. 415. Town	416
		Lavica Flut.	173	Leutsche	398	Livenzo Fluv.	273
		Laumellino Territ.	265,266	Leuwarden	172	Liviner Valley	237
		Launiza Fluv.	440	Leuwe	137	Liungeren	238
		Launston	8	Lewemburg Lordsh.	215	Liv nia Prov. 359,360,361	
		Lauragais Prov.	113	Lewenstein County	193	Liwier Fluv.	375
		Laureac	113	Lewenwald	220	Lizane Fluv.	413
		Laus Fluv.	236	Lewes	16	S. Lizier	111
		Laufanna Town 236. Lake	ib.	Lewes Isle	52	Lizon Fluv.	69
		Laufnicz Fluv.	211	Lexa	359	Lizonzo Fluv.	207
		Laufnitz Marquis.	218	Leyden	156	Lobaw	218
		Lauter Fluv.	195	Leycha Fluv.	400	Loches	96
		Lauterach	ibid.	Leyton	23	Lochta	359
		Lawben	205	Lez Fluv.	115	Lochtari	358
		Lawenburg Dutchy	226.	Lhannia	43	Lockena Town 387. River	ib.
		Town	ibid.	Lhan-vyllyn	ibid.	Lodeve	115
		Laye Fluv.	119	Lhyn Promont.	ibid.	Lodegino Territ.	265
		Lay-welf	9	Liane Fluv.	76	Lodi	266
		Leander's Tower	435	Libanova	413	Lodive	ibid.
		League of the ten Jurisdi-		Libeten	397	Loebenstein	197
		ctions	240,241	Libna	369	Lofoeren Isle	345
		Lebenicht	371	Libourne	107	Loghn Fluv.	187
		Lebus	213	Lichfield	31	Loghor	41
		Lecce	297	Lidoping	356	Logowi Territ.	390
		Lech Fluv.	175,199	Lidh or Lida	354	Lohm-Closter Bail.	336
		Lechstall	238	Liebana Prov.	311	Town	337
		Leck Fluv.	126,192,200	Liebaw	218	Lohr Terri.	188,192
		Leftour	109	Liefland Prov.	359,360	Loing Fluv.	84
		Leeds	33	Liege Bish. and City	144,145	Loire Fluv.	58,88,98,103
		Leerberg Mount.	102	Lien Fluv.	134	Loisby	358
		Leerstrand	346	Liepfadt	229	Loisley Baron. 250 Town	ibid.
		Leghorn	284	Lieffe	87	Lom Fluv.	431
		Legnago	277	Liffy Fluv.	54,55	Lombardy Prov.	59
		Lehal	360	Ligmieu	101	Lombes	111
		Leicester County 27. Town	ib.	Lignitz Dutchy	212. Town	LONDON	21
		Leina Fluv.	218*	Lilburn	27	Londonderry	55
		Leingen	239	Lille Fluv.	88	Lone Fluv.	36
		Leinster Prov.	54	Lillo	136	Long Megg and her Daugh-	
		Leipsick	217	Lima in Sweden	354	ters	38
		Lelow	367	Lima Fluv.	326	Longobards Peop. 254, 264	
		Leman Lake	243	Limath Fluv.	246	Longueville	69
		Lemberg Palat. 376. City	ib.	Limburg	128,129,144	Lonigo	277
		Lembro Isle	428	Limen More	444	Loo	168
		Leme Fluv.	217*	Limerick in Ireland	55	Loots	145
		Lemene Fluv.	275	In Germany	187	Lopen	391
		Lemgow	229	Limford B.ry	338,339	Loppa Prov. 390. Town	391
		Lemwick	338	Limoges	108	Lorca	321
		Leningen	195	Limofin Territ.	ibid.	Loredo	273
		Lens	130	Limpurg Barony	193	Loretto	293
		Leutkirk	197	Linage County	195	Lorn Fluv.	137, 152
		Leon Kingd. 314. City	ibid.	Lincoln County 28 City	ibid.	Lorraine Prov. 124, 125. & seq.	
		Leondoul	90	Lindaw	199	Loffe	51
						Lor.	



# An INDEX of the Countries,

Lox Fl.	106, 116	Magdeburg Dutchy 214. City ib.	Marisk Fluv.	402, 404	Meirod	ibid.	
Loudun	95	Maggero Isle	347	Maritas Mount.	413	Meis Fluv.	211
Lough-foyle-Lake	55	Magiar	395	Mariza Fluv.	433	Meissen	217
Lough-Longas	51	Magliano	292	Markburg Fort.	190	Mela Fluv.	277
Lough-Reus	56	Magneglia	432	Marker-Overton	28	Melangar	346
Lougnon Fluv.	101	Magny	85	Marksburg	206	Melara Grande	279
Louppen Bail.	245	Magra Fluv.	259, 262	Marlburrow	12	Melazzo	298
Lourde	111	Mahern	210	Marmora Sea	434	Meldorp	335
Louvaine	135	Maiden Fluv.	125	Marpurg	189	Meleda Isle	429
Loave Fluv.	101	Maiden-Castle	10	Marquina Territ.	310	Melfa Fluv.	294*
Louvese Fluv.	120	Maidenhead	14	Marquisot the H Empire	135	Melfi	294*
Louvestein Castle	162	Maidston	17	Marne Fluv.	77, 81	Melin Fluv.	89*
The Low Countries	125, 126	Maignac	106	Marnitz Fluv.	205	Melito	295*
	of Legu.	Maillezais	95	Maro Marquis. 262. Town	ibid.	Meller Lake	349
Iowicz	359	Main-amber Stone	8	Maromarus County	402	Mellingen	246
Lozicze	375	Le Maine Territ.	93	Marosch. Fluv.	430	Melton Mowbray	27
Lubben	218	Maine Fluv.	175, 187, 193	Marosnitza Fluv.	407	Melun	84
Lubeck	226, 335	Mainland Isle	52	Marrarara Valley	295	Memel	371
Luben on Spree Fluv.	212	Majorca Isle 322, 323. City	323	Marro Lw. (ib. 251. River	294	Merningen	199
Lublinski Palat. 357. City	358	Majoria Fort.	242		295*	Mende	116
Lubowla	357	St. Margaret Isle	58, 121	Marfal	125	Mendip Hills	11
Lucarn Bail.	245	Maira Fluv.	241	Marfalla	299	Merdrile Bail.	245
Lucca Republ. 220. City	ibid.	Maire Fluv.	55	Marfanowitz	388	Menene	132
Lucera	295*	Mairune	420	Marfeillane Plains	259	Mencu-Frith	44
Lucern Canton	235	St. Maixent	95	Marseille	118	Mentz Elect. 187. City	ibid.
Town 237. Lake ib. Valley	251	Mala	355	Marfco Narro 294*. Archib. ib.		Menton	262
Luchese Territ.	230, 221	Malaga	322	Marfoil Castle	241	Meppel	170
Lucko	377	Malamoco	273	Marta Fluv.	291	Meppen	228
Luccaria Prov.	391	Malc	55	Mafcon	100	Mer de Sapienza	419
Lucon	95	Malbork	370	Mafconnois Territ.	ibid.	Meran	208
Ludlow	52	Maldon	23	Maffieres	143	Merisch Fluv.	398, 430
Lug Fluv.	33	Malea Fluv.	261	Masko	359	Merch Fluv.	139
Lugan Bail.	245	Maler Fluv.	241	Mafovia	374	Mergentheim	193
Luzano Lake	253	Malefroit	91	Mafia Cape	289*	Mericz	374
Lugo	311	Mali Fluv.	442	Dutchy 284. Town	ibid.	Merida	319
Lula Town and River	354	Malines Lw. (ib. 155. Town	138	Mafferan Princip. 250. Town	ib.	Merlou	86
Lula-Lymark	358	Mafio-Cape	422	Mafio Mount.	253	Mers County	47
Lummen	136	Malmisch	392	Matapan Cape	422	Mensberg	197
Lumfa	375	Malmogen	355	Maubeuge	141	Mersburg	219
Luna Desturra	262	Malmsbury	12	Maudit Fort.	8	Mersey Fluv.	35
Lunden in H. (ib. in	335	St. Malo	89	Mauleon de Soule	110	Mert Fluv.	135
In Sweden	355	Mafvafia	422	St. Maur	84	Meruwa Fluv.	125, 161
Lunel	115	Manamo	390	St. Maura Isle 474. Town	ibid.	Mesember	432
Lunenburg Dutchy	219	Man Isle	2, 45	Maurienne County	250	Messenia	419
City	220	Mancester	30	Maus Fluv.	372	Messin Territ.	126
Lure	102	Manchester	35	Mais Thurn	138	Messina	299
Lusacia Marg.	217	Nanfredonia	295*	St. Maximin	117	Mestre	273
Lusi	7	Mangut	443	Mayenberg	245	Metling	207
Lusignan	95	Manheim	194	Mayence	187	Metropis	427
Lusack Palat. 377. Town	ibid.	Mans	93	Mavenfeldt Jurisd.	241	Metz	126
Lutia Fluv.	196	Mansfeld County 217. Town	ib.	Mayenne Town 93. River	ibid.	Meudon	84
Luxburg	337	Mante	85	Mayae Fluv.	91, 187	Meurs County	186, 231
Luxemburg 122, 129, 142, 143		Mantois Territ.	ibid.	Mayntz	187	Meurt Fluv.	125
Luyck	145	Mantua Dutchy 269. City	ibid.	Mazara Valley	298	Meuse Fluv.	77, 125, 126
Lyme	10	Manza Cape	300	Town and River	299	Meyn	187
Lymford Bay	338, 339	Manzaree Fluv.	318	Mazarino	299	Mezeres Mount.	116
Lymne	25	Maragorda Fort.	321	Mazarino	298	Mezzuo Mount.	414
Lymne Prov.	103	Marathon	417	Mazieres	78	Midziel	273
Lyon City	104	St. Marcadi di Leuca Cape	297	Meuth Prov.	54	Michael Novogorod	392
Lys Fluv.	125, 130	La Marche	105	Meaux	79	St. Michael	125
	M.	Marcy-Hill	33	Mechlin	138	Michelberg	403
La		Mardycke Fort.	133	Mechlenburg Dutchy	226	Micoae Isle	426
Mancha Territ.	318	St. Mare della Tana	444	Town	ibid.	Middeltart Sound	331, 341
		La Marecchia Fluv.	295	Medelin	319	Town	342
Macedon Prov.	412	Maremora Valley	296	Medelpadia Prov.	253	Middleburg in Flanders	132
Macerata	293	St. Maria Isle	302	Medenblick	155, 153, 164	In Zealand	165
Machecou	89	St. Maria di Castiopo	279	Medina del Campo	314	Middlesex County	21
Macheren	143	Finisterre 312. Di Leuca		Sidonia	321	Midia	439
Machinibeth	43	Cape 297. Di Tyndaro	299	Medway Fluv.	16	Midnick	372
Nadra	428	Mariana	301	Medwesch	404	Midou Fluv.	109
MADRID	318	Manebo Narro	341, 342	Meerdale Fregt.	126	Miedzyrzeci	375
Maelstrand	347	Marieger	339	Megara	417	Mielnick	ibid.
Maelstrom Isle	345	Marienbourg	141, 361, 370	Meghem	135	Miglazza Fluv.	430
Maeland Isle	166	Mariendal	193	Megiez	404	Milan Dutchy 264, 265, 266	
Maes or Mose Fluv.	126, 135	Mariensstadt	355	Meigal Mount	116	City	265
Maeland-Sluis	157	St. Marim Republ.	295	Meimberg	245	Milaneze Territ.	ibid.
Mae-Nicht	139	Meun. and Town.	ibid.	Melnydfluv.	32	Milnibach	404
Maelbeck	152					Milford	



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Milford-Haven.	42	Montargis	85, 97	Moret	85	Nancy	125
Milhaud	108	Monstauban	107	Morges	250	Nantes	88
Millares Territ	317	Mont-beliard	102	Morgo Isle	426	Nantwich	32
Millo Isle, 280, 426, Town, <i>ibid</i>		Montbeliard County	195	Morgon Fluv.	104	NAPLES Kingd.	289*
Minael Fluv.	175	City	197	Morin Fluv.	80	290* & sequ. City	290*
Minden Princip. 229, Town, <i>ibid</i>		Montbrisen	104	Morlachia Prov.	406, 407	Gulf	<i>ibid</i>
Mindo Isle,	338	Montbrun Castle	115	Morlaix	89	Napoli di Malvasia	422
Minho Fluv.	306, 311	Mont-Carrigo	111	Mornout Forest	126	Di Romania	423
Minorca Isle	323	Mont-Cassel	133	Mors Isle	339	Nara Fluv.	291, 292
Miaori,	293*	Montchiaro	277	Morses Fluv.	249	Narbonne	114
Minski, Palat.	373, 374	Mont de Poux	102	Mortaigne	93	Narenza, ta	428
Mirabeau	94	Mont de Marfan	109	Mortain	71	Narew	375
Mirabel Castle,	203	Mont didier	74	Mottara	266	Narni	292
Miranda de Douro,	326	Monte	295*	Mortimer's Hole	29	Narocza Fluv.	373
Mirande	109	Il Monte de S. Adrian	310	Morvedre Riv. and Town	317	Narva German.	360, River
Mirandula Dutchy	268	S. Angelo 297* di S. Bernardino	237, Cavallo 288,	Morville	143	<i>ibid</i> , Russian	362
Town	<i>ibid</i>	Di Christo 292* Di S. Ciriaca	293, Nuovo 291*,	Moruma	390	Nassau Princip.	189, 190.
Mirano	276	292*, Di Segni 288, Di	Somma	MOSCOW	385	Town 190, Straights,	390
Mirecourt	125	291*	Monte Agentaro	Moskva Dutchy	385	Natifone Fluv.	272
Mirepoix	114	Monte	433	Moffelle Fluv.	125, 142, 175	Natra	354
Miseno Cape	302	Monte-Cassino	292*	Moska Fluv.	380, 385	Navarino	421
Mistira	421, 422	Monte-Circella	302	La Mota	273	Navarre Kingd. Lower	110,
Mismills	397	Monte-Falcone Cape	300	Mottegano Fluv.	273	312 Higher	312
Milnia Marqu.	217	Montefeltro County	294	Motter Fluv.	195	Naumburg	218
Miffen-head	56	Monte-Marano.	293	Moulins	105	Naxenscoy	391
Milovio Fluv.	440	Monte-Pulciano	284	Mount-Cassel	133	Naxkow	342
Mittaw	372	Monte-Santo Mount	413, 427	Mouremanskoy-Leporie	Prov.	Naze Cape	344, 346
Mixe Territ	110	Gulph	<i>ibid</i>	Mourgues	387	Nebbio,	301
Miza Fluv.	211	Monte Verde	293*	Moustriers	262	Neboufen Territ	109
Medane	250	Montelimar	124	Miscilaw Palat.	250	Neckar Fluv.	175, 193, 197
Medena Dutchy	258	Montenach	239	Muer Fluv.	373, 374	Necker Fluv.	243
Town	<i>ibid</i>	Montercal	299	Muldaw Fluv.	203	Nedh	41
Modica	298	Montereau faut-Yonne	80	Mulhausen in Germany	210, 218	Negropmt Isle, 427 Town	<i>ibid</i> .
Modon	420	Los Montes de Europa	311	217* In Switz	197,	Nrimeraw	376
Moere Fluv.	134	Montferrat Dutchy	263, 264	Mulheim	243	Neisse Fluv.	212, 217
Moharz	401	Montfort in France	69, 89, In	Mull of Galloway	186	Neissa	212
Mohilow	374	Tyrol 208, In <i>Unicht</i>	167	Munich	51, 52	Nellenburg County	198
Moissac	107	Moncfort L'Amaury	85	Muhickdam	201	Nemours	85
Mola	292*	Montgat	399	Munkatz	156, 163	Nephre Fluv.	135
Mold	44	Montgomery County	43	Munow Fluv.	399	Nepi	291
Moldadania	441	Town	<i>ibid</i>	Munster Prov. in Ireland	33	Nera Fluv.	292
Moldaw Fluv.	175	Monr-Hulin	76	Town in Alsace	54	Nerica Prov.	352
Moldavia Prov.	441	Monti della Chimera	279	Bish. in Westphalia	195,	Nermoutier	98
Moldavo Fluv.	<i>ibid</i>	Di Padua	275	Munster-Meynfeld	228	Nervio Fluv.	310
Mole Fluv.	15	Montciervillers	72	Munsterberg Dutchy	187	Nesa Fluv.	217*
Molfetto	297	Montignac	108	Mur Fluv.	212	Nesle	74
Moliceo Cape	418	Montjouet	250	Murbach	205	Nes Fluv.	50.
Molines Isle	50	Mont-Joux	247	Murcia Kingd: 321, City	195	Nestel	238
Molise County	296*	Mont-Jure	58	<i>ibid</i>	<i>ibid</i>	Nestved	341
Town	<i>ibid</i>	Montluel	101	Muren Abbey	245	Nesweis	374
Moll	135	Montmarre	84	Murg Fluv.	246	Nethe Fluv.	126, 138
Mologa	387	Montmedy	143	Mury	243	Netherby	38
Mologocz	367	Montmelian	248, 249	MUSCOVY	379, 380	The NETHERLANDS,	125,
Mon, or Monen Isle	342	Montmerl	101	and sequ. Dutchy	385	126 & sequ. United	133
Monaco Princip.	262	Montmorency	84	Musc Fluv.	237	Nette Fluv.	187
Town	<i>ibid</i>	Mont-Olympe Fort	78	Mussa	372	Neuburg Dutchy	201
Monambasia	422	Montoire	94	Muyden	163	Town	202
Moncallier	258	Montorio Fluv.	327	Mynwy Fluv.	40	Nevers	97
Moncastro	442	Montpellier	115			Nenfchatel County & Town	<i>ibid</i> .
Monchique Mount.	328	Mohitroyal	187			242, 243, Lake	<i>ibid</i> .
Mondego Fluv.	327	Mont St. Elois	130			In Lorraine	125
Mondonnedo	312	Mont St. Michael	71			In Netherlands	143
Mondovi	258	Mont-vogesse	58			Neuhause Castle	230
Mongiardano Castle	296	Monzon	315			Neure Fluv.	54
Village	<i>ibid</i>	Moors Peop.	304, 305			Neusclos	360
Monfort	158	Morano	273			Neufs	186
Mon-Gibello	299	Morat in France	105			Neustad in Austria	205, in
Monlusion	105	Switz. 245, Town	<i>ibid</i>			Brandenburg 213, in Car-	
Monmouth County	41	Moravia Marqu.	210			niola 207, in Franconia	195
Town	<i>ibid</i>	Morawa Fluv.	175, 210, 431			in Hessen 187, in Switz.	
Monopoli	297	Morbegno	241			242, in Denmark	342
Monosque	119	Mordua-Tartars Peop.	390			Neutra Fluv.	395
Mons	141	Morea Peninsl.	419, 420 &			Newburgh-house	161
Monstreuil	75	sequ.				Newbury	14
Montagnana	276	Moresby	38			Newcastle upon Time	38
Montagne di Segni	288					Newenden	17
di Sorrento	292					Newgatten	385
						New-	



# An I N D E X of the Countries,

Newhaufel Gr. 326, City ib.	Norden 221	Oering County 198 Town ibid.	Ordanna 310
Newlich 239	Nordlingen 198	Ofanto Fluv. 293*, 297	Orebro 254
Newmarche 201	Nordsee Lake 345	Offa's Dike 40	Orense 312
Newmark 405	Norfolk County 24	Offen 399	Oresand Isle 164, 166
Newmarket 24	Norkoping 355	Offenburg 198	Oreska 362
Newport in Flanders 134, In Holland 162	Normanroulanaci 290	Offera 402	Oreson 117
Newidel-see Lake 354	Normandy Prov. 58, 344	Oglio Fluv. 241, 278	Ore-fundt Strait 340, 349
Town ibid.	Normans Peop. 2, 4	Ograina Prov. 389	Orfea Fluv. 419
Newfel 357	Nort Gow Prov. 201	Ohnsbach 193	Orge Fluv. 85
Newton-kime 34	North Cape 347	Ohm Fluv. 188	Orgeler 102
Newark 29	Northampton County 26	Oirschot 136	Orighuella 317
New Werck Frr 221	Town ibid.	Oise Fluv. 73, 81	Orihow 377
Nexoa 343	Northausen 217*	Okeham 28	Orillac 105
Neyra Town and Riv. 356	Northumberland County 38	Okehampton 9	Orio flu. 310
Nicaftro 29*	Norstrandt Isle 337	Oldbury 18, 30	Oristagni 300
Nice County 250	N O R W A Y 344, 345 & sequ. 24	Oldelfloh 336	Orkeny Isles 51
City 251, 262	Norwich City 24	Oldenburg 226	Orlanda Tower 292*
S. Nicholas in Lorraine 125	Nolenstadt 404	County & Town in West-phalia 229, 343	Orleanois 91, 92 & sequ. 92
In Russia 387, 388, Bay 388	Noseroy 102	In Holstein 336	Orleans 92
Nickia Isle & Town 426	Notteburg 362	Oldendorp 228	Orlitz Fluv. 175
Nicopoli 433	Nottingham County 29	Oldenstadt Abbey 220	Ormain Fluv. 125
Nicofia 298	Town ibid.	Oldenzyl 171	Ornans 102
Nicozra 295*	Nova Valley 298, Town 299	Old-Town 39	Ordbaw 191
Nid Fluv. 51	Novara 266	Oleron Isle 58, 97	Orne Fluv. 68, 71
Nider Fluv. 346	Novarese Territ. 265, 266	Oleron in Gascoigne 111	Orofio 354
Nidrosia ibid.	N O V A Z E M L A 390	Olewsko Town & Riv. 375	Oroxopeda Mount 306
Niemen Fluv. 364, 373	Novigrad 398, 407	Oline Mount. 419	Orsoy 231
Nienhaus 361	Novigrod 375	Olio Fluv. 269	Orta Urbs and flu. 374
Nienhus Castle 230	Novogrodeck Wieleki Prov. 386	Olite Territ. 312 Town ibid.	Ortegal Cape 311
Niep Fzest 126	Novogrodeck Palat. 373	Olmurz 211	Orti 291
Nieper Fluv. 364, 373, 442	Town 374	Olona Fluv. 265	Ortnaw Territ. 195
Neirs Fluv. 170, 230	Novogrodeck Semerski Prov. 384, City ibid.	Olt Fluv. 440	Orton 37
Nieslot 360	Novoguira 367	Olyka 377	Ortona 296*
Niester Fluv. 364, 375, 441	Noyon 87	Olympus Mount. 415	Orvietans Prov. 287, 289
Nieva Fluv. 349, 361	Nuburg 342	Ombay 387	Orvieto Territ. and Town 291
Nieuburg 229	Nuhenhuys 221	Ombras Fort. 208	Osca flu. 385
Nienmunster 335	Nuithland 236	Ombria Prov. 292	Osenbury 229
Nieuport 158, 162	Nuremberg 192	Ombrone Fluv. 284	Osera Isle and Town 279
Nieurand Fluv. 354	Nusco 293*	S. Omer 130	Oferain Fluv. 98
Nievre Fluv. 97	Nuys 138, 186	Omlands Prov. 173	Ofermo 293
Nieurwaert 162	Nybe 339	Ommenburg 188	Ofina 313
Nieuw Groote Channel 167	Nyburg 342	Onega Lake 349 River 387	Ofiniana 373
Niewkirk 166	Nykerki 359	Oneglia Princip. 257, Town ibid.	Ofnabruck, Bisk. 229
Niebol 432	Nykoping in Denmark 342	Oorloff 391	Ofia Mount 415
Nikoping 339	In Sweden 354	Oostburg 135	Osten 239
Nimeguen 169	Nylandia Prov. 358	Oostduyveland 165	Osterburg 213
Nimes 115	Nyflot 359	Oostend 134	Osterwick 214
Nimmenburg 187	O 359	Oostergo Territ. 172	Ostia 290
Ninove 135	O Bdrz Prov. 390	Oosterland 166	Ostrevant Territ. 140
Nions 123	O Ober Laubach 207	O. Terrich Prov. 61	Ostro Fluv. 391
Niort 94	Obernberg Castle 202	Ooster-Scheld Fluv. 126, 164	Ostrog 377
Niou 236	Oderpalen 360	Oosterwick 136	Ostrowina 407
Nipfick Fluv. 338	Oderwefel 187	Oostreten Earld. 136	Ostero de Sillas 315
Niue Fluv. 110	Oderwil 238	Oosttrich 203	Other-half-stone 8
Nivelle 136	Obflo Dixes 345 Town ibid.	Oostvelden 227	Otmarsen 171
Nivernois Prov. 97	Oby Fluv. 380	Ootmersum 171	Otnere Fluv. 75
Nocera in Ombria 292	Occa Mountains 306 Riv. 380	Opal 368	Otranto Prov. and City 297
In Naples 293*	Ochie Hole 11	Opdael 346	Otricoli 292
Nogar Fluv. 370	Ochsenfurr 191	Oppa Fluv. 212	Otenfec 341
Nogent-le-Rotrou 93	Ocker Fluv. 217*	Oppelen Dutchy ibid.	Ottersberg 221
Nogent-le-Roy 79, 93	Ocryda 414	Oppenheim 193	Ottersdorp ibid
Noir-monstrier Isle 58	Oczakow 442	Oppido 295*	Orthesundt Lake 339
Noire Mount. 113	Oczakow-Tartary 442	Or 443	Oviedo 311
Nola 292*	Odemburg 396	Orago 276	Oude Ampte Territ. 173
Noli 262	Odenfee 341	Orananenburg 213	Ouch Fluv. 98
Noma 278, 428	Odepoa Prov. 360	Orange Princip. 120	Oudekerk 166
Nonancourt 91	Oder Fluv. 88, 175, 210, 214	Orb Fluv. 115	Oudenard 134
Nonocolo 433	Oderzo 273	Orbailon 258	Oudenbos 136
Nordabblingia 334	Odrucz Fluv. 374	Orbe Bail 233, 245, Town & Riv. ibid.	Oudewater 157
Nordburg 334, 337	Oeland Isle 355, 362	Orbelus Mount. 431	Overburrow 36
	Oelle 212	Orbitello 284	Overflakec Isle 161, 164
	Oenaland Prov. 355	Orbotec 444	Overiffel Prov. 126, 128, 129, 170, 171.
	Oefel 362	Orchies 132	Overton 28
	Oeta Mount. 415	Orci 278	Ouessant Isle 58, 90
		Orcomeno 415	Oure Fluv. 86
			Ourse Fluv. 142
			Ouse



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Ouse Fluv. 20, 25, 26, 33	Pavia 266	Pfaltz ( Nider ) 193	Poitou Prov. ibid.
Oulte Fluv. 89	St. Paul in Provence 119	Pfin Riv. 215, 216. Lordf. 245	Poitly 85
Oustingb Prov. 388 Town ibid.	In Aetois 131	Pfintz Fluv. 198	Pola 272
Ouve Fluv. 68, 70	St. Paul de Leon 90. Trois	Pfirt 196	Polachia Prov. 375
Oxford County 18. City ibid.	chateaux 124	Pforezheim 198	POLAND 363, 364. & sequ.
Owar 400	St. Paulhan 116	Pfuers Abbey 245	Polanes Valley 311
Oye Isle 97	Paunton 28	Pharfalus 415	Polaniez 368
St. Oyen de Joux 102	Fauvilupus Mount 291*	Philiba 433	Pole Prov. 389
Oyse Fluv. 58	Peak of Darby 29	Philippi 413	Polesia Prov. 375
Oze Fluv. 98	Pedt 441	Philippine Fort 135	Il Polesine di Adriano 296. Di
Ozwiechin 367	Peebles 47, 50	Philippopoli 433	Ferrara ib. Di S. Georgio ib.
	Peel 45	Philipville 141	Policastrò 293
P	Peel-land 139	Philipsburg 194	Polignario 297
Pachsu Isle 414	Pega Fluv. 229	Philipstadt 355	Poligny 102
Padasiosk 359	Pegnitz Fluv. 191, 192	Piacenza 267	Polizzi 298
Padem Castle 362	Peibus Lake 349, 359, 386	Piave Fluv. 273	Poller Fort. 72
Paderborn B. sh. 229	Pej. nde Lake 349	Piaggia 296	Poloczko Palat. 373
Paderno Hill 296	Peina 219	Picardy Prov. 73	Town and River ibid.
Padis 360	Pelag. isi Isle 427	Picentina Territ. 405	Polotta Fluv. 373
Padron 311	Peles Fluv. 259	Picts Peop. 4	Poltrofs Fluv. 38
Padua 276	Pelion Mount. 415	Picts Wall 38	Pomerania Dutchy 214
Padiano Prov. 276	Pella 413	PIEDMONT 258, 259, & sequ	Pomerelia Prov. 370
Pago Isle 279	Peltew Fluv. 376	Piedra Cape 323	St. Pons de Tomieres 115
Pais de Vaud 236	Pemsey 17	Pienza 284	Pont Fluv. 39
Palamida Mount 423	Pen Town 20 River 214	St. Pierre le Moutier 97	Pont-a-Mousson 126
St. Palais 110	Penas Cape 311	Pierrepoint Mount. 102	Pontarbiar 103
The Palatine of Bavaria 201	Pemlske County 42	St. Pietro Isle 301	Pont-Bauvoisin 250
Of the Rhine 193	Pendinas Fort 8	Pifiscus Hill 292*	Pont de l'Arche 69
Palamos 316	Peneus Fluv. 415	Pigadia 422	Pont de Ce 94
Palatino Mount 288	Penk Fluv. 31	La Pignatara Fort 301	Pont des Veaux 101
Palencia 314	Penkridge ibid.	Pignerol 259	Pont-Eland 39
Paleo Patra 420	Pen-maen-maur Rock 44	Pila Town and River 354	Pontfract 34
Palepoli 295*	Pennarulla Castle 296	Pillaw 371	Ponthieu Earld. 75
Palermo 298	Penrith 38	Pilsen 211	Ponticos 444
Palestrina 290	Pentelicus Mount. 417	Pilsno 367	Pontine Fenms 290
Palinuro Promount. 293	Pera 435	Piltny 372	Pont-l'Eveque 70
Palla Fluv. 112	Perche Prov. 93	Pincio Mount 288	Pontoise 85
Palma 272	Pereczas County 399	Pinnenberg Co. 336 Town ib.	Pont-Orson 71
Palo Cape 303, 311	Perga 414	Pinsk 375	Pont St. Esprit 116
Paludi Pontine 290	Perigord Prov. 108	Piombino 284	Pont-sur-Seine 77
Palumbaria Port 323	Perigow Judisd. 251	Piotrowin 368	Pont-sur-Yonne 79
Palymica 298	Perigueux 108	Piderno 290	Ponte Vigo 277
Pamele Castle 135	Perislaw 386	Pifa 283	Pontrieux 82
Pamiez 114	Perith 38	Pifano Territ. 281, 282	Ponza Isle 302
Pampelona Territ. 312. City ib	Permia Prov. 322. Town ibid.	Pileck 210	Poole's Hole 29
Pampus 163	Peronne 74	Pistoia 283	The P O P E's Dominions 285,
Papenheim County 191, 197	Perouse 123	Pitha-Lapmark Prov. 358	286 & sequ.
Papinowgorod 388	Perpignan 114	Pisuerge Fluv. 313	Poperingue 132
S. Papoul 113	Perlant Fluv. 214, 215	Placentia Dutchy. in Italy 267	Portal 90
Parenzo 272	Perth County 47. Town 51	Town ibid.	Il Portatore Fluv. 290
Pario Isle 426. Town ibid	Perthois Territ. 78	Planci 77	Parteros Isle 121
PARIS 81, 82, 83	Pertuis Mount. 116	Planizza Fluv. 419, 423	Portland Isle 10
Parma Dutchy. 267, 268.	Perugia Prov. 292. City ibid.	Plasencia in Syain 310, 319	Port-Louis 91
City and River 267	Perusa Valley 259. Town ibid.	Platz 416	O Porto 321
Parmus Mount 417	Perwis 136	Platlee Lake 394	Porto Barato 284
Parnassus Mount 418	Pesaro 294	Plawen 218	Porto-Ferraro Fort. 302
Parnaw Town and River 360	Pescara Riv. 295* Town 296*	Pleistos Fluv. 418	Porto Hercole 285
Parois-le Monial 100	Pellaro Cape 298	Pleskow Dutchy 386 City ib.	Porto-longone Fort. 302
Parret Fluv. 11	Pest 398	Plesse Fluv. 217	Porto Stefano 285
Parthany 94	Pesti 294*	Plessenburg-Castle 218	Portquerolles Isle 121
Paschiera Isle 276	Peterburrow 27	Plesur Fluv. 241	Portsmouth 13
Paschu Isle 301	Peteril Fluv. 37	Pleurs 241	PORTUGAL 234, 325. & sequ.
Paslay 50	Petertingin 239	Pleury Bail ibid.	Posna 368
Paslaw Bishop 202	Peter-waradin 406	Plimouth 9	Posaania Palat. ibid.
Paslewalk 215	Peter's Isle 204. Jurisd. in	Ploczko Palat. 368. City 369	Poson 396
Passi 250	Switz. 241. Patrimony in	Plonsko 369	Poslega County 405. City ibid.
Pastel Rampani Gulf 419	Italy 291, 292. & sequ.	Plowen Town & Lake 336	Posna Fluv. 429
Patras 420	St. Peter's in Garnsey 56	Pludentz 208	Potes 311
Patrick's Purgatory 56	Petershagen 227	Pluviers 92	Potenza River 294. Town 294*
Patrimony of St. Peter 291,	Petershanfen 200	Po Fluv. 253, 258, 296	Pozen 208
292, and sequ	Petrikow 369	Podolia Prov. 376	Pozuelo 319
Patrington 25	Pettaw 206	Podsberg Fortif. 126	Pozzolo Fluv. 291
Patti 299	Petta Prov. 388. Town &	Poget 251	Pragelas Valley 261
Pau 111	River ibid.	Pohem 391	Prague 210
Pavese Territ. 265, 266	Pevne Fluv. 115	Pohunt Spring 152	Prato 289
	Peytze 218	Foichiers 94	Pregel Fluv. 371
	Peteras 115		Pregnitz Lordship 213
			Prick



# An INDEX of the Countries,

Brela Lordsh.	251	Randazzo	298	Rhineburg	186	Romance Fluv.	122
Premontre	87	Randers	338	Rhineck	245	Romandila Prov.	295
Premflow	213	Ranfrew	51	Rhinfeld	190	Romana Prov. 433, 434, 435	
Presburg Gr. 395 City, ibid.		Rapallo Town and Gulf	263	Rhingravestein	195	Minor	420
Presbrig	32	Raperswit	245	Rhintal. Prov.	245	Romani-Wivar	441
Preftamero Territ.	310	Rayhei Cape	416	Rhodesz	128	Romans Peop.	4
Preftean	40	Rapolla	294 *	Rhodes. Isle.	428	ROME 253, 282, 289	
Preftoe	341	Rafaborg	359	Rhodiepe Mount.	433	Romelia Caille	413
Prefton	35	Raffuntz	359	Rhone Fluv. 58, 103, 112, 243, 251.		Romantker Gov.	345
Preveza	414	Ratibor Dutchy and Town.	212	Rian Fluv.	51	Romerivael	163
Principalities of Naples 293 *		Ratisbon Bish.	202	Ribagorza County.	316	Romney	17
Probatopolis	239	Ratzburg	226	Ribaudon Isles.	121	Romont	236
Prochita Isle	322	Rava Palat. 363 Town and River	369	Ribell Fluv.	35	Romidalen	345
Profflowiza	432	Ravenna	291	Rible-chester	ibid.	Romigione Ter. 291 Town ib.	
Provence	117	Ravensbourn Fluv.	17	Rice-banck Fort.	133	Ronda	322
Provins	80	Ravensburg	232	Richae	245	Ronenburg Fort	191
Pruck an den mur	205	Ravenspurz	139	Richbank Fort.	76	Roos Vaert Fluv.	162
Prudhow Castle	39	Ravensstein	139	Richburrow	17	Requispariero	261
PRUSSIA 359, 370, 371		Ravestein	332	Richelieu	95	Rere County	245
Pruth Fluv.	375 441	Raumo	359	Richenaw	200	Rochein	196
Przecop	443	Rawdikes	27	Richenfea	245	Roschild	340
Przecop-Territory,	ibid.	Re or Rea Isle	97	Richmond in Surrey	15	Rofderi Donski Prov.	329
Przemislaw	375	Reading	14	In Yorkshire	35	Rose Castle	38
Pfiloriti Mount.	425, 426	Realmont	113	Ridoufa Fluv.	110	Rosendal	136
Puente de Lima	326	Reate	292	Rieux	114	Roses, as	316
Puggantz	397	Rebha	273	Riez	117	R siem	372
Punta di Marono	300	Rebnick	441	Riga Town 361. Gulph	ibid.	Rosoy	84
Pustal Fort.		Recanari	293, 294	Rille Fluv.	72	Rofs Town 51. River	374
Purbeck Isle	10	Recklenhausen	186	Rimili Dominurdzt	402	Roffeno	294 *
Purmer Territ.	153	Reconce Fluv.	98	Rimini	295	Roffarno	295 *
Purmerent	155, 163	Reculver	17	Ringaw Territ.	188	Roffi Peop.	379
Puste Ozoro	338	Redborn	21	Ringen	361	Roffhow Prov.	386
Puy de Domme Mount.	105	Rednintz Fluv.	192, 193	Ringeping	328	Rofteck	227
Puy en Velay	115	Red-Ruffia	375, 376	Rinfede	341	Rot	237
Puygcerda	316	Ree Isle	58	Ringwood	13	Rotenburg	193
Puymore Fort.	123	Rees	230	Riom	105	Rotenaw	213
Puzzoli	201 *	Rega Fluv.	214	Riofa Prov.	313	Rotenberg	221
Pyrenean Mount. 58, 111, 306		Regemord	215	Ripen Dioc. 336, 338 City	338	Roterdam	156, 161
Q							
Quarnaro Bay	407	Regen Fluv.	175, 201	Rippina	369	Rotoure Fluv.	113
Quart	238	Regensburg in Germany	202	Rippon	34	Rottum	343
Quendlingburg Territ.	214	Bailin Switz. 235 Town ibid.		St. Riquier	75	Rotwel	200
219. Town	ibid.	Regio Dutch. 268 Town ibid.		Rifcht	238	Rotweil	243
Queles Fluv.	312	in Naples 295 *		Rifingham	39	Rouel Fluv.	140
Qucios Fluv.	317	Reineck County and Town	188, 192, 193	Riva Lake	245	Rouen	68
Quenoy	141	Reinstein County 218 * 219		Rivadeo	312	Rovereid	277
S. Quentin	142	Cafile	ibid.	Riviere Bail.	245	Rovergue Prov.	108
Quercy Prov.	107	Reipolskirk	195	Roan	68	Rovigo	275
Quero Fluv.	272	Remiremont	125	Roanne	104	Rozigno Prov.	275
Quillebeuf	69	S. Remo	262	Roanois Territ.	ibid.	Roulers	132
Quimper-Corentin	90	Remois	78	La Robine Fluv.	114	Roumois	69
Quimperlay	ibid.	Remorentin	92	Robogh	56	Rouffillon County	114, 316
Quingey	102	Renfrew County	47	Roca Sintra Cape	327	Rouron	32
Quintin in Bretagne	89	Rennes	88	Rocabruna	262	Roxburg County	47
S. Quintin in Picardy	74	Reno Fluv.	295	Roche en Ardenne	143	Royal Observatory	17
Quirinale Mount.	288	Rensburg	335	Rochechouart	94	Roye	74
R							
Raab River. 394, 400.		Reerone Fluv.	277	Rochefort	95	Royfton	21
Town ibid. Govern 396		Rejebow Dutchy 385 Town		Rochefoucaut	95	Rudisto	434
Radline Isle	52	ibid.		Rochel	95	Ruel	84
Radna	402	Refundt	354	Rochetter	16	Rufi	235
Rader County. 40 Town		Retelois Territ.	78	Roche Thurn	403	Rugen Isle	215, 362
ibid. Old Rader	ibid.	Retimo Territ. 425 Town	426	Rock	39	Rugenwold	215
Radom	357	Retling	198	Rocroy	78	Ruhr Fluv.	186
Ragatz	245	Retz Dutchy	89	Rode-Macheren	143	Rumelia Prov.	410, 433
Ragusa in Italy	298	Revel	261, 360	Rodenburg	189	Rumely	249
Ragusa Republ. 429 City ibid.		Revez	136	Rodes	108	Runal	359
Ragusa Vecchio	422	Reux	142	Rodesto	434	Rundfield Mount.	344
Ram	205	Rezan Dutchy 389 Town ibid.		Rodolphsworth	207	Rupelmond	132
Rakelsburg	206	Rhead Fluv.	39	Roeles	142	Rupin Lordsh 213 Town ibid.	
St. Rambert	101	Rheims	78	Ro-er Fluv. 126, 170, 227		Ruscog	356
Ramelsberg Mount.	219	Rheinfelden	200	Roermond	170	Russ Fluv.	234, 237
Rammeru	77	Rhenen	167	Rogofno	368	Ruffe Fluv.	129, 371
Rammekins	155, 165	Rhetel	78	Rohaczow	374	Ruffelheim Fort	190
Rams-head Promont	56	Rbine Fluv. 126, 160, 175, 230		Rolduc	144	Ruffles Peop.	375, 381
Ranstein	238	234, Circle in Germany 183,		Rolle-rich Stones	19	RUSSIA White	379, 380
Rance Fluv.	88	193, 194		Roma Isle	338	Red	375, 376
				Roma Nova	385	Ruffin	45
						Ruffine Fluv.	69
						Ruffan	



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Rustan Territ.	111	Sancerre	96	Scaumburg Castle	229	Segorve	317
Rut	239	Sandecz	367	County	ibid.	Segovia	313
Rutkoping	342	Sandhoft	134	Scarpenhewel	136	Segovitz	405
Rutlandshire	28	Sandonit P.d.	367. Town	Schiffhausen Canton	239	Segre Fluv.	316
Rutzenbittel Fort.	221	Sandwich	17	Town	ibid.	Seguera Fluv.	317
Ruvo	297	Sandwyck	343	Schaffmas Mount.	102	Segura Mount.	306
Rye	16	Sane Fluv.	239	Schaumburg Castle	205	River 321.	Territ. 317
Rifzow	378	Sangueta Territ.	313. Town	Schedlowitz	367	Seignelay	100
Rynland Prov.	157	San Severino	294	Scheen	345, 346	Seine Fluv.	58
Ryffel	132	Santa Maria Isle	302	Scheidam	156	Seiont Fluv.	44
Ryswick	142, 161	Santaren	328	Scheld Fluv.	126, 135, 140	Seissel	101
S.		Santen	230	Schellenberg Castle	202	Seladulla Isle	427
		Santerre	74	Schelling Isle	164	Selivera	434
Saal	205	Santia	260	Schemnitz	397	Selkirk County 47. Town	51
Sabato Fluv.	293	Sant Illana	311	Schenckenscance	169	Selle Fluv.	125
Saonia Prov.	291	Sanus Fluv.	367	Schermer Territ.	163	Selsey	15
Sabioncello	229	Saone Fluv.	58, 98, 103	Schesburg	404	Seltz Fluv.	200
Sabla	430	Sape Mount.	250	Scherland Isle	347	Seltzenaw Fort.	229
Saccania Prov.	420	Sapienza Isle 424.	Sea	Schieland Prov.	157	Selunc Fluv.	68
Sacer	300	Sar Fluv.	187	Schers Jurisd.	241	Semay Fluv.	142
Sachingeri	443	Saracens Peop.	61	Schievling	160, 161	Semendria	431
Saen Fluv.	163	Saragosa	299	Schinta	396	Semigilia Prov.	372
Saenredam	ibid.	Saragossa	316	Schinusa	426	Seminara	295
Sagan Dutchy 212. Town	ibid.	Saravalle	273, 300	Schiro Isle 427.	Town and	Semlgn	406
Sagona	301	Sarburg	187	Port	ibid.	Semoy	143
Sainte Seine	98	Sarda Cape	300	Schlestadt	196	Sempach Bail.	236
Saintes	109	Sardam	163	Schodlock	368	Town and Lake	ibid.
Saintonge Prov.	ibid.	Sardini Isle	300	Schonen	355	Semur en Auxois	100
Sala Fluv.	191, 217, 401	Sare Fluv.	125	Schoning	356	En Briennois	ibid.
Salamanca	314	Sare-Louis	ibid.	Schoonhoven	156, 162	Senef	136
Salanches	250	Sargan County	245	Schondori	197	Senese Territ.	281, 282
Salankament	406	Sarigerman	443	Schouwen Isle	164, 165	Senes	118
Salazon Fluv.	112	Sarlat	109	Schut Isle	400	Senigaglia	295
Sale Fluv.	108	Sarn Fluv.	245	Schwaben Circle 183, 197, 198	& sequ.	Senlis	86
Salem	298	Sarneff Fluv.	238	Schwalback	190	Senne Heath	230
Salerno Town and Bay	293*	Sarnen	ibid.	Schwartzburg County 191, 217*		Senneque Fluv.	142
Salers	105	Sarno	293*	Schwartzenburg Bail.	245	Senonnois Territ.	79
Salimanega Castle	429	Saruma	295	Town	ibid.	Seis	79
Salinas Cape	323	Sarte Fluv.	58, 71, 91	Schweidnitz Dutchy	212	Senstheim County	191
Saline Isle	301	Sarteni	301	Schweinfurt	193	Serchio Fluv.	280
Salingstade	214	Sarum	12	Schwinburg	342	Sereth Fluv.	441
Salins	102	Sarzana	263	Schwitz Cant. 237. Town	ib.	Serezana	263
Salisbury	12	Sas van Gandt	134	Schwunden	372	Serin Fluv.	58
Salkeld	38	Safeno Isle	414	Sciatta Isle	427	Serio Fluv.	278
Sall Fluv.	353	Saffari	300	Sciltaro	431	Sermaise	78
Salland Territ.	170	Saffenhausen	226	Scilavi Peop.	363, 405	Sermoneta	290
Sallero Isle	345	Saffuolo Territ.	268	Sclavonia Prov.	405	Sernia	296
Salling Territ.	339	Satz	210	Sclavonia Prov.	405	Sero County	397
Salo	278	Save Fluv. 175, 203, 205, 394		Scerdale	346	Serpenow	391
Salon de Crau	118	Saverne	196	Scopia	431	La Seranna de Ronda	322
Salona Bay	418	Savillano	259	Scopulo Isle	427	Serravallo Castle	296
Salonichi	412	Saumur	94	St. OTLAND 46, 47. & sequ.		Village	ibid.
Salomon Cape	424, 426	Savolaxia Prov.	358	Scots Peop.	24	La Serre	236
Salas	303	Savona	262	Scotusa	415	Serre Fluv.	73
Salisbury	29	SAYOT 247, 248. & sequ.		Sculatti	402	Serfno Isle	427
Salsona	315	Savre Fluv.	95	Scutari	413, 434	Servia Prov. 430. Mount.	413
Salstah	88	Sauvenir Spring.	152	Scythian Peop.	430	Sesia Fluv.	260
Salten Gov.	346	Saw Russel Cataract	175	Sczura	374	Sestos Town and Castle	434
Salza Fluv.	203, 205	Sax-Altemburg	217	Sczwim	406	Seria Prov. 425. Town	426
Salzberg	345	Sax-Hall Dutchy	ibid.	Sdilles Isle	426	Serines	417
Saltzburg in Germany 202, 203		Sax-Lawenburg	226	Seavenhale	39	La Seu d'urgel	316
In Transilv.	403	Sax-Mersburg	217	St. Sebastian	310	Seve Fluv.	106
Salvaterra	311	Sax-Naumburg	ibid.	Sebenico	279, 428	Sevenbergen	136
Saluces Marquis.	261	Saxenhagen	229	Sechausen	213	Seven-wolden Territ.	172
Saluzzo	ibid.	Saxenhausen	192	Sechia Fluv.	268	St. Sever	109
Salwarp Fluv.	31	Saxons Peop. 4, 5, 216, 402		Seckaw Castle	205	Severia Prov.	384
Samandrachi Isle	248	Saxony Circle 183, 216, 217, & sequ. Dutchy 217. Lower	ibid.	Sedan	78	S. Severina	295
Samara	392	er ibid. Upper	216, 217	See Fluv.	68	S. Severino	294
Samasch Fluv.	399	Scagen Town and Cape	339	Seebv	339	Les Severins Mount.	58
Sambre Fluv.	126, 140	Scager-Riff	338	Seeland Isle	340	Severn Fluv. 2, 18, 30, 40	
Saminge	359	Scall	294*	Seez	71	Sevil	320
Samogitia Prov.	371	SCANDINAVIA	329, 330	Segeberg	336	Seure Fluv.	97
Samoieda Prov.	390	Scara	356	Segedin	398	Sewold	361
Samos River 402.	Isle 428	Scardona	428	Segeswar	404	Sezin Fluv.	98
Samsoe Isle	339, 342	Scarp Fluv.	126, 130	Seghill	39	Sezze	290
Sana Town 235.	River 376	Scarparia	282	Segna	407	Sfachia	426
				Segni Mount. 288. Town	290	Shafresbury	10
						Shannon	



# An INDEX of the Countries,

Spannon Fluv.	54, 55	Snowdon Hills	44	Spurnhead	35	Stymphalus Mount.	419
Shepey Isle	17	Soana Fluv.	265	Squillaci	255	Styria Dutchy	205
Sherwood-Forest	29	Soar Fluv.	27	Stade	221	Styx Fluv.	419
Shirburn	10	Solrarbe Kingd.	315	Staien	235	Sualhusen	237
Shrewsbury	131	Sockzow	441	Staffora Fluv.	265	Suchana Fluv. 380, 387, 388	
Shropshire	ibid.	Soest	232	Stafford County 31 Town	ibid.	Suda Isle	427
Shugbury	30	Soestdyck	157	Stafforda in Piedmont	251	Suderkoping	355
Siberia Kingd. in Russia	391	Soeste Fluv.	223	Staffenger Gov. 345 Town	ibid.	Sudermania Prov.	352
Town in Poland	357	Soligny Wood 125, 135 Town	142	Stagno	429	STUEN 348, 349, & sequ.	
Sibyl's Grove	292	in Hampshire	25	Stagyræ	413	Suentin Fluv.	335
Sichem	137	Solitions	357	Stain	205	Sueroy Isle,	347
Sicily Isle	238	Solden Kyle	213	St. James Isle 42 Town	ibid.	Suffolk County	27
Siculi Pers.	402	Soldin	346	Stamboul	434	Sully	92
Sidagoy	444	Solendael	233, 239	Stamford	28	Sulmona	299
Sidero Cape	425	Solms County 12; Town 191	37	Stanemere	11	Sultz Fluv.	201
Siderocapla	412	Sologne Territ.	92	Stanton-drew	238	Sulezbach	202
Siebersburgen	402	Silsburn Canton 239 Town	ibid.	Stantz	387	Sundaël	346
Siege Fluv.	190	Silwedel	213	Stara Russa	370	Sundby	340
Siena	284	Silukm Prov.	352	Stargard	215	Sunderburg	337
Sienna Fluv.	141	Soma	337	Stargard	215	Sunderhausen	217
Sa Sierra d'Arienza Mount.	305	Sombref	135	Stavoren	173	Sundt Strait	339
De Cazorla ibid. De las Mo-	320	Somby	358	Stayky	378	Suni	291
nes, 320 Morena ibid.	322	Somerfeld	218	Steenberg Hill	230	Sunegaw Territ.	195
Nevada	312	Somerfeld	11	Steenbergen	135	Suntra	189
La Sierra Territ.	ibid.	Somerfeld	151	Steenkirk	142	Sura Merzi Lake	444
Silano Isle 425 Town	190	Somerton	11	Steenwick	171	Surafs	373, 375
Sigen County and Town	401	Somme Fluv.	73	Stechberg	355	Sureby	35
Sigeth	319	Sommieres	115	Stein Chastellory	235	Surrey County	15
Siguenza	273	Sondrio	241	Steinfurt	230	Surice	237
Sile Fluv.	39	Sonneburg Town 213	352	Steele	342	Susa Marqu. 250 Town, ibid.	
Silcester in Hamp. 13 In Nor-	210	Sooska	327	Stella Fluv.	283	Sufanna Mountains	321
tham.	432	Sophia	432	Stendal	213	Sufdal Prov. and Town	389
Silefia Dutchy	235	Sophicdde	342	Ster Fluv.	317	Suffex County	15
Silistria	235	Sor or Soer	341	Stern Lordst.	213	Susse-zee Lake	217
Simath Fluv.	195	Sora	341	Sternburg	ibid.	Sutri	291
Simmeren Dutchy 195 Town	125, 135	Soratoff	302	Stert-point	11	Suvisstock Fluv.	374
Sinne Fluv.	439	Soraw	218	Stetin	215	Suzon Fluv.	98
Sinopoli	240	Soria	313	Steyer Fluv. and urbs	204	Swabia	197
Sintra Fluv.	242	Sorna Fluv.	195	Steymarck	205	Swale Fluv.	35
Sion	295	Sorrento Town 292	352	Striva, es	415	Swaneburg	165
Siponto	359	Sofz Fluv.	374	STOCKHOLM	353	Swartsluys	171
Sirad Palat. 358 Town	143	Souabe Prov.	197	Stockton	35	Swerin	226
Sirick	125	Soulane Fluv.	103	Stolberg County 217 Town	35	Swiera Fluv.	373
Sirk or Sarcus	125	Soule River, 62 Territ.	110	ibid.	35	Swine Fluv.	216
Sirmich County 405 Town	ibid.	The Sound Strait 339, 349	20	Stolp Mountains, 328 River,	215	Swire Fluv.	54
Sileg	119	Southampton	13	214 Town	12	Swillock	374
Sisteron	242	Southwark	15	Stane-henge	12	SWITZERLAND 238, 234	
Sitte Fluv.	ibid.	Southwell	29	Stony Stratford	20	& sequ.	
Sitten	347	Sourvliet	138	Stoor Fluv.	335	Swoll	171
Skalholt	423	Sow Fluv.	31	Stormar Prov.	335	Syderdorp	334
Skardin	34	Spa or Spaw	152	Stortford	21	Sylt Isle	338
Skell Fluv.	341	Spalato	279	Stour Fluv.	10, 15, 24	Sylvania	237
Skelskor	52	Spandaw	213	Straeland	215	Syn Fluv.	188
Skie Isle	391	Spanheim County 194, 195	ibid.	Stralen	170	Syracuse	299
Slaboda	215	Town	ibid.	Strasbourg	195	Szombar	396
Stage	55	Sparback Fluv.	194	Stratford	30		
Slane Fluv.	210	Sparen Fluv.	150, 163	Strath-avern	51		
Slany	278, 435	Spartivento Cape 289	295	Straubingen	201		
Slavi Pers.	335	SPAIN 303, 304 and sequ.	14	Stregnes	354		
Slawick Dutchy	170	Spena	212	Strelitz	387		
Slink Fluv.	210	La Spezza Town, 263 Gulph,	ibid.	Strelitz	443		
Slisko Dutchy	374	ibid.	245	Stretton	31		
Slonim	172	Spiaglborg Lordst.	425	Strivali Isles	424		
Sloot	374	Spina Longa	14	Striveling County	47		
Shuckz Town and Riv.	135	Spinham-lands	ibid.	Stromboli Isle	301		
Sluys or Sluce	335	Spire B. sh. 194 City	419	Stronden	346		
Sly Fluv.	159	Spirazza Fluv.	241	Strongoli	294		
Smaland Pers.	271	Splagen	292	Der Strudel Cataraft	175		
Smalcaid	355	Spolem Dutchy and City	ibid.	Strymon Town and River	413		
Smaland Territ.	355	Muni.	ibid.	Stubkoping	342		
Smalshy Dutchy	355	Spree Fluv.	217	Struche-Weisimburg	400		
Smateric	355	Sprehe Fluv.	213	Stura Fluv.	258, 259		
Smeck	355			Strurbridge	25		
Smeria	355			Sture Fluv.	26		
				Sturfall Castle	17		
				Sturgard	198		



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Tarentaise Prov.	250	Tewksbury	18	Tonnou	249	Triften	297
Tarento Town and Gulf	297	Texel Isle	164	Tonsberg	343	Tricux Fluv.	298
Tereza Fluv.	398	Teyder Fluv.	361	Toom	391	Trigno Fluv.	396
Targorod	441	Teylle Fluv.	394, 430	Topesham	9	Tristena	424
Tarkzel Fluv.	397	Thames Fluv.	2, 14, 18	Topetarken	443	Trivento	296
Tarne Fluv.	108, 112	Thanet Isle	17	Tophana	435	St. Trivier	101
Tarnest	361	Thebes	416	Toque Fluv.	68	Troja	296
Tarnopol	376	Theim	236	Torbay	9	Troki Palat. 373	ibid.
La Tarquinia	291	Theonville	143	Torcello	275	Trophette Fluv.	347, 356
Tarragona	316	Thera Isle	427	Torcester	27	Tromes Isle	347
Tarfu	295*	Therin Fluv.	85	Toderfillas	315	St. Tron	152
Tartaria Mordua	395	Thessaly Prov.	414	Torezuola	296*	Tronto Fluv.	289*
Minor	442, 443	Thetford	24, 25	Torgaw	217	S. Troppez	119
Tartaro Fluv.	276	Theu Fluv.	146	Torigny	70	Troppaw Dutchy	212
Tarters Peop.	442	Thiers	105	Torines Fluv.	314	Trofa Urbs & Fluv.	354
Tarvis	440	Thile Fluv.	236	Torne	357	Troyes	77
Tassing Isle	342	Thiot Fluv.	97	Torne-Lapmark Prov.	ibid.	Troytes	386
Tasso Isle	428	Thiva	416	Tornese Cape	421	Trugilla	319
Tavast Lake	349	Thonaw Fluv.	175, 394	Tornus	100	Trull Fluv.	141
Tavastia Prov.	358	Thonawert	202	Di Toro Isle	301	Truntheim	246
Tavasthus	359	Thone Fluv.	11	Torpajour	358	Truro	8
Tauber Fluv.	191	Thorn	371	Torre Fluv.	272	St. Truyen	152
Tavarnack	239	Thorney	22	Torreglia	262	Truyere	105
Taverno	295*	Thorda	405	Torsilia	354	Tschus Fluv.	243
Tavestock	9	Thoorosch	402	Tortona	266	Tubingen	198
Tavira Territ. 328	Town ibid.	Thouar	94	Tortonefc Territ. 265,	266	Tudela Territ. 312.	Town ibid.
Taunton	11	Thrace Prov.	433	Tortosa	315	Tuerto Fluv.	315
Taunton North	9	Thur Fluv.	235, 245	Toscanella	291	Tulle	108
Tavolato Isle		Thuringen Landgrave	217	Tornesse	9	Tuln River and Town	205
Tay Fluv.	50	Tiano	292*	Touay Fluv.	98	Tumen Urbs & Fluv.	391
Taya Fluv.	211	Tibisch Fluv.	430	Toul in Fr. 125 in Russia	389	Tuna	354
Taygetus Mount	422	Tiel	169	Toulon sur Arroux	100	Tunbridge	17
Tayn County	48	TelerWaert Territ.	ibid.	En Provence.	119	Funnacester	39
Teck Fluv.	114	Tienen	137	Toulousan Territ.	112	Turbie	250, 260
Tecklenburg	229	Tierache Dutchy	73	Toulouse	ibid.	Turbilion Fort.	242
Tees Fluv.	35	La Tierra de Campos	314	Touraine Dutchy	96	Turgow Territ.	245
Teivi Fluv.	42	Tilbury	23	Tourbie	260	TURIN	258
Tekin	441	Tille Fluv.	98	Torrinhan Cape	311	Turisk Fluv.	376
Telamone	285	Tille-chateau	143	Tournaisis Territ.	132	TURKEY in Europe	408, 409
Tele de can Isle	121	Tillen	397	Tournay	ibid.	& seq.	
Telga	354	Tilligt	228	Tours	96	Turla Fluv.	375, 376, 441
Teli-bouni Hills	417	Tilly	136	Towy Fluv.	42	Turnhout	136
Tell Castle	241	Tilmont	137	Tra los Montes Prov.	326	Turfon Territ.	109
Tellemark Gov.	345	Timerais	93	Trajanople	423	Tuscany Prov. 281, 282 & seq.	
Telsch Fluv.	440	Tina	430	Trambowl	376	Tusinas Lake	253
Temd Fluv.	32	Tindoul Cavern	108	Trani	297	Tuy	312
Temes Fluv.	399, 430	Tine Isle 280, 426	River 38	Transchin County 396	Town ib.	Twertza Fluv.	386
Temesware Prov.	430	Tingoefia Prov.	391	TRANSILVANIA	402, 403,	Tweed Fluv.	38
City	399, 430	Tingvalla	356		404	Twente Territ.	170
Tempe Valleys	415	Tingwara	358	Trapano Town 299	Mount ib.	Twer Prov. & Town	385
Tenbigh	42	Tinmouth	39	Traitevere Territ.	288	Tweta	356
Tende County 251	Town ibid.	Tinna	391	Traune Fluv.	205	Tyber Fluv.	353, 288
Tenedo Isle	428	Tioud Fluv.	249	Trave Fluv.	336	Tyra 'aw Town 369	Riv. ib.
Tenza Fluv.	293*	Tirano	241	Travo Fluv.	226	Tyrol County 207	Castle. 208
Ter Fluv.	114	Titte Isle	426	Traw	279, 428	Tysted	339
Tera Fluv.	316	Tiverton	9	Trawnfeld	246	Tzaritza	392
Ter-Goes	166	Tobol Fluv.	391	Trebefis	215	Tzas van Ghent	134
Ter-Gou	163	Tobolsca	ibid.	Trebia Fluv.	265	Tzornogar	392
Ter-Tolen	166	Tocka	399	Trebigna	429		
Ter Vere	165	Todi	292	Trebis Fluv.	56		
Tergowisch	440	Toera Fluv.	391	Treguier	89		
Termini	298	Toggemburg Territ.	242	Treiffleim Fluv.	197	V. Abres	108
Terneuse	132	Toiffey	101	Trent Dioc. and City	208	Di Vaccha Isle	301
Terni	292	Toledo Kingd. 317	City 318	River	29	Vachines Peop.	390
Ternois Fluv.	131	Tolen Isle & Town 164,	165,	Trescott	441	Vada	284
Ternova	432			Trethimirov	377, 378	De Vaert Channel	167
Terouanne	130, 131	Tolentino	166	Treves	186	Vagus Fluv.	396
Terracina	290	Tolbuys Fort	294	Trevico	293*	Vahebaro Valley	311
Terra Firma Prov.	269	Tolosa	310	Trevigiana Prov.	273	Vaisfon	120
Terra Nuova	298, 300	Tolsburg	360	Trevinno	311	Valadolid	313
Terfaick	385	Tomar	328	Trevifano Territ.	273	Valage County	78
Terfatto Mount.	293	Tomelet Spring	152	Trevifo, si,	273	Valais County	242
Terskoy Leporie	387	Tomisware	432	Trevoux	101	Valali-Potamos Fluv.	419, 422
Tesin Fluv.	234, 253	Tonderen Bail 336	Towns 337	Triadizza	432	Valbrun Bail	245
Tetfen	210	Tone Eschingen	175, 200	Tricala	415	Valdeabrea Valley	312
Tetus	392	Tongres	145	Tricario	294*	Valencay	96
Teverone Fluv.	288, 290	Tonnerre	79	Tricastin Prov.	124	Valence	124
Teutsche Peop.	175	Tonningen	337	Trier Elect. 186.	City ibid.	Valencia Prov. 317	City ib.



# An I N D E X of the Countries,

Valenciennes	140	Galcoigne 109. In Lorraine	116	Vivarais Territ.	116	W	
Valencourt	144		126	Viver Pond	160	Aug Fluv.	394, 400
Valensole	117	Verdun Fluv.	117	Vivegano	265	Waal Fluv.	126, 169
Valentinois Dutchy	124	Vergateria	391	Viviers	116	Wadebridge	8
Valeren	245	Vermandois	74	Ukermund	215	Wadischweil Bail.	235
Sr. Valeri	69	Vernon	72	Ulyain Prov.	377	Town	ibid.
Valeria Fort.	242	Verona	277	Ula Town and River in Poland		Wael Fluv.	162, 169
Valhenstadt	245	Veronecz	389	373. Town and River in Swe-		Waes County	135
Valkenberg	144	Veronese Prov.	276	den 359. Lake 349, 358		Wag	237
La Valle di Commachio	296	Verra Fluv.	189	Ulabourg	359	Wageningen	168
Di Maremorra ibid. Di Mar-		Verrua	260	Vlardingén	157	Wageren Prov.	336
rara	ibid.	Verfailles	83	Vlicland Isle	164	Wagri Peop.	ibid.
La Vallée de Liviner	237	Vervins	73	Vlissingen	155	Wakefield	34
Des Vandois	251	Verzasco Valley	237	Ulm	199	Walachia Prov.	440
Vallenberg Tower	236	Verzere Fluv.	108	Ulster Prov.	54	Walcheren Isle	164, 165
Vallerleben	214	Vese Fluv.	145	Ultzen	220	Waleet	29
Valognes	71	Vesle Fluv.	77	Uma Town and River	354	Walleurt	144
Valois Dutchy	85	Vesprin	400	Uma-Lapm-rk Prov.	358	Walcowar	406
La Valona	414	Vesprun	241	Umbriatico	295*	Waldburg Barony.	200
Valpo	405	Vesvins Mount.	253, 291*	Underwald Canton	237	Waldec County	189, 190
Valromey	102	Vexin Francois 85.		Ungh Fluv.	399	Waldenfer Peop.	113
Valteline Prov.	241	Normand.	68	Ungwar	ibid.	Waldshut County	198
Vandals Peop.	254, 304	Vezelay	97	Uana Kingd. 407. Town	231	Waicn	236
Vangen	236	Uglitz	386	Unstruck Fluv.	217, 218	WALEs	40
Vannes	91	Viana	326	Vogesus Mount.	125	Walfleet	23
Vauvres	84	Vianden	143	Voigeland Territ.	217	Walheim	136
Var Fluv.	199, 253, 252	Vianen in Holland	162	Volaterra	284	Walkowiska	374
Varam Lake	253	In Zealand	166	Volcano Isle	301	Wall	31
Vardar Fluv.	431	Vic de Bigorre	111	Voldeprado Valley	311	Wallingford	14
Varna	432	Vicenza	277	Valhina Prov.	377	Wallisserland County	241
Varo Fluv.	251	Vicenza Prov.	ibid.	Vollenhoven Territ.	171	Walls-end	39
Valentz Fluv.	294*	Vichy	105	Town	ibid.	Walpo Town and River	400
Vasilica	424	Vidaule Fluv.	112	Volo	415	Wallingham	25
Vasloye	441	Viddin	431	Volsca	291	Walstrode	220
Vatican Mount.	288	Videstein	238	Volterno Fluv.	254, 290*	Walmunehen	201
Vand Territ.	236	V I E N N A	204	Volturata	296	Walwick	31
Vandemont	125	Vienne River 58, 91. City	123	Vonne Fluv.	95	Wana Fluv.	40
Vandon Valleys	261	Viennois Territ.	123	Vontenay	125	Wangen	19
People	113, 125	St. Viet am Flaum	207	Voorn Fort.	169	Wandike	1
Vandrevange	125	Vieste	296*	Vorse Fluv.	87	Waradin Great	39
Vauge Mount. 125. Territ. ibid.		Vigevano	266	Uplandia Prov.	352	Warbeck	36
Ubeda	321	Vignoris	78	Uppingham	28	Warbel Whiripool	17
Uberlingen	200	Vigon	258	Upfal	343	Warberg	35
St. Ubes	328	Vilaine Fluv.	88	Uraniburg Castle	342, 362	Warburg	25
Ucht Fluv.	213	Villa d'Iglesias	300	Urbania	295	Warda Isle	34
Udensheim	194	Villa Manta	318	Urbino Dutchy	294	Warde	33
Udino	272	Villas Vieja	319	Town	ibid.	Wardhuys Prov. 346. Town	1
Vecht River 163, 171. Town in		Villach	206	Urdacuris Fluv.	110	Ware	2
Westphalia	228	Ville-France en Beaujolois	104	Urdhead	51	Waren	218
Verize Fluv.	104	De Conflent 114. En Guienne		Ure Fluv.	33	Warienburg	34
Vezia, lia, Isle	279, 407	108. In Savoy 251, 262		Urgel Town and Plain	316	Warlitz Fluv.	17
Veilly	86	Ville Neuve St. George	84	Uri Canton	237	Warna Fluv.	22
St. Veit	206	En Dombes	101	Urbe Territ.	310	Warneton	15
Velay	116	Vilna	373	Urnaschen	240	Warres Fluv.	15
Vetri	290	Vilvergen	245	Urnen	238	W A R S A W	31
Velino Lake and River	292	Vilvorden	136	Urzendow	368	Warsovia Prov.	374, 375
Veipe Fluv.	137	Viminale Mount.	388	Uscokes Peop.	407	Wart Fluv.	212, 213, 21
Vetemburgh	238	Vindoniffa	203	Uscopia	431	Warta Fluv.	357, 36
Veluwe Territ.	168	S. Vincent de la Varguera	311	Usedom Isle 216. Town	ibid.	Wartemburg	3
Venatro	292*	S. Vincente Cape	303	Uferche	108	Warwick County, 30. Town	
Venaisin County	120	Vincon Fluv.	106	Ushant Isle	90	Warwyck in Flanders	1
St. Venam	130	Vinimiglia	262	Usk Fluv.	40, 41	Waser-Heley	4
Venafco	316	Vire River 62. Town	70	Ufnach Bail.	245	Wash Fluv.	
Venice	119	Vicovitz	406	Ustrieza Fluv.	368	Washbourn	
Venica Mount.	207	Virton	143	Ute Fluv.	145	Wafilogorod	3
Vendemois Territ.	94	Visburg	362	Uterfen	344	Wassa	3
Vendoia Territ.	215	Vifio	327	St. Utier	136	Watchtendonk	1
Vendosme	94	Villicza	367	Utrecht Prov. 128, 129, 155,		Waterford	
Versoué	120	Vifo Mount.	261	157		Waterland	157, 1
PENICE Republ. 259, 270. &		Vifire Fluv.	112	Vuerne	133	Watling-chester	
Sept. City 273, 274, 275		Vistula Fluv. 210, 364, 367,		Vuernen	136	Watling-street-way	
Venloo	170	369		Vulfin Lake	253	Waure	1
Venofa	294*	St. Vir	143	Uxbridge	22	Waygats Straights	3
Ventoux Mount.	120	Viterbo	291	Uxero Fluv.	313	Wedstena	3
Vercelle Lordin. 260. Town ib.		Vitoria	310	Uzes	116	Weedon on the Street	
Verden Princip.	221	Vitrey	88	Vywar	396	Ween Isle	3
Verdun in Burgundy 29. In		Vitry-le-Francois	78			Weel	



# Provinces, Cities, Towns in EUROPE.

Weener Lake	349	Wick,	40	Wolga Fluv.	380, 385	Zabern	196
Weert	140	Wickel,	360	Wolgast Territ.	215	Zachonia Prov.	420
Weil	338	Wickham	20	Wollin Isle	216, 362	Zadaon Fluv.	328
Weilburg County	190	Wicklow Prov.	55	Wolmer	361	Zagrab	406
	191	Widin	431	Wolocz	385	Zagwya Fluv.	399
Weimar Dutchy	217 *	Widlec	375	Wolodimir Prov.	381, 389	Zakrotzin	375
Wein Fluv.	221	Widlim	369	Town	389	Zalland Territ.	170
Weisbaden	188	Wielicks	367	Wologda Prov.	386. City and	Zamora	314
Weisburn	400	Wien Riv.	175	River	ibid.	Zamofcie	375
Weisenaa Fluv.	360	Wieprz Lake and River	375	Wolohowa Fluv.	386	Zant Isle	280, 284, 424
Weisford	55	Wierings Isle	164	Woloska Zemla Prov.	440	City	ibid.
Weisstadt	191	Wifle Fluv.	51	Womer Fluv.	21	Zapardiel Fluv.	314
Weisman	ibid.	Wiggin	36	Woodcot	15	Zara Count	278, 428, Town ib.
Weissel Fluv.	369, 374	Wight Isle	2, 13	Woodland	30	Zarnata	422
Weissenburg	404	Wigton County in Scotland	47	Woodstock	19	Zarnaw	367
Weissenburg	196	Town in England	34	Worcester County	30	Zarwiza Fluv.	400
Wakelax	359	Wihitz	407	Worcum in Holland	192 in	Zaslav	377
Weliki Poyassa	388	Wike County	48	Frizeland	172	Zasuara	404
Welland Fluv.	27, 28	Wiken Bail.	236	Workensop	29	Zatmar	399
Wells	11	Wildungen	190	Wormer Territ.	163	Zator	367
Wels	205	Wilia Fluv.	373	Worms Bish.	194. City	Zavolhani	392
Wenden	361	Wilitz Fluv.	206	of Grifons	241	Zawichort	367
Wends Peop.	364	Wilkomirz	373	Woraton Dutchy	384	Zbaras	376
Weners Fluv.	347	Willemstade	162	Woronitz	389	Zea Isle	427
Wenysfel Territ.	339	Willifow	237	Wotton	15	Zealand, Low Countr.	128
Wenesbeck Fluv.	39	Wilna Palat.	373	Wragby	29	164, 165, 166	
Werczer-zee Lake,	361	Town and River	ibid.	Wring-cheese Stone	8	Zeben	403
Werdarh Fluv.	199	Wils Fluv.	201	Writtle	23	Zeburg	165
Werdenfels	202	Wilster Town and River	335	Wroxeter	32	Zeel County	198
Werder Isles	369	Winandermere Lake	37	Wurtemberg Dutchy	198	Zeingenheim	189
Were Fluv.	36	Winburne	10	Wurtzburg Bish.	192	Zeigran	812
Wergins Meadow	33	Winehester	13	Wustlanders	220	Zeitton	415
Werle	186	Old Winchester	39	Wychsiden Prov.	347	Zeland Isle in Denmark	340
Wermeland Prov.	355	Winda Fluv.	359	Wyck te Duersterde	167	Zell Dutchy	220
Werminster	12	Windishmarch Territ.	206	Wye Fluv.	15, 33, 40	ZEMLA NOVA	390
Wernitz Fluv.	175	Windischmatray	201	Wyke	360	Zemlin County	399
Wertheim County	193	Windsch	200	Wysk Fluv.	41	Town ibid.	
Wesdo Fluv.	144	Windfor	14			Zenete Hill	222
Wesel River	369,	Windfelden Lordsh.	245			Zeng	407
374 in Cleve	230	Windford-Eagle	10			Zerbft	218
Wesen	338	Wingi Lordsh.	245	X		Zergolt	391
Wesenburg	360	Winnicza	376	X Acca	298	Zhmia Isle	427
Wesep	163	Winoxbergen	133	Xaintes	109	Zips County	398
Weser Fluv.	175, * 217	Winschoten	173	Xarama Fluv.	318	Zirczee	166
Wellingburn	335	Winterchur Chatell.	233	Xativa Town and River	317	Zirknitz Town	207
Westeras	354	Wintshelm	193	Xenil Fluv.	322	Lake ibid.	
Westergoe Territ.	172	Winwick	36	Xeres de la Frontera	321	Znaim	211
Westerland	166	Wiper Fluv.	214	Xerte Fluv.	319	Zockzow	441
Westerrich Prov.	61	Wirchatoura	388	Xibera	298	Zolnock County	399
Wester-scheld Fluv.	126, 164	Wiria Prov.	360	Xucar Territ.	317. River	Town ib	
Wester-wick	356	Wirobitiza	406			Zons	186
Westerwold Territ.	173	Windaw	372	Y		Zoom Fluv.	139
West Frizeland Prov.	157	Wisbaden Co.	190. Town	Y, Ya, or Ye Fluv.	158	Zorge Fluv.	217*
Westmania Prov.	352	Wisby	362	Yare Fluv.	163	Zuchria	413
Westminster	22	Wischgro	375	Yarmouth in Norfolk	24	Zug Canton	238
Westmorland County	37	Wisciffa	373	in Isle Wight	13	Town ibid.	
Westphalia Circle	183, 227	Wismar	227	Yestede	355	Zurich Canton	235
228	of seque.	Wisfogda Fluv.	388, 390	Yedam	163	City ibid.	
West-velden	227	Wistock	213	Yelmer-sea	354	& 236, Lake 236	
Wetaw Fluv.	372	Witepsk Palat.	373. Town	Yenne	250	Zutphen Prov.	128, 129, 167,
Weteraw Prov.	185, 190	Witham Fluv.	28	Yene Fluv.	84, 96	168, 169. Town.	169
Wetlar	189	Wichicombe	9	Yoghall	55	Zuyder-zee	164
Wetter Lake	349	Witmund	229	Yonne Fluv.	58, 79, 98	Zweybrucken Dutchy	194
Wever Fluv.	32	Wittemburg	217	YORK County	33	Town	195
Wexio	356	Wittenstein	360	City ibid.		Zwickow	218
Whelp Castle	37	Wittham	23	Yperlee Fluv.	132, 134	Zwinga Fluv.	221
White Hill	15	Witzba Fluv.	373	Ypres	132	Zwittra Fluv.	211
Whitby	35	Witzenhausen	189	Ysfelstein	158	Zwoll	171
Whitern	51	Wizagna	403	Ysendrick	135	Zwollische-diep Bay	ibid.
Whitehall	22	Wize Fluv.	38	Ystwyth Fluv.	42	Zygeth	401
White-hart Forest	10	Wladislaw Palat.	368. Town	Yverdun	233, 236	Zype Territ.	163
White Sea	387	Woburn	20	Yvetot	69	Zytomeriez	377
Wiadha Fluv.	391	Woerden	157	Yuga Fluv.	388		
Wiadski Dutchy,	ibid.	Wolaw	212	Yvoix	143		
Wiborg	359	Wolckoniski Forest	385				
Wiburg Diocels	339	Wolfembuttel	218*	Z			
Wicia Territ.	360	Wolfsendyck Isle	154, 165, 166	Z Aaftebes	404		
				Zabache Sea	444		

Authors



# Authors Ancient and Modern cited in this W O R K.

**A** <sup>A</sup>  
<sup>C. B.</sup>  
Adam Bremenſis  
Adrichomius  
Ælian  
Æneas Sylvius  
Agathias  
Alvares (Franc.)  
Ambroſius Merſalis  
Ammianus Marcellinus  
Antoninus  
Appian  
Arabs Nationis  
Ariſtote  
Arrian  
Atheneus  
Artus S. non ſis  
Aragon (Franc.) Bi-  
ſhop of Saluzzo  
**B** <sup>B.</sup>  
<sup>Archiſa</sup>  
Barleus  
Bartholomæo de las Ca-  
ſas  
Becanus  
Beckman  
Beda  
Bernier  
Bertius  
Bochart  
Boiffard  
Brietius  
Briſtochiuſ  
Dr. Broœn  
Bruno  
Burius (Andr.)  
**C** <sup>C.</sup>  
<sup>Æſar (Julius)</sup>  
Callimachus  
Camden  
Camilhus Peregrinus  
Capella  
Cardan  
Caſſiodorus  
Caſtaldus  
Cædrenus  
Cicero  
Claverius  
Le Compté  
Compté (Rob.)  
Coprington  
C. Curtius  
**D** <sup>D.</sup>  
<sup>Amianus à Goes</sup>  
Dampier  
Daudſreit  
Della Valle

De Wit  
Didacus Siculus  
Dionyſius Afer  
Dionyſius Halicarnaſſen-  
ſis  
De Barros  
Du Mort  
**E** <sup>E.</sup>  
<sup>Gimardus</sup>  
Euphemus  
Eugebius  
Eutropius  
**F** <sup>F.</sup>  
<sup>Aroldus (Jul.)</sup>  
<sup>Fasciis (The.)</sup>  
Feſtus  
Fontana (Chr.)  
Franciſcus a Vico  
Frontinus  
Dr. Fryer  
**G** <sup>G.</sup>  
<sup>Age (T. A.)</sup>  
Garcilazo de la  
Vega  
Gaudentius Merula  
Gellius  
Giraldus  
Girard  
Gellius  
Gregorius de Arganz  
**H** <sup>H.</sup>  
<sup>Acklayt</sup>  
Hennepin  
Herberſtein  
Herbert  
Herodotus  
Herrera  
Horace  
Huertius  
**J** <sup>J.</sup>  
<sup>Joſfredus</sup>  
Fernandes  
Joſephus  
Iſidore  
Julius Capitolinus  
Juſtin  
**K** <sup>K.</sup>  
<sup>Krcher</sup>  
**L** <sup>L.</sup>  
<sup>Aſſels</sup>  
Lazius  
Leo Africanus  
Lerius  
Ludolfius  
Linſchoten  
Liſſius  
Læy

Lobus (Hier.)  
Lacan  
Lacus (F. A.)  
Lactantius  
Lagander  
Lagier (Joh.)  
**M** <sup>M.</sup>  
<sup>Ad. Mæzel</sup>  
<sup>Maffæus</sup>  
Maganus  
Magnus (Joan.)  
Malmſberry  
Marana  
Marmol  
Martianus Capella  
Martini  
Martiniere  
Mellanus  
Merſator  
Meſſenius (Joh.)  
Meurſius  
Miſſon  
Middſecroth  
**N** <sup>N.</sup>  
<sup>Ad. (Mich.)</sup>  
Niger (Domin.)  
Nun de Pena.  
**O** <sup>O.</sup>  
<sup>Laus Wormius</sup>  
Onuphrius Pan-  
vinus  
Oroſius  
Ortelius  
Ovid  
**P** <sup>P.</sup>  
<sup>Atteralius</sup>  
<sup>Epicoſ P. truck</sup>  
Paulus Diaconus  
Pajanius  
Peter de Medina  
Peter della Valle  
M. Peyrere  
Pineſius  
Plato  
Pliny  
Polybius  
Pomponius Meli  
Porphyrogenetus  
Procopius  
Ptolemy  
Purchas  
**Q** <sup>Q.</sup>  
<sup>Ueva (Alfonſ. de la)</sup>  
**R** <sup>R.</sup>  
<sup>Eginus</sup>  
Rhamuſius  
Rhenanus

Recupitus (Jul. Cæſ.)  
Reiſhiius  
Al. Robbe  
Rutilius  
Rycant (Sir Paul)  
**S** <sup>S.</sup>  
<sup>Anſon</sup>  
Sanuthus  
Saxo Grammaticus  
Scaliger  
Seneca  
Seſoſtris  
Silius Italicus  
Simlerus  
Snellius  
Solinus  
Spanhemius  
M. Spon  
Starovolcius  
Statius  
Stephanus Byzantinus  
Strabo  
Stukius  
Suetonius  
**T** <sup>T.</sup>  
<sup>Aditus</sup>  
Tavernier  
Temple (Sir Will.)  
Texeira (Pet.)  
Theopompus  
M. Theſing  
Thevenot  
Toppeltine  
Toſi (Father)  
Trogus  
**V** <sup>V.</sup>  
<sup>Arro</sup>  
Velleius Petercu-  
lus  
Venantius Fortunatus  
Venetus (Ludov.)  
Verſtegan  
Virgil  
Viſcher  
Vitruvius  
Volaterranus  
Vopuſcus  
Voſſius  
**W** <sup>W.</sup>  
<sup>Aſer</sup>  
Wuſſen  
**Z** <sup>Z.</sup>  
<sup>Onarus</sup>  
Zoſimus

INTRO-



# A N INTRODUCTION T O GEOGRAPHY.

By *Robert Falconer.*

## C H A P. I.

### *Of the W O R L D, and its Parts.*

**T**Here is nothing so powerful to make us admire and adore the Providence and wonderful Wisdom of God Almighty, to advance Wisdom and sound Morality, and to breed in us a Contempt of all those Trifles that this World calls great, and the most part of mankind set their affections on; or to comfort as well those who would have all things to have been without a Beginning, as those who would have them formed by a fortuitous Concurrence of Atoms, than a Serious and manly consideration of the glorious Fabrick of the Universe, whereof the little Speck upon which we live makes so inconsiderable a part. For if we shall but consider the vast number and variety of the Heavenly Bodies (a great part of whom are hid from our sight, even when that is assisted by the best Glasses that have been, or perhaps can be invented) their Proportion and Symmetry, and the wonderful order that is observed in their several Motions, we must irresistibly confess an Infinite Power and Wisdom in the Making and Preservation of them.

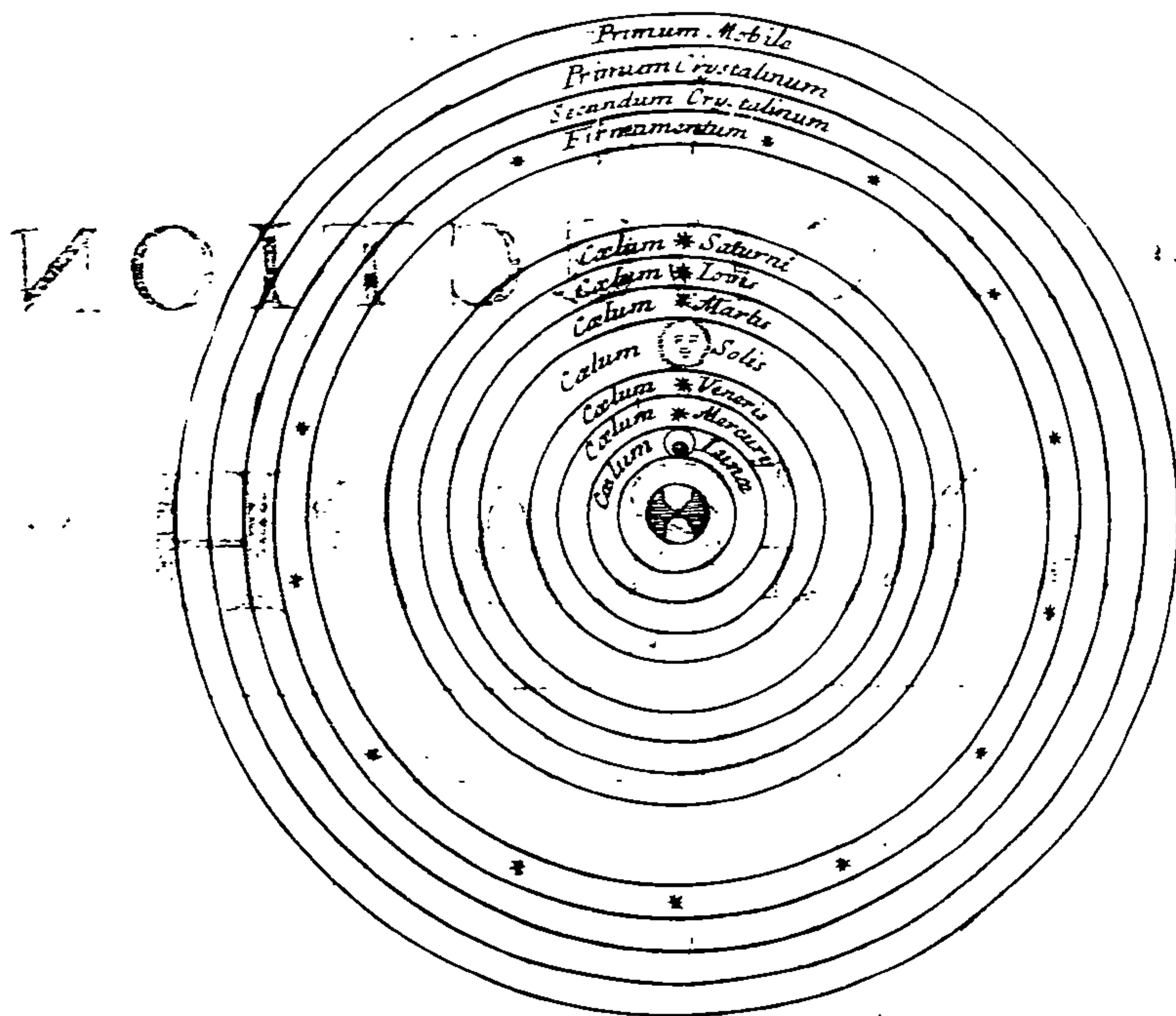
In vain do Men employ their Time and Thought in searching into the beginning of these things, and the Methods of the Almighty Creator in making of them. How poor and trifling are the Grounds up-

on which they found the Production of the World, and the Formation of this Earth upon which we are placed? These things being removed beyond the Reach of Human Knowledge or even Conjecture, and such as the Divine Wisdom has not thought fit to reveal to Mankind. Yet such has been the Boldness and Curiosity of some Men, that they have officiously pryed into those things which Providence seemed willing to conceal: And as if really they had found out the Secret, have had the Vanity to impose their Discoveries upon the World. 'Tis not to be expected, nor would it be proper at this time, to give the Reader an Account of all the several Schemes and Hypotheses that have been advanced, of the Universe in general, or of the several Theories and Histories of our Earth in particular: And therefore we shall only hint a little at the most considerable of 'em.

*Ptolemy* was of Opinion, that the Earth was placed in the Center of the Universe, and that it stood fixt there, whilst the Sun, Moon, and Stars made their Tour round it every day, each in their several Orbits, and different distances from it: He placed the Moon nearest it; next to the Moon *Mercury*; then *Venus*, after her the *Sun*, beyond him *Mars*, then *Jupiter*, and lastly *Saturn*, and beyond him, the fixt Stars, as you may see in the following Scheme.



## SYSTEMA PTOLOMÆI



This Situation of the World was universally received and approved of till about 200 years ago, that *Copernicus* disliking the System, by reason of ~~that~~ rapid motion which it supposed in the Planets, and much more in the fixt Stars; which at this rate must have moved many Millions of Miles in an hour: And besides, it did not seem to agree exactly with several Observations that he had made of the Course of the Heavenly Bodies: Wherefore he set himself to find out another Scheme, which might better satisfy and explain the several Appearances of these, and remove the difficulty concerning that rapid motion. He placed the *Sun* in the Center of the World, and made the *Earth*, as well as the other Planets, perform their Courses about

him. Next to the *Sun* he placed *Mercury*, and next to him *Venus*. The *Earth*, together with the Moon (for according to him, the Moon, which finishes its Course round the *Earth* in 27 days and 7 hours, is carried along with it round the *Sun*) he removed into that Heaven where *Ptolemy* had placed the *Sun*. Next to the *Earth* he set *Mars*, beyond him *Jupiter* with his four Secondaries, which attend and go round him as the *Moon* does the *Earth*. Next *Saturn*, with his five Satellites: And beyond all these the fixt Stars. All which you may see in the following Figure, where the Orbs the Planets move in are described in that order that they are placed round the *Sun*, drawn as near as can be in their true Proportions.



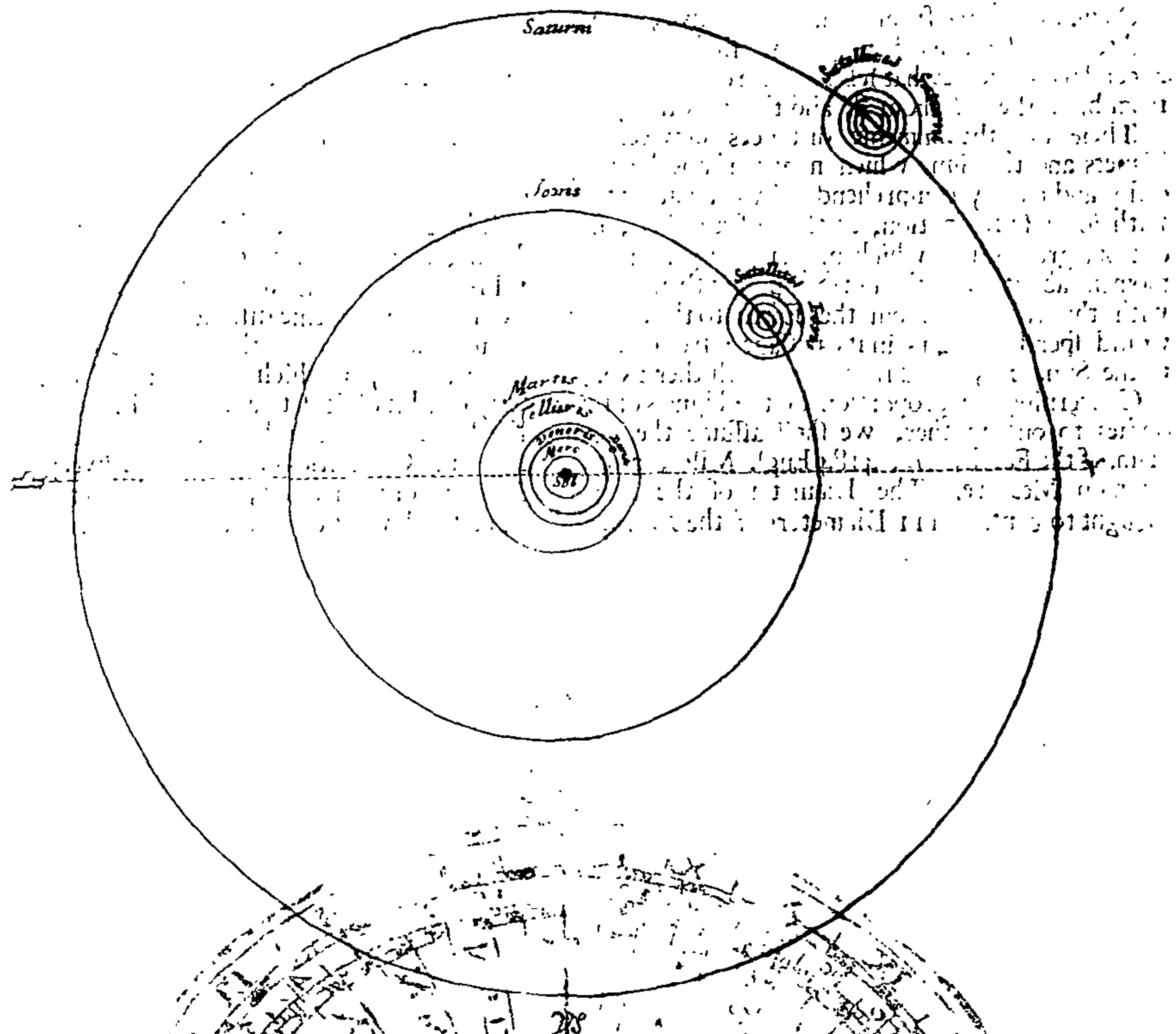
# An Introduction to Geography.

## SYSTEMA COPERNICI.

p. 12

Fig. 1

69



This Hypothesis, by reason it explains and demonstrates several Appearances which the other could not, and, particularly removes the difficulty concerning that Rapid Motion which Saturn and the fixt Stars must have had, upon the former supposition, has gain'd much Reputation in the World. Des Cartes in his Philosophy, hath endeavour'd to illustrate, how these motions which Copernicus ascribes to the Earth and the Planets are performed. He supposes that the Sun is placed in the middle of the World, and surrounded with a vast space of Æther, extending many Millions of Miles; in which the several Planets float, at unequal distances from the Sun; which is observed to turn round its own Axis in the space of 27½ days; that it hath also a rapid Circular Motion from West to East about the Sun; by which the Planets are not only carried about in their periodical Courses, but are likewise turned round upon their own Axis from West to East, as they go along; just like a Stone roll'd down the Stream of a River, causes the Water to run some space round it to run in a Circle. And as the General Motion of the Æther about the Sun, from West to East, carrieth the Planets along the same way, so likewise the Circular Motion of the Æther round about every Planet, turns it round upon its own Axis also. In this Æthereal Matter the Planets float, and are carried round by its Motion, and the thing that keeps them in their own Orbs is, that they themselves, and the matter in which they swim, equally strive to fly out from the Center of

their Motion, or that the force of their Circular Motion is exactly equal to their Gravitation towards the Sun: And as the Primary Planets gravitate towards the Sun, so do the Secondary towards the Planets round which they move. But we will not insist longer on this Subject, lest it should be thought foreign to an Introduction to Geography, especially by those who know nothing of Astronomy; but only give the Reader a short account of the Periods of the Revolutions of the Planets, their Distances from the Sun, and the Proportion of their Bigness to one another. First, As to their Revolutions, Saturn (according to Copernicus) moves round the Sun in 29 years, 174 days, and 5 hours; Jupiter finishes his Course in 11 years, 317 days, and 15 hours; Mars his, in about 687 days; the Earth in 365 days, and 6 hours or thereabouts; Venus in 224 days, and 18 hours; and Mercury in 88 days.

Concerning the distances of the Planets from the Sun, we shall only subjoin a Table, where they are express'd in such parts; as the distance between the Sun and the Earth may contain 100000 of them; which distance is thought to be 1550 Semidiameters of the Earth, or 6485200 Engl. Miles.

The distance of the Sun from	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Saturn,} \\ \text{Jupiter,} \\ \text{Mars,} \\ \text{Earth,} \\ \text{Venus,} \\ \text{Mercury,} \end{array} \right\}$	is	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 951000 \\ 519650 \\ 152350 \\ 100000 \\ 72400 \\ 38806 \end{array} \right\}$	of these parts.

The



## An Introduction to Geography.

The distance of the *Moon* from the *Earth* is 56 Semidiam. of the *Earth*, or 234304 Engl. Miles. The Secondary of *Jupiter* that is next him is distant 3 Diam. of *Jupiter* from him, the 2<sup>d</sup> five, the 3<sup>d</sup> eight, and the utmost 14. The first of *Saturn's* Secondaries is somewhat less than three of his Diam. from him, the 2<sup>d</sup> about 8, and the utmost 24.

These are the immense distances between the Planets and the Sun, which may perhaps be more easily and clearly comprehended by comparing them with some swift motion, as that of a Bullet, shot out of a great Gun, which may travel perhaps in a moment about 100 fathoms: Supposing then it move with this swiftness from the *Earth* to the *Sun*, it would spend 25 years in its passage; from *Jupiter* to the *Sun*, 125; and from *Saturn* thither 250.

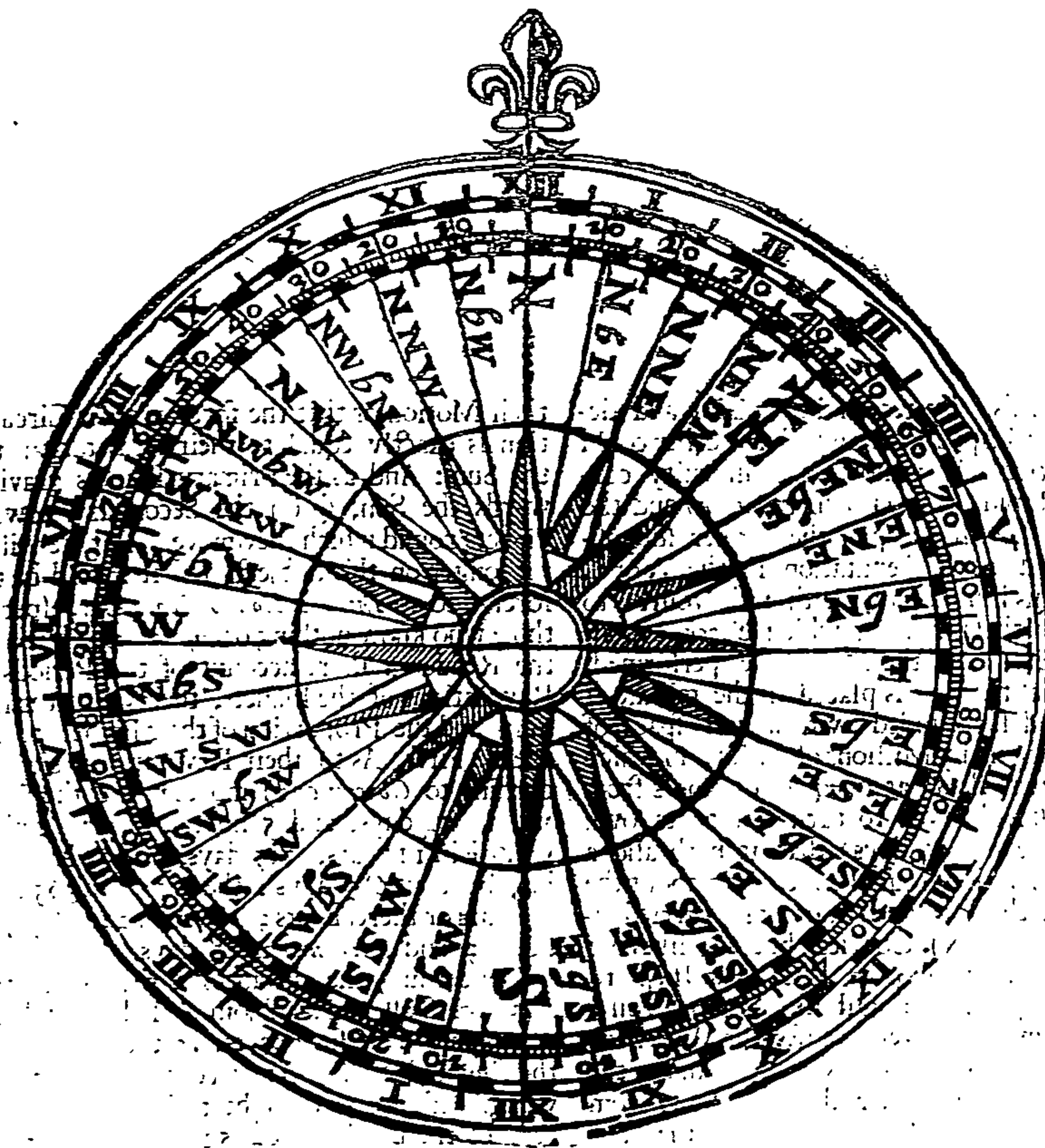
Concerning the proportion of the bigness of these Bodies to one another, we shall assume the Semidiam. of the *Earth*, viz. 4184 Engl. Miles, as their common Measure. The Diameter of the *Sun* is thought to contain 111 Diameters of the *Earth*, and

the proportion between it and the Diameters of the other Planets are as you see in this Table.

The Diameter of the Sun is to Diam. of	{	as	{	is to	{

The Diam. of the *Earth* is to the Diam. of the *Moon*, as 7 to 2, very near.

From the Consideration of the Revolutions of these Bodies, their immense distances, & prodigious bigness, we may see, how vast they must be in respect of this little Spot upon which we live: and yet, as little as 'tis, one bit of it sets ambitious Princes together by the Ears, involves whole Kingdoms in all the Miseries and Calamities of War, and sweeps off whole Millions of poor Souls, before they can so much as once think what or where they shall be afterwards.





## C H A P. II.

*Of the Sphere and its Circles, &c.*

THE Sphere is a round and moveable Instrument, made up of divers Circles, which the Astronomers have invented for the more easily conceiving the motions of the Heavens, and representing the true Situation of the Earth. It consists of several different parts, *viz.* an Axis, Points and Circles. The Axis is a straight line, that crosses the Globe diametrically, and may, not improperly be denot'd, a Diameter, about which the Sphere moves. The points may be divided into *Cardinal, Collateral, and Rectical*. The *North*, or the *Arctic Pole*, the *South*, or the *Antarctic*, the *East* and the *West*, are the 4 *Cardinal Points*. The *South East*, the *North East*, the *South West*, and the *North West* are the *Collateral*. And the *Zenith* and *Nadir* are the *Vertical*: The former being that point in the Heavens which is directly over our heads, and the other that which is diametrically opposite to it. The Circles are the *Æquator*, the *Zodiac*, the *Colure* of the *Solstices*, the *Colure* of the *Equinoxes*, the *Meridian*, the *Horizon*, the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and the two *Polar Circles*. The first six are call'd great Circles, because their Center is the same with that of the Sphere. The *Æquator* divides the Terrestrial Globe into two equal parts, and is also so call'd because it serves to measure all the rest: And it is call'd the *Tropick*, because when the Sun is under this Circle, the days and nights are equally long over all the World; which comes to pass twice in the year, *viz.* the 10th of *March*, and the 12th of *September*, according to the Old Style.

The *Zodiac* has its name from the Greek word *Zoon*, which signifies a *Living Creature*, because it is adorned with 12 Asterisms, or Images, resembling Living Creatures, whose names are these, and commonly marked thus,

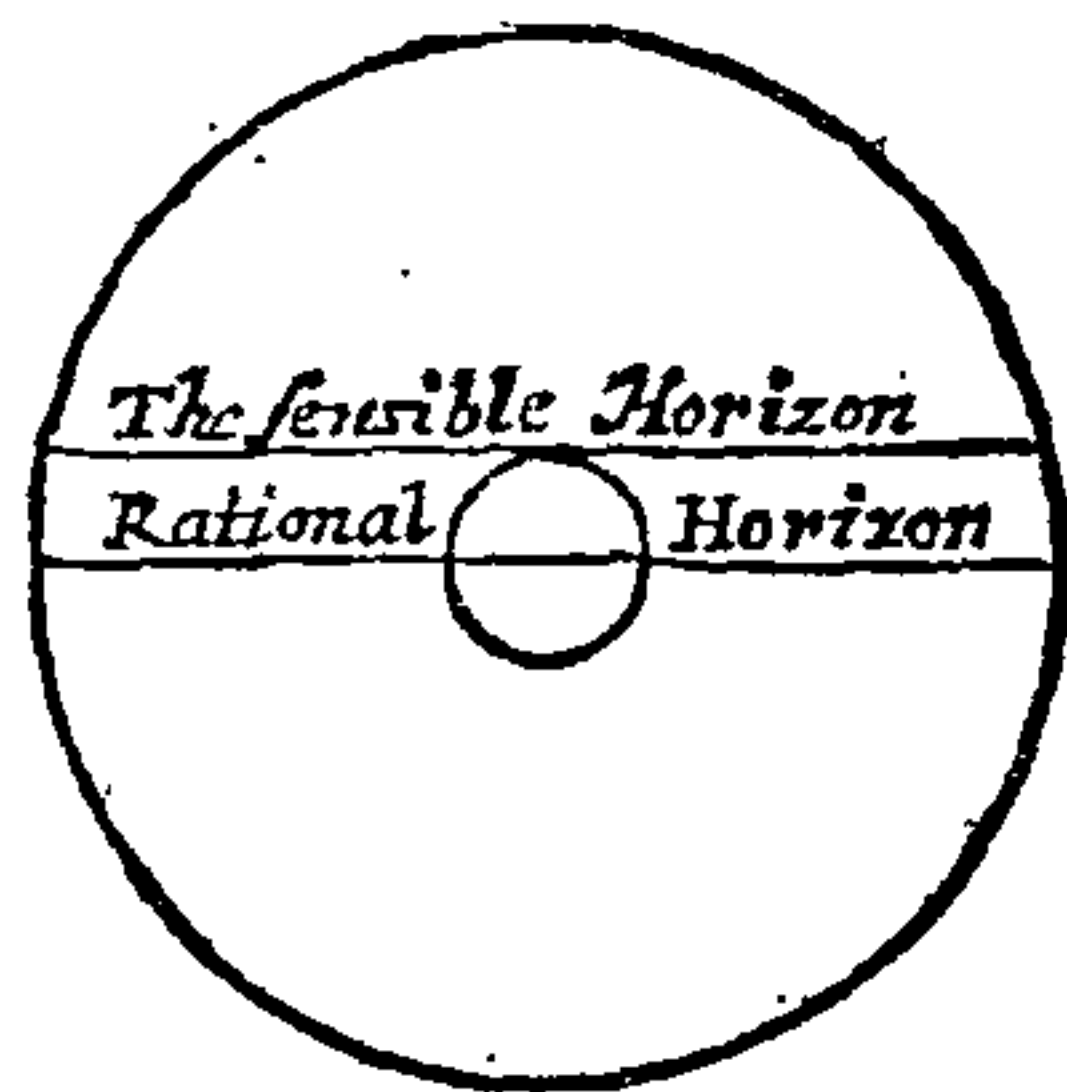
♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎
<i>Aries</i>	<i>Taurus</i>	<i>Gemini</i>	<i>Cancer</i>	<i>Leo</i>	<i>Virgo</i>	<i>Libra</i>
♏	♐	♑	♒	♓	♈	♉
<i>Scorpio</i>	<i>Sagittarius</i>	<i>Capricornus</i>	<i>Aquarius</i>	<i>Pisces</i>		

The *Sun* seems to go about this Circle once every year, and the *Moon* once in a Month. The line in the Middle of the *Zodiac* is called the *Ecliptick*, from the Greek word *Eclipse*, which signifies to *lack* or *want*, because under this line it is that the Eclipses of the Sun and Moon happen. The Sun never swerves from the *Ecliptick*, but the Moon and the rest of the Planets wander up and down for the space of 8 Degrees, and sometimes more on both sides; upon which account, the breadth of the *Zodiac* is supposed to consist of about 16 Degrees. This Circle is oblique, and its obliquity is the cause of the Changes of the Seasons, occasioned by the Approach or Withdrawing of the Sun. The *Ecliptick*, as well as the *Æquator*, is call'd *Immutable*, because they are the same to all the Inhabitants of the Earth.

The *Colures* divide the four Seasons of the year; for the *Colure* of the *Solstices*, passing through the Poles of the World, and the first Degree of *Cancer* and *Capricorn* makes the Summer and Winter. The *Colure* of the *Equinoxes*, cutting the beginning of *Aries* and *Libra*, make the Spring and Harvest.

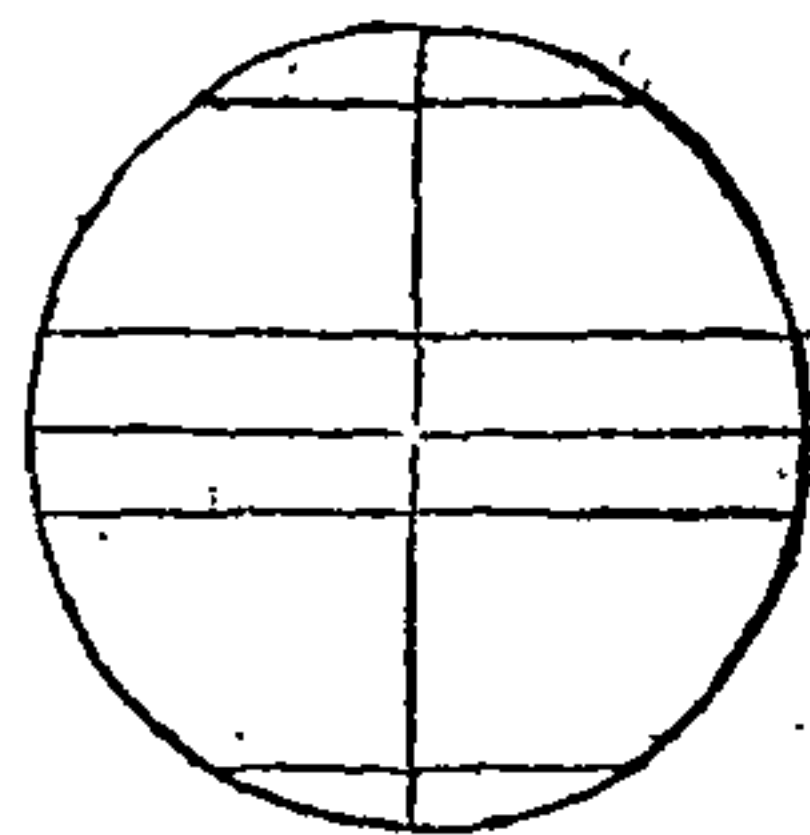
The *Meridian* passes through the Poles of the World, and the *Zenith* of every place, and therefore call'd the *Verticalure*, which is always the same when we go from South to North; but changes as we pass from East to West. It is call'd the *Meridian*, because when the Sun comes to it in his daily Course, he makes it Noon to those that are under it.

The *Horizon*, has its name from the Greek word *Orizo*, which signifies to terminate or bound: And it may be divided into *Rational* and *Sensible*, as you may see in this Figure. The former divides the Hemisphere in which we live from the other which is under us and hid from us: and the *Sensible* is that great Circle which one being placed in a Plain, or in the midst of the Sea, determines with his Sight round about, by which the Heavens



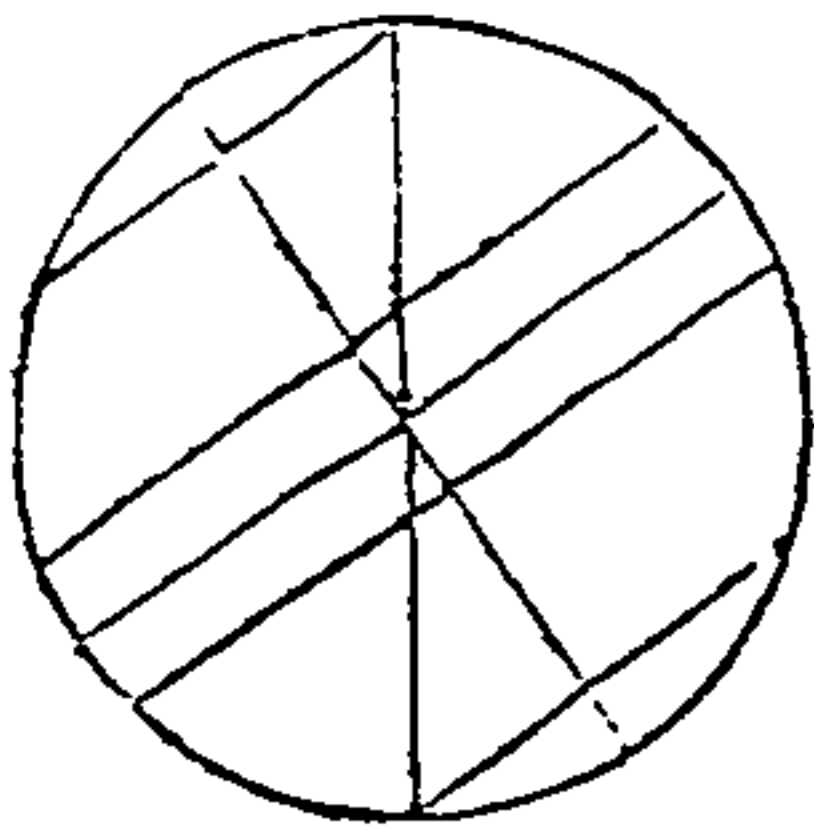
and Earth seem to be joyned, as it were, with a kind of Closure: And therefore the *Sensible Horizon* must change as oft as the Beholder shifts from one place to another; and therefore it, as well as the *Meridian*, is call'd *Mutable*.

There are three sorts of Rational Horizons, *viz.* The Right, the Oblique, and the Parallel: And from thence come the three different positions of the Sphere, *viz.* The Right, Oblique, and Parallel. The Right Sphere is when it is in such a Position that the *Æquator* and all its parallels, such as the Tropicks and Polar Circles, stand on the Horizon at Right Angles, and are cut by it into two equal parts, as you may see in this Figure. Whence it must needs be that, no Stars lie hid under the Horizon, but they all Rise and Set in order within the space of 24 hours: as also that they spend equal time in moving above the Horizon and below it; and on that account a perpetual *Æquinox* continues in this place.



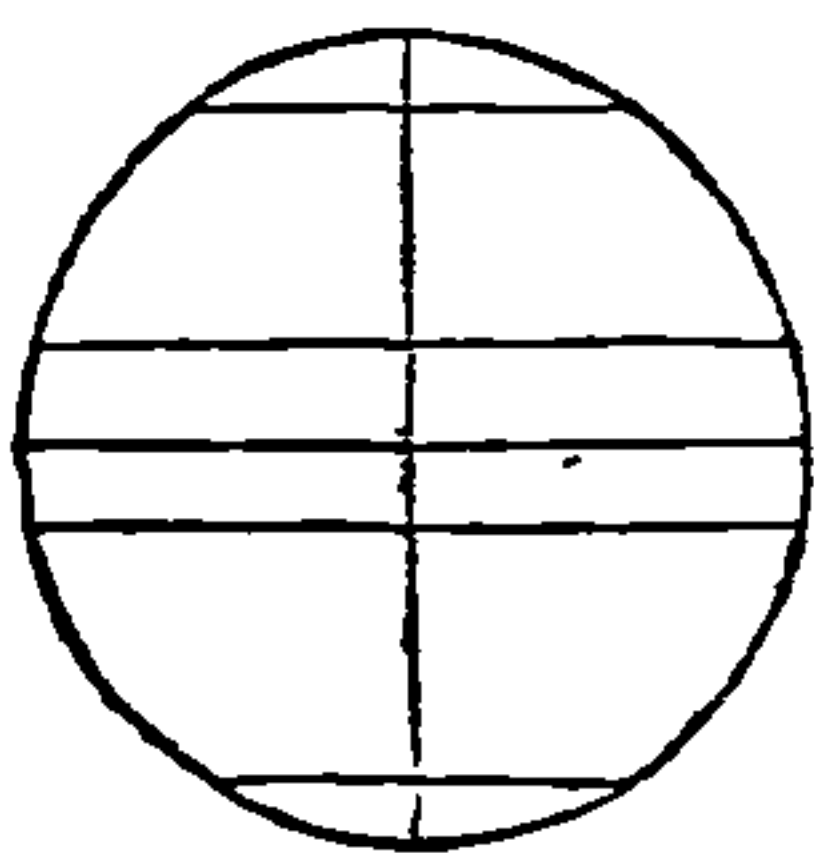


The Oblique Sphere is such a Situation of the World, as the Axis of it (being neither right nor parallel to the Horizon, but inclines obliquely to one of the sides of the Horizon as in this Figure. And in this case, when the Axis neither lies on the



Horizon nor cuts it at right Angles, as much as one of the Poles is raised above the Horizon, so much the other is depressed below it: and the Sun and Stars ascend and descend obliquely, and some of them never ascend at all. And here it will not be amiss to take notice of the difference of the four Seasons of the year. For from the Vernal Equinox to the Summer Solstice, the days are longer than the Nights, and they continually increase. From the Summer Solstice to the Autumnal Equinox, the days exceed the nights, but still decrease. From the Autumnal Equinox to the Winter Solstice, the days decrease and the nights grow longer. Lastly from the Winter Solstice to the Vernal Equinox, the days, tho they be shorter than the nights, are still encreasing. The Twilights also, by reason of the oblique descent of the Sun, last much longer than they do in a Right Sphere: inasmuch that in some of the most northern Countries, during the Summer Season, they continue for whole nights; where one may read at Midnight by the light of the Sun, without a Candle; because the Sun glides slowly, and descends not so far under the Horizon as elsewhere.

The Parallel Sphere is when one of the Poles is elevated so far as to fall in with the *Zenith*, or Vertical point; whilst the other is depressed as far as the *Nadir*: and the Equator coincides with the *Horizon*: And all the parallels of the Equator are also parallel to the Horizon, as you may see in this Figure. And in this Case, all the Stars in their Course, neither ascend above the Horizon, nor descend below it, but move in a road parallel to it. As the *Zenith* is that point of the Heavens which is directly above our heads, and *Nadir* that which is directly opposite to it, so its Secondary Circles, which pass through every *Zenith* and cut every point of the *Horizon* are called *Azimuth*, as the Circles parallel to the Horizon are called *Almicantarath*.



The *Tropicks* are two Circles parallel to the Equator, and equally distant from it: One of them passing through the beginning of *Cancer* towards the North, the other through the beginning of *Capricorn* towards the South: and as far removed from the Equator on either side as the Ecliptick is, viz. 23 Deg. 31 Min. The former is call'd the *Tropick of Cancer*, the other the *Tropick of Capricorn*, and are called *Tropicks*, from the Greek word *Trepo*, which signifies *Conversion* or *turning back*, because

after the Sun has arrived at either of them, he goes no farther towards either of the Poles, but returns towards the Equator. His arrival at the former, which is on the 11 of *June*, makes our longest day: And at the other which is on the 12 of *December*, our shortest day and longest night.

The Polar Circles, are parallel to the Equator: And as far distant from the Poles of the World, as the Tropicks are from it. One of them is call'd the *Arctick Polar Circle*, from the Greek word *Arctos* a *Bear*, the name of that Northern Constellation, and passes through *Iceland*, *Norway*, *Lapland*, the *White Sea*, and *Greenland*; the other, the *Antarctick*, because it is opposite to it, near the South Pole, and passes through *Magellanica*.

Besides these Circles which we have already spoke of, there are two other sorts belonging to the Sphere, viz. the *Meridians* and the *Parallels*. The *Meridians* serve to mark out the Longitude of places, (as the *Parallels* their Latitude) and are therefore call'd the Circles of Longitude. The Longitude of a Place is the distance between it and the first Meridian. The Latitude of a Place is the distance of it from the Equator, either towards the North or South Pole: and therefore there are two Latitudes, tho but one Longitude; which goes on continually for the space of 360 degrees; whereas the Latitude does not exceed 90, viz. between the Equator and either of the Poles.

Latitude and Longitude are Terms that ought to be particularly understood, because they occur in all Geographical Discourses, and are absolutely necessary to the understanding this Science: Latitude is the distance of any Place, either North or South from the Equinoctial Line, and is mark'd in all Maps on the East and West part, that is the two sides (for Maps ought always to have the North at top.) Longitude shews the distance of one Place from another Eastward, which is mark'd at top and bottom of the Maps, being deduc'd from some certain Meridian, or Line describ'd from the North to the South Pole. We call that our Meridian where the Sun is with us at Noon-day, so there are many Meridians; but for the better shewing the situation of Places, one certain Meridian is or ought to be made use of in all Maps, which is called the great or first, and from it the Longitude is counted round the Globe, to the number of 360 Degrees. This Meridian by *Ptolemy* and the Ancients was plac'd at the Peak of *Teneriffe*, one of the *Canary Islands*: but in the year 1634 the French Geographers, for more exactness, began to remove it to the West Shore of the Island *Ferri* or *Isla del Hierra*, one of the same *Canary Islands*, but seated two degrees and Half more Westward: This they did, because that Island is the most Westward part of *Europe*, and all our Hemisphere. On this account the Maps, tho right, do sometimes differ in Longitude: some following the New and some the Old: In the following Work we have endeavour'd to keep to the old, and deduce the Longitude from *Teneriffe* except in some of the Maps that are taken from the French, for the sake of the Corrections that Nation has made to the Geography of *Asia* and *Africa*.

Latitude and Longitude is express'd by Degree and Minutes; a Degree is the 360th part of the Earth's Circumference and a Minute is the 60th part of a Degree. In the third Chapter of this



# An Introduction to Geography.

7

Introduction is shewn the measure of a Degree, by which it appears that a Minute is something more than an English Mile; but the Reader is to be advised that the Miles we mention in this following Geography, are those whereof 60 make a Degree.

Degrees of Latitude are of the same Breadth quite round the Globe, being drawn Parallel from the Equator to the Pole; whereas those of Longitude, tho they be of the same breadth at the Equator as is a Degree of Latitude, yet because they all meet in a Point at each Pole (like the Sections

or Cloves of an Orange, for Example) must necessarily grow narrower as they approach the Poles; wherefore tho two Places one Degree distant from each other North and South, must always be reckoned 60 miles asunder, yet two places a Degree distant East and West may be but 50, 40, or 30 miles from each other, accordingly as it is seated in Latitude. This may be easily discover'd by measuring with the Compasses on the Map; however for the Readers Ease we have drawn a Table of the breadth of Degrees of Longitude in every Latitude.

Latitude.	Miles.	Minutes.
Equator.	60	00
Parallel.		
1	59	56
2	59	54
3	59	52
4	59	50
5	59	46
6	59	40
7	59	37
8	59	24
9	59	10
10	59	00
11	58	52
12	58	40
13	58	28
14	58	12
15	58	00
16	57	40
17	57	20
18	57	4
19	56	44
20	56	24
21	56	00
22	55	36
23	55	12
24	54	48
25	54	24
26	54	00
27	53	28
28	53	00
29	52	28
30	51	56
31	51	24
32	50	52
33	50	20
34	49	44
35	49	8
36	48	32
37	47	56
38	47	16
39	46	36
40	46	00
41	45	16
42	44	36
43	43	52
44	43	8
45	42	24

Latitude.	Miles.	Minutes.
46	41	40
47	41	00
48	40	8
49	39	20
50	38	32
51	37	44
52	37	00
53	36	08
54	35	26
55	34	24
56	33	32
57	32	40
58	31	48
59	31	00
60	30	00
61	29	04
62	28	08
63	27	12
64	26	16
65	25	20
66	24	24
67	23	28
68	22	32
69	21	32
70	20	32
71	19	32
72	18	32
73	17	32
74	16	32
75	15	32
76	14	32
77	13	32
78	12	32
79	11	28
80	10	24
81	9	20
82	8	20
83	7	20
84	6	12
85	5	12
86	4	12
87	3	12
88	2	4
89	1	4
90	0	0

Having briefly treated of the Circles and Points of the Sphere, we come in the next place to speak of the Zones, Climates, and the Inhabitants of the Earth, as they are distinguished according to their different Shadows and Situations.

## Of the Zones.

The Ancient Geographers divided the Terrestrial Globe into Zones, Climates, and Parallels. For as the Heavens are divided into five parts, by the four

lesser Circles, viz. the Tropick of Cancer, the Tropick of Capricorn, the Arctick Circle, and the Antarctick, so they divided the Earth by these Circles, which lie under those of the Heavens, and exactly answer to them, into five Zones. Zones, in this Case, are no other than Spaces or Parts of the Earth, which have different names given them according to the different temper of the Air which one breaths in them; and there are five of them, viz. one Torrid, two Temperate, whereof one is towards the North, the other towards the South: and two Frigid, in the like Position, i. e. one towards







A Table of Climates.

Climates.	Parallels.	The longest Day.		The Elevation of the Pole.		The breadth of the Climate.	
		Hours.	Min.	Deg.	Min.	Deg.	Min.
The First Climate.	Its beginning.	12	00	00	00		
	Its middle.	12	15	4	14		
	The end of the first, or the beginning of the second.	12	30	8	25	8	25
The Second.	The Middle.	12	45	12	15		
	The End.	13	00	16	25	8	2
The Third.	The Middle.	13	15	20	15		
	The End.	13	30	23	50	7	25
The Fourth.	The Middle.	13	45	27	40		
	The End.	14	00	30	20	6	30
The Fifth.	The Middle.	14	15	33	40		
	The End.	14	30	36	28	6	8
The Sixth.	The Middle.	14	45	39	2		
	The End.	15	00	41	22	4	54
The Seventh.	The Middle.	15	15	43	32		
	The End.	15	30	45	29	4	7
The Eighth.	The Middle.	15	45	47	20		
	The End.	16	00	49	01	3	32
The Ninth.	The Middle.	16	15	50	33		
	The End.	16	30	51	58	2	57
The Tenth.	The Middle.	16	45	53	17		
	The End.	17	00	54	27	2	29
The Eleventh.	The Middle.	17	15	55	34		
	The End.	17	30	56	37	2	10
The Twelfth.	The Middle.	17	45	57	32		
	The End.	18	00	58	29	1	52
The Thirteenth.	The Middle.	18	15	59	14		
	The End.	18	30	59	58	1	29
The Fourteenth.	The Middle.	18	45	60	40		
	The End.	19	00	61	18	1	20
The Fifteenth.	The Middle.	19	15	61	55		
	The End.	19	30	62	25	1	07
The Sixteenth.	The Middle.	19	45	62	54		
	The End.	20	00	63	22		57
The Seventeenth.	The Middle.	20	15	63	40		
	The End.	20	30	64	6		44
The Eighteenth.	The Middle.	20	45	64	30		
	The End.	21	00	64	49		43
The Nineteenth.	The Middle.	21	15	65	06		
	The End.	21	30	65	21		32
The Twentieth.	The Middle.	21	45	65	35		
	The End.	22	00	65	47		26
The Twenty First.	The Middle.	22	15	65	57		
	The End.	22	30	66	06		19
The Twenty Second.	The Middle.	22	45	66	14		
	The End.	23	00	66	25		14
The Twenty Third.	The Middle.	23	15	66	25		
	The End.	23	30	66	28		8
The Twenty Fourth.	The Middle.	23	45	66	30		
	The End.	24	00	66	31		2

Climates of the Frigid Zone, where the longest Day increaseth by Months.

Months.	1	2	3	4	5	6
Latitude of the Places, or Parallels.	Deg. Min. 67 30	Deg. Min. 69 30	Deg. Min. 73 20	Deg. Min. 78 20	Deg. 84	Deg. 90



The use of this Table is, 1. the Elevation of the Pole or Latitude of any place being given, to find the length of the longest day of that place, and the Climate where it lies. For doing this, you must look in the Table for the given Elevation of the Pole, and over-against it you shall find the length of the longest Day of that place, and its Climate and Parallel. If you don't find in the Table the very same Elevation of the Pole that was given, you must take those two of the Table which are nearest to it, one of which exceeds it, and the other is less than it: And accordingly as it approaches to the greater or lesser, the longest day of the Place comes nearer to that which is over-against the one or the other of these Elevations of the Pole. 2. The length of the longest Day of any place being given, the Latitude of that place, its Climate and Parallel may be found in the Table, by looking first for the length of the longest day, and the Latitude or Elevation of the Pole is over-against it: But if the length of the longest day cannot be had precisely in the Table, we must take the two that are next greater and less than it, in the Column of the longest Day, and as the Day that was given approaches to the one or the other, so does the Latitude or Elevation of the Pole that belongs to it, come nigher to that of the one or the other of these two longest Days.

#### *Of the Different Shadows.*

The Ancient Geographers divided the Inhabitants of the Earth according to the different Shadows which their Bodies did cast when the Sun was in its Meridian height with them, into *Amphiscii*, *Heteroscii*, and *Periscii*. The *Amphiscii* were those whose Shadows, at different times of the year; fell sometimes towards the South, and sometimes towards the North, according as the Sun removed from their Zenith, towards the North or South Pole, who consequently must be the Inhabitants of the Torrid Zone; for when the Sun is directly over their Head, which comes to pass twice a year, Bodies that stand perpendicularly make no shadow at all; but when the Sun leaves their Zenith and advances towards either of the Tropicks, the shadow falls towards one of the Poles, viz. towards the Arctick when the Sun is in the North Signs, and towards the Antarctic when he is in the South Signs. The *Heteroscii* were

those whose shadows, at Noon, always fall to one side, towards one of the Poles, viz. that which is above their Horizon: And these must be the Inhabitants of the Temperate Zones. The *Periscii* were those whose Shadows turned round in the space of 24 hours; and these must be the Inhabitants of the Frigid Zones; because the Sun for many days being above their Horizon without ever setting, the Shadow must turn as the Sun does.

#### *Of the different Situations.*

The Ancients did likewise, according to the different and opposite Habitations of People, divide the Inhabitants of the Earth into *Periæci*, *Antæci*, and *Antipodes*. The *Periæci* were those who live under the same Parallel, but opposite Meridians, and consequently must live in the same Zone, and the same Climate, and have the same Elevation of the Pole, the same length of Days, and Summer, Autumn, Winter, and Spring at the same time; but when 'tis Noon with one, 'tis Midnight with t'other. The *Antæci* are those who live under the same Meridian, but opposite Parallels. These live in the same Zone, the same Climate, have the same Elevation of the Pole, but different Poles, and have Noon at the very same time; but have different Seasons, it being Winter with the one whilst it is Summer with the other; according as the Sun, in his annual Course, advanceth towards either of the Tropicks. The *Antipodes* are those who live under both opposite Meridians, and opposite Parallels, are distant from one another the whole length of the Earth's Diameter, and go with their feet diametrically opposite to one another: and therefore have their Summer and Winter, their Noon and Midnight, add, if you please, the Rising and Setting of all the Stars directly contrary to one another.

Some of the Ancients could not imagine how there could be such a thing as Antipodes, or People situated diametrically opposite to one another on the Earth: And *Lactantius* and *S. Austin* gave themselves the trouble to write against the Antipodes: and *Vigilius*, Bishop of Strasburg, was excommunicated and deposed by Pope *Zachary* for being a Patron of this Opinion; the truth of which is now, by experience found to be undeniable.

## C H A P. III.

### *Concerning the Earth, its Figure, Dimensions, &c. also of Measures.*

THE Opinions of the Ancients concerning the Figure of the Earth was very doubtful and different. Some held it to be like a large hollow Vessel, and others that it was an immense Plain, supported by Pillars like a Square Table: And the latter Opinion was stilly maintained by

some of the Fathers, particularly by *Lactantius*, Book 3. Chap. 24. But the better sort of Philosophers, and all the Mathematicians have constantly maintain'd that its Figure is Globular; which we shall endeavour to illustrate by several plain and undeniable Reasons.



1. I say that the figure of the Earth is Globular does plainly appear from the Eclipses of the Moon; for these being always round, that Body which intercepts the beams of the Sun, and is the Cause of them, must necessarily be of a Spherical figure. If it were triangular, the figure in the Eclipse would be so also; if it were Square or Cubical the shadow must have four sides; if it were a Hexagon, or a figure of six sides, the Eclipse must be so likewise; and so of any figure; and therefore the figure of our Earth must be only Globular.

2. The nearer one approaches to either of the Poles, the Stars nearest to these are the more elevated from the Horizon towards his Zenith: and the farther one moves from the Poles, these Stars seem to withdraw from him, till at last they quite disappear. Just so, the Stars rise and set, sooner to one that is travelling toward the East than toward the West; or which is the same, the days are longer to him that travels towards the West, than to one that travels towards the East; insomuch that if one should spend a whole year in marching round the Earth, towards the West, he should lose a whole day during his Journey: As he that march'd towards the East in the same time should gain one: Which could not possibly happen if the surface of the Earth were a Plain. For if it were so, the Sun and Stars would rise and set alike to all the Inhabitants of the Earth; the contrary of which every body may easily observe. But when we speak of the Globular figure of the Earth, we do not mean that it is exactly and Geometrically so, because the Hills and Mountains make some sort of inequality on its surface: and the Sea and Rivers are a little lower than their Shoars and Banks; but these inequalities are so inconsiderable in respect of the Bulk of the Earth, that they cannot be said to spoil its Globular Figure, no more than the seams and little bruises that are on a handball, otherwise perfectly round, may be said to make it another thing than a Ball.

Concerning the Dimensions of the Earth, there are three things to be considered, *viz.* The length of its Diameter, and its Circuit. 2. The Extent of its Surface, and 3. its Solidity: But because it would be impossible to measure the Compass of the Earth intire, it has been judged necessary to measure one part of it, from whence the bigness of the whole may be concluded; and this part is a degree or the 360th part of a Circle. *Ptolemy*, and many other of the Ancients have observed what space answered to one of these Parts or Degrees, and have found it to contain 66 $\frac{2}{3}$  Miles. Those learned Men, whom *Maimon* King of *Arabia*, or *Caliph* of *Babylon*, employed about this Discovery, about the 800th year of Christ, found it to be 56, or 56 $\frac{1}{2}$  Miles. Among the Moderns, *Fernelius* hath found that a Degree of a great Circle of the Earth contained 68096 Geometrical Paces, or 56746 Fathom, and 4 French feet. *Snellius* found it to be 28500 Rhinland Perches, or 55021. *Parisian* Fathom; and the Gentlemen of the *Academy* for Sciences at *Paris* have found it to be 57060 Fathom, according to the measure of the *Chastelet* of *Paris*, or very near 73 $\frac{1}{2}$  Engl. Miles. As to the Calculations of *Ptolemy*, and the *Arabians*, we do not certainly know the proportion betwixt their Miles and ours, and

therefore cannot tell whether they were right or not, in reckoning so many miles to a Degree of the Earth, but according to the latest and best Calculations, the Dimensions of the Earth will be found to be these.

The Circuit of the Earth is 26293 $\frac{1}{4}$ , very near of English Miles.

The Diameter of the Earth 8369 Engl. Miles.

The surface of the Earth 220048209 $\frac{1}{4}$  square Engl. Miles.

The Solidity of the Earth 306930160535 $\frac{1}{2}$  very near of Cubick Engl. Miles.

Any of these being once given, the rest may be easily found: For the Diameter of any Circle is to its Circumference, as 7 to 22, very near. Also the Diameter of a Globe being given, the surface of it in square measure may be found by multiplying its Diameter into the Circumference of one of its great Circles, *viz.* such as divide the Globe into two equal parts: And its Solidity may be had in Cubical measure, by multiplying its surface into a sixth part of the Diameter.

## Of Measures, Ancient and Modern.

There is no one thing that hath embarras'd the knowledge of History and Geography, more than this, that People of different Nations, and living in different Ages, have for the most part had very false or confused Apprehensions of the measures that have been used by those who lived before them, or in different Countries, with reference to their own; and yet the ancient names of Greek and Roman Measures have been retained, when in the mean time the true proportion between those and such as are now in use is very little understood. The Gentlemen of the *Academy* for Sciences at *Paris*, when they had resolved to try what the Measure of one Degree of a great Circle of the Earth, or the 360th part of the Earth's Circuit was, that other Nations and after Ages might know the quantity of it in their own measures, did compare the *Toise* or Fathom of the *Grand Chastelet* of *Paris*, which was the measure they made use of, with an Original taken from Nature it self, *viz.* the length of a *Pendulum* for seconds. The way that they did it was this. They had two great *Pendulum Clocks*, each of whose single Vibrations was one Second of Time, conformable to the mean motion of the Sun; by these they determined the length of a single *Pendulum*, and found it to be 36 Inches 8 $\frac{1}{2}$  lines (the line is the  $\frac{1}{12}$  of an Inch) of the foresaid measure of the *Chastelet* of *Paris*. They took the double of this for an universal *Toise* or Fathom; which hath the same proportion to the *Parisian Toise*, that 881 hath to 864. If thus the length of the *Pendulum* for Seconds be once found express'd, according to the usual measures of every place by this means may be had the proportion of the different measures so exact, as if the Originals had been compared, and for the time to come any change therein would be discovered. If this way will not hold universally, because of the variations of the length of the *Pendulum*, yet in every particular place and Country there may be a constant and invariable measure established from hence.



## A Table of Measures.

Supposing the London foot to be 1350 Parts.  
 The Paris foot is 1440 of these Parts.  
 The Foot or London foot 1390.  
 The Roman foot 1686.  
 The Braze of Florence 2580.  
 The old Roman foot according  
 to the Model that is to be seen in } 1306  
 the Capitol.  
 According to Ricciolus 1334  
 The length of a Pendulum for Seconds, according to these Measures, is

Inches	1000 parts of an Inch.
Of London Meas.	
Paris ———— 39 ———— 126	
London ———— 36 ———— 708	
Roman ———— 37 ———— 974	
Brasile ———— 31 ———— 352	
Florence ———— 20 ———— 480	
Rome ———— 40 ———— 459	

A line is  $\frac{1}{12}$  of an Inch: An Inch is  $\frac{1}{12}$  of a foot: and is subdivided into more or fewer parts, according as the measuring requires more or less exactness.

The Miles and Leagues differ according to the Statutes or Customs of different Countries.

5280 Engl. feet make one of our Miles.

6 Paris feet make a Toise, and

2000 Toises, a Parisian League.

2053 Toises a Marine League.

2082 Toises an ordinary Country League in France.

12 Rhinland feet make a Perch.

1500 Perches make a Mile.

5 Parisian feet make a Geometrical Pace.

1500 Geometrical Paces, a Mile of Scotland.

3400 Geometrical Paces, a League of Spain.

5000 Geometrical Paces a League of Swedeland.

6000 Geom. Paces a League of Hungary.

24345 English feet, or  $4\frac{869}{1000}$  of English Miles, make a German Mile, 15 whereof go to a degree.

6083 Engl. feet, or  $1\frac{54}{1000}$  of English Miles,

make one Italian Mile, or the 60th part of a Degree.

The Ancient Measures are generally Computed thus.

The Stadium of the Greeks contained 600 of their feet; which were equal to 625 Roman feet.

The Alexandrian Stadium was to that of the Greeks, as 144 to 125.

The old Roman Mile contain'd 1000 paces, or 8 of their Stadia: And are call'd *Lapides*, because at every Miles end, for some way round the City, upon their Highways, there were Stones set up with the number of Miles on it, that it was distant from the City.

The Orgvia of the Greeks contain'd 6 Feet.

The Cubit  $1\frac{1}{2}$  foot.

The *Parasang*, which was the old Persian Mile, contain'd 30 Stadia, or 3000 of their Paces.

The Schœnus, an Egyptian Measure, contained 60 Stadia, according to Herodot.

The old Arabian Mile was equal to  $7\frac{1}{2}$  Alexandrian Stadia.

The Arabian League, in old times, is thought to have been the 25 part of a Degree; so that 25 of them was equal to  $73\frac{1}{3}$  English Miles.

The Mile which the Turks use is thought to be equal to the Italian.

100 Indian Miles are said to be equal to one Degree.

The Inhabitants of *Cambaia*, and the Kingdom of *Guzara* use a Measure, 30 of which make one Degree.

The Chinese have three sorts of Measures for distances, which they call *Li*, *Pu*, and *Uchan*. *Li*, is the distance as far as a Man, crying loud, may be heard, in a plain, and still Air: And is thought to be 300 Geom. Paces. *Pu* contains 10 of these *Li*, and an *Uchan* 10 *Pu*; and this last they reckon to be the Measure of one days Journey.

The Square Mile consists of Square feet, and the Cubick Mile of solid feet, as the simple Mile consists of feet of length. The Square Mile is produced by the Multiplication of the simple Mile into it self: and the Cubick Mile, by multiplying the Square Mile by the Mile of Length.

## C H A P. IV.

## Of the Air, and Winds, or, Points of the World.

**T**HE Air or *Atmosphere*, is that Space round about the Earth, in which Vapours and Exhalations are raised from it by the heat of the Sun. For the Sun and Stars being so many Fires they cannot miss to produce such an effect: And experience confirms it that they do so, for we see them frequently rise. This Air is naturally heavy, since we find it inclines towards the Center of the Earth when it is not hindered; for when the Earth is dug

up, the Air immediately descends into the Cavity that is made. And the reason why it ascends at any time; is, either, that when it is rarefied with heat it seeks more room for it self, or when another Vapour pushes it upwards it must ascend. When it is hot it possesses more room than it did before, and the colder it grows, it is contracted within the narrower bounds. This is plain in a *Thermometer*, in which we see, that the Air which is shut up in the Glass,



Glass, grows thicker or thinner, that is, possesses more or less space, according to the different degrees of Cold and Heat. And it may be so rarefied by a vehement fire, as to take up seventy times the room it formerly possess'd: and on the contrary it may be condensed to that degree in a *Wind-Gun*, that it shall fill only the sixtieth part of its ordinary space. But neither is the heat of the Sun so violent, nor the coldness of the greatest Frost so vehement as to produce these effects. 'Tis true that under the *Æquator*, where the heat of the Sun has greatest force, Vapours are raised higher, and rarefied more than under the Poles: and for the like reason, they should be attracted to a greater height at Noon in any place, than at another time; but this rarefaction of the particular parts of the Air makes no considerable change either as to figure or height of the whole mass of Air that is about the Earth, which by observing the different Refractions of a Star in two different Altitudes of it, is found to be near a thousandth part of the Semidiameter of the Earth, that is, near four *Engl.* Miles.

The Air is commonly divided into three Regions; the first is that in which we live; the second or middle one, is that in which Snow, Hail, Rain, are gathered; the third extends from the Region of the Clouds to the utmost surface of the Atmosphere. The parts of the Atmosphere that are highest, must therefore be lightest and finest; but those in the middle Region may be thicker or grosser than the parts next the Earth, because there the Vapours do easily condense and run together, the lighter going up higher, and the Rays reflected from the Earth losing much of their force before they reach the second Region. The further any place of the Earth is from being directly under the Sun, or the nigher it is to the Poles, the Region of the Air in which Rain, Snow, Hail, are generated, is proportionably nigher to the Earth, because the Sun-beams fall more obliquely upon the places towards the Poles than upon those about the *Æquator*, and consequently produce less heat; which heat extending a shorter way from the Earth, under the Poles than under the *Æquator*, the grosser Vapours may more easily unite at a less distance from the Earth, than in another place where there is greater heat.

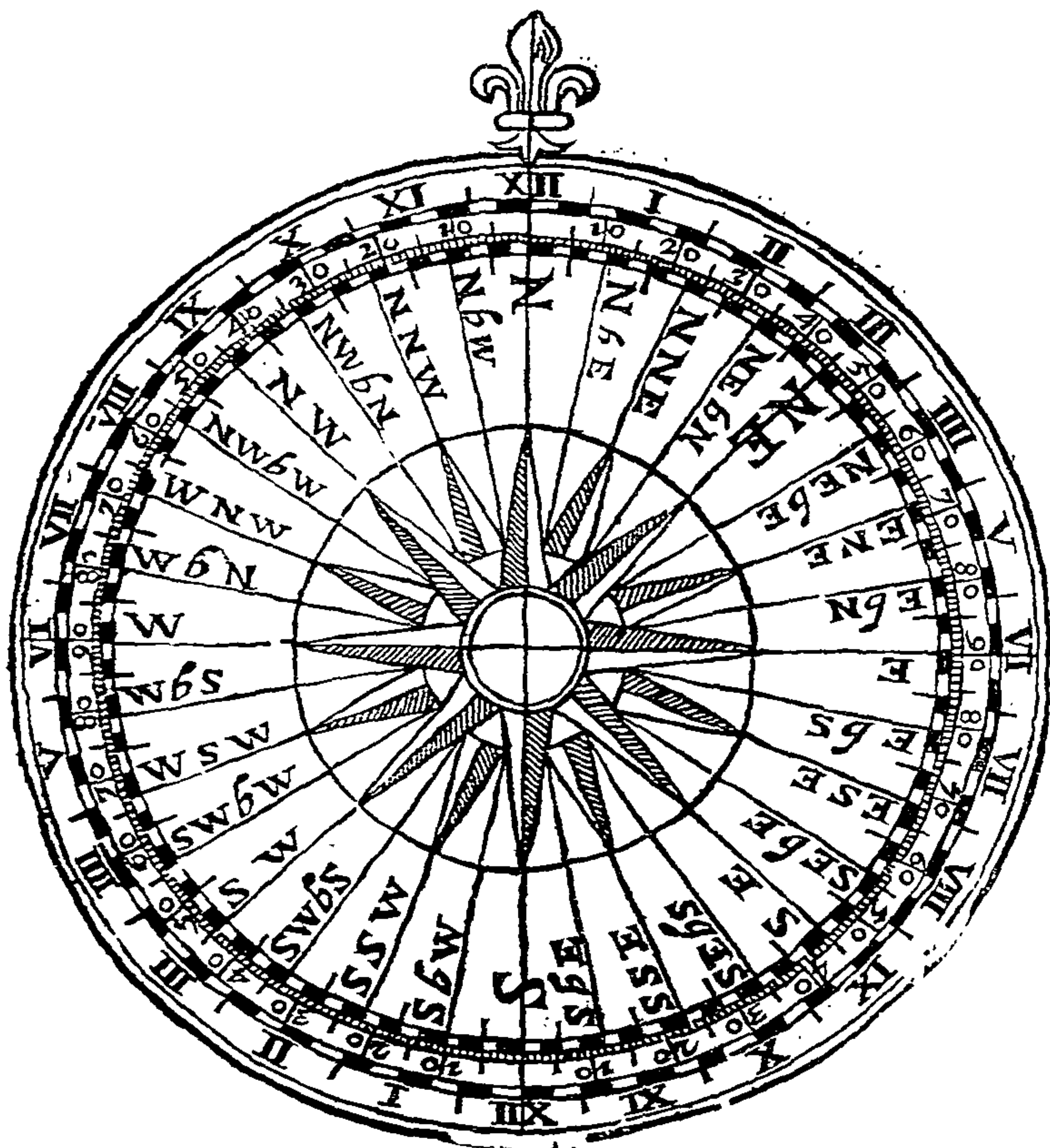
A moderate Cold does not make the Air clear, but cloudy, because Vapours are raised, but not discuss'd, or rarefied sufficiently, by that small heat which still continues. But an excessive Cold makes the Air clear: as we see it in a long Frost, 1. because it thickens and condensates the grosser Vapours of the Air, and thereby makes them fall to the Ground, by which the remaining Air becomes finer. 2. The Pores of the Earth are close bound up, and therefore new Vapours cannot rise from it to cloud or thicken it. There might be a great deal more said concerning the nature and properties of the Air, that might either instruct or divert an ingenious Reader, but least some

should think that we have said too much already, we shall stay no longer on this Subject but go on to that which follows in the Title of this Chapter.

It is not to be expected that we should here entertain the Reader with a Discourse concerning the Nature and Causes of *Winds*, since our present business is only to consider them with respect to the several Regions or Points of the World. The four Cardinal Points are, *North, South, East* and *West*: and to these have been assigned four Winds of the same name, which are also call'd Cardinal Winds. It would be tedious, and of very little use, to tell the Reader how at different times in former Ages, Philosophers have differed about the number of them, (some allowing only one, some two some four, and some twelve, &c.) or what and how various the names that were given them have been. It is certain, that where there is no Meridian (which happens under the Poles, where the Sun in his diurnal Course is never at all, or very little higher at one time than it is at another) there is no distinction of Winds, because neither South nor North, East nor West can be distinguish'd. If you stand in the *Frozen Zone*, but not under the Pole itself, the Sun may seem to rise and set, and come to a sort of Meridian height, and then the Quarters of the world may be clearly distinguished: The two Cardinal Winds or Points, called the *South* and *North*, are the foundation of all the rest: and for that reason one of them, viz. the North in the Mariners Compass, is adorned with a *Flower de Luce*; from whence the opposite point comes to be known: and the Meridian line is conceived as 'twere to lie extended between these points. Another line cutting these at Right Angles, shews the other two Cardinal Points, viz. *East* and *West*: the former of which, for distinctions sake, is usually mark'd with a Cross; but those that lie in the middle betwixt these Cardinal Points partake of the names of the Points next to them on both sides, viz. *North-East, North-West, South-East, South-West*. Each of these 8 Winds has two, viz. one on each side of it, which retaining the names of their Principals, acquire also a Surname from the Cardinal Point, to which they incline; for they are thus term'd, *North-by-West, North-by-East; North-East-by-North, North-East-by-East, East-by-North, East-by-South, South-East-by-East, South-by-East, South-by-West, South-West-by-South, South-West-by-West, West-by-South, West-by-North, North-West-by-West, North-West-by-North*. These Collateral Winds are 16 in number, which together with the 8 Principal ones make 24. Lastly, between these 8 Principal, as many others are placed exactly in the midst, viz. *North-North-East, East-North-East, East-South-East, South-South-East, South-South-West, West-South-West, West-North-West, North-North-West*. These in all are the 32 Points of the Compass; as you may see in the Scheme at the top of the following page.



The Scheme shewing the 32 Points of the Compass as they are described in the preceeding Page.



## CHAP. V.

### Of the Parts of Time.

**T**He Chief Parts of time are, a Day, an Hour, Month, and a Year. A Day is either *Natural* or *Artificial*. The *Natural*, is the space of 24 hours which the Sun takes to run round the Earth, or rather the Earth to turn round its own Axis. The *Artificial*, is the space of time from the rising of the Sun to his Setting.

The Civil and Astronomical Day differs not from the *Natural*, unless in their beginning, according to the Custom of a Commonwealth, or the pleasure of Astronomers. The *Babylonians* began their Day from Sun rising, (as the Inhabitants of *Nuremberg* now do) the *Jews* and *Athenians* from Sun-set, as the *Italians*, *Austrians*, *Bohemians*, and *Silesians* do now. The *Egyptians* and *Romans* of old began their day from Mid-night, which is

practis'd still by the *Germans*, *French*, *English*, and other Nations of *Europe*. The greater part of Astronomers began it from Noon, as *Ptolemy*, the *Alphonsines*, and *Tycho Brahe*, but *Copernicus*, following *Hipparchus*, takes its beginning from mid-night.

An Hour is either equal or unequal; an equal Hour is the 24<sup>th</sup> part of a Natural Day. The unequal, is the 12<sup>th</sup> part of the Artificial Day or Night; which varies, as to the Inhabitants of the oblique Sphere, as the Seasons vary; for the Hours of the day are much longer in Summer than those in Winter, and the Hours of the Night contrary. An equal Hour contains 60 prime Minutes, one Minute 60 Seconds, one Second, 60 Thirds, &c.

A Month is either *Solar* or *Lunar*. The *Solar* Month is either Astronomical, or Civil: The Astronomical



Astronomical *Solar* Month is the precise and exact number of days, hours, and minutes that the Sun takes to pass through one Sign in the Ecliptick. The Civil is a space of time consisting sometimes of 31, sometimes of 30, 28 or 29 days. The *Lunar* Month is likewise either Astronomical or Civil. The Astron. Lunar Month is either Periodical or Synodical. The former is the space of time that the Moon takes to roll from a certain point of the Ecliptick to the same again: the other is the time from its departing from the Sun till it over-takes him again. A Periodical Month consists of 27 days and almost  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a Day; whereas the Synodical includes 29 days and very near an half. For when the Moon hath left the Sun in any point of the Ecliptick, before it can return to the same again, the Sun has advanced forward (or seemed to do so while the Earth's doing of it) and pass'd through a whole Sign almost; wherefore 2 days must of necessity be allow'd the Moon before she can over-take the Sun. From the four different Appearances of the Moon the Egyptians and Assyrians seem'd to have formed their Weeks, assigning seven days to each; but the Hebrews had another reason for doing so, as we're told by Holy Scripture. And from the Seventh or Sabbath, the rest had their Denomination, as the first, second, and third, &c. after the Sabbath; only the sixth was call'd *Parasceue*, or preparation for the Sabbath. This Custom of counting by weeks seems to have been peculiar to the Eastern People, for the Greeks counted by Decades, or Tens, assigning 3 to each Month: and the Romans, besides their Distribution of the Month into *Calends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*, divided the year into so many eight days. The names which we commonly give to the days of the week are those of the Deities which the Superstitious Heathens ador'd. The Greeks seem to have had them from the Assyrians, and the Christians from them. The Chaldeans who first applied themselves to the study of Astronomy gave the names of their Gods to the Planets: and to give the greater Authority to their Art, gave the Guardianship of every Month, Day, Hour, and perhaps Minute to some Planet or other, as of *Monday* to the Moon, because she presided that Day, and so of all the rest.

The year is either Astronomical or Civil: And the former is either Tropical, which is the space of time the Sun takes to go from one point of the Ecliptick till he return to the same again; or Syderal, which is the time the Sun takes in moving from a certain fix'd Star, till he returns to the same again, which is somewhat longer than the former, by reason the fix'd Star hath shifted about 51 seconds farther: So that it will take the Sun some Minutes to over-take it. Hence it is that the *Æquinoxes* do every year anticipate one another; and with respect to the return of the Sun to the Constellations of the Zodiack, happen almost a whole Month sooner now than in the time of *Hipparchus*: and this is called the *Procession of the Æquinoxes*.

The Civil year is either *Solar* or *Lunar*, and both either moveable or fix'd. The moveable consists of 365 days, without reckoning the odd hours, through the neglect of which it happens, that every fourth year the moveable out-runs the other by

one day: and therefore in four times 365 years, that is, 1460 years, the beginning of it moves through every month and day of our year, whence it is necessary, that the *Æquinoxes* and *Solstices* should also pass through all the days of the moveable year. This sort was in use among the *Egyptians*, and therefore call'd the *Egyptian* year, consisting of 12 months, each of which contain 30 days, and 5 were added at the end of every year, which were called *ἐπαγόμεναι*.

The fix'd Solar year is the *Julian*, so call'd from *Julius Cæsar*; who after the Battle of *Pharsalia*, thought it not unworthy of him to set about rectifying the Calendar: and to that end sent for *Sosigenes*, a famous Astronomer, from *Alexandria*. And it being found that the Solar year was just 365 days and 6 hours, it was appointed that every fourth year there should be an Intercalary day made up of these 6 hours: and so made the 4th year to consist of 366 days; which year was call'd *Bissextile*, from a day interlaced or put between the 23 and 24 of *February*; for which reason it is writ by the Latines *bis sexto Calendas Martii*. But tho' this was a great and useful work, yet the time allow'd to a year by *Cæsar* was too much, by almost a 11 minutes; which in the space of 131 years grew into a whole day: and therefore in the 1260 years that pass'd between the Council of *Nice*, which instituted the Term for the Celebration of *Easter*, and the time of Pope *Gregory* the 13th, who restor'd the Term that had been removed out of their proper places, these 11 minutes had amounted almost to 10 days. For in the time of the *Nicene* Council, the Vernal *Æquinox* was fix'd to the 21 day of *March*; but in that of *Gregory*, it was found to have crept insensibly to the 11 of the same month. Wherefore when the Pope had determined to restore the *Æquinox* to its former Seat, he took those 10 days out of the *Julian* Calendar: and lest the Hinges of the year should slip for the future, he ordain'd that every hundred year of the Christian Account of Time, should be common, that is, consisting of 365 days, which according to the Computation of *Julius Cæsar*, ought to be *Bissextile*; but that every four hundredth year should remain *Bissextile*.

The moveable *Lunar* year consists of 12 Synodical months. The *Arabians* and *Saracens*, and, after their Example, the *Turks* make use of it. It is less than the Solar year by 11 days: so that their first month *Muharran* hath no fix'd place in the Solar year; but in space of less than 34 years it runs through all the Seasons of the Solar year. And the exact duration of 12 Moons being about 8 hours, 48 minutes more than 354 days, they find themselves oblig'd in 30 years to add a 11 days extraordinary; which the *Arabians* most ingeniously invented. Of these 30 years, 19 are simple, that is, have but 354 days, and 11 Intercalary or Embolomick, each of which have 355 days.

The fix'd *Lunar* year is that which by the Intercalation every second or third year of one month, keeps the Hinges of the year from slipping from their proper months. So much for the Parts of Time.



## C H A P. VI.

## Of the Terms of Geography, and of the principal Lakes, Rivers, and Mountains in the Earth.

**S**OME of these Terms are peculiar to the Land, some to the Sea, and some common to both; but we shall begin with those that are most considerable.

The *Ocean* is that great Sea which goes round the whole Earth, and hath different names given it according to the different Countries that it washes; as the Sea that's towards the North Pole is called the *Hyperborean Sea*, and so, the *Indian Ocean*, the *Chinese Sea*, the *British Sea*, &c. Some parts of this Ocean run up into Land through narrow Passes or Streights, other freely without these; the former may be properly called *Seas*, the other *Gulfs*. Of the first sort may be reckoned principally the *Baltick Sea*, which lies between *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Moscow*, *Poland*, and *Lower Germany*; The *Mediterranean Sea*, that runs in, from the *Atlantick Ocean*, between *Spain* and *Barbary*, and lies between *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*. The *Archipelago*, or *Aegean Sea*; The Sea of *Marmorea*; the *Euxin Sea*; the *Palus Mæotis*, the *Caspian Sea*.

The most famous Gulfs in *Europe* are, the Gulfs, of *Bothnia*, *Finland*, *Lubeck*, *Dantzick*, in the *Baltick Sea*; the *Cargate*, between *Norway* and the Isle of *Zeeland*; the Gulf of *Venice*, or the *Adriatick Sea*, the Gulf of *Lepanto*. The most considerable in *Africa* and *Asia* are, the Gulf of *Arabia*, or the *Red-Sea*; the Gulf of *Ormus* or *Balsora*, anciently the Gulf of *Persia*, the Gulf of *Cambaja* or *Guzarat*, the Gulf of *Bengala*, the Gulf of *Haynam*, the Gulf of *Nanquin* or *Zang*. In *America*, *Hudson's Bay*; the Gulf of *Mexico*, the Gulf of *Florida*; the Gulf of *Honduras*, where sailing is very dangerous because of a strong Current; and the Gulf of *Panama*, in the South Sea.

A *Straight* is a little Arm of the Sea hedged in on both sides by the Land; and there are three sorts of 'em, for they are either, 1. a narrow passage betwixt the Ocean and the Ocean, or the Ocean and a Gulf, or betwixt one Gulf and another. Of the first sort are, 1. the Streights of *Magellan*, which joins the *Atlantick* and *Pacifick Seas*. 2. The Streights of *Davis*, so call'd from *John Davis* an English Man, who discover'd them in the year 1585. They are a passage from the *North Sea* to the *Pacifick*, between *Greenland* and the Northern parts of *America*. 3. The Strait of *Waigars*, betwixt *Samogeda* and *Nova Zembla*, being a Passage from the *Russian* or *White Sea* to the *Tartarian Ocean*. Of the second sort are, 1. The Streights of *Gibraltar*, betwixt *Spain* and *Africa*,

through which the *Atlantick Ocean* floweth into the *Mediterranean Sea*. 2. The Sound, betwixt *Zealand*, an Island of *Denmark*, and the Coast of *Schonen*, part of the Continent of *Sweden*, through which the *Atlantick Ocean* flows into the *Baltick Sea*. 3. The Strait of *Babel-Mandel*, through which the *Indian Ocean* floweth into the *Red-Sea*. Of the third sort are, 1. the *Hellepont*, or the Streights of *Gallipoli* and the *Dardanelles*, a narrow Passage from the *Archipelago* to the Sea of *Marmora*. 2. The Streights of *Constantinople*, from the Sea of *Marmora* to the *Black-Sea*. 3. The Streights of *Caffi*, from the *Black-Sea* to the Lake *Mæotis*.

The depth of the Sea is not a like in all places; for in some places it is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of a Mile, in others  $\frac{1}{3}$ ,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{5}$ , and in some few places it hath been found to be one whole German Mile. The saltness of the Sea-water proceeds from the rough, picquant, and heavy particles that are in it; and of these Salt is made, while the other, that are light and soft, are exhaled by the heat of the Sun, or boiled out by common Fire. The Sea-water is observed to be fresher near the Poles than under the *Æquator*, because under this the excessive heat of the Sun raiseth more Vapours than near those, and consequently leaves fewer of the soft and light particles, so that the Salt ones prevail: and besides, those Seas which flow upon Salt Rocks will taste more of Salt, than those that have another kind of Channel: and the more Salt that the water is, the heavier it is. Fresh water being thinner and lighter than Salt, is not able to sustain the same burthen as it does: and therefore greater depth of River-water is required to make a Ship float than of Sea-water. This saltness of Sea-water is the cause why it doth not freeze so easily as fresh water does: and there is a spirit extracted from Salt, which the extremest cold cannot freeze. Though so many Rivers run into the Sea, it grows no bigger, because, 1. the water returns to the Fountains of the Rivers by Subterraneous passages. 2. The Sun raiseth every day a great many vapours from it.

The Philosophers have rack'd their Inventions to little purpose, to find out the cause of the Ebbing and Flowing of the Sea: and most of 'em attribute it to the Moon; tho they can give no satisfying account how it is done. There is indeed some sort of relation between the Course of the Moon and it; for in full Moon, and new Moon the Sea flows highest, and lowest at quarter Moon. And at the time of the Vernal and Autumnal *Æquinoxes* the tides



Tides rise higher than at any other time, and lowest at the Solstices. Tho this motion of the Sea is so irregular, that no precise Rule can be set for it, as to all places and times, yet in most places it flows 6 hours 12 minutes, and Ebbs as long. There are indeed some few places, where the Tide takes longer time to Flow, than it does to Ebb; and others in which it Ebbs longer than it Flows, but both together make always the space of 12 hours 28  $\frac{3}{4}$  Minutes; and the double of this being near 25 hours, it follows that the Tide happens later every day by the space of almost an hour. And the reason of this perhaps may be that the Moon returns later to the same Meridian by 50 Minutes. If then the time of high water were given at any place, upon the days of full Moon or new Moon, we may know the time of it any day after by adding so many minutes, viz. 48  $\frac{1}{2}$  to the same hour of the following day. For instance, if at any place it be high-water at 12 a Clock, in the time of new or full Moon, it will be high-water there the day following according to this Table.

		Age of the Moon.	The Hou.	Min.
4 Great Lakes or Seas	in the old Continent	1	XII	48
		2	1	37
		3	2	27
		4	3	16
		5	4	5
		6	4	55
		7	5	44
		8	6	34
		9	7	23
		10	8	12
	in the new Continent	11	9	1
		12	9	51
		13	10	40
		14	11	29
		15	12	mid nig mid day

## Lesser Lakes in Europe

The Lake of Constance in Germany.  
 The Lake of Verner, in Sweden.  
 The Lake of Geneva, between Swisserland and Savoy  
 The Lake Maggiore } in the Milanese.  
 The Lake of Como. }  
 The Lake of Ladoga, between Sweden and Muscovy.  
 The Lakes of Onega, and Ilmen in Muscovy.  
 The Lake of Balaton in Lower Hungary.  
 The Lake of Dummer, in Westphalia.  
 The Lakes of Bolsena and Perousa in the state of the Church.

## In Asia.

The Lake of Sodom or the Dead Sea, or Asphaltites, in the Holy Land.  
 The Lake of Burgian, in Persia.  
 The Lake of Kirhay, in Tartary.  
 The Lake of Chiamay, in India, beyond the River Ganges.  
 The Lake of Cincuihay, in the Confines of China.  
 The Lake of Annibi in Tartary.

## In Africa.

The Lake of Zaire in the upper *Aethiopia*.  
 The Lake of Zaflan in the same Country.  
 The Lake of Niger, in *Negro-Land*.  
 The Lake of Dambea, in *Abyssina*.  
 The Lake of Buchiara, in *Egypt*.

## In America.

In North America. { The Lake of Canada, or the Gentle-Sea.  
 The Lake of Mechoacan.  
 The Lake of Chapala.  
 The Lake of Mexico.  
 The Lake of Nicaragua.  
 The Lake of Maracaibo, in the Province of *Veneruola*.  
 In South America. { The Lake of Titicaca in *Peru*.  
 The Lake of Eupana, or de los Xaxiados.

A River is a great quantity of water continually running in a Channel from its Source, (which is either a Fountain or Lake) to the Sea.

The Source of a River is the Place from whence it comes.

The mouth of a River is the place where it emptieth it self into the Sea.

The Confluence of Rivers is the place where they meet and mix their waters.

A Cataract is a Precipice in the Channel of a River from whence the water falls with great force and noise.

The most considerable Rivers in the World are.

## In Europe.

In Spain { The Duero, *Durius*.  
 The Minho, *Minius*.  
 The Tago, *Tagus*.  
 The Guadiana, *Anas*.  
 The Gandalquivir, *Batis*.  
 The Ebro, *Iberus*.  
 The Loire, *Ligeris*.  
 The Garonne, *Garumna*.  
 In France. { The Rhone, *Rhodanus*.  
 The Saone, *Arar*.  
 The Seyne, *Sequana*.  
 The Marne, *Matrona*.  
 The Charante, *Caranthonus*.  
 In Italy. { The Arno, *Arnus*.  
 The Tyber, *Tiberis*.  
 The Po, *Padus*, *Eridanus*.  
 The Drino, *Drinus*.  
 In Turkey. { The Orpheo, *Alpheus*.  
 The Vardari, *Axius*.  
 The Salampria, *Peneus*.  
 The Mariza, *Hebrus*.  
 The Danow, *Danubius*.  
 In Germany. { The Rhine, *Rhenus*.  
 The Elb, *Albis*.  
 The Oder, *Odera*, *Viadrus*.  
 The Weser, *Vislurgis*.



- The *Vistula*.  
 The *Niemen*, *Cronus*, or *Nimeneus*.  
 In *Poland*. { The *Duna*, *Duina*.  
 The *Nieper*, *Borysthenes*.  
 The *Niefter*, *Tyras*.  
 The *Baag*, or *Vag*, *Vegus*.  
 The *Volga*, *Rha*.  
 In *Moscovy*. { The *Don*, *Tanaïs*.  
 The *Duina*.  
 The *Petzora*.  
 In *Sweden*. { The *Onega*.  
 The *Dalccarlo*.  
 The *Tkames*, *Tamisis*.  
 The *Severn*, *Sabrina*.  
 In *England*. { The *Humber*, *Avus*, *Umbet*.  
 The *Tine*, *Tina*.  
 The *Trant*.  
 The *Trede*, *Tueda*.  
 The *Forth*.  
 The *Clyde*, *Glotta*.  
 In *Scotland*. { The *Spey*, *Spaus*.  
 The *Nith*, *Nitha*.  
 The *Dee*, *Deva*.  
 The *Don*.  
 The *Suznon*, *Senus*.  
 The *Sewer*, *Sevirius*.  
 The *Broad-water*.  
 In *Ireland*. { The *Borrop*.  
 The *Bain*, *Baina*.  
 The *Deegn*.  
 The *Ean*.  
 The *Alze*, or *Meuse*, *Mosa*.  
 In the *Low*. { The *Schelde*, *Scaldis*.  
 The *Issel*, *Isala*, *Salas*.  
 The *Rhine*, *Rhenus*.

In *Asia*:

- In *Turkey* in { The *Ali*.  
 The *Jordan*, *Jardanes*.  
 The *Euphrates*.  
 The *Tigris*, *Tigris*.  
 In *Georgia*. { The *Phra*, *Phasis*.  
 The *Aras*, *Araxes*.  
 The *Caibar* in *Arabia*.  
 In *Persia*. { The *Tigris*, *Moseus*.  
 The *Bandunir*.  
 In *India*. { The *Inde*, *Indus*.  
 The *Ganga*, *Ganges*.  
 The *Mecan*, *Sobanus*.  
 The *Obi*, *Obius*.  
 The *Jenisey*, *Jenissea*.  
 The *Chebet*, *Jaxartes*.  
 In *Tartary*. { The *Guchon*, *Oxus*.  
 The *Tala*.  
 The *Quenteng*.  
 The *Sagba*.  
 The *Tartar*, *Orchardus*.  
 The *Yellow River*, *Crocens fluvius*.  
 The *Quiang*.  
 The *Luka*.  
 In *China*. { The *Kialong*.  
 The *Hoang*.  
 The *Kona*.

In *Africa*.

- The *Tansist*, in *Moroco*.  
 In *Fez*. { The *Ommiraby*, *Asama*, *Cusa*,  
*Rutubis*, *Rusibis*.  
 The *Cæbu*.  
 In *Barbary*. { The *Malvia*, *Malva*.  
 The *Rio-Major*, or *Nasabath*.  
 The *Sufregna*.  
 The *Magrida*, or *Megrida*, *Ba-*  
*gradas*.  
 The *Nile*, *Nilus* in *Egypt*.  
 In *Biledul-gerid*. { The *Sus*, *Susus*.  
 The *Darha*.  
 The *Ghir*, in *Sarra*.  
 The *Niger* in 3. { *Senega*.  
*Gambia*.  
*Rio Grand*. } In *Negroland*.  
 In *Abyssinia*. { The *Quilmancy*.  
 The *Zaire*, *Zairus*.  
 The *Nile* again.  
 The *Zembera* in 2. { *Spirito sancto*.  
*Rio des Infantes*. } In *Lower E-*  
*thiopia*.

In *America*.

- In *Southern America*. { The *River of the Amazons*, *Orel-*  
*lana*, *Amazonum fluvius*.  
 The *River of Plata*, or *Paraguay*,  
*Argentens*, seu *Paraguaius fluvius*.  
 In the *Main Land*. { The *Orenoque*, *Orenecus*.  
 The *River of St. Magdalen*, and *St*  
*Martha*.  
 The *Sedagodero*.  
 In *Tucuman*. { The *Barberamma*.  
 The *Rio Vermeja* or *Salado*.  
 Near the Straights of *Magellan*. { *Rio de los Camerines*.  
*Rio de Saguadero*.  
 The *River of Paraguay*.  
 The *River of Parane*.  
 The *River of Oragay*.  
 In *Paraguay*. { The *River Banco*.  
 The *River of Vermeja*. These  
 five Rivers discharge themselves  
 into that of *Plata*.  
 The *Lamiara*.  
 In *Brasil*. { The *Pinara*.  
 The *Tabourn*.  
 The *Siope*.  
 The *River of St. Francis*.  
 The *Maragnon*.  
 The *Amarumair*.  
 The *Cusinares*.  
 In the *Country of the A-*  
*mazons*. { The *Cayana*.  
 The *Topafis*. These five Rivers  
 fall into that of the *Amazons*,  
 and the least of them is above  
 200 Leagues long.  
 The *River of Panuco*.  
 In *Mexico* or *New-Spain*. { The *River of Esquitlan*.  
 The *River of Mexico*.  
 The *River of los Popes*.  
 The *Rio del Norte*.  
 In *New-Mex.* { The *River of Conchos*.  
 The *River of Teom*.  
 The *Rio Grande*.  
 In *Florida*. { *River of May*.



In *Canada* or *New-France*. { The River of St. Laurence.  
The River of St. Margaret.  
The Saguenay.

*Rivulets* or *Brooks* are small Currents of water, arising for the most part from Springs; but their Course is not very long, and their bed is strait and shallow.

An *Island* is a piece of Land surrounded with water. The most considerable Islands in the World are.

## In Europe.

<i>Great Britain</i> .	<i>Sicily</i> .
<i>Ireland</i> .	<i>Sardinia</i> .
<i>Zeland</i> , which makes a part of the Kingdom of <i>Denmark</i> .	<i>Corfica</i> .
	<i>Majorca</i> .
	<i>Minorca</i> .
The Isles of <i>Shetland</i> .	<i>Yvica</i> .
The <i>Orkney Isles</i> .	<i>Candia</i> .
The <i>Hebrides</i> , or Western Isles of Scotland.	<i>Cyprus</i> .
	<i>Rhodes</i> .
	The Isles of the <i>Archipelago</i> .
	The Isles of the <i>Baltick</i> .

## On the Coast of Africa.

<i>Madagascar</i> .	The <i>Azores</i> or <i>Flandrian Islands</i> .
The Islands of <i>Cape Verde</i> .	
The <i>Canary Islands</i> .	The Isle of <i>Bourbon</i> .

## On the Coast of Asia.

<i>Japan</i> .	<i>Borneo</i> .
The <i>Philippine Isles</i> .	<i>Java</i> .
The <i>Molucca Isles</i> .	<i>Sumatra</i> .
The Isle of <i>Ceylon</i> .	The <i>Maldives</i> .

## In America.

<i>California</i> .	The <i>Lucayes</i> .
<i>New-found-Land</i> .	<i>Jamaica</i> .
<i>Bermudas</i> , or the Summer Islands.	<i>Hispaniola</i> .
	<i>Porto Rico</i> .
<i>Cuba</i> .	The <i>Caribbee Islands</i> .

As there are Islands surrounded by the Sea, so there are some environ'd by the waters of Rivers; the most remarkable of which are, the Island of *Schut* or *Kalochens*, in the *Danube*, and *Camargue* in the *Rhone*: The ancient Geographers tell us of another in the River *Nile*; which they call'd *Microe*; and some Moderns have been led into the same error, but since the course of the *Nile* has come to be better known, from its source to its mouth, it's found that there is no such Isle in it. It is true, by a very considerable winding it makes the Kingdom of *Goiam* a large Peninsula; which probably has been the ground of that ancient mistake. This is not a meer assertion without any warrant, for the Patriarch *Mendez*, Father *Lobo*, and Father *Telles*, Jesuit Missionaries, who lived in the *Abyssine* Country many years, and the History of *Abyssinia*, written by Mr. *Ludlow*, Councillor to the Duke of *Saxe-Weimar*, and printed at *Frankfort* on the *Main*, An. 1682. do sufficiently confirm what we have said in this matter.

A *Peninsula* is a Portion of Land, surrounded with water, except in one place, where it is joined to the Continent by a small Neck of Land. The most considerable of these are;

*Chersonesus Aurea*, or *Malacca*, joining to *India*.

*Chersonesus Cimbrica*, or *Futland*, joined to *Holstein*.

*New-France*, on the East-side of *North America*.  
*Jugatan*, in the Gulf of *Mexico*.

*Corea*, on the East of *Tartary*.

*Africk* also may not improperly be reckoned among these, it being joined to *Asia* by a small Neck of Land that separates the *Mediterranean* from the *Red-Sea*.

*North and South America*, which are joined by a narrow piece of Land, at *Panama*, about 17 Leagues long.

The *Morea*, or *Peloponnesus*, joined to *Greece*.

*Taurica Chersonesus*, or *Crim-Tartary*, at the mouth of the Lake *Mæotis*, in the *Euxin-Sea*.

An *Isthmus* is a little piece of Land that joins a Peninsula to the Continent. The most considerable of these are,

The *Isthmus* of *Suez*, that joyns *Asia* to *Africk*.

The *Isth.* of *Corinth*, that joins the *Morea* to *Greece*.

The *Isth.* of *Panama*, that joins *North America* to *South America*.

The *Isth.* of *Molucca* and *India*.

The *Isth.* of *Precop*.

A Continent is all the firm Land that is neither Island, Peninsula nor Isthmus.

An *Archipelago*, may be call'd a Collection or Cluster of small Islands in a Gulf or Sea: and these four are most remarkable, viz: that of the *Ægean Sea*, the *Archipelago* of *St. Lazarus*; the *Archipelago* of *Malucca*; and that of the *Maldives*.

A *Promontory* is a high hill running out a great way into the Sea.

A *Cape* is the outmost point of a Promontory jutting out into the Sea. The most remarkable of these are,

The *Cape* of *Good-hope* in *Africa*.

The *Cape* of *Matapan* in the *Morea*.

The *Capes* of *Pharo*, *Passero*, and *Coco*, in *Sicily*.

The *Capes* of *Fihisterre* and *St. Vincent* in *Spain*.

The *Cape* of *Cornwall* in *England*.

The *Cape* of *Scagen* in *Futland*.

The *North Cape* in *Norway*.

*Cape Nort.* in the North of *Asia*.

*Cape* of *Liampo*, in *China*.

*Cape Verde* on the West of *Africa*.

*Cape Charles* in *Canada*.

*Cape Fronted* in the South of *Magellanica*.

*Cape St. Austin* in the East of *Brasil*.

The *Cape* of *Corentes* to the West of *New-Spain*.

A *Mountain* is a part of the Earth raised to a considerable height above that which is round about it. The most considerable Mountains in the World are,

## In Europe.

The *Pyrenean Mountains*, which separate *France* from *Spain*.

The *Apennines*, which divide *Italy* into two parts.

The *Alpes*, which ly between *France* and *Italy*.

The *Carpathii Montes*, now the *Krapach Mountain*, between *Poland* and *Turkey* in *Europe*.

The *Mountains Castagnas* or *Balkan*, anciently *Hemus*, dividing *Turkey* into Northern and Southern.

The *Mountains* in *Moscow* call'd *Camenypodias*.

The



The Mountains of *Danefeld*, which separate *Sweden* from *Norway*.

The Mountains of *Auvergne* in *France*.

The *Grampian* Mountains in *Scotland*.

#### In Asia.

Mount *Taurus*, which has different names given it by the different Countries through which it passes. It begins in *Asia-minor* and reaches into *India*.

Mount *Caucasus*, between the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas.

The Mountains of *China* near *Tartary*.

Mount *Imaus*, which divides, *Tartary* into two parts.

#### In Africa.

Mount *Atlas*, which begins in *Mauritania Tingitana* near the *Cabo de Guer*, and reaches as far as the *Deserts of Barca*.

The Mountains of the *Moon*, in the *Confines of Monomotapa*.

The Mountains call'd *Sierra Lione*, *Leonum Mons*, on the *Confines of Guinea*.

#### In America.

The Mountains of *Apalache*, between *New-France*, and *Florida*.

The Mountains call'd *Andes*, *Cordillera*, or *Sierra Nevada*, which run through all the west parts of *South America*, from the *Æquator* to the *Streights of Magellan*, for the space of 3800 Miles.

These Mountains mentioned in the foregoing Table, are such as lie extended for a long way in a continued Ridge; but there are others that are confined within much lesser bounds, but generally rise to a greater height, such as these following.

1. *El Pico*, a Mountain in *Tenariff*, one of the *Canary Islands*, thought to be the highest in the World, its perpendicular height being about 5 English Miles. Its top reaches above the Clouds, and is seen at Sea at the distance of 100 Leagues.

2. The *Pic of St. George*, in the Island of *Pico*, one of the *Azores*, thought, by some, to be as high as the *Pic of Tenariff*.

3. *Pelion*, a Mountain in *Macedonia* in *Greece*, was measured by *Dicaearchus*. 10 Stadia of perpendicular height.

4. *Olympus*, a Mountain in *Lesser Asia*, which was found by *Zenagoras* to be also 10 Stadia of perpendicular height.

5. *Athos*, a Mountain on the Sea-Coast of *Macedonia*, whose shadow, as *Plutarch* and *Pliny* say, reach'd as far as the Island of *Lemnos*, which is 87 Miles distance from it.

These Mountains are principally famous for their height; but these following are remarkable, on another account, viz. for their burning.

1. *Ætna*, a Mountain in *Sicily*, now call'd by the *Italians* ill *Mon Gibello*, which is said to be nine miles of sloping height, and fifty in Compass at the bottom.

2. *Hecla*, a Mountain in *Iseland*, called by the people of that Country *Snarlendingafjordingur*.

It is sometimes as outrageous as *Ætna*, and casts up great burning stones.

3. *Vesuvius*, a Mountain in the Kingdom of *Naples*, not far from the City of that name, call'd by the *Italians* *Monte di Somma*, and the distance from *Naples* to the top of it is said to be 8 miles.

These are the most famous burning Mountains; but there are several others of less note, of whom we shall only name a few. There is one in the Island of *Japan*, another in *Sumatra*, another in *Jana*, a fourth in *Nicaragua*, in *America*, and several more in the Mountains of *Peru*.

A Mine is a place in the Earth, out of which Metals and Minerals, such as Gold, Silver, &c. are dug. The most famous Mines for Gold and Silver are,

1. Those in *Peru*, which are judged by far to be the richest in the world. *Girava*, a *Spanish* Author, says that there were Mines near *Quito*, out of which they digged more Gold than Earth. In the Mountain *Potosi*, there is an extraordinary Silver Mine, about which twenty thousand Men are employed for digging up the Earth.

2. *Japan* also affords very good Silver Mines.

3. The Mountains of *Guinea* produce much Gold, but they are a great way from the Shoar: and a great part of the Gold of that Country is gathered from the Sand and Channel of Rivers.

4. There are several rich Mines of Gold and Silver in *Monomotapa*.

5. *Germany* abounds more with Mines than any other part of *Europe*, some of them afford a little Gold, many of 'em yield Silver in considerable quantities; but most of 'em Copper, Iron, and Lead.

6. *Swedeland* hath a very rich Copper Mine, in a huge Mountain, near a mile high, which they call *Copperberg*, from this there is as much Copper dug every year as pays a third of the King's Revenue.

7. There are several considerable Mines of Salt in *Poland*, *Transylvania*, and the County of *Tyrol*, and the whole Island of *Ormuz*, in the mouth of the *Persian* Gulf seems to be made of ChrySTALLINE Salt, and the walls of their Houses are built of it.

8. The West of *England*, and especially *Cornwall*, abounds with the Finest Tin in the World: and some parts of *Scotland* afford good store of Lead.

A Wood is a large piece of ground cover'd with Trees and Shrubs, that grow naturally. The most famous woods of old were,

1. The *Hercynian* Forest, which began in the Low-Countries, and ran through all *Germany*, *Poland*, *Muscovy*, and *Tartary*.

2. The *Caledonian* Forest in *Scotland*, which extended as the *Grampian* Mountains did, from *Aberdeen* to *Dumbarton*, for above a hundred Miles.

The most famous Woods at present are those of *Norway* and *Lithuania*; from the former of which the *Dutch*, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *French* are furnished with Timber for Shipping. In *Africk*, near *Cape Verde*, there are Woods of Orange-Trees. In *Spain* and *Italy*, Olives and Myrtles, and in *England* Oaks.



A *Desart* is a Tract of Land, not manured nor inhabited by men. Some Desarts are sandy, as the Desarts of *Lop*, *Calmak*, or *Xamo*, and of *Arabia deserta* in *Asia*, those of *Libya* and *Sarra* in *Africa*, &c. Others are Stony, as the Desarts of *Pharon*, in *Arabia Petraea*, &c.

A *Kingdom* is a Country or Countries subject to a Prince.

A *Province*, was anciently among the *Romans*, a Conquered Country enjoying certain Laws and Privileges; but is now put for a part of a Kingdom.

*Satrapia* was a *Persian* word signifying a Province.

A *Diocess* is used by the Modern Geographers to signify the limits of a Bishop's Jurisdiction.

A Town, *Urbs*, (tho' it would seem to need no

definition) is call'd a large piece of Ground covered with houses, inhabited by Men and encompassed with Walls.

*Civitas*, (a City) was antiently distinguished from *Urbs*, in this, that the latter signified the place; the former the Inhabitants; but now the name of City is given by the *Italians* and *Spaniards*, especially, to any Town that has the title of a Bishoprick; and by most people these two names are confounded.

*Oppidum*, was used to signify a little Town.

A *Mart-Town* is a large one where People of several Nations come upon the account of Trade and Commerce.

*Colonia* (a Colony) was anciently a Town or Place into which the *Romans* sent some of their Free born subjects to inhabit it.

## C H A P. VII.

### Of the several Parts of the Earth, their Bounds and Divisions.

THE Earth has been differently divided by those who lived in different Ages of the World. Some having divided it into two, viz. *Asia* and *Europe*; others into three, according to the Number of *Noah's* Sons, who are said to have had it divided among them; others into four, viz. *Europe*, *Asia*, *Aegypt*, and *Africk*, and others into six, viz. *Asia*, *Africa*, *Europe*, *America*, the Countries towards the North Pole, and those towards the South Pole. But we will not now bestow any time upon either refuting or justifying any of these divisions, that being a thing that depends on the knowledge that men had of the Geography of the Earth, and the different fancies of the Geographers who lived in different Ages of the World.

The Earth may not improperly be divided into the Old World, a part of which we inhabit, the New World which has been discovered within these two hundred years, and those Countries of which we know only a part of their Coasts. The Old World, which the ancients had but an imperfect knowledge of, comprehended *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*.

*Europe* is bounded on the North with the *Frozen Sea*, on the East with the *Archipelago*, the Sea of *Marmora*, the *Black Sea*, the Sea of *Zabaccha*, the *Tanais*, as far as the Town of *Taya*, and the *Oby*, as far as its Mouth, where it empties it self into the *Scythian Ocean*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean Sea*, which separates it from *Africa*; and on the West with the *Atlantick Ocean*. Its greatest length, from *Cape St. Vincent* in *Portugal* to the mouth of the *Oby*, is about 3900 Miles; its greatest breadth from *Cape Matapan* in the *Morea*, to the North Cape, the most Northern point of *Norway*, is 2550. It is divid-

ed into the Northern, Middle, and Southern Parts. The Northern comprehends the *British Isles*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Poland* and *Muscovy*. The Middle, *France*, *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, The Low Countries, *Germany*, *Hungary*, *Transylvania*, *Valachia*, *Moldavia* and little *Tartary*; the Southern, *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Italy*, and *Turkey* in *Europe*.

*Asia* is bounded on the North with the *Scythian Ocean*; on the East, with the East Ocean, on the South, with the *Indian Ocean*; and on the West, with the *Red Sea*, the *Mediterranean Sea*, the *Archipelago*, the Sea of *Marmora*, the *Black Sea*, the *Euxin Sea*, the Sea of *Zabaccha*, the *Don* and the *Oby*: And is of much larger extent than *Europe*. *Strabo* divided it into five parts; and *Ptolemy* into 47 Provinces; but according to the Modern Geographers it comprehends these following Countries and Kingdoms. The three *Arabia's*, viz. *Deserta*, *Felix*, and *Petraea*; *Armenia* or *Curdistan*, *Asia Minor*, the Island of *Borneo*, the Island of *Ceylon*, the Island of *Cyprus*, *Diarbeker*, or *Mesopotamia*, *Gurgistan* or *Georgia*, *Japan*, the Island of *Java*, *India*; which may be divided into three parts, viz. *India* properly so called, or *Indostan*, *India* beyond the *Ganges*, and *India* on this side the *Ganges*, the Country of the *Naimans* or *Kaimachites*, the *Maldiva* Islands, the *Malucca* Islands, with others in the *Indian Ocean*, *Persia*, the *Philippine* Islands, *China*, *Syria*, which comprehends the *Holy Land*, the Isle of *Sumatra*, *Tartaria deserta*, anciently call'd *Scythia intra Imaum*, Great *Tartary*, *Tobbat* or *Thibet*, formerly *Scythia extra Imaum*, and *Mauralnaher*, anciently *Sogdiana*.



*Africa*, which is a large Peninsula joined to the Continent by an Isthmus of 25 leagues, is bounded on the North with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the East with the *Red Sea*, and the Isthmus of *Suez*, which joins it to *Asia*, on the South with the *Indian Ocean*, and on the West with the *Atlantic*. It has been variously divided at different times. The Romans divided it into six Provinces, viz. *Africa propria* or *Proconsularis*, *Nubidia*, *Tripolitania*, *Bizacena*, *Mauritania*, *Cætanensis*, and *Mauritania Tingitana*: But this division is to be understood only of that part of it which was under the subjection of the Romans. *Arabs* divided it into 12 Regions, and according to the Modern Geographers it comprehends these following Kingdoms and Countries, viz. *Libya*, *Agyptus*, *Barbary*, anciently *Mauritania* and *Africa propria*, *Biledulgerid*, anciently inhabited by a part of the *Germans* and *Garamantes*, the Country of the *Cafres* in *Africa interior*, the Kingdom of *Congo*, *Guinea*, the Island of *Madagascar*, *Malabar*, the Country of the *Negres*, *Nubia*, *Zamia*, *Zanguebar*, the Islands of *Cape Verde*, the *Canary Islands*, the *Azores* or *Flandrian Islands*, The Isle of *St. Thomas*, that lies under the Line, and a great many more of less note.

*America* is bounded on the West, with the *South* or *Pacifick Sea*, on the South with the Straights of *Magellan*, on the East with the *North Sea*, and on the North, with Lands that are hitherto very little known. It was first discovered by *Christopher Columbus*, a *Genovese*, in the year 1492; but about five years after it received the name of *America*, from one *Americus Vesputius*, a *Florentin*, who pierced farther into the Country than the former had done. It is divided into two great Peninsula's, separated from one another by the Isthmus of *Panama*, which is about 17 leagues broad. *North America* comprehends *Estoteland*, *Florida*, *New England*, *New York*, *New France*, *New Spain*, or the Kingdom of *Mexico*, (comprehending the Provinces of *Jucatan*, *Nicaragua*, *New Galicia*, *Michoacan*, *Guatemala*, and *Honduras*;) *New Mexico*, *Virginia*, the Island of *California*, the Island of *Cuba*, the Island of *Hispaniola*, the Island of *Terra Nova*, and a great many more comprehended under the name of *Antilla*. The Countries in *South America* are, *Brasil*, *Caracas*, *Chili*, *Guiana*, *Magellanica*, *New Andalusia*, *New Granada*, *Paraguay*, *Parana*, *Paria*, the Country of *Patagonia*, the Kingdom of *Pern*, the *Terra Firma*, *Tierra del Fuego*, *Tucuman*, and *Venezuela*.

Concerning those Countries whereof the Coasts are only yet known, they are barren Deserts and

Wildernesses lying towards both the Poles without the Bounds of both the Old and New World. The *Danes*, *Hollanders* and *English* have viewed the Coasts of them, and given them the names of *European Countries*; but the inland Countries are yet unknown by reason no *Europeans* have hitherto pierced into them. The Northern Countries are *Spitzberg*, between *Nova Zembla* and *Greenland*, which reaches to the 80th degree of Latitude; *Greenland*, 20 Miles from *Island* to the North, and about the 60th degree of Latitude. The South part of this Country was discovered about the end of the last Century by *Bahus*, *Forbisher* and *Munch*; and since that time other Countries lying more Northerly have been discovered, some of them under 74, 75, 76, and 78 Degrees, as the Countries of *Ruis*, *Bacy*, and *Edam*, and some *Dutch* ships have gone as far as the 79th, to find out a Northern Passage to the *East Indies*: and having sailed a hundred leagues to the East of *Nova Zembla*, they found a Sea free from Ice, and good sailing, insomuch that they might sail very securely betwixt *Spitzberg* and *Nova Zembla*, provided a fit season were taken for doing it; for the parts of the Sea that are covered with Ice are those that lie next the shoar, which being mixed with fresh water are the more easily frozen; *James Island* lies between the Straights of *Hudson* and *Davis*; *New Wales*, which was discovered by the English in the beginning of this Century; *Estoteland* which lies to the North of *New France* and *New Albion* discovered in the year 1578 by *Sir Francis Drake*, which is thought by some to be a part of *California*.

The unknown Countries lying towards the South Pole, are, *New Guinea* to the East of the *Moluccas*, which was discovered by *Anthony d'Urdometta*, a *Spaniard*, in the year 1528, and by most part of Geographers taken for an Island; the Country of *Papous*, which lies to the West of *New Guinea*, and was discovered by the *Dutch* not many years ago; *New Holland*, to the South of the *Moluccas*, the Country of *Concord*, which the *Dutch*, who discovered it in the year 1618, call *Landt van Eendracht*; the Country of *Dime*, which *Abel Tifman* a *Dutchman*, discovered in the year 1642, and gave it that name in honour of *Anthony Dime*, President of their *East India Company*; *Tierra Austral del Espiritu Santo*, which makes a considerable part of the *Terra Australis*, towards the south part of the *Pacifick Sea*, and discovered by *Pedro Ferdinand de Quiros*, in the year 1606. It lies North-West and South-East, about 15 or 16 degrees South latitude, and has a great many Isles of less note lying about it.



# C H A P. VIII.

## Containing the Description of the Celestial and Terrestrial Globes.

**A** *Globe* or *Sphere* is a round Body, contained under one superficies, in the middle of which there is, or supposed to be, a point from which right lines being drawn to the surface, they are all equal one to another. The use and design of these Globes is to represent to us the fabrick of the World, and this Earth upon which we live; for the Celestial represents the Heavens with its luminous Bodies, in their true situation, order, and seeming Magnitude; the Terrestrial represents the Earth, with all its several Kingdoms, and Countries, Isles and Seas. And to the end that all these might be clearly and distinctly exhibited to our View, the Astronomers and Geographers have invented certain Circles, by which the Globes are divided, and the several parts of them distinguished one from another. Of those things that belong to the Globes, some are common to both, others peculiar to each. Of those that are common to both, some are placed without the superficies of the Globe, and others upon it. Without the Surface are,

1. The two Poles, one of which is called the *North* or *Arctic* Pole, from the Constellations called in Greek *αρκτοι* (bears; ) the other South or *Antarctic*, as being opposite to the former.

2. The brazen *Meridian*, one side of which being divided into degrees, and passing through the Poles, representeth the true Meridian, this side ought always to be turned to the East: and it is divided into four times 90 Degrees; of which twice 90 begin to be counted from that part of the *Equator* that appears above the *Horizon*, towards both the Poles; but the other two 90 Degrees begin to be counted from either Pole, and end in the *Equator* under the *Horizon*.

3. The wooden *Horizon*, the upper part thereof resembles the true Horizon, and is divided by divers Circles; the innermost of which contains the twelve Signs of the Zodiack, each of which is divided into thirty Degrees. Next to these is the *Julian* Calendar and also the *Gregorian*, and both of them divided into months and days: the former preceeding the other by ten days: and sometimes is added the *Scaligeri-*

*an*, with the names of the Months and Holy-days, and the Golden number. In the outmost part is to be seen the Circle of Winds, or of the Quarters of the World, as they are now term'd by Mariners.

4. The *Horary Circle*, divided into twice twelve hours; of which the Twelfth for *Midday* points upwards, towards the *Zenith*, and the other twelfth for *Midnight*, towards the *Horizon*; but both these twelfth hours ought to coincide with the East side of the *Meridian*, in such manner, that the Pole carrying the horary Index, may possess the Center, and the Index it self, turned about with the diurnal Motion, may shew the hours before Noon in the Eastern semicircle, and those after Noon in the Western.

5. The *Quadrant of Altitude*, made of brass, and divided into ninety Degrees, or the fourth part of a Circle, and so fitted that one end being fixed to the *Zenith* or *Vertical* point, it may be moved and carried along the Convexity of the Globe to any point of the *Horizon*. In this Quadrant are reckoned the degrees from the *Horizon* upward to the *Zenith* or *Vertical* point; and it is therefore sometimes call'd the *Vertical Circle*.

6. The *Mariners Compass*, which is set on a *Pedestal*, under the *Meridian*, and serves to adjust the Globe to the four Quarters of the World, so that not only the *Horizon* of the Globe may answer to the *Horizon* of the world but the *Meridian* to the *Meridian*, and all the Circles on the Globe to those in the Heavens. Sometimes in the Celestial Globe there is fix'd to the Cardinal points of South and North the *Semicircle of Position*; which may be readily elevated from the *Horizon* towards the *Meridian*, to any situation: and serves to shew the beginnings of the twelve Houses (as they call 'em) of the Heavens, which the Astrologers use to distinguish by six Circles of Position. All these are to be seen without the Surface of the Globes. And on the Surface it self are these following.

1. The



1. The *Æquator*, called also the *Æquinoctial*, and sometimes the *Æquinoxial*, because twice a year when the Sun in his annual course comes, or seems to come there, the day and night are equally long all the world over. It is divided into 360 Degrees, which begin to be counted from the Vernal Section of the Ecliptick and *Æquator*, or the beginning of Aries, and are continued round the Globe till you return to the same point. Through every degree of this Circle, there is or supposed to be, a Semicircle from one Pole to the other, which are called *Meridians*, or *Circles of Longitude* on the Earth; because on the *Æquator* the Longitude of Places is reckoned. It divides the Globe into two equal parts, and is 90 degrees distant from either Pole.

2. The Ecliptick, which lies obliquely to the *Æquator*, and mutually cut each other in two opposite points. One half of this Circle declines from the *Æquator* towards the North Pole, about the space of 23 degr. 31 Min. the other as much toward the South Pole, and divide the Globe into the *North* and *South* Hemispheres. The Zodiack and Ecliptick agree in this, that they have the same Axis and the same Poles; but differ in this only, that the Ecliptick is a Circle in the middle of the Zodiack, without any latitude: and the Zodiack is rather a Zone, or space almost 20 degrees broad. It is divided into twelve Signs, and each of these into 30 degrees, as we have said before in the Chapter concerning the sphere.

3. The two Tropicks, *viz.* of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*; which are two Circles parallel to the *Æquator*, the former of which is removed as far from it as the Ecliptick is, *viz.* 23 deg. 31. Min. towards the North Pole; the other, as many towards the South Pole. They bound the Sun's Excursions from the *Æquator* towards the North and South, and enclose the Ecliptick on both sides.

4. The two Polar Circles, *viz.* *Arctic* and *Antarctic*, which are as far removed from their respective Poles as the Tropicks are from the *Æquator*. These things which we have already mentioned in this Chapter are common to both Globes, only the Ecliptick and Semicircle of Position belong properly to the Celestial; but are added to the Terrestrial for the explaining, particularly, those appearances that depend on the annual Motion of the Sun.

But those things which are peculiar to each Globe, are, 1. Circles, *viz.* in the Celestial, the two Colures, and the Circles of Latitude; in the Terrestrial, the Meridians, Parallels, and Rhombs, or Points of the Compass. 2. Representations, particularly in the Terrestrial Globe of the Earth and Seas; which are the proper subject of Geography; in the Celestial, of the fix'd Stars and Asterisms, or Constellations, which are formed of them, being in Number 48. 12 of which possess the Zodiack. There are 21 Constellations North from the Zodiack, and 15 South from it. The first are, *U-*

*la Minor, Ursa Major, Draco, Cepheus, Scioptylax, or Iota, Corona Græcæ, Hercules in Genibus, Lynx, Cygnus, Cassiopeia, Perseus, Andromeda, Triangulum, Auriga, Taurus, Equuleus, Delphinus, Sagitta, Aquila, Serpentarius, and Serpens.* The second are, *Cetus, Eridanus, Lepus, Orion, Canis Major, Canis Minor, Naviis Argo, Hydra, Crater, Corvus, Centaurus, Lupus, Arcturus, Corona Australis, Piscis Australis.*

Besides these 48 Constellations that are conspicuous to us, there are others observed about the South Pole, to the number of twelve. *viz.* *Phoenix, Grus, Indus, Xiphias, Pavo, Anser, Hydrus, Passer, Apus, Triquetrum, Musca, Chamæleon.*

The *Via Lactea*, or Milky way, is a broad white circle, encompassing the whole Heavens, and extending it self, sometimes with a double path, but for the most part with a single one. Some of the Ancients imagined, that this Circle consisted only of a certain Exhalation, hanging in the Air; but by the ingenious observations of this Age, it hath been observed to be an innumerable heap of fix'd Stars, different in Situation and Magnitude; which being only discerned by the Telescope, are not usually represented on the Globe.

After this short Description of the Globes, it will not be amiss to subjoin a short account also of the way of making These and Maps, that the Reader may the more easily and clearly comprehend the use and design of them. The easiest and most exact way to make a Terrestrial Globe, is that whereby the Points of a Globe, representing the several places of the Earth, are fixed and determined from the Longitude and Latitude of every particular place, taken by observation: for if those be once given, the place it self shall be represented by a point upon the Surface of the Globe, of the same Longitude and Latitude. But because this Method would be both slow and troublesome, and is seldom us'd but when very large Globes are made for Princes or great Men who are willing to be at the Charge, the Common Artificers take another way. They suppose the surface of the Globe to be divided into twelve equal parts by the Meridians drawn from Pole to Pole. Then upon a plain they delineate a figure like to this twelfth part of the Globe, enclosed by two Arches of a Circle (which prove afterwards to be Semicircles of the several Meridians of the Globe) and each of these twelfth parts of the Globes surface is again subdivided into lesser portions by the Meridians which are conceived to pass through every degree of the *Æquator*, and the Segments or Arches of the several Parallels. There is a twelfth part of the *Æquator* in the middle of this figure, represented by a straight line, and the Meridians meet at the Poles of it. Afterwards they take any one Meridian for the first, and from it they count the Degrees of the *Æquator*; under this first meridian they set a mark for  
that



that place of the Earth, which their Tables of Longitude suppose it to pass through; so that after they have divided the Equator into 360 parts, beginning from this first Meridian, they may count the degrees of Longitude of each place upon it, as they do those of the Latitude upon the Meridian, each Semicircle of which is divided for that very end into twelve 90 degrees, from the Equator towards each Pole. This being done, the places of the Earth are marked upon the several parts of these Plans; according to their degrees of Longitude and Latitude taken from Tables made by observation. After all this is done upon paper, they engrave so many Copper Plates in like manner, from which they print off as many Copies as they please; which Prints are afterwards pasted upon the Globes, so as all their extremities meet at the Poles; though for the most part they reach no farther than the Polar Circles: and they make one piece to represent the space contained within these Circles; the application of this one piece being easier than to make the extremities of all these twelve Plans join together and meet exactly at the Poles.

Maps are Representations of the Globe, or some of its parts, upon a Plan; and therefore they are either Universal or Particular. The Universal Map is that of the whole Earth, and in it are represented the Circles of the Globe of the Earth and the several Kingdoms, Countries, Islands and Seas in it. The Circles are the same as you see in the Terrestrial Globe, viz. 1. The Equator and its parallels, which are 10 degrees distant from each other, and are 16 in Number. The Equator is represented by a straight line that lies along both sides of the Universal Map, and is divided into 360 degrees, 180 of which are on one side of the Map, and as many on the other. 2. The Meridian and its secondaries, in number 34. It surrounds and is as 'twere a hemm round both sides of the Map, so that there seem to be two Meridians, tho' really there is but one, and if the Map is not round but square, then the Meridians are represented as straight lines. In Geographical Tables or Maps the secondaries of the Meridian are lines like to Semicircles, drawn through the Equator towards both the Poles. 3. The Zodiack is also sometimes described on these Maps, but more for ornament than use. 4. The two Tropicks and two Polar Circles; and usually the Rhombs and Seamans Compass are represented.

The Representation of places, is the same on Maps, as on the Globe: and these are either more considerable, as Countries, Islands, Seas, Rivers; or less considerable, as Mountains, Woods and Rocks: and Cities also are distinguished by their names. All these ought necessarily to be exhibited: But there are other things which are added more to please the eye, than for use, such as the Pictures of Birds, Beasts, and the several habits of People, to denote the product of these Countries;

and the habits that are used by the Inhabitants: Besides all these, in General Maps, are represented also the five Zones, the four Quarters of the World; the *Amphiscii*, *Heteroscii*, and *Periscii*, the *Antaci*, *Periteci*, and *Antipodes*: and some Maps have the Climates and Parallels, and several other things represented upon them.

Particular Maps are either greater or lesser; the former are those of the four parts of the World, viz. *Europe*, *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*; the other are those of particular Kingdoms and Countries, as *England*, *France*, *Spain*, &c. and upon these are delineated not only particular places, but also certain Circles and a scale of Miles. The great Circles, viz. The Equator and Meridian are not to be seen in the Map of *Europe*, because no part of it lies under the Equator or first Meridian; neither are the Tropicks or Polar Circles represented in the Maps of those Countries that do not lie under or near to any of these; but instead of the Equator or Meridian lines parallel to these are drawn, for finding the Longitude and Latitude of places: and these lines are drawn on the Margins of the Maps, and are divided into a proportionable number of degrees; those that represent the Equator and are parallel to it, are drawn from East to West, as those that answer to the Meridian are drawn from South to North: The former serves for finding the Longitude as the other for discovering the Latitude. In some Maps the scale of Miles is simple, that is contains only the Miles of such a particular Country, of one kind: in others it is compounded, that is, has *German*, *French* and *Italian* Miles, distinguished one from another. Cities are distinguished from Towns, Towns from Villages; Villages from Castles, Castles from Monasteries, &c. by such marks as the Artificer thinks fit: and usually he affixes a Table of them. Universities are commonly denoted by little Stars, Bishops Seats by Crosses; Forts by Turrets, &c. The Mariners Compass is also to be seen in some Maps for adjusting them to the Quarters of the World. The use of particular Maps is easily known by that of the Globe and general ones, as, 1. By the Elevation of the Pole and Longitude of the place one may know in what Zone any Country lies. 2. The Longitude of any place may be found by laying a thread or rule from the top to the bottom of the Map, so as it pass through the place. 3. The Latitude may be found by laying the thread or rule from one side of the Map to the other East and West, over the place, whose situation you would know. 4. The Map may be easily adjusted to the Quarters of the World by the help of the Mariners Compass, or Meridian line. 5. The distance of one place from another may be found by the Compass and scale of Miles, or by a thread extended from one of these places to the other, and measuring the same afterwards upon the scale of Miles. These and a great many more might be enlarged upon, but we



are unwilling to be thought tedious, and therefore rather choose to refer those who have a mind to be more fully informed in this matter to those Authors who have treated fully on this subject, particularly *Varenius*, *Adrianus Metius*, *Johann. de sacro Bosco*, and *Gulielmus Bleau*.

have said something concerning the Nature and Construction of Maps; but because these cannot be fully understood without the knowledge of the Rules of Perspective; and there being few who understand these in any tolerable measure, we were unwilling to disoblige the Generality of People, who are apt to boggle at things they have never seen before.

It would not have been improper in this place to

---

C H A P.



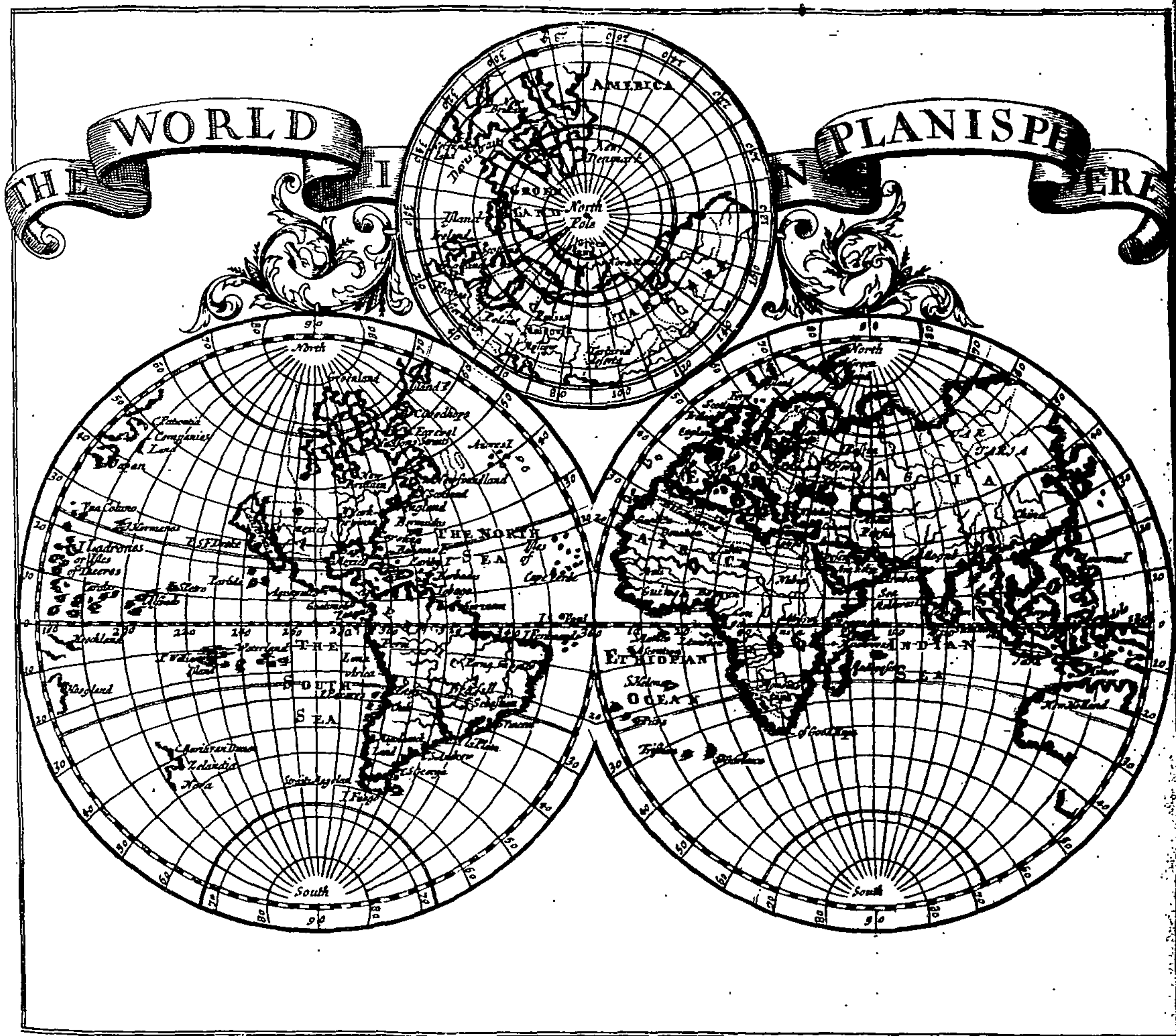
# GEOGRAPHY:

OR, A

## Particular Description

Of all the Known Parts of the

# EARTH.





# EUROPE.

## EUROPE



**O**F the Name of *Europe* the Ancients tell many fabulous Stories, and make it deriv'd from a certain Daughter of *Agenor* King of *Phœnicia*; nam'd *Europa*, whom *Jupiter* falling in Love with, metamorphiz'd himself into a Bull, and swam with her on his Back to the Island *Creet* or *Candy*. But a little to palliate this Fable, the Poetical Part is taking away by others, and the Story told, That one *Asterius* a *Cretan* Captain, making War with the *Phœnicians*, carried away this charming Princess, and sail'd with her in a Ship call'd *The Bull* to *Creet*, where he married her, and had Issue *Minos* and *Rhadamanthus*, whom the Poets make two of the Judges of Hell. This Rape is by Historians judg'd to have happen'd about the Year of the World 2660. in the time of *Gideon* Judge of *Israel*.

But whether this Lady, or any other particular Person;

or whether the small Province of *Thrace*, call'd *Europa*, gave Name to this part of the World, we must conclude with *Herodotus*, is utterly unknown. But whencesoever the Name was deriv'd, it was call'd *Europa* by the Romans, and at this time *l'Europa* by the Italians and Spaniards, *l'Europe* by the French, and *Europe* by the English; but by the Turks, *Rumeli* or *Alfrank*, *Frankoba* by the Georgians, and *Frankistan* by the rest of the People of *Asia*.

It is bounded on the North by the *Frozen Ocean*; on the South by the *Mediterranean Sea*, which divides it from *Africa*; on the East by *Asia*, from which it is parted by the *Archipelago*, the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and the *Palus Mæotis*, or *Sea of Zabacha*; and thence by a Line drawn from the River *Tanais* or *Don*, to the River *Oby* in *Muscovy*; and on the West it is bounded by the *Atlantick Ocean*.

*Europe* is seated between the 34th and 72 Degree of Latitude,



Altho Egypt be the best of the four Parts of the World, it is however more to be desired than any of them, being much to be preferred for the Mildness of the Air, the Fertility of the Soil throughout, the many Navigable Rivers, the great plenty of Corn, Cattel, Wine and Oyl, and all things necessary not only for Subsistence, but even for the Luxury of Human Life; but especially for the Beauty, Strength, Courage, Ingenuity and Wisdom of its Inhabitants; the Excellency of their Governments, the Equity of their Laws, the Freedom of their Subjects, and which surpasses all the Sanctity of their Religion.

The CHRISTIAN RELIGION is profess'd throughout all *Europe*, except that Part of it possess'd by the Turks. But by reason of the Innovations made by the Church of *Rome*, the Western Church is divided; *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, part of *Germany*, and the *Netherlands*, with *Poland*, still following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, whereas *England*, *Scotland*, *Ireland*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Norway*, great part of *Germany*, the *United Provinces* *Switzerland*, &c. have embraced the Reformation, and profess the Protestant Religion. And in *Russia*, some parts of *Poland*, in *Wallachia*, *Moldavia*, *Podolia*, *Volhinia*, and *Greece*, the Doctrine of the Eastern or Greek Church is follow'd.

The Languages of Europe are many, but are all deriv'd from these fix Original ones, viz. The Greek, Latin, Teutonic or Old German, Gothick and Sclavonick; different Dialects whereof, with accidental Additions, being the Languages of all the considerable Parts of Europe, except Tartary and Turky.

In Europe are these Sovereign Princes and States, viz.  
 The Emperour of Germany.  
 The Emperour or Czar of Muscovy.  
 The Grand Seigneur or Emperour of the Turks.  
 The King of Great Britain.  
 The King of Spain.

There are besides these, no less than 300 Subaltern Sovereign Princes in *Germany, Italy, &c.* who tho' they are Tributaries or Fiefdoms to the Emperour, or some other Superiour Prince, have Supream Authority in their own Estates: Of these there are both Spiritual and Temporal.

Several Provosties of the Church, whereof the most considerable is that of *Berchtelsghaden*.

The Dukes of Wurtemberg, Lunenburg, Mecklenburg, Holstein, Lauenburg, Weimar, &c. in Germany. And The Duke of Curland in Poland.

The Division of *Europe* into its different Regions is already set down in the *Introduction*, and will be seen more particularly in the following Description of them.



# BRITAIN.

BRITAIN, Britannia, in General.



**B**RITAIN, an Island large, populous and fruitful, is, in Longitude, about 15 Degrees and 50 Scruples; and in Latitude, in the North-part 59 Degrees, 40 Scruples; but in the South about 50 Degrees and 10 Scruples. Among the Ancients it was look'd upon to

be so considerable, that in their Writings they call'd it *Insula magna*; and *Cæsar* went yet higher, boasting That he had found another World. By the best estimate that can be taken, 'tis computed at about 1836 miles in compass, viz. from *Cathness* to the *Lands-end*; 912. from the *Lands-end* to the *Kentish-foreland*;



forland, 320. and from thence all along the Eastern-coast to ~~the~~ about 704. The Ancients differ exceedingly in their accounts of this matter, but their Authority is not much to be heeded: For few of those Writers knew the Island, and those that did had not yet such a near acquaintance with it as to take its Dimensions with a tolerable exactness.

The F O R M of this Triangular, the *Lands-end*, the *Kentish-head* and *Camelot*, shooting out into many Promontories, and making the three Corners. Its Bound, the Sea, has several Names, adapted to the several Shores. On the North, it is called the *Northern-sea*; on the West, the *Irish-sea*; on the South, the *Channel*; and, on the East, the *German-Ocean*. This advantage of the Sea surrounding it is a Security against Enemies, both against the violent Collies to which the Climate would be otherwise exposed: It supplies us both with Peace and Health. For the Tides and constant Motion of the Sea send us in a softening sort of Vapour which qualifies the natural Sharpness of the Air, even to that degree, that in some parts of *France* and *Italy* they feel more of the Winter than we in *England*.

The S O I L does, in a great measure, owe its Fertility to the same cause; the Vapours not only softening the Air, and by that means nourishing every thing that grows, but also furnishing us with early Showers in their proper Seasons. Inasmuch, that our Ancestors had a fancy, that the mist needs be the *Fertilest Island*, so much talk'd of by the Ancients; as having of all others the best claim to those agreeable Pleasures and Delights, with which they furnish'd that happy place. I know not whether it was not more the Courage and Vigour (observ'd to be in these Western Inhabitants) than any natural Cause, which gave rise to that Opinion. That the farther West, the Constitutions were more firm and the Courage greater.

That part of the Island which lies toward the Western Ocean, is mountainous, as in *Conrad's Tales*, and also many parts of *Scotland*; but the inner Tracts are generally a plain, champaign Country, abounding with Corn and Pasture. The most remarkable MOUNTAIN, is that continu'd Ridge which runs from South to North, dividing, as it were, the whole Island into the East and West parts, and is by Writers call'd the *English Apennine*.

The I S L A N D S lie round it in great numbers; some single, as the *Isle of Wight*, the *Isle of Man*, &c. others as it were in Clusters, as the *Cassiterides*, the *Orades*, and other little Slips that are scatter'd all along the Coast of *Scotland*. It has on all sides very convenient Harbours, and is accommodated with navigable Rivers in abundance, which convey the Riches of the Sea and of Foreign Nations into the very heart of the Kingdom. Of all the rest, these three are by far the most considerable; the *Thames*, the *Stern*, and the *Avon*, which carry along with them into the Sea vast numbers of lesser Rivers. Their courses, with the Towns and Cities they touch upon, are better represent'd in the Map, than they would be by an enumeration of their names.

The I N H A B I T A N T S of the several Parts, are of a different sort. Those of *Germany* and *Wales* are in a great measure the Posterity of the ancient *Britains*, who, upon the first of the *Picts* and then of the *Saxons*, bestow'd themselves to those mountainous regions, and the *Welsh*, and have ever since maintained their manners and their Language too, against the mixture of Foreigners. Of late years indeed, the *Conjugal* are come over to the

*English* in all ways of Living, and have begun to lay aside their ancient Tongue; which cannot perhaps be so plausibly ascribed to any one thing, than the great number of Representatives they return to Parliament; for whom 'tis natural to carry back with them the Humours and Inclinations of the Court, and, at their return, to set themselves in a method of Living agreeable to the Entertainments they meet with in their time of Attendance. But the *Welsh* have still continued true to the polite parts of the Kingdom; and to keep on in the old Channel, both as to Customs, Language, and other Circumstances of Life. The *Saxons* are originally *Irish*, but not without a mixture of *Picts*, who (tho' they were subdu'd by the former, and fell under their Government) could not yet be entirely extirpated, any more than the *Conquer'd* many are in other Kingdoms. *Bede* and our other Historians are very clear and positive in the matter. That the West-parts of *Scotland* were Peop'd from *Ireland*; and the *Irish*, which is their Language, puts it beyond all dispute: But the exact time when this should happen, is a point he I cannot still differ about, while the Natives are concern'd for their own Antiquity, and their Neighbours do not love to see them run up their Original too high. As for the rest of the Island, tho' the *Britains* were for many hundred years in full possession, and after that the *Romans* made a considerable figure among us; yet we cannot well imagine there is much of the Blood of either Nation among us at this day. The *Britains* indeed may with some reason value themselves upon their descent from the *Romans*, with whom, in such a vast compass of time, they could not but have frequent Inter-marriages, and so incorporate themselves as it were into one People. This they may insist upon, and by such a step be carried to the *Trojans*, (whom they are so fond of) with more reason and less vanity. But whoever considers, how the Foreign Wars under the later Emperors clear'd this Island of the *Romans*, and how the prevailing power of the *Saxons* sweep'd off the miserable *Britains*, will have but a mean opinion of our Title to a Descent from either. 'Tis true, we have more of the *Roman* Language to shew than the *Britains*, but we had it at second hand only from the *Normans*; whereas, the Remains they produce have been deriv'd to them from Age to Age, ever since their mutual Correspondence with that People. So that the *Saxons* are as far as we can go with any tolerable probability; and they, along with the *Danes* (who for many years over-ran the whole Kingdom) and the *Normans* (who conquer'd it) are the great Ingredients of our Inhabitants at this day.

And as we are a mixture of the Northern Nations and of the *French* or *Normans*, so we seem to retain something of the HUMOUR and TEMPER of both, keeping a mean between the two. The *Frenchman* is brisk, gay and airy; the *Hollander* and *German* is inactive, heavy and unweildy; the *Englishman* has neither so much of the first Qualities as to carry him to Levity; nor of the second, as make him fairly charg'd with Dulness. His Fancy does not out-run his Judgment, nor his Judgment drown his Fancy. This difference is very remarkable in two particulars, *Humour* and *Learning*. In the first, what more notorious than the slowness of the *German*, the quickness of the *French*, and the sett'd Courage and Constancy of the *English*? In the second, nothing is more apparent, than the Bulks of Lectures, and Comments, and Common places, that the first have given us; the little Whimsies and pert Epigrams that we have



have had from the second; and the solid Argument and substantial Matter which the last have sent into the World. The *French*, 'tis true, have done great Honour to Learning, under the protection of a Prince; who has established a more lasting Name, by his eminent Patronage, to that, than by the progress of his Arms. But they have this advantage, that their Language has sent itself in most parts of *Europe*, and conveys the utmost extent of their Learning, as far as it reaches. Could but our *Latin* Tongue propagate itself into as many Corners of the World, or would the great Men among us make themselves Masters of the *Roman* Style, and to pen their Discourses in a Language universally known, our Books would undoubtedly make their own way: They would carry Instruction abroad, and bring Reputation to our own Kingdom. Our Divinity, particularly, as it is grave and substantial, so it is much courted and admired by Foreigners; insomuch, that of late years we have had great numbers of *German*, *Swedish*, *Danish*, and other Nations, who have travelled into *England* upon no other design, but to inform themselves in our methods of Preaching, and by learning the Language to be capable of receiving profit by our Writings.

The State of *BRITAIN*, so far as we have any light from History, is in these times. When *Julius Caesar* came over, his short stay, and small correspondence with the Natives gave him little opportunity of informing himself in their Affairs. But when he observes, that several of the *Celts* desired to be instructed in the *Rites* and *Discipline* of the *Druids*, came over into *Britain* for that purpose, so that this was the Religion of the place. Now we build only upon that hint, after he has told us what that time 'twas a current Opinion, that the *Discipline* of the *Druids* came originally from *Britain*, and was thence transplanted into *Gaul*. This was their Religion, till the plantation of Christianity; for which their old Persuasion (which taught them to believe *One God*, and the *Immortality of the Soul*) may seem in some measure to have made way. How early it was introduced, is a point which has been much disputed among the Learned. Some will have it, that *Jesus* of *Arimatea* sail'd from *Gaul*, and preach'd Christianity among them: But that, in several particulars, looks too like a piece of Monkish Forgery. The general Tradition is, that, at King *Julius*'s request, Pope *Elutherus* sent over *Julian*, and *Medunus* to preach Christ; an Opinion which is handl'd at large by Archbishop *Tyler* and Dr. *Stillingfleet*. The latter of these is inclin'd to have Christianity very early in this Island, proving it to have been planted by no less Hand than that of *S. Paul*. The Reasons alledg'd by the particular Patrons of these Conjectures, are too many and too large for this place: The Authors themselves have deliver'd 'em at large. Upon the invasion of the *Saxon*, Christianity was confin'd to that poor corner which was the shelter of the *Britains*, and nothing but Paganism prevail'd amongst that warlike Crew; till Pope *Gregory* sent over *Austin* the Monk, who, by his indefatigable Industry laid such a foundation for Christianity, that his Successors gain'd ground apace, and in some years propagated it over the whole Nation. Such was the pious Zeal of those times, that Religion quickly receiv'd encouragement from all Hands, and Kings and Princes honour'd it with *Religious Houses* and *Churches* in great numbers. Thus it went on without Interruption, till the *Danes* broke in upon them; who, from an innate barbarity and hatred to Religion, as well as a thirst after the Wealth and Riches of those holy

Places, spar'd none of them that lay in their way, but burnt and plunder'd whatever they came near. Upon an accommodation with that People, it reviv'd and grew mightily; so that *England*, for number of *Religious Houses*, was perhaps as considerable as any part of *Europe*. Till King *Henry* the Eighth by Act of Parliament had them dissolv'd, when (quitting his subjection to the See of *Rome*) he made a Reformation of the Corruptions that had crept in among us, and established the *Protestant Religion*.

The first LANGUAGE in this Nation, was *British*, which (as the People and Religion) was driven off by the Conquerors, and succeeded by that of the *Saxons*. By the *Danish* Invasions, a mixture of that Tongue crept in among us; but did not cause any considerable Alterations, especially as to the Fundamentals, wherein they agree pretty much. But the *Norman* Conqueror, so soon as he was settl'd in his new Territories, quickly discourag'd both; and succeeded so well in his endeavours to establish the *Norman*, that before the end of *Henry* the Second, (what by contraction of the Old and interpolations of the New) we find the true native *Saxon* quite moulded into another form. For how should it be otherwise? Their publick Pleadings were in *French*, *French* was the Language of the Court, and Children were to learn no other Tongue. Thus, by degrees, (partly by reason of a fondness we have always entertain'd for *French* Fopperies, and partly because of a harshness that has been still fancy'd to run through our own Language) our Ancestors have endeavour'd to supply and refine it from the *French*, and every Age has been bringing in new Words, new Phrases, and new Dialects. So that now it makes a very great figure in our common Conversation and Writings; tho' we may still safely affirm, That the most full and significant Words in use among us, are the remains of the old Native Stock. And as it has been an unaccountable Levity in our Ancestors to affect Foreign Commodities when they had more substantial Wares at home; so would it become their Posterity to look back into the Ruins of their original Language, and try whether they cannot meet with expressions of a stronger meaning, than the loose and verbal Harangue of our Neighbours, agreeable indeed to the Humour of an effeminate Nation, but by no means suited to the masculine Genius of the *English*. This way of restoring our old Words has been of late practis'd, with good success, by an eminent Author.

## S E C T. II.

### Of the ancient State of BRITAIN.

The name *Britannia* and *Insula Britannica* were of a large extent among the Ancients, and us'd sometimes to signify all the Islands lying in this Western part of the World. But to restrain them to the more limited acception: *Britain* (as I observ'd before) was so little known to *Julius Caesar*, that, as one says, He rather shew'd it to the *Romans* than subjected it to the Empire. So that his accounts of it are short and lame, rather taken from report than any certain knowledge he could have of their Affairs. He tells us, That all the Sea-coasts over against *Gaul* were peopl'd from that Country, but that the inner parts were *Aborigines*, or sprung out o' the Ground; which is a fair Confession that he knew nothing o'



the matter. Had he drawn the In-landers from the same Original as he did the Sea-coasts, he had light upon that by Conjecture which after-Ages have found reason to advance into an establish'd Opinion. The *British* Language is so much of a piece with the old *Gaulish* (as near as we can judge by the broken remains that are left us of this latter;) the Customs of both Nations were so alike; and 'tis likewise so very natural to imagin, that after the propagation of Mankind, in their progress Westward and their quest after new Countries, out of *Gaul* they should come over into *Britain*, lying within Sight; that an impartial Judge cannot stick in this point. Let it suffice here barely to have recited the common Heads from which the Arguments for this Opinion are fetched; especially since the great Oracle of our Nation, Mr. *C Camden*, has provid'd every Particular with such a strength of Reason and Judgment as puts the matter beyond Dispute. I know the *Britains* are very proud of their original from the *Trojans*, and would fain have *Brutus* to have left his Name to the whole Island; but the same Author has considered their pretences to that Title so exactly, and convinc'd them so fully of their Mistake, that if any thing could, nothing need to be added to what he has left us. *Claudius* was the next Man that came among us, who by his own Conduct and that of *Annius Plautius*, made his way into the more inward parts of the Island, by the defeat of the *Britains*. After these, *Vespasian*, *Publius Ostorius*, and *Paulinus Suetonius*, provid'd very troublefom to the Inhabitants, who all the while omitted no opportunities of returning their kindness, by surprizing the Roman Legions, entering into Confederacies against their new Governors, and more then once breaking out into actual Rebellion. But it was *Agricola*, who under *Vespasian*, *Titus* and *Domitian*, gave the finishing stroke to the Conquest of *Britain*; not by the same methods which his Predecessors had us'd, Hardships and Severities, but by the more gentle ties of an obliging Humour. 'Tis true, he was almost continually engaging one Party or other of them, for eight years together; but unless his good Temper had seconded this success of his Arms, though he might quell them for the present, yet he had left them in an entire hatred to their Roman Lords, and a full resolution to take up Arms upon the first opportunity. By which means, the Supplies necessary to defend the Garisons, would have cost the *Romans* more than all the Revenue of the Island was worth. But he observ'd, he had a stubborn morose People to deal with; a Nation that was inur'd to all kinds of Hardship; and therefore instead of Threatnings (which could not work upon them) he betook himself to artificial Insinuations, and began to encourage the *Roman* Customs and Modes of living. This softn'd them by degrees, and melted them into Idleness and Luxury; so that in a short time, he had par'd off that aversion to the *Romans*, and happy was the Man that could imitate them most.

To the *Romans* succeeded the *SAXONS*, who came over upon this occasion. In the Reign of *Valentinian* the Younger, the Necessities of the Empire abroad, had oblig'd the *Romans* not only to recall most of their own Forces out of *Britain*, but also to deprive the Island of her own native Strength by their frequent Levies. The *Scots* and *Picts* (two Warlike People) laid hold of this opportunity to plunder the Frontiers, and make in-roads into the Territories of the *Britains*, who by this time were quite dis-

spirited by Slavery, and had suffer'd their old native Courage to dwindle into Ease and Cowardise. In this condition, all the refuge they had, was to fly to the *Romans*, who had neither left them Forces to protect them, nor (which is worse) a manly resolute Spirit to stand upon their own Guard. The *Romans* were too warmly engag'd nearer home, to relieve them; upon which they send the same request to the *Saxons*, who had convinc'd them of their Courage, by their frequent Piracies upon our Coasts, even while the *Romans* continu'd among us. So that we find under the later Emperors, the *Comes Littoris Saxonici*, or Count of the Saxon Shore, to have been a standing Officer, whose business it was to guard the Sea-coasts against their In-roads and Depredations. Upon this application, they come over, repel the Enemy, and are mightily pleas'd with their new Quarters, especially being a little straitn'd at home. In short, they begin to lay hold on all occasions of a Quarrel with the *Britains*, pretend they had not stood to their Terms; and carry on their Designs so successfully, that they never desisted till they had banish'd the old Inhabitants, and made themselves Masters of the greatest part of the Island.

The *DANES* about the year 800, though they had not so fair a pretence of coming over, yet by main force edg'd themselves in among the *Saxons*, and us'd them much at the same rate as that People had done the *Britains*. They robb'd and plunder'd, till they had forc'd them to a Composition, and had Lands assign'd them in several parts of the Kingdom. Nor would they be content with this; but made frequent Incursions into their Neighbours Territories, which occasion'd the raising of that sort of Tax call'd *Danegelt*, a Bribe to keep them from overrunning the Kingdom. But neither did this do. Their Insolence was such, that the *English* could not long bear it; so, entering into a secret Plot, they made a general havock of them in one single Night, putting them all to the Sword. At this, *Sueno*, King of the *Danes*, was highly enrag'd, and to revenge the Injury, invaded *England* with a strong Army, and possessed himself of the Crown; which was enjoy'd only by four Kings of that Race, and then return'd to the *Saxons*.

Scarce had the *Saxons* recover'd their ancient Rights and Government, but they fell into a worse Confusion, upon the Death of *Edward* the Confessor. He was an easie Prince, and rather enclin'd to attend the Duties of Religion than the Secular Affairs of his Kingdom. Leaving no Issue behind him, the Title to the Crown came to be contested by two very powerful Parties, who yet had neither of 'em a right to it; for *Edgar Atheling* was the only Man then living of the *Saxon* Line. But *Harold* Earl *Godwin's* Son, took advantage of his tender years, and possessed himself of the Throne. *William* Duke of *Normandy*, afterwards stiled the Conqueror, took these proceedings very heinously, imagining, that by his relation to that Family, by virtue of the Confessor's Promise when he was banish'd into *Normandy*, and also *Harold's* obligation to see it discharg'd, he had fairer pretensions than any other. Whereupon he landed with a powerful Army, Conquer'd the *English* in a set Battle, (wherein *Harold* was slain) and immediately took possession of the Government.



## SECT. IV.

### The Civil Government of BRITAIN.

Of the Administration of the ancient Britains, we have these two general Heads left us by *Julius Cæsar*, That in times of Peace, the *Druids* had the Conduct of all Civil Affairs; and in times of War they chose some one of remarkable Courage to be General of their Forces, upon that Expedition. The *Romans* Govern'd it by their *Proprætors* and other Sub-ordinate Officers, who were to act according to Instructions from *Rome*, and had some Legions ready for their defence upon any emergent occasion. But the *Saxons* as they gain'd Ground, settl'd so many distinct Kingdoms; which upon their Entire Conquest, amounted to Seven, and have been since stil'd the *Saxon Heptarchy*. The names of them, with their Extent and Jurisdiction, are as follows:

The Saxon Heptarchy.	1. The Kingdom of Kent contain'd	The County of	Kent.
	2. The Kingdom of the South-Saxons contain'd	The Counties of	Sussex Surrey.
	3. The Kingdom of the East-Angles contain'd	The Counties of	Norfolk Suffolk Cambridge, with the Isle of Ely.
	4. The Kingdom of the West-Saxons contain'd	The Counties of	Cornwall Devon Dorset Somerset Wilts Hants Berks.
	5. The Kingdom of Northumberland contain'd	The Counties of	Lancaster York Durham Cumberland Westmoreland Northumberland and Scotland to the Fryth of E-denburgh.
	6. The Kingdom of the East-Saxons contain'd	The Counties of	Essex Middlsex, and part of Hertfordshire.
	7. The Kingdom of Mercia contain'd	The Counties of	Glocester Hereford Worcester Warwick Leicester Rutland Northampton Lincoln Huntingdon Bedford Buckingham Oxford Stafford Derby Shropshire Nottingham Chester, and the other part of Hertfordshire.

But though these were distinct Kingdoms, yet still there was a face of Monarchy in the Nation; and the Prince that was most Powerful of the Seven, generally Lorded it over the rest, as if they had been only so many Tributary Kings. For they were continually at War one with another, and the Conqueror always taking the Dominions of the Enemy into his own Kingdom, they all came at last into that of the *West-Saxons*, under King *Egbert*; who by a publick Edict, order'd the whole Kingdom to be stil'd *Engla-land*, which we have now contracted into *England*. One of his Successors, presently upon this took the Title of *King of Great Britain*, and another that of *Monarch of all Albion*.

### The Succession of our English Monarchs from Egbert, is thus:

Came to the Crown.			
Egbert S. Ethelwolf, Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred, Alfred, Edward the Elder, Athelstan, Edmund Eldred, Edwin, Edgar, S. Edward, Martyr, Ethelred, Edmund Ironside,	800	John,	1199
	837	Henry III.	1216
	857	Edward I.	1272
	858	Edward II.	1307
	863	Edward III.	1326
	873	Richard II.	1377
	900	The Line of Lancaster.	
	925	Henry IV.	1399
	940	Henry V.	1412
	946	Henry VI.	1422
The Danish Race.	955	The Line of York.	
	959	Edward IV.	1460
	975	Edward V.	1483
	978	Richard III.	1483
The Saxons Re-possess'd.	1016	The Families United.	
	1017	Henry VII.	1485
	1037	Henry VIII.	1509
	1041	Edward VI.	1546
The Normans.	1045	Q. Mary,	1553
	1066	Q. Elizabeth,	1558
The Saxon Line Restor'd.	Union of the Kingdoms.		
	William the Conqueror, William Rufus, Henry I. Stephen,	James I.	1603
		Charles I.	1625
		Charles II.	1648
	1135	James II.	1685
		WILLIAM III. and MARY II.	1689
	1154		
	1189		



The King is Supreme in all Causes, both Ecclesiastical and Civil; having the same Power in Matters relating to the Church, that the Pope had, before this Island disown'd his Jurisdiction under Henry the Eighth. But yet he cannot enact Laws singly and by himself, but must have the Concurrence of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal and of the Commons assembled in *Parliament*, before any thing can pass into a Law. The Parliament does not meet but upon the more weighty Affairs of the Kingdom, and are both call'd and dissolv'd at the King's Pleasure, who is suppos'd to be Judge of the Exigencies of the Nation. This is the Supreme Court, wherein Causes are finally determin'd, and from which there lies no Appeal; whereas, Appeals are made to this from the other Courts.

The chief Courts are. 1. The *King's Bench*, so call'd, because the King us'd to sit there in Person; but now administers Justice by a *Lord Chief Justice*, and three more Judges, or as many as he shall think fit. 2. The *Common Pleas* (from determining *Pleas* between Subject and Subject) consists of a *Lord Chief Justice of the Common Pleas*, and three other Judges to assist him. 3. The *Exchequer* (from a Table at which they sat) where all Matters belonging to the King's Revenue are determin'd by the great Officers and Judges belonging to it, viz. The *Lord Treasurer*, the *Chancellor of the Exchequer*, the *Chief Baron* and four other *Barons*. 4. The *Chancery*, (so call'd from sitting within the Rails or *Chancels*) instituted to moderate the Rigour of the Law, which by reason of an infinite number of unforeseen Circumstances that attend a great many Causes, is too often Oppression and Injustice. Hitherto, therefore, they make their Appeals, who think themselves injur'd by the Letter of the Law: And if it appears that they have *Equity* on their Side, the Judgments given upon strict Law are revers'd, and the Parties reliev'd. In this Court is the *Lord Chancellor*, or *Lord Keeper of the Great Seal*, and twelve *Masters of Chancery*, as Assessors, the chief whereof is the *Keeper of the Rolls*. 5. The *Court of Admiralty*, where Sentence is given in Marine Affairs, by the *Admiral of England*, a Judge, two Clerks, &c. 6. The *Court of Requests* (from the Petitions receiv'd there) managed by the *Lord Privy Seal*, the *Masters of the Requests*, a Clerk, and two or three Attorneys.

The Court of *Wards and Liveries* (from taking Cognisance of the Causes of *Minors*) and the Court of *Star-Chamber* (which was chiefly to restrain the Exorbitances of Great Men, and punish Misdemeanors, &c.) are both abolish'd.

Besides these Courts, the King, for the Ease of the Subject, sends down two Judges into each County; the one of *Life and Death*, and the other of *Nisi Prius*, who are to determine Causes without putting the Parties to the Trouble and Expence of giving Attendance at the Superior Courts; except where the Case is weighty and difficult, and then it is referr'd to a Trial at *Westminster*: And as these *Circuits* were contriv'd for the Ease of the Nation in general; so for the Peace and good Government of each particular County, the King has *Lord Lieutenants*, whose Care it is that the State suffer no Damage. Each County also has it's *Sheriff*, who is to get up the Publick Revenues, to attend the Judges, to take care that such as are condemn'd be duely executed, &c. And several *Justices of the Peace*, who may Commit for *Felonies*, *Trespasses* and other Misdemeanours.

Before the Conquest, we find that *England*, according to its several Branches, was govern'd by three sorts of *LAW S*, the *West-Saxenlage*, the *Danelage* and the *Merchenlage*. For as the Authority, which the first and last of these three bore in the Hierarchy, was sufficient to establish their own Laws in their neighbouring Countries; so the Power to which the *Danes* arriv'd, did effectually engage such Places as they over-ran most, in the Use of their Customs and ways of Living. But upon *William* the Conqueror's coming in, these Laws were in a great measure laid aside. At first, he intended to have brought in the *Norman Usages*, and to have establish'd them here entire; till he found the Humour of the *English* were much set upon their own Laws, and so was induced, from a prudent Regard to his own Safety, only to Reform, Alter, Add, &c. but so, that the old Body was his Foundation. Tho' in his whole management of Affairs, he omitted no Opportunities either of Force or Insinuation, to discourage the establish'd Customs, and to wean them from the Affection they had to the Usages of their Fore-fathers. Thus, he won upon them by degrees, till he had confirm'd himself in his New Conquests, and in an absolute Power, or something that look'd very like it; especially, if we take an Estimate from his Arbitrary Proceedings towards the *English*, rather than from his fair Words, Contracts and Promises; which Conquerors, when they find them inconsistent with their Designs, seldom want either Inclination or Pretences to break and cast off. But the succeeding Kings (whether for want of Policy, or Courage, or both) found it hard to maintain themselves in that absolute manner of Government, and to complete what their Predecessor had begun. For the People began to insist upon their Liberties (whether justly or unjustly, I shall not determine; 'tis a Controversie has cost Pains and Paper enough already) omitted no Advantages of Wars abroad or Disturbances at home, whereby they might gain Ground and extort new Privileges. More especially, in the Reigns of King *John* and *Henry III.* they broke into open Wars, for the Redress of Grievances; and brought them to such Straits, that they were glad to come off by submitting to the Regulations insisted upon, and by admitting the Nobility and Gentry into a nearer Share of the Government. Whereupon, the Great Charter, call'd *Magna Charta*, was granted, and *Statutes* began to be made according to the Necessities of the Kingdom; by which, and the *Common Law*, or the common Usages of the Nation, our Law-Courts proceed at this Day, in their Judgments and Decrees.

## SECT. IV.

### *The Ecclesiastical Government.*

The Church of *England* is govern'd by two *Archbishops* and twenty five *Bishops*. The *Archbishop of Canterbury* is *Primate of all England*; the *Archbishop of York* is *Primate of England*, but not of *all England*: A Controversie which caus'd many hot Disputes and Quarrels, but was at last determin'd in favour of *Canterbury*, against all the Pleas and Arguments brought by the other for Independency and Freedom. The *Archbishopricks* and *Bishopricks*, with their Extent and Jurisdiction, will best appear from the following Scheme.



# E N G L A N D.

7

Within the Province of Canterbury, which hath part of Kent for its own peculiar

Within the Province of York, which hath

Rochester	Contains The other Part of Kent.
London	Essex, Middlesex, and part of Hertfordshire.
Chichester	Suffex
Winchester	Hampshire, Surrey and Isle of Wight, with Gernsey and Jersey.
Salisbury	Wiltshire and Berkshire.
Exeter	Devonshire and Cornwall.
Bathe and Wells	Somersetshire.
Glocester	Glocestershire.
Worcester	Worcestershire, and Part of Warwickshire.
Hereford	Herefordshire, and Part of Shropshire
Richfield and Co- ventry	Staffordshire, Derbyshire, and the other Part of Warwickshire, with Part of Shropshire.
Lincoln	Lincolnshire, Leicestershire Huntingdonshire, Bed- fordshire, Buckingham- shire, and the other Part of Hertfordshire.
Ely	Cambridgeshire, and the Isle of Ely.
Norwich	Norfolk and Suffolk.
Oxford	Oxfordshire.
Peterburrow	Northamptonshire and Rutlandshire.
Bristol	Dorsetshire.
To these add four in Wales, S. Davids, Landaff, Banchor, and S. Asaph.	

Chester	Cheshire, Richmondshire, Lancashire, Part of Cum- berland, and of Westmor- land, Flintshire and Den- bighshire.
Durham	The Bishoprick of Durham and Northumberland.
Carlisle	Part of Cumberland and of Westmorland.
Sodor	The Isle of Man.

As to the Precededcy of these, the Archbishop of Canterbury is first, York second, London third, Durham fourth, Winchester fifth; and the rest according to order of Consecration.

As in the Civil Government, the Parliament is the Supreme Court, so is a Synod in the Ecclesiastical; call'd among us a Convocation: Wherein Matters of Doctrine and Discipline are from time to time stated and determin'd; and by the King and Parliament pass'd into Laws.

The chief Courts of the Archbishop of Canterbury are,

1. The Court of Arches, where the Dean of the Arches sits as Judge.
2. The Court of Audience, where all Complaints, &c. are received.
3. The Prerogative Court, where the Business of Wills is handl'd.
4. The Court of Faculties, where the Rigour of the Canon-Law is moderated.
5. The Court of Peculiars, wherein is lodg'd a Jurisdiction over Parishes exempt from the Bishop of the Diocess.

Besides, every Bishop holds his Court within his own Diocess, and takes Cognizance of Excommunication, Censures, and other things relating to the Church.

## S E C T. V.

### The Divisions of England.

The most remarkable Divisions of England, are these three. 1. That of the Romans into *Britannia prima, secunda, Maxima Caesariensis, Valentia, Flavia Caesariensis*. The Bounds of these several Branches are very uncertain, and can only be gathered from Conjecture. *Britannia prima* seems to have been the South Part of Britain. *Secunda* probably was Wales. *Maxima Caesariensis* and *Valentia* seem to have been those Countries that lay upon their Frontiers of Scotland. And *Flavia Caesariensis* was, likely enough, the Heart of England.

2. That of the Saxons, into seven Kingdoms; whereof we have given an Account, under Sect. 3. concerning the Civil Government.

3. That of King Alfred, into Hundreds (call'd in some Parts of England, *Wapentakes*) and Counties.

Besides these, the Romans branch'd it into so many several People, the Names whereof are generally of a British Original, relating either to the Figure of the Place, the Nature of the Soil, or the Disposition of the Inhabitants. This Division cannot be more conveniently represented, than in a Table along with the Counties of England, as they stand at this Day, and fall within the Bounds of the several People.

Danmonii.	Northinghamshire,
Cornwall,	Derbyshire.
Devonshire.	Cornavii.
Durotriges.	Warwickshire,
Dorsetshire.	Worcestershire,
Belgae.	Staffordshire,
Somersetshire,	Shropshire,
Wiltshire,	Cheshire.
Hamshire,	Silures.
Isle of Wight.	Herefordshire,
Atrebates.	Radnorshire,
Barkshire.	Brecknockshire,
Regni.	Monmouthshire,
Surrey,	Glamorganshire.
Suffex.	Dimetæ.
Cantium.	Caermardhinshire,
Kent.	Penbrokehire,
Dobuni.	Cardiganshire.
Glocestershire,	Ordovices.
Oxfordshire.	Montgomeryshire,
Cattieuchlani.	Meirionyddshire,
Buckinghamshire,	Caernarvonshire,
Bedfordshire,	Anglesey, Mona.
Hertfordshire.	Denbighshire,
Trinobantes.	Flintshire.
Middlesex,	Brigantes.
Essex.	Yorkshire, West-riding,
Iceni.	East-riding,
Suffolk,	North-riding,
Norfolk,	Richmondshire.
Cambridgeshire,	Bishoprick of Durham,
Huntingdonshire.	Lancashire,
Coritani.	Westmorland,
Northamptonshire,	Cumberland.
Leicestershire,	Ottadini.
Rutlandshire,	Northumberland.
Lincolnshire,	



## C O R N W A L L.

THE County of C O R N W A L L has its Name from lessening by degrees into a sort of *Horn*: which very exactly answers the Nature and Form of that Tract; as may be seen either by the General or Particular Maps. As it lies out from the rest of the Kingdom, so had it formerly its Laws and Usages distinct from *England*. But 'tis by degrees reconcil'd, not only to the same Laws, but even to the same Language. Now, few or none among them know any thing of the old *Cornish*; having a great fondness for the *English* Tongue and Modes of Living.

Their greatest Commodity is *Tin*; which has given occasion to an Opinion that the *Phœnicians* traded thither, and left Name not only to the County in General, but to many Particular Places in it. But whatever Advantage might be reap'd from the *Mines* anciently (which probably was very considerable;) 'tis certain that the Earls of *Cornwall* have been prodigiously enrich'd by the Revenues arising from them. Nor could it be well otherwise; all *Europe* fetching their Supplies, at least the greatest share of them, from these Parts. Which vast In-comes have induc'd the Earls to grant them large Privileges; to procure them such Charters from Time to Time as might tend to the Improvement of their Trade or Convenience of Management, and to erect Courts and constitute Officers, in a Method agreeable to the Nature of the Employment, and the Humor of the People.

'Tis observable, That through the whole County, abundance of Towns are scatter'd, which have their Names from *Irish Saints*, who had come over into these Parts; and on account of their Piety and Religious Course of Life had a wonderful Veneration paid them. And after their Deaths, the particular Places wherein they had spent their Time in Devotions and Retirement, were consecrated to their Names, and had signal Pieces of respect paid them by their Neighbours.

The most Remarkable Places are

{	<i>Falmouth,</i>	{	<i>Fowey,</i>
	<i>Launceston,</i>		<i>Saltaſh,</i>
	<i>Truro,</i>		<i>S. Columbs.</i>
	<i>Wadebridge,</i>		

*Falmouth*, a Town of considerable Trade, which the Convenience of the Harbour brings to it. 'Tis a Port very Large, and withal Safe, by reason of the Creeks on all Sides, which protect it against the Violence of Winds and Storms. The two Forts, one on each Side, viz. *S. Maudit's* and *Pendinas*, render it a Place of yet greater Strength and Security.

*Launceston* or *Launſton*, on the East-side of the County (call'd in *Domesday* *Launſtaveſton*, from a College there dedicated to *S. Stephen*) is two Towns, now grown into one, and is become so considerable that the *Affizes* are always held in it.

*Truro*, a Mayor-Town, suppos'd to be so call'd from its three Streets; but especially considerable in those Parts for the more than ordinary concern that it has in the *Stannaries*.

*Wadebridge*, about five miles from *Padſtow*, is re-

markable for a Bridge of seventeen Arches, the largest by much in the whole Country.

*Fowey*, a Haven on the South-side of the County, remarkable for Sea-Fights; and has in Memory of them, for its Arms, a Compound of those of the *Cinque-Ports*.

*Saltaſh*, on the West-side of the River *Tamar*, a Town conveniently seated for Trade, well stor'd with Merchants, and endow'd with good Privileges.

*S. Columbs*, not far from the *Irish-Sea*, tho' a Place of no great Trade or Resort, is made famous by its Relation to *S. Columba*, a very pious Woman, from whom it had the Name.

## Ancient Places.

*Voluba* seems to have left its Name in our present *Falmouth* before-mention'd.

*Belerium* can be no other than the *Land's-End*; call'd also by *Ptolemy* *Ἀντιβέσσιον* or *Antiveſtaum*.

*Cenionis ostium*, cannot any where be plac'd more probably than at that large Port, the Convenience whereof we have describ'd under *Falmouth*.

*Ocrinum* (probably so call'd from *Ochr*, an Edge) seems to be that Promontory, call'd at this Day, the *Lizard*.

*Uzella* seems to have left some Remains of its Name in the present *Leſtnebiel*, which was a Place of good Note and Trade, till the Sands stopping up the River, hindred Ships from coming up to it.

*Tamara* is the River which parts this County from *Devonshire*, and likewise a Town upon it, now call'd *Tamerton*.

## Things Remarkable.

*Biscaw-wonne* (near *S. Buriens*) a Place so call'd, where are nineteen Stones set in a Circle, which by some are imagin'd to have been erected in memory of a Victory. But if we compare them with others of the same Nature, in other parts of the Kingdom; to imagine them Funeral Monuments, will perhaps be a more plausible Conjecture.

*Main-Amber* (near *Pensans*) a stone of a prodigious Bigness, which yet was so plac'd that one might move it with a Finger. In the late Civil Wars it was thrown down.

*Other-half-stone* (not far from *S. Neot's*) an Inscription, with large barbarous Letters, the Reading whereof implies it to have been a Funeral Monument. See *Camden's Brit. Engl.* p. 9.

*Wring-cheefe*; near this Place, is a large Stone like a *Cheefe*, and so plac'd between some others, that it seems to be press'd by them.

*Hurlers*, at a little distance, is a square Set of Stones, so call'd from an Opinion advanc'd by the common People, that they are so many Men chang'd into Stones for *hurling* the Ball, on *Sunday*; an Exercise for which they have been always famous. But we need not acquiesce in their Fancies, since it appears plainly enough, that these (as well as many others in this County) were Funeral Monuments; from a *Cross* discover'd upon one of them, by an ingenious Gentleman.



## DEVONSHIRE.

AS *Devonshire* in the Time of the *Remans* was included under the same common Name, *Danmonii*, with its Neighbour *Cornwall*; so in after-Ages did it share in several Privileges and Advantages. Particularly in those of the *Tin-mines*, which it had in great abundance; as the four *Stannary-Courts*, and the Officers belonging to them do plainly evince. Nay, by the best Computations which can be drawn from the Registers and Publick Papers belonging to each County, it appears that this afforded a greater Plenty than *Cornwall*. And that not only of *Tin*, but also of *Silver*; Mines whereof were discover'd about *Comb-Martin*, in the Time of *Edward I.* and did great Service to *King Edward III.* towards carrying on the *French Wars*.

The Soil of it self is Lean and Poor; but they improve it strangely, by a sort of Sea-Sand, which they sprinkle upon it: And where that is scarce, they make use of Marle, Lime, and burnt Turf.

The more considerable Towns, are,	{	<i>Tavestock,</i>	{	<i>Exeter,</i>
		<i>Plimouth,</i>		<i>Bernstaple,</i>
		<i>Totnesse,</i>		<i>Topesbam,</i>
		<i>Torbay,</i>		<i>Okehampton.</i>
		<i>Tiverton,</i>		

*Tavestock*, adjoyning to *Cornwall*, is not at present remarkable for either Wealth or Buildings; but receives all its Glory from the old Abbey, and the Laudable Custom (while that stood) of reading *Saxon Lectures*, in order to keep up the Knowledge of our old Mother-Tongue.

*Plimouth*, a flourishing Town, occasioned by the Convenience of its Harbour, for the Reception of great Ships. Which the Government observing, has pitch'd upon it as the most convenient Place in those Parts, for the Building of Ships, and has accommodated it with a *Dry-Deck*, capable of a First-Rate-Ship, a Basin before it of above two hundred Foot square, and Houses for Officers, Stores, &c. in proportion. They had a Mayor granted them by *Henry VI.* who governs the four *Wards*, into which the Town is divided; whereas before they were govern'd by four distinct *Captains* (for they so term'd them) and their inferior Officers. The Place is eminent for the Birth of *Sir Francis Drake*.

*Totnesse*, upon the River *Dert*, was formerly, a Town of great note, and accordingly had very considerable Privileges granted it by the Kings of *England*. The Condition of it at present, will not bear the Character which it formerly had.

*Torbay*, upon the Eastern Coast, has been very remarkable and much talk'd of for the Landing of the Prince of *Orange*, now *King William III.* on Nov. 5th. 1688.

*Tiverton*, upon the *Ex*, is remarkable for a good Free-School, and for its Woollen-Trade, which very much enriches the Inhabitants.

**EXETER**, the most considerable Place in all these Parts, stands upon a gentle Hill, and is encompass'd with a Ditch and very strong Walls. That the *Remans* knew it, is plain from the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, which begins here. The *Saxons* came

then into the entire Possession of it, when *Athelstan* turn'd out the *Britains*, who had not till that Time solely enjoy'd it, but had the Liberty of Living in common with the *Saxons*. As the Kings of *England* have endow'd it with many Privileges, so has it suffer'd very much from Sieges: Notwithstanding all which, it might have been more considerable than it is at this day, if the *Wears* of *Topesbam* did not hinder Ships of Burden from coming up to the City, as they formerly did. On the East-Side stands the Cathedral, built by *King Athelstan*, and by *Edward III.* honoured with the Title of an Episcopal See.

*Bernstaple*, on the *Irish-Sea*, is a neat Town, govern'd by a Mayor, two Aldermen, and a Common-Council of twenty four. 'Tis a Place of good Trade, so that the greatest part of the Inhabitants are Merchants; and is pretty eminent for a Bridge, built by one *Stamford*, a Citizen of *London*.

*Topesbam*, a Town near *Exeter*, had its Rise from the Misfortune of that Place: for upon the Obstructions of the River *Ex*, made by *Edward Courtney*, Earl of *Devonshire*, upon a Displeasure conceiv'd against the Citizens; this began to be a Place of Resort, where the Vessels landed, and from whence the Lading was carry'd by Land to *Exeter*. But in the Time of *King Charles II.* such effectual Endeavours were made towards the removing of those *Damms*, that now they carry Lighters of the greatest Burthen up to the City-Key.

*Okehampton*, so called from the River *Ock*, upon which it stands, is a considerable Market-Town, incorporated by *King James I.*

### Ancient Places.

*Isca*, mentoin'd by *Ptolemy*, is so plainly convey'd to us in the present *Ex*, call'd by the *Britains* *Isf*; that there's no Place of doubt, but this is the same River.

*Isca Danmoniorum*, is our *Exeter*.

*Moridunum*, tho' it has left nothing of the Name, seems yet to have its Meaning preserved in a Sea-Coast-Town, call'd at this Day *Seton*: For *Mor* is *Mare*, and *Dunum* a Town.

*Herculis Promontorium* is easily discover'd by the present Name *Herty-point*; of which no tolerable Reason can be given, unless we allow it to be a Corruption from that old Name.

### Things Remarkable.

*Lay-well*, is a Well near *Torbay*, which in the compass of an Hour Ebbs and Flows several Times; bubbling up now and then like a boiling Pot. The neighbouring People look upon it to be Medicinal in some sort of Fevers.

At *Withicombe*, in a Storm of Thunder and Lightning (14 Car. I.) a Ball of Fire came into the Church, while they were at Divine Service, which kill'd three Persons, and wounded sixty two; and besides, did Damage to the value of 300*l.* and upwards.

And at *Crews-Morthard*, in the same County, a like Storm happen'd, which melted the Bells, Lead and Glass; and was so violent, that it rent the Steeple: This was in the Year 1689.



The *Organ* in the Cathedral at *Exeter* is accounted the greatest in *England*; the largest Pipe being 15 Inches Diameter.

At *North-Taunton*, there is a Pit of ten Foot deep, out of which there sometimes springs up a little Brook, that continues for many Days together.

The Common People tell you, That it presage some Publick Calamity; but whether the particular Times, at which it has been observed to rise, will justify that Interpretation, I know not.

## D O R S E T S H I R E.

**T**H<sup>O</sup>' the County of *Dorset* lies much upon the Sea, yet have they not those Advantages from Navigation, or such Convenience of Harbours, as other Counties that have less Sea-Coast. Which possibly may be owing, in some measure, to the fruitfulness of their Soil, which both employs the Inhabitants, and supplies them with all Necessaries of Life; whilst Parts that are more barren send the Natives to Sea, both to employ their Time and provide a Maintenance.

The more considerable Towns are, { *Lyme*,  
                                  { *Dorchester*,  
                                  { *Shirburn*, } { *Shaftesbury*,  
                                  { *Blandford*,  
                                  { *Wimborne*.

*Lyme*, a Place of good Trade and well-stocked with Merchants, lies upon the Sea-Coast, near the Borders of *Dorsetshire*. Navigation is that which has raised it from a very mean Condition; for the Convenience whereof they have built a very remarkable Pier, which requires a great Sum of Money yearly to maintain it. This Advantage supplies it with Wealth at home; but, that which has given it a name abroad, was the Landing of the Duke of *Monmouth*, upon which occasion we frequently meet with it in the Histories of those Times.

*Dorchester*, the Place from which the whole County had its Name, must, for that Reason, have been formerly of much more note than it is at present. Its Decay probably is owing to the Revolutions of Wars; for that it has been a Place of Action, we learn both from our Histories and the Remains of Antiquity they still meet with. Of late Years it seems to have recovered itself; being thought fit to have the Privilege of a Mayor and Aldermen bestowed upon it by King *Charles I.*

*Shirburn*, upon the Edge of *Somersetshire*, derives its ancient Glory from being an Episcopal See; and its present from Populousness, and their improvement of the Woolen Manufacture.

*Shaftesbury*, seems to have been of considerable Note in the Times of the *Saxons*; in whose Histories we find it frequently mention'd. That it was built by King *Alfred*, appears by a Stone dug up out of the old Ruins; the Reading whereof *Malmesbury* has convey'd to us. It grew so considerably, that about *Edward the Confessor's* Time it had no less than 104 Houses.

*Blandford* (upon the *Stour*) a pretty Market-Town, which owes its Beauty to a Fire that happen'd in it, and burnt it down; after which it was nearly rebuilt.

*Wimborne*, upon the same River, is seated at the Foot of a Hill; being pretty large and populous. In the more early times it was famous upon the account of Religion, and the Nunnery there; But afterwards for being a Seat of War in the *Danish* Commotions,

In this County, we must also observe *Portland* an Island of about seven Miles Circumference, gaurded with a continued Ridge of Rocks running round it. The Inhabitants are not many; but the Soil afford good store of Corn and Pasture.

And on the East-side of the County, *Purbeck*, which is of a contrary Nature, being mostly Heath and Wood; but well stock'd with Fallow-Deer.

### Ancient Names.

*Durnovaria*, mention'd by *Antoninus* in those Parts, can be no other than the present *Dorchester* whether we respect the Name, the Distances, or the Remains of *Roman* Antiquity, which they trace out.

*Vindogladia* also discovers it self in the present Name of *Wimborne*; the first Syllable whereof is manifestly a Relick of the old Denomination. And the second (which implies a River) does very well answer the *Gladi*, deriv'd from the *British* *Clediau*, Swords; by which Expression they sometimes denoted the Rivers.

### Things Remarkable.

In the Isle of *Portland*, Wood is so very scarce that their common Fuel is Cow-Dung dried hard by the Heat of the Sun; which being so order'd makes a clear Fire, without any offensive smell.

*Maiden-Castle*, near *Dorchester*, is a most stately Piece of Antiquity, and appears from the Form, Contrivance, and other Circumstances, to have been Work of the *Romans*.

*White-Hart-forest*, on the Borders of *Somersetshire* has its Name from a *White-Hart*, kill'd by a Gentleman of this Country, against the express Order of King *Henry III.* For which Fact, there is yearly paid into the Exchequer a pecuniary Mulct, call'd *White-hart Silver*.

It was a pleasant Humor, and a very lucky Discovery, that happen'd some Years ago near *Wimborne*. Digging a *Barrow* or *Tumulus*, the Workmen came to an *Oven* (with an Urn in it) and one of them putting forward his Hand, in hopes of some farther Discoveries, found it too hot for him to hold it long there. 'Tis probably owing to some Miner, the same natural Heat being commonly discover'd by the Miners.



## S O M E R S E T S H I R E.

THE Countrey of *Somerset* is not so well accommodated with Harbours, as might be expected from a Tract of Ground that lies so much to the Sea. In some Parts it is exceeding Marthy; but in others affords plenty of good Corn and Pasture.

The more considerable Towns are, 

BRISTOL,	Bridgwater,
BATH,	Somerton,
WELLS,	Taunton.

BRISTOL is parted by the River *Avon*, which divides this Countrey, for some miles together, from *Glocestershire*. Its Wealth and Glory cannot be of any great Antiquity, because we find little or no mention of it in the early Times of the *Saxons*. No, nor in the *Danish* Plunders neither; which few Places escap'd, that had Riches enough to expose them to the Depredations of that People. But after the Conveniency of the Place for Trade with most Parts of *Europa*, was observ'd and understood; the Inhabitants seem to have flock'd thither, and by their good Success and Commerce to have improv'd it to that degree of Wealth and Beauty, it may justly glory of at this Day. Their Buildings are fair, the Inhabitants numerous, and their Churches and publick Edifices very Beautiful. To these Advantages, a new Honour was added by King *Henry VIII.* who made it a Bishop's See, upon the suppression of the Monasteries, and gave it for its Diocess the City of *Bristol* (a County incorporate by it self) and the Countrey of *Dorset*, formerly belonging to *Salisbury*.

BATH stands upon the same River, and has the same Dignity of a Bishop's See, but in other respects fall far short of *Bristol*. It lies low in the middle of a Range of Hills; wherewith it is very much fortified. This natural Strength of the Place was, no doubt, the reason of all those contests which the *Saxons* and *Britains* had about it, in their Engagements in those Parts. Its Name and Reputation have both the same Original; the hot Springs, I mean, arising there, which many Ages have known, but none have experienc'd so Medicinal as the present. Great numbers of the Nobility and Gentry flock thither in the Summer-time, and the Physicians begin to frequent them more than ever. Which concourse from all Parts, makes it a little strange that the City should not increase more in Wealth and Buildings. As it affords Remedies to the Sick, so does it give a great Diversion to the Antiquaries, by shewing a number of Ancient Monuments and Inscriptions, set up in the Walls. That it enjoys the Title of a Bishop's See, was occasioned by *Joannes de Villula*, Bishop of *Wells* removing his Seat thither, about the Year of our Lord 1088. Whereupon to compose a Quarrel which had risen between the Monks of *Bath* and Canons of *Wells* about the Right of Election; it was agreed among other things, That the Bishop should take his Title from both Places; tho' by others 'tis affirm'd that for some time after, he was only call'd Bishop of *Bath*.

WELLS, so call'd from the Wells and Springs in it, is situated at the Bottom of *Mendip-Hills*. It

was made a Bishop's See by *Edward the Elder*, about the Year 905, and the Bishop kept his Residence in it, till *John de Villula*, the Sixteenth Bishop, having purchas'd the Town of *Bath* of King *Henry I.* transferr'd it thither. The Place is populous, and very beautiful, whether you respect the publick or private Buildings.

*Bridgwater* (corruptly so call'd from *Burgh-Walter*, as appears by the ancient Records) lies upon the River *Parret*, and is a large and well-peopled Town.

*Somerton*, as inconsiderable as it is at present, was once the chief Town in this Countrey; as may be reasonably inferr'd from its giving Name to the whole; and from the frequent mention of it in our ancient Histories.

*Taunton*, a Town seated upon the River *Thone*, which gives it the Name, is very neat and beautiful in it self; but render'd much more agreeable by the delicate Prospect it gives us of green Meadows, and numbers of pretty Villages all round.

### Ancient Places.

*Uzella*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is an Aestuary on the West Side of this Countrey, occasion'd by the concurrence of two large Rivers, emptying themselves into the Sea about the *Stert-point*.

*Ischalis*, appears from the Coins and other Marks of Antiquity, that are dug up at *Iwelchester* (a Town upon the River *Iwel*) to have been seated at that Place.

*Aque Solis*, by the Course of the Itinerary, and the Import of the Word, can be no other than our *Bath*; especially, if we add to these Evidences, the Monuments mention'd to be found, in the Description of that Place.

### Things Remarkable.

*Ochie-hole*, a remarkable Cave in *Mendip-hills*, of a vast length; where they discover several Wells and Springs.

The *Serpent-Stones* are common at *Cainsbam* near *Bristol*.

Abundance of *Diamonds* are about the Rock near *Bristol*; being lodg'd very artificially in a hollow sort of Flint.

A Monument of large Stones, not unlike that of *Stone-Henge* in *Wiltshire*, is at *Stanton-drew* in this Countrey; but being interrupted with Buildings and Enclosures, it is not so much taken notice of as it might otherwise deserve.

*Cheddar-Cheeses* (so call'd from the Place near *Wells*, where they are made) are so large as sometimes to require more than one Man to set them upon the Table.

The *Elvers* at *Bristol* is a Dish perhaps not to be met with elsewhere. 'Tis a sort of Eel, which at a certain Time of the Year, swims upon the Surface of the Water in great Numbers. These they skim up in small Nets, and by a peculiar way of Dressing, bake them into little Cakes; and so fry, and serve them up.

Amongst the Rarities of this Countrey, *Glaassenbury* may justly be reckon'd; which by the Remains of Religion and its venerable aspect, affords abundance of Pleasure to a curious Admirer of Antiquities.



## W I L T S H I R E.

AS the County of *Wilt* was for many hundreds of Years almost a constant Scene of Action in the Wars between the Saxons and Britains, and afterwards between the several Saxon Kings; so does it afford greater remains of Antiquity than perhaps any County in *England* can pretend to. 'Tis divided into North and South; and agreeable to this Division, is of a different Soil and Aspect. The first bounds with little Hills, which are render'd very entertaining by the small Rivers gliding between; and naturally produces much Wood. The latter is a Champaign Fruitful Country.

Places of greatest Note, are { *Salisbury,*  
*Malmsbury,*  
*Devizes,*  
*Marlborough,*  
*Wilton.*

*Salisbury* is two-fold, the Old and New. Old *Sarum* was seated upon a High Hill (as most of our ancient Towns here in *Britain* are observ'd to have been) being a Place chiefly intended for Strength, and a defence against the Enemy, but what was a security against Foreigners, prov'd a Grievance to the Inhabitants; who found the insolences of the Garrison-Soldiers to be such, that they seem'd Intolerable. To remedy this Evil, and to accommodate themselves with the convenience of Water, (the want whereof had been a great inconvenience in their old Quarters) they began to remove into the lower Grounds in the time of *Richard I.* where they laid the Foundations of New *Sarum*. And immediately *Richard Poor*, the Bishop, began a most stately Cathedral Church, which at this day has deservedly a name among the most considerable Structures of this Island. The Bishop's See was remov'd to *Salisbury*, upon the uniting of *Sherborn* and *Wilton* into one, by *Hermannus*, about the year 1056. But though that may be of advantage to the place, and set it somewhat forward in its growing condition, yet it could never have arriv'd to that Degree of Wealth, Populousness and Splendor, if the Western-road had not been turn'd that way, by the Authority of some who was nearly concern'd for its prosperity. Their want of Water was amply supplied by their remove from the higher Grounds; for now every Street has its little Rivulet running through it.

*Malmsbury*, though at present a handsom Town and well maintain'd by the Cloathing-Trade, was yet formerly much more considerable on account of its Monastery. For *Maildolphus* an Irish-Scot leading here an Hermit's Life, left behind him a Scholar (*Aldhelmus*) a very eminent Man, who built a stately Monastery; whereupon the place was call'd *Mealdehmesbyrig*, and by contraction *Malmsbury*; which Name seems to be a compound of *Maildolphus* and *Aldhelmus*, the Master and the Scholar.

*Devizes*, anciently very famous for a strong Castle, the Government whereof has been thought an Hono-

rable Post by Persons of the best Quality. But now, that is quite Demolish'd; and the advantage of Peace hath given it what is much more valuable, a good Trade, a thriving People, and plenty of every thing. It is Govern'd by a Mayor, Recorder, &c. and hath in it two great Parishes.

*Marlborough*, upon the River *Kenet*, runs along the side of a Hill: It was formerly eminent for its Castle, and it is mention'd in our Law-books and Courts of Justice, upon account of the Statute made here for the suppression of Riots, in 32 *Henry III.* call'd to this day *Statutum de Marlborough*. The Keep of the old Castle is figur'd into a Mount of curious contrivance, by his Grace the Duke of *Somerset*, the Owner of it.

*Wilton* does not require a mention upon account of any Figure it makes at this day, but may justly call for that respect, as being once the chief Town in the whole County. And it might have improv'd as well as its Neighbours, had it been allow'd the advantage of the Western-road, which at first it enjoy'd. But when that was turn'd through *Salisbury*, the rise of one was the ruin of the other; and this Place has ever since been dwindling by degrees into that low condition we see it in at present.

## Ancient Places.

*Cunetio* may very probably be settl'd at *Marlborough*, the Castle there appearing from Roman Coins to be of Roman Antiquity.

*Sorbiodunum* is agree'd upon by all Authors to be Old *Sarum*. However they may differ about the original of the Name, they are unanimous in their opinion of its Situation.

*Verlucio*, keeps something of its name in the present *Worminster*, (a Town lying upon the little River *Dever-ril*;) for by chainging the (v) into (w) which without any straining may be done, and adding the Saxon Termination *myenster*, we have the Name complete.

## Things Remarkable.

*Wansdike*, or *Wodensdike*, (so call'd from the Saxon God *Woden*) is a wonderful Ditch crossing this Shire from East to West. Whenever it was cast up, the design seems to have been a Boundary or Fence, either to distinguish Territories, or to be a guard against the Enemies in this Frontier Country.

*Stone-henge* is a Monument so remarkable, that it has engag'd many Learned Pens in conjectures about its Founder's design and Antiquity. The Opinions contain'd in three or four seperate Books written upon that Subject, are drawn up, and the whole matter Stated in the new Edition of *Camden's Britannia*, page 108, whether I refer the Reader.

The Barrows upon *Salisbury* Plain, lying scatter'd here and there, afford good entertainment to a curious Traveller; and the rather, because they are of several Forms and Figures, which perhaps in other places is not so common.



H A M S H I R E.

OF all the Counties which border upon the Sea, there are few that have the advantage of so many Creeks and Havens, as *Hamshire*. By which means the South part is abundantly supplied with all the conveniencies the Sea affords. Through the whole, they have good Store of Corn, and plenty of Wood in all Parts; but what they are most remarkable for, is their *Bacon*, which is reputed to be the best in the Kingdom, and accordingly is sold into all parts.

Towns more considerable,  
are, { *Winchester,*  
                                  *Southampton,*  
                                  *Portsmouth,*  
                                  *Basingstoke,*  
                                  *Andover,*  
                                  *Christ-Church.*

*Winchester*, whether we consider its ancient or present condition, may deservedly lay claim to the first Place. For as it was of good Note in the times of the *Romans*, so under the *Saxon* Government was it the Seat of the *West-Saxon* Kings. But that which has chiefly secur'd its flourishing condition, is the Bishop's See, settl'd there very early by *Kinegils* the *Saxon*; and (which is more) never remov'd from its first Foundation, as most of its Neighbours have been, to the great damage of the Places from which they were drawn. This favourable concurrence of Circumstances was encreas'd by *Edward III.* when he settl'd here the Staple for Cloath and Wool. The Cathedral hath been from time to time enlarg'd and put under the protection of several Tutelar Saints. But its greatest Glory, is the College built here by *William of Wickham*, Bishop of this See; which supplies both Church and State with great numbers of Learned Men. The Royal Palace began by King *Charles II.* is very stately and magnificent; and the Hospital built by Bishop *Murley* for 10 Ministers Widows, is a work of great Charity and Goodness.

*Southampton* within these hundred years was a rich, populous, beautiful Place; but now by the loss of its Trade, all this Finery is gone, the Buildings decay'd, the Town poor, and the Inhabitants thin. It ought not however to be omitted amongst the considerable places of these parts, both upon account of its former Eminency, and also for the Figure it still bears in our Naval Affairs.

*Portsmouth*, after it was by Queen *Elizabeth* completely Fortified with new Works, became a place of great Note and Resort, in times of War especially: but in times of Peace, the Trade it has will hardly maintain it in the same Grandeur. And as the Place is of great importance to the Nation by its Strength, and Works of the best Contrivance; so is it of great consequence to our Fleets, being furnish'd of late years with Docks and all other necessities for building and repairing Ships of the highest Rates.

*Basingstoke* is a well frequented Market, upon the High-road.

*Andover* is a Corporation pretty large and populous.

Ancient Places.

*Regnum* can be nother than the present *Ringwood*, (lying upon the River, *Avon*) which may seem

by a fair Interpretation to signifie the *Wood of the Regni*.

*Alauni Ostium*, is probably that Mouth out of which the *Stour* and *Avon* empty themselves jointly.

*Trifantonis Ostium* is agree'd upon all hands to be the Harbour of *Southampton*, beginning at *Calshot-Castle*.

*Claufentum*, by the distances from the two Stations on each side, as it stands in the Itinerary, must of necessity be that Old Town which stood formerly near the present *Southampton*, and was call'd by the same name.

*Brage*, by the course of the Itinerary, is probably a little Country Village that lies between *Salisbury* and *Winchester*, the two Stations on each hand, and is call'd at this day *Broughton*.

*Venta Belgarum*, is undoubtedly *Winchester*, to which it has probably given the first Syllable of that name.

*Segontiaci*, mention'd by *Cæsar*, by all the Circumstances must have been those People who liv'd about the Northern limits of this County, about the Hundred of *Holshot*.

*Vindonum* we call at this day *Silchester*; though by the *Britains* it was call'd *Caer Segonte*, as being the chief City of the *Segontiaci*, just now mention'd.

Things Remarkable.

*Arthur's Round-Table* at *Winchester* is much talk'd of and admir'd as a Relick of King *Arthur's*. But that Fancy is to be reckon'd among those many ridiculous Errors which have been convey'd to the ignorant country People by Ballads and Romances, and having got such footing that 'tis hard to undeceive them. This Table is probable as old as the *Tournaments*; and it may be a good Conjecture, that it was design'd to prevent all quarrels about Precedency among the Combatants.

*Silchester*, which we observ'd but now to be the *Vindonum* of the Ancients, shews vast remains of its Antiquity and once flourishing condition. The thinness of the Corn where the Walls and Streets have run, with other Observations to be made upon the Place, afford very good entertainment to a curious Traveller.

The Isle of WIGHT.

South of *Hamshire* lies the *Isle of Wight*, about 20 Miles long, and 12 over where broadest. The North is mostly taken up with Pasturage, Meadows and Wood; but the South bears abundance of Corn. As to Ecclesiastical Government, it is under the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Winchester*; but as to Civil, under *Hamshire*. The Inhabitants are a stout sort of People, having been all along inur'd to frequent Skirmishes, by lying expos'd to the first Attacks of the invading Enemy.

*Caresbrook*, a Castle in the middle of the *Isle* of very great Antiquity. Of late Years the Imprisonment of King *Charles I.* has made it more Remarkable.

*Yarmouth* and *Cows*, both lying over against *Hamshire*, are their two Havens of greatest Safety and Importance.

The *Needles*, the *Shingles*, the *Mixon*, and other Shelves round it, are a good security to the Place against an Enemy, but very troublesome to the Seamen.

BARK.



## BARKSHIRE.

THE County of *BERKS* lying out in length from South-East to North-west, as it is accommodated all over with very convenient Rivers, so has it the advantage of the *Thames* running along one side of it. Which being navigable, is of great profit not only to the particular Towns seated upon it; but also to the whole County, the narrowness whereof gives the Inhabitants an opportunity of conveying Goods by Water, without any great inconvenience or expence of Land-carriage. This I take to be the great enricher of the County: for tho' in several parts, especially in the middle, and where it borders upon *Wiltshire*, they have good store of Corn; yet this, without the assistance of the River, could not turn to near the same account.

Towns of note,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Abingdon,} \\ \text{Windsor,} \\ \text{Reading,} \\ \text{Wallingford,} \end{array} \right\} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Newbury,} \\ \text{Hungerford,} \\ \text{Maidenhead.} \end{array} \right.$

*Abingdon* carries in its very name the character of Religion, being so call'd from the famous *Abbey* that was built there by *Cissa* the *West-Saxon*. Some modern Authors are inclin'd to think this the old *Cloveshoe*, so famous in our Ancient Histories for the solemn Meetings and great Councils before the Conquest. And the situation of the place makes it convenient enough for holding such general Assemblies, being almost at an equal distance from the several Parties concern'd. But whether this Honour belongs to it or not; 'tis certain, the Abbey grew to be so eminent and considerable, that here (as in many other places throughout *England*) it laid a good Foundation for a handom Town; which encreas'd strangely, after that *Henry V.* had contriv'd the high Road through it. *Malt* is its greatest Trade, and the *Market-House* its greatest Ornament.

*Windsor* stands in the North-west corner of this County, upon a high-Hill; from whence there is a delicate Prospect of Woods and Field all round. This advantage of situation, with its convenient distance from *London*, has induc'd several of the Kings of *England* to take a more particular delight in it, both on account of its Strength and Pleasure. The Palace is a most noble Structure, adorn'd with a delightful Terrace-walk by *Queen Elizabeth*, but beautify'd chiefly and brought to perfection by *King Charles II.* who at a vast expence, adorn'd it with most curious Paintings. *St. George's Chappel* and the noble Order of the *Garter*, instituted there by *King Edward III.* are Honours wherein the place may justly glory; the greatest Princes in *Europe* having esteem'd it a high favour to be admitted into that Society. And it was an honour to this Castle, to be the Prison, to the King of *France* and King of *Scots*, at the same time, under the powerful Prince *Edward III.* As for the Town: Old *Windsor* is very much gone to decay, upon the rise of the new one, which lies to the West of the Castle, and (as it were) under it. The growth of the Town is in a great measure owing to the Court, which the pleasure our Princes have taken in it, has drawn hither. And accordingly, 'tis easie to observe, what difference there is between its present condition, now 'tis almost

forfaken by the Court; and its state in the Reign of *Charles II.* by whose inclination to the variety of Diversions it affords, the Town flourish'd much beyond its Neighbours.

*Reading* is conveniently seated upon the River *Kene*, at a small distance from its emptying it self into the *Thames*. It was before the Conquest eminent for a strong Castle; which lasted no longer than the time of *Henry II.* by whom it was demolish'd least it should afford Refuge and Protection to *King Stephen's* Party. About an hundred years ago, *Cloth* was its greatest Trade and Employment; but the advantage of the situation upon the River has in a great measure drawn the Inhabitants from that Business, and turn'd them to the *Malt-Trade*, by which the Wealth of the Town is much improv'd. The Streets and Buildings are neat and handom; and sometimes the *Affize* are held here.

*Wallingford*, upon the River of *Thames*, was also famous for its Castle, which was exceeding strong and attempted more than once by *King Stephen*, in the civil Wars between him and *Henry II.* That which made *Abingdon* chiefly flourish, was the cause of this Town's decay, viz. the change of the High-Road. But yet for all that, the *Malt-Trade* does not only support it, but of late years has also encreas'd its Wealth, Buildings, and number of Inhabitants.

*Newbury* carries its rise and original in the very name, which implies a relation to some old *Burgh* near it; and that was *Spene*, at a little distance from this new Town. Tho' the name destroys all its pretensions to Antiquity, yet it bears figure in our modern Histories, upon account of Engagements here between the King and Parliament, in the late Civil Wars. The *Cloth-Trade* and the convenience of the River have improv'd it into a handom, pretty Town.

*Hungerford*, upon the edge of *Wiltshire*, has been all along more considerable, upon account of the Title it has for many Ages given to a very eminent Family, than for either Wealth or Neatness. In all the Country round, it has a particular reputation for the best Trouts.

*Maidenhead*, considering what time has it had for improvement, is grown into a handom Town. For its first encrease was occasion'd by building a Wooden Bridge over the *Thames*; which before that, us'd to be Ferry'd, at the expence and trouble of the Traveller. But the new Bridge, as it made the Road this way much more easie and convenient, so did it induce the Inhabitants to build Inns and provide all Accomodations for the Entertainment of Strangers.

## Ancient Places.

*Gallewa* was undoubtedly our *Wallingford*, as appears both from the course of the *Itinerary*, the remains of the old Name in the present, and the ancient grandeur and largeness of the Town.

*Spine* is now an inconsiderable Village, about a mile from *Newbury*; which carries the old name in its present *Spene*, and has also left the remains of it in a part of *Newbury*, still call'd *Spinham-Lands*.

*Bibroci*, also, a People in those Parts, may seem to have left something of the name in the present *Bray* near *Maidenhead*.



SURREY.

THE County of *Surrey*, (as we call it at this day) lyes all a long upon the South-side of the River of *Thames*; from which Position, it has the Name. For, what our Age has contracted into *Surrey*, was call'd by our Fore-fathers *Sutbrige*. That part of the Country which borders upon the *Thames*, is so adorn'd with a mixture of Woods, Meadows, and fair Buildings, that nothing can be more Entertaining: The other parts are Fruitful enough, though not so Pleasant.

More considerable Towns, are, { *Southwark*,  
*Guildford*,  
*Kingston*,  
*Richmond*,  
*Lambeth*,

*Southwark*, (so call'd from its Southerly Situation, with respect to *London*) by its near intercourse with that noble City, has improv'd it self into a flourishing condition, not only beyond all other Places in this County, but equal to most of our Cities in *England*. Before the building of the Bridge, their Commerce was maintain'd only by Ferrying; but upon erecting a Wooden-bridge, it seem'd to be a sort of Suburbs to *London*; and lastly, by the stately Stone-bridge of 19 Arches, (upon which the buildings are continu'd like a street) one would think it a Part of the City. Accordingly, in the Reign of *Edward VI.* it was annex't to *London*; and by vertue thereof the Inhabitants had a Power granted them to use all such Laws within their Burrough, as the Citizens did within their City.

*Guildford*, (for so it is commonly pronounc'd, though written *Guldford* and *Guildford*) is seated upon the River *Wye*, and is a populous Market-Town: I know not whether we may attribute its growth, in some measure at least, to the Benefaction of Sir *Richard Weston*; by whose Industry, principally, the River upon which it stands, was made Navigable. 'Tis certain that all this part of the Country is very much en-

gag'd to the first Contrivers, since they receive such considerable advantage from it.

*Kingston* upon *Thames*, has its Name from the Solemn Coronation of three Saxon Kings, *Athelstan*, *Edwin*, and *Ethelred*, in the Danish Wars. 'Tis a Market-Town, not very large indeed, but populous and of good resort.

*Richmond*, hard by, has been particularly pitch'd upon by several of our Kings, for their Diversion and Pleasure, whenever the Affairs of the Nation would give them leave to retire.

*Lambeth*, over against *Westminster*, upon the River of *Thames*, has all its Reputation from the Palace of the Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*, which is very large and stately. It has belong'd to them successively ever since Arch-Bishop *Baldwin*, obtain'd a Manour in this Place by exchange with the Bishop of *Rocheſter*, about the year 1183.

We meet with none of the old Stations in this County; the *Noviomagus*, (which Mr. *Camden* places at *Woodcot*) being more conveniently settl'd in *Kent*.

Things Remarkable.

The *Mole* (a considerable River) in two several places goes under Ground for some space; particularly, for 2 miles together, near *Whitchill*; from whence the Place is call'd the *Swallow*.

At *Albury* the *Hypogæum*, or *Perforation*, made through a mighty Hill, and design'd for a Coach-passage, is Remarkable and Surprising.

*Epsom-Wells* have been in so great request of late years for their Mineral-waters, as to cause a considerable increase of Buildings, for the Entertainment of Gentlemen resorting thither, for their Health or Pleasure.

A *Skeleton* 9 Foot 3 Inches long, taken up in the Church-yard of *Wotton*, and distinctly measur'd, may justly be reckon'd among the Remarkables of this County.

SUSSEX.

*Sussex*, (or as it is more truly written, *South-sex*) derives its name from the ancient Inhabitants, the *South-Saxons*, who had that denomination with respect to the *East-Saxons*. The Downs take up the Sea-coast; the middle consists of Meadows, Pastures, and Corn-fields; and the more Northerly part of it abounds with Wood. The Iron-works turn to good account; as did formerly the *Glass-Houses*; but now the latter are quite laid aside.

More considerable Towns are, { *Chicheſter*,  
*Arundel*,  
*Lewes*,  
*Rye*.

*Chicheſter*, in its Saxon name, *Ciſſanceaſter*, discovers its first Founder, viz. *Ciſſa*, Son of *Aella*, who

sett'l'd the Kingdom of the *South-Saxons*. Notwithstanding which Antiquity, we do not find that it flourish'd very much till the Conqueror's time, when the Bishop's See was remov'd from *Selfey* to this Place; where it still continues in a good condition. The City had undoubtedly been much more Wealthy, Large and Populous, if the conveniency of the Harbour had seconded the advantage of the Bishop's See. But the Haven is of it self not very commodious; and is also at too great a distance.

*Arundel*, owes its Name and Reputation more to the Castle and its Earls, than either the populousness of the Town, or wealth of the Inhabitants. The Castle was a place of great strength, and of considerable moment in our Wars; and the Earls, Persons of great Worth and Honour. But though the condition of



of the place will not answer either the figure it makes in our Histories, or the reputation it has in the opinion of Strangers; 'tis however a Market-Town, and sends two Burgesses to Parliament.

*Lewes*, at a little distance from the Sea, is seated upon a rising ground, and is a Town of good Note: Tho' anciently it seems to have been more considerable. For when King *Alfred* settl'd *Mints* in the more eminent Towns of the Kingdom, he pitch'd upon this place for one, and gave it two *Minters*.

*Rye*, upon the Sea-Coast, joyning to the County of *Kent*, owes its rise to the decay of its Neighbour *Wincheſea*. For the Sea, in those parts, does as it were dispose of its wealth among the Coasters, according to the several ages. So that by its breaking in one while and retiring another, they enjoy the advantage of it in their turns, *Rye* has flourish'd by its kindness these many ages, in Buildings, Navigation, and Fishing; whilst many of its Neighbours are ready to starve, and are daily drawing towards ruine.

#### Ancient Places.

*Portus Adurni* (the place where the *Expeditores* kept watch against the Saxon Pirates under the later

Emperours) must be upon this Coast. And we cannot pitch upon any part with greater probability, than *Ederington*, a Little Village, which seems still to retain something of the old Name; and besides, is a very convenient place for Landing. Which indeed in our present search, is a circumstance of great moment since those *Guards* upon the Sea-Coast, were set to hinder the Pirates from Landing; and by consequence must have been fixt where the shore was most convenient for that purpose.

#### Things Remarkable.

It was a pleasant humour of *John de Camois* Lord of *Broodwater* in this County, in *Edward* the First's time to make over his own Wife to Sr. *William Painell*, by Will, in the same manner as Men bequeath their Goods and Chattels.

The Arch with the Inscription, at *Lewes*, in the little demolish'd Church near the Castle, is well worth the sight of a curious Traveller, if there be any thing left of that ancient Building, But if Time has destroy'd it the best information we can have, is from Mr. *Camden* draught, which he has given us in the *Britannia*, under his Discription of this place.

## K E N T.

AMONGST the Counties of *England*, no one can pretend to lead us so far back into its Antiquities, as this of *Kent*. In all Revolutions, this has had the first share: The *Romans* made their first Attempts upon it; and *Julius Caesar* has left us a general account, in what condition he found them at that Time. Their Successors, the *Saxons*, after Depredations, Piracies, and at last open Violence, establish'd their first Kingdom in this Corner, about the Year 456. The *Norman* too (if we may believe a Tradition, which is not grounded upon much Evidence from History) had it particularly in his Eye; and had us'd it as he did the rest of the Kingdom, but that they obtained the Continuance of their Ancient Customs and Usages, by a notable Stratagem.

Nor could it well be otherwise: For as their Situation exposes them to the immediate Attempts of Foreigners; so do the Riches and Fruitfulness of their Country invite them to a settlement there before any other Part. The Soil is exceeding rich; so that they abound with excellent Corn-Fields, Meadows, and Pastures. They have Apples also, and Cherries in great abundance; which turn to better account here than in other places, by reason of their nearness to *London*, whither they sell them by whole-sale. Besides this Fruitfulness of the Soil, which furnishes them with most Necessaries; they are supply'd with what conveniences our foreign Trade brings in, by their Harbours and noble Rivers.

More Remarkable Places are, { *Canterbury*, { *Deptford*,  
                                  { *Rochester*, { *Maidston*,  
                                  { *Dover*, { *Romney*,  
                                  { *Greenwich*, { *Chatham*,

*Canterbury*, upon the River *Stour*, as it is the principal City in those parts, so is it the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom. For upon the conversion of the Saxons to the Christian Faith, *Ethelbert* King of *Kent* gave this Place to *Austin* the Monk; who was made Arch-Bishop of the *English*, and so fixt his See here. And here it has continu'd ever since; save that for a

little while it was remov'd to *London* (the chief City of the Kingdom;) but in honour and memory of *St. Austin*, it was return'd to *Canterbury*. The Church that is most eminent, is *Christ-Church*; for *St. Austin* (built below the City for a burying-place for the King of *Kent* and the Arch-Bishops, when it was not lawful to bury in Cities) is laid in its own ruins; by which we may still perceive what a stately Fabrick has once been. The City is populous and wealthy; having in it abundance of *Walloones* and *French*; the first of them settl'd here in the time of Queen *Elizabeth*, and brought along with them the Art of Weaving Silk the second came over of late years, upon the persecution of *Lewis* the XIV.

*Rochester*, is the other City of this County, being made an Episcopal See by the same *Athelbert* that gave *Canterbury* to *St. Austin*, upon his Conversion to the Christian Faith. The situation of it, is low, and the bounds narrow, but the Suburbs make it pretty large. Anciently, it was of great note for its Castle, which the nature of the place render'd exceeding strong: So that when *Odo* held it against *William Rufus*, nothing could bring him to a surrender but want of Provisions. The noble Stone-bridge (through which the *Medway* runs with a most hideous noise) was built, upon *Simon Montfort's* cutting down the Wooden one, in his attempts upon this place.

*Dover*, next these two, makes the greatest figure in our Histories; not for its extent or riches, but the convenient passage it affords into *France*. It has also a Castle of great strength; and was Anciently accounted of so much importance, as to be commonly called the Key of *England*, without which it was impossible for Foreign Enemies to make their way, with any advantage, into this Nation. Upon this account *William* the Conqueror took particular care to have it well fortified and guarded; distributing vast quantities of Land to his Soldiers, purely for that Service. The Port was built by *Henry VIII.* and repaired by Queen *Elizabeth* at vast expence, after the Sea had begun to break in upon it.

*Greenwich*



*Greenwich*, lying upon the *Thames*, is remarkable for its *Royal Seat*, built by *Humfrey Duke of Glocester*, and enlarg'd by King *Henry VII.* and is a place much celebrated in our Histories for giving Birth to that most excellent Princess, Queen *Elizabeth*.

*Deptford* is at a little distance, and draws its reputation from the noble *Dock* and other Accommodations for building and repairing of Ships; whereby it is of great use and importance to the *Royal Navy of England*.

*Maidston*, (so call'd from the *Medway* upon which it lies) is a pleasant populous Town, and seems to have been formerly of greater eminence than its Neighbours, as being the *Shire-town*, where the *Assizes* are generally held. Unless, possibly, the convenience of its situation, almost in the middle of the County, may have been the principal means of procuring that honour.

*Romney*, lying near the Sea-Coast to the South-East, was formerly very considerable both for its Harbour, and the Sea-Services done by the Inhabitants to the Crown. But when the Ocean overflow'd these parts, in the Reign of *Edward I.* and remov'd the passage of the River another way, it began to forsake the Town, and by consequence to rob it by degrees of its former glory.

*Chatham*, near *Rocheſter*, is eminent for the station of the *Navy-Royal*; and has been much more so since the improvements of *Docks*, *Launches*, *Store-houses*, &c. made by King *Charles II.* and King *James II.* 'Tis also remarkable for its Fund of *Naval Charity*, for the support of Persons wounded in the Sea-Service; establish'd in the Year 1588. under the Title of the *Chest at Chatham*.

#### Ancient Places.

*Vagniacæ*, by the course of the Itinerary, must be *Maidstone*, especially if *Noviomagus*, the next Station on one Hand, may be fix'd at *Hollowood-hill*, and not at *Woodcot* in *Surrey* (as Mr. *Camden* imagins.)

*Durebrovii* is agreed on all hands to be *Rocheſter*.

*Regulbium*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, has left the express Remains of its Name in our present *Reculver*; which also demonstrates its Antiquity by the *Roman Coins* discover'd thereabouts.

*Durovernum* is beyond all dispute to be settl'd at *Canterbury*.

*Durolenum* seems to fall in (as to the sound) with *Lenham*; which yet is too far out of the Road; and has nothing to support it, besides the bare similitude of Names. *Bapchild* lies directly in the way, and does not want either Antiquity or a due distance to answer the Itinerary; which has induc'd a modern Author to remove the Station thither.

*Cantium Promontorium*, is the *Kentish-foreland*.

*Dubris*, by the present name and the circumstances of the place, can be no other than *Dover*.

*Anderida*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, has been by some fix'd at *Newenden*, by others at *Hastings* or *Pemsey* in *Suffex*. Indeed the names mention'd in that Book, wanting the assistance of the *Distances*, are very hard to find out; having no other Directions, but barely their situation upon the Sea-coasts; which we infer from the use of them, viz. to be a Guard against the Invasion of *Pyrats*.

*Lemanis* is, by Mr. *Camden*, plac'd at *Strutfall-Castle* near *Hirthe*; but by Mr. *Somner* at *Romney*.

*Noviomagus*, by the *Distances* in the Itinerary, must be brought much nearer *Maidstone* than *Woodcot* in *Surrey* is, where Mr. *Camden* fixt it. The discovery of a large *Roman Camp* upon the River *Ravensbourn* (which empties it self into the *Thames* near *Greenwich*) makes it probable enough that the old *Noviomagus* ought not to be sought in another place.

*Riburupia*, is the same as our *Richburrow*; which daily shews the Marks of its Antiquity; viz. *Roman Coins of Gold and Silver*.

To these we may add the Island, which *Solinus* (according to different Copies,) calls *Thanatos* and *Athanatos*, from whence the present name of *Thanet* is deriv'd. This made by a division of the Waters of the River *Stour*, near its entrance into the Sea, and is about eight miles long and four broad. The Soil is a white Chalk, which produces Hay and Corn in great abundance.

*Totianis Insula* is probably *Shepey*.

#### Things Remarkable.

The vast Pits near *Feverſham*, narrow at the top but within very large, are thought to be some of those out of which the *Britains* us'd to dig Chalk to manure their Grounds. Which seems a more probable Opinion, than that the *Saxons* should contrive them, in imitation of their *German Ancestors*, for a sort of Granary wherein to protect their Corn and Goods against the violence of Cold and Plunders of an Enemy.

Below *Greenwich*, there is a great plenty of *Scurvy-grass*.

*Bromley Hospital*, built by the right Reverend Father in God Dr. *John Warner*, for the maintenance of twenty poor Ministers Widows, is a most noble Foundation, and may well serve for a Pattern to Persons who are dispos'd to settle such Charities in other Places.

The *Royal Observatory* at *Greenwich*, furnish'd with all sorts of Instruments for *Astronomical Observations*, and a *Dry Well* for discovery of the Stars in the day-time, is very curious.

*Tunbridge Wells* have of late years been found so useful for carrying off several Distempers, that the great resort of Gentry has caus'd the building of a good number of Houses near the place; and of a Chapel, wherein Prayers are read twice a day during the Season.

*Gavel-kind* is a Custom peculiar to this County; whereby all Lands are divided equally among the Males; and in default of them, among the Females. They would derive this and other Privileges from their Composition with *William the Conqueror*; which Opinion is yet stiffly oppos'd by their Learned Country-man Mr. *Somner*, in his excellent Treatise upon that Subject.

The *Cinque-Ports* are a Constitution not to be met with in other places, being five Ports under the Constable of *Dover-Castle*, establish'd by *William the Conqueror* for the better security of this Coast. The Ports are *Hastings*, *Dover*, *Hirh*, *Romney* and *Sandwich*; which, upon account of their Sea-Services, enjoy several Immunities; their Governor is styl'd Lord Warden of the *Cinque-Ports*.



## GLOCESTERSHIRE.

THE County of GLOCESTER, according to its several parts, has a different Soil and Appearance. In the East, 'tis hilly; in the West, woody; and in the middle, a sweet fruitful Vale. The middle parts are much indebted to the *Severn*, which runs along for forty miles together, bringing in Necessaries from abroad, and conveying the Native Commodities into Foreign Parts. The Western Tract was one continu'd Wood, thick and unpassable; but the discovery of the Veins of Iron (which requires vast quantities of Wood to support them) has made it much thinner.

The more remarkable Towns are, { *Glocester,*  
*Tewkesbury,*  
*Cirencester,*  
*Camden,*  
*Winchcomb.*

GLOCESTER, the principal place in this County, is a Town well-built, beautify'd with many fair Churches, and exceeding well provided with Hospitals for the maintenance of their Poor. The *Severn*, along which it is stretch'd, secures it on one side, and it has Walls to defend it on others. About the time of *William* the Conqueror, *forging of Iron* seems to have been the Business of the Town; since *Domesday* tells us, That the Tribute requir'd of them, was a certain quantity of Iron-bars. It has had its misfortunes both from Wars and Fire, but still rose again and flourish'd, at length *K. Henry VIII.* made it an Episcopal See; which at this day is its greatest Glory.

*Tewkesbury*, seated at the meeting of the *Severn*, the *Avon*, and another little River, is a large beautiful Town, the great Business whereof is *Woollen-draw*. In the Histories of our Nation 'tis mention'd upon account of the Battle between the Houses of *York* and *Lancaster*, wherein the latter Party was almost entirely defeated.

*Cirencester*, call'd commonly at this day *Ciciter*, was of good note both under the *Romans* and *Saxons*. Its eminence among the first is discover'd by ancient *Coin*, *Pavements* and *Inscriptions*; and the

frequent mention of it in the *Saxon Histories* make it probable that it bore some considerable Figure among the latter. Add to this, the extent of the Town, which has formerly been two miles round; but now not above a fourth part of that compass is inhabited. They have also had three Parish Churches, of which only one is left, very fair indeed and large.

*Camden*, in the North part of the County on the edge of *Worcestershire*, is a good Market-town, famous especially for the *Stocking Trade*. The South Isle of this Church is adorn'd with several most noble and curious Monuments of Marble.

## Ancient Places.

*Abone* appears by its situation upon *Severn*, its distance from the next Station, and most of all from the present name, to be that which we call at this day *Aventon*.

*Trajectus*, where they Ferry'd over the *Severn*, was probably at *Oldbury*; which both carries Antiquity in its name, and is situate over against *Abone*.

*Corinium*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*, was our *Cirencester*.

*Glevum* is agreed by all to be the present City of *Glocester*.

## Things Remarkable.

The *Whispering-place*, in the Cathedral of *Glocester*, is a Curiosity much talk'd of and admir'd by Travellers. 'Tis a Wall built so in an Arch of the Church, that if you whisper never so low at one end, another that lays his Ear to the other end shall hear each distinct Syllable. Which yet the more knowing Inhabitants affirm to be purely accidental, and not the effect of any curious contrivance.

Stones like *Cockles* and *Oysters* are found about the Head of the River *Avon*, or the Hills near *Aldersey*.

In some parts of the County, they had formerly a Custom very unaccountable, That the Lands of condemn'd Persons should be forfeited to the King only for a year and a day, and after that return to the next Heirs; but 'tis now quite abolish'd.

## OXFORDSHIRE.

THE County of OXFORD is accommodated with three large Rivers, which answer the Necessities of its several parts. The *Thames* supplies the South and West, the *Tame* the East, and the *Cherwell* the middle. The two last empty themselves into the first, and are carried with it in one Chanel into the Ocean. The bottoms of this Shire abound with Meadows and Corn-ground; the Hills are well stor'd with Wood; but were much more so before the Civil Wars between the King and Parliament.

The more considerable Places, are { *Oxford,*  
*Woodstock,*  
*Banbury,* } { *Dorchester,*  
*Henley.*

OXFORD, as it gives its name to the whole County, so is it upon several accounts very eminent: The Air is sweet and healthful, the Prospect on all hands very pleasant; the private Buildings are neat, and the publick sumptuous, But that which gives it a Reputation, not only above its Neighbours, but above all other places in the Kingdom, is, One of the most noble Universities in the whole World. The Constitution whereof is so regular, the Discipline so strict, the Endowments so plentiful and convenient for Studies; and, in a word, every thing so agreeable to the education of Youth, that we need not wonder it should daily send abroad such numbers of learned Men, for the Service of Church



Church and State. Of what Antiquity it is, I shall not pretend to determine: Whole Volumes have been writ upon that Subject already. Let us thank Providence, that 'tis in such a flourishing condition at present, and leave the nice Disquisition of what it has been, to others. The following Scheme will afford the best view of its State and Increase, in the several Ages.

Colleges,	Founders.	King's Reigns,
University,	King <i>Alfred</i> .	<i>Alfred</i> .
Baliol,	Sir <i>John Baliol</i> .	<i>Henry III.</i>
Merton,	<i>Walter Merton</i> .	<i>Edward I.</i>
Oriel,	<i>Edward II.</i>	<i>Edward II.</i>
Exeter,	<i>Walter Stapledon</i> .	<i>Edward II.</i>
Queens,	<i>Robert Eglesfield</i> .	<i>Edward III.</i>
New-College,	<i>Wm of Wickham</i> .	<i>Edward III.</i>
Lincoln,	<i>Richard Fleming</i> .	<i>Henry VI.</i>
All Souls,	<i>Henry Chicheley</i> .	<i>Henry VI.</i>
Magdalen,	<i>William Wainfleet</i> .	<i>Henry VI.</i>
Brazen-nose,	<i>William Smith</i> .	<i>Henry VIII.</i>
Corpus Christi,	<i>Richard Fox</i> .	<i>Henry VIII.</i>
Christ-Church,	<i>Henry VIII.</i>	<i>Henry VIII.</i>
Trinity,	Sir <i>Thomas Pope</i> .	<i>Queen Mary.</i>
S. John's,	Sir <i>Thomas White</i> .	<i>Queen Mary.</i>
Jesus,	<i>Queen Elizabeth</i> .	<i>Qu. Elizabeth.</i>
Wadham,	<i>Nicholas</i> } and } <i>Wadham</i> .	<i>James I.</i>
Pembroke,	<i>Dorothy</i> } <i>Thomas Tisdal</i> .	

All these are well endow'd with Fellowships, Scholarships, &c, The Halls (where Gentlemen live upon their own Expences) are Seven,

<i>Glocester,</i>	} }	<i>Alban,</i>
<i>S. Edmund,</i>		<i>S. Mary,</i>
<i>Magdalen,</i>		<i>New-Inn.</i>
<i>Hart,</i>		

The Danes, who were a rude unpolish'd People, enemies to Learning, Religion, and every thing that was Honourable, sack'd and burn'd this place among others, in their Ravages through the Kingdom. And about the Reign of King *John*, (at which time 'tis said there were three Thousand Students, who lodg'd up and down in the Town,) the Scholars were heavily afflicted with the rude carriage of the Citizens, and retir'd great numbers to *Reading*, *Cambridg*, *Salisbury*, and other places: But about *Henry* the Third's Reign, and so downward, (as pious Persons built Colleges and Halls for the entertainment of Students) they began to be less dependent upon the Town; especially being supported with good Revenues, as well as accomodated with convenient Lodgings.

The chief of its publick Buildings are,

1. The Schools a noble stately Pile of Building, wherein Exercise for the several Degrees are performed, the publick Lectures read, &c.

2. The Library, built by Sir *Thomas Bodley*, and commonly call'd the *Bodleian* Library; famous throughout *Europe* for its prodigious Stock of Books, both Printed and Manuscript.

3. The Theater; a Magnificent Work, and of admirable Contrivance, Built by the Right Reverend Father in God, *Gilbert Sheldon*, Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*.

4. The Museum, commonly call'd *Ashmole's Museum*, is a neat Building; the lower part whereof is a Chymical Elaboratory; and the upper, a Repository of Natural and Artificial Rarities.

*Woodstock*, distant from *Oxford* about 6 miles to the North, by its name implies a situation in a woody part of the Country; and accordingly its greatest Reputation has been the Park, along with a Royal Seat built there by King *Henry I.* who probably was induc'd to pitch upon this place for the convenience of Hunting; a Diversion much us'd and admir'd by our Fore-fathers. At present the Town is not very populous, nor the Trade considerable.

*Banbury*, on the edge of *Northampton-shire*, is a pretty large Town; and is principally known upon account of its excellent Cheese.

*Dorchester* lyes upon the River *Tame*, at the other end of the County; and is a place of great Antiquity and Dignity: For, as it seems to have flourish'd under the Romans, so had it the honour of an Episcopal See under the Saxons; till in *William* the Conqueror's Reign, that was Translated to *Lincoln*. The removal of the See, and the turning of the High-road another way, have left scarce any Image of its former Grandure.

*Henly* stands in the utmost Limits of this County, Southward; and is a Town of good Wealth and Buildings. The growth of it has probably been owing to its situation on the River of *Thames*; and partly also to the Passage over the same River by a Wooden-bridge, which drew Travellers that way.

#### Ancient Places.

*Ancalites*, a People mention'd by *Cæsar*, seem to have liv'd in these Parts; and 'tis probable, by the Circumstances, that were seated about the South-corner of the County; and that *Henley* was their chief Town; especially if it may be allow'd so much Antiquity, as some are willing to grant it.

#### Things Remarkable.

*Rolle-rich-stones*, in the Western part of this County, are a number of huge Stones plac'd in Circle, which some have thought to be Monuments of a Victory; others, a Burying-place; and again, others, a place for the Coronation of the Danish Kings. See Plot's *Oxfordshire*, p. 342.

The Labyrinth made by King *Henry II.* at *Woodstock*, for his Fair *Rosamund*, is much talk'd of; tho' now nothing is to be seen of it.

*Astrop-Wells* near *Banbury*, have been much resorted to of late years by the Nobility and Gentry.



## B U C K I N G H A M S H I R E.

THE County of *Buckingham* (so call'd probably from great numbers of *Bucks* in this Woody Country) is for many miles together extended from North to South. The *Chiltern* is one part of the County; which is a continu'd Ridge of Hills; and below them, lies the other Branch call'd the *Vale*, being a pleasant champain Country, consisting of Meadows, Pastures and Corn-grounds.

The more considerable  
Towns are, { *Buckingham*,  
                          *Alisbury*,  
                          *Wickham*,  
                          *Stony-Stratford*.

*Buckingham* gives name to the whole County, and is at present a Town of good Note; though anciently it was not very considerably, if we may go by the computation of *Hides* and *Burgeses* in *Domesday*. I know not whether the strength of the place, may not be the reason why it made so considerable a Figure, when the Houses were few, and the Inhabitants thin. 'Tis certain the Castle (now quite gone) was built a good while before the Conquest; and Nature too has in some measure contributed towards its Safety, by surrounding it on all sides but the North, with the River *Ouse*; which must needs make it a valuable Refuge in those troublesome and warlike Times.

*Alisbury* was also a place of Note, in the beginning of the *Saxons*; being taken from the *Britains* about the year 572. At present it is a large and populous Market-Town, pleasantly seated in the midst of Meadows and Pastures, wherein are fed prodigious numbers of Sheep.

*Wickham*, in the Road between *Oxford* and *London*, is a large populous Corporation, well built, and

of good Trade. It has a throng Corn-market; and the Woods all round bring in considerable Revenues yearly, by supplies sent to the neighbouring Counties; some of which are hard enough put to it for Fuel.

*Stony-Stratford*, in the North part of the Shire, takes its name from the *Stony-Ford* that led over the River, at that Place. 'Tis a good large Town, in the middle whereof stands the Cross, erected by King *Edward I.* to the Memory of Queen *Eleanor*.

## Ancient Places.

*Pontes*, by the course of the Itinerary, must be somewhere about *Colebrook*; for if that Guide were wanting, the condition of the place would naturally point this out in our search after the old name: For, where should we search for it, but at a division of the River into four Channels; over each of which there is a Bridge, within a very little space one from another?

*Leodorum* does not discover it self by the same evidence, but yet seems plainly enough to be *Stony-Stratford*, both upon account of its Situation upon the Military way, and also from the import of the name in the British, which by those who are skill'd in the Language, is affirm'd to signify the same thing as our present Appellation.

## Things Remarkable.

At *Borstal* they still preserve the *Horn*, by the Li very whereof that Estate was convey'd to *Nigel d Borstal* in the time of one of the *Williams*.

*Pen*, and the Towns upon that Ridge, are observ'd to be the highest Ground in all these parts; there being a sensible Ascent thither all along from *London* and as sensible a Descent when you are past it.

## B E D F O R D S H I R E.

THE County of *Bedford* in the South part is Barren; in the middle Woody, and in the North, Fruitful. As the Soil distinguishes it into these three Parts, so has Nature divided it into other two, by the Channel of the River *Ouse*, which is the principal River of the County, and runs through it.

Towns more remarkable { *Bedford*,  
are, { *Dunstable*.

*Bedford*, the principal Town of the County, tho' it can hardly pretend to Roman Antiquity, was yet of very good repute among the *Saxons*; and was one of those which suffer'd from the *Danish* Depredations. But its greatest Miseries were occasion'd by the Castle built there after the Conquest, which was a certain refuge to one Party or the other in all the Civil Wars that follow'd. The Town is parted by the River *Ouse*, and join'd by a Stone-Bridge: The South-side has two Churches, and the North three. The Site of the old Castle is now a spacious *Bowling-green*, whither the Neighbouring Gentry resort for their Recreation.

*Dunstable*, so call'd from its high situation, stands upon the end (as it were) of the *Chiltern*, upon a dry chalky Soil. This quality of the Soil puts them to some inconvenience for Water; with which notwith-

standing they are supplied tolerably well with four publick ponds, one in each Street. It is pretty populous, and well furnish'd with Inns; having the advantage of lying upon the Northern-road, from *London*. The Cross in the middle of the Town was erected by *Edward*, to the Memory of his Queen *Eleanor*.

## Ancient Towns.

*Saline* must in all probability be the place now call'd *Chesterfield*, near *Temesford*; by the course of the Itinerary, the Roman Money, with other marks of Antiquity, discover'd there.

*Magioninium*, need be sought at no other place than *Dunstable* which stands upon a Roman-way and has the evidence of Roman Money to assert its Antiquity.

## Things Remarkable.

At *Harewood*, the River was observ'd to stand in the year 1399; and again in 1648; which have been look'd upon as Prognosticks; the first of the Civil Wars that ensu'd, the second of the Death of *Charles I.*

*Fuller's-Earth* is dug up in great abundance about *Woburn*.

A Woman in *Dunstable*, had nineteen Children at five Births; 5 at two several ones; and three together at 3 more.



H E R T F O R D S H I R E.

THE County of *Hertford* seems to owe its flourishing Condition more to its situation than Soil: For the many Thorow-fairs to and from *London*, have mightly Enrich'd the particular Towns, by the advantage of entertaining Travellers; and its nearness to the City, (together with the Healthfulness of the Air) has induc'd great numbers of the Nobility and Gentry to purchase and build in those Parts.

The more remarkable Towns are, { *S. Albans,* } { *Hatfield,*  
 { *Hertford,* } { *Royston,*  
 { *Ware,* } { *Stortford.*

*S. Albans*, (the old *Verulamium* of the Romans, and the *Watling-chester* of the Saxons) was of such considerable Note under the Romans, as to be a *Municipium*; but in the famous Insurrection of *Queen Boadicia*, was entirely laid Waste by the Britains: However it recover'd it self, and afterwards had the honour of being the Birth-place of *S. Alban* (the Protomartyr of Britain, in the time of *Dioclesian*;) a Person so eminent for Piety and Goodness, that the Town afterwards took his Name, as the greatest Honour it could do it self. For when *Offa* had built a large and splendid Monastery, Dedicated to the Memory of *S. Alban*, the Town presently flourish'd, and was particularly ambitious of a Relation to that Saint. From time to time there have been discover'd vast remains of Roman Antiquity, in the place where the old *Verulamium* stood, now turn'd into a Corn-field. The Church of the Monastery is still standing, and is a most noble Pile of Building. At present, 'tis a large flourishing Town, having the the advantage of being a Thorow-fair, on the Northern road from *London*.

*Hertford*, (so call'd, as if one should say a Ford of Harts; for their Arms is a Hart couchant in the Water) is a Town rather noted for giving name to the whole County, than any riches or beauty of its own.

The Assizes indeed are still kept here, a mark of its ancient Prosperity; but the Place is neither Populous nor of any tolerable Trade.

*Ware*, (so nam'd from the *Wear* in the River *Lea*) is a populous thriving Place, owing its rise to the decay of *Hertford*: For about King *John*'s time, the High-road was turn'd this way; and ever since, *Ware* has been encreasing, and the other dwindling away by little and little.

*Hatfield* is more remarkable for the stately Seat of the Earl of *Salisbury*, than any thing the Town it self can boast of beside.

*Royston*, or *Royse's Town* (on the North-side of the County) is so call'd from a certain Lady name'd *Royfia*, who erected a Cross in this place. The Town (ever since *Richard I.* granted it the privilege of a Marker) has been still growing; and deals especially in Malt and Corn.

*Stortford*, upon the little River *Stort*, is of late years grown into a considerable Market-Town, and is very well furnish'd with good Inns.

Ancient Places.

*Verulamium* has been by all Men and all Ages so undoubtedly settl'd at *S. Albans* that it is even at this day known by the name of *Verulam* in several of our Writings; and commonly enough in Conversation.

*Durocobrivæ*, upon account of the beginning and end must be sought somewhere upon a River, *dur* signifying Water, and *brivæ* a Passage. The course of the Road directs us to look for it below *Flemsted*, where the ancient High-way crosses the Water.

Things Remarkable.

The little Brook *Womer* near *Redborn*, is by the Inhabitants thought to portend Dearth of troublesome Times when it breaks out. The Font at *S. Albans*, wherein the Children of the Kings of *Scotland* us'd to be Baptiz'd was a most noble Monument, plac'd here by Sir *Rich. Lea*, Masters of the Pioneers; but it is since taken away, as it seems in the late Civil Wars.

M I D D L E S E X.

THE County of *Middlesex*, or *Middle-Saxons* (so call'd from its situation between the East and South Saxons) is of no large extent, but is furnish'd with great numbers of fair Buildings and sweet Seats, for the retirement of Nobility and Gentry.

Places most considerable are. { *London, Cap.* } { *Fulham,*  
 { *Westminster,* } { *Chelsey,*  
 { *Uxbridge,* } { *Hamsted.*  
 { *Hampton-Court,*

L O N D O N, (The Metropolis of our Nation) as it is one of the most flourishing Cities in the whole World, so is it of such Antiquity, that the most ancient Records and Memorials, can give us no account of its Original. Under the Britains, it was a considerable place; and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, even in his time, calls it an ancient City. Its Glory appears more distinctly under the Romans, who (probably out of a jealousy of its Greatness) would not grant it the

privilege of a *Municipium*; Governing it by a sort of Commissioners sent yearly from *Rome*. But though they would not allow it too much Power and Authority, they own'd its Glory and Eminence, by giving it the honourable name of *Augusta*. Also, when *Constantine* had confirm'd Christianity; upon the removal of the *Flamin*, a Bishop's See was settl'd here. At the beginning of the Saxon Government, it had its share of the Misfortunes with which this Warlike People oppress'd the whole Nation; but bore up however against the Storm, till the Conversion of that People to Christianity. Then *Aethelbert King of Kent*, built a Church dedicated to *S. Paul*, which Posterity by degrees improv'd into a most stately Fabrick. This, along with the greatest part of the City, was Consum'd in that most dreadful Fire which happen'd in the year 1666; and put all things into such confusion, that the ancient State of this noble City, must have been in a great measure hidden from



from Posterity, had not the industrious and learned Mr. *John Stow*, rescu'd it from Oblivion by his excellent *Survey*. To him I refer the Reader for matters of Antiquity; and shall content my self with a short description of the several Buildings, and other Curiosities, which it boasts of at this day. Premising thus much in general; that within these Hundred years and especially since the above mention'd Fire, the City has grown so strangely both in publick and private Buildings; has also stretch'd it self out so far on all sides, that by a Draught of an hundred years old; nay, of one taken immediately before 1666, compar'd with its present extent and Beauty, one could not imagine it to be the same City.

I. The *Tower*, at the East-end of the City, is a large stately Fabrick, fortified with Walls and a broad Ditch; where the Arms and other Warlike Preparations are laid up as in a common Store.

II. *Gresham College*, so call'd from Sir *Thomas Gresham* the Founder, was instituted for the Improvement of Arts and Sciences; and accordingly there are gentle Salaries sett'd for the several Professors of *Divinity*, *Law*, *Physick*, *Astronomy*, *Geometry* and *Musick*.

III. The *Royal Exchange* was built by the same Sir *Thomas Gresham*, and a most noble Ornament to the City, as well as a singular convenience to Merchants.

IV. *Guild-hall*, (or the *Senate-house*) a most beautiful Building.

V. *Paul's Church*, as was observ'd before, was consum'd in the dreadful Fire of 1666; but is now rising again with new Beauty and Majesty. A magnificent Buildings it is, if we look upon its Extent and Strength; and if upon the Contrivance, a most curious Fabrick. The Quire is finished, and Divine Service constantly celebrated in it.

VI. *Christ-Church-Hospital* was Founded by King *Edward VI.* for the Maintainance of Orphans; one Thousand whereof are suppos'd to be annually provided for by this Charity. After they have gone through the several Schools, they are bound our Apprentices, at 15 years of Age; or sent to one of the Universities, where they are maintain'd for 7 years.

VII. *Charter-house* (so call'd from the *Carthusian Monks*) was erected into an Hospital by *Thomas Sutton* Esq; by the name of *The Hospital of King James*, endowing it with Revenues sufficient for the Maintenance of 80 Poor Brothers or Pensioners, who are to be either poor decay'd Gentlemen, or Merchants, or Superannuated Soldiers, 40 poor Scholars, who are either put to Trades, or sent to the University; with a *Master*, *Preacher*, *Physician*, and other Officers.

VIII. The Inns of Court are chiefly Four, The *Inner-Temple*, the *Middle-Temple*, *Grays-Inn* and *Lincolns-Inn*; besides several others of less Note. Here great numbers of young Gentlemen are educated in the study of the Laws, and qualified either for publick Pleadings, or for the Service of the Kingdom in any other Capacity, that requires a more than ordinary knowledge of our Customs and Constitution.

Besides those Ornaments we have mention'd, the Churches are spacious and beautiful; the publick Halls of the several Companies large and stately; the Squares uniform and pleasant, and the private Buildings and Shops exceeding pleasant. A late ingenious Author hath made it probable from the number of Burials and Houses in *London*, *Paris*, and *Rouen*; that the first of these is altogether as big and populous as both the other two.

WESTMINSTER, as it is a City distinct from *London*, with separate Magistrates and Privileges, so was it formerly at least a Mile distant from it, till

by degrees the Suburbs of the former joyn'd the latter, and made them both together like one entire City. It seems to owe its rise to the Church, which *Sibert King* of the East-Saxons built there to the honour of *S. Peter*; and which together with its Westerly situation from *London*, caus'd its name to be chang'd from *Thorney*, into the present one of *Westminster*. *Edward the Confessor* built it anew, and endow'd it largely: His Fabrick was afterwards demolished by *Henry III.* who erected a new one very stately and magnificent; to which *Henry VII.* added a Chappel, commonly call'd *King Henry VIII's Chapple*, for the burial of himself and Children. It was by *Q. Elizabeth* converted into a Collegiate Church, consisting of a Dean, twelve Prebendaries, &c. The greatest Curiosities it affords are the Tombs and Monuments of our Princes, and of the most eminent Nobility, with several Persons famous for Learning and other Excellencies in their respective Ages.

Near the Abbey is *Westminster-hall*, a spacious Room, wherein (and in places round it) Justice is publickly administred in the several Courts, mention'd in the Introduction. Nor ought the School to be omitted, since it is so serviceable to Church and State, in furnishing both with Persons every way qualified for the discharge of their several Stations.

*White-hall* is conveniently seated between *S. James's Park* and the *Thames*, and is the Residence of our Kings. It was the House of Cardinal *Wolsey*, and converted into a Royal Palace by King *Henry VIII.*

*Uxbridge*, upon the edge of the County, is a pretty large Town, stretch'd out on each side a long Street; lying upon the Road, it reaps great advantage by the entertainment of Travellers, and is well stor'd with Inns. 'Tis mention'd in our Histories, particularly upon account of the Treaty held there, in the Reign of *Charles I.*

*Hampton-Court*, is a Royal Seat, lying pleasantly upon the River *Thames*, and accomodated with most excellent Prospects all round. Cardinal *Wolsey* begun it, and King *Henry VIII.* finish'd it: But their Structure though very large and magnificent for that Age, is far excelled by the Additions made to it by his present Majesty; whether we compare the Buildings themselves, or the Gardens, and other contrivances about it.

*Fulham*, is only remarkable for the residence of the Bishops of *London*, who have here their Palace for a retirement out of the City.

*Chelsey*, situated pleasantly upon the *Thames*, is noted only for its noble Hospital, built for the maintenance of lame and decay'd Soldiers. It was begun by King *Charles II.* carry'd on by King *James*, and finish'd by his present Majesty; a Building as in it self very magnificent, so accomodated with all manner of Officers convenient for the design, and also with pleasant Walks and Gardens.

*Hamsted*, at a little distance from *London* to the Northwest, is remarkable for the goodness of the Air, which has caus'd its enlargement in Buildings of late Years.

#### Ancient Places.

*Sulloniæ* is *Brockly-hill* upon the edge of this County, as appears both from the distances and remains of Antiquity, (*Coins*, *Urns*, *Bricks*, &c.) that have been discover'd there.

*Londinum*, *London*, call'd also *Augusta*, a Title of Preheminence among the Romans.

The *Green-houses* at *Hampton-Court*, with Stoves under them, to preserve foreign Plants in gradual Heats, suitable to the Climes whereof they are Natives, is an admirable Contrivance.



## ESSEX.

**E** S S E X is so call'd from the *East-Saxons* who inhabited it, and had that name from their situation, with relation to the *South-Saxons*. As 'tis on the side accommodated with the Sea, so is it in all parts furnish'd with good Rivers, which do not only water it, but convey likewise all Necessaries from abroad, and give them an opportunity of sending out such Commodities as they can spare for the use of foreign Parts.

Towns more remarkable, are { *Colchester,*  
                                  *Chemsford,*  
                                  *Harwich,*  
                                  *Maldon.*

*Colchester*, seated on the brow of a Hill and extended from East to West, flourish'd in the times of the *Romans* under the Name of *Colonia*; from whence possibly the present *Colchester* (or as the *Saxons* call'd it *Colneceaster*) has its original. Next to this their Antiquity; the Inhabitants glory that *Helena*, Mother to *Constantine the Great*, was born in this place. At present 'tis large and populous, containing a great many Parishes.

*Chemsford* or *Chelmesford*, has a convenient situation, just at the meeting of two Rivers. The place seems to have been of no great note, till the Bishop of *London*, in *Henry I.*'s time, turn'd the high Road through it, which before lay through *Writtle*. At present the Assizes are held in it.

*Harwich* is more famous upon account of its Harbour, than either the Riches or Building of the Town. The Convenience of Passage from hence to *Holland*, is the occasion why 'tis so much spoke of, and so well known.

*Maldon*, tho' of it self large and well-inhabited, (being one Street reaching a mile in length) is yet of greater eminence by reason of its Antiquity, and the considerable Figure that it made among our Forefathers. *Claudius Caesar*, in his attempt upon *Britain*, storm'd this place, and left a strong Garrison to hold and defend it. But when the Insolence of the Soldiers came to such a height, that the poor *Britains* could no longer bear the Indignities and Oppressions, these (under the conduct of *Boadicia*) form'd themselves into a Confederacy, burnt this Colony, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword. Under the *Saxons* we hear little or nothing of it; tho' in the Conqueror's time, it seems to have been in a tolerable condition, *Domesday* reckoning 180 Houses.

### Ancient Places.

*Durokitum*, by the course of the Itinerary, the

sound of the present Name, and the Remains of Antiquity discover'd thereabouts, cannot well be any other than *Layton*, about six miles from *London*.

*Corvennos Insula*, has the plain Remains of the old name left it in the Island *Canvey*, above five miles in length, which feeds great numbers of Sheep.

*Cesaromagus* is *Dunmow*, written anciently *Dunmage* and *Dunmawg*, the last Syllable whereof is a plain Relick of the old *magus*; and as for the first (*Dun*) every one knows how common that is in the ancient names of places. All the Objection is, That it lies a little out of the Road, which the Itinerary seems to take in that Journey; but any one who observes what wheelings and windings the Itinerary takes in other parts of *England*, will reckon that to be no exception.

*Canonium*, is *Writtle*, through which the High-way pass'd before *Henry I.*'s time: And, besides, 'twas a place of note among the *Saxons*, and after the Conquest; which agrees well with that observation; That the *Saxons* settl'd in the deserted Stations of the *Romans*.

*Othona*, a Garrison under the Count of the *Saxon Shore*, seems to have been at *Itchancester*, mention'd by our Histories, and seated about the utmost point of *Dengy Hundred*.

*Camalodunum*, from the present name, the course of the Itinerary, and the consent of all judicious Writers, must be concluded to have been at *Maldon*, which we describ'd before.

*Ad Ansam* seems to be *Wittham*; for the Road lies through it, the distances answer, and it still shews an old Camp.

*Colonia* is by all agreed to be *Colchester*.

*Idumani fl. ostium*, is *Black-water-bay*, ydu in *British* signifying *black*.

### Things Remarkable.

The Caverns near *Tilbury*, in a chalky Soil, have given occasion to some Conjectures; tho' perhaps no one does so well agree either with the nature of the Ground or the custom of the *Britains*, as the opinion That they were intended by that People for Supplies of Chalk to manure their Lands.

*Walsfleet-Oysters*, are got in great abundance upon this Coast, and so call'd from a *Wall* (built to secure the Inhabitants against Inundations) along which they lie.

It was a pleasant Custom which they had in the Priory of *Dunmow*, That whoever did not repent of his Marriage in a year and a day, upon Oath made thereof before the Prior and Convent, should have a Gammon of Bacon deliver'd him.

## SUFFOLK.

**T**HE County of *Suffolk*, contracted from *Suth-folk* (for so it was written among the *Saxons*) is so call'd from its situation with respect to *Norfolk* or *North-folk*. The Soil is, in most parts, very fruitful; assisted by a sort of *Marle* mixt with Clay.

Towns more remarkable, are { *Bury,*  
                                  *Ipswich,*  
                                  *New-market,*  
                                  *Clare.*

*Bury* (so call'd by contraction for *S. Marys-bury*) seems



seems to owe its original and growth, in a great measure, to the Translation of the Body of *S. Edmund* to this place; an excellent Prince, who was barbarously murder'd by the *Danes*. And even the Danish Cruelties, which were the ruin of most other Places, did a considerable Service to this Town; King *Canutus* out of a desire to make amends for the Injuries done it by his Father *Sueno*, taking a particular liking to it, and endowing it with many Privileges. The Popes also, out of a regard to the Sanctity of *S. Edmund*, granted it large Immunities. So that the Monastery and Town grew apace in Wealth and Reputation, till the general Dissolution by King *Henry VIII.* And now, tho' the first is destroy'd, the second is still in a flourishing condition.

*Ipswich*, is a place mention'd in our Histories about the latter end of the *Saxons*; by whom it was call'd *Gypswic*. The advantage of a Harbour has made it considerable; and, accordingly, that of late years having not been so commodious as formerly, the Town it self has gone a little to decay. For about an hundred years ago, they had fourteen Churches; which are so far from being encreas'd, that at this day there remain only twelve. Their number of Ships also is considerably diminish'd of late years; which must be an Argument that their Trade is not so good as it has been.

*Newmarket*, upon the edge of *Cambridgeshire*, by the very name betrays its wants of Antiquity. That it is of note at present, is not owing either to Manufactures or any particular Commodities; but partly to its situation upon the Road, and partly to its convenience for Hunting and Horse Races: By which Entertainments the Court is often drawn thither; and accordingly, there is a House built for his Majesty.

*Clare*, upon the River *Stour*, is very often men-

tion'd in our English Histories, on account of the Earls to whom it has given Title, and who, in their several Ages, have been Men of great Worth and Eminence.

#### Ancient Places.

*Villa Faustini* seems to belong to *S. Edmunds-Bury*, by the course of the Itinerary.

*Combretonium* discovers it self in the present *Brettenham*, upon the River *Breton*; the Termination *Ham* being an addition purely *Saxon*.

*Extensio* or *Ἐξοχή*, a Promontory, shooting it self a long way into the Sea; which we, at this day, call *Easton-ness*.

*Gariononum*, is *Burgh-Castle* upon the Coast of *Norfolk*, near *Yarmouth*.

#### Things Remarkable.

That vast Ditch which runs along *Newmarket-beath*, is a Work so prodigious, that the common People cannot conceive it made by any but the *Devil*; and upon that fancy have call'd it *Devils-dike*. Whereas, 'tis plain, that it was contriv'd as a common Fence and Bound between the two Kingdoms in the *Saxon Heptarchy*.

It was a facetious sort of Tenure, by which *Hemingston* in this County was holden, viz. upon condition, That every *Christmas-day* the Lord of it should dance, make a noise with his Cheeks puff'd out, and let a Fart, in the presence of the King.

Upon the Sea-coast, near *Aldborrow*, the Inhabitants valu'd themselves upon a signal favour of Providence; which, in a time of great Dearth, sent 'em a Crop of *Pease* among the hard Rocks, in the beginning of Autumn. But the more judicious find no occasion for the Miracle; but think it may be very well solv'd, by imagining the Sea might cast in some Pulse left in it by the Shipwrack, and so cause that unusual growth.

## N O R F O L K.

THE County of *Norfolk* is so call'd with respect to *Suffolk*, as if one should say, the *Northern People*, or the *Northern Branch* of the *East-Angles*. Of all the Shires in *England*, this is observ'd to be most populous, for the compass, and to be thickest set with Towns and Villages. They are generally rich and live handsomly, which perhaps may be one reason why they have been so much given to the study of the Laws; so that even your ordinary sort are not altogether unacquainted with the little Niceties of Courts and Pleadings. Riches breed Quarrels, and Quarrels Law-suits, and those drive the Parties engag'd to the Examination of their Cause; which would never be thought of nor started, if they were as hard put to it for the common Necessaries of Life, as they are in many other places.

The more remarkable  
Places are, { *Norwich*,  
                  *Yarmouth*,  
                  *Lynne*,  
                  *Walsingham*.

*Norwich*, is as much as one should say a *Castle* or *Fort* to the North, with relation to *Castor*, about four miles South from it, out of the Ruins whereof *Norwich* seems to have risen. For that it is much more modern, appears from hence, that we do not find it mention'd before the latter end of the *Saxon* times;

whereas *Castor* was, no doubt, the ancient *Venta*. It is seated upon the side of a Hill from North to South, about a mile and a half, or two miles in length: The Inhabitants are wealthy, the City populous, and the Buildings (both publick and private) very neat and beautiful. It has 11 Gates, and is surrounded with Walls, except where 'tis defended by the River, viz. on the East. *Domesday* tells us, it had no less than 1320 Burgeses; and altho' it suffer'd very much by the Insurrection of *Ralph Earl* of the *East-Angles* against *William* the Conqueror, yet was that damage abundantly repair'd, when the Episcopal See was remov'd hither from *Thetford*. The great number of *Netherlanders*, who came over, upon the Tyranny of the Duke of *Alva*, and settl'd here, seem also to have been a mighty advantage to the City, by settling the Manufacture of *Worsted Stuffs*.

*Yarmouth*, on the mouth of the River *Yare*, seems to have risen out of the Ruins of the old *Gariononum*, as *Norwich* did out of those of *Castor* or *Venta*. It is not of so much note, as one would expect from the advantage of the Sea, and the convenience of the Harbor. The reason is, because the violence of the Wind upon this Coast, is such that they have much ado to keep the Haven so open and free from heaps of Sand, as to maintain a tolerable Trade. At present their great Business, is the *Herring Trade*. They have but one Church, very large and stately, with a high, lofty Spire.

*Lynn*.



*Lynne*, about the entrance of the *Ouse* into the Ocean, next to *Normich*, is the best Town in those parts, having grown in Wealth, Buildings and number of Merchants, by the convenience of a very safe and advantageous Harbour. The Soil too, all about it, contributes to its greatness; for 'tis fat and luscious, and very fruitful. The very name implies a moist, fenny situation; *Hlyn* signifying so much in the old *British*.

*Walsingham* was one of the most famous Places in these parts, till the Dissolution of Monasteries by King *Henry VIII.* for then, its Monastery (from whence sprung all its Glory, Reputation and Riches,) was plunder'd and demolish'd. Before, rich Jewels, Gold and Silver, were heap'd in with so much profuseness, according to the Superstition of those Times, that it was the great admiration of Strangers and Travellers.

## Ancient Places.

*Sitomagus* seems to be *Thetford*, which was formerly a place of great note, till the Bishop's See was removed to *Normich*, and then it fell to decay.

*Gariensis Ostium* discovers it self by the present name of the River *Tare*, and of the Town at the mouth, *Tarmouth*.

*Venta Icenorum*, the capital City of the *Iceni*, was at *Castor* three miles South of *Normich*; now fallen to decay, but known to be a place of Antiquity by the old Walls, and the discovery of Roman Coins.

*Metara Aestuarium*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is suppos'd to be the *Washes*, near *Lynne*.

*Iciani*, by the name should seem to be *Sc-borough*.

*Brannodunum* is plainly *Brancaster* near *Walsingham*.

## Things Remarkable.

*Carleton* in this County was held by a pleasant Tenour, That 100 Herrings bak'd in 24 Pies should be presented to the King, in what part of England sever he was, when they first came into season. The custom is still observ'd, and the Herrings duly convey'd to the King by the Lord of the Manor.

Herrings are observ'd to be more plentiful upon this Coast, than any other part of England; which brings in great advantage to the Inhabitants.

*S. Bennet's*, an Island, is so loose and unfix'd, that it seems to be kept from swimming away, only by the Roots of Trees.

# CAMBRIDGSHIRE.

THE County of *Cambridge*, according to different parts, is of a different Soil. The South is fertile, well-till'd, and bears abundance of Barley; whereof they make vast quantities of *Malt*. The North is more wet and spongy, and so fitter for Corn than Pasture; not only upon account of its loose softness, but by reason also of the frequent over-flowings in those parts.

The principal Towns are *Cambridge*, and *Ely*.

*Cambridge* seems to be the Daughter of the old *Camboritum*, and possibly may have borrow'd the first Syllable of her name from the Mother. The University is her greatest Glory, which for many hundred years has furnish'd Church and State with Persons of Learning, Piety and Prudence. When it was first instituted, let others determine: Thus much is certain, that like *Oxford*, at first it afforded the Scholars no publick reception or place of Studies, but oblig'd them to take up with such Lodgings in the Town as they could get. By degrees, the inconvenience of this method was observ'd, not only from the mean Accommodation they met with, but also from the frequent Commotions caus'd by the Influence of the Towns-men. Whereupon, pious and charitable Persons began to erect *Inns* and *Hostels* for the reception of Scholars, in order to give them an opportunity of retirement, and an independance upon the Town. But still they liv'd upon their own Estates, enjoying only the convenience of Lodgings, without any manner of Endowments; till, in the Reign of *Edward I.* they began to build Colleges, not only for the Reception, but also for the maintenance of certain numbers of Scholars, according to the Revenues assign'd to that purpose. The order and time of their Foundation, with their respective Founders, are as follow.

Colleges and Halls.	Founders.	Year.
Peter-house,	<i>Hugh Balsbam.</i>	1284
Clare-hall,	<i>Richard Badew.</i>	1249
Benner or Corpus Christi,	Society of Friars in } Corpus Christi, }	1346
Pembroke-hall,	Lady Mary S. Paul, } Count. of Pembroke. }	1347
Trinity-hall,	<i>William Bateman.</i>	1353
Gonvil and Caius,	<i>Edmund Gonvil.</i>	1248
Afterwards finish'd by <i>John Casus.</i>		
King's College,	<i>Henry VII.</i>	1441
Queen's College,	<i>Q. Margaret of Anjou.</i>	1448
Katherine-hall,	<i>Robert Woodlark.</i>	1459
Jesus College,	<i>John Alcocke.</i>	1497
Christ College, and S. John's,	Margaret Countess of Richmond. }	circ. 1506
Magdalen College,	<i>Thomas Audley.</i>	1542
Trinity College,	<i>Henry VIII.</i>	1546
Emanuel,	<i>Sir Walter Mildmay.</i>	
Sidney-Sussex,	<i>Frances Sidney.</i>	

This University, as well as its Sister *Oxford*, has its publick Schools and Library; but falls far short of them in stateliness of Buildings, number of Books, and other Ornaments. The Structures most remarkable in *Cambridge*, are, 1. *King's College-Chappel*, which for contrivance and largeness, is look'd upon to be one of the finest in the World. 2. *Trinity College-Library*, begun under the Government of the famous *Dr. Barrow*, and now entirely finish'd; for beauty and design (considering also the bigness of it) perhaps it cannot be match'd in the three Kingdoms.

*Ely* is seated in the chief of those spongy Islands, wherewith this northern part of the County abounds. Whether it had the name from *Eels*, I shall not dispute: 'Tis certain, the softness of the Soil and the watry situation do both make the Conjecture more plausible, than *Polydere Virgil's* fancy about the Greek



Greek  $\epsilon\alpha\theta$ , signifying a *maſt*. For what have we to do here with a Greek original? The place owes its riſe to Religion; for *Erbeldreda* Wife to *Egfrid* King of *Northumberland*, founded here a Nunnery, which afterwards, by the Patronage of Kings and Noblemen, grew up to an incredible degree of Wealth and Revenues. Inſomuch, that in Henry I.'s time it was advanc'd to the dignity of a Biſhop's See, and had *Cambridgeſhire* assign'd it for its Diocels, which before belong'd to *Lincoln*. Notwithſtanding theſe Advantages, the City cannot boaſt of any great beauty, either in publick or private Buildings; for its fenny ſituation making the Air thick and groſs, has render'd it no very deſirable place of Reſidence. The Cathedral, indeed, is a ſpacious and beautiful Building.

#### Ancient Places.

*Camboritum*, ſituated upon the River *Cam*, and implying as much as a *Ford* over it, to the old *Grancæſter* of the Saxons, one of the Ruins whereof the preſent *Cambridge* ſeems to have riſen.

#### Things Remarkable.

The vaſt *Ditches* thrown up by the *East-Angles* in ſeveral parts of this County, to prevent the Incurſions of the *Mercians*, are ſuch as few other places can ſhew.

*Sturbridge-fair*, ſo call'd from the River *Sture* upon which it is kept every year in *September*, is very famous for reſort of People and variety of Wares.

## H U N T I N G D O N S H I R E.

THE County of *Huntingdon* ſeems to have that name from the convenience of *Hunting*, an opinion that is back'd by the ancient condition of this Shire, which is ſaid to have been almoſt one entire Foreſt till the Reign of *Henry II.* At preſent it is a very good Corn-Country, and the Eaſt-parts, which are fenny and very fat, afford excellent Paſture.

The more remarkable  
Towns, are

{ *Huntingdon*,  
    *Goodmancheſter*,  
    *Kimbolton*,  
    *S. Ives*.

*Huntingdon*, the chief Town of the Shire, is ſeated upon the River *Ouſe*. Formerly it was much more conſiderable, than at preſent it is; as appears from its fifteen Churches, being reduc'd to two. The cauſe of this decay ſeems to be the obſtruction mention'd by *Speed* to have been made in the River which before was navigable to this Town, to the great profit of the Inhabitants.

*Goodmancheſter*, call'd formerly *Gormancheſter*, ſtands over againſt *Huntingdon*, on the other ſide of the River. It has improv'd it ſelf chiefly by *Agriculture*, wherein the Inhabitants are very induſtrious; and they boaſt, that at one time they have entertain'd the King in his progreſs, with a noble Show of nineſcore Plows. And, in this their Employment, they have been ſo ſucceſſful, that in the Reign of King *James I.* the Town was made a Corporation.

*Kimbolton*, a pretty fair Town, ſeated in a bottom,

is the Ornament of the Eaſt-part of this County.

*S. Ives*, upon the River *Ouſe*, is call'd by a late Writer, a fair, large and ancient Town: But within theſe three or four years it was a great part of it burn'd down; and ſo, poſſibly, may hardly merit that character at preſent.

#### Ancient Places.

*Durobriva*, i. e. the paſſage of the River (viz. *Nen*) muſt be *Dornford*, formerly call'd *Dorm-ceaſter* and *Cacr-Dorm*; whether we reſpect the courſe of the Itinerary, the diſcovery of the ancient Coins, or the marks of an old City.

*Duroſiponte*, by the import of the Word, muſt have been ſome place upon the *Ouſe*; the name ſignifying a Bridge over the *Ouſe*. *Gormancheſter* bids faireſt for it; which, as an Evidence of its Antiquity, throws up old Roman Money: And, beſides, that more modern name was only given it, when King *Alfred* beſtow'd theſe parts upon *Gorman* the Dane.

#### Things Remarkable.

It has been obſerv'd of this County, that the Families have gone ſtrangely to decay; and that even an hundred years ago, there were few Sir-names of any note, which could be drawn down beyond the Reign of *Henry VIII.* The cauſe is uncertain; unleſs we ſhould impure it to the great quantity of Abby-lands that were in this Shire; which, upon the Diſſolution, fell into Lay-hands, and perhaps would no more ſtick by them here, than they have done by their owners in other places.

## N O R T H A M P T O N S H I R E.

THE County of *Northampton* is a plain, level Country, abounding with Paſturage and Corn-fields. The number of Churches is an argument of its populousneſs; for they are ſo thick ſet, that from ſome places, one may ſee no leſs than thirty Steeples at a time. For Houſes alſo of the Nobility and Gentry, it may vie with any County in *England*, of an equal bignels.

The more remarkable Towns, are

{ *Northampton*,  
    *Peterburrow*,  
    *Dantrey*.

*Northampton*, ſeated at the meeting of two Rivers, ſeems to be of no great Antiquity, ſince we hear little of it in our Hiſtories, till after the Conqueſt. But in the Commotions rais'd by the rebellious Barons, it was made the ſcar of War: And ſometimes, the Kings of *England* have held their Parliaments at it; induc'd by the convenience of its ſituation, almoſt in the Heart of the Kingdom. The Buildings of it were very handſom, and the Town it ſelf pretty large; having within the Walls ſeven Pariſh Churches, and in the Suburbs, two. But in our Age, a moſt dreadful Fire laid it in Aſhes; by which the Inhabitants



*Tripointium*, is probably to be fixt at *Torcester* in this

Within the Demesnes of *Broughton* in this County, is a petrifying Well; from whence a Skull all over Stone (both within and without) was brought to, and preserv'd in *Sidney-College* in *Cambridge*.

'Tis a remarkable Epitaph, that is in the Church of St. Martins, in Leicester; whereby we learn that one Mr. Heyriok (who dy'd April 1589. aged 76.) liv'd in one House with Mary his Wife full 52 years, and in all that time neither bury'd Man, Woman nor Child, tho' they were sometimes twenty in Family.



## R U T L A N D S H I R E.

**R**utlandshire is the least of all the Counties in England; and, before the Conquest, seems to have been part of Northamptonshire. For till long after the coming in of the Normans, we do not find it nam'd as a distinct County. 'Tis of form almost circular; the Soil is rich, and the situation pleasant.

Towns more remarkable, are { Uppingham,  
Okeham.

Uppingham, in the South-part of the Shire, is a well-frequented Market-town, and has a handsome School.

Okeham (situated pleasantly in the middle of the Vale of Catmore, and so call'd from Oaks) belong'd formerly to the Ferrars, and is at present a Market-town of good note.

Ancient Places.

Margidunum, by its Termination, seems to point

out to us some Hill in these parts, where we are to look for it. Market-Overton has certainly the best right; which, as it is seated upon a high Ground, and answers the distances exactly enough, so does it cast up abundance of Coins in testimony of its Antiquity; and shews store of Marle, to answer the Margidunum in the beginning of the old name.

Things Remarkable.

At Okeham, was born a Dwarf who was scarce 18 inches high, when a year old, and when 30, only about 3 foot and 9 inches. When the Court came in progress that way, he was serv'd up in a cold Pye at the Duke of Buckingham's Table.

'Tis an old custom at the same Town, That the first time any Baron of the Realm comes through it, he shall give a Horse-shoe to nail upon the Castle-gate. And in case he refuses, the Bayliff has power to stop his Coach, and take one off his Horse's Foot.

## L I N C O L N S H I R E.

**T**HE County of Lincoln is very large, and is branch'd into three parts, under three several names, Holland, Kesteven and Lindsey. The first is a soft, marshy Ground, abounding with Rivers and Fens; the second is much better Peopl'd, has a more wholesome Air, and a Soil more fruitful; the third jurs out into the Ocean with a large Front, and is bigger than either of the other two.

The more considerable  
Towns, are { Lincoln,  
Stamford,  
Boston,  
Grantham.

Lincoln (probably so call'd from its watry situation, Lbin in British implying so much) is the chief Town of this County both in Antiquity and Dignity. For it was fortify'd by the Britains; and Vortimer himself was bury'd in it. Notwithstanding the Calamities which the Danes brought upon it, it still kept up its Head; and, at the Conquest, was in a thriving condition, as we learn from Domesday. About which time, the Bishop's See was transferr'd thither from Dorchester; upon a publick Order, that no Bishops should have their Seats in obscure Villages. The Diocess was exceeding large; and notwithstanding Ely was taken out of it by Henry II. and Peterborough and Oxford by Henry VIII. it is still by much the greatest in England. The Cathedral, as it now stands, is a most stately Pile, and of excellent Workmanship; to which perfection it was brought by several Hands. 'Tis said, there was once 50 Churches in it; but now not above 18. So much has Time spoil'd it of its ancient Grandeur.

Stamford, upon the River Welland, is so call'd from the stony Ford that was in that place. Before the Conquest, it flourish'd much; and in the time of Edward III. upon a Contest between the Northern and Southern Students in Oxford, a great number of them retir'd hither, and settl'd an University. But upon an

Accommodation, they went back again, and a publick Act was pass'd, That no Oxford-man should ever profess at Stamford. In the Civil Wars between the Houses of York and Lancaster, it was destroy'd with Fire and Sword, and could never after perfectly recover it self; tho' at present it contains some sever Parishes.

Boston or Botolph's Town, at the mouth of the Witham, is built on both sides that River, and join'd with a wooden Bridge. In Edward I's time, it was ransack'd and burnt down by a wicked Gang, which could never be discover'd: Only, their Ring-leader confessed the Fact, and was hang'd. But it recover'd it self; especially by the Staple of Wooll being settl'd here, which very much enrich'd it. The Inhabitants at present deal mostly in Merchandise and Grazing, and with so good success, that the Town is populous and well-built, and the Market much frequented. Their Church is a beautiful Building, the high Steeple whereof is a good Guide to Mariners.

Grantham is a good Market-town; and is much talk'd of upon account of its exceeding high Steeple.

Ancient Places.

Gaufenne may be conveniently enough settl'd at Brig-casterton near Stamford, where the River Gwash or Wash crosses the High-way; which possibly may be some remain of the old Gaufenne.

Ad Pontem is plainly Paunton, near the Head of the River Witham; which may be inferr'd not only from the similitude of Names, but also from the distances and marks of Antiquity, discover'd in that place.

Crococalana, tho' it wants the Analogy of names to claim a place at Ancaster, is yet sufficiently demonstrated to belong to it, both by the distances from the Stations on each side, its situation upon the high Way and the Coins, Vaults, &c. that have been discover'd there.

Lindus



*Lindum* is on all hands agreed to be *Lincoln*.

*Things Remarkable.*

About *Belvoir-Castle*, they find the *Astroites* or *Star-stone*, resembling little *Stars* with five *Rays*.

In *Stamford* they have the custom, which *Littleton* calls *Burrough-English*; whereby the youngest Sons inherit such Lands as their Fathers die possess'd of.

Between *Stamford* and *Lincoln*, they have many *Spaws* or *Chalybate-Springs*: Those which are most

used, are *Bourne* and *Walcot*, near *Folkingham*.

At *Wragby*, 8 miles East of *Lincoln*; a Woman brought forth a Child with two Heads, *An.* 1676. which liv'd some hours.

At *Salsfelby*, near the Sea-coast, one Mr. *John Wat-son* was Minister 74 years; in which time he bury'd the Inhabitants three times over; save 3 or 4 Persons. He dy'd *Aug.* 1693. aged 102.

## N O T T I N G H A M S H I R E.

THE County of *Nottingham* is exceeding well water'd by the River *Trent*, and those lesser ones that run into it. The West-part of it is all taken up with the spacious Forest of *Sherwood*.

The Towns more  
considerable, are { *Nottingham,*  
                          *Southwell,*  
                          *Newark,*  
                          *Mansfield.*

*Nottingham*, the chief Town of the County, is very pleasantly situated; having on one side sweet Meadows; on the other, Hills of an easie ascent. The Town is very beautiful, being adorn'd with a delicate Market-place, near Churches, and convenient private Buildings. But that which has made it most famous in all Ages, is its strong Castle; built by *Peverel* base Son to *William* the Conqueror. In the beginning of the Civil Wars, *Charles I.* set up his Royal Standard here in the year 1642. but a little after, it came into the Hands of the Parliament, and that War being over, it was order'd to be pull'd down. The Duke of *Newcastle* hath since erected a splendid Fabrick in the place, begun in the year 1674.

*Southwell* is famous at this day for its Collegiate

Church of Prebendaries, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. Here, the Archbishops of *York* have a Palace, and three Parks.

*Newark* is a pretty Town lying upon the *Trent*; so call'd as if one should say a new *Work*, from the new Castle built there by *Alexander* Bishop of *Lincoln*. our modern Histories mention it pretty much upon account of its being a Garison for King *Charles I.* which held out to the very last.

*Mansfield* is the chief Town in the Forest of *Sherwood*; and is a plentiful and flourishing Market.

*Ancient Places.*

*Agelocum* or *Segelocum* is probably at *Littleburrow* upon *Trent*, both because the old Way goes along by it; and also because within the marks of an ancient Wall in the neighbouring Field, the Country People meet with *Roman* Coins, which they call *Swine-penies*.

*Things Remarkable.*

*Mortimer's Hole*, and that Vault wherein *David II.* King of *Scotland* was kept Prisoner, are Rarities wherewith they entertain Strangers in the Castle of *Nottingham*.

At *Workensop*, they have *Liquorice* in great abundance.

## D E R B Y S H I R E.

THE County of *Derby*, towards the South part is hardly six miles broad; but in the North, is thirty. The East and South are well till'd and fruitful enough; but the West, commonly call'd the *Peak of Derby*, is nothing but Rocks and Mountains: Which yet makes amends for its Barrenness, by the abundance of *Lead*, *Iron*, &c. which they dig in those parts.

The Principal Town of this Shire, is

*Derby*, so call'd from being a shelter for *Deer*, which implies, that this was formerly a woody Tract. It was pretty famous in the times of the *Saxons*; but at the Conquest was very much impair'd: Whether by the *Danish* Tyranny, I know not; only thus much is certain, That the *Danes* made it a Harbour and Retreat in their Depredations, till they were driven out of it by the victorious Lady *Ethelfleda*. At present, it is a handsom Town and pretty large, having a reputation for admirable good *ALE* above its Neighbours. The Trade of the place is a sort of Retail, viz. buying Corn in order to make advantage of it by Sale to the High-land Countries.

The *Peak* (as was observ'd) is a craggy, mountainous Country, yet is not altogether useless; for the Hills feed great numbers of Sheep, and it affords also a mixture of *Vales* pleasant enough. Under Ground they meet with, 1. *Lead*, 2. *Antimony*, 3. *Mill-stones*, 4. the *Fluor*, a Stone like Crystal.

*Remarkable Things.*

*Buxton-wells*, in the *Peak* of *Derby*, have a good reputation among the Naturalists; and are said to have a Vertue very Sovereign in many Distempers.

The *Devil's Arse* in *Peak*, is a spacious Hole, with a great many corners, like so many Apartments.

*Elden-hole* is remarkable for its deepness: Mr. *Cotton* plumb'd it to the depth of 800 fathom, but could find no bottom; at least, that he could certainly know to be so.

Near *Pooles-hole*, is a little Brook, consisting of both hot and cold Waters, which are unmixt, and yet so near that you may put the Finger and Thumb, one in hot and the other in cold, both at the same time.



## W A R W I C K S H I R E.

THE County of *Warwick* is divided into two parts, the *Feldon*, and the *Woodland*; that on the South-side, and this on the North-side of *Avon*. By this division 'tis certain, that as one was a *Champaign*, so the other was a *woody Country*: The first afforded all the Pasture and Corn-grounds, and the second was of little use, besides Fuel. But the Iron-works in the Counties round, have so consum'd the Wood, that they have long since made way for the Plough; and at present, what by Marle, and other good Contrivances, all this part produces abundance of Corn: So that the *Feldon* is turn'd, in a great measure, into Pasturage.

The chief Towns, are  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Warwick}, \\ \textit{Coventry}, \\ \textit{Bremicham}, \\ \textit{Stratford upon Avon}. \end{array} \right.$

*Warwick*, the principal Town of this Shire, tho' it seems to have been eminent even in the time of the *Romans*, does yet owe its rise, in a great measure to the noble Lady *Ethelfleda*, who rais'd it out of Ashes. And indeed, we cannot wonder why it should be particularly pitch'd upon, in those warlike times for a Retreat and Sanctuary, since Nature her self seems to have made it for that purpose. The Hill on which it stands, is one entire Rock of free Stone; and the four ways leading into the Town were cut through it. The Castle is exceeding strong, and was of great consequence in times of War; but now 'tis a noble and delightful Seat. On the South of the Town is a Prospect of a sweet, fruitful Champaign; on the North, of Groves and Parks. The two publick Ornaments, are the *County-hall* and the *Market-house*. This was the condition of the place, till of late; when a most dreadful Fire, enforc'd by a very strong Wind, laid the best part of the Town in Ashes: But 'tis hop'd, the Contributions of the Kingdom will be so liberal, that in a few years we shall see it rise out of its Ruins with a fresh Beauty.

*Coventry*, so call'd from a *Convent* there, had formerly the honour of a Bishop's See; which, within a few years, was remov'd back to *Lichfield*; but upon this Condition, That the Bishop should take his Title from both places. They own *Leofrick* Earl of *Mercia* and *Godiva* his Wife, for their greatest Bene-

factors. The growth and increase of the Town seems to be owing, in a great measure, to the Manufacture of *Cloathing* and *Caps*, for which they were once very eminent; tho' now they are almost laid aside. That which they value themselves upon, is a stately Cross, built by Sir *William Hollies* Lord Mayor of *London*, for Beauty and Workmanship not to be match'd in *England*. The Walls (which were very strong,) were demolish'd at the Restoration, by order of King *Charles II.*

*Bremicham*, is a very populous Town, abounding with handsom Buildings: It seems to be of a late date, and to have risen chiefly by the *Iron-works*, which are the great Business of the place.

*Stratford upon Avon* is a pretty Market-town; and has a fine Stone-bridge over the *Avon*, consisting of 14 Arches.

## Ancient Places.

*Præsidium*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, is in all probability the Town of *Warwick*; than which no situation can be more proper for a *Garrison*.

*Manduesfeldum* must be sought for upon *Watling-street*, and there we meet with *Manchester*; which as it carries in it some Remains of the old Name, so does it shew its Antiquity by a Fort, which they call *Oldbury*.

## Things Remarkable.

On the side of *Edge-hill*, is the shape of a *Horse* cut in the Ground; and the Trenches that form it are kept open by a Freehold in the Neighbourhood, who hold Lands by that Service.

About *Stugbury*, they often meet with the *Astroites*; which being put into Vinegar, keep themselves in motion, as appears by Experiment.

In memory of *Godiva* their great Patroness, the Inhabitants of *Coventry* have a yearly *Cavilcade* or Solemn Procession, with a naked Figure, representing her riding naked on Horse-back through the City. The occasion is this: *Godiva* (as Tradition says) redeem'd the Town from very heavy Taxes, laid upon them by her Husband *Leofrick*; these he would upon no Terms remit, unless she would consent to ride through the Town naked; which she did, and cover'd her Body with her long dischevel'd Hair.

## W O R C E S T E R S H I R E.

THE County of *Worcester* is very happy both in its Air and Soil; and is excellently water'd by the River *Severn*, which runs through the very midst of it. The South-part has also the advantage of the *Avon*, running out of *Warwickshire* into the *Severn*.

The more remarkable Towns, are  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Worcester}, \\ \textit{Kedderminster}, \\ \textit{Evesham}, \\ \textit{Droitwich}. \end{array} \right.$

*Worcester*, the chief place in this County, seems to

have had its original from the convenience of its situation upon the *Severn*. For that River being the Boundary between the *Britains* and *Saxons*, the frequent Incurfions of the former oblig'd the latter to fence and guard it with the utmost diligence. And to go yet higher; it might probably enough be one of those *Garrisons* which the *Romans* built to keep in awe the *Britains* in those parts, and to secure themselves against Plots and Insurrections. In the year 680. it was made an Episcopal See, and the Church was fill'd with marry'd *Presbyters*; till *Dunstan* turn'd them out and plac'd Monks in their room. But those



too were at last ejected by King Henry VIII. who plac'd there a *Dean* and *Prebendaries*. The City it self is large, populous and wealthy, dealing much in the *Cloth-trade*. 'Tis govern'd by a Mayor and six Aldermen, who are Justices of the Peace and elected out of the 24 capital Citizens.

*Kedderminster*, at a little distance from the *Severn*, is not remarkable for any Antiquity it can claim; but is, however, a handfom Town, adorn'd with a beautiful Church, and has a Market very well frequented.

*Evesham*, upon the River *Avon*, was very famous among our Fore-fathers, upon account of the Monastery built there by *Egwin*, about the year 700. The Town is seated upon a gentle ascent, and is neat enough; receiving not only great Advantages, but the pleasure also of an open, free Prospect, from the spacious and fruitful *Vale of Evesham*, which produces Corn in great abundance.

*Droitwich*, upon the River *Salwarp*, has got both

its Reputation and Riches, by the *Brine-pits*, and the purest kind of Salt which they make. They had a Charter granted them by King *James I.* and the Burrough is govern'd by two Bailiffs and a certain number of Burgeses.

### Ancient Places.

*Branoninum*, call'd also *Brânogenium*, is undoubtedly the City of *Worcester*, call'd by the *Britains* at this day *Caer Wrangen*.

### Things Remarkable.

The *Brine-pits* at *Droitwich* afford great quantities of fine white Salt; and would yie'd much more, but that the Proprietors are careful, for their own Interest, not to over-stock the Markets.

The River *Severn*, about *Holt* and the neighbouring Parts, breeds prodigious numbers of *River-Lampreys*.

*Washbourn* under *Breden-hills*, with some other Villages, are entirely sever'd from the main Body of the County.

## S T A F F O R D S H I R E.

THE County of *Stafford*, as to the Figure, is broad in the middle, but narrow towards each end: As to the Soil, 'tis mountainous, and not very fruitful towards the North; but in the middle and South-parts, is very fertile and pleasant.

The chief Towns { *Stafford*,  
are, { *Lichfield*.

*Stafford*, upon the River *Sow*, requires our mention, more upon account of its giving name to the whole County, than any Beauty, Riches or Populoufness of its own. Nor was it very considerable, about the Conquest; For we find by *Domesday*, That the King had in this place only 18 Burgeses. The Barons of *Stafford*, owners of *Stafford-Castle*, were exceeding favourable to it, got it erected into a Burrough in the Reign of King *John*, and procur'd for it large Priviledges and Liberties.

*Lichfield*, upon the River *Trent*, is a very ancient Town, and seems to have had that name from the dead Bodies of those Christians who are said to have been put to death here, in the time of *Dioclesian*. Of King of *Northumberland* settl'd a Bishop's See in this place, as early as the year 606, which also afterwards had its Archbishop for some time; but that lasted not long. The situation of it is low; and the City is handfom and pretty large. Its greatest Ornaments, are, the *Cathedral*, the *Bishop's Palace*, and the Houses of the *Prebendaries*; which make a noble Show. 'Tis divided into two parts by a fort

of Lough, which yet have communication by two Causeys. It was first made a Corporation by King *Edward VI.* who granted to it *Bailiffs* and *Burgeses*.

### Ancient Places.

*Etocetum* will best suit with the course and order of the Itinerary, if it be settl'd at *Wall*, about a mile South of *Lichfield*. For the Remains of old *Walls* and Buildings, plainly shew it to be a place of Antiquity; which being gain'd, the agreement of the Distances are a sufficient Argument to prefer this place before any other.

*Pennocrucium* should seem, at first sight, to be *Penkridge*, upon the River *Penk*; and the Distances, as well as Sound, would favour such a Conjecture well enough. But there is one Objection against it, That it lies a considerable way from the *Old Road*, and so cannot well be suppos'd to be one of their Stations, which seldom were remov'd from the *Way*. *Stretton*, a little lower, carries Antiquity in its very name (as much as if one should say *the Street-town*) suits the Distances very well, and has the advantage of lying upon the Road, from which it takes the name.

### Things Remarkable.

Below the Confluence of the River *Tame* and the *Trent*, northward, there is great store of *Alabaster*.

The three Stones, erected Spire-wise in the Church-yard at *Checley*, with the little Images cut upon two of them, upon what account soever they might be set up, are very remarkable.

## S H R O P S H I R E.

The chief Towns { *Shrewsbury*,  
are, { *Ludlow*.

*Shropshire* (as a Frontier-Country between the Welch and English) has more Castles built in it, than any other County in *England*. Inasmuch that a late Author, observes, That it seems to be parted from *Wales* with a continu'd Wall of Castles: And 'tis said by another, That no less then 32 Castles have been built within this Shire, besides the fortify'd Towns. The Soil of it is fruitful, and the Country pleasant.

*Shrewsbury*, the chief Town of the County, tho' it cannot pretend to *Roman* Antiquity, did yet rise out of the Ruins of an old, neighbouring City, *Uricondum*; and was of very good note among the *Saxons*. So that, about the Conquest, we find 252 Citizens reckon'd



reckon'd in it; and *Roger de Montgomery*, who had it bestow'd upon him by the Conqueror, improv'd it considerably with Building; and fortify'd it with a strong Castle. And indeed the natural situation of the Town is encouragement enough to pitch upon it particularly for a place of Strength and Sanctuary. The *Severn* had in a great measure done the work to their Hands, having almost encompass'd it, and made it look like a *Peninsula*. At present, 'tis well-built, well-inhabited and well-traded. For, standing in the Confines of *England* and *Wales*, it is (as it were) the common Mart of both Nations. Of the publick Buildings, the most noted is the *School*, which is a stately Stone Fabrick, erected and endow'd by *Q. Elizabeth*, for one Master and three under-Masters. It has likewise a curious Library, which together with the School and Houses for the School-masters, make it look like a College.

*Lulston*, at the meeting of the Rivers *Teond* and *Corue*, owes its original to the Castle built in the place by *Roger de Montgomery*; which he enclos'd with a Wall. The Town is beautiful and in a thriving condition, notwithstanding all the Misfortunes it has undergone in the turns of War, by being a Frontier between *England* and *Wales*. For which King *Henry VIII.* made it amends very amply, when he settl'd there the *Council of the Marches*, consisting of a Lord President, so many Counsellors and other Officers; which does not only add to its Reputation, but

also is of considerable consequence to it in point of Interest.

#### Ancient Places.

*Rutunium* discovers it self very distinctly in the present name of *Routon*, in the West-part of this County, not far from the *Severn*; which Analogy of Names is of so much the more force, because the Distances agree very well on both sides.

*Uriconium* is call'd at this day *Wroxeter* (at some distance from *Shrewbury*); and the ancient Fortifications and Buildings of the *Romans* (the Remains whereof are visible) are nam'd *The old Works of Wroxeter*.

#### Things Remarkable.

Where the Rivers *Clume* and *Temb* meet, arises the famous *Caer-Caradock*, a large Hill, which was the Scene of that Action between *Ostorius* the *Roman*, and *Caratacus* the *Britain*; whereof *Tacitus* has given us a very distinct Account.

The *Sweating-Sickness* in the year 1551. which overran the whole Kingdom, was observ'd to begin in *Shrewsbury*.

'Tis a pretty Device, the Fishermen in those parts have inventred, viz. a little *Coracle* (as they call it) of an Oval Form, made of split Sally-twigs, and next the Water cover'd with an Horse's hide. In this, one man seats himself, rows with one hand very swiftly, and with the other can manage his Net, Angle or other Fishing-tackle.

## C H E S H I R E.

**T**HE County of *Chester* is a fruitful Country; and very well water'd. It boasts most of its *Palatine Jurisdiction*, by virtue whereof its Earl was stil'd *Comes Palatinus*, and all the Inhabitants held of him as in chief; and were under a Sovereign Allegiance to him, as to the King. He held also his Parliaments, where even the *Barons* were oblig'd to give their Attendance. But when this unlimited Power (which had been granted about the Conquest) came to break in by degrees upon the Regal Authority it self, and was justly suspected by our Kings, *Henry VIII.* restrain'd their Sovereignty, and made them dependent upon the Crown. Notwithstanding which, all Pleas of *Lands* and *Tenements*, &c. ought to be judicially determin'd within this Shire; no Crime but Treason forcing an Inhabitant of this County to a Trial elsewhere.

The more considerable  
Places are, { *Chester*,  
                              { *Nantwich*.

*Chester*, call'd from its westerly situation *West-Chester*, was (under *Agrius* Lieutenant of *Britain*) the Seat of the Legion call'd *Vicesima Victrix*, settl'd there to curb the Incurfions of the *Ordovices*. And accordingly, the discovery of *Roman* Coins, Inscriptions, &c. are a sufficient mark, not only of its Antiquity, but likewise of the Eminent Character it bore in those times. A little after the Conquest, it was made a Bishop's See, by *Peter* Bishop of *Lichfield*; but did not enjoy that Dignity long. In all the Disturbances between the *Englisch* and *Welch*, this City has constantly had its share; being immediately expos'd to their Fury when ever they met with any favourable prospect of an Incurfion. Perhaps, it might be in consideration of their good Services, that King

*Henry VII.* was mov'd to incorporate the Town into a distinct County. But his Successor King *Henry VIII.* did it the greatest Honour, when upon the expulsion of the Monks, he erected it into a Bishop's See; a Dignity that it had wanted for many hundred years. The City it self is of a square Form, the Buildings whereof are very neat; and the chief Street is adorn'd with Piazza's on each side. It has eleven Parish-Churches. The Sea is not so kind as it has been formerly; having withdrawn it self, and depriv'd the City of the advantage of an Harbour.

*Nantwich*, lying upon the River *Wever*, is a Town very well-built, with a handfom Church. It seems to owe its Growth to the *Brine-pits*, which afford them the whitest Salt, in great abundance. Upon which account, 'tis call'd by the *Welch* *Hellath-wen*, that is, *White-salt-wich*.

#### Ancient Places.

*Deva*, is on all Hands agreed, to be the City of *Chester*.

*Bonium* seems to have lett something of its name in the ancient *Banchor*, a Monastery of great eminence among our Fore-fathers, lying upon the River *Dee*; and the Distances, with other Circumstances, do more-over assert it to the same place.

*Cangi*, a People of the *Britains*, are settl'd in these parts, upon the Authority of an old Inscription, dug up near this Coast.

*Condatum* seems to be *Congleton* in this County by the sound; but the Distances and Course of the Itinerary do not much favour the Conjecture. An old Inscription dug up at *Fresbrig* in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, would encline us to carry it thither, by its mention of this ancient place.

Things



## Things Remarkable.

The County is remarkable for making excellent *Cheese*, which it sends thorow the whole Kingdom.

In the Heaths and Bottoms, through which the

*Wever* passes in the South-part of the Shire, they dig up Trees under ground; a thing indeed not peculiar to the County, but remarkable enough.

In this County, they make abundance of Salt.

## HEREFORDSHIRE.

THE County of *Hereford* is water'd by the pleasant Rivers *Wye*, *Lug* and *Munow*, which empty themselves in one Chancel into the *Severn*. Being a sort of Frontier in the Wars between the *English* and *Welch*, it has had greater numbers of Forts and Castles, than most other Counties. Tho' it abounds with good Corn and Pasture-grounds, yet is it most eminent at this day for its vast quantities of Fruit, of which they make so much *Cyder*, as does not only supply their own Families, but furnish *London* and other parts of *England*. Their *Red-streak* (so call'd from the *Apple*) is highly valu'd in all parts.

### The chief Town

*Hereford*, so call'd as if one should say *The Ford of the Army*, is encompass'd with Rivers on all sides, but to the East. 'Tis Daughter to a place of Antiquity at about three miles distance, call'd by the *Romans* *Ariconium*, at this day *Kenchester*. But our *Hereford* seems not to have risen before the *Saxon* Hierarchy was at its height; nor to owe its Growth to any other cause than the Martyrdom of *Echelbert* King of the *East-Angles*, villanously murder'd by *Quindreda* Wife to King *Offa*, while he courted her own Daughter. Whereupon, he was taken into the Catalogue of Martyrs, and had a Church built to his memory in this place; which was not only soon

after erected into a Bishop's See, but had signal Respects shew'd it by the *West-Saxon* and *Mercian* Kings. The City is pretty large: Before the Civil Wars, it had six Churches; but now it has only four.

### Ancient Places.

*Blestium*, by the Distances, can be no other than *Old Foari* (upon the *Munow*) call'd by the *Britains* *Castle-bean*, a name implying *Strength* and *Antiquity*.

*Ariconium* must be *Kenchester*, near *Hereford*; which asserts its claim to Antiquity by the old *Walls*, *Chequer-works*, *Bricks*, *Coins*, &c. observ'd and discover'd about it.

### Things Remarkable.

A *Well*, below *Richard's Castle*, is full of small Fish-bones or Frog-bones; and notwithstanding it be sometimes empty'd, a fresh Supply always succeeds: Whereupon, 'tis call'd *Bone-Well*.

*Marcleys-hill*, near the Confluence of *Lug* and *Wye*, was in the year 1575. remov'd by an Earthquake to a higher place.

In a common Meadow call'd the *Wergins*, between *Sutton* and *Hereford*, two large Stones set on end were remov'd to about twelvescore spaces distance, no Body knew how: This hapn'd about the year, 1652.

## YORKSHIRE.

THE County of *York* is, by much, the largest in all *England*, being divided into three Branches; each of which is as large, or indeed larger than any ordinary County. The Divisions are term'd *Ridings*; a name corrupted from the old *Saxon* *Thrihing*, which consisted of several *Hundreds* or *Wapentakes*. They are, according to the several Quarters, call'd *West-Riding*, *East-Riding* and *North-Riding*, to which we may add *Richmondshire*. We will consider each of these under their several Heads; but the *West-Riding* being the most flourishing part, and abounding most with beautiful Towns, requires the first place.

### WEST-RIDING.

*West-Riding* is for some time bounded by the River *Ouse*, by *Lancashire*, and the Southern-limits of the County in general.

The more considerable Towns, are

York,	Halifax,
Leeds,	Wakefield,
Rippon,	Pontefract.

*YORK*, the Metropolis of this County, and an Archiepiscopal See, stands upon the River *Ore* or *Ouse*, which runs quite through it from North to South. At

what time precisely it was built, we have no evidence: Thus much is certain, That it was the Residence of the *Sixth Legion* call'd *Victrix*, that *Severus* had his Court here, that *Constantine* the Emperor dy'd in this place, and was immediately succeeded by his Son *Constantine* the Great, who receiv'd the last Breath of his dying Father. We need no further Evidence of its Glory under the *Romans*. Upon the Settlement of the *Saxons*, it was erected into a Metropolitan See by Pope *Honorius*, and has continu'd so ever since. It suffer'd very much in the *Danish* Ravages; but it recover'd it self, when the *Norman* Government was establish'd, and the Disturbances of that Revolution were blown over. The City is large, pleasant and adorn'd with beautiful Buildings both publick and private. The Bridge over the *Foss* or *Ditch* is so throng'd with Buildings, that you would take it for one continu'd Street. The publick Structures of greatest note, are, 1. The *Minster*, or Cathedral Church, built in the Reign of *Edward I.* 'Tis a most stately Pile, and particularly remarkable for the fine Carvings in the Quire. 2. The *Chapter-house*, for its small Pillars and the contrivance of the whole Fabrick, is one of the neatest Buildings in *England*.

*Leeds*, upon the River *Aire*, is of good Antiquity; and the very name implies that it has been all along a populous, thriving Town; for 'tis deriv'd from the *Saxon* *Lead*, gens, *populus*. It has grown strangely



by the advantage of the *Cloth Trade* especially; and was by King *Charles II.* honour'd with a Mayor, 12 Aldermen and 24 Assistants.

*Rippon*, situated between the *Ure* and the *Skell*, was of good note even in the Infancy of the English Church, upon account of the Monastery built there by *Wilfrid* Archbishop of *York*. The Town has grown mightily by the *Wollen Manufacture*, which they have now pretty much laid aside. The Church is a neat and stately Fabrick, with three Spire-steeples; and was built by Contributions.

*Halifax*, upon the River *Calder*, is suppos'd to be nam'd from a certain holy Virgin, who had her Head cut off by a lustful Villain, with whose impure Desires she would not, by any means, comply. Her Head was hung up on a Tree; and was reputed so sacred, as to be frequently visited in Pilgrimage. Whereupon, the little Village of *Horton* came by degrees to be a large and noted Town, and took its name from that which had rais'd its Reputation, viz. the *sacred Hair* of the Virgin's Head: For so much *Halifax* implies. Notwithstanding the Soil hereabouts is very barren, the Inhabitants by their Industry in the *Cloth Trade* are grown exceeding rich. The Parish is vastly large, having in it twelve Chapels under the Mother-Church of *Halifax*, two whereof are Parochial.

*Wakefield*, upon the River *Calder*, is a large Town, nearly built, has a well-frequented Market, and has grown mainly by the *Cloathing-Trade*.

*Pontefract*, so call'd from a *broken Bridge*, is a Town well-built and admirably situated. It had a most noble large Castle, seated upon a high Hill, which is now demolish'd.

#### Ancient Places.

*Danum*, mention'd by *Antoninus* and the *Notitia*, is undoubtedly *Doncaster*, call'd by *Ninius* *Caer-Daum*.

*Cambodunum* belongs to the little Village *Almondbury*, six miles from *Halifax*; as appears both by the Distances on each hand, and the Ruins of an old Roman Work, with a trip'e Fortification, still plainly visible.

*Leggionum* cannot be more conveniently seated than at *Castlesford*, near the Confluence of *Calder* and *Aire*; where they meet with great numbers of Coins, which they call *Saxons Heads*.

*Olicana* appears to be *Ilkeley*, from the affinity of the two names, the remains of Antiquity found about it, and its situation in respect of *York*.

*Calcaria*, tho' commonly seated at *Tadcaster*, and that upon very plausible Reasons, ought nevertheless to be remov'd to its Neighbour *New-ton-kime*, where the ancient High-road runs along, crossing the River at *S. Helensford*, and where they meet with great store of Roman Coins, and other marks of Antiquity.

*Isurium* is sufficiently asserted to *Aldborrow* near *Burrow-bridge*, both by its nearness to the River *Ure*, the great number of Coins they dig up, and its due distance from the City of *York*, answering the computation of *Antoninus*.

*Eboracum* is by all agreed to be the City of *York*, the eminence whereof in the time of the *Romans*, we have already taken notice of.

#### Things Remarkable.

*Halifax-law* is eminent: By it, they behead any one that's found stealing within such a *Liberty*, without staying for a legal and ordinary Process.

*S. Wilfrid's Needle* at *Rippon* was mighty famous. In the Church, they had a little close passage into a

Vault, whereby they pretended to try the Chastity of Women: If they were Chaste, they pass'd with ease; if not, they were stop'd and holden, without any visible Impediment.

The *Devil's Bolts*, near *Burrow-bridge*, are three huge Stones, set on end in the form of Pyramids: which have their name from a foolish fancy of the Vulgar, that they were pitch'd there by the *Devil*; but are by the Learned (according to different Conjectures) look'd upon to be either Monuments of some Victory, or *British* Deities.

In the *Levels* or *Marches*, they dig up great quantities of *Fir* and some *Oak*.

## EAST-RIDING.

The Bounds of the *East-Riding* are thus: The North and West-sides are limited by the River *Derwent*; the South, by the mouth of *Humber*; and the North, by the *German Ocean*. In some parts 'tis pretty fruitful, tho' in every respect it falls much short of the *West-Riding*; the middle of it being nothing but Mountains, which they call *York-molds*.

The chief Towns  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Beverley,} \\ \text{are,} \quad \quad \quad \text{Hull.} \end{array} \right.$

*Beverley* began to be a Town of note, after *John de Beverley* Archbishop of *York*, a Person of great Piety, retir'd hither, and ended his days in it. For King *Athelstan* having a singular Veneration for him, for his sake endow'd the Town with several Immunities; and others of our Kings have been exceeding kind to it upon the same account. So that now (notwithstanding its nearness to *Hull*, which one would think should very much prejudice it) it is above a mile in length; and is adorn'd with two beautiful Churches. The *Minster* is a very fair Structure. The chief Trade of the place, is *Malt*, *Oatmeal*, and *Tann'd Leather*.

*Hull*, or *Kingston upon Hull*, is so call'd from the River upon which it stands, and King *Edward I.* its Founder. By the convenience of their Harbour, the advantage of their *Island-Fish-Trade*, and the particular Favours of their great Patron *Michael de la Pole*, the Town is so grown both in Wealth, Buildings, Populoufness and Commerce, that it infinitely exceeds all its Neighbours. They have two Churches, an Exchange for Merchants, and a *Trinity-house* for the Relief of Seamen and their Wives; besides other Buildings, which are very ornamental and of great use in the management of their Trade, and the administration of their Government. As to the Strength of the place, they have a strong *Cittadel* begun in the year 1681. But their situation is the best Bulwark against the Enemy: For by advantage of the Level all about, they can let in the Flood, and lay all under-water for five miles round.

#### Ancient Places.

*Derventio* must be seated somewhere upon the River *Derwent*: *Auldby* is the likeliest place, both upon account of its name, which implies an *old Dwelling*; and also by reason of the Remains of Antiquity still visible about it.

*Abus* can be no other *Æstuary* than the *Humber*, which is a very spacious one, and receives a great many considerable Rivers.

*Delgoviria* is probably *Wigton*, upon the little River *Foulness*; *Degwe* in *British* signifying a Statue or Image of a Heathen God, and it appearing that not far from hence there stood an *Idol Temple*.



*Ocellum Promontorium*, is *Spurnhead*; where *Kellnsey* seems to be a Remain of the old *Ocellum*.

*Prætorium* discovers it self by the present name *Patrington*, and by its distance from *Delgovitia*.

*Sinus Salutaris* is that Bay near *Bridlington*; in the turn whereof is *Sureby*, which exactly answers the name, as 'tis translated into Latin, from the Greek *Ευλίμδρον*.

## Things Remarkable.

The *Vipseys* or *Gipseys* (for so they are call'd at present) about *Flamborough*, are a sort of little Springs which jet out of the Ground, and spout up Water to a great height. They never come, but after great Rains, and lasting wet Weather. See *Camden's Britannia*, English, pag. 748.

## NORTH-RIDING.

The *North-Riding* is (as it were) the Frontier of the other two; extending in a narrow Tract from East to West, for sixty miles together, and bounded on one side with the River *Derwent* and the *Ouse*, on the other by the *Tees*.

The chief Town is

*Gisburgh*, four miles from the mouth of the *Tees*, formerly famous for the Abbey there; which, by the Ruins, seems to have been equal to some of the best Cathedrals in England. Its Eminence appears, in that it was the common Burial-place for the Nobility in these parts. The pleasant Situation, the goodness of the Air, the neatness of the Inhabitants, and other Advantages, make the place very agreeable and delightful.

## Ancient Places.

*Dunus Sinus* discovers it self by a little Village seated upon it and call'd *Dunesley*, hard by *Whitby*.

## Things Remarkable.

About *Whitby*, they find the *Serpent-stones*; which the credulous, common People imagine to be *Serpents*, turn'd into *Stones* by the Prayers of *S. Hilda*.

Upon the same Shore, they find the *Black-Amber* or *Geate*, which grows within the chink or cliff of a Rock.

The *Seales* (or *Sea-seales*, call'd also *Sea-calves*) sleep upon the Rocks near *Huntcliff* in great Drovers, and there Sun themselves.

## RICHMONDSHIRE.

This part of the County lying to the North-west, is almost all Rocks and Mountains, which yet in some places afford good Pasture; and under-ground, great store of *Lead*, *Coal*, &c.

The chief Town is

*Richmond*, upon the River *Swale*, so call'd as if one should say a *rich Mount*; which name it had given it by *Alan* the first Earl, immediately after the Conquest; who fortify'd it with Walls and a very strong Castle. It has three Gates; and taking in the Suburbs is pretty large and populous; but within the Walls it is but narrow.

## Ancient Places.

*Bracchium* is to be sought for at the confluence of *Baine* and *Ure*; where, at a place call'd *Burgh*, are the Remains of an old Fortification, and where an Inscription was discover'd making express mention of this name.

*Caturactonium* (so call'd from a *Cataract* in the River *Swale*) does plainly discover it self in our present *Cattarick*.

*Lavarræ*, by the course of the ancient High-way, and the Distances in *Antoninus*, must be about *Bomes*, on the edge of *Stanemore*; which has had its Antiquity attested by ancient Inscriptions.

## Things Remarkable.

Upon the Confines of *Lancashire*, where the Mountains are rough, wild and steep, there are little Rivulets hurry along so deep in the Ground, that it creates an Horror in one, to look down to them: Those they call *Hell-becks*; upon account of their gafliness and depth.

*Sir Christopher Medcalf*, a Gentleman of these parts, when Sheriff of the County, is said to have been attended with 300 Horse, all of his own Family and Name, and all in the same Habit, when he receiv'd the Judges, and conducted them to *York*.

## DURHAM.

*Durham* (commonly call'd the *Bishoprick* of *Durham*, from the absolute Power which the Bishops hereof us'd to exercise in this County) is nam'd by our ancient Writers, the *Patrimony* of *S. Cuthbert*. This Saint, who liv'd here in the Infancy of the *Saxon-Church*, was so much respected by our Kings and Nobility for his exemplary Virtue and Piety, that they thought they could never sufficiently express their respect to his Memory, nor heap *Lands*, *Privileges* and *Immunities* enough upon his darling Church. In short, that at length, it was made a *County-Palatine*; and accordingly the Bishops have their *Royalties*, and are both *Spiritual* and *Temporal* Lords.

The more considerable Towns, { *Durham*,  
are { *Bernard-castle*,  
{ *Stockton*.

*Durham*, in *Saxon Dun-holm*, from its high situation, owes its original to the miseries and misfortunes of the Monks of *Lindisfarne*, in the time of the

*Danes*. For being by that barbarous People disturb'd in their own Seats, they were forced to seek Protection for themselves, and a shelter for the Relicks of *S. Cuthbert*, in the most convenient place they should meet with. Here they fix'd; and when that dreadful Storm was blown over, and Religion reviv'd, they flourish'd in great Pomp and Reputation. In *William* the Conqueror's time the place was made a Seat of War, by those who could not bear the violation of their ancient Rights and Liberties. The Town is defended by the River, on all sides but the North; and is wall'd round. The Cathedral is a noble Pile of Building, and the Church exceeding rich.

*Bernard-castle*, upon the River *Tees*, was so call'd from *Bernard Baliol* (Grandfather to *John Baliol* King of *Scots*.) its Founder. 'Tis a good Town, and is eminent in those Northern parts, for the best *White-bread*.

*Stockton*, about three miles below *Tarum* (a considerable Market-town) about thirty years ago, had no Houses



Houses, but of Clay; and thatch'd. Now, 'tis well built, is a Corporation, and drives a great Trade in Lead and Butter.

*Ancient Places.*

*Tuesis*, or *Téasie* in *Ptolomy*, is plainly the River *Tees*.

*Vedra*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*, does likewise belong to this County, and is undoubtedly the River *Were*, call'd by *Bede*, *Wirus*.

*Vindobium* in *Antoninus*, in *Ptolomy*, *Binnovium*, seems by the very Name to settle it self at *Binchester*, near the River *Were*; where appear large Ruins of Walls: and Coins, with other marks of Antiquity, are dug up.

*Condercum* seems to be *Chester on the Street*, near the River *Were*; especially, if the Saxon-name of the

place be *Concester*: All the Objection is, That the *Notitia* settles this Station at *Lincom Valli*, so that *Chester on the Street* is perhaps too far remov'd from the Wall to lay claim to this piece of Antiquity. An Altar found at *Bennwall* in *Northumberland* seems to give it to that place, against which there is not the same Objection.

*Things remarkable.*

The Pits call'd *Hell-kettles* near *Darlington*, are much admir'd both by Travellers and the Inhabitants. There are three of them, full of Water to the brim; possibly by a communication with the *Tees* only: the Water in them is said to be of a different kind from that in the River. They look much like old-wrought Coal-pits that are drown'd.

## L A N C A S H I R E.

THE County of *Lancaster*, call'd by the northern People *Loncaster*, where it is level yields good store of *Barley* and *Wheat*; and in the Valleys, *Oats*. The *Mosses*, tho' as to their produce they are of no real value, are yet of considerable advantage both by the Fuel above ground, and the old Trees underground. Its greatest Glory is, that 'tis a County-*Palatine*, as well as its neighbour *Cheeshire*.

The more considerable  
Towns are, { *Lancaster*,  
*Manchester*,  
*Wiggin*,  
*Liverpool*.

*Lancaster*, (so call'd from the River *Lone* upon which it stands) gives name to the whole County, and was, accordingly, the most flourishing Town in it. But now 'tis much out-grown by *Manchester*, having no advantage of Trade, or any other Employment besides that of Agriculture; to which indeed the nature and situation of the place may seem in some measure to have determin'd the Inhabitants. For the Grounds about it are very fit for Cultivation, and 'tis seated in an open free Tract.

*Manchester*, at the Confluence of the *Irk* and *Irwell*, is the most populous and thriving Town in this County. The Inhabitants may be estimated from the number of Communicants; who in the Town and Parish round it made no less than 20000, sixty years ago; since which time the Inhabitants have encreas'd proportionably to their incredible growth in Trade. They are most famous for the *Fustian-Manufacture*, commonly known by the name of *Manchester-Cottons*; tho' they deal also in many other Manufactures, all which are call'd by one general name, *Manchester-Wares*. They have more publick Buildings than are commonly to be met with in our County-towns. 1. The Collegiate Church is a very stately Edifice, the Quire whereof is particularly remarkable for its curious carv'd Work. 2. The College (consisting of 2 Warden, four Fellows, two Chaplains, four Singers, and four Choristers) is a noble Foundation. 3. The Hospital for the maintenance of sixty poor Boys, is much of the same Government and Constitution with that of *Christ-Church* in *London*. 4. The Library is furnish'd already with Books, to almost the number of 4000, and will daily encrease by an annual Salary of 116 l. sett'd upon it for that purpose, and for the maintenance of a Librarian. 5. The School

has three Masters, who have plentiful Salaries.

*Wiggin*, near the rise of the River *Dugless*, is a handsome, plentiful Town, having the honour of a Mayor and Burgesses.

*Liverpoole* (near the entrance of the River *Mersey* into the Sea) tho' it can boast of no great Antiquity, is yet a place both of Name and Wealth. The first it derives from the convenience of a passage from hence over into *Ireland*, which of late years has been much us'd by reason of the Commotions in that Kingdom. The second is owing to its Trade with the *West-Indies*, and the Manufactures round it: By the advantage whereof the Buildings and Inhabitants are more than doubly increas'd, and the Customs augmented eight or ten-fold, within these 28 years last past. Of late, they have built a Town-house, plac'd upon Pillars; and under it, the Exchange.

*Ancient Places.*

*Mancunium*, is *Manchester*, which may seem to have taken part of its name from the *Roman* one.

*Bellisama* must be an Estuary hereabouts: The latter Syllable of the name of *Ribell* would induce us to pitch upon the mouth of that River before any other.

*Ribodunum* (if we may change *Ptolomy's Rigodunum* into that) need not be sought in any other place but *Ribble-chester*, which produces a variety of *Roman* Remains; and however inconsiderable at present, gave rise to *Preston*, a handsome, large and populous Town. *Bremetunacum* cannot probably be more conveniently seated than at *Overburrow* (at the confluence of *Lancaster* and *Lone*) which, tho' it has no remains of the old name, does yet carry Antiquity in the latter part of its present one, and has the Tradition of the Inhabitants on its side (who tell you of a spacious City that was formerly there) and the Evidence of *Roman* Coins, Inscriptions, &c.

*Longovicium* is plainly *Lancaster*, call'd by the Inhabitants and the northern part, *Loncaster*; beside which Analogy of Names, they meet now and then with Coins of the *Roman* Emperors.

*Things Remarkable.*

*Lancashire-Oxen* are famous throughout England for huge, bulky Bodies and large Horns.

*Winwick*, near the River *Mersey*, is reckon'd one of the best Parsonages in the Kingdom.



*Latham-spaw* in this County, tho' not much frequented (by reason of the want of suitable Accommodation) has done considerable Cures.

*Burning-well*, near *Wiggin*, if a Candle be put to it, will presently take Fire and *burn* like Brandy; and in a calm quiet Season will continue for a whole day together, even to that degree, that by the heat of it they boil Eggs, Mear, &c.

**T**HE County of *Westmorland* is so call'd from its *westerly* situation; lying *West* of that great ridge of Mountains which divides these Northern Counties. The out-skirts of it on most sides are hilly and mountainous, which feed great Flocks of Sheep, and have a mixture of fruitful *Vales*; but the heart of it is an open, champaign Country; which affords good store of *Corn* and *Wood*.

The more considerable *Apleby,*  
Towns, are *Kendal.*

*Apleby* claims the first place, both upon account of its Antiquity; and also because 'tis the County-town, where the yearly Assizes are held. Otherwise, 'tis neither rich nor beautiful; only the situation indeed makes it very agreeable, having the advantage of pleasant Fields round it, and being wash'd by the River *Eden*.

*Kendal*, call'd also *Kirby Kendal*, has its name from the River *Can*, and implies as much as a *Dale* or *Vally* upon that River. This is much beyond *Apleby*, whether we respect the Trade, Buildings, Number or Wealth of the Inhabitants. It has two good Streets, which cross each other, and is enrich'd by the Industry of the Towns-men and the Wollen Manufacture, for which they are very eminent, and drive a Trade with it throughout *England*.

### Ancient Places.

*Amboglana*, if we follow the Analogy of Names, cannot be plac'd more conveniently than at *Ambleside*, upon *Windermere-water*; which may be done with so much the less scruple, because it shews the Ruins of an old City, and other marks of Antiquity.

*Ituna* is undoubtedly the noble River of *Eden*, which marches through this County, towards the Sea.

*Verteræ* must be Brough under Stanmore, for several Reasons: The Name imports Antiquity; then it stands upon a Roman High-way; and lastly, the Distances from *Leuatre* and *Brouonacum* agree very exactly.

*Aballaba* is so visible in our present *Apella*, and so well answers that situation, that there is no room for dispute.

*Gallatun* is probably *Wecp-castle*, near *Kirby-Thore*, where are the Ruins of an old Town, and very considerable Remains of Antiquity.

*Setantiorum Lacus* may well enough be *Windermere*; upon the edge of *Lancashire*; one of the largest Lakes in the Kingdom.

### Things Remarkable.

King Arthur's round Table, in the North of this County, is much talk'd of by the Inhabitants and others? But we need go no farther for its original than the Ages wherein Tilting was in vogue; this being a round Entrenchment with a plain piece of Ground in the middle, and very convenient for that purpose.

*Gold-like*, in the Parish of *Oxton*, is a little Spring which continually casts up small thin pieces, of a substance shining and resembling Gold.

In *Windermere-water* there is great store of the *Fish* call'd *Charre*, which is not to be met withal in the South, and only in very few places of the North. They are bak'd in Pots, and so sent up to *London*, and other parts, where they are an acceptable Present.

**T**HE County of *Cumberland* is the farthest of our English Counties to the North-west, and borders upon *Scotland*. Whether it fetch the name from the old *Britains*, call'd *Cambri* and *Cambri*; or, (as a modern Author imagins) from our *Cumber*, the Shire being *encumber'd* with Lakes and Mountains, and made very difficult to Travellers, I shall not determine. The former Conjecture has this advantage, that some of the *Britains* posted themselves for a long time in these parts, when the *Saxon Conqueror* drove them to the out-skirts of the Island, and made them seek for shelter among Hills and Mountains. The remains of British Names hereabouts concur to the establishment of the same Opinion.

More considerable  
Towns are, Carlisle,  
& Penrith.

Carlisle is happy in its situation, standing between the Rivers of Eden, Peteril and the Cauda; which, as they make it very agreeable, and furnish it with great plenty of Fish, so do they add considerably to its Strength; a circumstance that in these bordering Countries was very valuable. For before the union of the two Crowns, the Scots were continually making Incursions upon the Frontiers; which put the Government under a necessity of building Castles, Towers and fortify'd Places, for the defence of it self and of the Subject. The City is walled round, has a Castle, with a Citadel built by King Henry VIII. Its situation upon the Wall, with the marks of Antiquity dug up about it, put it beyond dispute, that it was a place of some note among the Romans. The Danes utterly destroy'd it, and it lay in desolation for about two hundred years; till William Rufus took it into his protection, built here a Castle, and planted







Assaults, upon the breaking out of War between the two Nations. By which means it was a sort of continual Garison, one while in the Hands of the *English*; and then again in the possession of the *Scots*; till it was reduc'd to the obedience of *Edward IV.* and partly by the Union, partly by its great Strength, has ever since continu'd in subjection to our Kings. About a hundred years ago, it was reputed the strongest place in the whole Kingdom; but as the apprehensions of Danger from that Quarter have for many years ceas'd, and so put a stop to the Improvements which would otherwise have been made upon it; so Enemies from other Parts have oblig'd us to spend more Pains and Industry upon *Hull, Portsmouth, Plymouth, &c.* which at present much out-do it in Strength and Fortifications.

*Hexam* was a place of mighty note among the Saxons; and is much talk'd of in our Histories. For here, *Egfrid* settl'd a Bishop's See; which might have continu'd longer (to the honour and interest of the place) if the *Danes* had not given them such violent Disturbances, as put the Monks under a necessity of removing, and seeing out for new Quarters. The Church, which stands still entire (except the West-end) is a stately Fabrick.

*Ancient Places.*

*Magna*, mention'd by the *Notitia*, is probably *Chester in the Wall*; not only because it stands upon the *Picts-wall* and takes its name from thence, but also because it has shewn us some Altars and Inscriptions, as Evidences of its Antiquity.

*Hunnum*, tho' it has left no Remains of its name, in any place in these parts, yet the Wing which resid'd at it, call'd by the *Notitia, Sabiniana*, may seem to have given some ground to the present *Sevenshale*, upon the Wall.

*Gallana* discovers it self in the present *Walwick*, which probably had this denomination from the old name.

*Habitancum* should seem to be *Risingham* upon the River *Rhead*, where are many Remains of Antiquity, and an Inscription was dug up which made express mention of the old name.

*Cilurnum* may very conveniently be plac'd at *Cilcester* near the Wall; which may seem to owe the first Syllable of its name to it.

*Axelodunum* is so manifest in our present *Hexam*, that the latter seems only to be a contraction of the former; especially, if we consider the various melt-ings and mouldings of this name under the Saxons. Add to this, that the termination *Dunum* does very well suit with the high situation of this place.

*Protolitia* seems to be our *Prudhow-castle*, upon the River *Tine*.

*Pons Ælii* can be no other, than that which at this day we call *Pont-Eland*, upon the River *Pont*.

*Borcovicus* does still preserve the Remains of its name in *Borwick*, which seems to be a Compound of a Roman Initial and a Saxon Termination.

*Vindolana*, where the fourth Cohort of the *Galli* kept Garison, may very well be settl'd at *Old-Winchester*.

*Gabrosentum* is *Gateshead*, a sort of Suburbs to *Newcastle*, where the Wall pass'd.

*Vindobala*, as the *Notitia*; or, as *Antoninus* terms it, *Vindomora*, seems to imply as much as the Wall's end; and then we need not be at a loss for its situation, since we meet with a Village in these parts of the very same name.

*Glanoventa* (signifying as much as the bank of the River *Went*) must be plac'd somewhere upon the River call'd at this day *Wentsbeck*; tho' the Distances seem to hit well enough with *Caer-worran*, near which, there is a place still call'd *Glen-welt*.

*Alaunus*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*, discovers it self plainly in the present name *Alne*.

*Tinnocellum* is plainly *Tinmouth*; call'd formerly *Tunnacester*, from the old Roman name.

*Segedunum* needs no clearer Guide to its situation, than the affinity it has with our present *Seghill*, upon the Sea-coast near *Tinmouth*.

*Alone* may fairly enough be settl'd at *Old-town*; not only because that place carries Antiquity in the name, but also from its situation upon the River *Alon*, and the proper Distances from the Stations on each Hand.

*Corstopitum*, is evidently *Corbridge*; and probably the same with *Ptolomy's Curia Ottadinorum*.

*Things Remarkable.*

At *Chillingham-Castle*, 'tis said a live Toad was found in the middle of a Stone at the sawing of it. One part of the Stone is now a Chimney-piece in the Castle, with a hallow in the middle; and the other also has the like mark, and is put to the same use at *Horton-Castle*.

The Improvement in Tillage at *Rock* by *John Salkeld, Esq;* and in Gardening and Fruiterie at *Fal-ladon*, by *Samuel Salkeld, Gentleman*; are Fineries hardly to be met with in these Parts; The latter is the more remarkable, because of an Opinion which has prevail'd in the World, That the coldness of the Climate in these Northern parts, will not allow Fruit to come to its proper perfection and ripeness.

Not far from *Newcastle*, there are some Coal-pits on fire, which have burnt several years: The Flames are visible enough by night, and the burning may be trac'd on the day time by *Brimstone*, which lies on the Surface of the Ground.



# W A L E S.

**T**HAT the Inhabitants of *WALEs* are the Off-spring of the ancient *Britains*, who were possess'd of the greatest part of this Island before the coming over of the *Saxons*, we have shewn in the general *Account* of the several Inhabitants. The *Severn* was their Boundary on this side, for a long time; till the prevailing power of the *Saxons*, and of the Kings of *England* after the Conquest, oblig'd them to retire further Westward, and to seek shelter among the Mountains. Notwithstanding which, they still enjoy'd their own Laws, liv'd under their own Princes, and maintain'd their own Liberties against all the Designs and Attempts of the English. Till at last, in the Year 1282. *Llewellen ap Gryffith*, Prince of *Wales*, lost both his Life and Principality to King *Edward I.* who yet did not think himself safe, notwithstanding his Victory seem'd entire and absolute. For he observ'd the Humour of the *Welch* to be bitterly set against any Foreign Prince or Governor, and was very hard put to it to settle himself in the secure possession of his new Conquests, till he enter'd upon this

lucky Expedient. His Queen was then big with Child; so he sent for her immediately to come to *Carnarvon*, and when she was deliver'd of a Son, he summon'd a Meeting of the *Welch* Lords, and offer'd them the young Child (a Native of their own) for their Lord and Governour. To him they readily swore Obedience; and since that time, the eldest Sons of the King of *England* have commonly been created *Princes of Wales*.

As to the present condition of this Principality; it is divided into *South-Wales* and *North-Wales*; from the situation of the several Branches. The Counties of *Hereford* and *Monmouth* (which formerly belong'd to it) are now lopp'd off, and reckon'd among those of *England*. The former of these we have already survey'd: The latter (as being disjointed in a manner by the *Æstuary of Severn*) we shall reserve to its proper place, in the Survey of these parts. Passing therefore by *Herefordshire*, the next County to the North-west, is

## R A D O N R S H I R E.

**T**HE County of *Radnor*, on the East and South-parts, is well cultivated and fruitful enough: The rest of it, tho' well water'd, is so very rugged and uneven, that the Plow can have no Employment there.

The chief Town is

*Radnor*, from whence the whole County takes its name. *Old Radnor* (call'd from its high situation *Pencraig*) was laid in Ashes by *Rhys ap Gryffith* in the Reign of King *John*. The new Town is well-built, for those parts; and was formerly defended with Walls and a Castle. It might have been much more considerable, had it escap'd the Fury of the rebellious *Owen Glyndwr*, who burnt it down. But a more immediate cause of its decay, seems to be the Encouragement that was afforded to its Neighbour *Presteat* (about three miles off) by *Martin* Lord Bishop of *S. Davids*; by whose favour it grew up to a considerable Market, and must by consequence draw off the Trade and resort from *Radnor*.

The ancient Place in this County is

*Magi*, mention'd by *Antoninus*; which possibly we may soonest find about the place we have been just now describing. I mean, *Old Radnor*, call'd by the *Britains* *Maesfrod ben*; for the middle-Age Writers call the Inhabitants of those parts *Magetæ*, as much as if one should say the Seat of the *Magi*; and the Distances on both sides will fit well enough.

The Thing most remarkable, is

*Offa's-dike*, a mighty Work of it self, and much talkt of by our Historians. The name it has from the Contriver of it, King *Offa*, who had it cast up as a Boundary between the *English* and *Welch*, and a Protection for the former against the Invasions of the latter. It runs through *Herefordshire*, so over a part of *Shropshire* into *Montgomeryshire*; then again into *Shropshire*, and so through *Denbighshire* into *Flintshire*; and ends a little below *Holywell*, where that Water empties it self into the *Dee*.

## B R E C K N O C K S H I R E.

**T**HE County of *Brecknock*, on the South of *Radnorshire*, is of great extent, but very mountainous; tho' the pleasant and fruitful Vales (whereof they have a good number) make amends for this unpleasant appearance.

The chief Town is

*Brecknock*, upon the River *Usk*; which as it gives name to the whole County, so is it situated almost in the middle of it. The *Roman* Coins, which they discover hereabouts, are a Testimony, that it has been of some note among that People. I know not whe-

ther the Town began to flourish when *Bernard Newmarch* (who conquer'd this Country) built a stately Castle at it; which was afterwards repair'd by the *Breoses* and *Bobuns*. 'Tis certain, King *Henry VIII.* added much both to the honour and advantage of the place, when he constituted here a Collegiate Church of fourteen *Prebendaries*.

There are no *Ancient Places* that can probably be fix'd in this County; nor any *Remarkable*, which properly fall under our Design.



## MONMOUTHSHIRE.

**T**HE Countrey of *Monmouth*, among other Advantages is abundantly supply'd with Water; being bounded (as it were) on all sides with Rivers, and parted in the middle by the noble River of *Usk*. The East part abounds with Pastures and Woods; the Western-parts are a little Mountainous, but yet fruitful enough.

The chief Towns  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Monmouth,} \\ \text{are,} \quad \text{Chepstow.} \end{array} \right.$

*Monmouth* (situated between the Rivers *Mynydd* and *Wye*) is the chief Town of this County, and has been a place of note ever since the Conquest. For the Castle flourish'd in the Time of the Conqueror, and seems to have been of great account in the Civil Wars, which hapn'd afterwards in this Kingdom. Infomuch, that the Town may seem in some measure to owe its growth to it; King *Henry III.* granting it large Privileges, after he had depriv'd *John*, Baron of *Monmouth* of his Inheritance, either for espousing himself the Interest of the Barons, or because his Heirs had clos'd with the Earl of *Bretagne*. It glories in the Birth of two Persons, very much talk'd of in our Histories; one for his martial Achievements, the other for his Learning and Knowledge in Antiquities. For here King *Henry V.* the Glory of *England* and Terror of *France*, had his first Breath; and here also was born the noted *Jeffery* (call'd from hence *de Monmouth*) Author of the famous British History. The latter I am the rather inclin'd to reckon an Ornament to the place of his Nativity, because the *Britains* seem to value themselves and their Nation upon the Original he has given them, and are inclin'd to give more Credit to his Relations, than their Neighbours are willing to allow them.

*Chepstow*, near the mouth of the River *Wye*, is of a pure *Saxon* original; which also intimates that it

was a place of Trade and Commerce when that name was given it. The old *Ventia Silurum* is about four miles from it; and some affirm, That it arose out of the Ruins of that ancient City: How truly, I know not. 'Tis at present, a Town of good note, secur'd by Walls of a considerable compass.

## Ancient Places.

*Ventia Silurum*, was the chief City of this People, and a large one it was for those Times; the Ruins shewing about a mile in compass. As the Remains of Antiquity point out the place, so is the memory of it preserv'd in the present name of *Gaer-went*, not far from *Chepstow*.

*Gobannium* is seated at the Confluence of the River *Wysk* and *Gavenni*; from which Confluence 'tis at this day call'd *Aber-Gavenni*.

*Isca* is plainly the River *Usk*; and the Station call'd by *Antoninus* *Isch* and *Legio secunda* is undoubtedly *Kaer Lheion*; call'd also by the *Britains*, *Kaer Ithobon ar wysk*, intimating as much as, The City of the Legion upon the River *Usk*; from the *Legio secunda Augusti* which quarter'd there.

*Burrium* is plac'd by *Antoninus* 12 miles from *Gobannium*: 'Tis call'd at this day *Brynbiga* for *Buren-begi* (where the River *Brydwin* falls into the *Usk*) which name seems to retain something of the more ancient Denomination.

The Things most Remarkable in this County, are

The Chequer'd Pavements, which were discover'd about the ancient *Ventia Silurum* or *Kaer-went* in the year 1689. Upon taking them up, the Cement was dissolv'd; so that nothing but the cubical Stones of which they were compos'd, do now remain. The Stones whereof these Pavements are made, are of several Colours; and by the Artifice of the Workman are form'd into several Shapes of Men, Beasts, Cups, &c. or whatever else he pleas'd.

## GLAMORGANSHIRE.

**G**lamorganshire is by some suppos'd to take that name from a certain Prince call'd *Morgan*; which is a Conjecture probable enough, considering how common the name is in this Country. But if we respect the Situation of the Country, we must rather fetch it from its relation to the Sea, or the *Æstuary* of *Severn*, upon which it is stretch'd out towards the South; for *Mor* in their Language signifies the Sea.

The chief Towns  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Landaffe,} \\ \text{are,} \quad \text{Caerdiff.} \end{array} \right.$

*Landaffe* is seated in a bottom upon the River *Taf*, from which and the Church there it takes the name: For *Lhan* in British signifies a Church. From this it derives its greatest Ornament and Reputation; being erected into a Bishop's See as early as the suppression of the *Pelagian* Heresie by *Germanus* and *Lupus*, the two Gallick Bishops.

*Caerdiff*, considering it lies nearer the mouth of

the same River, has greater advantage by the Harbour; and is a pretty neat Town.

## Ancient Places.

*Ratostibius* is a corruption of the British *Traeth Tav*, which signifying the sandy Frith of the River *Tav*, we need not give our selves any further trouble in enquiring after the position of this ancient Place.

*Bovium* is *Boverton*, three miles from *Cowbridge*, a Market-Town.

*Nidum* also points its situation by the present name: *Nedh*, a Town of good note.

*Leucarum* is *Lloghor*.

The Thing most Remarkable in this County, is

*Caerphylly-castle*, the noblest Ruins of ancient Architecture that we have in this whole Island; being larger than any Castle in *England*, except only *Windsor*. This seems to have been the *Belium Silurum*; which being turn'd into British, is *Caer-Vyl*, and that must be express'd like *Caer-Vyl*, or *Caer-Vyli*.



## CAERMARTHENSIRE.

**T**HE County of *Caermarthben*, in British *Kaer-Vyrdbin*, bears good store of Corn, and abounds pretty much with Cattel: Besides which Advantage of the Soil, it yields in several places good plenty of Corn.

The chief Place is

*Caermarthben*, seated pleasantly upon the River *Towy*, among Woods and Meadows, whither Ships of small Burden are carry'd up. But the Sea has been a little unkind to it; having well-nigh stopp'd up the mouth of the River with a ridge of Sand. This

Town has the honour of being the Birth-place of the famous *Merlin*, the British Prophet, so much talk'd of in ancient Story.

*Ancient Places.*

*Tobius* is manifestly the River *Towy*, which crosses this County from North to South, and empties it self into the Ocean a little below *Kidwelli*.

*Maridunum* is plainly *Caermarthben*, just now describ'd; especially, if we take the British name of the place, *Caer-mardkin*.

## PENBROKESHIRE.

**T**HE County of *Penbroke* (encompass'd with the Sea, except on the North and East-sides) is fertile enough in Corn; which is improv'd by the plenty of *Marle* and other farming Materials they make use of, to enrich the Ground. They are likewise well stock'd with Cattel, and have good store of Coal for Fuel.

The chief Towns { *Penbroke*, } { *Haverford-west*,  
are, { *S. David's*, } { *Tenbigh*.

*Penbroke* (translated by *Giraldus*, *The Cape*, or *Sea-Promontory*) is seated in the Eastern-bay of *Milford-haven*: *Arnulph de Montgomery* built a Castle here in the time of *Henry I.* At present, 'tis a Corporation, and receives great Advantages from the Sea.

*S. David's* (seated in the utmost Promontory to the Westward) has its name from *Dewi* or *David*, a very religious Bishop, who translated the Archiepiscopal See from *Caer-Leon* to this place. This Honour it enjoy'd for a long time; till the Plague raging in those parts, the Dignity was translated to *Dol* in *Little Britain*, and never restor'd. Its nearness to the Sea has expos'd it very much to Pyrates; from whose barbarous Cruelties it has been a great Sufferer. So that, at present, 'tis an inconsiderable City; shewing no Buildings of note, besides the Cathedral, the Bi-

shop's Palace, and the Houses belonging to the several Members of the Church.

*Haverford-west*, is a Town of good account and resort; being handsomly built and well peopl'd. The unevenness of the Ground upon which it stands is a great Enemy to the Beauty and Uniformity of the Streets. 'Tis however a Corporation, and a County of it self.

*Tenbigh*, on the South-coast, is a handsom Town and well fortify'd with strong Walls. 'Tis much noted for its plenty of Fish, and is accordingly call'd in British *Dinbech y Pysgod*: It is also a Corporation.

*The ancient Place on this Coast, is*

*Octopitarum Promontorium*, which is that Neck of Land, where *S. David's* stands, call'd in English *S. David's Land*.

*Things Remarkable.*

*Milford-haven*, for largeness and security, is perhaps out-done by no Harbour in *Europe*. For it has 16 Creeks, 5 Bays, and 13 Roads.

In that little Tract, lying beyond *Milford-haven*, the *Flemings* were settl'd in the Reign of *Henry I.* Whose Posterity to this day are manifestly distinguish'd from their Neighbour-*Welch*, in Language and Customs, in both which they came so near the English, that the Tract it self is call'd *Little England beyond Wales*.

## CARDIGANSHIRE.

**T**HE County of *Cardigan*, on the West and South-sides, is an even champain Country; but on the North and East is taken up with a continu'd ridge of Mountains, which yet afford good Pasture for Cattel, and have in the Vallies underneath several large Lakes.

The chief Towns { *Cardigan*,  
are, { *Aber-ystwyth*.

*Cardigan* (seated near the mouth of the River *Teivi*, and therefore call'd by the Britains *Aber-Teivi*) is the chief Town in this County, from whence the whole is denominat'd. It was fortify'd by *Gilbert*, Son of *Richard Clare*, but being afterwards treason-

ably surrender'd, was laid waste by *Rhys ap Gryffidh*.

*Aber-ystwyth* is seated at the mouth of the River *Ystwyth*; from which position it has the name. The same *Gilbert Clare* who fortify'd *Cardigan*, did also wall this Town; which by *Mr. Camden* is call'd the most populous Town in the whole County. Whether the condition of it be chang'd since his time, I know not.

*Ancient Places.*

*Tuerobius*, mention'd by *Ptolomy*, can be no other than the River *Teivi*; the old name seeming to have been moulded from the British *Dwr Teivi*, which is as much as *The Water of Teivi*.



*Lovantium* or *Lovantinum* may probably be *Lhannia* in the Parish of *Lhan Dhevi Brevi*; where they meet with Inscriptions, Coins and other indubitable Marks of Antiquity.

The most remarkable Things in this County, is,  
The noble Lead-Mine discover'd in the year 1690.  
is the Grounds of Sir Carbury Pryse, Baronet. 'Tis  
said, the Ore was no nigh the Surface of the Earth,  
that the Moss and Grass did but just cover it in some  
places.

[illegible]

rebuilt by *Henry III.* to whom they owe several *Liberties* and *Immunities*.

*Lhan Vyllyn* is a Marker-Town of considerable note, incorporated in the time of *Edward II.* It is at present govern'd by two Bailiffs, to whom *King Charles II.* (among other Privileges) granted the Honour and Authority of *Justices of Peace* within the Corporation, during the time of their Office, which lasts for one year.

### Ancient Places.

*Maglena* seems to have some Remains in the present *Machynlleth*, at the utmost Limit of this County Westward.

*Mediolanum* is, by Dr. *Powel* and a late judicious Author, suppos'd to be *Meiroad* (about a mile below *Mathraval*) where several remarkable Monuments have been discover'd.

—

*Things Remarkable.*

*Kader-Idris* is one of the highest Mountains in all Britain; and as an Argument of it, affords a variety of *Alpine* Plants.

Near the Castle of *Harlech*, was dug up (*An. 1692.*) a golden *Torques*; being a wreath'd bar of Gold, or else 3 or 4 Rods jointly twisted, about 4 foot long. 'Tis now in the Hands of Sir *Roger Mostyn*, Baronet.

In this Country, they have been much troubled of late with an unaccountable sort of *Exhalation*, which has fir'd several Ricks of Hay, and has poyson'd the Grass to that degree as to cause a Mortality among most sorts of Cattle. A full description is given of it in Mr. Camden's *Britannia*, English, pag. 659, 660, &c.

*Dol Gelbeu*, a small Market-Town, and

Bala, the chief Market of the Mountaineers in the East-part of the County.

von, who was the first Prince of *Wales* of English Extraction. The buildings are decent enough, and the Inhabitants civil and courteous.

Bangor, seven miles from Caernarvon, was formerly a place so large and considerable, as to merit the name of *Bangor vawr*: But 'tis now only a small Town, and derives all its Reputation from the Bishop's See, the Cathedral whereof is not very fine, having been burnt down by that profligate Rebel *Owèn Glendor*.

*Aber-Comwy*, i. e. the mouth of the River *Comwy*, was built out of the Ruins of the ancient *Cônovium* by King *Edward II.* and by its advantagious situation and other conveniences, is grown into a handsome Town.

*Ancient Places.*

*Canganum* is the Promontory of *Llyn*. (running out,



to the South-west) which would tempt one to imagine that *Langanon*, as some of *Ptolemy's* Copies have it, is the true Reading.

*Segontium* is the Mother of the present *Carnarvon*, and seems to have first taken its name from the River *Seiont*, which runs that way into the Sea.

*Conovius*, is undoubtedly the River *Conwy*; as *Canovius* (which had that name from the River) is *Aber-Conwy*.

*Dicium* is suppos'd to be the ancient City *Digamny*, which took that name from the River *Conwy*; but was consum'd by Lightning many Ages since.

#### Things Remarkable.

*Snowdon-hills* are the highest ridge of that range of Mountains which takes up the inner parts of this County. The name it has from *Snow*, which you commonly see here about the latter end of *June*, but not the year round, as some Authors have affirm'd.

*Pen-maen-mawr*, is a perpendicular Rock, through which the Road lies, not without great difficulty and terror to Travellers. For on one side, you would think the Rocks ready to crush you; on the other the Sea and the Precipice down to it, are so frightful and dangerous withal, that one false Step endangers the life.

## ANGLESEY.

THE Isle of *Anglesey* is separated from the Continent of *Britain* by the narrow Frith of *Meneu*, being about 24 miles in breadth, and in length some few more. By the Ancients it was call'd *Mona*, the Seat of the *Druids*; and was first attempted by *Suetonius Paulinus*, but conquer'd by *Julius Agricola*; as we learn at large from *Tacitus*. Many Ages after, the English

conquer'd it; whereupon it was call'd *Anglesey*, i. e. the Isle of the English, or the English Island.

The chief Town in it is

*Beaumaris*, built on the East-side; which (among other Towns in these Parts) owns King *Edward I.* for its Founder. It is grown into a place of good Note and Wealth.

## DENBIGHSHIRE.

THE County of *Denbigh*, according to the several Parts, has a different Soil: In the West 'tis somewhat barren; in the middle, an exceeding fruitful Vale; and in the East, not quite so fertile; tho' much better towards the River *Dee*.

The chief Town is

*Denbigh*, which is remov'd from the place of its first Foundation. For it was seated upon a steep Rock; from whence the Inhabitants (either because the decli-

vity of the place was inconvenient, or else for want of a due supply of Water) began in after-Ages to remove to the bottom of the Hill; where a handsome large Town is sprung up by degrees.

The ancient Town in this County, is

*Leonis Castrum* (possibly from the *Legio Vicesima Victrix*) call'd, as is suppos'd at this day, by the more modern name of *Holt*, upon the River *Dee*.

## FLINTSHIRE.

FLINTSHIRE is so call'd from *Flint-Castle*, which was begun by *Henry II.* and finish'd by *Edward I.* The Form of the County is oblong, and but small. It consists of a mixture of gentle Hills and Plains, which produce Corn in great abundance.

The chief Town is

*S. Asaph* (at the confluence of the *Cluid* and *Elwy*) so call'd from the Patron of the place, a holy and devout Person. It owes its reputation to Religion; having neither Neatness nor Wealth to recommend it. For about the year 560. *Kentigern* Bishop of *Glasgow* sent'd here a Bishop's Seat, and a Monastery consisting of 663 Monks. The Bishop of the Diocese has under his Jurisdiction, about 128 Parishes.

The ancient Place in this County, is

*Varis*, which Mr. *Camden* has fixt in the Confines of *Flintshire* and *Denbighshire*, as a place call'd to this day *Bod-Vari*.

#### Things Remarkable.

*Holy-well*, near *Basingwerk*, derives its Sanctity from the Memory of *S. Winifrid*, a Christian Virgin: A fabulous Story, which Dr. *Powel* thinks is owing to the Forgery of the Monks of *Basingwerk*, who would probably magnifie the Vertues of it for their own advantage. A little Brook runs out of the *Well* with such a violent Course, as to be able, immediately almost, to turn a Mill.

In the Parish of *Mold*, upon the sinking new Coal-pits, they have met with Leaves of Plants so exactly delineated in a sort of black Slat, that 'tis almost impossible for any Artist to represent them so compleatly, unless he take the Impression from the Life in some fine Paste or Clay. The Figure and Descriptions of them, are exhibited at large in the new Edition of *Camden's Britannia*.



# The ISLE of MAN.

**B**etween Britain and Ireland, there is stretch'd out a considerable Island from North to South, about 30 Italian Miles in length; but, where widest, not above 15 in breadth. The several ancient Writers have given it several names: By *Cæsar* 'tis call'd *Mona*; by *Ptolemy*, *Monæda*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*: And the same variety appears in such of our modern Authors, as make mention of it. It was first inhabited by the *Britains*, and then by the *Scots*. Many years after, the *Norwegians* got possession of it, and held it for a long time: Till at last, after several Revolutions, it fell into the Hands of the English about the latter end of *Edward I.* or the beginning of *Edward II.* and has ever since continu'd under their Jurisdiction. It has had several Lords; such generally, as had the greatest Interest in our Princes: Till the Grant hereof, together with the Patronage of the Bishoprick, was made to Sir *John Stanley* and his Heirs by King *Henry IV.* in which Family it has ever since remain'd.

The Soil is very fruitful, and produces such store of *Barly*, *Wheat*, *Rye* and *Oats*, as does not only furnish the necessary uses of the Island, but likewise gives leave for the Exportation of good quantities. According to the distinction of North and South it is different: In the first, 'tis healthy and gravelly; in the second, they have good Meadow and Pasture-Ground. The Air is very wholsom (the Plague having never been known to be in the Island) so that Four-score is a common Age there. The People are call'd *Manks-men*, and their Language *Manks*. The common People live in little Huts, and are very abstemious in their Diet. The Gentry are but few; those they have, are very civil and courteous, and live in Houses of the English fashion.

The Execution of Justice is manag'd with all the speed and easiness imaginable. 'Tis true, their *Sheedding-Courts* (the same with our *Terms*) meet but twice a year; but they have a Court of *Chancery* (wherein the Governor is sole Judge) which he may hold once every Week, if there be occasion. Every Man pleads his own Cause; without *Lawyers*, *Proctors* or *Attornies*; and they are dispatch'd (whether they be Matters *Spiritual* or *Temporal*) without the Expence of one Farthing.

The great Officers of the Island, are 1. the Governor, who under the Lord, has the entire Command of the Island. 2. The two *Deemsters*, who are their Judges in Matters Civil and Criminal. 3. The *Comp-*

*troller*, who calls the Receiver General to an account. And, 4. The *Receiver General*, who receives all the Rents (due to the Lord) from the inferior *Collectors*.

Their way of Trading, is pretty peculiar. They chuse four Merchants to buy all their foreign Commodities, for the use of the whole Island; and these are sworn to the true and faithful discharge of their Trust. Whatsoever Bargain they make with the Vessels that come in, the Island is bound to stand to; and the Inhabitants, in exchange, bring in their Native Commodities, *Wooll*, *Hides*, *Tallow*, &c. in lieu whereof they are to have a proportionable share of the imported Wares. They had no Money before the late Civil Wars; when several of the Loyal Party flying thither, supply'd the Island so abundantly, that the Tenant was able to pay his Rent in Coin, which he us'd to do in *Sheep*, *Hogs*, &c.

As to the Ecclesiastical State: The Bishoprick is under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of York. The Bishop has no voice in the House of Lords; but in the Lower House of Convocation is allow'd to sit uppermost. The Clergy are generally Natives, and have a very good Allowance. The Parishes are seventeen; every Church whereof bears the Name of some Saint or other, to whom it was formerly dedicated.

The principal Towns are { *Castle-town*,  
                                  *Douglas*,  
                                  *Peel*.

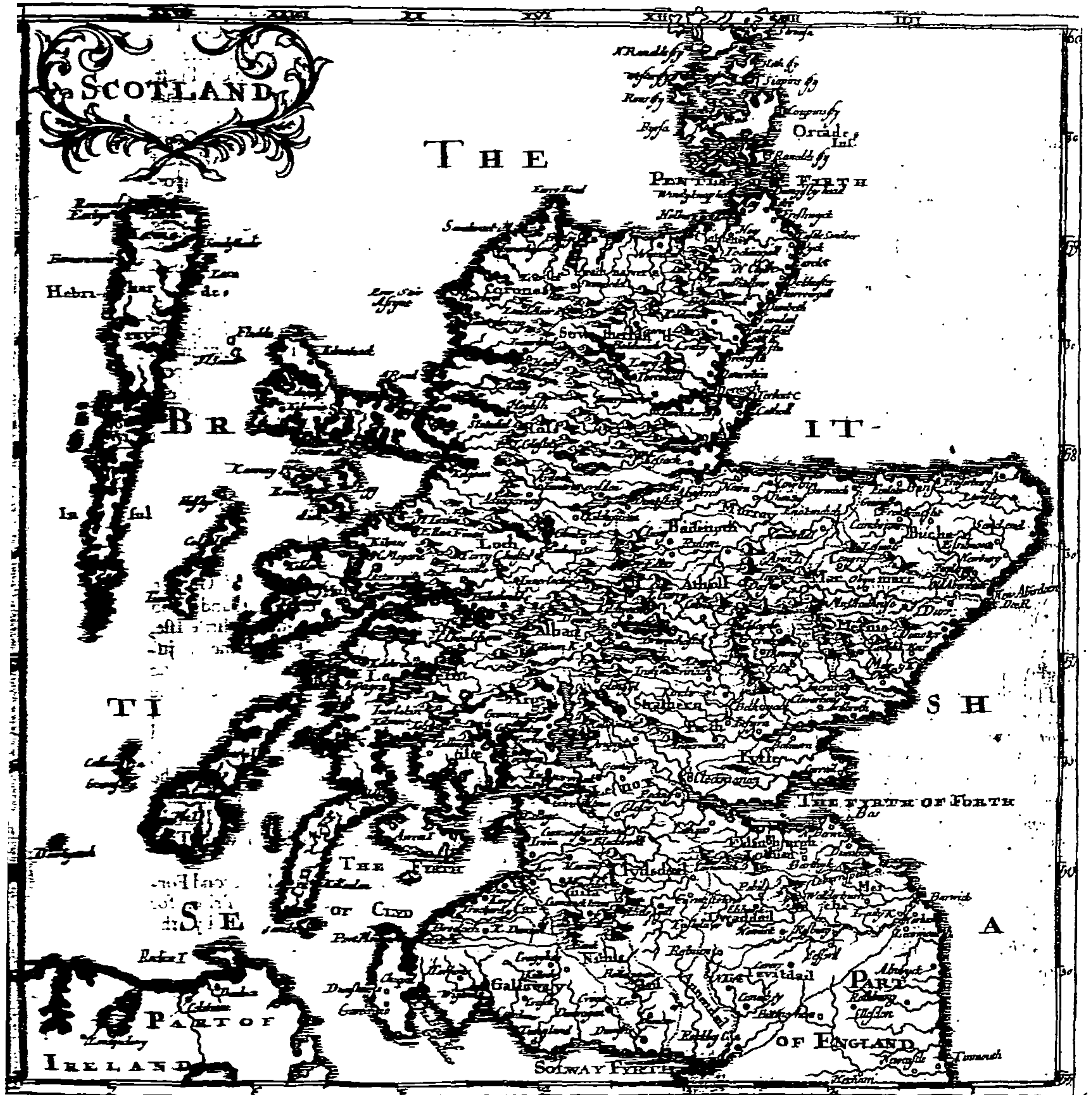
*Castle-town*, so call'd from a Castle and Garrison there, is seated on the North-side of the Island; and is call'd otherwise, *Ruffin*. Here, within a little Isle, was erected a Bishop's See, which had formerly jurisdiction over the *Hebrides*, but is now limited to the Isle of Man. This is the Metropolis of the whole Island.

*Douglas* has the best Harbour, and is most frequented by the foreign Traders, who bring over their *Bay-Salt*, and carry back *Leather*, *Wooll*, and *Salt-beef*. The Houses both here and at *Castle-town*, are very uniform; and (which is of no great standing in this Island) three Stories high: They are cover'd also with Tiles instead of Thatch.

*Peel* is eminent for its Castle, being the second Fortrefs in the whole Island, and the common Prison for all Offenders. 'Tis strongly fortify'd both by the Sea, and also by Walls and Rampires.



# SCOTLAND.



**H**AVING survey'd the Kingdom of England and Principality of Wales, we come next to Scotland; which, as it is a Branch of the same Continent, so it is united under the same Head and Governour, and makes up a part of the Title of King of Great Britain. Concerning the ancient Inha-

bitants and some other Heads relating to this Kingdom, we have treated in the *General Account* of England; and shall not here repeat them. Let it be sufficient to observe, That the two Kingdoms were united into one Monarchy in the Person of King James, the first of England, and sixth of Scotland: By



By which the English have been freed ever since from those Incurfions and Plunderings, wherewith that Nation was us'd continually to harrafs and torment them.

All that part of the Continent which lies beyond the Counties of *Cumberland* and *Northumberland*; belongs to *Scotland*, with great numbers of Islands on all the other sides, which are bounded by the Ocean. On the West it hath the Irish Sea, on the North the *Deucalionian*, and on the East the *German Ocean*. 'Tis in length about 250 miles, and 150 miles broad. In the most Southerly part 'tis 54 deg. 54. min. in *Latitude*, and in *Longitude* 15 deg. 40 min. but in the most Northerly, 'tis 58 deg. 32 (or 30 min.) in *Latitude*, and 17 deg. 50 min. in *Longitude*. The longest day is about 18 hours and 2 minutes, and the shortest night 5 hours and 45 minutes.

The SOIL, take it in general, comes far short of *England* in fruitfulness, being much more fit for Pasture than Corn: Nor, but in some of the In-land Country, they have good store of Grain; wherewith they Trade to *Spain*, *Holland*, and *Norway*. The Skirts of the Country abound with Timber; which is of a vast bigness, especially *Fir-trees*.

The AIR is very temperate, and not half so cold as might be imagin'd in so Northerly a Clime. Which (as in *England*) is owing to the warm Vapours and Breezes that come continually off the Sea; and likewise purify the Air, and keep it in such constant Motion, as generally frees them from all *Epidemick Distempers*. The nature of the Country is hilly and mountainous; the Plains being but very few, and those too but small. They have abundance of Cows and Sheep, tho' they are but little; for which defect, the fine taste of their *Flesh* makes amends.

Learning flourishes among them in 4 Universities, *St Andrews*, *Glasgow*, *Aberdeen*, and *Edenburgh*, wherein are Professors of most of the Liberal Arts, and those maintain'd with competent Salaries.

*Christianity* seems to have been planted here very early; especially, if those words of *Tertullian*, *Britannorum inaccessa Romanis loca, Christo vero subdita*, may be allowed to hint to these parts, as in all probability they do.

SCOTLAND, according to difference of Soil, Customs, Humours; as also of the Fancies and Imaginations of Men, has several Divisions.

1. The most eminent of them, is into the *Highlanders* and *Lowlanders*: The first are rude, barbarous and unciviliz'd, using the Irish Language; the second are civil and courteous, and use the Language and Customs of the English.

2. Into the *Scots* and *Picts*; this is the more ancient Division: The *Scots* had all the Western-Isles and the Skirts of the Country Westward; the *Picts* were possess'd of all that lay upon the *German Ocean*.

3. 'Tis divided by the *Mons Grampius* or *Grantz-bain-hills*, which run from West to East.

4. The Rivers divide it into three Peninsula's; one to the South, one in the middle, and one to the North. For the Rivers on each side run so far into the Country, as to be hindred from meeting by a small *Isthmus* only; and if that were remov'd, it would make the main Land of *Scotland*, three Islands.

5. The *Romans* branch'd it into several People, according to the following Scheme.

<i>Gadeni</i> ,	{ <i>Teifidale</i> , <i>Merch</i> , <i>Lauden</i> ,	<i>Caledonia</i> ,	<i>Fife</i> , <i>Strathern</i> , <i>Argile</i> , <i>Cantire</i> , <i>Lorn</i> , <i>Braidalbin</i> , <i>Perth-shire</i> , <i>Angus</i> , <i>Mernis</i> , <i>Marr</i> , <i>Buquhan</i> , <i>Murray</i> , <i>Loquhabre</i> , <i>Rosse</i> , <i>Sutherland</i> , <i>Cathnes</i> , <i>Strath-navern</i> .
<i>Selgova</i> ,	{ <i>Annandale</i> , <i>Nidisdale</i> ,		
<i>Novantes</i> ,	{ <i>Galloway</i> , <i>Carrieth</i> , <i>Kyle</i> , <i>Cunningham</i> , <i>Glotta</i> ,		
<i>Damnii</i> ,	{ <i>Cluydesdale</i> , <i>Lennox</i> , <i>Sterling</i> .		

The Roman Wall.

6. 'Tis divided into so many Counties, which are again sub-divided into Sheriffdoms, Stewarties, and Baileries, for the more easie Administration of Civil Government.

The Counties or Shires, with their particular Extent, are as follows:

The Shire of	<i>Edenburgh</i>	Contains	<i>Midlothian</i> .
	<i>Mers</i>		<i>Mers and Lauderdale</i> .
	<i>Peebles</i>		<i>Tweeddale</i> .
	<i>Selkirk</i>		<i>Etterick and Forrest</i> .
	<i>Roxburgh</i>		<i>Teviotdale, Liddisdale, Eskdale, and Eusdale</i> .
	<i>Dumfries</i>		<i>Nithisdale and Annandale</i> .
	<i>Wigton</i>		<i>The West-part of Galloway, Kyle, Carrieth and Cunningham</i> .
	<i>Aire</i>		<i>The Barrony of Ranfrew</i> .
	<i>Renfrew</i>		<i>Cledsale</i> .
	<i>Lancrick</i>		<i>Lennox</i> .
	<i>Dumbrington</i>		<i>The Isles of Bute and Arran</i> .
	<i>Bute</i>		<i>Argile, Lorn, Kynntyre; most part of the West-Isles, as Ila, Jura, Mull, Wyff, Terif, Coll, Lismore,</i>
	<i>Innerara</i>		<i>Menteith, Strathern, Balwhidder, Glenurghay, Stormont, Arhol, Gource, Glenshee, Stattardill, Braid Albin, Raynock.</i>
	<i>Perth</i>		<i>Much of the Ground that lyeth close upon both sides of Forth.</i>
	<i>Striveling</i>		<i>West-Lothian.</i>
	<i>Linlithgow</i>		<i>That part of Fife lying between Lochleven and the Ochill Hills.</i>
	<i>Kinross</i>		<i>A small part of Fife lying on the River of Forth towards Striveling.</i>
	<i>Clackmanan</i>		<i>The rest of Fife to the East of Lochleven.</i>
	<i>Couper</i>		<i>Agus with its Pertinents, Glen-Ila, Glen-Esk, Glen-Proffin.</i>
	<i>Forfar</i>		<i>The Mernis.</i>
	<i>Kinkardin</i>		<i>Mar with its Pertinents, as Birs, Glen-Tanner, Glen-Muick, Strath-dee, Strath-don</i>
	<i>Aberdeen</i>		



The Shire of	Bamfse	Contains	don, Brae of Mar and Cromar, and most part of Buchan, Fourmartin, Gareock, and Strath-Bogie-Land.
	Elgin		A small part of Buchan, Strathdovern, Boyn, Einzie, Strath Awin and Balvenie.
	Nairn		The East part of Murray.
	Inverness		The West part of Murray.
	Cromartie		Badenoch, Lochaber, and the South part of Ross.
	Tain		A small part of Ross, lying on the South side of Cromartie Frith.
	Dornoch		The rest of Ross, with the Isles of Skye, Lewis, and Harris.
	Wick		Sutherland and Strathnaver.
			Cathness.

Their publick COURTS for the administration of Justice, are,

1. The *Parliament*, which is the supreme Court, and has the same Authority as ours in *England*. They have 32 Persons (elected out of the several Orders) whom they call *Lords of the Articles*; and who seem to be much the same thing, as to their Office, with our *Committees* in *England*, appointed by the whole House to consider of Matters under Debate: Only theirs are fix'd and certain in all Matters, and are chosen at the beginning of their Meeting; ours are appointed *pro re nata*, upon any emergent Occasion; and when that's over, have nothing to do in other Matters, without a particular appointment.

2. The *College of Justice*, or the *Session*; wherein the particular Officers appointed for that purpose (consisting of the *Clergy* and *Laiety*) administer Justice (according to the Rules of *Equity*, and not the Rigour of the *Law*) from the 1st of *November* to the 15th of *March*, and from *Trinity-Sunday* to the 1st of *August*, every day except *Sunday*.

3. The *Sheriff's Court* in every County; where the Sheriff or his Deputy decides Controversies among the Inhabitants, relating to matters of an inferior concernment.

4. The *Commissariat*, wherein are pleaded Actions relating to *Wills*, *Tythes*, and other Ecclesiastical Affairs.

5. In *Criminal Cases*, the King's Chief Justice hold his Courts generally at *Edinburgh*; besides which, *Justices* are sometimes appointed by the King's Commission for the Examination of particular Causes.

The several Orders or Degrees, are,

1. The *King*; to whom the Constitution allows much the same Power and Authority, as ours here in *England*.

2. The *Prince of Scotland*, the King's eldest Son: The rest of the King's Children are stil'd simply *Princes*.

3. *Dukes* (who were brought into *Scotland* about the year 400.) *Marquisses*, *Earls*, *Vicounts* and *Barons*, as we have in *England*.

4. Their *Knights* also are the same; only, proclaim'd and created with much more Solemnity.

5. *Lairds*, which were anciently such only as held Lands of the King in *Capite*.

6. *Gentlemen*. 7. *Citizens*, *Merchants*, &c.

The *RERIGION* of the Kingdom by Law establish'd, is that which is contain'd in the Confession of Faith authoriz'd in the first Parliament of

King James VI. For the more convenient Regulation of Church-affairs, they had 2 *Archbishopricks*; under which were contain'd 12 *Bishopricks*, according to the following Scheme.

The Archbishoprick of *S. Andrews*, under which were,

*Edinburgh,*  
*Dunkel,*  
*Aberdeen,*  
*Murray,*  
*Dumblane,*

*Brechen,*  
*Ross,*  
*Cathness,*  
*Orkney.*

The Archbishoprick of *Glasgow*, under which were,

*Galloway,*  
*Lismore,*  
*The Isles.*

The Bounds and Extent of the several *Diocesses*, were as follows:

Diocess of	<i>S. Andrews</i>	Contain'd	Part of Perthshire, and part of Angus and Mernes.
	<i>Glasgow</i>		The Shires of Dunbarton, Ranfrew, Air, Lanerick, part of the Shires of Roxburgh, Dumfries, Peebles & Selkirk.
	<i>Edinburgh</i>		The Shires of Edinburgh, Linlithgow, part of Strivelingshire, Berwickshire, the Constabularie of Haddington and Bailerie of Lauderdale.
	<i>Dunkeld</i>		The most part of Perthshire, part of Angus, and part of West-Lothian.
	<i>Aberdeen</i>		Most part of Bamf-shire, and part of Mernes.
	<i>Murray</i>		The Shires of Elgin, Nairn, and part of Inverness and Bamf-shire.
	<i>Brichin</i>		Part of Angus and Mernes.
	<i>Dumblane</i>		Part of Perth and Striveling-shires.
	<i>Ross</i>		The Shire of Tain, Cromertie, and the greatest part of Inverness-shire.
	<i>Cathness</i>		Cathness and Sutherland.
	<i>Orkney</i>		All the northern Isles of Orkney and Zetland.
	<i>Galloway</i>		The Shire of Wigton, the Stewartie of Kircurbright, the Regality of Glenrurie, and part of Dumfries-shire.
	<i>Argile</i>		Argile, Lorn, Kintyre, and Lohaber, with some of the West Isles.
	<i>The Isles</i>		Most of the West Isles.

Besides these, for the more close Inspection into the Affairs of the Church, they had a certain number of *Presbyteries*, viz.

<i>Dunee.</i>	<i>Dumfries.</i>	<i>Kilmoro.</i>	<i>Turres.</i>
<i>Chernside.</i>	<i>Penpont.</i>	<i>Skey.</i>	<i>Fordyce.</i>
<i>Kelle.</i>	<i>Lochmabane.</i>	<i>S. Andrews.</i>	<i>Ellon.</i>
<i>Erskilton.</i>	<i>Middlebie.</i>	<i>Kirkaldy.</i>	<i>Strathbogie.</i>
<i>Fedburgh.</i>	<i>Wigton.</i>	<i>Cowper.</i>	<i>Abernethie.</i>
<i>Melrose.</i>	<i>Kircudbright.</i>	<i>Dumfermelin.</i>	<i>Elgin.</i>
<i>Dumbar.</i>	<i>Stranraer.</i>	<i>Meegle.</i>	<i>Forres.</i>
<i>Haddington.</i>	<i>Aire.</i>	<i>Imming.</i>	<i>Dundee.</i>
<i>Dalkeith.</i>	<i>Paslay.</i>	<i>Arbroth.</i>	<i>Channie.</i>
<i>Edinburgh.</i>	<i>Dunbarton.</i>	<i>Forfar.</i>	<i>Tain.</i>
<i>Peebles.</i>	<i>Glasgow.</i>	<i>Brichen.</i>	<i>Dingwel.</i>
<i>Linlithgow.</i>	<i>Hamilton.</i>	<i>Mernis.</i>	<i>Dornoch.</i>
<i>Perth.</i>	<i>Lanerick.</i>	<i>Aberdeen.</i>	<i>Week.</i>
<i>Dunkeld.</i>	<i>Biggar.</i>	<i>Kinkardin.</i>	<i>Thurso.</i>
<i>Aucosterarder.</i>	<i>Dunnune.</i>	<i>Alford.</i>	<i>Kirkwal.</i>
<i>Striveling.</i>	<i>Kinloch.</i>	<i>Gareoch.</i>	<i>Scalloway.</i>
<i>Dumblane.</i>	<i>Incrary.</i>	<i>Deir.</i>	<i>Colmkill.</i>

Under



Under this Constitution, they had

1. A *Session* in every Parish (consisting of the worthiest Persons therein) which took cognizance of some Scandals.

2. A *Presbytery*, wherein Cases too intricate for the Session were try'd; and particularly such as enter'd into *Orders* were solemnly examin'd. This consisted of a number of *Ministers*, between twelve and twenty.

3. The *Provincial Synod*, who met twice every year.

4. The *Convocation*; which was the supreme.

And now *Presbytery* is introduc'd, they retain the same *Courts* and *Governments*; with some difference only in the exercise and manner of Proceeding.

Having thus far given a short Account of the *Soil* and *Air*, the *Degrees*, *Divisions*, and *Government* of *Scotland*, we are, next, to take a particular Survey of this Kingdom. Which might have been done most conveniently by running through the several *Counties*, and observing the same method as we have done in *England*; but that the *Towns* here are very thin in many places, and some *Counties* afford none of any considerable note. I know not how to give a view of the Kingdom more distinct, and more agreeable to our Design, than by drawing up a List of the most eminent *Cities* and *Towns*, and of the *Ancient Places*, in an Alphabetical Order.

The most considerable Places are,	<i>Aberdeen</i> ,	<i>Dundee</i> ,	<i>Hamilton</i> ,
	<i>Aire</i> ,	<i>Dunfreys</i> ,	<i>Inverness</i> ,
	<i>Alloa</i> ,	<i>Dunkel</i> ,	<i>Linlithgow</i> ,
	<i>S. Andrews</i> ,	<i>Duns</i> ,	<i>Passay</i> ,
	<i>Bamfe</i> ,	<i>Edenburray</i> ,	<i>Peebles</i> ,
	<i>Berchin</i> ,	<i>Glasgow</i> ,	<i>Perth</i> ,
	<i>Chanonry</i> ,	<i>Greenock</i> ,	<i>Selkirk</i> .
	<i>Dumblane</i> ,		

**ABERDEEN**, in the County of *Marr*, has its name from the River *Done*, upon the mouth whereof it stands; *Aber* in British signifying a *mouth*, or place where a River empties it self. There are 2 *Towns* of the name, the *Old* and *New*. *Old Aberdeen* is the Seat of the Bishop, having a large and stately Cathedral, commonly call'd *St. Machar's*. 'Tis, besides, adorn'd with *King's College* (so call'd from King *James IV.* who assum'd the Patronage) wherein is a *Principal*, with the several Professors of Divinity, Civil Law, Physick, Philosophy, and the Languages. In the Church before-mention'd, there is a most stately Monument erected to the memory of Bishop *Elphinstone*, a great Benefactor to the place. Hard by the Church, they have a Library well furnish'd with good Books.

About a mile from hence is *New Aberdeen*, built upon 3 Hills; but the greatest part of it upon the highest, to which there is an easie ascent from the Plain. 'Tis, by much, the most considerable place in the North of *Scotland*; whether we respect the Largeness, Trade or Beauty of the Buildings, both publick and private. Of the first sort, the chief is its College, built by *George Keith* Earl Marshal, in the year, 1693. and from him call'd the *Marshallian Academy*. But since his time, the City of *Aberdeen* hath adorn'd and beautify'd it with several additional Buildings. They have a *Principal*, four Professors of Philosophy, one of Divinity, and one of Mathematicks. Add to this, the School, which has a Head-master and 3 Ushers; the Musick-School, for the more polite Education of the Gentry; *S. Nicholas-Church*,

built of free Stone, and cover'd with Lead; an *Alms-house*, and three *Hospitals*. Nor must we forget the *Library*, which was founded at the charge of the City, and is supply'd with excellent *Books* from the Benefactions of several learned Persons; and also well furnish'd with *Mathematical Instruments*. The private *Buildings* are very beautiful, commonly four Stories high or more; behind which stand their *Gardens* and *Orchards*; so that the City at a distance looks like a Wood.

*Aire*, in *Kyle*, upon a River of the same name, is the chief Market-Town in the West of *Scotland*. 'Tis situated in a sandy Plain; yet is furnish'd with pleasant fertile Fields, which afford a Prospect very diverting. It has the honour of being the Sheriff's Seat and contains within its Jurisdiction thirty two miles. The more ancient name was *S. John's-Town*; but that is now quite laid aside.

*Alloa*, standing in the Shire of *Clackmannan*, is a pretty little Town, and very pleasant. It has a Haven, tho' but small. The greatest Ornament it boasts of is the Castle, the chief Residence of the Earl of *Marr*. This (with its Neighbour *Clackmannan* seated upon a rising Ground, and adorn'd with a stately Castle) receives great Profit from the adjoining Coal-pits; which, together with the *Salt*, furnish out a foreign Trade.

**S. ANDREWS**, above *Fif-nefs* in the Peninsula of *Fife*, is seated conveniently for a delicate Prospect into the Sea. It seems, the ancient name of it, was *Regimund*; that is, *Regulus's Mount*: The present name was given it in honour to *S. Andrew*, (whose Bones are said to have been brought out of *Peloponnesus* to this place, by *Regulus* a Monk, in the year, 368.) It is adorn'd with an *Archbishop's See*, who is still'd *Primate of All Scotland*; with the *New Church*, wherein is a stately Monument of *Archbishop Sharp*; and with 3 *Colleges*. 1. *S. Saviour*, which has a Library well furnish'd. 2. *S. Leonard's*, wherein are several Professors, and a good Library. 3. *New College*, which, besides its two Professors of Divinity, has a Professor of *Mathematicks*, with an *Observatory*, and *Mathematical Instruments*.

*Bamfe* is the chief Burgh in the Shire of *Bamfe*, and is a Burgh-royal, wherein the Sheriff holds his Courts. 'Tis seated in a very fertile Tract, and receives great advantages from the *Salmon-fishing*.

*Berchin*, upon the River *Esk*, lies in the Shire of *Angus*, and is a Market-Town, considerable for Oxen, Sheep, Horses, and Salmon. The Ruins of the Bishop's Palace and the Canon's Houses, are an evidence of its ancient magnificence. Here is a stately Bridge over the River *Esk*.

*Chanonry* (at *Ness-mouth* in *Ross*) has its name from a rich College of *Canons*, that were there. They had a large Cathedral Church, part whereof still remains. Its greatest Ornament, at present, is a magnificent House of the Earl of *Seaforth*, who has considerable Revenues in this Country.

*Dumblane* (seated upon the Bank of the River *Allan* on the Stewartry of *Strathern*) is a pleasant Town, but not large. It still shews the Ruins of the Bishop's and Canon's Houses; and part of the Church (a Fabrick of admirable Workmanship) remains entire. Their great Benefactor was *Robert Leighton* Bishop of the place; a Person of strict Life and Conversation. At his death, he left all his Books to the use of the Diocess of *Dumblane*, with a certain Sum of Money for the erecting of a *Library*; and his Sister's Son settl'd an annual Salary upon the *Library-Keeper*.



*Dundee* (so call'd probably from its Situation upon the River *Tay*) stands in the Shire of *Angus*, in a pleasant Plain; and is beautify'd with very good Buildings, both publick and private. They have 2 Churches; and the *Constable* hereof, by a peculiar Privilege, is Standard-bearer to the Kings of *Scotland*. The Inhabitants are generally rich, by the great Profits which arise from the Harbour; and by their Trade with Strangers, which is very considerable. There is a large *Hospital*, wherein such as fall to decay by Misfortunes and Losses, are provided for.

*Dunfermlie*, in the Tract call'd *Nithsdale*, lies near the mouth of *Nith*, between two Hills; and is a very flourishing Town. The Streets are large, and the Church and Castle stately. The Tide flows up to the Town, and makes a Harbour; and for the convenience of Trade, they have an *Exchange* for the Merchants. Here is a fine Bridge over the River, of nine Arches.

*Dunblair*, at the Foot of the *Grainthain-hills* in the Shire of *Perth*, is conveniently situated in the midst of pleasant Woods, and upon the River *Tay*. It is the chief Market-Town of the *High-lands*; to the Ornaments whereof, the Buildings erected of late by the Marquess of *Arbuthnot*, have added very considerably. It still shews the Ruins of a *Cathedral Church*.

*Duns* (in *Mers of March*, towards the *German Ocean*) stands upon a rising Ground in the middle of the Shire. 'Tis a Burrow and Barony, and has every *Wednesday* a throng Market of Sheep, Horses and Cows. But that which makes it most talk'd of, is, its being urg'd for the Birth-place of *Duns Scotus*, by such as are willing to believe him a *Scotchman*.

*EDENBURGH*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom, built upon an ascent; the Buildings gradually descending from the top to the bottom of the Hill. The original of it seems to have been the erecting of a *Fort* or *Castle* (than which no place could be more convenient for the purpose) under the protection whereof, the Neighbours might be possibly encourag'd to fix. At present, 'tis a large beautiful City, a full Scotch-mile in length, and half a one in breadth. Two Streets run along the whole length of the Town; the *High-street* is built, of late, of hewn Stone; since an Act of the Town-Council pass'd, whereby it is not lawful to build any more of Timber either in City or Suburbs, upon account of the many dreadful Fires that have hapn'd. The City has six *Gates*, the principal whereof lays to the East, and is adorn'd with Towers on both sides. They are supply'd with Water, from one of the best Springs in the Kingdom; which is about 3 miles distant, and is brought in Leaden-Pipes to the several *Fountains*. This convenience was projected and carried on at the Expence of the City, about 20 Years ago. Their principal Publick Buildings, are

1. The *Palace* (whereof his Grace the Duke of *Hamilton* is hereditary Keeper) bounded on all sides with lovely Gardens. It has four Courts: The *Outer*, which is as big as all the rest, has four principal Enuries: The *Inner* has *Piazza's* all round, of hewn Stone. The *Long Gallery* is very entertaining; shewing the Pictures of all the Kings of *Scotland*, from *Fergus I.*

2. The *College* of King *James VI.* founded in the Year 1580. is a large Building, divided into three Courts. They have their publick *Schools*, and a *common Hall*; with a well-stor'd *Library*, under which is the King's *Printing-house*. The Professors and Students are very well accommodated with Lodgings.

3. The *Parliament-house* stands in a large Court, which is enclos'd on one side with the *Exchanges*, and with a Set of very stately Buildings. There is a House (perhaps the highest in the World) which mounts seven Stories above the *Parliament-Court*; for from the bottom to the top, one Stair-case ascends 14 Stories high.

4. The *Cathedral*, dedicated to *S. Giles*, is built of hewn Stone, and is so large, as to be divided into 3 Churches, each whereof has its Parish.

5. *Heriot's Hospital*, so call'd from its Founder *George Heriot*, Jeweller to King *James VI.* is more like a *Palace* than an *Hospital*. All round the Houses are pleasant Gardens, adorn'd with large *Walks* and *Greens*. Here, the Children of the poorer Citizens have their Education, 'till they be fit for the publick *Schools* and *Colleges*.

*Glasgow* is situated upon the East-bank of the River *Clyde*; and is, next *Edinburgh*, the principal City in the Kingdom; whether we consider the Buildings, Trade or Wealth of the Inhabitants. It is, in a manner, four-square; the four principal Streets crossing each other in the very middle. The principal Publick Buildings, are

1. The *Cathedral* (in the upper part of it) the Pillars and Towers whereof are said to shew a very exact and curious Piece of Architecture. 'Tis, indeed, two Churches; one whereof stands over the other.

2. The *Archbishop's Castle*, surrounded with a Wall of hewn Stone.

3. The *College*, parted by an exceeding high Wall from the rest of the Town.

4. The *Tolbooth* (a stately Building of hewn Stone) which stands at the crossing of the Streets.

*Greenock*, in the Barony of *Ranfrew*, is a well-built Town, the most eminent upon all that Coast. 'Tis the chief Seat of the *Herring-fishing*; and the Royal Company of Fishers have built a publick House at it, for the better convenience of Trade.

*Hamilton* (in *Clydsdale*) is the Residence of the Dukes of *Hamilton*, and the great Ornament of that part of the Kingdom. The Court is on all sides adorn'd with very noble Buildings, has a magnificent Avenue, and a Frontespiece of excellent Workmanship. The Park is 6 or 7 miles round, through which the Brook *Aven* has its course.

*Inverness*, the Head-town of the *Sheriffdom* of that name, is the Sheriff's Seat, where he keeps his Court. The convenience of its Situation upon the River *Ness*, gives it a free and easie Commerce with the Neighbours. It has a Castle very pleasantly seated upon a Hill, which affords a noble Prospect into the Fields and Town. They have lately built a Bridge over the *Ness* of hewn Stone, and of 7 Arches.

*Linlithgow*, in the Shire of *Linlithgow*, is a Royal Burrough, which glories chiefly in its Palace, built almost in the form of an Amphitheatre. In the midst of the Court there is a Fountain, adorn'd with several curious Statues. the Water whereof rises to a good height. The Town is well built, and has a stately *Town House*, with a Harbour at *Blacknesse*.

*Peslay*, in the Barony of *Ranfrew*, is the most considerable in these parts for ancient grandeur and magnificence. It was formerly a famous Monastery, founded by *Alexander II.* High-steward of *Scotland*. The Abbey and Church, with fine Gardens and Orchards, are all enclos'd with a Stone-Wall, about a mile in Circuit.

*Peebles*, the Head-burgh of the Shire of that name, has a pleasant Situation, standing in a Plain on the side of the River. It has a noble Church, and a stately Bridge of 5 Arches over the *Tweed*. *Perth.*



*Perth*, in the Shire of that name, is call'd *S. John's Town*, a modern name, taken from a Church founded there in honour of *S. John*. Mr. *Camden* tells us, 'tis so divided, that almost every Street is inhabited by a several Trade apart. 'Tis pleasantly seated between two Greens, and the River *Tay* at every Tide, brings up Commodities from the Sea, in light Vessels.

*Selkirk*, in *Teisfdale*, is a Burgh-royal, has the advantage of a weekly Market and several Fairs, is the head Burgh of the Shire, and the Seat of the Sheriff and Commissary-Courts.

#### Ancient Places in the Kingdom of SCOTLAND.

*Aluna* seems to have some Remarks preserv'd in the River *Alen*, in the Sheriffdom of *Sterling*.

*Abrauanus* (for *Aber-ruanus*) is the mouth of the *Ri-an* in *Galloway*.

*Albium* seems to be the present *Dundee*, in the Shire of *Angus*.

*Banatia*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is very probably *Bean-Castle* (in *Murray*) which may be inferr'd both from the analogy of Names, and the discovery of an engrav'd marble Vessel, full of *Roman* Coins, in the year, 1460.

*Berubium*, a Promontory, is thought to be *Urdhead*, in *Strathnavern*.

*Bodotria* (for so *Tacitus* calls it, but *Ptolemy* *Boderia*) is agreed on all hands to be *Edenburrow-frith*.

*Caledonia* is all the part of *Britain*, which lies Northward beyond *Graham's-dike*, or the *Wall* built by *Antoninus Pius*.

*Canta*, were a People who inhabited the Parts about *Refs*.

*Catini*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, (and sometimes written *Carini*) seems by the found and other circumstances, to be *Cathness*.

*Castra Alata* is agreed upon by all to be *Edenburrow*.

*Celnus*, a River, now *Killian* in *Refs*, upon the Eastern Ocean.

*Cerones*, a People who dwelt anciently where now *Affenshire* lies.

*Corbantorigum* seems to be *Caer-Laverock*, anciently a very strong Fort in *Niddisdale*.

*Corda*, a Town that anciently stood upon the Lake *Logh-cure*, out of which the River *Nid* arises.

*Coria Damnicrum* seems to be *Camelot*; where are some remains of an ancient City. It stands between the *Duni Pacis* and the Temple of the God *Terminus*, in the Sheriffdom of *Sterling*.

*Cornabii*, a People who dwelt in the utmost Coast of all *Britain* towards the North, where now is *Strath-navern*. 'Tis probable they had that name from the River *Rabeus*, which *Ptolemy* places likewise in these parts.

*Diva* (mention'd by *Ptolemy*) is the River *Dec* in the County of *Mernes*.

*Epidiorum Promontorium* (a name possibly taken from the Islands *Ebude* over against it) is call'd at this day *Can-tyre*, i.e. the *Lands-head*.

*Glotta* is an Island mention'd by *Antoninus* in the Firth of the River *Glotta* or *Clyde*; 'tis call'd at this day *Arran*, from a Castle of the same name.

*Grampius* is a continu'd range of Hills, reaching as far as *Murray*; mention'd by *Tacitus* in his description of *Agricola's* Attempts upon those parts.

*Horesti* seems to imply no more than the *High-landers* in general.

*Ila* is a River in *Cathness*, possibly the same which they now call *Wiffe*.

*Lelanonius*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is the River *Le-*

*vin*, which gives name to the Country of *Lennox*, call'd in Latin *Levinia*.

*Leucopibia* seems by the sense to be determin'd to *Bede's Candida Casa* and our *Whitem* in *Galloway*; especially if we may believe that *Ptolemy* wrote it *Λευκὸν οἰκίσια*, instead of which the Transcribers, by a blunder, have made it *Leucopibia*. The easiness of the mistake will readily be own'd by such as have opportunity of making their Observations upon the intolerable slips of ignorant Librarians.

*Lindum* is still manifest in our *Linlithquo*, describ'd among the more eminent Places.

*Littus altum* seems to be *Tarbath* in the County of *Refs*, where the River rises to a great height; enclos'd on one side with the River *Killian*, on the other with the Haven *Cromer*.

*Longus*, a River, retains manifest footsteps of the old name in our present *Lough-Longas*, in the County of *Refs*, which empties it self into the Western Ocean.

*Loxa*, by *Ptolemy*, is still evident in our present *Loffe*, in *Murray*.

*Nabeus* seems to be somewhere in the Country of *Strath-navern*, which the ancient *Cornabii* formerly inhabited; a People, that seem to have been originally call'd from the River.

*Nodius* (mention'd by *Ptolemy*, and written in some Copies *Nobius*) is evidently the River *Nid*; from which *Niddisdale* takes the name.

*Novantum Chersonesus* is well known at this day by the name of *Mull of Galloway*.

*Orcas* (call'd also *Tarvedrum* and *Taroisum*) is at this day nam'd *Hornburn*; a Promontory over against the Isles of the *Orcades*.

*Randvara* seems to be no other than *Ranfrew*, which gives name to the Barony of *Ranfrew*, and is the principal Town in it.

*Rerigonium* is both a Creek and Town, mention'd by *Ptolemy*. *Bargeny* in the County of *Carrick* should be some direction to the old name; especially, considering that an ancient Copy of *Ptolemy* reads it *Be-regonium*.

*Vacomagi*, a People that liv'd about *Murray*.

*Varar's sinus* is, that Bay upon which *Murray* lies; whether that County have any remains of the old name, I dare not determine.

*Victoria* perhaps is *Bede's Caer-Guidi*, and our *Inch-keith-Island* in *Lothien*.

*Vidogara* was in *Ptolemy's* time, a place of good note in the Country of *Kyle*. There is *Aire*, at present a Town pretty considerable, which possibly may have the best title to it.

*Virvedrum* is look'd upon to be the farthest Promontory in all *Britain*: We call it at this day *Duncans-bay*, and by contraction *Dunsby*.

Upon the Coast of *Scotland* I ye dispers'd here and there great numbers of Islands; some of them of considerable note and extent, but the greatest part very narrow and of little importance. The *Western-Isles* so call'd from their westerly situation, are suppos'd by those that have travell'd them, to be in number 300 or more. They belong to the Crown of *Scotland*; but the Inhabitants speak the Irish Language, and retain the Customs and Modes us'd by the ancient *Scots*, as the *Highlanders* in the Continent do.

Another cluster of Isles upon this Coast is call'd *Orkney*, consisting of 26 Islands that are inhabited; and of some more (which they name *Holms*) used only for Pasturage. Here, the length of the longest day, is 18 hours and some odd minutes. A particular



cular account of these Islands (with the Customs of the Inhabitants, the Produce of the Country, and other material Heads) is publish'd in the new Edition of *Camden's Britannia*, pag. 1073, &c.

*Ancient Names of Islands upon this Coast.*

*Dumna*, possibly *Fair-Isle*, wherein they call the chief Town *Dum*, a Remain perhaps of the old name.

*Fidlam* should seem by the name not to be far from the Promontory of the *Frisli*: The situation of *Ila*, a pretty large Island, agrees very well to that description.

*Helvick*, call'd by a modern Author *Helvick*, are the *Helvick-Isles* before mention'd.

*Helvick* is two-fold, *East* and *West*. The first is thought to be *Syde*, which lies out in a great length; and the second, *Lower*, a very craggy and mountainous Island.

*Alvick*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is manifestly the Isle of *Alv*.

*Orcney* may be plac'd among the Islands of *Orkney*, in that we now call *Herby*.

*Orcades* are the Isles of *Orkney*, just now describ'd.

*Pemona* (call'd by *Solinus*, *Pomona Diutina*) is *Mainland*, the chief of the Isles of *Orkney*, and the Bishop's See.

*Recine*, call'd by *Antoninus*, *Riduna*, possibly instead of *Riciuna*; for there is one of the Western-Isles call'd at this day *Racine*, which seems to be the very place; and the change of (c) into (d) is very easie, and might be made by a Copyist, otherwise accurate enough.

*Thule* is a place mightily celebrated among the old Writers, and made use of to express the most remote parts of the habitable World; such, at least, as were then known. Sir *Robert Sibbald* has prov'd it to be the North-east part of *Scotland*; to whose Dissertation (publish'd in the new Edition of *Camden's Britannia*, pag. 1089, &c.) I refer the Reader, for the particular Reasons.

# I R E L A N D.

Leaving the Continent, we come to a large Isle on the West-side of *Britain*, call'd by *Ptolemy* *Britannia Parva*, and by other ancient Writers *Serica*, *Sacerna*, *Irā*, &c. but by the Inhabitants *Eriu*, and by the English *I R E L A N D*. The length of it, according to the best computations, is about 300 miles, but the breadth scarce 120. The *Irish Sea* bounds it on the East, the *Dominion of the North*, the *Western Ocean* on the West, and the *Irish Sea* on the South.

The SOIL is very moist and Wet, abounding with Bogs and Lakes: Which quality is much lessen'd by the increase of Inhabitants, who have (with great Industry) drain'd the *Low-lands* and *Morasses*. This abundance of Water and Moisture, makes them very inclinable to *Flevers*, *Rheums*, and such like Distempers, against which they find their *Uisg* the best Remedy. It does more, but *exames* less, than our English Brandy. And as the *Husbandry* of the Inhabitants is seen in these *Dales*; so is it also discover'd by the destruction they have made of the *Woods*, which abounded in this Country. Inasmuch, that now they have great plenty of Corn.

What the first INHABITANTS were, cannot be learn'd from *Records*; but must only be trac'd by conjecture and probability. Things at such a distance can receive no light, but what they have by these helps; unless we suffer our selves to be drawn by more modern Writers, into a number of extravagant and foolish Fancies. In short then, That they were *Britains*, we are encourag'd to believe, 1. Because the ancient Writers, some of them, call it *Britannia parva*, and *Insula Britannorum*. 2. *Tacitus* has told us, That in his time, their Customs were much the same with the *Britains*. And *Strabo* calls them expressly *Britones*. 3. At the first plantation of the World, 'tis very natural to imagine that this Island was

Peop'd from *Britain*, from whence the passage into it is short and easie. 4. A great many Words, in the Irish Language, appear to be of British Extraction.

That it was ever conquer'd by the *Romans*, is an Opinion which some have endeavour'd to establish upon little hints they have met with in the old Authors, that seem to look that way. But after all, there's no just reason to believe it: Nor can we imagine, but the Panegyrist would have run out largely upon such a Conquest, if the *Romans* had ever got footing in the Island. Towards the decay of the *Roman Empire*, the *Scots* (a People that are thought to have come out of *Scythia* into this Island) began to make a mighty figure in these parts; so that the whole Country from them, was call'd *Scotia*. Some of the *Saxon Kings*, and the *Normegians* also, were very troublesome to them, but could not bring them under an absolute subjection. Nor were they conquer'd before *Henry II.* King of *England* invaded them with a powerful Army (in the year 1172.) brought the States of the Island to an entire Submission, and bestow'd the Sovereignty upon his Son *John*. But for all this the Kings of *England* were only *Lords of Ireland*; until the more ample Title of King was bestow'd upon *Henry VIII.* by the States in Parliament assembl'd.

They are said to have receiv'd CHRISTIANITY very early. What progress had been made in it before the time of *S. Patrick*, we have no certain account: Probably, not very much. But that *St. Patrick* (who was a Disciple of *S. German*) carry'd the Work on with so much success and resolution, as to convert the greatest part of the Island; which gain'd him the Character of the *Irish Apostle*, and mighty Commendations from all the Irish Writers. In the next Age, their Reputation was so advanc'd upon the account of Religion, that it was term'd *Sanctorum Patria*.





*Patria*; and sent out great numbers of pious and devout men into other parts of the World. Nor was Religion their only Character; their Learning too is much celebrated by Authors both ancient and modern, who tell us, That the Saxons (particularly) very commonly sent over their Children hither, for a liberal Education.

Thus much of its ancient Condition. At present, the Inhabitants are in a great measure brought over to the Customs and Fashions of the English: Except in some parts, where they live at a loose, uncivilized rate; and are therefore term'd *Wild-Irish*.

They are govern'd by a *Vice-Roy* (sent over by the

King of England) Ail'd Lord Deputy or Lord Lieutenant; whose Jurisdiction and Authority is very large and ample. As for their Orders or Degrees, Ireland has the same, that we have here in England: Their Courts of Justice too, and manners of proceeding, differ very little. The Parliament is call'd and dissolv'd, at the pleasure of the King of England. They have their four Terms; their Chancery also, *King's-Bench*, *Common-Pleas* and *Exchequer*; with their Judges of Assize, and Justices of the Peace in each County.

Ireland is divided into five parts, arising from the number of its Governors heretofore. These, with their extent, will best be understood by the following Scheme.

1. MUN-



1. **MUNSTER** contains the Counties of
 

Kerry,	Limerick,
Cork,	Tigerary.
Waterford,	
2. **LEINSTER** contains the Counties of
 

Kilkenny,	Kildare,
Carerlough,	Wexford,
Queens-County,	Dublin.
Kings-County,	
3. **CONAGHT** contains the Counties of
 

Tromond,	Slege,
Galloway,	Lerrim,
Maio,	Roscommon
4. **ULSTER** contains the Counties of
 

Lough,	Down,
Caxon,	Antrim,
Farmanagh,	Cekran,
Menaghan,	Tir-Oen,
Armagh,	Tir-Conne!
5. **MEATH** contains the Counties of
 

East-Meath,	Long-
West-Meath,	ford.

The **CHURCH** is govern'd by four Archbishops; *Armagh*, Primate of all Ireland; *Dublin*, *Cassil*, *Tuam*. The particular extent of the *Bishopricks* has been so alter'd from time to time, that I had rather omit the List, than run the hazard of giving a false Catalogue. In the Survey of the Kingdom, we will use the method observ'd in *Scotland*; which (for the Reasons laid down, in the beginning of that Kingdom) is here also most convenient and easie.

The more considerable Towns are,	<i>Armagh</i> ,	<i>Down</i> ,	<i>Limerick</i> ,
	<i>Ardone</i> ,	<i>DUBLIN</i> ,	<i>Lismor</i> ,
	<i>Caricfergus</i> ,	<i>Galloway</i> ,	<i>London-derry</i> .
	<i>Cassil</i> ,	<i>Kildare</i> ,	<i>Waterford</i> ,
	<i>Glare</i> ,	<i>Kilkenny</i> ,	<i>Wexford</i> ,
	<i>Cork</i> ,	<i>Kinsale</i> ,	<i>Togtal</i> .

*Armagh*, in the County of *Armagh*, near the River *Kash*, seems to be the same which *Bede* calls *Deor-mach*; where (as the same Author adds) *S. Patrick* built a very fine City; only he subjoins a Romanick circumstance, That he follow'd the Model which the Angels had drawn for him. But whoever was the Founder, 'tis certain, That in the year 1142. it was made an Archbishop's See, when Cardinal *Papirio* was sent over into Ireland to revive the decaying discipline of the Church. Nor is it only an Archbishoprick, but the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom; the Archbishop hereof being stil'd Primate of all Ireland. The City was reduc'd under the power of the English by *John de Curcy*; but was afterwards utterly destroy'd by *John O Neale*; so that now nothing remains but a few Cottages, and the Ruins of the ancient Buildings.

*Athlone*, in the County of *Roscommon*, is a place of good strength, and has a fair Stone-bridge over the River. 'Tis much talk'd of in our Accounts of the late Wars in this Kingdom.

*Caricfergus*, in the County of *Antrim*, is the most considerable Town upon all the Coast; having a very commodious Haven. In the late Wars in Ireland, it was much spoken of.

*Cassil*, upon the River *Swire* in the County of *Tippary*, is only eminent for being an Archbishop's See, establish'd there by Pope *Eugenius III*.

*Glare* is a Market-town (in the County of that name) standing upon a Creek of the River *Shannon*.

*Cork*, the Metropolis of the County of that name, is encompass'd with the River on which it stands, and is of an oval form. It has the honour of being an Episcopal See, and is now mostly inhabited by the English; who by their diligence and industry have improv'd to that degree, both in Estates, Trade and Buildidgs, as to exceed all the Cities in Ireland, except only *Dublin*.

*Down* (the principal City in the County of *Down*) is of very great Antiquity; being mention'd almost under the same name (*Dunum*) in *Ptolemy*. 'Tis at present a Bishop's See; and the Inhabitants would claim a farther Honour, by making it the Burial-place of the great *S. Patrick*. But *Armagh* in Ireland, *Glaffenbury* in England, and *Glasgow* in Scotland, do envy them that Happiness, and endeavour to assert that Esteem to themselves upon several Authorities, which seem to countenance the several Opinions.

*DUBLIN*, the chief City in Ireland, has a very pleasant situation, by reason of Hills to the South, Plains to the West, the Sea to the East, and the River *Liffy* to the North. The River here makes a safe Harbour; but the heaps of Sand thrown into its Mouth, by the violence of the Winds, or else the ebbing and flowing of the Sea, hinders Ships of any great Burthen from coming up, but at high Water. The City is well Wall'd and neatly built: Within these hundred years, it is doubly increas'd in its Buildings, Ornaments, &c. Formerly, it was govern'd by a *Provost*; but King *Henry IV*. granted them a Mayor and two Bailiffs: And the two latter were chang'd into Sheriffs by *Edward VI*. Its publick Buildings of greatest note, are,

1. The College (which is situated in the same place on which the Monastery of *All-hallows* stood) dedicated to the *Holy Trinity*, and endow'd with the Privileges of an University by Queen *Elizabeth*. In *Edward the Second's* time, there was a Foundation laid here for an University, by the Institution of publick Lectures; but the Disturbances which follow'd, broke that Design.

2. The Archbishop's Palace, in the Suburbs of *S. Patrick*: with a stately Church dedicated to *S. Patrick*; eminent without for its high Steeple, and within for its Pavements and arch'd Roof. This consists of a *Dean*, a *Chanter*, a *Chancellor*, a *Treasurer*, 2 *Archdeacons*, and 22 *Prebendaries*.

3. The King's Castle, well fortify'd with Ditches and Towers, and furnish'd with a good Arsenal.

4. *Christ's Church*, in the heart of the City; carry'd on and finish'd by *Lawrence*, Archbishop of *Dublin*, and others.

5. The Town-hall, built of square Stone, and call'd *Tolestale*.

*Galloway* (the chief place in the County of that name) is a neat Town built of Stone. The convenience of a Harbour has made it well stor'd with Merchants; who, by the advantage of a full Trade both by Sea and Land, are very wealthy.

*Kildare* has the honour of giving name to the County wherein it stands; but yet *Naas* is the Shire-Town. Its greatest honour is the Bishop's See, stil'd in ancient Writings *Episcopatus Dariensis*.

*Kilkenny* (the chief place in the County, and the best In-land Town in the Kingdom) is fair-built and very plentiful, standing upon the River *Neure*. 'Tis divided into the *English-town* and the *Irish-town*. The *English-town* is the newer, said to be built by *Ranulph III*. Earl of *Chester*. The *Irish-town* is like a Suburbs to the other; but yet has the honour of *S. Canic*.



*S. Canic's Church*, who gave name to the City, which implies as much as the *Cell of S. Canic*; a Person very eminent in this Country for an extraordinary piety and strictness of Life. The Bishop of *Offory* has his Seat in this City.

*King'sale* stands at the mouth of the River *Bandon*, in a fruitful Soil; and receives its greatest interest and reputation from the commodious Harbor it enjoys.

*Limerick* (the head City in the County) is encompass'd by the divided Channel of the famous River *Shanon*. 'Tis parted into the *Upper* and *Lower*: In the first stands the Cathedral and Castle; the second is guarded with a Wall and Castle. It is a Bishop's See, and a place strongly fortify'd both by Art and Nature; as we may easily guess from the long Defence it made, when besieg'd by his present Majesty, in the late Irish Wars. This is the great Emporium of the whole Province of *Munster*.

*Lismor* (upon the River *Broodwater* in the County of *Waterford*) has a considerable name in the Histories and Records of *Ireland*, upon account of the Bishop's See. But the Revenues thereof being almost quite alienated, and lost, it came afterwards to be annex'd to the See of *Waterford*.

*London-derry*, formerly call'd *Derry*, is now annex'd to the County of that name; and is famous in our modern Histories and publick Papers, for resisting two memorable Sieges, one in the year, 1649. the other in the year, 1689.

*Waterford*, the chief City in the County of that name, can neither recommend it self by a good Air nor fruitful Soil. Notwithstanding which, by the convenience of the Harbour, it was look'd upon for Wealth and Populoufness to be the second City in *Ireland*; till *Cork* (as we observ'd before) grew up, and over-topp'd it. Upon account of its eminent Loyalty to the English, our Kings having granted it several Privileges: But in the Rebellion of 1641. it lost its old Character of *Fidelity*, by the Influence of the Popish Clergy, settl'd there probably to carry on that bloody Design.

*Weisford*, the chief Town of the County, seems to be a place of some Antiquity; tho' that name be modern, and given it by the *Germans* who settl'd themselves here. The Town is remarkable, for being the first in this whole Island that surrender'd to the English, and that receiv'd a Colony of that Nation. Which is the cause why all the neighbouring Parts do so much abound with English Inhabitants.

*Youghall*, near the entrance of the River *Broodwater* into the Sea, stands in the County of *Cork*, being of an oblong form, and wall'd round. The Town is divided into *Upper* and *Lower*. The convenience of the Harbour, with the fruitfulness of the Country round, have made it a place of considerable Resort.

#### Ancient Places in the Kingdom of I R E L A N D.

*Argita* is a Lake in these parts; perhaps that which empties it self at *Swilly* in the County of *Tirconnel*.

*Ausoba*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, is a River about *Lough-Corbes*, in the County of *Galloway*.

*Auten*, a People in these parts, seem to have formerly inhabited that Tract where the County of *Galloway* is at present: *Aterith* may well enough be suppos'd to retain something of the old name.

*Blani* were a People, who (along with the *Birgantes-Menapii* and *Cauci*) inhabited the Province of *Leinster*.

*Boreum Prora*, now *S. Helen's Head* in *Tirconnel*-County.

*Bovinda* is the River *Bayn*, well known by reason of the late Wars.

*Brigantes* or *Birgantes*, have their name from the River *Brigus* (for so *Ptolemy* calls our *Barrow*) and inhabited *Kilkenny*, *Offory* and *Caterlogh*, which are all water'd by the *Barrow*.

*Cauci* seems by the circumstances to have inhabited the County of *Wicklow*; now full of English Inhabitants, and by them improv'd to that degree, as to make a figure among the best Shires in this Kingdom.

*Concani*, a People in those parts, inhabited the South-part of *Conaght*, viz. *Clare*, *Galloway*, the Territory of *Clan-Richard*, with the Barony of *Aterith*. 'Tis possible, our present *Bonaght* may have something of the name of this People; especially, if a more suitable Original cannot be found out.

*Coriondi*, a People who dwelt about the County of *Cork*; to which perhaps it might have left a tincture of the name.

*Darni* (along with the *Voluntii*, *Robogdii* and *Erdini*) peopl'd the Province of *Ulster*.

*Dawona*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, and by *Giraldus*, call'd *Lauranus*, is probably the River which runs along by *Cork*.

*Dunum* is undoubtedly *Down*; an account whereof we have given in the descriptions of the Towns.

*Duris* seems to be the River which runs by *Tralee* through the County of *Kerry*.

*Erlana* is agreed upon by all hands to be the City of *Dublin*.

*Eblani* were a People in those parts.

*Erdini* inhabited part of the Province of *Ulster*, along with the *Voluntii* and others.

*Hieron Promontorium*, may very probably be that Neck of Land which shoots out into the County of *Weisford*; where *Benna*, a Town's name, implies the same thing as *Hieron*, namely, *sacred* or *holy*.

*Iberni* (call'd in some Copies *Uterini*) seem to have inhabited part of the County of *Desmond*, along with the *Vilabri*.

*Fernus* is a River, settl'd by *Ptolemy* under the Promontory *Notium*, as emptying it self there into the Sea. *Maine* (which runs under *Drunkeran*) bids the fairest for it.

*Ifaniam* is a Promontory call'd at this day *S. John's Foreland* in the County of *Down*.

*Laberuz*, mention'd by *Ptolemy*, seems to be the Castle *Kil-lair*, in the County of *Meath*; a name possibly deriv'd from *Ptolemy's* old one.

*Libnius* keeps something of its name to this day in the River *Liffy*, which runs by *Dublin*.

*Logia* is the Lake *Lough-Foyle*, in the County of *Tirconnel*.

*Luceni*, a People who formerly inhabited *West-Munster*, along with the *Vetabri* and *Uterini*.

*Macolicum*, is now *Malc*, upon the River *Shanon*, in the County of *Long-ford*.

*Menapii*, mention'd in *Ptolemy*, inhabited the County of *Weisford*; the chief City whereof, of the same name, seems to be the old *Menapia*.

*Modona* is a River in these parts, at the mouth whereof stood the ancient *Menapia*. If the latter be *Weisford*, the former must on course be the River *Slane*.

*Nagnata* is plac'd by *Ptolemy* some where about the present County of *Slego*; the very spot is not yet discover'd, nor any remains of the old name.

*Nagnata* must have their Seat in the same Tract, whereof *Nagnata* may seem to have been the capital City.



*Nerium* in our *Miffen-head* (a Promontory in the County of *Desmond*) under which he tells us the old River *Jernus* empties it self into the Sea.

*Oroca* seems to be that River which empties it self into the Sea, below *Wicklow* or *Arcklow*.

*Revis* is the River *Trevis*, the northern Bound of the County of *Slego*.

*Rheba* is still preserv'd entire in the old *Rheban*, (near the River *Barrow* in *Queen's-County*) at present an inconsiderable place.

*Regis* may seem to have been seated about *Patrick's Purgatory*, in the County of *Tirconnel*; because the place, in the Life of *S. Patrick*, is call'd *Reglis*.

*Rigia* has some Relicks of the old name, in the Lake we call *Lough-Regib*, in the County of *Longford*: Which is of more moment, because the situation agrees very well with the account left us of it by *Proton*.

*Robogdis* inhabited all the northern Shore of *Ire-*

land, about *Tirconnel*, &c. *Robogh* still preserves the manifest marks of the old name.

*Robogdium Promontorium* must also have been in those parts.

*Senus* (call'd also *Sena*, *Sacana* and *Flumen Senense*) is the noble River of *Shanon*.

*Velabri* (so call'd from the *Friths* and *Æstuaries* among which they dwelt; for so much *Aber* implies) inhabited part of the County of *Desmond*.

*Vidua* a River in *Tirconnel*, now *Crodagh*.

*Vinderius* is the Bay of *Knock-fergus* in the County of *Antrim*.

*Vodie*, a People, who, with the *Coriondi*, inhabited the Counties of *Cork*, *Tipperary*, *Limerick* and *Waterford*. The Territories *Idou* and *Idouth* seem to have something of the old name.

*Vennicium Promont.* now *Ram's Head* in *Tirconnel*.

*Volunt*, along with the *Darni*, *Robogdii* and *Erdini*, inhabited the Province of *Ulster*.

## J E R S E Y and G A R N S E Y.

BESIDES the Kingdom of *Ireland*, and the other Islands which lie round the Continent of *Britain* (the most considerable whereof are describ'd in the Counties upon which they border) there are two more, which could not be conveniently drawn into the Body of the Survey, by reason of their distance from the Continent. And yet they are of so great importance to the Crown of *England*, that in a Description of the three Kingdoms, it would be a gross Error wholly to omit them. These are *Jersey* and *Garnsey*.

*J E R S E Y* is that which *Antoninus* mentions under the name of *Cæsarea*, about 30 miles in compass, and defended with Rocks and Quick-sands. The middle parts are mountainous, but the Vallies are delicately water'd with pleasant Brooks, and planted with Fruit-trees; *Apple-trees* more especially. The Villages are thick-set, and make 12 Parishes; out of which 12 Jurors are chosen by their respective Parishioners to assist the Bailiff (who is appointed by the Governour to administer Justice) in the management of Causes and Actions, both Civil and Capital. They have no Physicians, nor any Distempers but Fevers; which always come at a certain time of the Year. Instead of *Fewel*, they use a Sea-weed, which they name *Uraic*; and the Sea now and then furnishes them with a good prize of combustible matter. *S. Hilary's* on the South-side of the Island, is their

chief Town, both on account of its Trade, and the Court of Justice settl'd in it. The name, it has from *Hilary* (Bishop of *Peters*) suppos'd to have been bury'd here, in his Banishment.

*G A R N S E Y* (20 miles to the North-west) is by *Antoninus* call'd *Sarnia*; inferior to the other upon some accounts: For it contains only 10 Parishes, and is not so fruitful: But 'tis better fortify'd, being encompass'd with a continu'd Ridge of steep Rocks. This whole Island is Enclosure; but the Inhabitants do not follow Agriculture so closely, as their Neighbours of *Jersey*. *S. Peter's*, a Town consisting of a long narrow Street, and seated upon a Bay in form of a Half-moon, is their capital Place, whether we respect Trade or Strength. For it is well stor'd with Merchants; and has the Mouth of the Haven defended by a Castle on each side. The Governor of the Island keeps his Residence here, and a Garison for the defence of the place.

The Government of these Islands, is much the same in both; the Customs of *Normandy* obtaining in most cases. Their Drink is generally *Cyder*, by reason of the abundance of *Apples*; and *Fish* they have in great plenty. Their Language is the French; and tho' they are generally of the same Extraction, yet they seem not fond of an Alliance to that People, but had rather make out a Relation to the English.



# FRANCE.

## CHAP. I.

FRANCE, Gallia, in General.

## FRANCE



THE Country of France is very advantageously situated, in the midst of the Northern temperate Zone, and extended from the 42d degree of Latitude to the 51st degree; and from the 13th degree of Lon-

gitude, to the 25th degree, reckoning from Teneriffe. [But according to Sanfon's Computation from the 15th degree to the 29th degree of Longitude:] So that it includes the space of 173 Leagues or

The Longitude of France has been strangely confounded by the Ignorance or Vanity of their Geographers, who have in their Maps extended it East and West a hundred Miles or more above its real Length: But the M<sup>rs</sup> de l'Academie des Sciences, have by exact Observations and Calculations corrected this Error, and by Monsieur du Fer's new Map it appears that the Length of the Kingdom from Conquet to Montbeliard is but 12 Degrees, tho' Sanfon makes it 14 and others much more.



520 Miles, from the *Pyrenean Mountains* in the South, to *Calis* in the North. And from the Point of *Concar* in *Bretagne* in the West to *Alsatia* in the East, about 160 Leagues or 450 Miles. On the North-east it is contiguous with the *Spanish Netherlands*, and parted from *England* by the *British Channel*: On the East it is bounded by *Germany*, *Switzer Land*, *Savoy* and *Flamand*, from the East of which it is separated by the *Alps*; on the South by the *Mediterranean-Sea* and the *Pyrenean Mountains*, which divide it from *Spain*; and on the West by the *Ocean*.

The *AIR* is very temperate, and not subject to the great Colds of *Germany*, *Sweden* and *Muscovy*, nor to the excessive Heats of *Spain* and *Italy*; but it is more or less hot or cold, according to the different situation of the several Provinces.

The *SOIL* is every where fertile, and produces, besides abundance of Corn and divers sorts of Fruits, a vast quantity of Wine and abundance of Flax; and in *Provence* and *Languedoc*, Oil. The Pastures and Meadows feed great Herds of Cattle, and the Forests which are spacious enough, but not so large as those of *Germany*, contain much variety of Game. Some Mines of Iron, Lead, Tin, *Copéras*, &c. are found in *France*, but of these not many nor very considerable. Great quantity of Salt is made in the Isle of *Ré*, about *Roissy*, and other parts of *France*, which yields the King a great Revenue.

The most noted *MOUNTAINS* here, besides the *Pyrenean* and the *Alps*, are those of *Cevennes*, *Auvergne*, *Mont-jure* or *S. Claude* towards *Switzerland*, and *Mont-joie*, or *des-Fauchies* in the Diocess of *Langres*.

The Chief *ISLANDS* are, I. In the *Mediterranean-Sea*, those of *Hieret*, *S. Margaree*, *S. Hilaritus* or of *Leins*, &c. II. In the *Ocean*, *Oleron* and *Ré* on the Coasts of *Saintonge* and *Aunis*; *Noir-Monfrrier*, *De-dieu*, *Bel-Ile*, *Our-Jant*, &c. off of *Bretagne*; and *Alderney* near the Shoar of *Normandy*.

Its chiefest *PORTS* in the *Ocean*, are *Calis*, *Ambleruse*, *S. Valery*, *Diepe*, *Havre de Grace*, *S. Malo*, *Brest*, *Rebel*, *Rosfort*, *Bordeaux*, *Bayonne*, &c. And in the *Mediterranean*, *Marseilles* and *Toulon*.

The principal *RIVERS* of *France* are, 1. The *Seine*, which rises in *Burgundy* near *Dijon*, passeth through *Champaign*, the *Isle of France* and *Normandy*, watering by the way *Troy*, *Paris* and *Rean*, and receiving in its Course the *Yonne*, the *Oise*, and several smaller Rivers, empties it self into the *Sea* at *Havre de Grace*, and makes a very good Haven, whence this Town hath its Name. 2. The *Loire* is the largest River in *France*, and springs in *Languedoc*, in the Mountains call'd *les Severins*, passeth by *Nevers*, *Orians*, *Tours*, *Angers* and *Nantes*, receiving by the way the *Auer*, the *Coer*, the *Indre*, the *Vienne*, the *Sarce*, the *Arche* and many others, and falls into the *Sea* about 40 Miles below *Nantes*, and over against *Bel-Ile*. 3. The *Garonne* riseth in the *Pyrenean Mountains*, runs to *Troubayse*, thence flows westward to *Bordeaux*, a little below which the *Dordogne* joyns it, and both together make it a very wide Haven, which is emptied into the *Ocean* near the Island of *Oleron*. 4. The *Rhône* hath its Source in the *Alps*, passeth through the Lake of *Geneva*, flows to *Lyons*, where it receives the *Saone*, at *Valence* the *Izère* falls into it, as doth the *Durance* at *Anignon*, and quickly after empties it self into the *Mediterranean-Sea* in six Channels. Besides these there is a great number of smaller Rivers, which are mentioned in the following Description of the Country.

The particular *COMMODITIES* of *France*,

which they send abroad into foreign Countries, are Wine, Brandy, Canvas, and other Linnen, Paper, Salt, wrought Silks, Druggets and other Stuffs; several wrought Goods, as Gloves, Lace, &c.

The *PEOPLE* of *France* are a mixture of the Posterity of the ancient *Gauls*, *Romans*, *Franks*, *Vistigots* and *Biogundians*, but chiefly of the *Gauls*, whom though the *Romans* and *Franks* successively subdued, they did not however expel, those still remaining the body of the People, tho' these obtain'd the Government of them.

Of the *TEMPER* of the *Gauls*, *Cesar* says, They were quick-witted, but rash and unsteady; and their Successors the *French* are of the same nature. They have generally quick and ready Apprehensions, but too often run away with a superficial Knowledge of things, without having Patience to dive to the bottom: But tho' this be their general Character, there have been abundance of Particulars that must be excepted: *France* having produced very learned and industrious Men in all Arts and Sciences, especially in our Age; wherein beside the vast improvement they have made of the Art of War, all the parts of Learning have been industriously studied and improved by the ingenious *Virtuosi* of *France*; and even a Woman of that Nation hath been found an excellent Critick in Philological Learning. They abound in Compliments, and are really very civil, especially to Strangers; and have a natural freedom in their Conversation, which would be very agreeable if it were not overacted and mixed with Levity. Both Men and Women are full of Talk, and as familiar at first sight, as if they had been long acquainted. In their Habit they are something fantastical, but have generally an Air of Gentility; especially the Women, who are well shaped and fair enough, except in the Southern Provinces, where they have very swarthy Complexions. The *French* are much addicted to Litigiousness; more Law-suits are tried there, than in any Nation in the World; nay some say than in all *Europe* besides; which encourages all sorts of People to breed up their Children to the Law; and if a Father can raise Money enough to purchase his Son an Office, he thinks him well settled: By which means here are swarms of Advocates, Procurers, Registers, Notaries, and other Men of Law. The Gentry scorn Trade, so that the younger Brothers always apply themselves to the Gown or the Sword, which makes the *French King's* Armies so large and well stocked with Officers. In War they have been always esteemed furious in attacking, but quick in retreating, not to be brought on a second time, if they obtained not their End at the first Onset. *Sicut primus impetus eis major quam virorum est, ita sequens minor quam feminarum*, says *L. Florus* of them.

But tho' this may still be part of their Character, yet, what by strict Discipline and careful Instruction, their Soldiers will now endure the Fatigues of a Camp and a Siege as well as any in *Europe*, and in Battles too, they have behaved themselves very bravely.

The Religion of the *Gauls* was Paganism in its highest degree, even to the offering of human Sacrifices (saith *Salinus*) but as they became more civil, this barbarity was laid aside; however, they still remained superstitious Idolaters, till the *CHRISTIAN RELIGION* was planted among them, by some of *St. Peter's* Disciples. *St. Denis*, the *Areopagite*, is pretended to have been the Apostle of *Paris*, and many ridiculous Miracles are related of him in their Legends; particularly, that after he was beheaded his Body rose, took up his Head and walked with it: Mile



Mile : which is as true, as that this *Denis* was ever there \*. However, it is certain, that Christianity was received here very early, and that the Learned and pious Father St. *Irenaeus* came hither in the middle of the second Century, and succeeded *Pothinus* (who was martyr'd *An. Dom.* 175.) in the Bishoprick of *Lions*. But the *Franks* being Pagans, when they came, Christianity was again suppress'd, till *Clovis* the fifth King being converted, by the Persuasion of his Wife *Cecilda*, and the instruction of St. *Vaast*, and St. *Remigius* the first Bishop of *Rheims*, it was restored.

But in the succeeding Ages of Ignorance and Superstition, the Errors that crept into the Church in most parts of Christendom, prevailed here also; and though the Gallican Church was never so servilely subject to the Court of *Rome* as those of other Nations, yet the pernicious Doctrines were as generally received here as any where. Wherefore when the Reformation was set on foot, great numbers of the People of *France* were convinc'd of the falshood of that Religion, and *Calvin's* Doctrine was readily receiv'd upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*. And so numerous did the Protestants or Huguenots (as they were called by the Romanists) grow, that even so early as the year 1562. there are said to have been 1250 of their Churches in *France*. But they were always persecuted by the Romish party, and even massacred in most barbarous manner several times; particularly at *Paris* on Saint *Bartholomew's* day, in the year 1572. where in the middle of the Night, more than 10000 of them were murder'd at once, and in other Cities three times as many; though a Peace was just concluded, and for assurance the King of *Navarre*, the Head of the Protestant party was that day married to the French King's Sister. King *Henry IV.* granted them Liberty of Conscience by an Edict made at *Nants*, and confirm'd and registr'd in the Parliament of *Paris*: By which means they again grew very powerful, and no less than 300 walled Towns were inhabited almost only by them, of which *Rechel* was the chief. But *Louis XIII.* deprived them of them all, even *Rechel* itself, after a long and famous Siege. By which their Strength being broken, and the Heads of the Party being brought over, or otherwise reduc'd, the present King *Louis XIV.* resolv'd utterly to suppress them, which he began by the revocation of the Edict of *Nants* in the year 1685. notwithstanding it had been so firmly ratified, and made a standing Law of the Kingdom; and afterwards caus'd the Protestants to be most cruelly persecuted by his Soldiers, which continued for two or three years; at the end of which, all those that could not be brought to renounce their Religion, were banished the Kingdom, after they had been long imprisoned, and deprived of all their Goods and Estates. And at this time the Persecution is renewed with such Heat, that none dare own any other Religion, than that of the Romish Church.

The ancient LANGUAGE of the *Gauls* was the same with that of our ancient *Britains*, as the learned Mr. *Camden* has proved at large; but when the *Romans* conquer'd it, they introduc'd the Latin, and by means of the long time they were Masters of the Country, establish'd it so effectually, that the old

Gaulish was quite lost; afterwards the *Franks*, being *Germans*, introduc'd their own Language, which was us'd at Court for some Ages; but the German being a more harsh indocile Tongue, and the Latin the contrary, this prevail'd above that; so that though the present French Tongue be compos'd of the German and Gothick, as well as of the Latin, the last has much the greater share.

It is voluble and elegant, and admir'd for its sweetness; it is true by means of the Liberty they take in the pronunciation, (leaving out harsh terminations and Consonants) it is pliant enough, but not so sweet as the Italian. The Royal Academy at *Paris* have of late years much improv'd and refin'd it, however it is not yet copious nor at all heroick; so that though in their Translations they have express'd the sense of some ancient Authors aptly enough in Prose, none of their Ingenious have been able to produce Heroick Poems like those in English.

But notwithstanding that this Tongue hath nothing of signal Majesty or Manliness in it, and seems rather fit for the Conversation of Women than of Princes and Statesmen, yet what by the greatness of the present King, and their Obstinacy in using their own Language in the Businesses other Nations have had occasion to transact with them, together with the Splendor of the Prince's Court which hath invited Strangers to visit it, the French Tongue is at present us'd in many Courts of *Europe*, and the most generally understood of any modern one in Christendom.

## S E C T. II.

### *Of the ancient State of France.*

THE want of Literature in the earlier Ages of the World, hath made it extremely difficult to discover the origine of Nations: The best that can be learnt of that of *France*, is, That it was peopled after the Flood, by the Posterity of *Gomar* the eldest Son of *Noah*: These growing numerous, compos'd many Nations, to whom the *Greeks* and *Romans* gave the general name of *Galli*; for what reason, as it is uncertain, so it is not very material; however under that name they were known in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus* the fifth King of *Rome*, and possess'd a Country of very large extent, comprising not only all the present *France*, but part of *Italy* also, as far as the River *Rubicon* or *Pisatello*, which falls into the *Adriatick* Sea between *Ravenna* and *Rimini*; and all that part of *Germany* and *Belgium*, that lies within the River *Rhine*, the Division whereof, according to the Roman Accounts, was thus, viz.

I. *GALLIA CISALPINA* or *Citerior*; with respect to the *Romans*, afterwards called *LONGOBARDIA* or *LOMBARDY* from the *Bar-di*, a certain Gaulish People, and the *Langons*, so nam'd by reason of their long Javelins.

II. *GALLIA TRANSALPINA*; or *Uterior*, which contained all the present *France*, and that part of *Germany* and *Belgium* westward of the *Rhine*.

The *Gauls* in general were a very vigorous and

\* Dr. *Cave* in his Life of that *Denis* hath sufficiently proved that he was never in *France*, *Lives Fath.* Vol. i. p. 71. as also their own Country *Zen*, *Launoy*, *Sirmondus* and *du Pin*. V. *du Pin's Hist. Ecclef. Writ.* Vol. i. p. 21. of the Engl. Edit.



warlike People, those of the *Cis-Alpina* fought and defeated a large Army of *Romans*, march'd \* A. M. 553. up to the City, took and sack'd it \*, U. C. 187. laid Siege to the Capitol, and had well nigh taken it: For having observed on one side of the Castle a place of more easie access than the rest, in the dead of night some of them climb'd up the Rock there, and got to the top with that silence, that they elap'd the Centinels and the Dogs; but disturb'd certain Geese that were in the Capitol, which by gaging and clapping their Wings, alarm'd the Soldiers: who presently running to their Arms, drove them back and by that lucky Accident recover'd the *Roman* State, then reduc'd to its last gasp. At length the Siege was rais'd by *Camilus* the Dictator, and in time the *Gauls* were driven out of the *Roman* Provinces: But left so dreadful a Name behind them, that *Cicero* confesses the *Romans* were more afraid of them than any other Nation of the World. And *Salust* says, It was not Honour but Life that was to be disputed with a *Gaul*. The *Romans* durst not attempt the Conquest of them, till they had subdued almost all the rest of the then known World. At length *Julius C.* 625, *Julius Cæsar* the Consul made War upon them, and five years after *Julius Maximus* reduc'd the *Narbonensis* into a *Roman* Province. About 70 years after this *Julius Cæsar* undertook the Conquest of *Gaul*, which, after a very bloody War he effected, and totally subdu'd the whole Country to the Power of *Rome*. *A. M.* 771. *C. C.* 713. *ante* Christ. 45. *Cæsar* at his arrival found the whole Country divided into three parts, whereof the *Celts* or *Galli* possess'd the best and largest, being all the Country that is bounded by the *German* on the South, the Ocean on the West, the *Loire* and the *Rhine* on the East, and by the *Seine* and *Marne* on the North; From the Confines of the *Gauls* *Celts* to the *British* Sea, and along the lower part of the *Rhine* quite to the *German* Ocean was inhabited by the *Belge*; the other part, being all from the River *Garonne* to the *Pyrenean* Mountains, quite cross from the Ocean in the West to the *Mediterranean* in the East, belonging to the *Aquitani*. Of these the *Celts* were the most civiliz'd, because of their Neighbourhood and Commerce with the *Romans* and the *Belge* the most warlike by reason of the little Commerce they had with other Nations, and the frequent Wars that the *German* made upon them. These great Nations were again subdivided into a multitude of smaller, whereof *Cæsar* mentions no less than LXXIV. that had different Appellations from the chief City, as the *Romani* of *Rome*, the *Strogoni* of *Stratone*, *Belgæ* of *Belgium*, &c. &c. But by now it was divided into three great Parts, viz. 1. *Narbonensis* so called from the City *Narbonne* containing *Lugdunensis*, *Picenna*, *Belgica*, and some part of *Savoy*; called also *Belgica* from a certain Habit worn by the People. 2. *Aquitania*, so named from the City of *Aquæ Seguntæ*, now *Sens* in *France*, comprehending the Provinces of *Septimania*, *Gallia*, *Quercy*, *Narbonensis*, *Picenna*, *Agona*, *Langedoc*, *Arvergne*, *Burgundia*, and *Brytania* extending from the Pyrenees to the River *Loire*. 3. *Gallia*, called so from the valiant Nation of the *Celts*, and *Comata* from the long Hair worn by them, also *Lugdunensis* from the City *Lyon*, extending from the *Loire* to the *British* Sea, and comprehending the Province of *Lugdunensis*, the Dukedom of *Belgica*, *Narbonensis*, &c. part of *Comata*, the Isle of *France*, the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Beauguois*, *Artois*, *Picardy*, *Brabant*, *Alsace*, and *Traictis*. 4. *Belgica*, named from the *Belge* a potent Nation, comprehending all the Eastern part of *Gaul*, viz. *Flanders*, the rest

of *Champagne*, the *Netherlands*, and so much of *Germany* and *Belgium*, as lyeth on this side the *Rhine*, with the County of *Burgundy* or *Franche Comte*.

Afterwards the Emperor *Constantine* the Great, divided it into seventeen Provinces or Governments; six of which were Consular, and eleven under certain Presidents sent by the Emperor, who resided in these Cities, viz.

1. <i>Narbonensis</i> prima.	<i>Narbonne</i> in <i>Languedoc</i> .
2. ———— secunda.	<i>Aix</i> in <i>Provence</i> .
3. <i>Vienne</i> ensis.	<i>Vienne</i> in <i>Dauphine</i> .
4. <i>Alpes</i> , <i>Græcia</i> and <i>Pennina</i> .	<i>Monsiriers en Tarentaise</i> in <i>Savoy</i> .
5. <i>Alpes Maritimæ</i> .	<i>Ambrun</i> in <i>Dauphine</i> .
6. <i>Lugdunensis</i> prima.	<i>Lyon</i> .
7. ———— secunda.	<i>Reims</i> in <i>Normandy</i> .
8. ———— tertia.	<i>Tours</i> .
9. ———— quarta.	<i>Sens</i> in <i>Champagne</i> .
10. <i>Sequania</i> .	<i>Besancon</i> in <i>Franch. Comte</i> .
11. <i>Aquitania</i> prima.	<i>Bourges</i> in <i>Berry</i> .
12. ———— secunda.	<i>Bordeaux</i> in <i>Guienne</i> .
13. <i>Niempopolitania</i> .	<i>Aux</i> in <i>Gascogne</i> .
14. <i>Germania</i> prima.	<i>Metz</i> .
15. ———— secunda.	<i>Colen</i> .
16. <i>Belgica</i> prima,	<i>Triers</i> .
17. ———— secunda.	<i>Rheims</i> .

He also placed Counts in the Cities, and Dukes in the Frontier Towns to administer Justice according to the *Roman* Laws; and *A. D.* 330. dividing the Office of *Præfectus Prætorio*, or Lieutenant-General of the Empire, among four Persons; appointed one of them to reside among the *Gauls*; and under him, three Vicars, who were dispersed in *Britain*, *France*, and *Spain*.

Afterwards the *Goths* got footing in *Gaul*, the *Narbonensis* being granted to them by the Emperor *Honorius* upon their quitting *Italy*; and afterwards for Service done the Empire, *Aquitania* also was given them. And the *Burgundians*, a great and populous Nation on the *Rhine*, at first called in by *Stilico* Lieutenant of the same *Honorius*, to defend the Borders against the *Franks*, possess'd themselves of all the South-east parts and both the *Burgundies*, from them so called.

This was the State of *Gaul*, when the *Franks* or *Frisones* enter'd it,

The *FRANKS* were a warlike People of *Germany*, who possess'd all the Country that lies between the *Rhine* and the *Weser*, and from the *German* Ocean in the North to the River *Mayne* in the South; and consist'd of the Nations of *Sicambri*, *Bructeri*, *Salij*, *Chatti*, &c.

They also conquer'd the Country beyond the *Mayne*, and making the Banks of that River their chief Seat, gave the name of *Francia* to the Country now call'd so.

The *Sicambri*, from whom some deduce the original of the *French*, are said to be of *Serbian* Extraction, and have come down into *Germany* *A. M.* 3519. *ante* J. Chr. 429. in a very great Body, under their Captain *Marcomir*, and settled themselves in those parts now call'd *East-Friesland*, *Guelderland*, and *Heland*. They were a rough unciviliz'd People, and often invaded and plundered their Neighbours, *A. M.* 3925. their King named *Francus*, was called by the *Saxons* to their assistance against the *Goths*, where he signaliz'd himself by his Valour, that, as some Authors report, the Nation had from him the Name of

*Franci*;



*Franc.* ; but this seems improbable, since neither *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, *Pliny*, *Cæsar*, *Tacitus*, or any ancient Author have mentioned them under that Name : From whence it is concluded, That they had it not till long after, that they took it up to denote the *Freedom* they enjoy'd from the *Roman* Yoke, which the Neighbouring Nations were Subject to.

The first notice of them in History under this Denomination is in the Reigns of *Valerian* and *Gallienus*, about *A. D.* 260, after which they are frequently mentioned on account of the Pillage they made in *Gaul*, &c. *Constantine* the Great, took their Kings *Africanus* and *Rhadagaise* Prisoners, and exposed them to wild Beasts, for having violated their Faith in warring against him.

About *A. D.* 412 the *Armorici*, who inhabited the Maritime Provinces of *Gaul*, as *Flanders*, *Picardy*, *Normandy* and *Bretaign*, revolted from the *Romans*, to whom the *Franks* joyned, and by that means possessed themselves of part of the *German* and *Belgick* Provinces of *Gaul*, which the *Romans* were forced to grant them. Soon after this it was, that *Pharamond* was chosen their King ; he reigned ten Years and had his Seat in *Gaul*, but about the time of his death the *Romans* beat the *Franks* out of *Gaul* again, and took from them the Lands they had given them, which *Clodion* the Successor of *Pharamond* endeavour'd to regain, but was beaten back. *Meroveus* succeeded *Clodion*, in whose time *Attila* King of the *Huns* invaded *Gaul* with a vast Army, and having plundered several other Cities, besieged *Orleans* ; for the relief whereof *Meroveus* joyned his Forces with those of *Ætius* the *Roman* General, and *Theodoric* King of the *Visigoths*, who altogether set upon *Attila*, and in Battel killed 200000 of his Men (as Historians report) and drove him out of *Gaul*. *Ætius*, who was the great support of the *Roman* Power in *Gaul*, was soon after Massacred by *Valentinian*, and he himself kill'd by *Maximus*. This put the *Roman* Affairs into such disorder, that *Meroveus* had time to extend his Conquests, which he did over all *Picardy*, *Normandy* and part of the *Isle of France* ; and *Childerick* his Son took *Paris*, *Orleans*, and several other Cities, and established the *French* Monarchy. *Clovis* his Successor freed the *French* wholly from the *Roman* Power, and gave the Name of *France* to all the Country that reaches from the *Rhine* to the *Loire*. After the death of *Clovis*, the Dominion of the *Franks* was divided into two parts, viz. *Osterrich*, or the Eastern part called *Austrasia*, and *Westerrich*, or the Western part called *Neustria* : The former containing all the old *France*, and the Country beyond the *Maine*, which they had conquer'd, together with *Reims*, *Châlons*, *Cambray* and *Laon* ; which was from that time a separate Kingdom, the Seat whereof was *Metz* in *Lorraine*. The latter contained all the Country that lies between the *Meuse* and the *Loire*, which was again divided into three Kingdoms, viz. 1. Of *France* at *Paris*, 2. of *Orleans*, and 3. of *Soissons* : And afterwards, when the *French* had subdued the *Visigoths* and *Burgundians* ; two other Kingdoms were erected, viz. of *Aquitain* and *Burgundy*. These were several times united and divided, as the Royal Family happened to be more or less numerous. But the Title of Kings of *France*, the Historians have given to those only who have ruled in *Paris* ; who are these mentioned in the following Table.

## S E C T. III.

## Of the French Kings.

OF these Monarchs there are reckon'd three Races : The first is called *Merovignian* from *Merouec*, who putting aside the Children of *Clodion*, caus'd himself to be chosen King ; and fixed the Regal Seat in *Gaul*, as hath been already shewn. This Race continued during the Reigns of XXI Kings, and ended in *Childerick* III. who being a weak man, was surnamed the Witless, and was degraded by the Assembly of the Estates ; *Pepin* the Son of *Charles Martel*, *Maire* of the Palace, being advanced in his stead ; who began the second Race, called the *Carlman* or *Carlovinian*.

The *Maire of the Palace* was an Office of great Dignity and Power ; he was at first chosen by the Nobility and confirmed by the King ; and was entrusted with the Management of all Affairs of State : Their Power was very great, which by reason of the Weakness and Supineness of the Kings, they encreased as they pleased ; so that at last it became hereditary. Of these, *Pepin* and his Son *Charles*, surnamed *Martel*, were in a manner Kings themselves during the Reigns of *Dagobert* II. *Chilperick*, *Clotaire* and *Thierry*, and after the Death of the last, *Charles* made himself chief Governour, with the Title of *Maire and Duke of the French*, in which he was succeeded by his Sons *Carloman* and *Pepin*, during an Interregnum of 6 or 7 Years ; and after the Expulsion of *Childerick*, *Pepin* obtained the Royal Dignity, as hath been already said. To *Pepin* succeeded his Son *Charles*, called *le Maigne* or the Great ; An Epithet the Noble Actions he performed, very worthily deserv'd : For it was he that conquer'd the Barbarous Inhabitants of the most Northern Parts of *Germany*, and establish'd Christianity and Civil Government among them, after he had overcome *Wittikind* the last King of the *Saxons*, whereof we shall have occasion to speak more particularly in our description of *Germany*. He also conquer'd the *Boii* or *Bavarians*, became King of *Germany*, and in the Pope's Quarrel carried his Arms into *Italy* against *Desiderius* King of *Lombardy*, who attempted to diminish the Papal Power and make himself King of all *Italy* ; Him *Charles* defeated, seized his Kingdom, and was crown'd King of *Lombardy*. He also conquered the *Sarazens* in *Spain*, and the *Huns*, *Danes*, *Normans*, &c. that infested his own Countries : And finally, he was by the *Romans* chosen Emperor, to which he was crown'd on Christmas-day, *A. D.* 800. thereby erecting anew the Western Empire, and making himself the greatest Prince of the Universe. But this mighty Monarchy was in a little time reduced to its former Limits ; for his Son *Lewis the Godly* parted his Estates among his four Sons, and erected the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Aquitain*, *Bavaria*, and *Rbatia* ; and tho' some of his Posterity succeeded in the Empire, yet his Family degenerating, they not only lost that Title, but *Charles* surnamed the *Simple*, the great Grandson of *Lewis the Godly*, was for some time kept out of the Throne of *France* also, by *Lewis* and *Carloman* his Bastard-Brothers, and after them by *Carolus Crassus* Emperor, and *Eudes* Earl of *Anjou* ; and though he obtained it at last, he was much disturb'd and forc'd to resign it to *Rodolph* of *Burgundy*, who having enjoyed it two years, after his Death the Son of *Charles the Simple* was restored. But his

Son



Son and Grandson were disturb'd by *Hugh Capet*, Earl of *Paris* and *Amieu*, and *Maire* of the Palace. descended from the *Eudes* abovemention'd, who after the Death of *Lewis the Sloathful*, got to be chosen King by the assembly of the Estates at *Novon* in the Month of *May*, *A. D.* 987. And began the third or *Capetian* Race of the Kings of *France*.

*A Chronological Table of the Succession of the Kings of France, according to Mezeray.*

*The first or Merovingian Race.*

Began to Reign	A. D.	Reigned Years
1 <i>Pharamond</i>	418	10
2 <i>Clodion the Hairy</i>	428	20
3 <i>Merovee</i>	448	11
4 <i>Childerick I.</i>	458	23
5 <i>Cleas I.</i>	481	30
6 <i>Childerick I.</i>	511	47
7 <i>Clovis I.</i>	553	3
8 <i>Childebert</i>	561	9
9 <i>Chilperic I.</i>	570	13
10 <i>Clovis II.</i>	584	43
11 <i>Dagobert I.</i>	629	16
Whereof 6 with his Father.		
12 <i>Cleas II.</i>	635	15
13 <i>Clovis III.</i>	655	14
14 <i>Childerick II.</i>	670	18 (in Austria & Neust.)
15 <i>Telery I.</i>	674	17
16 <i>Cloas III.</i>	691	4
17 <i>Childerick II.</i>	695	17
18 <i>Dagobert II. the just</i>	711	5
19 <i>Chilperick II.</i>	716	5
<i>Clovis, set up by Ch. Martel</i>	721	1
20 <i>Telery II.</i>	722	17
An Interregnum of 6 or 7 years		
21 <i>Clovis III. the Wise</i>	743	8

*The Second or Carolingian Race.*

22 <i>Pepin the short</i>	751	17
23 <i>Charlemagne or Ch the Great</i>	768	46
24 <i>Lewis I. the Pious</i>	814	27
25 <i>Charles II. the Bald</i>	840	37
26 <i>Lewis II. the Stammerer</i>	877	19 Months
27 { <i>Lewis III.</i> <i>Carloman</i> }	879	{ 2 4
28 <i>Charles III. the Gross</i>	884	3
29 <i>Eudes Crowned King</i>	888	5
30 <i>Charles IV. the Simple</i>	893	29
<i>Robert Crowned King</i>	922	1
31 <i>Ralph Crowned King</i>	923	13
32 <i>Lewis IV. Transmarine</i>	936	18
33 <i>Louis</i>	954	32
34 <i>Lewis V. the Sloathful</i>	956	16 Months

*The Third or Capetian Race.*

35 <i>Hugh Capet</i>	987	9
36 <i>Robert the Devout</i>	996	45
whereof 9 with his Father.		
<i>Hugh the Great. Crowned, but died before his Father.</i>		
37 <i>Henry I.</i>	1033	25
38 <i>Philip I.</i>	1060	48
39 <i>Lewis VI. the Gross</i>	1135	29
<i>Philip Crowned, but died before his Father</i>		

40 <i>Lewis VII the Young</i>	1137	43
41 <i>Philip II the August</i>	1180	43
42 <i>Lewis VIII the Lyon</i>	1223	3
43 <i>S. Lewis IX.</i>	1226	44
44 <i>Philip III. the Hardy</i>	1270	15
45 <i>Philip IV. the Fair</i>	1286	29
46 <i>Lewis X. Hutin</i>	1314	18 Months

*Regency.*

*John* died at 8 days old.

47 <i>Philip V. the Young</i>	1317	5
48 <i>Charles IV. the Fair</i>	1322	6

After whose death *Edward III. King of England*; claimed the Crown of *France*, as next Heir however it was given to

49 <i>Philip VI. of Valois</i>	1328	22
50 <i>John the Good</i>	1350	13

He was taken Prisoner by the *Black Prince* Son to *Edward III.*

51 <i>Charles V. the Wise</i>	1364	16
52 <i>Charles VI. well belov'd</i>	1380	42
53 <i>Charles VII. Victorious</i>	1422	39
54 <i>Lewis XI.</i>	1461	22
55 <i>Charles VIII. Courteous</i>	1483	15
56 <i>Lewis XII. the Just</i>	1498	17
57 <i>Francis I. the Great</i>	1515	32
58 <i>Henry II.</i>	1547	13
59 <i>Francis II.</i>	1559	1 5 Mon:
60 <i>Charles IX.</i>	1560	13
61 <i>Henry III.</i>	1574	15
62 <i>Henry IV. of Bourbon.</i> King of <i>Navarre.</i>	1589	21
63 <i>Lewis XIII.</i>	1610	33
64 <i>Lewis XIV</i>	1643	now reigning.

The present King was born *Sept. 5th 1638*, succeeded his Father in the Throne, *May, 14th 1643* and was Crowned at *Reims, June, 7th 1654* he married *Mary of Austria* Daughter to *Philip iv. King of Spain*, *June 9th 1660*, by whom he hath Issue the *D A U P H I N*, born *Nov. 1st 1661*, who married *Mary* Sister to the present Elector of *Bavaria*, on the *28th of Jan. 1680*, and by her hath Issue three Sons; viz. the Duke of *B U R G U N D Y*, born *Aug. 6th 1632*. The Duke of *A N J O U*, born *Dec. 9th 1683*. And the Duke of *B E R R Y*, born *August 31 1686*.

S E C T. IV.

*Of the Government, Laws, Courts and Officers of Justice, and Taxes.*

*Gaul*, as we have said. was anciently divided into many Nations, each of which was govern'd by a different King; whose Power was limited by Laws agreed between him and the People in a grand Council. But though these Nations were separate Governments, they all maintained a general Alliance, and upon extraordinary Occasions, a General Council of the chiefs of each Nation was conven'd; as we find there was to choose Deputies to congratulate *Cæsar* upon his Victory over the *Helvetians*, and to crave his assistance against *Arminius* King of the *Germans*.

And like the *Gauls*, the *French* also at the beginning of that Monarchy, established a grand Council for making Laws, called the Assembly of the Estates; which was composed of Deputies sent from the Nobility, Clergy, the chief Cities of every Province, and from the Common People. These being assembled before the



King, the Peoples Grievances were heard, the Necessities of the Kingdom considered and Laws were made for Imposing Taxes, Redressing Grievances, and what else was needful for the Publick Good: And the Laws there made obliged the King, as well as the People. The first Assembly of this Council, mentioned in History was *A. D.* 422 at *Salifson* or *Seltz* in *Alsatia*, which was called (*says du Tillet*) to interpret and Reform the Customs of France not yet written; and in this Council (*'tis said*) the famous *Salique Law* was made. Mention is made many times that *Charlebert* assembled the Estates. *Charlemagne* called them twenty times, *To receive the Annual Gifts, and confirm the Privileges of the Nobility*, says a late French Author of good Learning; by which it should seem that they had the same Power that our *English* Parliament hath. It is at least certain, that in those days this Assembly had great authority: *Duilla* says it was an ancient Question, Whether the Estates or the King were superior. But at length their Power was much restrained and latterly they were not assembled in many years together. *Lewis XIII.* convoked the Assembly of the Estates to *Sens*, *Sept.* 10. 1614. thence adjourned them to *Paris*, where the Sessions began on the 27th of *October*, and on the 23d of *February*, 1615, the Result of their Deliberations being written down, were presented to the King, but whether passed into Laws or no I am not inform'd, the Historian leaving it there. Since that time they have never met; and the only Legislative Power in *France* at present is in the King, whose Edicts; with a *Seit, car tel est notre plaisir*; *So be it, for such is our Pleasure*, being registered in the Parliament of *Paris* (which too is composed of Persons that are at his Devotion) have the full force of Laws.

The Ancient Civil Law is used in *France*, besides which there are ancient particular Laws and Customs, and the Edicts of the Kings.

The *Salique Law* and that of *Appenages* are esteemed Fundamental and unrevocable: The first confines the Succession to the Crown in the Males, excluding the Females, and the Issue of them: What more it contained is not known. Many Conjectures have been made of the Reason of this Name *Salique*: some derive it from the *Salii*, one of the Nations of the *Franks*; others from the River *Sala*, on the Banks whereof it is pretended to be made, &c. But that which seems to be much the most Natural and Probable is the Judgment of a most ingenious Antiquary of our own Nation, who derives it from the Word *SALL* or *ΣΑΛ*, as it is now written, which in the *High Dutch* (the Language of the *Franks*) signifies a Hall or Court, so that it is the Law *Salique*, *q. d.* the Court-Law, or the Law of the Court, by which the King and the Royal Family were assur'd of their Honour and Privilege. That of *Appenage* was made by *Charles* the Great, and is to hinder the King's younger Sons from having any part of the Kingdom with their Elder Brother; before which *France* was frequently parcelled out into several Kingdoms.

For maintaining the Publick Peace, and the better Administration of Justice, the King appoints one of the prime of the Nobility Governor in every one of the Twelve Governments, and under him Lieutenants and Governours of Towns, whose Officers are the same with the ancient Dukes and Counts, first established by the *Romans*, *viz.* to keep in Obedience the Provinces and Places given them in Custody, to maintain them in Peace and Tranquillity, to have Power and command over their Armies, to defend them against Enemies and Seditious Attempts, to keep the

Places well fortified and provided with what is needful, and to assist the Execution of Justice.

The Administration of Justice, both Civil and Criminal belongs to the Parliaments. Anciently the Kings administr'd Justice themselves, but it being troublesome to them, this Court was establish'd by King *Peppin*. *Anno. Dom.* 757. composed of certain Noblemen, whom the King appointed to hear the Complaints, and do Justice to his Subjects. At first it was held where the King resided, and follow'd him in his Journeys: But for the Convenience of the People, *Philip* the Fair made it sedentary, and gave a Part of his Palace at *Paris* to be the fixt Seat of the Parliament; and because of the multiplicity of Business, and the large extent of the Country, succeeding Kings erected new ones in several Parts of the Kingdom, so that at present there are Fourteen Parliaments in *France* and its Conquests, *viz.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 At <i>Paris</i> .                     | 9 At <i>Pau</i> .                             |
| 2 <i>Toulouse</i> .                     | 10 <i>Besancon</i> .                          |
| 3 <i>Roan</i> .                         | 11 <i>Tournay</i> .                           |
| 4 <i>Grenoble</i> .                     | 12 Of <i>Roussillon</i> at <i>Perpignan</i> . |
| 5 <i>Bordeaux</i> .                     | 13 <i>Aras</i> .                              |
| 6 <i>Dijon</i> .                        | 14 Of <i>Alsace</i> at <i>Strasbourg</i> .    |
| 7 <i>Aix</i> .                          |   |
| 8 <i>Remes</i> , now at <i>Vannes</i> . |   |

These Parliaments are composed of certain Presidents, Counsellors, Advocates, &c. and divided into several Chambers, according to the respective Businesses. That of *Paris* is called the Court of Peers; because the Dukes and Peers of *France*, and several great Officers of State are Sworn before it, and are there tryed, when accused of any Crime. It is divided into Ten Chambers, *viz.*

The *Grand Chamber*, which tryes great Causes, and judges Noblemen.

The *Tournelle* (so called, because the Counsellors of the *Grand Chamber* attend in it by Turns) *Civile*; judges of Civil Causes to the Value of 1000 Livres or 50 Livres *per Annum*.

The *Tournelle Criminelle*, which judges all Appeals of Criminal Matters from the Subordinate Courts, not made by Noblemen.

Five Chambers of *Inquest*. Wherein the Depositions of Witnesses are written down, and Causes judged thereupon, in the Nature of our Bill and Answer in *Chancery*.

Two Chambers of *Request*, which judge the Causes of those that are privileged.

For the Service of these Chambers, there are one Chief President, and seven Presidents *au Mortier* (so called from a Cap they wear in form like a Mortar) who are all Persons of Quality: Twenty nine Counsellors, Clerks, among which the Archbishop of *Paris*, and the Abbot of *S. Dennis* have place; One hundred eighty and five Counsellors, Laicks; Fourteen Presidents of the *Inquest* and *Request*; Two Advocates General; one Procureur General, and Twenty Substitutes to him; Three Registers; with Grieffers, Notaries, Ushers, &c. and Four hundred Procureurs or Attorneys.

Besides the Parliaments, there are two other sorts of Supreme Courts in *France*, which are the Chambers of Accounts, and the Courts of Aides.

The Chambers of Accounts are Twelve in Number, and held at these Cities, *viz.* 1. *Paris*, 2. *Roan*, 3. *Dijon*, 4. *Nantes*, 5. *Montpelier*, 6. *Grenoble*, 7. *Aix*, 8. *Pau*, 9. *Blois*, 10. *Lisle*, 11. *Aire*, and 12. *Dole*. This Court administers the Oath of Fidelity to the Arch-



Son and Grandson were disturb'd by *Hugh Capet*, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and *Maire* of the Palace. descended from the *Eudes* abovemention'd, who after the Death of *Lewis the Sloathful*, got to be chosen King by the ass. ably of the Estates at *Nevon* in the Month of *May*, *A. D.* 987. And began the third or *Capetine* Race of the Kings of *France*.

*A Chronological Table of the Succession of the Kings of France, according to Mezeray.*

*The first or Merovingian Race.*

Began to Reign	A. D.	Reigned Years
1 <i>Pharamond</i>	418	10
2 <i>Clodion the Hairy</i>	428	20
3 <i>Merovee</i>	448	11
4 <i>Childerick I.</i>	458	23
5 <i>Clovis I.</i>	481	30
6 <i>Childebert I.</i>	511	47
7 <i>Clovis I.</i>	558	3
8 <i>Cherebert</i>	561	9
9 <i>Chilperic I.</i>	570	13
10 <i>Clovis II.</i>	584	43
11 <i>Dagobert I.</i>	629	16
Whereof 6 with his Father.		
12 <i>Clovis II.</i>	638	15
13 <i>Clovis III.</i>	655	14
14 <i>Childerick II.</i>	670	{in Austria} 18 {& Neust.}
15 <i>Thierry I.</i>	674	17
16 <i>Clovis III.</i>	691	4
17 <i>Childebert II.</i>	695	17
18 <i>Dagobert II. the just</i>	711	5
19 <i>Chilperick II.</i>	716	5
<i>Clovis, set up by Ch. Martel</i>	721	1
20 <i>Thierry II.</i>	722	17
An Interregnum of 6 or 7 years		
21 <i>Childebert III. the Witless.</i>	743	8

*The Second or Carolingian Race.*

22 <i>Pepin. the short</i>	751	17
23 <i>Charlemagne. or Ch. the Great</i>	768	46
24 <i>Lewis I. the Pious</i>	814	27
25 <i>Charles II. the Bald</i>	840	37
26 <i>Lewis II. the Stammerer,</i>	877	19 Months
27 { <i>Lewis III.</i> <i>Carloman</i> }	879	{ 2 4
28 <i>Charles III. the Gross</i>	884	3
29 <i>Eudes Crowned King</i>	888	5
30 <i>Charles IV. the Simple</i>	893	29
<i>Robert Crowned King</i>	921	1
31 <i>Radolph Crowned King</i>	923	13
32 <i>Lewis IV. Transmarine</i>	936	18
33 <i>Lothaire</i>	954	32
34 <i>Lewis V. the Sloathful</i>	986	16 Months

*The Third or Capetine Race.*

35 <i>Hugh Capet</i>	987	9
36 <i>Robert the Devout</i>	996	45
whereof 9 with his Father.		
<i>Hugh the Great, Crowned, but died before his Father.</i>		
37 <i>Henry I.</i>	1033	28
38 <i>Philip I.</i>	1060	48
39 <i>Lewis VI. the Gross</i>	1108	29
<i>Philip Crowned, but died before his Father</i>		

40 <i>Lewis VII the Young</i>	1137	43
41 <i>Philip II the August</i>	1180	43
42 <i>Lewis VIII the Lyon</i>	1223	3
43 <i>S. Lewis IX.</i>	1226	44
44 <i>Philip III. the Hardy</i>	1270	15
45 <i>Philip IV. the Fair</i>	1286	29
46 <i>Lewis X. Hutin</i>	1314	18 Months

Regency.

*John* died at 8 days old.

47 <i>Philip V. the Young</i>	1317	5
48 <i>Charles IV. the Fair</i>	1322	6
After whose death <i>Edward III. King of England</i> ; claimed the Crown of <i>France</i> , as next Heir however it was given to		
49 <i>Philip VI. of Valois,</i>	1328	22
50 <i>John the Good</i>	1350	13
He was taken Prisoner by the <i>Black Prince</i> Son to <i>Edward III.</i>		
51 <i>Charles V. the Wise</i>	1364	16
52 <i>Charles VI. well belov'd</i>	1380	42
53 <i>Charles VII. Victorious</i>	1422	39
54 <i>Lewis XI.</i>	1461	22
55 <i>Charles VIII. Courteous</i>	1483	15
56 <i>Lewis XII. the Just</i>	1498	17
57 <i>Francis I. the Great</i>	1515	32
58 <i>Henry II.</i>	1547	13
59 <i>Francis II.</i>	1559	1 5 Mon:
60 <i>Charles IX.</i>	1560	13
61 <i>Henry III</i>	1574	15
62 <i>Henry IV. of Bourbon.</i>	1589	21
<i>King of Navarre.</i>		
63 <i>Lewis XIII.</i>	1610	33
64 <i>Lewis XIV</i>	1643	now reigning.

The present King was born *Sept. 5th* 1638, succeeded his Father in the Throne, *May, 14th* 1643 and was Crowned at *Reims, June, 7th* 1654 he married *Mary of Austria* Daughter to *Philip IV. King of Spain, June 9th* 1660, by whom he hath Issue the *D A U P H I N*, born *Nov. 1st* 1661, who married *Mary* Sister to the present Elector of *Bavaria*, on the 28th of *Jan.* 1680, and by her hath Issue three Sons; viz. the Duke of *B U R G U N D Y*, born *Aug. 6th* 1682. The Duke of *A N J O U*, born *Dec. 9th* 1683. And the Duke of *B E R R Y*, born *August 31* 1686.

S E C T. IV.

*Of the Government, Laws, Courts and Officers of Justice, and Taxes.*

*Gaul*, as we have said, was anciently divided into many Nations, each of which was govern'd by a different King; whose Power was limited by Laws agreed between him and the People in a grand Council. But though these Nations were separate Governments, they all maintained a general Alliance, and upon extraordinary Occasions, a General Council of the chiefs of each Nation was conven'd; as we find there was to choose Deputies to congratulate *Cæsar* upon his Victory over the *Helvetians*, and to crave his assistance against *Ariovistus* King of the *Germans*.

*Cæsar de Bel Gal. Lib. 1*

And like the *Gauls*, the *French* also at the beginning of that Monarchy, established a grand Council for making Laws, called the Assembly of the Estates; which was composed of Deputies sent from the Nobility, Clergy, the chief Cities of every Province, and from the Common People. These being assembled before the

Knig



King, the Peoples Grievances were heard, the Necessities of the Kingdom considered and Laws were made for Imposing Taxes, Redressing Grievances, and what else was needful for the Publick Good: And the Laws there made obliged the King, as well as the People. The first Assembly of this Council, mentioned in History was *A. D.* 422 at *Salifson* or *Seltz* in *Alsacia*, which was called (*says du Tillet*) to interpret and Reform the Customs of France not yet written; and in this Council ('tis said) the famous *Salique Law* was made. Mention is made many times that *Childebert* assembled the Estates. *Charlemagne* called them twenty times, To receive the Annual Gifts, and confirm the Priviledges of the Nobility, says a late French Author of good Learning; by which it should seem that they had the same Power that our *English* Parliament hath. It is at least certain, that in those days this Assembly had great authority: *Divila* says it was an ancient Question, Whether the Estates or the King were superior. But at length their Power was much restrained and latterly they were not assembled in many years together. *Lewis XIII.* convoked the Assembly of the Estates to *Sens*, *Sept.* 10. 1614. thence adjourned them to *Paris*, where the Sessions began on the 27th of *October*, and on the 23d of *February*, 1615, the Result of their Deliberations being written down, were presented to the King, but whether passed into Laws or no I am not inform'd, the Historian leaving it there. Since that time they have never met; and the only Legislative Power in *France* at present is in the King, whose Edicts (with a *Soit, car tel est notre plaisir*; So be it, for such is our Pleasure) being registered in the Parliament of *Paris* (which too is composed of Persons that are at his Devotion) have the full force of Laws.

The Ancient Civil Law is used in *France*, besides which there are ancient particular Laws and Customs, and the Edicts of the Kings.

The *Salique Law* and that of *Appenages* are esteemed Fundamental and unrevocable: The first confines the Succession to the Crown in the Males, excluding the Females, and the Issue of them: What more it contained is not known. Many Conjectures have been made of the Reason of this Name *Salique*: some derive it from the *Salii*, one of the Nations of the *Franks*; others from the River *Sala*, on the Banks whereof it is pretended to be made, &c. But that which seems to be much the most Natural and Probable is the Judgment of a most ingenious Antiquary of our own Nation, who derives it from the Word *S A I L* or *Σ A L*, as it is now written, which in the *High Dutch* (the Language of the *Franks*) signifies a Hall or Court, so that it is the Law *Salique*, *q. d.* the Court-Law, or the Law of the Court, by which the King and the Royal Family were assur'd of their Honour and Prerogative. That of *Appenage* was made by *Charles* the Great, and is to hinder the King's younger Sons from having any part of the Kingdom with their Elder Brother; before which *France* was frequently parcelled out into several Kingdoms.

For maintaining the Publick Peace, and the better Administration of Justice, the King appoints one of the prime of the Nobility Governor in every one of the Twelve Governments, and under him Lieutenants and Governours of Towns, whose Officers are the same with the ancient Dukes and Counts, first established by the *Romans*, viz. to keep in Obedience the Provinces and Places given them in Custody, to maintain them in Peace and Tranquility, to have Power and command over their Armies, to defend them against Enemies and Seditious Attempts, to keep the

Places well fortified and provided with what is needful, and to assist the Execution of Justice.

The Administration of Justice, both Civil and Criminal belongs to the Parliaments. Anciently the Kings administr'd Justice themselves, but it being troublesome to them, this Court was establish'd by King *Peppin.* *Anno. Dom.* 757. composed of certain Noblemen, whom the King appointed to hear the Complaints, and do Justice to his Subjects. At first it was held where the King resided, and follow'd him in his Journeys: But for the Convenience of the People, *Philip* the Fair made it sedentary, and gave a Part of his Palace at *Paris* to be the fixt Seat of the Parliament; and because of the multiplicity of Business, and the large extent of the Country, succeeding Kings erected new ones in several Parts of the Kingdom, so that at present there are Fourteen Parliaments in *France* and its Conquests, viz.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 At <i>Paris</i> .                      | 9 At <i>Pau</i> .                             |
| 2 <i>Toulouse</i> .                      | 10 <i>Besancon</i> .                          |
| 3 <i>Roan</i> .                          | 11 <i>Tournay</i> .                           |
| 4 <i>Grenoble</i> .                      | 12 Of <i>Roussillon</i> at <i>Perpignan</i> . |
| 5 <i>Bourdeaux</i> .                     | 13 <i>Arras</i> .                             |
| 6 <i>Dijon</i> .                         | 14 Of <i>Alsace</i> at <i>Strasburgh</i> .    |
| 7 <i>Aix</i> .                           |   |
| 8 <i>Rennes</i> , now at <i>Vannes</i> . |   |

These Parliaments are composed of certain Presidents, Counsellors, Advocates, &c. and divided into several Chambers, according to the respective Businesses. That of *Paris* is called the Court of Peers; because the Dukes and Peers of *France*, and several great Officers of State are Sworn before it, and are there tryed, when accused of any Crime. It is divided into Ten Chambers, viz.

The *Grand Chamber*, which tryes great Causes, and judges Noblemen.

The *Tournelle* (so called, because the Counsellors of the *Grand Chamber* attend in it by Turns) *Civile*; judges of Civil Causes to the Value of 1000 Livres or 50 Livres per Annum.

The *Tournelle Criminelle*, which judges all Appeals of Criminal Matters from the Subordinate Courts, nor made by Noblemen.

Five Chambers of *Inquest*. Wherein the Depositions of Witnesses are written down, and Causes judged thereupon, in the Nature of our Bill and Answer in *Chancery*.

Two Chambers of *Request*, which judge the Causes of those that are priviledged.

For the Service of these Chambers, there are one Chief President, and seven Presidents *au Mortier* (so called from a Cap they wear in form like a Mortar) who are all Persons of Quality: Twenty nine Counsellors, Clerks, among which the Archbishop of *Paris*, and the Abbot of *S. Dennis* have place; One hundred eighty and five Counsellors, Laicks; Fourteen Presidents of the *Inquest* and *Request*; Two Advocates General; one Procureur General, and Twenty Substitutes to him; Three Registers; with Grieffiers, Notaries, Ushers, &c. and Four hundred Procureurs or Attorneys.

Besides the Parliaments, there are two other sorts of Supreme Courts in *France*, which are the Chambers of Accounts, and the Courts of Aides.

The Chambers of Accounts are Twelve in Number, and held at these Cities, viz. 1. *Paris*, 2. *Roan*, 3. *Dijon*, 4. *Nantes*, 5. *Montpellier*, 6. *Grenoble*, 7. *Aix*, 8. *Pau*, 9. *Blois*, 10. *Lisle*, 11. *Aire*, and 12. *Dole*. This Court administers the Oath of Fidelity to the Arch-



Charleroi, and Lincolne: so much of the Counties of Rouillon, Conflans and Carignan, as lie on this side the Frontiers; all the rest of those Counties, together with the Principality of Carignan, being restored to the Emperor. The upper and lower Alsacia; Sauteray, the County of Forstet and Brisach, with its Dependencies, were also granted to the French.

The Duke of Lorraine by this Treaty was restored to his Dominions, except Metz. But the French King prevail'd upon him to make a Donation of them to him at his Death; by the pretence whereof, when that Duke died, A. 1655, the French entred upon them, and kept out his Nephew the late Duke of Lorraine. Afterwards at the Treaty of Nimuegue, at the instance of the Emperor, the Dutchy of Lorraine was offer'd to be restored to him, but with Condition, that the French King sh<sup>d</sup> keep the City of Nancy and its Jurisdiction, and also have four Roads cross his Country, of half a league in breadth from Nancy, viz. Into Alsacia; to Vesur in the Francoise Comtee, to Metz, and to St. Dizier in Champagne, together with the Sovereignty of all the Boroughs and Villages which lye in the said Roads of half a League's breadth; as also the Provostship of Longui, and its Dependencies, for which he was to exchange another Provostship of like value; by which means the French retain'd half Lorraine, besides all the Dutchy of Bar, the County of Clermont, and other Dominions of that Prince. But these Conditions were look'd upon by the young Duke as too hard, especially since the French King had promis'd him his whole Country; so that after much time in endeavouring to obtain better Terms, the Peace was concluded without including him; and the French possess'd the whole Country, till the late Treaty of Ryswick, whereby the present Duke was restor'd to the Royalty of his Ancestors: As is more particularly express'd hereunder in the Account of that Treaty.

By the Peace of Aix la Chapelle, or Aken, in the Dutchy of Juliers in Germany, A. D. 1665. It was agreed,

That the French King should enjoy the Fortreſs of Charleroy, the Towns of Binche, Aeth, Douray, Tournay, Oudenard, Lille, Arrmentiers, Courtray, Bergues and Furnes, and the whole extent of their Territories, with the entire Sovereignty thereof.

By the Peace concluded at Nimuegue with the King of Spain, A. 1675, the Francoise Comtee, or County of Burgundy, with all the Towns and Places thereon depending, was granted to the French King; as also the Towns of Valenciennes and Bruchain, with their Dependencies; the Town and County of Cambray, Ais, St. Omer, Menin, Conde, and Ypres, and their Dependencies; Harwich and Harneton on the Lye, Poperinghen, Bailoul, Mont Cassel, Biva and Menbeuge, with their Dependencies. And also the Town of Dinant.

And by the same Treaty the French restored these Towns, viz.

Courleroy, Ghent, Oudenard, Courtray, Binch, Aeth, St. Germain, Lews Limbourg, and its Dutchy; the Country of Wars, and all the Dependencies of every of them in the Netherlands; and Pulcraday in Cerdaigne, on the Frontiers of Catalonia, to the Spaniards. And to the Dutch, Maffricens.

And by the Treaty with the Emperor at the same place, A. 1679.

The Town and Citadel of Friburg in Brisgaw, with the Villages of Lobsin, Muthausen and Kerkhart, and their Liberties, as also a passage from Brisach to Friburg, were granted to the French; and in return Philipsburg was restored to the Bishop of Spire.

Soon after this Peace, viz. A. 1680, the French took Strasburg, which they still hold, together with the greatest part of its Bishoprick.

And A. 1684, they took the City of Luxemburg, and a great part of that Duchy.

And once more this Monarch for his Glory, kindled the flame of War in Europe, which he began by the Siege of Philipsburg in the Month of September, 1688, and took it on the first of November following. And afterwards his Armies ravag'd and destroy'd the Palatinate, took and destroy'd the Cities of Heidelberg, Spire, and Wormes. And in the Netherlands they took the Cities of Mons and Namur, and the Fortreſs of Charleroy: And in Savoy, Niffa, Suse, Montmellian, and Villa Franca. In Catalonia, Barcelona, &c. but Namur was retaken by the Confederate Army, under the Conduct of his Majesty King William, and all the rest were restor'd together with many other Cities and Places of Consequence, by the Peace concluded at Ryswick in Holland, September 10. 1697. wherein it was agreed,

That to the Empire shall be restored all places possess'd by the French in Germany, out of Alsacia, with out demolition, and with the Artillery in them when taken: Particularly, Triers and Spire with all their Dependencies. The Palatinate to be restored, and the Dutchess of Orleans to receive two hundred thousand French Livres per annum till her Pretensions be adjuted. Friburg, Brisach, Philipsburg, to be restored with all their Dependencies, Fortifications and Artillery. Dinant to be restored (as when taken) to the Bishop of Liege. Sponheim, Tiedents and Deny-Ponts with the Artillery, to the King of Sweden. Montbeliard to the Family of Wirtemberg. The Fort of Kiel restored, and those of Pille, Hunningen with the Bridge, Mentroyal, Kemburg and Ebernbourg demolished. Trarbach restored, but dismantled.

On the other side, Strasburg was absolutely surrendered to France.

To the Duke of Lorraine was restored all the Estates which his Uncle was possess'd of in the Year 1670, with these exceptions, Sar Louis with half a League round it to remain to France, as also the City Longui with its Dependencies. Nancy and the Castles of Bischo and Homceuz, to be dismantled: And a passage permitted to the King of France's Soldiers thro' Lorraine, in the common Road, paying for what they take and observing strict Discipline.

To Spain was restored, Barcelona, Gironne, Roses, Biter, and every place taken by the French in Catalonia. Luxem: with his Fortifications, together with the whole Lye, and the County of Chim Courleroy and Metz with the Fortifications. Aeth with all its Dependencies, except some few Boroughs. Courtray with all its Dependencies and Artillery. And in general all Places taken by the French since the Treaty of Nimuegue in all the Provinces of the Netherlands are restored.

The French have all Dominions in America; Canada or New-France, upon the Continent; also Colonies in New-foundland, Martinico, St. Christophers, and other Islands, &c.



*The Division of France.*

This Kingdom is divided into Twelve Governments, Four of which lye to the North, Four in the middle, and Four to the South, viz.  
 To the North NORMANDY, PICARDY, the ISLE of FRANCE and CHAMPAIGNE.  
 In the Middle BRETAGNE, ORLEANNOIS, BURGUNDY and LYONNOIS.  
 To the South GUIENNE, LANGUEDOC, DAUPHINE and PROVENCE.

The Sub-divisions whereof are as follows. viz.

Normandy divided into 7 Dioceses.	Diocese of Rouen Diocese of Evreux Diocese of Lisieux Diocese of Bayeux Diocese of Coutances Diocese of Avranches Diocese of Seez	Orleannois Proper La Beauce Blaisois Perche La Maine Vendomois Anjou Poictou The Country of Aunis. Angoumois Touraine Gatinois. Berri Nivernois The Islands.	Languedoc into 11.	Touloufan Albigois Lauragais County of Foix Roussillon Quarter of Narbonne Befiers Nimes Cevennes in 3. { Vivarais Givauden Velay
The Isle of France into 10.	Isle of France, Properly Br. Francoise Hautepois Garnes Marais. Vexin Francois Beauvais Valois Soissonois Laonnois.	Bar-gundy into 2.	Dauphine into 9.	Gresivaudan Diois Baronies Gapennois Ambrunois Brianconnois Viennois Valentinois Tricastin
Champaigne Proper into 5 Counties.	Champaigne Proper Remois Perthois Rhetelois Vallage Bastigni Senonois. Brie Champenoise	Lionnois into 6 Counties.	Provence into 13 Dioceses, 1 Principality, 1 County and 4 Islands.	Dioceses of Aix Riez Senez Digne Arles Marseille Toulon Frejus Grace Vence Glandeve Sisteron Apt County of Venaissin. Principality of Orange
Bretagne into 2 Parts.	The Upper into 3 Bishop-ricks. The Lower into 4.	Guienne into 19.	Islands.	Of Martegue in 4. { Martegue prop. Pomegue Pauler Passou Stecades or Hyeres into 5. { Ribaudon Ribaudas Titan Porqueyroles Portecros Lerin into 2. { S. Margarer S. Honorat. Chateau Dis.
The Islands of	Ouessant Belle Isle			



## C H A P. II.

## N O R M A N D Y, Normanica.

**T**HIS Province was under the *Romans*, part of the *Lintarenfis* in *Gallia Celtica*; and when reduc'd by the French, was part of their Kingdom called *Neustria*, to which also *Fleury*, *Compaigne*, and part of the *Britann* belonged. But this part was ravish'd from them by some of those Northern People, that for many years infest'd all the Coasts hereabouts, and in the Reign of *Charless le Simple* forced him to grant it to them: after which it was called *NORMANDY*, and Govern'd by its own Dukes descending from *Rollo*, who were powerful Princes, and often maintain'd Wars with the Kings of France. Of this *William*, surnamed the *Bastard*, invaded *England* upon a right he pretend'd to that Crown after the death of *Edward the Confessor*; and by his valour defeated *Harold* who had usurp'd the Crown; and by his prudent management obtain'd the Government, and Reign'd Twenty years King of *England*. Afterwards this Province was part of the English Dominions for several Ages, the History whereof is too long for this place. At present it is one of the most important Governments of *France*, affording a large Revenue to the Prince by reason of its situation on the Sea-coasts, and the fruitfulness of its Soil.

It is bounded on the North and West by the British Chanel, on the East by the Isle of *France*, and on the South by *Perche* and *Maine*, being extended from East to West for the space of about 160 Miles, and from *Amiens* to the Coasts of *Brittany*; and about 70 Miles from South to North. The Country abounds in good Pastures, and is extremely fertile in Corn and Flax and divers sorts of Fruits, affording great quantities of Corn, Cider, and *Beurré*, but little Wine. There are also Mines of Iron, copper, and with some of Copper and other Metals. Moreover, a considerable Traffick is established in these parts, for Corn, Timber, Coal, Hay, Cattle, and Horses proper for Dying, as Madder, Woad, &c. Within the Territories of this Government are contained 120 Towns, two large Burgs, and 120 Forests; as also one Archbishoprick, 6 Suffragan Bishopricks, one University, and one Court of Parliament. It is water'd with 10 principal Rivers, viz. the *Senna*, *Eure*, *Bièvre*, *Thime*, *Dive*, *Oise*, *Ille*, *Seine*, *Sar*, *Saulx*, *Ouche*, and *Elle*.

*Normandy* is usually divided into the Upper and Lower, the former comprehending four Bailiages, viz. the *Normandie*, *Archevêché*, *Caen*, and *Bayeux*. And the lower part, namely the *Comté de Mortain*, and *Comté de Val de Vire*. But we will distinguish this Province into the seven Dioceses, which are of *Rouen*, *Lyons*, *Bayeux*, *Caen*, *Val de Vire*, *Seez*, and *Eureux*. The four first are situated on the Coasts of the English Chanel, in passing from East to West; the three other lie to the South of the Island, and stretch in running from West to East, according to the order of the ensuing Table.

The Diocess	of <i>Normandie</i> , on the the banks of the <i>Seine</i> the <i>Archevêché</i> , <i>Caen</i> , and <i>Bayeux</i> the <i>Comté de Mortain</i> , and <i>Val de Vire</i> the <i>Comté de Mortain</i> , and <i>Val de Vire</i> the <i>Comté de Mortain</i> , and <i>Val de Vire</i> the <i>Comté de Mortain</i> , and <i>Val de Vire</i>
of <i>Archevêché</i>	
of <i>Caen</i>	
of <i>Bayeux</i>	

The Diocess of *Lyons*, *Bayeux*, *Caen*, *Val de Vire*, *Seez*, and *Eureux*.

*ROCHE NOR* or *ROAN*, *Retomagus* aut *Rathemagus*, the Metropolis of the Province, and Seat of an Archbishop, as also of a Court of Parliament, is seated on the North-side of the River *Seine*, in a valley environ'd with Hills and covered with Woods. It is a very considerable City, both on the Account of the Wealth of its Inhabitants and its Largeness, being extended for the space of seven Miles in compass. The Eastern-side is water'd with divers Rivulets; which passing through the Town cleanse the Streets, and after having turn'd a great number of Water-mills fall into the *Seine*: Over that River was erected a most stately Stone-bridge consisting of 13 Arches, but it is now ruin'd, and another of Boats of very artificial Structure, built near it, reaching 270 Paces in length; it rises with the Tide, and is paved like a Street. The City is defended with an old Castle on the *Seine* but that which stood on the adjacent Hill of *St. Catherine*, is now utterly ruin'd. It hath also good Walls, in which are 16 Gates, large Ditches, Bulwarks, and Rampiers; It is enlarged with six very fair Suburbs, and hath in it 13 Market-places, 136 Fountains and 35 Parish-Churches, and adorn'd with many noble Piles of Building; and among others the Cathedral Church dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, the Quire whereof is lined round about with Copper: It hath three Towers of a vast height, particularly that of *Rome*, and that of the Pyramid; the Spire of which Steeple only being made of Wood and covered with gilt Lead hath 200 Steps, and the whole Ladder above 600. The great Bell in it, called *George d'Amiens*, is 13 foot high, and weighs 40000 pound: On the great Gate is a Triumphal Arch in Honour of King *Henry IV.* with emblems of his Conquest over the *Henry League*: The Body of the Church is supported by 21 Pillars, in which, and in the Chapel, are to be seen the magnificent Tombs of Cardinals, Bishops, and of the Ancient Dukes and Archbishops; as also, the Monument of *John Duke of Bedford*, who was Regent of *France* under our King *Henry VI.* The other remarkable Buildings are, the Convent of the Cordeliers, the Church of the Jesuits, the old Palace or Cattle, the Church and Abby of *St. Ouen*, and the Palace of the Parliament, which are very beautiful Structures. Also, the Archbishop's Palace, called *Gilleton*, is a fair Building, adorn'd with fine Paintings and pleasant Gardens.

*Roan* hath suffer'd many Calamities and Revolutions, it hath been almost entirely burnt at 13 or 14 severall times: it was taken by the *Normans*, A. C. 841. the English made themselves Masters thereof in 1418. and in 1420 it was surrendr'd to the French King *Charles VII.* Afterwards it was storm'd and taken by the French Invaders, and retaken and pillaged and burnt in 1562. *History of Normandy*, King



King of Navarre, received a mortal Wound before it, but his Son Henry IV. took it in 1594 King William I. surnamed the Conqueror died here. It is distant 28 Miles from *Eucreux*, to the North; 34 from *Diepe* to the South; near 40 from *Beauvais* to the West; 55 from *Amiens* to the South-west, 64 from *Paris* to the North-west, and 52 from *Havre de Grace*.

*Pont de Larche*, *Pons Arcis*, or *Pons Arcuensis*, is a strong place seated a little below the confluence of the Rivers *Seine* and the *Eure*, and 10 Miles above *Rouen* to the South toward *Eucreux*. It is strengthened with a Castle, and hath a fair Stone-bridge over the *Seine* built by King *Charles the Bald*. This was the first Town that surrender'd it self to Henry IV. after his Accession to the Crown, in 1559. It is a place of Importance, and hath a particular Governor.

*Gisors*, *Gisrimum*, *Caistorium*, aut *Caesoriolum*, stands on the Banks of the River *Esle*, which divides *Normandy* from *Picardy*, and is fenced with a Fort now half ruin'd; it is the capital of a Bailliage, and is distant 40 Miles from *Paris* to the North-west, 30 from *Rouen* to the East.

In the Territory of the *ROUAMOIS* are situated some small Towns and Villages, particularly *Quillebeuf*, at the Mouth of the River *Seine*, and 30 Miles from *Rouen* to the West, and *Montfort*; but neither of these are places very considerable.

The Country of *CATX* lies to the North part of the *Vexin Normand*, taking up the Northern and Western parts of *Normandy* on the North side of the *Seine*, and including a Bailliage of Parliament, together with these principal Towns, viz.

<i>Diepe.</i>	} {	<i>St. Valery.</i>
<i>Havre de Grace.</i>		<i>Eu.</i>
<i>Candebeec.</i>		<i>Amale.</i>

*Diepe*, *Deppa*, and *Depa*, is a noted Sea-port Town on the Shore of the British Sea, at the distance of 30 Miles from *Rouen* to the North, and 42 from *Havre de Grace* to the East. It is seated at the foot of the Mountains, and at the Mouth of the River *Aiques*, which falling into the Sea makes the Haven; it is fortified with Belworks to the Sea, with a Fortrets at the Suburb called *Pellet*, and a Castle; which, together with the craggy Mountains that lie on the South make it a place of good strength; and as such it was chosen by King Henry IV. for his Head Quarters when he was opposed by the League at his Accession to the Crown. The Town is reasonably large and well built, and is inhabited by Sea-faring Men, who are reckon'd very expert in Maritime Affairs: Mechanics, that make curious Works in Ivory, and Merchants, who make considerable Traffick to foreign Parts, especially *Newfoundland* in *America*. Its Inhabitants were mostly Protestants till the late Persecution. The Haven is narrow but very long, and will receive Ships of great Burthen; but by reason of its straits, is of difficult access. This Town hath been often taken and retaken in the Wars between the French and English. And in the year 1694. was almost totally destroyed by the Bombs that were shot into it from the English Fleet commanded by the Lord Berkeley.

*Havre de Grace*, *Portus Gratie*, is a strong Sea-port Town at the Mouth of the *Seine* between *Havre* and *Fezamp*, 40 Miles from *Rouen* to the West, 40 from *Caen* to the North East, and 20 from *Lisieux* to the North. It is a pleasant and well-built Town, and a place of good Trade, several Merchants inhabiting here that Trade to *Newfoundland* and other

places. Francis I. and Henry II. fortified this Town to defend it from the Incursions of the English; to which Lewis XIII. added a Citadel, which is flanked with four Loyal Bastions. In the Reign of Charles IX. it was seized by the Protestants, and by them delivered over to Queen Elizabeth in 1562. for the Assistance she gave them. But the next year it was vigorously besieged by the French, and as courageously defended by the English under the Earl of Warwick; but by reason of a Pestilence in the Town, they were forced to surrender on the 17th of July 1563. and returned home. This Town also was almost wholly destroyed by the Fire of the English Bombs the same year, 1694.

*Havre*, a small Sea-port Town, stands at the mouth of the *Seine*, five Miles from *Havre de Grace* to the East. It was once a considerable Port, but *Havre de Grace* being found more convenient, this is now neglected.

*Candebeec*, *Caledobecum*, is seated near the Bar or Mouth of *Seine*, where that River meets the Sea-water, 24 Miles below *Rouen* toward *Havre de Grace*. It is remarkable on the account of its divers sorts of Manufactures, especially Hats, which bear the name of the place, and much are esteem'd in *England* and elsewhere.

*Eu*, *Auga* seu *Augum* & *Eufum*, is seated in the midst of pleasant Meadows, and on the banks of the River *Breie* which separates *Normandy* from *Picardy*, between *Diepe* and *S. Valery*, at the distance of one League from the Sea, 10 Miles from *Diepe* to the East, and 20 from *Abbeville* to the West. It is adorned with a stately Castle, and Abbey and a College of Jesuits; it gives Title to a Count and Peer of France, which hath been enjoy'd by several illustrious Families.

*S. Valeri*, *Fanum Sancti Valeri*, stands on the Coasts of the British Sea, between *Soreville* and *Veuveres*, 40 Miles from *Rouen* to the North, and 20 from *Diepe* to the North West.

*Amale*, *Albamala*, called *Albermarle* by the English, stands near the Spring-head of the River *Ruffine* in the Lower *Normandy*, and enjoys the Titles of a County and Duchy: It is distant 36 Miles from *Rouen* to the N. E. 20 from *Abbeville* to the South, and 23 from *Beauvais* to the North.

Near *Candebeec* stands the Village *Tectot*, which hath the Title of a Principality, and as some say, formerly a Kingdom. *Longueville* 10 Miles South from *Diepe*, and *Estoutville* 15 Miles from *Longueville* give the Titles of Duke to two Peers of France, but otherwise not considerable.

The County of *BRAY* is extended on the right side of the River *Seine*, and contains these Towns, viz

*Gournay*, *Fleri*, *la Ferte*, &c.

*Gournay*, *Gornacum*, is a small Town on the River *Epte*, distant 12 Miles from *Gisors*, and three from *Neuf-Marche* to the North.

The Diocess of *LISIEUX* lies between those of *Rouen*, *Eucreux*, and *Secz*, and the Ocean on the South Side of the *Seine*.

<i>Lisieux</i> Bith.	} {	<i>Pont-l'Eveque.</i>
<i>Honfleur</i>		<i>Bernay</i> , &c.

*Lisieux* *Lexovium* aut *Noviogamus* *Lexoviorum* a fair and large City, being the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Rouen*, is situated in a very beautiful Country in the Upper *Normandy*, and on the Banks of the River *Lizon*, at the distance of,



from the Coasts of the British Chanel to the East, and 35 from the West. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to St. Eusebius. This See's ancient Foundation, the first of which is found among the Fathers of the first Council of Orleans, was founded by St. Eusebius and also Theobald at the Third Council of Orleans.

*Caudebec* is on the Coasts of the British Chanel, on the Mouth of the River Seine, over which it is built. From whence it is distant 5 miles to the South, and 5 from *Harfleur* to the East.

*Caudebec*, *Portus Episcopi* is Watered by the River of *Caudebec*, 5 miles below *Lyons* to the North, and 5 from the Sea. This Town is more famous for a sort of excellent Cheese made there.

*Caudebec* is built on the side of the River of *Caudebec*, almost in the midst, between *Eu* to the East, and *Lyons* to the West, at the distance of 25 miles from both these Towns, and 26 from *Caudebec* to the South.

The Diocess of *BAYEUX* lies between the Ocean and those of *Contance*, *See* and *Lyons*, including these chief Towns, viz.

<i>Bayeux</i> Bish.	} <i>Vire</i> , <i>Torigni</i> , &c.
<i>Caudebec</i> .	

*Baieux* *Baïoca*, *Baiocum* and *Baiocensis* Urbs, olim *Biducastell*, *Biducastum* and *Juliobona*, is Seated on the River *Auve*, which a little below is swallow'd up under Ground. It is distant 15 miles from *Caen* to the West, 35 from *Contance* to the N. E. and but 5 from the Shore of the British Sea to the South. It is a very ancient City, dignified with the Title of a County, Bailliage, and Episcopal See; and its Bishop presides in the General Assemblies of the Clergy of the Province, during the Absence of the Archbishop of *Rouen*. The Cathedral Church Dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is extremely Magnificent, and Beautified with two high Spire-Steeple, besides a stately Tower. The City is divided into the Upper, and the Lower, or the Suburbs of *St. John*; whereto are joyned those of *St. George* and *St. Patrick*. It hath been often Pillag'd and Ruin'd in the X and XI Centuries, by the Incurfions of the Normans, and other barbarous Nations.

*C A E N*. *Cadmus*, aut *Cadomum*, is a large and well built City in the lower Normandy, having received its Name (according to the Opinion of some Authors, from *Caius Caesar*, as the Latin word *Cadomus*, *Cai Domus* seems to import, in regard this Emperor resided here for some time, whilst he made preparations to pass into *England*. It is situated on the River *Orne*, and divided by its streams into the upper and lower Towns, between which there is a Communication, by the means of the Bridges of *St. James* and *St. Peter*, on the latter whereof is erected a stately Town-House, adorn'd with four large Towers. The upper Town is fenced with a Castle built on a Rock, very well fortified; the lower altogether encompassed with Water. It is a place of good Trade, Boats of good burden being able to come up from the Sea to the Bridge of *St. James*. King *Charles VII.* Founded an University here, *A.D.* 1430, or 1431 which is become famous; also a Mint-Office about the same time. An Academy of Ingenious Men hath been Etablised here about twenty five years ago. It is believed that the second Council which *Maurice* Archbishop of *Rouen* Celebrated, in 1063, was held at

*Caen* in the presence of *William*, Surnamed the Conquerour King of *England*, and Duke of *Normandy*, who was interr'd in the Abby of *St. Stephen* in this City, which he had founded. It is distant 74 Miles from *Rouen*, and 30 from *Lisieux* to the West, and 15 from *Bayeux* to the East.

*Vire*, *Vind*, is a very neat Town, Founded on the Banks of a small River of the same Name, about 33 Miles from *Caen* to the South-West, and as many from the Coast of the British Sea to the South.

*Torigny*, *Toriniacum*, *Tauriniacum*, is a small Town near the same River of *Vire*, being distant 15 Miles from that Town to the North, and 33 from *Contance* to the East.

The Diocess of *COUTANCE* lies in the lower Normandy, between *Bayeux*, *Auranches*, and the Western Ocean. The Principal Towns whercof are these, viz.

<i>Contance</i> Bish.	} <i>Barfleur</i> . <i>Cherbourg</i> . <i>Valogne</i> .
<i>S. Lo</i> .	
<i>Granville</i> .	
<i>Carentan</i> .	

*Contance*, or *Constance*, *Castra Constantia*, aut *Consedia*, the Metropolis of the Country called from thence *Le Coutantin*, is a Bailliage, a Presidial, and the See of a Bishop Suffragan to *Rouen*, Seated on the River *Bued*, at the distance of 7 miles from the Sea over against the Isle of *Jersey* to the East; and 52 miles from *Caen* to the West. The Adqueducts found in the Adjacent Territories of this City are a sufficient mark of its Antiquity; and the pleasant Meadows watered with a great number of Brooks, with which it is encompassed, render its Situation very delightful. It is pretty large and Populous, and adorn'd with many stately Edifices, particularly the Cathedral Church, the Churches of *St. Peter* and *St. Nicholas*, divers Monasteries, a Colledge Founded by *John Michael*, a Canon of this Diocess; And King *Lewis XI.* caused the Walls of *Contance* to be demolish'd, because the Inhabitants had declared in favour of Prince *Charles* his Brother; and under the same Reign it was exposed to the Incurfions of the Bretons. It suffered much likewise during the English Wars, and was taken by the French Protestants, *A.D.* 1562.

*Granville*, *Grandivilla*, aut *Magnavilla*, a good Seaport, stands partly on a Rock, partly in a plain, on the Coasts of the British Chanel, 6 Leagues from the Island of *Jersey*; as also 16 from *Contance* to the South.

*Carentan*, *Carentenium* is built in a Marshy Ground on the side of the River *Orne*, where it receives the *Carentan* or *Caente*, being distant 25 miles from *Bayeux*, to the W. 20 from *Contance* to the N. and only 3 from the Sea; insomuch that the Vessels of the largest size arrive there at high Tides. It hath large Suburbs, a strong Castle, and firm Walls, and environed with Ditches full of Water. This Town bears the Title of a County, and hath been Subject to divers revolutions in the preceeding Age.

*Cherbourg*, *Caroburgus*, aut *Cesaris Burgus*, is seated on the Sea-coasts between the Cape *La Hogne* and *Barfleur*, and hath a very capacious Harbour, at the distance of 32 miles from *Contance* to the N. and 24 from *Carentan* to the N. W. In this place was formerly made admirable Glass, which for clearness and beauty even excell'd that of *Venice*; but the Work-houses have been lately remov'd for certain reasons of State, to *Auxerre* in *Burgundy*, and these Glasses are polish'd in the *Fauxbourg* *St. Antoine* at *Paris*. The Town of *Cherbourg* was the last of the Province



Province that remained to the *English*, and fell into the Hands of the *French* under *Charles VII.* in 1453. It is very strong by reason of its Situation, (the Sea flowing almost round it every Tide) and its Fortifications lately erected.

*Valognes*, *Valonia*, olim *Alaune*, is a small Town on the River *Ooue*, in the Country of *Coutantin*, being distant 10 miles from the Coasts of the British Sea, 14 from *Cherbourg*, to the East, and 30 from *Coutance* to the North.

*Barfleur*, a small Town on the Sea-shoar, 10 miles from *Valognes* to the North. It was formerly the Landing place of our Kings that were Masters of that Province. And hath of late been made known by a very signal Victory the English Fleet, commanded by Admiral *Ruffel*, obtained over that of *France*, commanded by *Tourville*, May, 1692,

*La Hague*, a small Sea Town on the Northwest point of *Normandy*, thence called *Cape la Hague*, which hath been made notable to Posterity by the bravery of the English Seamen, who after the above mentioned Victory in 1692, did attack and burn the French Admiral, call'd the *Royal Sun*, (a very glorious and large Ship) and twelve more of their best and largest Men of War; which had been run aground here to avoid the English Fleet, and the Cannon carried ashore and planted upon the Plat-forms for their defence; notwithstanding which the English under Sir *Ralph Delaval*, did in their Boats burn them all as above said. This Cape is about 15 miles North from *Cherbourg*.

The Diocess of *AURANCHES* lies between those of *Coutance*, *Bayeux* and *Seez* in the South west part of the lower *Normandy*. Its most remarkable Towns are these.

*Auranches* Bish. } *Mortain*.  
*Mont St. Michael*. } *Pont Orson*.

*Auranches*, *Abrincæ*, olim *Legedia* and *Ingena Abrincetaurum*, stands upon a hill on the side of the River *See*, which a little below falls into the Sea, being distant 22 miles from *Coutance* to the South, and 50 from *Bayeux* to the S. W. It is a place of very great Antiquity, and (as 'tis supposed) was inhabited by the *Ambiliates*, a People mentioned by *Cæsar* in his Commentaries. Its extent is not very large, but it is however a Bailiwick and Vicounty, and hath in it besides the Cathedral, several Parish Churches, and Monasteries. It is well fortified with a strong Castle and other Bulwarks. *Theodia* and *Albert*, Cardinals and Legats of the See of *Rome*, held a Council or Assembly in this City by the special Order of Pope *Alexander III.* to take information concerning the Murderers of *Thomas a Becket* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; and *Henry II.* King of *England* was thereupon oblig'd to clear himself by an Oath from the Accusations laid to his charge. The Bishoprick was erected by *Clouis* the Great.

*Mont St. Michael*, *Mons Sancti Michaelis in periculo Maris*, is a large Town, together with a famous Abby, defended by a strong Castle, built at the foot of a Rock, which was heretofore a Mountain encompassed with Forrests, the Seat of certain Hermits. This Rock stands in the midst of a large sandy Shoar, or Strand, which is covered with the Sea-water at high tide. There goes a Fabulous Story that *St. Michael* the Arch-Angel appeared A. D. 708 to *Albert* Bishop of *Auranche*, admonishing him to cause a Church to be erected on the top of this Rock, and consecrated to his Name, whose Orders were soon put in execution by the Reverend Prelate, and

*Augustin* Bishop of the same Diocess in the beginning of the VIII. Century, constituted Canons to Officiate therein; afterwards, viz. in 966 *Richard I.* Duke of *Normandy*, founded an Abby of the *Benedictine* Order; and his Son *Richard* the II, surnamed the Undaunted, finished the Church in 1026. This place is famous for the frequent resort of Pilgrims, and on the account of the great quantities of Salt extracted out of the Sands that are impregnated with Sea-water.

*Mortain*, *Moritanum* is seated near the River *Air-dee*, on the Frontiers of the Province of *Mayne*, being about 7 miles distant from thence, and 20 from *Auranches* to the East. This Town is the Seat of a Bailiff, and enjoys the Title of a County or Earldom; which *Henry I.* King of *England* and Duke of *Normandy*, granted to his Nephew *Stephen* of *Blois*, who obtained also that of *Bolen*, by his Marriage with *Maud* the Daughter of *Eustace* Earl of *Bolen*, and was afterwards King of *England*.

*Pont-Orson*, *Pons Orsonis*, stands on the Frontiers of *Bretagne*, near the mouth of the River *Covesion*, which a little below dischargeth it self into the Sea, 16 miles from *Auranches* to the South-east.

The Diocess of *SEEZ* is extended between those of *Auranches*, *Bayeux*, and *Lisieux*, toward the Southern part of *Normandy*, and contains these principal Towns, viz.

*Seez* Bish. } *Falaise*.  
*Alençon*. } *Argentan*.

*Seez*, *Sagium*, olim *Sessui* and *Vagoricum Sessuorum*, is seated on the River *Orne*, near its Source, and but an ordinary built City, although dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See, which (as some Authors say) was translated hither from *Oximum* or *Hiesmes*, an adjacent Town of great Antiquity. *Seez* is distant 64 miles from *Roan* to the S. W. 37 from *Lisieux* to the S. 70 from *Auranches* to the E. and 12 from the Frontiers of *Mayne*.

*Alençon*, *Alencennium*, aut *Alentia*, is pleasantly seated on the River *Sarte*, in a fruitful Plain between the Forests of *Escours* and *Perseigne*, at the distance of 13 miles from *Seez* to the S. and 66 from *Auranches* to the E. It is a very fair and large City, having long since enjoy'd the Title of an Earldom, which was erected into a Duchy by *Charles VI.* 1414. and hath been often conferr'd on the Royal Progeny of *France*: In the principal Church dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, are to be seen the Tombs of the Dukes of *Alençon*, and not far from thence a stately Bridge erected over the *Sarte*, where it intermixeth its Waters with those of the *Briane*, which forms a small Island in the Town, whereon stands the Convent of *St. Claire*. This City hath been often taken by different Parties, and suffered much damage during the Civil Wars of *France*.

*Falaise*, *Falesia*, aut *Falefa*, a small Town of the Lower *Normandy*, took its name from the Rocks that environ it, and is situated on the little River *Anne*, at the distance of 18 miles from *Caen* to the South, and 34 from *Seez* to the North West. The first Dukes of *Normandy* chose it for their Palace in the time of Peace, and Fortress during the Wars. Here is a strong Castle built upon a Rock. It was the last place which the English subdued in this Province, and was by them exceedingly well fortified; and the last in like manner that surrendered to *Charles VII.* in 1430. The Suburbs called *La Guibray*, are famous for the Fairs that have been held there in the Month of *August*, ever since the Reign of *William* the Conqueror. The Town is encompassed with large

Motes



Motes and two Ponds, one of which can never be dried up; and not far from thence stands Mount *Arienes*, whence Birds of Prey are often taken, and sometimes Eagles.

*Argentan*, *Argentarium*, *Argentanum*, *Argentomacum*, aut *Argentomagus*, is a very neat Town on the River *Orne*, distant about 10 miles from *Falaise*, to the S. E. 12 from *Seez* to N. W. and 20 from *Alençon* to the North.

The Diocesis of *EUREUX* lies between those of *Seez*, *Rouen*, and *Lisieux*, toward the Southern and Western parts of *Normandy*. The most considerable Towns whereof are these, viz.

*Eureux*, Bish. } *Bugles*.  
*Beaumont-le-Roger*. } *Vernon*.  
*Breucell*. }

*Eureux*, *Ebroicum*, olim *Ebroica*, and *Mediolanum*, *Eboracum*, is seated in a very fertile Plain in the upper *Normandy*, and on the side of the *Rivolet Iton*, which a little below falls into the *Eure*, being distant 30 miles from *Rouen* to the S. 45 from *Seez* to the E. and 54 from *Paris* to the W. It is a very ancient City; and an Episcopal See hath been long since established therein; besides a Bailliage and a Court Presidial. It contains a great number of Churches and Monasteries, more especially the Cathedral, adorn'd with twelve large Towers, and the Abbies of *St. Taurin* and *St. Sulpice*. This City hath been formerly subject to the Jurisdiction of its own Counts or Earls, Princes of the Royal Blood, and other Potent Lords, from whom were descended *Walter* and *Robert D' Eureux*, Earls of *Essex* in *England*, &c.

*Beaumont-le-Roger*, *Bellomontium Rogerij*, stands on a rising-ground, 15 miles from *Eureux* to the N. W. towards *Lisieux*, and is water'd by the River *Rille*. This Town bears the Title of a County or Earldom, and hath been govern'd by very noble Lords, of whom Earl *Roger* gave his name to it, and caus'd it to be enlarged and beautified with a great many fair Buildings; since when it hath been well fortified.

*Breucell*, *Bretolium* and *Brisolium*, stands near the River *Iton*, about 12 miles from *Eureux* to the West. *Henry II.* King of *England* and Duke of *Normandy*, gave this Town to *Robert de Montfort*; and his Sister *Amicia* sold it to the French King *Philip* the August, A. D. 1210. Afterward it devolv'd as an Inheritance on *Charles* King of *Navarre*, who exchang'd it for some other Possessions with *Charles VII.* in 1416.

*Vernon*, *Vernonium*, and *Verno*, is water'd by the River *Seyne*, over which is erected a Stone-bridge, now half demolish'd; distant 26 miles from *Rouen* to the South, and 16 from *Eureux* to the North-east.

For the Government of this Province the King appoints a Governour or Commander in general, and under him, two Lieutenant-Generals; besides which he hath a Lieutenant in every one of the seven Bailli-wicks, and particular Governours in all the chief

Towns, viz. In *Rouen*, *Pont de l' Arche*, *Diep* and the Fort of *Peller*, *Fecan*, *Honfleur*, *Pont-Eveque*, *Caen*, *Cerbourg*, *Coutances* and the Bridge *Pouvre*, *Centance*, *Granville*, *Mont St. Michael*, *Falaise*, *Argentan*, *Alençon*, *Har e de Grace*, *Montville* and *Hanfleur*.

### A Chronological TABLE, shewing the Succession of the Dukes of Normandy.

	Began their Reigns, A. D.	reig. Y's
1 <b>R</b> ollo, called also <i>Robert I.</i>	912	5
2 <b>R</b> William, Surnamed <i>Longsword</i> .	917	26
3 <i>Richard I.</i> the Old or void of Fear.	943	53 or 56
4 <i>Richard II.</i> the Undaunted.	996	about 30
5 <i>Richard III.</i>	1026	2
6 <i>Robert II.</i>	1028	7
7 <i>William the Conqueror</i> K. of <i>Engl.</i>	1035	52
8 <i>Robert III.</i>	1087	20
9 <i>William II. Rufus</i> , King of <i>England</i> , slain in	1100	
10 <i>Henry I.</i> King of <i>England</i> .	1107	28
11 <i>Stephen</i> King of <i>England</i> . <i>Maud</i> of <i>England</i> , died in	1135	
<i>Geoffry V.</i> Earl of <i>Anjou</i> , the Husband of <i>Maud</i> ,	1167	
12 <i>Henry II.</i> King of <i>England</i> . <i>Henry</i> the younger, surnamed <i>Court-mantle</i> .	1154	38
	1161	
Died before his Father.	1183	
13 <i>Richard IV.</i> Surnamed <i>Cœur de Lyon</i> .	1189	10
14 <i>John</i> King of <i>England</i> , who was Dis- possessed of <i>Normandy</i> by <i>Philip II.</i> King of <i>France</i> , in	1202	
And died in	1216	
After this, <i>Normandy</i> was united to the Crown of <i>France</i> , and the Title of it was given to		
15 <i>John</i> of <i>Valois</i> , afterwards King of <i>France</i> , who held it from	1332	23
And to		
16 <i>Charles V.</i> of <i>France</i> in the Life of his Father.	1355	
But these enjoy'd the Title only, for it was not alienated till it was regained by the <i>English</i> under our Valiant King <i>Henry V.</i> A. D. 1420, which was 218 years after it was seiz'd by the <i>French</i> ; but the <i>English</i> held it not long, for by reason of our unhappy Divisions at home in the unfortunate Reign of <i>Henry VI.</i> this Province was again taken by the <i>French</i> , 30 years after we had regain'd it.		
Afterwards the Title of Duke of <i>Normandy</i> , was given to		
17 <i>Charles</i> , Son of <i>Charles VII.</i> and Brother to <i>Lewis XI.</i> in <i>Anno</i>	1464	
But he parted with it quickly after for that of <i>Guienne</i> ; and ever since it has been no other than a Province of <i>France</i> .		



## CHAP. III.

PICARDY, *Picardia.*

*PICARDY*, was part of the ancient *Gallia Belgica*, and inhabited by *Suessones*, &c. But the Original of its present Name although Modern, is difficult to find out; there is little reason to believe that it was deriv'd from certain *Picards* of *Bohemia*, who were declared Hereticks; nor from a Greek word, the signification whereof is conformable to the hasty and pettish Humour of the Inhabitants.

This Province is the most Northern of all *France*, and is extended along the Banks of the British Channel from *Calis* in a narrow tract of Land to the River *Brele*, which separates it from *Normandy*; from thence being much wider, it goes directly West for near 110 miles, where it is bounded by the Northern part of *Champaign*. Its whole length may be reckon'd 140 miles, for from *Calais* to *Alberville* is about 54 miles, and from thence to the borders of *Champaign* is about 90 miles, but then the breadth is not answerable, for in the broadest part it is not above 35 miles, and in the *Boulonnais* not above 15 miles broad. On the South it is bounded by the *Isle of France*, and on the North by *Artois* and *Hainault*.

*Picardy* is esteem'd one of the most considerable Provinces of the Kingdom, and is remarkable on account of the most ancient Nobility of the Realm, who derive their Original from thence, besides a great number of Valiant Soldiers and experienc'd Commanders; the People are very Generous, Courteous, Civil and Courageous, yet somewhat too much enclined to Anger and Voluptuousness. The Soil is extremely fertile in Corn and divers sorts of Fruits, which hath given occasion to a Saying among the French, that *Picardy* is the Granary and Magazine of *Paris*; but this Country affords very little Wine. Its Principal River is the *Oise*, which receives into its Channel the Streams of the *Serre*, the *Somme*, the *Authie* and *Cambe*. The two former of these flow toward the East, and the three others towards the West, until they discharge themselves into the British Channel, near the Territories of *Calais*. It is observed, that the Waters of the *Somme* never freeze nor diminish, as do those of the other neighbouring Rivers.

For the Administration of Justice, here are many Bailiages, Presidials, and other Courts of Judicature that depend on the Jurisdiction of the Parliament of *Paris*. The Towns are govern'd by Mayors and Sheriffs; besides the General Governor, there are 18 particular ones. The Bishopricks in *Picardy* are Four, which are subject to the Metropolitan See of *Rheims*. This Province was never alienated from the Demesnes of the Crown, and is usually divided into three Parts, *viç.* The Upper-*Picardy*, the Middle, and the Lower, according to the following Table.

Picardy is divided into 3 Parts.	The Upper on the <i>Oise</i> in 3	The Dutchy of <i>Tierache</i> . } <i>Laonnois</i> } <i>Soissonnois</i>	These two last are annexed to the <i>Isle of France</i> .
	The Middle on the <i>Somme</i> , in 3.	<i>Vermandois</i> . } The Country of <i>Santerre</i> or <i>Sangters</i> . } <i>Amiennois</i> .	
	The Lower on the Sea-coasts, in 3.	<i>Ponthieu</i> . } <i>Boulonnais</i> . } The recover'd Countries.	

The Dutchy of *TIERACHE*, *Tieracæia*, is the most Eastern Part of *Picardy*, and lies between *Hainault*, *Champagne*, *Vermandois* and *Laonnois*, and includes within its Precincts, these remarkable Towns, *viç.*

<i>Guise</i> ,	} <i>La Chapelle</i> ,
<i>La Fere</i> ,	
<i>Fervins</i> ,	
<i>Marle</i> ,	
	<i>Ribermont</i> ,
	<i>Moncornet</i> ,
	<i>Aubenton</i> .

*Guise*, *Guisia*, and *Guifum Castrum*, is situated on the River *Oise*, towards the Confines of *Hainault*, it is well fortified with a Castle and other strong Ramparts, and was strong enough to oppose the *Spaniards*, who besieged it in the year 1650. It is distant 80 miles from *Paris*, to the North East, 48 from *Amiens* to the East, and 25 from *Cambray* to the South-east. This Town at first bore the Title of an Earldom only, enjoyed by the younger House of *Lorraine*; till *A. D.* 1528. *Claude* the younger Son of *Rene*, Duke of *Lorraine*, was created Duke of *Guise* by *Francis I.* whose Grandson, *Henry D.* of *Guise*, made himself Head of the Holy League, which under the pretence of Religion and extirpation of Heresie, as they call'd Protestancy, fomented Sedition, and at length took up Arms and maintained a Rebellion against *Henry III.* and *Henry IV.* making *France* a Scene of War and bloodshed for many years; till at last *Henry IV.* by his Victorious Arms, brought them to submission, and restored the Peace of his Country.

*La Fere*, *Fara*, is situated also on the *Oise*, near the borders of the *Isle of France*, at the distance of 20 miles from *Guise* to the South, and 15 from *Laon* to the West. It is a strong place seated in a marshy Ground, and defended by a strong Castle, which stands between the two Suburbs of *St. Firmin* and the *Virgin Mary*, and deep Trenches full of Water, which renders the place almost inaccessible; by which means it hath been able to resist divers Sieges. However the *Spaniards* made themselves Masters of it during the Civil Wars of *France* in the end of the XVI Century. But *Henry IV.* regained it in the month of May, 1597.

*Fervins*, *Vervineum*, stands on the Banks of the Rivulet *Serre*, in the midst between *Capehe* to the North, and *Marle* to the South, at the distance of 8 miles from



from both these Towns; as many from the Frontiers of Champagne to the West, and 15 miles from Guise to the East. This Town is more especially famous for a Treaty of Peace concluded there between Henry IV. King of France, and Philip II. King of Spain, on the 22 day of May, 1595.

*La Capelle*, is a Fortified Town near the Confines of Hainault, and is distant about 3 miles from the Oise, 15 miles from *Lambersart* to the South-east, and 15 from Guise to the North-east. It was built in the last Age, on purpose to restrain the Incursions of the Flemings; and hath been often taken and re-taken by the contending Parties.

The Counties of *Lambersart* and *St. Quentin*, being taken from *Spain*, and made part of the Ile of France, are now to be given of them in the Desertion of that Province.

The Country of *VERMANDOIS*, *Agro Vermandensis*, lies between that of *Touraine* to the East, *Sancerre* to the West, *Compiègne* to the North, and the *Ile de France* to the South, containing these chief Towns viz.

*St. Quentin*, } *Beaurevoir*,  
*Ham*, } *B. Com.*  
*La Capelle*, }

*St. Quentin*, *Agro Vermandensis*, and *Forum Quintini*, is situated on the rising Ground near the Source of the *Somme*, having the River on one side, and a steep Valley on the other, 15 miles from Guise to the West, and 15 from *La Fère* to the North. It sprang up out of the Ruins of *Augusta Vermandorum*, or *Vermand*, a small Village near it, and is now a considerable City, being very populous, and hath divers sorts of Manufactures, especially Linnen Cloth, made in it. The Collegiate Church of *St. Quentin* is a noble pile of Building; there are also other fair and well-built Churches, and a great number of Monasteries. This Town being besieged by the *Spaniards*, in 1557, the Countess of *Marmoulle* came to its Relief, and fought a fatal Battle with the *Spaniards*, in which the Countess was taken Prisoner, together with the Dukes of *Mantua* and *Longueville*, the Marshal de *St. Aulst*, 100 Knights of the Order, and 300 Gentlemen; besides 600 Gentlemen and 3000 private Soldiers killed. Upon which the City was taken, but restored two years after at the Peace concluded at *Cateau Cambrésis*, a Town near the Frontiers of *Hainault*.

*Ham*, *Hamum*, is situated in a Plain, having the River on one side of it, and a Marsh on the other, and stands 2 miles from *La Capelle* to the West. Here is a Citadel, which was built by order of *Lewis* of France, Duke of *Guise*, in *St. Paul*, A.D. 1270. This Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, in 1595, after the Battle of *St. Quentin*; but the French took it again by Storm, and put the whole Garrison to the Sword.

*SANTERRE*, or *Santere*, *Agro Santedensis*, and *Santere*, is extended between *Amiens* to the West, and *Compiègne* to the East. The most considerable Towns of this Country are these, viz.

*Peronne*, } *N. Br.*  
*Mont-Denis*, } *B. Com.*  
*Reims*, } *C. Com.*  
*Meuse*, } *St. Paul.*

*Peronne*, *Perona*, seated on the River *Somme*, is a very strong Hold, and one of the Keys of the

Kingdom of France: The *Spaniards* have often endeavour'd to surprize it, but the Marshes that encompass it, and the Ramparts that defend it, rendering it exceeding strong, they have always been repulsed. It is distant 15 miles from *St. Quentin* to the West, 20 from *Compiègne* to the South, and 75 from *Paris* to the North, on the Road to *Douay*.

*Mont-Denis*; *Mons Desiderii*, aut *Mendilerium*, is a large Town, built on a Hill in the midst between *Amiens* and *Compiègne*, at the distance of 20 miles from both; 24 miles from *Peronne* to the South-west upon a small River which falls into the *Aurenge*, that falls into the *Somme* at *Amiens*. It is a strong Town, and has often resisted the *Spaniards*.

*Nesle*, *Nigella*, is water'd with the Brook *Ignon*, which falls into the *Somme*. It stands upon the Road 15 miles South from *Peronne*. It is a small Town that bears the Title of one of the most ancient Marches of the Kingdom. *Charles* the *Wicked* D. of *Burgundy* took this place by Storm, in 1472, when it suffer'd all sorts of Outrages, by reason that the Inhabitants had killed a Herald at Arms, who had been sent to summon it, and two of his Men, during a Truce which had been granted to them, insomuch that the Altars were not able to protect the miserable People that fled for Refuge into the Churches; and they that escaped the fury of the Soldiers, were either Hang'd, or had their Hands cut off.

*Ros* stands on the River *Aurenge* 10 miles South from *Nesle*.

*Compiègne*, *Celvicum*, situated in the midway between *Amiens* and *St. Quentin*, and 7 from *Peronne* to the South-west, is a small Town, nevertheless dignified with the Title of a Dutchy, &c.

*AMIENOIS*, *Agro Ambianensis*, lies between *Amiens* to the North, *Sancerre* to the East, *Beauvaisis* to the South, and the Country of *Caux* to the West. The Towns of chiefest note are these, viz.

*Amiens*, Bish. } *Deurlans*,  
*Corbie*, } *Pequigne*,  
                  } *Conti.*

*Amiens* *Ambienum*, alias *Ambiani*, and *Samarobrina*, the Metropolis of *Picardy*, and the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Reims*, is situated on the River *Somme*, forming a Triangle with *Paris* and *Reims*, being distant 66 miles from *Paris*, and 55 from *Reims*, as also 30 from *Amiens* to the South, and 24 from *Peronne* to the West. It is a place of very great Antiquity, the Inhabitants having fought most valiantly against *Julius Caesar*, and even took up Arms against those of *Reims*, only because they had too easily yielded to the Conqueror. Afterward *Caesar* erected a Magazine for his Army, and caused a general Assembly of the *Gaulish* People to be convened there. The Emperor *Antoninus Pius* enlarg'd it, as also did his Son *Marcus Aurelius*. The Emperors *Constantin*, *Constant*, *Julian*, *Valentinian*, *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Theodosius*, chose *Amiens* for their Royal Seat in *Gaul*. However it suffered much damage by the Incursions of the *Alans*, *Vandals*, and *Normans*, A.C. 925, and was almost intirely burnt, but soon after rebuilt. The City affords a very pleasant Prospect, by reason of the largeness of the Streets, the Beauty of the Houses, and the extent of the publick Places, of which there are two, where seven fair Streets meet; the Ramparts have two rows of Trees planted on them, which form a delightful Walk. The River *Somme* enters into the City in three different Channels through as many Bridges, and after having water'd several parts of



of the City, they are united at the other end of the Town, near *St. Michaels Bridge*. The Cathedral Church dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, is one of the fairest and best adorn'd in *France*: The Pillars, Quire, Chappels, Tombs and Paintings are admirable, and more especially the Gate flanked with two high Towers, on which are placed many Statues. King *Philip VI.* at *Valois* first fortified this City, which *Lewis XI.* much improv'd by additional Works, and *Henry IV.* built a strong Citadel after he had retaken it from the *Spaniards*, who had seized it by Stratagem in 1597. Queen *Isabel* of *Castile* establish'd a Parliament there, but that was afterwards remov'd. At present it has a Bailiwick, Presidial, and Generality, and the Bishop, Vidame, and Bailly, are after the King, the three chief Lords.

*Corbie, Corbiza*, is likewise seated on the River *Somme*, which there intermixeth its waters with those of the *Othère*, 7 miles above *Amiens* to the North-east, and 20 from *Peronne* to the West. It is a strong Place, but was however surpriz'd by the *Spaniards* in 1636. and recover'd by the French a little while after. This Town grew up out of an Abby, which *St. Bethilde* Queen of *France*, the Wife of *Clotiv II.* found-ed, together with her Son *Clotaire III.* A. C. 660. It is called *Old Corbie*, to distinguish it from *Corbie* or *Cornwey*, a small Town of *Westphalia* in *Germany*.

*Doulens, Dulendum*, is a very strong Town divided into the Upper and Lower, and Water'd by the River *Aubie* on the Frontiers of *Artois*, being distant 20 miles from *Arras* to the S. West, and 18 from *Amiens* to the North. It heretofore belong'd to the Counts of *Ponthieu*, but was annex'd to the Crown in 1559.

*Conty, Contiacum*, is a small Burg on the Rivulet of *Celle*, about 10 miles from *Amiens* to the South: It is dignified with the Title of a Principality, which hath given name to a Branch of the illustrious House of *Bourbon*. It was at first subject to the Dominion of its own Lords, afterwards transferr'd to the Family of *Mailli*, and at length devolv'd on that of the Prince of *Bourbon*.

The County and Earldom of *PONT HIE U*, *Comitatus Pontificensis*, was formerly an Inheritance of the younger Sons of *France*, and is extended along the Banks of the River *Somme*, which renders the Ground every where marish. The Principal Towns are these, viz.

<i>Abbeville.</i>	}	<i>Rue.</i>
<i>St. Riquier.</i>		<i>Montreuil.</i>
<i>Pont de Remi.</i>		<i>Cressy.</i>
<i>Le Croitot.</i>		

*Abbeville, Abbatia Villa*, or *Abbevilla*, is seated on the River *Somme* at the distance of 83 miles from *Paris* to the North, near 40 from *Bullen*, 25 from *Amiens* to the N. West, and 15 from the Coasts of the British Sea to the East. It is supposed to have been founded by *S. Riquier*, or some of the Abbots his Successors, and that *Hugh Duke* of *France* built the Castle. It is at present the Capital City of the County of *Ponthieu*, and one of the strongest and most important places of the Kingdom; it hath always enjoyed certain peculiar Priviledges. Here is a Presidial Court, a Canonship, 12 Parishes, and many Religious Houses, among which that of *S. Ofran* is most considerable. This City hath produced many great Men, and in this Age it hath given the World those Learned Geographers, *Nicholas Sanson*, *William Sanson* his Son, *Peter Duval*, and *Philippus Brierius*.

*S. Riquier, Contulz*, nunc *S. Richarius*, took its name

from a certain Saint who was a Native of this Place; it is near the River *Carden*, and is distant 5 miles from *Abbeville* to the East toward *Doulens*.

*Montreuil, Monstrolium*, aut *Monasterium*, stands on an Hill the Foot whereof is washed by the River *Cance* 8 miles from the Coasts of the British Sea, (from whence Boats of good Burthen come up to the Town,) 24 from *Abbeville* to the North on the Road to *Calis*. Its name is derived from two ancient Abbeys of the *Benedictin* Order, viz. one called *S. Saviour* for Monks, and the other *S. Austreberte*, for Nuns. The Town is distinguish'd into the Lower, built along the Banks of the River, and the Upper, which is separated from the former by a Wall. It is the Seat of a Bailly, and was united to the Crown with the County of *Ponthieu*; and is defended by strong Works and a good Citadel.

*Cressy, Cressiacum*, is a small Town or Burgh on the River *Aubie* on the Frontiers of *Artois*, and the Bailiage of *Abbeville*, from whence it is distant 12 miles to the North. It was heretofore only a Village, and is more especially famous on the Account of the memorable Battle fought between the English and French in the time of *Philip of Valois*, on the 26 of *August*, 1346. when the former, under the Conduct of their Valiant King *Edward III.* and his heroick Son called the black Prince, defeated their Enemies with a very great slaughter, and obtain'd a most signal Victory; for above 80 Standards were taken, 30000 of the French Infantry, and 1200 Horse were slain in the Field, where also *John King* of *Bohemia*, *Charles Count* of *Alençon*, the French King's Brother, and *Lewis Count* of *Flanders* lost their Lives, together with 12 other illustrious Counts and Earls, and even the whole flower of the Nobles of *France*. There is also another Town of *Cressy* in the same Province of *Picardy*, on the River *Somme* in the County of *Tierache*, 8 miles from *Laon* to the North, and as many from *Fere* to the East, besides a third in *Champagne*, within three Leagues of *Meaux*, called *Crecy* or *Cressy* in *Brie*, &c.

*BOULONNOIS. Comitatus Bolonniensis*, is extended between *Artois*, the County of *Ponthieu*, the recovered Country, and the strait of *Calis*, including these principal Towns, &c. viz,

<i>Bolon, Cap. Bish.</i>	}	<i>Estaples,</i>
<i>Moni-Hulin,</i>		<i>Ambletense.</i>

*Boniogn, or Bolen, Bolonia*, is situated on the Sea shore at the distance of 20 miles from the Town of *Calis* to the South, 10 Leagues from the nearest Coasts of *England*, 15 miles from *Montreuil*, and 36 from *Abbeville* to the North. It is divided into the Upper and Lower Town, the former being well fortified with a strong Citadel, and adorned with divers publick Places and Fountains, as also a Palace wherein Justice is administred; a Cathedral Church dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, a Parochial Church of *S. Joseph*, an Abby of *S. Vilemar*, and some other Monasteries. The lower Town is not inhabited by so many Persons of Quality as the other, but is larger and more considerable for its Traffick, and extends along the Port at the mouth of the River *Liane*. The Harbour is not very commodious; in it formerly stood a Watch-Tower, called *La Tour de Ordre*, and by the English, *The Old Man*, said to be built by *Julius Cesar*, and repair'd by the Emperor *Charles the Great*; but being neglected, is now fallen down. The Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Rheims*, was establish'd here by Pope *Paul IV.* after the destruction of *Therouane*. This City, together with the



adjacent Territories, was formerly subject to the Dominion of its own Counts of great Reputation, from whom were descended *Gislebert of Bruggn*, and his Brother *Baldwin*, Kings of *Jerusalem*, but it was united to the Crown of France by King *Philip II the August*, A. D. 1209. *Balen* was taken by King *Henry VIII*, King of England, in 1544 and afterward restored to the French King *Henry II*, by Treaty of Peace in the Year 1550.

*Mont-Hainin*, *Mont-Haini*, is a Fortress standing on a Hill near the River *Liane* on the borders of *Artois*; it has a Citadel which was built against the *Spaniards*, and is distant 9 miles from *Balen* to the East.

*Etaples*, *Staples*, a large Burgh, is fenced with an old Castle, and stands near the Sea a little above the mouth of the River *Canche*, 6 miles from *Mouytranch*, and 14 from *Balen* to the South.

*Ambleteuse*, *Ambleteuse*, is a Village having a small Port on the Coasts of the British Channel heretofore called *Ambleteuse*; it is distant only 7 miles from *Balen* to the North, and about 12 from *Canche* to the South.

The RECOVER'D COUNTRIES, *Recouvrées*, *Dies*, is a small Tract not above 15 miles over, and lies to the North of *Balen*, containing three Towns, viz.

*Calis*, *Guines*, *A dies*, Principality.

*CALAIS* or *CALIS*, *Calisum*, is seated in a marshy Plain on the Coasts of the British narrow Sea, called from thence the strait of *Calis*, at the distance of 9 miles from *Gravelines*, and the confines of *Flanders* to the West, 20 from *Balen* to the North, and about 8 leagues from *Dreux*, and the nearest Coast of *England* to the South-west. It is reported, That *Baldwin IV*, surnamed the bearded Count of *Flanders*, first built the Port, and that *Philip* Count of *Brabant* caused the Town to be encompass'd with Walls, which before was only a simple Burgh. However, it is at present a considerable Mart and a place of strength, its Fortifications consisting of 9 royal Bastions, besides those of the Citadel, and many other Out-works, all lined with Stone; being also encompass'd with a very large and deep Ditch, into which falls the River *Homme*, as well as a great number of other Brooks, after having pass'd through the adjacent Fens, with which it is surrounded, there being only one passage to the Town over a Causey, commonly called the Bridge of *Nieuwpoort*, and none can enter without the Permission of

the Garrison of the *Rivier* into the Port, which is divided into two parts; one whereof is named *Cap de Gravel*, the other is larger and shut up between two Moles built of Stone. The Town is extended in form of a Triangle, with a Castle: The most remarkable things in it are two stately Towers; the Altar of the Grand Church is all of wrought Marble, and its Dome extremely magnificent. In the Marbles are to be seen floating Islands; and Sluces, by which the Country may be overflow'd within a little space of time. *Edward III*, King of *England* took the Town of *Calis* from the *French*, A. D. 1347, but they at length recover'd it under the Conduct of the Duke of *Burgundy* in 1358, after the *Engls* had poss'd it above 210 years. Afterwards *Maximilian* Archduke of *Austria* and Viceroy of the Low-Countries, made himself Master of it in 1596, and it was restored two years after to the French King *Henry IV*, by the Articles of the Peace of *Utrecht*.

*Guines*, *Guigne*, is a small Town, yet the chief of a County of the same name, formerly subject to its own Earls, who are celebrated in History: It is seated in a marshy Ground, and is distant 6 miles from the Sea, as many from *Calis* to the South, and somewhat less from *Ambleteuse*.

*Ambleteuse*, *Ambleteuse*, and *Ambleteuse* is a well fortified Town, and bears the Title of a Principality, altho' of a very small extent: It stands on the Frontiers of *Artois*, about 5 miles from *Calis* to the South, and somewhat more from *Gravelines*. A famous Interview was celebrated near this place, between *Henry VIII*, King of *England*, and *Francis I*, King of *France*, in the Month of *June*, 1520, for the ratifying of a Treaty of Peace. The Attendants of these two Princes were most richly cloth'd, and their Court appear'd so splendid that it was termed the *Camp of Cloth of Gold*. *Cardinal de Tournon* took *Ambleteuse* in 1596, but was oblig'd to resign it to the French within a little while after.

The Governor-General of *Picardy* is also Governor of *Ambleteuse*, and under him are three Lieutenant-Generals. There are also particular Governors in these Towns, viz. *Ambleteuse*, *Abbeville*, *Buign*, and the *Buign*, the Town and Castle of *Calis*, with the Fort *Nieuwpoort* and the recover'd Country. *Doullens*, *S. Quentin*, upon the *Somme*, *Guise*, *S. Quentin*, the Bailiage of *Thierricourt*, *La Fere*, *Peronne* and *Rye*, *Montdidier*; the Town and Citadel of *Ham*, and the Town and Citadel of *Montreuil*.

## CHAP. IV.

### CHAMPAGNE, Campania.

CHAMPAGNE is one of the twelve principal Governments of France, and the Province that best furnishes the Granaries and Cellars of *Paris*. It is so called, says *Gregory of Tours*, from the spacious and pleasant Plains which are found there, more especially near *Rheims* and *Châlons*. This name is Modern, and the first that has mention'd it is the Author of the Continuation of the Chronicle of *Martin*, who is follow'd by the said *Gregory of Tours*, and other Writers. The Country of *Champagne* and *Brie*, according to the division of *Julius Caesar*, lies partly in *Belgica* and partly in *Belgica*, being situated between the 47 degree 30 Minutes, and the 50 degree of Latit-

tude, and extends from *Rheims* in *Septentrion* in the South to *Rheims* in *Revelis* in the North, about 15 miles. From West to South-east, that is to say, from *Châlons* in *Brie* near *Meaux*, as far as *Bouillon* near the Head of the River *Meuse*, about 120 miles; but in some places its breadth is not above 60 miles from East to West. It is bounded on the North by *Picardy*, *Hainault* and *Luxemburg*; on the South by *Burgundy*; on the East by *Lorraine*, and on the West by the Isle of *France*.

This Province was heretofore famous for the Grandeur of its Counts or Earls, who possess'd it as absolute Sovereigns, and were so potent that they maintained



tained fierce Wars against the Kings of *France* and *Burgundy*. They were also so illustrious by reason of their noble Descent, that those Princes have not disdain'd to make Leagues with them, and even to contract Marriages with their Family. In the Division of Inheritances among the Sons of *Clotaire I.* and *Clovis I.* *Champagne*, constituted a part of the Kingdom of *Metz* in *Alsacia*: And in the time of *Segebert* King of *Metz* A. C. 570. there was a certain Duke of these Territories, named *Lupus*, who shewed much fidelity in preserving the Sates of the young King *Childeric*, against *Ursion* and *Berfroy*; *Guintrio* or *Vintrio*, whom *Brunchaut* caus'd to be assassinated, was afterwards Duke. But this Title denoted then only a kind of Government, and not a perpetual Dignity. The first Hereditary Count was *Robert* of *Fermandois*, who made himself Master of the City of *Troyes* in 953. and left the possession thereof to his Brother *Herbert*. But in the year 1234. the whole Province was inseparably united to the Crown of *France*; which Act was confirmed by the Treaty of *Lagny*, in 1317. and by another ratified on the 14 of *May*, 1335.

Among the principal Rivers are reckon'd the *Seine*, which receives into its Channel the Waters of the *Jonny* and the *Aube*; the *Marne*, the *Aisne* and the *Vesle*, besides a great number of other small Rivulets that are very full of Fish. The River *Meuse* or *Muse* hath its Source in this Province, but it quickly runs out of it into the County of *Burgundy*, which it crosseth from South to North, and then returns into this Province and passeth by *Sedan* and *Cantierville*, from whence it runs through the County of *Namur*, Bishoprick of *Liege*, and Duchy of *Guelderland* into *Holland*, where it falls into the Sea near the *Briel*.

The Soil although white and chalky, brings forth many sorts of Grains in abundance, particularly Rye. The vast Plains are extremely fertil in Corn and excellent Grapes, and yield good Pasture for Cattle. On the Northern side also are large Forests, affording variety of Game, together with Mines of Iron and other Metals.

But for a more particular description of this Province we will divide it into eight Parts, according to the method of most modern Geographers.

Champagne in 8 Parts.	<i>Champagne</i> prop.	<i>Troyes</i> Bish.
	<i>Remois</i> .	<i>Rheims</i> Archbish.
	<i>Pertuis</i> .	<i>St. Dizier</i> .
	<i>Rhetois</i> .	<i>Rhetel</i> .
	<i>Verage</i> .	<i>Joinville</i> .
	<i>Bassigny</i> .	<i>Langres</i> .
	<i>Senonais</i> .	<i>Sens</i> .
	<i>La Brie Champenoise</i> .	<i>Provins</i> .

In the District of *CHAMPAGNE*, properly so called, are comprehended these most remarkable Towns, viz.

<i>Troyes</i> , Bishop.	}	<i>Châlons</i> , Bish.
<i>Pont sur Seine</i> .		<i>Epernay</i> .
<i>Mez</i> .		<i>di</i> .
<i>Reims</i> , or <i>Ramery</i> .		<i>Dormans</i> .
<i>Plancy</i> .		

*Troyes*, *Treca*. olim *Augusto-bona* and *Tricassis*, is seated on the River *Seine*, at the distance of 80 miles from *Paris* to the South-east, 64 from *Rheims* to the South, and 60 from the source of the *Meuse* to the West. It is a City of very great Antiquity, and is reckon'd among the most considerable of the Kingdom

for Trade, which consists chiefly in Linnen Cloth. It hath been long since dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See, the Jurisdiction whereof is extended over 510 Parishes, and depends on the Metropolitan of *Sens*. Nine or ten of its Prelates have been canoniz'd for Saints; of these *St. Amaire* was the first, and *S. Lupus* the eighth, who hindred *Attila* from ruining the City; which was nevertheless afterward done by the *Normans*. But Count *Robert* caus'd it to be re-built, and it is at present a fair well built City, and adorned with a fine Palace; the Cathedral dedicated to *St. Peter*, is a very stately Structure, in which 40 Canons Officiate. There are also two Collegiate and ten Parochial Churches, besides the Abby of *S. Lupus*, a Colledge of the Fathers of the Oratory, and many other Religious Houses. The City is defended with strong Walls, and the Inhabitants are reckon'd Courageous, and are train'd up in Arms. Here is a fine Palace, and a Bailiage and Presidial.

*Pont-Sur Seine*, *Pons ad Sequanem*, a small Town so called from its Situation and Bridge over the River *Seine*. It stands 22 miles from *Troyes* to the North-West, and 57 from *Paris*. *Ramery*, *Ramerucum*, stands on the Banks of the *Aube*, 20 miles N. East from *Troyes*. *Plancy* is in like manner water'd by the same River, and stands 15 miles West from *Ramery*.

*Châlons*, *Catalaunum*, is seated on a most pleasant Plain on the River *Marne*, over which here are many Bridges, distant 50 miles from *Troyes* to the North, and 80 miles from *Paris* to the East. It is a very ancient, large and well fortified City, and was esteem'd one of the Principal of *Gallia Belgica* in the time of *Julian* the Apostate. It is encompassed with firm Walls and deep Ditches full of Water. The whole City is divided into three Parts, viz. The City it self; the Island formed in it by the River *Marne*; and the Burrough. The Houses appear very white, being built of chalky Stone, and the Streets are large, the publick Places are fair and spacious, more especially those in which stand the Town-house and Collegiate Church, consecrated to the Virgin *Mary*. This City is the Seat of a Bishop. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *St. Stephen*, and is remarkable on the account of its Tower extremely high and large. There are also 12 Parochial Churches, 3 Abbeys, and many other Convents. A considerable Traffick is maintained here, in Linnens, Cloth and Corn; which by means of the River are conveniently transported to *Paris*. Here is a Court of Justice and a Generality. This City was sometime governed by its own Counts, till they resigned their Right to the Bishop, who is dignified with the Title of Count and Peer of *France*. The Plains about *Châlons* are judg'd to be the *Campis Catalaunici*, wherein the famous Battle was fought by *Merouce* King of the *Franks*, *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, and *Ætius* the Roman General, against *Attila* King of the *Huns*, whom they defeated with the slaughter of near 200000 of his Men, as the French Historians relate. But others say it was at *Sologne* near *Orleans*, in the *Campis Secalaunicis* that this mighty Battel was fought. And again, others say, it was near *Toulouse* in *Languedoc*.

*Epernay*, *Epernacum*, is distant 16 miles from *Châlons* to the West as well as *Ay*; the former of these Towns standing on the South side of the River, and the other on the North, over against one another.

*Dormans*, *Dormanum*, stands likewise on the Banks of the *Marne*, 19 miles from *Epernay*, and 36 from *Châlons* to the West. This Town hath imparted its name to the noble Family of *Dormans*.

R E-



**REMOIS.** *Ager Remensis* lies between *Châlons*, *Soissons*, *Rheims*, &c. Its principal Towns are these, viz.

*Rheims*, Archb. *Fimes*, *Mechaux*.

**RHEIMS.** *Remi*, olim *Durocortorum* and *Remorum Caput*, is situate in the midst of a Plain, where the River *Yèssè* washes part of its Walls, which are extended in compass above an Hour's Journey, and enclose a great number of spacious Courts, large Streets, well built Houses, and magnificent Churches; more especially the Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin Mary, which is a vast pile of Building, the Gate thereof being esteemed the most stately throughout the whole Kingdom on account of its admiral Architecture, Images and other curious Ornaments. In this Church the Kings of *France* are usually Crowned, and appointed by the Archbishop of *Rheims*, with a sacred Oil preserv'd in a small Vessel commonly call'd *la Sainte Ampoule*, or the Holy Bottle, which (as they say) was sent from Heaven at the Inauguration of *Claude I.* and is kept here in the Abbey of *S. Remi*. In this City are establish'd besides a Metropolitan See, a Presidial Court, another of the Bailiage, and an University founded by *Charles of Lorraine* Cardinal of *Guise*, with the permission of King *Henry II.* The Archbishops of *Rheims* are stiled the first Dukes and Peers of *France*; twelve or thirteen of these Prelates have been canoniz'd for Saints; and four of them have been Popes, viz. *Sylvestre II.* *Urban II.* *Adrian IV.* *Marin V.* six Princes have possess'd the See, viz. *Arnold* the Son of King *Lotharius*, and *Henry* the Son of *Lewis* the Great, and four others of the Royal Blood. Here are to be seen some Monuments of Antiquity, as a Fort of *Julius Caesar's*, and is a Roman Triumphal Arch that is quite entire; It is compos'd of three Arches, adorned with many Figures and Trophies; supposed to have been formerly the North Gate of the Town, and call'd *Porta Martia*, but had been covered with Earth for many Ages, and not discover'd till the year 1677. The City of *Rheims* is distant 74 miles from *Paris* to the North-East; 66 from *Troves* to the North; and 24 from *Châlons* to the North-West.

*Fimes*, *Fime*, *Fisme*, is a Burgh on the River *Yèssè* in the confines of the *Ile of France* 15 miles from *Rheims* to the West. It is more especially remarkable on the account of two Councils held there in the Church of *S. Mère* the Martyr *Finicus apud sanctam Mëram*, and for a certain Stone fixed not far from thence, which serves as a Boundary between the Bishopsricks of *Rheims*, *Laon* and *Soissons*.

**PERTHOIS.** *Ager Perthenfis*, is extended on the Frontiers of *Lorraine* between the Rivers *Marne* and *Orny*, and contains these considerable Towns viz.

*S. Dizier*, } *Vitry le François*,  
*Sermaise*, } *Harzicourt*.

*S. Dizier*, *Fanum Sancti Desiderii* aut *Desideriopolis*, stands on the Banks of the *Marne* 30 miles above *Châlons*, near the Frontiers of the County of *Barr*. It was taken by the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1544. after a very notable Siege, and restored to the French at the Peace concluded at *Cressie*.

*Vitry le François*, *Victoriacum Francicum* took its Name from King *Francis I.* the Founder thereof who caused it to be built in the room of a Neighbouring Town that was burnt, which is at present call'd *Vitry le Bruffé*. It is seated on the Confluence of the *Marne* and the *Orny*, being distant 15 miles from *Châlons* to the S. E.

**RETELOIS.** *Rheleusis Ager*, is the Northern

Part of the Province of *Champagne*, and includes these Towns of chiefest Note, viz.

*Rhetel*, } *Rocroy*,  
*Mazieres*, } *Sedan*, &c.  
*Charleville*, }

*Rhetel*, *Retelium* aut *Reiteste*, is situated near the River *Aisne*, 24 miles from *Rheims* to the North; 27 from *Sedan* to the S. W. and as many from *Rocroy* to the S. in the adjacent Territories of this Town, which bear the Title of a Duchy, the French obtained a great Victory over the Spanish Troops, and the Prince of *Condé* commanded by the Marshal de *Turenne*, A. D. 1650.

*Mazieres*, or *Mjeres*, *Maderiacum* aut *Macerie*, is a strong Town, and stands in a Peninsule made by the River *Meuse*, partly on a rising Ground and partly in the Valley, the Citadel being fortified with a double Rampart. It is a place of great importance, being a Passage from *Luxembourg* into *France*. It is distant 23 miles from *Rhetel* to the North, 15 below *Sedan* to the West; not above 10 from the confines of the Duchy of *Luxembourg*, and 46 from *Rheims* to the N. E.

*Charleville*, *Caroleopolis*, is in like manner seated on the *Meuse* just over against *Mazieres*, and was formerly only a Burrough call'd *Archés*, where *Charles de Gonzague* Duke of *Nevers* and *Mantua* caused a very pleasant Town to be built, A. D. 1609, and gave it his Name. It hath been since regularly fortified, and on the other side of the River is erected the strong Fortrefs of *Mont-Olympe*, where is to be seen the Ruins of an old Castle, supposed to have been a Temple of the Pagans.

*Rocroy*, *Rupes Regia*, is a very strong Hold near the Forrest of *Ardenne* on the Frontiers of *Hainault*, being distant 30 miles from *Rhetel* to the N. and 15 from *Maziers* and *Charleville* to the N. W. The French Forces under the Conduct of the Duke of *Anguien* gained a Battel over the Spaniards, and defeated their General *Don Francisco de melo* near this Town on the 19th day of *June*, 1643.

*Sedan*, *Sedanum* stands on the East side of the River *Meuse* near the Frontiers of *Luxembourg*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Charleville* to the East, and 25 from *Rhetel* to the North-East. This Town was formerly subject to the Archb. op of *Rheims*; by whom it was afterwards granted to the King instead of *Comcy*. In process of Time the *Braquemonts* and *Marians* became Lords of it, and at length it devolved on the Princes of the Family of *La Tour*: But in the Year 1642 it was united to the Crown by a Compact made with Prince *Frederick-Maurice de la Tour d'Auvergne*, Duke of *Buillon* and Lord of *Sedan*. It is a strong place, being defended with a good Castle and Walls &c. It was chiefly inhabited by Protestants, who had a famous University here before the late Persecutions.

The County of *VALAGE* lies between those of *Pertuis*, and *Bassigni*, and contains these principal Towns, viz.

*Joinville*, } *Bar sur-Aube*,  
*Brienne*, } *Cervaux*, Abb. &c.  
*Vignois*, }

*Joinville*, *Jovis Villa*, *Joanvilla*, aut *Joville*, is a small Town, but dignified with the Title of a Principality, seated on the River *Marne* at the distance of 15 miles from *S. Dizier* to the South, and 43 from *Châlons* to the South-East. This Principality was erect-



erected by King Henry II. A. D. 1552. in favour of Francis of Lorraine Duke of Guise, to serve as an Inheritance for the younger Sons of that Noble Family, and hath been the Burial-place of divers of these Dukes. But that which hath made this City most noted, is, that the Holy League, which made so much disturbance in France, was revived here in the Year, 1584. by the Duke of Guise and his adherents.

*Brienne*, *Castrum Biennium* is a Town of a small compass, nevertheless honoured with the Title of a County, and stands on the Banks of the *Aube*, 25 miles from *Joinville* to the W. and 21 from *Troyes*. It was in time past one of the seven Peerages that were established by the ancient Counts of *Champagne*, and the place where the Peers usually held their Assemblies.

*Bar-sur-Aube*, *Barium ad Albiacum*, aut *Alban*, is so called from its situation on the River *Aube* at the foot of an Hill in a very pleasant Country, about 30 miles from *Troyes* to the East, and 15 from *Joinville* to the South-West. It is a well-built Town, and famous for its good Wines. It was for some time possess'd by certain particular Counts, but was at last reunited to the Crown at the same time with the rest of *Champagne*.

*Cîteaux*, or *Clairvaux*, *Clavallis* is an Abbey of the *Cistercian* Order, famous for the Conversion of *S. Bernard*, by whom as they say it was Founded, through the pious Liberality of *Thibaut* or *Ticobald* III. Count of *Champagne*, A. D. 1115. It is built in a Valley before called, *The Vale of Wormwood*, 14 miles from the Frontiers of *Burgundy*, and 5 from *Bar-sur-Aube* to the S.

*BASSIGNY*, *Bisfiniacus Ager* lies on the South of *Langres* between the Spring-heads of the *Marne* and the *Muse* on the side of *Lorraine*, containing these most considerable Towns, viz.

*Langres*, Bish. } *Lusl*,  
*Caumont*, } *Nogent-le-Roy*.

*Langres*, *Lingones* aut *Andematunum* is very advantageously situated on a Hill near the Spring-head of the River *Marne*, at the distance of 10 miles from the Confines of *Burgundy*; 50 from *Troyes* to the S. E. and 35 from *Joinville* to the South. It is a very ancient, large and well fortified City, and the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lyon*. It was ruined by the  *Vandals* in the beginning of the 4th Century, but afterward rebuilt and restor'd to its former Grandeur. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *S. Mamme*, the Martyr. The Bishop of *Langres*, who takes place among the six Ecclesiastical Peers of France, bears the Title of Duke, Marquis and Baron, as being both Spiritual and Temporal Lord of these Territories, wherein he constitutes Bailiffs, Judges, and other Officers of Justice. Five or Six Rivers have their Source in the adjacent Country, which on that account is supposed to be the highest Ground of the whole Kingdom of France.

*Caumont*, *Calvomentium*, and *Calvus Mons*, stands on a Hill near the *Marne* between *Joinville* and *Langres*, from whence it is distant 20 miles, and 15 from *Bar-sur-Aube* to the E. This Town, which had been before only a Burrough, was enlarged and encompassed with Walls, about the Year 1500. It was govern'd by its own Lords, until it was annexed to the Jurisdiction of the County of *Champagne*.

*SENONNOIS*, *Senonensis Ager*, is the South West part of *Champagne*, lying between *Champagne* proper, *Brie*, and *Gallinois*. This Country is extended 16 Leagues in length and 8 in breadth, and includes these principal Towns, viz.

*Sens*, Archb. } *S. Florentin*,  
*Pont-sur-Yonne*, } *Tonnerre*,  
*Joigni*, } *Chabli*.

*SENS*, *Senones*, aut *Agendicum Senonum*, is seated in a verdant Plain on the confluence of the *Seine* and the *Yonne*, over which it hath a Stone-bridge; and is distant 55 miles from *Paris* to the South, and 30 from *Troyes* to the West. It is a very fair City, and without doubt one of the most ancient throughout the whole Kingdom of France. For the *Galli Senonenses*, heretofore extended their Conquests very far into *Italy* and *Greece*, took *Rome*, and (as it is generally believ'd) founded *Sienna Senigaglia*, and some other Towns, which still bear their Name. These Territories, during the Second Race of the French Monarch's, were subject to the Jurisdiction of certain particular Counts, until King *Robert* made himself Master of *Sens*, A. D. 1005. The City is large and well-built, and water'd with a great number of Brooks, which run through all its Parts, and serve for the convenience of the Inhabitants. It is the See of an Archbishop, who was formerly Metropolitan of *Paris*, *Orleans*, and four other Diocesses; but since *Paris* hath been erected into an Archbishoprick, he hath only *Troyes*, *Auxerre*, and *Nevers* for his Suffragans. The Cathedral Church of *S. Stephen* is admired for its stately Front, adorned with divers Figures and two lofty Towers; as also on the account of its large Body, rich Chappels, ancient Tombs, and the costly Basis of the High Altar, where is to be seen a Table of Gold enrich'd with many curious Stones, representing in Bas-relief the Images of the four Evangelists and *S. Stephen*. The whole Diocess comprehends above 900 Parochial Churches, and 25 Abbies, five of these being included within the City and Suburbs. Divers Councils have been celebrated here, the first of which was held by Archbishop *Sevin*, A. C. 980.

*Pont-sur-Yonne*, *Pons ad Icaunum*, aut *Pons Syriacus*, stands on the Frontiers of *Champagne*, and the Banks of the River *Yonne*, about eight miles from *Sens* to the North toward *Paris*: *Joigni*, *Jogniacum* aut *Juniacum*, a small Town, at the distance of 15 miles from *Sens* to the South, and as many from *Auxerre* to the North.

*Tonnerre*, *Tornodorum* and *Ternodorum ad Hermonitionem*, is a considerable Town bearing the Title of a County, and built on the side of the River *Armançon* in the Confines of *Burgundy*, about 35 miles from *Sens* to the South-east.

*Chabli*, *Cabliacum*, stands about 10 miles West from *Tonnerre*. It is a small Town, but remarkable on the account of the excellent Wines that are made therein, and for the bloody Battle which was fought in the adjacent Plain, between the Sons of the Emperor *Lewis* the Debonaire. A. D. 841.

The County of *BRIE* is divided into two Parts, and made part of two Provinces of the *Ile of France* and *Champagne*. *BRIE CHAMPENOISE*, *Brigiensis Saltus*, aut *Bria*, lies between the Rivers *Seine* and *Marne*, on the North of *Sennois*, abounding in Pasture, and is very fruitfull in Corn, Fruits, &c. The most considerable Towns in it are these, viz.

*Meaux*, Bish. } *Colomiers*,  
*Provins*, } *Sezanne*,  
*Chasteau Thierry*, } *Montcreau-faut-Yonne*,

*Meaux*, *Meldæ*, *Patinum Meldarum*, the Capital City of *Brie*, and the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Paris*, is situated on the *Marne*, at  
the



the distance of 25 miles from *Paris* to the East; 50 from *Reims* to the South-west, 60 from *Châlons* to the West, and 50 from *Senlis* to the North. It is divided by the River into two parts, viz. one called the Town and the other the Market, and surrounded with three Suburbs. The Cathedral is dedicated to St. Stephen, and the Diocese contains 410 Parishes. There is also a Collegiate Church bearing the Name of St. Sulpice first Bishop of Meaux; and some others that are Parochial, and besides the Abby of St. Eustachy appertaining to the Benedictine Monks of the Congregation of St. Maur, a great number of Monasteries. This City was for sometime subject to its own Lord, before it was united to the Crown of France: It suffered very much in the year 1358. By a King of France, being at that time the Prisoner of our King Edward III. For the Dauphine having possessed himself of this Place, in his absence, the Citizens had plotted with those of Paris to take it from him, but were not able to effect it, for though they let in the Parisians into the Town, the Garrison kept the Market, overcame them, cut them to pieces and fired and pillaged the City. It was afterwards taken by the Forces of our valiant King Henry V. after a Siege of three Months. This was the first City of France wherein the Protestants preached against the Errors of the Church of Rome, for which many of them suffered Martyrdom. In the Civil War, the Protestants got the possession of this Place, but it was taken from them by Surprise by Claude Guiffier, Duke of Rouen for King Charles IX. It is now a well-built, flourishing and populous City, and is the Seat of a Bary and an Election.

*Provins*, *Provincum*, aut *Prævincum*, stands at the foot of an Hill and the Banks of the Rivulet *Touffe*, being

distant 10 miles from the Seine to the North; 25 from Meaux to the South; 36 from Troyes to North-West, and 38 from Paris to the South-East. This small Town is famous for an excellent sort of Roses which grow in the adjacent Fields, and bear the same Name. *Chateau-Thierry*, *Castellum Theodoricum*, is a very fair Town with a Castle enjoying the Title of a Duchy, and seated on the South-side of the Marne, about 20 miles from Meaux to the East; 30 from Reims to the South-west; 40 from Châlons to the West, and 45 from Paris to the East.

*Coulans*, *Coulans*, aut *Columbina*, is adorned with the Palace of Longueville, and water'd with the little River of Meuse, 12 miles from Meaux to the South towards Provins, and 30 from Paris to the East.

*Monterau-Faur-Tonne*, *Monasterium ad Icaunam*, *Monasterium St. Martini in finibus Icauna*, aut etiam *Mons Regalis*, takes its Name from a place where the *Tonne* falls into the Seine. Being founded on the Confluence of these two Rivers, and defended with an old Castle, distant 16 miles from Provins to the South-west. The Town it self properly belongs to the Jurisdiction of *Gastinois*, and the Suburbs on the other side of the River to that of *Brie*. It was heretofore a Royal Seat, and is beautified with a fair Stone Bridge, on which John Duke of Burgundy was slain on the 10th Day of September, 1419.

The Governor General of the Province of Champagne, hath under him four Lieutenant-Generals and two Bailiffs, all Noblemen. And in these following Towns there are particular Governours, viz. Troyes, Châlons, Langres, Chaumont, Reims, Chateau-Portien, Reims, Maziers, Charleville, Sedan, S. Menchould, S. Dizier, Vitry, Bar-sur-Aube, Epernay, Fismes, and Brie-Centre-Robert.

### A Chronological Table shewing the Succession of the Counts of Champagne and Brie.

	Succeed A. C.	govern.	Years		Succeeded A. C.	govern	Years
1 Robert	955			10 Theobald III.	1197		4
2 Herbert		died in	993	11 Theobald IV. King of Navarre	1201		53
3 Stephen I.	993		26	12 Theobald V. the young	1254		16
4 Eudes I. le Champenois.	1019		18	13 Henry III.	1270		4
5 Theobald or Theobald	1037			14 Joanna Queen of Navarre	1274		
6 Stephen II. surnam'd Henry				This last Princess was styl'd Countess Palatine of Brie and Champagne, and Married to the French King Philip IV. surnam'd the Fair, A. C. 1284.			
7 Theobald II.	1101		31				
8 Henry I. the Rich	1152		28				
9 Henry II. the Younger	1180		17				

## CHAP V.

### THE ISLE OF FRANCE, *Insula Francie.*

THE Government of the *Isle of France*, though it be one of the least of extent, is however the most considerable of the whole Kingdom, on account of its fertility and pleasant situation, the great number of stately Palaces, and the Capital City which stands therein; but more especially by being honoured with the presence of the King in his splendid Palaces of Versailles and the Louvre, S. Germain's, Fountainbleau, and S. Cloud; all which are seated within the Limits of this Government. The *Isle of France*, proper-

ly so called, lies between the River Seine, Marne, Oise, and Aisne; for which reason the Name of an Island hath been given it. But to make it a Government, some parts of the Neighbouring Provinces have been added to it; so that at present it is bounded on the East by Champagne, on the West by Normandy, on the North by Picardy, and on the South by Beauce and Gastinois, extending it self between the 48th Degree 20 Min. and the 49th Degree 40 Min. of Latitude; and includes from West to East, that is to say, from



from *Dreux* to *Lieffe*, near 120 miles, and from North to South, viz. from *Noyon* as far as *Tourzenay* in *Gatin* 100 Miles.

The Soil is very fertile in excellent Wheat, Grapes, and other Fruits: There are also divers verdant Plains and spacious Forests, affording abundance of all sorts of Games. The principal Rivers are the *Seine*, the *Marne* and the *Oise*. The last of these is enlarged with the Waters of the *Aisne*, that passeth to *Soissons*, and thence of *Terrain*, which conveys its Streams along the Walls of *Beauvais*, &c. This Government is usually divided into ten small Countries, nine of which are taken out of the Provinces of *Champagne*, *Beauce*, *Normandy*, and *Picardy*.

The Isle of France, prop. to 10 small Countries,	<i>Paris</i> , Archb.
	<i>Brie Francoise</i>
	<i>Hurepois</i>
	<i>Gifinois</i> in part
	<i>Montois</i>
	<i>Vexin Francois</i>
	<i>Beauvaisis</i>
	<i>Valois</i>
	<i>Soissonnois</i>
	<i>Laonnois</i>
	<i>Paris</i> , Archb.
	<i>Lagni</i>
	<i>Melun</i>
	<i>Nemours</i>
	<i>Mante</i>
	<i>Pontoise</i>
	<i>Beauvais</i> , B.
	<i>Crespy</i>
	<i>Soissons</i> , Bish.
	<i>Laon</i> , Bish.

In the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, properly so called, are contain'd

*Paris*, Archb. Capital of the whole Kingdom.  
*S. Dennis*  
*Montmorency*  
*Bois de Vincennes*.

*PARIS*, *Parisi*, aut *Lutetia Parisiorum*, so called from *Lutum* Drt. and *Parisi* the ancient Inhabitants of the Neighbouring Country. To omit the several fabulous Accounts of its Origine, it is certain that it is very ancient: *Julius Caesar* mentions it in his Commentaries; and *Eusebius* says, It was older than *Rome*. The Island in the *Seine* called *la Cité* now the middle of *Paris*, was the first City built in that place by the *Parisi* (as some say) to avoid the Ravage of War: A Pestilence that rag'd among them.

It is the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom of *France*, and at present one of the largest, most populous and flourishing Cities of *Europe*. The River *Seine* which passeth through it from East to West, is broad, but not deep enough to bring up Ships of Burden, whereof none come higher than *Rouen*, and from whence the Goods are brought hither in Lighters: Its Stream is divided by two or three Islands, whereof that call'd *la Cité* above-mentioned is the chief, and is the Center, round which the Additions from time to time have been made of that great number of Houses and Palaces whereof *Paris* now consists. On the North-side lies that part call'd *la Ville* the Town; and on the South the University, with the *Faubourg* or Suburbs of *S. Germain*, and *S. Marcel*. The Houses of *Paris* are mostly built of Stone and Brick, very high, and fill'd with People, every Floor often containing a Family, especially in the Old City, where the Streets are narrow, but those later built are spacious and neat, especially *les Rues Richelieu*, and *S. Martin*, which are very long, strait, and broad.

The whole City, University, and Suburbs of *Paris* make an Oval of three English Miles long, and two and an half broad, and consequently take up five and an half square Miles of Ground. Concerning the number of Houses and Inhabitants herein contained, Frenchmen talk very largely; but this Matter having been judiciously handled by the ingenious Sir *William Petty*, his Computation will be the best ac-

count we can give the Reader, which is as follows: He says, The number of Houses are, 22223, together with 32 Palaces, and 38 Colleges, in which do live 81250 Families and allowing to each Family 6 Persons, the number will be 487650. To prove this Account, he argues from the number of Burials in *Paris*, which according to a reasonable Medium, are, 19857 per Annum, whereof 3506 in the *Hotel-Dieu* unnecessarily, which being deducted, the number of Burials of the Inhabitants, is *communibus annis*, 16381, and then allowing one of thirty to die yearly, the number of Souls in *Paris* will be 491430. The Medium of these two Accounts is 489555. Whereas in *London* the same Author proves the number of Inhabitants to be 695718, and the number of Houses 105315, and that *London* contains above 100 thousand Inhabitants more than *Paris* and *Rouen* together. But to proceed,

The Places in *Paris* that most deserve a Stranger's Notice, are the *Leuvre*, the *Tuilleries*, the Church of *Notre-Dame*, the University, the *Old-Palace*, the *Town-House*, the *Place-Royal*, the *Bastille*, *Pont-neuf*, many stately Palaces of the Nobility, the *Hotel-Dieu*, and other Hospitals.

The King's Palace, nam'd the *Leuvre*, is a noble and stately Pile of Building: It is one large Square with a Court in the middle, the Fronts of Stone finely adorned with Pillars and Carvings. It was first built by King *Philip* the August *A. D.* 1214. and began to be rebuilt of larger Extent by K. *Charles V.* in the Year 1364. *Francis I.* began the *Switzer's Hall* and the South Porch, which his Son *Henry II.* finished, and built two Stories over it; he also added an Order of *Corinthian* Architecture to the inner Front, and adorn'd it with a noble Cornice and curious Carvings. King *Henry IV.* built a Gallery along by the side of the River quite to the *Tuilleries*, which is very long, and esteem'd the finest in *Europe*: Under it is the Royal Printing-house, and the Lodgings of many curious Artists in Painting, Carving, Graving, &c. who have Pensions from the King. *Lewis XIII.* finished the Front to the West, and built a large Pavillon, in form of a Dome, in the middle, over the Gate, which is supported by two Ranks of very large Pillars of the *Ionick* Order: and also adorn'd the Architrave of the Front to the Court with fine Sculptures. The present King hath bestow'd great cost upon the East-Front; in the middle whereof is the chief Gate of the Palace. Here are forty Columns of the *Corinthian* Order *detachees*, which sustain a large Terras, that is to be rail'd with a stately Balustre. The Building is not finished, nor the Lodgings furnished, no Body dwelling in it but some few Officers, except the French Academy, who have a Hall here to hold their Assemblies in. Behind the *Leuvre* is a large piece of Ground design'd for a Garden; but the King never coming here, some Persons have been permitted to build upon it, so that at present it is full of Houses, which are to be all pull'd down when the Building is finished, and the King fancies to Reside here.

Behind the *Leuvre* at some distance, stands the Palace called *les Tuilleries*, built by Queen *Catherine de Medicis*, *A. D.* 1654. and much improved by the present King. It is one Range of Building, with a Pavillon at each end, and a Dome in the middle; before it is a handsome large Space which is divided into three Courts; and behind are exceeding pleasant Gardens, the Walks whereof are every Evening fill'd with People of Fashion that come hither to take the Air. When the King lies at *Paris*, which is very seldom, he lodges in the *Tuilleries*. These two Palaces are seated in the West-part of the Town by the River-side; the



Garden of the *Tuileries* reaching quite beyond the Houses, and is open to the Fields.

The Cathedral-Church of *Notre-Dame* or the *Virgin Mary*, stands near the middle of the City in the Island which thence hath its Name: It is a Majestick Venerable Building of the *Gothick* Order of Architecture. The Foundation was laid *A. D.* 522. by King *Childerick*; and the Building was afterwards much beautified and enlarged by King *Robert* and his Successors, till *Philip* the August finished it as it now appears. It is in the Form of a Cross, having a small Spire in the middle, and at the West end two large square Towers of 359 Steps high, flat at top, with Balustrades round, which make the Front very spacious and noble. Over the three West Gates is a Row of Niches, in which stand the Statues of 23 Kings of *France*, Predecessors to *Philip*. The length of this Church is accounted 66 Fathoms, its breadth 24, and its height 17 Fathoms. The Roof is supported by 120 great Pillars, and the whole Building adorn'd with the Ornaments usual to this Order of Architecture, besides several Statues, curious Paintings, rich Tapestries, Silver-Candlesticks, &c. that make the inside appear very Glorious. The Prelate of this See was formerly Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Sens*, till *A.* 1622. when *Lewis XIII.* by permission of the Pope, erected it into an Archbishoprick; and the present King hath added to it the Title of Duke and Peer, *A.* 1674. in favour of the present Archbishop.

The University of *Paris* was first founded (as it is said) by *Charlemagne*, *A. D.* 791, at the desire of *Alcuin* an Englishman, his Tutor, who was made the first Professor. It is situate on the South-side of the River, and hath been much encreased by *Lewis VII.* *Philip* the August, and several other Persons of lower Rank, particularly *Riccolieu*, who, in the time of *St. Lewis*, *A.* 1222, founded the College called by his Name; which being decayed, was rebuilt by Cardinal *Reillon*, and made a very beautiful Place. It is esteemed the strictest College in *Europe*, the Degree of Doctor in it being only given to those who hold the *Sacrament* the Act, which is to answer all Disputants from Sunrise to Sunset. Wherefore the Title of *Sorbon* Doctor is of great Repute. The College of *Navarre*, founded by *Jane* Queen of *Navarre*, is also a very noble Building; and that of the four Nations, founded by Cardinal *Mazarine*, is very handsome, spacious, and well adorned. The Buildings of the other Colleges, near 30 in number, are not very stately. The Professors have settled Revenues, but the Colleges are not endowed, except with Privileges and Collation to several Benefices.

It will not be amiss to mention here the Academies for Arts, established in *Paris* by the Favour and Encouragement of the present King and his Predecessors. And first, the Academy *Francise*, is a Society of ingenious Men, the most polite and curious Critics of the Nation; first began in the Year 1620. by *M. fives Godeau*, *Gombaud*, *Chapelain*, *Conrard*, and several more, who agreed to meet weekly at one of their Lodgings for Conversation; these being encouraged by Cardinal *Richelieu*, set themselves at work to correct and polish the French Tongue, and in 1635. the Academy was established by the King's Edict, and hath been much honour'd by the present King, who hath given them a Chamber in the *Leuvre* to hold their Assemblies in. These ingenious Persons have very much improv'd the French Language, and published a Dictionary of it; and several Members of the Society have published Books that have been very acceptable to the learned World. The number of them

at present is forty. They give yearly two Golden Medals to the best Performers in Eloquence and Poetry.

The *Royal Academy of Sciences*, was established by Monsieur *Colbert*, *A. D.* 1666, and is composed of the best Philosophers and Mathematicians in the Nation, for whose use the King built the *Royal Observatory* in the *Fauxbourg St. Jacques*, where they daily make Experiments, and labour in new Discoveries for the improvement of Knowledge.

The *Royal Academy for Painting and Sculpture*, was established by *Lewis XIII.* and that for Architecture, by the present King in the Year 1671.

But to pass on to the other remarkable Things in *Paris*. The Palace is the place where the Court of Parliament is held. It was at first the King's Palace, but was made the Seat of this Court by King *Philip* the Fair. The Hall is arched with Stone, and supported by Pillars: In it are many Shops for Tradesmen, and beyond it are several Chambers for the respective Courts.

The *Hotel de Ville*, or Guild-Hall, is a fair Structure; the old one being decayed, this was begun to be built *A. D.* 1533, but by reason of the Civil War, was not finished till 1610. It is built of Stone, the Front reasonably handsome, but somewhat Gothick; in the middle over the Door there is a Spire, and two Pavillons at the ends; within-side is a spacious Hall, and several Chambers.

The *Palais Cardinal*, or Palace Royal, as it is now called, is a handsome Building, composed of two square Courts and fine Gardens; the Apartments in it are beautiful and convenient. This Palace was built by Cardinal *Richelieu*, and at his Death bequeathed to the King: The Duke of *Orleans* dwells in it, altho' he hath another very stately one that bears his Name, which was built by the Widow of *Henry IV.*

The *Place Royal* is a Noble large Square, surrounded with Piazzas and very fine Houses.

*Paris* lying on both sides the Water, there is need of many Bridges, of which here are nine of Stone and two of Timber; that named *Pont-neuf*, or the New Bridge, is the most considerable, being the finest built and the longest; it is all of Stone, begun to be built in 1578, and finished in 1604, by King *Henry IV.* whose Statue on Horseback of curious Workmanship stands in the middle.

*Pont au Change* was built of Stone in 1629, and hath two Rows of Houses on it; this being near the Palace, hath the most Passengers of any. *Pont-Mary* hath Houses on it also. The other Bridges are less considerable.

The *Hotel-Dieu* is a large Hospital for poor sick People, whereof here are commonly no less than 4000, who are serv'd by the Nuns of *St. Augustin*: The Building is old, and not very fine, but the Revenues are very great. There are many other Hospitals; but that which makes the greatest Figure, and is most talk'd of is.

The *Invalides*, built by this King for the Reception and Maintenance of old crippled and disabled Soldiers. It is a very noble Building, exactly square, with fine Courts in the middle. It stands in the West end of the *Fauxbourg St. Germain*.

The *Bastille* is a Castle built in the Year 1360, for defence of the City, but at present serves for a Prison for State-Criminals. It stands at the East-end of the Town, in the *Fauxbourg St. Antoine*. There are also two smaller Castles, which were anciently Fortresses, and without doubt stood at the Limits of the Town, but are now in the middle of it, and serve to hold the Provosts and other Courts in.

The



The Suburbs of *Paris* are large and well built; that of *St. Germain* hath been taken into the City, and enjoys the same Privileges.

For the Civil Government *Paris* hath a Magistrate call'd the *Prevot des Marchands*, not unlike our Lord-Mayor, and 4 Eschevins or Aldermen, 26 Counsellors, 10 Serjeants and under Officers; and is divided into 16 Wards. And for administering Justice, there is a Provost, 3 Lieutenants, and the Judge and Consul of Merchants.

In the City and Suburbs are 10 Collegiate and 44 Parochial Churches, 4 principal Abbeys, besides many other Religious Houses, 30 Hospitals, great number of publick Fountains, and 17 Gates.

This City hath undergone the Fate of most Great Ones; viz. hath been two or three times besieged, twice burn'd, and once much damaged by an Inundation of the *Seine*. Our King *Henry V.* took it, was crown'd here, and kept his Court at the *Louvre* in great State and Splendor, *A. D.* 1422. In the Civil War *Paris* took part with the *Leaguers*, and was therefore besieged in the Year 1537. by King *Henry III.* who there lost his Life, being murdered by *Jacques Clement* a Friar. The next Year it was block'd up by *Henry IV.* and reduc'd to extream Misery, and to that want of Victuals, that the People made Bread of dead Mens Bones; yet would they not yield, but held out till the Dukes of *Guise* and *Mayenne* came to their Relief, and forced the King to raise the Siege.

*Paris* is situate in the Latitude of 48 Degrees 50 Minutes, and Longitude of 20 Degrees 15 Minutes, reckoning from *Teneriffe*; but, according to *Sanfon*, 23 Degrees, 30 Minutes; and is distant 130 English Miles from *Calais* to the South, 60 from *Rouen* to the S. E. 300 from *Brest* to the E. 220 from *Lyon* to the N. W. 130 from *Verdun* on the River *Meuse*, and 230 from *Strasbourg* on the *Rhine* to the W. 180 from *Triers*, 155 from *Luxemburg*, and 140 from *Namur* to the S. W.

The most remarkable Place in the Neighbourhood is the *Bois de Vincennes*, situated at the very Gates of *Paris*, where the Citizens often walk to take the Air, and divert themselves with divers kinds of Sports and Exercises.

*VERSAILLES* is a small, but neat Burrough, situate upon a rising Ground in the midst of a Champaign Country, fit for Hunting, and abounding with Game, at the distance of about 12 Miles from *Paris* to the W. *Lewis XIII.* built a small Castle here, to serve for a Hunting-Seat; but the present King fancying the Place, in the Year 1651. began to enlarge it, by the addition of several new Buildings, which he hath encreased from time to time, and hath been at prodigious Expence in adorning it and making the greatest variety of Water-Works, and most delightful Gardens, that probably are any where to be seen. This beautiful Palace deserves a more particular Description than we have room to make: what follows will be sufficient to give the Reader a general Idea of it.

The Passage to it is through four long Rows of tall Elm-trees, which make three Alleys; the middle one of twenty Fathoms, and the side ones of ten Fathoms wide; at the end of these, on each side, fronting the House, are the Stables, which for Symmetry and Convenience are thought the finest in *Europe*; in them are kept near five hundred Horses of the King's. Between this and the Court is a large void Space, from whence is a fair view of the whole, all the three Courts being open to the Front, and only divided by Iron

Ballustres. The first Court is named the *Place-Royal*; it is very spacious, being eighty Fathoms square: In the Front is only a low Wall and Iron Ballustres, which are carried out in a Half-Moon, and on the Wings are a very handsom Range of Buildings, which are the Lodgings of some of the Nobility that attend the Court. From hence you pass through one large Gate (very finely adorn'd with Trophies in Iron-work gilt) in the middle of a large and high Ballustre of Iron, gilt, into the first or great Court of the Palace, which consists also of two Wings of Building, on each side of a large Court, but so much smaller than the *Place-Royal*, as that that does not hinder the full sight of this; in the middle is a very large Fountain: The Buildings are of Brick and Stone, very stately, and adorn'd with very fine Carvings, and Pillars of the Corinthian Order, which support Balconies at the top, that go quite round each Wing; on the Ballustre whereof stand several Statues of Stone, representing the four Elements; these are the Lodgings of the Officers of the Household: Behind them are square Courts and other Buildings for Offices. Next is the second or smaller Court of the Palace, which is also open to the Front; the Ground is raised three Steps, and paved with black and white Marble: This Court is still smaller than the former, for the same Reason; and here the Sight is terminated by the Building at the end of the Court, which with the two Wings make the Royal Apartment. These Buildings are very magnificent, without side as well as within: The Entrance is by three Doors of Iron, richly wrought and gilt: In the Wings are two very noble Stair-Cases that lead to the Lodgings, in which appear all the Pomp and Beauty that the most curious Sculptures and Paintings by the greatest Masters of the Age, together with excessive rich Furniture, can make: Behind this, and fronting the Garden, is a noble Range of Building, adorned with Statues and Carvings, and a Piazza of 100 Yards in length. The Gardens are extream delightful, and surpass all other for pleasant Walks and great number of Fountains, in which the Water is diversified a thousand ways, through a multitude of Marble and Copper Statues, that represent abundance of curious Devices, as the Triumphal Arch, the Water Mountain, the Theatre, the Pyramid, the Basin of *Ceres*, the Basin of *Flora*, the Basin of *Apollo*, the Basin of *Saturn*, the Basins of the Crown, Mermaid, Dragon, the Water-Bower, the Water-Alley, many of the Fables of *Æsop* represented by Figures, which spout Water; together with abundance more too long to mention. Besides these Fountains here is a very large Canal, in which Yachts and Gallies sail and row to and again. At the bottom of this Canal on one side stands a fine Summer-house called *Trianon*; and on the other side is the Menagerie, where are kept all the Outlandish Beasts of greatest Rariety. Every part of this House and Garden is perfectly beautiful, and gives satisfaction to the most curious Spectators.

*St. Germain en Laye*, is a very fair Town pleasantly seated on an Hill near the River *Seine*, and the Wood of *Laye*, at the distance of fifteen Miles from *Paris* to the West, and four from *Poissy*: It is adorned with two stately Palaces, the Old and the New, in which the French Kings have often resided: The Gardens and Water-works were formerly much celebrated, but since those of *Versailles* have been made, they are less regarded. In this Palace were born *Henry II.* *Charles IX.* and *Lewis XIV.* A Peace was concluded here between King *Lewis XIV.* the King of *Sweden* and



the Elector of Brandenburg on the 29th Day of June, 1679.

About a League from St. Germain, toward Paris, stands *The Wood of Treason*, *le Bois de la Traïffen*, so called from a Plot there contrived by one Ganelon, against the House of Arles, the Peers of France, and the chief Generals of the Emperor Charlemagne, which was afterward put in execution at the Battle of Roncevaux near the Pyrenean Mountains. This Wood is divided by a large Road or High-way. There are also divers other considerable Towns not far from Paris, particularly those of Reims, St. Mihiel, St. Cloud, where the King hath another Palace. Meaux, Vincennes, Conflans, &c. *Montmorency*, &c. besides.

*St. Dennis*, *Forum Sancti Dionysii*, a small Town watered by a Rivulet, called *Le Cor*, which a little below falls into the Seine, and adorned with a most famous Abbey, founded by King Dagobert I. as also a stately Church, which the same Prince erected, *A. C.* 636, in Honour of St. Dennis, the Patron or Tutelar Saint of France, whose Body was interred therein. But this Church being in time fallen in decay, Abbot Suger caused it to be rebuilt in a larger Form, as it now appears in three Years and three Months time, under the Reign of Lewis VII. as it is recorded in the Acts of the said Suger. It was rebuilt *A. D.* 1142, and hath been since very remarkable for its Treasure and the sumptuous Tombs of the French Monarchs. The Town was formerly of larger extent than at present. It is a little way distant from the Seine to the East, and eight Miles from Paris to the North.

*Montmorency*, *Monmorenciacum* aut *Mons Morentiacus*, a small Town distant about 12 Miles from Paris to the North-West, stands on an Hill, and hath imparted its Name to a very pleasant and fruitful Valley; as also to an illustrious Family that founded the Church of St. Martin. *Montmorency* is the principal Barony of the Realm, and the first Territory dignified with this Title, which was heretofore conferred only on Princes, and whereon (as they say) above 600 Mannors in Fee sometime depended. Afterward King Henry II. erected it into a Duchy, *A.* 1531, in favour of Anne de Montmorency Countess of France; and when this Family was extinct, Lewis XIII. bestowed the same Title on Henry of Bourbon, Prince of Condé, in 1633. This Town was burnt by the English in 1553.

*BRIE-FRANCOIS* *Brie Francica*, lies between the Rivers Seine and Marne: It is a very fertile Country in Corn, Fruits, &c. The principal Towns are these, viz.

*Meaux*, *Meledunum*, *[Rij.]*  
*Brie-Comte-Robert*, *[Villæ-Novæ St. George]*.

*Meaux*, *Meledunum*, is a large Town situated on the River Marne, over which it hath a fair Stone-Bridge, 17 Miles from Paris to the East, 4 from Gournay sur Marne, and 12 from Meaux to the South-West. It enjoys the Title of a County: In it is a famous Monastery of *Benedictine* Monks, founded by St. Faustus, a Scotch Gentleman, in the Eighth Century. This Town was ruined by the Normans in the Ninth Century, but Henry I. of England repaired it, caused the Church to be rebuilt, and was buried therein, *A. C.* 943. Many other Noblemen were likewise Benefactors to the same Abbey, and the Legate of the See of Rome, held a Council in it *A. D.* 1142.

*Brie-Comte-Robert*, *Bria-Comitis-Roberti*, is a Town of small extent, built near the Brook Yonne, in a very

Fruitful Country, 15 miles from Paris to the South-East, wherein is established a Court of Judicature depending on the *Cassiers* of Paris. It is also supposed to have been the Place of Nativity of Pope Martin IV.

*Reves, Rezerum*, is seated upon the same Rivulet *Yonne* above *Brie-Comte-Robert*, 20 miles from Meaux to the South, and somewhat more from Paris to the South-East.

*Villæ-Novæ St. George*, *Villæ-Novæ Sancti Georgii*, is a small Burgh standing near the River Seine, 10 miles from Paris to the South, and about 5 from Corbeil.

*HEUREPOIS*, *Hurepasium*, constitutes part of the Provostship and Vicounty of Paris, beginning at the Seine under the little Bridge, and extending it self along the West side of the River, between Beaure to the West, Brie to the East, and Gatinais to the South. The chief Towns are these, viz.

*Meaux*, *[La Ferte-Aux]*,  
*Corbeil*, *[Fontaine-bleau]*, &c.

*Meaux*, *Meledunum*, a very fair, large, and populous Town, is seated on the Seine, at the distance of 8 miles from Corbeil, 33 from Sens to the North-West, and 25 from Paris to the South-E. It is built on an Island, and on both sides of the River, after the manner of Paris, which gave occasion to the Proverb, *Après Paris Meaux*. It is without doubt a place of much Antiquity, and was considerable in the time of Julius Cæsar, being mention'd in his Commentaries. It is well fortified with a Castle, encompassed with large Suburbs, and adorned with a great number of beautiful Churches, particularly the Collegiate dedicated to the Virgin Mary, the Parochial of St. Stephen, St. Aspar, and St. Ambrose, besides the Abbey of St. Peter and divers other Monasteries. Moreover it bears the Title of a County, and hath given its Name to an illustrious Family, from whence have sprung many Prelates and Officers of the Crown. The Normans sacked this Town in 845, the English Forces took it after a Siege of 4 or 5 Months in 1420, and it suffered much damage during the Civil Wars of France in the XVI Century, but hath since recovered its former Splendor.

*Corbeil*, *Corbetium*, aut *Corvolium*, olim *Jesedum*, stands also on the Banks of the Seine, where it receives the Juine, or River of *Erampes*, being distant 7 miles from Meaux, 15 from Fontaine-bleau to the North, and as many from Paris to the South. It was heretofore a Roman Colony, and took its name from *Corvul*, Governor of the Gauls. It was governed by its own Counts from the X. and XI. Centuries, (of whom one named *Aimoin* founded the Church of St. Spire, and established therein a College of 12 Canons in memory of the 12 Apostles till it was united to the Crown in the time of Lewis the Grois, but hath still the Title of a County: Here is a fair Stone Bridge of nine Arches over the Seine.

*Fontaine-bleau*, *Fons Bellaqueus*, seu *Fons Aquæ Puleiæ*, is a very fair Town, distant about 3 miles from the Seine, 5 from Meaux, and 30 from Paris to the South: Near this place is the Forest of Bieure, containing 26000 Acres of Ground, together with many Herds of Deer and all sorts of Game; in the midst of which large Wood of high Trees, stands the Royal Palace of Fontaine-bleau, taking its name from the great number of Springs, of clear Water and Fountains that appear on all sides. A Castle was first erected here by King Lewis VII. *A. D.* 1169, but Francis I. bega.



began to beautifie it with divers sorts of Ornaments, more especially a curious Library which was afterward transported to *Paris*, and his Successors continuing in the same Design, have since render'd it one of the magnificent Seats of *Europe*. About 3 Leagues from *Fontain-bleau*, is another stately Mansion-House or Palace, known by the Name of *Fleury*, which is remarkable for a large Canal of Spring-water, enclosed with Walls on both sides, a large Walk shaded with Trees, that seem to be joined together in an admirable Arbour, &c.

The Territory of *G A T I N O I S*, *Vastinium*, lies to the South of *Hurepis* bordering on *Beauce*. It derives its name from the Rocks and Sands which the Inhabitants of the Country call *Gastines*: Part of this Province belongs to the Government of the *Orlean-nos*; that part that belongs to this Government of the Ile of *France*, contains these principal Towns, *viç*.

*Nemours*, } *Moret*,  
*Dourdan*, } *Montheri*,  
*Courtenay*. } *Montargis*.

*Nemours*, *Nemofium*, aut *Nemoracum*, is situate in a Plain on the River *Loing*, and defended with an old Castle, being distant 10 miles from *Fontaine-bleau*, and 40 from *Paris* to the South. The most considerable publick Edifices are, the Priory of *St. John*, and the Abbey of *Najire Dame de la Joye*, possessed by Nuns of the *Cistercian* Order. This Town was heretofore subject to the Jurisdiction of certain particular Lords, and afterward to that of its Counts; until at length, *Charles VI.* caused it to be enclosed with Walls, and erected the adjacent Territory into a Duchy, *A. D.* 1464.

*Dourdan*, *Durdanum*, aut *Dardincum*, is a small Town seated on the Frontiers of *Beauce* on the River *Orge*, 26 miles from *Paris* toward *Orleans*, and 28 from *Nemours* to the North-West. It was part of the Possessions of *Hugh Capet*, but being often pawn'd and sold, was at last bought by *Lewis XIII.* This Town was much infested during the Civil Wars, and taken by the Protestants in the years 1562 and 1567.

*Courtenay*, *Curtiniacum* and *Corteniacum*, stands on an Hill on the Banks of the Rivulet *Clairy*, 15 miles South-East from *Nemours*. This Town tho' of very small compass, hath imparted its Name to divers Princes, whose Actions are celebrated in the French History, and of whom some have been Emperors of *Constantinople*.

*Montargis*, *Montargium*, aut *Mons Argi*, is a very fair Town built at the Foot of a Hill, water'd with the River *Loing*, and fenced with an old Castle, which was re-built by *Charles V.* being distant 25 Leagues from *Paris* to the South towards *Nevers*, 12 miles from *Nemours*, and 30 West from *Sens*. It is annexed to the Demesns of the Crown, and bears the Titles of a Bailiage, Election, and Provostship. It was built in the year 1522. and afterward re-built and enlarged.

*M A N T O I S*, *Meduntanus Ager*, is the West part of this Government, and extends from *St. Germain* to the Frontiers of *Normandy*, along the sides of the River *Seine*, and includes within its Territories these considerable Towns, *viç*.

*Mante*, } *Meulan*,  
*Poissy*, } *St. Germain en Laye*,  
*Montfort l'Amaury*, }

*Mante*, *Medunta*, is seated on the South side of the River *Seine*, (which is there covered with a Stone Bridge) near the Frontiers of *Normandy*; from whence it is distant, only six miles, and also 25 from *Evreux* to the East, and 30 from *Paris* to the North-West. In this Town died King *Philip* the II. surnamed the *August*.

*Poissy*, *Pisciacum*, is a small Town situated not far from the Confluence of the *Oise* and the *Seine*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Paris* to the North-West toward *Rouen*. It is famous for the Nativity of *Lewis IX.* King of *France*, and on the account of a Conference held between the Roman Catholics and Protestants, under *Charles IX.* Here are establish'd divers Religious Houses, and among others a Convent of Nuns of the *Dominican* Order, founded by *Philip* the fair, &c.

*Monfort l'Amaury*, *Montfortium Amalrici*, took the name of *Amaury* from that of its Lords, and stands on an Hill, the Foot whereof is water'd with the streams of a little River; 27 miles from *Paris* to the West toward *Dreux*, and 15 from *Mante* to the South. King *Robert* caused a Castle to be erected here, which is now half ruin'd, and enclosed the Town with Walls.

*V E X I N - F R A N C O I S*, *Veximum*, aut *Velcastinum Franciscum*, is extended between the Rivers *Oise* and *Depte*, on the North of *Mantois* to the Confines of *Normandy*, including these Towns within its Jurisdiction.

*Pontoise*, } *Chaumont*,  
*Magny*. }

*Pontoise*, *Pontifara*, seu *Pons ad Oesiam*, is situate on an Hill and the Banks of the *Oise*, between *L'Isle Adam* and the Confluence of this River, with that of the *Seine*, 20 miles from *Paris* to the North-West towards *Rouen*. It is a place of considerable Importance, and adorned with a fair Stone Bridge over the *Oise*, from whence its name is deriv'd.

*Magny*, *Magniacum*, stands on the confines of *Normandy*, in the midst between *Paris* and *Rouen*, at an equal distance of 34 miles from both these Cities.

*Chaumont*, *Calvomontium*, aut *Calvus Mons*, is a small Town between *Beauvais* to the South, and *Mante* to the North, being distant 12 miles from the first, and 20 from the last, and 16 from *Pontoise* to the North.

*B E A U V O I S I S*, *Bellovacensis Ager*, lies between the River *Oise* and the Frontiers of *Normandy*, to the North of *Vexin Francois*, containing these Towns, *viç*.

*Beauvais Bish.* } *Gerberoy*,  
*Clermont*. } *Merlou*.

*Beauvais*, *Bellovacum*, aut *Cesaromagus*, is seated on the River *Therin*, at the distance of 43 miles from *Paris* to the North, as many from *Rouen* to the East, 30 from *Compeign*, and 15 from the Borders of *Picardy*. It is a large and well fortified City and Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Rheims*, the Bishop whereof is one of the twelve Ecclesiastical Peers of the Realm. It is honourably mentioned by *Cæsar*, who says that the People of this Territory were very powerful and withstood him the longest. This is called the Maiden City having been always faithful and not suffer'd it self to be taken. Our English Forces attempted to surprize it in 1433. but did not effect it. Nor did *Charles* the warlike Duke of *Burgundy*, prove more



more successful, when he besieged it in 1472, being forced to raise the Siege 26 days after his Trenches were opened. However violent Commotions often arose in it, on account of Religion, during the Civil Wars of France in the last Age. It is a place of good Trade, which consists in Stuffs, Cloths, Earthen Ware, &c. The Bishop was formerly sole Temporal as well as Spiritual Lord of the City and adjacent Country: but since 1539, a Bailiwick and Presidial have been established here. However, the Bishop hath still great Power, and is temporal Lord of the Borough, Gervais, and rich in great endowments.

*Clermont, Clermontium*, or *Clermont en Beauvoisis* for distinction, is built on a rising ground, and the sides of the River *Seine*, 16 miles from *Beauvais* to the East, 12 from *Compeigne* to the West, and 10 from *Senlis* to the North. It hath been dignified with the Title of a County ever since the time of Robert of France, Son of St. Lewis and Count of *Clermont*, from whence the Royal House of *Bourbon* is derived.

*Gervais*, *Gervaisium*, stands on the Frontiers of *Picardy*, 5 miles from *Beauvais* to the North-West. In the Reign of our Henry VI. A. D. 1435, the English lost a Battle near this Town. *Morcu* is a Borough seated on the River *Yonne*, or *Tierin*, 4 or 5 miles from *Clermont*.

The Duchy of *HALLOIS*, *Halensium*, lies on the East of *Beauvoisis*, between that and *Soissonois*. In it are these Cities and Towns, viz.

<i>Crepy</i> .	<i>La Ferte Milon</i> .
<i>Senlis</i> Bish.	<i>Pont Sainte Maxence</i> .
<i>Compeigne</i> .	<i>Wiers Compiers</i> , &c.

*Crepy*, *Crepiacum*, aut *Crepiacum*, formerly a very considerable City, now a Town of a small compass, nevertheless the chief of the Country of *HALLOIS*, and hath in it a Provostship and Castellany; it is distant 32 miles from *Paris* to the North-East, 15 from *Morcu* to the North, and 12 from *Compeigne* to the South. In this Town a memorable Treaty of Peace was concluded between the Emperor *Charles V.* and King *Francis I.* on the 18 day of September, 1528. The ancient Counts of *HALLOIS* had the Title of Counts of *Crepiacum*, and used to reside here in a Castle said to be burnt by King *Dagobert*, which is now almost ruined.

*Senlis*, *Senlensis*, is situated in a very pleasant place on the Brook *Normen*, near the Forest of *Rye*, which gives occasion to its Latin Name, 25 miles from *Paris* to the North, 16 from *Compeigne* to the South, 5 from the River *Oise*, and 27 from *Beauvais* to the North-East. It is a considerable City, being the Capital of the Country, or Bailiarge of *Senlis*, and the See of a Prince, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Reims*. St. Denis converted the Inhabitants to the Christian Religion, and was the first Bishop of this Diocese. The Cathedral is dedicated to the Virgin Mary; here are also 7 Parochial and two Collegiate Churches. The City of *Senlis* was besieged by the English in 1570, but they were beaten thence, and a signal Battle fought on that occasion, between the Duke of Longueville, who commanded the King's Forces, and the Duke of Anjou, one of the Principal Heirs of the League, wherein the latter lost 1500 Men.

*Compeigne*, *Compendium*, stands on the Banks of the River *Oise*, which a little above falls into the *Seine*, and near the Forest of *Gales*, at the distance of 16 miles from *Senlis*, and 40 from *Paris* to the North,

and 30 from *Beauvais* to the East. It had a stately Castle, which was the Seat of several of the Kings of France; of these *Charles II.* surnamed the Bold, Emperor, founded a famous Monastery, and repair'd and beautified the whole Town, and called it *Carolopolis*. It is still a considerable Town, and a place of good Trade, several Manufactures being made in it. The famous Maid of *Orleans*, *Joan of Arcke*, was taken Prisoner here by the English, when they besieged it in 1430.

*Ferte-Milon*, *Flornitas Milonis*, is water'd by the Rivulet *Oure* or *Oureque*, and stands between *Meaux Soissons*, and *Senlis*, 35 miles from *Paris* to the North-east, and 20 from *Compeigne* to the South-east. It was so called, as it were the Force or Fortrefs of Count *Milon*, who built it under the Reign of *Lewis the Great*; afterwards it was possessed by *Hugh the Great*, the Son of King *Henry I.* Count of *Vermandois*, *Valois*, &c. who founded the Priory of *Ungis*. It is a good Town, and hath large Suburbs and a strong Castle. It was very much impaired during the Civil Wars, in the end of the XVI Century. A Provostship and Castellany is established here, from whence appeals lie to the Presidial Court of *Senlis*.

*SOISSONNOIS*, *Suessionensis Ager*, lies between *Valois* and *Laonnois*, and hath these chief Towns, viz.

*Soissons* Bish. *Braine*. *Velly*.

*Soissons*, *Suessiones*, five *Suessiones* & *Augusti Sueffonum*, is a very fair, large and well fortified City seated on the River *Aisne*, at the distance of about 16 miles from the Frontiers of *Picardy* and *Champagne*, 22 from *Compeigne* to the East, 30 from *Meaux* to the North, and 50 from *Paris* to the North-east. In the time of the first Race of the French Kings, it was the Capital City of a Kingdom of the same Name; afterward it bore the Title of a County, and was annexed to the Government of *Picardy* as well as *Laon*, although they now depend on that of the Isle of France. It is at present the Seat of a Presidial Court, and a Generality, as also the See of a Bishop, who is the first Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Reims*, and in his Absence hath a right to crown the Kings of France. The Country hereabouts is very fruitful in Corn.

*Braine*, *Brennacion* aut *Brans*, is a small Town and Abbey on the River *Yonne*, between *Femes* to the East, and *Senlis* to the West, about 10 miles from each, and 5 from the River *Aisne* to the South.

*Velly* stands on the *Aisne* 10 miles above *Soissons*; a small Town and not considerable.

*LAONNOIS*, *Laudunensis Ager*, is extended between part of *Champagne*, *Picardy*, *Beauvoisis* and *Soissons*, and is the North-east Border of this Government, including these principal Cities, Towns, &c. viz.

<i>Laon</i> Bish.	} <i>Novon</i> Bish.
<i>Liesjz</i> .	
	} <i>Chaumi</i> .
	} <i>Premontre</i> , &c.

*Laon*, *Laudunum*, aut *Laudunum Clavatum*, is a large well fortified City, and an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Reims*; this Bishop is one of the ancient twelve Peers of the Realm, enjoys the Title of a Duke, and hath the right to carry the Sacred Vial *la St. Ampoule*, at the Coronation of the Kings of France. It was at first only a Castle built at the top of an high Hill, and called *Laudu-*



*num*, from a Name commonly attributed by the *Gauls* to all places of such Situation, but in time grew to be a pretty good Town, which King *Clovis* the Great enlarged and made a City, and St. *Remigius* or *Remi* of *Reims* erected the Bishoprick and founded a Cathedral Church, on which at present depend 84 Canons, of which four are dignitaries. This City is distant 18 miles from *Soissons* to the North, 35 from *Compeign* to the East, and 65 from *Paris* to the North-East.

*Lieffe*, *Letitia*, is a small Town on the Frontiers of *Picardy* and *Champagne*, about 8 miles from *Laon*, to the East. It is chiefly famous on the account of the Pilgrims that frequently resort hither from divers parts to pay their Devotions in a Church dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*; where even the Kings of *France* have used to pay their Devotions as soon as they came to the Crown, without which they believed they had not the Power to cure the King's Evil.

*Noyon*, *Noviodunum*, *Noviomagus*, aut *Noviomum*, is situated on the Rivulet *Vorse*, which a little below falls into the *Oise*, at the distance of 20 miles from *Soissons* to the North-west, 25 from *Laon* to the West, and 45 from *Paris* to the North. The Archbishoprick of *Vermandois* was translated hither A. C. 520. when *Agusta Vermandorum*, or St. *Quintin*, the Metropolis of that Diocess, was ruin'd by the Barbarians. *Noyon* is a well-built City adorned with fair Buildings and Magnificent Churches, the chief of

which is the Cathedral. dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, besides a great number of Fountains, and four Suburbs. This Bishop had Jurisdiction over all *Flanders* before *Tournay* was erected into a Sec. He is still Count and Peer of *France*. It may not be amiss to note that the famous *John Calvin* was born here, A. 1509.

*Chauny*, *Calniacum*, stands on the Banks of the River *Oise*, about 6 miles from *Noyon* to the East. It is a Royal Town and a Castleany, although of a small compass. It was annexed to the Crown by *Charles V.* in 1378.

*Premontre*, *Praemonstratum*, is a Village distant 8 miles from *Laon* to the West, about 16 from *Noyon* to the East, and 15 from *Soissons* to the North. It took its Name from a Famous Abby of Canons Regular of St. *Augustin*, founded there by St. *Norbert*, sometime Archbishop of *Magdeburg*.

The Isle of *France*, with the *Soissonnois*, *Laonnois*, *Beauvaisis*, &c. hath a Governor-General, a Governor of the City, Vicounty and Provostship of *Paris*, besides which there is a Grand Provost of *Paris* and the Isle of *France*, properly so called; 4 Lieutenant-Generals in *Beauvaisis*, and *Vexin Francois*, a Bailly of *Valois*, about 20 Governors of the King's Houses, and particular Governors of *Beauvais*, *Compeign*, *Marli*, *Laon*, *Noyon*, and *Soissons*, *Villers*, *Senlis*, *Crespi en Valois*, &c.

## CHAP. VI.

### BRETAGNE, *Armorica* aut *Britania Minor*.

THE Province of *Bretagne*, or the lesser *Britain*, apparently took its modern Name from those People of *Great Britain*, who having escaped the fury of the *Saxons*, arriv'd on these Coasts, where they were courteously entertained by the Inhabitants, and incorporated with them into one Body. They still retain a different Language from the rest of *France*. This Country was heretofore called *Amorica*, i. e. *admire sita*, from its situation on the Sea-shoar, and afterward *Llydaw*, in the British Tongue in the same sense; as also *Letavia* in Latin, by the English Writers of the middle Age. It is bounded on the East by the Provinces of *Anjou*, *Maine*, and part of *Normandy*, advancing it self in form of a Peninsle to the West into the Ocean, with which it is encompassed on the three other sides. Its utmost extent from East to West, consists of about 170 English miles; that is to say, from *Vitrey* to the point of *Conquet*, and about 100 miles from North to South, viz. From St. *Malo* to the Borders of *Poitou*, but in other Places it is not above 70 miles broad. It is situated between the 47th Degree, and almost the 49th of Latitude.

*Julius Cæsar* first made himself Master of this Province, and it remain'd under the Dominion of the *Romans* till *Maximus* having caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor in *England*, A. C. 382, granted to one of his Lieutenant-Generals named *Conan Meridiac*, the Title of King of *Armorica* or *Bretagne*, which Sovereignty continued to the time of *Clovis* and *Chilperick*, who oblig'd these Princes to be content with the stile of Counts. But they often revolted,

until *Digobert II.* rendred them Tributary; and *Charlemagne* entirely subdued them A. 787. However they took up Armes against *Lewis* the *Debonnaire* and *Charles* the *Bald*, and their last King *Solomon* was slain in Battle. Afterwards the Country was Govern'd by divers Princes until the Year 1213. at which time *Alix*, the Heiress of *Bretagne*, Married *Peter* of *Deux Maucler*, whose Successors to the number of Ten retained the Possession thereof under the title of a Duchy, until to the Year 1491, when *Ann* of *Bretagne* the only Daughter of *Francis II.* the last Duke, was espoused to King *Charles VIII.* and and afterwards to *Lewis XII.* who inseparably united this Duchy to the Crown of *France*.

The Soil of this Province yields Pasture, Hemp, Wood, Minerals, some Corn, but no Wine; and about *Nantes* great quantity of Salt is made. The Meadows feed abundance of Cattle, especially Horses, of which a very good Race are bred here. Hemp and Flax grows in great plenty, so that abundance of Canvas and Linnen is made here. The Forests are many and large, and contain great variety of Game. Between *Chateau-Briant* and *Martignes*, are found Mines of Iron and Lead, and in other places some of Copper and Tin. This Province is happy in Havens, having more good Sea-Ports than any other part of *France*, and many Islands all round it. The Inhabitants are good Fisher-men, which they are encouraged to by the great variety of delicate Fish daily taken on their Coasts; particularly *Salmons*, *Herrings*, *Sardines*, and a certain Fish of a most delicious taste, called *Imperador*, or Emperor

at



at *Mr. de la Roche*, and *Gravetix Signieur*, or *Gracious Lord* in *Bretagne*; besides *Tunnies*, *Porpesses*, *Dolphins*, *Sturgeon*, and some others appropriated to the Royal Fishery. Travellers admire the Jewels of *Amber* at *Belle-Ile*, the *Aqueducts* at *Dol*, the *Vaults* between *Rieux* and *Rellon*, the *Subterranean Torrent* in the *Forest* of *St. Aubin du Cormier*, the singular Properties of the *River Ardre*, and the *Lake* of *Grand-lac* near *Nantes*, from whence are taken many *Toad-stones*, and *Serpent-Tongues* of extraordinary Virtue.

The most considerable Rivers of this Province are the *Loire*, the *Vilaine*, *Renne*, *Brette*, *Anjou*, *Tricux*, *Laina*, *Oder*, *Angouen* and *Croignon*.

*Bretagne* is divided into nine *Diocesses*.

The Upper towards the East, in 3. 1. 1. 1.	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>Rennes</i> , Chief Town, <i>Rennes</i> .	
	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>Nantes</i> , Chief Town same Name.	
	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>St. Malo</i> . <i>Idem</i> .	
	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>Dol</i> . <i>Idem</i> .	
The Lower towards the West, in 4. 1. 1. 1.	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>St. Brieux</i> . <i>Idem</i> .	
	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>Treguier</i> . <i>Idem</i> .	
	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>St. Paul De Leon</i> . <i>Idem</i> .	
	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>Quimpercorentin</i> . <i>Idem</i> .	
	{ The <i>Bishoprick</i> of <i>Vannes</i> . <i>Idem</i> .	

The *Bishoprick* or *Diocess* of *RENNES*, *Episcopatus Rannensis*, is situated on the Frontiers of *Normandy*, and the Province of *Maine*, and bounded on the North by the *Bishoprick* of *Dol*. The chief Towns are three, viz.

*Rennes*, *Bellou*, & *Fougères*.  
Dol, & *Chateaubriant*, &c.

*Rennes*, *Rannos*, aut *Conclavis Rannorum*, stands on the *River Vilaine*, which here receives the *Loire*, and divides the Town into two parts, and at the distance of 52 miles from *Nantes* to the North, 40 from *St. Malo* to the South, and 30 from the Borders of the Province of *Maine* to the West, and 30 from the Borders of *Normandy* to the South. It is the Capital of *Bretagne*, and was heretofore the Place of Residence of the Counts or Barons of *Bretagne*, and was for some time the Seat of the Parliament of the whole Province, which was established there by King *Henry II*, but has been in this Age removed to *Vannes*. It is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Tours*. The *Diocess* contains 430 *Parishes*, besides two notable *Abbeys*, viz. Of *St. Magloire* and *St. George*, within the City, a College of *Jesuits*, and divers other Houses for Religious Persons. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *St. Peter*, besides which there are several *Parochial Churches*. The Palace where the Parliament used to sit, is a fair Building. The Clock of it is admired, as being one of the largest in *France*. This City is pleasantly seated in a fruitful Country, being environed with Pastures and Forests, and hath a good Trade by means of the River.

*Virey*, *Vireum*, *Viriacum*, and *Vicoriacum*, is a fair walled Town, bearing the Title of a Barony, and stands also on the Banks of the *Vilaine*, 24 Miles above *Rennes* to the East, and not above five from the Borders of *Maine*. The Protestants had formerly a considerable Church here.

*Fougères*, *Firicoria*, is seated on the *River Croignon*, near the Frontiers of *Normandy* and *Maine*, 15 Miles from *Virey* to the North, and near 30 from *Rennes* to the North-East. This Town hath given its Name to a Noble Family, and is noted for the fine Glass made in it. *Ricard de Fougères*, fortified it, and built the Castle.

The *Bishoprick* of *NANTES*, *Episcopatus Nannensis*, lies to the South of *Rennes*, between the Frontiers of *Anjou* and *Poitou*, and the *River Vilaine*. The most considerable Towns are these, viz.

*Nantes*, *Bish.* } *Machecou*,  
*Anenis*, } *Cliffon*,  
*Chateau-Briant*, } *La Roche-Bernard*, &c.  
*Guerande*, }

*Nantes*, *Nannetes*, aut *Conclivium*, the Capital City of a County of the same Name, is seated on the Northern Bank of the *River Loire*, near the confluence of the *River Ardre*, about 30 Miles from the Sea to the East, 40 from *Angers* to the West, and 55 from *Rennes* to the South. It was the Seat of the later Dukes of *Bretagne*, and gave the Title of a Count to their eldest Sons. It is at present a handsome large City, well fortified, and hath a strong Castle flanked with Towers and Half-Moons. It is the See of a Bishop who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Tours*, and is a Councillor in the Parliament of *Rennes*. Here is a University, a Presidial Generality and Chamber of Accounts. The Publick Buildings are the Cathedral dedicated to *St. Peter*, a fair ancient Structure, beautified with two high Towers: In it are to be seen the Tombs of several Dukes of *Bretagne*; the Collegiate Church of the Virgin *Mary*, and some Parochial ones; divers Monasteries, the Town-House built after the Modern Architecture; the Palace of the Chamber of Accounts; that of the Presidial Court with a beautiful Tower and Clock; and a stately Hospital. This City is a great Mart for Trade; vast quantities of all sorts of Merchandizes are brought in by the *River Loire*, which flows up to its Walls, and brings up very large Beasts, and Ships of small Burden: And from hence by the same River Foreign Goods are sent to *Anjou*, *Breiz*, *Guiana*, &c. and Native Commodities brought down; an excellent sort of Brandy is exported hence to Foreign Countries. By reason of this convenience of Traffick, the City has from time to time been largely encreased, and there are now four Suburbs round it, which are well filled with Inhabitants. A famous Edict in favour of the Protestants was made here by King *Henry IV*, in the Year 1595, which was registred in the Parliament of *Paris*, and confirmed and worn to by his Successor *Lewis XIII*. Notwithstanding which the present King hath repealed it in the Year 1685, and severely persecuted the Protestants.

*Anenis*, *Anenijum*, and *Andenijum*, was heretofore the chief Town of the *Amnites*, stands likewise near the Banks of *Loire*, and is distant 25 Miles from *Angers* to the West, and 15 from *Nantes* to the North-East. It was formerly defended with a Castle built by *Arenburg*, the Wife of a Breton Count, named *Guerec*, &c.

*Chateau-Briant*, *Castrum Brientii*, is a small Town fenced with an old Castle on the Frontiers of *Anjou*, about 30 Miles from *Nantes* to the North.

*Guerande*, *Guerada*, aut *Alia Guariaca*, is between the Mouths of the *Vilaine* and *Loire*, 35 Miles below *Nantes* to the West, and is remarkable on account



count of the adjacent Salt-pits, near the Port of *Croisil*.

*Michzeou, Machicolium*, is the chief Town of a small Country commonly called the Duchy of *Retz*, and seated on the South side of the *Loire*, about 10 Miles from it, 20 from *Nantes* to the South-West, 4 from the Frontiers of *Poitou*, and about 5 from the Coasts of the Ocean.

The Bishoprick or Diocess of *St. MALO, Episcopatus Macloviensis*, is situated on the Northern Part of the Province near that of *Dol*, and includes these remarkable Towns, *viz.*

*St. Malo*, Bishoprick. } *Focelin*,  
*Dinant*, } *Montfort*.

*St. Malo, Maclovi*, or *Macloviopolis*, one of the chief Towns and Ports of the upper *Bretagne*, is seated on the Northern Coast, and built on a Rock in the Sea, call'd the Island of *St. Aaron*, and joined to the Continent by the means of a long Causey, of not above 30 Fathoms broad, the entrance whereof is defended by a strong Castle, flanked with large Towers, and the Town surrounded with Walls, deep Ditches, and always guarded with a sufficient Garrison; besides which to the Sea it is secured by a shoal of Sand that encompasses it, and several Rocks and small Islands, that make a Haven of difficult access, inasmuch that it is reputed one of the Keys of *France*. It is considerable for its Traffick and Strength, and the Skill of its Inhabitants in Maritime Affairs, by which means great numbers of Privateers are in time of War from hence fitted out, and much disturb the Trade of these Seas. It was founded on the Ruins of the ancient *Alet*, or *Guid-Aleth*, and derives its Name from that of its first Bishop *Maclovius*, or *Macutus*, and is distant 10 Miles from *Dol* to the North-West, 36 from *Rennes*, and 90 from *Nantes* to the North, and 200 Miles West from *Paris*. *St. Malo* was at first only an Abbey, until the Bishoprick of *Quidaleet* was translated thither in the Year 1172. But it hath ever since retained the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Tours*. The Cathedral dedicated to *St. Vincent*, is one of the most ancient of all *France*. Besides the Cathedral, there are many fair Monasteries, and some other publick Buildings of good Note.

*Dinant, Dinantium*, stands on the Banks of the River *Rance*, about 15 miles from *St. Malo* to the South. This Town in time past hath been well fortified, and hath conferr'd the Title of an Earl on the younger Sons of the Duke of *Bretagne*.

*Focelin* is a small Town on the side of the River *Ouste* or *Aust*, near 40 Miles from *Rennes* to the West, and as many from *St. Brieux* to the South.

*Montfort*, a small Town on the River *Melin*, which falls into the *Vilaine*, stands 10 miles from *Rennes* to the West.

The Diocess of *DOL, Episcopatus Dolensis*, is of small extent and adjoins to that of *St. Malo*; it lies in the North-East Angle of *Bretagne*, and bounded by the Frontiers of *Normandy* and the Ocean.

The City of *Dol, Dolæ*, and *Dolensis Urbs*, is seated in a Marshy Plain, at the distance only of 6 Miles from the Coasts of the British Sea to the South, 10 from *St. Malo* to the South-East, and 30 from *Rennes* to the North. It takes up a very little space of Ground in compass, but is defended with a strong Fort. The Cathedral Church bears the Name of *St. Sonson*, who was the first Bishop of this Diocess; and some of his Successors have assum'd the Title of Metropolitans of

the Province, which Preeminence nevertheless after a long Tryal at Law, was at length granted to the Archbishop of *Tours*.

The Bishoprick or Diocess of *St. BRIEUX, Briacensis Episcopatus*, lies on the West of *St. Malo*, between *Treguier* and *Vannes*, containing these Principal Towns, *viz.*

*St. Brieux*, Bish. } *Fagon*.  
*Pontrieux*, } *Lambale*.  
*Quintin*, }

*St. Brieux, Briocum*, aut *Fanum Sancti Bricci*, is situated on the Gulph of *Hilion*, between the Rivers of *Trieu* and *Arguenon*, being distant 25 Miles from *Treguier* to the East, 36 from *St. Malo* to the West, and 55 from *Rennes*. It is well fortified, and hath a convenient Harbour on the Coasts of the British Sea. This City takes its Name from *St. Brieux*, one of its Prelates. The Episcopal See was first founded by *Neomene* Duke of *Bretagne*, in the time of King *Charles II.* surnamed the *Bald*, A. C. 144. and its Bishop is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Tours*.

*Pontrieux*, is a good Town, seated on the River *Trieu*, from which it takes its Name, at the distance of about 10 Miles from the British Sea, and 20 from *St. Brieux* to the West.

*Quintin, Quintinum*, is a small Town, and stands about 10 Miles from *St. Brieux* to the South.

*Lambale, Lambalium*, was heretofore the Chief Town of the *Arabiliates*, an ancient People mention'd by *Cæsar* (according to the Opinion of *la Vigenere* and others) and sometime belonged to the House of *Cliffon*; it is distant only 10 or 12 Miles from the British Sea, 12 from *St. Brieux* to the East, and 45 from *Rennes* to the North-West. This place is especially famous on the account of the adjacent Pastures, wherein are fed many Herds of Cattle, and for its considerable Trade in Parchment, &c.

The Bishoprick of *TREGUIER, Episcopatus Trecoriensis*, extends it self on the Northern Coasts of this Province, between *St. Brieux* and *St. Pol de Leon*, including these chief Towns, *viz.*

*Treguier*, Bish. } *Lannian*,  
*Morlaix*, } *Garlesquin*.  
*Guingamp*, }

*Treguier* aut *Lantriguët*, *Treccora* aut *Treccorium*, olim *Torganium*, is a very ancient City on the Northern Coasts of *Bretagne*, and hath been often exposed to the Incursions of the Saxons, Danes and Normans. The Bishop is both Spiritual and Temporal Lord thereof, and assumes the Title of a Count. The Cathedral Church bears the Name of *S. Tudgal*, who was the first Prelate of this City. It hath a safe Harbour on the Coasts of the British Sea, and is distant 25 Miles from *St. Brieux* to the North-west, 10 from *Pontrieux* to the North, 30 from *St. Pol de Leon* to the East, and 80 from *Rennes* to the North-West.

*Morlaix, Morleum* aut *Mons Relaxus*, situate on the side of a Hill, between two Valleys, near the Sea-Coasts, on a River of the same Name, which a little below falls into a Bay called *le Torcau*: It is a very large, well-built, and populous wall'd Town; the River is deep, and receives Vessels of 100 Tuns, which come up into the Town; by the Convenience whereof it is a Place of good Trade, which consists in Flax, Canvas, Paper (made here in great quantity



for Iron-Cloth and other Commodities that are exported here to England, Holland, and other parts. This town increased the number of the Inhabitants, whose Suburbs have been raised to 10,000. It was once named *Ille et Rana*. Here are many beautiful Buildings, among which the Palace called *Château de la Rochelle* is the finest in the Province, and magnificent Churches, with a statue of the Virgin Mary in the most sacred. On the top of the Hill stands the remainder of an old Castle, now almost ruined. It is distant 12 Miles from *Paris* to the South-West, 10 Miles to the West, and 10 Miles to the South-East.

The Bishopric of *Diocesis of St. POL DE LÉON* is bounded on the North and West by the Ocean, on the South by the Bishopric of *Quimper*, and on the East by that of *Treguier*. The Principal Towns are these.

<i>St. Pol de Leon, B. &amp; L.</i>	} <i>Breton.</i>	} The Isle of Ouessant, or <i>Cornouaille</i> , &c.
<i>Leven.</i>		
<i>Leven.</i>		

*St. Pol de Leon*, or *Leven*, *Leven* & *Fatum* *St. Paul de Leon*, an ancient *Statum* *St. Paul* & *St. Paul* *Quimper*, was a considerable Town even in the time of *Julius Cæsar*, who in his Commentaries makes mention of *Quimper*, the Capital City, according to *Strabo*, was *Ugentum*, which is called *Ugentum* in the Roman Itinerary, and *Ugentum* in the *Nova Imperia*; it hath been ruined long since, and of its ancient Diocesis have been formed these three of *St. Pol de Leon*, *St. Brieux*, and *Treguier*. This City is situated on the Sea-coast, between *Leven* or *Treguier* and *Brest*, and is distant about 10 Miles from each, and 10 from *Paris* to the West. It hath a safe Harbour, and is defended with a Fort, where some of the Dukes of *Bretagne* have formerly resided. It is also at present an Episcopal See under the Metropolis of *Paris*, and the Capital City of the small Territory called *Leven*; it hath been possessed by its own proper Princes, until about the year 1200, when *Philip Duke of Bretagne* purchased this Principality. Its first Bishop was *Paul*, who died *400*, was canonized, and from him the City had its Name. The Chapter is composed of a Chapter, 3 Archdeacons, 12 Canon-Prebendaries styled Vicars, &c. The Inhabitants speak the *Low Breton* Language more purely and elegantly than the other of the same Country.

*Leven*, stands on the Banks of the little River *Leven*, which falls into the Bay of *Brest* and is distant 12 Miles from *St. Pol de Leon* to the South-West. It is noted for the Richness of the Soil of its Neighbouring Country.

*Brest*, *Breton* *Port*, olim *Gallia* & *Gallia*, is a famous Sea-Port Town, seated on the North side of a large commodious Bay or Harbour, which opens to the Ocean in the most extreme Western part of the Continent of *France*. The Entrance of this Harbour called the *Goulet*, is exceeding difficult by reason of certain Rocks, known by the Names of *Mons*, *Fleur*, and *Morgant*, that lie under Water at high Tide, and is therefore the more secure Retreat for the French Kings Ships of War, for which this is the only Port he has on this side the *Mediterranean*. Wherefore this Town is one of the Grand Magazines of the Admiralty of *France*; *Toulon* in the *Mediterranean* being the other; and in this Harbour the greatest number of the French Navy,

as in that the Ships of greatest Burthen Winter, and are fitted out. The Naval Stores and Provisions for the Sail of Men of War are laid up in this Town, and Ships of 50 and 90 Guns are built here, which makes *Brest* a populous and rich Place. It is well fortified after the modern manner, with strong Walls and a Castle well sustained with Outworks and Batteries. It is distant 35 Miles from *St. Pol de Leon* to the South-West, and 15 from the Promontory of *Cornouaille*.

*Cornouaille* is a small Sea-Town, situate near the Southern End of the Bay of *Brest*, not considerable, and of a small one, but it gives name to the Road between the Islands of *Breton*, *Abbaye*, &c.

The Parish of *CESSANT* or *CHANT*, *Cornouaille*, & *Cornouaille*, called *Leven* by *Paris*, and *Cornouaille* by *Strabo*, lies at the distance of 30 Miles Westward from *Brest*, and is not above 20 Miles long, but nevertheless it hath obtained the Title of a Metropolis. It is furnished with a Castle, and contains the rich Towns of Note.

The Bishoprick of *QUIMPER-CORENTIN*, is bounded on the N. by that of *St. Pol de Leon*, on the W. & S. by the Ocean and by the Diocesis of *Vannes* to the E. and takes up the S. W. Corner of the *Lower Bretagne*, and contains these remarkable Towns, viz.

<i>Quimper-Cornouaille, B.</i>	} <i>Douarnenez,</i>	
<i>Cornouaille.</i>		} <i>Chateaulin,</i>
<i>Quimper.</i>		

*Quimper-Cornouaille*, olim *Curiosotia*, is the Metropolis of a small Territory in the Lower *Bretagne*, named *Cornouaille* from the County of *Cornouaille* in *England*, whence the City itself is also sometimes, tho' improperly called *Cornouaille*. Its ancient Name is *Kimper* or *Quimper*, whereto *Cornouaille* was added from that of its first Bishop, who is supposed to have been ordained by *St. Martin of Tours*, its Episcopal See being as yet subject to that Metropolis. This City was heretofore possessed by its own Courts or *Parls*; it is of a large extent, well built, and very considerable for its Traffick, and situated on the *Océan*, into which a small River falls that surrounds the Town, and makes it a kind of an Island. The *Océan* is so deep, that Barks of a large size are conveyed at high Tide to the Port, at the confluence of the two Rivers, where stands the Suburbs term'd, *Le Duc's Land*, inhabited by many rich Merchants. The Cathedral is a stately Edifice, and of much Antiquity, adorned with two large Towers: There are also divers other Churches, and Monasteries, and the Bishops Palace, which is a very magnificent Pile of Building. This City stands about 12 Miles from the Southern Shoar of *Bretagne*, and 30 from *Brest* to the South, and from *Rennes* about 120 to the East.

*Cornouaille*, *Conqueneau*, or *Cornouaille*, is a well fortified Town and Castle on the Sea-coast, lying between *Brest* and *Penmark*, 15 Miles from *Quimper-Cornouaille* to the South-East.

*Quimper*, *Quimperleum*, is a reasonable good Town seated at the confluence of the two little Rivers *Yetta* and *Laitz*, about 8 Miles from the Sea-coast, and 30 from *Quimper-Cornouaille* to the East.

*Douarnenez*, a small Town about 10 Miles N. E. from *Quimper-Cornouaille*, gives name to a large Bay, adjoining to that of *Brest*.

The Bishoprick or Diocesis of *VANNES*, is bounded on the South by the Ocean, on the E. by the Diocesis of *Nantes*, on the N. by that of *St. Brieux*.



and on the West by that of *Quimper-Corentin*. The chief Towns are these. *viz.*

*Vannes*, Bish. } *Auray*,  
*Port Louis*, or *Blavet*, } *Milestroit*, &c.  
*Hanneton*. } and *Bell-Isle*.

*Vannes*, or *Vennes*, *Venetie*, aut *Darionigum Vene-torum*, the Capital City of the *Lower Bretagne*, stands on an incommodious Bay, being fill'd with little Islands, into which the Sea flows through a Canal named *Montalban*, and is distant 55 miles from *Renves* to the S. W. somewhat less from *Nantes* to the West, and 60 from *Quimper-Corentin* to the East. It is defended with an old Castle called *l' Hermire*, which was formerly a Palace of the Dukes of *Bretagne*. The Cathedral dedicated to *St. Peter*, hath a considerable Chapter, and divers other fair Churches contribute much to render it a splendid City, but the fury of the Civil Wars hath diminish'd part of its ancient Lustre.

*Port Louis*, or *Blavet*, *Portus Ludovici* aut *Blavetum*, is a small but well fortified Town on the Mouth of the River *Blavet*, that takes its rise near the Burgh or Village of *Grace* in the Diocess of *S. Brioux*, and discharges it self into the Sea at the Port of *Blavet*; which is a capacious and safe Harbour, and distant 26 Miles from *Vannes* to the W. and near 40 from *Quimper-Corentin* to the E.

*Hannebon*, *Hannebontum*, stands on the Banks of the same River *Blavet*, about 8 Miles from *Blavet* to the North, and 26 from *Vannes* to the W.

*Bell-Isle*, *Calonesus*, a considerable Island on the Southern Coasts of the Province of *Bretagne*, lies at the distance of about 3 or 4 Leagues from the Continent of

*France*, and is almost encompassed with small Isles or Rocks. Its extent from W. to E. is about 10 Miles, and its greatest breadth about 5 Miles. It hath a fair Haven and some strong Forts over against *Vannes* and *Auray*. The whole Island is at present divided into 4 Parishes, and tho' of a small compass, yet affords much good Pasture-Ground for Cattle. It is also remarkable for its Salt-Pits, and on the account of the frequent Passage of Vessels along the adjacent Coasts, but especially because it is the usual Rendezvous of the French Fleet, when they put to Sea. *Bell-Isle* was heretofore possessed by the Monks of the Abby of *S. Croix* of *Quimper*, till King *Charles IX.* erected it into a Marquisate, and bestow'd it on the Count of *Raie*, A. D. 1573. The Abby hath been also endow'd for some time with so plentiful a Revenue, that it was esteem'd a competent Preferment for *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Base Brother to King *Henry IV.* to be created Lord Abbot thereof. The Principal Place bearing the name of the Town, is adorn'd with a very stately Cittadel or Castle, called the Palace, and so well fenced of late with Ramparts and other Works, according to the modern Method of Fortification, that it seems to be almost impregnable.

The Governor-General of *Bretagne* hath under him two Lieutenants-General, whereof one hath the Inspection of all the Province except the County of *Nantes*, under whom are two Lieutenants. The other hath the care of that Country only. There are also particular Governours in these Places, *viz.* *Nantes*, *Vannes*, *S. Malo*, *Dinant*, *Vitre*, *Brest*, *Quimper*, *Blavet*, and *Bell-Isle*.

## CHAP. VII.

### L'ORLEANOIS, or the Government of Orleans.

THE Government of *ORLEANOIS* is one of the most fruitful and pleasant Countries of *France*, and its Jurisdiction is one of the largest extent, as comprehending fourteen or fifteen small Provinces, every one of which hath its particular Governor. This Government takes its name from *Orleans*, its chief City, but Appeals lie from thence to the Parliament of *Paris*. It is extended from East to West, that is to say, from the Castle of *Chinon* in *Nivernois* as far as the Coasts of the Ocean, the space of about 270 miles; and 190 Miles from South to North, *viz.* from *Mesbrun* in *Angoumois* to *Nonancourt* in *Normandy*; It is bounded on the North by the Isle of *France* and *Normandy*; on the East by *Campagne* and *Burgundy*; on the South by *Xaintonge*, *Perigord*, *la Marche*, and *Bourbonnois*; and on the West by *Bretagne* and the Sea: and it lies from South to North between the 45th degree 40 minutes, and the 48th degree 50 Minutes of Latitude; as also from West to East, between the 14th degree 40 Minutes, to the 21 degree 40 Minutes of Longitude, which ought to be understood of its greatest length and breadth.

The Soil is extremely rich, plentifully bringing forth Corn, Fruits, Wine, and every thing necessary for the support of Humane Life, abounding likewise in Verdant Meadows, Arable and Woods. The great Forest of *Orleans* is especially remarkable, containing 70000 Acres of Land, and double that in the time

of *Francis I.* The principal Rivers are the *Loire*, into which the *Indre*, the *Cher*, and the *Vienne*, enlarged with the Streams of the *Creuse*, discharge themselves between *Montereau* and *Langeſt* in *Touraine*: The *Mayne* in like manner being joined to the *Sartes* a little above, *Angers* falls into the same River *Loire* about a League below that City. The *Aller* also falls into the *Loire* a little below *Nevers*. Lastly, the *Charante* takes its rise in *Angoumois*, passeth through *Xaintonge*, and runs into the Sea over against the Island of *Oleron*.

Orleans in general divided into Fifteen Counties or Provinces, <i>viz.</i>	1	<i>Orleanois</i> , properly so call'd, chief City.	<i>Orleans</i> .
	2	<i>Blaſois</i> .	<i>Blois</i> .
	3	<i>Beauce</i> , proper.	<i>Chartres</i> .
	4	<i>Perche</i> .	<i>Nugent le Rotrou</i> .
	5	<i>Maine</i> .	<i>Mans</i> .
	6	<i>Vendomois</i> ,	<i>Vendome</i> .
	7	<i>Anjou</i> .	<i>Angers</i> .
	8	<i>Poitou</i> .	<i>Poitiers</i> .
	9	<i>Aunis</i> .	<i>Rochel</i> .
	10	<i>Angoumois</i> .	<i>Angoulesme</i> .
	11	<i>Touraine</i> .	<i>Tours</i> .
	12	<i>Berry</i> .	<i>Bourges</i> .
	13	<i>Nivernois</i> .	<i>Nevers</i> .
	14	Part of <i>Gastinois</i> .	<i>Montargis</i> .
	15	The Islands of <i>Oleron</i> , <i>Ree</i> and <i>Oye</i> , <i>Nermonstier</i> and <i>Arnot</i> .	



ORLEANOIS, properly so call'd, lies between Berry, Gelinis, Beauce and Blaisois. The most considerable Towns of this Country are these, viz.

Orleans, Bish.	}	Sully.
Bourges,		Gergeau.
La Ferte Seneterre.		Pauviers, &c.
or S. Aubin.		

ORLEANS, *Aurelia, Aurenianensis Urbis*, olim *Genabum*, is one of the principal Cities of France; it is situate on the River *Loire*, on the side of a Hill, and in form of a Bow. It is a very ancient City, and by some said to have been built by the *Druids*; or according to others by the Emperor *Marcus Aurelius*, A. D. 163, who gave it the name. The Buildings are fair and beautiful, though old: The Fortifications are a Terrace and strong Wall, with 40 Towers on it.

From the middle of the City there is a Bridge over the *Loire*, built of Stone upon 16 Arches, which leads into one of the Suburbs. On this Bridge stands a Statue of the Virgin Mary, and on her right, at some distance another of King *Charles VII.* and on her left one of the famous Virgins *Grand Mère*, all three of Copper. This City was the Capital of a separate Kingdom, in the last Ages of the French Monarchy: At present bears the Title of a Duchy, which is appropriated to the second Sons of the Kings of France. It is also the See of a Bishop, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of Paris, and adorned with a famous University, founded by King *Philip the Fair*.

The Cathedral is a venerable and sumptuous building; its Chapter consists of 59 Canons, and 12 Dignitaries: Besides the Cathedral, here are 4 Collegiate and 22 Parochial Churches. A Generality is established here to which 12 Elections, containing 1145 Parishes resort, and also a Bailliage and Presidial. The Country round it is very fruitful and pleasant, and the River furnishes them with the Commodities of Foreign Nations from Norway, as well as the Products of their own from the more Southern Provinces. Orleans hath sustained divers Sieges; first a King of the *Huns* invested it A. D. 451, but it was relieved, and the *Huns* totally routed by *Aetius* the Roman General, assisted by *Mercin* the French King, and *Theodoric* the Goth. In the year 1123, our English Forces under the command of *Thomas Mowbray* Earl of Salisbury, besieged this City, and reduced it to great distress, but a certain Maid of 16 years old, call'd *Joan of Arc*, came to the King of France, and pretending her assistance from God, put on Man's Habit and Armour, and having got into Orleans, did so animate the besieged, that by their frequent battles, in which *Joan* was always the foremost, they forced the English to raise the Siege, having lost the Earl of Salisbury, the Lord Maltravers, the Lord Pembroke, and many Soldiers. This Woman was for some time the Director of the French Armies, in which he had great success, till at length being taken by the English, she was burnt for a Witch. In the Civil War the Protestants made themselves Masters of this City; and being besieged by the Duke of Guise, he was treacherously slain by *John de la Motte*, and after a Peace was concluded, and the City surrendered: But in 1571, the Protestants again invaded it, and for a long time it was their Head Quarters. Orleans is situate, as hath been said, upon the River *Loire*, and is distant near 70 Miles from Paris to the South, 160 from Nancy to the East, 220 from Bourges to the North-East, 190 from Lyons to the North-West, 130 from the Head of the River *Mayne* to the West, 60 from Tours, and 30 from Blois

to the East, 55 from Bourges to the North, and 70 from Sens to the West.

*Sully*, *Sulliacum*, & *La Ferte-Seneterre*, or *S. Aubin*, are two Towns of good Note, both bearing the Title of Duchies; the former is seated on the *Loire*, 25 miles above Orleans to the East, and the other 10 miles from the same City to the South.

*Gergeau*, or *Gaugeau*, *Gergonium*, stands in like manner on the Banks of the *Loire*, 10 miles above Orleans to the East. Our English Forces gain'd this Town from the French, A. D. 1420. but *John II.* Duke of *Alençon*, retook it by Storm in the year ensuing.

*BLAIS OIS*, *Blasensis Agor*, is extended between Berry, Orleanois proper, whereof it is a part, Beauce, Perche, Vendemois, and Touraine, the chief Towns of this Country are,

Blois,	}	Mer,
Chateau Dan,		Remourentin.

*Blois*, *Bese*, & *Blesense Cæsrum*, the chief Town of a Territory of the same name, is seated on the side of an Hill near the South Banks of the River *Loire*, over which is built a fair stone Bridge, at the distance of 30 Miles from Orleans to the West, and as many from Tours. It is honoured with the Title of a County, and beautified with a most magnificent Castle, not long since repair'd by *Gaston* Duke of Orleans, which, by reason of the pleasantness of the Place, and wholesomeness of the Air, hath often afforded a Royal Seat to the Kings of France, and wherein one of them, viz. *Leans XII.* was born. Besides that, it hath heretofore afforded Nurture to many young Princes of the Royal Family, not to mention that the first Counts of *Blois* were descended from *Hugh Capet*. Moreover the spacious Park and adjacent Garden are much admired by Travellers; it may perhaps not be amiss to observe that divers Queens of France have died at Blois, particularly *Ann* the Wife of *Charles VIII.* and *Leans XII.* A. D. 1514. *Maud* the Wife of *Francis I.* in 1524, and *Catherine* of *Medici* the Wife of *Henry II.* in 1559. In the year 1562, this City being possessed by the Protestants, was taken and sack'd by the King's Forces under the Duke of Guise. In 1576, the Assembly of the Estates of the Kingdom were convoked together by King *Henry III.* to accommodate the Differences between the Hugonots and the Papists, but broke up in a little time without effecting it. Again, in the Year 1585, they met here upon occasion of the great Disorder the Kingdom was brought into by the Holy League, and the Duke of Guise, the Head of it was here slain in the Castle by the Kings command.

*Chateau Dan*, *Castellodanum*, called corruptly *Chateau Dan*, is a neat well built Town lesser, and the Capital of the small Country of *Dunois*. It hath an old Castle, and is distant 25 Miles from Blois to the North, and 20 from Vendôme to the East; it is seated upon a small River, which ariseth about 20 Miles from hence, and bears the name of the *Loire* also, and falls into the great Stream at *Angers*.

*Remourentin*, or *Remorentin*, *Remorentinum*, *Remorentianum*, & *Rivus Morentino*, is a good Town, seated upon a little River, that a little below falls into the *Loire*, and is distant 25 Miles from Blois to the South-East. Those Geographers that call this part the *Loire de Orleans*, make this Town the Capital of another Division named *Sologne*.

*BEAUCESSE* or *BEAUCHE*, *Bellisi*, lies between the Isle of France, Perche, Berceis, and Orleanois; at its most remarkable Towns are,



Chartres, Bish. } Gaillardon.  
 Nogent-le-Roy. } Bonneval.  
 Dreux. } Eispernon.

*Chartres*, *Carnutum*, *Carnutes*, aut *Autricum*, the Metropolis of the Province of *Beauvais*, and of the Territory of *Chartrain*, is situated on a Hill, and on the banks of the River *Eure*, 45 miles from *Paris* to the South-west, and as many from *Orleans* to the North. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Paris*. This City and its Territories were sometimes subject to its own Counts, but united to the Crown, in 1528. And *Francis I.* erected it into a Duchy in favour of *Milam Renée* of *France*, Dutches of *Ferrara*. It is an ancient City, but fair and well-built; the Streets are narrow, but the publick Places are spacious, and the Houses neat; the Churches are magnificent, especially the Cathedral, which is remarkable for its beautiful Quire, Church under Ground, and two very fine Steeples; the Chapter is compos'd of 72 Canons, and 17 Dignitaries, within the Diocels are contain'd 30 Abbies, 257 Priors, and above 1300 Parishes. *Robt* Duke of *Normandy* Besieg'd the City of *Chartres*, A. D. 911, and in 1019, it was almost entirely consum'd by Fire. In 1568, the French Protestants in vain besieg'd it. It adher'd to the League Party, and stood out against *Henry IV.* who at length took it, and caus'd himself to be Crown'd therein, A. D. 1591.

*Nogent-le-Roy*, *Nonigentum*, seu *Nogentum Regium*, stands on the banks of the River *Eure*, where it first begins to be Navigable, 12 miles from *Chartres* to the North, and 8 from *Dreux* to the South. This Town about five Ages ago, was named *Nogent l'Erembert*, *Nonigentum Erembertium*, according to the report of the French Historiographer *Du Chesne*, and is remarkable for the Death of King *Philip* of *Valois*, which happen'd there on the 22d day of *April*, A. D. 1350.

*Dreux*, *Droctum*, the chief Town of a County of the same name, is seated on the River, at the foot of a Hill, on which is erected a Castle, formerly well fortified, but now half ruin'd. It is a very ancient Town, and said to be built by *Dauis* a King of the *Gauls*. It is distant about 20 miles from *Chartres* to the North, and 40 from *Paris* to the West. *Robert* the Son of *Lewis* the *Great*, obtain'd the County of *Dreux* in 1137, and from him are descended the Counts of this Name, as also a branch of the Family of the Dukes of *Bretagne*. This place is famous for a bloody Battle fought near it, between the French Roman Catholics and Protestants, A. D. 1672.

*P E R C H E*, *Perticus*, is bounded on the North, by *Normandy*, on the West by *Maine*, on the South by *Vendomis*, and on the East by *Brauce*. It is usually divided into the Upper, or the County and the Lower or *Perche Gault*, from the name of one of its ancient Lords. Its chief Towns are.

*Nogent-le-Rotrou*, } *Timerais*, D.  
*Mortaigne*, } *La Pierriere*.

*Nogent-le-Rotrou*, *Nonigentum Rotrudum*, olim *Novidunum* seu *Neodunum*, is situated on the River *Huifne* almost in the midst between *Chartres* to the East, and *Mans* to the West, about 33 miles from each. It is the principal Town of the upper *Perche*, and generally esteem'd the fairest throughout the whole Kingdom of *France*, and is very much enrich'd by divers sorts of Manufactures, particularly of Silks, Linnen-cloath

and Leather. The Earl of *Salisbury* took this place during the Wars betwixt the English and the French in the XVth Century, and caus'd many of the Inhabitants to be Hang'd; but the French King *Charles VII.* recover'd it, A. D. 1449.

*Mortaigne*, *Moritania*, stands on a Hill and a Brook, which begins to form the River *Huifne*, or *Huifne*, about 8 miles from the Frontiers of *Normandy*, and 40 from *Chartres* to the West. It is a very pleasant Town, and adorn'd with divers fair Churches, a Castle, &c.

*Timerais*, *Timerensis Pagus*, is a Town on the Confines of *Normandy*, 30 miles from *Nogent*, bearing the title of a Principality.

*L E M A I N E*, *Ager Medunus*, hath *Normandy* for its Northern Bounds, *Perche*, *Vendome*, and *Brauce* on the East, *Bretagne* on the West, and *Anjou* on the South. It is usually divided into the Upper and Lower, and contains these chief Towns, viz.

*Mans*, Bish. } *La Ferte Bernard*.  
*Mayenne*, D. } *Sable*.  
*Laval*. } *Beaumont-le-Vicomte*.  
                                 *Coateau-du-Loire*, &c.

*Mans*, *Cenomenum* olim, ut & *Vindinum*, is situate on the Confluence of the *Sarte* and the *Huifne*, about 60 miles from *Chartres* to the East, 25 from the Confines of *Normandy* to the South, and 40 from *Tours* to the North. It is a very ancient City, but hath been much more considerable than it is at present: For *Aimoin* assures us, that under *Charlemagne* it was one of the most flourishing of *Gallia Belgica*; since which time, the Incursions of the *Normans*, the Wars of the *English*, and the frequent Conflagrations it hath suffer'd, have so far defac'd its Beauty, that it hath often chang'd its Form. However, a Presidial Court is held therein, and it is as yet the See of a Prelate Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Tours*. The Cathedral Church was at first dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, afterward to *S. Grevaee*, and at length to *S. Julian*, who was the first Bishop of this Diocels.

*Mayenne*, *Maduna*, is pleasantly seated on a River of the same name, 15 miles from the Frontiers of *Normandy*, and 35 from *Mans* to the North-west. This Town formerly bore the title of a Marquitate and was afterwards erected into a Duchy, and given to the Family of *Guise*.

*Laval*, or *Laval-Guion*, *Lavallium* aut *Vallis Guidonis*, is situated on the River *Mayenne*, about 16 miles below *Mayenne*, and 15 from the Confines of *Anjou*, to the North. It appertains to the Noble Family of *Trimouille*, and is chiefly remarkable for its Manufacture of Linnen-cloth.

*La Ferte-Bernard*, *Firmitas Bernardi*, is a large Town, built on the side of the River *Huifne*, near the Frontiers of *Perche*. It is distant 25 miles from *Mans* to the East. A Court of Justice is held therein at certain times.

The Duchy of *ANJOU* borders on *Maine* to the North, *Bretagne* to the West, *Poitou* to the South, and *Touraine* to the East, including about 30 Leagues in length, and 20 in breadth. It affords vast quantities of excellent Wine, and Quarries of Slate, with which all the Houses are cover'd, and is water'd with 36 Rivers, the chief of which are the *Loire*, the *Sarte*, the *Loire*, the *Mayenne*, the *Dive*, the *Vienne*, the *Touay*, the *Larion*, the *Eure*, and the *Guinate*, besides so great a number of Lakes, Ponds, Brooks, and Springs, that some are of opinion, that the name of *Anjou* is deriv'd from *Aiguade*, signifying Water. This Province was given by *Charles the Bald* to *Robert* of *Saxony*, A. D. 870, with the Title of Earl of *Anjou*, whole



whose Son *Eudes* was King of *France*, and his Great Grandson *Hug Capet*, began the third Race of those Monarchs. *Hug* the Great Father of *Hug Capet*, gave it to *Gertrude Greyhounde*, *A. D.* 926, whose Grandson added to it the Province of *Tourain* by Conquest, and his Descendant *Frank III.* obtained that of *Maine* also by Marriage *A. D.* 1033. Which *Frank* was Father to *Gertrude* the Husband of *Matilda*, Daughter to our King *Henry I.* who contended with *Stephen* for the Crown of *England*, which her Son *Henry II.* enjoyed, and added to it their Estates, which continued part of the Demains of the English Crown till the time of King *John*, when *Philip Augustus* the French King seized it, *A. D.* 1202. And it is now an Appenage of the Second Son of *France*. It is usually divided into Upper and Lower, *Angers* being the Capital of the former, and *Saumur* of the latter. The chief Towns are,

<i>Angers</i> , Bish.	}	<i>Beaune</i> .
<i>Saumur</i> .		<i>Chateaux</i> .
<i>La Flèche</i> .		<i>Chateau-Gontier</i> .
<i>La Loue</i> .		<i>Mont de Co.</i> <i>Beaufort</i> .

*Angers*, *Andegatum*, olim *Fallemagus*, is seated very pleasantly and in a good Air at the Confluence of the Rivers *Mayne* and *Sarthe*, and the upper Stream of the *Loire*, being distant only one League from the great Stream of the *Loire* to the North, 25 miles from *Saumur* to the West, 40 from *Nantes* to the East, and 55 from *Mans* to the South-west. The greater part of the Town, properly called the City, is built on the side of a pleasant Hill, on which stands the Castle, built on a Rock, flanked with 15 large round Towers and a Half-moon, and encompassed with a broad-flat-bottomed Ditch, cut out of the same Rock on the side of the River, from whence all necessary provisions are drawn up with Engines. The City is large, well-built and Populous, and hath a good Trade, which consists chiefly in White-wines, whereof the best in *France* are made in this Province. The Cathedral Dedicated to *St. Maurice*, is a Beautiful Building, and remarkable for its three high Steeples over the Gate, its Body supported without Pillars, and its exceeding rich Treasure. There are also 15 other Parochial Churches, three Abbies, &c. Those of *St. Martin*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Sergius*, and a great number of Monasteries, Seminaries, &c. The Episcopal See depends on the Metropolitan of *Tours*. The Civil Government of the City is administered by the Mayor, and 24 Escheviers or Aldermen. The University here was founded by *Levis II.* Duke of *Anjou*, *A. D.* 1358, and is now in flourishing state, and contains divers Colleges, of which that of the *Port du Fer* and the *Oratory* are most noted.

*Saumur*, *Samurum*, ant *Salmurium*, olim *Traneum*, is seated on the River *Loire*, over which it hath a long Stone-bridge, at the distance of 25 miles from *Anjou* to the East, 17 from *Mans* to the South, and 30 from *Tours* to the East. The situation of the place is very delightful, and on that account very much admired by Strangers. The Town is adorned with a stately Castle well fortified; the Church of *Archeviers*, wherein the Fathers of the *Oratory* officiate and have a College is the most notable in the Town. Here was formerly a famous Protestant Academy, well filled with Students, not only of Natives, but also young Gentlemen out of *England*, *Germany*, and *Sweden*; but since the Persecution this hath been destroy'd.

*La Flèche*, *Flaxis*, stands on the Banks of the up-

per stream of the *Loire* in the Upper *Anjou*, near the Confines of *Maine*, being distant 30 miles from *Saumur* to the North, 28 from *Angers* to the North-East, and about 25 from *Mans* to the South. In this Town is a magnificent College of *Jesuits*, founded in the year 1623, by King *Henry IV.* containing three Courts, and as many Rows of Apartments, capable of entertaining a Prince. Here is also a Castle, in the Chapel whereof is interr'd the Heart of King *Henry IV.*

*Beaune*, *Beaunum*, is seated in a fertile Country near the Bridge of *Ce* over the *Loire*, about 12 miles from *Angers* to the South. It is a Town of small compass, nevertheless dignified with the Title of a Dutchy, erected in favour of *Charles de Colly* Marshal of *France*. It is also adorn'd with a fair Castle, a spacious Park, a Pond extending almost a League in length, &c.

*VENDOMOIS*, a very small Country, lyes between *Perche* on the North, *Maine* on the West, *Touraine* on the South, and *Blaisois* on the East. It is a very small Province, not above 20 miles in Extent, and contains not many Towns, the chief are.

*Vendôme*, *Mentoire*.

*Vendôme*, *Vindocinum*, is situate on the River *Loire* 25 miles from *Chateaux-Dun* to the South-west, 25 from *Breis*, to the North-west, and 30 from *Orleans* to the West. It is defended with an Old Castle, and bears the Title of a Dutchy, whereof *Charles of Bourlen*, Grand-Father to *Henry IV.* was the first Duke. A College of the Fathers of the *Oratory*, and some other Religious Houses, are founded here.

*Mentoire*, stands also on the *Loire*, about 12 miles below *Vendôme*, and is a good Town, but of no great Note.

*POICTOU*, a large Province, is bounded on the East by *Berry*, *Limosin*, and *Touraine*; on the North by *Anjou* and *Bretagne*, on the West by the Ocean, and on the South by *Angoumois* and *Naintonge*. It is usually divided into the Upper to the East, and the Lower to the West, and is a very fruitful Country, supplied also with plenty of Fish from the Neighbouring Sea, and Venison from the Inland Forests. It is also beset with many fair Towns, and Villages, the chief of which are these, viz.

<i>Poitiers</i> , Bish.	}	{	<i>Richelieu</i> .
<i>Luçon</i> , Bish.			<i>Niort</i> .
<i>Chateaufort</i> .			<i>Rochefort</i> .
<i>Maillezais</i> .			<i>Fontevault</i> .
<i>Lusignan</i> .			<i>Thouars</i> .
<i>Loudun</i> .			<i>Parthancy</i> .
<i>Fontenay</i> .			<i>St. Maixent</i> , &c.
<i>Mirabeau</i> .			

*Poitiers*, *Pictavium*, olim *Limonum*, one of the most ancient and largest Cities of the Kingdom, but not proportionably Opulent, there being Corn-fields and Meadows within the Walls. It is seated on a rising Ground between the River *Chain*, which falls into the *Vienne*, and another Rivulet that springs out of a large Pond, and is joyned to the former at the Eastern end of the Town, near the Gate of *S. Lazare*, where stands an old Castle, together with some remains of an Amphitheatre, and other Roman Monuments. It is an Episcopal See, dependant on the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*. Besides the Cathedral, sup-



pos'd to be founded by *St. Martial*, and dedicated to *St. Peter*, there are 24 Parochial Churches, five Abbies, and a great number of other Monasteries. Here is also a University, Founded by King *Charles VII.* *A. D.* 1431. *Poitiers* is a Seneschaley subordinate to the Parliament of *Paris*, besides which Court, here is also a Presidial and a Generality. The Civil Government is administr'd by a Mayor, 12 Echevins or Aldermen, and 12 sworn Counsellors: The Mayor bears the Title of a Captain and Governor of *Poitiers*, and the Privilege of Nobility and many other Honours and Advantages are granted by the French Kings, to the Person that enjoys this dignity. The City is distant 28 miles from the River *Loire* to the South, 100 from *Orleans* to the South-west, 65 from *Angers* to the South-east, 90 from the Sea-coast to the East, 70 from *Saintes* to the North-east, and about 100 from *Bomges* to the West.

*Lucen*, or *Lusson*, *Lucione*, is a City of a very small Compais, and destitute of Walls, situated in a Marish Ground, near the Confines of the Country of *Anis*, at the distance of about six miles from the Ocean, 20 from *Mailleçais*, and 70 from *Poitiers* to the West. Pope *John XXII.* establish'd its Episcopal See, changing an Abbey of the *Benedictine* Order into a Cathedral, *A. D.* 1317. One *Lucius* is reported to have founded the Abbey and given name to the City.

*Mailleçais*, *Mailleacum*, is a small City or Town, built on an Island form'd amidst the Marishes, by the Rivers *Saône* and *Autise*, being distant 30 miles from *Rochel* to the North-East, and 50 from *Poitiers* to the South-west. It was heretofore the Place of Residence of the Counts of *Boitou* and Dukes of *Guienne*, but at present is not much inhabited by reason of the unwholesomeness of the Air. The Abbey of *Mailleçais*, was also erected into an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*, by Pope *John XXII.* in the year 1317. but *Innocent X.* caus'd it to be suppress'd *A. D.* 1649. and translated it to *Rochel*.

*Lusignan*, *Lusignanum*, stands on the Banks of the *Tenne*, near 20 miles from *Poitiers* to the South-west, on the Road to *Rochel* and *Bordeaux*. This Town is more especially famous for the Valour of its Illustrious Lords, who were Kings of *Cyprus*, *Jerusalem*, and *Armenia*. The Castle of *Lusignan* some time esteem'd as Impregnable, was surpriz'd by Mr. *Troligni*, for the French Protestants, *A.* 1569. But the Prince of *Montpensier*, retook it, after a Siege of eight Months, in 1574. and dismantled its Fortifications.

*Chateaufort*, a good Town on the River *Vienne*, about 20 miles from *Poitiers* to the North, and on the Road to *Bois* and *Paris*, hath the Title of a Dukedom, sometimes possess'd by the *Hamiltons* of *Scotland*, at present by *Mademoiselle Montpensier* the King's Aunt.

*Richelieu*, *Richellum*, aut *Ricollum*, formerly a small Village; but this being the Place of Birth of that great Minister of State Cardinal *Richelieu*, he Rebuilt it and adorned it with a stately Palace and an Academy, and obtain'd it to be erected into a Dukedom and Peerage. It is seated on a little Rivulet that falls into the *Vienne*, and is distant 16 miles from *Chateaufort* to the West, and 28 from *Poitiers* to the North.

*Loudun*, is a considerable wall'd Town, and gives name to the Country about it: It hath a Castle, which with the Town, hath a particular Governor. Here is a Nunnery of *Urscillines*, famous not many years ago, for the Imposture the Nuns were guilty of, in pretending themselves Bewitch'd by the Curate of the

Parish, whom they barbarously caus'd to be Executed. This Town stands about 10 miles from *Richelieu* to the West, and 20 from *Saumur* to the South-East.

The small Country of *ACNIS*, *Abensis*, *Ainensis*, aut *Ainiensis Tractus*, lies to the South of *Poitiers*, and to the East of *Saintonge* proper, whereof it is a part, and bounded on the West by the Ocean, and the Islands of *Re* and *Oleron*: Its principal Towns are these, viz.

*Rochel*, Bish. } *Marans*,  
*Rochefort*, } *Brouage*.

*ROCHEL*, *Rupella* olim *Portus Santonum* hath been always a very considerable Port and Mart-town; it is distant only two Leagues from the Island of *Re*, 4 from that of *Oleron*, 10 miles from the Confines of *Poitou* to the South, about 30 from *Saintes* to the North-West, and 70 from *Poitiers* to the South-West. This City, being the chief Seat of the Protestants, suffer'd much during the Civil Wars of *France*, and was often valiantly defended, and long possess'd by that Party, till at length *Louis XIII.* after a long and famous Siege made himself Master of it in the year 1628, chiefly by the means of an admirable Rampart or Bank of Earth, which Cardinal *Richelieu* caus'd to be rais'd against it on the side of the Ocean: After it was taken, the King caus'd the Walls and Fortifications to be demolish'd, except only two Towers, which defend the Port. Afterward, in 1649, the Episcopal See of *Mailleçais* was removed thither; the Island of *Re*, together with many other neighbouring Places, to the number of about 100 Towns and Villages, being taken from the Diocesis of *Saintonge* and added to this, as appears by the Consistorial Decree made on that occasion.

*Rochefort*, *Rupifortium*, hath a convenient Harbour at the Mouth of the River *Charante*, capable of receiving Men of War: It was at first only a small Village, but for the sake of its Port hath of late been wall'd round and fortified with strong Bastions and Ramparts, and some of the smaller of the King's Ships of War being laid up here, a Magazine is kept well stored with all sorts of Ammunition for their Service, and an Hospital built for infirm Sea-men. This Town is distant about 5 miles from the Sea-coasts, and 15 from *Rochel* to the South.

*Brouage*, *Braagium*, formerly call'd *Jacquez Ville*, *Jacobopolis* is a small Town and Port, very well fortified, and seated in a Marsh, near the Salt-works, being distant almost 3 Leagues from the Mouth of the *Charante* to the South, 8 from *Rochel*, 4 from *Royan*, and 8 from *Saintes*, to the West.

*ANGOUMOIS*, lyes on the South of *Poitou*, and is bounded on the West by *Saintonge*, on the South by *Perigord*, and on the East by *Lymosin* and *La Marche*, being extended 50 miles in length, and about 35 in breadth; The chief Towns in it are.

*Angoulesme*, Bish. } *Rochefoucaut*,  
*Cognac*, } *Jarnac*.

*Angoulesme*, *Engolisma*, aut *Inculisma*, olim *Ratiastum*, is seated on the top of a Hill, near the River *Charante*, about 50 miles from *Poitiers* to the S. 30 from *Saintes* to the E. and 40 from *Limoges* to the W. It is a very ancient City, adorn'd with the Titles of a Duchy and Seneschaley, and hath a Presidial and Election. It is also an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*; and is well fortified with a strong



strong Castle and other Bulwarks, so that it is accessible only on one side. In the adjacent Fields is to be seen a Spring, from whence issueth a Torrent of Waters, as it were a River, &c.

*Rocquencourt, Rupes Fucaldi, & Rupe Fucaldum*, is a small Town and Castle on the Rivulet of *Tardovere*, about 15 miles from *Angouleme* to the N. E. It bears the Title of a Duchy, and hath imparted its name to one of the most ancient and noble Families of France, from whence have sprung divers Branches, &c.

*Fontenay, Farniacum & Farniacum* stands on the Banks of the *Creuse*, almost in the midst between *Angouleme* to the E. and *Saumur* to the W. This little Town is famous for a memorable Battle fought between the Duke of *Burgundy*, afterward King *Henry III.* and the Prince of *Condé*, on the 15th of May 1569, wherein the latter was slain.

*TOURAIN* lies on the North-East of *Poitou*, between *Normandy*, *Britany*, and *Berry*. It bears the Title of a Duchy, and its extent is about 60 miles from N. to S. and 30 from E. to W. The fertility of its Soil, especially in *France*, makes it be call'd the Garden of France. Many Rivers pass through it, as the *Loire*, the *Cher*, the *Indre*, the *Vienne*, &c. The most remarkable Towns of this Province are,

*Tours*, Archb. } *Leves*,  
                  } *Crémon*, &c.

*TOURS*, *Turones*, *Turo* & *Turonica Urbs*, olim *Civitas Turonorum*, is situate in a fruitful Country on the S. side of the River *Loire*, over which it hath a very beautiful long stone Bridge, at a little distance from the North side of the *Cher*. It is a large well built City, and the See of an Archbishop. The Publick Places, Streets, and Houses are fair, and the Cathedral, dedicated to *St. Gratian* its first Prelate, deserves well to be viewed by Travellers: The Church of *St. Martin*, together with some other Parochial ones, are stately Places of Building. This City is a Place of very good Trade, and therefore rich and populous, the Silks manufactured here being sent into many foreign Parts. A General, and Presidial Court are established here. It is situated, as hath been said, on the River *Loire*, and is distant 30 miles from *Vendôme* to the S. 30 from *Le Mans* to the N. 50 from *Angers* to the E. 30 from *Blois*, and 60 from *Orléans* to the S. W.

*Amboise, Ambasia, Ambasia & Ambasia's Vicus*, is situate also on the *Loire*, at the distance of 15 miles E. from *Tours*, and 20 from *Blois* to the S. W. This Town is likewise adorned with a fair Bridge over the *Loire*, and a large Castle built on an Hill, where the French Monarchs have often retired, and in which King *Charles VIII.* was born in the year 1470, and died in 1498.

*Loches, Loches*, and *Locha*, stands on the River *Indre*, about 20 miles from *Ambroise* to the S. and 25 from *Tours* to the S. E. It is a good Town and hath a Castle, wherein King *Charles VII.* usually resided. *Louis XI.* added divers Apartments to it, and caused a Tower to be built, wherein for a long while he kept his brother as Base Prisoner; and in the same Place *Louis XII.* confined *Louis XI.* who died there, and was buried in the Church of the Virgin Mary. A Royal Court depending on the Presidial of *Tours* is held here. The Territory adjacent was the Patrimony of the first Dukes of *Burgundy*.

*Crémon, Crémus, & Crémusium* formerly a Village, is at present a neat Town seated on the River *Vienne*, and hath a Castle built on the top of a Hill, about 30

miles from *Tours* to the S. W. and 20 from *Saumur* to the E. Here is a Collegiate Church, dedicated to *St. Mesme*, the Canons whereof are immediately subject to the Pope. The French King *Charles VII.* retir'd to this Town, when our Kings *Henry V.* and *VI.* had possession of *Paris*; and it was here that *Joan d'Arc*, commonly call'd the *Maid of Orleans*, already mentioned, addressed her self to that King. Our King *Henry II.* died here A. D. 1189. And if it be worth mentioning, *Francis Rabelais* was born here.

*BERRY*, *Bituricensis Provincia*, bears the Title of a Duchy, and is a Province of larger extent than those we have last mentioned, being 90 miles from N. to S. and 70 from E. to W. It is bounded on the W. by *Touraine*, on the N. by *Orleanois* and *Gastinois*, on the E. by the River *Loire*, and on the S. by *La Marche*. The River *Cher* passes through it, the *Indre* hath its Source in it, as have also many other smaller ones. The Soil is exceeding fertile, and the Inhabitants are noted Artists in making a certain sort of thick Cloth, which is thence call'd *Drap de Berry*. Its ancient People, the *Bituriges*, were famous heretofore for their Conquests, and obstinate Resistance of the *Romans*. This Province was for some Ages subject to its own Count, but being bought and united to the Crown by King *Philip*, it hath often since been an Appenage of the Sons of *France*, as it is at present to the third Son of the *Dauphine*. The most remarkable Towns here are,

*Bourges*, Archb. } *S. Aignan*,  
*Chateau-Roux*, } *Dun le Roi*,  
*Ifféoudin*, } *Sancerre*,  
*Le Blanc*, } *Henrichmont*,  
*Argenson*, } *Valencay*, &c.

*Bourges*, *Biturix*, *Bituriges* & *Biturica*, aliàs *Avaricum Biturigonum*, is situated about the middle of *France*, on the Rivers of *Auron* and *Eure*, or *Yerre*, at the distance of 50 miles from *Tours* to the E. 50 from *Orléans* to the S. 30 from *Nevers* to the W. and 60 from the Borders of *La Marche* to the N. It is a large City, dignified with the Titles of a Metropolitan See and Patriarchate, besides a famous University, a Bailiage, a Presidial Court, a Generality, &c. It is also a place of great Antiquity, for it is reputed to have been already founded in the XI VII Olympiad, and A. D. C. 164. about 590 years before the Nativity of *Jesus Christ*. *Titus Livius* assures us, that under the Reign of *Tarquinius Priscus* King of the *Romans*, the Monarchy of the *Celte* was fix'd in this Metropolis of *Bourges*, whereof *Ambigatus* was then the Sovereign. *Julius Caesar* made himself Master of it A. D. C. 702 52 years before the Christian Æra, and of 40000 Inhabitants scarcely saved 800, the rest being put to the Sword. It was afterward the Capital City of the *Aquitania prima*, under *Augustus*. The *Visigoths* pillaged it in the fifth Century, and they were subdued by King *Clovis*; then it fell into the possession of *Cicodimir*, and at length of *Gontran* King of *Orléans*. *Chilperic* took it A. C. 583. and caused it to be almost entirely burnt: But it hath been since re-established at several times, more especially under *Charlemagne*, and it is now a well built and flourishing City. It was possessed by its own Counts till the time of *Philip King of France*, to whom Count *Herpin* sold it with the rest of the County.

*Chateau-Roux, Castrum Rufum* aur *Castrum Radulphum*, is a considerable Town, bearing the Title of Duchy, on the River *Indre*, about 30 miles from *Bourges*.



*Bourges* to the S. W. Its Castle was built by one *Raoul*, whence it is called *Chateau-Raoul*, and corruptly *Chateau-Roux*. Here are a Collegiate and four Parochial Churches, also a Park, appertaining to Monsieur the Prince. It is a place of good Trade, many sorts of Manufactures being made in it.

*Iffoudun*, *Exelodunum*, *Exolidunum*, *Exfoldunum*, & alias *Ernodurus*, is water'd by the Rivulet of *Thior* or *Thee*, and seated in the mid-way between *Bourges* and *Chateau-Roux*. It is fortified with a strong Castle, firm Walls and deep Ditches; and is remarkable for its Traffick in Wool and Kid's-leather Gloves. It is adorned with divers magnificent Structures, particularly the Royal Palace, the Court of Justice, the Church of *St. Stephen*, the Convent of *Benedictines*, &c. This Town was one of the twenty burnt by *Cesar* in one Day.

*Argenson*, *Argantomagum* & *Argentomagum*, stands on the Confines of the Province of *la Marche* and the Banks of the *Creuse*, 40 miles from *Bourges* to the S. W. This Town hath for its defence a fair Castle, flank'd with 10 Towers, one whereof was built by the Emperor *Heraclius*, and on which is carved the Figure of an Ox with this Device of *Cesar*; *Veni, Vidi, Vici*. The other Towns are less considerable.

*NIVERNONIS*, *Ager Nivernensis*, is extended along the East Banks of the *Loire*, between *Burgundy*, *Bourbonnois*, and *Berry*, for the space of about 50 miles from N. to S. and 35 from E. to W. including these principal Towns, viz.

<i>Nevers</i> , Bish.	} <i>Dunzi</i> ,		
<i>La Charite</i> ,		} <i>Clamecy</i> .	
<i>S. Pierre le Moutier</i> ,			} <i>Vizelay</i> , &c.
<i>Decise</i> ,			

*Nevers*, *Nivernum*, *Nivernium* & *Niverna*, olim *Nviadunum Vadicassium*, is situated on the *Loire*, near its confluence with the *Allier*, and the Rivulet of *Nieure*, almost in the midst between *Paris*, to the N. and *Lyons* to the S. about 120 miles from both, as also 30 from *Bourges* to the E. and 20 from the Confines of *Gastinois* to the S. It was heretofore the Capital City of the *Vadicasses*, and *Julius Cesar* thought fit to make choice of it for a Magazine for his Army. It bore the Title of a County under the first Race of the French Monarchs, and was erected into a Duchy by *Charles VII.* in the year 1457. It is also the See of a Bishop Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Sens*, and the Seat of a Chamber of Accounts, together with a Bailliage under the Jurisdiction of the Presidial Court of *S. Pierre le Moutier*. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to *S. Cyres*. There are also 11 Parochial Churches, divers Religious Houses, and a stately Stone Bridge of 20 Arches, over the River *Loire*. *Nevers* is also famous on account of the great quantities of Glass, white Iron, and fine Earthen Ware there made. In this City died *John Casimir* King of *Poland*, on the 16th day of *December*, A. D. 1672.

*La Charite*, *Charitas*, took its name from the great Liberality which the Monks of *Cluny* exercised in times past toward poor People and Pilgrims; it is seated on the side of an Hill near the *Loire*, over which River here is a fair Stone Bridge, 15 miles below *Nevers* to the N. and 25 from *Bourges* to the E. It is adorn'd with a large Market-place, divers Churches and a very rich Priory of the *Cluniack* Order. This Town suffered much damage during the *English* Wars in *France*, and more in that of the *French* Protestants, by whom it was often taken and retaken in the years 1562, 1563, &c.

*Decise*, *Decetia*, is a small Town on the same River *Loire*, which with the Rivulet *Airon*, that falls into it at the East end of the Town, form a sort of an Island. Here is a good Castle belonging to the Duke of *Nevers*, and a fair Bridge over the River. This Town is distant 20 miles from *Nevers* to the South-East, and belongs to the Duke of *Nevers*.

*GASTINOIS*, *Vastinium*, & *Vastiniensis Pagus*, lies between *Nivernois*, *Berry*, *Orleanois*, *Beauce*, *Isle of France*, *Champagne* and *Burgundy*. It hath its name from the Rocks and sandy places in it, which the Inhabitants call *Gastines*. The extent of this Province is near 60 miles from N. to S. and 45 from E. to W. But part of it as we have said, belongs to the Government of the *Isle of France*, and was spoken of there; the other part hath these Towns of chief Note.

<i>Montargis</i> ,	} <i>Gien</i> ,	
<i>Estampes</i> ,		} <i>Chateau</i> ,
<i>S. Fargeau</i> ,		

*Montargis*, *Montargium*, aut *Mons Argi*, is a neat Town, pleasantly situated at the Foot of a Hill, and the Banks of the River *Loing*, at the distance of 55 miles from *Paris* to the S. and 40 from *Orleans* to the E. It is fenced with an old Castle, that *Charles V.* caused to be repair'd, and which was besieged by the *English* Forces, A. D. 1426. The Town was burnt in 1528. and after rebuilt with greater magnificence.

*Estampes*, *Stampæ*, stands on the side of the *Yvine*, commonly called from thence the River *Etampes*, in a very fruitful Country, near the Confines of the *Isle of France*, 30 miles from *Paris* to the S. as many from *Chartres* to the E. and about 25 from *Montargis* to the N. W. It is beautified with a Collegiate Church and divers Monasteries, and enjoys the Title of a Duchy, and belongs to the ancient Demesns of the Crown. King *Robert* founded a Castle here; and the Town was formerly fortified, but dismantled by King *Henry IV.* A. D. 1589.

*Gien*, *Genabum*, is a small Town on the *Loire*, over which River it hath a Stone-Bridge below the Canal of *Briare*. It stands 35 miles above *Orleans* to the E. and 28 from *Montargis* to the S.

The principal ISLANDS that lie over against *Orleanois* in general, more especially the County of *Aunis*, are these, viz.

<i>Oleron</i> ,	} <i>Nermoutier</i> ,	
<i>Re or Oye</i> ,		} <i>Armot</i> , &c.
<i>Isle-dieu</i> ,		

*OLERON*, *Uliarins*, is an Island situated on the Coast of the Province of *Saintonge*, over against the mouth of the River *Charante*, about 4 Leagues from thence to the W. It is extended from N. to S. for the space of 15 miles, but is not above 4 or 5 miles in breadth, and between 30 and 40 in compass. The Soil is very fruitful, and produces good Corn; abundance of Rabbits are caught here.

On the Northern part of the Island is erected a very strong Fortress, called the *Castle of Oleron*, which is distant a League and a half from the mouth of the River *Seure* to the W. 3 from the *Isle of Re* to the S. and 6 from the City of *Rochel* to the S. W.

The Island of *Re*, *Rea*, olim *Reacus*, lies before the Coasts of the Country of *Aunis*, only 2 Leagues from thence, and 3 from *Rochel* to the W. containing many Towns



Towns or Burghs; the chief of which are those of *S. Martin* and *Oye*, called the *Ile*, by reason of a Channel, over which one must pass to enter into it. The most considerable Fort is that of *la Parce*, containing 4 Bastions, with half-Moons and other Outworks, which have been improved and increased since the late War begun. Here is a high Tower, on which Lights are kept a nights for the direction of Ships. The Cannon of this Fort commands the Land over against it, as well as the Sea all round it. This Island affords great quantities of Wine and Salt, especially the latter, for the making whereof, this is the chief place in the whole Kingdom.

*ISLE-DIEU*, *Isula Dei*, lies over against the Town of *S. Gilles*, in the Province of *Poitou*, about 3 Leagues from the Coasts of that Province.

The Island of *NERMOUTIER* lies over against *S. Urbain* in *Poitou*, and is distant two large Leagues from the Continent: On it is founded a rich Convent, &c.

Though the *Orleannois* be call'd one of the Governments of *France*, yet it is divided among nine Governors General, independent of one another, viz. I. The

*Orleannois* proper. *Blaisois*, *Beauce*, and *Vendomois*; under whom are three Lieutenant-Generals: Also a particular Governor of the City of *Orleans*. II. *Poitou* hath a Governor General, two Lieutenant-Generals, and two Seneschals, besides particular Governors in *Poitiers*, *Loudun*, and *Niort*. III. *Anjou*, a Governor General, and under him are one Lieutenant-General, one Seneschal, and particular Governors in *Angers* and *Pont de Ce*. IV. The *Saumurois* with its Dependances, *Richelieu*, and *Marabeau* is another Government, which hath one Lieutenant-General. V. *Touraine* also hath a Governor General, a Lieutenant-General, two Bailiffs, and particular Governors of *Tours* and *Amboise*. VI. The Country of *Aunis*, *Rochele*, *Brouage*, in *Saintoigne*, the Isles of *Re*, *Oleron*, &c. have a Governor General, a Lieutenant-General, a Seneschal, and particular Governors of *Rochele* and *Brouage*. VII. The Provinces of *Maine* and *Perche*, have another Governor General, a Lieutenant-General, and a Seneschal. VIII. The Governor General of *Berry*, under whom are a Lieutenant-General and a Seneschal. And lastly, the *Nevers* hath a Governor, with a Lieutenant-General.

## C H A P. VIII.

### LA BOURGOGNE, or BURGUNDY, *Burgundia*.

Under the Name of *BURGUNDY* is comprehended, at present, the *Lower*, or *Dutchy* of *Burgundy*, the *Upper*, or *County* of *Burgundy*, *Bresse*, *Beugey*, the *County* of *Gex*, and the *Principality* of *Dombes*, which are bounded on the North by *Champagne* and *Lorraine*, on the South by *Lyonnois* and *Dauphine*, on the East by *Mount Jura* to the *Rhône*, and on the West by *Nivernois* and *Bourbonnois*.

*Burgundy* in General divided into these parts, viz.

The Lower Burgundy, or Dutchy in 9 small Provinces.	1. <i>Dijonnois</i> , Chief Town.	<i>Dijon</i> , Cap.
	2. <i>Autunois</i> ,	<i>Autun</i> , Bish.
	3. <i>Chalonnois</i> ,	<i>Chalon</i> , Bish.
	4. <i>Auxois</i> ,	<i>Semur</i> ,
	5. <i>Auxerrois</i> ,	<i>Auxerre</i> , Bish.
	6. <i>Charolais</i> ,	<i>Charolais</i> ,
	7. <i>Briennois</i> ,	<i>Semur</i> ,
	8. <i>Maconnois</i> ,	<i>Macon</i> , Bish.
	9. The mountainous Country.	<i>Châtillon</i> .

The County of Burgundy in 3 Bailiages, viz. <i>Bresse</i> , <i>Beugey</i> , The County of <i>Gex</i> , The Principality of <i>Dombes</i> .	1. The Middle Bailiage, or of <i>Dole</i> .	<i>Bezançon</i> , Archb. Cap.
	2. The Bailiage of <i>Amont</i> .	<i>Iseul</i> ,
	3. The Bailiage of <i>Aval</i> .	<i>Polygny</i> , <i>Bourg</i> , <i>Belley</i> , Bish., <i>Gex</i> , <i>Troux</i> .

The *DUTCHY* of *Burgundy* is bounded on the East by the *County* of *Burgundy*, on the North by *Champagne*, on the West by *Bourbonnois* and *Nivernois*, and on the South by *Dauphine* and *Lyonnois*. Its largest extent from South to North consists of about 110 English miles, that is to say, from

below *Macon* as far as *Chateau Vilain* in *Champagne*, and of 90 miles from East to West, viz. from beyond *Auxonne* to the Frontiers of *Gatinou*, lying between the 46th and 48th degree of Latitude, &c. This Province is very considerable on the account of its Largeness, Situation and Fertility, being commonly call'd, the Magazine of Corn, Wine, Hay, Wood, &c. affording also many Iron Mines, and Springs of Mineral Waters. And indeed, it contributes very much to the subsistence of the City of *Paris*, and almost entirely maintains that of *Lyon*. It is water'd with a great number of Rivers; the *Seine* takes its rise here, near a Village named *Sainte Seine*; the *Saone* passeth through the Eastern part, and receives into its Chanel the streams of the *Dekune*, augmented with those of the *Burfare*, the *Ouche*, and the *Tille*, besides divers other lesser Rivulets and Brooks. On the Western the *Loire* divides *Burgundy* from *Bourbonnois*, and receives into it the *Reconce*, the *Brevince*, the *Arroux*, &c. The *Yonne* is there joined to the *Coussin* or *Avalon*, the *Serein* or *Serin*, and the *Armeison*, into which flow the *Brenne*, the *Oserain*, and the *Oze*, all which Rivers have their Source in this Province.

The County of *DIJONNOIS* Ager, *Dijonnois*, contains these more remarkable Towns, viz.

<i>Dijon</i> , Cap.	} S. Jean de-Laune, Cîteaux, Abb. &c.
<i>Beaune</i> ,	
<i>Auxonne</i> ,	

*Dijon*, *Divio* & *Divionum*, is seated on the Rivers *Ouche*, and *Suzen*, in the Diocess of *Langres*, from which City it is distant 32 miles to the South, 85 from *Sens*, and 140 from *Paris* to the South-East, 105 from *Lyon* to the North, 80 from *Nevers* to the East, 45 from *Bezançon*, and 15 from the *Saone* to the West. This



This Town is suppos'd to have been first founded about A. C. 220. It is of a large extent and well-built; the Walls are strong and surrounded with Towers and Bastions, and the Castle flanked with four large Towers and two Ravelins. The most considerable publick Buildings are, the Church of the *Carthusians*, adorn'd with magnificent Tombs of the Dukes, the Hall of Justice, the Royal Palace, and the Town-house, besides 16 other Churches, two Abbies and five Hospitals. The States of the Country are usually assembled here every three years. Besides the Court of Parliament held in this Town, here are a Chamber of Accounts, and a Presidial Court.

*Beaune, Belna & Belnum*, is seated on the small River *Bourgesse* and other Brooks that run through the Town at the distance of 10 miles from the River *Saone* to the West, 20 from *Dijon* to the South, and 18 from *Challons* to the North, and lies on the Road betwixt these two Towns. The Antiquities of this place prove it to have been a *Roman* Work. It is well-built, the Seat of a Bailiage, and the Capital of a small Territory, thence call'd the Country of *Beaune*, which is very fruitful, especially in an excellent sort of Wine.

*S. Jean de Laune, Fanum S. Joannis Laudonensis*, aut *Laudona*, is a small Town on the *Saone* near the Abbey of *Cisterciens*, 15 miles from *Dijon* to the South East. It was formerly fortified, and is famous for repelling the Efforts of the Imperial Army commanded by the formidable *Galas*, Charles Duke of *Lorraine*, the Marquis of *Grana*, and other Illustrious Generals, A. D. 1636.

*Citeau, Cistercium* aut *Cisterium*, is distant about six miles from *S. Jean de Laune* to the West, and 12 from *Dijon* to the South. 'Tis believed that this Village took its name from the great number of Cisterns which were dug there under ground, and hath acquired much reputation by its Abbey of *Cistercian* Monks, which Order was first instituted here; and this Abbey built, A. D. 1098. by Robert Abbot of *Molefine*, assisted by Otto I. Duke of *Burgundy*, Walter Bishop of *Citons*, and Hugh Bishop of *Lyons*. It is a Branch of the *Benedictine*, and hath its name from this Town. The Monks quickly grew numerous, and the Order so powerful, that for a long time it had a great share in the Government of *Europe*, and hath produced four Popes, several Cardinals and Bishops, and a great number of Writers. The Abbot of this House is a Counsellor of the Parliament of *Burgundy*, and general of the whole Order, whereof are said to be near 3000 Convents and Nunneries in the World.

*AUTUNNOIS*, lies on the Frontiers of *Nivernois*, and these whereof are two principal Places, viz. *Autun* Bish. and *Bourbon-Lancy*.

*Autun, Augustodunum*, olim *Bibraëte*, is situated on the River *Arreune* in the midst between *Lyon* to the South, and *Sens* to the North, 40 miles from *Dijon* to the South-West, and 50 from *Nevers* to the East. It is one of the most ancient Cities of the Kingdom, being said to have been founded by *Simothew* I. King of the *Gauls*. It was famous in the time of the *Romans*, and the Capital of the Republick of the *Ædus* or *Hadui*, which comprehended part of the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, the Countries of *Bresse*, *Lionnois*, *Beaujolois*, *Dombes*, *Nivernois*, &c. The Ruins found here of the Temple of *Janus*, now called *Le Janoye* or *Fenctoye*, the *Marebau* or *Campus Martius*, *Mont-Dru* or the Seat of the *Druides*, and *Mont-Jeu* or the Hill of *Jupiter*, besides a great number of Statues, Columns, Pyramids, Aqueducts, Triumphal Arches, &c. do also sufficiently evince its ancient Grandeur. This City is divided in-

to two parts, viz. the Upper Town cover'd by Mount *Cenis*, at the foot whereof stands a Castle, and the Lower, called *Marebau*, which is water'd by the River *Arreux*, discharging it self into the *Loire*, and affording abundance of good Fish. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Lyons* and the whole Diocess, divided into 24 Arch-Priesthoods or principal Cures, contains about 600 Parishes. The Cathedral dedicated to *St. Lazarus*, is a noble and venerable Structure; besides which, here are many other Churches, divers Abbies and Convents, particularly those of *St. Martia*, *St. Andoche*, and *St. John*. This City is also the Seat of a Bailiage.

*Bourbon-Lancy, Borbonium Anselmum*, is a very well built Town and Castle with a Bailiage, standing on the descent of one of those pleasant and fruitful Hills that surround its Territory, and is distant but two miles from the River *Loire*, which separates the Diocess of *Autun* from the Territories of *Bourbonnois*, and 25 from *Autun* to the South-west. It is a fair Town; the Castle is old, but the Walls are strong and surrounded with a Trench cut out of a Rock, insomuch that it could not be taken during the whole Civil Wars of *France*. The Mineral Waters of *Bourbon* were much commended even in the time of the *Romans*, and have been no less esteemed since the Reign of *Henry III.* who preferred them before all the others of his Kingdom.

*CHAALONNOIS, Cabillonensis Ager*, is extended along the Banks of the *Saone* in the midst of the Province and hath these chief Towns, viz.

*Chaalons*, Bish. *Verdun*, *Belle-garde*.

*Chaalons, Cabillonum*, is situated on the River *Saone*, at the distance of 20 miles from the frontiers of the County of *Burgundy* to the West, 25 from *Autun* to the East, 40 from *Dijon* to the South, and 65 from *Lyons* to the North. It is a very spacious City, the See of a Bishop Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lyons*, as also a County and Bailiage, and a Place of great Antiquity, as appears from divers Statues, Vessels and Inscriptions found therein; not to mention the remains of an Amphitheatre, and of many publick Edifices. The *Romans* were wont to keep store-houses of Corn for their Army at *Chaalons*; afterward the Emperors constituted it the general place of Rendezvous of their Forces, and the Kings of *Burgundy* took no less delight in its situation. However, it was ruin'd by *Attila*, and repaired within a little while after. The Suburbs of *S. Laurence*, are shut up within two Bridges, viz. one of Stone and the other of Timber, on an Island made by the *Saone*; and the Citadel is flanked with four Royal Bastions, whereto some new Fortifications have been lately added. The City it self is divided in the Old and the New, the latter enclosing the other, which consists only of three large Streets, where is to be seen the Palace of the Bailiage, that of the Prince, the Cathedral of *S. Vincent*, and the Town-house, besides the Parochial Churches of *S. George*, *S. Laurence*, and *S. Mary*, the Commandery of *S. Antony*, a stately College of *Jesuits*, &c. This City was taken by the French Protestants, A. D. 1562.

*Verdun, Viridunum & Verodunum*, is a small Town near the confluence of the *Doux* and the *Saone*, about 12 miles from *Chaalons* to the North East. There is another Town of this Name in *Lorraine*, the Capital of a Bailiage.

*Belle-garde, Belloguardia* stands on the Eastern Banks of the *Saone*, five Leagues from *Chaalons* to the North East,



East. and was formerly called *Seure*, but the Name was changed when King *Lewis XIII.* erected it into a Dutchy in favour of *Roger de S. Lari A. D. 1620.* It was also well fortified for some time, but its Bulwarks are now dismantled.

The *MOUNTAINOUS COUNTRY* is the North Corner of *Burgundy*, near the Spring-head of the *Seine*; its chief Towns are these,

*Châtillon sur Seine, Bar-sur-Seine, Aisei-le-duc.*

*Châtillon sur Seine, Castelle ad Sequanam.* is a fair Town and Abbey extended very far in length along the Banks of the *Seine*, about 40 miles from *Dijon* to the North-west, and 30 from *Langres* to the West. It is divided by the River into two parts, one whereof is called *Tre Burgo*, and the other *Châumons*. Here are to be seen the Ruins of an old Castle; and this Town is the Seat of the Bailly of this Country.

*Bar-sur-Seine, Barium super Sequanam*, takes its Name in like manner from its situation on the *Seine*, near the Confines of *Champagne*, about 15 miles from *Châtillon* to the North, and 15 from *Troy* to the South. It is a little Town well-built, and stands in the midst of a fruitful Country.

*AUXOIS, Alesensis Tractus*, bordering on the Frontiers of *Nivernois*, and includes these principal Towns, viz.

*Seymour, Avallon, Arnay-le-Duc, &c.*

*Semur, Semurium*, is a small Town on a Rivulet which dischargeth it self into that of *Armançon*, being distant 30 miles from *Aulun* to the North, and as many from *Dijon* to the West.

*Avallon, Ateſa*, is seated in a Plain on the River *Couſin*, 30 miles from *Auxerre* to the South, and about 40 from *Aulun* to the N. W. It is a small City, and hath a Castle and is the Seat of the Bailiage. *Robert* King of *France* took this Town by Famine after a Siege of three Months, *A. D. 1003.*

*Arnay-le-duc, Arnam ducinum*, is a very pleasant Town, near the Spring-head of the River *Arrenx*, and one of the Seats of the Bailly of *Auxois*, being distant 35 miles from *Avallon* to the South-east, and 20 from *Châtillon* to the North-west.

*AUXERROIS*, lies between *Champagne*, *Gâtinais*, *Auxois*, and *Nivernois*, and is the N. W. Corner of *Burgundy*. The Places of chiefest note are these, viz.

*Auxerre, Bish.* } *Seigneſay,*  
*Courange.* } *Cresant, &c.*

*Auxerre, Avidiodorum*, is seated on the side of a Hill in a fruitful Country, and on the banks of the River *Yonne*, where it begins to be navigable, at the distance of 70 miles from *Paris* to the South, 30 from *Sens*, and 65 from *Dijon* to the West. It is a very ancient City, 'tis said *Julian* the Apostate refreshed his Army here for sometime. *A. C. 451*, it was ruin'd by *Attila*, and King *Robert* took it from *Landri* Count of *Nevers* in 1005. Afterward it became subject to certain particular Counts, and at length was united to the Crown of *France*. It hath been long since erected into an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Sens*, and its Cathedral bearing the Name of *St. Stephen*, is a very magnificent Structure, having a fair Quire, an

exceeding high Tower. Here are also other fair Churches, a stone Bridge over the River, divers publick Fountains and large publick places. It is dignified with the Title of a County, Bailiage, and hath a Presidial and Election from the South-east parts. It stands upon the great Road to *Paris*, and is therefore much frequented by Travellers.

The County of *CHAROLOIS, Caroliensis Comitatus*, is situated in the South part of *Burgundy*, between *Bombennois* and *Masconnois*. Its principal Towns are,

*Charoles, Cap.* } *Toulon,*  
*Paroi-le-Monial,* } *Mont S. Vincent.*

*Charoles, Carolia*, is seated on the Rivulet of *Receuse*, 30 miles from *Aulun* to the South, 20 from the River *Loire* to the East, and 20 from *Mascon* to the West. It is a very fair Town, beautified with a Collegiate Church and some Monasteries.

*Toulon, or Toulon sen Arrenx, Tullonium ad Arresum*, is a small Town through which runs the River *Arrenx*, seated almost in the midway between *Aulun* and *Charoles*, and 25 from *Châtillon* to the West.

*BRIENNOIS, Briennensis Tractus* lies between *Charoſois* and *Masconnois*, near the Frontiers of *Beaujolois*, and doth not contain any Place of good Note, excepting *Ancy-le-Duc* & *Semur Semurium*, which stands on a Hill scarcely one League from the River *Loire* to the E. and on the Confines of *Beaujolois*.

*MASCONNOIS*, borders on the Southern part of the Dutchy of *Burgundy* toward *Bresse*, being about 30 Miles long and 24 broad. The chief Towns are these, viz.

*Mascon, Bish. Tournus, Abb. Clugny, Abb.*

*Mascon, Matisco aut Matiscona*, is situated on the side of a little Hill on the Bank of the *Saone*, and near the Confines of the Province of *Bresse*, almost in the midst between *Lyons* to the South, and *Châlons* to the North, at the distance of about 30 Miles from each. It is a place of much Antiquity, an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Lyons*; also a Bailiage and an Election. Here is a stately Bridge over the River *Saone* which leads to the Suburbs of *S. Lawrence*, where are two strong Towers. The Cathedral is dedicated to *S. Vincent*, besides which here is a Collegiate Church, the Canons whereof are all of noble Extraction, the Parochial Church of *S. Stephen*, many Religious Houses and a College of *Jesuits*. This City was often ruin'd by the Incursions of the *Huns*, *Burgundians* and *Franks*, but hath been often repair'd by the munificence of divers Kings of *France*.

*Tournus, or Tournus, Tinurtium & Trenorchium*, is a large Town built on the Banks of the *Saone* about 15 Miles from *Mascon* to the North, and 18 from *Châlons* to the South. *Albinus* Caesar was overcome by the Emperor *Severus* near this place; at present it is chiefly remarkable for its Famous Abbey.

*Cluny or Clugny*, is a Village seated on a small River called *Grosne*, 10 Miles from *Mascon* to the N.W. and 15 from *Charoles* to the E. It hath imparted its Name to the renowned Abbey of *Cluniack* Monks which is the chief of the whole Order, and was instituted according to the Rule of *S. Benedict*, *A. C. 910* by *Bernon* Abbot of *Gigniack*, by the Favour of *Willm* I. Duke of *Aquitaine* and Count of *Auvergne*.

BRESSE



*BRESSÉ*, *Sebustianus Ager*, lies S. E. from *Burgundy*, and is bounded on the E. by *Burgundy* and *Beaujolois*, on the W. by the River *Dain*, which divides it from *Bugey*, on the N. by *Challenois*, and on the S. by the River *Rhofne*, which divides it from *Lyonnois* and *Dauphine*, and is in extent from North to South about 40 Miles, and from E. to W. 30 Miles. It is a fruitful Country, but by reason of some Lakes of standing Water in it, not very wholsom in some Parts. It is divided into the Upper, being the parts about *Burg*; and the Lower, lying towards the *Liannois*. The chief Towns are,

<i>Burg</i> , Cap.	} from <i>Burg</i> .
<i>Montmel</i> , a small Town	
on the S. borders of	
the Province.	
<i>Coligny</i> , 15 Miles North	} <i>Pont des Vaux</i> , near the <i>Saone</i> , and 15 Miles from <i>Coligny</i> to the West.

*Burg*, *Burgus*, aut *Forum Sebastianum*, call'd for distinction *Burg en Bresse*, is situate in a Marthy Ground on the Rivulet of *Reiffouffe*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Mascon* to the E. and 30 from *Lyon* to the N. being environ'd on the E. by *Mount St. Claude* and the Hills of *Ugnoles*, and on the W. by a spacious Plain extended as far as the River *Saone*. This Town, together with the whole Province, hath been subject to the Dominion of the French Kings ever since the Year 1601. whereas before it belonged to the Duke of *Savoy*, who had built a strong Citadel in it in the Year 1569. which was demolished in 1611. However, it is as yet govern'd as it were in form of a Republick, the Administration of all Civil Affairs being committed to the care of two *Syndicks* or Sheriffs. Pope *Leo X.* erected an Episcopal See at *Burg A.* 1515. which was suppress'd the Year ensuing. It was also re-established in 1521. but Pope *Paul III.* thought fit to suppress it again by his Bull publish'd in 1534. This Town hath a Bailiage, a Court of Election and a Presidial.

*BUGEY*, *Bugis*, *Bugia*, lies between *Bresse* to the W. and *Savoy* to the E. from which it is separated by the River *Rhofne*, including these chief Towns, *viz.*

<i>Belley</i> , Bish.	} <i>Seiffel</i> .
<i>Lanicu</i> .	
	} <i>S. Rambert</i> , &c.

*Belley*, *Bellicum*, stands upon a Hill about 2 Miles from the River *Rhone*, 36 from *Bourg* to the S. E. and 40 from *Grenoble* to the N. It is a City of but small compass, nevertheless dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Besancon*. It was ruin'd by Fire in the Year 1385, but *Amadeus VIII.* Duke of *Savoy*, caused it to be rebuilt and enclosed with Walls. The Chapter of the Cathedral Church of *St. John Baptist*, which had been before regular under the Rule of *S. Augustin*, was seculariz'd in 1579. The Bishop is both Spiritual and Temporal Lord of the City, which was resigned, together with the adjacent Territories, by the *Savoyards* to the French, *A. D.* 1601.

*Seiffel*, *Seffellium* & *Siffum*, is a large Town where a Bridge of Boats is laid over the River *Rhone*, which divides it into two Parts, and there begins to be navigable. It stands on the foot of the Hills, and the very Frontiers of *Savoy*, being distant 20 Miles from *Belley* to the North, and 15 from *Annecy* in *Savoy* to the West.

The Bailiage of *GEX*, *Gexa* aut *Gaium*, is a small Territory that lies between the County of *Burgundy*

to the North, and the City of *Geneva* to the South; the Country of *Vaud* in *Suifferland* to the East, and *Bugey* to the West. But it doth not comprehend any very considerable place, except the Town of *Gex*, *Geisum*, the Capital and Seat of the Bailiff, which was also granted by the Duke of *Savoy* to the French King, by the Peace concluded at *Lyons A. D.* 1601.

The Principality of *DOMBES*, *Dumbensis Principatus*, is a small but very pleasant Country, lying South-west of *Bresse*, along the Banks of the *Saone*, between *Masconnois* and *Lyonnois*, and contains 11 Castellanies, whercof that of *Trevoux* is the chief; the others are *Beauregard*, *Montmerle*, *Toiffey*, *Lans*, *Chatamon*, *Cheteler*, *St. Trivier*, *Velleneuve*, *Ambrica*, & *Lignieu*.

*Trevoux*, *Trivoltium*, a small Town, but the Capital of this Principality and a Bailiage, is seated at the Foot of a Hill on the Banks of the River *Saone*, 10 Miles above *Lyon* to the North, and near 30 from *Mascon* to the South.

The County of *BURGUNDY*, or the *UPPER BURGUNDY*, also call'd the *FRANCHE COMTE*, is the Country of the ancient *Sequani*, and part of the ancient *Burgundia Cisjurana*. It is bounded on the E. by *Switzerland*, on the S. by *Bresse*, *Bugey*, and the Bailiage of *Gex*, and on the N. by *Lorraine*, and on the W. by the Dutchy of *Burgundy* and part of *Champagne*; and is extended from the 46th Deg. 10 Min. to the 48th Deg. including the Space of about 110 Miles; and from the 23d Deg. 15 Min. to the 25th Deg. of Longitude, which amounts to 72 Miles, from the Frontiers of the Bishoprick of *Basil* as far as beyond *Gray*. This Province affords abundance of Corn, Vine, Timber and Cattel, especially Horses. There are also a great number of Salt-pits, and many Quarries of black Marble, Jasper of divers colours, and very fair Alabaster, together with some Mines of Iron. The Principal Rivers are the *Saone*, the *Doix*, the *Lougnon* and the *Louve*, which are full of several sorts of Fish. Moreover, the Wines of *Arbois*, *Poligny* and *Vesoul*, are esteemed beyond those of the other Provinces of *France*.

This County was quietly possessed by the Kings of *Spain*, as Heirs of the Family of *Burgundy*, till the time of this present King of *France*, who in the Year 1668. by his Army made himself Master of it, but was obliged to surrender it the same Year by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*: Notwithstanding which, he again invaded and took it in the Year 1674. and forced the *Spaniards* to grant it to him in the following Peace of *Nimeguen*, as we have already elsewhere shewn; It is divided into three Parts.

I. The Bailiage of *VESOU* or *AMONT*; or the Upper Bailiage of the County of *Burgundy* which is extended toward the Northern part of this Province, and comprehends these considerable Towns, *viz.*

<i>Vesoul</i> ,	} <i>Lure</i> , Abb.
<i>Gray</i> ,	
	} <i>Mont-beliard</i> County.

*Vesoul*, *Vesulum*, is seated on a small River that runs into the *Saone*, at the distance of 28 Miles from *Besancon* to the N. 20 from the Borders of *Lorraine* to the S. and 60 from *Dijon* to the North-east. This Town of late hath been often taken and restored, but was at length resigned to the French King by the Treaty of *Nimeguen A. D.* 1678.

*Gray*, *Graium*, *Greium*, and *Graiicum*, stands on the Banks



Banks of the *Saône*, 30 Miles from *Vesoul* to the S. W. It is a fair Town, tho' of small extent, and formerly well fortified with a Castle, &c. but it was taken by the *French* in 1668, and also in 1674, and not long after all its Bulwarks, together with the Fort, were intirely demolished.

*Lure*, *Ludera*, *Lurenfis Monast.* a small Town and famous Monastery, whose Abbot was Lord of the Town. is seated on the River *Leugnon*, 15 Miles from *Vesoul* to the E.

*Mont-bellard*, *Mons-belligardus*, gives name to a County on the N. E. of the *Franche Comte*, and bounded on the N. with *Lorraine*, and on the E. by *Suntgau*: It was formerly part of *Germany*, and belonged to the Dukes of *Wurtemberg*, but hath been made part of *France* by the present King. The Town is seated at the Foot of a Rock, on the top whereof stands the Castle, which was the Seat of a Count of the Family of *Wurtemberg*: It had besides a strong Cittadel, now destroyed. It is but a small place, having not above two or three Streets; and is water'd by the small River *Mail*, or *Maillet*, which a little below falls into the *Doux*. This Town is distant 33 miles from *Vesoul* to the E. 40 Miles from *Besancon* to the N. E. and 30 from *Dole* to the W. and not far from the Foot of Mount *Vingis*.

II. The middle Bailiage, or that of *DOLE*, *Dolenfis Traictus*, lies in the midst of this Province, from the Frontiers of the Dutchy of *Burgundy* to those of *Switzerland*, containing these principal Towns, viz.

*Besancon*, Arch. } *Ornans*,  
*Dole*, } *Quingey*.

**BESANCON**, *Vesontio*, *Vesontium* and *Bisuntia*, is a very ancient City, and the Capital of *Franchie Comte*, the See of an Archbishop, the Seat of the Parliament, and a considerable University. It is seated on the River *Doux*, which almost encompasses it; and is defended with a good Cittadel lately built. This City was formerly Imperial and Free, under the Protection of the Count of *Burgundy*, but exempted in the Year 1531, and given to the *Spaniards*, from whom it was taken by the *French*, and by the Treaty of *Nimeguen* granted to them with the rest of the Country. It is distant 30 miles from *Vesoul* to the South, 45 from *Dijon* to the East, 30 from the Frontiers of *Switzerland* to the West, and 65 from *Geneva* to the North.

*Dole*, *Dola*, is in like manner seated on the *Doux*, in a pleasant and Fertile Country, about 30 miles from *Besancon* to the S. W. and as many from *Dijon* to the N. E. It was the Capital of the Province, before *Besancon* obtained that Honour. *Philip* the Good Duke of *Burgundy*, founded a University here in the year 1464, which the Dutcheis *Margaret* augmented in 1564 and it is now in a flourishing State, Here is a Chamber of Accounts and a Bailiage. This City was heretofore well fortified, but the present French King made himself Master of it in the Month of May 1668, and dismantled it before he restored it to the *Spaniards*, as he was forced to do by the Treaty of *Utrecht*; by which means he the easier retook it in 1674, and hath ever since possessed it. The other Towns contain nothing very considerable.

III. The Bailiage of *POLIGNY* or *ALAI*, or the Lower Bailiage of the County of *Burgundy*, is situated between *Switzerland* on the East, *Bresse* on

the South, the Dutchy of *Burgundy* on the W. and the middle Bailiage, or that of *Dole* on the North. The chief Towns in it are,

*Poligny*,  
*Salins*,  
*S. Claude*, Abb.  
*Blatrans*, } *Orgelet*,  
                              } *Arbois*,  
                              } *Neseroy*,  
                              } *Fougne*.

*Poligny*, *Polichnium*, *Polenium*, and *Poliniacum*, stands near a small River that runs into the *Doux*, and was formerly well fortified, and more considerable then at present. Its Suburbs are large, encompass'd with Gardens, Hills, and Forests, and the Wines made here are highly esteemed. It is distant 20 miles from *Dole* to the S. E. 30 from *Besancon*, as many from the Frontiers of *Switzerland*, and 35 from *Geneva* to the N. W.

*Salins*, *Salmis*, and *Saliese Castrum*, is pleasantly seated in a Valley between two Mountains, on the Rivulet of *Erica*, at the distance of 12 miles from *Poligny* to the N. E. and 20 from *Besancon* to the S. taking its name from an admirable Spring of Salt-waters, whereof are made vast quantities of pure white Salt, that afford a large Revenue to the Prince. This Town is extended very far in length, and well fortified, its Walls being flanked with high Towers, besides two Castles that defend it on all sides, and the Cittadel on the top of a steep Rock, rendring it almost impregnable. The Hall or Store-house, commonly call'd *La Grand Saulnerie*, (wherein the Salt is boiled and preserved, and the Officers employed in this Operation have their Lodgings) is a stately Building.

*S. Claude*, *Fanum S. Claudii*, is a strong Hold on the Frontiers of *Beugey*, and the Country of *Gex*, about 3 Leagues from the River *Rhone*, and 5 from *Geneva* to the West. It was formerly call'd *St. Oyen de Joux*, *Fanum Sancti Eugendi*; and is now chiefly remarkable for its famous Monastery, in which is preserved the Body of *St. Claude*, Archbishop of *Besancon*, in the VII Century, whose name is communicated to this Town and part of Mount *Jura* in the adjacent Territory.

On the East side of the *Franche Comte*, stands the ridge of Mountains, call'd *Mont Jura*, which extends from near *Basil* on the *Rhine* in the N. quite as far as the River *Rhone*, and the Province of *Beugey* in the S. being the whole length of this Country, and divides: from *Switzerland*; but in several places they bear different Names: At the South end it divides into two Branches, whereof one extends to the *Rhesne*, about 12 or 15 miles below *Geneva*, and is call'd the *Crodo*; the other divides the *Franche Comte* from *Beugey*, and is nam'd *Mont St. Claude* from a little Town near it: About the Head of the River *Doux*, it is call'd *Mont de Joux*; in the Neighbourhood of *Basil*, *Pierrepoint*, and *Botzberg*, and a little more Southward, *Schaffmas*, and by the *Swissers* *Leerberg*.

This Government is divided between two Governours-General, whereof one hath the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, *Bresse*, *Beugey*, *Taromey*, and *Gex*, under his Care; Subordinate to whom the Count d' *Armagnac* is hereditary Grand Seneschal, and under him are five Lieutenants Generals, twelve Bailiffs, and thirteen Governors of Places, viz. of *Dijon*, *Auxois*, *Chalon*, *Bellegarde*, *Taland*, *Semeur* in *Auxois*, the Bridge of *Miscon*, *Ausun*, *Beaune*, *Bourbon*, *Lan*, *Avallin* and *Clatillon*.

In the County of *Burgundy*, is a Governor General, and under him one Lieutenant-General, and eleven Gove



Governors of Places in these Towns, viz. *Besancon*, the Cittadel of *Besancon*; also the Fort of *St Stephen*, and the Fort *Grison*, in the same City have different Governors; *Dole*, *Salins*, the two Forts of *St. Andrew* and *Belim*, the Castle of *Joug*, and Town of *Starbier*, the Castle of *Blamont*, and the Castle of *Montbeliard*.

The *Burgundians*, who gave name to this Country, were once a very powerful Nation, possessing not only this Dutchy and County of *Burgundy*, but also *Alsatia*, *Switzerland*, *Wallisland* and *Savoy*, and afterwards *Dauphine*, *Lionnois* and *Nivernois* also; which great Tract of Country was divided by the *Romans* into *Burgundy Trans*, and *Cis Jura*, with respect to Mount *Jura*. They were originally a Tribe of the *Vandals*, and came from the Parts about *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*, and like the rest of those Northern Nations, a rough unciviliz'd People, living in Tents clap'd up for their present occasions, which in their Language were called *Burghs*, and thence the Men *Burgundians*: Thus saith *Agathias* and other Historians. But *Isidore* derives their Name from *Ognus*, under which name they worshipped *Hercules*: But this, as all Etymologies, is very uncertain; the former seems much the more Natural, and is therefore generally followed. About the beginning of the fifth Century they received Christianity, and began to inhabit the Towns along the Banks of the *Rhine*, and by their valiant resistance of the *Huns*, obtained great reputation, and for that reason were called into *Gaul* by *Stilico* the Roman General to assist him against the *Franks*, and for their Service had the two *Burgundies* assigned them; to which they afterward added *Lionnois*, *Nivernois* and *Dauphine*, and erected a Kingdom, which continued for 120 years in an uninterrupted Succession; at the end of which, *Childebert* and *Claire*, the French Kings of *Paris* and *Soissons*, defeated and slew *Gundomar* the last Burgundian King, by which that Kingdom being broken, the Eastern parts were seized by others, and the Western made parts of the French

Kingdoms, and remained so for some Ages, till at length *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles the Great*, in the Partition that he made of the Kingdom *Charlemagne* left him (already mentioned) erected *Burgundy* again into a Kingdom; the chief Seat whereof being *Arles* it was sometimes called the Kingdom of *Arles*. In this state it continued for near 200 years, till the Death of *Rodolph III.* 1032, who leaving no Issue, bequeathed his Estate to *Conrade* the Emperor, who had married his Sister; or Niece, as others say: After which it was again divided among several Princes; this now called the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, the Ancestors of *Hugh Capet* enjoy'd, and by his Son King *Robert* it was annexed to the Crown; but by his Successor *Henry I.* given in appenage to his Brother *Robert*, whose Posterity continued Dukes of *Burgundy* till 1361. when *Eudes IV.* leaving only one Son, who died young, the Dutchy was claimed by *John* King of *France*, *Charles* King of *Navarre*, and *Edward* Count of *Barr*, all three Descended from the Sisters of *Eudes*; of these *John* got the better, and gave it to his younger Son *Philip*, who by Marriage obtain'd also the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Flanders*, and his Successors added almost all the Netherlands; insomuch, that *Philip the Good*, and *Charles the Warlike*, the two last Kings of *Burgundy*, were as powerful Princes as any in *Europe*: But the latter being kill'd in his Wars against the *Swissers* A. 1476. and leaving no Male Issue, *Lewis XI.* seized the Dutchy as an Escheat to the Crown; and it hath ever since been retained by the Kings of *France*; but the County of *Burgundy* with the other Estates of that Prince, descended to *Mary* Daughter of *Charles*, who marrying *Maximilian* of *Austria*, afterwards Emperor, brought the Netherlands into that Family, and *Philip* the Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, married *Joan*, Queen of *Castile*, and begat *Charles V.* who was Emperor of *Germany*, King of *Spain* and the *Indies*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the Netherlands; as will be seen more particularly in our account of *Belgium*.

## CHAP. IX.

### The Government of LYONNOIS, *Lugdunensis* Provincia.

THE Government call'd *LYONNOIS*, comprehends the ancient *Gallia Celtica*, or at least the greatest part thereof, being bounded on the North by *Berry*, *Nivernois* and *Burgundy*: on the South by the Mountains of *Cevennes*, and the Country of *Rouvergue*; on the East by *Bresse* and *Dauphine*, and on the West by *Quercy*, *Limousin*, *Angoumois* and *Poitou*. It lies between the 44th degree 26 min. and the 46th degree 46 min. Latitude, in its greatest breadth from South to North, consisting of about 140 English miles, that is to say, from the Frontiers of *Rouvergue* to *Dunle-roy*, on the Frontiers of *Berry*; as also between the 18th degree, and 23d degree of Longitude. And in its greatest length from W. to E. includes the space of 180 miles, viz. from beyond the Town of *Availle* on the River *Vienne* near the Confines of *Poitou*, as far as *Lyons*. The Soil here is not so fertil as in other parts, by reason of the many Mountains that rise up in some of its Parts. The principal Rivers are the *Loire*, the *Rhone*, the *Saone*, and the *Allier*.

In this Govern-	{ <i>Lionnois</i> , Proper	<i>Lyons</i> , Archbish.
ment are com-	{ <i>Forets</i> ,	<i>Montbrison</i> ,
priz'd six dif-	{ <i>Beaujolois</i> ,	<i>Beaujeu</i> ,
ferent Coun-	{ <i>Bourbonnois</i> ,	<i>Moulins</i> ,
tries, viz.	{ <i>Auvergne</i> ,	<i>Clermont</i> ,
	{ <i>Marche</i> ,	<i>Gueret</i> .

*LYONNOIS*, properly so call'd, *Lugdunensis Ager*, is of but small extent, It lies along the Banks of the River *Rhone* and *Saone*, and is from North to South about 45 miles, and from East to West not above 12 or 15 miles, and is bounded by *Dauphine*; from whence it is separated by the *Rhone* and *Bresse*, and *Beaujolois* on the North, *Forets* on the West, and *Vivarets* on the South. The Country round about *Lyons* produces more Grapes than Corn, and the rest is Fertile enough in both, and yields excellent Fruits. Its most considerable Towns are these, viz.

*Lyons*,



Lyon, Archbish. }  
 St. Chaumont, }  
                           } Coincridieu,  
                           } Anse,  
                           } Bresse.

**LYONS**, *Lugdunum*, is a large, populous and flourishing, and next *Paris* may be reckon'd the richest, largest, and most trading City of all *France*, except *Rouen* be preferred, which she claims; however it be, *Lyon* is very considerable on account of its great Traffick, which its convenient Situation on the Rivers *Rhone* and *Saone*, and on the Road to *Italy* doth much assist. It is the See of an Archbishop, who hath the Title of Primate of *Gaul*; also a Generality, Election, Senechalcy, Presidial, and a particular Court for Merchants, call'd the Tribunal of Commerce, and hath also a Famous University, and an Exchange or Court of Money. The Origin of this City is much disputed; some Authors report it to have been built by one *Lugus*, a King of the *Celts*: *Strabo* makes *Mimer* a Gaulish Prince its Founder, which is also disputed by others: and concerning its Name, there is the same difference, some deducing it from *Lugus* abovemention'd, and the old Gaulish Word *Dunum*, a Mountain or rising Ground, such a one being near it; others from an old Gaulish Word, imitating a Hill of Crows, from a lucky Omen of these Birds at its Foundation. There are many others too long and trivial to mention here. It is situated at the Foot of the Mountains on the Frontiers of the Provinces of *Bresse* and *Dauphine*, being separated from the latter only by the River *Rhone*, which passing by the City, hath a long Stone-Bridge over it, and a little below receives the *Saone*, over which in like manner are three fair Bridges. The Town is divided into two Parts, the Greater whereof lying between the *Rhone* and the *Saone*, is the Quarter of St. *Nizier*, and the lesser that of St. *Jean*. These two Quarters are sub-divided into 32 Wards, or Precincts, call'd *Paroisses*, and every one of them hath its particular chief Sub-ordinate Officers. The City is likewise surrounded with very large Suburbs, and fenced with an old Castle built on an adjacent Rock named *Pierre-aux-Bois*, and it is adorned with many stately Edifices, among which the Guild-Hall or Town-house is chiefly conspicuous, and esteem'd as a Master-piece of Architecture. Here are likewise to be seen the Remains of some ancient *Roman* Works, particularly of an Amphitheatre, divers Aqueducts, publick Baths, &c.

The City of *Lyon* having been burnt by Lightning in the time of *Nero*, A. C. 59 was re-built by the Liberty of that Emperor, according to *Tacitus*; which Conflagration is also mention'd by *Seneca*, in one of his Epistles to *Lucilius*. Afterwards *Septimus Severus* being slain and burnt in 193, in Revenge, because the inhabitants had entertained *Albinus* his Enemy. It suffered often by the Incursions of the *Germans*, *Gots*, and *Saracens*. The Emperor *Claudian* was born in this City; and the Emperor *Constantian* slain in it by *Maximian*, A. D. 303. And two General Councils were assembled here in the Years 1245 and 1274. *Lyon* is distant 120 miles from *Paris* to the S. E. 130 from the Banks of the *Mediterranean* Sea to the N. 230 from *Bourdeaux* to the E. 70 from *Geneva* to the S. W. 110 from *Nancy* to the S. E. 115 from *Dijon* to the South, and 40 from the Frontiers of *Savoie* to the West.

**FORETZ**, *Forensis Provincia*, is usually divided into two Parts, viz. the Upper and Lower, bounded on the E. by *Lotharing*, and *Brabant*, on the N. by *Burgundy* and *Brabant*, on the S. by *Valley*, and *Li-*

sters, and on the W. by the Mountains of *Auvergne*, comprehending these principal Towns, viz.

Montbrison, }  
 St. Etienne de Furens, }  
                                   } Roanne,  
                                   } Feurs.

*Montbrison*, *Montbrisenium*, & *Mont-Brusonis*, is situated on the Rivulet of *Vedize*, at the distance of 6 miles from the River *Loire*, and 30 from *Lyon* to the W. 30 from the Borders of *Bourgogne* to the S. and 20 from the Borders of *Velay*. It was at first only a Castle, but encreased to a Town and enclosed with Walls in the year 1428. It is adorned with a Collegiate Church dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, divers Monasteries, a Court of Election and a Provostship.

*St. Etienne*, or *St. Steven de Furens*, *Furnacium* aut *Fanum Sancti Stephani*, is seated on the foot of a Hill on the Banks of the Brook *Furens*, about two Leagues from the River *Loire* to the E. and 20 from *Montbrison* to the S. E. The adjacent Country affords good store of Pit-coal, and the Waters of the Brook *Furens* are very proper for the tempering of Iron and Steel, which advantage hath induced the Inhabitants to make vast quantities of small Iron-ware, maintaining a very great Trade in these sorts of Merchandizes, which are transported by them into almost all the Countries of *Europe*. The Town of *St. Stephen* suffer'd much damage during the Civil Wars, and was twice taken by the Protestant Party, viz. in 1563. and 1572.

*Roanne*, or *Roanne*, *Rhodumna*, is a large Town, but destitute of Walls, and founded on the Banks of the River *Loire*, where it begins to be capable of admitting small Boats at the distance of 20 miles from *Montbrison* to the N. The adjacent Country is call'd from thence *Roannois*, and was erected into a Duchy by King *Charles IX*. The Town itself being beautified with a fair College of *Jesuits*, and divers other Monasteries.

*Feurs*, *Forum Segusianorum*, the chief Town of the Upper *Forets*, from whence the whole Country takes its name, stands on the East-side of the *Loire*, near its Confluence with the *Lignon*, 10 miles N. E. from *Montbrison*, and 20 from *Roanne* to the South, and 20 from *Lyon* to the W.

**BEAUFORTOIS**, is extended from E. to W. from beyond the River *Sone* to the *Loire*, on the N. of *Lyonnois*, having the principality of *Dombes*, and part of *Majennais* on the E. *Charoisis* on the N. and *Forets* on the W. This Country affords abundance of Corn, Wine and Flax, and hath these considerable Towns, viz.

Beaujeu, Ville Franche, Belle-ville, &c.

*Beaujeu*, *Baniorium*, *Ballojorium* and *Bellijocum*, is a small Town together with a Castle, on the Rivulet *Andiere*, which hath imparted its name to the Territory of *Beaujeu*, and the Lords of the ancient and illustrious Family of *Beaujeu*; being distant 25 miles from *Lyon* to the N. and 5 or 6 from the River *Sone*. Over the Gate of the principal Church of this Burgh is to be seen a very old piece of Work-manship in Bas-relievo, representing a Roman Sacrifice of a Hog, a Sheep, and an Ox.

*Ville-franche*, *Francopis* aut *Villa Franca*, is water'd by the Brook *Morgon*, which a little below falls into the *Sone*, and stands upon the Road in the Mid-way between *Lyon* and *Beaujeu*, 20 miles from *Majennais* to the S. It is at present the chief Town of *Beaujeu*, and remarkable for its Collegiate Church, Academy



cademy, Court of Election, Bailiage, and Granary of Salt.

**B O U R B O N N O I S**, *Borbonensis Provincia*, is divided into the Upper and Lower, and bounded on the E. by the River *Loire*, which divides it from the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, on the W. by *Berry*, on the S. by *Auvergne* and *Forets*, and on the N. by *Nivernois*, and part of *Berry*. It is extended from W. to E. for the space of about 70 Miles, and 45 from S. to N. The ancient Inhabitants of *Bourbonnois*, who were a part of the *Boii*, sent many Colonies into *Germany* and *Italy*, under *Ambigatul* Prince of the *Bituriges*, and often maintain'd furious Wars against the *Romans*. This Province hath also acquired Reputation by its Lords, Barons, Counts and Dukes, from whom the present King of *France* is descended. The Mineral Waters of *Bourbon* have been mentioned in speaking of *Bourbon-Lancy*, in *Burgundy*. The most remarkable Towns of *Bourbonnois* are these, viz.

Moulins, }  
Bourbon l' Archamb- } Vichy,  
bault, } S. Geran,  
Monluffon, } Gannet.

*Moulins*, *Moulins*, is seated near the River *Allier*, in a large fruitful Plain, at the distance of 140 miles from *Paris*, and 20 from *Nevers* to the S. about 50 from *Clermont* to the N. and 70 from *Challan* to the W. It is a Town of very large extent, and was formerly the usual Place of Residence of the Princes of *Bourbon*, who built the Castle, which hath often been the Royal Seat of the French Kings. This Town is also famous on the account of the singular Vertue of the Medicinal Waters, and the Inhabitants for their Skill in making divers sorts of Knives, &c. *Moulins* is usually divided into 4 Quarters, viz. The Old Town, the New, the Suburbs of the *Carmelites*, and those of the *Allier*. The most remarkable Buildings are the Collegiate Church and two Parochial ones, besides those of the Suburbs, together with divers Monasteries, a Generality and Presidial Courts, and another of Election, and a College of Jesuits. Among the Religious Houses, the chief is that of the *Carthusians*, and the Church belonging to the Nuns of the *Visitation*, wherein stands the Sumptuous Tomb of *Henry II.* Duke of *Montmorency*, Marthal of *France*, &c.

*Bourbon l' Archambaud*, *Borbonium Archimbeldi*, and *Boia*, is a small Town, which nevertheless hath given name to the whole Province of *Bourbonnois*, and is distant about twelve miles from *Moulins*.

**A U V E R G N E**, *Alvernia*, bearing the Title of a County, is bounded on the East by *Forets*, on the West by the Upper *Limousin*, *Quercy*, and *Marche*, on the North by *Bourbonnois*, and on the South by *Cevennes* and *Rouergue*; its utmost extent from South to N. consisting of about 80 miles, and 60 from W. to E. It is divided into the Upper and Lower Countries, the former to the S. being very Mountainous, among which one called the Mount of *Cantal*, is exceeding high, and the other to the N. extremely fruitful, especially in the Quarter of *Limagne*. This Province was formerly subject to its own Counts, but united to the Crown of *France* in 1204. by King *Philip* the August, to suppress the Rebellion of the last Count named *Guy*. The principal Towns are these,

In the Lower,

*Clermont*, *B.* *Riom*, *Thiers*.

In the Upper,

*St. Flour*, }  
*Orilbac*, } { *Morat*, Viscounty.  
              } { *Salers*.

*Clermont*, *Claramons*, *Clarus-Mons*, *Claramontium*, and formerly *Arvernum*, *Arverna*, and *Augustonemetum*, and by some affirmed to be the ancient *Gergovia*; it is a large well-built City, with the Title of a County, and the Metropolis of the whole Province, the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Bourges*; also the Seat of a Court of *Aides* and a Presidial. It is situate upon a little Hill near the Mountain called the *Puy de Dommé*, and is water'd by the Rivulet *Tiretaine*, which riseth in the Mountain, and falls into the *Allier*; and is distant 50 miles from *Bourbon l' Archambaud* to the South, and 75 from *Lyons* to the West.

*Riom*, *Ricomagum* & *Riomum*, is seated on a rising ground about 7 or 8 miles from *Clermont* to the N. and is a fair well-built Town, the Churches being magnificent, the Houses beautiful, and the Monasteries fair, and adorned with Fountains and pleasant Walks, insomuch that this Town is term'd, *The Garden of Limagne*. It is the Capital of the Dutchy of *Auvergne*, on which depend all the Fiefs and mean Fiefs of the Province, having been erected in favour of *John* Duke of *Berry*, the Son of King *John*, A. D. 1360.

*Thiers* or *Thiern*, *Thigernum* & *Thiernum*, is a small Town, built on a Hill near the River *Dur*, in the Frontiers of the Province of *Forets*, 20 miles from *Clermont* to the East, toward *Lyon*. The Inhabitants maintain a considerable Traffick in Knives, Sizzers, and other small Wares of the like Nature.

*St. Flour*, *Judiciacus*, aliis *Floriopolis*, a City having the Dignity of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Bourges*, is seated on the River *Truyere*, 40 miles South from *Clermont*, and somewhat more North-East from *Rhodesz*. It had its modern name from its Bishop *S. Flour*.

*Orillac*, *Auriliacum*, is a good Town seated among Mountains, on the Rivulet *Jordan*, which falls into the *Lerre*, about 20 miles distant from *S. Flour* to the W. and 30 from *Rhodesz* to the N.

The other Towns are less considerable.

**L A M A R C H E**, *Marchia*, the most Western, Country of the Government of *Lyonnois*, is so called as being a passage or thorow-fare into the Neighbouring Provinces. It is bounded on the North by *Berry*, on the South by *Limousin*, on the East by *Auvergne*, and on the West by *Poitou*. It is divided into two parts, viz. the Upper, having *Gueret* for its chief Town, and depending on the Generality of *Moulins*: And the Lower which hath *Dorat*, and resorts to the Generality of *Limoges*. The Lords of *Luzignen* were formerly Counts of *Marche* and *Angouleme*; but these two Counties were annexed to the Crown of *France* by King *Philip* the fair; afterward it served as an Inheritance to the younger Sons of the Royal Family, and at length after many Revolutions, was re-united to the Crown in 1531. The principal Towns of this Province are these.

In the Upper Marche,

*Gueret*, *Aulussou*, *Grammont*, *Ab.*



In the *Lamir*,

*Dorat*, *ḡ Maligne*.  
*Etat*, *ḡ S. Julien*.

*Gueret*, *Gueretum*, *Gareffari* & *Uarsum*, is the Capital Town of the Province of *Marche*, situated near the Spring-head of the River *Gartemp*, hath a Seneſchaley and a Preſidial, and is diſtant about 50 miles from *Clermont* to the Weſt, 20 from *Limoges* to the Eaſt, and 30 from the Frontiers of *Bomben* to the Weſt.

*Aubusſon* ſtands on the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 20 miles from *Gueret* to the South-Eaſt. It is a very populous Town, and remarkable for its Manufacture of Tapeſtry. The large Towers of an old demolish'd Caſtle ſufficiently ſhew the Grandeur of the former Lords of this Place, of whom was deſcended *Peter d'Aubusſon*, the famous Grand Maſter of *Rhodes*.

*Dorat*, *Orcorium*, a ſmall Town, nevertheleſs the

Chief of the *Lower Marche*, ſtands on the ſmall River *Sete*, which falls into the *Gartemp*, and is diſtant about 40 miles from *Gueret* to the Weſt, not above 5 or 6 from the Frontiers of *Peicieu*, and 25 from *Limoges* to the North.

*Belac*, *Belacum* is ſeated on the Brook *Vincen* in the *Lower Marche*, about two leagues from *Dorat*, and hath a Court of Election under the Generality of *Limoges*, &c.

The reſt of the Towns are not conſiderable enough to deſerve a particular Deſcription.

The *Lionnois*, *Forez* and *Beaujolois* hath a Governour-General, a Lieutenant-General, a Bailly and Seneſchal of *Lions*, a Bailly of *S. Stephen* in *Forez* and another of *Beaujolois*. The *Bourbonnois* hath a Governour-General and a Lieutenant-General. *Auvergne* hath alſo a Governour-General, two Lieutenant-General, and two Seneſchals of *Rion* and *Clermont* and *Mirabe* hath another Governour, a Lieutenant and two Seneſchals of *Gueret* and *Dorat*.

## CHAP. X.

### GUIENNE, Aquitania aut Aremorica.

THE Government of *GUIENNE*, which is dignified with the Title of a Dutchy, was heretofore call'd the Kingdom of *Aquitaine ab Aquis*; that is to ſay, from the great number of Springs of hot Water found therein, and was then of larger extent than at preſent: That part of it which lies on the North-ſide of the *Garonne* is termed *Guienne*, and the other on the farther ſide of the ſame River to the South, bears the Name of *Gascon*.

The whole Country in General is bounded on the North by *Police*, *Artois* and *Marche*; on the Eaſt, by *Auvergne* and *Leoparde*, on the South by the *Pyrenean Mountains*, that ſeparate it from *Spain*, and on the Weſt by the Ocean: lying between the 42d Degree 25 Minutes, and 44th Degree of Latitude; as alſo between the 14th Degree 20 Minutes, and the 20th Degree and 30 minutes of Longitude: which extent comprehends the ſpace of 230 Engliſh miles from South to North; that is to ſay from the *S. Sea* on the *Pyrenean Mountains* to that of *S. Jean d'Angely* on the Borders of *Peicieu*, and about 250 miles from Weſt to Eaſt, viz. from *S. Jean d'Angely*, beyond *Bomben* as far as beyond *S. Genier* in *Recoigne*, near *Gueretum*.

The Air is gentle and every where very healthy, and the Soil fertile in Corn, Grapes and other Fruits, excepting in the Sandy Grounds on the Sea-coaſts and the *Pyrenean Mountains*, where there are only Heaths and ſome Paltures. This Province is water'd with a great many conſiderable Rivers, viz. the *Garonne* or *Gironde*, the *Lot*, the *De Sone*, the *Adour*, the *Charante*, &c. But the *Garonne* more eſpecially facilitates

the Traffick of the Inhabitants, which conſiſts in Corn, Wine, Oil, Prunes, Wool, &c.

*Aquitaine*, in the Roman Division of *Gaul*, by *Auguſtus*, was divided into the *Prima* and *Secunda*, and compriz'd all the Country between the *Loire* and the *Pyrennees*: Which was by *Valentinian III.* given to the *Goths*, as we have elſewhere already ſaid: Theſe were in time conquer'd by the French, and *Aquitain* made a part of their Kingdom, till *Lewis* the Godly made it a diſtinct one, and gave it to his Son *Pepin*; but *Charles the Bald* diſpoſſeſs'd the Sons of *Pepin*, and beſtow'd it on *Arnulph* of *Burgundy*, A. 844. whoſe Nephew *William* Earl of *Auvergne*, that ſucceeded him bequeath'd his Eſtates to *Ebles III.* Earl of *Poitou* from whom deſcended *Eleanor* Wife of our King *Henry II.* in whole right he ſucceeded in the Dutchy of *Aquitain*, and his Sons *Richard* and *John* ſucceſſively enjoy'd it after him; but in the time of the latter was ſeiz'd by the French King *Lewis VIII.* A. 1202. which cauſing great Wars between the two Nations it was at length agreed between *Henry III.* King of *England*, and *Lewis IX.* King of *France*, That the Engliſh ſhould quietly poſſeſs *Guienne*, bounded on the North by the River *Charante*, and on the South by the *Pyrenean Mountains*, and quit *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Touraine* and *Maine*, which they before poſſeſs'd. And from this Time our Kings were ſtyled only Dukes of *Guienne*; which Dignity and Country they enjoyed till the time of *Henry VI.* in whoſe unfortunate Reign the Engliſh loſt all their Poſſeſſions in *France*; Since when all *Aquitain* hath been part of the Kingdom of *France*.



Guienne and Gascoigne at present divided into 19 Provinces, viz.	Guienne in 8	Guienne, Proper.	Bordeaux, Arch, C
		Bazadois.	Bazes, Bish.
		Agenois.	Agen, Bish.
		Quercy.	Cahors, Bish.
		Rovergue.	Rhodes, Bish.
		Limosin.	Limoges, Bish.
		Perigord.	Perigueux, Bish.
		Saintonge.	Saintes.
	Gascony in 11	Armagnac.	Auch, Archb. Cap.
		Gascoigne or Chalosse.	Aire Bish.
		Condomois.	Condom, Bish.
		les Landes or Sandy Grounds.	d'Acqs, Bish.
		Basques or Labourd.	Bayonne, Bish.
		Lower Navarre.	S. Palais.
		Vicounty of Soul.	Mauléon.
		Bearn.	Pau.
		Bigorre.	Torbe, Bish.
		Comminge.	S. Bertrand.
		Combrans.	S. Lizier, Bish.

GUENNE, properly so call'd, or BORDOIS. is bounded on the West by the Ocean, on the South by Gascony and Bazadois, on the East by Agenois, and on the North by the Mouth of the Garonne River and Saintonge. This Country is fruitful in Grapes, whereof excellent Wine is made and transported from Bordeaux into Foreign Parts. The Towns of chief Note are these, viz.

Bordeaux, Archbish. } Blaye,  
Libourne, } L'Isle.

BORDOIS. *Burdigala*, is situated in a very fertile and well manur'd Country on the Banks of the River Garonne, at the distance of about 40 miles from the Coasts of the Ocean to the East, 60 from Saintes to the South, 110 from Limoges to the South-west, and as many from Toulouse to the North-west, in the Latitude of 44 degrees 45 minutes. It is the Metropolis of the whole Government of Guienne, and indeed one of the most ancient, and fairest Cities of France, and a place of great Traffick, being resorted to by Merchants from divers parts of Europe. Its Haven is very capacious and safe, and is call'd *le Port de la Lune*, or the *Port of the Moon*, from its form, being like a Crescent; into which the Tide flows very high, and brings Ships of great Burthen up to the Key. The City it self in form resembleth a Bow, (whereof the River Garonne is the String) and is well built, the Palace, Town-house, Fair, Markets, Publick Fountains, the Key, and the Cathedral dedicated to S. Andrew, are well worth a Stranger's View; as also the Castle, lately well Fortified, and call'd *la Citadelle*. About 18 miles below the City stands a statey Watch-Tower, call'd *la Tour Cordouan*, built by Lewis de Foix, a famous Engineer. This City is the See of an Archbishop, the Seat of a Parliament, a Court of Aides, Generality, Seneschaley, an Exchange and a Mint. Also a most flourishing University, which King Charles VII. restor'd to its former lustre, and Pope Eugenius IV. granted great Privileges to which were augmented by Lewis XI. Richard II. King of England was born here, in the year, 1367.

Libourne, *Livornia*, is a small Town, built near the Confluence of the River Dordonne and Ile, almost over-against Flenzac, about 20 miles from Bordeaux to the East, toward Perigueux.

Blaye, *Blavia*, *Blasium* or *Blavutum*, stands on the Frontiers of the Province of Saintonge, on the North

side of the Haven of Bordeaux, where the Gironne falls into the Dordonne, and changeth its own name into that of Gironde, 10 Leagues from the Mouth of the same River Gironde, 20 miles from Bordeaux to the North, and 30 from Saintes. All Vessels that pass up to Bordeaux are obliged to leave their Guns in this Town. The adjacent Territory is call'd *le Blaignez*.

BAZADOIS, lies between Guienne proper on the North and West, the Landes or Sandy Grounds on the South, and Agenois on the East. It is a Country very fertile in Corn, Wine and Fruits, and comprehends these chief Towns, viz.

Bazes Bish. Castelgeloux. Nerac.

Bazes, *Ufatum* & *Uzatium*, olim *Coffium* aut *Coffio*, is a small City seated in a Woody and Sandy Country, on a kind of a Rock, the foot of which is wash'd by the Brook of *Lavassine*, about 10 miles from the Garonne to the South, 30 from Bordeaux to the South-east, and 35 from Condom to the North-west. It is an Episcopal See, depending on the Metropolitan of Auch, and the Cathedral Church is dedicated to St. John the Baptist.

AGENOIS, *Aginensis Ager*, borders on Armagnac to the South, Quercy to the East, Perigord to the North, and Bazadois to the West. It is the most fruitful Country of all Guienne, and furnishes several Provinces with Corn, Wine and Oil; the Province is very small, and hath not many Towns, the chief is

Agen, *Aginum*, *Agenum* aut *Aginum*, was heretofore the Capital City of the *Nitiobriges*, who were its Founders. It is a very large and populous City, an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of Bordeaux; and hath a Seneschaley and a Presidial: And is situated near the River Garonne, where it receives the *Gers*, 60 miles from Bordeaux to the South-east, 50 from Toulouse to the North-west, and 40 from Bazas to the East. This City had the Honour to be the Birth-place of that Prodigy of Learning, Joseph Scaliger.

QUERCY, *Cadurensis Tractus*, is bounded on the South by Languedoc, on the East by Rouergue and Auvergne, on the North by Limousin, and on the West by Perigord and Agenois. Its utmost extent, from South to North, consists of about 90 miles, and 50 from West to East. It is divided into the Upper and Lower; the former call'd *Causse*, are the Valleys on the side of the River Lot. And the Lower or *low Towns* lye round about that of Aveiron. This Province was united to the Crown of France in the beginning of the Reign of Philip the Hardy, A. 1306. and contains these considerable Towns,

Cahors, Bish. Moissac, Frigac.

Cahors, *Cadurcum*, olim *Dicina Caducorum* is built on a steep Rock, on which formerly stood a Citadel, and encompass'd in form of a Peninsle by the River Lot, over which it hath three Stone Bridges; and is distant 40 miles from Agen to the East, 30 from Limoges to the South, and 60 from Toulouse to the North. It is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of Alby, a Seneschaley and Election. The Inhabitants make divers Manufactures, with which they maintain a reasonable good Commerce, by means of the River. The Cathedral bears the Name of S. Stephen, and was consecrated by S. Martial. Here are also many other Churches and Monasteries, together with a Colledge.

Montauban, *Mons Albanus*, is a good City, well built



built all of Brick, the See of a Bishop, and the Seat of an Election. 37 miles from Cahors to the South, on the Road to Toulouse: It is divided into the Old and New City, and hath a Suburb on the other side of the River Tarn, which is joined to the Town by a fair Stone-bridge rebuilt in the year 1667. by the care of M. Colbert, as appears by the Inscription upon it. *Sans* places this City in *Languedoc*, on the Frontiers whereof it stands.

*Figear*, *Figearum*, is a small City, and hath also an Election. It is situate on the River Sale 30 miles from Cahors to the East, and near the Borders of *Auvergne*.

*ROUERGUE*, *Rutenensis Provincia*, lies on the South-east of *Quercy* and is bounded on the East by *Cerdaigne*, on the North by *Auvergne*, and on the South by *Languedoc*, being divided into three Parts, viz. the County, and the Upper and Lower *Marches*. It is extended from South to North for the space of 70 miles, and about the same from West to East. Its principal Cities and Towns are,

*Rouergue* Bishop. 7 *M. And.*  
*Val de Bi.* 5 *Julie France.*

*Rouergue* is a County, *Ruteni*, *Rutena*, & *Segedunum Ruteni*, situated near the River *Aveyron*, at the distance of 10 miles from Cahors to the East, 40 from *Albi* to the North-east, 30 from *S. Flour* to the South, and about as many from the Mountains of *Cerdaigne*. It is a very ancient, large, and well fortified City, with the Title of a County, Seneschaley, and an Episcopal See, subject to the Metropolitan of Bourges. The Cathedral is dedicated to the Virgin Mary. There are also many other Churches and Monasteries, besides a stately College of Jesuits. This City was sometime subject to its own Counts, who kept their Court in that part nam'd the *Bourgeois*, where the Bishops possessed the other under the name of the City. Afterwards it was annex'd to the House of *Montfort*, and at length was annex'd to the Demains of the Crown by King Henry IV. The Adjacent Country abounds in Mines of Copper, Azure and Arsenic: And not far from hence is the Mountains of *Causse*, which burns when it Rains, as also a Cavern call'd *Fontaine*, which is 60 Paces wide, and 100 deep, &c.

*Rouergue*, *Rouergis* is a small City, water'd with the Streams of the Rivulet *Dordogne*, at the Foot of the Mountains, being distant 25 or 30 Miles from the Cities of *Languedoc*, and 25 Miles from *Rouergue* to the South. It was heretofore only an Abbey, of Benedictine Monks in the Diocess of *Rouergue*, until Pope John XXII. erected it into an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of Bourges, A. D. 1317.

*Montfort*, *Montfortis*, *Montfortis* or *Montfortis*, the principal Town of the Upper *Marches* of *Rouergue*, stands on the Banks of the *Lot*, near the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 20 Miles from *Rouergue* to the South-East. It was formerly a strong hold, but its Fortifications were dismantled in 1624.

*Montfort*, *Montfortis* & *Montfortis* is a large well built Town, on the River of *Lot*, and the principal Town of the Lower *Marches*, being distant 10 Miles from *Montfort* to the West, and as many from *Cahors* to the East. It hath a Seneschaley, and a Presidial.

*Limoges*, *Limogensis* *Provincia*, is bounded on the North by *Quercy*, on the North by *Montfort*, on the West by *Auvergne*, and on the South by *Languedoc*, being distant 10 Miles from *Montfort* to North-west, 10 from *Quercy* to the South, and 30 from West to

East. The whole Country is generally cold and not very fruitful, scarcely affording any good Wine; however here grows some Wheat, much Rice, Barley and Cheinuts, of which last the Inhabitants often make Bread. The Principal Cities and Towns are,

*Limoges* Bishop. 7 *Beive*,  
*Tulle* Bishop. 5 *Uzerche*.

*Limoges*, *Lemovicum*, seu *Augustoritum Lemovicum*, is seated partly on the Top of a Hill and partly in a Valley, on the Bank of the River *Vienne*, at the distance of 120 miles from *Orleans* to the South, 20 from *Perdiers* to the South-East, 90 from *Cahors* to the North, 25 from *Clermont* to the West, and 110 from *Bordeaux* to the North-East. It is a City of large extent encompass'd with strong Walls and deep Ditches, having been founded, as some Authors alledge by a certain *Gaulish* Prince, who communicated his Name to it: *Julius Caesar* mentions it as a very populous Place in his Time; and it is at present dignified with the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of Bourges. The Cathedral bears the Name of *S. Sixtus*, and *S. Martial* was its first Bishop. There are also three considerable Abbies, viz. those of *S. Martin*, *S. Augustin*, and *S. Martin*, together with divers other Convents for Religious Persons of both Sexes; a Presidial Court, a Generality and Seneschaley. The City of *Limoges* was formerly subject to its own hereditary Vicounts, who were likewise Lords of the whole Province of *Limousin*; but it hath been taken at several times by the *Goths*, *French* and *English*: The Countess *de Gué* in dispossessed the latter in the Year 1371, but *Edward* the Black Prince retook it soon after by Storm.

*Tulle*, *Tutela*, aut *Tutella*, is water'd by the River *Cere*, and the *Soulone*, about 37 Miles from *Limoges* to the South, and 55 from *Cahors* to the North. It was at first only a Town and Abbey of Benedictine Monks of *S. Martin*, which Pope John XXII. turned into a Cathedral, A. D. 1315. *Arnold de S. Apollin* having been its last Abbot and first Bishop. There are Prelates are Vicounts, and Lords of the City, where-in is also established a Presidial Court, another of Election, &c.

*PERIGORD*, *Petracensis Provincia*, lies between part of *Quercy* and *Limousin* on the East, *Quercy* on the North, part of *Nimonge* and *Guienne* Proper on the West, and *Agenois* on the South: Its utmost extent from South to North, consisting of about 55 miles, and from West to East 65 miles. This Province is divided into the Upper and Lower Parts, the former whereof, call'd the *Hill*, by reason of the Mountains along the Banks of the *Dordogne* and *Uzerche*: And the other on the River *Ile*, is term'd the *Black*, on the account of its Woods. The most considerable Cities and Towns are,

*Perigueux* Bishop. 7 *Bergerac*,  
*Saint*, Bishop. 5 *Montignac*.

*Perigueux*, *Petracorum*, alias *Petracorii* & *Uzerche*, the Metropolis of the Upper *Perigord*, is seated on the River *Lot*, and distant 65 miles from *Bordeaux* to the North-East, and 40 from *Limoges* to the South-West. This City is very Ancient, and hath been often laid waste by the Inroads of the barbarous Nations; and its Walls King *Henry*, firmin'd the *Saint*, gained a signal Victory over *Gallier* Duke of *Aquitaine*, A. D. 1155. Its ancient Grandeur is evident from the Ruins



of a Temple of the Goddess *Venus*, and of an Amphitheatre, together with divers Inscriptions, and other magnificent Monuments of venerable Antiquity, that are found here. It is the See of a Bishop, and the Seat of the Seneschal of the Province.

*Sarlat, Sarlatum*, the Capital of the Lower *Perigord*, is situated as it were in an Island between the Rivers *Dordogne* and *Vezere*, near the Confines of *Quercy*, 30 miles from *Perigueux* to the South East, and as many from *Cabors* to the North, it formerly belonged to the Diocese of *Perigueux*, but it is now it self an Episcopal See erected out of an Abbey by Pope John XXII. in the Year 1317. It is also a Place of considerable Strength, and sustain'd two Sieges during the Civil Wars.

*S A I N T O N G E* or *X A I N T O N G E*, *Santonica*, hath *Angennis* and *Perigord* on the East, the Country of *Aunis* and *Poitou* on the North, the Ocean on the West, the Haven of *Bordeaux* and *Guéenne* Proper on the South; comprehending from West to East the Space of about 80 Miles, and from South to North about 50 Miles: It is a fruitful Country, and yields Corn, Wine, Saffron, and Salt, whereof very good is made here. The Towns of chiefest note in this Province are,

*Saintes*, Bish. }  
*S. Jean d'Angeli*, }  
*Brouage*, } *Birbasieux*,  
                               } *Aubeterre*, &c.

*Saintes* or *Xantes*, *Santonæ*, aut *Melialanum Santonum*, is situated on the River *Charante* at the distance of 60 Miles from *Bordeaux* to the North, 30 from *Rochel* to the South East, 35 from *Angoulême* to the West, and about 20 from the Sea-coasts to the East. It is a large City, but not very well built. It is an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Bordeaux*. The Cathedral is dedicated to *St. Peter*. Here are yet to be seen divers Aqueducts, an Amphitheatre, a Triumphal Arch over the Bridge of the *Charante*, a great number of Inscriptions, and other Monuments of the ancient Romans.

*S. Jean d'Angely*, *Sancti Joannis Angerici*, aut *Sancti Joannis Angerici*, is a fair Town on the River *Charente*, about 5 or 6 Miles from the Frontiers of *Britany*, and 15 from *Saintes* to the North. It was long since fortified by the French Protestants, but when Lewis XIII. took it he demolish'd its Fortifications.

## The Provinces of GASCOIGNE.

*ARMAGNAC*, *Armeniacensis Comitatus*, is a County in *Gascony*, lying between *Languedoc* to the East, *Agen* to the North, *Gascoigne* and *Bigorre* to the West, and *Comminge* to the South. It is usually divided into Upper and Lower, and comprehends the ensuing Principal Towns, viz.

*Auch*, Archb. }  
*Lezard*, Bish. } *Mirande*,  
                               } *Verdun*.

*AUCH* or *AUX*, *Auschi*, *Augusta Auscorum*, is situated on the River *Giers*, in a very fruitful Country, about 55 miles from *Bazas* to the South East, 35 from *Agen* to the South, and 40 from *Tolonse* to the West. This City is the See of an Archbishop, and the Count is one of the richest and most magnificent of the Kingdom, its Chapter consisting of 15 Dignitaries and 20 Canons, of whom five being Secular are the

Count of *Armagnac*, and the four Barons, of *Montaut*, *Paradillan*, *Montesquion*, and *Ile*. Moreover the Archbishop enjoys half the Lordship of the City, which is also adorn'd with many other Churches and Monasteries.

*Lezard*, *Lactorium*, a Bishop's See, stands on a Hill near the River *Giers*, 20 miles North from *Auch*, and 10 East from *Condom*.

*Mirande*, *Miranda*, is a small Town, and only considerable because it is the Capital of a County, call'd *Astarac* or *Estrac*, which takes up the Southern part of the Province of *Armagnac*. The Town stands on the River *Baise*, at the distance of 10 Miles from *Auch* to the South West. It was first founded under the Reign of King *Philip the Fair* A. D. 1289.

*Verdun*, 30 miles East from *Auch*, and near the River *Garonne*, is the Capital of another small Country call'd *Gare*.

*CHALOSSE*, *Cabestia*, or *GASCONY*, properly so called, lies on the West of *Armagnac*, having *Bazadois* on the North, the *Landes* or *Sandy Grounds* on the West, and *Beaun* on the South. This Country although of small compass is subdivided into many Territories, viz. those of *Turson*, *Marson*, *Gavardan*, *Nebassen*, &c. The most considerable Towns are these viz.

*Aire* Bish. *S. Sever*.

*AIRE*, *Adura*, *Atura*, *Aturum*, & *Aturus*, olim *Vico-Julius* & *Atufatum*, is seated on the River *Adour*, 45 miles from *Auch* to the West, 60 from *Bordeaux* to the South, and 70 from *Bayonne* to the East. The Kings of the *Visigoths* were wont to keep their Courts in this City, and on the Bank of the River are still to be seen the Ruins of the Palace of *Alaric*: Since which, the City of *Aire* hath been often ruin'd by the *Saracens*, *Normans*, and other Nations, and suffer'd much damage during the late Civil Wars of *France*. It is an Episcopal See subject to the Metropolitan of *Auch*, and the Civil Government depends on the Courts of Judicature of *Bazas*, from whence Appeals lie to the Parliament of *Bordeaux*. The most remarkable publick Buildings are, the Abbey of *St. Quiterne*, and the Cathedral of the Virgin *Mary*. Two Arch-deaconries appertain to the Chapter, and the whole Diocese is divided into six Arch-Priest-hoods.

*S. Sever*, *Sancti Severi*, aut *Severopolis*, is a considerable Town at the foot of the Hills on the Banks of the River *Adour*, about 20 miles below *Aire*.

*CONDOMIS*, *Condomensis Ager*, is a small Territory lying between *Armagnac* on the South, *Agenois* on the East, and *Bazadois* on the North: Its chief Towns are,

*Condom*, Bish. *Mont de Marsan*.

*Condom*, *Condomum* & *Condomus*, is seated on the River *Blaise*, and distant 20 miles from *Auch* to the North, 40 from *Bazas* to the South East, and 15 from *Agen* to the South. It is but a small City, however an Episcopal See, erected in the year 1327. by Pope John XII. who gave it to the Revenue of an Abbey of the *Benedictine* Order, which is now the Cathedral Church. *Reimond Goulard* the last Abbot, was the first Bishop of *Condom*, and the Canons were seculariz'd in 1549. Here are also many other Churches and Monasteries. This City was taken by *Sebriel de Monmorency*, chief of the Protestant Party, in 1569.

*Mont de Marsan*, *Mons Martiani*, stands on the banks of the River *Midou*, 46 miles from *Condom* to the



the West, and 15 from *Aire* to the North toward *Bordeaux*. It is the chief Town of a Territory of the same name, and was built by *Peter* Count of *Bis-gonne*, A.D. 1141.

The *LANDES* or *LANNES*, *Landiarum Tractus*, aut *Lande Burdigalensis*, is a sandy and barren Country, lyes West from *Condomois* to the Seacoast between *Bisques* on the South, *Guienne* on the North, and the Ocean on the West, being divided into the *Greater Landes* between *Bordeaux* and *Bayonne*, and the *Lesser* between *Bisques* and *Mont-Morson*; its principal Towns are these *viz.*

*Dax*, Bish. *Albret*, &c.

*Dax* or *Dax*, *Aque Augustæ* aut *Tarbellicæ*, is situated on the *Adur*, 40 miles below *Aire*, and 25 above *Bayonne*, about 70 miles South from *Bordeaux*. It is a fair well built City, and drives a good Trade by means of the River, which falls into the Ocean but 30 miles below it and its Neighbourhood to *Spain*. It hath a Castle for its defence, which is flank'd with many large round Towers, wherein a sufficient Garrison is maintained. It is also famous for its Baths of hot Water, that were much esteemed even in the time of the *Romans*. On which account it acquir'd the name of *Aque*, from whence also proceeded that of the whole Province of *Aquitaine*. This City is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Auch*; and a Senechalcy.

*Albret*, *Lebretum* seu *Lebresi Vicus* & *Abbretum*, is built in the midst of a Forest of the same name, 40 miles from *Dax* to the North-east, 30 from *Bordeaux* to the South, and 25 from *Bisques* to the South-west. The Town and adjacent Country which it gives name to, was dignified with the Title of a Duchy by *Henry II.* King of *France*. From the noble Family of *Albret* were descended two Kings of *Navarre*.

The Country of *LABOURD* or *BASQUE*, borders on the Frontiers of *Spain*, lying between the *Landes* and the *Pyrenean* Mountains, having *Bearn* on the East, and the Sea on the West. The places of chief Note are,

*Bayonne*, Bish. *S. Jean de Luz*.

*Bayonne*, *Lapurdum*, aut *Bayona*, is a large, rich and well fortified City, at the Mouth of the River *Adur*, near its confluence with the *Nive*; 15 miles from the Confines of *Spain* to the South, 25 from *Aire* to the South-west, 100 from *Bordeaux*, and 300 from *Paris*. Some Authors are of opinion, That it was the *Aque Tarbellicæ* of the *Romans*; but it is certain, that its ancient name was *Lapudum*, on which account its Episcopal See, which depends on the Metropolitan of *Auch*, was styled, *Episcopatus Lapudensis*, or of *Lapudum*, until about the year 1150, when it began to be call'd *Bayonnensis* of *Bayonne*. Also the whole Territory lying between *S. Sebastian* and *Fontarabia*, was part of the Vicounty of *Bayonne*, and possess'd by the Vicount, A.D. 1177, according to the Report of *Roger Hoveden* and *Peter de Marca*, who with others, affirm, that the Country belong'd to the Diocess of *Biscone*, till the time of *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, who first obtained for it a Vicar-General during the Civil Wars of *France*, notwithstanding the Remonstrance of its proper Diocesan the Bishop of *Biscone*. The City of *Bayonne* is one of the Keys of the Kingdom of *France* on the side of *Spain*; and hath a very capacious safe and deep Harbour, (a great number of

Vessels passing even into the midst of the Town) and a strong Castle with a good Garrison. The Cathedral bearing the names of the *Virgin Mary* and *S. Leo*, is surrounded with many other Churches, and divers Monasteries. Not far from this City stands a high Mountain, from the top whereof one may take a prospect of the three Kingdoms of *France*, *Spain*, and *Navarre*, &c.

*S. Jean de Luz*, or *Loizune*, *Fanum S. Joannis Lucii & Luifium*, is seated on the mouth of the Rivulet *Urdacuris*, not 10 miles from the Frontiers of *Spain*, and *Fontarabia* to the East, and about 10 from *Bayon* to the South-west. Near this Town in an Island made by the River *Bidasson*, which parts *France* and *Spain*, call'd *The Isle of Conference*, were celebrated the Matrimonial Solemnities between the present French King *Lewis XIV.* and *Maria Theresia* of *Austria*, Infanta of *Spain*, A.D. 1660.

The *Lower NAVARRE*, *Navarra Inferior*, is join'd to the Country of *Labourd* on the West, and that of *Bearne* on the East, and the *Pyrenees* on the S. It is a Mountainous and barren Country, and except Fruit which is delicate here, and some Pasturage, produces but little. In it are these Towns,

*S. Palais*, *S. Jean de Pied de Port*, &c.

*S. Palais*, *Fanum Sancti Palatii*, situated in the Territory of *Mixe* on the little River of *Ridouze*, 30 miles South-east from *Bayonne*, 8 from the Confines of *Bearn* to the West, and about 20 from the *Pyrenean* Mountains to the North. In this Town were held the Sovereign Courts of Justice, and Chancery for the whole Country before it was united to the Parliament of *Pau*, A.D. 1620.

*S. Jean de Pied de Port*, *Fanum S. Joannis Pedepertuensis*, olim *Imum Pyrenæum*, is a well fortified Town, built amidst the Mountains on the Banks of the River *Nive* at the distance scarcely of 3 miles from the Confines of the Upper *Navarre* and the *Pyrenean* Mountains, 20 from *S. Palais* to the South-west, and 30 from *Bayonne* to the South-east.

The Vicounty of *SOULE* is a small Territory extended along the side of the River *Gave de Suson*, between *Bearn* to the East, and the Lower *Navarre* on the West. It comprehends 50 Parishes and only one considerable Town, *viz.* That of *Mauleon de Soule*, which gave Birth to that Learned Prelate *Henricus Spencianus*, or *Henry Spence* Bishop of *Pamier* &c.

*BEARN*, *Benarnia*, lying on the West of *Bisques*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, is bound'd on the East by the County of *Bigorre*, on the North by *Gascoigne*, on the West by the Provostship of *Agen*, the Lower *Navarre* and the Vicounty of *Soule*, and on the South by the Mountains of *Aragon* and *Renjal*. Its utmost extent from South to North consists of about 50 miles. This Province is dignified with the Title of a Principality, and was at first possess'd by its own Princes. Afterward it became subject to the Dominion of the Kings of *Navarre*, and was at length annex'd to the Demains of the Crown under *Henry IV.* The chief are,

*Pau*, Oleron. Bish. *L'Escar*, Bish.

*Pau*, *Palum*, is seated on the River *Gave de Pau*, 30 miles from *Aire* to the South, as many from the Frontiers of *Spain*, 40 from *S. Palais*, and 60 from *Bayonne* to the East. It is a large Town, and the Seat of one of the Parliaments of *France*, and hath a Castle for



for its defence, wherein on the 13th day of December, 1457. was born *Henry IV.* surnamed the Great, King of *France* and *Navarre*.

*Oleron*, *Oleronenfis Urbis*, *Elbrena* & *Iluro*, stands on the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, 12 miles from *Pau* to the West, 20 from the Frontiers of *Navarre*, and about as many from those of *Aragon* to the North. This City is the See of a Bishop subject to the Metropolitan of *Auch*. It was formerly destroy'd by the *Normans*, and rebuilt by Count *Centulus*, A. D. 1080. The *Gave*, a River, separates it from the Suburbs of *St. Mary*, in which stands the Cathedral Church and some other fair Buildings. The Protestants made themselves Masters thereof in the Civil War time, and *Gerard le Roux* or *Roussel*, was install'd Bishop, by *Margaret* Queen of *Navarre*.

*Lescar* or *Laseir* *Laseuris*, aut *Lescar*, derives its Name (says *Peter de Marca*) from the Winding reaches of the Brooks called in the *Basque* Language *Lif-courres* with which it is water'd: It is distant 4 or 5 miles from *Pau* to the East, and 12 from *Oleron* to the North, and is also an Episcopal See. This City was founded A. D. 1000, by the Duke of *Gascony* on the Ruins of the ancient *Beneanum*, which had been utterly raz'd by the *Normans* in 845. In the Cathedral Church of the Virgin *Mary* were the Tombs of the Kings of *Navarre*, but they were demolished by the fury of the Civil Wars.

The County of *BIGORRE*, is bounded on the West by *Bearn*, on the East by *Comings* and *Conserans*, on the North by *Armagnac*, and on the South by the *Pyrenean* Mountains. Its extent from South to North includes about 40 or 50 miles, and from West to East about 20 or 25. This Province is divided into three parts, viz. the Mountains, the Plain and the Territory of *Rustan*. The Mountains is said to have Mines of Copper, &c. but they are not open. *Eneco Arista* possessed this Country A. C. 828 before the Kingdom of *Navarre* was founded, and after many Revolutions King *Henry IV* united it to the Crown of *France*. The Principal Towns, &c. of it are these, viz.

*Tarbo*, Bish. } *Lourde*,  
*Lic de Bigorre*, } *Campm*,  
                          } The Baths of *Baretge*.

*Tarbo* or *Tarbes*, *Tarba*, is seated on the Banks of the River *Adur* in a fertile Country, at the distance of 30 miles from *Aux* to the South-west, and 25 from *Pau* to the East. It is a well-built City, but hath only one Street, together with a Cattle called *Bigorne*, whence *de Marca* says the whole Province hath its name. The See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Auch*, hath been long since establish'd here: as also, a Seneschal Court. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*.

*COMINGES*, *Convenensis Ager*, lies between *Languedoc* on the East, *Armagnac* on the North, the County of *Bigorre* on the West, and *Conserans*, on the South. This Country was possessed by certain particular Counts, until it elcheated to the Crown of *France*: It is reasonable fruitful in Wine, Fruits and Pasturage. And is divided into the *Upper* or *Cominges*, and the *Lower* or *Lombes*. Wherein are contained these Towns of chiefest note, viz.

*S. Bertrand de Cominge*, Bish. *Lombes* Bish.

*St. Bertrand de Cominges*, *Convenae* aut *Lugdunum Convenarum*, & *Lugdunum Aquitaniae*, is situated on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Garonne* and the Confines of *Conserans*, 16 miles from *Aque Convenarum* or *Bagneres*, according to the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, 50 miles from *Toulouse*, to the South-west, 40 from *Auch* to the South, and 30 from *Tarbo* to the South-east. The ancient City, of *Convenae* was raz'd by the French, A. C. 584. and another built out of its Ruins in 1100 by *S. Bertrand*, from whom its modern Name is deriv'd. It is an Episcopal See subject to the Metropolitan of *Auch*, and its Royal Court of Justice depends on the Parliament of *Toulouse*. The Bishop hath a Seat in the Assembly of the States of *Languedoc*.

*Lombes*, *Lombaria* & *Lambarium*, is a small City on the Rivulet of *Save*, distant 30 miles from *S. Bertrand* to the North; 20 from *Auch* to the South-east, 25 from *Toulouse* to the South-west. Its Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Toulouse*, was erected out of an ancient Abbey of *Augustin* Monks, A. D. 1317. by Pope *Joh. XXII.* who nominated one *Arnold Reger* of *Cominges* to be the first Bishop of this Diocets.

*CONSERANS* or *COSERANS*, is a Vi-county lying to the South of *Cominges* proper, between *Languedoc* and the *Pyrenean* Mountains. It was first possessed (as it is generally believed) by *Arnold* of *Spain*, under the Title of a County, then pass'd into the Family of the Counts of *Carceffone*, and from thence was translated to the House of *Nivarre*, &c.

*S. Lizier* of *Conserans* *Conserani*, aut *Fanum S. Licerii*, the Capital of *Conserans*, is a small City seated on the River *Salur*, which about 10 miles from hence falls into the *Garonne*, and is distant 30 Miles from *Toulouse* to the South-W. 46 from *Auch* to the South-East, and 18 from *S. Bertrand* to the East. It is the See of a Bishop, and hath a Royal Court of Justice dependant on the Parliament of *Toulouse*. The City is divided into two Parts, viz. The City and the Town; the former, properly called *Coserans*, is adorned with a Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and in the other, named *S. Lizier*, stands another Cathedral.

The *PYRENEAN* Mountains which serve as a Boundary between the two Kingdoms of *Spain* and *France*, begin near the Town of *S. Jean de Luz* on the Ocean, and continue Eastward quite cross the *Isthmus* that joins *Spain* to the Continent of *Europe*, as far as *Perpignan* on the Mediterranean; the highest of them is that named *Mont-Carrigo*, between *Rouffillon* and *Catalonia*, towards the County of *Comfent* on which Snow lies unmelted the greatest part of the Year.

*Guienne* hath a Governor-General, a Commandant, two Lieutenant-Generals, a Seneschal, and 12 particular Governors of Places. *Saintonge* and *Angoumois* have a Governor-General, a Lieutenant-General, two Seneschals, and three particular Governours of Places. *Limousin* hath a Governour-General, a Lieutenant-General, and a Seneschal. *Perigord* hath a Seneschal: And *Quercy* a Seneschal and Lieutenant-General.



## CHAP. XI.

LANGUEDOC, *Occivania, aut Volcarum Regio.*

THE Province of *LANGUEDOC*, including the Countries of *Cevennes* and *Roussillon*, is bounded on the East by the River *Rhone*, which divides it from *Provence* and *Dauphine*; on the North by *Lyonnois*, *Auvergne*, *Rouergue* and *Quercy*; on the West by *Armagnac* and *Cominges*; and on the South by the Mediterranean Sea and the Pyrenean Mountains. It is situated between the 41 Deg. 50 Min. and the 44 Deg. 54 Min. of Latitude; and between the 18 Deg. 5 Min. and the 22 Deg. 40 Min. of Longitude. Its extent from South to North is about 120 miles, and from West to East, *viz.* from *Rieux* to *Ville-Neuf-les-Avignon*, 180 miles. In the Roman Division of *Gaul*, *Languedoc* went by the Name of the *Gallia Narbonensis*, and in the declining of the Empire it was possessed by the *Goths*, who here founded the Kingdom of the *Visigoths*, which hath been extinct ever since the time of *Charles Martel*.

This Province is esteem'd the most Pleasant and Fruitful of any in the whole Kingdom of *France*, the Air being very Temperate and Healthful, and the Soil bringing forth abundance of Corn and excellent Fruits; its chief Commodities are Wine, Oil, Honey, Wax, Saffron, Silk and Salt. The Upper *Languedoc* affords good Pasture to many Herds of Oxen and Cows. Some Mines of rich Metals and Minerals are found here, and Quarries of Marble and Alabaster. Moreover all sorts of Fish are caught in the Rivers and on the Sea-coasts, and there are divers Springs of Mineral Waters very efficacious in curing Diseases.

But the Country of *Cevennes* hath not the same advantages, as being Mountainous, not so much cultivated, and less delightful in many places. However it affords Millet, Chestnuts, and some other Fruits. The principal Rivers are the *Rhone*, the *Garonne*, the *Tarn*, the *Vizre*, the *Vidzule*, the *Barange*, the *Eraut*, the *Salazun*, the *Berre*, the *Pallas*, the *Agout*, and the *Aude*, intermixing its Waters with those of the *Fresquel*, which is joined by a Canal with the lesser *Lers*, that runs into the *Garonne*. This is that famous Canal of *Languedoc*, which hath been lately cut with so vast Expence to make a Communication between the two Seas, *viz.* the Ocean and Mediterranean, and not yet altogether brought to Perfection. This Country, which hath been subject to a great number of Dukes, Vicounts, and divers other Lords, after many Revolutions, was united to the Crown by King *John*, A. D. 1361.

The States of *Languedoc* are very considerable, and their Assemblies are held every three Years by the three Orders, *viz.* the Clergy, the Nobles, and the third Estate; the First of these is composed of the three Archbishops; the Second of twenty two Barons taken out of every Diocesis; and the Third of twenty two Consuls of the Capital Cities of every Diocesis, &c. The whole Province of *Languedoc* is usually divided into the Upper to the West, and the Lower to the East, and those subdivided as in this Table.

The Upper in 5 Parts <i>viz.</i>	{	<i>Toulousan</i> , chief City <i>Toulouse</i> , Archbish.
		<i>Albigensis</i> ,— <i>Alby</i> , Archbish.
		<i>Lauragais</i> ,— <i>Castelnau-dary</i> .
		The County of <i>Foix</i> .— <i>Foix</i> ;
		<i>Roussillon</i> ,— <i>Perpignan</i> , Bish.

The Lower in 4 Parts, <i>viz.</i>	{	The Quarter of <i>Narbonne</i> . <i>Narbonne</i> , Archbish.
		The Quarter of <i>Bessiers</i> . <i>Bessiers</i> , Bish.
		The Quarter of <i>Nimes</i> . <i>Nimes</i> , Bish.
		<i>Cevennes</i> in 3. { <i>Gevaudan</i> . <i>Mende</i> , Bish.
		<i>viz.</i> { <i>Vivarais</i> . <i>Viviers</i> .
		<i>Velay</i> . <i>Puy</i> , Bish.

*TOULOUSAN*, *Tolosanus Ager*, takes up the more Western part of the Upper *Languedoc*, along the Banks of the River *Garonne*, lying between *Gascony* on the West, *Albigensis* on the East, and the Country of *Foix* on the South. It comprehends these principal Cities and Towns, *viz.*

*Toulouse*, Archbish. *Lavaur*, Bish.

*TOULOUSE*, *THOULOUSE*, or *TOLOSE* *Tolosa*, is seated on the River *Garonne*, over which it hath a stately Stone-Bridge, call'd *Pont-neuf*. It is distant 330 miles from *Paris*, 140 from *Limoges*, and 55 from *Cahors* to the South, 60 from the *Pyrenees* to the North, 150 from *Bayon*, and 40 from *Auch* to the East, 170 from the River *Rhone*, and 100 from the *Mediterranean* to the West. It was heretofore the Seat of the ancient *Tectosages*, (who gain'd so many Conquests in *Asia* and *Greece*) and then a Roman Colony: In process of time it became the Metropolis of the *Visigoths*, afterward of *Aquitain*, and at length one of the most considerable Provinces, or Governments of *France*. Its Episcopal See which before depended on the Jurisdiction of the Arch-bishop of *Narbonne*, was erected into a Metropolitan by Pope *John XXII*. A. D. 1317. *Toulouse* is famous for its Traffick, and since a Communication hath been made between the Western Ocean and the Mediterranean, may justly be stild the Mart of both Seas. The City is divided into Eight Parts, call'd *Capitulares*, to which a lesser Quarter nam'd the *Burgh*, on the other side of the *Garonne*, was added in the Year 1346. The Magnificent Cathedral of *St. Stephen*, is built on a spacious Ground-plat, adorn'd with a Fountain, over which is erected an Obelisk wrought with curious Workmanship. Another Church dedicated to *St. Sernin* or *Saturnin*, the first Bishop of *Toulouse*, is remarkable for its Treasury of Relicks, as also is that of the *Jacquin* for the Shrine of *Thomas Aquinas*. Here are also to be seen many Monuments of Antiquity, particularly a Capitol and an Amphitheatre, together with divers Aqueducts, old Temples, &c. The University of *Toulouse*, is reputed to be the Second of the Kingdom, and consists of several Colleges, among which that of *Fes* is the most Illustrious; and indeed this place hath been long since the Seat of the Muses, on which account it is call'd *Palladia*, or the City of *Pallas*, by *Martial*.

*Agout*.



*Aufonius*, and *Sidonius Appollinaris*. The Town-House is a stately Pile of Building, and hath acquir'd the name of the *Capitol*; neither perhaps will it be improper to mention the Mills of the *Basile* and Castle, every one of which hath 16 or 17 Mill-stones for the grinding of Corn, and a great number of Engines for the currying of Leather. A Sovereign Court of Parliament was began here in the time of King *Philip the Fair*, and established by *Charles VII*. Here is also a Seneschalcy and Generality. The City of *Toulouse* after divers Revolutions, remained long in the hands of its own Counts, till *Philip the Hardy* seiz'd on it, together with the whole County. A. D. 1271; and King *John* united it to the Crown in 1361.

About this City lye those spacious pleasant Fields, call'd by ancient Writers, *Campi Catalaunici*, in which that famous Battle was fought by *Aetius* the Roman General, assisted by the *Franks*, *Burgundians* and *Goths*, against *Attila* King of the *Huns*, whom they utterly defeated and kill'd near 200 Thousand of the 500 Thousand ('tis said) he brought into the Field. Others place the *Campi Catalaunici* about *Chalons*, in *Champagne*, tho' with less reason, this place agreeing best with the accounts given of them by the Ancients.

*Lavaur*, *L'Avoeur*, or *La Vaur*, *Vaurum*, aut *Vaurum*, stands on the Banks of the River *Agour* in the Upper *Languedoc*, and on the very Confines of *Albigensis*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Toulouse* to the East. *Isidore* Bishop of *Toulouse*, gave the Town of *Lavaur*, in the year 1098, to *Fiorady* Abbot of *St. Pierre l'Esperance*, on condition that he should found a Priory in it; where afterward in 1318, Pope *John XXII.* established an Episcopal See.

*ALBIGEOIS*, *Albigensis Tractus*, lyes between the Diocesis of *Toulouse*, *Uzes*, *Lavaur* and *Rodez*, being the Country of the ancient *Heluseri*, mentioned by *Cæsar*. It is divided into two almost equal Parts by the River *Tarn*, and comprehends these chief Cities and Towns, viz.

*Alby*, Arch. Bish. *Castres*, Bish. *Realment*.

*ALBI*, *Albigæ*, is situated on the River *Tarn*, in a very fertile Country, about 35 miles from *Toulouse* to the North-east, and 30 from *Ville Franche*, in *Rouergue* to the South. Its Bishops See was formerly Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Bourges*, but Pope *Innocent XI.* erected it into an Archbishoprick in the Year 1678. The Prelate of this City is also its Temporal Lord, and the King only maintains a Magistrate there, call'd the *Intendant* for holding the Royal Courts of Judicature. The Cathedral of *St. Cécile* hath one of the fairest Quires of *France*.

*Castres*, *Castum*, aut *Castrum Albiensium*, is a fair City on the River *Agout*, distant 20 miles from *Albi* to the South, and 40 from *Toulouse*. Its Episcopal See was founded by Pope *John XXII.* in 1317, under the Metropolitan of *Bourges*, but it hath depended on that of *Albi* ever since the year 1678.

The Inhabitants of this Country have been famous in Ecclesiastical History, by the name of *Albigenses*, for their early dissention from the errors of the Church of *Rome*. They were a Branch of the *Waldenses*, who proceeded from *Peter Waldo* a rich Merchant of *Lyons*, a very Pious and Charitable Man, who touched with the sudden death of a Friend at a Feast, set himself seriously to contemplate upon Eternity, and study the Holy Scripture, which led him to the discovery of the Errors of the Roman Church: And being exceeding Charitable in relieving the wants of

the Poor, and doing other good Offices that lay in his Power, obtain'd great Respect, and Attention when he argued against the Supremacy of the Pope, Adoration of Images, Invocation of Saints, &c. His Followers grew numerous, and were call'd in Derision by the Papists, *The Poor men of Lyons*, and afterwards *Waldenses* from this *Waldo*. The first mention of them in History is about the middle of the twelfth Century, when they began to be Persecuted by the Papists, and were forced to fly into *Piedmont*, where they incorporated with the *Vaudi*, (who were ancient Christians that had never been subject to the Pope's Authority) and were afterwards indifferently call'd *Vaudois* and *Waldenses*. Another part of them retiring into *Languedoc*, settled in this Province of *Albigensis*, and encreased exceedingly. At first the Popes endeavoured to convert them by Preaching; to which purpose the Dominican order of Monks was instituted about the beginning of the thirteenth Century: But these not prevailing, and the *Albigenses* being grown strong by the Patronage of the Counts of *Toulouse*, whom they Converted, the Pope raised a Crusade against them, stirred up the Dukes of *Austria* against the *Waldenses*, and made our *Simon Mountfort* Earl of *Leicester*, Captain against the *Albigenses*, A. C. 1213, who with the Popes Legate, the Duke of *Burgundy*, and a great Army which was raised for (as they call'd it) this *Holy War*, were too strong for those poor People, took and plundered their Cities, and barbarously tormented and murdered their Persons, which caus'd them to fly into *Provence* and other Parts, and in time settled themselves at *Merindol*, *Chabriers*, and thereabouts; where in the year 1545, they were most barbarously massacred and cruelly tormented by the French Papists. Those that escaped, sent to *Zuinglius* for Teachers, and incorporated with the Calvinists, who altogether in time grew very numerous and powerful, as we have already shown in the account of the Religion of *France*.

*LAURAGAIS*, *Lauracus* and *Lauriacensis Ager*, taking its Name from the Town of *Laureac*, is extended between the Banks of the River *Ariege* and *Argent*. It is divided into two parts, viz. The Upper and Lower. The chief Cities whereof are,

*Castlenaudary*, *S. Papoul*, Bish.

*Castlenaudary*, *Castellum Arianorum*, seu *Castolavium Auriacum*, and *Castellum Novum Arri*, stands on a Hill on the Upper *Lauragais*, 20 miles from *Castres* to the South, and 30 from *Toulouse* to the South-east: A Seneschalcy Court and Presidial have been held in this Town ever since the Year 1553. The Marshal *de Schomberg* gain'd a memorable Battle not far from hence, over the Duke of *Orleans*, in which the Count *d'Moret* was Slain, and the Duke *Montmorency* Wounded and taken Prisoner, A. D. 1632. The new Canal passes through this Town, and by reason of a steep Hill which would cause too precipitate a flux of Water, here are five several Locks with great Sluces one above another, and large Basins between each, whereby the Water is retained and the Navigation continued. These Sluces are Stupendious Works for Art and Strength.

*S. Papoul*, *Fanum S. Papuli* aut *Papulepolis*, is a small City on the foot of Mount *Noire*, near the Rivulets of *Roteure* and *Lampi*, about a League distant from *Castlenaudary*, and 15 from *Carcassonne*, to the North-west. A certain Monastery was built here about the end of the VIIIth Century which Pope *John XXII.* changed into a Cathedral Church, allotting 43 Parishes for its Diocesis, A. D. 1317.



The County of *FOIX* lies on the South-west of *Languedoc*, and is bounded on the South by the *Pyrenean Mountains* and *Roussillon*, on the West by *Gascogne*, on the North by *Toulousan* and *Lauragais*, and on the East by *Narbonne*. It contains 16 Castellanies or small Governments, and many considerable Towns. It was subject to its own Counts, from whom descended *Henry IV.* King of *France*, and so it was added to the Crown, and made part of the Government of *Languedoc*. The chief Towns are,

*Foix*, } *Pamiers*, Bish.  
*Mirepoix*, Bish. } *Rieux*, Bish.

*Foix*, *Fuxium*, a small Town or Hamlet, formerly well fortified, hath given its name to the whole County, and to an illustrious Family; it is situated on the Brook *Ariège*, and the Foot of the *Pyrenean Mountains*, from which it is distant 15 miles to the North, and 40 from *Toulouse* to the South, and is chiefly remarkable for its Abby, Assembly of the States, Seneschalcy, Treasury-Office for the Receipt of the King's Revenue, &c.

*Mirepoix*, *Mirapincum* seu *Mirapiscus*, is watered by the River *Lez*, and stands 10 miles from *Foix* to the East. This City once belonged to the Diocese of *Toulouse*, but was erected into an Episcopal See under that Metropolitan, by Pope *John XXII.*

*Pamiers*, or *Pamiers*, *Pamie*, aut *Apamie*, stands on the River *Ariège*, and is defended by the Castle of *Fredol*, whence the City itself was formerly call'd *Fredolus*, and is distant 12 miles from *Foix* to the North, and 30 from *Toulouse*. Pope *Boniface VIII.* chang'd the Abby Church dedicated to *S. Antonin*, into a Cathedral, in the year 1296. And its Episcopal See hath been possessed by divers illustrious Prelates, particularly *S. Lewis* of *Marseille*, a Pope named *Benedict XII.* four Cardinals, the learned *Henricus Spemardus*, and others.

*Rieux*, *Rici*, and *Rivona* is a City of small extent, and stands on the River *Garonne*, near the Confines of *Gascogne* and *Cers*, 25 miles from *Toulouse* to the South, and 30 from *Foix* to the North-west. Its Episcopal See suffragan to the Archbishop of *Toulouse*, was likewise established by Pope *John XXII.* and the Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. The Abbey of *Fontaine* is in this Diocese; where are also those of *Lez*, *Cas*, *Salargues*, &c.

The County of *ROUSSILLON*, *Roussinensis Comitatus*, and *CONFLENT*, lies on the other side of the *Pyrenean*, bounded on the North by *Languedoc*, on the South by *Catalonia*, and on the East by the *Mediterranean Sea*: its extent from West East is about 60 miles, and 35 from South to North. This County was formerly part of *Spain*, but the French King *Louis XIII.* took it, and it was granted to *France* by the *Pyrenean Treaty*, A. D. 1659. The most considerable Rivers are the *Tech*, the *Tech*, and the *Ez*; and the principal Towns are these, viz.

*Perpignan*, Bish. } *Ville Franche de Con-*  
*Elne*, formerly Bish. } *fluent*.

*PERPIGNAN*, *Perpinnum*, and *Papirianum*, is situated on the River *Tech*, and defended by a strong Castle, at the distance of 3 Leagues from the Coasts of the *Mediterranean Sea* to the West, and 30 miles from *Narbonne* to the South. It was built in the year 1630, by Count *Isard*, out of the Ruines of old *Roussillon*, as yet to be seen about half a League from thence, and

at first belong'd to the Kings of *Spain*, till the *French* made themselves Masters of it, in 1642. ever since which time it hath remained in their possession. The City is adorned with an University founded by *Peter* King of *Aragon*, is dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*, and hath a very strong Cittadel for its defence.

*Elne*, *Helena*, olim *Illibaris*, stands on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Tech*, at the distance only of one League from the *Mediterranean*, 10 miles from *Perpignan* to the South. It was an Episcopal See, but that was translated to *Perpignan* by Pope *Clement VII.* A. D. 1604. The Town of *Elne* was subject to the King of *Spain* till 1640. at which time it fell into the hands of the *French*: A little below it are still to be seen the ruins of a Castle, wherein *Constantine* the Son of the Emperor *Constantine* was slain, during the Commotions raised by the Tyrant *Magnensius*.

*Ville-Franche de Conflent*, *Villa Franca Confluentum*, the chief Town of the Territory call'd *Conflent*, which lies among the Mountains, is seated at the Foot of the *Pyrenean Mountains*, about 25 miles from *Perpignan* to the S. W.

The Quarter of *NARBONNE*, *Narbonnensis Trans.* lies between *Lauragais* and the County of *Foix* on the West, *Roussillon* on the South, the Sea and the Quarter of *Besiers* on the East, and *Toulousan* on the North. The principal Cities and Towns of this County, are these, viz.

*Narbonne*, Archb. } *Alet*, Bish.  
*Carcassonne*, Bish. } *St. Pons de Tormiers*, Bish.

*Narbonne*, *Narbo*, *Narben*, and *Deucamanorium Colonia*, is commodiously seated in a low Country on an Arm of the River *Aude*, commonly called *la Robine*, which was cut by the *Romans*, and serves to convey Barks laden with Merchandizes from the *Mediterranean Sea*, from which it is distant but 2 Leagues. It is a large well fortified City, and one of the most ancient of the Kingdom, for the *Romans* establish'd their Colonies therein, as the Capital of one of their Divisions of *Gaul*, which from this City was called *Gallia Narbonnensis*; and it was the usual place of Residence of their Pro-consuls, who adorned it with a Capitol, and an Amphitheatre, together with divers Baths, Aqueducts, Municipal Schools, and granted great Privileges to the City, insomuch that the Inhabitants in gratitude for these favours erected an Altar in honour of *Augustus*, as appears from an Inscription found here in the XVIth Century. The City of *Narbonne* hath been long since the See of an Archbishop, ever since the time of *Constantine* the Great, if we may give credit to some Writers, who also avett, that the Pro-consul *Paulus Sergius*, whom *St. Paul* had converted, was its first Apostle and Prelate. The Archbishop is President of the States of *Languedoc*. The Cathedral bears the name of *S. Justus* and *S. Pastor*, and is remarkable for its admirable Organs and curious Paintings, wherein are represented the raising of *Lazarus* from Dead, the last Judgment, &c. There are also 5 other Parochial Churches, the chief of which is the Collegiate Church of *S. Paul*, a Colledge of the Fathers of the Doctrine, and divers Monasteries for Religious Persons of both Sexes. This City belong'd to its own Dukes and Lords, till *Gaston de Foix* exchange'd it with *Louis XIIth* King of *France*, for other Lands in the year 1507. It is distant 80 miles from *Toulouse* to the East, 35 from *Perpignan* to the North, 100 from the River *Rhône* to the West, and about 80 from *Rodez* to *Rouergne* to the South.

*Carcassi-*



*Carcassonne*, *Carcasso*, *Carcassio* and *Carcassum*, is situated on the *Aude*, in the midst between *Perpignan* and *Thoulouse*, 20 miles from *Alet* to the North, and 30 from *Narbonne* to the West. It is the Capital City of the Territory called from thence *Carcassès*, or the Country of *Carcassonne*, and is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Narbonne*. It is divided into three parts, the Upper Town, the Lower where the Burgh formerly stood, and the Castle Precinct, and is especially noted for its woollen Manufactures, &c.

*Alet*, *Alesta*, aut *Elesta*, stands in like manner on the Banks of the River *Aude*, at the Foot of the *Pyrenean Mountains*, 20 miles from *Carcassonne* to the South, 20 from *Minerbois* to the East, and 25 from *Perpignan* to the North-West. This City together with the adjacent Country, was at first included within the Diocese of *Narbonne*, but was erected into an Episcopal See by Pope *John XXII*.

*S. Pons de Témès*, *Fanum S. Pontii Tmeriarum*, *Tomerie*, and *Pontepolis* was at first only an Abby of the *Benedictine Order*, founded A. C. 936. by *Raimond Count of Thoulouse*, in honour of *S. Pons*, Bishop of *Cimble*, or *Niez*, and Martyr; afterward it grew up into a Town, and Pope *John XII*. established an Episcopal See there, in 1318, but the Monks were not seculariz'd until A. 1625. The Bishop is Lord of this small City, which stands amidst the Mountains, about 25 miles from *Narbonne* to the North, as many from *Castres* to the East, and 25 from *Alby* to the South-west.

The Quarter of *BESIERS*, *Bliterensis Tractus*, is extended between that of *Narbonne* on the West, *Rouergue* on the North, the Quarter of *Nimes* on the East, and the Sea on the South, comprehending these chief Cities and Towns, viz.

*Besiers*, Bish. } *Lodève*, Bish.  
*Agde*, Bish. } *Pezenas*.

*Besiers* or *Beziers*, *Biteria*, *Bliteria*, aut *Biterrensis Civitas*, is a very ancient City seated upon a Hill, the Avenues whereof are of difficult access, near the small River *Orb*, which a little below falls into the *Mediterranean*. It was a considerable place in the time of the *Romans*, who built there two Temples in honour of *Julius* and *Augustus*; it was in a very flourishing state in the fourth Century, when the *Goths* took and ruined it: And when afterwards it had recovered it self, the *Saracens* pillaged it about the year 736. And to prevent its being again a Seat for those Infidels, *Charles Martel* quite destroy'd it. However, in time it was again rebuilt, and became flourishing and populous as it is. It was formerly a Vicounty under the Dukes of *Septimania*, but at length united to the Crown of *France*. This City is the See of a Bishop, hath still the Title of a Vicounty, Bailiage and Presidial, and is distant 2 Leagues from the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, 15 miles from *Narbonne* to the North-East, and 45 from *Montpelier* to the West.

*Agde*, *Agatha*, stands on the Bay of *Lyons*, a little above the Mouth of the River *Erant*, distant one League from the little Island *Brescon* to the North, 15 miles from *Narbonne*, and 12 from *Besiers* to the East, and about 40 from *Montpelier* to the West. This City is remarkable for its Trade, the beauty of its Buildings, and is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*.

*Lodève*, *Luteva* & *Lutetia*, aliis *Glanum* stands at the foot of the Mountains of *Cevennes*, on the Frontiers of *Rouergue*, near the Rivulet of *Lergue*, which falls into the

*Erant*, and is distant about 30 miles from *Agde* and *Beziers* to the North. It was dignified with an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Narbonne* by the favour of Pope *John XXII*. And the Bishop is its Spiritual and Temporal Lord, having a right to determine all Causes, Criminal and Civil, except High Treason, and assumes the Title of Count of *Montbrun*, which is an adjacent Castle: 800 Gentlemen formerly held Tenures in Fee of these Prelates, and the Bishoprick on that account was stiled *the Noble*. This City was exposed to great Calamities during the Wars of the *Goths* and *Albigens*; the French Protestants surpriz'd it in the Year 1573. and it was re-taken by the Duke of *Montmorency*, A. D. 1583.

*Pezenas*, *Piscene*, is a fair neat Town, seated on a Hill, on the River *Peyne*, near the *Erant*, 12 or 14 Miles North from *Agde*, and 20 South from *Lodève*; in which the States of the Province commonly assemble.

The Quarter of *NIMES*, *Nemausensis Tractus*, lies between that of *Besiers* on the West, the *Mediterranean Sea* on the South, *Provence* on the East, and *Cevennes* on the North; and contains the ensuing considerable Cities and Towns, viz.

*Nimes*, Bish. } *Aigues-Mortes*,  
*Montpelier*, Bish. } *Lunel*,  
*Beaucaire*, } *Sommieres*, &c.

*Nimes*, *Nemausus*, is most pleasantly seated, near the Spring-head of the River *Vistre*, as being surrounded on one side with Hills, on which grows abundance of Vines, and all sorts of Fruit-Trees, and on the other with a spacious fertile Plain. But it is more especially famous for its Antiquity, whereof as yet remain many illustrious Monuments: The chief of those is an Amphitheatre, built of Free-stone, of an extraordinary length and breadth, the out-side being adorn'd with Columns and their Cornices, on which are to be seen the *Roman Eagles*, and the Figures of *Romulus* and *Remus* sucking a Wolf, besides the Temple of *Diana*, without the Town; an admirable Spring, expatiating in form of a Pond, mentioned by *Ausonius*. And in this City was plac'd a Colony, which the Emperor *Augustus* brought out of *Egypt*, after the conquest of that Province, as appeareth from divers ancient Medals. Neither is its present Grandeur less considerable, for it is the Seat of a Bishoprick, subject to the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*, of a Seneschals Jurisdiction, called of *Beaucaire* and *Nimes*; of a Presidial Court; and of a University lately established. It is also a place of very good Trade, which consists chiefly in Woollen Stuffs made here. The City of *Nimes* was possessed by the *Goths*, till the time of *Charles Martel*; and by the Protestants during the Civil Wars of *France*: It is distant not above 10 miles from the River *Rhône* to the East, 30 from *Montpelier* to the North-East, and 30 from the *Mediterranean* to the North.

*Montpelier*, *Mons-Pessulanus*, *Mont-Pussulus*, & *Mons Lucellarum*, the Capital City of the Lower *Languedoc*, the largest and most flourishing of all the Province except *Thoulouse*, is pleasantly seated on the top of a Hill, near the Rivulet of *Lez*, at the distance scarcely of one League from the Pool of *Maguelonne*, 2 from the Coasts of the *Mediterranean Sea*, and 60 miles from *Narbonne* to the East. The Episcopal See of *Maguelonne*, depending on the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*, was translated hither under the Popedom of *Paul III*. in the Year 1536. An University for the study of Philosophy, one of the most famous throughout *Europe*, was found-



founded here, as they say, by the Disciples of *Adam* and *Abel*, in A. D. 1196, and re-established in 1221. Besides a Law Academy, a College of Jesuits, a Court of Appeals, a Chamber of Aides, a Chamber of Accounts, a Generality, and a Chamber of the Treasures of France, a Senechal's Court, a Presidial, a Chamber of the later Seal, and a Royal Court of ordinary Justice. This City is also adorned with divers other Edifices, as The Hall of Justice or Senechal's, the Churches of *S. Paul*, and the Virgin *Mary*; and among Churches marked with four Royal Beasts: The King's Physick Garden, without the Town, and other Cathedrales, that deserve well to be viewed by Travellers. The Inhabitants are employed in making of Treacle, Verdegrease, white Wax, Silk, and other sorts of Manufactures. *Philip III* the Simple, Son of King of Majorca, sold the City of Montpellier to King *Philip of France*, A. D. 1349, for the Sum of 20000 Crowns of Gold. The *French* Parliament made themselves Masters of it in 1561, but *Henry XIII* took it from them after a vigorous Defence in 1622.

**GEAUCUDAN** or **GIHAUDAN**, *Gilaudum*, lies on the North of *Brieques*, and hath *France* and *Italy* for its Eastern bounds; the Diocese of *Embrun* on the South, *Roussillon* on the West, and *Dauphine* on the North. This Country hath been some time possessed by certain particular Counts, and is very fruitful, though encompassed with Mountains. The chief Cities,

*Mont*, *Montmorillon*, *Monte Gevaucum*, is situated in a Valley, surrounded with the Mountains of *Cevennes*, near the Source of the River *Loire*, 10 miles North from *Montmorillon*, 20 from the borders of *Auvergne*, and 50 from the River *Rhone*. Some Authors make this the ancient *Alaunum* or *Gilaunum*; but the Village *Parvaux*, 2 Leagues hence, seems rather to have been that, and that this grew out of its Ruins, having been at first only a Village or Hamlet. It is now a good City, the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Arles*. The Bishop hath the Title of a Count, and in the Lordship of the Manor together with the King, having also enjoyed of late past a Privilege of Coining Money. This City is beautified with divers fair Churches, a stately Episcopal Palace, &c.

**VIVARIS**, *Vivariensis Provincia*, was the Country of the ancient *Helvi*, and is now part of *Cevennes*, lying between *Languedoc* proper on the South, *Gevaudan* on the West, *Forez* and *Velay* on the North, and the River *Rhone* on the East. It is extended from North to South the space of about 60 miles, and from East to West about 20 miles, being divided into two Parts: 1. The Upper and the Lower, and comprehending these Principal Cities and Towns, viz.

In the Upper

*Viviers*, *Bis.* *Tournon*, *Aubenas*.

In the Lower

*Uzer*, *Bis.* *Pont S. Esprit*.

*Viviers*, *Vivario* seu *Vivarium*, is seated on a Hill and the Banks of the River *Rhone*, over-against the Province of *Dauphine*, about 65 miles North from

*Montpellier*, and 70 miles South from *Lyons*. It was at first only a Village, and in process of time grew up into a large City, out of the Ruins of *Abs* or *Abba Haurum*, which was destroy'd by *Crocius* King of the *Gomans*; and that Episcopal See was remov'd thither about A. C. 430. The Bishop is styled Count of *Viviers* and Prince of *Donters*, *Chateau-Neuf*, &c.

*Uzer*, *Uzeria*, is the Capital City of a Country, thence so called, and dignified with the Title of a Duchy, and an Episcopal See, depending on the Metropolitan of *Narbonne*. It is distant 12 miles from *Nimes* to the North, 30 from *Viviers* to the South, and 20 from *Alignon* to the West. On the Road between this City and that of *Nimes* is to be seen the stately Bridge of *Guard*, built over the River *Guard* between two Mountains, that are thereby join'd together; and indeed its Structure is admirable, as consisting in three Stories of Arches one above another, the last of which was an Aqueduct.

*Pont S. Esprit*, a small City with a good Castle, and a Stone-Bridge over the *Rhone*, is seated on the borders of the *Vivarois*, and at the confluence of the *Ardeche* with the *Rhone*, 20 miles from *Uzer* to the North, and 15 from *Viviers* to the South.

**VELAY**, *Vellunia* a small Country on the North-west of *Vivarois*, having *Forez* on the North, *Auvergne* on the West, and *Gevaudan* on the South. It is divided into two parts by the Mountains of *Mazeres*, *Pertuis* and *Meizal*, all cover'd with Woods. The chief Town is

*Puy*, or *Puy en Velay*, *Podium*, olim *Vellanorum Urbis* & *Anicium*, stands on a Mountain, near the River *Loire*, at the distance of 2 Leagues from the ancient Town of *Rugium*, now the Village of *S. Paulhan*, one of the Ruins whereof it took its rise, also 50 miles from *Viviers* to the North-west, 60 from *Lyons* to the South-west, and not above 10 from the borders of *Auvergne*. It is a fair, large, well-built City, and an Episcopal See, which depends immediately on that of *Rome*, not being subject to the Jurisdiction of any Metropolitan. The Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is an ancient and Noble Pile of Building but more especially famous for the concourse of Pilgrims and other devout Persons, frequently resorting thereto. Here are also divers Parochial Churches and a great number of Monasteries. The Bishop's Count of *Velay*, and formerly had a Privilege to Coin Money: He administers Justice together with the King's Senechal, who hath his Seat here.

*Languedoc* hath a Governour-General, and a Commander in chief for the King, who hath a Lieutenant-General. Here are also 3 Lieutenant-Generals, 1 for the Upper *Languedoc*, who resides at *Thoulouze*; 1 for the Lower, residing at *Montpellier*; And 3 for *Vivarois* at *Pont S. Esprit*. There are also the Senechal of *Nimes*, the Senechal and Governour of *Thoulouze* and *Albigeois*, the Senechal of the Country of *Foix*, *Carcassonne*, *Besiers* and *Limoux*. A Governour of the Country of *Foix*, 3 Bailiffs of *Velay*, *Gevaudan* and *Vivarois*; and particular Governours in *Montpellier*, *Nimes*, *Pont S. Esprit*, *Narbonne*, *Carcassonne*, *Foix*, *Brescon*, *Egde*, *du Puy*, &c. And in *Roussillon* a Governour-General. There is also a Lieutenant-General and particular Governours in *Perpignan*, and six other Places on the Frontiers.



## C H A P. XII.

P R O V E N C E, *Provincia.*

**T**HIS Province, which bears the Title of a County, is bounded on the East by *Piedmont* and the River *Var*; on the South by the Mediterranean Sea, on the West by the River *Rhône*, that separates it from *Languedoc*, and on the North by *Dauphine*, being extended between the 42d Degree 30 Minutes, and the 44th Degree 6 Minutes of Latitude, as also between the 22d Degree 30 Minutes and the 25th Degree 40 Minutes of Longitude, comprehending 180 English Miles from South to North, and 130 from West to East.

*PROVENCE* was the first part of *Gaul* that the *Romans* got footing in, and was therefore call'd the Province of the *Remms*. In the Division by *Augustus*, this was the *Gallia Narbonensis secunda*. It was afterwards possess'd by the *Goths*: And under the *French* it was part of the Kingdom of *Arles* or *Burgundy*. Afterwards cut off from that, and govern'd by its own Counts for about 400 Years, till the Year 1481, when *Charles* the last Earl of *Provence* bequeathed it to *Lewis XI.* King of *France*.

The Air is somewhat cold in the Upper *Provence* by reason of the Mountains but the Country affords Corn, Wine, Almonds, and Fruit, as also very good Pasture for Cattle, &c. In the Lower *Provence*, along the Sea-coasts it is hot, and hath little Winter, except when the North Winds blow. The Soil there is very fertile, and produces abundance of Corn, Grapes, Olives, Figs, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Pomegranats, Apricocks, Plums, Almonds, Apples, Pears, &c. Divers sorts of excellent Fish are taken out of the Sea, especially Tunnies. The principal Rivers are the *Rhône*, the *Durance*, the *Verdon*, the *Ubay*, the *Argens*, the *Var*, the *Arc*, &c. It is a Maritime Province and hath these considerable Bays in the Mediterranean Sea, *viç.* *Marseille*, *Toulon*, *Iheres*, *Grimaud* and *Lérins*.

*Provence* is usually divided into the Upper, Middle and Lower; however, its several Parts may be better distinguish'd by the Diocesses, as they are placed in the ensuing Table.

*Provence* divided into 18 Parts or Diocesses, *viç.*

The Diocess of <i>Aix</i> ,	<i>Aix</i> , Archb. Cap.
<i>Riez</i> ,	<i>Riez</i> , Bish.
<i>Senes</i> ,	<i>Senes</i> , Bish.
<i>Digne</i> ,	<i>Digne</i> , Bish.
<i>Arles</i> ,	<i>Arles</i> , Archb.
<i>Marseille</i> ,	<i>Marseille</i> , Bish.
<i>Toulon</i> ,	<i>Toulon</i> , Bish.
<i>Frejus</i> ,	<i>Frejus</i> , Bish.
<i>Grasse</i> ,	<i>Grasse</i> , Bish.
<i>Vence</i> ,	<i>Vence</i> , Bish.
<i>Glandève</i> ,	<i>Glandève</i> , Bish.
<i>Sisteron</i> ,	<i>Sisteron</i> , Bish.
<i>Apt</i> ,	<i>Apt</i> , Bish.
County of <i>Venaissin</i> ,	<i>Avignon</i> , Archb. Cap.
Principality of <i>Orange</i> ,	<i>Orange</i> .

The of *Martegue*, *Martegue*,  
Islands of *Stecades*, *Ribaudon*,  
in 4, of *Lerins*, *S. Margaret*,  
*viç.* of *Chateau-d'If* *Chateau-d'If*.

The Diocess of *A I X*, *Aquensis Diocesis*, is extended along the Banks of the River *Durance*, and includes these chief Towns, &c. *viç.*

*Aix*, Archbish. } *Brignole*,  
*S. Maximin*, } *Barjols*.

*A I X*, *Aque-sextia*, the Metropolis of *Provence*, is seated in a Plain at the foot of the Hill of *S. Eutropius*, and near the Rivulet of *Arc*, 20 miles from *Marseille* to the North, 50 from the Confines of *Dauphine* to the South, 80 from *Montpellier*, and about 40 from *Arles* to the East, and 90 from *Nice* to the West. It is a large, well-built and very ancient City, as deriving its Name from the Bagnio's that were erected by *Caius Sextus*, who brought hither a Roman Colony. It was formerly the usual Place of Residence of the Counts of *Provence*, and at present the See of an Archbishop, being also honoured with a Parliament, a Chamber of Accounts, a Court of Aides, a Generality, a Treasury-Chamber, the principal Seat of the Grand Seneschal of *Provence*, and that of the ordinary Judge, and another Magistrate appointed by the King, called the *Viguier*. This City was heretofore sacked by the *Lombards*, and afterwards by the *Saracens*; but it hath been since well repaired and much enlarged, so that it may be justly esteemed as one of the Noblest of the Kingdom. The Cathedral bears the Name of *S. Saviour*, and is adorn'd with a high Tower, a Hexagon form: The *Baptistery* is an admirable Structure, being adorned with Pillars standing round about the Fonts, which support a Dome over them; and the Chappel of *Nestre Dame de Grace* is extremely rich. Here are also two Parochial Churches, *viç.* of *S. Magdalen* and the *Holy Ghost*, several Monasteries, a College of Jesuits, &c.

The Diocess of *R I E Z*, *Reiensis Episcopatus*, lies on the East of that of *Aix*, and hath these Towns,

*Riez*, Bish. *Valensole*, *Oreson*.

*Riez*, *Reii*, *Reii Apollinari* & *Regium*, is situated in a fruitful Country on the Rivulet of *Auverre*, about 35 miles from *Aix* to the N.E. 45 from *Toulon* to the North, and as many from the Frontier of *Dauphine* to the South. It is a small City, but well-built, and hath been very considerable in the Time of the *Romans*, as appears from divers Inscriptions and other Monuments of Antiquity found here. The Bishop is also temporal Lord of the Mannor and Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Aix*.

The Diocess of *S E N E Z*, *Saniciensis Diocesis*, lies

along



along the Banks of the *Verdon*, on the North-East of *Riez*. Its chief Towns are,

*Senes*, Bish. *Castellane*, *Colmars*.

*Senes*, *Sanctium* aut *Sanctum*, is a City below the Mountains of very small compass, not much inhabited, and now almost reduc'd to a Village nevertheless it retains the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Ambun*, although its Bishop generally resides at *Castellane*, a fair Town on the River *Verdon*, from whence it is distant 10 miles to the North, 20 from *Riez* to the N. E. and about 40 from *Ambun* to the S. The Cathedral Church bears the Name of the Assumption of the Virgin Mary; and the Chapter, which had been formerly of the *Augustin* Order, was seculariz'd by Pope *Innocent X.*

*Comans*, *Comatinum*, live *Cl. de Maris*, stands on the Banks of the *Verdon*, near the *Alps*, and the Countess of the County of *Nice*, and 20 miles N. E. from *Senes*. It is a well fortified Town, but sustain'd much damage by a great fire, which happen'd there, *A. D.* 1672.

The Diocess of *DIGNE* lies on the North of *Senes*.

*Digne*, Bish. *Colobrieux*.

*Digne*, *Digna*, is situate at the Foot of the Mountains in the Upper *Provence*, on the River *Beone*, where there receives a Brook of hot Waters, at the distance of 5 miles from *Senes* to the N. and 25 from the Frontiers of *Dauphiné* to the S. It was heretofore the Capital City of the *Sevilli*, and is at present the Seat of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Ambun*. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin Mary, and the Chapter was sometime Regular of the *Augustin* Order.

The Diocess or Arch-bishoprick of *ARLES*, is the South-West corner of *Provence*, lying along the Sea-coasts, and the Banks of the River *Rhone*, the chief Towns are,

*Arles*, Archb. *Sidon*.

*ARLES*, *Arlate* & *Aratum*, is situated on the Eastern Bank of the River *Rhone*, over which it hath a Bridge of Timber, 20 miles from *Aix* to the West, and as many from *Marseilles*, and in the mid-way between *Avignon* to the South and the *Mediterranean* Sea. The *Romans* established their sixth Colony in this City, and caus'd the General Assemblies of the six neighbouring Provinces to be held annually here. Many of the Works of its ancient Grandeur have been obliterated, as the Remains of an Amphitheatre, several Temples and Tombs, but especially a *Roman* Obelisk of Oriental Granite Stone, a piece much admired by the Curious. It is 32 Feet high, and 7 Feet Diameter at the base, and yet not one Stone. It hath been erected not many years since, and makes a very agreeable view to Travellers. This was the Capital of the Kingdom of *Arles*, and is at present a very flourishing City, dignified with a Metropolitan See, and a Royal Academy of Languages lately established. The Emperors at several times granted large Privileges to it; which though it hath been deprived of by its Princes, yet it still retain'd a Territory of 30 Miles extent, depending on it; which is the Islands made by the three Branches of the *Rhone*, call'd *Camargue*; and the *Crau* or *Camp* *Languedoc* of *Arles* and

*Pliny*, which is a large Country covered with Stones, and reaches from the *Rhone* to the *Mer de Martigue*, a small Bay between that and *Marseilles*.

*Salon* or *Salon de Crau*, *Salona* aut *Salum*, is the chief Town of the *Crau* abovementioned, and is situated 25 Miles from *Arles* to the East, about 20 from *Aix* to the West, and 5 or 6 from the Bay of *Martiques* to the North. This Town is adorn'd with an old Castle, a Collegiate Church and divers Monasteries, and was the place of the Nativity of the Famous *Michael Nostradamus*, who also died there in the year 1566.

The Diocess of *MARSEILLE*, lies along the Sea-coasts, on the East of *Arles*, and hath these considerable Towns, viz.

*Marseille*, Bish. *Aubagne*.

*Marseille*, *Maffia*, is seated on a little Hill, and hath a very capacious and safe Harbour on the Coasts of the *Mediterranean* Sea, at the distance of 20 miles from *Aix* to the South, and 40 from *Arles* to the South-East. This City was built (as 'tis supposed) by the *Pœnicians*, and flourished in the time of *Julius Cæsar*; when it was govern'd in form of a Republick, and had a famous Academy much frequented by the young Gentlemen of *France*, and even of *Rome* it self. The Inhabitants acquir'd much Reputation in former times on the account of their Learning and Courteousness (according to the Testimony of *Cicero*), but now they excel chiefly in the Knowledge of Maritime Affairs; for the Capital Gallies of *France* are laid up here, and it is the usual place of Rendezvous of their Levantine Ships. The Port, which is defended on one side by a Fortrefs and the Abbey of *S. Victor*, is flank'd on the other with a Wall above 1300 Paces long; its Mouth being shut up with a Chain lying at a certain distance on three Pillars of Stone, leaving a space open for the passage only of one large Vessel. The City it self at present enjoys great Privileges, and is one of the largest, fairest, and most populous of the Kingdom, especially since it hath been enlarg'd by the present King. So that its Cittadels, new streets, publick Places, stately Edifices, magnificent Churches, Monasteries, Colledges, Seminaries, Hospitals, Courts of Judicature, Haven, Arsenal, Gallies, &c. are well worth a Strangers particular observation.

The Episcopal See of *Marseille*, formerly subject to the Metropolitan of *Vienne*, now depends on that of *Arles*. The Inhabitants heretofore often maintain'd Wars against the *Gauls*, *Ligurians*, *Carthaginians*, and divers other Nations, but their City was taken by *Julius Cæsar*, afterward became a Prey to the *Gots* and other barbarous People, and was likewise surpriz'd by *Agenus* King of *Arragon*, in the year 1423. However having been afterwards well repaired, it resisted the Forces of *Charles* of *Bourbon*, in 1524. and those of the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1536. It was for some time subject to the Jurisdiction of certain particular Viccounts, as also to that of the Counts of *Provence*, Anno 1243. and at length was united to the Crown of *France*, together with the whole Countess, in 1481.

*Aubagne*, *Aubanca*, is a fair Town, wherein the Assemblies of the States of the Province are often convened. It is distant only 10 miles from *Marseille* to the East, and 15 from *Aix* to the South.

The Diocess of *TOULON*, *Tolonensis* Diocessis,



is likewise along the Coasts of the Mediterranean Sea. The chief Towns are,

*Toulon*, Bish. *Hyeres*.

**T O U L O N**, *Telo*, aut *Telo Martius*, *Tolonium* & *Tolemium*, is situated in a plain fruitful Country, and on a Bay which makes a very safe, large and commodious Harbour on the Coasts of the Mediterranean Sea, at the distance of 30 miles East from *Marseille* by Land, 75 miles from *Nice* to the West, 90 from the Borders of *Dauphine* to the South, and 400 miles from *Paris*. It is a very fair, strong and well built City, being adorn'd with many stately Churches, Monasteries, and other publick Edifices. King *Henry IV.* fortified it with strong Walls, and built two large Moles, each whereof is 700 Paces long, enclosing almost the whole Port; near them is also erected an Arsenal furnished with all sorts of Naval Stores, whence the largest Ships of the Royal Fleet of *France* are usually fitted out. And for their Security the Fortifications have been much encreased by the present King.

*Hyeres*, *Hierum*, *Arce* & *Olbia*, is a small Town on the Coasts, about 10 miles from *Toulon* to the East, and over against the Islands *Stechades*, to which it hath given their modern Name, on which account only this Town is mentioned, being not otherwise considerable.

The Diocess of **F R E J U S** lies to the East of that of *Toulon*, and contains these chief Towns, &c. viz.

*Frejus*, Bish. *S. Tropez*, &c.

*Frejus*, *Foro-Julium* aut *Forum Julii*, is seated in a Valley amidst the Marshes near the Mouth of the River *Argens*, and distant only half a League from the Sea-coasts, 40 miles from *Toulon* to the North-East, and 60 from *Aix* to the East. This City was heretofore very considerable, and there yet remain divers Monuments of Antiquity. It hath also at present a capacious Harbour, and is dignified with an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Aix*.

*S. Tropez*, *Fannum S. Tropetis*, is a small but strong Town on the South side of the Gulph of *Grimant*, and hath in like manner a large Haven, 5 Leagues from *Frejus* to the South, and 35 miles from *Toulon* to the East.

The Diocess of **G R A S S E** is situated on the Coasts to the North-East of *Frejus*, comprehending these Towns, &c. viz.

*Grasse*, Bish. *Antibes*, *Lanes*, &c.

*Grasse* or *Grace*, *Grassia* is a very populous and rich City seated on a Hill 2 Leagues from the Sea, 20 Miles from *Frejus* to the North, and 20 from *Nice* to the East. The Episcopal See of *Antibes* under the Metropolitan of *Ambrun*, was removed hither by Pope *Innocent IV.* by reason of the unwholsomeness of the Air of that place, and the incursions of Pirates. Besides the Cathedral, there are divers other Churches, and a great number of Monasteries, &c.

*Antibes*, *Antipolis* seu *Antipolis Julia Augusta*, was formerly the Seat of a Prelate, and is at present well fortified with a Castle, and hath a convenient Harbour, about 3 Leagues from *Nice* to the West, and 20 miles from *Frejus* to the North-East.

The Diocess of **V E N C E** lies to the North-East of that of *Grasse*, and hath these Towns, &c. viz.

*Vence*, Bish. *S. Paul*, &c.

*Vence*, *Vincium*, *Vintium*, *Venensis Urbs* & *Vencium*, is situated on the maritime Alps at the distance of 5 or 6 miles from the River *Var*, about 12 miles from *Grasse* to the North-East, and as many from *Nice* to the North-West. This City is very ancient, as having been a Roman Colony, but not large; and its Episcopal See depending on the Metropolitan of *Ambrun*, was formerly united to that of *Grasse*, but hath been separated from it. The Cathedral is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, and *St. Eusebius* was its first Prelate. The Civil Jurisdiction of the City and Lordship of the Mannor, is divided between the Bishop and the Baron of *Vence*.

The Diocess of **G L A N D E V E** is extended along the Banks of the River *Var*, to the North-West of *Vence*. Considerable Towns in it are,

*Glandeve*, Bish. *Entrevaux*, &c.

*Glandeve*, *Glandata*, *Glandate* & *Glanateve Capillariorum*, stands near the Banks of the *Var*, and formerly bore the Title of a County, as also of an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Ambrun*; but at present there remains only a Fortress erected on an Hill, the City it self being ruin'd: For about 800 years ago, the continual overflowing of the River obliged the Inhabitants to settle elsewhere, especially at the Town of *Entrevaux*, where the Bishop now resides. This City hath imparted its name to the Family of the *Glandeves*, one of the most illustrious of *Provence*, which in the X Century re-established the Bishoprick, after it had been abolished by the *Saracens*.

*Entrevaux*, *Intervallium* & *Intervalles*, is seated on the River *Var*, at the Foot of the Mountains, on the very Limits of the Dutchy of *Savoy* and County of *Nice*, at the distance only of one mile from the Ruins of the City of *Glandeve*, 16 from *Vence* to the N. W. and 30 from *Digne* to the E.

The Diocess of **S I S T E R O N**, *Segusterensis Diocesis*, lies to the North, and beyond *Digne* to the West. The chief Towns are,

*Sisteron*, Bish. *Forcalquier*, County. *Monosque*.

*Sisteron*, *Segustero*, *Segusterorum Urbs*, & *Sistarica*, is watered by the River *Durance*, which there receives the Brook *Buech*; and stands near the Borders of *Dauphine*, 50 miles North from *Aix*, and 45 North-West from *Glandeve*. It was formerly dignified with a Title of a County, and is still a large well-built City, and the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Aix*. A Seneschal's Court hath been established here ever since the year 1635.

*Forcalquier*, *Forcalquerium*, olim *Forum Neronis*, the chief Town of a County of the same Name stands on a Hill, and the side of the Rivulet *Laye*, in the midst between *Sisteron* to the North-East, and *Apt* to the South-West, about 2 Leagues from the River *Durance*.

*Monosque*, *Manuasca*, is a small but fair Town on the River *Durance*, subject to the Jurisdiction of the Knights of *Malta*, and distant 20 miles from *Riez* to the



the W. 25 from *Aix* to the N. and about 12 from *Forcalquier* to the S.

The Diocess of *A P T*, *Aptensis Diocesis*, is situated on the Frontiers of the County of *Venaissin*, the chief City.

*Apt*, *Apta*, seu *Apta Julia Vulgantium*, is a small City situate on the River *Couzon* near the Mountains, at the distance of 25 miles from *Aix* to the North, as many from *Avignon* to the East, and 40 from *Sisteron* to the South-West. This City was anciently one of the largest and most illustrious of the *Celtæ*, and was the Capital of the *Vulgentes* in the time of the *Romans*. It was likewise enlarged by *Julius Cæsar*, who made it a Colony, and caused it to bear his own name. The most ancient Prelate of this Diocess was *S. Auspicius Marto*, and the Bishop at present is the first Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Aix*, and stiled Prince of *Apt*, and his Predecessors have had a Privilege to coin Money. In the Cathedral of *S. Anne*, and the Church of the *Cardeliers*, are preserved a great number of Relicks. Westward from hence lies

The County of *V E N A I S S I N*, *Vindaspinus* aut *Vindaspinensis Comitatus*, which is bounded on the East by *Provence*, on the North by *Dauphiné*, on the South by the River *Durance*, and on the West by the River *Rhone*, which divides it from *Languedoc*, being extended from South to North about 35 miles, and 30 from West to East. This Country took its Name 'as 'tis believed, from *Venasque*, formerly its Capital City, and was granted by *Joanna* Queen of *Naples* and Countess of *Provence*, to Pope *Clement VI.* in 1348. since which time it hath been possessed by his Successors, together with the City of *Avignon*, comprehending an Archbishoprick, 3 Bishopricks, 4 Baronies, and 78 Towns and Villages; the chief whereof are these, viz.

*Avignon*, Arch. } *Cavaillon*, Bish.  
*Carpentras*, Bish. } *Vaison*, Bish.

*AVIGNON*, *Avenio*, is situated on the River *Rhone*, over which stands a stone Bridge, now half ruin'd, at the distance of 25 miles from *S. Esprit* to the South, 20 from *Aries* to the North, and 45 from *Aix* to the North-West. It is a large and flourishing City, a Place of good Trade, which consists chiefly in Silks manufactur'd here; Erected into a Metropolitan See under the Pontificate of *Sixtus V.* in the year 1585. having been before subject to that of *Aries*. It is also adorned with an University, and a Mint-house for the coining of Money with the Arms of the Popes, of whom seven successively resided for the space of 70 years; that is to say, from *A. D.* 1307. to 1377. viz. *Clement V.* *John XXII.* *Clement VI.* who purchased *Avignon* of *Q. Joanna.* *Innocent VI.* *Urban V.* and *Gregory XI.* who through the Persuasion of *S. Catherine of Sienna*, brought back the Papal See to *Rome*. Here are divers stately Palaces, and magnificent publick Buildings. The Walls are strong the Churches stately, and the Avenues of the City very pleasant. The Canons of the Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, wear Scarlet Robes, and the Chaplains others of Violet Colour. As for the Civil Government, it is administr'd by Consuls, and their Assessors, who is as it were chief Justice of the City. The *Uguier*, an Officer like the *Provost* of the Merchants of *Paris*, judges Causes that do not exceed the Value of four Ducats of Gold

without Appeal. In greater Causes Appeals lie to the Vice-Legate, who commits the Affair to the Court of the *Rota*, where there are five Auditors; and from thence an Appeal lies to *Rome*.

*Carpentras*, *Carpentoraete*, is watered by the River *Russe*, and seated in a very fertile Country about 12 miles from *Avignon* to the North-East, as many from *Vaison* to the South, and somewhat more from *Orange*. It is an Episcopal See subject to *Avignon*. It grew up out of the Ruins of *Vindasica* or *Venasque*, and is now the capital City of the County of *Venaissin* in its Room. It is enclosed with strong Walls, and stands on the Foot of Mount *Ventoux*, which riseth up from thence 4 Leagues in height. In this City is established a Court of Justice, a Treasury-Office, &c.

*Cavaillon*, *Cabellio* aut *Caballio*, is a City of a small compass now seated in a Plain near the River *Durance*, although it formerly stood on an adjacent Hill, where its Ruins are as yet to be seen. The Prelate of *Cavaillon* is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Avignon*, from whence it is distant 15 miles to the S. E. and 30 from *Aix* to the N. W.

*Vaison*, *Vasio*, *Vasion* & *Vassienensis Urbs*, is built on the side of a Hill on the Banks of the River *Leuvise*, at the distance of 12 miles from *Carpentras* to the North, as many from *Orange* to the East, and 24 from *Avignon* to the North-East. This City was heretofore more considerable than at present, having been ruin'd by the *Gots*, *Vandals* and *Saracens*. The Church of the Virgin *Mary*, reported to have been formerly the Cathedral, stands without the City on the Plain, and the other within the Walls, hath a Chapter of Canons, among whom are four Dignitaries. The Episcopal See of *Vaison* is subject to the Metropolitan of *Avignon*.

The Principality of *O R A N G E*, *Arausicanus Principatus*, is enclosed within the Country of *Venaissin* on the East, and the River *Rhone* to the West, being extended for the space of 20 miles in length. This small Territory of right appertains to the illustrious House of *Nassau*, but was usurped by the present French King *Lewis XIV.* on the Pretensions of the Family of *Langueville*, till by the late Treaty at *Ryswick*, it was restored to his Majesty King *William*. It comprehends the Capital City of *Orange*, together with about 15 other Towns and Villages, the chief of which are these, viz.

*Orange*, Bish. } *Fonquieres*,  
*Courcieuxon*, } *Bigondas*.

*O R A N G E*, *Aurasio*, is situated near the Rivulet of *Egues*, distant 3 or 4 miles from the River *Rhone* to the East, 12 from *S. Esprit* to the South, and 15 from *Avignon* to the North. It is called *Colonia Secundanorum* by *Pliny*, in regard that the *Triumviri*, caused the second *Roman* Legion to be brought hither. This City hath been much larger in time past than at present, as having suffer'd great damage by the Inroads of divers barbarous Nations: Of which former Grandeur, there are evident marks in the Remains of a *Cirque*, very artificially built, an Amphitheatre and a Triumphant Arch almost entire, which *Caius Marius* and *Lucius Catulus* had erected after the Victory obtained over the *Cimbrians* and *Teutones*, besides part of a large Tower, which some suppose to have been a Temple of *Diana*, and divers other remarkable Monuments of Antiquity. The Fortreiss which *Maurice* of *Nassau*



*Jan* Prince of Orange made so regular in the year 1622. stood on a Hill, and render'd this place one of the strongest Holds of *Europe*; but it was rais'd together with the other Fortifications in 1660. The City of *Orange* is the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Arles*, and is also adorned with a University, which *Raimond V.* founded, *A. D.* 1365. and a Parliament established by *William* of *Arles*, 1470. but the French King suppress'd the latter in 1687. and changed it into a *Viguerie*, under the Jurisdiction of the Parliament of *Aix*.

The Principality of *Orange* was convey'd by Marriage to *John de Chalons* of the Illustrious Family of *Burgundy*, who in the year 1475. became absolute Prince of *Orange*, and was succeeded in it by *William*, *John*, and *Philibert* his Descendants, the last of whom left an only Sister, married to *Henry* Earl of *Nassau*, *A.* 1515. and had Issue *Rene* of *Nassau*, who was Adopted by *Philibert*, and succeeded him in this Estate, from whom is descended his present Majesty of *Great Britain*.

The Island of *MARTEGUES*, or *Martiques*, *Maritima Colonia*, lies a little to the West of *Marseille*, and is dignified with the Title of a Principality, and called by some the *Venice* of *France*. It is divided into three Parts, *viz.* *Jonquiers*, *L'Isle*, and *Ferrieres*, having a capacious and safe Harbour at the Mouth of the Gulph, named the Bay of *Martiques*, the Town being situate on the Lake of *Berre*, from whence divers deep Channels have been cut to make a Communication with the Sea at the distance of a large quarter of a League. Barks of the largest size pass through these Ditches, to the great advantage of Merchants; and the Towns are joined together by Bridges. The Inhabitants are very expert in sailing on the Mediterranean, and admirable Fishermen, for they take vast quantities of all sorts of Fish in certain Huts made for that purpose of Reeds, or Searasses, and termed *Bourdigous*. This Town hath been possessed by different Lords, especially the Viscounts of *Marseille*, and Counts of *Provence*; but at length *Frances* of *Lorraine* Dutches of *Merceux*, *Estampes*, and *Ponthicore*, as also Princess of *Martiques*, brought it to the House of *Vendome*, by her Marriage with *Cesar* Duke of *Vendome*, the Natural Son of King *Henry IV.* &c.

The Islands of *STOCHAES*, or of *HYERES*, are so called as lying over against the Town of this name, between the Gulph of *Grimeur* to the E. and *Thoulon* to the W. Among these there are three principal, *viz.* The Island of *Levant*, or of *Titan*, in Latin *Hypet*, toward the East; that of *Portcros* in the midlt;

and that of *Portquerolles* to the West: Near to the former are also situated two other small Islands, *viz.* *Ribauden* and *Ribaudas*, by the Ancients called *Stirium* and *Phenice* on the Coasts between the Promontory or Cape of *Hyeres* to the North, and the Isle of *Portcros* to the South, besides those of *Tele de Can*, *Langoustier*, &c. In the time of *Cassianus*, these Islands were inhabited only by Monks; and there were some of the *Cistercian* Order under the Popedom of *Innocent III.*

The Islands of *LERINS*, *Insulae Lerinenses*, are two in number, and lye over against *Cannes* near *Antibes*. The former called in Latin *Lero*, and commonly *S. Margaret*, from a Chappel dedicated to this Saint, is three quarters of a League long, and one broad, being defended with five Forts and a Citadel, lately fortified. The other of *S. Honoratus Lorina*, aut *Planatia*, is distant about two Leagues from *Antibes* to the South, and five from *Frejus* to the East, taking its name from that Saint, who founded a famous Monastery therein, *A. C.* 375. and was afterward ordained Archbishop of *Arles*. This Solitary Place hath been for many Ages the Seminary of the Prelates of *Provence*, and the neighbouring Churches, having brought forth 12 Archbishops, as many Bishops, 10 Abbots, four Monks reckon'd among the Confessors, and 105 Martyrs, together with a great number of other Illustrious Personages. The *Spaniards* surpriz'd these Islands in the Month of *September*, *A. D.* 1635. and cut down the Forest of Pine-Trees that afforded a delightful shade during the excessive heat of the Sun, and stood in rows, at the end whereof were certain Oratories in honour of Abbots and Monks, who had been canonized for Saints. But those *Spanish* Forces were entirely expell'd in the Month of *May*. 1637.

*CHATEAU-D'IF*, *Castrum Iphium*, is a small Island or rather Rock, encompassed on all sides with the Sea, and defended by a strong Fortrefs, distant about a quarter of a League from *Marseilles*, where the very large Vessels ride at Anchor, that cannot sail into the Port for want of a sufficient depth of Water at its entrance. There are also some other Islands at the mouth of the River *Rhone*, but nothing very considerable is to be found in them,

The Governor-General of *Provence* hath under him one Lieutenant-General, three Grand Seneschals, of *Aix*, *Marseille*, and of *Arles*; and particular Governours in *Thoulon*, *Marseilles*, in the Island of *Chateau-d'if*. In the Islands of *St. Margaret* and *Honoratus*; in *Antibe*, &c.



## C H A P. XIII.

D A U P H I N E, *Delphinatus.*

**T**HIS Province is bounded on the North by *Bresse* and *Savoie*, on the East by *Piemont* and the *Alps*, on the South by *Provence*, and on the West by the *Rhone*, which separates it from *Lyonnais*. It is situated between the 44 deg. and the 45 deg. 30 min. of Latitude; as also between the 22 deg. 40 min. and the 26 deg. of Longitude comprehending from South to North in the broadest part, about 100 miles, but in other parts, not above half so much, and 103 from West to East.

*Dauphine* was conquer'd by the *Romans*, under whom it was at first part of *Narbonensis*, and afterwards upon the Division of *Gaul* by *Constantine*, it compos'd the *Vennensis*. In the declension of the Roman Empire the *Burgundians* got possession of it, who were again beaten out by the French, and by them it was made part of the Kingdom of *Aries*; and at length became subject to the Emperors of *Germany* but during the Differences between the Pope and the Emperor *Henry IV.* it was usurped by *Guigne the Fat*, Earl of *Guiana*, A. 1100. whose Successor gave it the name of *Dauphine*, either as some say, from the name of his Wife, or as others, from the *Dolphin* born in his Arms. In this Family the Sovereignty of this Province continued till the time of *Imbert*, or *Hamond II.* Count Dauphin of *Viennois*, who having lost one Son in the Battle of *Crecy*, and unfortunately let fall his youngest out of a Window, whereof he died; perceiving also that *Amadeus*, Count of *Savoie*, his irreconcilable Enemy, insulted over his Calamity, sold his Country to *Philip of Valois*, King of *France*, for the Sum of 100000 Florins of Gold, on condition that the eldest Son of the French Monarchs should bear the Name of the *Dauphin*, and that his Arms should be quarter'd with those of *Dauphine*; which Contract was ratified at *Bris de Vincennes*, near *Paris*, on the 23d day of *April*, 1343 and *Charles V.* the Grandson of the said *Philip* was first styled the *Dauphin*, in 1350; and the same Custom hath been ever since observed, and *Dauphine* continued part of the Kingdom of *France*.

Tho' this Province be full of Mountains and Hills it is nevertheless very fruitful in Wheat, Rye, Oats, and Barley, affording also good Pastures for the feeding of all sorts of Cattle, and the Forests yield good store of Game, as Stags, Fallow-Deer, Roe-Bucks, wild Boars, wild Goats, and Hares, together with Partridges, Pheasants, Heathcocks, Plovers, &c. Some Mines of Iron, Lead, and other Metals are found here. In this Province are to be seen three notable Abbies, being the chief of so many different Orders, namely that of *S. Antony*, that of *S. Ruf*, and the great Charter-house, as also four Wonders, viz. The inaccessible Mountain, the Tower without Portion, the Pit of *Saffenage*, which forebews the Plenty or Dearth of the Year, by a quantity of Water found therein at certain times; and the Fountain of *Quick-Spring* near *Grenoble*, that appears covered with Flames and boiling up in great Bub-

bles, yet never hot: There is also a certain Hole or Cavern near *Nions*, from whence riseth up a Wind, which can scarcely be felt by those Persons that come near it, and yet blows violently when one stands at the distance of 20 or 30 paces. The Principal Rivers of *Dauphine*, are the *Isere*, which receives the *Drac* below *Grenoble*; the *Durance* that takes its rise and runs into *Provence*; the *Droze*, the Stream whereof is extremely rapid and dangerous; the *Buech*, the *Romanche*, the *Dia*, &c. The whole Province is usually divided into the Upper to the East, and the Lower to the West, which are again subdivided according to the following Table.

Dauphin divided into 2 Parts.	The Upper in 6.	<i>Graisvauden.</i>	<i>Grenoble</i> , Bish.
		<i>Dicis.</i>	<i>Die</i> , Bish.
		The Baronies.	<i>Boys.</i>
		<i>Gapennois.</i>	<i>Gap</i> , Bish.
		<i>Ambrunensis.</i>	<i>Ambrun</i> , Arch-bish.
		<i>Brianconnois.</i>	<i>Briancon</i> .
	The Lower in 3.	<i>Viennois.</i>	<i>Vienne</i> , A. B.
		<i>Valentinois.</i>	<i>Valence</i> , Bish.
		<i>Tricastin.</i>	<i>S. Paul Trois.</i>
			<i>Chateau</i> , B.

*GRAISVAUDAN*, *Gratianopolitani Aree*, is a Valley which was heretofore inhabited by the *Troglodytes*, and lies between the Rivers *Isere* and *Drac*, bounded on the North by *Savoie*, properly so called, on the East by the Valley of *Maurienne* and *Brianconnois*, on the South by *Gapennois*, and on the West by *Dicis* and *Viennois*. The places of Note, are these, viz.

*Grenoble*, Bish. *La Grande Chartreuse*.

*Grenoble*, *Gratianopolis*, olim *Accusio* and *Cular*, is situated on the Confluence of *Isere* and *Drac*, and on the foot of the Mountains, being distant 55 miles from *Lyons* to the South-east, about 80 from *Geneva* to the South, 110 from *Aix*, and 40 from the Frontiers of *Languedoc* to the North, and 40 from the River *Rhône* to the East. *Maximian* who was sent into *France* by *Dioclesian*, fortified this Place; and being afterward enlarged by the Emperor *Gratian*, it took the name of *Gratianopolis*, which in time melted into that of *Grenoble*. It is a large well-built City, and adorn'd with divers fair Churches. The Episcopal See depends on the Metropolitan of *Vienne*, and its most ancient Bishop was *S. Dominus*, who assisted in the Council of *Aquileia*, A. C. 381. His Successors at present assume the Title of Princes of *Grenoble*, by reason of the Donations which the Lords of the Country have made to them at several times. King *Lewis XI.* erected the *Dolphinal Council* of this Province into a Parliament in the year 1453; Moreover a University was formerly established here, but *Valence* now enjoys that Honour at present: Besides the Parliament above-mentioned.



mentioned, here is a Chamber of Accompts, a Treasury-Office, a Court of Generality, and a Bailiage. The Grand Charter-house, chief of the *Carthusian* Order, stands three Leagues from this City on one side; and the boiling Spring is at the like distance on the other.

*DIOIS*, lies on the South of *Graisivaudan* between *Valentinois* on the West, *Provence* on the South, and *Gapençois* on the East. The chief City

*DIE*, *Dia*, *Dea Vocontiorum*, aut *Dea Augusta* of the Ancients, is seated on the foot of the Mountains and the Banks of the Rivulet *Drome*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Grenoble* to the South, 26 from *Valence* to the East, and 40 from *Gap* to the West. It was formerly a considerable City with the Title of an Earldom, and had five fine Churches, and a good Citadel, but through the Wars of the *Lombards* formerly, and the Civil Wars lately, they have been almost destroyed; however it is still the See of a Bishop.

The *BARONIES* or *Baronie*, lie on the Frontiers of *Provence*; whereof the chief Towns are,

*Le Buys*, *Nions*.

*Buys* or *Burz*, *Buxium*, is a small Town standing upon the River *Louvez*, on the Frontiers of *Provence*, 30 miles from *Dye* to the South.

*Nions*, *Neomagus*, stands on the Frontiers of *Provence* and the side of the River *Eygues*, about 28 miles from *Dye* to the South, five or six from the Frontiers of *Provence*, and 20 from the River *Rhone* to the East. It had a Castle, but it is destroy'd, and the Town is not very considerable.

*GAPENCOIS*, is extended toward the River *Isere*, between *Graisivaudan* on the North, *Diois* on the West, and *Ambrunois* on the East, comprehending the chief Town

*Gap*, *Vapincum*, *Vapingum*, & *Vapinquum*, is a large City and well fortified with a strong Citadel, besides the Fort of *Puymore*, very near it on a rising Ground, scarcely two Leagues from the River *Isere*, 35 miles from *Dye*, and 65 from the *Rhone* to the East, not above 10 from the Frontiers of *Provence*, and 45 from *Grenoble* to the South-east. Its Episcopal See depends on the Metropolitan of *Aix*. The Cathedral Church is dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*. The Bishop assumes the Title of a Count, and bears in his Court of Arms a Sword and Cross in Pail. The City of *Gap* hath been often Taken and Recovered by the Popish and Protestant Parties during the Civil Wars of *France*.

*AMBRUNOIS*, is bounded on the North by *Brianconnois*, on the West by *Gapençois*, on the East by *Piedmont*, and on the South by part of *Piedmont* and *Provence*. The chief City

*AMBRUN* or *EMBRUN*, *Eborodunum*, & *Eborudunum*, is seated on a steep Rock in the Confines of *Provence*, near the River *Durance* and the Mountains, 15 miles from *Gap* to the East, 20 from *Briancon*, and 30 from the Frontiers of *Savoy* to the West, 55 from *Grenoble*, and 110 from *Lyon* to the South-east. It is a City of small compass, nevertheless well fortified and honour'd with the Title of a Metropolitan See and a Bailiage, the Archbishop sharing its Jurisdiction with the King. The Judges

of the Bailiage are alternative. This City was honour'd with great Priviledges by the Romans; for some time subject to the Counts of *Forcalquier*, and hath since sustained many Revolutions. The Protestants took it in 1583, and found vast wealth there. In the late War, viz. A. 1692, the Duke of *Savo* besieged, and in 10 days took it: But quitted it soon after.

*BRIANCONNOIS*, lyes near the Spring-head of the River *Durance*, between *Piedmont* on the East, the Valley of *Maurienne* in *Savoy* on the North, *Graisivaudan* on the West, and *Ambrunois* on the South.

The chief Towns are { *Briancon*,  
                                  *Perouse*,  
                                  *Chateau-Dauphine*.

*Briancon*, *Brigantium*, is remarkable for its situation on the highest Ground (as it is supposed) of *Europe* being the side of a steep Rock, on which stands a Castle near the *Alps*, almost in the midst between *Susa*, a Town of *Piedmont* and *Ambrun*, at the distance of eight leagues from the former, and seven from the other. It gives name to this Country, and is the Seat of a Bailiage. A little below this City two Brooks intermix, one of which springs out of Mount *Cervere*, and is called *Dure*, the other comes from the Valley of *Menetrier* and *Chantemerle*, and is named *Aice*. These two Rivulets are the Sources of the River *Durance*, and form its Name. About two Leagues from this Town there is a Passage cut through the middle of a Rock, which as it was a stupenduous Labour, gives occasion to many Conjectures concerning the performance of it. Some impute it to *Julius*, others to *Hannibal*, &c.

*Perouse*, *Perusa*, stands on the River *Cluso*, and defended by a Fortrefs, near the Frontiers of *Piedmont*. This Town hath impos'd its Name on the adjacent Valley, and formerly belonged to the Duke of *Savoy*, but was granted to the French by Treaty A. 1631.

*Chateau-Dauphin*, *Castrum Daiphini*, is a Town built at the foot of the *Alps*, on the very Confines of *Piedmont*, 30 miles from *Ambrun* to the West. It formerly bore the name of *Eusebio*, *Fanum S. Eusebii*, and constituted a part of the Marquisate of *Saluces*, but was granted to the French Kings, in 1375. Which finishes our Account of the Upper or Eastern part of *Dauphine*; what remains are the three small Provinces that lye in the West on the River *Rhone*.

*VIENNOIS*, *Viennensis Tractus*, is the North-west part of *Dauphine*, and lying between the Rivers *Rhone* and *Isere*, was anciently call'd the Island of the *Allobroges*; it is bounded on the East by *Graisivaudan*, on the South by *Valentinois*, on the West by the *Rhofne*, which divides it from *Bugey*. This Country was sometime govern'd by its own Princes, under the name of *Dauphins* of *Viennois*, but came to the Crown of *France* with the rest of *Dauphine*. The chief City

*VIENNE*, *Vienna* aut *Vienna Allobrogum*, is situated at the Foot of a Mountain, on the River *Rhone*, which there receives the *Gere*, at the distance of 40 miles from *Grenoble* to the West, 20 from *Lyon* to the South, and 35 from *Valence* to the North. It hath been a very large and famous City, but at present is not above the fourth Part of its former extent, and



and both its ancient Fortresses, nam'd *Pipet* and *Bajona*, are now destroy'd. It was founded, as it is generally believ'd by the *Allobroges*, and afterward became a Colony of the *Romans*, who adorn'd it with a Palace, and Amphitheatre, and divers other magnificent Works, the Ruins whereof are still to be seen. After the Decay of their Empire, this City was sometime the Capital of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, and the Place of Residence of those Princes; and since hath been subject to many Masters, and suffer'd much by the Wars. However it is the See of an Archbishop, who hath the Title of the Grand Primate of the Primates of *France* and 'as they say' *S. Crescens*, the Disciple of *S. Paul*, was its first Prelate. The Cathedral of *S. Maurice* is a stately Pile of Building, as also are some other Churches and publick Edifices. The Inhabitants are very expert in making divers sorts of Manufactures, particularly Plates of Iron and Steel, Paper, &c. by means of certain Mills and Engines upon the River *Gere*.

*VALENTINOIS*, lies between *Viennois* on the North, the River *Rhone* on the West, *Tricastin* on the South, and *Diois* on the East. This Country at present bears the Title of a Duchy, and was granted, together with *Diois*, to *Charles VII.* then only *Dauphin* of *France* by *Lewis* of *Poitou*, its last Count or Earl, on the 22d of *June*, 1419. The Principal Towns are,

*Valence*, Bish. *Montelimar*.

*Valence*, *Valentia*, is seated on the River *Rhone*, a little below its confluence with the *Isere*, over-against the Province of *Vivaraïs*, about 30 miles from *Vienne* to the South, 60 from *Avignon* to the North, 25 from *Die* to the West, and 40 from *Grenoble* to the South-west. It is a Place of great antiquity, having been some time a *Roman* Colony: and is at present a fair reasonable large and well-built City, divided into the City and Town, defended by a strong Citadel, and dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See

under the Metropolitan of *Vienne*, the Bishop bearing the Title of a Count. The Cathedral Church of *S. Apollinarius*, one of its Prelates was at first dedicated to *St. Stephen*. There is also another Collegiate Church, and the Abbey of *S. Ruf* the chief of that Order, together with a great number of other Monasteries and Convents; besides a famous University, in which are four Professors of the Civil and Canon Law: It was first founded by King *Lewis XI.* A. D. 1452. and afterward that of *Grenoble* was incorporated into it under the Reign of *Charles IX.* Here is also a Presidial Court.

*Montelimar*, *Amarorum Mons*, *Mons Ademari*, seu *Montilium Adomari*, a Town formerly well fortified, and sustained divers Sieges during the Civil War; stands on a Hill at the distance of half a League from the River *Rhone*, 25 miles from *Valence*.

*TRICASTIN*, *Tricastinus Ager*, is extended between *Valentinois* on the North, and the County of *Avignon* on the South. The chief City whereof is

*S. Paul-Trois-Chateaux*, *Augusta Tricastinorum & Fanum S. Pauli Tricastinorum*, olim *Senomagus*, aut *Neomagus*, the Capital City of the small Territory of *Tricastin*, took its modern Name from *S. Paul* one of its Prelates, and is situated on a rising Ground in the Confines of *Provence*, scarcely one League from the River *Rhone*, 12 miles from *Montelimar* to the South, and as many from *Orange* to the North. Its Episcopal See was formerly subject to the Metropolitan of *Vienne*, but now depends on that of *Arles*, and the Bishop is also styled a Count, sharing the Civil Jurisdiction with the King; so that the respective Judges keep their Courts alternately in the Bailiages. The Protestant Party made themselves Masters of this City during the Civil Wars, and retain'd it in their Power near 50 years.

*Dauphine* hath a Governour-General, a Lieutenant-General, a Seneschal, and a Commandant in the Province, three Bailiffs and particular Governours in *Grenoble*, *Vienne*, *Ambrun*, *Valence*, *Montelimar*, the Castle of *Briancon*, *Pignerol*, &c.

## C H A P. XIV.

### L O R R A I N E, Lotheringia.

BESIDES the 12 Principal Provinces or Governments of *France*, already described, there are other Provinces and Towns lying on the Frontiers of *Italy*, *Germany* and *Flanders*, made subject to, and reckon'd part of this Kingdom; an account whereof is given in the Description of every particular Country where they are situated, excepting *Lorraine*, which although it be not compriz'd within the aforesaid 12 large Governments, nevertheless constituted a Portion of that Country which is commonly called *France*, till by the late Treaty of *Ryswick* it was restored to the present Duke.

The Duchy of *LORRAINE* and *BAR* is bounded on the North by *Luxemburg* and the *Palatinat* on the East by *Alsacia*, on the South by the County of *Burgundy*, and on the West by *Champagne*, being extended from the 45th Degree to the 49th Degree 50

Minutes of Latitude, and from the 23d Degree to the 25th Degree 50 Minutes of Longitude; extending from North to South 100 miles, and about the same from East to West. The whole Country is divided into three principal Parts, viz.

Lorraine divided into Parts, viz.	{	The Duchy of Lorraine, properly so called, in 3 Bailiages, viz.	{	The Bailiage of Nancy, Chief Town, Idem.
		{	The Bail. of <i>Vange</i> , <i>Mirecourt</i> .	
		{	The Bailiage of <i>Vaudrevange</i> , Idem.	
		The Duchy of <i>Bar-le-duc</i> .		
		Three Bishopricks not properly within Lorraine:	{	Bishoprick of <i>Mets</i> , Bishoprick of <i>Toul</i> , Bishoprick of <i>Verdun</i> . The



The Bailiage of *NANCY*, lies in the midst of the Province of *Lorraine*, and comprehends these considerable Towns, &c. *viç*.

*Nancy*, *S. Nicolas*, *Marfal*.

*NANCY*, *Nanccium*, the Capital City of *Lorraine*, is situated in the midst of the Province, near the River *Meurte*, 155 miles directly East from *Paris*, and 20 from the River *Meuse*, 45 from the Borders of *Alsace*, and 60 from *Strasbourg* to the West, 30 from *Metz* to the South, and 50 from the Confines of *Franche Comte* to the North. It is divided into the Upper or Old Town, wherein stands the Duke's Palace and Magazine, and the Lower and New Town, which is of larger extent, and contains many very fine Buildings, taken into the City in 1587, having been before only a Suburbs. It is also adorned with divers Churches and Monasteries, a College of Jesuits and 3 Gates. A Chamber of Accounts and a Seneschal's Court. This Town, or rather this City, hath been often taken, and sustained many Sieges, for *Charles* the last Duke of *Burgundy*, took it in 1475. from *Rene* Duke of *Lorraine*; who regained it the next year: At which *Charles* being enraged, immediately besieged it, but lost both his Life and the Battle on the 5th day of *January* following. *Nancy* was extremely well fortified in 1587. during the Civil Wars: Nevertheless *Lewis XIII.* made himself Master of it in 1633. and its Fortifications were destroyed by the present *French King* in 1661: But they have been since repaired with great advantage, and now by the Treaty are to be demolished.

*S. Nicolas*, *Fanum S. Nicolai*, is a Burrough very pleasantly seated on the River *Meurte*, two Leagues above *Nancy* to the South, and famous for the Concourse of People resorting thither to pay their Devotions at the Shrine of *S. Nicolas*, sometime Bishop of *Myra* in *Lycia*, who vigorously opposed the Errors of *Arius*, and assisted in the General Council of *Nice*, A. C. 325.

*Vaudemont*, *Vadanus Mons* & *Valdemoncium*, stands on a Hill between the *Meuse* and *Moselle*, 20 miles from *Nancy* to the South. It is a small Town, nevertheless dignified with the Title of a Principality, and fenced with a strong Castle, &c.

*Marfal*, *Marfalium*, is a small but well fortified Town, built on the Banks of the Brook *Selle*, amidst the Marshes, at the distance of about 20 miles from *Nancy* to the East.

The Bailiage of *VAUGE*, is extended on the South side of the Province of *Lorraine*, and comprehends these Principal Towns, *viç*.

*Mirecourt*, Cap. *Remiremont*, *Fontenay*.

*Mirecourt*, *Mirecurtium*, a small Town, but the chief of the Bailiage; is situated near Mount *Vauge*, from whence the Bailiage hath its Name, on the Rivulet of *Maiden*, which falls into the *Moselle* at *Chaligny*: It is distant 25 miles from *Nancy* to the South, about as many from *Toul*, and 15 from the Confines of *Champagne* to the East.

*Remiremont*, *Romaricus Mons*, *Romarici Mons*, & *Romaricum Castrum*, olim *Avendi Castrum*, is situated on the River *Moselle*, at the Foot of Mount *Vauge*, and remarkable on the account of a famous Abbey of Nuns there. It is distant only one

League from the Frontiers of the *Franchi-Comte*, and 30 from *Mirecourt*, and 50 from *Nancy* to the South-east.

*Fontenay* or *Vontenay*, *Fontenacum*, a small Village, seated on the Frontiers of the *Franche-Comte*, about 25 miles South from *Mirecourt*; famous on account of a fierce Battle fought near it, with a very great Slaughter on all sides, between the Emperor *Lotbarius*, Lewis King of *Germany*, and *Charles* the Bald, King of *France*, all three Brothers, A. C. 841.

The Bailiage of *VAUDREVANGE*, *Belleviatus Valderfinge*, takes up the North-east part of *Lorraine*, and contains these Places of chief note, *viç*.

*Sare-Louis*, } *Dienf*,  
*Vaudrevange*, } *Sarai*,  
*Sirk*, } *Putlange*, &c.

*Sare-Louis*, *Saracum Ludovici*, is a very strong Fortress, lately built on the River *Sare*, about 2 or 3 miles above *Vaudrevange*, and so called in honour of the present *French King Lewis XIV.* who built it, and established therein a Presidial Court of a large Jurisdiction. It is distant 12 Leagues from *Triers*, 4 from *Sarbruck*, and 7 from *Homburg*, &c.

*Vaudrevange*, *Velderfinga*, the Chief Town of the Bailiage of the same Name, is likewise seated on the *Sare*, 30 miles from *Metz* to the North-east, as many from *Thionville*, and somewhat more from *Deux-Ponts*. It was almost ruin'd during the last *German War*, but hath been since well repaired.

*Sirk* or *Sincques*, *Sirca* & *Sericum*, is watered with the Streams of the River *Moselle*, and defended by a strong Fort, built near it on a Hill, and the very borders of the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, about 20 miles from *Metz* to the North, 15 from *Triers*, and as many from *Luxemburg* to the East. This Town hath been in the Possession of the *French King* ever since the year 1643.

The Dutchy of *BAR* or *BARRAIS*, *Barrentis Ducatus*, is extended on both sides of the River *Meuse*, from the Country of *Burgundy* to the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, between *Lorraine* and *Champaign*. This Country is divided into 6 Bailiages, *viç*.

The Bailiage of *Bar-le-duc*, } The Bailiage of *S. Michel* or *Miche*.  
The Bailiage of *Grand-Reccours*, } The Bailiage of *Pont-a-Mousson*.  
The Bailiage of *Basigne* or *de-la-Mothe*, } The Bailiage of *Argonne*, or *Clermont*, &c.

*Bar-le-Duc*, *Barrodocum*, stands on a rising Ground, near the Banks of the River *Ornain*, and hath a strong Castle for its Defence, at the distance of about 40 miles from *Nancy* to the West, and 5 or 6 from the Borders of *Champagne*: This Town being the Capital of the Dutchy of *Bar*, is fair and well-built, and is subject to the Duke of *Lorraine*.

*S. Michel*, *Fanum S. Michaelis*, is situated on the East side of the River *Meuse*, almost in the midst between *Toul* to the South, and *Verdun* to the North, and 20 miles from *Bar-le-duc* to the East. It hath been for some time a very considerable Town, and is at present the Seat of a Parliament of *Barrois*. It was taken by *Lewis XIII.* in the month of *June*, A. D. 1632, and afterward resigned to the Duke



Duke of Lorraine by the Treaty of *Liaudin*, nevertheless the same French King made himself Master of it a second time in 1633, when the Inhabitants revolted against his Garrison, but were at length constrained to surrender on discretion, but now with the rest of the Duchy restored to the Duke.

*Pont-à-Mousson*, *Musipontum*, is seated on both sides of the River *Moselle*, near the Ruins of the Castle of *Mousson*, from whence it took its Name, at the distance of 17 or 18 miles from Nancy to the North, toward *Metz*, and almost as many from *S. Michael* to the East. It is a very fair Town, but destitute of Walls, dignified with the Title of a Marquise, and adorn'd with two Abbies, divers truely Churches; and a University founded in the year 1573. by *Charles* Cardinal of *Lorraine*, who gave it to the Jesuits for the Teaching of Divinity, Philology, and the Learned Languages: Afterward the Duke of *Lorraine* established certain Professors of Law and Physick, and Pope Gregory XIII. added a Seminary for the *Scottish* Nation.

The THREE BISHOPRICKS, *Tres Episcopatus*, form, as it were, an equilateral Triangle in the Northern and Western part of *Lorraine*: The chief Cities

*METS*, *Metz* & *Metensis Urbs*, olim *Divodurum* & *Mediomatrides*, is seated on the confluence of the Rivers *Seille* and *Moselle*, in a very fruitful Country at the distance of 30 miles from Nancy to the North, 20 from *Thionville* to the South, 30 from *Verdun* to the East, and 150 East from *Paris*. It was heretofore the Metropolis of the ancient People named *Mediomatrides*, as also afterward of the Kingdom of *Austrasia*, under the first Race of the French Monarchs; and is at present the Capital City of the Country of *Messin*, dignified with an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Trier*. The Bishop is styled Prince of the Empire, and the Cathedral dedicated to *S. Stephen*, is an ancient and noble Pile of Building, wherein are to be seen many Curiosities, particularly a Font, made of one entire piece of Porphyry, 10 foot long.

The whole Diocesis is divided into 4 Archdeaconries, comprehending 623 Parishes, whereof 16 are included within the Walls of *Metz*. There are also 7 Abbies for Nuns, divers other Religious Houses, a College of Jesuits, &c. This City had been for a long time Imperial and Free, until it was taken in 1552 by the Constable of *Montmorency* General under the French King *Henry II.* who caused it to be fortified with a Citadel and other Bulwarks; by which it was made so strong, that the Emperor *Charles V.* having invested it in the same year, was compell'd to raise the Siege. This City was the Seat of a Bailiage, and of a Court of Parliament, established by *Lewis XIII.*

*TOUL*, *Tullum*, aut *Tullum Leucorum*, is seated on the River *Moselle*, in a fertile Soil, as are all the Towns of this Province, at the distance of 30 miles from *Metz* to the South, 12 from Nancy to the West, and 27 from *Bar-le-duc* to the East. It was constituted an Imperial and Free City by the Emperor *Henry I.* but fell into the Possession of the French Kings in 1552. It is the Capital of the Country of the same Name, the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Triers*, and the Seat of a Bailiwick: Its Diocesis is very large, and contains a great number of Abbies, &c.

*VERDUN*, *Verodunum* & *Virodunum*, is a very ancient City, and one of the largest of *Lorraine*, is seated upon the River *Meuse*, which there dividing its Stream, forms divers small Islands, which do not a little contribute to its Advantage: It is fortified with a Citadel and other Regular Works, and honour'd with an Episcopal See, depending on the Metropolitan of *Triers*. The Cathedral Church, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, hath a considerable Chapter, from whence have proceeded divers illustrious Prelates, who are usually stiled Counts of *Verdun*, and Princes of the Sacred Empire. This City hath been also formerly Imperial and Free, but was taken by the French, together with some others, under *Henry II.* A. D. 1552, and is at present the Capital of a Bailiage.



THE

# Low Countries: Or, Netherlands.

Of the NETHERLANDS in general.



**T**HE ancient Name of these Countries was Belgium; whether from the old Dutch word Balgen to Fight, or from the City Belgium; which some say was Bavay in Hainault, others Beau-

vais in Picardy, is left undecided; several Writers pleading hard for both. It was also reckon'd part of Germany, and call'd Inferior, for the same reason as now Low Countries and Netherlands, viz. from their low situation



situation: And indeed so very low are the Maritime Provinces, that the Grounds are in many places even lower than the Surface of the Neighbouring Sea, which the Inhabitants confine and secure their Lands from, by strong Banks, made with great Labour and Ingenuity, and maintained at as great Expence. It was also called *Flanders*, because that Province formerly was the Great Mart of *Europe*, and resorted to by all Nations for Traffick; and therefore because all these Provinces were subject to the same Lord, the particular name of this chief One, was, by Strangers, made to intimate the Whole; and for the same reason, since the Erection of the Republick of the Confederate Provinces, *Holland* being the principal of them its name serves to denote, in general, the Countries of the Confederate States.

Its ancient Bounds were very large, for not only all the present *Netherlands*, but the parts of *France* next them, as *Picardy*, *Champaign* &c. and (according to some Authors) *Lorrain*, *Berg*, *Fuliers*, *Cleete*, together with the Bishopricks of *Mentz*, *Cologne*, and *Triers*, were all included in the general name of *Belgium*. The present Limits are the British Ocean on the North, the same Ocean and *Picardy* on the West, the rest of *Picardy* with *Champaign* and *Lorrain* on the South, and the Bishoprick of *Triers*, the Dutchies of *Fuliers* and *Cleete*, the Bishoprick of *Munster* and the County of *Emden* or *East-Friesland* on the East: The whole Country, according to *Guicciardine*, is one Thousand Italian miles in Circumference.

It is situated between the 49 Deg. 20. Min. and the 53 Deg. 30 Min. of Latitude, and between the 20 Deg. and 24 Deg. 30 Min. of Longitude.

The chief RIVERS are these, 1. The *Rhine*, which rises in the Country of the *Grisons*, and after it hath passed through *Germany*, entereth into these Countries at *Schenkschan* on the Borders of *Gelderland*; at which place it is divided into two Channels, whereof that which retains its name runs by *Arnhem* and *Wageningen* in *Guelderland*, and *Rbeenen* in *Utrecht* to *Duyster de Wyck*, where it meets and mixes with the *Leck*, a small Channel only that runs toward *Utrecht*, bearing the name of the *Rhine*, which passing on from *Utrecht* runs by *Warden* and *Leyden*, not far from which last place it is lost in the Sandhills, which choak up the mouth whereby it formerly run into the Sea. 2. The *Leck*, which receives the Waters of the *Rhine* at *Duyster de Wyck*, runs by *Culenborch*, *Viamen*, *Schoonhoven*, and at the Village *Crimpen* falls into the *Meruse*, which falls into the *Maes* not far above *Rotterdam*. 3. The *Waal*, which is the other Branch of the *Rhine*, beginning at *Schenkschan*, flows by *Nimwegen*, *Tiel*, and *Bommel*, to *Worcum*, where it is joyn'd with the *Maes*. and passing by *Gorcum* receives the *Lingre*, and takes the name of *Mes*, otherwise called the new *Maes*, which passing by *Dort* receives the *Leck* above mentioned, and the smaller *Iffel*, and flows in a broad Stream to *Rotterdam*, where it loses all other names and is called the *Maes*. 4. The *Maes*, called also *Mose* and *Meuse*, rises in Mount *Vogesus* in *Burgundy*, and passing by *Verdun* and *Charleville*, flows to *Namur*, where it receives the *Sambre*; thence passes by *Liege*, *Maastricht*, *Venlo*, and *Grave*, to *Worcum*, mixes with the *Waal* as above-said, and both together run to *Dort*, where the Stream is divided and makes an Island; but are again united a little below *Uerdigen*, and falls into the Ocean at the *Briel*. 5. The *Schelde*, called in French *l'Escaut*, hath its source in *Picardy* and runs by *Cambray*, *Va-*

*lenciennes* and *Oudenarde*, to *Ghent*, whence turning Eastward it passes by *Oudenarde*, and at *Rupelmonde* receives the *Demer*, besides many other smaller Rivers in its passage, and then flows Northward to *Antwerp*, where it makes a very capacious Harbour; and a few leagues below divides it self into two large Branches, one whereof call'd the *Wester Scheld* or the *Hont*, passes betwixt *Flanders* and *Zealand*, and falls into the Sea at *Flushing*; the other is called *Ooster Scheld*, and runs out of the main Stream at *Santvliet*, passing by *Bergen op Zoom*, and between *Tolen* and *South Beveland*, and thence by the Shoar of the Island *Schuwen* falls into the Sea with a violent Current. 6. The *Iffel*, from whence the Province lying beyond it is called *Overissel*, springs in *Westphalia*, and running through *Zurphen* passes to *Doesburgh*, where it is exceedingly augmented by a Channell cut from the *Rhine*, by the order of *Drusus Nero*, and thence in a great Stream flows by *Deventer* to *Campen*, parting the Provinces of *Gelderland* and *Overissel*, and falls into the *Zuyder Sea*.

There is another small River nam'd the *Iffel*, which comes out of the *Leck* near *Vianen*, and running towards *Rotterdam* falls into the *Maes*. Many other Rivers water these Countries, as the *Sambre*, *Lys*, *Aa*, *Demer*, *Scarp*, *Nethe*, *Dele*, *Sinne*, *Dendre*, *Roer*, &c. the course whereof the Reader will discover in the following description of the Country.

There can be very little said of the MOUNTAINS of these Countries; for except some few rising Grounds in those parts lying towards *Germany*, there is no Hill to be seen: On the contrary, all those Provinces towards the Sea lie so very low, that large parts of them have been many times overflow'd by the Eruptions of the Sea, notwithstanding the strong Banks that the Inhabitants maintain almost all along the Coasts of *Groninghen*, *Friesland*, *North Holland*, *Zealand*, &c.

These Countries were formerly very desolate, and for want of Cultivating, the Grounds were either turn'd to Marshes or over-run with FOREST; of which last that of *Ardenne* is mentioned by *Caesar* as the largest in *Belgium*, and was indeed of vast Extent; for, according to *Cluverius*, it reached from *Coblentz* in the Bishoprick of *Trier*, as far as the farthest Borders of *Artois*, which is 220 miles; and in breadth, to the Sea-shore and the River *Waal*, near 150 miles. There are still large Remains of it on the Borders of *Luxemburgh*, and in the Bishoprick of *Liege*, as also about *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Wormes*, &c. Many other large Forests are found here, as the Forests and Woods of *Soigny* and *Meerdale* in *Brabant*; *Niep* in *Flanders*; *Podsborg*, *Faigne*, *Mormaut*, and *S. Amand* in *Haynault*; with many others which are mentioned by *Guicciardine* to be very large, but have been retrench'd since his time by the consumption of the Wood for Fuel, and the Industry of the Inhabitants in Cultivating the Land.

The AIR is reckon'd wholesome enough, but is subject to very thick Fogs in Winter, through the moistness of the Country, which would be very Noxious if it were not for the dry Easterly Winds which blowing off a long Continent for two or three Months every Year, clear the Air, and cause very sharp Frosts during the Months of *January*, *February*, and *March*, by which means the Ports, Rivers, and Canals, are almost always shut up with Ice during those Months.

The SOIL is generally Fertile; but because different in the several parts, the Reader is referr'd to the particular Accounts of the Productions of each



of each Province, in the following Description of them.

The **COMMODITIES** of these Countries are their Manufactures; for their Productions are very few: Of these, from the *Spanish Netherlands* comes Linnen-Cloth, Tapestries, Worsted-Stuffs, Chamlets, Wrought-Silks, Lace, &c. and from *Holland* (besides most of the same Manufactures) they export all sorts of *East-India* Goods, Fish, and the Commodities of *Germany*, as Renish Wines, &c.

Concerning the **INHABITANTS**, *Cæsar*, in the beginning of his *Comenatries*, says, — *Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgæ*, &c. "That they were the most Valiant of all the *Gauls*, partly because they were far distant and unacquainted with the Civility of the Roman Provinces, and very little visited by Merchants, who import such things as serve to effeminate the minds of Men; but chiefly, because by their Neighbourhood to the *Germans*, they were at continual Wars with them. Many other Authors speak of the Martial Temper of these People, which their long and obstinate War with the *Spaniards* in the last Age, is a sufficient proof of. But their Industry is more conspicuous by the vast Traffick they have for many Ages past maintain'd with all Nations of *Europe*, and more remote parts of the World: Their Ingenuity hath also appear'd in the Invention of many useful Arts; such as the making of Tapestry, call'd *Arras*, from that City where it was invented; the making of Cloth and Worsted-Stuffs, which we learn'd of the *Flemings*; and the Perfection, if not Invention, of the Mariner's Compass, is by many Authors attributed to them: Many other ingenious and curious Arts acknowledge the *Netherlands* for their Inventers; to omit that of Printing, which *Haerlem* puts in a good Claim to, but is oppos'd in it by *Mentz* in *Germany*. But notwithstanding these Inventions and the Ingenuity of many particular Men among them, it must be allow'd in general, That they are Industrious rather than Ingenious. They will persevere and plod on in a Road through many Difficulties, but their Apprehensions are dull, and they are not easily perswaded to leave their old way, tho' a new one be apparently more convenient. They are much addicted to Drunkenness, but are not very delicate in their Food. Their Habits and Houses are exceeding Neat and Cleanly, especially the later, to Superstition.

The Dutch **TONGUE** is a Dialect of the *German*, but with many French and Latin words intermix'd: It is a harsh, clownish and unpleasant Speech, and hath nothing that can recommend it to Strangers. In the French *Flanders*, *Hainault* and *Luxemburg*, the French Language is generally understood, and that call'd *Walloon*, which is a corruption of French with Dutch, is usually spoken there. Persons of the best Rank all over the *Netherlands*, understand and speak French, as do also many of the common People.

The **RELIGION** of these Countries in general was that of the *Roman Church*, before the Reformation, which prevailing here, the King of *Spain*, about the year 1566. set up the Inquisition, and gave Orders for the punishing, even to Death, all those whom the Church of *Rome* declar'd Hereticks, which gave great discontent to the People, and was the first occasion of the Disturbance and bloody War, which ended in the total alienation of seven of the Provinces. At present the *Romish Religion* only is profess'd in the *Spanish Provinces*; and in *Holland* that of *Calvin* is predominant, but with Toleration of all others.

The convenient situation of *Flanders* in the mid-way between *France*, *Spain* and *Portugal* on one side, and *Denmark*, *Sweden* and the *Hanse Towns* on the other, together with *Germany* behind and *England* before it, may be esteem'd the chief reason of the vast **TRADE** that was some Ages since establish'd there; which was so great, that this Province might be accounted the grand Market-place of *Europe*: For in its City of *Bruges* the Merchants of all Nations had their Factories, and great Magazines to lodge the native products of their respective Countries, which they here sold and exchange'd for those of other places. Of these Houses or Colleges there were no less then 17 belonging to these several Nations, viz. *England*, *Scotland*, *France*, *Castile*, *Portugal*, *Navarre*, *Aragon*, *Catalonia*, *Biscay*, the *Hanse Towns*, the Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, *Lucca*, *Milan*, &c. In which State the Trade continued at *Bruges* for many years, till about 1480. it began to decline and remove to *Antwerp*, partly because the Port of *Sturs* and the River from thence, was narrow and inconvenient; and partly because of a War that disturb'd the Country hereabouts; whereas on the contrary the River *Schelde*, which leads to *Antwerp*, was large and commodious, and many Gentlemen upon occasion of the Wars between the King of *France* and the Emperor *Charles V.* having quitted the Villages and smaller Towns, retir'd with their Effects to *Antwerp*, built fine Houses there, and by their constant Residence, very much improv'd that City; but chiefly, because at *Antwerp* in 1503. the *Portuguese* fixed their Staple for the Spices and other Commodities of the *East-Indies*, which they brought from their new Conquest of *Calicut*; These and other Causes, drew the Merchants thither, and made it a Place of the greatest Trade of *Europe*, of which the Reader will find a more particular Account in our description of that City. But it lasted not there above 50 years; for the Civil War causing great Disorders, *Antwerp* was twice Plunder'd, and almost quite burnt down; and the Dutch Common-wealth, being Masters of *Zeeland*, were able to stop the Passage of the *Schelde*, and impose what Duties they pleased upon the Ships passing to *Antwerp*, by which they made them put into their Ports; and besides the English and Dutch having found the way to the *East-Indies*, supplanted the *Portuguese*, and furnish'd *Europe* with the Commodities of those Countries: By all which means the Current of Trade was quite alter'd, and translated to *London* and *Amsterdam*, which are, at present, the two great Empories of *Europe*. And the Traffick of *Flanders* is now not considerable, except for their own Manufactures, which we have already mention'd.

## Of the ancient State of the Netherlands is General.

**THE** greatest part of *Belgium* was Conquered by the *Romans*, and that part of it that lyes toward *Gaul*, continu'd under their Subjection till the declination of that Empire; after which the *Franks* were Masters of it, and in the French Monarchy it was part of their Kingdom of *Metz* or *Austrasia*. The Division of it into so many States, is deriv'd from the Earls of *Ardenne*, the Origine of whom was from the Sons of *Clodion* King of *France*, who being kept out of the Succession to that Kingdom, by *Meroveus* (as we have already shewn in our Account of the Kings of *France*) were forc'd, for their Safety to



betake themselves to the most defensible places of the Forest of *Ardenne*, and the Countries on the Banks of the *Moselle*, where they founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Moselle* belongs to *Germany*, and therefore shall not be treated on here: This of *Ardenne* comprehended part of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, all *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Limburg* and *Luxemburg*, together with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, (formerly a very large Country, containing the Bishoprick of *Liege*, &c.) These large Estates continu'd peaceably under the Earls of *Ardenne* for some time, till being grown powerful and great, they became the Envy of their Neighbours, and were therefore set upon by *Dagobert* King of *Metz*, and Son to *Chlotaire II.* King of *France*, who in Battle overcame and slew *Brimulph* Earl of *Ardenne*, and seized his Country, giving only *Hainault* to *Albert* his Son: *Dagobert* succeeding his Father in the Kingdom of *France*, A. 628. gave away part of this Country; but the gro's of it still bore the Title, and remain'd for a long time a very considerable Estate.

About 940. *Luxemburg* and *Limburg* were parted off, and given to two of the younger Sons of *Ricvine* Earl of *Ardenne*, and about 950 *Namur* was erected into an Earldom. The rest was afterwards carried into the House of *Lorraine* by a Marriage, and remain'd there for a long time. Thus we have shewn the Origine of the Earldoms of *Hainault* and *Namur*, and the Dutchies of *Luxemburg* and *Limburg*.

Part of *Brabant*, as we have said, was included in the Earldom of *Ardenne*; the other part, being that toward the Sea, was very much infested, and even almost depopulated by the Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*; wherefore, to guard the Coast and protect the Inhabitants, a certain Officer was appointed, call'd Lord Warden of the Marches; which Title they continu'd till *Utile*, Nephew of *Aldigerius*, King of the *Boiarians*, having shewn great Courage against those Pirates was honor'd with the Title of Lord Marquis of *Antwerp*, whose Descendant *Ansegistus*, was Mayor of the Palace in *France*, and made Duke of *Brabant*, and his great Grandson *Pepin* obtaining the Crown of *France*, this Dutchy was made a Province of that Kingdom, and afterwards a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorraine*. About 980. the Cities and Territories of *Brussels*, *Lorraine*, *Antwerp* and *Nivelle*, were taken out of it and made a new Estate, with the Title of *The Marquisate of the Holy Empire*, by the Emperor *Otto II.* and bestowed upon his Aunt, whose Granddaughter *Gerburg* succeeding her, convey'd it by Marriage to *Lambert* Son of *Reyner* Earl of *Hainault*, who had the Title of Earl of *Lovain*, and was succeeded in it by his Family, of whom *Godfrey VII.* Earl of *Lovain* Conquer'd the rest of the Country, and was created Duke of *Brabant*.

*Flanders* was a wild, waste Country, the Sea-coasts infested by the Danish Pirates, and the other parts but meanly Cultivated, till it was Conquer'd by the

French Kings, who, soon after the Establishment of the Monarchy, appointed a certain Officer with the Title of *Forester of Flanders*, to suppress the Robbers that infested the woody Parts and Sea-Coasts, and by Government and Protection civilize the People and encourage them to Industry. This Office continued for several Descents, and was at length changed into the Title of a Count or Earl, about the year 864. by *Charles the Bald*, Emperor, and King of *France*, in favour of *Baldwin* the seventh Forester, who had Married his Sister.

*Artois* was included in the Earldom of *Flanders* till 1234. when *Robert* the Grandson of *Philip Augustus*, King of *France*, and Husband to *Isabel* Daughter to *Baldwin VIII.* Earl of *Flanders*, was made Earl of it.

*Guelderland* was part of the French Kingdom of *Austrasia*, and with that became part of the Empire of *Germany*; and, as such, was govern'd by certain Guardians or Protectors, (first instituted in the Reign of *Charles the Bald*) of whom *Orbo* of *Nassau* was the first free Prince, and created Earl by the Emperor *Henry V.* A. D. 1079. whose Descendant *Rainold II.* was in 1339. made Duke of *Guelderland*.

*Zutphen* was a separate Earldom for many years, till united to *Guelderland* by the Marriage of *Sophia*, Daughter of *Wickman* the last Earl, to *Orbo* of *Nassau* above-mention'd.

*Holland* and *Zealand*, a rude unpeopl'd Country, being much disturb'd by the *Norman* Pyracies, was first made an Earldom by the Emperor *Lewis II.* about the year 863. and given to *Thierry*, in whose Line the Succession continu'd till the Death of *John*, about the year 1300. who leaving no Issue, was succeeded by *John* of *Avesnes* Earl of *Hainault*, Son of *Alcide*, the Daughter of *Florence IV.* Earl of *Holland*.

*Friseland* is but part of the Country of the ancient *Frisii*, some part of *Utrecht* and *Overissel*, as well as *East-Friseland* in *Germany*, being Inhabited by those People, who were Govern'd by their own Kings, till the Emperor *Charlemain* Conquer'd them; and this part, now one of the Provinces, became part of the Dutchy of *Guelderland*, and afterwards a distinct Barony.

*Overysfel* and *Groninghen*, was part of the Episcopal See of *Utrecht*, first Founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, in favour of *Willibald* an English-man, the Converter of these parts to Christianity, whose Successors were Temporal as well as Spiritual Lords, for 900 years, and were very powerful Princes, but often attack'd by the Earls of *Holland* and Dukes of *Guelderland*; which last got from them the Lordship of *Groninghen*, and in the end to distressed *Henry* Bishop of *Utrecht*, that by reason of that and civil Dissensions, he chose to surrender his Temporalities to the Emperor *Charles V.* A. D. 1527. who divided it into the two Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Overysfel*.

*How these Provinces became United in the House of Burgundy, will be seen by this Table.*

**A R T O I S**, *Robert II.* Earl, left Issue one Daughter named *Maud*, who was Married to

**F L A N D E R S**, *Lewis de Malaine* Earl, Married  
**H A I N A U L T**, *John de Avesnes*, Earl, Married  
*Alcide*, Heirefs of the Earl of *Holland*.

**H O L L A N D**, *Faqueline*, Daughter and Heirefs of *William VI.* Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland* and *Zeeland*, surrendred her Estates to *Philip* the Good.

**L I M -**

*The Family of Burgundy.*

*Ortheine* Earl of *Burgundy*, who in that Right succeeded in the Earldom, A. 1302.

*Margaret* the Heirefs of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, 1361.  
*Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis de la Malaine*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Artois* and *Burgundy*, Married to *Philip* the Hardy, Son of *John* King of *France*, made also Duke of *Burgundy*, A. 1363.

*John* without Fear, his Son, A. 1404.

*Antleng*



**LIMBURG**, *Adolph* Heir to *Henry* last Duke, sold it to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, A. 1293.

**BRABANT**, the Marquisate of the Empire or Territory of *Antwerp* and Lordship of *Machlin*, together with the Dutchy of *Limburg*, being fallen into this House, upon the Death of *Philip* II. without Issue, descended to *Philip* the Good, 1430.

**LUXEMBURG**, *Elizabeth* the Niece of *Sigismund* the last Duke, having no Issue, sold this Dutchy to *Philip* the Good.

**NAMUR**, *John* VI. sold it to *Philip* the Good, who was also next Heir to *Theodorick*, Successor to *John*, who died without Issue, about 1430.

**GUELDERLAND**, with **ZUTPHEN** and **GRONINGEN**, *Arnold* the Duke, being inhumanly treated by his Son, sold his Estates to *Charles* the Warlike; notwithstanding which, his Son *Adolph* got possession of them after the death of *Charles* the Warlike, A. 1473. and left them to his Son *Charles*, who maintain'd long War with the Duke of *Burgundy* to defend his Right, but was at length forced to surrender it to *Charles* V. to be enjoy'd by him after his decease, which happen'd 1538. and *Charles* accordingly succeeded.

**UTRECHT** with **OVERYSEL**, *Henry* of *Bavaria* being distressed through War with the Duke of *Guelderland* and Rebellion of his own Subjects, surrendred his Temporalities to *Charles* V. A. 1527. which was confirm'd by the Pope and the Estates of the Country.

*Anthony* the Proud, his Son, A. 1404. also made Duke of *Brabant* by his Mother.

*Philip* the Good, their Brother, succeeded *John* in 1419. and *Anthony* 1430. and was, in his time, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Duke of *Brabant*, *Limburg* and *Luxemburg*, Marquis of the Holy Empire, and Earl of *Flanders*, *Haynault*, *Holland*, *Zeeland*, *Artois* and *Namur*.

*Charles* the Warlike, his Son, succeeded Anno 1467. and added the Dutchy of *Guelderland* and *Zutphen*. He was killed in War against the *Switzers*, 1475. leaving Issue

*Mary* Heir to *Charles*, married *Maximilian* of *Austria*, Son of the Emperor *Frederick* III. and afterwards Emperor himself, succeeded Anno 1482 by

*Philip* their Son, who married *Joan* the Daughter and Heir of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* King and Queen, and first Monarchs of all *Spain*.

*Charles*, the Son of *Philip* and *Joan*, succeeded in the Estates of *Burgundy* in the Right of his Father, A. 1506. to which he added *Overysel* and *Utrecht*; and in the Kingdom of *Spain* in the Right of his Mother, A. 1516. and was also elected Emperor, being the 5th of that Name, A. D. 1519.

*Charles* V. made these Countries a Circle of the Empire, and resign'd them, with the Kingdom of *Spain*, A. 1558. to his Son

*Philip*, IV of *Burgundy* and II of *Spain*, in whose time happen'd the defection of the seven Provinces, whereof an Account shall be given when we come to speak of those Estates.

1599. *Philip* III. surrendered these Countries to his Daughter

*Isabella Clara Eugenia*, married to *Albert* Arch-duke of *Austria*, after whose death, A. 1621. succeeded *Philip* IV. King of *Spain*; whose Successors will be seen in our Description of *Spain*.

## The present State of the Spanish Netherlands.

The supream Lord, as hath been said, is the King of *Spain*, who governs them by a Substitute with the Title of Governour General of the Netherlands, at present enjoy'd by the Elector of *Bavaria*, which, by reason of his Relation to that Crown, his Son being then presumptive Heir to it, (but since dead) was in the year 1692. made Hereditary to him.

The Governour General is assisted by three Councils, viz.

The Council of State; wherein the most weighty Affairs, as Peace and War, Leagues and Alliances, treating with Foreign Ambassadors, &c. are transacted.

The Privy Council; which judges Matters of Right brought before it by Appeal from the other Courts of Judicature; makes Laws and Edicts, determines the Bounds of Provinces, the Right of Lordship, &c. And

The Council of Finances; which hath the Care and Management of the Royal Revenues and all Taxes, and supervising the Accounts of the Receivers. To this Council also belongs the Care of the Fortifications, the adjusting and proportioning the Charge of a War, &c.

But the levying Money and enacting of new Laws belong to the Convention of the Estates, which is compos'd of the Nobility, principal Clergy and Deputies of the Chief Cities; who, being called by the Governour General, assemble at *Brussels*, not in one Body, but by Provinces, (the several Provinces retaining

still most of the Particular Privileges they anciently enjoy'd) where the Prince's desires are propos'd to them, in an obliging and endearing manner; (the Spaniard having by fatal Experience found his Error in treating these People with Severity) and if they appear unwilling to Grant what he Demands, the most winning Arguments, with all the power of Rhetorick, are used in his Behalf; which is the more necessary because every City hath a negative Voice, and the dissenting but of one of them spoils the Law.

The sett'd Revenue of the Crown consists in Customs and Imposts, which, by reason of the great Loss of Trade, and the Encroachments of the King of *France* upon the Country, do not, by much, answer the Charge of the Government; but the King is oblig'd to send continual Supplies from *Spain*.

For maintaining the Peace and taking care of the Armies, &c. there is a Governour in every Province appointed by the King, subordinate to the Governour General.

And for administering of Justice, each Province hath a Provost or Bailiff; and over all there is a Grand Provost, who hath great Power in Criminal Matters.

The Bishopricks of the Netherlands, besides those already mention'd under the Archbishoprick of *Cambray* in the Account of *France*, are only these, viz.

The Archbishoprick of *Machlin*, with the Bishopricks of *Antwerp*, *Ghent*, *Bruges*, *Tpres*, *Rumond* and *Bois le Duc*.

And



And formerly, the Bishoprick of *Utrecht*, with the Bishopricks of *Haerlem*, *Deventer*, *Groningen*, *Lewarden* and *Middleburg*; which being subject to the States-General, have been suppress'd.

The Universities of the Spanish Netherlands.  
Louvain.

The United Netherlands.  
Groningen,  
Utrecht, Harderwick.  
Franeker,

The Accounts in *Flanders* are kept in Pounds, Schellings, and Groots; 12 Groots make a Schelling, 20 Schellings a Pound *Flemish*.

The common Coins are, the *Negenmanneck*, which is the eighth part of a *Snyver*. An *Oortke*, the fourth part of a *Snyver*.

The *Snyver*; the Schelling 6 *Snyvers*; the *Guilder* 20 *Snyvers*.

The *Patatoon* is two *Guilders*, and the half *Patatoon* one *Guilder*.

The Silver-Crown 2 *Guilders* and 10 *Snyvers*, the *Rix-Dollar* something more.

The *Ducatoon* 3 *Guilders* or something more.

The Ten Spanish Provinces are,

The Dutchy of <i>BRABANT</i> ,	<i>Bruxels</i> , Cap.
The Dutchy of <i>LUXEMBURG</i> ,	<i>Luxemburg</i> .
The County of <i>ARTOIS</i> ,	<i>Arras</i> , Bish.
The County of <i>FLANDERS</i> ,	<i>Gant</i> , Bish.
The County of <i>HAINAULT</i> ,	<i>Mons</i> .
The County of <i>CAMBRESIS</i> ,	<i>Cambray</i> , Arch.
The Marquisate of the S. Empire,	<i>Antwerp</i> , Bish.
The Lordship of <i>MALINES</i> ,	<i>Malines</i> , Arch.
The County of <i>NAMUR</i> ,	<i>Namur</i> , Bish.
The Dutchy of <i>LIMBURG</i> ,	<i>Limburg</i> .

To which may be added, The Country of *LIEGE*.

The King of *France* hath at several times conquer'd a great part of these Provinces; which by several Treaties of Peace have been granted to him, whereof we have already given an account in speaking of the Dominions of that King, in the general Account of *France*.

## CHAP. I.

### The County or Province of ARTOIS, Artesia, Arthesia, or Adartesia.

THE Province of *Artois* is bounded on the North by that of *Flanders*, on the South by *Picardy*, on the East by the Territories of *Cambresis*, and on the West by those of *Boulen*, extending it self from North-west to South east about 60 miles, and 23 from North to South. This is the Country of those ancient People call'd *Arrebates* by *Cesar*, and is at present entirely subject to the French. Within its Limits are 850 Towns and 9 Castellanies, together with a great number of rich Abbeys and Monasteries. It bringeth forth much Corn, abounds in Pastures, and is water'd with divers Rivers; the chief whereof are, the *Lys*, the *Scarp*, and the *Aa*. *Artois* was at first subdued by the *Romans*, and then by the French; under the second Race of whose Monarchs it obtained certain particular Governours or Earls, who in process of time render'd themselves proprietary Lords thereof; until, at length, after divers Revolutions, the French made an absolute Conquest of this Province, to whom it was granted by the 35th Article of the *Pyrenean Treaty of Peace*, A. D. 1659.

The most considerable Towns, Villages, &c. are these, viz.	{	<i>Arras</i> , Bish.	<i>Aire</i> , Pr.
		<i>S. Omer</i> , Bish.	<i>Tberouane</i> , ruin'd.
		<i>Bapaume</i> ,	<i>Lens</i> ,
		<i>Hesdin</i> ,	<i>Avesne le Comte</i> ,
		<i>Bethune</i> ,	<i>S. Paul</i> ,
		<i>S. Venant</i> ,	<i>Mont S. Eloy</i> , Ab.

*ARRAS*, *Arrebatum* aut *Nemetocerna*, & *Nemetacum*, is seated on the River *Scarp*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Amiens* to the N. and 30 from *Tournay* to the S. W. 47 from *Dunkirk* to the S. and 18 from *Cambray* to the W. It is a very ancient and large City, defended by a strong Castle, and very good Bulwarks, Trenches, and other Fortifications. It is divided into two parts, call'd the City and the Town, separated formerly by a Wall. The former is the smaller, but best built; in it stands the Cathedral (a beautiful Building, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*) wherein are kept some famous Relicks, particularly

a Candle pretended to be dropt down from Heaven, and some Manna shew'd down on *S. Jerome*. The Town hath fair broad Streets, a spacious Market-place and stately Churches; and is inhabited by wealthy Traders and Artificers, who make *Sayes* and *Tapestry Hangings*, especially the latter, which Art was invented here, and therefore take their Name from this City, *Arras* is the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Metropolitan of *Cambray*, who is accounted Lord of the City, as the Secular Prince is of the Town. It was taken by the French Troops under the Command of the Marshals *de Chauhe*, *Chaillon* and *la Melleraye*, on the 10th day of August, A. D. 1640. and hath ever since remained in their Possession. The *Spaniards*, to regain so important a Place, laid Siege to it, but were repulsed with great Loss, on the 25th of August, 1654.

*S. Omer*, *Fanum S. Audomari*, aut *Andomaropolis*, stands on the River *Aa*, in the Country of the ancient *Morini*, and is also an Episcopal See; the Bishop whereof hath been a Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Cambray* ever since the year 1559. when it succeeded the demolish'd City of *Terouanne* in this Dignity; from the Ruines of which it is distant 3 Leagues to the North, 20 miles from *Boulen* to the East, 20 from *Dunkirk* to the South, and 32 from *Arras* to the North-west. *S. Omer*, Bishop of *Terouanne*, founded a Monastery here, A. C. 660. whether People resorting, Buildings round it were erected, which in time increased to a good Town: And A. 880. *Tongues*, Abbot of *S. Bertin*, began to enclose it with Walls, which were afterward finished by *Baldwin II.* surnam'd the Bald, Earl of *Flanders*, in 902. Not far from hence is to be seen a large Lake, in which there are divers floating Islands, which are removed by Poles and Cords, and inhabited by certain Families that never depart out of these Islands, and refuse to contract Alliance with any but those of their own Tribe; In one of these Islands stands a Monastery of the Order



der of *S. Bernard*, and a Church. *S. Omer* is large and the People rich, by means of their Trade. An *English* Seminary of *Jesuits* is establish'd here; from whence our Nation hath been infested with Disturbers of the publick Peace. This City is fortified both by Nature and Art, as being environ'd on one Side with the River and Marshes, and on the other with an Hill or rising Ground, defended by a strong Castle, divers Bastions and very deep Trenches: However, the Duke of *Orleans* made himself Master thereof, after having Defeated the *Spanish* Forces at the Battel of *Cassal*, on the 23d of *April*, 1677. And it was yielded up to the *French* King by the Peace concluded at *Nimeguen* in the Year ensuing,

*Aire* or *Arien*, *Aira*, is situate on the River *Lys*, 10 miles from *S. Omer* to the South-East, and about 24 from *Arras* to the North-West; and is a very strong well fortified Town, having, besides the Walls, Bastions, Half-Moons, Horn Works, Redoubts, Counter-carps and Ditches, a Morass which environs it on three sides. and on the side that is accessible; a Fortress call'd *Fort S. James*, which hath 5 Bastions, 2 Half-Moons, and a deep Trench. But notwithstanding its Strength, this Town was taken by the *French* in 1641. and quickly after retaken by the *Spaniards*: And in the year 1676. the *French* again took it, and have ever since possessed it.

In the midway between *S. Omer* and *Aire*, are the Ruins of the once considerable City of *Terouanne*, which was famous on account of the Siege thereof by our King *Henry VIII.* in Person, in the year, 1513. at which the Emperor *Maximilian* assisted, and wore the *English* Badge (*S. George's Cross*) as a Soldier under King *Henry*. At this Siege, the *French* attempt-

ing to put Provisions into the Town, were beaten by the *English* with great Slaughter, and by reason of the haste wherewith the *French* fled away 'twas call'd the *Battel of Spurs*; intimating, That those were the chief Weapons they used. Quickly after the City was taken, but dismantled and quitted: Which the *French* afterwards repairing, it was again taken by the Emperor *Charles V.* and utterly demolish'd, in the year 1553. and is at present a small Village only,

*Bethune* *Bethunia*, a fortified Town, and the Capital of a County, stands on the River *Brette*, 12 miles from *Aire* to the East: An excellent sort of Cheese is made here, and sold into all the Neighbouring Countries. It is a Place of Trade, and hath two annual Fairs.

*Bapaume*, *Bapalma*, another small fortified Town, stands near the Confines of *Picardy* and *Cambrai*, about 15 miles from *Arras* to the South-east.

*Hesdin*, on the River *Canche*, being incommodiously seated for Defence, was demolish'd by the Emperor *Charles*, and *Hesdin-Fort* built a little above upon the same River *Canche*, where the *Ternois* falls into it; which was well fortified, and made one of the strongest Towns in these Countries: But was, however, taken by the *French* in 1639. It is situated near the Confines of *Picardy*, 20 miles South from *Aire*, and about 10 West from *S. Paul*.

*S. Paul*, *Poliniacensis Pagus*, a small Town, the Capital of a County, formerly subject to its own Lords, is seated near the Head of the small River *Ternois*, about 10 miles from *Hesdin-Fort* to the East, 15 from *Arras* to the West, and as many from *Aire* to the South.

## CHAP. II.

### The County or Earldom of FLANDERS, called *Vlaenderen* in Flemish; *Comitatus Flandriæ*.

THIS is the first and most considerable County or Earldom of the *Low-Countries*, and takes its Name from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Liderick II.* Prince of *Buc*, and Grand Forester of *Flanders*, who govern'd it according to the Orders of the Emperors *Charlemaign* and *Lewis* the *Debonnaire*. Others derive it from that of *Flambert*, the Nephew of *Clodion* King of *France*, who, having married *Belisinda*, the Daughter of *Golduerus* King of the *Ruthenians*, expelled the *Romans* out of *Gallia Belgica*. This Province is bounded on the North by the *German Ocean*, and the Mouth of the River *Scheld*, call'd the *Hont*, by which it is separated from *Zealand*; on the South by *Artois* and *Hainault*, on the East by part of *Hainault* and *Brabant*, and on the West by the Ocean and part of *Artois*. It is extended from North to South for the space of about 60 miles, and 75 from East to West, which must be understood of its largest Dimensions. It is a very fruitful Country, especially that part towards the Sea, which is excellent Pasturage for the great number of Horse bought up in the neighbouring Countries and fed here. The rest of the Country affords store of Corn and Fruit. Within its Bounds are comprehended 28 or 30 walled Towns: many other Towns very remarkable, and 1154 Villages, besides 48 Abbies and a vast number of Pories,

Colleges and Monasteries; insomuch that the *Spanish* Noblemen, who accompanied *Philip II.* when he took a Progress into these Countries, declar'd, That *Flanders* was only one continued City. Here are included 5 Vicounties, which are *Gaunt*, *Ypres*, *Furnes*, *Winoxberg* and *Haerlebeck*; 3 Principalities, namely those of *Steenhusen*, *Gaure* and *Espiney*; 5 Ports, formerly very considerable, viz. *Graveling*, *Dunkirk*, *Newport*, *Ostend* and *Sluce*; and 32 Castellanies. The whole Province is commonly divided into 3 Parts: 1. *Flanders Flemish*, where the Vulgar Language of the Country is spoken, and is stretched forth from the Northern Sea to the River *Lys*: 2. *Gallian*, where the *French* Tongue is chiefly predominant, lying to the South of the *Flemish*, and to the North of *Cambresis*, having the *Scheld* to the East and the *Lys* to the West: 3. *Imperial Flanders*, situated between the *Scheld* to the Dender, comprehending the County of *Alost*, together with a few Offices or Districts, which were heretofore possessed by the Emperor: There is also another Division of the same Territories, viz. into *Flanders Teutonic*, *Walloon*, *Imperial* and *Dutch*: The first of these is extended between the Sea and the River *Lys*: The second betwixt the *Lys* and the *Scheld*: The third between the two others: And the fourth to the North of the two former. But at present



present the County of *Flanders* is divided, with respect only to the Sovereign Princes who are possessors thereof; so that it is usually distinguish'd into the *French*, *Spanish* and *Dutch* Quarters, according to the ensuing Table.

French Flanders, which are call'd these Towns, &c.	<i>Lisle</i> , Cap.	<i>la Basse</i> ,
	<i>Ipres</i> , Bish.	<i>Ecluse</i> ,
	<i>Tournay</i> , Bish.	<i>S. Amand</i> ,
	<i>Duyn</i> , Port,	<i>Lannoy</i> ,
	<i>Graveling</i> ,	<i>Warneton</i> ,
	<i>Berg S. Vindoc.</i>	<i>Comines</i> ,
	<i>Douay</i> ,	<i>Warwick</i> ,
	<i>Fribourg</i> ,	<i>Menin</i> ,
	<i>Alain Cassel</i> ,	<i>Estame</i> ,
	<i>Orchies</i> ,	<i>Poperinghe</i> ,
	<i>Bailou</i> ,	<i>Bourbourg</i> ,
	<i>Reims</i> ,	<i>Mardyck</i> ,
	<i>Armentiers</i> ,	
	<i>Gant</i> , Bish. Cap.	<i>Ninove</i> ,
Spanish Flanders, in which are these Towns, &c.	<i>Bruges</i> , Bish.	<i>Damme</i> ,
	<i>Offend</i> , Port,	<i>Dixmuyde</i> ,
	<i>Newport</i> , Port,	<i>Deyse</i> ,
	<i>Oudenard</i> ,	<i>Gramont</i> ,
	<i>Alost</i> ,	<i>Rupelmond</i> ,
	<i>Courtray</i>	
Dutch Flanders,	<i>Sint</i> , Port,	<i>Sas van Gard</i>
	<i>Ostburg</i> ,	<i>Cassandra</i> ,
	<i>Hulst</i> ,	<i>Philippine</i> ,
	<i>Ax'l</i> ,	<i>Terreuse</i> ,
	<i>Andenurg</i> ,	<i>Middleburg</i> ,
	<i>Bierliet</i> ,	<i>Bombouje</i> ,
	<i>Tendick</i> ,	<i>Doel</i> ,

## FRENCH FLANDERS.

*L'ISLE* or *RYSEL*, *Insula & Lila*, so call'd by reason of its situation amidst divers Marshes, which have been drained by the Industry of the Inhabitants, is seated on the River *Deulle*, at the distance of 25 miles from *Arras* to the North, 30 from *Newport* to the South-west, 12 from *Tournay* to the West, 16 from *Douay* to the North, and 12 from the Confines of *Artois*. *Baldwin IV.* call'd the Bearded, Earl of *Flanders*, founded this City, *A. D.* 1007. and his Successor, *Baldwin V.* turnam'd of *Lisle*, caused it to be encompass'd with Walls. It hath been often taken and sack'd during the Wars of the *Low Countries*, but is at present extremely well Fortified according to the modern Method, and hath a Citadel flanked with 5 Royal Bastions, besides many Half-moons and other Out-works, rais'd for its Defence; the Ditches are also double and fill'd with the Waters of the *Deulle*. It is a large City and very considerable on account of its Trade, which consists chiefly in Silk Manufactures; and for the conveniency of transporting their Goods, a Canal is cut to the River *Lys*; and it is the usual place of Residence of the Governor of French *Flanders*. It was taken by the Army of the present French King, *Lewis XIV.* in the Year 1667. and hath ever since remain'd in his Possession, having been resign'd to him by the Peace of *Aix la Chappelle*, *A. D.* 1668.

*Tournay* or *Dornick*, *Tornacum*, the Capital City of a small Country in *Gallican Flanders*, call'd *Tournaisis*, is seated in the midst of pleasant and fruitful Meadows, on the Banks of the *Scheld*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Cambray* to the North, 30 from *Gant* to the South, and 11 from *Lisle* to the East, lying almost in the midst between *Douay* and *Oudenarde*, as also between *Valenciennes* and *Courtray*. It

is a very considerable City, being large, well-built, a place of good Trade, and very populous. It is divided into 10 Parishes, the Churches whereof are stately, and the Cathedral dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, magnificent. The Buildings in general are very handsom; and here are reckon'd 72 Companies of Traders. It is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Cambray*, and is well fortified with Walls, Ditches and regular Out-works, besides the Castle, which was built by our King *Henry VIII.* by whom this City was taken, but restored to the French upon Conditions, *A. D.* 1518. Afterwards the Emperor *Charles V.* dispossest them in 1521. But the present French King regain'd it from the *Spaniards* in 1667. and it was granted to him by the Treaty of *Aix la Chappelle*.

*Ipres*, *Ipres*, *Ipræ*, hath its name from the small River *Iperlee*, on which it stands, at the distance of 23 miles from *Lisle* to the North-west, and is a rich well-traded City, the Capital of a Territory of large extent, call'd the Castellany of *Ipres*, which is a very fertile Country. The Trade consists in Saws, wrought Silks, &c. Several Fairs are held here, especially one in Lent, which is very profitable to the Inhabitants. The Buildings are fair and good, but the Fronts of the Houses are of Timber. The public Buildings are the Cathedral dedicated to *S. Martin*, several other Churches, many Convents, a large Hall or Repository for the Wool, and the Marketplace very spacious and handsom. This City is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Malines*, is honour'd with the Title of a Viscounty, and is reckon'd the third of the four that constitute the third Estate of *Flanders*. It was taken by the French in 1678. and yielded to them at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

*Menene* is a small Town upon the *Lys* about 5 or 6 miles above *Courtray*, with a Ditch and other Fortifications to resist a sudden Surprise.

*Armentiers* stands also upon the *Lys*, 12 miles above *Menene*, and 8 from *Lisle* to the West: It is a Town of good Trade and considerable Strength; notwithstanding which, it hath been often taken and re-taken, and is at present in the hands of the French, having been granted to them at the Treaty of *Aix la Chappelle*.

*Warneton*, *Warneton*, and *Commene*, the Birth-place of the famous *Philip de Comines* are all three seated upon the *Lys*, between *Menene* and *Armentiers*, and all subject to the French.

*Orchies*, an ancient tho' small Town, is situated 12 miles South-east from *Lisle*, 10 from *Tournay* to the South-west, and as many from *Douay* to the North-east, and water'd with a small Rivulet, which 5 miles below falls into the *Scarpe*.

*S. Amand*, formerly a place of good Strength, but now dismantl'd by the French, is seated on the River *Scarpe*, 7 or 8 miles from *Orchies* to the East, and 10 from *Tournay* to the South. It is noted for a famous Abby in it, dedicated to the Saint that gives name to the Town, and formerly for a fine Forest adjoining, of the same name also, which was cut down in 1676. by order of the French King.

*Douay*, *Duacum*, is seated also on the *Scarpe*, on the Frontiers of *Artois*, 16 miles from *S. Amand* to the West, and as many from *Lisle* to the South. It is a very considerable Town, on account of its large Extent, Trade and Strength. Its chief Trade is in making and vending Worsted Camlets, which are brought by all the neighbouring People, especially at the Annual Fair in September. Here is a famous Seminary for





English Roman Catholics, first Founded in 1569. by Philip II. Afterwards removed to Rheims in France, but stayed there only 20 years, in which time they published an English Version of the Bible. The French Took this Town in 1667. and have ever since possessed it. It is well Fortified, and hath a Fort upon the Scarpe a Canon shot below the Town, which is situated among Marshes, and by Sluces can drown the Country all round.

These are all the places of any Note in the East part of French Flanders. The most considerable of the West part are, *Winoxberg, Cassel, Furnes, Graveling, Marlyke* and *Dunkirk*.

*Winoxbergen*, or *Berg Saint Winox*, *Berga*, or *Mons Sancti Winoci*, is seated about 18 miles West from *Ypres*, and 14 East from *Graveling*, as also Eight or Nine from *Dunkirk* to the South; it is the Capital of a Castellany, or large Territory, which is very Fruitful and feeds great Herds of Cattle. The Town hath its name from a Monastery erected on a Hill, in Honour of S. *Winox* an English-man. Woollen Cloth is made here; but its Trade was formerly much more considerable than at present.

*Cassel*, or *Mont Cassel*, *Castellum*, and *Castellum Morinorum*, stands upon the top of a high Hill, at the distance of 10 or 11 miles South from *Winoxburg*, and 15 West from *Ypres*: It is an ancient Town, and hath a considerable Jurisdiction, subordinate to that of *Ypres*. It was formerly a place of good Strength but having been several times Taken and almost Ruin'd, it is now not considerable. The French took it in 1677. and have ever since held it. Near this place, in the year 1677. was fought a very bloody Battle, between the Dutch Army, commanded by the Prince of *Orange*, and the French, commanded by the Duke of *Orleans*, wherein the latter obtained the Victory.

*Furnes*, or *Vuerne*, *Vurna*, is a neat pleasant Town, seated within two Leagues of the Sea, at the distance of about 10 miles from *Dunkirk* to the East, and 5 from *Newport* to the West, 20 from *Cassel* to the North, and about 10 from *Winoxberg* to the North-east. This Town hath a Territory call'd an *Ambacht* belonging to it, which is exceeding Fertile. It is dignified with the Title of a Vicounty, and is a place of Trade, which consists in Linen Manufactures, &c. It was taken by the French in 1667. and granted to them by the Peace of *Aix la Chapelle*, and since better Fortified. In the year 1692 our English Forces took it, but the next Winter the French re-gain'd it.

*Graveling*, or *Graveline*, *Gravelinga* and *Gravelina*, is one of the Sea-ports of *Flanders*, and seated at the mouth of the River *Aa*, which parts *France* from *Flanders*, in the mid-way between *Calais* and *Dunkirk*, 16 miles North-west from *Cassel*, and 12 West from *Winoxberg*. This being a Frontier of *Flanders* from *France*, was Fortified by *Charles V.* in 1528. and is at present very strong, as well by reason of its situation among low Grounds and Dikes, as by the strong and regular Out-works built all round it. It is but a small Town, ill Built, and thinly Inhabited, and at present subject to the French, being taken by them in 1658. and yielded up at the *Pyrenean Treaty*.

Between *Graveling* and *Dunkirk*, about 4 miles from the latter, stands what is left of the Fort of *Marlyke*, formerly a very strong place, but in the year

1645 dismantled, and in 1652 quite destroyed; so that there remains now only a small wooden Fort, with some few Guns on it.

*Dunkirk* *Dunquerca*, is situated on the Shoar of the German Ocean, at the distance only of 20 miles from *Calais*, and 12 from *Graveling* to the East, 15 from *Newport*, and 28 from *Ostend* to the West, 35 from *Tournay* to the West, 34 from *Bruges* to the South-west. It takes its name from the Sand-Hills, call'd in Flemish *Duynen*, that are ranged along the Sea-coasts and on which a large Church, term'd Kirk by those People, is erected; the high Tower thereof appearing very far off to the Mariners as they sail on the Downs. It is a good large Town well built, with neat large Streets, and very Populous: It is one of the five Ports of *Flanders*, and was therefore a place of good Trade in the flourishing time of this Country: Afterwards in the War-time it became a Retreat of Pirates and Robbers, who infested the Seas, and very much disturbed Trade. The Emperor *Charles V.* first Fortified it; which the French Demolish'd when they Took and Sack'd the Town in 1558. The Spaniards Re-took it 1581. and here a great part of the Fleet, design'd to Invade *England* in 1588. was Equipp'd by the Prince of *Parma*, but by the Vigilance of the Dutch Fleet, which lay before the Harbour, where kept in and could not join the rest of their Fleet; which much facilitated their Overthrow. It was afterwards taken and re-taken by the French and Spaniard, before 1658. when it was finally taken by the joint Forces of *England* and *France*, and put into the hands of the English, in whose Possession it remain'd till 1662. when it was deliver'd to the French by (*Charles II.* upon certain Conditions to us unknown) who have ever since held it, and have very much improv'd it, by enlarging the Town, and building exceeding strong Fortifications, &c. wherein they have bestowed prodigious Expence; having besides the building strong Walls and Ravelins, Half-moons and Counter-scarps, and a Citadel regularly Fortified: I say, besides these, the French King hath dug a large Basin within the Town, capable of receiving 150 Ships of Burden, and cut a Canal through the Splinter-lands out into the Sea, which is secur'd by a Mole or Gallery on each side, that are carried out into the Sea a mile in length, on which are Forts with Cannon planted on them, and on one side a strong Fort, call'd the Rice-bank, well secur'd with an hundred Pieces of Cannon that command the Port; a Work of vast Labour, Art and Expence, by which he intended to make it a Port for his Ships of War, but was disappointed of his design; for the Sands do so choak up the Harbour, notwithstanding the Mole, that with all the advantage of the highest Tides, they cannot bring in a Ship of 70 Guns, without Unloading her.

## Spanish F L A N D E R S.

*GAUNT* or *GHEENT*, *Gande*, *Gandavum*, is water'd with divers Rivers and Channels, which divide the Town and the adjacent Country into many Islands, being seated almost at an equal distance of 30 miles North from *Tournay*, East from *Ostend*, South from *Middleburg*, and West from *Malines*, as also 26 from *Antwerp* and 28 from *Brussels*. It is the Capital City of the Province of *Flanders*, and one of the largest Cities of *Europe*, being 9 or 10 miles in compass; but then Corn-fields and Meadows are included within the Walls. It was built (as it is reported) by



*Julius Caesar*, in a place extremely advantageous for Traffick, on the account of its situation at the confluence of four large Rivers, viz. of the *Scheld*, which flows hither from the Province of *Hainaut*, the *Les*, which runs from that of *Artois*, the *Lien*, which proceeds from the Port of *Scheld*, and the *Meers*, which took its rise near the four Offices, call'd *Ambacles*. Within the precincts of *Gant* are included 26 small Isles, form'd by the Waters of the Canals and Rivers, and as many large Bridges, under which pass Barks of good Burden, and a great number of smaller Bridges. The Churches, which are eleven in number, are fair and well built; the Cathedral especially is very stately, and has a Tower of 400 Steps high. The Castle or Prince's Palace, is said to contain 300 Chambers, in one of which the Emperor *Charles V.* was born. The other publick Buildings are, the Town-hall, a high Tower call'd *Beffroi*, in which hangs a great Bell call'd *Rand*, that weighs 11000 lb. and weighs many Monasteries and several Hospitals. The private Houses are fair and well-built, and the Streets clean and neat. This City hath a good Trade in Cloths, Stuffs and woollen Silks, made here in great quantities. It is now resort'd to from the neighbouring Provinces on account of the Provincial Council of *Flanders*, which was establish'd by *John Duke of Burgundy*, A. D. 1469, and still held in this City. It is also an Episcopal See subject to the Metropolis of *Metz*, and is fortified with a Citadel built in 1540, by the Emperor *Charles V.* a Counter-camp, deep Ditches, Ramparts, and many other Out-works. However, the French King, *Lewis XIV.* took it after a Siege of 9 days, on the 9th of *March*, 1678, but was oblig'd to restore it to the Spaniards at the Peace of *Nimeguen*.

At the distance of 4 leagues from hence to the North stands a strong Fortress, call'd by the Inhabitants, *Ter van Ghendt*. It was erected by the Spaniards, and taken by the *Hollanders*, A. D. 1644, by whom it hath been strongly fortified; and made almost impregnable. Between *Gant* and *Bruges* there is a Canal which was cut at great Expence by the Marquis *Spinola*, when he was Governour of the *Netherlands*, for conveying Goods and Passengers to and from each City; and is call'd by the Inhabitants *De nieuwen Vaert*, and by Strangers *The Canal of Bruges*.

**B R U G E S**, *Brug*, so call'd from the multitude of its Bridges, is seated on the Canal of *Reye*, which is here divided into many navigable Rivulets, running through divers quarters of the Town, and afterward re-uniting in the same Canal that passeth as far as *Sluys*. But because that Port is in the Hands of the *Hollanders* about 40 years ago the Inhabitants made another, which flows to *Ostend*, and is so deep that Ships of two or three hundred Tuns are brought up to *Bruges*, which thereby maintains a very good Traffick, but small in comparison of what it hath been: For before the Wars in *Flanders*, it was the greatest Mart in *Europe*; Merchants from all Parts resided here, and had Magazines for the Goods of every Country, which were here Barter'd and Sold; of these Merchants there were no less than 17 Companies, all which remov'd to *Antwerp* about the year 1500 by reason of the Wars and Disturbances hereabouts, except the English, who, upon the loss of *Calais*, remov'd the Staple for Wool hither in 1558, where it remain'd for a long time, to the great Advantage of the Town. *Bruges* is esteem'd the second City of *Flanders*; it is large, well-built, and reasonably populous; The Form of it is round, and the Cir-

cumference about 4 miles; there are six principal Streets, which begin at the six chief Gates, and center at the Market place. The publick Buildings are sumptuous, the Houses neat, and the Streets strait and large. Their Trade consists in Spanish Wool, and the Manufactures of the Town, Fustians and other Stuffs, Cloth, Tapistry, &c. This City is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Malines*: The Cathedral is dedicated to *S. Donat*, besides which there are seven Parish, and two Collegiate Churches, three principal Abbies, and a great number of Religious Houses. The other publick Buildings are, the Castle, the Town-house, and the Water-houle of very ingenious Structure. *Bruges* stands in the North part of *Flanders*, at the distance of 10 miles from the Sea, somewhat more from *Ostend* to the East, and as many from *Sluys* to the South-west, as also 20 from *Gant* to the North-east.

*Ostende* is a small Town, and one of the five Ports of *Flanders*; it is situate about 10 mile West from *Bruges*, 9 from *Newport* to the North, and at the mouth of the small River *Gule*, in the midst of a moorish Ground, and divers Channels and Dikes. It was at first only a small Village, but by reason of its convenient situation, it was wall'd round and fortified; by the Strength whereof and the advantageous Situation, the *Hollanders*, with the assistance of an English Garrison, sustain'd a Siege three Years and three Months, viz. from the 5th of *July*, 1601, to the 22d of *September*, 1504, when it was taken by *Ambrosio Spinoia*, and surrender'd to *Albert Arch-Duke of Austria*. The Spaniards lost 78124 Soldiers of their Army, and in counting the Officers, together with those that were slain in the Town, the number slain in this Siege is suppos'd to amount to 15000 Men. Since when, it hath been possess'd by the Spaniards, and is at present exactly and regularly fortified, and one of the strongest Places in the *Netherlands*. The Houses are well built, handsom and uniform, and the Streets clean and neat. The Haven is safe, large, well defended by Forts, and deep enough to receive Ships of great Burden.

*Newport*, *Novus Portus*, heretofore call'd *Sandbost*, that is to say, the Head of the Sands, hath in like manner a safe Harbour, altho' scarcely capable, even at the high Tides, of receiving Vessels of any great Burden. It is seated near the Mouth of the River *Iperlee*, which falling into the Sea, makes a long and secure Haven, at the distance of 15 miles from *Dunkirk* to the N. E. 9 from *Oostend* to the S. W. 18 from *Ipres* to the North, and 38 from *Gant* to the West. It is a place of good Strength, being well fortified with Walls and several Forts. The Buildings are neat, but low and of Timber: The Inhabitants are maintained by Fishing. From hence the English Pacquet Boat goes weekly to *Dover*. This Town being invested by the *Hollanders* in the year, 1600, under the Command of *Maurice Prince of Orange*, assisted by some English Troops commanded by Sir *Francis Vere*, the Arch-duke *Albert of Austria*, then Governor of the *Netherlands*, came to its Relief with a great Army; whence ensued a notable Battle, fought on the adjoining Sand-hills, wherein Prince *Maurice* obtained a very signal Victory, and the Arch-duke was oblig'd to escape by Flight: In which Action the English bore the greatest part.

*Oudenard*, *Aldenarda*, is seated on the River *Scheld*, which divides it into two parts: It is a place of good Wealth by means of the Trade, especially in its own Manufactures, Tapestry and Fine Linen. It is Capital of a Castellany, which contains 33 Villages.



and a place of good Strength, being fortified with a Castle call'd *Pamele*, join'd to the Town by a Bridge over the River, strong Walls and regular Outworks: but is commanded by a high Hill on the side towards *Alost*, which takes away from its otherwise advantageous situation. In 1484. this Town was taken by Stratagem by *Philip of Cleves* Lord of *Ravestein*; surpriz'd by *Blomart* in 1567. besieg'd and taken by the Prince of *Parma* in 1532. and by the French in 1658. but being restored to the *Spaniards* by the *Pyrenean Treaty*, they again took it in 1667. and had it yielded to them at the Peace of *Aix la Chappelle*: But they were oblig'd to restore it by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and it hath ever since been in the Hands of the *Spaniard*. It stands 13 miles from *Ghent* to the South. 17 from *Tournay* to the North, and 14 from *Courtray* to the East.

*Courtray*, or *Cortryck*, *Corteriacum*, *Contracum*, is a very good well-traded Town, seated on the River *Lys*, 14 miles North from *Lille*, and as many East from *Ypres*. The Inhabitants are excellent Artists in Diapering of Linnen: It was several times taken by the French and *Spaniards* before 1667. when the French finally took it, and had it granted to them at the Treaty of *Aix la Chappelle*. It hath a strong Citadel and other Fortifications, which have been much improv'd by the French, and is at present a place of great Importance.

*Alost* or *Aelst* is seated on the River *Dender*, near the Confines of *Hainalt*, 13 miles from *Ghent* to the South-east, as many from *Oudenard* to the East, and makes almost an exact Triangle with those 2 places. It is reckon'd the Capital of Imperial *Flanders*, and of a County formerly subject to its own Lords. It was taken by the *Spaniards* in 1576. and by the Duke of *Anjou* in 1582. after which it came into the Hands of the English, who sold it to the Duke of *Parma*. In 1667. the French took it, and destroy'd its Fortifications before they restor'd it.

The Territories of this Town are large, being besides the County of *Alost*, the County of *Waes* and the four Offices of *Hulst*, *Axtel*, *Bouchout* and *Astemed*, which comprehend above 150 Villages and four Cities.

*Dendermond*, seated on the River *Dender*, where it falls into the *Schelde* (whence the Town hath its name) 6 or 7 miles North from *Alost*, and 12 East from *Ghent*, is a good Town, and considerable for its Manufacture of Fustians and other Stuffs. It is fortified, and was strong enough to resist the Assaults of the French in 1667.

*Ninove* is seated in the Territory of *Alost*, at the

distance of about 8 miles from it to the South, and 12 from *Oudenard* to the East. It is a small Town, and not considerable.

*Deynse* is seated on the *Lys*, 8 miles from *Ghent* to the South-west, and 12 from *Oudenard* to the North West; it is but a small Town, however the Capital of a Territory in the Castellany of *Courtray*, and subject to the *Spaniards*: As is also

*Harlebec* near *Courtray*, a small Town, and the Capital of another small Territory.

*Dixmude* or *Dixmuyde*, is seated on the River *Yperlee*, 20 miles North-west from *Courtray*; and 10 South-east from *Newport*; it is a place of some Trade, and hath an Annual Fair in *July*. It is but small and not very well fortified. Our English Forces took possession of it in 1692. but the French took it soon after, and have since quitted it.

## DUTCH FLANDERS.

*SLUYS* or *SLUCE*, *Sluys*, *Clausula*, another of the Ports of *Flanders*, is seated in the North part of this Province, about 9 or 10 miles beyond *Bruges*, 16 from *Middleburg* in *Zeeland* to the South, 18 from *Ostend* to the North east, and 20 from *Ghent* to the N. W: It belongs to the States of *Holland*, and is one of their strongest Frontiers. It hath the largest Haven of all the five, being capable of receiving 300 Ships of Burthen at a time, and was once a place of great Trade and Wealth. This Town having been first, as *Bruges* and *Antwerp* were afterwards, the chief Mart of these Countries; at present it is but poor, and thinly inhabited, but extremely well fortified, and hath a good Garrison.

*Ostburg* and *Wendrick*, small Towns near *Sluys*, are both guarded by small Forts.

*Philippine* is a pretty strong Fort, seated about 15 miles East from *Sluys*, and 5 or 6 North from the *Sas van Gaunt*.

*Axel*, the Capital of one of the four Offices, is seated about 6 miles East from *Philippine*, and 12 North from *Ghent*. It was surpriz'd by Prince *Maurice*, assisted by our Sir *Philip Sydenh*, in 1586. and is a place of good Strength.

*Hulst*, the Capital of another of the Offices, stands about 6 miles East from *Axel*; and in the midst of the Country of *Waes*. It is a place of good Trade, and tolerably well fortified.

These Towns, together with the *Hout* or *West* *Schelde*, which is an Arm of the Sea; make a secure Frontier toward *Zeeland*:

## CHAP. III.

### The Dutchy of BRABANT, Brabantia.

THIS Country lies in form of an Island encompassed round about with Rivers, having the *Maes* to the East and North, the *Demer* to the South, and the *Scheld* to the West, together with the Sea on the side of *Breda* and *Bergen op Zoom*; that is to say, it is bounded on the North by *Holland*, and part of the Dutchy of *Guelderland*; on the East by part of the same Dutchy, and the Bishoprick of *Liege*; on the South by *Hainalt* and the County of *Namur*; and on the West by *Flanders* and part of

*Zeeland*. Its extent from South to North consists of about 70 miles; from West to East, in its broadest part, near as many. The Air is exceeding temperate, and the Soil no less fruitful; besides the Rivers *Scheld*, *Maes*, *Dile*, *Demer*, *Aa*, *Ischer*, *Domel*, the greater and lesser *Nephre*, and the *Mert*; wherewith it is water'd, many Lakes, Marshes and Pools are found in its Territories: 26 walled and fortified Towns are also comprehended therein, not to mention a great number of others of lesser consequence.



In *Brabant* are compris'd the Marquisate of the Holy Empire, the Capital City whereof is *Antwerp*, the Lordship of *Malines*, the Duchy of *Archie*, the Marquisate of *Bergues*, the Earldom of *Ostun*, the State of *Maelricht*, formerly of *Liege*, and 19 Barones. In fine, the whole Province may be thus divided into four parts, viz.

1. Spanish <i>Brabant</i> , properly so call'd, in which are included these principal Cities and Towns;	<i>Bruxelles</i> , Cap.	<i>A. enionck.</i>
	<i>Louvain.</i>	<i>S. enpenhel.</i>
	<i>Archev.</i>	<i>Moll.</i>
	<i>Nivelle.</i>	<i>Walleim.</i>
	<i>Villemont.</i>	<i>Waire.</i>
	<i>Gembours.</i>	<i>Genap.</i>
	<i>Lire.</i>	<i>Tuernon.</i>
	<i>Dieft.</i>	<i>Afche.</i>
	<i>Vivonde.</i>	<i>Carteron.</i>
	<i>Herenzals.</i>	<i>Perwy.</i>
	<i>Judoigne.</i>	<i>S. m're.</i>
	<i>Sicem.</i>	<i>Till.</i>
	<i>Leuwe.</i>	<i>Revez.</i>
	<i>Lenden.</i>	<i>Heverlee.</i>
	<i>Hammee.</i>	<i>Gnesbeck.</i>
	<i>Santvict.</i>	<i>Lew.</i>
	<i>Hoeftvraet.</i>	<i>Gestvromt.</i>
	<i>Tinnhout.</i>	<i>Liammen.</i>

2. The Marquisate of the Holy Empire, } *Antwerp.*

3. The Lordship of *Malines*, in which are, } *Malines*, Archbishop  
} *Hof.*

4. Dutch <i>Brabant</i> , in which are,	<i>Beirre Duc.</i>	<i>Lins.</i>
	<i>Breda.</i>	<i>Maghem.</i>
	<i>Bergen op Zoom.</i>	<i>Steenbergen.</i>
	<i>Grave.</i>	<i>Sevenbergen.</i>
	<i>Ravenstein.</i>	<i>Crick.</i>
	<i>Maelricht.</i>	<i>Oirsel.</i>
	<i>Hemont.</i>	<i>Oosterwick.</i>
	<i>S. Crier.</i>	<i>Eersel.</i>
The County of <i>Horne</i> ,	<i>Eydenhoven.</i>	<i>Oudenles.</i>
		<i>Rosendal.</i>

*Horne*, } *Horne.*  
} *Wiert.*

**BRUSSELS** or **BRUXELS** is the Capital City not only of *Brabant* but of all the Spanish Netherlands; the place of Residence of the Dukes of *Burgundy* anciently, and now of the Governor of the Spanish Netherlands. It is the richest and most populous City of these Countries, and shou' not so large as *Gant* and *Louvain*. is however much more considerable. It is situated in a most pleasant Country on the Banks of the small River *Sinne*, which is join'd to the *Sche* by a Channel six leagues in length, cut with great Labour and the Expence of 500 thousand Crowns by *Charles V.* and his Son *Philip*, and finish'd in 1560. by which the Commerce of the Inhabitants with several places, especially *Antwerp*, was much advanc'd.

This City in general is very well built, the Streets large, handfom and convenient, and secured by double Walls of Brick, and a Ditch quite round the Town. The publick Buildings are the Palace, which is seated upon a Hill in the upper Town, and is a magnificent and stately Structure, and so large that

several Crown'd Heads were at one time Lodged and Entertain'd in it, viz *Charles V.* and his Son *Philip* King of *Spain*, *Maximilian* King of *Bohemia*, and his Queen, the Queens of *France* and *Hungary*, and an *African* King. Adjoining to this Palace is a pleasant Park, well stor'd with Deer, also fine Gardens, Water-works, Grotto's and pleasant Walks. The Senate-house, a noble Building with a high Tower, whereon stands a large Statue of *S. Michael* in Brass, and the Church of *S. Gudula*, which hath 2 Towers of five hundred Steps high. Several other of the Buildings of *Brussels* deserve particular Descriptions, especially the Gallery which repeats an *Eccho* 15 times, the magnificent Palaces of divers Noble Men, the Royal Stable which holds 120 Horses, together with the Hospitals and Religious Houses; but for these the Reader must consult *Blaeu*, *Guicciardin*, &c. being too long to be inserted here. The private Citizens Houses are very fine, and are particularly pleasant by means of the Gardens they are almost all furnished with, which they are extravagantly curious in Cultivating. Flowers being excessively valued here. The whole City is divided into the Upper and Lower, whereof the latter is the more pleasant, and adorn'd with artificial Fountains and Canals, with many fair Bridges. The Residence of the Court, and the pleasantness of the place, makes almost all the Gentry of these Countries dwell here, which very much encreases the Trade of the Town. Here also is kept the Court of Chancery for *Brabant*, the Assembly of the States of these Provinces, and the Treasury for War. *Brussels* is distant 64 miles from *Neport* and 28 from *Ghent* to the East, 55 from the River *Maes* to the West, 25 miles from *Antwerp* to the South, and as many from the River *Sambre* to the North. A little way from *Brussels* to the S. begins the pleasant Wood of *Soignies*, which extends very far.

*Nivelle*, about 12 or 14 miles South from *Brussels*, is a good wall'd Town, formerly well fortified, and enjoys great Privileges: Great quantities of very fine Linen Cloth is made here; the Church of *Gertrude* is a fair Building, and the Convent of 42 Nuns, all of noble Extraction, is considerable.

*Vilvorden*, seated upon the River *Sinne* about 6 miles North from *Brussels*, is a wall'd Town, and by its situation reasonably strong: Here is an old Castle, wherein formerly Prisoners of Quality were kept, and also the Records of greatest concern belonging to the Duchy of *Brabant*.

*Senef*, a small Village, 2 miles South of *Nivelle*, and near the Borders of *Hainault*, not at all considerable, but for a memorable Battle fought there in the month of *August*, 1674. between the Confederate Forces commanded by the Prince of *Orange*, his present Majesty of *Great Britain*, and the French commanded by the Prince of *Conde*.

**LOUVAIN** or **LOEVEN**, *Louvanium*, is a City of a very large Extent, its Walls being 6 miles in compass, but include many Meadows, Corn-fields, Vine-yards and Gardens, besides the Houses of the Inhabitants. It is seated in a pleasant Country, upon the Banks of the River *Dyle*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Brussels* to the East, and 15 from *Mecilin* forming a Triangel with those two Cities; as also 26 miles South from *Antwerp*, and 24 North from *Namur*. The private Buildings here are but ordinary. The publick ones are, The Stadt-house or Guild-hall, which is a very handfom stately Pile, and The Castle, which is seated on a high Hill, in the midst of Vine yards and Gardens, and in a very wholsom Air.



which, together with the noble Prospect it affords, make it almost pleasant Seat, and therefore heretofore frequently made the place of Residence of the Dukes and their Children, and particularly the Emperor Charles V. was brought up here. These, as also the Churches, Religious Houses and Hospitals, are worth a Stranger's View. But that which *Louvain* is chiefly noted for, is the University, which was founded, as some say, in the year, 926. but not confirm'd till 1425. when *John IV.* Duke of *Brabant*, endowed it. At present it is in a very flourishing State, and *Golnitz* says, exceeds *Cologne* for number of Students and neatness of Building: It hath 45 Colleges and a vast number of Students, over whom the Rector is chief Governor, and hath great Honour and Respect paid him, even by the highest Magistrate of the Town. In this City are 11 Market-houses, 4 publick Fountains, 12 principal Streets, and above 100 small ones. The Walls are strongly built, and upon 'em are several Towers, whereof one is very fine, and was built by the Citizens in 1364. who design'd six more, but by reason of the great Expence were deterr'd; wherefore this hath got the name of *Verloren Kest*, or Lost Expence. The Weaving Trade was formerly very great in this City, insomuch, that about the year, 1530. there are said to have been 4000 Weaver's Shops, and in each 30 or 40 Men at Work. And of the exceeding populousness of this place, *Lipsius* gives us a notable Instance, *viz.* 'That when the Bell rung at 11 a Clock at Noon for the the Workmen to leave off, the Women in great haste snatch'd their Children out of the Street, lest they should be bore down by the great Crowd. But at present the Trade is not very considerable, some Manufactures of Linnens and Stuffs is the chief of it; which, together with the Entertainment of the Students, afford the Inhabitants a good Support.

*Arfchot*, seated on the River *Demer*, 10 miles North from *Louvain*, is a good large wall'd Town, dignified with the Title of a Dukedom by the Emperor Charles V. and hath a small Territory depending on it.

*Sichem* stands about 4 miles from *Arfchot* to the East: It is a small wall'd Town, but not very strong; however, made a notable Resistance when attack'd by the Prince of *Parma* in the time of the Low-Country War.

*Dieft* or *Dieftheim*, is a large neat Town, and of good Trade for several Manufactures, especially of Cloth, stands on the River *Demer*, 3 miles from *Sichem* to the East. It giveth the Title of a Barrony to the Prince of *Orange*, and hath a large Territory its dependant. It is also wall'd and reasonably strong. As is also

*Halem*, seated on the River *Feife*, hardly 3 miles East from *Dieft*, which tho' a small Town enjoys large Privileges granted to it at several times.

*Leue*, stands about 6 miles South from *Halem* upon the River *Geet*; is a small Town, but being near the Borders of *Liege* it is well fortified: It enjoys large Privileges, and the Inhabitants make great profit by a sort of Beer they brew, which is esteem'd and much bought by the neighbouring Towns. Here is a great Priory of the Order of *S. Austlin*, whose Prior is one of the Noblemen of the Province.

*Tienen* or *Tilmont*, is seated on the River *Geet*, 6 miles West from *Leue*, and 8 East from *Louvain*, and was formerly a very large and well-traded City enjoying great Dignity and Privileges; but having ruin'd by the Wars, was much decay'd before the

French destroy'd it in 1675. so that at present it is not considerable.

*Landen*, though small, is reckoned among the ancientest Towns of the Province; it is distant about 3 miles from *Tienen* to the East, and as many from *Leue* to the South. Near this Town a Battle was fought on the 29th of July, 1693. between the Confederate Forces under the Command of his Majesty of Great Britain, and the French commanded by the Marshal de *Luxemburgh*.

*Hannuye*, a small wall'd Town, the Capital of a *Mayorie* or small Jurisdiction, is seated in a pleasant and rich Country, 5 miles South from *Landen*.

*Judoigne* or *Geldenake*, a wall'd Town, larger then *Hannuye*, and the Capital of a *Mayorie* also, stands upon the River *Geet*, in a very pleasant Country, 7 miles West from *Hannuye*, and about 14 South-east from *Louvain*, and hath an old Castle, wherein some of the *Brabantine* Princes have been nurs'd.

*Gemblours* or *Gillu*, is a good wall'd Town, the Capital of a County, and seated on a steep Hill, environ'd with Precipices, near the small River *Lorn*, which 6 miles below falls into the *Sambre*, and is distant 20 miles from *Hannuye* to the East, and 15 from *Nivelle* to the West. Here is a famous Monastery of *Benedictines*, whose Abbot is Lord of the Town. Near this place was fought a notable Battle, in the year 1578. between the King of Spain's Army and that of the States General, wherein the former obtain'd a very advantageous Victory.

*ANTWERP*, *Antwerpia*, *Andoverpium*, in *Flemish* *Antwerpen*, in *High-Dutch* *Antort*, in *French* *Anvers*, is advantageously situated on the Banks of the *Schelde*, at the distance of about 60 miles from the Ocean, 26 from *Bruxels* to the North, 26 from *Gant* to the East, and about 30 from *Flackeren*, one of the Islands of *Zeeland*, to the South. Its Name (to omit the Fabulous Stories of some Authors) is derived from *Werre* a Bank or Wharf, as seated *aen bet Werre*, on the Bank of the River. It is the Capital of the Marquitate of the *Holy Empire*, the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Mechlin*, and a very large, rich and well fortified City, enclosing within its compass 200 Streets, 22 publick Places, a great number of fair Houses, and many stately Churches. Among these the Cathedral, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is more especially remarkable: It is in length above 500 foot, and 246 in breadth; within this noble Fabrick are contain'd 66 Chappels, enrich'd with Marble Columns and Statues, all different and adorn'd with most curious Paintings, as is also the Body of the Church, into which the Entry is through three large Doors of Marble gilt. The Steeple is made very beautiful by its curious Carvings: In it hang 6 or 8 very large Bells, the biggest whereof hath the name of *Charles*, from the Emperor; these, together with near 30 more, make the most melodious Chimes in the World: the Tower is reckon'd 425 foot high, besides the Cross at top, of 16 more. The Jesuits Church is extremely magnificent, being paved with Marble, and the Roofs, (which are curiously painted) supported with 56 Pillars of the same, and the Walls all lined with rich Stone, so that nothing is to be seen in the inside but Marble, Jasper, Porphyry and Gold, or excellent Paintings drawn by the accurate Hand of the famous *Rubins*. In this City are also remarkable, the *Stadthuyse* or Senate-house, which having been destroy'd by Fire, was magnificently rebuilt about the year 1576. and hath 4 several rows of Apartments: The House of the *Oefftlinge*, or Merchants of the *Baltick* Sea: The Exchange



Exchange, which is a noble Building, 180 foot long and 140 broad, with covered Walks all round, the Roof whereof is supported by 43 Marble-pillars: And the Citadel or Castle, which is a very strong and regular Fortification, built by the Duke of Aca, in 1507. It is a Pentagon, or hath five Battions, together with Ravelines and other Out-works, and is reckon'd among the best Fortifications of Europe.

The River *Scheldt* being found a convenient Haven, was much resorted to by Merchant ships from all Nations, and therefore upon the Disturbances and Wars in Flanders, the Trade of *Bruges* and other places thereabouts removed to *Antwerp*, which increased to that degree, that in its most flourishing State (about the years 1556. to 69) there were often seen to lye in the River 2500 Ships together, and 3 or 400 Vessels have frequently come up in one Tide; also 200 Waggon's came in every day, laden with Passengers from the neighbouring Countries, and near 1000 every Week with *German's*, *French* and other Foreigners; and 10000 Country Carts were continually employed in carrying Goods to and from the City. By this means the number of the Houses and Inhabitants grew exceeding great. *Guiccardin* tells us, That *Antwerp* contain'd 13500 Houses, and the number of the People was reckon'd no less than 200000. But this Grandeur quickly declin'd, and is now extremely diminished; for the Wars reaching this place also, *Antwerp* was Sack'd, and 700 of its Inhabitants kill'd by the mutinous *Spaniards* in the year 1576. and afterwards taken by the Prince of *Parma*. After a remarkable Siege of no less than 12 Months durance. These Calamities, together with the growing power of the United *Netherlands*, who by the possession of *Zeeland*, were able to stop the Passage of the *Schelde*, and oblige the Ships to come into their Ports, did quite break the Trade of *Antwerp*; which removing to *London* and *Amsterdam*, hath left this City empty of Inhabitants; and though it be still as populous and rich as many others in the *Netherlands*, it is by no means comparable to what it has been. The Houses are all of Brick and uniform, and the Streets large and neat, many particular Houses very stately, and the publick Buildings magnificent. The City is built in form of a Bow on the East side of the *Schelde*, which is near 400 yards broad, and 22 foot deep at the lowest Tide, so that Vessels of the greatest Burden can come up and unlade upon the Keyes, which lye all a long before 8 of the 13 Gates. From the River there are 8 Canals that run through the Town, which are deep enough for Vessels of good Burden to come up; and over these Canals there are 74 Bridges. In fine, *Antwerp* is so beautiful a place, that being compar'd to *Florence*, it hath had the Preference by those that have seen both.

About 10 miles from *Antwerp* to the North, and as many from *Bergen op Zoom*, stands the strong Fortrets of *Soubise*.

**MECHLIN**, or *Malines*, *Mechlinia* seated on the River *Diie*, is the Metropolis of the Lordship of the same name, reckon'd one of the XVII Provinces, though of but small extent, being not above 3 Leagues from West to East, and one and an half from South to North. It is the Seat of an Archbishop, whom Pope *Paul IV.* establish'd there, A. D. 1559. and dignified with the Title of *Primate* of the *Low Countries*. The Grand Royal Council instituted by *Charles Duke of Burgundy* in 1473. is held here, as is also the Sovereign Court of all the *Spanish Netherlands*, establish'd in the year 1502. The City stands in the midst of the Province of *Brabant*, between *Antwerp*,

*Bruxels* and *Lovain*, almost at the equal distance of 13 miles from each of them. It was formerly subject to the Dominion of its proper Lords, until the year 1336. when it became Free. Afterward it fell into the possession of the House of *Burgundy*, and at length cicheated to that of *Austria*, in 1477. The Inhabitants were freed from paying Taxes, for the signal Services they performed to *Charles the Hardy*, Earl of *Flanders*, at the Siege of *Nuis* on the *Rhine*. It is a large City and very well built, and is even so neat as to have obtained the Epithete of *Fair*. It is also a strong Place, having, besides the Fortifications a natural Security by the flatness of the Country round about, which by that means is easily laid under Water. The Trade of this Town is pretty considerable, consisting in Linnen, Lace, Tanning, Casting great Guns, &c. The Tide flows up beyond the Town, by which means Boats come up from *Antwerp*, and the Commodities of this City are Exported. Weavers were formerly very numerous here, but upon a Riot by them committed, were deprived of their Privileges, by which the Trade decayed. The Cathedral Church of *S. Rumbald* is a beautiful Building, and hath a very high Tower; besides which, here are 7 other Churches belonging to the 7 Parishes that the City is divided into. The Monastery of the *Franciscans* is a curious and stately Building; and the Nunnery of *S. Clara* is very fine. A Magazine is kept here that was formerly exceeding well furnish'd. Some particular Companies of the Traders of this City enjoy great Privileges, especially the Tanners, who are very numerous. Other things of *Mechlin* may deserve a Traveller's Observation, whereof we cannot spare room for a particular Description.

*Lire*, or *Liere*, is a neat and pleasant Town, seated on the River *Nethe*, 7 or 8 miles from *Mechlin* to the North, and 20 from *Antwerp* to the South-east; it is a good large place, and strongly fortified. The Collegiate Church of *S. Gummanus*, is a magnificent Building, and the Market-place is remarkable for its largeness, and the curious Buildings that surround the Religious Houses, especially that of the *Carthusians*, are very fine. This Town is Inhabited by People of Quality, and rich Merchants retired from Business.

*Herentals* stands 10 miles East from *Lire* on the River *Nethe* also; it is a wall'd Town, and the Capital of a Mayorie.

## DUTCH BRABANT.

**BOIS-LE-DUC**, or **BOLDUC**, *Boscum Ducis*, aut *Sylvia Ducis*, call'd by the Inhabitants, *S. Hertogenosch*, and by abbreviation, the *Bosch*, is the Capital City of the Dutch *Brabant*, and the Seat of its supreme Court of Justice, standing on the Banks of the River *Dromele*, which having there receiv'd into its Chanel the Waters of the *Aade*, and then those of the *Diese*, falls into the *Maes* about 2 Leagues from thence, at the Place where the Island of *Bomel* is form'd. It is distant only 5 miles from the River *Maes*, or *Mese*, as also from the Confines of *Holland* and *Guelderland*, near 30 miles from *Antwerp* to the North-east, 54 miles from *Maastricht* to the North, about 40 from the River *Rhine*, and 20 from the *Grave* to the W. The Name thereof was taken from a certain Wood, where the Dukes of *Brabant* were wont heretofore to divert themselves by Hunting; which being cut down by Duke *Henry* to facilitate



facilitate the March of his Army against the *Guelderlanders*, in the year 1172. this City was built in its place by Duke *Geffry*, and wall'd round by *Henry* his Son, in 1196. Pope *Paul IV.* erected an Episcopal See, and *Franciscus Sonnius* was the first Bishop; but when *Bois-le-duc* was taken by the *Hollanders* in 1629. these Prelates were oblig'd to remove their Station to *G'dorp*. It is a good large Town and well Fortified, having strong Walls, wherein are 7 large Bastions, a deep Ditch, with Ravelins, Counterscarp and other excellent Fortifications, and is seated upon a Hill amidst Marthes, which are easily laid under Water, and thereby the Town made Inaccessibile, but by artificial Causeys, which too are all commanded by Forts, so that 'tis in a manner Impregnable. This being an important Fronteir, the *Hollanders* take care always to keep a good Garison in it. It is a place of pretty good Trade for its Manufacters of Woollen and Linen Cloth, Knives, and other Steel-ware, &c. The Church of *S. John* which was the Cathedral, is a sumptuous Building. The Market-place, seated at the meeting of 10 Streets, the chief of the Town, is surrounded with very good Buildings: several Canals run through the Town, which bring in Vessels of good Burthen; over these are 51 Stone-Bridges, besides others of Wood. In the defection of the *Netherlands*, the *Bisch* took part with the Confederates, and in 1579. embrac'd the Union of *Utrecht*, but was afterwards Taken by the Prince of *Parma*, and remained under the *Spaniard* till 1629. when the Prince of *Orange* Re-took it, after a very difficult Siege. In 1672 it was invested by the *French*, but they marched off the next Month without Taking it.

*BREDA*, *Breda*, stands in a marshy Ground (which is often overflow'd) on the banks of the River *Merch*, in *Dutch Brabant*, at the distance of 30 miles from *Antwerp* to the N. 8 South from *Gertruydenburg*. 24 from *Bois-le-duc* to the West, and 22 from *Bergen-op-zoom* to the East. It is considerably large, populous and well-built, and is one of the strongest Places of the *Low Countries*. It is dignified with the Title of a Barony, comprehending 17 Villages under its Jurisdiction, which in the year 1212 belonged to *Geffry* Lord of *Bergues*, but descended to the House of *Nassau*, in 1404. by the Marriage of *Mary*, the Daughter and Heir of *Philip* Lord of *Leck* and Baron of *Breda*, with *Egbert* Earl of *Nassau*, in whose Descendants it hath ever since continued, except in the time that the *Spaniards* were Masters of it, viz. from 1581. when it was Surpriz'd by the help of the *Roman* Catholicks in the Town, to the year 1590. when it was regain'd by a notable Stratagem; for a Boat seemingly laden with Turf for Fuel, but indeed with Armed Men, passed into the Castle undiscover'd, and forced the Garison to surrender. And again, from 1625. when the Marquess *Spinola* took it, after a long Siege and Blockade, till 1637. when *Frederick* Prince of *Orange* recover'd it. The Soil of the adjacent Country is very fertile in Corn, Pasture and Copses. An Academy for Education of Youth is held here under 4 Professors, establish'd by Prince *Frederick* abovemention'd. The Prince of *Orange* hath a Palace and Castle in the Town, where a Treaty was held, and a Peace concluded between King *Charles II.* and the States General, *A. D.* 1667.

*Bergen-op-zoom*, *Berga ad Zomam*, aut *Bercizoma*; by *Guicciardin* said to have its name from the little River running by it, which he names *Zoom*, but *Blaeu* contradicts, and says, the River hath no such name, except from the Town; and that the Town is call'd *Bergen* from the Hill on which it stands, and *op-zoom*, on the Seam, because seated on the edge of

the Province. It is conveniently situated between *Brabant*, *Flanders*, *Holland* and *Zealand*, within half a League of a Branch of the *Ooster Schelde*, 18 miles from *Antwerp* to the North, 20 from *Breda* to the West, and as many from *Middleburg* to the East. It had the Title of a Marquisate given by the Emperor *Charles V.* and was formerly a Place of good Trade, 'till eclips'd by *Antwerp*: For convenience of its Trade a Canal was cut through to the *Hert*, or *Wester Schelde*. The Country about it is very low and marshy, by which the Town is much secured, as well as by very strong and well contriv'd Fortifications, which the *Dutch* have built round it, with Forts upon the Channel, and other convenient places. The Buildings are fair, the Church of *S. Lambert* and the Marquess's Palace especially. Here are 3 spacious Market-places, and a large Hospital for the Sick, which was formerly a Nunnery. This Town was subject to its own Lords, from 1212. till 1567. when it was delivered into the hands of the *Hollanders*; from whom the Prince of *Parma* endeavour'd to recover it in 1588. But they defended themselves so courageously, that he was forced to raise the Siege. Again, in 1622. *Spinola* Besieg'd it, but had no better Fortune; for after 70 nor 80 days furiously attacking it, he was glad to leave it, upon the approach of the Dutch Forces under Prince *Maurice*.

*Grave*, *Gravia*, termed *Gracff* by the Inhabitants, is situated on the South-side of the *Maes*, the Waters whereof fill the large Trenches that environ the Bulworks, in a Plain on the Frontiers of *Guelderland*, at the distance of 18 miles from *Bois-le-duc* to the East, 7 from *Nimwegen* to the South, and about 50 from *Maastricht* to the North. It is a small Town, but very neat and pleasant, and esteem'd the strongest and easiest to be defended of any in the *Netherlands*. It is the Capital of the small Earldom of *Cuvick*, which belongs to the Prince of *Orange*, as doth the Town it self. The Country about it is Meadow, and affords Pasture to a good Body of Horle that are always kept here: The Town is exceeding well fortified with Ravelins, Counterscarp, Palisado, and a very strong Horn-work, and besides, secured by the River on one side, and a Morass on another. It was taken in 1586 by the Prince of *Parma*, and recover'd in 1602 by Prince *Maurice*. In 1672 the *French* took it, and upon their being forced to quit *Holland*, had made this their grand Magazine, and therefore defended it for a long time when it was besieg'd by the Prince of *Orange* his present Majesty, to whom, however, they were obliged to Surrender it, with all the Artillery and Ammunition, on the 28th of *September*, 1674.

These four Towns make a very strong Frontier on this side to the Dominions of the States General.

*Ravenstein*, a neat but not large Town, is seated on the River *Maes*, about 5 or 6 miles below the *Grave*, and 16 North-east from the *Bisch*; it is defended by a strong Castle, and hath a Jurisdiction of 4 miles broad, and extended about 12 miles South from the *Maes*, towards

*Helmont*, the Capital of the Country call'd *Peelland*: It is a good walled Town, seated on the little River *Aa*, that falls into the *Maes* a little beyond the *Bosch*, and is distant 17 miles from the *Grave* to the South.

*Eindhoven*, a good wall'd Town also and the Capital of the Country call'd *Kempen Land*, stands upon the River *Dommel*, 10 miles West from *Helmont*, and 14 South from the *Bisch*.

*Maastricht*, tho' seated in the middle almost of the Bishoprick of *Liege*, is reckon'd part of this Province of *Brabant*, because formerly that Duke had one part,



part, as the Bishop of *Liege* had the other part of the Jurisdiction of it; but since 1633. it hath belonged to the States General. It stands on the River *Maes*, at a Place where was always a Ferry or Passage, which the word *Treucht* in *Dutch* signifies; it is call'd in Latin, *Trajectum ad Mosam* & *Trajectus inferior*, to distinguish it from *Urrecht*. It stands on the West-side of the River, but hath a fair Suburb nam'd the *Wick*, on the other side, which is join'd to the City by a beautiful Stone-bridge of 9 Arches. The old Buildings are but ordinary; but those built since the *Hollanders* have had the Town are of Brick and very fair, particularly the Stadt house: The Streets are large, and Houses cover'd with Slate. Here are 3 *Dutch* Churches, and one for the *English* and *French*; that of *S. Servatius* was formerly a Collegiate, and had the honour to have the Duke of *Brabant* always one of its Canons: It was also a Cathedral, built in honour of that Saint, who planted the Christian Faith here, was the first Bishop, and died A. C. 395. from whom a Succession of 20 Bishops ruled in this City; but upon the Martyrdom of *S. Lambert*, the See was translated to *Liege* in the year 713. The City is large, being reckon'd 4 *English* miles in circuit, but not very populous. It is very strongly fortified, having besides a good Wall and Trench, many Out-works of modern Form, well contriv'd to oppose the Advantages Besiegers may have by the nature of the Earth, convenient for Mines and Trenches, and by a Hill a little distant, that would command the Town if the Bastion to the South-east were not built very high. At the top of that Hill stands an old Castle, and in the Bowels of it is a Quarry of Stone, of which vast quantities are transported to other Countries. This City descended with *Brabant* to the King of *Spain*, but in the War-time taking

part with the States, it was Besieged by the Prince of *Parma* in 1579. and though they made a very vigorous defence, were forced to submit, and continued under the *Spaniard* till 1633. when the Prince of *Orange* besieged and took it; and in the succeeding Peace of *Munster*, it was yielded to the *Hollanders*. In 1672. the *French* besieged and took it: They sat down before it on the 11th of *June*, the King of *France* himself, with the Dukes of *Orleans* and *Montmouth*, commanding the large Army that attacked it with great Fury, till the end of that Month; at which time the Burghers mutinying, and the Garrison being much weakened, the Governor was forced to Capitulate; and on the 2d of *July* the Town was surrendered, and continued under the *French* till by the Peace of *Nimeguen* it was restored to the States General, who still possess it.

On the South-east of *Dutch Brabant* lyes the County of *Horn*, which is a Territory of about 20 miles extent, bounded on the East by the River *Maes*, on the North west by *Peel-land* in *Brabant*, and on the South-west by the Bishoprick of *Liege*: It was formerly subject to its own Earls of the Family of *Montmorency*, of whom *Philip* and *Florent* were eminent for their Zeal in opposing the Tyranny of the Duke d' *Alva*, and assisting the Prince of *Orange* in asserting the Liberty of their Country; but had both the misfortune to lose their Lives, by the practices of d' *Alva*.

*Horn*, that gives Name to the County, is a small Town with a Castle, seated near the *Maes*, 24 miles South-east from *Helmont*, 25 North from *Maeſtricht*, and 4 or 5 West from *Ruremond*.

*Weert*, the Chief Town, stands 12 miles West from *Horn*, 16 South from *Helmont*, and 25 North from *Maeſtricht*.

## CHAP. IV.

### The County or Earldom of HAINAULT, Hannonia.

THIS Province derives its name from the River, *Haine*, which passeth through the midst of it called also *Haingow* and *Henegow* by the  *Germans*, and is bounded on the North by *Brabant*, and part of *Flanders*, on the South by *Cambresis*, *Picardy* and *Champagne*, on the East by part of *Brabant* and the County of *Namur*, and on the West by the River *Schelde*, that separates it from *Artois* and part of *Flanders*. It is extended from North to South about 50 miles, and about the same from East to West. The Air is exceeding temperate and healthful, and the Soil fertile and water'd with the *Scheld*, *Sambre*, *Haine*, *Dender*, and divers other Rivers. Here are also found many Lakes and Ponds. Woods, some Mines of Iron and Lead, and Quarries of Marble and Touchstone.

Within this Province are comprisd 24 Wall'd Towns, 950 Burroughs or Villages, and several Castles; also 3 Principalities, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerages, 22 Barronies, and 25 Abbies, not to mention divers hereditary Offices appertaining to that Prince's Court, viz. Those of a Marshal, Seneschal, grand Hunter, Chamberlain, &c. The *French* at present possess the greater part of *Hainault*, and the rest remains under the Dominion of the *Spaniards*, as it is shewn in the ensuing Table.

Appertaining to the French.	{	<i>Valenciennes,</i>	}	{	<i>le Quesnoy,</i>
		<i>Bouchain,</i>			<i>Avesnes,</i>
		<i>Conde,</i>			<i>Landrecy,</i>
		<i>Bavay,</i>			<i>Philipville,</i>
		<i>Maubeuge,</i>			<i>Marienburg.</i>
To the Spaniards.	{	<i>Mons, Capit.</i>	}	{	<i>Halle,</i>
		<i>Aeth,</i>			<i>Lessines,</i>
		<i>Brain le Comte,</i>			<i>Roeles,</i>
		<i>S. Ghillain,</i>			<i>Soigny,</i>
		<i>Enguien,</i>			<i>Beaumont, &amp;c.</i>
		<i>Binche,</i>			

*Valentinnes, Valenciennæ, aut Valencennæ*, is situated on the Confines of the Country of *Ostrevant*, on the River *Scheld*, which there receives the *Rouel* that divides it into two parts, and by several Channels passes through most of its Streets; distant 15 miles from *Tournay* to the South, and lying also in the middle between *Mons* to the West, and *Cambrai* to the North-east. It was founded (as is generally believ'd) by the Roman Emperor *Valentinian*, and is at present a very large, fair and rich Town

strongly,



strongly Fortified. The Church of our Lady is an ancient but stately Building, having Pillars of Marble and Porphyry to support its Arches of Stone. The Church of *S. Peter* is very curiously Carved, as is also the Front of the Town-house adjoining. The Hospital for the maintaining and educating of poor Orphans, is well endow'd. Over the *Scheld* are built 10 Bridges, on which stand many fair and large Houses. The Trade of the Town consists in Linnen-Cloth, Mohairs and Tabbies, to which is now added the Staple for French Wines. It was Besieged by the French King in the year, 1677. and taken by Storm; but upon the Inhabitants agreeing to pay 400 thousand Crowns for the building of a Citadel, it escaped being Sack'd. It was granted to the French at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and hath been ever since possessed by them.

*Bouchain*, a small but strong Town, seated on the River *Scheld*, 10 miles above *Valenciennes*, and near as many from *Cambray* to the North; is of service for the Communication of those two Places in time of War, and therefore Besieg'd by the French in 1676. to whom it was surrender'd after one Assault, tho' an Army was marching to its Relief.

*Quesnoy*, tho' a small Town, hath a good Trade for its Manufacture of Linnens and Stuffs, and is reasonably well fortified. It stands about 15 miles from *Bouchain* to the East.

*Landrecy* is a very strong Town, seated on the *Sambre*, near the Borders of *Cambray*, and not above 6 miles from the Frontiers of *Picardy*, about 10 from *Quesnoy*, and 20 from *Valenciennes* to the South-East. It was formerly subject to the Duke of *Areschot*, under whom it held out against a long and furious Siege by the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1543. and the year following was surrender'd to him, together with *Avesnes*, a small Town 8 or 9 miles East from *Landrecy*. All these 3 were taken by the French and granted to them by the *Pyrenean Peace* in 1659.

*Maubeuge* stands upon the *Sambre*, in the mid-way between *Avesnes* and *Mons*, about 12 m. from each and is a Place of good Trade for Wollen Cloth.

*Bavay*, call'd *Bavay Wallon*, to distinguish it from *Bavais* in *Picardy*, stands 8 miles West from *Maubeuge*, and 6 North-east from *Quesnoy*. It is thought by some to have been formerly a great City, nam'd *Belgium*, from whence the Country had its Name, but is at present but a small Place. These were both granted to the French by the *Nimeguen Treaty*.

*Conde*, or *Condet*, a small Town with a Castle, stands upon the *Schelde*, about 15 miles North-west from *Bavay*.

*Marienburg*, founded by *Mary of Austria*, Queen of *Hungary*, and Governess of the *Low Countries*, in 1542. and fortified with a very strong Wall and good Out-works, stands on the Borders of the Bishoprick of *Leige*, about 6 miles from the River *Maes* to the West, 10 from the Frontiers of *Picardy* to the North, and 30 from *Landrecies* to the East.

*Philipville* stands about 4 miles North from *Marienburg*, and is reckon'd part of the Province of *Hainault*. It was built soon after *Marienburg*, and nam'd from *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, who fortified it with five Royal Bastions, and other strong Works, these two making a Frontier against *France* on that side; but they have been both taken by that King, and granted to him by the *Pyrenean Treaty*.

### Spanish HAINAULT.

*MONS*, *Montel*, and *Montes Hanoniae*, the Capital City of *Hainault*, call'd *Berghen* in *Flemish*, is seated

on an Hill of easie Ascent, near the Banks of the River *Trull*, which a little below falls into the *Haine*, almost in the midst between *Namur* to the East, and *Doway* to the West, at the distance of 35 miles from both, as also 16 from *Valenciennes* to the North-east, 26 from *Bruxels* to the South-west, and 20 from *Tournay* to the South-east. It is a large City and well fortified, with a Stone-Wall, firm Ramparts, 3 large Trenches and an old Castle. The Buildings are beautiful, the Streets large, and the Market-place spacious: The publick Edifices are also very magnificent, and among others the Palace wherein is convened the general Council of the Province; the Religious Houses, of which the College of Canonesses, Founded by *S. Gualtrude* Princess of *Lorrain*, is more especially remarkable; the whole Society consists only of Ladies of great Quality and high Birth, who are obliged to assist at Mass in the Morning, cloath'd in the Habit of Nuns, but have liberty to wear sumptuous Apparel in the Afternoon, and even to spend the rest of the day in Dancing, and Singing, and other Exercises of a free Conversation; and are also permitted to abandon the Abby, or to marry, whensoever they please. The Earls of *Hainault* had formerly the Title of Earls of *Mons*, and with the possession of the County receiv'd the Investiture of the Dignity of an Abbot, and other Perquisites holden in Fee of the Church, from the hands of the Lady Abbess of the said College. *Mons* is a Place of good Trade for divers Commodities, especially Wollen Stuffs, whereof they make great quantities. It was surpriz'd in 1572. by Count *Lewis of Nassaw* by a Stratagem; for 12 Soldiers in Habit of Merchants, obtaining leave to have the Gates opened for them earlier than ordinary, kill'd the Porter, and let in the Count with the Soldiers he brought for that purpose, who took possession of the Town without Opposition: But the same year the Duke d' *Alva* Besieg'd and recover'd it; from which time it quietly remained under the *Spaniard*, till 1678. that the French invested and had much distressed it; when the Prince of *Orange*, his present Majesty, came to its Relief, and gain'd a signal Victory over the Duke of *Luxemburg*, upon which the Peace was immediately concluded. In the late War, viz. the 8th of *April* 1691. the French took this Town, but it was restored at the Peace.

*Aeth*, a small Town seated on the River *Dender*, 14 miles North from *Mons*, as many South from *Oudenara*, and about 20 South-west from *Brussels*, is a Place of good Trade for Linnen, and by reason of its situation near the Borders of these three Provinces of *Hainault*, *Flanders* and *Brabant*, hath been at several times well fortified, especially by the French, after they had taken it in 1667; for being granted to them by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, *Vauban* was set to work, and great Cost was bestow'd in strengthening this most advanc'd Frontier; but they were oblig'd to restore it at the Peace of *Nimeguen*, it was again taken by the French in 1697. but restor'd at the Peace the same Year.

*Lessen*, or *Lessines*, is a small Wall'd Town, seated also on the *Dendre*, about 4 miles North from *Aeth*.

*Engbien*, or *Anguicn*, stands about 8 miles West from *Aeth*, and hath had the Title of a Dutchy.

*Halle* is seated on the very Borders of this Province, within 8 miles South of *Brussels*, and near 20 from *Mons* to the North. It stands in a very pleasant Country, and is water'd by the River *Sieme*. It is not large nor very well built, and is chiefly noted for the famous Chappel of the Virgin *Mary*, whose Statue in it is cover'd with Gold, and is much resorted to by multitudes of Votaries, who annually



make rich Offerings to it. It is Wall'd, but not being strong enough to endure a Siege, was quitted to the *French* in *April*, 1690. but since they left it, it hath been made stronger, and well Garison'd for the security of *Brussels*.

*Braine le Comte*, on the Frontiers of *Brabant*, about 8 miles South from *Halle*;

*Soigny*, about 3 or 4 miles South-west from it; and

*Roeles*, or *Reux*, 4 miles from *Soigny* to the South, are all 3 Wall'd Towns.

On the Borders of *Hainault*, and Frontiers of *Brabant*, about 3 miles North-east from *Soigny*, as many South-west from *Halle*, and about the like distance from *Engbien* to the East, stands the Village of *Steenkirk* upon the Rivulet *Semiegue*; a small place and not at all considerable, but for a Battle fought near it on the 24th of *July*, 1692. between the *Confederates* and the *French*.

*Bincbe*, stands upon a little Branch of the *Haine*,

7 or 8 miles South-east from *Mons*; it was formerly a populous Place, and made a Seat of Pleasure by *Mary Queen of Hungary*, when she was Governess of these Countries, who had a fine Palace here; but it hath suffer'd much by the Wars, particularly in 1544. it was burnt by the *French*: And since that the *French* took it; but finding they must part with it, demolish'd the Fortifications before they surrender'd it, according to the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, in 1668.

*S. Ghislain* stands about 8 miles West from *Mons*, it is also a wall'd Town, but not remarkably strong. As is also

*Beaumont*, which stands 12 miles South from *Bincbe*, and 10 East from *Mabenge*. It is a pleasant Town seated upon a Hill, as its name implies, and was anciently an Earldom belonging to the second Son of the Earl of *Hainault*. It was taken by the *French*, and granted to them by the Truce in 1634. as was also *Chimay*, 14 miles South from it.

## CHAP. V.

### The County of CAMBRESIS, *Cameracensis Ager*.

THIS small Country is bounded on the North and East by the Province of *Hainault*, on the West by that of *Artois*, and on the South by *Picardy*, including about 18 miles from North to South, and 25 from East to West, and is extremely fertile. Here was concluded a Treaty of Peace at *Chateau-Cambresis*, in the year 1559. between *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, and *Henry II.* King of *France*, which was very disadvantageous to the later, 193 considerable places being resign'd up for *S. Quentin*, *Ham* and *Chatelet*; however the present *French* King *Lewis XIV.* hath found means to get Possession of the whole Country, as well as of *Cambrai*, its Capital City; which were granted to him by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

The chief Towns are these, viz. *Cambrai*, Arch-bish. and Cap. *Chateau Cambresis*. *Crovecœur*.

*CAMBRAY*, *Cameracum*, is seated on the River *Scheld*, on the Confines of *Artois*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Doway* to the South, 20 from *Arras* to the East, as many from *Perone* to the North, 15 from *Valenciennes*, and 60 from *Brussels* to the South. It was heretofore an Episcopal See subject to the Archbishop of *Rheims*, but at length erected into a Metropolitan by Pope *Paul IV.* A. D. 1559. It was also some time an Imperial and Free City under the protection of the Count of *Alost*; but being afterward seiz'd by the Emperor *Charles V.* and fortified with two Citadels, it fell into the hands of the *Spaniard*, and was united to the Earldom of *Hainault*. At length it was storm'd by the Forces of the present *French* King, on the 18th day of *April*, 1667. and surrender'd to him by the Articles of the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, in the year ensuing.

## CHAP. VI.

### The Dutchy of LUXEMBURG, *Luxemburgensis Ducatus*.

THIS Province is seated in the Lower *Germany*, and is bounded on the North by part of the Bishoprick of *Liege* and the Dutchy of *Limburg*, on the South by *Lorraine*, on the East by the River *Moselle* and the Archbishoprick of *Triers*, and on the West by the River *Maese*, that parts it from *Champaign* and *Namur*. Its utmost extent from South to North consists of about 70 miles, and from East to West, 60 miles. It is by Geographers divided into two Parts, whereof that to the North call'd *Famernie* is a fertile Soil, yielding store of Corn and some Wine; the other towards *France* and the *Maes*, call'd *Ardennie*, is Wooddy and less Fruitful, but abounds with Venison and Game of all sorts. Here are also some Mountains, in which are found Mines of Iron. The chief Rivers are the *Moselle*, *Else*, *Semay*, and the *Ourte*. In the extent of this Dutchy are contain'd 20 large Wall'd Towns, and about 1200 Vil-

lages. The ancient Earls and Dukes of *Luxemburg* were Princes of great Honour and Interest; of these *Henry II.* obtained the Imperial Dignity; in 1308. *John* his Son enjoy'd the Crown of *Bohemia*; *Charles* the Son of *John* and *Wenceslaus* the Son of *Charles*, were successively Emperors: And finally *Sigismund* was Emperor, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, as well as Duke of *Luxemburg*, about the year 1400. *Elizabeth* the Niece and Successor of *Sigismund*, having no Issue, sold this Dutchy to *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, and so it came to the King of *Spain*, from whom all the Southern part of it has been wrested by the King of *France*, and Retained till the Peace of *Ryswick*, by which he was oblig'd to surrender the wholly Dutchy, and the County of *Chiny*. This Province is observed to have more Gentry and Nobility than any of the rest of these Countries. The chief Cities and Towns in it are,  
*Luxemburg*,



Luxemburg, Cap.	Toix.	Rode Macheren.
Theonville.	La Ferte.	Konings Macheren.
Montmedy.	Astenay.	Sirick.
Damvillers.	Morville.	Mafieres.

Durby.	Vianden.	Neufchatel.
La Roche en Ardenne.	Eichternach.	Virton.
S. Vit.	Bastogne.	

LUXEMBURG, Luciburgum, aut Luxemburgum, is seated partly on a Rocky Hill, which is almost surrounded by the little River *Alfutz*, or *Eise*, and partly on a Plain at the Bottom of the Hill, at the distance of 45 miles from the River *Maes* to the East, 12 from the *Moselle* to the West, 70 South-east from *Namur*, 62 South from *Liege*, 22 West from *Triers*, and about 16 or 17 from the Frontiers of *Lorraine*. It is the old Town that stands in the Plain, which being commanded by the Hill, caused the building the new Town there, in which the Buildings are reasonably fair, and many of the Houses of Stone. It is a very strong Place; for on one side the Hill it's very steep and surrounded by the River, which is a good Defence; and on the other it is Fortified with strong Bastions, Counter-guards, Half-moons, Ravelins and Ditches, besides two cover'd Ways and several Redoubts. Notwithstanding which, the French took it the 4th of June, 1684. after a Siege of 26 days, and had it granted to them, together with its Dependences, in the succeeding Truce concluded the same Year, but was restored to the King of Spain in 1698. in pursuance of the Treaty of *Ryswick*.

*Theonville* or *Diedenboven*, *Theonvilla*, aut *Theonifvilla*, stands on the Western Bank of the River *Moselle*, 15 miles South from *Luxemburg*; it is a good Town, and of old well fortified by the Emperor *Charles* the Great; but the French having taken it in 1558. when it was restored to the Spaniards, they added to its Fortifications six Bulwarks,

four large Horn-works and other Strengths: However, the French found means to take it again, and had it granted to them by the *Pyrenean Treaty*; as was also

*Montmedy*, a good strong fortified Town, seated on a Hill near the River *Cher*, 34 miles from *Theonville* to the West, and about 10 from the River *Maes* to the East.

*Damvillers*, which stands 12 miles South from *Montmedy*, and though a Town of good Strength, was several times Taken by the French, viz. in 1542. 1552. and 1637. and granted to them by the *Pyrenean Treaty*; but afterwards, by that of *Aix la Chapelle*, it was dismantled.

*Arlon*, is seated on the River *Semoy*, 13 miles from *Luxemburg* to the West. It was a neat and handsome Town, but hath suffer'd much in the Wars.

*Neufchatel*, or the New Castle, standing about 14 miles from *Arlon* to the West, was formerly a Place of great Strength and Beauty, but now not so considerable.

*Bastogne*, stands 20 miles North from *Arlon*, and was heretofore a vast Market for Corn and Cattel.

*Eichternach* stands near the Frontiers of *Treves*, and 25 miles East from *Arlon*. It is a small Town and not very considerable.

*Vianden* is seated upon the small River *Ourt*, 14 miles from *Eichternach* to the N. W. It is an ancient Earldom, belonging to the Illustrious Family of *Orange*.

*S. Vit*, 18 miles North from *Vianden*, is a neat handsome Town, giving Title to an Earldom, and enjoying a Jurisdiction over several Villages.

*Roche en Ardenne*, is seated on the River *Ourt*, 26 miles from *S. Vit* to the West, and 12 from *Bastogne* to the North. It is a pretty little Town with the Title of an Earldom also, and hath a Territory of several miles extent.

*Durby* is another small Town, seated on the same River *Ourt*, 10 miles North from *Roche*, and likewise hath the Title of an Earldom.

## CHAP. VII.

### The Earldom of NAMUR, *Namurensis Comitatus*:

THIS County is bounded on the N. by *Brabant*, on the West by *Hainault*, on the S. by part of *Hainault* and of *Luxemburg*, and on the E. by part of *Luxemburg* and the Bishoprick of *Liege*. It is extended from W. to E. for the space of about 30 miles, and from N. to S. about 24 miles. There are found in it divers Mines of Iron and Lead, also many Quarries of Marble, and a lo. of Stone call'd *Houë*, that serves for Fuel. In this Province are reckoned up 6 or 7 considerable Towns, together with 180 Burghs or Villages, and some fair Abbies, viz.

Namur, Bish. Cap.	Bouvines.	Florennes.
Charlemont.	Walcourt.	Charleroy.
Tille-chateau.	Bonaf, Ab.	Mal-Roy.

NAMUR, *Namurcum*, the Capital City of the Province, is seated at the confluence of the *Sambre* and the *Maes*, between 2 small Hills, at the distance of 24 miles from *Louvain* to the South, 30 from

*Bruxels* to the South-east, 30 above *Liege* to the West, 18 from *Huy*, and 35 from *Mons* to the East. Pope *Paul* IV. establish'd therein an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Cambrai*, and the Church of *S. Albin*, was erected into a Cathedral in the year 1569. The Town is beautified with many other stately Churches, Monasteries and publick Edifices built of Stone. The greatest part of the City lies on the North side the *Sambre*, and therein stands the Town-house, the Market-place and several Churches, but the chief Parochial Church stands on the other side, as doth the Castle: A fair Stone Bridge over the *Sambre* joins these 2 parts, and from the latter is a Bridge also of Stone over the *Maes*. The Fortifications are very strong, having, besides the Wall and Ditches, Ravelins and Countercarps well built and contriv'd according to the modern manner; notwithstanding which, the French took it on the 3d of July, 1692. But the Confederates regained it after a long and vigorous Siege, under the Conduct of His Majesty King *William* in the year 1695.



*Bovines* or *Boignes*, *Bovine*, *Boviniacum* aut *Bovinum*, is situated on the West-side of the *Meuse* below *Dinant*, and 10 miles beyond *Namur* to the South. This little Town was encompass'd with Walls in the year 1173. by the Order of *Henry*, surnam'd the Blind, Earl of *Namur*, being a Pass between *Luxemburg* and *Namur*; it suffer'd much by the Wars at several times, and was finally taken by the *French* in 1676. without making the least Resistance.

*Crotoy* or *Crotoynum*, stands on the top of an high Hill, the foot whereof is water'd by the River *Meuse*, being distant 13 miles from *Namur* to the South. It is a strong place, and was fortified with divers regular Works, A. D. 1555. by the Emperor *Charles V.* to whom it was granted by a certain Bishop of *Liege*, and united to the Earldom of *Namur*.

*Wasselt* or *Valencourt*, standing 20 miles South-west from *Namur*, is a small Town, and not considerable, except for the Battle fought near it in the year, 1659. between the *French* and Confederate Armies.

*Crotoy*, *Croto-Régium*, a strong Fortreis is seated on an Hill near the *Sambre* on the Frontiers of *Holl-*

*land*, almost in the midst between *Namur* and *Mons*, at the distance of 14 miles from the first, and 20 from the latter; as also 24 from *Bruxels* to the South. The Town was built A. D. 1666. near a small Village named *Clarnoy*, by the Marquits of *Castel-Rodrigue*, on purpose to hinder the Intodes of the *French* Garrisons betwixt the *Sambre* and the *Meuse*, and was call'd *Clarnoy* in honour of *Charles II.* the present King of *Spain*: However, it was taken by them in the Year ensuing, and resign'd to their King *Louis XIV.* by the Treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, on the 2d day of May, 1668. after which they employ'd great Diligence and Cost in repairing the Fortifications and adding new ones, whereby they made it exceeding strong, but were however oblig'd to restore it to the King of *Spain* at the Conclusion of the Peace of *Nimeguen*; but again in the late War they besieg'd it with a very numerous Army, and after 27 days Resistance the Garrison was fain to surrender on the 1st of *October*; 1693. But it is now restored to the King of *Spain* in pursuance of the Treaty at *R-swick*.

## C H A P. VIII.

### The Dutchy of LIMBURG, Limburgensis Ducatus.

THIS Dutchy hath that of *Fuliers* for its Bounds on the North and East, the Bishoprick of *Liege* on the West, and a small part of *Luxemburg* on the South. It is extended from South to North for the space of 30 miles, and about 25 from West to East. The Country brings forth good store of Wheat and Barly, and other Corn, also very good Pasture and several Medicinal Herbs. Here are also many Mines of Iron and Lead, and Pits of Coal.

The chief Towns are { *Limburg*, Cap.  
                          *Dalem*, belonging to the *Hollanders*.  
                          *Rolduc*.  
                          *Franquemont* or *Valkenberg*.

*LIMBURG*, *Limburgum*, is advantagiously situated on the Frontiers of the Bishoprick of *Liege*, near the Banks of the River *Wesde*, being distant 20 miles from *Liege* to the East, 20 from *Mastricht*, about 45 from the River *Rhine* to the West, and as many from the *Messèze* to the North. It is but a small Town, having only one Street, and that but ordinarily built; but is considerable on account of its situation on the edge of a high Rock, which, together with the Wall Trench, and other Fortifications, made it exceeding strong. It was taken by the *Hollanders* in the year 1633. but the *Spaniards* recover'd it within a little while after; and in 1675. was besieg'd by the *French*, whom the Garrison very courageously resist'd, but were forced however to surren-

der, and by them it was disantled before they restored it at the Treaty of *Nimeguen*.

*Dalem*, *Dalemum*, is a small Town with a Castle, water'd by a Rivulet that dischargeth it self into the *Meuse*, and is distant 10 miles from *Liege* to the South east, and 15 from *Limburg* to the North-west. It formerly enjoy'd the Title of an Earldom under its proper Counts or Earls, and had very large Territories within its Jurisdiction. But *Henry II.* Duke of *Brabant* surpriz'd this Town, and united it to his Dominions. Afterward it depended on the Dutchy of *Limburg*, and at present is possess'd by the *Hollanders*, altho' the *French* took it from them in the year 1672. and ruin'd the Castle, together with the other Fortifications, before they could be made to abandon the place.

*Rolduc* or 's *Hertogen raidt*, is seated on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Fuliers*, about 12 miles East from *Valkenberg*, and 24 from *Mastricht*. It is a near little Town, and hath an old Castle for its defence.

*Valkenberg*, call'd by the *French* *Fauquemont*, is a large and neat Town belonging to the Dutch, seated on the River *Geuse* at the distance of 10 miles from *Dalem* to the North, as many from *Mastricht* to the East; it was well fortified, and had a strong Castle before the *French* took it in 1672. who added to its Works and made it much stronger; however, the Dutch retook it soon after, and have since demolish'd the Fortifications.

## C H A P. IX.

### The Bishoprick of LIEGE, Leodiensis Ditio.

THO' the Diocese of *Liege* be part of the Empire, and of the Circle of *Westphalia*; yet because of its situation in the midst of some of those Provinces,

that are always reckon'd part of the *Netherlands*, some Geographers have plac'd its Description here, whose Example we shall follow.

This



This Country is bounded on the North by *Brabant*, on the West by part of *Brabant* and the County of *Namur*, on the South by the Dutchy of *Luxemburg*, and on the East by those of *Limburg* and *Fuliers*. Its Extent from South to North consists of about 70 miles, from West to East 25 miles; but in some parts it stretches out in a narrow Tract near 60 miles. The Air is temperate and healthful, and the Soil fertile, bringing forth abundance of Grains, Fruits, Cattle and Venison. It also affords divers Mines of Iron and Lead, together with Quarries of Marble; but more especially great quantities of Brimstone and Vitriol. The Bishop is Lord of all these Territories, and a Prince of the Empire, bearing also the Title of Duke of *Bouillon*, Marquis of *Franchimont*, and Earl of *Leots* and *Hasbain*, which are particular Lordships in this Country. In the Bishoprick of *Liege* are compriz'd 53 Baronies, a great number of Abbies, 24 walled Towns, and above 1500 Villages. The most considerable whereof are.

{ Liege, Bish. Cap. { Dinant. { Bouillon. { Spa. { Franchimont.	{ Bonkleem. { S. Truden. { Bilsen. { Hasselt. { Maesjck. &c.
---	--

**LIEGE**, *Leodium*, aut *Leodicum*, call'd *Luyck* by the Inhabitants, and *Luttyck* by the Germans, is seated on the West side of the *Maes* in a pleasant Valley water'd with the Rivers *Vese*, *Ure* and *Ambluar*, that discharge themselves into the *Maes* a little before it enters into the Town, at the distance of 50 miles East from *Brussels*. 65 from *Cologne* to the West, and 12 from *Maestricht* to the South. It is an Imperial and Free City under the Protection of its proper Bishop, whose See was first establish'd at *Tongres*, then translated to *Maestricht*, and at last remov'd hither about the year 713. by St. *Hubert* the Successor of S. *Lambert* Martyr, before which it was a small Village only, but afterwards encreased daily, and in 1007. Bishop *Norger* caused it to be Wall'd, and at present it is a large and beautiful City; the Streets are spacious and well built; the River *Maes* runs through the Town in two Arms, and many smaller Streams, which, together with the *Legie* and the three Rivulets of *Ure*, *Vese* and *Ambluar* (that take their Rise in the Forest of *Ardenne* and fall into the *Maes* here) Water almost every Street, and have many stately Bridges over them. The publick Buildings are very magnificent, the chief whereof are the Bishop's Palace and 8. Collegiate Churches, together with a great number of Abbies and other Religious Houses, besides the Cathedral Church dedicated to S. *Lambert* which is famous for its Chapter, as being one of the most renowned in *Christendom*, consisting of Princes, Cardinals and Persons of the highest Quality; neither is any one admitted therein, unless he be descended of a noble Family, or hath merited this favour on the Account of his profound Learning. In S. *William's* Convent without the Gate, lies buried the famous English Traveller Sir *John Mandevill*. Here is an University, formerly exceeding famous, for the Persons of great Quality Students in it. Many King's Sons, besides Dukes and Lords, were frequently found here; nay, in 1131. there were no less than 23 Kings Sons resident in this University at one time, as *Meikominus* relates. The City is fortified with a Citadel, Bulwarks and several Outworks, and is judg'd to be about four miles in compass. Besides the Churches above-mention'd, there are many others, even to the number of an hundred in all; which, as also the Convents, are all so stately and

well built, that this City is judg'd to outvie any in Germany. Among the Religious Houses there is a College of English Jesuits. In the year 1648. Charles Duke of *Burgundy* took and sack'd this City, and put the Inhabitants to the Sword, of whom, 'tis said, no less than 100 thousand were destroy'd by him. The French surpriz'd it in 1675. and demolish'd the Citadel, which hath been since repair'd, and new Fortifications added, especially in the year, 1693. upon Apprehensions of the French Designs against them.

*Tongres*, *Tungri*, aut *Aduatica Tungorum*, a very ancient Town, built on the Banks of the little River *Jecker*, 10 miles from *Liege* to the North-west, and as many from *Maestricht* to the West. It was anciently, even so early as the time of the Romans, a very considerable City, of whole Temples and other Buildings there still remain some Monuments. S. *Matermus*, who is said to have been S. *Peter's* Disciple, planted Christianity here, and erected an Episcopal See. After which it grew so large, that when *Attila* the Hun sack'd it, he destroy'd an hundred Churches. Of later days it hath not been so very Eminent; for its See was translated to *Maestricht*, and thence to *Liege*, as hath been already said, whereby it declin'd; and is at present a good Town only. The French took possession of it in 1762. but quitted it when they had taken *Maestricht*.

*Huy* or *Hoey*, *Huum*, *Huyum* aut *Huyonium*, was heretofore a famous and potent City call'd *Benefactum*, but being afterward often ruin'd by the Incurfions of the Barbarians, it lost both its Lordship and Name. It stands in the District of *Condroz*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Liege* to the South-west towards *Namur* on the East-side of the *Maes*, where the Brook *Huy*, from whence the Town takes its Name, runs into this River, that divides the Town into two parts, and over which is erected a fair Stone-bridge now half demolish'd. It is defended with a very strong Castle; which was founded on a high Hill by *Eberard* Cardinal of *March* and Bishop of *Liege*. The Country adjoining was, for some time, govern'd by certain particular Earls, until they resign'd their Right to the Bishop of *Liege*. There are many Iron Mines in the Neighbourhood, whence the Inhabitants of *Huy* have their chief Imployment. The Town was taken by the French Forces, A. D. 1673. and its Fortifications were destroyed in the ensuing Year; but it being afterward restor'd to the Bishop of *Liege*, he caus'd the Works to be repair'd with much diligence, and render'd it a Place of tolerable Strength. However, the French took it in 1693. but the Confederates recover'd it the next year.

*Dinant*, *Dinantium*, *Dinandium* aut *Dionantium*, is seated on the East-side of the *Maes* in the Confines of the County of *Namur*; from the Capital City whereof it is distant 12 miles to the South, as also 7 from *Charlemont* to the North, half a League from *Bouvines*, and 36 miles from *Liege* to the South-west. This Town is fortified with a strong Castle built on a rock, cut almost on all sides, but hath been often taken and regain'd during the Wars. The French made themselves Masters of it in 1675. and raz'd the Citadel, but afterwards rebuilt it, and maintained a Garrison in the place, till by the Treaty of *Ryswick* they were oblig'd to restore it to the Prince of *Liege*.

*Buillon* or *Bulloigne*, is seated on the River *Semois*, 30 miles South from *Dinant*, not above 8 or 10 from the Borders of *Champaign*, about 16 East from the River *Maes*, and 40 West from *Luxemburg*. It is well guarded with a strong Castle, and with its small Territory adjoining gives the Title of Duke to the Bishop of *Liege*, which was also claim'd and assum'd



affin'd by the Barons of *Sedan*. Of this place was that famous *Godfrey* Duke, who was so celebrated through all Nations for his Courage and Bravery in the Conquest of *Jerusalem*, whereof he was the first Christian King.

*Franchimont*, formerly a considerable City, before *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* destroy'd it; at present it is a good large Village only, and stands on the River *Theu* 16 miles from *Liege* and 8 South-west from *Limburg*. This Town, with the adjacent Territory, gives the Title of a Marquis to the Bishop of *Liege*.

About 5 or 6 miles South from *Franchimont*, in a Valley encompass'd with Hills and high Mountains, stands the little Wall'd Town named

*Spa* or *Spaw*, much resorted to for the famous Medicinal Waters that spring in and near the Town. Of these there are four several Springs; the strongest is that called *Geronster*, which rises in a Wood on the South-side of the Town: Two other call'd *Sauvenir* and *Tomelet*, rise on the other side the Town; but the chiefest of all is that nam'd *Pobunt*, which springs in the Town, and is beautified with a handsome Stone-work over it, built by the Bishop of *Liege*, who is Lord of the Town. From this last Fountain

vast quantities of the Water is yearly sent out to all parts of *Europe*, besides what is drunk here. These Springs have procur'd the Town a general Protection, so that in the hottest Wars it has always escaped untouch'd.

*Borch-loen* or *Loots*, the chief Town of the Land of *Loon*, formerly govern'd by its own Lords, who had the Title of Counts of *Dioftein*, is seated 12 miles from *Liege* to the North-west; in it stands a famous Collegiate Church dedicated to *S. Adolphus*.

*S. Truyen*, nam'd from a Monastery of *Benedictines*, dedicated to *S. Trudo*, call'd also by corruption *S. Tron* and *Centron*, is a good wall'd Town, distant 5 miles from *Borch-loen* to the West, and about 3 from *Landen* and *Leuwe* in *Brabant*.

*Bilsen*, a small Town, near which stands a Nunnery of Ladies of Quality, who do not vow perpetual Chastity, but are allow'd to leave their Cells and marry; it is 6 miles distant from *Maastricht* to the West.

*Hasselt*, a well built and populous Town, is seated on the River *Demer* 8 miles from *Bilsen*, wherein the Bishop of *Liege* hath a noble Palace.

*Maeseyeck*, stands on the *Maes*, 18 miles North from *Maastricht*.



# Of the United Netherlands.

## CHAP. X.



OF the Situation, Soil, Rivers, ancient State and History of these Provinces to the Time of their Subjection to the King of Spain, an account hath been already given, in speaking of the

153

Netherlands in general: What remains, is to give the Reader some Idea of the Rise and Establishment of this Republick, known by the Name of The States General of the United Netherlands, before we proceed



to the Description of the Country. In order to which it is necessary to begin with the first occasions of their Defection from Spain, which were as follow.

The People of these Countries enjoyed large Privileges under the ancient Princes, who were content always to maintain 'em to them, because the smallness of their respective Dominions, made their greatest Strength consist in the Affections of their Subjects: But when, afterwards, all these Provinces became subject to one Prince, who had also large Dominions elsewhere, the People were treated with less Indulgence. Charles V. was the first of these, who, as he was King of Spain, and Emperor of Germany, as well as Duke of Burgundy, had different Interests from his Predecessors, and being engaged in a War with France, brought Foreign Forces from his other Dominions into the Netherlands, notwithstanding the Laws to the contrary; but being a Native of this Country, of a gentle and generous Nature, residing long in it, and using the Native Nobility in the Government, he was generally belov'd, and his Actions gave no disgust.

But his Son Philip, being born in Spain, was of the Humour of that Nation, very Austere, and had also so much Affection for his Country-men, that he conferr'd upon them all the Offices of Honour and Authority in these Countries, to the great displeasure of the Flemish Nobility; and himself also resided in Spain, governing these States by a Deputy; continu'd the Foreign Forces on foot, though the War were at an end; and which most of all disquieted the People, declar'd himself very zealous for the Romish Religion; and therefore the Edicts against Luther, that had been made in his Father's time; but by the Indulgence of Charles, had not been executed here, Philip revives, and commands to be strictly executed; which was very grievous, because the number of the Protestant Party was large.

In the year 1550. the Dutchess of Parma, the King's Sister, was made Governess of the Netherlands; she was a Person of great Wisdom and Goodness; but the chief Minister Cardinal Grandvill, whom the King appointed to assist her, was of an intolerable proud and cruel Nature, and though of an obscure mean Birth, so insolent to the Nobility, that what with that, and his cruel Prosecution by the Inquisition, which was now set on foot for the suppression of Protestantcy, he became universally odious, and the Nobility refus'd to assist at the Councils while he sat at the Head of them: Wherefore the good Dutchess prevail'd upon the King to remove him, and moderate the Edicts about Religion.

But the Inquisition was soon after reviv'd, and notwithstanding the Dutchess's good Offices, the King commands all Hereticks to be put to Death, and many were Executed accordingly; which created Horror and Rage in the Minds of the People, and caused them to break out in open Mutinies, to oppose the Executions, and release the Prisoners that were condemned for Religion. Also several of the Nobility confederated together against the Inquisition; and a great number, headed by the Lord of Brederode, boldly Petition'd the Governess for abolishing it: To which she gave a calm Answer, and representing the Matter kindly to the King, prevail'd upon him to grant their Request; but the Favour being long delay'd, the People were dissatisfied, and at length broke out into open Rebellion, and committed

many outrageous Actions; but were soon pacified by the Dutchess, and the publick Peace once more restor'd. But the King was still resolv'd to suppress this Heresie, (as he call'd it) and punish these numerous Subjects; and therefore sent his Favourite the Duke of Alva, in the year 1567. into the Netherlands with an Army of 10000 Spanish and Italian Soldiers to assist the Dutchess in the execution of his Commands: Upon whose arrival, the People were in general so discontented, that great numbers of the Richer sort retir'd out of the Provinces; and the Dutchess foreseeing the Evils that were approaching desir'd leave of the King to resign the Government, which was soon granted, and that Charge, with greater power than usual, conferr'd on the Duke of Alva. Who immediately set himself to work to quell the Disorders, but by a different method than what had been used by the prudent Dutchess; for whereas she by mildness had pacified the People and brought them to Reason, he resolv'd by Rigor to force them to submit: And first of all, without regard to the Laws of the Land, he erected a new Court of Judicature, for Trying those that had been concern'd in the late Insurrections; and many were condemn'd and executed thereupon. The Inquisition was set to work anew, and executed with greater Rigor than before; and many other things transacted that were contrary to the Liberties of the People, the Privileges of the Towns, and the known Laws of the Country: Which though the Nobility and People were exceedingly incens'd at, the Governor was at all concern'd, but resolv'd to pursue his own Methods, and break the Strength of the discontented Party; which he thought he could not effectually do, without cutting off their Heads; the chief whereof were the Prince of Orange, Count Egmont, and Count Horn.

The Prince of Orange was a Person of great Interest, by the large Possessions he was Master of; and by reason of his great Wisdom and Goodness was belov'd by all, as he had particularly been by the Emperor Charles V. who made him Governor of Holland.

Count Egmont was a great Soldier, and had enjoyed the highest Places of Honour and Trust in Flanders, and was also exceedingly belov'd by the People; as was likewise Count Horn, who had a large Estate in Brabant.

These three the Duke of Alva was resolv'd to take off; and accordingly the two latter were seized and imprisoned, and after some Months time Tried and Executed for being accessory to the late Insurrection, though they had been highly instrumental in suppressing it; but the Prince of Orange, having in time retir'd into Germany, sav'd his Life, though with the loss of his Estate, for that was seized as forfeited to the King. These Arbitrary and cruel Proceedings of Alva enraged the People to the highest degree, and made them resolve Revenge; and in order to it, great numbers flock to the Prince of Orange, their Head, who with them, and such other Forces as he could raise, invaded the Provinces. But the Spanish Army was too powerful, so that the Prince was forced to return without effecting any thing. And Alva, glorying in his good Fortune, insolently caused his own Statue to be erected, with two Figures, representing the Estates of the Low Countries under his Feet; and demanded of the States large Supplies for the Army than they could grant: Whereupon the King thereupon, but without Redress, and persisting in their Refusal, d'Alva published



Edict without their Consent, for Levying the Money he demanded; and upon the People's refusing to pay it, caused the Soldiers to take it by force, and commanded those to be hanged upon the Sign-posts that had refused to pay; but was interrupted in his career by the arrival of News from *Holland*, That the *Briel* was seized by the *Gueses*: These were the Protestants, to whom the Papists had given that Name in Contempt, and who, to avoid the Rigor of the Inquisition, and *d'Alva's* Government, had fled, some into the Woods and Fastnesses, and others to Sea, where they lived upon Spoil, &c. These being grown strong by the additions of some of the remains of the Prince of *Orange's* Army, landed in *Holland*, and seized the *Briel*; which was follow'd by the Revolt of most of the Towns of *Holland* and *Zealand*; and the Prince of *Orange* coming soon after out of *Germany* with new Forces, became so formidable, that the King found it absolutely necessary to remove the Duke of *Alva*, whose violent Proceedings had raised such a Spirit of Hatred, not only of him, but of the whole *Spanish* Interest, that without very prudent and cautious management, there was little hopes of ever bringing these Provinces to Obedience. After *d'Alva's* departure, *Requisenes* had the Government for a little time; but he dying, the Administration fell of course to the Council, till a new Governor came. *Don John* of *Austria* was appointed to succeed; but before he could arrive, the People grew mutinous, and obliged the Council to assemble the States: Who being met at *Ghent* in the year 1576. agreed upon the Act, call'd *The Pacification of Ghent*; the substance whereof was, That all Foreign Soldiers be expell'd, the ancient Forms of Government restor'd, and matters of Religion refer'd to the States of each Province: But the Foreigners refus'd to depart, and were therefore declared Rebels; in revenge whereof they plunder'd several Towns, particularly *Antwerp*. And when *Don John* arrived, the Estates refused to admit him till he had confirmed the *Pacification of Ghent*; but he shortly after renounced it, and seizing the Castle of *Namur*, gave new occasions for a Breach: And immediately both Parties prepared for War. The Provinces call the Prince of *Orange* to *Brussels*, and make him Protector of *Brabant*; and the *Spaniards* draw their Armies together in *Namur* and *Luxemburg*; but *Don John* dying suddenly, and a new Party being risen among the Confederates, little was done till the Union of *Utrecht*.

The UNION of *UTRECHT*, from which the Original of this Common-wealth must be dated, was a firm Alliance agreed upon in the year 1579. by the Seven Northern Provinces of the *Netherlands*, and Signed at the City of *Utrecht*: By which they united themselves, so as never to be divided, reserving however to each Province, all its former Rights, Laws and Customs. All the Provinces bound themselves to assist one another against all Enemies whatsoever, to carry on all Wars, and maintain all Frontier Towns at their united Expence; and by a joint Council of the Representatives of all the Provinces, transact all Affairs relating to the Union.

But this new-erected State found it self too weak to resist the valiant Duke of *Parma*, the Successor of *Don John*; who, tho' when he came to the Government, had only the Provinces of *Namur* and *Luxemburg*, free from the Confederacy, yet by his own Conduct and Valour, and the Strength of the Army he got together, was powerful enough in a little

time to reduce the Confederates to such a distrest, that in the Term of *Peor and Distrust* States, they implored the Assistance of our Queen *Elizabeth*, offering her the Sovereignty of their State, if she would afford them Protection. The Queen refused the Dominion, but lent them Money and Soldiers, in the year 1585. upon the Security of the *Briel*, *Flushing* and *Rammekins*, which they put into her Hands: And in 1587. sent over more Forces under the Earl of *Leicester*, whom the States swore Obedience to, and admitted as their Governor: But his Government lasted not long, for some differences arising between him and the States, the Queen recall'd him, but continu'd her former Assistance to the *Dutch*; who after *Leicester's* departure, chose Prince *Maurice*, Son to the late Prince *William* of *Orange* (who was Assassinated at *Delft* by a *Spaniard*) for their Governor, who proved one of the greatest Captains of the Age, in wise Conduct, admiral Discipline, and excellent manner of Fortifying; which with the Diversion that Queen *Elizabeth* gave the *Spaniards* in her famous War with them, did so restore the Affairs of this State, that the valiant Duke of *Parma* dying, King *Philip* found it necessary to think of Peace; which the States were very little solicitous of: For not only were their Forces under Prince *Maurice* successful enough, but their Subjects had found the way to the *East Indies*, and began to supplant the *Portugues*, and make *Holland* the European Staple for the Commodities of those Countries; and were powerful enough at Sea to threaten the *Spanish* Plate Fleets and *West-Indian* Dominions; so that while the *Spaniard*, by the management of the Arch-Duke *Albert*, now Governor of the *Netherlands*, carried on the War at great Expence, in hopes of making the States ask a Peace, he found that the underhand Overtures he made them were but coldly receiv'd, and that they refus'd to grant a Cessation of Arms, or to be treated with upon any other Terms than as a FREE STATE, which he was at last forced to comply with: And,

In the year 1609. a Truce was concluded for 12 Years; by which the Provinces were declared Free, both Parties allowed the full enjoyment of all that they then possessed, and free Commerce established betwixt them.

And thus this War of 48 years continuance ended with the total Alienation of 7 Provinces from the *Spanish* Dominions, and the Erection of a State, which though it rose from such poor beginning, and struggl'd with the most Potent Prince of *Europe*, has grown to be one of the most Powerful, Rich, Well-Planted and Populous of *Europe*.

### *Of the Government of the United Netherlands in general, and of Holland in particular.*

THE Supream Authority is the Assembly of the Representatives of the Seven Provinces, call'd, *The Assembly of the States General*; which consists of seven Voices, one for each Province, to whom belongs the power of making War or Peace, receiving and dispatching of Ambassadors, taking care of Frontier Towns, and assigning the Sums to be Levied for the Defence and Service of the Union. Assistant to these, there are the Council of State, and the Council of the Admiralty. The first is composed of 12 Persons, (whereof *Guelderland* sends 2, *Holland* 3, *Zealand* 2, *Utrecht* 2, *Friesland* 1, *Overissel* 1, and *Groninghen* 1) who previously deliberate the Matters to be brought



before the States General, form the state of Expence for the succeeding year, and propose the ways of Levying it. &c. Assistant to this Council is the Chamber of Accounts, compos'd of two Deputies from each Province, who audit the publick Accounts, and dispose the Finances. The Council of the Admiralty, when the States order the fitting out a Fleet, have the care of it, and the ordering of all Marine Affairs; Sub-ordinate to which are the five Colleges in *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Friesland*, who execute the Orders they receive from this Council.

The Resolutions of the States General, when they concern Peace or War, Foreign Alliances, or raising Money, are never made but by the Agreement of every Province; nor must the Provinces conclude without the Agreement of every City; so that when such a matter comes before the States, they separate, each Member returning to his respective Province, where in the Assembly of every Provincial State the Matter is propos'd, with which the Deputies return to their Princes or the Cities, for their consent; which makes the Resolutions very tedious and liable to interruption, by the Interest an opposite Party may make in any one of the Cities; which hath sometimes happen'd particularly in the case of the Relief of *Amsterdam*, when the City of *Amsterdam* dissenting, hinder'd the raising the 16000 Men propos'd to save that Place, which was, for want of this Relief, taken by the *French* in 1654.

By which the Reader will see, That though the States General represent the Sovereignty, the Power is diffus'd, and rests indeed in the several Cities that send Deputies to the States of the Province; for every Province is a distinct State, as are also all the Cities, in matters that concern themselves only. As a Specimen of the whole, we shall instance the City of *Amsterdam*, and the Province of *Holland*.

The Sovereignty of *Amsterdam* is lodged in the Council or Senate, which is compos'd of 36 Persons, who serve for Life, and upon the death of one, the rest chuse another of the Burghers to supply his Place. This Council chuses the Magistrates and Officers, and the Deputy which represents the City in the Provincial State; (so that the People have no share in Elections, and also make Laws for the Government of the City, and Levy the Taxes for the publick Service of the City in particular, and its Quota for the Union in General: By its Magistrates (which are Burgomasters equal to our Lord Mayor, Schepens, or Judges, and Schout, or Sheriff) the City executes an independent Government, judges all Causes Civil and Criminal, and inflicts Punishments, even to Death, without the Cognizance of any other Power whatsoever. The like Authority is found in all the Cities, but with some little variation, not needful here to be mention'd.

The Provincial State of *Holland* is compos'd of the Deputies of the Nobility, and the Cities, which make Nineteen Voices, whereof the Nobles have One, and these Cities, viz. *Dort*, *Harlem*, *Delft*, *Leyden*, *Amsterdam*, *Goude*, *Rotterdam*, *Gercum*, *Scheidam*, *Schooneboven*, *Briel*, *Alcmser*, *Horn*, *Encheusen*, *Edam*, *Monickdam*, *Medenblick* and *Purmeren*, One a piece, which make the other Eighteen Voices; which, as we have already said, must all concur in the making of any new Alliance, declaring War and making Peace, &c. These assemble at the *Hague*, as do also the States General and the Council of State.

The States of the other Provinces are much the same, only that the Nobility in some of them being

more numerous, have a greater share; and in *Tirei* the Deputies of the Clergy have Session; and in *Friesland* and *Groningen*, besides the Towns, the Lands divided into Bailiages, send Deputies to the States.

The Prince of *Orange* is the Person that represents the Dignity of this State, by his splendid Court, publick Guards, &c. He is Captain General and Lord High Admiral, and thereby disposes of all Military and Marine Commands. He is Stadtholder of five of the seven Provinces; (for Prince *Cassimer* of *Nassau*, is Stadtholder of *Friesland* and *Groningen*, and hath the Nomination of Magistrates of the Cities out of a considerable number presented to him: He pardons the Penalties of Crimes, and hath Session in the Council of State; and though he doth not sit in the Assembly of States General, yet do they not resolve any important Matter without his Advice. He hath also great influence in several of the Provincial States by the large portion of Lands he is Owner of, whereby he hath many Voices in Electing the Deputies of the Nobles. He is exceeding Rich, as well by the vast Patrimonial Estate descend'd to him from his Ancestors, among which are many Sovereign Principalities and Lordships, as by the large Revenues belonging to his several Charges and Commands. All which are at present possess'd by his most Excellent Majesty *William* King of *Great Britain*, &c. Whole Ancestors that have enjoyed the same Dignity in this State, are these, viz.

I. *William* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, who was Governor of *Holland* and *Zealand*, under *Charles V.* and *Philip II.* and by his excellent Wisdom, Goodness and Courage, acquir'd the greatest Esteem and Authority imaginable among the People; and was therefore the Person to whom they applied themselves for Relief from the Oppressions of the Duke of *Alva*, &c. As we have already shewn. He was Assassinated at *Delft* in *Holland* by a *Spanish* Soldier, in the year 1584.

II. *Maurice* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and Son of *William*, by whose wise Conduct the Confederacy, (which he found Poor and Distressed) was raised to a very powerful State, and acknowledged Free by the King of *Spain*. He died A. D. 1625, and was Succeeded by his half-Brother.

III. *Henry Frederick*, a Prince of great Valour, Prudence and Fortune: He died in the year 1647.

IV. *William* his Son Succeeded, who Married the Princess *Mary*, eldest Daughter to King *Charles I.* of *England*, and died A. 1650. without Issue born, leaving his Princess then with Child of His present Majesty; which gave the *Leuvestein* Faction an opportunity to endeavour to suppress the Authority and Office of Stadtholder, and which they did keep vacant till 1674. when the People having suffer'd a thousand Miseries by the hands of the barbarous *French*, forced the Magistrates to retract that Instrument they had Sworn to, and fondly call'd a *Perpetual Edict*, whereby the Office of Stadtholder was to be for ever suppress'd: I say, the People impatient of the Evils they indur'd for want of a Valiant Captain to Head their Armies, oblig'd the Magistrates to restore the Prince to the Dignity of his Ancestors.

V. *William Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, Son to *William* and *Mary* abovemention'd, was Born November 6 1650. eight days after his Father's Death; liv'd privately till the year 1674. when he



was restored to the Stadtholdership of Holland, Zealand, Guelderland and Zutphen, Utrecht and Overijssel, which by the States of each of those Provinces was confirmed to him and his Heirs for ever. In 1677.

he Married Mary our Late Queen of Blessed Memory; and in 1688. Succeeded in the Throne of England, and is at present King of Great Britain, France and Ireland.

- The Seven United Provinces are,
- G U E L D E R L A N D, with Z U T P H E N.

H O L L A N D.

Z E A L A N D.

U T R E C T H.

F R I E Z L A N D.

O V E R Y S S E L.

G R O N I N G E N.
- Chief Cities.

{ Arnheim.

{ Zutphen.

Amsterdam.

Middleburgh.

Utrecht.

Franker.

Deventer.

Groninghen.

C H A P. XI.

The Province of H O L L A N D and West F R I Z E L A N D,

Hollandia & Westfrisia.

THE first Inhabitants of this Province of Holland, were the *Batavi*, a Branch of the Nation of the *Catti*, a People of Germany; but how far their Territory extended, is Disputed. It is said in general in ancient Authors, that *Batavia* was included between the *Maes* and the *Rhine*; but whether it be so be understood of the old Channel of the *Rhine* which passeth by *Utrecht* and *Leyden*, or the Channel of *Drusus*, which turn'd a great part of that River into the *Iffel*, is the question in Dispute. If the latter, not only this Province, but those of *Utrecht* and *Gelderland*, must have belonged to them. But however it be, all Parties grant, that at least all the South part of *Holland*, as far as *Leyden*, together with the *Betuwe*, (now part of *Geldre*) *Nimeguen* the chief City thereof being by some said to have been their Metropolis, was the Seat of the ancient and famous Nation of the *Batavians*, so often mention'd by *Tacitus* and other ancient Writers. As for the Northern part, there is good reason to believe that it was formerly contiguous with *Friseland*, or at least Inhabited by that Nation.

The modern name of *Holland* was undoubtedly given it by the *Danes*; who very much infesting these Coasts with their Pyracies in the IXth. Century, had this Province, with the Islands lying South of it, given them by *Lotharius* the third, Son of *Lewis* the Godly, (to whose share this part of the Empire of his Grandfather *Charlemagne* was allotted) and by them named *Zealand* and *Holland*, from the two parts of their own Country so denominated. 'Tis true, some Etymologists will have it, that the name of *Holland* was given it *q. d.* *Hollow-land*, from the lowness of the Country: But since the Story of the *Danes* planting themselves here is undisputed, the former account is much the more rational.

The Original of its Earldom is already mention'd in the general account before the description of the *Spanish Netherlands*, together with its falling into the family of *Burgundy*, and by Succession to the King of *Spain*; and of its Revolt from him we have been just speaking; as also of its present State.

The present Bounds of this Province (including *West Friseland*, or *North Holland*, which in all publick Acts is mention'd apart) are the *German Ocean* on the West, the *Zuyderzee* on the North, the same Sea with the Province of *Utrecht* and the *Betuwe* on the East, and *Brabant* and *Zealand* on the South. It is seated between the 51st. deg. 40 min. and 53 d.

deg. of Latitude, and 23. deg. 10. min. 24th. deg. 20 min. Long. containing in its utmost extent, from North to South, 80 English miles, and from East to West about 25. but in some places above 40. The Soil is low and marshy; but by the Industry of the Inhabitants in draining out the Water by their artificial Channels, it is made to yield very good Pasture, and some Corn; but chiefly the former, for Food to their vast Herds of Kine, from which they receive the almost sole product of the Country, Butter and Cheese. The Air is thick and moist, by the Fogs arising out of the vast number of Channels and Lakes all over the Country, which make the Inhabitants in many parts of it very subject to Agues, which would be yet much worse if it were not purg'd by the Easterly Winds, which coming over the long dry Continent of Germany, purifie the Air, and cause sharp Frosts during the Months of *January* and *February*, by which the Earth is dried, and the Vermine, which the moistness of the Land produces in great quantities, destroyed. The whole Province is divided into two great Parts, North and South; which are again Subdivided thus. viz.

N O R T H, containing	North Hol- land strictly taken, divi- ded Into.	{	West Frizeland, the	{	Horn,
			chief Towns where	{	Enchusen,
		{	of are,	{	Medenblick.
			The Islands <i>Texel</i> , <i>Vlies</i> and <i>Schellings</i> .		
	{	Waterland.	{	Eadam,	
		{	Kenemerland.	{	Munickdam,
				{	Purmerent.
	{		{	Alcmar,	
			{	Harlem,	
			{	Beverwyck.	
	Amstelland.	Amsterdam, Capital,			
{	Goyland.	{	Narden,		
			Muyden,		
{	Rynland.	{	Wesep.		
			Leyden,		
			Woerden,		
			Oudewater.		
			Delft,		
{	Delfland.	{	The Hague,		
			Henslaerdijck,		
			Maesland Sluys,		
			Vlardinghen,		
			Delfs Haven.		
{	Schieland.	{	Rotterdam,		
			{	Goude.	

SOUTH



SOUTH, containing	{	The Bailiwick of Drenth, &c.	{	Dordrecht,	
				Guertruedenning.	
				Willemslaar.	
				Klundert,	
				Houster,	
				Croesewijk,	
				Leuterjeen,	
				Gronum,	
				Wierum,	
				Schermerhorn.	
				Nieuport,	
				Vianen,	
				Peestem.	
				Utrecht.	
The Land of Friesland.	{	Ch. Town, Gorree,			
			Grono.		
The Islands of	{	Oostflackee.	Somedike.		

**AMSTERDAM**, *Amsteldamum*, the chief City not only of *Holland* but of all the United *Netherlands*, is seated on a small River named *Amstel*, that runs through the Town and falls into an Arm of the Sea, call'd the *Y*, and by abbreviation of the Dutch Article *Heer*, 's *Y*, which makes a large Haven, wherein continually lye vast numbers of Merchants Ships. The City is distant about 30 miles from *Rotterdam* to the North, 20 from *Horn* and 30 from *Medenbick* to the South, 12 from *Harlem*, and 15 from the Sea-shore to the East, and about 25 from *Utrecht* to the North-west. It is but of modern Structure, being not mention'd in History before the year, 1299. nor then, but as a small Fisher-town only. *De Witt* hath published Maps of its several Conditions, whereof the first shews it in the Year 1342. a small Town on the East side only of *Amstel*, with one Street in the middle, and 5 or 6 cross ones; which before 1400 was increas'd to as much more on the other side the River; by 1452. it was again increas'd on both sides and surrounded with strong Walls; in 1555. being grown populous and beginning to be the chief Seat of Trade of this new erected State, it was much enlarged, as it was again in 1612. And again a fifth time in the year 1656. a very large space of Ground (great part whereof is not yet built) was taken in and the Walls built anew of Brick and the Gates of Stone, with a large Ditch all round; which new Addition hath made it a large Semi-circle, deriv'd from the River *Y*. It is an exceeding populous, rich and well-traded City, very well built and very neatly kept; the Streets are very large with Canals of Water in them, over which are a very great number of Stone-bridges. The Houses are all built of Brick or Stone, in good repair and very beautiful, especially those in the newest part of the Town, where the Streets call'd the *Heer*, *Kings*, and *Keyers Grachten*, or Lords, Kings and Emperors Channels, are fill'd with magnificent Houses, many of them of Free-stone, adorn'd with Columns and Chapters according to the Corinthian Architecture. The principal publick Buildings are the Old, the New, the Western and the Southern Churches, the *Stadhuyse*, the Exchange, the Hospitals, the Magazine of the Navy, that of the *East-India* Company's Shipping, and the Sluces: All which we cannot omit giving as particular a description of as our room will admit. 1. The old Church is a Majestick Building of Stone according to the Gothick Order with a fair Steeple of great height; the Church was begun to be Built in 1360. but the Steeple not finished till 1566. 2. The New Church, so call'd in distinction from the former, was founded about the year 1414. but being burnt in 1645. was repaired,

and is at present a handsom Structure; a Tower was designed to it of exceeding Height, and a Foundation laid accordingly upon 6334 Piles driven into the Ground for that purpose, which was not however found strong enough, for the Building is not carried up above 30 or 40 foot: In the Painted Windows of this Church is represented the Liberality of this City to the Emperor *Maximilian*, in presenting him with a large sum of Money when he needed it, and his Generosity in bestowing an Imperial Crown for a Crest to its Arms. Also in this Church is to be seen the sumptuous Monument of Admiral *de Ruyter*, who was killed at *Messina*; a Schreen before the Chancel of cast Brass, which being kept bright, looks very beautifully; and an Organ (supported by rich Marble Pillars) of extraordinary Workmanship for its number of Pipes and Melodious imitation of Humane Voices. 3. The Western Church is a handsom Pile, and hath a beautiful Tower with a large Imperial Crown of Copper on the top of it, which is reckon'd 260 foot from the Ground. 4. The South Church hath also a handsom Steeple of 237 foot high. The other Churches are less remarkable. 5. The *Stadhuyse*, or *Guild-Hall*, is a very magnificent Structure, all of Free-stone, adorn'd with Pillasters, Chapters, Cornishes and Carvings, according to the Corinthian Architecture; it is a square Building of 252 foot broad, 235 foot deep, and 116 foot high; of which height, the Ground-rooms) which are the Offices belonging to the Bank, and the Prisons, with some smaller Offices) take up about 20 foot, and the first and second Stories about 30 foot each; and over the middle of the Front, (which is somewhat more advanced than the rest of the Work) above the Cornish, rises a Bevel, the Face whereof is of Marble with a *Basso Relievo* of curious Carving, and on the top and each side of it stands three very large Statues of Brass, and just behind a handsom Tower, (being a Pavillion supported by Pillars) wherein hang a great number of Bells that compose very musical Chimes: The back Face hath also another Bevel with *Basso Relievo*, on the Top whereof stands a very large brazen Statue of *Atlas*, with a Globe of Copper on his Back. Within the House, the Gallery and Door-cases of the Offices are adorn'd with ingenious Carvings in Marble, and the Chambers with Marble Floors and curious Paintings on the Ceilings and Chimney-pieces: In this House the Senate of the City hold their Assemblies, the Burgomasters meet, Causes as well Criminal as Civil are Try'd, the great Bank is kept, and in general all publick Business transacted. This Building was begun in the year 1648. but not finished in many years; indeed not yet entirely, for the Ceilings of the Gallery are design'd to be painted, and the Walls faced with Marble. 6. The Exchange is a handsom Structure of Brick, with Pillars of Stone all along the Walks, built after the model of our old Royal Exchange before the Fire, and is at least as Large. 7. The Hospitals here are many and large; above 3000 poor Children are constantly maintain'd with Lodging, Diet, and Cloaths, taught to Read and Write at the publick Charge, in the *Armenhuis*, *Wees-huys*, and *Diaconus-huys*, three large Hospitals, so call'd; besides which, there is a large House, wherein above 300. decrepid old Women are lodg'd and fed; these are all of modern Foundation and maintained partly by the voluntary Charities collected by the Deacons, and partly by certain small Taxes, such as a Penny upon every Person that passes through the Gate after Candle-light, half the Money received at the Play-house, &c. and the rest supplied



out of the publick Revenue; But another Hospital, call'd the old Man's House, wherein 150 old Men and Women are maintained, was formerly a Monastery, the Rents whereof are assign'd for its support: In this House a poor Traveller may have Lodging and Diet for three days *gratis*. Here is also an Hospital for the Sick, another for Madmen, another for Fools, and a Pest-house.

The Magazine is a handsome large Building of Brick, standing on the Water-side, in the North-east part of the Town; it is three Angles of a Square, in the middle whereof is a Yard for building Ships of War, the Front is 220. and the Wings 200 foot long. In the several Chambers of it are laid up the Rigging of the Men of War belonging to this City, with Stores of Cordage, Arms, &c. all kept in very good order: This Magazine was built in 1655. Not far Eastward from hence is another stately Magazine belonging to the *East-India* Company; it is one Range of Brick Building, behind which is a large Yard with Docks for building Ships, and Shops of Anchor-Smiths, and all other Artists belonging to Ship-building, particularly a very long Rope-yard: This House serves to lay up their Stores of Shipping, and also for Ware-houses for those Goods that they have not room for in their other Ware-houses; which with their House stands in the middle of the City.

The *Sluces* are Works of prodigious Expence and Art, and worth a Traveller's notice. Formerly the City was frequently damaged by the overflowing of the Water, which, upon the blowing of a North east Wind, was driven out of the *Zuyder Zee* and 't'wixt that violence into the Canals in the Streets, that the Water overflowing, not only run into their Cellars, but even rose to the first Floor of those Houses that stood in the lower parts of the Town; to prevent which, the Magistrates, not many yeares since caused these Sluces to be made at the mouth of every one of the four Channels that open to the 't': These are strong solid Brick-works of 10 or 12 foot thick, rais'd from the bottom of the River to the Surface of the Ground, and built cross the Channels, leaving only convenient places for the passage of Ships, which are again shut up with very Strong Flood-gates, able at all times to resist the force of the Water, and secure the Inhabitants from its injuring them. Here are other publick Buildings worth a Stranger's View, such as the Rasp-house, where Rogues are Imprison'd and kept to hard Labour, as rasping Brazil-wood, &c. for 3, 4, 7, 10 years, or their whole Lives, according to the heinousness of the Crime; the Spin-house, where Whores are kept in like manner to Spinning &c. the East and West-India Company's Houses; the Jews Synagogue, a noble Building indeed; the beautiful Stone bridge cross the *Amstel*, where it enters the Town; and the Walls all round the Town, which are exceeding neat, and well built with Brick, and secure the City from a Surprise, as the marshiness of the Soil all round does from a formal Siege: The Gates, which are 5 in number, are all built of Stone, and in the Bridge from each of them over the Ditch are 2 Draw-bridges and a Watch-house, wherein, as well as in the Gates, continual Watch is kept by Soldiers maintain'd for that purpose, besides every night a company of the Train Bands of the City. And for their security from the Water-side, there are two rows of Pails all along before the Town, with narrow Gaps only at convenient places, for the passage of Ships, which are every night shut up by a Boom laid cross and lock'd. The Wealth and Trade of this City is exceeding great, the number of Shipping lying before the Pails in the Winter-time, when

their *East land* and other Fleets are in, is not to be computed, their Masts seeming like a great Forest, so thick they stand. The Ground here is Sand, which the Water soaks through, and not only hinders from making the Cellars deep, but also obliges the Builders to drive a great number of Piles into the Ground, before they can lay the Foundations of the Houses. Here is no fresh Water, but what they save in Cisterns when it Rains; for though the *Amstel* be good Water, the 't' is a branch of the Sea, and mixing with it makes it brackish for several miles above the Town.

The Supream Authority in the City is lodg'd in the Senate, which consists of 36 Persons chosen originally by the People, but at present by themselves, and continue for Life. These chuse the four *Burgomasters*, who are the chief Magistrates; and the nine *Schepens*, who are the Judges of Civil and Criminal Causes; and the *Scout* or Sheriff, who hath the care of bringing Criminals to Justice, and executing the Law. But it is necessary to note, That the Senate have not the absolute choice of the *Schepens*, for they return a double number to the *Stadtholder*, who chuses those of them he pleases. The *Burgomasters* keep the Keys of the Treasury of the City, and of the great Bank lodg'd here and kept in the Cellars under the *Stadthuys*, which without doubt is a vast Mass of Treasure, but whether so great as it's Credit, is not to be known, since none are permitted to see it; nor hath there ever been but once an occasion to try its Strength, viz. in 1673. when the French having overrun their Country, some People distrusted the safety of their Money and call'd it out of the Bank, which the Treasurers readily paying, gave satisfaction to the rest, and it hath still remain'd there, tho transfer'd every day from one to another by Bills and Accounts, without ever telling the Money or any own desiring to see it. The compass of *Amsterdam* within the Walls, is reckon'd about 6 miles, but a large part of it is yet unbuilt; the number of Houses is about 25, or as some affirm 28000. The number of Inhabitants may be guess'd at by the Burials, which in the year 1685. were 6245. according to the publick Account set up in the *Stadthuys*. *Amsterdam* is seated in the Latitude of 52 deg. 28 min. Longit. 24. 2.

*HARLEM*, *Harlemum*, stands about 10 miles West from *Amsterdam*, not above 4 East from the Sea, about 20 North from *Leyden*, and as many South from *Alcmar*; it is a large, populous and pleasant City; the Buildings are all of Brick, neat, convenient, and in good repair, the Streets large and even, and in some of them are Canals as at *Amsterdam*. It is a place of good Trade, which consists in Thread and Tape, Linnen-Cloath and wrought Silks; also Bleaching of Linnen, for which the Water is so fit, that most of the Inhabitants of *Amsterdam* and other neighbouring places, bring their Linnen here to be Wash'd, being curious in its whiteness. This City was made a Bishop's See in 1559. but that Dignity was soon after suppress'd. The Cathedral was Dedicated to S. *Bavo*, but is now only call'd the great Church; it is a strong, spacious and beautiful Building. The *Stadthuys* is a handsome old Structure, as is the Shambles or Flesh-market. The Walls are strong and the Ditch broad, but the Town is commanded by the Neighbouring Sand-hills. The Art of PRINTING is said to have been invented here by one *Lawrence Coster*, who walking in the neighbouring Wood for his diversion, fell to whitening little Sticks, and at length form'd a Letter upon one of 'em, which pressing upon his Hand first, and



and afterwards with Ink upon Paper, found it made a legible Impression; which accidental hint, being an ingenious Man, he improv'd and had brought the Art to some perfection, when a Roguish Servant that he employ'd in it, stole his Implements and run away to *Menz*, where he set up for the Inventor. They of *Menz* deny this, and affirm, That a Citizen of theirs, *Joan Faust* by name, was the sole Inventor. The *Harlemers* have many great and learned Men on their side in this Dispute; however, the first printed Books extant having been publish'd at *Menz*, carries over many to the other Party: But wheretoever it was Invented, this ingenious Art appeared first in the World about the year 1430. or 1440. The *Harlemers* brag also of great Exploits done by their Townsmen who went to the Holy War with *Godfrey* of *Bohaigne*, particularly the cutting of the Chains that shut up the Haven of the City *Damiata* in *Egypt*, which (according to the Tradition among them, was perform'd by great Saws fasten'd to the Keels of their Ships; in memory whereof the Boys yearly carry little Ships about the Streets; to which purpose they say also are the three Ships that hang up in the great Church. The Siege of this City by the *Spaniards* in the year 1573. was very remarkable, for it continued 7 Months; during which time the Assaults were as violent, and the Resistance as obstinate as has been known, and the Defendants were reduc'd to such a Necessity, that they eat Grass, Leather, and such vile things for their Subsistence. They still shew a mark in the great Church where a Cannon Bullet lodg'd.

Just without the Walls there is a pleasant Wood, wherein the Citizens divert themselves; and a little to the Southward, a great Lake call'd the *Harlem Meer*, which begins near *Amsterdam*, and reaches almost as far as *Leyden*. From the small River *Sparren* which runs through the Town, a Channel was cut in the year 1657. to *Leyden*, whereby the Passage between these Cities hath been much facilitated.

*LEYDEN*, *Lugdunum Batavorum*, also *Leyda*, is esteem'd the pleasantest City in *Holland*; the Buildings being beautiful, the Streets large, the Channels commodious, but chiefly the rows of fine tall Trees in every Street, render them exceedingly agreeable; but then, for want of a good Current of Water, the Canals are apt to stink in Summer. This is an ancient City, and tho' formerly but small, hath by several Enlargements been made to exceed any in *Holland*, except *Amsterdam* and *Rotterdam*. The principal publick Buildings, are, the Church of *S. Peter*, a handsom Pile, and had formerly a very high Tower, but it fell down in the year 1512. The Churches of *S. Pancratius* and *S. Mary*; and the new Church, of circular Form and very beautiful; the Hospitals of *S. Katherine* and *S. Elizabeth*, as also those of *S. James* and *S. Barbara*, for the Entertainment of decrepid aged and sick People, which are well endow'd and carefully kept. Here is also a large Hospital for the maintenance of poor Orphans, whereof there are reckon'd to be no less than 700 in it. The Town-house is a noble large Structure. The Burg. a noble piece of Antiquity, said to have been built by the *Romans*, for the Defence of the Town, but stands now in the middle of it, and an Ornament only; it is a strong Fortification built of Stone in a round form, very high, the Ascent to it being of 50 Steps, and the Wall about it 21 foot high. In the year 1575 the Prince and States founded an University here, which is become the most famous of these Countries. The Schools is an ancient Building, handsom enough, but not exceeding beautiful;

adjoining to it is the Physick-Garden, which is well stor'd with rare Plants; near the Garden stands a Gallery in which are kept many Curiosities of Nature; also in the Theatre of Anatomy are to be seen many such Rarities, besides Skeletons and Dissections. The Professors have annual Stipends, and make a good profit by their Pupils; but the Students have no Endowments, except some Privileges. They are very numerous, and are a great advantage to the Town; Here is also a large Trade maintained by the making of Woollen-Cloaths. The small branch of the *Rhine*, which retains its name, passes through this City, and is the chief Channel in it. *Leyden* was Besieg'd by the *Spaniards* in 1574. and very well defended by the Citizens for five Months, at the end of which it was reliev'd. It is fortified with good Walls besides Ramparts, Bulwarks and large Ditches, and stands at the distance of 20 miles from *Harlem* to the South, 22 from *Amsterdam* to the South-west, 15 from *Rotterdam* to the North, and 27 from *Utrecht* to the West.

The *HAGUE*, call'd in Dutch, *'sGravenhague*, (that is, *The Grave of the Earl*) in Latin *Hagæ Comitatus*, is seated about 8 or 9 miles from *Leyden* to the South-west, about 6 from *Delft* to the North-east, 14 from *Rotterdam* to the North-west, and not above 2 miles from the little Sea-Town *Schievling*. It glories in being the principal Village of *Europe*, for it is not wall'd, tho' otherwise in all respects a City, being govern'd by its own Magistrates, and enjoying all the other Privileges, except sending Deputies to the States, as any City in *Holland* does. It is the Seat of the Princes, and the assemblies of the States General, of the Provincial States of *Holland*, and of the Council of State; as also of the supreme Courts of Judicature; and is in general the place where all the publick Affairs of the Common-wealth are transacted; where all the Foreign Ministers receive their Audience, and commonly reside: All which causes a continual Concourse of People from all Parts, and very much enriches the Town, which is a neat built place: The Streets are large and adorn'd with Trees; the Houses are all of Brick and very handsom; those that stand near the Court, and in that part of the Town toward the Wood, are very stately, and Inhabited by Persons of Quality. The Palace, containing the Prince's Lodgings, the Chambers of the States General and Provincial, Council of State, &c. is a handsom Building, making two Angles of a Square, in the middle whereof stands a fair large Hall, not unlike that of *Westminster* in form, and in respect to the Shops in it all round, as also for the Standards taken from the Enemies, hanging up in it, but far short of it in largeness, being not so big as the *Guild-hall* of *London*. Adjoining to the Court stands a very noble House of Stone, built by Prince *Maurice* of *Nassau*, and bears his Name: The whole Court is Moted round, and Guards continually kept at every Gate: On the North-side is a large square Pond call'd the *Viver*, and on the West the Court opens to a large Plain, that is surrounded with fine Houses. The Town is large and very populous. The great Church is a stately old Building. That of a round Figure, without any Pillars, is a neat beautiful Structure, and not of many years standing: The Town-house is built of Stone, but old and not very remarkable.

The Situation of this Town is very pleasant; for on one side lye lovely Meadows; and on the other a large and pleasant Wood, in the middle whereof stands a House of Pleasure of the Prince's, having



having behind it very beautiful Gardens, and in it, besides the stately Lodgings, a very large dancing Room with a high Roof, rising into a Cupola, and at the top of it a Lanthorn, in which is a Gallery for Musick: The Walls and Cielings all round adorned with Paintings of the best Masters, representing the Actions of *Henry Fredick* (the Father of his present Majesty) by whose Widow this House was built. On the North-side of the Town lies a Walk, paved all the way with Bricks, and shaded by Lime-Trees, planted on each side for 2 miles in length, which leads to the little Village *Schievling*; from whence his late Majesty King *Charles* took Shipping to his Glorious and Happy Restauration.

About 12 or 14 miles South from the *Hague* stands *Hunslaerdyke*, where is a stately Palace of the Prince's, adorn'd with very fine Gardens; to which he often retired, when the Affairs of the State did not require his presence at the *Hague*. And in the mid-way between the *Hague* and *Delft* stands the Village of *Ryswick*, and near it the Palace of His Majesty which has been render'd Famous, by being the Place of Treaty of the late Happy and Glorious Peace. It was some time call'd *Newburgh-house*, because a Duke of *Newburgh* laid the Foundation; but his Highness *Fredrick-Henry*, Prince of *Orange*, built it. It is a handsom Structure, and adorn'd with good Gardens.

*DELFT*, *Delphi* or *Delfsum*, is pleasantly seated among Meadows, at the distance of 5 or 6 miles from the *Hague* to the South-east, and about 8 from *Rotterdam* to the North-west, and is a very neat and well-built City, the streets large and even, with Canals and Trees, as have most of the Cities of *Holland*: It is a silent Town, and inhabited by wealthy Merchants that have retired from Business. The Trade of the Place is chiefly for a sort of Earthen Ware, in imitation of *China*: They had formerly a great Trade in Brewing, as also in Weaving Cloth; but that is remov'd. This City being one of the Chambers of the *East-India Company*, the fine Goods of those Countries, especially Porcellane or China Earthen Ware, is a main Trade of the Inhabitants. The Old and the New Churches are large and fair Buildings; in the latter is to be seen a noble Monument, erected to the Memory of *William I.* Prince of *Orange*, who was barbarously assassinated in this City. The Stadthouse is a handsom Building. Here is kept the Arsenal of the State, which undoubtedly is well stor'd with all War-like Necessaries: The Magazine of Powder belonging to it accidentally blew up in 1654. and destroy'd a great part of the Town; besides which, it had been almost totally consumed by Fire in 1536. so that the present Buildings are but of late Structure: It is a good large City, wall'd and moted, and well inhabited.

*ROTTERDAM*, *Roterodamum*, may be reckon'd the second City of *Holland* for Trade, tho' it be but the seventh in the Convention of the States: It is seated on the North-side of the River *Maes* (which is there very broad, and makes a good Haven) at the distance of about 7 Leagues from the Sea, and 5 from the *Bril* to the East, 8 miles from *Delft* to the South-east, about 30 from *Amsterdam* to the South, near as many from *Utrecht* to the South-west, and about 15 from *Dort* to the West. It is a large, exceeding Populous and well-traded City: The convenience of the Haven is very extraordinary, for by the Canals that run through the Streets, Ships of great Burden can come in and unlade at the Merchants Doors; which, with certain Privileges they

enjoy here, hath made it very much encrease, even within 20 or 30 years past. The number of English Ships that use this City is much greater than those that come to *Amsterdam*, this Port being exceedingly more convenient for them than that: An Exchange is held here, where every day the Merchants meet; the Structure of it is but ordinary, and doth not deserve a Description; but the great Church, dedicated to *S. Lawrence*, is a stately Building, and hath a high Tower, wherein hang very melodious Chimes; the Stadthouse is a fair Structure of Stone, and the great Stone-bridge in the Marketplace is very spacious and neat; on it stands a stately Statue of *Brafs*, of the Famous *Desid. Erasmus*, a Native of that City, and near the great Church is still to be seen the House wherein he was born, with his Picture, and an Inscription in *Latin*, *Spanish* and *Dutch*, over the Door, intimating so much. The Houses here are of Brick, but seem older than those of the other Towns we have named; the Streets are also broad and well paved, but by reason of the multiplicity of Business (for every Canal is full of Ships) cannot be so neatly kept as at *Amsterdam*, (where the Ships lye without the Town) and other places, where less Business is transacted.

The *Brill* is a neat City, well built, reasonably populous, and of some Trade; it is seated on an Island, nam'd *The Land of Voorn*, and hath a convenient Haven at the Mouth of the *Maes*, about 5 leagues below *Rotterdam*, and 30 leagues from *Harwich* in *England*, whence the Pacquet-boat uses to come weekly hither; but the Port of *Helvoet* being found more convenient, they come not hither now. The Buildings here likewise are of Brick, and tho' old are very neat, and the Streets large handsom, especially the great one: The great Church is of Stone, and hath a large Tower which is a good Landmark to Sailers. The Walls are strong, and made very pleasant by Rows of Trees planted on them. This was one of the Cautionary Towns pawn'd to Queen *Elizabeth*. for the Assistance she gave the *Dutch* against *Spain*, and was kept by an *English* Garrison till King *James I.* restor'd it, 30 years after.

*Helvoet Sluce*, is a small Sea-Town, with a very convenient Haven, seated on the South-side of the same Island, and not above 3 miles distant from the *Brill*. The Town is not at all considerable, except for the weekly Arrival of the *English* Packquet boat, and that His present Majesty set Sail from hence, to his happy Expedition into *England*, in the year 1688.

Not above a League Southward of the *Land of Voorn*, lies the small Island *Goree*, so nam'd from *goed* and *Reed*, which signifie a good Haven for ships; its chief Town, of the same Name, was formerly a place of great Trade, but is now not at all considerable.

Eastward from *Goree* lies the Island of *Overflakke*, or *Overlackee*, which is of much larger extent than that of *Goree*, being about 15 miles long and 5 miles broad; and hath on it many Villages and good Towns, the chief of which is named *Somersdyck*.

*DORT*, or *Dordrecht*, *Dordrecht*, is a very ancient City, and the first in Dignity of those that compose the States of *Holland*; also the Capital of a small Country round it, call'd the *Bailiwick of Dort*, and by some *South Holland*, is seated upon the River *Meuwe* (which, as we have said, falls into the *Maes*) at the distance of 15 or 16 miles from *Rotterdam* to the South-east, about 20 from *Breda* to the North, and 40 from *Amsterdam* to the South. It is strongly situated, being



an Island between the *Meruwe* and *Maes* on the North, and a large Lake call'd the *Bies-Bos* on the South and East. The City is large and populous, the Houses of Brick and very high, and the Streets broad and very neat: The chief Church hath a high Steeple, from whence that of *Breda* may be seen. Our English Merchants enjoy great Privileges here, as being our Staple for Cloth: This City is also the Staple for *Rhenish* Wines, whereof the Merchants have very great Stocks; as also of Corn, Wood and other Commodities, brought down the *Rhine* and the *Maes*. *Dort* boasts of being a Maiden Town, and never taken by any Enemy, tho' often besieg'd, particularly by the Duke of *Brabant*, in 1304, whom they repulsed and forced to return home. It hath long enjoyed the Privilege of coining Money. The City is also noted for the famous Synod held in it, in the year 1619, for Reconciling the Points of Religion then in Debate between the *Arminians* and *Calvinists*: The Room wherein it was held is still shewn, with the Seats in it, as they then stood.

This Bailiwick of *Dort* was made an Island in the Year, 1421, at what time a Tempest drove the Waters up the *Maes* and the *Meruwe*, with that Violence that it overflow'd the Banks, and swallowed a great Tract of Land that lay between *Dort* and *Brabant*, with seventy two Villages and one hundred thousand Persons.

*Geertruydenberg*, so named from a certain Saint *Gerrude*, who died in 664, is a very strong fortified Town, on the Frontiers of *Holland* towards *Brabant*, esteemed of that Consequence formerly, that the Earls of *Holland* used to be bound by Oath to keep it, as the Dukes of *Brabant* were to recover it, since the Year 1213, that the former took it. The supreme Jurisdiction of it was conferr'd upon Prince *Maurice*, by the States, in 1611, since when it hath been part of the Patrimony of the Illustrious House of *Orange*. It is seated on the South Side of the Lake call'd *Bies Bos*, where the River *Dong* falls into it; which, tho' narrow above, is here so increased, that it will receive Ships of good Burden; and is distant 12 miles from *Dort* to the South-east, 10 from *Breda* to the North, and here 20 from the *Bosch* to the West. This Town is very strongly fortified, and hath also the Advantageous situation common in this Country, *viz.* very low and marshy Grounds round it; notwithstanding which, it was taken by the States, in 1573, and by the *Spaniards* in 1588, and in 1595, retaken by Prince *Maurice*, and ever since been possessed by the States General. About 15 miles Westward from hence stands

*Klundert* or *Cundert*, a strong Fortification belonging to the Prince of *Orange* since 1583. It was formerly call'd the *Nieuwaert*, and the Branch of the *Roo Vaert* was a good Road for Ships. Five miles from hence stands

*Willemsstadt*, a strong but small Town, built in 1553, by Order of *William* Prince of *Orange*, from whom it had its Name, and on whom the Lordship of it was conferr'd by the States. It is seated upon the Water nam'd the *Roo Vaert*, that parts the Island, call'd in general the *Land van Vorn*, from the Continent, and serves to secure the Trade between *Holland* and *Zealand*: It is defended by a Wall with seven Bastions and a double Ditch, besides other Fortifications.

*Heusden* is another well-fortified Frontier of *Hol-*

land; it stands on a Stream, that running out of the *Maes* forms a little Island call'd the *Heimerder Waert*, at the distance of 12 miles from *Geertruydenberg* to the East, and about 7 or 8 from the *Bosch* to the North-west. It is an ancient Town, and was subject to its own Lords for 500 years, by whom sold to the Duke of *Brabant*, who gave it to the Earl of *Holland*; but being afterwards claim'd by others, gave occasion to grievous Wars. A lamentable accident happen'd here in the Year 1680, for the Magazine of Powder blew up in the Night-time, suppos'd to have been fir'd by Lightning, and destroyed great part of the Castle and the neighbouring Street, shatter'd the whole Town, and kill'd near two hundred People.

*Crevecoeur*, a little Town strongly fortified, stands upon the *Maes*, 5 miles from *Heusden* to the East, and not above 3 from the *Bosch*, and at the most extreme East-part of *Holland*.

The *Bosch* or *Bolduc*, *Breda*, and *Bergen op Zoom*, belongs to the States, but being all seated in *Brabant* are already described in our Account of that Province.

*Louvesteine* Castle is seated on the most Western part of the *Bomeer Waert*, at the confluence of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, and distance of 8 or 9 miles from *Heusden* to the N. W. It is a strong place, but chiefly remarkable on the account of the Faction against the Prince of *Orange* (his present Majesty of *Great-Britain*) who about 30 or 40 years ago using to assemble in it, gave occasion to the whole Party's being commonly call'd by its Name.

*Worcum*, an ancient and strong fortified Town, is seated on the South-side of the *Wael*, just over against *Louvesteine*, being parted from it by the *Maes*, which falls into the *Wael* betwixt them: It was sometime subject to the Duke of *Cleeve*, afterwards to the Earl of *Horne*, and in the year 1600, sold to the States by the Widow of the last Count; who was beheaded at *Brussels* by the Duke d' *Alva*.

*Gorcum* is seated at the mouth of the *Ling*, and on the North-side of the *Wael*, not above 3 miles from *Worcum*, and about 15 East from *Dort*. It is a neat well-built Town and very strong, as well by reason of its situation as strong Fortifications; and is also a Place of Wealth, having a good Trade by Corn, Cheese, Butter, &c. brought down the *Ling* to its Market, and by the Inhabitants carried to other places: The Church hath a high Tower, from whence may be seen 22 wall'd Towns, besides a great number of Villages. The Town is reasonably large, and hath a Senate and Magistracy of its own.

*Vianen* is a wall'd Town, formerly subject to its own Lords, seated on the South-side of the River *Leck*, near the Borders of the Province of *Utrecht*, about 8 miles North from *Gorcum*, and as many South from *Utrecht*: It is pleasantly seated and a very neat Town, and hath a Castle and a stately high Tower.

*Schoonhoven*, so call'd for its fine Gardens, *Schoon* in *Dutch* signifying Fair or Clean, and *Hof* a Garden-House, stands on the North-side of the *Leck*, about 12 miles West from *Vianen*, and 15 East from *Rotterdam*; it was so strong, that it was able to repel the French, who endeavoured to take it in 1672, since when it hath been also better fortified. It is a very pleasant Town, and hath an old Castle, built in 1312.

Just over against it stands *Newport*, formerly a rich and populous Town, but now not considerable.



*Goude*, corruptly call'd *Ter Gou*, is a fair large City, the sixth in Dignity of those that compose the States of *Holland*, and seated on the small River *Gouwe* and the *Iffel*, which about 10 miles below falls into the *Maes*, at the distance of about 12 miles from *Schoonhoven* to the North-West, as many from *Rotterdam* to the North-East, and 24 from *Amsterdam* to the South. It was founded in 1272, but suffer'd much by Fire about a hundred years after, and by Wars in 1420. and again totally consumed by Fire in 1438. but being rebuilt, is now an exceeding neat Place, and more than ordinary clean, by means of the Flux of the Tide up the *Iffel* into the Channels in the Streets, which carry away all their Ordure. The Houses are of Brick, and tho' old are very neat; the Market-place is very spacious, on it stands the *Stadhuis*, and near it the great Church; which being burnt by Lightning in 1552. hath been at vast Expence repaired, and is now a very stately Building; it is especially remarkable for its painted Glass-Windows, which are thought to exceed any others in being. This City enjoys a healthful Air, tho' it be seated upon a moorish Ground, and the Country about is so low, that it may be easily overflow'd by opening their Sluces: Besides which, it is secur'd by Walls and a broad Ditch, and therefore reckon'd a very strong Post and a Security to that side of the Country.

*Naerden*, a small City, but very strongly fortified, is seated near the *Zuyder-zee*, 22 miles from *Goude* to the North-East, 15 from *Utrecht* to the North, and about 12 from *Amsterdam* to the East. It stands in low marshy Grounds, and hath of long time been a considerable Post; in 1481. it was taken by the People of *Utrecht*: But in the same year, the *Nardeners* not only regain'd their City, but obtain'd so signal a Victory over their Enemies, that with the Booty they gain'd, a Tower was erected to commemorate it. In 1572. *Frederick of Toledo*, the Spanish General, in revenge for their having submitted to the Prince of *Orange*, summoned all the Inhabitants into the Market-place, and caused his Soldiers to cut them in pieces, and burnt down the Town: Which barbarous Action encreas'd the Hatred of the *Hollanders* to the *Spaniards*, and made them hold out their Towns the more vigorously afterwards. It was taken by the *French* in 1672. and regain'd in 1673. And it being a place of great Consequence, as serving to secure *Amsterdam*, the States have lately bestowed great Cost in Fortifying it, the old Walls being pulled down, and new ones built of Brick, together with Ravelins, Half-Moons, Counterscarps, double Ditches, &c. so that it is now a regular Fortification, and as strong as any. This Town stood formerly more Northward, but was swallowed up by the Encroachment of the *Zuyder-zee*, whereof some Remains are still to be seen at Low-water.

*Muyden*, a small wall'd Town, seated upon the *Vecht*, where it falls into the *Zuyder-zee*, in the Midway between *Naerden* and *Amsterdam*, was made a strong Post in the late War, when the *French* were at *Utrecht*; as was also

*Wesep*, another small Town on the *Vecht*, about 2 or 3 miles distant from *Muyden* to the South.

And now having Travell'd round, and brought the Reader back to *Amsterdam*, we must proceed to *North-Holland* or *Waterland*, which is divided from *Amstelland* by the 'tY, Ye or Ya, call'd a River, but may be more properly esteem'd a Branch of the *Zuyder-zee* or *South-Sea*, from which it begins at the

*Pampus*, about 3 miles West from *Muyden*, in a Channel of about half a mile broad; which breadth it continues to *Amsterdam*, but grows soon after twice so broad, and receives the *Saen*, out of *North-Holland* and the *Sporen* from *Haerlem*, and then passes Northward to *Beverwick*, &c.

*North-Holland* in general is commonly understood by the Name of *West-Friesland*, though but one part of it, viz. that to the North-East (wherein stand *Horn*, *Enchusen* and *Medenblick*) be the ancient *Frisia Occidentalis*. In this Country stand 7 of the 18 Cities that have Voices in the Provincial State, viz. Those three new mention'd, and *Munickdam*, *Edam*, *Purmerent* and *Alckmaer*.

*Munickendam*, so named from the small River *Monick* that passes through it, is seated on a small Bay of the *Zuyder-zee*, about 8 miles North from *Amsterdam*, and 3 South from *Edam*. It is a small Town of some Antiquity, and defended but by a Rampart, and in some places by a Wall.

*Saenredam*, or *Sardam*, seated on the T, at the Mouth of the small River *Saen*, about 7 miles North-West from *Amsterdam*, tho' but a Village, deserves mentioning rather than some of their Cities, being so remarkable for Ship-building, that 'tis commonly said of this Town, the Shipwrights in it will undertake to build so many Ships of War in a year as there are days in it. By this Trade the place is much enrich'd and encreas'd. The old Town stands below the Dam of the River, whence it hath its Name: To which hath been since added a long row of Buildings on both sides the River beyond the Dam, which is call'd the *New-Town*, out of which Ships are haul'd over the Dam upon Rowers.

*Edam* or *Tedam*, is seated at a little distance from the *Zuyder-zee*, to which it has a Channel or Haven, 3 miles from *Munickendam* to the North, and 10 from *Hoorn* to the South, It is a small Town, but is noted for Building of Ships, and making excellent Cheese.

*Purmerent*, a good neat Town, fortified with a Rampart and Ditch, is seated about 5 miles from *Edam* to the West, and 12 from *Amsterdam* to the North, formerly belonging to the Lords of *Egmond*, who sold it to the States in the year 1590.

The Land between *Edam* and *Purmerent* was formerly a great Lake, but by the Industry and Skill of the Inhabitants it was Drain'd, and is at present a fruitful and pleasant Country, bearing still the name of *Purmer*: And Southward from *Purmerent* lies the *Beemster*, a great Lake also before the year 1612, when after four years Labour and vast Expence (the Banks by which the Water that was thrown out by their Mills having been broken, the Water returned, after the Work was half done) it was made dry Land, and is now so planted with Gardens, Orchards, Rows of Trees and fertile Enclosures, that Sir *William Temple* says, it is the pleasantest Summer Landship he ever saw. Its extent contains 7090 Acres, besides the Highways, and the Dikes that surround and cross it in several Places. Of the like nature are the *Wormer*, which lies South of it, the *Schermer* and the *Heer Huygen Waert*, to the West of the *Beemster*, as is also the *Zype* in the most North part of this Province; which last is defended from the Sea by a vast Mole, built of great Beams of Timber driven into the Ground, and the Distances fill'd with Stones.

*Alckmaer*, is seated a little beyond the *Schermer*, at the distance of 13 miles from *Purmerent* to the North-



West, and about 20 from *Haerlem* to the North. The Buildings are beautiful, and the Streets even and neat, the Houses generally furnished with Gardens, and the Town surrounded with Meadows; and at the end of the Town stands a very pleasant Grove, or Wood of Trees, planted in regular order; all which make this Place esteemed one of the pleasantest in these Countries. The Inhabitants are enriched by the great quantity of Butter and Cheese they receive from the vast Herds of Kine fed in the Neighbouring Pastures. It is wall'd round, and was strong enough to resist the *Spaniards*, who endeavour'd to take it in the *Netherland War*.

*Hoerne*, is a good large, pleasant and rich City, with a convenient Port on the *Zuyder-zee*, at the distance of 15 miles from *Alcmar* to the East, 20 from *Amsterdam*, and 10 from *Edam* to the North; it is surrounded with broad Dykes for its Security, large Pasture Grounds for its Profit, and fine Gardens and Walks for its Pleasure. The Trade of this Place consists chiefly in Butter and Cheese, whereof they export great quantities into *Spain*, *Portugal*, and other parts, especially at their annual Fair in the Month of *May*.

*Enchusen*, is seated also on the *Zuyder-zee*, in the most Eastern part of the Peninsle of *West-Friezland* at the distance of 10 miles from *Hoerne* to the North-East, and as many from *Medenblick* to the South-East, as also 30 miles from *Alcmaer* to the East. It is a fair, neat and large City, with a capacious Port, from whence great Fleets yearly sail to the *Baltick* and other parts, by which, as also by their Herring-Fishing, building of Ships, and refining of Salt from *Britany* in *France*, the Inhabitants are much Enriched. The Buildings are mostly of Brick, for being formerly of Wood they suffered much by Fire, whereof of late years no Wooden Houses have been erected. The Steeple of the great Church is remarkably high, considering the Moorishness of the Soil whereon the City stands, which is thereby secur'd, as well as by the Ramparts and other strong Fortifications about it.

*Medenblick* or *Medemblick*, is one of the most ancient Cities of *North-Holland* and formerly the Metropolis of it, but *Enchusen* hath out-stript it in Grandeur, for this is but a small City. It is seated on the *Zuyder-zee*, in the North-West part of *West-Friezland*, 10 miles from *Enchusen* to the North-West, as many from *Hoerne* to the North, and about 25 from *Alcmaer* to the East. It hath a very large and commodious

Haven, and a Castle of very ancient Structure. The Banks are here more strong and large than any in the Country, for there being nothing to break the Sea quite from *der Schelling* and *Flieland* Islands to the Shoar, the Waters beat violently upon it when the Northerly Winds blow. The Country about affords good Pasturage. *Medenblick* had formerly a Territory depending on it, govern'd by an Officer call'd *Dyck-grave*.

Cross the Mouth of the *Zuyder-zee* lye a row of Islands, the first of which named the *Texel* or *Tessell* is disjoined from the North Cape of *North-Holland* but by a very narrow Channel; nor are the Distance between the rest much larger. The three named *Texel*, *Flieland*, and *der Schelling*, are reckoned part of *North-Holland*.

*Texel*, is a small Island of not above 4 or 5 miles extent, but very fruitful, affording especially good Pasturage; it is defended from the fury of the Ocean partly by the Sand-hills, and partly by strong Banks. Here is a large fair Town, besides many Villages and a strong Fort to command the Passage into the *Zuyder-zee*.

*Flieland* or *Vlieland*, lies North-West from the *Texel*; it is about 10 miles long, but very narrow. It hath only two Villages, and is not considerable but for abundance of Muscles taken there.

*Schelling*, lies next to *Flieland*, and is longer and broader than that. Here are five Villages, the chief whereof containing near 1000 Houses was burnt together with above 100 Sail of Merchant Ships, by our *English Fleet* under the Command of *Sir Robert Holmes*, on the 7th of *August*, 1666.

These Islands, together with some Banks of Sand break the Assaults of the Ocean, and make two good Harbours denominated from the two first.

Southward from the *Texel*, and in the midway between that and *Medenblick*, lies another small Island call'd the *Wierings*, which hath several good Villages and a rich and fertile Soil.

*Sir William Temple* is of opinion, That the *Zuyder-zee* hath been made by some great Inundation, there being no mention made of it in ancient Authors; and the great Shoals of flat Sands that are spread almost all over it, and the Row of Islands that lie like the broken Remains of a continued Coast, together with the name of *West-Friezland*, do give good reason to believe, that the outward part, at least, was anciently a continued Country from *North-Holland* to *Friezland*.

## C H A P. XII.

### ZEALAND, *Zealandia*.

**ZEALAND**, so call'd from its situation in the Sea, or as others say, so nam'd by the *Danes*, (who formerly used to infest these Coasts) in memory of their principal Island of the same Name, is seated between *Holland* on the North, *Flanders* on the South, *Brabant* on the East, and the *German Sea* on the West. It is composed of several Islands, which are usually divided into two Districts, called the *Beofter*, [or the Eastern] *Schelde*, and the *Bewester* [or Western] *Schelde*, from the two different Channels by which that River falls into the Sea. Which Division is Political and made for the more easie Government of them, each District having one grand Magistrate in the nature of a Justiciary, with large Power to punish Vagabonds and Criminals out of the Jurisdiction

of the Cities; but this Jurisdiction hath been much restrain'd, and therefore this Division less regarded: And Geographers now only mention the Islands as they are situate beyond the *Ooster-Schelde*, or between that and the *Western*.

Those beyond, or North of the *Ooster-Schelde*, are *Schouwen*, *Duyveland*, *Tolen* and *Oresand*. *Goree*, and *Overflackee* (already mention'd in *Holland*) were formerly reckoned part of *Zealand*.

Those between the *Ooster* and the *Western Schelde* are *Walcheren*, *North-Beveland*, *South-Beveland*, and *Wolferdyke*.

These Islands were formerly subject to the same Earls with *Holland*, (but with the enjoyment of their own proper Laws and Customs) and with that fell to the



the House of *Burgundy*, and afterwards associated with the other Provinces in the Union of *Utrecht* (as we have already shewn) and have ever since been a considerable part of the Territories of the States General; for by reason of the situation of *Zealand*, the Inhabitants are much enriched by Fishery and Navigation; They Trade into all Foreign Parts, especially the *West-Indies* and *France*. They have few or no Manufacturies, but have an excellent way of boiling and purifying the Salt they fetch from *France*.

The Land here lies extream low, so that they are forced to be at great expence in maintaining the Banks to keep out the Sea. But then the Soil is fertile and produces very good Wheat and excellent Pasture; also *Madder* for Dying; and *Colewort*, the Seed whereof yields them good Profit. The Air is not so wholsom as in the neighbouring Countries, for by reason of the noisom Fogs and Vapours arising from many Pools of standing Waters and the neighbouring Sea, it disposes to Agues and Fevers, and other such Diseases.

The extent of *Zealand* is not easie to be computed, because of the intervening Waters, but reckoning Water and all, from the most Northern Banks of *Schouwen* to the Southern Shore of *Zuyd Beveland*, is about 20 miles, and from the most Eastern part of *Walcheren* to the Town of *Tolen*, near 30 miles. In this Province are 8 Wall'd Towns and 102 Vielages; the chief whereof are these, viz.

In *Walcheren* the chief Island of *Zealand*, situate the most South-West: For Trade, Wealth, number of Inhabitants, and splendor of its Cities and Villages, much surpassing all the rest.

*Middleburg*, Cap.  
*Vlissingen*.  
*Armmuyden*.  
*Ter Vere*.

In *Schouwen*, situate North-East from *Walcheren*,

*Zirczee*.  
*Browers-haven*.  
*Bommene*.

In *Duyveland*, situate on the West-part of the same Continent with *Schouwen*, and divided from that by a small River only.

*Oost duyveland*.

In *Tolen*, situate South from *Duyveland*, and North-East from *South-Beveland*.

*Tolen*.

In *North-Beveland*, situate South from *Schouwen*, and East from *Walcheren*.

*Cats*.

In *South-Beveland*, situate between *Walcheren* to the South-East, *Flanders* to the North, *Brabant* to the West, and *Tolen*, *North-Beveland* and *Wolfordyck* to the North.

*Tergoes*.  
*Romerswall*.

In *Wolferdyck* a small Island, situate between the 2 *Bevelands*.

*Osterlant* and 2 or 3 other Villages.

**MIDDLEBURG**, the Capital City of *Zealand*, is situate in the Island of *Walcheren*, at the distance of 40 miles from *Rotterdam* to the South-West, 42 from *Breda* to the West, and 25 from *Bruges* to the North-East, in the Latitude of 51 deg. 35 min. and Long. of 22 deg. 50 min. and is a large well-built and populous City, the Streets large and neat, and the publick Buildings stately, especially the *Stadthuyse*, which is adorn'd with curious Statues. The Churches, whereof here, are about twenty, are very fine; the highest Tower is exceeding costly and beautiful. Its Haven hath been made very convenient by a great Channel cut from a little Arm of the Sea, that running out at *Armmuyden* makes a little

Island, and falls in again at *Rammekins*, from the middle of which Branch this Channel is derived and made to bring up Ships into the Streets of the Town, by which means the City hath been exceedingly enrich'd by Trade, especially by the Staple of *French*, *Spanish* and *Portugal* Wines settl'd here. In the new Erection of Bishopricks which King *Philip II.* attempted, this City was made one, and the Abbey of *St. Nicholas* the Seat, but it was soon alter'd and made the Place of Assembly of the States of this Province, the College of its Admiralty, its Mint, and other publick Offices, *Middleburg* is strongly fortified with a good Wall, large and deep Ditches, and a Counterscarp.

*Armmuyden*, so call'd from the small River *Arne* that runs from hence to *Middleburg*, is at present but a small Wall'd Town, seated about 3 miles from *Middleburg* to the East, at the Mouth of that little Arm of the Sea above-mention'd, which afforded it formerly an extraordinary good Haven, and the Town was exceedingly enrich'd by the many Merchant-Ships that frequented it: But the Sands have so choaked it up, that for many years past Ships cannot enter, and therefore the Trade is now quite decayed, and the present subsistence of the Inhabitants, is by the Boiling and Purifying Salt. It was formerly a Lordship, but in the last Century, purchased by the City of *Middleburg*, and is now a Dependent on that.

*Rammekins*, call'd in Dutch *Zeburg*, is a strong Fort, seated at the Mouth of the Harbour of *Middleburg*, at the distance of about 3 miles from that City to the South-East, and as many from *Flushing* to the East. The Creek whereon it stands is a secure Retreat for Shipping; and to the Land-side it is surrounded with pleasant Meadows and many Villages. This Fort was one of the Cautionary Towns deliver'd to Queen *Elizabeth*.

*Flushing*, call'd by the Dutch *Vlissingen*, is seated in the most Southern part of the Island, at the distance of about 3 miles from *Middleburg*; and tho formerly but a small Place at which a Ferry was establish'd to carry Passengers to *Flanders*, (which is just over against it, at about half a League's distance) is at present a considerable City, well-built, and a Place of good Trade by means of its excellent Port. The Buildings are not quite so good as those of *Middleburg*, nor the Streets so broad, but the *Stadthuyse* is a very stately modern Building. It was first Wall'd about 140 years ago, but upon the Erection of this Republick it was very strongly fortified, as being a Place of great consequence. It was formerly subject to its own Lords of the Family of the *Borsals*, of whom it was purchas'd by the Prince of *Orange* about the year 1581. who hath still the Nomination of their Magistrates. This was also one of the Cautionary Towns deliver'd to Queen *Elizabeth* in 1585. and restor'd by King *James* in 1616.

*Ter Vere* is a strong fortified Town with two good Harbours, seated on the North-side of the Island, at the distance of three Miles from *Middleburg*, and hardly so much from *Armmuyden* to the North. It hath been a place of good Trade, especially for the *Scotch* Trade, the Staple of which was fix'd here, but is not now so considerable. It is govern'd by its own Magistrates, and is (as I have said) well fortified, having three strong Bulwarks and a broad Ditch. The Sea hath often assaulted and threaten'd the Ruin of this Town, as it actually did its Tower that stood on the North-side of the Port, in the year 1630. This Town is also subject to the Prince of *Orange*.



*Zierzee*, or *Zierzee*, the chief City of the Island of *Schoonen*, is seated on the Channel which divides *Schoonen* from *Duveland*, at the distance of about 15 miles from *Middleburg* to the North-east, and as many from the *Briel* to the South. It is esteem'd the ancientest City of *Zeeland*, and is a place of Trade, having a good Haven by means of a Channel from the Sea, by which they receive Salt from *France*, and export Madder in great quantities; though the Harbour, by being somewhat choak'd with Sand, be less convenient than formerly. It is a large place and hath several good Buildings, especially the great Church called *de Munster*, which is a very beautiful Structure: The Walls are old, but by reason of the low Grounds about, which are easily laid under Water, the place is strong enough, and did actually sustain a Siege of the *Spaniards* in 1575. for 8 Months, and at last obtain'd good Terms.

*Browerhaven*, so call'd from the great quantities of Beer brought hither from *Delft* and other places, and distributed to all the Towns in this Province, is seated on the North-side of the Island over against *Goree*, at the distance of 5 miles from *Zierzee*; and was formerly a place of good Trade, and therefore Wall'd, increas'd in Buildings, and govern'd by its Magistrates; but it is now much declin'd, and subsists chiefly by Fishing and Agriculture.

*Bommenee* stands near the Sea, about a mile Eastward of *Browerhaven*, over against *Goree* and the West part of *Overflackee*, and is a very strong Fortrefs, being encompass'd with a Wall and a deep Ditch, fill'd by the Sea, besides other Fortifications.

*Ost-duveland*, q. d. in the East of *Duveland* (so nam'd from the great numbers of Doves and Pigeons found in this Country) is a Village only; as are also *Oudekerke*, *Nieuwekerke*, *Vianen*, *Capele*, *Swaneburg*, &c. situate also in *Duveland*.

*Tolen* or *Ter Tolen*, the chief City of the Island of the same Name, is seated on the Channel call'd *Het Slack*, which makes *Tolen* an Island and divides it from *Brabant*, and is distant about 10 or 12 miles from *Zierzee* to the South-east, and 3 or 4 from *Bergen-op-zoom* to the North-west. It was formerly the Seat of one of the Custom-houses of the Earls of *Zeeland*, whence it had its name, and is at present a well-fortified and strong Place, capable of resisting a powerful Enemy.

This Island is but small, and hath no other considerable Town in it.

*Cats* and *Colyns Plaat* are the chief Towns of North-*Beveland*; the first seated on the Eastern Shoar, and the second on the Southern, but neither of them are considerable enough to deserve a particular Description. This Island was formerly exceeding pleasant, but by an Inundation in 1532. the greatest part of it

was overwhelm'd, and therein the City *Cortgeen* (at that time a place of note) with many Villages destroy'd. The Inhabitants have recover'd a great deal of the Land in the North and East part, whereon stand the Towns above-mention'd, but cannot regain their ancient State, the place being at present not at all considerable.

*Oresand* or *Muersand*, reckon'd one of the Islands of *Zeeland*, is a very small Country lying North-west from North-*Beveland*, and divided from that but by a narrow Channel, hath no Town in it worth describing.

*Westerfdyck*, another small Island of about 5 miles long, but not above one mile broad, is situate between North and South *Beveland*, and contains only 3 or 4 Villages, nam'd *Westerland*, *Oosterland*, *Hangerfdyck* &c.

South *Beveland* may be reckon'd the largest of all the Islands of *Zeeland*, tho' it be at present of less extent than formerly, the Sea having encroach'd upon it several times, especially in 1532. when the Town and most of the Lordship of *Borsales* was swallow'd up. The length of this Island is about 24 or 25 miles; but all the Eastern part being overflow'd, it cannot be reckon'd above 15 miles, and its breadth 8 or 9. The Soil of it is in some places Woody, but the rest produces very good Corn and Fruit. The chief Town here is

*Ter Goes*, seated on the South-side of the Island, 12 miles East from *Middleburg*, and 15 West from *Bergen-op-zoom*. It is a reasonable large City, neatly built and well inhabited; the chief Church was burnt down in 1618. but was quickly rebuilt, and is now a stately Structure. Here are three Market-places, a Grammar-school and three Hospitals, all fair and well built. This Town was endow'd with large Privileges in 1530. wall'd round about in the year 1340. and afterwards strongly fortified by the States in 1565. It hath a Channel to the Sea, by which Vessels of smaller Burden come up to the Town.

There are many large and populous Villages, as also several fine Mansion-houses of Gentlemen in South-*Beveland*; but those containing nothing very remarkable, we must omit them to speak a little of

*Romerfwael*, formerly one of the three chief Towns of this Island, and enjoy'd large Privileges; but by the Misfortunes of six Inundations and one Conflagration which all happen'd in ten years time; about the middle of the last Century was so reduc'd, that though many Attempts were made for its Restoration, the Remains of the whole Town were sold in the year, 1631. for no more than 90 Pounds *Flemish* or 60 Pounds *Sterling*. It stands on the Banks of the *Ofter-Scheld* 10 miles from *Ter Goes* to the East.

## C H A P. XIII.

### UTRECHT, *Ultrajectina Ditio*.

THE Province of *Utrecht* is bounded on the North by *Holland* and the *Zuyder-see*, on the South by part of *Holland* and part of *Guederland*, on the East by *Guederland*, and on the West by *Holland*, containing in extent about 20 miles both in length and breadth. The Land here is higher and therefore fitter, for Agriculture, and the Country much plear-

anter than those we have been speaking of: It produces plenty of good Corn, and is replenish'd with fine Gardens and Orchards. An account hath already been given of its having been subject to its Bishop for several Ages, and of its Engagement with the other Provinces in the Union made in its Metropolis; since when it hath been always part of that State.



States, but with the same Form of Government, the Bishops excepted, as formerly; and tho' the Episcopacy be banish'd, the Canonries and Prebendaries having been disposed of to Gentlemen of the Country, retain the same share in the Government that their Predecessors the Clergy had, and send Eight Delegates to the Provincial States, who, in the name of the Clergy, have Session therein: The rest of the Members of the States being the Deputies of the Nobles and of the chief Towns, as in the other Provinces

This Province was wholly subjected to the French in the years 1672 and 1673. their King keeping his Court in the Metropolis some part of the year 1672. and it remain'd their Head Quarters till the end of 1673.

The Chief Towns of this Province, are

{	<i>Utrecht, Cap.</i>
	<i>Amersfort.</i>
	<i>Duesterde Wyck.</i>
	<i>Rheenen.</i>

**UTRECHT**, *Ultrajectum*, *Trajectum Inferius*, & *Trajectum ad Rhenum*, so nam'd from an ancient Ferry or Passage over the *Rhine*, is a fair, large and populous City, seated upon the old Channel of the *Rhine*, at the distance of 24 miles from *Amsterdam* to the South-east, 27 from *Leyden*, and about as many from *Rotterdam* to the East, 17 from the *Zuyder-zee* to the South, and 34 from *Breda* to the North. The Buildings are of Brick, neat and beautiful, with convenient deep Cellars, not to be found in *Holland*. The Streets are large, but not so well adorn'd with Trees, nor the whole City in general quite so cleanly and butiful as some in *Holland* are. The Church of *S. Martin*, call'd the *Dome*, formerly the Cathedral, was a magnificent Building before a great part of it was destroy'd by Tempest in 1674. but the large square Tower, of 460 Steps to the top, is still standing. The Churches of our Saviour, *S. Mary*, *S. Peter*, and *S. John*, were formerly Collegiate, the Chapter whereof (tho' now compos'd of Laymen, to whom the Revenues have been given) make the States of the Clergy. The other publick Buildings are stately enough, but being ancient are not particularly remarkable. The chief Excellence of this City is its pleasant Situation (in a serene and wholsom Air, among rich Meadows and Corn-fields, and within a days Journey of at least fifty Wall'd Towns) and its famous University, at first a publick School only, founded by *David* of *Burgundy* Bishop of *Utrecht* in 1459. but erected into a University by the Magistrates, and confirm'd by the Provincial States in the year 1636. which is at present in a very flourishing State. Besides the *Rhine*, two artificial Channels call'd *de Vaert* and *de Nieuwe Gracht*, run through the Streets, and have 35 arch'd Bridges of Brick over them. The Wall of this City is very high and hath a broad Bank within-side to sustain it (which is planted with Trees and makes a pleasant Walk) but is old and decay'd; and here being pretty large Suburbs, and no Out-

works, the place cannot be esteemed fit to resist a powerful Enemy; which was the Reason the Inhabitants gave for their sending the French King the Keys of the City in 1672. But the *Hollanders* accuse them of Treachery and Cowardice, and say, They had beforehand made a Bargain, and therefore refus'd to permit new Fortifications to be rais'd, or to admit the Prince of *Orange* with the Army into the City, when the French were at *Arnhem*. But tho' these courageous Citizens sent above 20 miles to seek the Enemy, and present them the Keys, they fared little better than the other Conquests of that King, having been forced to pay no less than One hundred and sixty thousand Pounds *Sterling* to their new Guests while they tarried with them, (which was from the 23<sup>d</sup> of June, 1672. to the end of November, 1673.) besides above Forty thousand Pounds at their departure.

*Amersfort*, *Amisfortia*, and *Amisfurtum*, stands upon the little River *Eems*, 14 miles from *Utrecht* to the North-east, and 7 from the *Zuyder-zee* to the South. It is a good large Wall'd Town, well Inhabited, and pleasantly seated between large Corn-fields to the East and South, and Pasture-Grounds to the North, which afford the Inhabitants a plentiful Subsistence, the chief Trade of the Town being Agriculture and Grazing. The Buildings are neat and handsom; among the publick ones are two Churches, several Hospitals, and a publick School. The Town is Govern'd by its own Magistrates, and is a place of great Antiquity, but hath been much enlarged; for tho' it were formerly a small Place, the compass of its Walls at present is near an hours Walk. The Strength of it is not considerable. It is the usual Winter Quarters of several Troops of Horse.

At a little distance from *Amersfort* to the South-west lies a large Tract of Hills, Woods, and barren Heaths, of near 10 miles long and 4 or 5 miles broad, call'd *Amersforder Bergh*, Just upon the edge of which stands

**SOESTDYCK**, a pleasant Palace of His Majesty's adorn'd with fine Gardens and curious Fountains, delightful Walks shaded with tall Trees, pleasant Parks fill'd with Deer, a large Volary and exceeding fine Stables.

*Duesterde Wyck*, or *Wyck te Duesterde*, *Dorostatum*, and *Durostadium olim Batavorum*, is seated just in the place where the middle Channel of the *Rhine* joins with the *Leck*, and is distant 15 miles from *Amersfort* to the South, and as many from *Utrecht* to the South-east. It is a pretty neat wall'd Town, pleasantly situated and indifferently rich. It is a place of Antiquity, being mention'd by *Tacitus*, and afterwards ruin'd by the *Normans*.

*Rheenen*, another Wall'd Town of great Antiquity, is seated on the *Rhine* 7 miles from *Duesterdewyck* to the East, and 15 from *Amersfort* to the South.

*Montfort* is a good neat Town, tolerably well Fortified, and seated about 7 or 8 miles from *Utrecht* to the West, near the Frontiers of *Holland*. It is water'd by the small River *Iffel*, and is the Capital of a Small Territory adjoining.

## C H A P. XIV.

### GELDERLAND and ZUTPHEN, Geldria & Zutphania.

**G**elderland, with *Zutphen*, which is reckon'd part of it, (both together composing one Province of the

United Netherlands) is bounded on the North by the *Zuyder-zee* and *Overyssel*, on the South by *Brabant* and



and the Dutchy of Cleve on the East by the Bishopric of Munster and on the West by the Provinces of Cleve and Holland containing in extent about 30 miles from North to South, and about 21 from East to West, without reckoning the Spanish Gelderland, which is disjoyned from the rest by part of the Dutchy of Cleve. The Air of Gelderland is clear and healthy, the Country lying high and Inland, and consequently freed from those Fogs that infect the Maritime Provinces. The Soil of it is fertile, producing good Corn and Pasture, except the Northern part of which is Heathy and Barren. The Southern part more Level and Moorish, and the Northern part not much Corn, but affords very good Grass.

This Province hath in it 25 Cities and Wall'd Towns, besides the Royal Seats of His present Majesty, Dordrecht and Leeuwarden; many Noblemen and Gentlemen's Mansion Houses, and a great number of Villages, and is usually divided into these four Parts, viz.

The *Utrecht* being the Northern part, and lying between the *Wageningen* and the *IJssel* and the *Rijn*, contains these chief Towns,

The *Braam* lying between the *Rijn* and the *Leek* to the South, and the *Mosel* to the North, hath these considerable Towns,

The *Overijssel* being on the North by *Overijssel*, on the South by *Cleve*, on the West by *Munster*, and on the East by the *IJssel*, which parts it from the *Utrecht*, wherein these Towns are most remarkable

The Quarter of *Geldre*, subject to the King of Spain, lies at some distance from the rest of the Province, the Western part of the Dutchy of *Cleve* intervening. Its extent is about 25 miles from East to West, and 15 from North to South; to which the Quarter of *Brabant* is joyned on the South, and is extended along the Banks of the *Mosel* for about 15 miles more; in both which there are the Towns of chiefest note, viz.

**ARNHEM**, *Arnhem*, is seated on the Southern Banks of the *Rijn*, at the distance of 60 miles from *Utrecht*, and 26 from *Rhenen* to the East, 24 from *Amersfoort* to the South-east, 28 from the *Zuyderzee* to the South, 10 from *Dordrecht* to the West, and 23 from the *Grave* to the North. It is a very large, neat and strong City, formerly the Seat of the Dukes of *Geldre*, and at present of the Supream Council of the Province. It is very pleasantly situated, lying the River on one side, and beyond it the Meadows of the *Betuwe*; and on the other side Heaths, Woods and Hills of the *Veluwe*, which afford abundance of all sorts of Game, and an exceeding wholesome Air, and is therefore Inhabited by many Gentlemen and Persons of Quality. The Buildings are

neat and beautiful: The Church of *S. Eusebius* is a noble Structure, and adorn'd with a stately Tower: The three Hospitals, especially that called the *Island of God*, for the maintenance of decay'd Citizens, are well Endowed. Large Privileges were conferr'd on this City by *Ordo* Earl of *Geldre*, in the year 1233, when it was first Wall'd about; and in 1443 it was incorporated into the Body of the *Hanse* Towns of *Germany*. It is Fortified with a Wall of Brick and strong Ramparts, but is commanded by a Hill on the North-side: However it is esteem'd a place of good Strength, and capable of making a good Defence, although the Inhabitants surrender'd it to the *French* in 1672. the first day they attack'd it; who remaining there all that, and the following Year, added some new Fortifications, and made it a great Magazine, to which they brought the Canon from *Utrecht* and other places when they quitted them; till at last, being forced also to quit this, they Exacted 170000 Guilders of the Inhabitants, as a Ransom for their City. In the Walls are five Gates, which are very strong; that of *S. John's* was in 1537 fortified with large Out-works. Near the Gate which opens to the *Rhine* is a Bridge of Boats over that River to the *Betuwe*; and on the the other side is an exceeding fine large flat bottom'd, Ditch lin'd with Freestone, which almost surrounds the Town, and is fill'd with Water by a Spring arising in the neighbouring Hill.

*Wageningen* is a very ancient Town seated near the *Rhine*, about 10 miles West from *Arnhem*; It is Wall'd round, and stands in a Moorish Soil, which makes it a place of some Strength.

About 10 miles from *Arnhem* to the North-east stands *DILREN*, where His Majesty hath a stately Palace, adorn'd with beautiful Gardens and exceeding pleasant Walks.

And about 17 or 18 miles from *Arnhem* to the North and 20 from *Amersfoort* to the East, stands *LOO* another of His Majesty's Houses, which is seated near the middle of the *Veluwe*, in a very sweet Air and a Country abounding with all sorts of Game and therefore was the Place he used commonly to reside at all the Summer. The Palace is a noble Building, and the Gardens exceeding Pleasant, being adorn'd with curious Knots of Flowers, fine shady Walks and Grotto's and admirable Fountains, especially the *Bason of Venus*, and the two great Cascade or Water-falls, which are incomparably beautiful: the Water in the Cascades falling to easily out of one *Bason* into another, that it makes a broad Mirror from top to bottom.

*Harderwyck*, *Harderwicum*, stands on the Banks of the *Zuyder-zee*, 28 miles from *Arnhem* to the North and 22 from *Deventer* to the West. It is a fair well built City, adorn'd with an University, which was anciently a publick School only, but rais'd to this Dignity, and Sallaries settled upon the Professors, by the States of this Province in the year 1648. The Houses in general are well built and very high. The Cathedral Church of *S. Mary* is a stately Building, adorn'd with curious Workmanship on the Roof and Arches within-side, and an exceeding high Tower. A Staple of Fish hath a long time been establish'd here, by which the Inhabitants are Enriched; and the Town is defended by an old Castle, a Wall round, a Rampart on the South-side, and some other Fortifications; but was however taken by the *French* in 1672. as were indeed all the Towns of this Province, as well as *Utrecht*, &c.



*Elburg* is seated near the *Zuyder-zee*, at the distance of 12 miles from *Harderwyck* to the North-east. It is a small City of an oblong square Form; a small River runs through it and falls into a Creek of the *Zuyder-zee*, which makes its Port; over this River are built five Stone Bridges. It was surrounded with Walls about A. 1400. and was sometime one of the *Hanse Towns*, as was also *Harderwyck*.

*Hattem* stands about 10 miles from *Elburg* to the East and hardly one from the *Iffel* to the West: It had formerly a very good Castle and other strong Fortifications, but is at present not very considerable.

*Nimeguen*, or *Nicumegen*, *Noviomagus*, famous for the Treaty held in it in the years 1678. and 1679. and at last a Peace concluded between the King of France and the several Princes then at War with him, is seated on the River *Waal*, at the distance of 10 miles from *Arnhem* to the South, and 8 from the *Grave* to the North, 30 from *Gorcum* to the East, and 12 from *Schenckscence* to the West. It is a large City, of a semicircular form, and exceeding pleasant, being built upon five small Hills between the River on one side, and an exceeding pleasant Country, consisting of woody Hills (out of which issue many Springs) Corn-fields and Gardens. on the other. The Houses are of Brick, cover'd with Slate, and very neat, and the Streets spacious and handfom. Among its ten Churches, all well built and adorn'd with Towers, that of *S. Stephen* is chiefly commendable for its stately Tower and costly Structure. The *Stadthuyse* is a magnificent Fabrick adorn'd with the Statues of divers Emperors; as is the publick School with those of the Apostles and Doctors of the Church. Here are two Hospitals for the maintenance of poor Orphans, one for old People and another for the Cure of the Sick. The Walls of the City are of Brick, exceeding high, and guarded by very strong Towers: The Gates are 12 in number, whereof 7 are toward the Water. This City enjoys great Privileges, and was Imperial and Free before the year 1248. at which time it was given to the Earl of *Geldre*; and with that Province became subject to the States General.

*Schenckscence* or *Schencken-schanse*, so named from a famous Captain *Schenk*, by whose direction it was built by the States in 1588. is seated upon the point of the *Betuwe*, where the *Rhine* divides into two great Arms, one whereof retains its Name, and runs to *Dufterde-wick*, and the other is call'd the *Waal*, by which situation it commands both those Rivers, and the Commerce between *Germany* and the *Netherlands*. It is an exceeding strong Place, having, besides the Rivers on two sides, very strong Walls, with good Bastions, a large Ditch, Half-moons and other Fortifications; however, it was taken by the *Spaniards* in 1635 by Surprise, but the same year recover'd by the Prince of *Orange*; and by the *French* in 1672 by the Treachery of the Governour. In 1674 the *French* surrender'd it to the Duke of *Brandenburg*, who claim'd it as a dependent on *Cleve*; and in 1679 sold it to the Dutch. It stands about 10 miles East from *Nimeguen*, and 12 South from *Doesburg*. About 2 or 3 miles below *Schenckscence*, on the West-side of the *Rhine*, stands a small Fort call'd the *Tolhuys*, which was also taken by the *French* in 1672.

*Tiel* stands upon the South side of the *Waal*, about 12 miles West from *Nimeguen*, and 8 miles South from *Rhenen*, in a marshy Ground, which, together with the narrowness of the Streets, makes the Town somewhat unhealthy. It is well Fortified, and by reason of the Soil, not attackable but on the North-west side: However it was taken by the *French* in

1672. The Country lying to the Westward between the *Waal* and the *Ling*, depends on it, and is call'd the *Tieler Waert*.

*Buren* is seated about 7 or 8 m. West from *Tiel*, on a small Stream that falls into the *Ling*; it is a wall'd Town, and the Capital of a small Lordship, which with the Town belong to the Prince of *Orange*, as do also the Town and Lordship of

*Culenburg*, seated on the *Leck*, about 5 or 6 miles from *Buren* to the North-west, and about 12 from *Utrecht* to the South-east.

*Bommel* is seated on the South side of the *Waal*, about 12 miles from *Tiel* to the West, and as many from *Gorcum* to the East. It is a pleasant, neat and well built City, govern'd by its own Magistrates, and sends Deputies to the Provincial State. It is surrounded with very good Fortifications, and seated in a low and marshy Country, which renders the place exceeding strong. It was first wall'd and endow'd with Privileges by the Earl of *Geldre*, in 1229. and in the Low-Country War very strongly fortified by the States. When the *French* took it, in 1672. it was surrounded with a double Ditch and Ramparts, besides the Walls and Bastions; all which they destroy'd before they quitted it, in 1673. But it being a Place of great consequence, the States speedily repair'd the Fortifications, and put it into a state of Defence. *Bommel* stands on an Island made by the two Rivers *Maes* and *Waal*, which is called the *Bommeller Waert*; on the West point whereof stands the Castle of *Louvestein*, already mention'd in the account of *Holland*, and on the East stand two strong Holds, call'd *Fort S. Andrew* and *Fort Voorn*, which command the Passage of these two Rivers.

The Earldom of *ZUTPHEN*, reckon'd formerly one of the Provinces, but now, as we have said, only a part of *Gelderland*, lyes on the East side of the *Iffel*, between *Cleve* to the South, and *Overissel* to the North; and is extended about 30 miles from North to South, and near as many from East to West. The Capital City from which the whole Province hath its Name, is,

*ZUTPHEN*, *Zurphania*, seated upon the *Iffel*, over which it hath a Bridge, at the distance of 25 miles from *Nimeguen*, 18 from *Arnhem* to the North-east, 42 from *Utrecht* to the East, and 22 from *Hattem* to the South. The River *Berkel*, which rises in the Bishoprick of *Munster*, after it had crossed the Province, runs through the middle of this City, and falls into the *Iffel*, dividing the Town into two parts; call'd the *Old* and the *New*: The chief Church, dedicated to *S. Peter*, is a neat, sumptuous and ancient Structure, the Tower whereof being fired by Lightning, was rebuilt in 1635. in most curious manner: The Brazen Font in this Church is particularly remarkable for its curious Workmanship; and the publick Library at the East end is a reasonable good one. Here is a publick School, and several Hospitals, which, together with the high Brick Tower, call'd *Drogenap's Toorn*, are worth a Stranger's View. In this City dwell many Nobles and Gentleman of Quality, and it is generally reckon'd a Place of much Civility. The Buildings are fair and neat, and the Fortifications very strong. at least were so before the *French* took it in 1672. for then we read, that it had nine Bastions, four Half-moons, a double Ditch, and treble Ramparts: Notwithstanding which, it was surrendred to them after a very short Siege, on the 26 of June 1672; and kept by them till April 1674. In the Spanish War it was taken and sack'd.



taken by *Alva's* Army, and regain'd by the States by the Stratagem. A good number of Soldiers coming to the Habit of Market women, knock'd about the Gate till they found an opportunity to break in, and let in the rest that by ready assault they did. But this was after a long Siege, whereof that Orator of our Nation *St. Philip* Morda was unfortunately slain. This Country has great Privileges and was one of the *Hemmer* of the States; as also had the Royalty of Comaguet. But in 1644 they gave it up to the States in 1644, for an annual Loan of Money to be paid them in lieu.

*Doesburg* is seated on the Old *IJssel*, 9 or 10 miles from *Zwischen* to the South. It is strongly situated between the River on one Side and a great Marsh on the other, and good Fortifications when the French arriv'd in 1702, so that it might have been expected to have made a very good Defence, but was however quickly surrendered, the French losing only 3 Men in obtaining it, and held it till the April following; when being oblig'd to quit it, they demolish'd the Fortification.

At this place the Channel mention'd by the Ancients to be cut by *Delf*, and therefore call'd *IJssel Delf*, is let into the *IJssel*, being derived from the *Rhine* a little above *Arnhem*; by which the *IJssel* is very much enlarged, and may not improperly be reckon'd as a Branch of the *Rhine*.

*Graveland* stands on the small River *Sijck*, which falls into the *Boght*, and is distant 15 miles from *Zwischen* to the East. It was esteem'd a very important Place from *Germany*, and therefore fortified by the Emperor *Charles V.* which was afterward improv'd by the *Spaniards*. The Works described by *Grotius* in his account of the remarkable Siege of this Place by the States in 1620, being exceeding Strong and Regular, consisted of five Bastions joined by strong Curtains, a lower Wall or Rampart under the Bastions, in lieu of the modern Ravelins, a broad Ditch fill'd by the River *Sijck*, and a Rampart or Counter-carp beyond it; yet did this Town make but very little Resistance before it surrendered to the Bishop of *Munster*, in 1672.

*Breda* is a good strong Town, having, besides pretty good Fortifications, a marshy Soil all round; by which it is rendered almost inaccessible: And therefore not taken without great difficulty, by Prince *Maurice* in 1637. It stands 12 miles South from *Graveland*, and 17 East from *Doesburg*.

*Spanish Gelderland*, or the Quarter of *Geldre*, contains these chief Towns, &c.

*GELDRE* *Geldria*, altho' it hath the Honour to give Name to the whole Province, is but a small City, and not very considerable: It hath an old Castle, and is strongly fortified by the Marshes that surround it, which together with its distance from the rest of the Province, has hinder'd its falling into the Hands of the States. It is distant 36 miles from *Doesburg* to the South, and 20 from the Frontiers of *Brabant* to the East, 32 from *Nimeguen* to the South-east, and 15 from *Dusseldorp* to the North-west.

*Venloo*, a City of good note, is seated in a flat fenny Country, on the East side of the *Maes*, about 8 miles from *Geldre* to the South-west. It is a Place of great Trade for Corn, Brass, Marble, Free-stone, Coal, &c. brought from the Country of *Liege* and other parts of *Germany*, down the River to this City, whither the *Hollanders* and *Brabanders* repair to buy 'em. It was endow'd with the Privileges of a City in 1343, and was strong enough in the last Century to oppose *Margaret* of *Austria* when she besieged it; and even to keep out *Charles V.* till he had granted them good Conditions. The States took it in 1532, but lost it again to the *Spaniards* in 1536.

*Wachtendonk*, a very strong Town, is seated on the small River *Niers*, 5 miles from *Geldre* to the South, and 7 from *Venloo* to the East: It is surround'd by low moorish Grounds, which hinder any access to it, and makes it one of the strongest Towns in the Province. In 1588, it held out three Months against Count *Mansfeld*: In 1600 it was surpriz'd by *Ludwick* of *Nassau* upon the Ice; but in 1605 was finally regain'd by the *Spaniards*.

*Stralen* stands about 2 miles from *Wachtendonk*, and almost in the mid-way between *Venloo* and *Geldre*; it is a Place of some Dignity, having a small Territory depending on it, but otherwise not very considerable.

*Roermond* stands upon the *Maes*, where the small River *Roer* falls into it, and is distant 12 miles from *Venloo* to the South; it is a rich and populous City, and remarkable for the Neatness of its Buildings and Strength of its Walls. A Monastery of *Carthusians* here is much spoken of for its Grandeur and Wealth. The City was taken in 1632, by the States, but was restor'd at the Peace of *Munster*, and is still subject to the *Spaniard*.

## CHAP. XV.

### The Province of OVERISSEL, Transsissalana.

**O**VERISSEL, deriv'd from its situation beyond the lower *IJssel*, is bounded on the North by *Gueldre*, and the *IJssel* on the South by *Zwischen* and *Geldre*. On the East by the Bishoprick of *Munster*, and on the West by the *Zwidergeet*. Its Extent from North to South is about 60 miles, from East to West about 20 miles; but the Soil is not very Fertile, a great part of it being either Barren Heaths or *Quaggs* Marshes; which, together, with its Inland situation, unfit for Trade, and its being expos'd to Inroads from *Germany*, makes this Province less inhabited than any of the others. It is divided into three Parts, viz.

- I. *IJland* *IJland*, and by corruption *Salland* and *Zalland*, lies next the *IJssel*, and contains these Chief Towns;
  - Deventer*, Cap.
  - Swoll*.
  - Campan*.
  - Hasselt*, &c.
- II. *Twente*, lies East of *Salland*, and to the Frontiers of *Munster*. In it are these Towns, with many others of smaller moment;
  - O'densael*.
  - Otmarsen*.
  - Enschede*.
- III. *Drent* is the North part of *Overissel*, and contains these Towns of chiefest note;
  - Coeverden*.
  - Meppel*, &c.



The small Territory of *Vollenhoven*, on the Banks of the *Zuyder zee*, is by some Geographers made a separate part, and not included in the *Drent*; In it stand

*Vollenhoven.*  
*Steenwyck.*  
*Swarte-huys.*  
*Blockzyl.*

**DEVENTER** or *Deventer*, *Daventria*, is seated on the *Iffel*, 5 miles from *Zutphen* to the North, and 18 from *Swoll* to the South, 30 from *Amersfort* to the East, and 22 from *Albheim* to the North. It is a large and populous City, exceeding nearly built and well fortified: By means of the River it enjoys a good Trade, and was formerly one of the *Hanse Towns*. It still enjoys great Privileges, particularly the Royalty of Coinage. It is seated in a very fruitful and pleasant Country, and inhabited by many Noblemen and Persons of Quality. The Cathedral Church of *St. Levein* is a spacious ancient Structure, and the *Stadthuys* is a handsome old Building; here is a publick School, and several Hospitals, which with the remarkable round Tower, 15 foot thick, near the *Norremberg-Gate*, are worth a Stranger's notice. The City is fortified with a double Wall and Ditch, besides several Outworks; notwithstanding which it was surrendered to the Bishop of *Munster*, after only 5 days Resistance, on the 21st of July 1672.

*Swoll* or *Zwoll* is seated in a fruitful Country, between the two Rivers, *Iffel* and *Vecht*, at about 2 miles distance from the first, and 4 from the last, and 18 miles from *Deventer* to the North; having also another small River, which rising near *Deventer*, passes through it, and a little beyond falls into the *Vecht*, and with it runs into the *Zuyder-zee*. The Buildings are fair and the Streets neat, which makes the City exceeding pleasant. It enjoys a reasonable good Trade, by means of the aforesaid River, through which the Tide flows up to the Town: The Church of *St. Michael* is a stately Structure, and remarkable for its fine Organ, Pulpit, harmonious Chimes and exceeding high Steeple. The publick School is considerable both for its great number of Schollars, and its College for the Study of the Sciences. Here are also divers Hospitals, a publick Granary and an Arsenal. The City enjoys great Privileges, particularly the ultimate Determination of all Causes, the Royalty of a Mint, and the Jurisdiction over 18 large and populous Villages, that stand in its Prefecture. It is surrounded with Walls, on which are 24 Towers, and a Trench; and hath three very strong Gates, which open to so many Suburbs. In 1672. it was surrendered to the Bishop of *Munster*, as soon as they heard of the taking of *Deventer*.

*Campan* is seated among pleasant Fields (whence it has its name) on the South side of the *Iffel*, near the *Zuyder-zee*, and 3 miles West from *Swoll*. It is a large, neat and well-built City, and hath a strong wooden Bridge over the *Iffel*, which is secured by a Fortification at the End of it. The Churches here are very capacious and of a curious Structure, as is also the *Stadthuys*; but the Custom-house is an exceeding fine Building and much admired. This was formerly a place of great Trade, but of late years the Mouth of the *Iffel* hath been so choaked up with

Sand, that Ships of Burthen cannot enter. The Wall is high and thick, and provided with many Towers, after the old manner, but not able to resist the modern way of Attacking. This City also Capitulated upon the Surrender of *Deventer*, and was yielded to the Bishop of *Munster*; who delivering it to the *French*, they kept it to the end of the next year, and then being forced to quit it, exacted 80000 Guilders of the Inhabitants to save it from Fire.

At the Mouth of the *Vecht*, and on a Bay of the *Zuyder-zee*, called the *Zwolljohediep*, 7 miles from *Swoll* to the North, stands the small City *Genemuyden*, which had formerly a good Castle.

*Vollenhoven* stands upon the *Zuyder-zee*, 12 miles from *Swoll* and 7 from *Genemuyden* to the North; it is a neat and handsome Town, conveniently seated for Trade, and is a great Market for Corn brought from the *Baltick Sea* and other places.

*Steenwyck* stands near the Frontiers of *Friesland*, 16 miles North from *Vollenhoven*, and 17 from *Swoll*: It is a small but very strong Town, having been very well fortified by Prince *Maurice* after he took it, in 1592. It was taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in the last War, and obliged to pay 10000 Guilders as a Ransom, when he quitted it in 1673.

*Blockzyl* stands on the *Zuyder-zee*, 3 or 4 miles from *Vollenhoven* to the North, and 6 from *Steenwyck* to the South-east. It is a strong Town and besides, considerable for Navigation and Commerce.

*Swartshuys*, a Fortrefs standing upon the *Vecht*, 2 miles East from *Genemuyden*, and 7 North from *Swoll*; being taken from the *Munsterians* in 1672. was by them made very strong, and able to resist three several Attempts of the *Dutch* to regain it.

*Coeverden*, the chief Place of the *Drente*, is seated near the Frontiers of the County of *Benthem*, and about 12 miles from the Confines of *Munster*, 30 miles from *Swoll*, 35 from *Campan* to the East, and near 46 from *Deventer* to the North-east. It is a Fortrefs of very great Strength, having, besides the strong Walls and Outworks, Marshes and impassable Grounds almost all round it. It commands the Passes out of *Munster* into *Friesland* and *Groningen*, and being therefore a Place of great Importance, hath been often besieged. It was taken by Prince *Maurice* in 1592. and withstood a Siege of 7 Months by the *Spaniards* the next year: Yet in July 1672. it surrendered in 4 days to the Bishop of *Munster*, but was recover'd by surprise by the *Dutch* in December following: Again, in 1673. the *Munsterians* blockaded it, but could not take it.

*Ootmersum* or *Otmarsen*, a Town of great Antiquity, and said to be founded by *Odomarus* King of the *Franks*, is seated in the *Twente*, near the Borders of *Benthem*, and 20 miles South from *Coeverden*; it was formerly secured by a Rampart and a Ditch round it: But is at present not very considerable.

*Oldenzyl* or *Oldenzael*, stands 8 miles South from *Otmarsen*, and as many West from *Benthem*: It is a wall'd Town, but not remarkable for Strength or Grandeur; it was often taken and retaken in the *Spanish War*, and being taken by the Bishop of *Munster* in the last War, was regain'd by the *Dutch* in 1674.



## C H A P. XVI.

The Province of FRIEZLAND, *Frisia*.

Concerning the Country possess'd by the ancient Frisians, there is great dispute among the Learned, some affirming, that they spread over all *Holland*, the North part of *Gelderland*, *Zutphen*, *Oterijel* and *Gueldren*, as well as this *Friezland*, and the other call'd *Low Friezland*, beyond the *Ems*: Others say, that in *Holland*, they had the North part only, which is now call'd *High Friezland*, whilst others make the old Channel of the *Rine* the Southern, and the River *Ems* the Eastern bounds of their Country. The present Bounds of this Province is the *Zuyder-see* to the West, North and South, *Groningen* and *Oversijel* to the East and South, containing in extent from North to South about 35 miles, and from East to West about 40 miles. The Land is low and marshy, and frequently overflow'd, however affords good Pasture, and in some parts store of Corn. The Province is divided into three parts, viz.

*Harlingen*, or the West Part, containing these Towns,

*Franecker*,  
*Harlingen*,  
*Bolswaert*,  
*Sneek*,  
*Worcum*,  
*Staterum*, &c.

*Ogisterum*, or the East Part, hath these,

*Leuwarden*,  
*Dockum*.

*South-Holland* is the South-east part, which being a barren Soil, is but meanly Inhabited, and besides many Villages, hath only one Town of Note, namely,

*Slot*.

**FRANEKER**, *Franequera*, & *Franekeza*, is seated on the Channel cut from *Leuwarden* to the *Zuyder-see*, and is distant 40 miles from *Campen* to the North, 30 from *Groningen* to the West, not above 10 from the Shoar of the *German Ocean*, and in the midway between *Leuwarden* to the East, and *Harlingen* to the West. It is a fair, neat, well-built City, enjoying a reasonable good Trade by means of its Canals, and Inhabited by many Persons of Quality: Being also the Seat of an University, which was erected by the States in the year 1555, and good Revenues allotted to the Professors out of the Abbey-Lands confiscated upon the Revolution. The Rector hath the Power of judging Civil Causes, and the Students enjoy many Immunities. The whole Town hath but one Church, which is a spacious Building, with a tall handfom Steeple: Here is an Hospital for Orphans, and a very good Grammar-School. The Town is surrounded with a good Rampart, and a deep Ditch, and hath a strong Castle built of Brick.

**LEUWARDEN**, *Leowardia*, is distant 6 miles from *Franecker* to the East, 30 from *Groningen* to the West, and 12 from *Dockum* to the South; and is the largest, richest, best-built, and most populous City of *Friezland*, being also the Seat of the Sovereign Council, and the Residence of the Stadtholder of the Province. It enjoys a good Trade by means of its Channels, whereof that from *Dockum* brings up large Boats

with Goods, from *Hamburg*, *Bremen*, &c. This Place is commended for the neatness of its Streets and Bridges, the Pleasantness of its Gardens, and the Splendour of its Buildings; among which the Stadtholder's Palace, the Provincial Court, and several Houses of Noble-men, together with the two Hospitals and the Churches, are especially remarkable. It is well fortified, being surrounded with a thick and high Rampart, a broad Ditch and 5 Bulwarks.

*Harlingen* stands on the Banks of the *Zuyder-see*, in which it hath a good Haven, being distant about 5 miles from *Franecker* to the West. It was at first a small Village only, but by several Enlargements since 1543, it is become a considerable City, and a place of good Trade, which consists in Corn and the Commodities of *Norway* and the *Sound*; its Harbour being well frequented by Merchant Ships from those Parts. It is well fortified, which, with the flatness of the Country round it (by that means easily Overflow'd) makes it a place of good Strength and Security.

*Dockum* is a neat and well-fortified Town, seated at the head of the Channel leading to *Leuwarden*, and upon a River, which makes a good Haven of 2 Leagues in length, from a Bay of the *German Ocean*, call'd *Dockumer-diep*, and is distant 12 miles from *Leuwarden* to the North-east, and about 5 from the Ocean to the South. The Streets and Buildings are remarkably neat; the Tower of its Church is high and stately, and the Stadthuys is a handfom Structure. The chief Bridge is of Stone, and very large; besides which there are two others over the River, which runs through the Town, and communicates with the Channel of *Leuwarden*. The Harbour is secured by Pile of large Timber driven into the bottom of the River, and shut up a-nights with a strong Boom: And the Town is fortified with a Rampart, large Ditch and Bulwarks, built by the States in 1582.

*Bolswaert* stands about 7 miles from *Franecker* to the South, and 10 from *Leuwarden* to the South-west. It is a good wall'd Town, formerly one of the *Hanse-ticks*, and maintaining a pretty good Commerce by means of the Channels leading from it to *Franecker*, *Leuwarden*, *Worcum*, and other Places.

*Worcum* stands upon the *Zuyder-see*, 7 miles South from *Bolswaert*. It hath a small Haven, but by the Tempests from the North and West is almost choak'd up with Sand; but by the many Channels the Inhabitants Trade in small Vessels, and supply the Country with store of Fish.

*Sneek* is an ancient populous, neat and well fortified Town, 6 miles distant from *Bolswaert* to the South-east, and as many East from *Worcum*, seated in a low fenny Country, near a Lake of the same name, which being well stor'd with Fish, afford the Inhabitants a good Support, by furnishing the Neighbouring Parts with that Commodity. Here is a Public School, which for the number of its Scholars and Sallaries is very considerable.

*Slot* or *Sloten*, stands upon a navigable Channel which comes from a neighbouring Lake, and falls into the *Zuyder-see* about a League below the Town, which is distant 8 or 9 miles from *Sneek* to the South, and by means of this Channel maintains Comm



Commerce with *Holland* and other Parts. The Buildings are but ordinary; nor are the Fortifications very strong. It hath one Church a handſom Stadthuys, and one of the Gates is very large and ſtately.

*Staveren* ſtands on the *Zuyder-zee*, at the extreame South-weſt Point of *Frieſland*, over againſt *Meden-blick* in *North Holland*, from which it is diſtant four Leagues to the North-eaſt, as alſo twelve Miles from *Säron* to the Weſt. It had formerly a capacious Harbour, and was a famous Empory; and the Inhabitants ſtill enjoy particular Privileges in the *Sound*,

which ſhew the great Trade they formerly had thither, and was alſo the third in the Rank of the *Hanſe Towns*: But this Trade is long ſince decay'd, and the Haven choak'd up with Sand, ſo that at preſent the Town is not conſiderable, and can only brag of what it hath been; wherein they have much to ſay, for this was anciently the Metropolis of the *Frieſons*, and the Seat of their Kings. It is recorded alſo, That about 500 years ago, there was a Paſſage by Land almoſt quite croſs from hence to *Enchuyſen*, in *North Holland*.

## CHAP. XVII.

### The Province of GROENINGEN, Groeningia, with the Omlands:

THIS Province is the moſt North-eaſt Part of the Dominions of the States General, and is ſeated between the *German Ocean* to the North, *Overiſſel* to the South, *Frieſland* to the Eaſt, and the Bay called *den Dollert*, which parts it from the Country of *Emden* or  *Eaſt Frieſland*, to the Weſt. Its Extent from North to South is about 20 miles, and from Eaſt to Weſt about 35. The Soil of it is but poor, except the Parts lying towards the Sea, which afford very good Paſture. The Air is ſharp, but whoſom enough, and the Inhabitants long liv'd. It is divided into

The Lordſhip of *Gorecht*, a narrow Tract in the middle of this Province; in which ſtands *Groeningen*, Capit.

The *Old Ampt*, lying Eaſt from *Gorecht*, and extending to the Bank of the *Dollert*, the chief Town whereof is *Winſchoten*.

The *Weſterwold*, which lies South of the *Old Ampt*, and runs out, in form of a Wedge, between the *Drente* of *Overiſſel* and the North Part of *Munſter*. It hath ſeveral Villages, but no Town of conſiderable note.

The *Weſt Quarter*, or the Weſt Part, lying between the River *Lavica*, which parts it from *Frieſland*, and the River or Channel leading to *Groeningen*. In it are about 25 Villages, but no conſiderable Town,

*Hunſingo*, which takes up all the North part of the Province: But hath likewiſe no Town of note.

*Five-lingo*, which lies between *Hunſingo* to the North, the *Old Ampt* to the South, *Gorecht* to the Weſt, and the Mouth of the River *Ems* to the Eaſt: In which Diſtrict ſtand ſeveral Villages, and the Town of *Dam*.

GROENINGEN or *Groeningen*, *Groeninga*, is ſeated upon the Confluence of two ſmall Rivers, called the *Aba* and the *Huneſus*, with ſeveral artificial Channels, which lead to all parts of the Province; and is diſtant 30 miles from *Leuwarden* to the Eaſt, 32 from *Coeverden* to the North, 13 from the Sea to the South, and 14 from the Mouth of the *Ems* to the Weſt. It is a large and populous City, ſurrounded with ſtrong Walls, in which are 17 large Baſtions, and other Fortifications; and is the Seat of an University, which was founded in the year 1614. and well endowed with the old Abbey-Lands. Beſides ſeveral other Channels, leading from this City, there is one, which running Weſtward, falls into a Bay of the *German Ocean*; and another Eaſtward, that leads

to *Dam*, and thence to the *Ems*; by theſe the Inhabitants receive Goods from Foreign Parts, and by the other Rivers and Channels convey them to the other Places of the Province, and ſo maintain a pretty good Trade. The principal Church is that of *S. Martin*, and next is that of *S. Walburgh*, which hath a Tower exceeding high; there are alſo two other Churches, viz. *S. Mary's* and the New Church. The Stadthuys is an old Building, and not remarkable; but the broad Market, on which it ſtands, is very large; as is alſo the Fiſh Market: Upon theſe Markets 17 Streets meet, 6 whereof lead to ſo many Gates of the City. The City hath been twice enlarged ſince the year 1600. and may at preſent be reckon'd 3000 Paces in compaſs. Moſt of the Houſes are furniſh'd with Gardens, wherein grow many Fruit-Trees, and make the Place exceeding pleaſant. It enjoys great Privileges, and was ſome Ages ago one of the *Hanſe Towns*. In the *Low-Country War* it ſided with the Confederates in 1579. but returning to the *Spaniard*, was taken by Prince *Maurice* in 1594. In 1672 it was beſieg'd by the Biſhop of *Munſter*, but ſo bravely defended, that after a Month's furious battering it with great Shot and Bombs, he was forc'd to raiſe his Siege. For which Valour, the *Groeningers* were rewarded with a double Voice in the Council of State.

*Dam* is ſeated upon the Channel call'd the *Damſterdiep*, about 3 miles from the Mouth of the *Ems* to the Weſt, and 12 from *Groeningen* to the Eaſt. It hath a rich Soil about it, and is beautified with good Buildings, but hath no Walls or Bulwarks.

*Winſchoten* is a ſtrong Fortrefs, which commands the Paſs out of *Eaſt Frieſland* into this Province, being ſeated between the *Dollart Bay* on one ſide, and great Morafs on the other, 17 miles from *Groeningen* to the Eaſt, and 13 from *Dam* to the South. It was fortified by the States in the latter end of the laſt Century, in whoſe hands it continued; but was taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1674.

For the better Security of this Paſs, there is another ſtrong Fort about ſix miles South-eaſt from *Winſchoten*, call'd *Billingworder-ſcience*, which, though it be very well fortified, was taken by the Biſhop of *Munſter* in the year 1672. but ſoon recovered by the *Dutch*.

The *Bourtanger Fort*, ſeated in the middle of a Maſh, on the very Borders of the *Weſterwold*, towards *Munſter*, and 12 miles South from the *Dollart*, is another very ſtrong place, and a good Defence to the Country.



# GERMANY.

## CHAP. I.



THE Bounds of Germany, as set out by Ptolemy and other ancient Writers, were much different from what they are at present; for, according to their Account, it extended Northward

as far as the Ocean, whereby Denmark, Norway, and Sweden, were included; and Southward it was bounded by the Danube, so that Austria, Bavaria, Stiria, Carinthia, Carinola, &c. now reckon'd part of it, were



were then excluded; as were also *Alsace*, part of the *Patrimoine*, and the Spiritual Electorates, the *Rhine* being by them reckon'd the Western Bounds; but these last, together with *Lorraine* and the neighbouring Countries, were afterwards possessed by *Germans*; and being Conquer'd by the *Romans*, were by them nam'd *Germania prima & secunda*.

*Germany*, as it is at present bounded by the *Low Countries* on the West; *Poland* and *Hungary* on the East; *Denmark* and the *Baltick Sea* on the North; and *Switzerland*, with the Dominions of the State of *Venice*, on the South; is situated between the 45 D. 12 M. and 54 D. 50 M. of Latitude, and 25 D. and 39 D. of Longitude, in form almost square; extending from North to South (that is to say, from *Stralsund* in *Pomerania*, to the Frontiers of *Carniola* and *Istria*) 150 German leagues, which is 600 English miles; and in breadth from the Town of *Spa* in the West, to the Confines of *Poland* in the East, about 500 English miles.

The SOIL is exceeding fruitful, especially on the Banks of the *Rhine* and the *Danube*, where also the AIR is very Temperate; but in the Northern part it is cold, and the Ground less fruitful. Besides great plenty of Corn, vast quantities of rich Wine is produc'd here and exported to Foreign Nations. The Earth also affords Mines of divers sorts of Metals and Minerals, as Iron, Copper, Tin, Lead, and even Silver in some parts; Alom, Quick-silver, Salt, &c.

The chief RIVERS, are, 1. The *Danube*, call'd by the Natives *Thonaw*, which rises in *Schwaben*, near a Village call'd *Tone Eschingen*, whence tending Eastward, it receives two small Rivulets, and soon after divides and encircles the City *Ulm*, where it begins to be Navigable, and having receiv'd the *Iler Guntz*, *Minael* and *Wernitz*, passes on through *Bavaria*, receiving the *Lech* at *Lechmund*, the *Altmul* at *Kelheim*, the *Nab*, *Regen*, *Iffer* and *Imn*, watering by the way the Cities *Newburg*, *Ingolstadt*, *Ratisbon*, and *Stranbingen*; thence passes through *Austria*, where, having water'd *Lintz*, it is encreas'd by the Rivers *Fraun*, *Ens*, and others of smaller note, and then runs by the Walls of *Vienna*, receiving the small River *Wien*, (whence that City hath its name) and afterwards the *Moraw*, pursuing its course still Eastward into *Hungary*, where it passes by *Presburg* and *Gran*; then, tending Southward, it passes by *Buda* and *Belgrade*, being exceedingly encreased by the *Drave*, which it receives at *Ejseck*, and the *Save* at *Belgrade*; after which it loses its name and is call'd *Ister*, and running Eastward between *Servia* and *Wallachia*, as also between *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*, falls at last into the *Black* or *Euxine Sea* in six Mouths, which part *Bulgaria* from *Besserabia*, after having run above eleven hundred miles an end. It is very broad, runs with a very rapid Current, and hath three great Catraacts, which are 1. The *Saw-Russel*, or *Swine's Snout*, near *Lintz*, so call'd from a pointed Rock hanging over, which hath under it a dangerous Whirlpool. 2. *Der Strudel* near *Greinon* in *Austria*, where the falling of the Water makes a horrid noise. And, 3. *Der Warbel*, another very dangerous Whirl-pool. The *Rhine* rises in two Springs in the *Alps*, which falling into *Switzerland*, unite near the City *Cuir* or *Coir*, and soon after dilates it self into a large Lake, call'd the *Boden Sea*, or *Lake of Constance*; whence passing Westward to *Basil*, it turns up to the North, and runs between *Schwaben* and *Alsace* into the *Palatinate*, receiving the *Nekar* at *Mainheim*, and the *Maine* at *Mentz*; then runs to *Coblentz*, where

it recieves the *Moselle*; afterwards waters *Cologne*, and passes on through the Dutchy of *Cleeve*, receiving the *Roor* and the *Lippe*, and other smaller Rivers by the way, and passes into the *Netherlands* at *Schenckenschans*. Of its Course afterwards we have already given an account. It is very broad, even two English miles (as some say, at *Schenckenschans*, and its course very swift, but the Navigation of it is interrupted by nine Catraacts; the most remarkable wherof are two in *Smittland*, one near *Scheffhusen* (where the whole River falls 75 foot) and the other near *Laufenburg*. 3. The *Eibe* rises out of the Mountains near *Hirschburg* in *Silesia*, upon the Confines of *Bohemia*, in eleven several Springs, which being united, pals Northward between *Mishia* and *Lusatia* into *Saxony*, receiving by the way the *Warlitz*, *Orlitz*, *Moldau* and *Agra*, passes by *Magdeburg*, *Lawenburg* and *Hamburg*, and a little below *Gluckstadt* divides into two Branches which falls into the German Ocean; it is very large and deep at *Hamburg*, which is above 70 miles from the Sea; Ships of 4 or 500 Tun ride at Anchor in it. 2. The *Oder* springs in *Moravia*, and after a Current of 300 English miles, through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, falls into the *Baltick Sea*. 4. The *Weser* rises in the Mountains of *Thuringen*, runs through *Hessen* and *Westphalia*, and empties it self into the Ocean below *Bremen*.

Other Rivers of smaller note the Reader will discover the Course of, in the following Description of the Country; as also an account of the Mineral Waters, Baths, Mines, Mountains, Forests, Lakes, &c. found in several Parts of this great Nation.

### Of the Inhabitants of Germany.

Whether *Germany* was Peopled after the Flood by *Ascanas* the Grandchild of *Japhet*, or whether *Tuisco*, who some say was the Son of that *Ascanas* and others the Son of *Noah*, was the Conductor of the first Colony hither, is uncertain. *Cluverius* affirms the former, assigning the very year when this Plantation was made, viz. The 136th after the Flood; and *Verstegan* pleads hard for the latter. However that be, it is certain that *Germany* was Peopled very Early. The ancient *Germans* had two Deities call'd *Teuto* or *Tuisco*, and *Mannus* his Son, under which Names, by their Songs and Festivals, they honour'd God the Maker of the World, and *Adam* the Propagator of humane Kind. And from the names of the former of these two Deities, had the appellation of the *Teutsche Nation*, which by the mutation of T for D is now made *Duytsche*; and the Cuntry *Duytschland*.

Much Dispute hath risen among the Etymologists concerning the derivation of *German* and *Alman*, two other Names of this Nation: The most agreed on is, That *Gar* signifying *all*, they were call'd *Gar Man*, q. d. *all Man*, denoting their great Manliness and Valour. *All* signifies the same, and therefore *Alman* is but a synonymous Term, signifying the same thing with *German*; though others assign the reason of that denomination to be the many Nations of them, and that it was first given 'em in the year 358. when they muster'd up a great Army from all parts against the *Romans*; which being a mixture of many sorts of Men, it was call'd an Army of *Almanner*: Which word afterwards was us'd by the *Italians*, *Spaniards* and *French*, to signify the whole Nation of *Germans*. Again, others say, That the name *Almain*, belong'd to the People of *Schwaben*, which



which they took from *Mannus* the Son of *Tuisc*; and that it became not universal, till those Dukes, having obtain'd the Imperial Dignity and kept it many years, made the name of the Inhabitants of that Region be extended to the whole Country.

By what we have said, the Reader will judge, That the TEMPER of the Inhabitants was Martial; which indeed they were, so far as to oppose the *Romans* for 210 years, but cannot however be esteem'd to deserve the Character their Name implies; For though they are generally of large Bodies, with big Bones, much Flesh and strong Sinews; they want Spirit to actuate their large Bulk, and Heat to concoct the Palegmatick Humour where-with their Bodies are fill'd, and therefore are better at guarding a Post than gaining Ground. 'Tis true, in our days they have notably oppos'd the *Turks*, fought many Battels, and acquir'd great Honour by the glorious Victories they have obtained over those Infidels. They are generally good natur'd, free from Malice and Doubtly much addicted to both Drunkenness and Gluttony. But not over-much to Vanity. The poorer sort are laborious, sincere and honest. The Nobility are Men of great Honour, and commonly Scholars. All the Sons of a Noble Man inherit their Father's Title, which exceedingly increaseth the number of the Nobility, and the more, because the German Women are generally good Breeders; and by that means the Estates of the Princes are so often divided for the sake of younger Children, that the Principalities and Sovereign Lordships have increased to a vast number. All the Nobility scorn Marriage with a Commoner; wherefore the younger Brothers are often oblig'd to take up Arms, or enter into Orders, whereby they are enabled to keep up the Grandeur of the Family, especially by the latter, because the Ecclesiastical Preferments here are both Numerous and Rich. The Women are of good Complexions, Corpulent, and very Fruitful, as we have said, and more obsequious to their Husbands than our Women, many not sitting at Table with them, and none having the upper Place there.

The GENIUS of the *Germans* hath appear'd in the Invention and Improvement of many Mechanical Arts, whereof Clock-work especially is owing to them. In this Art they have exceeded all the World in the contrivance of variety of Motions, to shew not only the Course of the Hours and Minutes, but even of the Sun, Moon and Stars; whereof the Clocks at *Strasbourg*, *Prague*, and many other places all over *Germany* are sufficient Instances. The Emperor *Charles V.* had a Watch in the Jewel of his Ring; and in the Elector of *Saxony's* Stable, is to be seen a Clock in the Pommel of a Saddle. The Story of *Regis Montanus's* wooden Eagle, that flew an English mile to meet the Emperor *Maximilian*, and return'd with him to *Nuremberg*; as also of the Iron Fly made by the same Person, that flew round the Room, and return'd to his Hand, are seriously related by *Kylerman* and *Peter Romanus*. The *Germans* claim the Invention of the Art of PRINTING, whereof something hath been already said in our description of *Hartenem*; but because that Art is so very curious, and hath been so serviceable to the World, we shall a little enlarge in the History of it. We have said already, That *Lawrence Coster* of *Hartenem* found out the Art by accident, and had brought it to some perfection, but was robb'd of his Materials by a Servant who fled with 'em to *Germany*: This the Dutch men say; but the *Germans* alledge, That *John Gut-*

*temburg*, an Alderman of *Strasbourg*, first Invented; in the year 1440. and remov'd with it to *Mann*, printed several Books, in which he made use of Cast Letters of Metal in the same manner as now used. The *Hollanders* in answer affirm, that it was *Coster's* Servant that taught *Guttemburg*, and that the Servant's name was *John Faust*; which name is set in all the first Printed Books, as the Printer of them. *Tully's Offices*, Printed in 1465. is to be seen in the *Bodleian Library* at *Oxford*, and in many other places, with this Inscription at the end: *Præfens M. Tullii clarissimum opus, Johannes Faust, Moguntinus Civis, non atramento, plumali, canna neq; area. Sed arte quadam perpulera Petri manu pueri mei feliciter effecit jussu Anno MCCCCLXV.* *Angelus Rocca* in his Account of the *Vatican Library* (printed at *Rome* in 1501.) says, that he had seen *Donatus's Grammar*, Printed upon Vellum with this Inscription at the beginning; *Johannes Faustus, Civis Moguntinus, Arvus Maternus Johannes Schæffer, primus excogitavit imprimendi artem Typis æreis: Quos deinde plumbeas invenit: multaque ad faciendam artem addidit ejus filius Petrus Schæffer: Imprimis est aut. in hic Donatus primum omnium, A.D. MCCCCL.* *Admonitus certe fuit ex donato Hollandie prius impresso in tabula incisa.* In an old Chronicle of *Colen*, Printed in 1496. 'tis said, That the hint of this Art was given from *Holland*, where an Impression of this *Donatus* had been made before that of *Mann*; So that upon the whole, the Invention may be granted to *Holland*, but improved and propagated in *Germany*; whence it was carried again to *Holland*, and from thence brought to *England* very early, by *Caxton* and *Tourner*, whom King *Henry VI.* sent at his own expence to learn it: These prevail'd upon one of the Printer's Men at *Hartenem* to steal away and come with them to *England*; where being arriv'd, they set to Work at *Oxford* and having taught other Men, Printing-houses were set up at *Wimster*, *S. Albans*, *Worcester*, and other places. There is now to be seen at *Oxford*, *S. Jerom* upon the Creed with this at the end; *Explicit expositio Sancti Jeronimi in simbolo Apostolorum ad Papam Laurentium. Impressa Oxonia Et finita Anno Domini, MCCCCLXVIII. xviii die Decembris.*

But to return to the *Germans*,

The Invention of Guns is undisputedly theirs, which was also produc'd by an Accident, in this manner. One *Barthold Schwartz*, a Friar, in making Chymical Experiments, had one day mixed some Saltpetre and Brimstone with other Ingredients, and set them upon the Fire in a Crucible; but a Spark getting in, the Pot suddenly broke with great violence and wonderful noise; which unexpected effect surpriz'd him at first, but thinking farther on the Matter, he repeated the experiment, and finding the effect constant, set himself at work to improve it: To which purpose he caus'd an Iron-pipe to be made with a small hole at the lower end to fire it at, and putting in some of his new Ingredient together with some small stones, set fire to it, and found it answer'd his expectation in penetrating all before it. This happen'd about the year 1330. and was soon improv'd to the making of great Ordnance, &c.

To these Inventions of the *Germans*, we may add their improvement of the Art of Chymistry; which being brought hither by *Albertus Magnus*, was very much studied by the Monks, and much time lost by them in the search of the Philosopher's Stone, and the Study of the *Rosicrucian* Philosophy.



The RELIGION of the ancient *Germans* was Paganism, which was driven out of several parts of it by the Preaching of *S. Clement*, *S. Crescens*, *S. Mark*, *S. Miltinus*, *S. Eulercius*, and other the immediate Successors of the Apostles: So that in the middle of the second Century, Christianity was in a flourishing State in *Germany*, as is testified by *S. Irenaeus*. But the remote Northern parts remain'd long in their blind Superstition; the *Saxons* not being Converted till the time of *Charles the Great*, as we shall shew more particularly when we come to speak of that Nation.

The Corruptions that crept into the *Romish* Church in the middle Ages, dispers'd themselves hither, and were generally believ'd before *John Huss* and *Jerom of Prague*, about the year 1407. opposed those Errors, and Preach'd up the Doctrine of *Wiclif*; for which they were both burnt at the Council of *Constance*: But their Followers in *Bhemia* being numerous, obtain'd a Toleration of the Emperor, and continued administering the Sacraments in both kinds, and in several things acting contrary to the Church of *Rome*: In which State the Reformation stood when *Luther* appear'd for it, upon the following occasion:

In the year 1517. Pope *Leo X.* in pursuance of the pretended Power of the Popes in pardoning Sins, sent abroad his Letters and Bulls, promising Pardons to all that would purchase them with Money: And the Friars were employ'd to Preach up the Doctrine, and Offices establish'd in several parts of *Germany*, to receive the Money that the ignorant People gave for the Indulgences the Collectors were empower'd to give them. These Preachers continually buzzing in the People's Ears the Efficacy of the Pope's Pardons, and the mercenary manner of prostituting of them, rais'd Indignation in many; and therefore *Martin Luther* was soon favour'd in opposing it. He was a Doctor of Divinity, and an *Augustine* Friar, living at *Wittenberg* in *Saxony*: At which place, in the same year, 1517. he began to preach against the Pope's Power of pardoning Sins; and publish'd *Theses* concerning Purgatory, Penance, &c. which were answer'd by *Terzelius*, *Eckius*, *Pricrius* and others, on the Pope's side. To which *Luther* reply'd; and being now favour'd by *Frederick* the Elector of *Saxony*, proceeded in time from one Point to another, till he shook the very Foundation of the *Roman* Church; a publick Disputation being held at *Liepsick* in 1519. between him and *Eckius*, wherein the Authority and Primacy of the Pope was the Subject of the Argument. And in a few years, not only the Elector of *Saxony*, but the Dukes of *Brunswick*, *Mecklenburg*, and *Lunenbourg*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, the Landgrave of *Hesse*, together with several other Princes and many Imperial Cities, embrac'd his Doctrine. In 1529. a Decree was made against it by the Diet at *Spire*; against which, the Elector of *Saxony*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, the Dukes of *Lunenbourg*, the Landgrave, together with the Deputies of *Straßburg*, *Norimberg*, *Ulm*, *Constance*, and ten other Imperial Cities, entred a publick Protestation; which gave Occasion to the name of PROTESTANT, the *Lutherans* from that time being so call'd. In the next year, the Princes above-mentioned presented the Confession of their Faith to the Emperor, in the Diet at *Augsburg*; which being rejected, and a Decree made against their Opinions, the Protestant Princes and Cities met at *Smalcald*, and entred into a Defensive League about the end of the same year, 1530. and not long after a War broke out, between them

and the Emperor, which lasted many years, till in the end the Emperor comply'd; and, by the Pacification of *Passaw* in 1552. agreed, That Matters concerning Religion should be referred to the Diet; which being assembled at *Augsburg* in the year 1555. decreed, That neither the Emperor, nor any other Prince or State, should in any manner whatsoever hurt or injure any Man for the Confession of the *Augustan* (or Protestant) Religion, nor force any of the Princes to forsake their Religion, Ceremonies or Laws, which they had already instituted in their Dominions, or which those of the *Augustan* Confession should thereafter institute, or that the Emperors nor Princes should condemn the same, but suffer them freely to Profess this Religion, and quietly enjoy their Goods and Estates; together with much more to that Purpose, as may be seen, at large, in *Strickland's* Hist. of the Reform. in *Germany*, lately Translated into English. So that at present the *Lutheran* Religion is profess'd in the Dominions of all those Princes and Cities above-mentioned, and many others; as the *Roman Catholic* is in *Austria*, *Bavaria*, the Spiritual Electorates, &c.

The *Germans* value themselves extremely upon speaking a Primitive LANGUAGE, and have obstinately refused to borrow Words of their Neighbours, tho' they are forc'd to make very uncouth Compounds, to be able to express themselves intelligibly. The Radical Words themselves are very harsh, and abound with Consonants; and many of these being put together, fill the Mouth, 'tis true, and make a thundering Sound, which is called *Manly*; but to a Stranger it seems as untuneable as the *Welch*, and as difficult to learn. Compounds, 'tis granted, is an Elegancy, but excels in every thing is ill; and no Language is copious enough of it self to furnish all Words; which themselves begin to be sensible of, and do therefore now admit some few French words, for the better and more intelligible expressing themselves. In short, the High Dutch hath the Reputation of a manly noble Language, but withal, not tuneable or docible, and is fitter for a General than a Courtier. It extends very far, for not only in *Germany*, but in *Denmark* and *Sweden*, the High Dutch is spoken, with some variation of Dialect, as also in *Switzerland*; not to mention *Holland* and *Flanders*, the Language whereof is of the same Original, but varied so much that the *Germans* disown it, and have given it the Name of Low Dutch for distinction.

Concerning the ANCIENT STATE of *Germany* we can only say, That from the beginning of History it was divided into many Nations, who, tho' they all spoke the same Language, preserv'd their separate Governments; and though by Invasion of Neighbours, and Wars among themselves, several Revolutions have happen'd in almost all the Parts, yet to this day it is divided into a great number of Principalities, every one of which hath had a different Fate; as the Reader will find in the following Description of them.

The greatest Monarchy that hath been in *Germany* was that of *Charles the Great*, otherwise call'd *Charlemagne*, King of *France*; for he was not only Lord of the Parts upon the lower *Rhine* and the *Main*, but by his Arms subdued *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and acquiring the Honour of Emperor of the *Romans*, resided with it here; and *Germany* hath ever since been called, *The Sacred Roman Empire*.



But to be inform'd how *Charles* attain'd this titular Honour, it is necessary to look back into the latter State of *Italy*, and see by what degrees the *Roman* Monarchy declin'd, and at last expir'd in the Person of *Augustus*, 300 years before the time of *Charles* the Great: The beginning whereof must be dated from *Constantine* the Great; for tho' he was a very wise and excellent Prince, yet by removing the Seat of the Empire to *Byzantium* (now call'd *Constantinople*) he left these Western parts naked, and exposed to the Ravages of those swarms of Northern People that soon after invaded them. At his Death *Constantine* dividing the Empire between his Sons, first erected the Eastern and Western Empires, the Seat of one being *Constantinople*, and the other *Rome*. But the latter became again united under the Eastern Emperour, and continued to till the Death of *Theodorus*, who again divided it for the sake of his two Sons *Aradius* and *Honorius*; these were succeeded for about 50 years by several Eastern and Western Emperours, but both the one and the other very sensibly declin'd; especially the Western Empire, by the invasion of the *Goths* and other barbarous Northern Nations, who seized its Provinces, invaded *Italy*, and sack'd even *Rome* itself: was brought very low, and none of the latter Emperours made any considerable figure in the World: The last of them was *Justinus*, against whom *Othmar* King of the *Huns* waged War, took a great part of *Italy*, took *Justinus* Prisoner, and made him resign the Empire, and finally determine that Dignity: This happen'd about the year 461. The *Huns* reign'd but a little while, being conquer'd by the *Ostrogoths*, and those at last driven out by *Justinian*, and *Italy* again made a part of the Eastern Empire; till the Power of these Emperours being much declin'd, the Popes took it as to obtain the Temporal as well as Spiritual Jurisdiction over a great part of it; and the *Lombards* conquer'd another large part, and erected a considerable Monarchy; which at last, the Popes grew unequal to, and therefore stirr'd up the *French* Kings against them; and Pope *Adrian I.* being besieged in *Rome* by *Dionysius* King of *Lombardy*, sent to *Charlemain* for assistance; who accordingly invaded *Lombardy*, overcame *Dionysius*, and was himself crowned King: By which he became Lord of a great part of *Italy*, as he was before of *Germany* and *France*. Upon this occasion it was that the Pope, in gratitude for the Service he had done him, and to secure to himself so powerfull a Protection, by consent of the People of *Rome*, declared *Charles* Emperour, and erected anew the Western Empire. But inasmuch as the Pope was Lord of the Territory about *Rome*, and *Charles* in his turn must show his Gratitude, he left that City to the Pope, and fixed the Seat of the Empire in *Germany*; which was all that any one was to him, because more in the middle of his Dominions. Thus *Germany* became the Seat of the Western Empire; which Dignity (tho' but a shadow of the ancient *Roman*) it has ever since born, under the Government of these following Princes.

#### A Chronological Table of the Emperors of Germany.

	Reg. y.
<i>Charles</i> the Great began to reign	800 14
<i>Lewis</i> the Great's Son	814 25
<i>Lotharius</i> , Son to <i>Lewis</i>	820 15
<i>Lewis</i> II. Son to <i>Lotharius</i>	855 19
<i>Charles</i> the Bald Son of <i>Lewis</i> I.	875 2
<i>Lewis</i> the Bald Son of <i>Charles</i>	875 1

<i>Charles</i> the Great his Son	879	9
He was deposed, and		
<i>Arnulf</i> Son of <i>Charloman</i> , Duke of <i>Carinthia</i> and King of <i>Bavaria</i> , elected Emperor	888	12
<i>Lewis</i> IV. Son of <i>Arnulf</i> , elected	900	12
<i>Conrad</i> Duke of <i>Franconia</i> , elected	912	7
<i>Henry</i> the Fowler, D. of <i>Saxony</i> , elected	919	25
<i>Otto</i> the Son of <i>Henry</i>	936	37
<i>Otto</i> II. succeeded his Father	973	11
<i>Otto</i> III. Son of <i>Otto</i> II. in whose time the manner of choosing the Emper. by the 7 Electors his said was instituted	984	18
<i>Henry</i> Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> , chosen by the Princes	1002	22
<i>Conrad</i> , elected	1024	15
<i>Henry</i> the Son of <i>Conrad</i>	1039	17
<i>Henry</i> IV. his Son	1056	50
<i>Henry</i> V. his Son	1106	19
<i>Louis</i> his Duke of <i>Saxony</i>	1125	13
<i>Conrad</i> Duke of <i>Schwaben</i>	1138	14
<i>Frederick</i> Barbarossa Duke of <i>Schwaben</i>	1138	31
<i>Henry</i> his Son	1190	3
<i>Henry</i> Brother to <i>Henry</i> , elected, but communicated by the Pope	1195	10
<i>Gerard</i> Duke of <i>Brusswick</i> , also chosen Emperor.		
<i>Gerard</i> Son of <i>Henry</i> the Lion, D. of <i>Saxony</i>	1205	4
<i>Frederick</i> II. King of <i>Sicily</i> , Grandson of <i>Frederick</i> Barbarossa	1212	38
<i>Conrad</i> IV. Son of <i>Frederick</i> , against whom six other Princes were elected by the several Factions now risen in <i>Germany</i> , on account of the Popes assuming Power over the Emperor. Among these seven, <i>Richard</i> Earl of <i>Cornwall</i> Brother to our <i>Henry</i> III. was one. After a long Interregnum		
<i>Richard</i> Earl of <i>Hapsburg</i> was unanimously elected	1273	19
<i>Adolf</i> Earl of <i>Nassau</i>	1292	6
<i>Albert</i> Duke of <i>Austria</i> set up against <i>Adolf</i> , whom he slew, and was crowned	1298	10
<i>Henry</i> Duke of <i>Luxemburg</i>	1308	
Poisoned by a Monk in administering him the Sacrament, after he had reigned	4 Y. 9 M.	
An Interregnum.		
<i>Lewis</i> Duke of <i>Bavaria</i> , elected	1318	25
<i>Charles</i> IV. Son of <i>John</i> K. of <i>Bohemia</i>	1346	32
<i>Wenceslaus</i> Son to <i>Charles</i>	1378	22
<i>Rudolph</i> Elector Palatine	1400	10
<i>Frederick</i> Barbarossa Marquess of <i>Moravia</i>	1410	5 M.
<i>Sigismund</i> Earl of <i>Luxemburg</i> , Brother of <i>Wenceslaus</i> King of <i>Bohemia</i> and <i>Hungary</i>	1411	27
<i>Albert</i> II. D. of <i>Austria</i> Son of <i>Sigismund</i>	1439	1
<i>Frederick</i> III. Duke of <i>Austria</i>	1440	53
<i>Maximilian</i> Son of <i>Frederick</i> , crowned King of the <i>Romans</i> in his Father's time, and succeeded him	1493	25
<i>Charles</i> V. Son of <i>Philip</i> King of <i>Spain</i> , and Grandson of <i>Maximilian</i>	1519	38
<i>Ferdinand</i> Brother to <i>Charles</i>	1558	6
<i>Maximilian</i> II. Son of <i>Ferdinand</i>	1564	12
<i>Rudolph</i> <i>Maximilian's</i> Son	1576	36
<i>Matthias</i> Brother to <i>Rudolph</i>	1612	7
<i>Ferdinand</i> of <i>Gratz</i> , Grandson of <i>Ferdinand</i> I.	1619	17
<i>Ferdinand</i> III. succeeded his Father	1637	20
<i>LEOPOLD</i> Son of <i>Ferdinand</i> III. elected July 8th	1658	
(now reigning)		



The present EMPEROR was born Jan. 9. 1640. nominated King of Hungary, June 27. 1653. King of Bohemia, Aug. 2. 1656. elected King of the Romans, June 18. 1658. and crowned Emperor, July 22. He married Margaret of Austria, Daughter to Philip IV. King of Spain, and Sister to the late King of France, on the 12th of April, 1663. She died Mar. 20. 1673. leaving Issue one Daughter, who was married to the present Elector of Bavaria. The Emperor married again Octob. 15. 1673. Claudia Daughter to Ferdinand Arch-Duke of Inspruck, who died Apr. 8. 1676. leaving no issue. He married a third time on the 6th of Jan. 1677. Mary eldest Daughter of Philip Duke of Neuburg now Elector Palatine, by whom he has Issue

JOSEPHUS-Jacobus-Ignatius-Joannes-Antonius-Eustachius, born July 16. 1678. He was Crowned King of Hungary in 1688. and chosen King of the Romans, Jan. 24. 1690.

CAROLUS-Franciscus-Josephus, &c. born Oct. 1. 1685.

And several Daughters.

### Of the Power of the Emperor.

Having shewn how the King of Germany obtain'd the pompous Title of *Romanorum Imperator*, and how many Princes have succeeded in that Dignity, it remains that we speak something of the Territories subject to his Dominions, and of his Power. It is plain, by what we have already said, That Charles the Great got nothing but a bare Title by the Pope's saluting him Emperor: Germany and France were already in his possession, Lombardy he had just Conquer'd, Spain had been long possess'd by the Goths, and the Popes had a good part of Italy; so that the Citizens of Rome had nothing to bestow upon him but the Honour, when he declared him their Emperor. However, That Title his Successors have been careful in preserving, and always write themselves *Cæsar* in memory of Julius, and Augustus from Octavius, in imitation of the Roman Emperors: They also call Germany the Sacred Roman Empire, and endeavour in all things to keep up the Grandeur of those ancient Princes. The Dominions of Charlemaign were soon divided; his Son Lewis the Godly erecting out of 'em many Kingdoms, as we have already shewn in our account of the Kings of France: Germany with the Imperial Honour he gave to his eldest Son Lotharius; But his Posterity proving mean degenerate Persons, they soon lost it, and several Princes were afterwards elected to that Dignity; Germany in time being divided among many Princes, whose Powers were exceedingly encreas'd by the Offices and Dignities that the Emperors conferr'd on them, and at several times made Hereditary to their Families. These Offices were *Hertogen* or Dukes, to whom were committed the Government of the larger parts of Germany; *Graffen* or Earls, who had the care of smaller parts; *Pfaltzgraven*, Counts Palatine or Præfects of the Court-Royal, who administr'd Justice in the Verge of the Court; *Landgraves*, who were Presidents set over Provinces; *Marggraves* or Marquisses, who were Presidents of the Marches or Borders for repelling the Incursions of Enemies and administering Justice to the Inhabitants; also *Burggraves*, who were Governors of the Royal Castles or Forts. These Offices being made Hereditary, the Possessors of them in time obtain'd Sovereign Authority in their respective Governments; which the Emperors, either through their own

Liberality, or being prevail'd on by Money or Service, or oblig'd by some exigency of Affairs, have at several times confirm'd to them: So that at present, tho' the Emperor be supream Lord over all Germany, he is not, as Emperor, Master of any particular part of it (except some few of the Princes Estates that have returned to the Crown as Fiefs for want of Heirs) it being all subject to the several Princes: whereof 'tis true the present Emperor, as Arch-Duke of Austria, is the Richest.

The Power of the Emperor hath been so restrain'd by several Capitularies or Agreements between the Emperors and Princes, that 'tis difficult to say what it is: The best account that can be given of it is, That he exercises Regal Authority over all Germany, except in such things as by Grants of his Predecessors he is restrain'd; the chief whereof are as follows, according to a late Author that collected it out of them. First, the Emperor hath not the Legislative Power. The general Law all over the Empire is the Civil or Roman, mix'd with the Canon, and the old Customs of the Germans, and in the several States the particular Laws made by them, which firmly oblige in their own Dominions. To these are added the Statutes of the Diets, by which alone can any new Law be introduced, or any Law made that will bind all the States; and such Statute or Reces (as it is call'd) of the Diet, obliges the Emperor also. Next, the Emperor cannot levy Taxes. If there be occasion for Money to be rais'd for the Service of the Empire in general, it cannot be done without the consent of the Diet. By the Capitulary of the present Emperor, he is tyed up from beginning a War, or making Alliance with a Foreigner, without the consent of the Electors. By the same it is declar'd, That the Emperor shall not deprive any Prince or State of their Dignity or Dominions. Nor can he impose Religion on any Prince or State, or punish any Man on that account.

But what I have been saying of the limitation of the Emperor's Power, is to be understood of him as he is Emperor; for in his own hereditary Dominions he may act as he pleases, with respect to the particular Laws there: Wherefore, the present Emperor being King of Hungary and Bohemia, Arch-duke of Austria, Duke of Silesia and Marquess of Moravia, Duke of Stiria, Carinthia and Carniola, Earl of Tyrol, Cilley and Gorice, and Lord of many Cities, and Territories in Schwaben, besides what he has lately gain'd from the Turks, is a very powerful and mighty Prince, and able to carry on a War at his own Expence, though the Diet should happen to disagree with him.

The Emperor only can confer Honours, create Princes, and enfranchise Cities; all the Princes receive Investiture from him; he instituteth Universities; and 'tis he only can give leave to build Cities. He is serv'd by the greatest Princes of Germany, address'd to by the name of *Cæsar*, and *semper Augustus*, and his Embassadors in Foreign Court take place of those of all the Kings and States of Europe.

### Of the King of the Romans, the Electors of the Empire, and the other Princes of Germany.

The King of the Romans is a Dignity erected of late Ages, being begun in the time of Charles IV. He is chosen to be the Emperor's Deputy in case of his Absence or Sicknes, and upon his Death to suc-



ceed him without other Election. This was introduced in Policy by the Emperors, that they might in their Lives time secure the Succession to their Family, and procure their Successors better Terms than they might be able to obtain in a Vacancy. This Dignity therefore is not constantly in being, and hath been only conferr'd when the Emperors have had a Son to succeed, and have had Interest enough to engage the Electors to choose him. The Son of the present Emperor was elected to this Honour on the 24th Jan. 1657, and crown'd at *Augsburg* two days after.

The Electoral Princes are Nine in number, viz. 1. The Archbishop of *Mentz*, who is styled Arch-Chancellor of *Germany*, Dean of the Electoral College, sits on the Emperor's right Hand in the Diet, and had formerly the right of crowning the King of *Bohemia*. 2. The Archbishop of *Trier*, who is call'd Arch-Chancellor of *France* and the Kingdom of *Aquitaine*, and claims the first Vote in the Election of the Emperor; he sits over against the Emperor in the Diet. 3. The Archbishop of *Colign*, he has the Title of Arch-Chancellor of *Italy*, claims the first Vote in choosing the King of the *Romans*, and of setting the Crown on his Head; he sits next the Emperor on his left Hand. 4. The King of *Bohemia*, he is Lord Cup bearer to the Emperor, first of the secular Electors, and in publick Processions walks next the Emperor or King of the *Romans*. 5. The Duke of *Bavaria*, who is Lord Sewer, and carrieth the Globe before the Emperor in solemn Processions. 6. The Duke of *Saxony*, he is Lord High Marshal of the Empire, and carrieth the naked Sword before the Emperor. 7. The Marquis of *Brandenburg*, he is Lord High Chamberlain, and in Processions carrieth the Sceptor before the Emperor. 8. The Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, who is Lord High Treasurer, and in the Procession at the Coronation scattereth the Medals among the People. 9. The Duke of *Brunswick-Lunenbourg-Hanover*.

These have much greater Authority, and enjoy larger Privileges and Rights than the other Princes of *Germany*. They chuse the Emperor and King of the *Romans*, and pretend a Power of Deposing him. In some Cases they exclude the rest of the States, and consult by themselves Matters of greatest Importance; the Emperor is oblig'd to ask their Advice when he call's a Diet. In an *Interregnum* the Elector of *Saxony* and the Elector Palatine of the *Rhine* govern the Empire; in which case, the Jurisdiction of the former extends over all the Northern part, and the latter governs all the Countries on the *Rhine*, the Circle of *Schwarzen*, &c. but the Duke of *Bavaria* disputes this Right with the Count Palatine, and at the Death of the last Emperor did actually take the Office upon him; which the other protested against, and complain'd of as an Usurpation upon his Right.

At what time, or by what means these Princes first obtain'd the Electoral Power, is not certainly known: The common Opinion is, That the Emperor *Orto III.* and Pope *Gregory V.* instituted them; but this is disputed, and many learned Men are of Opinion, That tho' it be true that from the time of *Orto* the Empire was elective yet that the Elections were not made by these seven Princes only, but by the great Officers of the Empire in general; of whom these being the chief, and most considerable by their Estates, made a shift to overtop the rest, and assume that Power wholly to themselves; this is dated from the time of *Frederick II.* and *Conrad IV.* at the death of the last of which, several Elections were made at the same time, and the Affairs of *Germany* put into great

disorder thereby. But these Princes having Power enough to repeal this Act, made it a Custom, which was at last pass'd into a Law by the Emperor *Charles IV.* who made that famous *Bulla Aurea* (so call'd from the golden Seal affix'd to it) that contains the whole Form of the Election and Power of the Electors. The number of these Electors were then but seven, to whom an eighth was added in this Age on the following occasion: *Frederick V.* Count Palatine, falling into difference with the Emperor, and accepting of the Crown of *Bohemia* in opposition to the pretension of *Ferdinand II.* was by him proferib'd; and being defeated at the Battel of *Prague* in the year, 1620, was depriv'd of his Country and Honours, which the Emperor bestow'd upon the Duke of *Bavaria*: But great Contentions and Wars ensuing thereupon, it was at last agreed in the *Westphalian Treaty A. D. 1645.* That the Count Palatine should be restor'd to his Electoral Dignity. But because the Duke of *Bavaria* could not be brought to part with his eighth Electorate was erected for him, and part of his Country, viz. the *Lower Palatinate*, being restor'd, he has since had the Title of *Electoral Palatine of the Rhine*, and the eighth Seat in the Electoral College. To this number there has been yet another added very lately, viz. in the year, 1693, and by the Emperor's favour conferr'd on *Ernestus Augustus*, Duke of *Brunswick-Lunenbourg-Hanover*.

The other Princes are, the Dukes of *Lunenbourg*, *Mecklenburg*, *Wuerttemberg*, *Sax-Lauenburg*, *Sax-Naumburg*, *Sax-Hall*, *Sax-Gotha*, *Sax-Merseburg*, &c. the Marquisses of *Baden*, *Cuembach*, &c. the Landgraves of *Hesse*, the Princes of *East-Friseland*, *Anhalt*, *Montbeliard*, *Birkfeld*, *Nassau*, *Furslenburg*, *Hoenzollern*, &c. the Counts of *Solm*, *Dietrichstein*, *Aversburg*, with many others. As also, the Archbishop of *Saltzburg*, the Bishops of *Munster*, *Liege*, *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Paderborn*, *Osnaburg*, *Aichstadt*, *Stralsburg*, *Augsburg*, *Basil*, *Constance*, *Hildesheim*, *Spire*, *Worms*, *Passau* and *Lubeck*, together with some Abbots, and the Great Master of the *Teutonic Order*, &c. These have Sovereign Authority in their own Estates, and govern their Subjects without Cognizance of the Emperor.

There is yet another Class of Sovereign States in *Germany*, viz.

### *The Imperial Cities and Hanse-Towns.*

The Cities of *Germany* were, from their beginning, endow'd with large Privileges, which were given by the Princes that built them, to invite the People to inhabit them, and leave the rude manner of Living they had been accusom'd to before the Fifth Century after Christ. Accordingly, upon this encouragement, they flock'd to the Cities, and betook themselves to Manufactures and Trades; by which being in time grown Rich, many of the Cities obtain'd by purchase, or otherwise, exemption from the Jurisdiction of the Princes in whose Dominion they stood; and by permission of the Emperors, at several times, were erected into independent States, to be govern'd by their own Magistrates under the Protection of the Emperor, each City paying its Proportion in all Taxes levied for the publick Service of the Empire; and these are those Cities that are call'd Imperial and Free, and are very numerous, the Catalogue of them would be too tedious; the Reader will find them noted in the following Description, to which we refer him. These Cities have frequently made

League



Leagues for their mutual Defence, as also for the sake of Trade; upon which account was form'd the famous

*Hanseatick Society*, which was a League made between several of the Maritime Cities of Germany, whereof *Hamburg* and *Lubeck* were the Chief about the end of the 13th Century, for their mutual assistance in carrying on their Commerce, by which they grew very considerable, and engag'd many Cities into their Society, even to the number of near four-score; they also obtained large Privileges, and exercised a Jurisdiction among themselves; to which purpose they were divided into four Circles, distinguish'd by the names of the four Principal Cities among them, viz. *Lubeck*, *Cologne*, *Brunswick* and *Dantzick*, wherein were held their Courts of Judicature. They were call'd *Hanse* or *Anse*, q. d. *am zee*, on the Sea, because the Society at first consisted only of such, tho' afterwards many Inland Cities were introduced; 'Tis true, this Etymology is disputed, and many others assign'd; but this seems the most probable, and therefore we shall name no more. The most flourishing time of this Society was from about the year 1400 to 1500. after which it declin'd, and is at present not very considerable.

### Of the Diet of the Empire.

The Diet or Parliament of Germany is compos'd of the Electors, the Princes Spiritual and Temporal, of the Empire; and the Deputies of the Imperial Cities. This general Assembly of all the Estates of the Empire is summoned by the Emperor, by Letters directed to every Member six Months before the Session, informing them of the time and place. When they are assembled, the Emperor, or his Commissioner, proposes to them the Matters to be transacted, which are things that concern the whole Empire in general, such as raising Money for a Foreign War, and making Laws which oblige all the States. The Diet is divided into three Houses, which are; the Electors, the Princes, and the Cities: In the first, the Bishop of *Mentz* is Speaker; in the second, some Prince of the House of *Austria* and the Bishop of *Salzburg* by turns; and in the third, that City in which the Session is held. The Princes are divided into two Benches, the Spiritual and Temporal: The Cities are also divided into two Benches, the *Rheinische* and the *Schwabische*; on the former sit the Deputies of the Cities on the *Rhine*, &c. and on the latter the Cities in *Schwaben*, *Franconia*, &c. The Diet was formerly assembled annually, but latterly not so often, except at this time of War; and it is at the Emperors pleasure to call it; only in case of his omission the Electors may advise him to it; the States judging it convenient that it be assembled once in three years. The place of its Meeting is also at the Emperors disposal; *Mentz* was by *Charles* the Great appointed for it, but it has since been held at several other free Cities; At present *Ratisbon* is the usual place of its meeting.

### Of the Supreme Courts of Judicature.

The chief Court for determining great Causes in Germany is the Imperial Chamber: At first the Emperors with their chief Ministers heard and decided all considerable Causes, but those growing numerous,

*Maximilian* I. settled a Court at *Worms* in 1497; which was afterwards removed to *Spire*, and nam'd *The Imperial Chamber*, wherein Causes are Tryed by certain Judges call'd Assessors: Of these at first there were sixteen, now fifty, whereof the Emperor appoints the President and the four chief Officers, the Electors chuse each of them one, and the rest are nam'd by other Princes and States of the Empire. Disputes between the Princes are brought before this Court, as also other Causes, by Appeal from Inferiour Courts. The Seat of it was establish'd at *Spire*, never to be remov'd without consent of the Diet; but in this last War, the City having been taken and burnt by the French, it is remov'd and establish'd at *Weslar* in *Hesse*, by consent of the Diet.

The Emperor holds another high Court in his Palace, which is call'd the Chamber of *Vienna*, and is of equal Authority with that of *Spire*: The Emperor, by himself, or Deputy, sits as Chief, and is assisted by a certain number of Judges, whereof part are Protestants: This Court decides all great Causes brought by Appeal from subordinate Courts, and claims the same Authority with the Chamber of *Spire*.

### The Arch-bishopricks, Bishopricks and Universities in Germany.

For the Government of the Church, there are seven Arch-bishops, and thirty five Bishops; which are as follow.

#### I. The Arch-bishop of *Mentz* hath 12 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of 1. *Spire*, 2. *Worms*, 3. *Strasburg*, 4. *Wurtzburg*, 5. *Aichstat*, 6. *Verden*, 7. *Chur*, 8. *Hildesheim*, 9. *Paderborn*, 10. *Constance*, 11. *Harberstadt*, and 12. *Bamberg* exempt.

#### II. The Arch-bishop of *Trier* hath 3 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishop of *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*.

#### III. The Arch-bishop of *Cologne* hath 4 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Liege*, *Munster*, *Minden*, and *Osna-bruck*.

#### IV. The Arch-bishop of *Magedburg* hath 5 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Meissen* exempt, *Maesburg*, *Naumburg*, *Brandenburg*, and *Havelberg*.

#### V. The Arch-bishop of *Salzburg* hath 10 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of 1. *Freisinghen*, 2. *Ratisbon* exempt, 3. *Passaw*, 4. *Chiemse*, 5. *Seckaw*, 6. *Lavant*, 7. *Brixen*, 8. *Gurk*, 9. *Vienna* exempt, and 10. *Newstadt*.

#### VI. The Arch-bishop of *Bremen* hath 3 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Lubeck*, *Ratzeburg*, and *Scheweirin*.

#### VII. The Arch-bishop of *Prague* hath 3 Suffragans, viz.

The Bishops of *Olmuz*, *Leutmeritz*, and *Koninggratz*.

And,



And, for Propagation of Learning, Universities are establish'd in these following Cities, viz.

Founded A. D.	At Marburg,	1526
At <i>Vienna</i> ,	<i>Strasbourg</i> ,	1538
<i>Prague</i> ,	<i>Gripsholm</i> ,	1547
<i>Alma</i> ,	<i>Dillingen</i> ,	1549
<i>Colen</i> ,	<i>Jena</i> ,	1558
<i>Triers</i> ,	<i>Leuengben</i> , about	1560
<i>Leu</i> ,	<i>Helmstadt</i> ,	1576
<i>Hidelberg</i> ,	<i>Hebron</i> , now <i>Sigen</i> ,	1589
<i>Leipzick</i> ,		1592
<i>Exeter</i> ,	<i>Paderborn</i> ,	1612
<i>Friburg</i> ,	<i>Altorf</i> ,	1607
<i>Ingolstadt</i> ,	<i>Gieffen</i> ,	1669
<i>Turingen</i> ,	<i>Olmütz</i> in <i>Moravia</i> ,	New.
<i>Rostock</i> ,	<i>Kiel</i> ,	
<i>Wittenberg</i> ,	<i>Gratz</i> ,	
<i>Frankfort</i> on the <i>Oder</i> ,	At <i>Hanaw</i> , a <i>Scitia illu-</i>	
1506	<i>stris</i> .	

The *EMPIRE* is divided in *TEN* *CIRCLES*, which are as follow

The Circle of the *UPPER SAXONY*, containing the Dukedom of *Pomerania*, the Electorate of *Brandenburg*, and the States of *Saxony*; the Earldoms of *Meissen*, *Schwartzenburg*, *Stalberg* and *Barby*, the Landgraviate of *Thuringen*, the Marquitate of *Mysia*, with the Duchies of *Altenburg*, *Meraburg*, and *Naumburg* and *Vestland*; as also the Bishoprick of *Havelberg*, the Abby of *Quedlinberg*, &c. The Director of this Circle is the Elector of *Saxony*.

The Circle of the *LOWER SAXONY*, which contains the Duchy of *Hesse*, the Duchies of *Mecklenburg*, *Lawenburg*, *Bremen*, *Braunschick*, *Lunenburg*, *Hannover*, and *Magdeburg* the Principalities of *Haltersheim* and *Ferden*, the Bishopricks of *Hildersheim* and *Lubeck*. The Directors of this Circle are the Duke of *Brandenburg* and the Duke of *Braunschick* by turns.

The Circle of *WESTPHALIA*, containing the County of *Emden* or *East-Friesland*, the County of *Oldenburg* and *Delmenhorst*, the Bishoprick of *Munster*, the Principality of *Minden*, the Counties of *Diepholt*, *Hoya*, *Bourhem*, *Tecklenburg*, *Steinfurt*, *Lemgow*, *Leppa*, *Ravensburg* and *Spiegelburg*, the Bishopricks of *Osnabruck*, *Paderborn* and *Liege*, and the Abbey of *Cortey*; the Duchy of *Westphalia*, the Duchy of *Cleves*, the Duchy of *Juliers*, the Duchy of *Berg*, and the County of *Marck*. The Directors are the Bishop of *Munster* and the Duke of *Newburg*.

The Circle of the *LOWER RHINE*, wherein are the three Spiritual Electorates and Archbishopsricks of *Menz*, *Triers* and *Colen*, the Palatinate, and the Electorate of the *Rhine*, with the Bishoprick of *Worms*. The Director is the Arch-bishop of *Menz*.

The Circle of the *UPPER RHINE* contains the Landgraviates of *Hesse* and *Darmstadt*, the Counties of *Nassau*, *Sons*, *Waldick*, *Hanaw*, *Epich*; the Bishoprick of *Spire*, the Abbies of *Fuld* and *Hildesheim*, the Duchy of *Zeibtrucken*, and *Alsatia*. The Elector Palatine and the Bishop of *Worms* are the Directors.

The Circle of *FRANCONIA*, wherein are contain'd the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg* and *Aischstadt*; the Principality of *Henneberg*, the Duchy of *Coburg*, the Marquitate of *Culmbach*, the Marquitate of *Onpach*, the Burgaviate of *Nuremberg*,

the Estate of the Great Master of the *Teutonic Order*, the Counties of *Reineck*, *Wertheim*, *Holach*, *Papenheim*, *Schwarzenberg*, *Cassel Senfheim* &c. The Directors of this Circle are the Bishop of *Bamberg* and the Marquis of *Culmbach*.

The Circle of *SCHWABEN* comprehends the Duchy of *Wurttemberg*, with the County of *Loebenstein*, and the Principality of *Hoen-Zelleren*, the Marquitate of *Baden*, the Marquitate of *Ortnaw*, the Territory of *Briggow*, the Bishoprick of *Constance*, the Principality of *Furstemburg*, and County of *Reinfelden*, the Bishoprick of *Augsburg*, the Abbies of *Kempten*, &c. the Counties of *Oeting*, *Koniseck* and *Miedelheim*; the Marquitate of *Burgaw*, the Baronies of *Limpurg* and *Fustingen*, the Estate of the *Fuggers*, and the Territory of *Ulm*. The Directors are the Duke of *Wurttemberg*, and the Bishop of *Constance*.

The Circle of *BAVARIA* contains the Duchy and Electorate of *Bavaria*, with the Bishopricks of *Freisingen*, *Ratisbon*, and *Passaw*; the Palatinate of *Bavaria*, the Duchy of *Newburg*, the County of *Sulzbach*, and the Abbey of *Waldsassen*, the Archbishoprick of *Salzburg*, and the Provostship of *Bergesgarden*. The Directors of this Circle are the Elector of *Bavaria*, and the Arch-bishop of *Salzburg*.

The Circle of *AUSTRIA*, wherein are contain'd the Arch-dukedom of *Austria*, the Duchies of *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, the Counties of *Ganz*, *Cilly* and *Tyrol*, and the Bishopricks of *Braxen* and *Trent*. The Arch-duke of *Austria* is Director of this Circle.

The other Circle was the 17 Provinces of the *Netherlands*, which the Emperor *Charles V.* made a part of the Empire, by the name of the Circle of *BURGUNDY*, but those have now no Votes in the Diet; and, having been already describ'd, we need not say any more of them.

To these must be added the Kingdom of *BOHEMIA*, with the Duchy of *SILESIA* and Marquitates of *LC SATIA* and *MORAVIA*, all subject to the House of *Austria*, and reckon'd part of the Empire.

For more particular Satisfaction, see the ensuing Table of the division and sub-division of all Germany, viz.

In the Circle of the Lower Saxony are comprehend'd	The Duke-	Mecklenburg divided in the Territories of	{ Schwerin, Gustrow, Rostock, Wismar.
	doms of	Sax-Lawenburg, and County of Ratzelburg.	
	Part of the Duchy of Holstein, wherein stands		{ Hamburg, Lubeck.
	The Duke-	Bremen	
		Braunschick divided into	{ Brunswick, Wolfenbattel. Hanover.
	doms of	Lunenburg divided into	{ Lunenburg, Zell, { Zell, D. Darmstadt C.
		Magdeburg.	
	The Bishoprick of Hildesheim, The Principality of Halberstadt, The Principality of Ferden.		



*In the Circle of the Upper Saxony, are*

Pomerania, divided into {  
 Royal, subject to the Swedes, divided into the Territories of {  
 Ducal, under the Elector of Brandenburg, in which are the Territories of {

Bardt,  
 Gutzkow,  
 Walgost,  
 Stetin.  
 Pomerania,  
 Cassubien,  
 Venden,  
 Butow,  
 Lawenburg.

Brandenburg, divided into {  
 Altmark,  
 Middlemark divided into {  
 Newmark divided into {

Middlemark,  
 Prignitz,  
 Rupen,  
 Uckerana.  
 Newmark,  
 Sternberg.

The Dukedom of Saxony.  
 Principality of Anhalt, divided into {  
 Earldom of Mansfeld, divided into the Branches of {  
 The Counties of {  
 Landgraviate of Thuringen.  
 The Territories of {  
 Subject to several Branches of the House of Saxony. The Counties of {  
 The Marquisate of Misnia, divided into the Territories of {

Deßau,  
 Brandenburg,  
 Zerbst,  
 Kotten,  
 Pötzka.  
 Arnstein,  
 Kipran,  
 Weins,  
 Querfurt.  
 Schwartzburg,  
 Hokenstein.  
 Erfurt,  
 Eischfeld.  
 Hall,  
 Mersburg,  
 Naumburg.  
 Weimer,  
 Gotha,  
 Eysenach,  
 Altenburg,  
 Meissen,  
 Ertzbürg,  
 Leypsig.

The County of Embden or East Friesland.  
 The County of Oidenburg, with Delmenhorst.  
 The Bishopricks of {  
 The County of Bentheim.  
 The Principality of Minden.  
 The Counties of {  
 The Duchy of {  
 The Bishoprick of Liege.  
 Several Imperial Cities.

Münster, divided into the {  
 Osnabrug,  
 Paderborn.  
 Bielefeld,  
 Heye,  
 Lemgow,  
 Schaumburg,  
 Lippe,  
 Steinfort,  
 Ravensberg,  
 Rheda,  
 Spigellberg,  
 Ritberg,  
 Tecklenberg.  
 Berg,  
 Juliers,  
 Cleeve.

*In the Circle of the Lower Rhine.*

The Archbishops and Electorates of {  
 The Electorate of the Rhine, in which are included. {

MENTZ,  
 TRIERS,  
 COLOGNE.  
 The Palatinate of the Rhine,  
 Sponheim, being the 12 Bailiwicks of Simmern, Creutznach, Oppenheim, &c.  
 The Bishoprick of Worms.

*In the Circle of the Upper Rhine.*

Hesse, divided into the Landgraviates of {  
 The Abbies of {  
 The County of Waldeck.

Cassel,  
 Marburg,  
 Darmstadt.  
 Fuld,  
 Hirschfeld.

Nassau, divided into these Branches, {  
 The Wateraw, containing the Countys of {  
 The County of Erpach.  
 The Bishoprick of Spire.  
 The Duchy of Zweibrücken, or Deuxponts.  
 The County of Catzenelbogen.  
 Landgraviate of Alsatia, divided into {  
 The Territory of the City of Francfort.

Dillenberg,  
 Dietz,  
 Hadamar,  
 Kerberg,  
 Sigen,  
 Idstein,  
 Weilburg,  
 Wilsbaden,  
 Bielefeld.  
 Solms,  
 Hanau,  
 Esenberg,  
 Sayn,  
 Wied,  
 Wittgenstein,  
 Hatzfeld,  
 Westerberg.

*In the Circle of Franconia are these States.*

The Bishopricks of {  
 The State of the Great Master of the Teutonic Order.  
 The Marquisates of {  
 The Principality of Henneberg.  
 The Duchy of Coburg.  
 The Burgraviate of Nuremberg.  
 The Counties of {  
 Several Imperial Cities.

Wurtzberg,  
 Bamberg,  
 Aichstat.  
 Culembach,  
 Onspach.  
 Holach,  
 Castell,  
 Schwartzenberg,  
 Reineck,  
 Wertheim,  
 Coburg,  
 Papenheim,  
 Sensheim,  
 Limpurg,  
 Erpach.



In the Circle of *Saxony* are

- The Duchy of *Saxony* } *Lichtenstein*,  
with the Counties of } *Hohenberg*.  
And the Principality of *Herrn Stern*.  
*Baden*, divided into the } *Baden*,  
Marquissates of } *Darmstadt*.
- Marquissate of *Cranich*.
- Territory of *Bohemia*.
- The *Black Forest*, } Principality of *Fürstentum*.  
wherein are } The County of *Rheinland*.
- Territory of *Herrn* } The Bishoprick of *Constance*.  
comprising } Landgraviate *Niederrhein*.
- The Bishoprick of *Augsburg*.
- The Abbeys of } *Freiburg*,  
} *Baden*,  
} *Lindau*.
- The Marquissate of *Württemberg*.
- The Countships of } *Stuttgart*,  
} *Heilbrunn*,  
} *Heilbrunn*,  
} *Heilbrunn*.
- The Bishoprick of *Würzburg*.
- The Prince of the Principality of the *Electors*.
- The Territory of the *City of Cologne*.
- And many Imperial Cities.
- Marquissate of the *Palatinate* } *Lothar-Lordship*.  
of *Bohemia* wherein are } County of *Cambrai*.  
also joined the } Territory of *Aulberg*.
- The Duchy and Elector- } *Münster*,  
ate of *Brandenburg* } *Hildesheim*.  
into the Territories of }
- Together with the Bishop- } *Hersingen*,  
rick of } County of *Potsdam*.
- The Lower *Brandenburg*, di- } *Stettin*,  
vided into the three } *Lanzig*,  
Territories of } *Berlin*.
- The Archbishoprick of *Salisburg*.
- The Bishopricks of } *Ratisbon*,  
} *Regensburg*.
- The Duchy of *Nieder*.
- The Province of *Bohemia*.
- The County of *Saxony*.

In the Circle of *Austria* are

- The Arch- } Higher, di- } *Mühl*,  
Duchy of } vided into } *Scharf*,  
*Austria*, } the Terri- } *Haus*,  
divided } tories of } *Traum*.  
into } Lower, di- } *Upper Tennen*,  
} vided into } *Lower Tennen*,  
the Terri- } *Upper Mantau*,  
tories of } *Lower Mantau*.
- The Duchy of *Syria*, with
- The County of *Cilly*.
- The Duchy of *Carniola*, with the Marquissate of *Windischmark*, and
- The County of *Goritz*.
- The Duchy of *Carinthia*.
- The County of *Tirol*.
- The Bishoprick of *Bruxen*.
- The Bishoprick of *Trent*.

The Kingdom of *Bohemia* is divided into 11 Circles.

The Marquissate of *Lusatia*, into Higher and Lower.

The Duchy of *Silesia*, divided into Higher and Lower.

The Marquissate of *Moravia*, into Eastern and Western.

Also *SAVOY* and *SWISSERLAND* are reckon'd part of the Empire; but these being now distinct States shall be spoken of apart hereafter.

## CHAP. II.

### Of the Spiritual ELECTORATES.

IN this Description of *Germany*, we shall pursue the same Method as in other parts, and without regard to the Precedencies of Princes place the Descriptions according to the situations of the Countries, and therefore begin with *Cologne*, rather than *Mentz* and *Trier*, because this lies first in the way from the Netherlands, whence we are last come, omitting *Cologne* and *Juliers*, till we come back to *Westphalia*, and the Dominions of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, wherein they depend.

From *Cologne* we shall pass up the *Rhine*, taking in by the way the *Maine* and the *Neckar*, together with so much of the *M. Elbe* as lies in *Germany*: And having viewed all the Countries on both sides of these Rivers, pursue our Journey through *Saxony* to the *Danube* and the Estates of the House of *Austria*; thence through *Bohemia* and its Dependencies, Coast the *Oder*, *Elbe* and *M. Elbe*, and at last return through *Westphalia* again to the Banks of the *Rhine*.

### SECT. I.

#### The Electorate of COLOGNE.

The Archbishoprick and Electorate of *COLOGNE* is extended on the Western Bank of the *Rhine*, between the Duchy of *Cleves* on the North, and the Electorate of *Trier* on the South, the Duchy of *Juriers* on the West, and that of *Berg* (parted from it by the *Rhine*) on the East. It is a fruitful and pleasant Country, producing excellent Wine, besides Corn and other Necessaries for Life. Its extent is not large, for though it be about 40 miles in length, it is not above 7 or 8 in breadth; the Archbishop's Supream Lord of it, as also of a pretty large Country in *Westphalia*, and is richer and more potent than either of the other two Ecclesiastical Electors; his Annual Revenue being reckon'd to be above 100 Thousand



Thousand Pounds Sterling. He is dignified with the Title of Arch-Chancellor of the Empire, and Legate in Italy. This See was advanced from Episcopal to Arch-Episcopal in the year 743; to which was added the Dignity of Elector in 1021. The Archbishop is chosen by the Chapter, which is the most Illustrious of any in Germany (being composed all of Princes or Noblemen at least (private Gentlemen being excluded) and are 24 in number. The present Archbishop and Elector of Cologne, is Prince Clement, Brother to the Elector of Bavaria, who was chosen July 14. 1688. and invested notwithstanding the Pretensions of Cardinal Furstemburg; the Justification of which by the French King, and the Opposition of it by the Emperor, was the occasion of the beginning of the late War.

The chief Cities and Towns of this Electorate are,	{	Cologne, Cap.	Brecl.
		Bonne.	Zons.
		Mulheim.	Arensberg.
		Rheinberck.	Werle.
		Kempen.	Geseck.
		Keyserwaert.	Dorsten.
	{	Nuys.	Recklenhausen, &c.

COLOGNE, or Colen, call'd Keulen by the Germans, and in Latin *Colonia Agripina*, and *Colonia Ubiorum*, is seated on the River Rhine, at the distance of 70 miles from Mentz, and 40 from Coblentz to the North, 70 from Nimeguen, and 20 from Dusseldorp to the South-east, and 60 from Maestricht to the East. It is one of the largest Cities of Germany, and very considerable on account of its Buildings, number of Inhabitants, and great Trade in Wine and other Commodities of Germany, which by the means of the Rhine are brought hither, and Transported to Holland. It is a free City, being Govern'd by its own Senate, which Orders and Judges all Civil Matters and Causes; but Criminal are judg'd by the Elector. It is also one of the four chief Hanse Towns, and is called the Holy City, because of the many Churches and Religious Houses in it; here being, besides the Cathedral, 10 Collegiate and 19 Parochial Churches, also 37 Monasteries and many Hospitals. In the Cathedral they shew the Tombs of the Three Wise Men that came to Worship our Saviour, call'd hence the Three Kings of Colen, whose Bones they pretend were removed to Constantinople by Helena the Mother of Constantine; thence they were carried to Milan, by Eustorgius Bishop of that See, and afterwards brought hither by Rainold Archbishop of that See. Three Skulls very richly Enshrined are shewn to Strangers, and affirm'd to have belong'd to their Bodies, and to have great Virtue in Curing Diseases by Touch, &c. One of the Parish-Churches is dedicated to S. Ursula, who, with her 11000 Virgins, they say, were Martyr'd here. An University was long since planted here, which being Declin'd, was Re-established in 1388. and Endow'd with large Privileges by Pope Urban VI. and is at present in a very flourishing State. The Walls of this City are flank'd with 83 Towers, and encompass'd with three deep Ditches.

Cologne was Built, or Repair'd and Enlarged at least, by the Ubii, who possess'd the Wetteraw and Hessa and in the time of Augustus obtain'd this Country and Juliers of that Emperor (being disturbed by the Catti their Neighbours) and put themselves under the Protection of Agrippa, from whence some say it had its name, or as others, from Agrippina (Daughter to Germanicus, Wife of Claudius, and Mother to Nero)

who was born here. It was the Metropolis of the Germania Secunda, and the Seat of the chief Roman Colony. Merove King of France beat the Romans hence about the year 450. and quickly after Attila the Hunn ruin'd it. Afterwards the Romans Rebuilt it, and it was again taken by the French, and about the year 500 made part of their Kingdom by Clovis the Great. The Emperor Otto about 950. subjected it to its Prelate, which was oppos'd by the Citizens, and great Differences at several times have happen'd thereupon, which were at last compos'd by the Emperor Maximilian, and the City made Free and Imperial, but oblig'd to pay Homage to the Elector, who is also oblig'd to confirm their Privileges: And they are still so tenacious of Liberty, that though the Elector by his Officers exercise Justice in all Criminal Cases in the City, they will not permit him in Person to reside long in Town, nor come with a great Train; for which reason he lives always at Bonne. It was in the year 1260. that this City entred into the League of the Hanse Towns, and was made the Capital of their Fourth Province. Cologne is seated in Lat. 51 Deg. and Long. 26 Deg.

In a Convent of Carmelites, not far from hence, a Treaty of Peace was set on foot in 1673. between the Emperor, King of Spain, France, &c. and the several Princes sent their Plenipotentiaries accordingly: But it was interrupted by the Seizure of William Prince of Furstemburg, since made Cardinal, who tho' a German and a Count of the Empire, had espoused the Interest of France, and was made that King's Ambassador at this Treaty, in which he carried Matters so high, that he defeated the endeavours of the several Ministers for Peace, and made the Emperor cause him to be Seized and carried to Vienna, where he was detain'd close Prisoner till the Treaty of Nimeguen.

Bonne, Bonna, Colonia Julia Bonna; also Ara Ubiorum, from the Altars erected here by the Ubii the ancient Inhabitants; is the usual place of Residence of the Archbishop of Colen, who has a magnificent Palace here in the Castle. It stands upon the Rhine 15 miles South from Colen, in a fruitful Country, which produces very good Wine, and the Woods abound with variety of Game. A ridge of Mountains on both sides the Rhine, reach from hence as far as Bingen. It is as a small City, but well inhabited: The Churches are stately, especially the Collegiate, Dedicated to the Holy Martyrs Cassius, Florentius, and Marcellus, whose Bodies, with several other of the famous Theban Legion, are said to be buried in it, being brought hither by S. Helena, who Founded this Church to their Honour. The Town house is well Built, and Adorn'd with fine Paintings. This was formerly an Imperial City, but now subject to the Elector. Frederick of Austria, chosen Emperor in opposition to Lewis of Bavaria, was Crowned here in 1314. It suffer'd much in the Low Country Wars, was Besieged by the Duke of Parma, and forc'd by Famine to surrender in 1588. The Fortifications here are regular; the Wall is fac'd with Brick, and the Ditches are very broad and dry, but the Counterscarp is not very defensible: In 1673. it was taken by the Prince of Orange, our present King, from the French, after a Siege of 9 days. In 1688. Cardinal Furstemburg, in pursuance of his pretended Election above-mention'd, by assistance of the French Troops, got possession of it; but the Germans, under the Command of the Elector of Brandenburg, re-gain'd it in 1689. after a Siege of three Months.



*Reinsberg*, is a pretty large Town seated on the *Rhine*, in a small Country of 10 miles extent, belonging to the Archbishop of *Cöln*, though separated from the rest by the small County of *Münch*. It is distant 40 miles from *Cöln* to the North-west, and 10 from *Geldern* to the East; a small River or Canal rather, for it seems to be artificial, passes by it, and runs quite cross from the *Rhine* to the *Maas*. By means of this convenient situation it hath a good Trade, and the Burgers are reasonably Rich. This Town being near the Borders of *France*, had hath been claimed by the *Hollanders*, and is therefore strongly Fortified.

*Kempen*, a strong Town and Castle, stands on the Borders of *Gelderland* and *Fuliers*, 35 miles North-west from *Cöln*, and 10 miles West from the *Rhine*. It was remarkable for the gallant Defence it made in 1622, when it was vigorously Besieg'd by the *French*, *Hugonots* and *Saxons* United.

*Krefeld* stands on the East-side of the *Rhine*, between *Duisburg* and *Düsseldorf*, 15 miles from *Kempen* to the East, and 25 from *Cöln* to the North-west. It is a small Town and strong Fort, first built, as 'tis said, by one *Swiss* and an *Englishman*.

*Nijmegen*, or *Nijm*, *Nevotium*, *Nuffis*, seated on the River *Erp*, and near the *Rhine*, 20 miles from *Cöln* to the North, and 15 from *Kempen* to the South-east, is a large City and well Fortified, having the River on one side, and a double Wall on the other. The *Rhine* did anciently run by its Walls, but having alter'd its Channel, they have been forc'd to make a Trench from it to the *Erp* to bring Vessels up to their Gates. The Citizens enjoy great Privileges, which were granted to them by the Emperor *Frederick III.* in recompence for their Service, in holding out a whole year's Siege against the Duke of *Burgundy*, who oppos'd *Herman* Landgrave of *Hesse*, chosen Bishop of *Cöln*, in defence of his Brother, chosen also by another Faction. Here is a fair Collegiate Church, besides other publick Buildings of good Structure.

*Braun* is a small pleasant Town with a strong Castle, which is the Seat of the Elector when he diverts himself with Hunting in the Neighbouring Forest. It stands in the mid-way between *Cöln* and *Bonne*, and 5 miles West from the *Rhine*.

*Zülpich*, a small Town tolerably well Fortified, stands on the *Rhine*, 8 miles West from *Nijmegen*, in a Country producing much Corn, the Sale whereof is the chief Trade of the Town. The Houses are of Brick, and make a good shew.

*Münster*, a fair and large Town on the Eastern Bank of the *Rhine*, 5 miles below *Cöln*, stands in the Limits of *Bergum*, but is subject to this Elector. The Inhabitants attempted to Wall it round, and intended to make it an Imperial City, but were oppos'd in it by the Citizens of *Cöln*, and forbid by the Emperor, who caus'd the Marquis *Spinola* to spoil their Outworks in the year 1614, and the next year the Inhabitants of *Cöln* pull'd down all the new Buildings in the Town: Afterwards, during the Wars in *Germany*, they endeavour'd it again, pretending it necessary for their Security; but it was again hinder'd, and it still remains a Dependent on *Cologne*.

On the East-side of the *Rhine*, at about 20 miles distance from it, lyes a Tract of Land of about 20 miles long and 12 broad, bounded on the North by the River *Lippe*, that parts it from *Münster*, and on the South by the River *Emser*; which belongs to the Archbishop of *Cöln*, and contains many large Mannors and Lordships, and these 2 Towns, viz.

*Reck'enhäusen*, a strong Town in the middle of this Territory, 35 miles North-east from *Nijmegen*; Ta-

ken in War from the Duke of *Cleves*, by the Elector of *Cöln*'s Forces, A. 1343. Mortgaged in 1442, but Redeem'd 150 years after by Archbishop *Sander*. Here is a Nunnery, the Abbess whereof hath power of punishing Offenders, even to Death.

*Dorsten*, a place very well Fortified by the Landgrave of *Hesse Cassel* in 1639, but taken from him two years after by the Elector of *Cöln*'s Forces, after a sharp Siege of two Months. It stands on the River *Lippe*, 10 miles West from *Reck'enhäusen*, in the Barony thereof.

To this Electorate also belongs a large Tract of Land in *Westphalia*, wherein are these Towns, viz.

*Arnsberg*, a neat and pleasant City on the River *Ruhr*, 60 miles from *Nijmegen* to the East, often honour'd with the Archbishop's Presence, who comes hither for the diversion of Hunting. It was formerly subject to its own Lords, and by them given to this Elector.

*Werle*, a pleasant Town, between the Rivers *Ruhr* and *Lippe*, in which the Elector's chief Judge Official in *Westphalia* Resides. It is wall'd and fortified.

*Geseck*, which stands near the Borders of the Bishoprick of *Paderborn*; it is a fortified Town and came to this Elector in 1501, was taken by the Landgrave of *Hesse* in 1636, but afterwards restored.

## S E C T. II.

### The Archbishoprick and Electorate of T R I E R.

The Electorate of *Trier* lies between that of *Cologne* and the Dutchy of *Fuliers* on the North, *Lorraine* and the *Palatinate* on the South, *Luxemburg* on the West, and *Wetervan* on the East. It is a fruitful and pleasant Country seated on both sides the River *Moselle* and *Rhine*. Its extent from South to North-east is about 70 miles, and from West to East about 60. It was made a Metropolitan See under *Aquilus*, in the year 743, and the Archbishop was made an Elector in 1021. He hath also the Title of *Arch-Chancellor of the Empire in France*, is Temporal as well as Spiritual Lord of this Country, and hath Precedency of the Elector of *Cologne*. The Grandeur of this Prince was much greater when the Empire was in the House of *France*, than it is at present: In this Age the *French* have Invaded it often, and taken many of the Towns, which they held till the Peace of *Münster*. And both in the War of 1675, and in this late one they have over-run and harras'd it exceedingly. The Revenue of the Elector used to be reckon'd near One hundred thousand Pounds *Sterling per Annum*, but hath been much diminish'd by the War. The Chapter is compos'd of 16 Capitulary Canons, who are all of Noble Extraction, and choose the Bishops always out of themselves.

The chief Towns of this Electorate are.

[ *Trier*, Cap.  
[ *Coblentz*.  
[ *Hermanstein*  
[ *Merne*.  
[ *Overeiffel*.  
[ *Bopart*.  
[ *Engers*.  
[ *Sarluz*.  
[ *Bern-Castell*: See

*T R I E R*, call'd *Treves* by the *French* and *Latin* *Triviri* aut *Augusta Treverorum*, is seated on the *Rhine*.



River *Moselle*, over which it hath a fair Stone-bridge, and is distant 55 miles from *Coblentz* to the South-West, 70 from *Mentz* to the West, and 65 from *Cologne* to the South. It is a large City, and of very great Antiquity, but was often ruin'd by the *Huns*, *Vandals*, *Goths* and *French*. It was afterwards Imperial and Free, but hath been subject to its Archbishop ever since 1561. when it was surpriz'd by the Archbishop *James III.* A University was establish'd here in 1472. which is in a flourishing State and well fill'd with Students. Here are four Collegiate and 5 Parish Churches, 2 principal Abbies and several other Religious Houses. The City is fortified with strong Walls and Outworks; but was taken by the French in the last War, and recover'd from them in 1675. And in this War they put a Garrison into it in 1688. but quitted it after they had almost destroy'd it.

*Coblentz*, in Latin *Confluentia & Censuentes*, from its situation on the Confluence of the two Rivers *Rhine* and *Moselle*, stands in a pleasant and fruitful Country cover'd with Vines, at a the distance of 35 miles from *Mentz* to the North-West, and 40 from *Cologne* to the South-East. It is a large City and built in form of a Triangle, two sides whereof are secur'd by the two Rivers, and the third by strong Fortifications. It has a Bridge over the *Moselle*, and to guard it a Fort of 3 Bastions on the other side, and another Bridge over the *Rhine* to *Hermanstein*. This, in the time of the *Romans*, was the station of their first Legion. It was given to the See of *Triers* about 1000 years ago by King *Dagobert*, and was afterwards an Imperial City till 1312. when it was separated from the Jurisdiction of the Empire by *Henry VII.* Its situation has made it exceeding populous and of great Trade, which consists chiefly in Wine, Corn, Wood and Iron. The chief publick Buildings are, the Elector's Palace, two great Churches and some Monasteries. The private Houses are generally fair and uniform, and better built than the other Cities on the *Rhine*. It was first encompass'd with Walls by *Arnulphus* Elector of *Trier* in 1250. and afterwards regularly Fortified by *Gaspar a Petra* and other Archbishops, and is now one of the strongest Cities of *Germany*.

On the other side the *Rhine*, just over against this City, stands,

*Hermanstein*, or *Ehrenbreitstein*, an impregnable Fort well defended by Out-works on the top of a steep rocky Hill, twice as high as *Windsor-Castle*, which commands the City and the two Rivers: At the foot of this Fort, on the Banks of the *Rhine* and fronting the River, stands the Elector's Palace, which is a very noble Building. From hence is a Passage to *Coblentz* by a long Bridge of Boats, in the middle whereof two or three are let slip to let any great Vessel pass by, which they easily fasten again.

*Meyn* or *Meyen*, on the River *Nette*, is 15 miles distant from *Coblentz* to the West: It has a Castle built in 1280. by *Henry* Archbishop of *Trier*, and the Town was wall'd round by his Successor. It gives Name to a large Territory about it, in which stands *Munster* a small Town, for distinction call'd *Munster Meynfeld*.

*Oberwesel* stands on the West-side of the *Rhine* 20 miles from *Coblentz* to the South, and 25 from *Mentz* to the West. It was once an Imperial and Free City, but since the year 1312. it has been subject to the Archbishop of *Trier*.

*Boppard* is a Town and Fort seated on the *Rhine*, 10 miles South from *Coblentz*. It was also formerly

an Imperial City, but given by the Emperor *Henry VII.* to *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Trier*, who built the Castle to secure it.

*Engers*, a fair Town and Fort of the *Rhine*, stands between *Coblentz* and *Andernack*, and gives Name to a neighbouring Territory. It has a strong Castle and a noble Bridge over the *Rhine*, founded by *Cuno* Archbishop of *Trier*, who died in 1388.

*Bern-Castle* is a good Town pleasantly seated upon the *Moselle*, and makes great quantity of Wine, which enriches the Place, and has made it Populous.

*Sarburg*, on the River *Sar*, is a Town of good Strength; made so and much beautified by *Vestinger* their Archbishop.

*Limburg* stands on the River *Lohn*, betwixt *Idestein* and the County of *Weilburg*; it suffer'd much in the Wars between the French King and the Emperor.

*Montroyal*, belonging to the French, stands on the Frontiers of the Electorate, 20 miles from *Triers* to the North-East, and 30 from *Coblentz* to the South-West; It is a strong Fortress, built in a Peninsle made by the *Rhine*, which, with the Citadel and Out-works, render it almost Impregnable.

### SECT. III.

#### The Archbishoprick and Electorate of MENTZ.

The Archbishoprick of *Mntz* lyes on the Banks of the River *Mayne*, between the Electorate of *Trier* on the West, the *Palatinate* on the South, *Franconia* on the East, and the *Weteraw* on the North. It is in length from North-West to South-East about 50 miles, and about 20 in breadth; but besides this, the Elector hath Dominions in other Provinces. This Prince hath the Precedency of both the other Ecclesiastical Electors, is Dean of their College, and stiled *Arch-Chancellor of the Empire in Germany*. He is Lord of this Country, and maintains in his Court a Marshall or General, and a Chancellor: His annual Revenue is reckon'd above one hundred thousand Pounds. To all which he is Elected by the Chapter of 24 Capitulary Canons, who are all of noble Extraction. This See was formerly Episcopal only, and Suffragan to that of *Worms*, till 745. it was erected into an Archbishoprick. It is a pleasant fruitful Country, very populous, and hath these Towns of note, viz.

<i>Mentz</i> , Capit.	Other Towns subject to this Elector.	In Hesse,	{	<i>Fritzlar.</i> <i>Nmmburg.</i> <i>Neustat.</i>
<i>Bingen.</i>				
<i>Aschaffenburg.</i>				
<i>Koningstein.</i>		In Thuringen	{	<i>Erfurt.</i> <i>Heyligenstadt.</i> <i>Duderstadt.</i>
<i>Weisbaden.</i>				
<i>Elfeld.</i>				
<i>Reineck</i> , Coun.				
<i>Lohr</i> , County.				

*MENTZ*, call'd by the *Germans* *Mayntz*, by the *French* *Mayence*, in Latin *Moguntia*, *Magontiacum* & *Mocontiacum*, is seated on the *Rhine* near its Confluence with the *Maine*, at the distance of 65 miles from *Trier* to the East, 32 from *Coblentz* to the South-East, 20 from *Francfort* to the West, and 50 from *Spire* to the North. It is a large City, well fortified and very populous. The private Buildings are not extraordinary, the Houses being old and the Streets narrow: But the publick ones, which are many Churches,



the Electoral Palace, the Town-house or *Gild hall*, three Castles, and a Bridge of Boats over the *Rhine*, are stately Structures. Here is an University which was founded in the year 500. and re-establish'd in 1482. This City claims the Invention of the Art of PRINTING, which at least was brought to perfection here by *John Fust*, or, as others, *John Guttenberg*, about the year 1450. It is a place of very good Strength, which hath been much encreas'd by a Fortrefs built not many years since on a Hill, (wherein stands the Elector's Palace) and by the regular Fortifications that have been added by the late Archbishop, since the beginning of this present War: This City is by the *Germans* pretended to be above 1300 years older than Christianity; but by others 'tis thought to have been built by *Dion*, whose Tomb is still shewn here. It was sometime Imperial and Free, but subjected by its Archbishop *Adolph* of *Nassau*, who took it in the year 1527, and his Successors still retain the Authority. *Gustavus Adolphus* took it in 1631. and oblig'd the Citizens to pay 30000 Dollars as a Ransom for their Lives and Houses. And in the late War it was taken by the French in the year 1685. and regain'd by the Duke of *Lorraine* in 1689.

*Bingen* is a pleasant Town, seated on the *Rhine*, 15 miles West from *Mentz*. It was a Fort in the time of the *Romans*, and thought to be the place where *Drusus* died. The River *Nabe*, over which here is a fair Stone Bridge, runs through the Town, and empties it self into the *Rhine*: Here is also a Castle, which stands on a Hill, and over-looks the Town. This was also formerly an Imperial City, but is now subject to the Dean and Chapter of *Mentz*.

Between this place and *Mentz* in an Island in the *Rhine*, stands the Famous *Maus-turm*, an old Watch-Tower, said to have its name from the Mice and Rats which follow'd Luther, and devour'd the covetous Archbishop of *Mentz*, who scoffingly call'd some poor People that begg'd at his Gate, the Rats that eat up the Corn.

*Erfeld* is a strong fortifi'd Town seated on the North side of the *Rhine*, 5 miles from *Mentz*, to the West, and adorn'd with a fair Church and a high Steeple. It is the chief Town of a small Territory, extended along the *Rhine* 20 miles, call'd *Ringau*, a Country richly

stor'd with choice Vines; wherein also stands *Eichfeld*, a stately Monastery, where lie buried many of the Counts of *Nassau*, and *Riedesheim*, a Place noted for the Growth of the best Wines in these parts.

*Weistaden* stands about five or six miles North from *Mentz*.

*Königsstein* is 15 miles distant from *Mentz* to the North-east.

*Aschaffenburg*, *Aschaffenburgum*, aut *Aschiburgum*, is a strong Town and Castle on the Eastern Bank of the *Main*, 40 miles distant from *Mentz* and 20 from *Frankfort* to the East; it is divided into the Upper and Lower Town, and is beautified with a stately Palace, lately built, wherein the Elector often resides; and hath a fair Stone-Bridge over the *Main*.

*Reinick*, the chief Town of a County of the same name, stands on the River *Syn*, 35 miles from *Aschaffenburg* to the West, 25 from *Fuld* to the South, and 8 from the *Main* to the North. This Town and County, together with that of

*Lehr* adjoining to it, and on the Banks of the *Main*, do also belong to this Archbishop.

*Ommenburg* or *Ameburg*, a strong Town on the River *Ohrn*, 5 miles distant from *Marpurg* in *Hessen*, and 45 from *Frankfort* to the North, is the Capital of a small Territory belonging to this Elector, in which also stands *Neustadt*.

*Fritzlar*, the chief Town of another small Territory, subject to this Archbishop, is seated on the River *Eder*, in the Landgraviate of *Hesse*, about 25 miles from *Ommenburg* to the North-east, 10 from *Waldeck* to the South-west, and near the mid-way between *Marpurg* and *Cassel*. It hath a Castle and good Fortifications, and is esteem'd a place of as good Strength as any in these parts.

To this Electorate belongs also a small Country of 20 miles extent, call'd *Eichfeld* or *Eschfeld*, lying beyond the *Weser*, between the Dutchy of *Brunswick* on the North and the Landgraviate of *Hesse* on the South. In which stand

*Heglingenstat*, built by King *Dagobert*; in it is a College of Jesuits, but is not otherwise considerable.

*Duderstadt*, a small Hanse-Town, anciently subject to the Duke of *Brunswick*, by whom it was sold to *Gertrudus* Archbishop of *Mentz*.

## CHAP. III.

### HESSEN, *Hassia*.

THE Province of *Hessen* lies on the North Side of the River *Main*, extending as far as the *Weser*, comprehending under this Name in general, besides the Landgraviate of the same Name, the Abbies of *Fuld* and *Hirsau*; the *Wetterau*, in which are also compris'd several Principalities and Lord-ships; and the Landgraviat of *Darmstadt*; together with several Imperial Cities. The whole Country is bounded on the North by *Westphalia*, on the West by the Dutchy of *Berg* and Electorate of *Trier*, on the South by the Electorate of *Mentz* and *Frankonia*, and on the East by the Dutchy of *Wei-*

*mar* and *Thuringen*. Its utmost Extent from North to South is about 100 *English* Miles, and from East to West as many. The Air is healthful, the Waters wholesome, and the Soil fruitful, producing much Corn, and towards the Banks of the *Rhine* and *Lohr* Grapes; here are also large Forests, which afford store of Deer and other Game; and Mountains, wherein Mines of Copper and Lead are found. This is judg'd to have been the Country of the ancient *Catti*, mention'd by *Tacitus* and others.



It is divided into *Hessen* and *Veteravia*, or the *Veteraw*.

In <i>Hessen</i> are	The Landgraviates of	<i>Hesse Cassel</i> , which lies on the Banks of the Rivers <i>Weser</i> , <i>Eder</i> , and <i>Lohn</i> , and hath these Towns, viz.	<i>Cassel</i> , <i>Rodernberg</i> , <i>Homburg</i> , <i>Witzenhausen</i> , <i>Zeigenheim</i> , <i>Suntra</i> , <i>Geysmar</i> , <i>Eschwege</i> , <i>Smalcald</i> .
		<i>Hesse Darmstadt</i> , the Territories whereof are divided, part lying on the South side of the <i>Main</i> , and part between <i>Hesse Cassel</i> , <i>Waldeck</i> , <i>Solms</i> and the <i>Rhine</i> .	<i>Darmstadt</i> , <i>Marpurg</i> , <i>Frankenburg</i> , <i>Alsfield</i> , <i>Gieffen</i> , <i>Catzenelbogen</i> , <i>Schwalbach</i> .
In the <i>Veteraw</i>		The County of <i>Waldeck</i> , lying West from <i>Hesse Cassel</i> .	<i>Waldeck</i> , <i>Wildungen</i> , <i>Corback</i> , <i>Eyenberg</i> .
		The Territories of the Abbies of	<i>Fuld</i> , <i>Hirschfeld</i> .
		The County of <i>Solms</i> ,	<i>Solms</i> , <i>Brunsfeld</i> .
		The Imperial Cities of	<i>Westlar</i> , <i>Fridberg</i> .
In the <i>Veteraw</i>		The County of <i>Nassau</i> ,	<i>Nassau</i> , <i>Dillenberg, C.</i> <i>Sigen, C.</i> <i>Herbon</i> , <i>Beilstein, C.</i> <i>Dietz, C.</i> <i>Hadamer, P.</i> <i>Wisbaden, C.</i> <i>Weilberg, C.</i> <i>Idstein, C.</i>
		The County of <i>Hanaw</i> ,	<i>Isenberg, County.</i> <i>Hanaw</i> , <i>Gelnhausen, Imp.</i>

**CASSEL**, *Cassella*, aut *Cassilia*, olim *Castellum Cattorum*, & *Sterdontium*, the Capital City of the lower *Hessen*, is seated in a pleasant Plain on the River *Fuld*, near the Confines of the Dutchy of *Brunswick*, at the distance of 50 miles from *Marpurg* and as many from *Fuld* to the North, and 40 from *Paderborn* to the South-east. It is a place of good Trade for Wool and other Merchandizes, and West is fortifi'd with Walls, Ditches, and a strong Cittadel: It is the Seat of the Landgrave, whose Palace stands without the Town, and is surrounded by Bulwarks: The Family of *Hesse* is one of the most ancient of *Germany*. This House of *Cassel* is the Elder, and the Landgrave, with his Subjects, are of the *Calvinist* Religion.

*Rodernburg*, a fair Town, stands on the River *Fulda*, 30 miles from *Cassel* to the South-east; it is pleasantly seated, and has a Collegiate Church with a Dean and 20 Canons nobly endow'd. Near the Town is a Quarry of white Marble.

*Suntra* stands 12 miles East from *Rodernburg*.

*Homburg* is 25 miles distant from *Cassel* to the South, and 12 from *Rodernburg* to the West.

*Zeigenheim* stands 30 miles South from *Cassel*. It is a small but fair City, and gives Name to a County.

*Geysmar*, stands 12 miles from *Cassel* to the North.

*Witzenhausen* is seated on the *Weser*, 12 miles from *Cassel* to the East.

*Eschwege* stands also on the *Weser*, 20 miles above *Witzenhausen*, a wall'd Town, built by *Charles* the Great, and repair'd by *Henry II*.

These are all good Towns, but not particularly remarkable.

*Smalcald* stands in a little Territory on the East side of the River *Verra*, disjoyn'd from the rest of the Lands of this Prince; it is 50 miles distant from *Cassel* to the South-East, 30 from *Hirschfeld* to the East, and 20 from *Eysenach* to the South. It is a Town of good Trade for Iron-ware, many Mines in the Neighbourhood furnishing the Inhabitants with plenty of that Metal, which they work and send abroad to foreign Parts. This place was famous in the last Age, by the assembling of the Protestant Princes here, in the Years 1530, 1531, 1535 and 1537. to make a League for the Defence of the *Augsburg* Confession, against the Emperor *Charles V.* and the Popish Princes of *Germany*: Which League grew so powerful, that they forced the Emperor to a Treaty, held in 1557. at *Passaw*, wherein *Lutheranism* was establish'd in several Parts of the Empire.

*Marpurg*, *Marpurgum*, *Amesia*, is seated on the River *Lohn*, in a pleasant Country, near 50 miles from *Cassel* to the South-west, and 40 from *Frankfort* to the North. It was some time a free and Imperial City, afterwards subject to its own Lords, now the Chief of the Upper *Hesse*, and the Seat of the supreme Court of Judicature; to which Appeals are brought from both *Cassel* and *Darmstadt*. It has a strong Castle, which stands on a Hill, and is otherwise well fortified. The great Church is a stately Building, and has in it many noble Monuments. The University here is one of the most considerable in *Germany*.

*Frankenburg*, on the River *Eder*, 25 miles North from *Marpurg*, is a large Town, said to be built by *Theodorick* King of *France Anno*, 520.

*Alsfield* stands 15 miles from *Marpurg* to the East: It is one of the ancientest Towns of *Hessen*, and had formerly very great Privileges, even Power over Life; but lost their Charter in an accidental Fire many years since, so that now they have only a Memorial of it, by the chief Magistrate's having a Sword born before him. The Town-house is a fair handsom Building.

*Gieffen* is a fair Town, seated on the River *Lohn* 15 miles from *Marpurg* to the South, and 28 from *Frankfort* to the North; the Royalty whereof is divided between the two Landgraves of *Cassel* and *Darmstadt*: It is adorn'd with a University, and defended with a strong Wall and regular Fortifications, and hath an Armory very well furnished. The Trade of this Town lies in Dressing and Selling of Cloth.

**WESTLAR**, an Imperial City, stands on the Borders of the County of *Solms*, upon the River *Lohn* not above 6 miles below *Gieffen*, 18 miles South-west from *Marpurg*, and 26 North from *Frankfort*. It is an old Town, and has nothing in it worth notice but the great Church. However, it is at present the Seat of the Imperial Chamber, which was removed from *Spire* hither in the Year 1689, by reason that that City was taken and destroy'd by the *French*.

**FRIEDBURG**, a Rich and Imperial City, stands 15 miles South from *Westlar*, and 12 North from *Frankfort*: It is seated at the Foot of a Ridge of Hills, call'd *de Hobe*, and enjoys large Privileges, granted by the Emperor *Frederick II*. The Mart, now held at *Frankfort*, was, before the Year 1340. held in this Town; at which time it was remov'd, at the desire of the Merchants, and this City, in lieu, hath four annual Fairs.

**DARM-**



**D A R M S T A D T**, *Darmstadium*, seu *Darmstadium*, a considerable City, seated on the Banks of a River of the same name, in the Country of *Geraw*, or otherwise call'd the Landgraviate of *Darmstadt*, which lies on the South-side of the *Main*; it is defended by a strong Castle, which is the Palace of the Landgrave; and for the better Security of the Country, there are two Forts, one on the *Rhine*, named *Markburg*, and another on the *Main*, called *Russelheim*. The Town is distant 10 miles from the *Rhine* to the East, and 15 from *Frankfurt* on the *Main* to the South. The House of *Darmstadt*, by the failure of the Second House of *Marpurg*, succeeded to that Lordship, together with those of *Gießen* and *Catzeneubogen*, and by that means is become more considerable than the elder House of *Cassel*. The Landgrave usually resides at *Marpurg*; he is of the *Lutheran* Religion, as are also most of his Subjects.

The County of *Catzeneubogen* lies on the Banks of the *Rhine*, between that River and *Nassau*; the Town which gives name to the County is but small, and is seated at the distance of 10 miles from *Nassau* to the East, and about 22 from *Mentz* to the North-west. The Property of this Town and County has been much disputed between the Earls of *Nassau* and the Landgraves of *Hesse*, the former having married the Sister of the last Earl, and the latter pretending a Donation from the Earl: In 1548 the Emperor *Charles V.* adjudg'd it to the Count of *Nassau*; but the Judgment was revers'd at the Treaty of *Passaw*, and Count *William* of *Nassau* surrendred it to the Landgrave *Philip*, who paid him 600000 Crowns for it: However, the Family of *Nassau* does still retain the Title of it. In the same County stands

*Schwalbach*, famous for many Springs of Medicinal Waters in it, which are of great virtue for curing several Distempers. It is distant 10 miles from *Catzeneubogen* to the South, and 12 from *Mentz* to the North.

The Castle of *Rheinfeld*, which gives Name to a small County, stands on the East-side of the *Rhine*, 25 miles West from *Catzeneubogen*, and 20 South from *Coblentz*.

**W A L D E C K**, *Waldecum* is the Capital of a small Principality, of about 20 miles Extent, situate in the North part of *Hesse*, beyond the River *Eder*, and Westward of the Landgraviate of *Cassel*. The Country is fruitful, affording Wine as well as Corn and Pasture, besides Mines of Copper, Lead, Quicksilver, &c. The ch. Town is but small, and not very considerable; it is distant 30 miles from *Marpurg* to the North, and 22 from *Cassel* to the South-west.

The other Places of Note in this County are *Waldungen*, a pleasant Town built upon two Hills, in the middle of which lies a very fine Garden;

*Corbach*, formerly a free City, wherein is held a small University; and

*Eysenberg*, a very strong Castle, built upon a Hill near *Corbach*.

The Territory of the Abbey of *F U L D*, call'd by some *Buchem* and *Fagenia*, is a large rich Country, lying South of *Hesse*, and North of *Hanaw*, *Reineck*, &c. extending about 30 miles in length. The ch. Town *Fuld* stands upon a River of the same name, 40 miles East from *Marpurg*, and 45 North-east from *Hanaw*: The Monastery is of the *Benedictine* Order, and one of the noblest in all *Europe*; it was founded in the Year 744 by *S. Boniface*, and endowed with great Privileges by several Emperors. The Abbot is Lord of the Town and Country, Primate of all the Abbots in *Germany*, a Prince of the Empire, and sits in the

general Diets at the Emperor's Feet. There are many other Towns in this Territory.

The Monastery of *H I R C H F E L D* stands on the River *Fulda*, at the distance of 20 miles from *Fuld* to the North. It is a very noble Structure, artificially built upon an Arch, supported by 16 Pillars. It was founded by *Sturmius*, Abbot of *Fulda*, and a Territory of about 12 miles extent given to it. *Alcuinus*, who was Tutor to *Charles* the Great, was Abbot of this Monastery, and lies buried in its Church. The Revenues of this Abbey have been in the Hands of the Landgrave of *Hesse* ever since 1606.

The *W E T E R A W*, *Veteravia*, is the general name of the Country lying between *Hesse* on the North, the River *Main* on the South, the River *Rhine* on the West, and the County of *Reineck* on the East; wherein are contained the Estates of the Counts of *Nassau*, *Solms*, and *Hanaw*, who are constant Confederates for their mutual Defence.

**N A S S A W**, as it is now encreased by the accession of the Counties of *Weilburg*, *Idstein*, *Wiesbaden*, *Dillenberg*, *Beilstein*, *Geilberg*, *Sigen*, and *Hadamars*, is bounded on the North by *Westphalia*, on the East by *Hesse* and *Solms*, and on the West by *Berg*, *Trier*, and the *Rhine*. This Country is fruitful in Corn and Pasturage, abounds with Cattle and Venison, and hath Mines of Iron, Lead and Copper. It was at first only a County, but was made a Principality by the Emperor *Ferdinand II.* Anno 1653. and is subject to its own Princes, a very ancient and honourable Family; from which descended *Adolphus*, chosen Emperor A.D. 1292. *Engelbert*, the Seventh Earl of this Family, acquired by Marriage the Barony of *Breda*, and other Estates in the *Netherlands*; and *Henry* his Great-grandson married *Claude de Chalons*, Sister and Heir to *Philibert*, Prince of *Orange*, whose Son *Rene*, in 1530, succeeded in that Principality; which Honour hath ever since remain'd in this Family. These Princes have in all Ages been celebrated for their Bravery, especially in the last, when they so zealously defended the *Belgick* States, and by their Courage and Wisdom rescued them from the *Spanish* Cruelty, and acquired the Dignity of Hereditary Stadtholder, and Captain General of all the Forces of the *United Netherlands*: Which great Honours being possess'd by *William* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, King *Charles I.* chose him for a Husband to his eldest Daughter *Elizabeth*; by whom he had Issue *William Henry*, who married *Mary* the eldest Niece of *Charles* the Second, our late Queen of blessed Memory, and is at present King of Great Britain.

**N A S S A W**, *Nassovia*, that gives name to this Principality, is a small Town and Castle seated on the River *Lahn*, 8 miles from the *Rhine* to the East, 12 from *Coblentz* to the South-east, and 35 from *Frankfurt* to the West. It was the usual Seat of the first Branch of this illustrious Family.

*Dillenberg* stands on the River *Dilla*, 40 miles from *Nassau* to the North-east, and 16 from *Marpurg* to the West. It is a Town of good Trade, and hath two annual Fairs. Here is a Castle standing on the top of a Hill, which commands the Neighbourhood, and was the Seat of a Branch of the Family of *Nassau*, who had the Title of Counts of *Dillenberg*: In it is a large Armory, very compleatly furnished.

*Sigen*, on the River *Siega*, 18 miles from *Dillenberg*, is seated on the top of a rocky Hill, and defended with a strong Wall and regular Fortifications, and gives Name to a County. Near the Town is a Mine of Iron.



*Herborn* stands upon the River *Dilla*, but 5 miles South from *Dillemburg*; it is a City of pretty good Trade in Woollen Cloths, and hath an University of good Repute, endow'd with the Lands of some dissolved Monasteries, and hath bred some considerable Scholars; particularly *J. Piscator*, *H. Martinus*, *G. Passor*, and *H. Alstedius*. This City is wall'd round, and has a Castle.

*Beilstein* gives Name to a County, which was the Inheritance of a younger Branch of the Family of *Nassaw*. It is an old Town, seated among rocky Hills, at the distance of 10 miles from *Herborn* to the South, and hath a Castle and a fair Church.

*Dietz*, the Capital of another County, is pleasantly seated upon the River *Lohn*, 10 miles from *Nassaw* to the East; it is wall'd, and hath two Towers standing upon two Hills in the Town.

*Hademar*, a small Town, the Capital of a Territory which hath the Title of a Principality, stands upon the *Lohn*, at the distance of 20 miles from *Mentz* to the North.

*Weilberg*, which gives name to another County, stands also on the *Lohn*, 35 miles from *Nassaw* to the East.

*Wisbaden*, the Capital of a County also, stands 5 miles North from *Mentz*, and 20 South-east from *Nassaw*; it is an ancient Town, and much frequented by reason of famous Hot Baths in it, which give name to the Place.

*Idstein*, a Town and County, lies next to *Wisbaden* to the North.

The County of *Isenburg* lies between *Solms* on the West, *Hanaw* on the East, the Lands of the Abbey of *Fuld* on the North, and *Nassaw* on the South. It is about 20 miles in length, and 8 or 9 in breadth.

*Budingen*, the chief Town of it, is about 30 miles North-east from *Frankfort*. And

The Castle of *Ronenburg*, a noble old Fort, a few miles from *Gelnhausen*, was anciently the place of Residence of the Counts.

*SOLMS*, the Capital of another County, subject also to its own Lord, and situate on the South of *Hesse Marburg*. The Town stands in the most Northern Part of the County, 15 miles distant from *Marburg* to the South-west, and 35 from *Frankfort* to the North. The usual Residence of the Count is in the Castle of *Brinsfield*, which stands 15 miles South from *Solms*.

The County of *HANAW* is bounded on the North and East by the Territory of *Fuld*, and on the West by the Estates of *Nassaw* and the County of *Isenberg*: It extends from the River *Main* North-east, about 40 miles, and is subject to its own Earl. The chief Town

*Hanaw*, *Hanovia*, stands upon the River *Kintz*, near the Banks of the *Main*, 10 miles East from *Frankfort*, 15 from *Aschaffenburg* to the North-west, and 40 from *Marburg* to the South. It is a fair well-built Town, neat and uniform, and a Place of Trade, much resorted to by Foreign Merchants; insomuch that the *French* and *Dutch* have Churches here. It is now defended by strong Walls and modern Fortifications, but was twice taken, viz. in the year 1631 by the *Swedes*, and in the year 1658 by the *Germans*, after a long Siege both times, and not without Treachery and Stratagem at last.

*GELNHAUSEN*, an Imperial City, stands in the Limits of this County, on the River *Kintzing*, 12 miles North-east from *Hanaw*, 15 North from *Aschaffenburg*, and 20 East from *Friedburg*: It is now but a poor City, though very considerable, and inhabited by many Noblemen and Gentlemen before the *German Wars*.

## CHAP. IV.

### FRANCONIA, *Franconia*.

THE Dutchy of *Franconia*, call'd by the *Germans* *Frankenland*, and heretofore *Franconia Orientalis*, one of the chief of the ten Circles of the Empire, is bounded on the North by *Thuringen* and *Hessen*, on the South by *Schwaben*, on the East by the Palatinate of *Bavaria*, and on the West by that of the *Rhine*; extending from North to South about 130 miles, and from East to West 140. The Soil of it in some parts is mountainous and barren, but in others very fruitful in Corn, Wine, Liquorice, Saffron and Fruits: Here are also several Forests, well stockt with Game, and Rivers abounding with Fish. This Province is suppos'd to have been the ancient Seat of the *Franks* or *French*, from whence they set forth under *Pharamond*, to their Conquest of *Gaul*; and also that the famous *Salique Law* was made upon the Banks of the River *Sala*: Besides which, the chief Rivers here are the *Main*, the *Tauber*, the *Kednitz*, the *Pegnitz*, and the *Altmutz*. Several Sovereign Princes have the Dominion of this Country, which is the Reason that several Religions are predominant in several parts; but the *Lutherans* are most numerous.

*Franconia* hath these States and Chief Towns following:

The Bishopricks of	{	<i>Wurtzburg</i> ,	<i>Wurtzburg</i> ,
			<i>Ochsenfurt</i> ,
			<i>Konigshoven</i> ,
			<i>Bischoffsheim</i> .
{	<i>Bamberg</i> ,	{	<i>Bamberg</i> ,
			<i>Cronach</i> ,
			<i>Weisman</i> ,
			<i>Forcheim</i> .
		<i>Aichstat</i> .	<i>Aichstat</i> ,
			<i>Ornbaw</i> .

The Estate of the Master of the Teutonic Order, { *Margentheim*.

The Marquesates of	{	<i>Culembach</i> ,	<i>Culembach</i> ,
			<i>Weisinstat</i> ,
			<i>Bertrut</i> .
		<i>Ohnsbach</i> .	<i>Ohnsbach</i> ,
			<i>Kregling</i> .

The Counties of *Holach*, *Cassel*, *Schwartzburg*, *Schneheim*, *Limpurg*, *Lewenstein*, *Wertheim*, *Erpath*, *Hennelberg*, *Coburg*, *Papenheim*.



*Herborn* stands upon the River *Dilla*, but 5 miles South from *Dillemburg*; it is a City of pretty good Trade in Woollen Cloths, and hath an University of good Repute, endow'd with the Lands of some dissolved Monasteries, and hath bred some considerable Scholars; particularly *J. Piscator*, *H. Martinus*, *G. Passor*, and *H. Alstedius*. This City is wall'd round, and has a Castle.

*Beilstein* gives Name to a County, which was the Inheritance of a younger Branch of the Family of *Nassaw*. It is an old Town, seated among rocky Hills, at the distance of 10 miles from *Herborn* to the South, and hath a Castle and a fair Church.

*Dietz*, the Capital of another County, is pleasantly seated upon the River *Lohn*, 10 miles from *Nassaw* to the East; it is wall'd, and hath two Towers standing upon two Hills in the Town.

*Hademar*, a small Town, the Capital of a Territory which hath the Title of a Principality, stands upon the *Lohn*, at the distance of 20 miles from *Mentz* to the North.

*Weilberg*, which gives name to another County, stands also on the *Lohn*, 35 miles from *Nassaw* to the East.

*Wisbaden*, the Capital of a County also, stands 5 miles North from *Mentz*, and 20 South-east from *Nassaw*; it is an ancient Town, and much frequented by reason of famous Hot Baths in it, which give name to the Place.

*Idstein*, a Town and County, lies next to *Wisbaden* to the North.

The County of *Isenburg* lies between *Solms* on the West, *Hanaw* on the East, the Lands of the Abbey of *Fuld* on the North, and *Nassaw* on the South. It is about 20 miles in length, and 8 or 9 in breadth.

*Budingen*, the chief Town of it, is about 30 miles North-east from *Frankfort*. And

The Castle of *Ronenburg*, a noble old Fort, a few miles from *Gelnhausen*, was anciently the place of Residence of the Counts.

*SOLMS*, the Capital of another County, subject also to its own Lord, and situate on the South of *Hesse Marburg*. The Town stands in the most Northern Part of the County, 15 miles distant from *Marburg* to the South-west, and 35 from *Frankfort* to the North. The usual Residence of the Count is in the Castle of *Brimsfield*, which stands 15 miles South from *Solms*.

The County of *HANAW* is bounded on the North and East by the Territory of *Fuld*, and on the West by the Estates of *Nassaw* and the County of *Isenberg*: It extends from the River *Main* North-east, about 40 miles, and is subject to its own Earl. The chief Town

*Hanaw*, *Hanovia*, stands upon the River *Kintz*, near the Banks of the *Main*, 10 miles East from *Frankfort*, 15 from *Aschaffenburg* to the North-west, and 40 from *Marburg* to the South. It is a fair well-built Town, neat and uniform, and a Place of Trade, much resorted to by Foreign Merchants; insomuch that the *French* and *Dutch* have Churches here. It is now defended by strong Walls and modern Fortifications, but was twice taken, viz. in the year 1631 by the *Swedes*, and in the year 1658 by the *Germans*, after a long Siege both times, and not without Treachery and Stratagem at last.

*GELNHAUSEN*, an Imperial City, stands in the Limits of this County, on the River *Kintzing*, 12 miles North-east from *Hanaw*, 15 North from *Aschaffenburg*, and 20 East from *Friedburg*: It is now but a poor City, though very considerable, and inhabited by many Noblemen and Gentlemen before the *German Wars*.

## CHAP. IV.

### FRANCONIA, *Franconia*.

THE Dutchy of *Franconia*, call'd by the *Germans* *Frankenland*, and heretofore *Franconia Orientalis*, one of the chief of the ten Circles of the Empire, is bounded on the North by *Thuringen* and *Hessen*, on the South by *Schwaben*, on the East by the Palatinate of *Bavaria*, and on the West by that of the *Rhine*; extending from North to South about 130 miles, and from East to West 140. The Soil of it in some parts is mountainous and barren, but in others very fruitful in Corn, Wine, Liquorice, Saffron and Fruits: Here are also several Forests, well stockt with Game, and Rivers abounding with Fish. This Province is suppos'd to have been the ancient Seat of the *Franks* or *French*, from whence they set forth under *Pharamond*, to their Conquest of *Gaul*; and also that the famous *Salique Law* was made upon the Banks of the River *Sala*: Besides which, the chief Rivers here are the *Main*, the *Tauber*, the *Kednitz*, the *Pegnitz*, and the *Altmutz*. Several Sovereign Princes have the Dominion of this Country, which is the Reason that several Religions are predominant in several parts; but the *Lutherans* are most numerous.

*Franconia* hath these States and Chief Towns following:

The Bishopricks of	{	<i>Wurtzburg,</i>	{	<i>Wurtzburg,</i>
				<i>Ochsenfurt,</i>
				<i>Konigshoven,</i>
				<i>Bischoffsheim.</i>
	{		{	<i>Bamberg,</i>
				<i>Cronach,</i>
				<i>Weisman,</i>
				<i>Forcheim.</i>
				<i>Aichstat,</i>
				<i>Ornbaw.</i>
	<i>Bamberg,</i>			
	<i>Aichstat.</i>			

The Estate of the Master of the Teutonic Order, { *Margentheim*.

The Marquesates of	{	{	{	<i>Culembach</i> ,
				<i>Weisinstat</i> ,
				<i>Bertrut</i> .
		{	{	<i>Ohnspach</i> ,
				<i>Kregling</i> .

The Counties of *Holach*, *Cassel*, *Schwartzburg*, *Schneheim*, *Limpurg*, *Lewenstein*, *Wertheim*, *Erpach*; *Hennelberg*, *Coburg*, *Papenheim*.



The Imperial Cities of

{ *Frankfurt,*  
*Nuremberg,*  
*Rotenburg,*  
*Schieveinfurt,*  
*Weinsheim,*  
*Weissemburg.*

*FRANKFURT BURG, Harlipois,* is the Capital of *Franconia* and seated on the Banks of the River *Main* at the distance of 50 miles from *Mentz*, and 20 from *Frankfurt* to the East, 50 from *Caſſel* to the South, 20 from *Bamberg* to the West, and 30 from *Regensburg* to the North. The City is divided into two parts by the River, which are again joyn'd by a fair Bridge; besides the *Main* several little Brooks run through the Streets, and pleasantly water the Town. It is adorn'd with an University, and one of the richest and most magnificent Hospitals of *Europe*, and defended by a strong Castle, built on a Hill, which is joyned to the Town by a Wall, flanked by four Bastions. This was formerly an Imperial City, but has been subjected to the Bishop. To *S. Bucard*, the first Bishop of this See, the Emperor *Charlemagne* granted the Country of *Francia Orientalis*, upon which account his Successors assumed the Title of Duke of *Francia*. This Prelate is very Potent, being Secular as well as Spiritual Lord of 400 Villages and Towns, and able to raise an Army of 15000 Men. He judges Causes, and Condemns Criminals in token whereof on Solemn occasions he hath a naked Sword born before him.

*FRANKFORT, Francofurtum* aut *Francofordia*, being the Foord of the Franks, and heretofore *Heilenspleis*: Now commonly for distinction call'd *Francofurtum ad Menum*. It is seated on both sides the *Main*, if the Suburb of *Saxenhausen* on the South-side of the River be consider'd as part of it, that as well as the City being strongly Fortified with Bastions, large Moats, Countercarps, and other Outworks; and also joined to the City by a Bridge, which is a noble Work, being built of Stone, and composed of many Arches. It is a large, populous, rich and well-traded City, Imperial and Free, and govern'd by its own Consuls, Senators and Sheriffs, chosen by the Trades men. In the Church of *S. Bartholomew* here the Election of the Emperor is made, being exprestly so ordained in the *Golden Bull*, or Grand Charter of *Germany*, made by the Emperor *Charles IV.* Which *Golden Bull* is also it self laid up in the Town-house of this City. Here is also an Imperial Palace, call'd the *Braunsfeld*, a Mansion-house of the Knights of the *Teutonic Order*, which with the Port, the Fortrefs, the Bridge between two Towers, and several Houses of Noblemen, together with the Bridge over the *Main* above-mention'd, are good Ornaments to the Town. The private Houses are of Wood Plaister'd and Painted over. *Frankfurt* is conveniently seated for Trade; for the *Main* receives several smaller Rivers, and it self falls into the *Rhine* about 20 miles from hence, whereby Goods are easily brought to it, especially at the two great Annual Marts in *April* and *September*, when great quantities of all sorts of Commodities especially Books, brought from all parts *Europe*, are Vended here, to the great profit of the Town. The Inhabitants are generally of the *Lutheran* Religion, and were the first that demanded the free exercise of it; the refusal of which in the year 1525 made them revolt against the Clergy and Senate, and chuse themselves new Magistrates: And in 1530 the *Ausburg* Confession was Established; however other Religions are tolerated; and

among the rest, the Jews, who are pretty numerous here, but confin'd to live in one Street, which is lock'd up every Night. A Monument is to be seen here of a very Notorious Fact that three of the Nation were guilty of, for which they were tied up in Sacks and thrown into the *Main*, and a Memorial of their lewd Action painted over one of the Gates. *Frankfurt* stands in the Latitude of 50 deg. and in the Longitude of 25. deg. 10. min.

*Aschaffenburg* on the South-side of the *Main*, with the Counties *Reineck* and *Lohn*, are reckon'd part of this Circle, but belonging to the Archbishop of *Mentz*. They are already spoken of in the account of that Electorate.

*NUREMBERG, or NURNBERG, Nuremberga,* aut *Noricorum Mons*, one of the largest, richest and most populous Cities of *Germany*, stands at the bottom of a Hill near the confluence of the Rivers *Rednitz* and *Pegnitz*, at the distance of 55 miles from *Wurtzburg* to the East, 40 from *Bamberg* to the South, as many from *Innsbruck* to the North, and 50 from *Regensburg* to the North-west. It is a very considerable place on account of its two annual Fairs, its Traffick and Manufactures; the Clocks and small Wares made here being especially admired. The Houses are all built of Free-stone, and four or five Stories high; the Streets are large, and the publick Places very regular: The Town house, or Guild-hall, is very magnificent: Here are eleven Stone-bridges over the *Pegnitz*, whereof that of one Arch is most artificially and admirably built. The other publick Works are 12 Fountains, 26 Wells, and a large Arsenal, containing 300 pieces of Canon, and Arms for 1500 men, a strong Castle, and 6 Gates, each defended with a large Tower. In this City the Emperor is obliged to hold the first Dyet after his Coronation, and for that purpose, the *Regalia* or Imperial Ornaments, viz. the Imperial Crown of *Charlemagne*, the *Dalmatica* or Mantle of the same *Charles*, together with his Cloak, Sword, Belt, Gloves, &c. are here laid up. It was made an Imperial City by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, and purchas'd its Liberty of *Frederick I.* Elector of *Brandenburg*; and it is now Govern'd by its own Senators. The Inhabitants are of the *Lutheran* Religion, the Roman Catholicks having only one Church. A Peace was concluded here between the Princes of *Germany* in the year 1649.

The City of *Nuremberg* hath a Territory belonging to it of about 20 miles extent, wherein about 15 miles to the South stands

*Altsch*, a small Town, but made considerable by an University in it, first established in 1578. but improv'd in 1623. and does now contain at least 200 Students.

*BAMBERG, Bambergæ,* aut *Babanberga*, took its Name from *Baba*, the Daughter of the Emperor, *Otto*. It stands about 40 miles from *Wurtzburg* to the East, and 30 from *Nuremberg* to the North, in a Country abounding with rich Fruits and Plants, and is Water'd by the River *Rednitz*, which a little below falls into the *Main*. It was formerly Imperial and Free, but now subject to its Bishop, who depends on no Metropolitan but the Pope, and is not only Lord of this See (which is 60 miles in length, and thirty in breadth) but also of divers Mannors in *Carinthia*, and the Castles of *Cronach* and *Ferkeim*, besides several Royalties elsewhere, whereby he has the Honour to have four of the Electors, viz. The King of *Bohemia*, and the Electors of *Bavaria*, *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, his Dependents for some parts of their Estates. The Bishop's Palace here is a splendid Building, and adorn'd with fair Gardens and Orchards: The Cathedral Church has a high Steeple



Steeple with four Spires, which, with the Jesuits Church and the Castle, are worth a Traveller's View.

MERGENTHEIM, or MARIENDAL, the Capital of the small Territory of the Great Master of the Teutonic Order, and the usual place of his Residence, is a small Town, and not very considerable. It stands upon the River *Golach* 20 miles South-west from *Wurtzburg*.

OHNSPACH, or ANSPACH, *Onoldium*, and *Onspachium* is the Capital of a Marquitate of pretty large extent, which belongs to a Prince of the Family of *Brandenburg*; it is Fortified, and hath a Castle, situate about 25 miles from *Nuremberg* to the West, and 20 from *Rotemberg* to the East.

The Bishoprick of AICHSTAT lies between the Marquitate of *Ohnsbach* and the Burgraviate of *Nuremberg* on the N. the County of *Oeting* and Dutchy of *Newburg* on the S. and the Palatinate of *Bavaria* on the E. It extends about 30 miles from E to W. and in some parts of it 15 or 16, in others not above 7 or 8 from N. to S. The Bishop is Temporal as well as Spiritual Lord of it; and the chief City whence it is nam'd stands upon the River *Aitmul*, 35 miles S. from *Nuremberg*, and 8 or 9 N. from the *Danube*.

ROTEMBURG, *Rotemburgum* a Free Imperial City, seated in the limits of the Marquitate of *Ohnsbach* upon the River *Tauber*, 20 miles from *Ohnsbach*, 30 from *Nuremberg* to the West, and 40 from *Wurtzburg* to the South. It obtained its Freedom of the Emperor *Frederick I.* in the Year 1163.

WINTZHEIM, another small Imperial City, stands also in this Marquitate upon the River *Aisch*, about 16 miles North from *Rotemberg*, and 20 North-west from *Ohnsbach*.

The County of *HOLACH* lies next to *Ohnsbach* to the South-west.

The Barony of *LIMPURG* adjoins to *Holach* on the South.

The small County of *LEHNSTEIN*, lies also South from *Holach*, and West from *Limpurg*.

The County of *WURTEIM* lies on both sides the *Main*, West from the Bishoprick of *Wurtzburg*; it is of about 20 miles extent, of a square form, and a very fruitful Country, affording, besides Corn and Pasture, very good Wines, the making whereof is the Trade of the chief Town, which stands on the Banks of the *Main*, where it receives the *Tauber*, and is distant 20 miles from *Wurtzburg* to the West.

*REINECK* County lies on the North of *Wertheim*.

*ERPACH*, the Capitol of another County, which lies on the South-side of the *Main*, stands 30 miles South-east from *Frankfort*, and 20 North from *Heidelberg*; it is a Place of no great Trade, nor considerable, but for giving Title to a Count of the Empire.

*SCHWEINFURT*, an Imperial Free City, is seated on the *Main*, 30 miles from *Wurtzburg* to the N. E. and near as many from *Bamberg* to the East. This City suffer'd much in the *German Wars*, having been taken by the *Swedes*, and afterwards seiz'd by the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, in 1553. but being besieg'd the next Year, he plunder'd and deserted it.

The Marquitate of *CULEMBURG* is reckon'd part of this Circle, tho' it be subject to the Duke of *Brandenburg*. It is a Country of 50 miles in length from North to South, and 30 miles in breadth, lying next the Bishoprick of *Bamberg* to the East: The chief Town, which gives name to the County, is seated on the *Main*, 25 miles East from *Bamberg*.

The RIVER *MAIN* arises in two Springs in Mount *Fichteberg* on the East-side of this Marquitate, which unite near the Town of *Culembach*, and flowing Westward, receives the *Rednitz*, *Warres*, and other Rivers; and in a Serpentine course runs through the middle of *Franconia*, passing by *Schweinfurt*, *Wurtzburg*, *Wertheim*, *Aschaffenburg* and *Frankfort*; and falls into the *Rhine* a little above *Mentz*, after a course of 110 miles: Its breadth at *Frankfort* is reckon'd by *English Travellers* about half as much as the *Thames* at *London*.

## CHAP. V.

The PALATINATE of the RHINE, *Palatinus Rheni*, aut *Palatinus Inferior*; in the German Language, *pfaltz* aut *Rhein*, or *Nider pfaltz*.

THE Palatinate of the *Rhine*, called the Lower Palatinate, to distinguish it from that of *Bavaria*, is bounded on the North by the Bishoprick of *Mentz*, on the South by *Alsatia*, on the East by *Franconia* and *Wirtemberg*, and on the West by *Lorrain* and the Bishoprick of *Triers*: It extends from East to West almost 100 English Miles, and from North to South about 60. The Air is Healthful, and the Soil Fruitful, the Country abounding in delicious Wine, besides Corn and Pasture: Here are also some Mines of *Agate* and *Jaspar*, and even *Gold* is found among the Sands of the *Rhine*, whereof particular Ducats are Coin'd. Besides the *Rhine*, which by passing through it gives name to this Region, the *Neckar*, a very considerable River, waters the Eastern part of it, and having passed by *Heidelberg*, falls into the *Rhine* at *Manheim*; and several other smaller Rivers are found in several parts of it.

The Dominions of this Elector were much larger before *Frederick V.* (who Married the Daughter of King *James I.*) was dispossessed of them by the Em-

peror in 1620. and his Estates, together with the Electoral Dignity, given to the Duke of *Bavaria*: Afterwards at the Treaty of *Munster* in 1648, he obtained this part to be restored, but that of the upper Palatinate he could not recover, nor prevail that the Duke of *Bavaria* should be divested of the Electoral Dignity; however to make him some amends, he was chosen a-new, and made an Eighth in the Electoral Colledge, with the Title of Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*.

The chief Cities and Towns in this Electorate, are

Heidelberg, Capital.  
Manheim,  
Frankendal,  
Openheim,  
Creutznaek,  
Altzheim,  
Keiserlauter,  
Newstadt,  
Bacharach.



**HEIDELBERG**, *Heidelberg* aut *Eidelberg*, the Capital of this Palatinate, is seated on the Banks of the River *Neckar* in a fruitful Plain at the foot of a Mountain near the Frontiers of *Schwaben*, at the distance of 40 miles from *Frankfurt* to the South, 60 from *Wurtzburg* to the South-west, 10 from *Manheim* and the confluence of the *Rhine* and *Neckar*, to the East, and 12 from *Spire* to the North-East. It is a large and flourishing City (at least was so before the French destroy'd it) populous and rich; it was much enlarged, and a Suburb call'd *Bergheim* added to it, in 1392. It is beautified with a magnificent Castle wherein the Elector keeps his Court; and adorn'd with an University, planted by *Rupert* Prince Elector Palatine, in 1357. which hath been happy in the Education of the famous Philologer *Janus Gruterus*, and other considerable Men. The Church of the Holy Ghost was remarkable for the famous Library kept in it, which in the Wars with *Spain* was transported to *Rome* for preservation. The Wine of this place is valued, and the great Tun is much talk'd of, for it's stupendous Bulk, containing no less then 200 Tun of English measure: It stands (if the French have not destroy'd it, near the Palace. This City was part of the Bishoprick of *Worms* before the year 1225. at which time *Lewis* the first Elector Palatine was invested with the Castle and old Town, to which his Successors added the New Suburb, as is already said. It has suffer'd much by Wars, having been laid wast by the *Spaniards* and others during the *German* Wars in the last Century; but more so in this late War, for the French have twice taken it, viz. in 1683 and 1692. and most barbarously burnt and destroy'd it.

*Manheim*, seated at the confluence of the *Rhine* and *Neckar* 10 miles West from *Heidelberg*, was strongly fortified by *Frederick IV.* in 1606. but taken and dismantled by the *Spaniards* in 1622. afterwards re-fortified by the last Elector, and had besides the Citadel several Outworks and a small Citadel on the *Rhine*, when the French attack'd and took it in 1688, who being forc'd to abandon it in 1689. destroyed all the Fortifications.

*Frankendal* is seated on the West-side of the *Rhine*, 10 miles from *Manheim*, and 20 from *Heidelberg* to the West. It was at first a Monastery only, but encreased to a fair City, and fortified by *Frederick III.* Elector Palatine in 1571. afterwards taken by the *Spaniards* and kept by them till the *Westphalian* Treaty, when it was restored to the Elector. It hath suffer'd the same Fate as *Manheim* in this War, having been taken and burnt by the French in 1689.

*Alzheim* or *Alzey*, the Capital of one of the Bailiwicks, or *Ampren* and the ancient Seat of the Elector, stands 25 miles North-west from *Frankendal*: It is a good Town, with a Castle and Walls.

*Creutznach* is a good Town, with a Castl seated upon a Hill, and nam'd *Kansenberg*: The Town stands upon the River *Nabe*, about 18 miles North-west from *Alzheim*. The Jurisdiction of it is divided between this Elector, the Marquess of *Baden*, and the Prince of *Simmeren*.

The Castle of *Eberimberg*, remarkable for the Siege it sustain'd in 1692. stands on the *Nabe*, not above 8 or 9 miles East from *Creutznach*.

*Keiser-lautern*, call'd *Caseloutre* by the French, stands upon the Rivre *Lautern* near the Borders of the Dutchy of *Zwibrukken*, 30 miles South from *Creutznach*, and 35 East from *Manheim*. It is a small City, formerly Imperial, but exempted in 1402. and now subject to this Elector.

## S E C T. II.

*The Bishopricks of SPIRE and WORMS, The Dutchy of ZWEYBRUGGEN, or DEUX PONTs, with the other smaller States that make up the rest of the Circle of the LOWER RHINE.*

The Bishoprick of *Spire* lies on both sides the *Rhine*, in length from East to West about 40 miles, and in breadth about 15. it is surrounded by the Dominions of the Elector Palatine, and lies next to the Bailiwick of *Heidelberg* to the South.

The Bishoprick of *Worms* lies also on both sides the *Rhine*, and encompass'd by the Palatinate; it is small, being hardly 2 miles in length, and about 7 or 8 in breadth. It lies North-West from *Heidelberg*.

The Dutchy of *Zwibrukken* is stretch'd out from North-east to the South-west about 40 miles in length, and in breadth in some places 25, in others not above 8 or 9. It lies next to the Palatinate to the South-west and is posses'd by a Prince of that Family.

The other Estates, together with the chief Towns, will be seen in this Table, viz.

The Bishopricks of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Spire,} \\ \text{Worms,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Spire,} \\ \text{Philipsburg,} \\ \text{Worms,} \\ \text{Ladenburg.} \end{array} \right.$	
The Dutchies of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Zwibrukken,} \\ \text{Simmeren,} \\ \text{Birckenfeld,} \\ \text{Lauterock,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Zwibruk,} \\ \text{Landjperg,} \\ \text{Simeeren,} \\ \text{Spanheim,} \\ \text{Birckenfeld,} \\ \text{Lauterock,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{Belonging} \\ \text{to several} \\ \text{Branches} \\ \text{of the Pa-} \\ \text{latine Fa-} \\ \text{mily.} \end{array} \right\}$
The Counties of	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Linange,} \\ \text{Rheingravestein,} \\ \text{Reipoltzkirk,} \end{array} \right.$		

**SPIRE**, *Spira*, aut *Noviomagus*, *Nemetum*, & *Nemetas*, is a large rich and populous City, seated on the East side of the *Rhine*, where it receives the small River *Sparbach*, being almost in the Midst between *Mentz* to the North, and *Strasburg* to the South, at the distance of about 50 miles from both, and about 12 or 14 from *Heidelberg* to the South-west. Tho' it be the Seat of the Bishop, it is not subject to him, but Imperial and Free, under the Protection of the Elector Palatine. The Cathedral Church is a very stately Building, and hath in it the Monuments of no less than eight Emperors that have been buried there; but the private Buildings are not very good. In this City the Imperial Chamber, or supream Court of Judicature in *Germany*, was establish'd in the Year 1530. and was constantly held till the Year 1689. when it was removed to *Wetstar* in *Hesse*, because this place was taken by the French, and most inhumanely burnt and destroy'd. The Chamber was the chief support of the Town; so that at present it must needs be in a very ordinary condition.

*Philipsburg*, *Philiburgum*, formerly a small Town call'd *Udensheim*, which was encompass'd with Walls, by *Gelberd* Bishop of *Spire*, in 1343. is now one of the strongest Towns of *Germany*. In 1615, *Philip Christopher* of *Soetern*, Bishop of *Spire* and *Trier*, repair'd and fortified it with seven Royal Bastions, and gave it its present name. The Castle was founded in 1513. by



by George Count Palatine of the Rhine and Bishop of Spire, repair'd in 1570 by Bishop *Albrand de Har-  
ley* and is a stately Building. The Town is seated  
on a Plain environ'd with Marishes, which adds much  
to its Strength; however it was often taken and re-  
gain'd in the German Wars, viz. by the Swedes, in  
1622, by Famine; by the *Austrian* Troops the Year  
1635, by Stratagem; and by the *French* by Storm, in  
1675, which last bellow'd great Cost in fortifying  
it, adding many Outworks according to the  
modern manner, and kept it till 1702, when  
the Germans repair'd it under a Sagittary of *Albrand*,  
who was granted to them by the Treaty of *Ni-  
mègue*. But they lost it again in the late War,  
when *Ugon* with the Siege of this place  
by the *Dominion of France*, to whom it was sur-  
render'd on the first of November 1688 and not re-  
gain'd till the conclusion of the Peace in 1697. It stands  
on the East side of the *Rhine*, 20 miles from *Hildes-  
heim* or 9 from *Spire* to the South.

*WORMS*, *Vermaas*, olim *Barbetomagus*, &c. *Uar-  
mas*, is seated on the Western bank of the *Rhine*, 25  
miles North from *Spire*, and as many South from  
*Mentz*. It was formerly a Metropolitan See, but af-  
terwards reduc'd to an Episcopal, under the Arch-bi-  
shop of *Mentz*. It was made a free and Imperial City  
by the Emperor *Henry II.* and is now govern'd by its own  
Magistrates under the Protection of the Elector Pa-  
latine. It was often taken and retaken during the Ger-  
man Wars, and was taken and burnt by the *French* in the Year, 1689.

*ZWEIFBRÜCKEN*, in French *DEUX*

*PONTS*, lat. *Bipontium*, so call'd from Bridges over  
two small Rivers whereon it stands, at the distance of  
45 miles from *Worms* and 50 from *Spire* to the West,  
as many from *Trier* to the East, and 40 from *Mentz*  
to the South. It is a small but well built City, for-  
merly fenced with a good Fort, which is now demol-  
ish'd, the whole Town having suffer'd much during  
the German War.

*STAMMEREN*, *Simmera*, the chief Town of the  
Lower County of *Spire*, and the Capital of a *Ter-  
ritory* formerly govern'd by its own Prince, but now  
belonging to the Elector Palatine with the Title of a *Du-  
chy*, is seated at the distance of 30 miles from *Mentz*  
to the West, and 25 from *Worms* to the South.

*BIRKENFELD*, *Birnfeld*, is a small Town,  
with the Title of a Principality and Duchy, seated in  
the upper County of *Spire* and District of *Huns-  
druck* near the River *Mosel*, at the distance of 25 miles  
from *Trier* to the East, and 30 from *Zweibrücken*  
to the North-east. It is wall'd and hath a Castle,  
whereto died *Charles III.* Duke of *Lorraine*, on the 17th  
Sept. 1675.

*LAUTERACH* is seated on the River *Lauter*,  
40 miles West from *Worms*, and 18 from *Zweibrücken*.

*LENINGEN*, the Capital of the County of *Li-  
nge*, stands 15 miles North-west from *Spire*, and about  
20 South-west from *Worms*.

*RIENGERSTEIN*, stands between *Cremz-  
en* and *Worms*, 35 miles almost North-west from  
*Worms*.

*REIPOLSKIRK* is 10 miles West from *Worms*,  
and is the Capital of another small County.

## CHAP. VI.

### ALSATIA, Alsatia, in High-Dutch Elsalz.

*ALSATIA* is the Country of the ancient *Tribo-  
res*, and one of the four Landgraviates of the  
Empire, but is at present intirely subject to the *French*,  
having been conquer'd by the present King. It is seat-  
ed on the Banks of the *Rhine*, and bounded on the  
East by that River, the Duchy of *Wurtemberg*, and  
some other parts of *Schwaben*; on the West by a Ridge  
of Mountains that divide it from *Lorraine*; on the North  
by the Palatinate; and on the South by *Switzerland*. Its  
Extent is from North to South 100 English miles, and  
from East to West, comprehending *Briggaw*, 40 miles,  
but in the other parts not above 25. The Soil is fruit-  
ful in Corn, Pasture, Wine and Fruits; and in the  
Mountains Mines of Copper and Lead. *Alsatia* was  
erected into a Landgraviate by the Emperor *Otho III.*  
and sometime possess'd by the House of *Austria*; but,  
being conquer'd by the *French*, was granted to them  
by the *Pyrenean Treaty* 1659. It is divided into the  
Upper and Lower, to which is usually added *Suntgaw*,  
*Briggaw* and *Orinow*. The whole contains 46 Towns  
and 50 Castles, besides a great many Villages. The  
chief whereof are these, viz.

In the Lower  
Alsace, { *Strasbourg*,  
          { *Saveren* or *Zabern*,  
          { *Haguenaw*,  
          { *For: Louis*,  
          { *Weissburg*,  
          { *Landsau*,  
          { *Reichen*,  
          { *Schlestadt*,  
          { *Colmar*.

In the Upper { *Munster*,  
                  { *Marbach*,  
                  { *Pfort* or *Ferette*,  
In *Suntgaw*, { *Muhaußen*,  
                  { *Besart*,  
                  { *Huningen*.  
In *Briggaw*, { *Bisac*,  
                  { *Erlurg*.

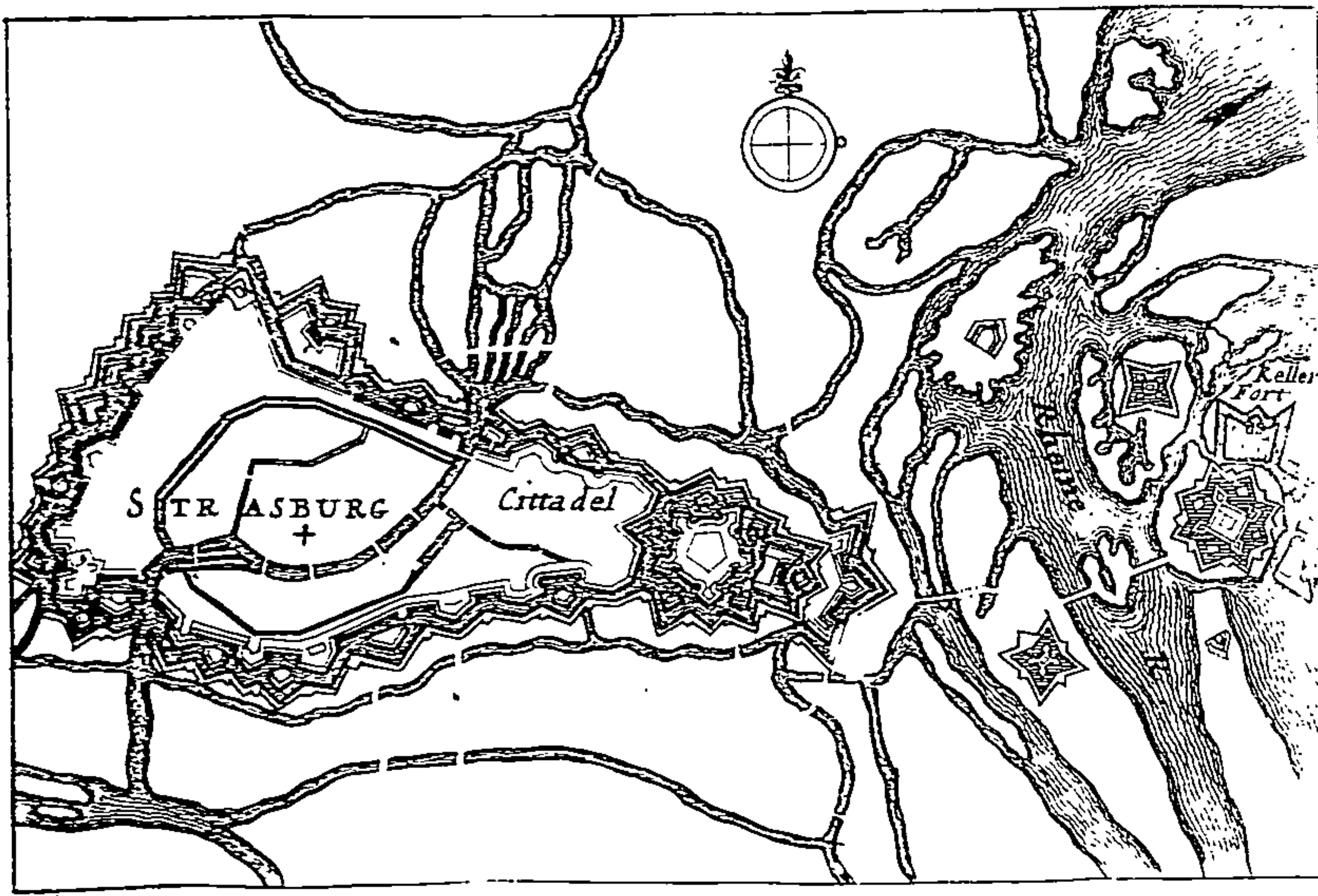
To which may be added, The County of *Mont-  
beliard*.

*STRASBURG*, *Argentoraturn*, *Argentina*, aut  
etiam *Strasburgum*, stands upon the Confluence of the  
two Rivers *Ill* and *Brensch*, which a little below falls  
into the *Rhine*, and is distant 50 miles from *Spire*, and  
14 from *Haguenaw* to the South, 30 from *Brisac*, and  
55 from *Basle* to the North, and about 70 from *Nancy*  
in *Lorraine* to the East. It is seated in the midst of a  
pleasant Plain, and is a large, populous and rich City;  
formerly Imperial, and govern'd by its own Magistrates,  
from the time of its embracing the Reformation, Anno,  
1529, till the *French* took it in 1682, who having al-  
ter'd the Government, has much injur'd the Trade of  
it. It is an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of  
*Mentz*, and adorn'd with many stately Buildings,  
among which the Town-house, Arsenal and Cathedral  
Church, are chiefly remarkable; especially the last,  
the Tower wheof is built in form of a Pyramid 574  
Foot high; and hath in it a Clock exceedingly ad-  
mir'd for its curious Workmanship, shewing not only



the Hour of the Day, but the course of the Sun, Moon, and all the other Planets. Here is an University which was founded in the Year 1538. and a considerable Library. Tho' the French be Masters, the Inhabitants are generally of the *Lutheran* Religion. The old Wall and Fortifications were formerly of no great Strength; but since the *French* have had it, they have made it very strong by the addition of many new Works and a Citadel, with a great Horn-work for

its defence on that end of the Town next the *Rhine*, together with Forts in some Islands in the *Rhine*, which secure the Bridge and command the Passage of the River; all which will be better understood by this Draught, which, because this City was surrender'd to the *French* by the Treaty of *Ryswick*, we have added. By that Treaty the Fort *Keil*, here also shewn on the other side the River, was granted to the Confederates



*Saverne* or *Elisefalern* is next to *Strasbourg*, the chief Town of the Lower *Alsace*; it is situate 15 miles North west from *Strasbourg*, and defended by a strong Castle at the top of a Rock, wherein formerly the Bishops of *Strasbourg* kept a Court of Judicature.

*Haguenau*, an Imperial City before the *French* Wars, is situate between the two Rivers *Mitter* and *Sorne*, about 6 miles from the *Rhine* to the West, and 14 from *Strasbourg* to the North, and encompass'd with thick Woods, and at some distance with Corn-fields and fruitful Vineyards. It was formerly the Seat of the supreme Court of Judicature for *Alsace*, and had in it a great Palace of the Emperors, built by *Frederick Barbarossa*, in 1164. It was taken by the *French*, and granted to them by the Treaty of *Munster*, and hath been strongly fortified.

*Fort Louis* stands in an Island of the *Rhine*, almost over against *Baden*, and about 10 miles East from *Haguenau*. It is small, but very strong, and was built by the present *French* King, for the better security of this part of the Country, and the command of the River.

*Wiesbaden* was also an Imperial City, and much honoured by *Charles* King of *France*, who presented them with a large Crown of Silver. But now subject to the *French*. It is situate on the River *Lutra*, about 11 miles West from the *Rhine*, 16 North from *Haguenau*, and 25 South-west from *Spire*.

*Landau* is seated on the Borders of the Palatinate, 10 miles North from *Wiesbaden*, and 15 west from *Spire*. It was granted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Munster*, and is now in their Possession, and very strongly fortified.

In 1655, the *French* lodg'd here the Plunder they took out of most of the Towns of the Palatinate,

which by accidental Fire was all destroy'd the next Year.

*Riesheim* stands 12 miles West from *Strasbourg*.

*Scheffstadt*, formerly a Free and Imperial City, but taken by the *French*, and granted to them by the *Westphalian* Peace, is seated 20 miles from *Strasbourg* to the South, and 12 from *Colmar* to the North. The Fortifications were demolish'd by the Confederates, in 1673, but since rebuilt by the *French*, and is now a place of good Strength.

*Colmar*, once an Imperial and very populous City, but by the *German* Civil War and the *French* Armies almost quite depopulated, stands in a plain fruitful Country, about 8 miles West of *Brisac*, and 30 South from *Strasbourg*.

*Pfirt*, called *Ferette* by the *French*, is a small City, but the Capital of *Sunegow*; it stands near the source of the River *Ill*, 30 miles South from *Colmar*, and about 10 West from *Basil*. It was granted to the *French* by the Treaty of *Westphalia*, and is now possessed by them. About 10 or 12 miles from hence to the North-east, and not above 2 or 3 from *Basil*, stands

*Huningen* a very strong Fortress, built not many Years since by the *French* King; it stands on the West side of the *Rhine*, about 2 or 3 miles North of *Basil*, and 20 South of *Brisac*: It is large enough to hold a Garrison of 4 or 5000 Men, and is compos'd of five Bastions; and had a Magazine vaulted with Brick, so strongly, that it is proof against Bombs; besides the Tenailles, Ravelines, Counterscarp and double Ditch, two large Horn-works to the North and South, and a third on the other side of the River; and from the Ramparts go Vaults to the Horn works, for conveying Men to them. But all this is destroyed, as was agreed by the Treaty of *Ryswick*.



*Mulhausen*, an Imperial City in Alliance with the *Swiss Cantons*, stands 12 miles North from *Pfirt*, and near 20 South from *Colmar*.

*Befort* or *Beford*, formerly the Capital of this Country, but was almost ruin'd by the Wars, and is now a small City of no great Note. It stands 20 miles West from *Pfirt*, and as many from *Mulhausen*.

Adjoining to *Alsace*, and Westward of *Suntgaw*, lies the Couty of

*MONTBELGART*, formerly belonging to the Dukes of *Wurtemberg*, but now to *France*: The Capital City is of the same Name, seated in a very pleasant and wholesom Air, 40 miles South of *Colmar*, and 35 from *Basil*, and about 18 from *Befort* to the West. See the Account of it in the *Franche Comte*.

*Brisac*, the Capital of the *Brisgaw*, stands on the East side of the *Rhine*, 30 miles South from *Strasburg*, 24 North from *Basil*, and 8 West from *Colmar*. It stands on the Banks of the River, and is joined to two or three Islands in it, by Bridges, which, as well as the Town, are fortified. It was heretofore an Imperial City, but was subjected to the House of *Austria* about 1330. and taken by the *French* in 1638. To whom it was granted by the *Westphalian Treaty*, and has ever since been subject, till the year 1700. when, in Pursuance of the Treaty of *Ryswick*, it was restor'd to the Emperor, after the fair Stone-Bridge over the *Rhine* was destroyed. It stands upon a Hill, in a plain level Country, and hath a strong Citadel standing in an Island on the West side of the Town. The Fortifications are exceeding strong; on the West side are 3 Bastions filled with Earth and faced with Brick, and before every Courtine stands a Half-Moon; the Ditch is broad, and the Counter-scarp, Cover'd Way, and Palisado, are well executed. The Fortifications are a League in Circumference, and the Place capable of garrisoning 9 or 10000 Men.

*Friburg* stands on the East side of the *Rhine* 10 miles from *Brisac*, in a fertile Plain, at the foot of the Mountains, and on the small River *Treisseim*, that falls into the *Rhine*; it is a good City, and the Seat of an University, which was first establish'd by *Albert* Archduke of *Austria*, in 1450. It was thrice taken by the *Swedes*, in 1632, 1634, and 1638. and twice by the *French*, viz. 1671, and 1677. and turrendred to them by the Treaty of *Nimeguen*, and since very strongly fortified: But by the Treaty of *Ryswick* it was restored to the Emperor.

CHAP. VII.

SCHWABEN, Suevia.

THE Dutchy of *Schwaben*, or *Swabia*, in French *Souabe*, had its Latin Name *Suevia*, from some Tribes of the *Suevi*, that came down from the Northern parts against *Julius Caesar*; whose Posterity settling in this and the neighbouring Countries, in time established a powerfull State, which was govern'd for some Ages by a Duke, who was at first elected by the People: But about the beginning of the XIIth Age 'twas made Hereditary to *Frederick* the Ancient; in whole Family it continued till about the Year 1268. when *Conradine* dying without Issue, this Country was divided between several Princes, Bishops, and Free Cities, who have all Sovereign Power in their respective Dominions, viz. the Bishop of *Augsburg* and *Constance*, the Duke of *Wurtemberg*, and the Princes of *Hohenzollern* and *Furstemburg*, 8 Counts, 5 Barons, the Grand Master of *Malta*, 18 Abbots, the Provost *Valenhausen*, and 34 Imperial Cities.

The extent of *Schwaben* from North to South is about 110 miles, and from East to West 130, and its bounds are, the *Palatinate* and *Franconia* on the North, *Switzerland* on the South, *Alsatia* on the West, and *Bavaria* on the East. The Air of it is healthy, and the Soil is generally fruitful; for though some parts be mountainous and woody, yet do the Hills afford Mines of Copper, Silver and other Metals, and the Forests much Pine and Fir-Timber, besides great store of Game: And the other parts of the Country yeild great store of Corn, Wine and Flax. The chief River is the *Danube*, which hath its Source here, in the Principallity of *Furstemburg*, as hath also the *Neckar* near the same place. The chief Employment of the Inhabitants is making of Linnen Cloath, whereof they vend great quantities to other Nations,

- Schwaben hath these States and chief Towns.
- The Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*, wherein these Towns are of the chiefest note;

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.
- The Marquitate of *Baden*,

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

The Bishoprick of *Augsburg*,

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

In the Bishoprick of *Constance*,

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

The Abbies and Cities of

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

The Principallities of

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

The County of

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

The small Counties of

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

Imperial Cities not mention'd above.

{ *Stutgard*, Capit.

{ *Tubingen*, Imp.

{ *Reutling*, Imp.

{ *Eflingen*, Imp.

{ *Hohendwil*,

{ *Schorndorf*,

{ *Loebenstein*, Co.

{ *Eberstein*, County.

{ *Baden*, Marquitate

{ *Durlach*, Marq.

{ *Pfortzheim*,

{ *Badenweiler*.

{ *Augsburg*, Imp.

{ *Dillingen*,

{ *Fueffen*.

{ *Constance*, Imp.

{ *Mersberg*.

{ *Kempten*,

{ *Buchaw*,

{ *Lindaw*.

{ *Furstemburg*,

{ *Hobenzelleren*.

{ *Oetting*.

{ *Papenheim*,

{ *Koningseck*,

{ *Hohenrichberg*.

{ *Waldburg*.

{ *Ulm*,

{ *Hai'bron*,

{ *Memminghen*,

{ *Nerdlingen*,

{ *Rotwell*,

{ *Ravensburg*,

{ *Isne*,

{ *Ubinglingen*,

{ *Bitrac*,

{ *Lentkirk*,

{ *With near*

{ *20 more*

{ *Subject*



Subject to the House of A Area.	{	The Marquitate of <i>Baden</i> The small Count- ies of	{	<i>Reichenau</i> , <i>Neuchâtel</i> , <i>Offenburg</i> , <i>Gengenbach</i> , <i>Altenau</i> .
	{	The Counties of	{	<i>Lahr</i> , <i>Geislingen</i> , <i>Horb</i> , <i>Heilbrunn</i> , <i>Ulm</i> .

The Marquitate of *BADEN* is extended along the Eastern Banks of the *Rhine*, over against *France*, beginning a little below *Strasbourg* on the North, and ending on the narrow Tract to the right of *Basle* on the South, except where it is disjointed by the intervention of *Burgundy*. It is an exceeding fertile and fruitful Province producing Corn, Wine, Hemp, Flax, Fowl and Venison in great plenty: It is the most remarkable for Parks and natural Waters, that the other Territories of the whole Country, and its name is in them. The Dominion is divided between two Princes of the same Family, to the distinguished by the Names of the chief Town of the two Marquitates, *Baden* and *Durach*, whereof *Baden* or *Baden* is a Roman Catholic, and *Baden Durlach* a Lutheran.

*BADEN Baden* and *Thurns* *Inspruck* stands a German League or 4 English miles East from the *Rhine*, 10 from *Burgundy* to the North, and 25 from *Hallstadt* to the South, upon a busy craggy Ground, so that the Streets are very uneven. It is famous and exceeding well stocked with its hot Baths, whereof there are many springs in the Town and are reckoned for curing Rheumatis for the Gout, Cramp, &c. Thence bringeth Nobility and Gentry from all parts of Germany, whence a great Trade to the Town, which is however not very considerable. The Marquitate has its Palace here; and, for the security of the Town, there is a good Fortification built on an adjacent Hill.

*HEILBRON* *Heilbronn* stands 12 miles North from *Durlach*, 20 South from *Hallstadt*, and 2 Leagues East from the *Rhine*. It is seated on the Banks of the *Rhine* River at the foot of the Mountain, on the top whereof stands a strong Tower. The streets are straight, and the Buildings neat, and the Marquis's Palace remarkable for its magnificence exceeding that of *Baden*, and even capable of receiving a great Prince's Retinue.

*Reichenau* is a small City seated on the River *Els*, where it receives the *Nigels*, about 22 miles S. from *Durlach*, between pleasant Meadows and Corn-fields on the one, and Mountains and Woods on the other. It was formerly subject to the Duke of *Wurtemberg*, but now belongs to the Marquis of *Durlach*.

*Strasbourg* is a small City of that part of *Baden* which lies S. of *Heilbronn*, about a League from the *Rhine*, and is situated between *Burgundy* to the N. and *Alsace* to the S. about 10 miles from each. It is famous for its hot Baths, which are reckoned to be as valuable as those of *Baden* and *Heilbronn*.

*Offenburg* is a small Imperial City, under the Protection of the Duke of *Alsace*, is the Capital of the County of *Offenburg*, and seated on the small River *Elz*, which falls into the *Rhine* near *Strasbourg*, 10 miles S. from *Baden*, 30 N. from *Heilbronn*, and 60 from *Hallstadt*.

*Heilbrunn* is a small Imperial City, stands on the *Rhine*, 5 or 6 miles above *Offenburg*.

The County of *HEILBRUNN*, *Heilbrunn* stands next to *Baden* to the Eastward, be-

tween the Palatinate on the N. and the Principality of *Heilbrunn* on the South; extending near 70 miles both in length and breadth. The County is exceeding fertile, consisting of pleasant Meadows, Mountains containing rich Mines, and Forests abounding with variety of Game. A great number of small Rivers water it, which with the Lakes are filled with Fish. It is very populous and has 100000 inhabitants. It has 10 good Towns, and a great number of Villages. It was erected into a County by the Emperor *Maximilian* in the year 1550. It is divided into 10 Counties, and is now governed by *Frederick*, a powerful and worthy Prince, and of the *Reformed* Religion.

*Stuttgart* is the Metropolis of this Duchy, and the place of Residence of the Duke, is seated on the *Neckar*, 20 miles East from *Heilbronn*, 20 South from *Heilbronn*, and as many North from the *Danube*. It is a large City and much resorted to for its famous mineral Waters, which cure several Diseases. The Prince's Palace is a stately Castle, and adorn'd with exceeding pleasant Gardens, wherein are rows of Orange Trees, fine Grotto's and curious Water works.

*Tübingen*, *Tubinga*, is a fair and well-built City, water'd by the *Neckar*, and adorn'd with an University, founded in the year, 1477. by Count *Eberhard* above-mentioned. It stands about 20 miles South from *Stuttgart*, near 30 North from the *Danube*, and 50 East from *Offenburg*, and boasts of having been the Seat of the Emperor *Charles* who they say had a stately Palace, and entertain'd the *Germans* with publick Games in this place.

*Heilbrunn* a strong impregnable Castle stands on the top of an inaccessible Hill near the Banks of the *Rhine*, and belongs to the Duke of *Wurtemberg*.

*Reichenau* or *Reichenau* is an Imperial City under the Protection of the Duke of *Wurtemberg*, being seated on the Combes of his Country, 12 miles S. E. from *Tübingen*. It stands on a Hill at the foot of the Mount *Heilbrunn*, but is nothing very remarkable.

*Heilbrunn*, another small Imperial City, under the Protection of this Prince, stands upon the *Neckar*, 5 or 6 miles East from *Stuttgart*.

*HEILBRON* *Heilbronn*, *Fons Solutus* stands also in the limits of this Duchy, but is a free Imperial City having been made so by the Emperor *Ferdinand* III. in the year 1240. It had its Name from the famous Medicinal Springs found in it, and is a goodly City seated on the *Neckar*, over which it hath a Stone Bridge. In a pleasant and fruitful Country, at the distance of 25 miles from *Stuttgart* to the North, and 26 from *Heilbrunn* to the South-east.

The County of *OETTING* lies next to *Wurtemberg* to the East, between the Marquitate of *Offenburg* on the North, and the *Danube* on the South. The extent of it is about 20 miles. The chief Town, call'd *Lamm Oen Puer*, is but small and not very considerable; it stands 70 miles East from *Stuttgart*, 20 S. from *Offenburg*, and 15 North from the *Danube*.

*Nördlingen* a small Imperial City, stands in this County on the small River *Eger*, 10 miles North from the *Danube*, and 5 or 6 South-west from *Offenburg*. It was made Free in the year 1271, and for its vicinity is in League with the *Switzers*. Two notable Battles were fought near it between the *Swiss* and *Germans*; the first in 1531, wherein the *Swiss* were Defeated, and the latter in 1645, when they and the *French* were Victors over the *Bavarians*.

The Bishoprick of *HEILSBURG* *HEILSBURG* lies on the South side of the *Danube*, extended in a narrow Tract 10 or 15 miles in breadth, a good part of it, of the



rest not above 15 or 20) from the Banks of that River to the County of *Tyrol*, above 80 miles, and bounded on the East by the Dutchy of *Bavaria*. It is a fruitful pleasant Country, and subject to its Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire.

*AUGSBURG* or *AUSBURGH*, call'd in Latin, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, from *Augustus Caesar*, who conquer'd these parts and Planted a Roma Colony here among the *Vindelici*, stands near the Confines of *Bavaria*, the Confluence of the two Rivers *Lech* and *Merlarb*, which fall in to the *Danube* 25 miles below it; and is distant 80 miles from *Stutgard* to the East, 35 from *Munich* to the North-west, and 65 from *Ratisbon* to the W. It is a very ancient and very considerable City, reckon'd the Capital of *Schwaben*, made Imperial by the Emperor *Frederick I.* in 1162, and bought its entire Freedom of *Conrad Duke of Schwaben*, in 1266. It is large and populous, the Streets broad, the Market-places spacious, and the Houses tho' built but with Wood and Clay are fair and handſom; the Cathedral Church, the Town-hall and the Conduits, are stately and magnificent. Here are two Arsenals well furnish'd with Arms and Ammunition, publick Granaries full of Corn, and Hospitals well maintained. The Inhabitants are much enriched by Trade; and the Works of the Gold-smiths, and other Artificers of this Place, are Transported to many parts of *Europe*. The Noble Family of the *Fuggers*, Lords of the adjacent Country, have fair Palaces here; a great Hospital built by them is the most remarkable part of this City; it contains 106 Houses in four Streets built cross-ways, inhabited by poor People, who have yearly Pensions allow'd them.

*Augsburg* is famous for the many Imperial Diets that have been holden in it, but especially for the Lutheran Confession of Faith, call'd *Augustan* from its having been first promulgated here, at the Diet held by the Emperor *Charles V.* on that occasion, in the year 1530. *Joseph King of Hungary*, Son to his present Imperial Majesty, was here chosen and crown'd King of the Romans, in *Janurry* 1689.

The Marquisate of *BURGAW*, subject to the House of *Austria*, lies on the W. of *Augsburg*, and South of the *Danube*, extended about 30 miles in length and breadth. The chief Town stands 8 or 9 miles South from the *Danube*, 24 West from *Augsburg*, and 12 East from *Ulm*.

*ULM*, *Ulma*, is a very ancient, large and imperial City standing on the *Danube*, which here receives the *Iler*, and begins to be Navigable, 40 miles distant from *Ausburg* to the W. 50 from *Stutgard* to the E. and 80 from *Wurtzburg* to the S. It was wall'd in the year 1300. and made Imperial and Free by *Lewis of Bavaria* in 1346. Soon after the Cittizins purchas'd the County of *Helfenstein*, the County of *Albeg*, and the Town and Castle of *Gieslingen*, so that they are Lords of a Country of 20 miles in length and 12 in breadth. The City is govern'd by a Senate of 41, and is strongly fortified. It is a rich and populous Place and hath a good Trade, consisting chiefly in Linnen Cloth. The Cathedral Church is a very noble Building, exceeding any of *Germany*, except that of *Strasburg*; it's said the building of it employ'd a great number of Workmen for 111 Years; it has five Spires of great height, and within it an Organ so very remarkable as to have merited a Description of it in Print by two Learned Men. It was finish'd in the Year 1599. after 35 years Labour, and is 93 Foot high and 28 broad; it has 16 pair of Bellows, and the largest Pipe is 13 Inches diameter. Here are also many other stately Edifices, among which the *Stadt-houſe* is chiefly remarkable. The Reformation was receiv'd here in 1529, and the Inhabitants are mostly Lutherans.

*BIRACH*, an ancient Imperial City, is seated in a pleasant and fruitful Valley surrounded with fair Meadows, but some of them boggy and overflow'd in Winter, 20 miles from *Ulm* to the South, not above 10 from the *Danube*, and 40 from *Constance* to the North-east: It was made Free very long since, even in the year 800. as 'tis said. Here is a natural Bath, to which great numbers of the Neighbouring Gentry resort.

*BUCHACH*, is also a small Imperial City, but chiefly remarkable for its Monastery, the Abbot whereof is one of the Sovereign Princes of *Schwaben*. It stands about 7 miles W. from *Bibrach*, and as many South from the *Danube*.

*MEMINGEN*, a free imperial City also, stands on the River *Iler*, 30 miles South from *Ulm*, and 20 North from *Kempton*: It is a large place and of good Trade, which consists chiefly in making and vending Paper. It is also strong, having the natural Fortification of a Marsh on one side, and the artificial one of a good Wall on t'other.

*LEUTKIRK*, a small Imperial City, stands 12 miles South from *Memingen* upon the Road to *Italy*, which makes it pretty much frequented. The Inhabitants have a good Trade for Linnen Cloth, which they make in great quantities.

*RAVENSPURG*, or *GRAVENSPURG*, was anciently a fair Village, but wall'd and made a City in the Year 1100, and afterwards made Imperial and endow'd with Privileges. It has a fair Town-house, and the Churches are well built. It stands upon a small River that falls into the Lake of *Constance*; 20 miles West from *Leutkirck*, and about 20 South from *Buchaw*.

*KEMPTE N*, *Campodunum*, *Campidona* & *Driisomagus*, is one of the Ancientest Cities in *Germany*, and was sometime the Seat of the Dukes of *Schwaben*, at present famous for its Monastery founded by *Hildegard* Daughter to the Duke of *Schwaben*, and Wife to *Charles the Great*; the Abbot whereof is a Prince of the Empire and Lord of the adjacent Territory, and formerly of this City, till the Inhabitants purchas'd their Liberty: The Emperor *Feederick III.* made it Imperial; and granted the Citizens many Privileges. The Trade of the Place is Weaving and Whitning Linnen Cloth; it lies upon the Road to *Italy*, by which also the Inhabitants make good advantage. The Reformation was receiv'd here in 1530. and in 1633 the City taken and plunder'd by the Imperialists. It stands upon the River *Iler* 16 miles South-east from *Leutkirck*, 50 from *Ulm*, and 20 from *Memingen* to the South.

*Altorf*, which stands two miles from *Ravensburg*, is an ancient Town, at present belonging to the House of *Austria*; a Lieutenant or High Commissioner of *Suevia* resides here, who in the Emperor's name keeps a Court of Judicature to hear and determine all Causes brought from the Imperial Cities in *Schwaben*. The famous Family of the *Gaelphs* us'd to be Buried here.

*LINDAW*, at first a Monastery built in 810: which was in time encreased to a City and subject to the Abbets, and after to the Duke of *Schwaben*, but hath since obtained its Liberty and Privileges from *Rudolf I. Frederick III.* and *Sigismund*, and is now an Imperial City. It stands 30 miles West from *Kempton*, and on the North-east Bank of the Lake of *Constance*, part of the City being built on an Island in it, and the other part surrounded with pleasant Meadows and sweet Springs.

*Isne* stands in the midway between *Kempton* and *Lindaw*; *Wangen* 10 miles South from *Lindaw*, and *Buchorn* upon the Lake of *Constance* 12 miles West of *Lindaw*, are all three Imperial Cities. As is also



**C** BERLINGEN, which stands also upon the Lake of *Constance*, 30 miles West from *Limburg*, 50 South-west from *Ulm*, and 23 from *Basel*, 3 East from *Furftemburg*, and 10 North from *Constance*. It is a fair City built on a high Rock, and encompassed with Vineyards and Orchards, and hath a good Haven, whence are sent out Barges laden with Wine and Fruits, which they carry to *Constance*, and other Cities upon the Lake; by which the Inhabitants are enriched, being also very industrious and frugal. Here is an Hospital richly endowed and several good publick Buildings; anciently the Dukes of *Schwaben* have resided here. In the neighbouring Vineyards springs a mineral Water of great Virtue.

**C** O S T A N C E call'd in High Dutch **C** O S T N I T Z, or **C** O S T A N T Z, *Constantia*, *Constantia*, the Metropolis of the *Heim* or Lower *Schwaben* had its name, as is said, from *Constantinus* *Cherus*, Father of *Constantine* the Great, who had his Winter station here. It stands on the South side of the Lake of *Constance* or *Bodensee*, where the River *Rodan* issues out of it at the distance of 6 miles from *Ulm* to the South-west, -- from *Bath* to the East, and 30 from *Appenzel* to the North. It was taken by *Armin* the *Hun*, and afterwards possesed by the Kings of *France*, by whom the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* was removed thither in the year 594, and the City was enlarged, and fortified before 935, that it withstood a great Army of *Hun* or *Savages* that then over-run this Country. It is Imperial, but not perfectly free, for *Charles V.* subjected it to the *Austrian* Family for refusing the Terms concerning Religion tendered to them; and the Emperor still maintains a Governor and Garrison here, under the Title of Protector. However the City enjoys many Privileges, is a populous and rich Place, and hath a considerable Trade by means of the Lake. It is also well built and strongly fortified; the Churches are very magnificent, particularly the Cathedral of *St. Stephen*; also the Exchange, Town house, Markets, Bridges, and other publick Buildings are very stately. As is likewise the Bishop's Palace that stands in the Suburb of *Petershausen*, which was fortified in 1635, when the *Swedes* attempted to besiege the City.

This City was made memorable by a general Council held in it by the procurement of the Emperor *Sigismund* in the Year 1414, to remove a Schism in the Romish Church, upon Three Popes pretending to the Infallibility; all which Three were deposed, and a new one (*Martin V.*) chosen by this Council. They likewise condemned the Doctrines of *John Wickliffe*, *John Huss* and *Jerom* of *Prague*, causing the Bones of *Wickliffe* to be digg'd up and burnt; and notwithstanding a safe Conduct granted by the Emperor to *John Huss*, he was condemned and burnt by them, as was also *Jerom* of *Prague*. This Council lasted four years, held

43 Sessions, and ended April 12 1415, during all which time there are said to have been in this City, 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Arch-bishops and Bishops, 564 Abbots and Doctors, and 10000 secular Priests and Noblemen. Also 1600 Barbers, 320 Musicians, and the account is very particular; 450 Harlots.

The Bishoprick of **C** O N S T A N C E lies along the Banks of the Lake and the Borders of *Switzerland* among the Allies whereof it is commonly reckon'd. The Bishop is a Count of the Empire, Lord of above 10 Castles and Villages, and is stiled Baron of *Richena*, he was also formerly Sovereign of *Constance*.

The principality of **F** U R S T E M B U R G, *Furtembergicus Principatus*, is extended in a narrow Tract about 70 miles in length, on both sides the *Danube*, which River hath its Source within its Limits. The chief Town of the same name stands on the South side of the *Danube* 30 miles South-west from *Constance*, 20 North from *Schaffhausen* on the *Rhine*, and 35 from *Brissac*. It is subject to its own Prince, who is a Count of the Empire, and of an illustrious Family which hath produced many great Persons; particularly Cardinal *William*, Count of *Furftemburg*, Bishop of *Strasbourg*, whose pretensions to the Archbishoprick of *Coëgne* (already mention'd) gave occasion to the breaking out of the late War.

The famous *Hercynian* Wood or Black Forest extended thus far, wherein stands *Tone Eschingen* a small Village, near which the River *Danube* hath its first Run.

**R** O T T E L, a small Imperial City, seated on the Neckar but 10 miles from the head of that River, and is 15 miles distant from *Furftemburg* to the North, and 20 from *Tubingen* to the South. It is the Seat of Chancellor of Court of Justice for the whole Dutchy of *Schwaben*. This City was taken by the French in 1643; but restor'd at the Treaty of *Munster*.

The Principality or County of **H** O H E N Z O L L E R E N is a narrow Tract of Land lying East and West about 35 miles in length, tho' not above 5 in breadth, between the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg* and the River *Danube*. The chief Town of the same name stands about 20 miles from *Rottel* to the North-east, and 12 from *Tubingen* to the South.

The County of **K** O N I N G S E C K lies on the East of *Furftemburg*.

The Barrony of **W** A L D B U R G is about 30 miles in length, and 10 or 12 in breadth, and lies between the County of *Koningseck* on the W, the Lands of the Abbot of *Buchau* on the N. and, *Kemton* on the East.

*Hohenrechspurg* County lies on the East-side of the Dutchy of *Wurtemberg*.

*Rheinfelden*, the Capital of a small County, stands on the South-side of the *Rhine* near the Borders of *Switzerland*, and about 10 miles distant from *Basil* to the East.

## C H A P. VIII.

### The Circle of B A V A R I A.

**T** H E Circle of *Bavaria* is bounded on the North by *Francia*, *Saxony* and *Briemia*, on the South by the County of *Torch*, Bishoprick of *Brixen* and Dutchy of *Carinthia*, on the East by *Bohemia* and *Austria*, and on the West by *Schwaben*. Its extent from North to South is about 200 miles, and from East to West 120. The Air is healthy; the Soil produces Corn, Wine and Pasture; but the Country is much taken up in Forests and Moun-

tains; the former whereof yield much Venison, and the latter Mines of Copper and some Silver, also Quarries of a sort of Marble. The River *Danube* runs through it, dividing the Palatinate from the Dutchy of *Bavaria*; the *Leck* runs along the West-side of the Dutchy of *Bavaria*, dividing it from the Bishoprick of *Augsburg*; and the *Im* passes through it, from South-west to North-east and falls into the *Danube*. These, together with the *Amber*, the *Iler*, the *Selz*,



the *Altmul*, the *Nab* and the *Regen*, are the cheif Rivers of this Province.

Besides the Dominions of the Elector of *Bavaria*, there are compris'd in this Circle several other Sovereignties, as the Archbithoprick of *Saltzburg*, the Bithopricks of *Ratisbon*, *Passaw* and *Freisingen*, the Dutchy of *Newburg*, the Landgraviate of *Leuchtemburg*, the Territory of the City of *Ratisbon*, and several Imperial Cities; which are more particularly let forth in this Table.

The Domini- ons of the Duke of Ba- varia are di- vided into	{	The Dutchy of <i>Bavaria</i> , which lies on the South-side of the <i>Danube</i> , and hath these Towns of chiefest note.	<i>Munich</i> , <i>Ingolstadt</i> , <i>Landshut</i> , <i>Straubingen</i> , <i>Donawert</i> , <i>Burkhausen</i> .
		<i>Nort-Gow</i> , or the <i>Palatinate</i> , called the <i>Upper or Bavarian</i> , (to distinguish it from that of the <i>Rhine</i> ) in which stand	<i>Amberg</i> , <i>Newmarck</i> , <i>Chamb</i> , <i>Sultzbach</i> , <i>Leuchtemburg</i> , <i>Waltmunchen</i> .
		The Arch-bishoprick of <i>Saltzburg</i> lies on the South of <i>Bavaria</i> , wherein are these Towns of greatest note,	<i>Saltzburg</i> , <i>Lauffen</i> , <i>Windischmatray</i> , <i>Ditmaning</i> .
		The Bishoprick of <i>Ratisbon</i> lies on the Banks of the <i>Danube</i> ,	<i>Ratisbon</i> .
		The Bishoprick of <i>Passaw</i> lies on the <i>Danube</i> , next the Borders of <i>Austria</i> ,	<i>Passaw</i> .
		The Bishoprick of <i>Freisinghen</i> lies in the Dutchy of <i>Bavaria</i> ,	<i>Freisinghen</i> , <i>Werdenfels</i> .
		The Dutchy of <i>Neuburg</i> lies partly on the Banks of the <i>Danube</i> , and part between the <i>Palatinate</i> and the Bishoprick of <i>Ratisbon</i> ,	<i>Neuburg</i> , <i>Langingen</i> , <i>Hochstat</i> .

*BAVARIA*, call'd *Bayern* by the *Germans*, is part of the *Rætia Vindilicia* & *Noricum* of the *Ancients*; and took its name *Boiaria* (corrupted into *Bavaria*) from the *Boij* a warlike People, that came from *Gallia Celtica* and settled here about 470 years after *Christ*, being govern'd by their proper Kings at first, and Dukes afterwards, to the time of *Charles the Great*, who conquer'd *Tassilo*, made himself Master of the Country and erected it into a Kingdom, in which State it lasted for about 100 years, when *Lodewick* their King dying without Issue, the *Bavarians* chose *Arnolph*, a Descendent from *Charlemain*, to be their Governor; who contented himself with the Title of Duke, as all the Princes of it have since done; among whom, *Maximilian* was the first that had the Electoral Dignity, which was conferr'd on him, together with the Upper *Palatinate*, by the Emperor *Ferdinand II. A. D.* 1623. in reward for the Service he did him in his War against *Frederick V.* Elector *Palatine*, chosen King of *Bohemia*.

The present Duke and Elector of *Bavaria*, *Maximilian-Emanuel*, is also Governor of the *Spanish Netherlands*; he was born in 1652. succeeded his Father in 1679. and in 1685 married *Anna-Maria-Jesepha*, the Emperor's Daughter by his first Wife *Margaret of Spain*, by whom he had a Son, who, if he had lived, would have been Heir to the Crown of *Spain*.

The Country abounds with Forests, which are fill'd with very large Deer, wild-Boars, Bears and other Venison. Great number of Swine are fed here, which the Peasants make their cheif Livelihood.

The most considerable Cities and Towns are these:

*MUNICH*, or *MUNCHEN* according to the pronunciation of the Inhabitants, call'd in Latin *Monachium*, is the Metropolis of *Bavaria* and the Seat of the Duke: It stands on the River *Iser*, 70 miles from *Vim* to the East, 40 from *Ingolstadt* to the South, 60 from *Innspruck* to the North, and 100 from *Linz* in *Austria* to the West, and is esteem'd one of the most pleasant, rich and populous Cities of *Germany*. The Buildings are fair and uniform, and the Streets broad and even. The Elector's Palace is a most magnificent Structure, the Apartments whereof are adorn'd with exceeding rich Furniture, the stately Galleries with curious Painting and Marble Statues, and the Duke's Closet and Library fill'd with curious Rarities and choice Books; and the spacious Gardens are made pleasant by delightfull Walks, Fountains and Grottoes. The Jesuits Church and College is a stately Building; it was founded by *William* Duke of *Bavaria* about the year 1600. and is the usual burial Place of the Dukes. The great Church of *Munich*, dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, is also a very fine Building, and hath two Towers of 333 foot high. Here are also other Churches and publick Buildings worth a Stranger's notice. Two great Fairs held yearly here, contribute much to the enriching of the Inhabitants. This City was built in 962 and wall'd round in 1156. *Gustavus Adolphus* took it in 1632.

*Ingolstadt*, *Ingo'stadium*, *Aureopolis*, stands on the North-side of the *Danube*, over which it hath a fair Bridge, 40 miles North from *Munich*, 12 miles East from *Newburg*, and 30 West from *Ratisbon*. It is a fair well-built Place, seated in a pleasant fruitful Country, and adorn'd with an University which enjoys great Privileges, and had the Honour to educate the great Cardinal *Bellarmino*. It was first made a City by the Emperor *Lewis IV.* and is fortified with a very strong Castle and good Walls, by which means it was able to resist a very notable Siege of the Protestants in 1546. and another of *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1632.

*Landshut* is seated on the River *Iser*, 30 miles Northeast from *Munich*, and 30 South from *Ratisbon*. The Duke's Lieutenant in the lower *Bavaria* commonly resides here. It is a handsom well-built City, and adorn'd with a stately Palace of the Elector; and a Church, which, for the heighth of its Tower, is thought to exceed any in *Germany*.

*Straulingen* stands about 25 or 26 miles North from *Landshut* on the Bank of the *Danube*, over which River it hath a Bridge.

*Amberg*, the Metropolis of the Upper *Palatinate* is seated on the River *Ills*, 30 miles from *Ratisbon*, and 40 from *Ingolstadt* to the North, and 30 from *Nuremberg* to the East. It enjoys great Privileges, given by the Emperor *Robert*, and is a place esteem'd most considerable for Strength of any in the higher *Germany*. The Inhabitants have a good Trade in Iron and other Metals, that are dug out of the neighbouring Mountains. This City was purchas'd of the Duke of *Saxony* in 1265. by the Elector *Palatine*, from whom it was taken, together with all this *Palatinate*, by the Emperor *Ferdinand* in 1623. as we have already related.

*Newmarck* is a fair City, standing on the Banks of the River *Sultz*, 30 miles North from *Ingolstadt*, and 20 South from *Amberg*. It has been an Imperial City but was depriv'd of its Privileges, and now subject to the Duke of *Bavaria*. The Country about is pleasant.



and is call'd the Territory of *Neumarkt*; but little of it belongs to the City. The Trade of the Place consists chiefly in Iron.

*Cochem*, a small City, seated on the Rivers *Coamp* and *Regen*, 40 miles from *Neumarkt* to the East and 20 from the *Danube* to the North. It was formerly a Marquissate but now subject to the Duke of *Bavaria*.

*Sulzbach*, is a small City seated on the top of a Hill, 5 miles from *Amberg* to the North-west, which with the County of it was formerly govern'd by an Earl of its own, but has at several times been subject to the D. of *Bavaria* and D. of *Neuburg* a Branch of which last Family does still reside in the stately Palace here.

*Leuchtenberg*, a Castle, seated about 20 miles North-east from *Amberg* gives name to a small Landgraviate, which was formerly subject to its own Lord, but now to the Duke of *Bavaria*.

*RAIßBON*, call'd in Dutch *REGENSBURG*, Lat. *Reginoburg*, olim *Regium*, aut *Castra regina*, heretofore the Seat of the Kings, and afterwards of the Dukes of *Bavaria*, is seated on the *Danube*, where it receives the *Regen*, which running through the Town, gives it its Dutch name: it is distant 60 miles from *Munich* to the North, 60 from *Passau* to the West, as many from *Augsburg* to the North-east and 25 from *Amberg* to the South. It is a fair large and populous City, the Houses neat, and the Streets large. The Cathedral Church is a fine old Building, as is the Castle wherein the Imperial Diets are commonly held: The Chamber in which they assemble, is a large stately Room hung with Tapestry; the Emperor's Throne is cover'd with Cloth of Gold, the Seats of the Electors with Cloth of Silver, and the rest with Velvet, Sattin, Silks, &c. according to the different Qualities. Here is a Stone-bridge over the *Danube*, which is a noble Building; it is 1091 foot long, 32 foot broad, has 15 large Arches supported by Pillars and strengthen'd by Buttresses and hath 3 Towers built upon it; this Bridge was finish'd in the year 1146. *Ratisbon* is an Imperial City and the See of a Bishop who is Lord of the adjacent Territory. It is fortified with good Walls, Bulwarks and Trenches.

*PASSAU*, *Passavia* aut *Passavia*, olim *Barava* *Civitas*, stands on both sides of the *Danube*, where it receives the *Inn* on one side, and the *Isar* on the other, at the distance of 60 miles from *Ratisbon* to the East, and not above 10 from the Borders of *Austria*. It is a large City, Imperial and Free, but under the protection of its Bishop, who is a Prince of the Empire. The Rivers above-mentioned divide it into three parts, viz. *Passau* it self, which stands on the South-side of the *Danube*, and the West-side of the *Inn*; *Ilzau* on the other side of the *Inn*; and *Istade*, on the other side the *Danube*, and on the Banks of the *Isar*. The private Buildings here are of Wood, but the Churches are fair and stately, especially the Cathedral which is dedicated to St. *Stephen*. The Bishop's Palace and the Castle on a Mountain near *Ilzau* are handsome Buildings. This City is very strong, being fenced on all sides with Rocks and Rivers, and hath been made famous by a Peace concluded in it in 1552, between the Emperor *Charles V.* and the Protestant Princes, by which the *Lutherans* were granted the free Exercise of their Religion.

The Bishop is Lord of a Country of about 20 miles extent lying on the North-side of the *Danube*, between the Palatinate and *Austria*, in which stand two strong Castles nam'd *Gernberg* and *Eberberg*.

*NEUBURG*, *Neuburgum* aut *Novoburgum*, is situated on the South side of the *Danube*, at the distance of 25 miles from *Ratisbon* to the West, and 55 from

*Ulm* to the East, 25 from *Augsburg* to the North, and 40 from *Neumarkt* to the South. It is a place of good Trade for Wines, and well fortified; but chiefly remarkable for being the Capital of a Dutchy, erected about 150 years ago, and given to a Branch of the *Bavarian* Family, whose Descendent *Philip William* succeeded in the Palatinate of the *Rhine*, A.D. 1685, and hath been signally fortunate in an illustrious Issue; for of his twelve Children, he has married three Daughters to the present Emperor King of *Spain*, and King of *Portugal*, and a fourth to the Prince of *Poland*; his eldest Son, the present Elector Palatine, married the Emperor's Daughter; his second Son is Grand Master of the Teutonic Order; his third Son married the Princess *Radzeville*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg's* Widow; his fourth Son is Dean of *Augsburg* and President of the Chapter of *Constance*; and his fifth Son is Bishop of *Leoben*. A stately Palace, built in this City by *Otto Furst* Duke, soon after the Erection of the Dutchy, is the usual Seat of this Prince. The extent of his Country is not large; it runs along the Banks of the *Danube* about 40 miles, but is very narrow. In the extrem West part of it stands

*Laugingen*, a strong regular fortified Town belonging to the Duke. It was the Birth place of the famous *Albertus Magnus*: The great Church is a fine Building, cover'd with Copper, and has a Tower 300 foot high. Here is also a Castle and a Bridge over the *Danube*.

*Hochstadt*, which stands on the *Danube*, not many miles East from *Laugingen*, a well fortified Place with a strong Castle, is also under the Duke of *Neuburg*, but claim'd by the Bishop of *Bamberg*.

*Donawert* or *Thonawert*, formerly an Imperial City, stands in the confines of this Dutchy, on the Northern Banks of the *Danube*, at the confluence of the *Leck* with it, about 15 or 16 miles West from *Neuburg*; it is on the Road to *Augsburg*, and therefore pretty much frequented by Travellers; here is a strong Castle, which is nam'd *Schullenberg*. This City was divested of its Liberty about the beginning of this Age, for adhering to the Reformed Religion, and is now subject to the Duke of *Bavaria*.

*FREISINGEN*, *Frisinga*, olim *Fruxinum*, is seated on the declension of a Hill, in a fertile Country, near the Banks of the River *Isar*, about 20 miles North from *Munich*, as many from *Landshut* to the South-west, and 40 from *Neuburg* to the South-east. It is a very ancient City, and was made an Episcopal See in the year 716, the Bishop whereof is Lord of the adjacent Territory. This City was taken and almost entirely destroy'd by the *Sweeds* in 1632, but restor'd in 1639. There is another small Territory lying on the Border of *Bavaria* and *Tyrol*, subject to this Bishop, call'd the County of *Werdenfels*, from its chief Town, which stands near the River *Isar*, 45 miles South from *Munich*.

The Arch-bishoprick of *SALTZBURG* is a Country of pretty large extent, viz. 70 miles from East to West, and 50 from North to South. It is bound ed on the East with *Syria* and the Upper *Austria*, on the West with the County of *Tyrol*, on the North with the Dutchy of *Bavaria*, and on the South with the Dutchy of *Carinthia*, and Bishoprick of *Brixen*. The Country abounds with Salt, Mines of Copper and Iron and some of Silver, also great Quarries of Stone: A Mineral Water here, call'd the *Gastein-bath*, is famous for its Virtue in curing many Distempers. The Arch-bishop is a Prince of the Empire; by his place Legat to the See of *Rome* in *Germany*, and, in the Diet, sit on the first Bench next the Electors. He is one of the richest Prelates of *Germany*, and Lord of this Country, which hath its name from



*Salzburg*, *Salisburgum*, olim *Inavia*, seated on the River *Salza* 50 miles South from *Passau*, 60 West from *Munich*, and 60 from *Innsbruck* to the North-east. It is one of the fairest Cities of *Germany*, and very well fortified. The Cathedral Church hath been new built in 1628. and is esteem'd one of the most magnificent in *Europe*. The Arch-bishop's Palace is very statley; it is in a Castle nam'd *Mirabel*, which stands on a Hill. An University hath been establi'd here not many years since. In the Church of St. *Sebastian*, lies buried the famous Physician and Chymist, *Theophrastus Paracelsus*.

The whole Town is generally well built, and the Inhabitants have a good Trade, which consists chiefly in the Salt produc'd in the neighbouring Pits. The Arch-episcopal Dignity was remov'd from the See of *Passau*, and conferr'd on this by Pope *Leo III.* in 798. and the Bishoprick of *Chamsee* incorporated with it to enable the Bishop the better to support the Dignity. This City had the misfortune to be burnt down in the year 1195. but it was soon rebuilt, and now, as we have said, is in a flourishing State.

## CHAP. IX.

### The Circle of AUSTRIA.

THE Circle of *Austria* is seated between *Bohemia* and *Moravia* on the North, the Dominions of the Republick of *Venice* on the South, *Hungary* on the East, and *Bavaria* on the West, and comprehends the Estates of the Family of *Austria*, viz. *Austria*, *Styria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Cilly*, *Goritz*, and *Tyrol*, and the Bishopricks of *Trent* and *Brixen*. The extent of the whole is about 300 miles from East to West, and 200 from North to South. The Soil is fertile, producing Corn, Wine, Pastures and Woods. The *Danube* passes through *Austria*; the *Drave* rises in the Mountains of *Brixen*, and runs through *Carinthia*; the *Save* hath its source in the Mountains in the North-west Borders of *Carniola*, and passes through that Dutchy; the *Muer* rises in the Confines of *Salzburg*, runs through *Styria*, and falls into the *Drave* a little above *Canisla*; besides which, a great number of smaller Rivers water the several Provinces of this Circle.

*AUSTRIA*, which is dignified with the Title of an Arch-dutchy, lies on both sides the River *Danube* for the space of about 60 or 70 miles from North to South, and 160 from East to West. It was the *Pannonia Superior* of the Ancients; and its present name of *Ostreich* or Eastern Kingdom, in Latin *Austria*, was given by the *Franks*, because situated Eastward from *France*. It is a very plentiful Country, affording a great quantity of Wine and Saffron, besides Corn and all other Necessaries for Life in abundance. The Air is not of the wholesomest, the Lower *Austria* being subject to Infectious Vapours that cause Agues; to prevent which, may be the reason of their much Drinking, which it seems they are notable for, their Neighbours calling 'em *Paschaller*, or *Rasters*.

This Province, after the *Roman*'s time was part of the Kingdom of *Boiarij* or *Bavarians*, afterwards erected into a seperate Marquissate by the Emperor *Otto I.* and the *Austrian* Family growing powerful, it was honoured with the Title of Arch-dutchy.

This great Family is, by the *German* Genealogists, pretended to be deriv'd from the ancient *Greek* or *Roman* Hero's. But the first certain Account that is to be found of it, is, That they were Lords of *Vindonissa* a City of *Switzerland*, afterwards Counts of *Altemburg* and Earls of *Hapsburg*; which Honours they had held from Father to Son for 600 years before *Rudolph* Earl of *Hapsburg* was advanc'd to the Imperial Throne in 1273. who, being a very brave Prince, raised his Family exceedingly. In his time *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria* dying without Issue, *Ottocarius* King of *Bohemia* seiz'd upon it, pretending a Right by his Wife, and added to it, *Carniola* and *Carinthia*, which he bought of *Ulric* the last Prince of those Provinces; but the Em-

peror claimed it is a Fief-male to return to the Empire, and by Force dispossest *Ottocarius*, and gave it to his Son *Albert*, who, by Marriage with *Elizabeth* Daughter of *Meinard* Earl of *Tyrol*, obtain'd that Earldom and several Estates in *Schwaben* and *Alsatia*: By all which Accessions he became powerful enough to contend with the Emperor *Adolph*, whom he slew in Battle, and caus'd himself to be chosen Emperor; but after he had Reigned 10 Years he was slain. He left behind him six Sons, from whom descended *Frederick III.* chosen Emperor in 1440. *Maximilian*, his Son, succeeded him in the Empire, and married *Mary* Daughter of *Charles* the Warlike Duke of *Burgundy* (the richest Heirets of *Europe*) and thereby acquir'd all *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*. *Philip*, the Son of *Maximilian*, married *Joan* the Daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, the first Monarchs of all *Spain*, and in her Right succeeded in that Kingdom, and began the Spanish Branch of the *Austrian* Family. *Charles* succeeded his Father and Grandfather in all their Honours and Estates, so that he was Emperor of *Germany*, and King of *Spain*, *Naples* and *Sicily*, and Lord of *Belgium*, besides the Realms of *Mexico* and *Peru* in *America*, with the Dutchy of *Milan*, which were added to *Spain* in his time. This mighty Prince, after he had Reigned 42 Years, voluntarily resign'd all his Dominions; and after he had given his Son *Philip* his Kingdoms of *Spain*, *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Mexico*, with *Belgium*, &c. and obtained his Brother *Ferdinand* to be chosen Emperor, himself retir'd into a Monastery. *Ferdinand* was chosen King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, which, with the Empire, his Successors have ever since enjoy'd. By the means of this Grandeur, the Family of *Austria* hath obtain'd large Privileges: The Arch duke is the first Counsellor of the Empire; he can create Barons and Counts all over the Empire: The Princes of this Family cannot be disleized of their Estates, even by the Emperor himself. In case of the failure of the Male-Line, the eldest Daughter may Inherit, and her Husband enjoy the Dignity and Privileges of Arch duke, &c.

The present Emperor *LEOPOLD* is the Heir of the *German* Branch of this Great Family, and Inheritor of all its Honours and Estates.

*Austria* is divided into the Upper and Lower, with respect to the Course of the River *Danube*, being divided by the River *Enn*.

In the Lower are these chief Towns,

	{ <i>Vienna</i> , Capital.
	{ <i>Newstat.</i>
	{ <i>Krems.</i>
	{ <i>Stain.</i>
	{ <i>Baden.</i>
	{ <i>Tuln.</i>
	{ <i>Haynburg.</i>



In the Upper, stands } *Lintz.*  
                                   } *Ens.*  
                                   } *Everd 12.*  
                                   } *Freistat.*  
                                   } *Steyr.*  
                                   } *Wels.*

**VIENNA**, *clm Vindobina & Vindobona*, call'd by the Natives *WIEN*, is the Capital of *Austria*, and by being the Seat of the Emperor is esteem'd the Metropolis of *Germany*; it was originally a Fort of the *Romans*, and not at all considerable till *Henry* Prince of *Austria* rebuilt it in 1155. It was enlarg'd, beautified and well'd round in the Year 1192. with the Money that was paid by the *Engish* Nation for the Ransom of *Richard* I. detain'd Prisoner by the Marquis of *Austria* in his return from the Holy Land. It is now a very rich flourishing City, and exceeding populous; great numbers of Strangers, besides Natives of other parts of *Germany*, being brought hither by the Emperor's Court. The Houses are well built of Stone, and very high, commonly six Stories, and besides have Cellars sunk four Stories under one another. The Emperor's Palace is a noble piece of Building, but not very large; it consists of two Courts: Over the Entrance are set in Capitals the 5 Vowels, the Exposition of which causes many Conjectures; one that pleases best, is *Augusta Est Imperii Orbis Cunctifera*. The Furniture is very princely. But that which most deserves a Traveller's sight, are, the Repository or Collection of Rarities of Nature and Art, and the Library; in the former of which are kept a vast number of Curiosities, the bare Catalogue whereof takes up a large Vol. in Fol. Dr. *Brown* mentions several of the most considerable, to which we must refer the Reader, it being too long to set down here. The Library consists of eight Chambers, which contain a very valuable and numerous Collection of Printed Books, besides a great number of Manuscripts and is excell'd by no Library of *Europe*.

This City is the See of a Bishop, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salzburg*. The Cathedral Church, dedicated to *S. Stephen*, is a stately Fabrick; the Windows are of thick painted Glass, which makes the Church somewhat dark; the Belfry is extraordinary, being adorn'd with Statues and fine Embellishments; the Steeple rises in a Spire to the height of 452 Foot, and on the top was set the Turkish Arms, a Star and Crescent to save it from being destroy'd at the time that *Solyman* besieg'd this City, which continued there till the Year 1683. when after defeating the *Turks* that year, it was taken down. An University is establish'd here, which is endow'd with many Privileges and a fair Revenue, and a great number of Students: It was founded, as some say, by the Emperor *Frederick* II. and enlarg'd and compleated by *Albert* III. Duke of *Austria*, who also obtain'd its Privileges to be confirm'd by the Pope. The Jesuits have two Houses here, which, together with their College and Church are fine Buildings; as are also the Abby and Church of *S. Gregory*.

The *Roman* Catholick Religion only is here profess'd which obliges the Protestants to go as far as *Presburg* to Church. The Jews had formerly a Liberty to Trade here but of late they have been wholly banish'd.

The Fortification of this City consists of a very strong Wall, wherein are 12 large Bastions, two of which are to the Water, and the other to the Land, and deep Ditches: And indeed this Fortification is needful, for it has been besieged no less than four times by the *Turks*, viz. in the Year 1529. by *Solyman* the Magnificent, with an Army of 200000 Men, who were repuls'd and forc'd to return, after they had given two general As-

saults to the Town; in the Years 1532 and 1543. and again in our days, viz. A. D. 1683. at which time the City was reduc'd to great extremity, being batter'd by the Enemy's Cannon from the 14th of *July* to the beginning of *September*, which they valiantly resisted, under their Courageous Governor Count *Staremburg*; till *John*, the late King of *Poland*, came up with his Army to their Relief, which being join'd with the *Imperialists*, set upon the *Turks* the 10th of *September*, and totally routed and destroy'd their Army, which was said to consist of 100000 Men, and took their Cannon, Camp and Baggage, and so rescu'd the City, which was reduc'd to the last extremity.

The Suburbs, call'd *Leopoldstadt*, is divided from the Town by a fair Plain of a good breadth, and the River *Danube*; and before the last Siege was almost as considerable as the Town, being fill'd with the Houses of Nobility and Gentry very magnificently built; but this was quite burnt down in the Siege.

The City stands on the South-side of the River *Danube*, which running through low Grounds, is here divided into several Streams and makes many Islands, one of which call'd *Peters*, lies just before the Gates, and is large enough to lodge a considerable Army for their defence; near the Town a small River call'd the *Wien* falls into the *Danube*, over which last here is a Bridge. It is distant 26 German Leagues or 104 English miles from *Lintz* to the East, 6 Leagues from the Confines of *Hungary*, and 10 from *Presburg* to the West, and seated in the Lat. of 48. 20. Long. (reckoning from *Teneriff* according to the old Maps) 36. 10. but according to *Sanson*, 31. 19.

*Lintz*, *Aurelianum*, *Lyncia* or *Lyncium*, the next considerable City, as being the Metropolis of the Upper *Austria*, is situate upon the *Danube*, over which it has a Bridge, 100 miles from *Vienna* to the West, 30 from *Passaw* to the East, and 50 from *Saltzburg* to the North-east; it stands in a very pleasant Country, and therefore much resorted to by the Nobility, who have their Houses of pleasure in its Suburbs on the other side the *Danube*, and in the Neighbourhood. The Emperor has a Palace here, to which he retir'd during the Siege of *Vienna* in 1683. Dr. *Brown* says, This is not a great, but very neat City; the whole Town is built of Stone, the Market-place very large and not a bad House in it; the Castle stands upon a Hill, is very large and of modern Building. The Imperial Army rendezvous'd here when the *Turks* came to *Vienna* in 1532. Here was for some time a Church and University of *Lutherans* in so flourishing a condition, that in 20 Years time there were no less than 3000 Counts, Barons and Noblemen had been educated in it; but it was put down by the *Austrian* Family when the Emperor *Matthias* resided here for almost a Year together, A. D. 1614. The Church and the Palace in the City, and the Monastery of the *Capucins* in the Suburbs, are the things chiefly worth a Traveller's sight. There are two Fairs held here yearly, which brings great resort of People.

*Ens*, *Anasum*, *Ensum Civitas*, a fair strong and well built City, stands on a River of the same name, which 2 miles North of it falls into the *Danube*, and is distant 15 miles from *Lintz* to the East; this Town was built in the place where formerly stood the City *Laureacum*, considerable in the *Romans* time, having been the Seat of some of their Emperors, and since Christianity, was an Archbishop's See; but that City was destroy'd by the *Huns*, A. D. 903. and this of *Ens* built; which was formerly govern'd by its Count, till the Emp. *Rodolph* I. bought it, and annex'd it to the States of *Austria*.

*Steyer*, a neat handsom Town at the Conflux of the two small Rivers, the *Steyer* and the *Ens*, about 10 miles



miles from *Ens* to the South. It is inhabited by Smiths, Cutlers, and other Iron-workers, who, by the *Danube*, furnish the neighbouring parts with their Ware, and much enrich themselves.

*Wels*, a neat Town upon the River *Traune*, 4 German miles from *Lintz* to the South, not considerable.

*Everding* or *Efferding*, about 12 miles from *Lintz* to the West, and near the banks of the *Danube*, is a strong fortified Town, and defended with two Castles, one within the Walls of the Town, and another without, which is call'd *Schaumburg*, and gave Title to a Count of the Family of *Fulbach*, to whom this Town belong'd; but the Count of *Starenburg* is now Lord of it, his Ancestor having married the Daughter of the last Count *Schaumburg*, about A. D. 1560.

*Freystat*, on the North-side the *Danube* near the borders of *Bohemia*, is a well built Town, but not very strong; it stands 25 miles from *Lintz* to the North. A Fair is held here once a Year which lasts 14 days, and brings great Concourse of People to it.

*Newstadt*, the chief Town next *Vienna* of the Lower *Austria*, is seated on a Bog in the middle of a Plain, at the distance of 30 miles from *Vienna* to the South; it is fortified with two Walls and a Ditch, which makes it so strong that it resisted the main force of the *Turks*, who were content to retreat if the Town would give them some Trophy to carry to *Constantinople*, who thereupon sent 'em their Whipping-post.

*Krems* stands on the North-side of the *Danube* near a small River of the same name, about 40 miles from *Vienna* to the West. It is a neat well built wall'd City, and has a good Trade, especially at two yearly Fairs, which last 14 days.

*Stain* is a small City on the North side of the *Danube* also, not above two miles from *Krems* to the West, and has a Bridge over the *Danube*.

*Baden*, called so from the natural Baths that rise here in so many Springs as to supply two Baths within the Town, five without the Wall, and two beyond a Rivulet call'd *Swechet*, the Waters of which are commended for curing many Distempers, and therefore much resorted to. This Town stands in a plain about 18 miles from *Vienna* to the South, and as far from *Newstadt* to the West.

*Tulln* is an ancient Town about 20 miles Westward from *Vienna*, upon a small River of the same name, which falls into the *Danube* about 5 or 6 miles below it. The Country about it is reckon'd the fruitfulest and healthiest part of *Austria*, but the Town however not very well furnish'd with Provisions for Travellers.

*Hainburg* or *Haimburg*, *Hamburgum Austriae*, was anciently the Metropolis of *Austria* and the Seat of the Dukes, and one of the greatest Mart-Towns in these parts, but decay'd upon Duke *Leopold's* removing to *Vienna* about A. D. 1200. It is situate on the South-side of the *Danube* 30 miles East from *Vienna*, and near the borders of *Hungary*, from whence it has been frequently disturb'd by the Rebels of that Country. They have plenty of Wine and Corn, which is now the chief Trade of the Town. There are still to be seen some Remains of strong Walls and Fortifications round the Town.

The Dukedom of *STYRIA*, call'd in High-Dutch *Steyrmark*, with the County of *CILLEY*, lies between *Austria* on the North, *Carinthia* and *Carniola* on the South, *Hungary* and *Sclavonia* on the East, and *Salzburg* on the West: Its extent from East to West is about 110 miles, and from North to South in some parts 30. in others 80 miles. The Soil yields Corn, Wine, Fruits, Mines of Iron and Salt-Springs. Some part of the Country is mountainous and barren, but

the Vallies afford Pasture for great Herds of Kine. The Air of the Lower *Styria* is somewhat unwholsom. The Disease mention'd by Travellers to be found among the People that dwell at the foot of the *Alps*, viz a strange swelling under the Chin, is very frequent here, which grows incredibly large, occasion'd 'tis judg'd, by drinking the Snow-water that comes off the Mountains, which the poorer People are fain to be content with.

*Styria* is divided, with respect to the course of the River *Mur*, into the Upper, wherein are,

*Judenburg.*  
*Bruck* or *Fruck*  
*Lawben.*  
*Seckaw.*  
*Eisenartz.*  
*Gracz*, Capital.  
*Rakelsburg.*  
*Pettau.*  
*Marksburg.*

The Lower, whereof the chief Towns are,

The Earldom of *Cilley* lies on the South side of the River *Drave* extending to the Banks of the *Save*.

*Cilley.*  
*Rain.*

*GRACZ*, *Gracium*, the Capital of *Styria*, is a neat well-built City, standing in a pleasant and fruitful Country, on the Banks of the River *Mur*, 80 miles South from *Vienna*, 20 from the *Drave*, and 40 from *Cilley* to the North, and about 50 from the borders of *Hungary* to the West. It is defended by regular Fortifications, that render it almost Impregnable, and hath a stately Castle standing on a high Hill, which is a Palace of the Arch-Duke, and is adorn'd with fine Furniture, particularly a good Library, and a Repository of Rarities. The Jesuits College here is well Endowed, and hath the Privilege of Conferring Degrees, which makes it to be reckon'd amongst the Universities of *Germany*, and well fill'd with Students.

*Judenburg*, a handsome and well-built Town, famous for two great Fairs for Cattle yearly held in it. The Duke of *Styria* has a Palace here, in which his Deputy sometimes Resides: It stands on the River *Mur*, 50 miles from *Gracz* to the West, in a very pleasant and fruitful Country.

*Lawben* is also on the *Mur*, 25 miles North-east from *Judenburg*: It is a neat pleasant City, and the Capital of a Barony; but was sold to the Duke of *Carinthia*, in 1246, and sell to the House of *Austria* with that Dutchy. It was taken and Plunder'd in 1292, by the Arch-bishop of *Salzburg*, then at War with the Duke of *Austria*.

*Bruck* or *Pruck an den Mur*, is an old Town, and has nothing considerable in it, only that the Emperor has sometimes assembled here the State of these three Dukedoms of *Styria*, *Carinthia* and *Carniola*. It stand on the *Mur*, 25 miles North-west from *Gracz*.

*Seckaw*, a small Castle on the River *Gayl*, 40 miles from *Gracz* to the West and 60 from *Stain* to the South, is an Episcopal See, Erected in 1219, under the Arch-bishop of *Salzburg*, who has the power of Electing and Investing, and receiving an Oath of Fealty of this Bishop; and he has no Voice in the Diet.

*Eisenartz*, famous for Mines and Forges of Iron, (from whence it has its Name) which employ a vast number of Labouring men, which therefore live here and supply the Neighbouring parts with this Metal, and all *Germany* with Steel. They have an annual Fair for Hemp, Leather, Tallow, and all Necessaries. The Mines were discover'd in A. D. 712, and have wrought ever since without any sensible Decay. This Town stands near a little River call'd *Salza*, that falls into the *Ens*, is distant 12 miles from *Lawben* to the North-west, and 24 from *Judenburg* to the Northeast

*Rakelsburg*







its defence, but it is commanded by a Hill, and the Town is not very strong; however endured a Siege in 1440, when *Frederick III.* being Crown'd at *Aken*, his Brother *Albert* and Count *Ulric* attack'd this City, but it held out till the Emperor came to its Relief.

*Carainburg*, seated on the banks of the *Save*, 20 miles from *Laubach* North-west, and 24 from *Clagenfurt* to the South-east, on the top of a Hill, and fortified with a strong Cattle. The Town has three Churches in it, and in the Suburbs is a Monastery of Capuchins. It once gave Title to a Marquels.

*Lack*, or *Bishops Lack*, is a handsome well-built fortified City, standing upon a small River, 10 miles South from *Crainburg*, and 20 East from *Laubach*. It is subject to the Bishop of *Freyburg*, to whom the Emperor *Henry III.* gave it, and the Governor of it is his Lieutenant. This Town was plunder'd and burnt in 1451, since when it has been Re-built and better fortified.

*Zirknitz*, a Town of no great bulk, nor considerable but for the Lake near it, to which it gives name.

This Lake is very wonderful; it is about 4 German miles in length, and 2 in breadth, and from *September* to *June*, is full of Water, but the other six Months is quite dry. In *June* the Water descends thro' many large Holes in the bottom, (at which time the Country People catch abundance of Fish, by lying Nets over the Holes) leaving the bottom quite dry, so that the neighbouring People sow Corn in it, which they have time to reap, and afterwards to put in their Cattle; and let in the Deer and Hares from the neighbouring Forests, which they Hunt in this Lake, and all before the Water returns; for the Earth is exceeding Prolifick: And in *September* the Water returns, spouting up with great Violence, and to a great height, out of these Holes, and soon makes that a Sea, that was before a Field for Corn, Pasture and Hunting; and this happens constantly every Year, and at this certain time.

*Ober-Laubach*, about 16 miles West from the *Laubach*, already described, and on the same River with that, is considerable by being a Mart for *Italian* Goods, which are brought hither in great quantities, and sent to all parts of *Germany*.

*Metling*, *Metulium*, the chief Town of the *Windischmark*, stands on the Frontiers of *Croatia*, 35 miles South-east from *Cilly*, and 25 East from the Lake of *Zirknitz*. It is a place of no great Consideration: The chief Trade of the Inhabitants lies in Swine, which they fatten in two neighbouring Woods of Chestnut-trees and Oaks. In the Year 1431 this Town was surpriz'd by the *Turks* and the Inhabitants massacred. And again, in 1578. it was plunder'd by 'em.

*Rudolphworth* or *Newstadt*, stands upon the River *Gurk* 12 miles North-west from *Metling*: It is a very ancient Town, and honour'd with great Privileges, which were given them by the Emperor *Frederick IV.* about the Year 1435. for having oppos'd *Albert* of *Austria* and *Ulric* Count of *Cilly*. This Town is famous for the best Wine in these Parts.

*GORITIA*, a small County in *Friuli*, is subject to the Emperor. The rest of the Province, being subject to the *Venetians*, shall be describ'd with the rest of *Italy*. The Chief Town is,

*Gortz* or *Goritz*, seated upon the River *Lizonzo*, 20 miles from the Gulph of *Venice* and 15 from *Aquileia* to the North, 50 from *Clagenfurt* to the South, and as much from *Laubach* to the West. The Town is old and by some thought to be the old *Roman Noricia* or *Noreia*. *Dieterich*, King of the *Goths*, vanquish'd *Odoacer*, King of the *Heruli*, near this Place. The *Slavonian* Tongue, spoke in these Provinces, reaches no far-

ther West than this Town, and here the common People speak a corrupt *Italian*. It was taken by the *Venetians* in 1608. but regain'd by the Emperor the year after; and in 1616 they attempted to surprize it, but were forced to retreat.

*Trieste*, the chief Town of the small Province of *Carstia*, stands on the *Adriaticque* Sea, or Gulph of *Venice*, 30 miles from *Aquileia* to the East, at the bottom of a Bay, to which it gives Name. It is a small, but strong and populous Place, and a Bishop's See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*; it has a large but unsafe Harbour. The Emperor took this City from the *Venetians*, A. D. 1507. and has been ever since in possession of it.

*S. Piet am Flaum*, tho' situate in *Istria*, which is accounted part of *Italy*, yet being subject to the House of *Austria*, must be described here. It is a strong Town, having a Cattle, besides Walls and Ditches for its Defence, and is seated on the *Adriatick* Sea, 20 miles South from *Czernitz*, and 30 South-west from *Merling*, and at the Mouth of the River *Flaum*. The *Italian* Tongue is here spoken in its Purity, and therefore the *Austrian* Gentry send their Children here to be taught it. In the Suburbs stand a Monastery, famous for a Treaty of Peace concluded in it between the Emperor and the *Venetians*, in the Year 1618.

### The County of TYROL, with the Bishoprick of BRIXEN.

*TYROL* is one of the largest Counties of the Empire, its extent being 120 miles from East to West, and 60 from North to South. It is bounded by *Schwaben* and *Bavaria* on the North, the *Grisons* and *Trent* on the South, *Carinthia* on the East, and *Switzerland* on the West. The Country is very mountainous, and the Soil barren in many parts; however, the Valleys are very fruitful and afford good Pasture. Here are divers Springs of mineral and Salt Waters, and Mines of Silver, Iron and Copper. The chief Rivers are the *Eisack* or *Laisack*, the *Imn*, which crosseth this Province from South-west to North-east, and the *Adige* or *Etsch*, which takes its rise here, and passes through the Territories of *Venice*.

*Tyrol* is said to be the *Rætia inferior* of the *Romans*, and upon the decay of their Power was seized by the Princes of *Bavaria*, and the Governors of it were appointed by them, with the Titles of Margraves; this Margrave was afterwards made hereditary, and a Count of the Empire, by *Frederick I.* about the Year 1350. The Bishoprick of *Trent* was added to it by *Ludowick*, Son to the Duke of *Bavaria* and Count of *Tyrol*, who took that Bishop Prisoner. This *Ludowick* dying without Issue, his Widow settled this County upon the Duke of *Austria*; in which Family it has ever since continued.

It is divided into

Tyrol, proper, wherein stands	{	<i>Inspruck</i> , Capit.
		<i>Ombras</i> ,
		<i>Tyrol</i> ,
The Bishoprick of <i>Brixen</i> .	{	<i>Hall</i> .
		<i>Brixen</i> .
The Counties of	{	<i>Meran</i> ,
		<i>Pludentz</i> ,
		<i>Bregentz</i> ,
		<i>Feldkirk</i> ,
		<i>Montfort</i> .

*INSBRUCK*, *OEnipons*, is seated in a pleasant Valley, at the Foot of the Mountains of *Venden*, and on the Banks of the River *Imn*, which separates the City from its large Suburbs. It is 64 miles distance from *Munchen* to the South, 80 from *Saltzburg* to the South-west,



west and 70 from *Trent* to the North. Though it be not large, it is well built, and adorn'd with curious Fountains, spacious Market places, and a magnificent Castle, wherein the Arch-Dukes of *Infpruck* used to reside, and has since been the Seat of its Princes of the House of *Austria*; it is a noble Palace, furnished with a Cabinet of curious Rarities in Art and Nature, and adorn'd with pleasant Gardens. *Infpruck* was Wall'd by *Otto* the Great Count of *Meran*, about the year 1234, but is now destitute of that Defence. But *Omiras* about an English mile distant from it, is a very strong Fort: this was the Summer Seat of the Dukes, being exceedingly pleasantly situated. The Armory here is very fine; amongst the Arms and Pictures of several Princes, the Statue of *Francis I.* on Horse-back, representing him as he was taken Prisoner at *Pavia*, is to be seen in it. And in the Duke's Closet of Rarities, there is a Trunk of an Oak with a whole Deer enclosed in it.

*Hall* call'd *Imsthal* for distinction, is seated on the River *Im* 10 miles from *Infpruck* to the North-east, and is famous for its Salt-pits, which afford the Inhabitants a profitable Trade. The Pits are about 4 miles from the Town, where the Salt is dug up like Copper Ore, then laid to soak in great Trenches fill'd with Water, and afterwards build up in great Pans here in the City, of which they have four made of Iron that are each 45 Foot long, 34 broad, and 3 deep.

*BRIXEN* *Brivins*, stands on the bottom of Mount *Brinn*, upon the River *Eysch*, 30 miles South-east from *Infpruck* and 30 from the Confines of *Carinthia*. It was formerly an Imperial City, but it is now the See of a Bishop, who hath Jurisdiction over it, and is a Count of the Empire. The City is small, and not very populous; it lies upon the Road to *Italy*, and is therefore the Station of some Merchants that hand the Commodities of that Country and *Germany* to and again. Here are mineral Waters of good Fame, especially one call'd the Virgin Well, which is much resorted to.

The Diocets of this Bishop is about 40 miles long, and 30 broad.

*Meran*, once the Capital of this County, and gave Title to an Earl, is a small City seated on the River *Eysch*, 50 miles South of *Infpruck*. Near it is

*Tyrol*, an ancient Castle, which gave name to the whole Country. It is seated in a pleasant Country, but has nothing considerable in it.

*Pludenz*, stands at the foot of the Mountains upon the bank of the River *Ilz*, about 75 miles West from *Infpruck*.

*Bergenz* stands at the East-end of the Lake of *Constance*, 80 miles West from *Infpruck*.

*Montfort* stands about the mid-way between *Bergenz* to the North, and *Pludenz* to the South.

*Felkirck* stands upon the *Ilz*, and near the *Rhine*, about 12 miles West from *Pludenz*.

### The Bishoprick of T R E N T.

This Country is by some Geographers made part of *Italy*: But the Bishop of it being a Prince of the Empire, the Germans reckon it into the Circle of *Austria*. It lies among the *Alps*, between the Country of *Tyrol* on the North, the Dominions of the State of *Venice* on the South and East, and the *Grisons* on the West. The extent of it is about 70 miles from East to West, and 50 from North to South. The River *Adige* runs thro' it from North to South, and receives several smaller

Rivers that rise in the Mountains on each side this Country. The Soil here produces Wine, Oil, Fruit and Palture, but not much Corn.

The Chief Towns are  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Trent,} \\ \text{Pozen.} \end{array} \right.$

*TRENT*, *Tridentinum*, is seated upon the River *Adige*, in a pleasant Vally, between three very high and steep Mountains, 45 miles South-east from *Brixen*, 35 North from *Verona*, 30 from the Confines of the *Lombardy* to the West, and 70 from *Infpruck* to the South. It is adorn'd with many stately Palaces, and several beautiful Churches, whercof the Cathedral dedicated to *S. Vigor*, is reckon'd a fine piece of Architecture. Its Chapter consists of Noblemen, who chuse the Bishop. Here are also a great number of Religious Houses. The Inhabitants speak both the *German* and *Italian* Tongues very perfect, and are observ'd to be exceeding Civil to Strangers, whereof a great many pass thro' this place in Travelling into *Italy* and *Germany*. It was formerly an Imperial City, but is now subject to its Bishop, on whom the Emperor *Conrad II.* bestowed the Sovereignty of this Territory, which had before been subject to its own Lord, under the Protection of the Duke of *Bavaria*. This Donation was ratified by the Emperors *Frederick I.* and *II.* and the Count of *Tyrol* made Protector of it. The Bishop is suffragan to the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, and as we have said, a Prince of the Empire. The Council held here in the last Age hath made this City famous: It began in the Year 1545, but was not ended till 1563, during most of which time there are said to have been in this City 7 Cardinals, 3 Patriarchs, 33 Archbishops, 235 Bishops, 7 Vicars General, and 146 Divines, besides many Ambassadors, who with their Attendants, were provided with Lodging, Victuals, and all Necessaries. This Council was Assembled by Pope *Paul III.* at the instance of many of the Princes of *Europe*, for the Reformation of the Discipline of the Church, but by the contrivance of the Pope and Cardinals, so many *Italian* Bishops were brought to it, that they over-rul'd the Endeavors of the rest, and permitted nothing to be Decreed but what the Pope directed, which was so notorious, that it was a common Jest, That the Holy-Ghost was sent from Rome to Trent in a Cloak-bag. And so little was done of what was expected during all this long Session, that not only the Protestants, but the whole *German* and *French* Nations refused to receive its Decrees. This Council began on the 4th of *January*, 1545, and continu'd all the Reign of that Pope who dying in 1549, it was resum'd by Pope *Julius III.* in 1551. He dy'd in 1555, and a War broke out in *Germany*, which interrupted it till *Pius IV.* re-assembled it on the 18th of *January*, 1562; from which time it continu'd till the 3d of *December*, 1563, when it finally broke up, after having with the utmost Partiality established the Pope's Authority, and ratified the Doctrines of Purgatory, Invocation of Saints, Indulgences, &c.

*Pozen*, call'd by the *Italians* *Bolzano*, is seated on the *Adige*, 25 miles North from *Trent*, and near the Confines of *Tyrol*. It is pleasantly situated, and is a place of good Trade, especially at its four yearly Fairs, that hold 15 days each, to which great numbers of Merchants come from several parts of *Germany* and *Italy*; for whose sake great Privileges have been granted to the City. Tho' it be seated in the Diocets, this place is not subject to the Bishop of *Trent*, having been taken from him by the Earl of *Tyrol*, in 1295.



*The Kingdom of BOHEMIA, with the Dukedom of SILESIA  
and Marquisate of MORAVIA.*

*BOHEMIA* proper, is bounded on the East by *Moravia* and *Silesia*, on the West by *Misnia* and *Bavaria*, on the North by *Lusatia*, and on the South by *Austria*; it is almost entirely encompass'd with Mountains, out of one of which springs the River *Elb*. In these Mountains there are Mines of Silver, Copper and Lead, and in them are found certain  
E c
preci



precious Stones, which the *Jews* send into foreign parts. The River *Muldaw* rises in the Mountains on the South-side, as the *Elbe* does in thole on the North, both which join a little below *Prague*, and make a good Navigable Stream. Many other small Rivers water this Country. The Soil is good, affording Corn, Pasture and Saffron, and some Wine; as also abundance of Hops, whereof they make Beer that is much esteem'd. The People are generally Strong and Courageous, reckon'd strict observers of their Word, but much addicted to Robbing.

*MORAVIA* call'd *Morawa* by the Inhabitants, and *Mueren* by the *Germanis*, lies between *Silesia* on the North and East, *Austria* on the South, and *Bohemia* on the West. The North and West parts are woody and mountainous, but the rest is fair, champaign and good Soil, yielding much Corn, and on the South part Wine. Out of the Earth is dug a sort of Myrrh and Frankincense in great pieces. The Pastures are fill'd with Oxen, Horses, Sheep and Goats, and the Woods with Hares, Foxes, Wolves and Bevers. Here are many Pits of standing Waters of a poisonous and pestilential Quality, which hurt the Vines and Fruits, and make the People subject to Epidemical Diseases: But there are other Waters which make amends, having the Virtue of Curing many Distempers. *Moravia* was anciently the Seat of a Kingdom, including also *Bobemia* and *Silesia*, which being conquer'd by the *Romans*, was parcell'd out into four Dukedoms; this of *Moravia* was afterwards reduc'd to a Marquisate, which Title it still bears, but is mostly subject to *Bobemia*. The River *Morawa*, which rises in the Mountains on the North part, passes through the middle and gives name to this Province.

*SILESIA*, or *SLISKO*, lies between *Bobemia* on the South-west, and *Poland* on the North-east: Its utmost length from North-west, to South-east, is about 225 miles, and its breadth 65 miles. On the side next *Bobemia* are many Mountains, but the rest of the Country is good Soil, and produces Corn, some Wine, Madder and Flax. Here are Mines of Silver, Copper, Lead and Iron, and plenty of Saltpetre. The River *Oder* takes its rise in the Southern bounds of this Province, and traverseth it from South to North-west. The *Vistula*, which is the chief River of *Poland*, springs in the South-east Coast of *Silesia*: Many smaller Rivers rise here, and fall into the *Oder*, encreasing it to a large Navigable Stream before it passes into *Brandenburg*. The Meadows have Cattle, the Forests Venison, and the Rivers Fish in good plenty. *Silesia* was part of the Kingdom of *Poland* for many Ages, but revolted under the Reign of *Vladislâus Lothicus*, and is now part of the Kingdom of *Bobemia*: but several Princes have Sovereign Dominion over small parts of it.

The chief Cities and Towns of this Kingdom are these, *viz.*

In <i>Bobemia</i> .	<i>Prague</i> , Capital.	<i>Budweis</i> .
	<i>Agra</i> .	<i>Letomeritz</i> .
	<i>Königgrätz</i> .	<i>Piseck</i> .
	<i>Glatz</i> .	<i>Bern</i> .
	<i>Pilsen</i> .	<i>Slany</i> .
	<i>Czaslau</i> .	<i>Satz</i> .
	<i>Tabor</i> .	<i>Tetschen</i> .
	<i>Eimbogen</i> .	<i>Tabor</i> .

*Silesia* divided into two parts, *viz.*

In the Lower,	<i>Breslaw</i> , Capital.
	<i>Crossen</i> , Dutchy.
	<i>Glogaw</i> .
	<i>Sagan</i> .
	<i>Lignitz</i> .
	<i>Wolaw</i> .
	<i>Oels</i> .
In the Upper,	<i>Fawer</i> .
	<i>Schweidnitz</i> .
	<i>Oppelen</i> .
	<i>Grotzkaw</i> .
	<i>Jagensdorf</i> .
	<i>Troppaw</i> .
	<i>Ratibor</i> .
In <i>Moravia</i> are,	<i>Brimm</i> .
	<i>Oimutz</i> .
	<i>Iglaw</i> .
	<i>Žnaim</i> .
	<i>Hradise</i> .
	<i>Cremšir</i> .

*PRAGUE*, *Praga*, olim *Marobundum Rubienum*, and *Cusurgn*, is seated on the River *Muldaw*, in a very fruitful Country, and is encompass'd with stately Courts and pleasant Places, appearing as it were in the midst of an Amphitheatre; it may be divided into three parts, *viz.* the *Alt Stadt*, or Old Town, the *Nieue Stadt*, or New Town, which is the chief, and wherein the Royal Palace stands, and the *Kleine Seiten*, or lesser Town on the other side of the *Moldaw*: All these together form one of the largest Cities in *Germany*, wherein Dukes, Princes and Emperors have for a long time kept their Court. In the lesser Town stands the Cathedral Church, dedicated to *S. Vair*, wherein are magnificent Tombs and a strong Castle. A stately Stonebridge of 24 Arches over the *Moldaw*, joins this to the other Town. The Town-house, the College and Church of the *Jesuits*, and the University, are stately Buildings, which, together with several other beautiful Edifices, make this so fine a Place, that *Æn. Sylvius* compares it to *Florence*; but our ingenious Country-man *Dr. Brown* says, this City is larger and more populous than that; that the River *Maldaw* is much better than the *Arno* at *Florence*, but that the Dukes Palace and the Cathedral at *Florence*, exceed any thing in *Prague*. It is the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of a flourishing University, Founded by the Emperor *Charles VI.* in the year 1358. The *Bohemians* brag much of the great number of Students that have been in this University, and say, that in the year 1409. *J. Huss* alone had above 20000 Scholars. This City was often taken during the *German Wars*; and near its Walls was fought that famous Battel between the *Bohemian* and *German* Protestants, under *Frederick* Prince Palatine, chosen King of *Bobemia*, and the Forces of the Emperor *Ferdinand*, on the 8th day of *November*, 1620. wherein the Emperor obtain'd the Victory, and forced the unfortunate Prince to quit his Royalty. *Prague* stands in the Latitude of 50 deg. and in the Longitude of 34 deg. 15 min. and at the distance of 100 miles from the *Danube* to the North, 145 miles from *Vienna* to the North-west, 50 from the Confines of *Saxony* to the East, 180 from the borders of *Poland* to the West, and about 40 from the bounds of *Lusitania* to the South.

*Egra*, called by the *Bohemians* *Chebbe*, is a great City at the borders of *Bobemia*, towards the Palatinate, 80 miles distant from *Prague* to the West; It stands upon the River *Eger*, and is Fortified with a double Wall &c.

*Königgrätz*.



*Königgrätz*, or *Kraloviskrader*, *Gradium Reginae*, *Regine Gradecium*, is a good City, seated upon the River *Elbe*, at 50 miles distance from *Prague* to the East, and 35 from *Glatz* to the South-west: It is now the See of a Bishop, who is a Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Prague*, being lately made so by Pope *Alex. VII.* in the year 1664.

*Glatz* is a small City, built at the Foot of one of the Hills that part *Bohemia* from *Silesia*, and water'd by a small River call'd the *Miza*. It is the Capital of a very rich and fruitful Country of the same Name (in which are nine great Towns and 100 Villages) is very well fortified, and has a strong Castle which stands on the Top of a Hill: It is distant 85 miles from *Prague* to the East, and 55 from *Olmütz* to the North-west.

*Elnbogen* is a very strong Town upon the River *Eger*, 16 miles from *Egra* to the West, and near the Borders of *Misnia*; it is call'd the *Bohemian Key* to the German Empire.

*Pilsen* is a large strong and well fortified City, standing upon the Confluence of the River *Mes* and *Caburz*, 40 miles from *Prague* to the South-west, and 40 from *Egra* to the South-east, was besieged in vain by the *Hussites*, but was taken by Count *Mansfield*, and was afterwards the last Town of *Bohemia* that yielded to the Imperialists. The Market-place is spacious, and is seated at the meeting of 4 or 5 Streets of very good Building. They have two very fine Churches.

*Czassaw*, a small City, but the Head of a considerable Prefecture, 40 miles distant from *Prague* to the East, and 25 from *Königgrätz* to the South. This was the Burial-place of *John Zisca*, the famous General of the *Hussites*, who, to revenge the Death of *John Huss* and *Jerome of Prague*, got an Army together of 40000 Men, with which he obtain'd many Victories over the *Papists*. At his Death he order'd; That a Drum should be made of his Skin; saying, The Enemy would fly at the Sound of it: Which was done accordingly, and had a strange effect upon the Enemy, who, being raw Soldiers, fancied themselves bewitched by this Drum, and shamefully run away without fighting. He flourish'd about the year 1420. And built

*Tabor*, which the *Hussites* fortified, and made the seat of their War; from whence, for 20 years together, they ravaged the Imperial Countries; and thereupon were call'd *Taborites*. It stands upon the River *Lausnitz*, 45 miles from *Prague* to the South, 35 from *Czassaw*.

*BRINN*, call'd *BRINNO* by the *Bohemians*, Lat. *Brinum* aut *Bruna*, is situated at the Confluence of the Rivers *Schwarta* and *Zwitta*, at the distance of 50 miles from *Vienna* to the North, and 120 from *Prague* to the South-east. It is by some reckon'd the Capital of the Marquisate of *Moravia*, and is defended by strong Fortifications; by the help whereof it sustain'd a vigorous Siege of the *Swedish* Forces in 1645.

*Olmütz*, *Olomutium*, is not very large, but a neat and well-built City, and has a good Trade with the Merchants, of *Bohemia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, &c. for which it is conveniently seated upon the River *Morawa*, which falls into the *Danube*, 80 miles below it. It is the Metropolis of this Marquisate, and the only Bishop's See in it, of which *S. Cyril* was the first Bishop, about the year 880. This Bishop was formerly a Suffragan to *Mentz*, but in the year 1346. was alter'd, and made subject to the Arch-bishop of *Prague*: It is distant 30 miles from *Brinn* to the North-east.

*Iglaw*, otherwise *Giblaw*, is a pretty large well-built and strongly fortified Town, on the Border of *Bohemia*

on the Road from thence to *Hungary*; and therefore much frequented by Travellers: It is water'd by a River of the same Name, which springs in *Bohemia*, about 20 miles from hence, and is distant 50 from *Brinn* to the West, and about 70 from *Prague* to the South-east. The chief Trade of the Town is in Beer and coarse *Wollen* Cloath. The chiefest Building in it is the *Jesuits* College, and *Gymnasium*, which with two Monasteries of *Dominicans* and *Franciscans* are worth seeing. In the *Hussites* Wars this place was obstinate to the *Popish* side, but very early receiv'd the *Augsburg* Confession. In the year 1645. it was surrendered to the *Sweeds*, who defended it for a whole year against all the Emperor's Forces.

*Znaim* or *Znoymo*, *Znogma*, stands upon the River *Taya*, not above 5 miles from the Borders of *Austria*, and 20 miles South from *Brinn*, in a pleasant Soil and wholsom Air, and is well fortified by a strong Castle, but with the inconvenience of being overlook'd by a Mountain, within Cannon-shot. This City is also on the Road to *Vienna*, which brings a good Trade to it. It was burnt in the year 1145. by *Uladislaus* King of *Bohemia*, but rebuilt by *Primislaus Ottacar*, about 1222.

*Hradisse* or *Hradisch*, a City situate upon the River *Morawa*, 30 miles from *Olmütz* to the South, and as far from *Brinn* to the East.

*Kremsir* or *Kremsier*, and by the *Bohemians* *Kromeritz*, on the River *Morawa*, in the middle between *Olmütz* and *Hradisse*, is now become a very fair City, though not many Ages ago a poor Village; which was occasioned by a fine Palace, that *Bruno* Bishop of *Olmütz* built here; which drew so many People together, that in a little time he wall'd it, and made it a City.

*BRESLAU*, *Uratistavia*, the Metropolis of *Silesia*, and of a particular Dutchy, to which it gives Name; is seated upon the River *Oder*, at the distance of 120 miles almost North-east from *Prague*, 110 North from *Brinn*, and 35 miles West from the Confines of *Poland*. It is a very large, well-fortified, and fair City the See of a Bishop, established in 1033. and the Seat of an University. It is a Free City, being govern'd by a Council of 15 Senators, whereof 11 are Noblemen, and the other 4 chosen out of the Corporations of *Drapers*, *Mercers*, *Brewers* and *Butchers*. The Citizens are rich, and have a good Trade.

In the most North-east part of *Silesia* is the Dukedom of *Crossen*, which was anciently part of the great Duke of *Silesia*'s Dominions, but was several times pawn'd to the Marquels of *Brandenburg*, and redeemed; but in the year 1391. it was deliver'd to *John III.* Elector of *Brandenburg*, with the Consent of *Uladislaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; which was confirm'd, and the sole and entire Possion of it granted to *Joachim* and *John*, Marquesses of *Brandenburg* by the Emperor *Ferdinand I.* King of *Bohemia*, and is still enjoyed by that Elector.

*Crossen*, the chief City of it, is seated upon the River *Oder*, where it receives the *Bober* in a Pleasant Plain, and good Air, and is distant a few miles from the Frontiers of *Brandenburg* to the South, and 40 from *Glogaw* to the North-west. It is a neat old City; the Duke's Palace, the Town-house, and some Citizens Houses are built with Stone. The neighbouring Hills are covered with Fruit-Trees of many sorts, and the Country yields some Wine but not very good.

*Glogaw*, call'd the *Great*, to distinguish it from a small Town of the same Name, is also the Capital of a Dukedom, some time govern'd by its own Lords, but now subject to the Emperor, as King of *Bohemia*. It



was made a City by *Conrad* its Duke, in the year 1250, at which time the Wall and Cathedral Church were built: It was taken by the *Swedes* in 1647, but being restored, is now regularly fortified, and has a strong Castle. It stands on the River *Oder*, near the Frontiers of *Poland*, 40 miles from *Crossen* to the South-east, 55 from *Breslaw* to the North-west.

*Sagan*, *Zeigau*, the chief City of another Dukedom, of a small extent is seated upon the River *Botz*, near the Frontiers of *Lusatia*, 25 miles S. from *Crossen*, and 100 m. W. from *Glogau*; it was once one of the most populous and largest Cities of *Silesia*, but is now much decay'd, having been often taken by the *Swedes* and recently by the Imperialists in the *German Civil Wars*.

*Lignitz*, the chief City of a Dukedom also is a fair City, on the banks of the little River *Karsbach*, 35 miles from *Glogau* to the South, and 36 from *Breslaw* to the W. About the year 1170 this Town was much enlarged and fortified which was afterwards so improved in the year 1531, by *Frederick* its then Duke, that it became one of the best Fortifications, next *Breslaw*, in *Silesia*. The Castle is a very strong and noble Building, and the Hospital and Town-house are worth a Stranger's seeing. The Country of this Dukedom yields much Corn. In the year 1675, the last Duke dying without heirs, it fell to the Emperor.

*Wittau*, a small inconsiderable City on the North side of the *Oder*, 26 miles distant from *Lignitz*, formerly part of the Dukedom of *Lignitz*, but now gives Title to a Duke of its own.

*Oranienburg* is a neat uniform well-built City, formerly well strengthened with Walls, Gates, Turrets and other Fortifications, but in the year 1648 they were demolish'd by the *Swedish* General, and not since rebuilt; here is a fair Church, College, Town-hall, and Market-place, which is exactly square. This City had also a Duke of its own, till in the year 1492 it was given to the Duke of *Munsterberg*, who is still Lord of it, and some other small Cities its dependences. *Oelse* is situated about 15 miles from *Breslaw* to the N. E.

*Fauer* and *Schweidnitz*, are two small Dukedoms, [both now in the Emperor, extended on the South-side of the *Oder* between *Lignitz* on the North, *Breslaw* on the East, and *Munsterberg* on the South.

The City *Fauer* stands in a pleasant Valley, and is fortified with high Ramparts, deep Ditches, and a Castle, in which resides the Lieutenant of these two Dukedoms.

*Schweidnitz* stands South east from *Fauer*, and South west from *Breslaw*, about 20 miles distant from the former, and 30 from the latter. It is fortified with Walls and Ramparts, and beautified with many fair Buildings, so that it may be esteemed one of the fine Cities in *Silesia*. In the Armory here, is a Gun of an extraordinary size, being able to carry a Bullet of 32 pound weight. Besides these two Cities, there are 22 Towns in these two Dukedoms.

*Munsterberg*, the Capital of another Dukedom, is a small City seated in a fruitful Plain, 30 miles South from *Breslaw*. It is an old Castle, which, with the Town-hall, is all worth noting in this Town. Five other Towns are in this Dukedom.

*Oppelen* stands on the Northern banks of the River *Oder*, over which it has a Bridge, 40 miles above *Breslaw*. It has very thick Walls and strong Gates for its defence. Ever since 1647 it has been subject to the King of *Poland*, and all the People here and in the neighbouring Villages speak the *Polish* Language. This is a Dukedom also, and has 11 Towns its dependences.

*Grotkau*, a small City that stands between *Munsterberg* and *Oppelen*, is the Capital of another Dukedom subject to the King of *Bohemia*; wherein stands also *Neissa* a City of good Trade, seated on a River of the same name, and 11 other Towns.

*Jagensdorf*, call'd by the *Moravians*, *Carnowf*, stands upon the River *Oppa*, 35 miles from *Oppelen* to the S. It is a small City, and not considerable, except that it is the Capital of a Dukedom, which with the City was, by *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, given to *George* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, who built a Castle and erected some other Fortifications about it.

*Troppau*, a small City upon the River *Oppa*, 10 miles from *Jagensdorf*, has nothing very remarkable in it, nor in its Dukedom, which has 8 other Towns in it.

*Ratibor* is a pretty good City, having in it a Cathedral and the Duke's Palace; the Houses are of Wood, as they are generally all over *Silesia*, but handsome enough, and the publick Buildings are of Stone. It stands in a pleasant Plain on the banks of the River *Oder*, 35 miles above *Oppelen*. The Dukedom of *Ratibor*, containing 5 other Towns, fell to the King of *Bohemia* in the year 1516, at the death of Duke *Vratislaus* its last Prince.

## CHAP. XI.

### The Marquisate and Electorate of BRANDENBURG, with MAGDEBURG and HALBERSTADT; and the Dukedom of POMERANIA.

THIS Country, included within the Circle of the Upper Saxony, is bounded on the North by *Pomerania* and the Duchy of *Mecklenburg*, on the South by *Silesia* and the Upper Saxony, on the East by *Poland*, and on the West by the Lower Saxony. It is extended from North to South for the space of about 100 miles in its greatest breadth, and 50 else where; as also about 200 from East to West. Its principal Rivers are the *Elb*, the *Havel*, the *Spre*, and the *Wart*. The Northern situation of this Country makes the Air cold, and the Winters continue very long, nevertheless the Soil brings forth every thing necessary for Sustenance. Here are very good Pastures, wherein great Herds of Cattle are fed; and large Forests abounding with Venison.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were the *Varni* and *Naitores*, part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, after whom some Tribes of the *Slaves* possessed it. About the year 920, the Emperor *Henry* conquer'd these rude People, and planted Christianity among them, and bestow'd the Country upon *Sigifried* Earl of *Rinzelheim*, with the Title of Margrave, or Lord of the *Marches*, obliging him to defend it against the *Slaves*, which Honour was at first conferr'd on whom the Emperor pleas'd; and was not Hereditary till the time of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, Successor to *Henry* the Lion; to whom the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* gave it, and entail'd it upon his Issue: But this Family failing in the year 1323, several Families succeeded in it till Anno 1417, the Emperor *Sigismund* conferr'd it upon *Frederick*



Frederick Burggraf of Noremburg, in whose Family it still remains.

The Elector of Brandenburg is Lord of larger Territories than any other Prince of Germany, except the Arch-Duke of Austria; for besides this Marquisate, he possesseth many Eittates elsewhere, viz. in the Lower Saxony, the Principalities of Magdeburg and Halberstadt, with part of Pomerania: In Westphalia, the Principality of Minden, the Dutchy of Cleves, and the Counties of Mark and Ravenspurge; as also the Lordship of Crossen in Silesia, and part of Prussia in Poland. The Lutheran Religion is predominant, the Princes, Bishops, and most of the People being of that Persuasion; and the rest Calvinists, here being few or no Roman Catholics.

Brandenburg is divided into three Parts, call'd Marcks: The chief Towns whereof are these, viz.

	{	Berlin.	
		Coln.	
In the		Brandenburg.	
Middle		Francfort upon the Oder.	
Marcke,		Spandaw.	
which		Oranenburg.	
lies West	{	Rosenaw.	
of the Ri-		Lebus.	
ver Oder,			
extend-		The Lordship of Preg-	{ Havelburg, Bish.
ing to the		nitz, wherein are,	{ Neustat.
Havel and			{ Wistock.
Elb.			{ Dalmin.
		The Lordship of Ru-	{ Rupin,
	{	pin,	{ Premstow.
The New Marcke lies to	{	Landsparg.	
the North-east on the		Kustrim.	
Banks of the Oder and		Soldin.	
Wart, stretching North-	{	Driessen.	
ward into Pomerania,			
and hath these Towns		The Lordship	{ Sernburg,
of chiefest note,	{	of Stern,	{ Sonneburg
		Stendel.	
The Old Marcke lies on	{	Gardeleben.	
the West-side of the Elb,		Soltwedel.	
between that River and		Tangermund.	
Lunenburg.	{	Sechausen.	
		Osterburg.	
To which may be added, being subject to this			
Electoꝛ,			
The Dutchy of Magde-	{	Magdeburg.	
burg,		Borch.	
And,			
The Principality of Hal-	{	Halberstadt.	
berstadt,		Oosterwike.	
	{	Grimingen.	

Of these Towns, those that deserve a particular description, are these that follow.

BERLIN, *Berolinum*, is pleasantly situated on the River *Sprehe* in a very fruitful Country, being environ'd on one side with Vineyards, on another with Marches, and on a third with Woods full of all sorts of Game. It is esteem'd the capital City of the whole Marquisate of Brandenburg, and is the usual place of Residence of the Elector. The River divides it into 2 parts the larger whereof, towards the North, retains the name of *Berlin*, and the other to the South, is call'd *Coln*, in which stands the Elector's Palace; the Statelines whereof, the Grandeur of the Courts, together with the Largeness of the Streets, and the regular Architecture of the Houses, render this a very noble and magnificent City. It is distant 68 miles from Magdeburg to the North-east, 45 from *Francfurt* on the Oder to the West; and 150 from *Prague* to the North-west in the Latitude of 52. 30. It was first built by *Albertus Ursus* Prince of *Anhalt*, A. D. 1142.

BRANDENBURG or BRANDEBURG *Brandeburgum*, was so called, as it were *The Town of Fire*, or took its name (according to the opinion of others) from its Founder *Brennus*, General of the *Gauls*. It is seated in the midst of a moorish Ground, and on the banks of the River *Hamel*, which divides it into two parts, viz. the Old or Upper Town, and the New, being distant only 26 miles from *Berlin* to the West, and 40 from *Magdeburg* to the North-east, is a very ancient City, and hath given its name to the whole Country, as also a title to the Elector of Brandenburg. It was erected into an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Magdeburg*, by the Emperor *Otho*, fir nam'd the Great, A. C. 946. Its Bishops have adher'd to the *Augsburg* Confession of Faith ever since the year 1563. In the great Church are many Monuments of Princes, and in the Market-place a *Statua Rolandina*, of which an account is given in our Description of *Bremen*.

*Francfurt* upon the River *Oder*, and for distinction sake usually so express'd, is seated in a fruitful Country, at the distance of 44 miles from *Berlin* to the East, 70 from *Stetin* to the South, and not above 10 from the borders of *Lusatia*. It is divided into two parts by the River, over which they have a large Bridge of Wood. It is a place of reasonable good Trade, and hath two Fairs yearly held in it. The Marquesses of Brandenburg have, at several times, granted the Citizens great Privileges. The City was once free and imperial, as also one of the Hanse-Towns, but now exempt and less considerable than it hath been. In the year 1506. *Jochim* Marquess of Brandenburg founded an University here, which is now considerable.

*Havelburg* is seated on the River *Havel*, which a little below falls into the *Elb*, 50 miles from *Berlin* to the N. W. It is the See of a Bishop, who was Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, but since the year 1555, the Bishops have been of the Lutheran Persuasion.

*Stendal*, a Hanse-Town, the Metropolis of the *Alt-Marck*, is seated on the River *Ucht*, in a pleasant Plain, and on the side of a large Forest; it is a neat well built City, and strongly fortified. The Inhabitants have a pretty good Trade in Corn and Linen Cloth. It lies upon the Road from *Magdeburg* to *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, by which the Inhabitants make good profit. The Courts of Civil Judicature for the Old Marck are held here. It is distant 32 miles from *Brandenburg* to the West, and 20 from *Havelburg* to the South.

*Soltwedel*, a large Town, 35 miles from *Stendal* to the North-west, 50 from *Zell* to the N. E. and on the Road between *Stendal* and *Lunenburg*. It is seated on the River *Ferze*, and divided into the old and new Town: Its chief Trade is in Beer. This was formerly the Capital of a Marquisate subject to its own Lord, but was long since united to that of *Brandenburg*.

*Tangermunde* or *Angermund*, seated on the *Elb* at the mouth of the *Anger* or *Tanger*, 8 miles from *Stendal* to the South. It was at first a Castle built by the Emperor *Charles IV.* in the year 1376, but is now a place of pretty good Trade in Corn and other Commodities convey'd by the *Elb* to other places.

*Landsparg* stands upon the River *Warta*, 20 miles East from the *Oder*, and 35 North-east from *Brandenburg*. Its convenient situation makes it a place of good Trade, which consists much in casting of Iron Ordnance, &c. This City was often taken and re-taken in the German Wars.

*Kustrim* on the River *Oder*, near the mouth of the *Warta*, 50 miles from *Berlin* to the East, formerly an inconsiderable Village, now a very strong Town, and



esteem'd the Key of the *New Markt*, having been walled with Stone, and otherwise strongly fortified in the last Age by *John Marquis* of *Brandenburg*, and in 1631 was strong enough to baffle *Gustavus Adolphus*, who was forced to raise his Siege, and withdraw his Army from before it. The Houses are neatly and well-built, and the Market-place is the handsomest in all the *Markgraviate*.

*MAGDEBURG*, a Territory of about 60 miles in length from East to West, and in some part 30 from North to South, situate between *Brunswick* on the West, *Saxony* on the East, *Brandenburg* on the North, and *Anhalt* on the South, the *Elb* running through; it was formerly an Arch-bishoprick, being made so by the Pope at the instance of the Emperor *Otto I.* and its Prelate Primate of all *Germany*, in which state it continued till the Reformation; when the Canons having embrac'd the Doctrine of *Luther* in the year 1566. chose the Son of the Elector of *Brandenburg* Administrator of their Arch-bishoprick, after which it remained in the Administration of a secular Prince; till, at length, in the Treaty of *Munster*, A. D. 1648. it was agreed. That after the death of the then Administrator, the whole Country should devolve on the Elector of *Brandenburg* as a secular Estate and a Dukedom, which, together with the Bishoprick of *Halberstadt*, were given him as an Equivalent for the hither upper *Pomerania* by the same Treaty granted to the King of *Sweden*. It is accordingly now subject to that Elector, and is thought to have advanc'd his Annual Revenue at least 600000 *Rix Dollars*.

The City of *Magdeburg*, *Magdeburgum*, call'd in old writing *Parthenopolis*, is seated on the Banks of the *Elb*, 45 miles below *Wittenburg*, in a pleasant Country abounding with Corn, but wanting Wood; as on the contrary the Land on the other side of the River wants Corn, but has plenty of Wood. It is distant 30 miles from *Brandenburg* to the South-west, 60 from *Brunswick* to the East, and as many from *Leipsick* to the North. It was built, or much enlarged at least, and wall'd round, by the Emperor *Otto*, about the year 940. at the desire of his Wife *Edgitha* Daughter to our English Saxon King *Edmund*; and being made a City he endowed it with large Privileges, made it Imperial, built also the stately Cathedral yet standing, and translated the Bishoprick of *Vallerleben* thither, and obtained the Dignity of Primacy to be added to it: By which means it grew exceeding wealthy and powerful, and continued so till the year 1631, that barbarous Count *Tilly* having taken the City, massacred the Inhabitants in a most bloody manner, and burnt and destroy'd the whole Town, except the Cathedral, and some few inconsiderable Houses; the Slaughter was so great, that of 40000 Citizens, its said not above 400 were left alive, which Loss it has never been able to recover; and tho' the Electors of *Brandenburg* have much assisted it, and repair'd the Fortifications which are very strong, yet it still remains far less considerable than it has been. The Cathedral is a very noble Structure, and worth a Stranger's view; in it are forty nine Alters; and in one of the Chappels is the Tomb of the Emperor *Otto* and his Wife *Edgitha*, the Founders of this Church.

There are 25 Towns more in this Dukedom, but none of them contain any thing worthy of a particular description.

The Province of *HALBERSTADT* is a small Country of about 30 miles in length and 25 in breadth, being bounded by the Dutchy of *Magdeburg* on the N. E. the Principality of *Anhalt* on the South, the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim* on the West, and *Brunswick Wolfembustel* on the North. The Soil of it is good and yields plenty of Corn and the Forests contain store of Venison. The

Bishoprick, which was first founded in the year 780. by the Emperor *Charles the Great* and planted at *Osternick*, a Town in this Province, being in a little time remov'd to *Halberstadt*, gave name to this Country, which continued subject to its own Prelate till the Civil Wars of *Germany*, when the Bishop *Leopold William* having restor'd Popery, which had been abolish'd in 1591. the *Sweeds* besieg'd and took *Halberstadt*, restor'd the *Lutheran* Religion, and kept the Town and Country till the Treaty of *Munster*, by which this Bishoprick was seculariz'd and given to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and now bears the Title of a Principality.

*Halberstadt*, the chief Town, is seated upon the River *Hotheim*, 32 miles from *Magdeburg* to the S. W. It was heretofore an Imperial City, but afterwards exempted and subject to its Bishop, and now under the Elector of *Brandenburg*; it is reasonably well-built, the Streets are even, and the Houses neat and uniform. There is an Inn in this City that is thought the largest, and will accomodate the greatest number of Persons of any in Europe.

*Osternick*, once call'd *Salingstade*, in which this Bishoprick was first planted, is seated on the River *Isa*, about 15 miles from *Halberstadt* to the West.

*Gruningben*, a small Town with a Castle, re-built in 1593. formerly the Seat of the Bishop, stands 10 miles from *Halberstadt* to the East. There is a remarkable Wine-fat in it of vast bulk, containing near 1000 Hogsheads.

*Queidingburg* is also reckon'd in the Limits of this Principality, but belonging to the House of *Saxony*, is described with the rest of that Elector's Estates.

## SECT. II.

### The Dutchy of POMERANIA, call'd Pommern in High-Dutch.

*Pomerania* is the most extream North-east part of *Germany*, being bounded by the *Baltick* Sea on the North, and *Prussia* on the East, *Brandenburg* on the South, and *Mecklenburg* on the West. It is about 80 miles broad, and 250 long: The Air is very cold, but the Soil however yeilds Corn and Fruits, also good Pasture, which is fill'd with Cattle, and Forests which abound with Venison. The River *Oder* falls into the Sea, after it has run through the middle of this Country: Besides which, the Rivers *Pen*, *Rega*, *Perla*, *Wiper*, and the *Stolp*, water this Dutchy.

*Pomerania* was long Govern'd by its own Dukes, of whom *Parnirius* at his Death in 1277. divided it between his two Sons; the Seat of the eldest being *Wolgast*, and of the Younger *Stetin*; but the House of *Stetin* failing of Issue in 1464. that part of *Pomerania* was conferr'd on the Marquis of *Brandenburg*, by the Emperor. This the Duke of *Pomeran Wolgast* oppos'd with all his might, and at length forced the *Brandenburger* to surrender it, but with this condition, that if the House of *Wolgast* should fail, the whole Dukedom should descend to the House of *Brandenburg*; which happening in the year 1637. when *Bugislaus* died with out Issue, the Elector of *Brandenburg* claim'd the whole Country: But the *Sweeds* in the mean time had got footing here, being call'd in by *Bugislaus* to assist him against the Imperialists in the German Civil Wars, and could not be perswaded to leave a Province which they esteem'd so convenient to them. This caused a War between the King of *Sweden* and the Elector of *Brandenburg*, which was ended in 1648. by the Treaty of *Osnaburg* and *Munster*, wherein they agreed to share it betwixt them: the *Sweed* having all on the West-side of the *Oder*, and the *Brandenburger* that on the East: And as a Compensation



cession to the Elector, the Dukedom of *Magdeburg* and the Principality of *Halberstadt* were assign'd him by the same Treaty; which however did not satisfy him, and therefore when the rest of *Europe* were in Arms, the Elector of *Brandenburg* assumed his for the recovery of this Country, and entering the Swedish *Pomerania*, took *Stetin* in 1677. and *Straelsund*, and other Places, soon after: But at the Treaty of *St. Germain*, what then remain'd in his hands was restor'd, and the Country is still divided, as we have said above.

The Division of it will be seen by this Table.

The upper <i>Pomerania</i> , subject to the K. of <i>Sweden</i> , is divided into the Territories of	Stetin,	<i>Stetin</i> , <i>Fasinitz</i> , <i>Uckermond</i> , <i>Passewalk</i> ,
	Wolgast,	<i>Wolgast</i> , <i>Gripswald</i> , Hans.
	Gutskow,	<i>Kentzing</i> , <i>Anklam</i> , <i>Gutskow</i> , <i>Treptow</i> , <i>Demmin</i> .
	Bardt,	<i>Bardt</i> , <i>Straelsund</i> , Imper. <i>Trebesis</i> , <i>Dumgarten</i> .
The Lordships of	The Islands of	<i>Rugen</i> , <i>Bergen</i> , <i>Usedom</i> , <i>Usedom</i> , <i>Wollin</i> , <i>Wollin</i> .
		<i>Lewenberg</i> , Subject to the K. <i>Butow</i> , of Poland.
The Lower <i>Pomerania</i> subject to the Elector of <i>Brandenburg</i> , is divided into the Territories of	Pomerania,	<i>Cammin</i> , Bish. <i>Coln</i> , Hans. <i>Hargard</i> , Hans.
	Cassuben,	<i>Colbert</i> , Cap. <i>Regemord</i> , <i>Bublitz</i> , <i>Startgart</i> .
	Vendosia,	<i>Stolp</i> , <i>Slage</i> , <i>Rugenwold</i> .

**STETIN**, *Stetinum*, is a very considerable City, the Capital of all *Pomerania*, and a Hans-Town. It is seated on the River *Oder*, at the distance of 18 m. from the Frontiers of *Brandenburg*, 40 from the Coasts of the *Baltick* Sea, and 70 from *Berlin* to the N. E. It is a large, strong and well-built City, and a place of great Trade, to which the River *Oder* much contributes; for it self flows from *Silesia*, and the *Warta* falls into it about 50 miles above this City; and about 40 miles below it both together fall into the *Baltick* Sea; so that this is a good Centre for exchanging the Commodities of *Germany*, *Poland* and the *Baltick*. The Palace which was formerly the Seat of the Duke, and is now the place where the Swedish Governor resides, is an old magnificent Building. This City is exceeding populous, and the Inhabitants are noted for Civility and Valour; an instance of the latter they effectually gave in the gallant defence they made against the Elector of *Brandenburg* in 1677. when tho' he brought a great Army before this City, and very vigorously attack'd it from the 7th of *July*, he was not able to take it before the 26th of *December*, and then too gave them very honourable Terms: In the succeeding Peace it was restor'd to the *Sweed*, under whom it still continues.

*Wolgast* is seated near that mouth of the *Oder* call'd *Pfm*. about 5 miles from the shoar of the *Baltick* Sea, 50 North-west from *Stetin*, and 30 South-east from

*Straelsund*. It was formerly, as we have said, the Capital of a Dutchy, but now subject to the *Sweed*. It is strengthen'd with a noble Castle, and hath the most convenient Haven, except *Straelsund* in *Pomeran*. It was taken by the *Sweeds* in 1630. after by the *Brandenburgers* in 1675. and restor'd to the *Sweeds* in 1679.

*Straelsund*, a Free City, is near the banks of the Sea, over against the Island of *Rugen*, 80 miles from *Stetin* to the North, and 40 from *Rostock* to the S. E. It is esteem'd the largest and wealthiest City in *Pomeran*, and enjoys many great Privileges, which the Citizens have maintain'd against several Princes that have endeavour'd to subject them, wherein they have been remarkably Brave, having at once oppos'd the united Force of the Kings of *Denmark* and *Sweden*. and Ten other Princes. It is govern'd by its own Magistrates, who judge all Causes as well Criminal as Civil. The Buildings are beautiful, the private Houses being of Stone and uniform: It is a place of very great Trade, (particularly for Corn) having an excellent Haven, the Ships coming up into the very Town. This City was Founded or Re-built at least in 1230. and soon grew populous, and was strongly fortified; by the help whereof, in 1629. it oppos'd Count *Waldeck*, who besieged it: After which, they put themselves under the Protection of *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, whose Successors have ever since held that Title. In 1678 it was besieg'd and taken by the Elector of *Brandenburg*, but restor'd at the Treaty of *S. Germain*, in 1679. The Fortifications consist of regular Bulwarks and large Ditches, besides natural Marshes, through which there is no passing but by Causeys that are well fortified.

*Bardt* stands in a fruitful Country, 12 miles West from *Straelsund*, upon a little Arm of the Sea, which would be a good Haven, but that the Water is shallow, and so the Town cannot be traded to. It was sometime the Metropolis of the upper *Pomeran*.

**CAMNIN**, esteem'd the Capital of the Ducal *Pomerania*, is seated on the East-side of the mouth of the *Oder* that it call'd *Drawenow*, 30 miles North from *Stetin*, 40 East from *Wolgast*, and 5 South from the Coasts of the *Baltick*. It was formerly a Bishop's See, but by the Treaty of *Munster* it was Seculariz'd and given to the Marquess of *Brandenburg*.

*Colberg*, at the mouth of the small River *Perfah*, and near the Banks of the *Baltick* Sea, 30 miles N. E. from *Cammin*, is a strong Town with a convenient Haven. It is pretty much resorted to for Salt, which is made in great plenty near it; and being hence Transported, makes the Town Rich and considerable.

The Three Islands lye in the *Baltick* Sea, before the Coast of the Upper *Pomeran*. That of *RUGEN* is the largest and most considerable; it is 30 miles in length, and as many in breadth, but with several Arms and Creeks of the Sea within it: It is situate to the N. E. over against *Wolgast* and *Straelsund*, between which last place and it, the Sea is not above a League broad: The Land of it is exceeding fertile, yielding Corn in great plenty, and very good Grass; whereby great Herds of Cattle are fed. It was formerly govern'd by its own Princes, who, assisted by the notable Valour of the People, long defended it against the neighbouring Kings: But the *Straelsunders* opposing the Authority he pretended over the Strait that leads to their City, occasion'd Prince *Wislais* to besiege it; but the City defended it self so well, that not only he could not take it, but in a Salley he was slain, and being the last of his Family, that Government afterwards was subjected to the Duke of *Pomeran*, from whom it descended to the King of *Sweden*: But the *Danes*, having some old pretensions; in the War of



1678. Invaded and Took the whole Island; but in 1679. by the Treaty, restored it to the *Sweed*, to whom it is still Subject. The chief Town is

*Bergen*, which is a place of no great Note, being not fortified nor even Wall'd, though call'd a City. It contains about 400 Houses; and is distant about 25 miles from *Stralsund* to the North-east, and as many from *Wolgast* to the North.

The Island denominat'd from the Town *WOLLIN*, call'd anciently *Fulium*, is the Western of the 2 Islands that make the three Mouths of the *Oder*. The Town is seated on the Mouth of the *Oder*, call'd *Druenow*, 25 miles North from *Stettin*, and 25 South-west from *Wolgast*. It was anciently one of the largest Cities of Europe, and resorted to by Merchants of all Nations, and said to have been so Powerful, as alone to maintain a

War against *Denmark*, and three several times to their King Prisoner: But it was partly destroy'd by Lightning, and finally by the Arms of *Woldemar* K. of *Denmark*. in 1170. totally demolish'd. Since which it hath been only a small inconsiderable Town.

*USEDOM*, which gives name to another Island that lies West from that of *Wollen*, and makes other two Mouths of the *Oder*, one whereof runs between these two Islands, and is call'd *Swine*, and the other beyond *Usedom*, which is nam'd *Pfin*. Upon the Destruction of *Wollen*, this Town was resorted to by the *Danish* and *Polish* Merchants, and became a place of good Trade, but in 1473 it was all burnt down by an accidental Fire, which destroy'd the Trade; and it hath since been only a small Sea-port Town, and not considerable.

## CHAP. XII. SAXONY.

### SECT. I.

#### *A short Account of the History of Saxony in General.*

THE Saxons were anciently a vast Nation, and Possessed all the Northern Parts of Germany, from *Franconia* and *Babemia* in the South, to the *Baltick* Sea and *Denmark* in the North; and from the River *Elb* on the East, to the *Rhine* on the West; whereby not only the present Upper and Lower Saxony, but also all *Westphalia* and *Holftein* were part of their Country: Nay, also *Futland*, now reckon'd part of *Denmark* was inhabited by them.

Concerning the Etymology of the name *Saxon*, the Learned differ; some are of opinion, that they were deriv'd from the *Saci*, a People of *Asia*, to which our Learned Country-man Mr. *Camden* inclines. Others say, they were deriv'd from *Saxum* a Stone, as being a hardy strong People. *Vestegan* and others affirm, that they had their name from a Weapon they wore, call'd a *Seax*, which was a short Sword of different form from those commonly worn, and peculiar to this Nation.

They were Men of a large Bulk and great Strength, renown'd Warriors; and so notorious for Piracy, that the Romans were oblig'd to keep Forces all along the Coast of *Gaul* and *Britain* to hinder their frequent Incursions.

It was this Warlike People that K. *Vortigern* invited to *Britain* to assist him against the *Picts* and *Scots*, who upon the Romans forsaking them, much annoy'd the *Britains*: But of what part of this great Nation those were that he Invited, is somewhat uncertain; ancient Histories tell us they were *Angles* and *Futs*: *Futland* is suppos'd to have been the Country of the latter, but from what part the former came is more Disputed: Mr. *Camden* is of Opinion that they dwelt in *Sieswick*, which was sometime call'd *Angel*; though others affirm they came from *Westphalia*, and were accompanied by the *Frigons*. For the Reader's farther Satisfaction, he may consult *Camden's Britannia*, where he will find this Matter most learnedly and ingeniously Discussed.

They were Pagans, and Govern'd by Twelve Noblemen, chosen by the Commons, out of whom in time of War they chose a King; which Government continued till the time of *Charles* the Great, who made War upon them, and was long oppos'd under the Conduct of *Wittikind* their King; but the Power of

*Charles* prov'd too strong in time, and *Wittikind* was oblig'd to submit and receive the Christian Faith, which by the great care of *Charles* was Planted and Propagated over the whole Nation, and *Wittikind* by him created Duke of Saxony.

The Race of *Wittikind* continued Dukes of Saxony till *Otho* III. who being chosen Emperor in 984. gave his Country to *Barnard* Lord of *Lunenborg*, whose Grandson *Magnus* was depriv'd by the Emperor *Henry* III. and *Henry* *Guelph*, Duke of *Bavaria*, made Elector of Saxony, whose Son *Henry*, surnam'd the Lion, sided with the Pope against the Emperor *Frederick* *Barbare*, about the year 1170. was Proscrib'd, and by the Emperor's Command depriv'd of his Estates by the neighbouring Princes. The Electoral Dignity was Anno 1180. given to *Bernard* Earl of *Anhalt*, Son to the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and descended from *Magnus* above mention'd. who had conquer'd *Lauenburg* from *Henry*, to which the Emperor added the County of *Wettimberg* and the little Country that lyes between the *Elb* and the *Sala* on the North of *Missa*, and gave it the name of the Upper Saxony. The Posterity of *Bernard* enjoy'd this with the Title of Duke and Elector of Saxony, till 1422. when *Albert* III. dying without Issue, *Frederick* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and Marquess of *Misnia*, who was the Heir of the Family of *Wittikind*, by the Emperor's favour, succeeded; in whose Family it still remains. His Successors have been zealous Defenders of the Reformation, especially D. *John*. who was one of the Princes who protested against the Decree of the Diet at *Spire*, in 1529. as we have elsewhere said, and was the Author of the *Smalcalden* League: But in the War that ensu'd thereupon, his Son and Successor *Frederick* *John* had the Misfortune to be taken Prisoner by the Emperor *Charles* V. and depriv'd of his Honour and Estates, which in 1547 were given to his Cousin *Maurice*, Grandson to the Landgrave *Frederick* above-mentioned, from whom the present Duke and Elector is descended.

### SECT. II.

#### *The Upper SAXONY.*

The upper Saxony is bounded on the North by the Principalities of *Magdeburg*, *Halberstadt*, and the Marquissate of *Brandenburg*, on the South by *Franconia* and *Bohemia*, on the East by *Silecia*, and on the West by *Hesse* and *Brunswick*. Its Extent is, from North



to South about 130 *English* miles and from East to West 200. The Air is cold but healthful, and the Soil fertile, producing much Wheat but very little Wine; here are Mines of Lead, that are very profitable, and some of Silver, that yield the Elector above 100 thousand Pounds a year. The chief Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Saia*, the *Elster*, the *Ennsch*, the *Spree* and the *Nisse*.

The Religion of the Inhabitants is generally the Lutheran, though there are also some Calvinists and Roman Catholics.

The Elector of *Saxony* is the wealthiest Prince of *Germany*, except the Archduke of *Austria*, his yearly Income being reckon'd to be 400 thousand Pounds Sterling; which is raised by the Silver Mines above-mentioned, and by Excise upon Beer, Corn, Wine, Fruit, &c. The Splendor of his Court is very great being attended by a vast number of Servants, among whom are several Gentlemen of great Quality. 'Tis said of the Elector *Christian II.* that he had, besides a great number of the Gentry of his own Country, three Dukes, three Earles and five Barons of Foreign Nations his Pensioners at the same Time. The Dominions of this Prince were increased in the year 1620. by the Emperor's Donation of the Marquisate of *Lusatia* to Duke *John George* in reward for the service he did him in the *Bohemian War*.

So that his present Dominions are, the Dukedom of *Saxony*, and the Marquisates of *Misnia* and *Lusatia* &c. The chief Towns whereof are seen in this Table, together with those of the other States, that complete the rest of the Circle of the Upper *Saxony*, viz *Anhalt*, *Thuringen*, &c.

The Duchy of *Saxony* is but a small Country, lying between *Brandenburg* on the North, *Misnia* on the South, *Lusatia* on the East, and *Anhalt* on the West. The chief Towns are,

The Marquisate of *Misnia* is bounded on the North by *Brandenburg* and *Anhalt*, on the South by *Bohemia*, on the East by *Lusatia*, and on the West by *Mersburg*, *Naumburg* and *Altenburg*. It's extent from North to South is near 100 miles and from East to West 80.

*Vogtland*, the South part of *Misnia*.

The Marquisate of *Lusatia* lies Eastward from the Duchy of *Saxony* and *Misnia*, and is bounded on the North by *Brandenburg*, on the South by *Bohemia*, and on the East by *Silesia*. It is in length from North to South about 90 miles, and in breadth about 50 miles; the chief Towns in it are

Other smaller States belonging to several Branches of the House of *Saxony*, and lie Westward of the Countries above-mention'd, viz.

The Duchy of *Sax-Hall*, *Hall*.  
*Sax-Mersburg*, *Mersburg*.  
*Sax-Naumburg*, *Naumburg*.  
*Sax-Altenburg*, *Altenburg*.

The Principality of *Anhalt* is a long but narrow Tract of Land lying on the North of *Misnia*.

The small County of *Barby* joins to *Anhalt* on the North.

*THURINGEN*, formerly a Kingdom, afterwards a County and then a Landgraviate, was govern'd by its own Princes for many Ages, till 1124. when, upon

the Death of *Hermann*, it descended to the Marquiss of *Misnia*, and, with that Country came afterwards to the Duke of *Saxony*; but is divided into several Lordships and Sovereignities, according to the following Table.

In <i>Thuringen</i> are these Chief Towns,	[ <i>Einfurt</i> , Cap. subject to the Archbishop of <i>Mentz</i> ,
	[ <i>Gotha</i> , Dutchy,
	[ <i>Eysenack</i> , Dutchy,
	[ <i>Weimer</i> , Dutchy,
	[ <i>Mansfeld</i> , County,
	[ <i>Stellberg</i> , County,
	[ <i>Holzenstein</i> , County,
	[ <i>Schwartzemburg</i> , County,
	[ <i>Mulhausen</i> , Imp.

*WITTEMBERG*, *Wittemburga* aut *Victrum Mons*, the Capital City of the Duchy of *Saxony*, is seated on the River *Elb*, 40 miles South from, *Brandenburg*. as many North from *Leipsick*. 70 East from *Halberstadt*, and as many West from the River *Oder*. It is a fair large City, of an oblong square form with own great Street in the middle; adorn'd with an University, which was founded by the Elector *Frederick III.* in 1502. and made famous by the Preaching of *Martin Luther*: And well fortified both by Nature and Art, having Marthes on the North, and a great Canal to the *Elb*, also a very deep Ditch, a good Rampart and 5 large Bastions on the Side that is most expos'd. This is the Capital of the Electorate, and was the Seat of the Elector, till that Honour came into the Family of *Misnia*, when it was removed to *Dresden*.

*Torgaw* is a fair City, built by *John Frederick*, the Elector, in 1535. and beautified with a stately Castle. It is seated on the West Side of the *Elb*, 20 miles South from *Wittemburg*.

*DRESDEN*, *Dresda*, is seated on the River *Elb*, which divides it into two Parts, at the distance of 55 miles from *Wittemburg* to the South-east, 25 from the Confines of *Bohemia* to the North, and 50 from *Leipsick* to the East. It is a large well-built City, and the usual place of Residence of the Elector of *Saxony*; whose Palace is a strong and magnificent Castle, adorn'd with many Curiosities, especially a Chamber of Rarities, and an Armory extreamly well furnished, as also very fine Gardens and Stables. The City, as we have said, is divided by the River into two Parts, that on the South Side is call'd *Alt Dresden* or the Old Town; to which the New is join'd by a Stone-Bridge of 17 Arches, which is reckon'd a curious piece of Workmanship.

*Meissen*, *Misnia*, once a rich and populous City, and the Metropolis of the Province, but now not considerable, stands on the South Side of the *Elb*, 12 miles West from *Dresden*: It is a Bishop's See, and has a Territory belonging to it, which, with the City, was formerly subject to its Bishop, but now in the Hands of the Elector. Here was a wooden Bridge over the *Elb*, that was much admired, but was destroyed in the *German Wars*.

*LEIPZIG* or *Leipsick*, *Lipsia*, *Lupfurdum*, is thought to have been built by the *Vandals* (who were the ancient Inhabitants of this Country) about the year 700. It stands upon the River *Plesse*, and near the *Elster*, and is distant 50 miles from *Dresden* to the East, and 40 from *Wittemburg* to the South. It is a very large rich and populous City, the most considerable of any in this Elector's Dominions. It is very full of Houses, and those well-built and very high, many seven, and some nine Stories. *S. Nicholas Church* is very fine, and esteem'd the best of any *Lutheran Church* in *Germany*. The Citizens have a great Trade, especially by reason of three Fairs held yearly, which bring a concourse of Merchants from all Parts. A high Court of Judicature is held in this City, which hath great Power,



even to summon the Elector himself. Here is also an University, which was establish'd in 1408. by *Frederick Marquis of Misnia*: It hath four Colleges and 24 Professors, and is well fill'd with Students. The Castle seated on the *Pleffe*, and call'd *Plessenburg*, is a very strong Fort and well guarded. In 1520. *Martin Luther* disputed here with *Eckius* against the Pope's Supremacy, and quickly after this City imbraced the Reformation. It suffer'd much in the Civil Wars of Germany, having been several times besieged and taken.

*Freyburg* is a famous and pleasant Town. 20 Miles from *Dresden* to the West, very pleasantly situated, near the River *Mulda*, 16 miles South-west from *Dresden*. *S. Peter's Church* here is the usual Burial-place of the Electors, many of whose Monuments are there to be seen; but that of the Elector *Murice* is the most magnificent, not only of those, but of any in Germany. But that which makes this Town most considerable is the famous Mines that are found near it; out of which they dig great Quantities of Silver Oar, besides Copper, Lead, Brimstone, Vitriol, &c. and so much Silver is hereby produced, that the Elector's Profit out of it is esteemed at 130000*l. per annum*. clear of all Charges.

*Plawen* or *Platen*, a small City, is seated upon the River *Eißer*, 16 miles South-west from

*Zwickau*, a small City, seated upon the River *Mulda* 40 miles South from *Leipsick*: It was a Free Imperial City till the year 1306. at which Time it was taken by *Frederick Marquis of Misnia*. This Country was the chief Seat of the German Civil Wars, and many Incampments were made near this City.

*BATZEN* or *BATDISSEN*, *Budissa* or *Budissa*, the chief City of the Marquitate of *Lusatia* or *Lausnitz*, stands on the River *Spree*, near the Frontiers of Saxony, 30 miles from *Dresden* to the East, 20 from *Goritz* to the West, and 70 from *Prague* to the North. It was formerly an Imperial City, but lost its Privileges. Before the last German Wars it was well built; but in 1634. the Imperialists having got Possession of it, were besieged by the Elector of Saxony, and intending to drive off the Enemy, set Fire to the Suburbs, which was unhappily driven over into the City, and burnt it to Ashes, and soon after it suffer'd much from the Swedes; since when it has not been able to recover its former Lustre.

*Goritz*, call'd by some the Capital of this Marquitate, is seated in a Marsh upon the River *Neisse*, which rises on the Borders of this Country, and after it has run quite cross, it falls into the *Oder*. This is a good City, having many stately Dwelling-houses and several neat Churches; its Trade lies chiefly in Brewing and making Linnen and Woollen Cloth: It is 20 miles distant from *Bautzen* to the East.

*Liebau*, *Lohau*, *Liben*, or *Lubben*, is a small Town, seated in a Plain among pleasant Meadows in the middle between *Bautzen* and *Goritz*: It was formerly so rich, that when the Swedes Plunder'd it, in 1637. they confess'd that they got 10000 Rix Dollars in Money, besides much rich Booty.

*Spaan*, call'd by some the Capital of the lower *Lusatia*, is a small City 30 miles North from *Goritz* and very near the Borders of *Silesia*. It was often taken and retaken in the German War, but is now subject to the Elector of Saxony.

*Luben* on the River *Spree*, 50 miles North from *Bautzen*, and 30 miles West from the River *Oder*. This is generally esteemed the Capital of the lower *Lusatia*. The Elector of Saxony has a Palace in it.

*Guben*, a small but well fortified Town, stands in the lower *Lusatia*, on the River *Neisse*, 30 miles from *Luben* to the East, 10 from the *Oder* to the West, and 45 from

*Goritz* to the North. It was taken by the Imperialists in 1631. and endur'd a Siege of three Weeks by the Swedes, in 1642.

*Cornis* or *Cottbus* is a fair Town, seated on the small River *Havel*, where it falls into the *Spree*, 35 miles North from *Bautzen*, and 22 miles South from *Luben*. It is now subject to the Elector of Brandenburg, as are also *Poytze*, *Somerfeld*, and some other Towns of lets note in this Marquitate.

*MERSBURG*, formerly a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, but now possess'd by the Elector as Administrator of it; and with the Territory belonging to it, serves for the Portion for some of the younger Brothers, who are styl'd *Dukes of Sax-Magdeburg*. The Town at present consists of a great number of old-fashion'd ruinous Houses, and hath nothing considerable in it but the Cathedral.

*NATUMBURG*, a City once Imperial, now subject to the House of Saxony, is seated upon the River *Saia*, where it receives the *Unstrut*, 25 miles West from *Leipsick*, and 15 from *Mersburg* to the South. It is a Bishop's See, under the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, and has a Territory of about 20 miles Extent, belonging to it, which was formerly govern'd by its Bishop: But it was yielded to the House of Saxony by the Treaty of *Passaw*, in 1552. one of which Family is Administrator of the Bishoprick.

*ALTENBURG* stands upon the River *Plisse*, 24 m. from *Leipsick* to the South, and 46 from *Dresden* to the West. It was once an Imperial City, but was taken by *Frederick Marquis of Misnia* in 1308. and united to that Dutchy. It has a Castle in which the Dukes of Saxony have some time kept their Palace.

*HALL*, call'd *Halla Saxorum*, for distinction, a considerable Town, on account of the profitable Salt-Pits near it. It was at first a small Village and call'd *Debreder*, but by reason of the Salt-Pits, encreased much, and obtain'd a Charter in 981. from the Emperor *Otto II.* and got at last to be an Imperial City; but it has been long exempted, and subjected to its own Duke, with a Territory belonging to it; since fallen to the Archbishop of *Magdeburg*, and so subject to the Elector of Brandenburg. This City is seated on the Bank of the River *Saia*, 24 miles North-west from *Leipsick*, on the Side of a pleasant Hill, cover'd with Vines: It is neatly built, and the Inhabitants are civil. The Salt-Pits yield a Toll to the Administrator of *Magdeburg*, of 500 or 600 Crowns a Week.

The Principality of *ANHALT* is bounded on the South by the Counties of *Hokenstein* and *Mansfeld*, and on the North by the Principality of *Halberstadt*, and Dutchy of *Magdeburg*, and is extended from East to West the space of 90 miles, tho' but very narrow: It is subject to its own Prince, who is of a very ancient Family, from which sprang both the Houses of Saxony and Brandenburg. The chief Towns in it are

*Zerbst*, on the Eastern Side of the *Elb*, about 2 miles from *Magdeburg* to the West and 50 from *Leipsick* to the North; the Place of the Prince's Residence.

*Bernburg*, a fortified Town, seated on the Banks of the *Saia* about 8 miles from the *Elb*. This is another Residence of the Prince's; whose Palace is separate from the Town by the River *Saia*. In 1636. the Town was taken, and the Garrison put to the Sword by the Elector of Saxony.

*Deffau*, on the *Eib*, at the Mouth of the *Mulda*, strong fortified Town, pleasantly seated, in a fruitful Country, 8 miles from *Zerbst* to the South, and 2 from *Bernburg* to the East; in which also the Prince has a Palace.

*ERFORD*, *Erford* or *Erfurd*, lat. *Erferdia*, or *Erfurtum*, the Capital City of *Thuringen*, is seated



the Banks of the River *Gere*, 60 miles West from *Lip-  
pich*, 60 North from *Bamberg*, and 70 South from *Hal-  
berstadt*. It is a considerable Place, both on account  
of the Wealth of its Inhabitants and the Beauty of its  
Publick Edifices, especially the Churches and Abbeyes,  
the stately Castle call'd *Cirixberg*, and a famous Uni-  
versity. This City hath a large Territory, wherein  
stand many Villages, all which were subject to the  
Archbishop of *Mentz*, but at the Reformation the In-  
habitants imbraced the Protestant Religion, and put  
the City under the Protection of the Elector of *Saxony*;  
which occasioned great Contests between those two  
Princes: At length the Bishop of *Mentz*, with the  
Assistance of the *French*, took it by Force, and oblig'd  
the Citizens again to receive his Government. How-  
ever, by the Tre ty of *Leipsick*, 17 of the Villages,  
its dependencies, were granted to the Elector of *Sax-  
ony*, and the City, with the rest of the Villages, are  
still subject to the Elector of *Mentz*.

*Muibaufen* is an Imperial City, but under the Pro-  
tection of the Elector of *Saxony*. It stands at the foot  
of a Mountain, upon the River *Unstruc*, near 30  
miles from *Erfurt* to the North-west, 20 from *Eyse-  
nack* to the North, and 10 from the River *Wefer* to  
the East.

*Weimar*, a neat, well-built, and a very ancient City,  
stands 12 miles from *Erfurt* to the East, in which is  
a stately Palace, where the Landgrave of *Thuringen*  
used to reside. This City gives Title to a Branch of  
the Family of *Saxony*.

*Jena* is a handsom City, seated on the River *Sala*,  
25 miles from *Erfurt* to the East. It is famous for an  
University, founded her by *John Frederick* Elector of  
*Saxony*, to which was granted many Privileges by the  
Emperors *Charles V.* and *Ferdinand*; it is in a flour-  
ishing state, and has bred many Eminent Men, par-  
ticularly *J. Lipsius* the great Philologer. The Town  
is well fortified, and stands in a pleasant Vale, in  
which grows plenty of Vines.

*Gotha*, 15 miles West from *Erfurt*, the Seat of an-  
other Branch of the *Saxon* Family, who is still Duke  
of *Gotha*, and is Lord of this Town, and the Coun-  
ties of *Altenburg*, *Coburg*, *Honneburg* in *Franconia*, and  
*Ostderland* in Upper *Saxony*. It is a large wall'd Town,  
and has a good Trade in the Plant call'd *Woad*, which  
is sowed and dressed here, and exported in great  
Quantities.

*Eisenach* or *Isenach*, *Isenacum*, a small City, stand-  
ing on the River *Nesä*, near the Borders of *Hessen*, and  
distant near 30 miles from *Erfurt*, and 15 from *Gotha*  
to the West. It gives Title to a Duke of the Family  
of *Saxony*, and hath an University in it, which was  
founded 1555.

The County of *SCHWARTSBERG* is a Tract  
of Land, of about 40 miles in length and 25 miles in  
breadth, and is bounded on the S. by *Thuringen*, on the  
W. by *Nurnburg*, *Mersburg* and *Hall*; the chief Town  
is *Sunderhausen*, of which, as well as *Frankenhausen*,  
*Hessingen*, *Kinderbruch* and *Kenia*, the best Towns in  
this Country, there is nothing considerable.

The small County of *HOHENSTEIN* lies North  
of *Schwartsburg*: Its chief Town is *Northheim*, an Im-  
perial City, said to be built in 447. by *Moravens* King  
of *France*. It stands upon the River *Rege*, 40 miles  
from *Erfurt* to the North, and is under the Protection  
of the Duke of *Saxony*.

*STOLBERG* is a very small County, lying N. of  
*Schwartsburg*, between *Hohenstein* to the W. and *Mans-  
feldt* to the E. Its chief Town is of the same Name.

The County of *MANSFELDT* is bounded on  
the West by *Stolberg*, on the East by the River *Sala*,

on the S. by *Thuringen*, on the N. by some part of  
*Anhalt*, and about 30 miles in length from N. to S.  
and 15 in breadth. This Country abounds with Mines  
of several sorts, but particularly of a Mineral, call'd  
*Scheifforsstein*, which yields much Copper and some Sil-  
ver. It's possels'd by its Counts, but now with some  
ackledgment of Homage to the D. of *Saxony*. This Fa-  
mily is branch'd out into several Houses, who have di-  
vided the Country among 'em; by which means they  
are not now so considerable as they have been.

The Chief Town is *Eisleben*, a small City near  
the Lake call'd *Susse See*, 40 miles from *Weimar* to the  
North, and 55 miles West from *Wittenburg*. It has  
its name from the abundance of Iron-Ore found here-  
abouts. In this Town *Martin Luther* was born, A. D.  
1483. and died here Anno 1564.

*Mansfeldt*, whence the County has its Name, is an  
old and ruinous City, about 5 miles from *Eisleben* to  
the North west. It has a strong Castle on the Top  
of a Hill, which, being much decayed, was repaired  
and fortified, A. 1547.

SECT. III. The Lower SAXONY.

The Lower *Saxony* comprehends, at present, the  
Dutchies of *Brumswick*, *Lunenburg* and *Lawenburg*, the  
Diocels of *Hildersheim*, the Principalities of *Magde-  
burg* and *Halbarstadt*, the Dutchies of *Bremen*, *Ferden*  
and *Meklenburg*, together with that of *Holslein*, which  
partly depends on the Jurisdiction of the King of *Den-  
mark*. Besides these nine principal Parts of the lower  
*Saxony*, there are also many other Sovereign States  
of a lesser extent, viz. the Dutchies of *Hanover*, *Zell*, *Ger-  
tingen*, *Grebenhagen*; the Cities of *Hamburg*, *Lubeck* &c.

The whole Country is bounded on the North by the  
*German Ocean*, *Denmark* and the *Baltick Sea*; on the  
South by *Hessen* and the upper *Saxony*, on the East  
by *Pomerania*, and the Marquilate of *Brandenburg*,  
and on the West by *Westphalia*. It is extended from  
North to South for the Space of about 200 miles and  
from East to West about 220. The most remark-  
able Rivers are, the *Elb*, the *Wefer*, the *Aller*, the  
*Hamma*, the *Immenon*, the *Leme*, the *Ocker* and the *Elde*.  
Every Prince is absolute within his Dominions, and  
generally assumes a Title from thence, excepting the  
States of the Dutchies of *Bremen* and *Ferden* whereof  
the King of *Sweden* is Administrator; those of the Prin-  
cipalities of *Magdeburg* and *Halberstadt*, which depend  
on the Jurisdiction of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, and  
the free Cities of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*. The *Lutheran*  
Religion is generally predominant throughout the  
Lower *Saxony*, the Princes, Prelates, and even the  
Abbeys of *Quedlinburg*, professing it, except the Bi-  
shop of *Hildesheim* and some Abbots and Abbeesses  
that profess the *Romish*. Tho' the Air be cold, the  
Land produces Corn and Pasture.

The Lower *Saxony*, with its Dependencies, hath  
these chief Cities and Towns, viz.

In the Duke- dom of <i>Brumswick</i> are,	{ <i>Brumswick</i> , Dutchy. <i>Wolfenbittel</i> , D. <i>Hanover</i> , D. <i>Grubenhagen</i> , D. <i>Blackenburg</i> C. <i>Rheinfein</i> , C.	<i>Quedlinburg</i> , Ab.
		<i>Goslar</i> , Imp.
		<i>Hannelin</i> , Hans.
		<i>Kimbeck</i> , Hans.
		<i>Gertingen</i> , &c.
In the Dutchy of <i>Lunen- burg</i> ,	{ <i>Lunenburg</i> , D. <i>Zell</i> , D. <i>Harburg</i> , <i>Urtzen</i> , <i>Halstode</i> .	



In the Bishoprick of *Hildesheim*. } *Hildesheim*,  
   } *Peina*.  
 The Duchy of *Magdeburg* and Principality of *Hal-*  
*berstadt* are already spoken of, with the Domini-

In the Duchy of *Bremen*,        } *Bremen*,  
   } *Staden*,  
   } *Buxtehude*,  
   } *Bremerfurt*,  
   } *Osternberg*,  
   } *Rugenbottle*.

The Principality of *Ferdin*,

In the Duchy of *Holslein*,

The rest is reckon'd part of

The Duchy of *Lauenburg*,

The Duchy of *Mecklenburg*.

  } *Ferdin*,  
   } *Rudenburg*.  
   } *Hamburg*,  
   } *Lubeck*.  
   } *Denmark*,  
   } *Lauenburg*,  
   } *Rugenburg*.  
   } *Sterin*, D.  
   } *Guzen*, D.  
   } *R. Beck*.  
   } *St. Mar. Hanf*.  
   } *Mecklenburg*,  
   } *Warren*,  
   } *Plawen* &c.

**BRUNSWICK**, including the Duchy of *Han-*  
*over* Principality of *Gruenbagen*, and Counties of *Bach-*  
*enberg* and *Reinfein*. is bounded on the South by *Hesse-*  
*Cassel*, on the West by the River *Meiser*, on the North  
 by *Lunenborg*; and on the East by *Magdeburg*: The  
 chief Rivers in it are the *Leina* and the *Ocker*, besides  
 the *Weser* which washes its Borders. This Country  
 was anciently part of the *Herzian* Forest, and there  
 still remain great Woods and Parks, by which the Inha-  
 bitants are plentifully furnish'd with Timber and Fuel,  
 and great store of Game. The Corn grows extream  
 high, but there is not a great deal of it, nor is the  
 Country very populous. The Inhabitants are of a  
 large size and very robust, feed coarse and lodge  
 hard; Swine's Flesh with Wheat or Rye Bread, is  
 their common Diet, inasmuch that they are, by the  
 other Germans, call'd *Bacon guts*.

Upon the Division of *Saxony* before-mention'd, this  
 Country and *Lunenborg* were left to *Henry the Lion*,  
 whose Grandson *Otto* was created Duke of them by  
 the Emperor *Frederick II.* A. D. 1235. But he leaving  
 two Sons, these Duchies were divided in 1264,  
 but up on the Failure of Issue, again united in the year  
 1365. in the Person of Duke *Magnus*; whose Sons,  
 being ambitious, parted it again. In the year 1491,  
 this Dukedom of *Brunswick* was divided by the two  
 Brothers *Henry* and *Erick* into equal Shares, whereof  
*Henry's* part was known by the name of *Brunswick-*  
*Wolfenbittel*. In 1552, *Erick's* Issue failing, the whole  
 Dukedom was united in the House of *Wolfenbittel*,  
 and remained so till 1634, that *Frederick Ulrich* dying  
 without Issue, this Dukedom of *Brunswick* fell to *Aug-*  
*ustus Duke of Lunenburg*, and then the Duchy of  
*Wolfenbittel* descended to the younger House of *Lun-*  
*enburg*. The present Duke, *Ernest Augustus*, is de-  
 scended from the House of *Harover*, and has succeeded  
 to all the Estates of that Duchy, as well as *Lunenborg*  
 and *Brunswick*, and has been lately (*Anno 1692*)  
 honour'd with the Title of an Elector of the Empire.  
 He was born *Anno* 1629, and in 1655, married the  
 Lady *Sophia*, Sister to our Prince *Rupert* (being a  
 Protestant) by whom he has had three Sons and a  
 Daughter.

This Family is the only Relict of that famous one  
 of the *Guelphs*, who were sometime Dukes of *Bavaria*  
 and *Saxony*; of the original of which there goes a no-  
 table Story as follows. *See* *my* *ant.* *Councils* of *Germany*.

upbraided a Woman with Adultery, and made her be  
 punished because she had 12 Children at a Birth: It  
 happen'd that shortly after, she her self was deliver'd  
 of the same number, all Sons; at which she was much  
 concern'd, as fearing the same scandal; and therefore  
 (her Husband being then absent) commanded her  
 Nurse to kill 11 of them; who, accordingly, carry-  
 ing them secretly out in her Apron, was met by the  
 old Count, and asked, what she had there? The  
 Nurse replyed *Woe!pen* Whelps; he not contented  
 with that Answer examin'd farther, and forc'd her to  
 confess the whole Matter: Upon which he enjoyn'd  
 the Woman Secrecie, and dispos'd of the Children,  
 and six years after produc'd them all together to his  
 Lady and all their Friends, at a Feast he had made  
 for that purpose, and caus'd them all to be named  
*Woe!ps*, which after alter'd to *Guelphs*.

**BRUNSWICK**, *Brunopolis*, *Tulifurgium*, was first  
 built by *Tanguard* and *Bruno*, Dukes of *Saxony*, A. D.  
 861. since when it has been often enlarged, and is now  
 one of the most considerable of the *Hanse-towns*.  
 It is divided into five several Corporations, each of  
 which hath its Court of Judicature, but unite in Matters  
 relating to the common Interest. It is a rich and popu-  
 lous place, and drives a great Trade in Hides and Mum,  
 which is brew'd here by certain Persons who have the  
 Monopoly, and exported to several Countries. *Brun-*  
*swick* claims to be a free, Imperial City, and has several  
 times disputed with the Duke, who all along claim'd the  
 Sovereignty; on which account it has endur'd ma-  
 ny Sieges, the last of which was in 1671, when  
 it was taken by the present Duke, who has ever  
 since kept a good Guard, and built a Citadel, and other-  
 wise strongly fortifi'd it, tho' to the Injury of the City;  
 for the Merchants being displeas'd, have remov'd to o-  
 ther places. The Houses are well built, and the Town-  
 house is very magnificent: The form of the Town is  
 almost square, the River *Ocker* running through the  
 middle, and is 2 miles in circuit, and surrounded with  
 2 Walls and 2 Ditches. It is seated in a Plain, near  
 the Northern Bounds of the Country, and is distant  
 100 miles *Erfurdt*, and 40 from *Halberstadt* to the  
 North, 70 from the River *Eib* to the West, 60 from  
 the *Weser* to the East, and 60 from *Magdeburg* to the  
 West. Lat. 52. 20.

**WOLFENBUTTEL** stands upon the *Ocker*,  
 but 10 miles from *Brunswick* to the South. It is the  
 ancient Seat of the Dukes of *Brunswick*. It is divid-  
 ed into two parts, viz. *Arx Guelphica*, the Duke's Pa-  
 lace, and *Henrich Stadt*, the Town. In the Palace is  
 a Library exceeding well furnished with valuable  
 Books, founded by the late Duke *Augustus*; in the  
 Town, the new Church is remarkable, being an ad-  
 mirable Piece of Architecture, and in it are buried  
 21 Dukes and Dutchesles of *Brunswick*. It is defend-  
 ed with strong and impregnable Fortifications, and  
 secured by marshy Grounds.

**HANOVER**, *Hannovera*, call'd anciently *Lauen-*  
*roda*, and *Han-over*, from a Ferry over the River *Leina*,  
 on which it stands. 35 miles from *Brunswick* to the  
 West, and 25 from *Zeil* to the South. It is a strong  
 and populous City, once Imperial, but has long been  
 subject to its Prince. The Inhabitants are much En-  
 riched by four yearly Fairs held here: It is the Ca-  
 pital of the Territory of *Cuilenberg*.

**Göttingen**, a City seated on the River *Leina*, near the  
 Confines of *Hesse*, 10 miles from the *Weser*, 60 miles  
 from *Hannover* to the South, and 20 from *Cassil* to the  
 North-East.

**Hamelen**, seated on the River *Weser*, over which it  
 hath a Bridge at the Mouth of the *Hamel*, is a strong,  
 fortifi'd and well-garrison'd Town, being near the Con-  
 fines



sines of *Brunswick* toward *Westphalia*, and call'd the Key of this Duke's Dominions; it is distant 45 miles from *Gottingen* to the North, and near 30 from *Hanover* to the South. There is a Story of a strange Accident that, they say, happen'd in this Town on the 26th of *June*, 1284. of a Piper that undertook to rid them of Rats, with which they were very much annoy'd, which he did, it seems, by the power of his Musick; for at the sound of his Tabret and Pipe, all the Rats follow'd him out of the Town to the River, where they were drown'd. When he had done his Work, he return'd for his Pay, which the Towns men refused him, pretending it was too much for so little Work: Upon which he went away in a great Rage; and a Year after came again, and playing as before, all the Children follow'd him into the mouth of a Cave, on the top of a neighbouring Hill, and neither Piper nor Children were ever after heard of. This Story the Towns-men relate with great confidence, and there is still to be seen, near this Cave's mouth, a Monument of Stone, with an Inscription expressing the loss of 130 Children, swallow'd quick in that Cave.

*Grubenagen*, a Cattle near the River *Leina*, and about 12 miles from *Gottingen* to the North, has a Territory belonging to it, which is a Dukedom, but subject to the Duke of *Brunswick*; it is very woody, having been part of the *Hercynian* Forest, and abounds with Pine and Fir-trees. In this Province are rich Mines of Silver, Copper, Lead, and many sorts of Minerals. These Mines were first discover'd in the year 972. as the *Germans* relate, by a Hunter, who, having ty'd his Horse to a Bush and gone a little from him, at his return found a piece of Ore beat out of the Ground with his Hoof; this Hunter's name was *Remme*, whence the Mountain in which this Mine is, was call'd *Ramelsberg*. In 1045. other Mines were also discovered in the neighbouring Hills; and here are now many Towns inhabited only by Miners. The chief Town of this Dutchy is

*Einbeck*, seated at the Confluence of several small Rivulets, which a little lower fall into the *Leina*; it is distant 20 miles from *Gottingen*.

*Helmstadt*, a City built by *Charles* the Great, *Anno* 782. seated near the Borders of *Magdeburg*, and 24 miles from *Welfembüttel* to the East, wherein is an University founded by *Julius* Duke of *Brunswick-Wolfembüttel*, A. 1576. which is endow'd with large Privileges; particularly that its Rector should for ever have the Title and Dignity of Count Palatine, and has bred many eminent Men, particularly *J. Horstius Meibomius*, *Reineccius*, *Conringius*, &c.

*Goslar* stands upon the River *Gsa*, which falls into the *Ocker* near the Confines of *Heidefheim*, and is 40 miles distant from *Gottingen* to the N. and 25 from *Brunswick* to the S. it is a free and imperial City enjoying large Privileges. The Origine of this City was a Palace built by the Emp. *Hen. I.* The Trade of it is in cleansing, tempering and vending all sorts of Metals and Minerals dug in the neighbouring Countries.

The Counties of *BLACKENBURG*, *REINSTEIN* and *QUEIDLINBURG*, (together with *Harenstein*, *Stalberg* and *Schwartzburg* in the Upper *Saxony*, already described) were formerly one Province, and call'd *Hartingom*. It is a cold Country, and has Mountains, on which Snow lies till Midsummer; affords little Corn, but the Valleys are fill'd with Cattel and the Forests with Venison. The Inhabitants are thought the longest Livers in *Germany*, frequently arriving to the Age of 100 or 110 years. They have Mines of Iron in the Bowels of the Mountains, of which one here call'd *Bracken* or *Bruckberg*, is esteem'd the highest in *Germany*.

Between *Blackenburg* and *Elbingrode* is a remarkable Cave, call'd *Buman's Hole*, of which none can find the end, tho' many have travel'd very far in it. Large Bones are frequently found in it, and not many years since a Skeleton of a Man of prodigious Bulk was brought out among other Rarities. There goes a Story of a young Fellow, that seeking after his Cattel in this Cave lost his way, and wandering 8 days together in it, at his return his Hair was chang'd grey, and he told strange Stories of Spirits and Apparitions that he said he had met within it. Here are two great craggy Rocks not far from *Blackenburg* which naturally represent two Monks in their proper Habit, as exact as if they were carv'd out.

*Blackenburg* and *Reinstein*, are two small Counties which lie between *Halberstadt* and *Anhalt*. They both receive their names from Castles of which that of *Blackenburg* stands 36 miles from *Welfembüttel* to the South, and 25 miles from *Mansfeld* to the North, and is the Hunting-seat of the Duke of *Welfembüttel*. That of *Reinstein* is old and not considerable: Many other Castles hewn out of Rocks are to be found in these Countries, but are not regarded.

*Quedlinburg*, a small City, formerly a Hanse-town, now not considerable but for a *Lutheran* Nunnery, the Abbess whereof is of the House of *Austria*, and Lady of the City and a small Territory belonging to it. It is distant 8 miles from *Blackenburg* to the East, and 10 from *Halberstadt* to the South.

The Bishoprick of *HIDELSHEIM* lying between the two Rivers *Leina* and *Ocker*, is surrounded with the Territories of the Duke of *Brunswick*, and therefore much in his power, tho' properly under the Elector of *Cologne* as Administrator of *Hidelsheim*, to whom it was restor'd by the Treaty of *Brunswick* A.D. 1653. having been for many years before in the hands of the Duke of *Brunswick*. His Suffragan the Bishop, is the immediate Governor of this Country, and Protector of the City of *Hidelsheim*, which is a Hanse-town, and considerable on account of the great Trade in Corn, which they maintain. The Buildings are old and venerable, but neat enough: The Inhabitants are most of them *Lutherans*, tho' the Bishop be of the *Romish* Church, and the only one in *Brunswick*. It is distant 15 miles from *Hanover* to the South east, 50 from *Gottingen* to the North, 30 from *Zell* to the S. and 25 from *Brunswick* to the South-west.

*Peina*, a small City, stands on the River *Fuse*, about 12 miles from *Brunswick* to the West, and has a strong Castle, the Bulwark of this Bishoprick, on a Hill; a remarkable Battle was fought near it in 1553. between *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and *Albert* Marquis of *Brandenburg*, in which the former lost his life.

### The Dukedom of LUNENBURG,

Is bounded on the South with *Brunswick* on the North with the River *Elbe*, on the East with *Brandenburg*, and on the West with the Dutchy of *Bremen* and County of *Hze*; it is full of large Woods and Forests, which abound with Deer and other Game; other parts of the Country are Heath, barren and desert Lands of vast extent. The Inhabitants are the most rustical of all *Germany*.

The Government of the Dutchy of *Lunenburg* as has been already said in the description of *Brunswick*, hath been all along enjoy'd by the Descendants of *Henry* the Lion, and is at present united with that of *Brunswick*, under the Illustrious Prince *Ernest Augustus*, Duke and Elector of *Hanover*, *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*.

LUNEN-



**LUNENBURG** or *Luneburg*, *Lunenburgum*, a Hanse-town, and the principal City of this Sovereign Dutchy, is seated on the River *Ilmenow*, at the distance of 5 miles from the *Elb*, and 35 from *Lünebeck* to the South, 60 from *Brumswick* to the North, and 30 from *Hamburg* to the East. It is a fair City, of an oblong Form, and about two miles in circumference; the Streets are broad, and the Houses well built. The Town-hall is a handsome Building, over against which stands the Duke's Palace; the Bridge over the River is a very stately one. There are famous Salt Springs near the Town, out of which great store of Salt is brought, and is the Inhabitants a considerable Trade. The Castle that stands on an adjacent Mountain, call'd *Falkenberg*, they say, is 124 years older than the City, which was built by *Henry the Lion*, in 1150.

**L. L. L.**, the Capital of a Dutchy possessed by a Branch of the Family of *Lunenburg*, is seated on the River *Alde*, where the *Fuße* falls into it, 35 miles S. from *Lunenburg*, 25 N. from *Hanover*, and 25 N. E. from *Brumswick*. The Duke's Palace is a square Building, adorn'd with very pleasant Gardens, Orchards and Groves. It is round and was built A. D. 1435. In it are held the chief Courts of Judicature.

*Brumwick*, but 5 m. distant from *Lunenburg* to the N. was anciently a strong and very populous City, but now a Poor Village only. The Cathedral Church is the only one now left of 9 that were formerly in this Town, in which is still a College of 8 Residentiary Canons.

*Hamburg* is a strong Town upon the *Elb*, 30 miles West from *Lunenburg*; it has a Castle, and is the strongest Frontier of this Country: The Town is but thinly inhabited, and not considerable.

*Lüneburg*, a little neat Town in the midway between *Brumwick* and *Lüne*, was formerly call'd *Lüneburg*, and had its name of *Lüneburg* from a Monastery in the neighbourhood call'd *Oldenstadt*. In the year 1646, it was destroy'd by Fire, but is the greatest part rebuilt more splendid than formerly. The Inhabitants pretend, That the *English Saxons* went from hence, in a Ship of Timgilt, that was to be seen in the Market-place before the Fire was hung up in remembrance of it, by some of them that return'd.

*Walsede*, at first only a Monastery, built by one *Albrecht* Prince of *Anhalt*, A. 956, but now a considerable Town, driving a good Trade in Honey, Wax, Wool and Bees; it stands in a pleasant Valley encompass'd with Mountains and Woods, 25 miles from *Lüne* to the East near the Borders of *Ferdin*.

The Counties of *Hoya* and *Diepholt*, already described, are subject to the Duke of *Lunenburg*.

### The Dukedoms of BREMEN and FERDEN.

Eastward from *Lunenburg*, and between the Rivers *Elb* and *Weser*, lies the Dutchy of *Bremen*, which was formerly an Archbishoprick, and the whole Country subject to its Prelate till about the year 1644, this Country was conquer'd by the *Sweeds*, and by the Treaty of *Münster* the Archbishoprick of *Bremen*, with the Bishoprick of *Ferdin*, were granted to that King, and turn'd into a Dukedom: But tho' this is spoken of the Country in general, it is not meant of every part of it; for the City of *Bremen* is free and has a Territory of its own, the Citizens of *Hamburg* have the two Ports of *Ritzentattel* and *New Werck*, and a part of it belongs to the Dutchy of *Sax-Lunenburg* as will be seen more particularly in our Description.

The Soil of this Country is in the middle Parts sandy and barren Heath, but the outer part towards

the two Rivers is very fertile, and abounds with pleasant Fields and Meadows.

The Inhabitants are reckon'd as good Soldiers, as any in *Germany*; and 'tis said of the *Hussians*, the Inhabitants of that part of the Country that lies on the Sea-side, that they will fight and Drunk with the best Men in *Germany*.

**BREMEN**, *Brema* & *Bromens* Civitas, which gives name to this Dukedom, is a very considerable, large and well built City, seated in a fruitful Plain on the Banks of the *Weser*, 70 miles from *Lüne* to the West, and 60 from *Emden* to the East, 90 from *Münster* to the North, and 60 from *Hamburg* to the South-west. It is very strong, for besides the Walls and Castle, the situation affords them a good Defence, the low Grounds about it being easily overflowed from the *Weser*.

It is a free, imperial City, and reckon'd the third of the Hanse-towns. *Charles* the Great founded the Archbishoprick, and made it the Metropolis of the North. The Emperor *Henry V. A. 1111*, granted the Citizens great Privileges in reward of their valiant Performances in the Holy War. It receiv'd the Reformation in 1552, and zealously defended it against their Archbishop. Upon which account it was besieged by order of the Emperor *Charles V.* in the year 1547, but the Citizens so valiantly defended themselves, that *Gengen* Governour of *Zeeland*, who commanded in chief, was kill'd, and the Duke of *Brumwick*, who succeeded him, was forc'd at last to raise the Siege, after near a year's labour in vain. It is govern'd by four Burgo-Masters and 24 Common-Council men, who also judge all Law-suits between the Citizens. The River *Weser* divides it into two parts, of which that on the North-side is the Old City, and the other is call'd the New; these are join'd again by Wooden Bridges, the biggest of which has a crane-Engine on it that raises the Water and distributes it all over the Town. The Streets of the old Town are large and center in the Market-place, wherein stands an old Image of Gigantick Bulk, call'd *Statua Karolina*, on which is an ancient Inscription importing it to be a Testimonial of the Liberty granted by *Charles* the Great and other Emperors, to this City. These Statues have been set up in many Cities, and by the *Germans* (tho' with little reason, said to be the Image of a certain General nam'd *Reinold*, employ'd by *Charles* the Great in the Conquest of these Countries; in whose Honour he order'd these Statues to be set up, and made the Condition of their Tenure of certain Privileges. In the old Town stands also the Town-house and the ancient Cathedral Church dedicated to *S. John*, wherein they shew the Tomb, as they say, of *Willibrod*, an *English* Priest, who was sent over into *Germany* by *Egbert* Archbishop of *York*, at the request of *Charles* the Great, to convert these Infidels; who, after he had labour'd many years with great success, was made the first Archbishop of this See, and died A. D. 790. In the new Town are the Arsenal and the *Gymnasium* or small University; at first a Free-School, built soon after the Reformation, and endow'd by the Citizens; which encreasing by degrees, is now a noted University, and has educated several famous Men, particularly *Clitram*, *Pezelius*, *Pierius*, *Mat. Martinus*, and *Jo. Caccius*. This City, by means of the River, is much frequented with Merchant Ships from *Holland* and other Nations, by which they export their own Commodities Corn, Minerals, Wool, Timber, Fish, Leather, &c. and receive those of other Countries, which they, by the same River, transmit to the other Provinces of *Germany*. The Territory of this City extends about 8 or 10 miles round.



*Stade*, the next considerable City in this Dukedom, is situated on the River *Zwinge* near the *Elb*, in a fruitful Country and wholeſom Air, about 50 miles from *Bremen* to the N. and 25 from *Hamburg* to the W. It is a very ſtrong Place, being fortified with vaſt Ramparts, Bulwarks, and a ſtrong Caſtle: It has a commodious Haven, into which larger Ships can enter than are able to get up to *Hamburg*. This City hath been endow'd with great Privileges; particularly it was an *Aſylum*, or place of refuge for all Offenders, and had a right to demand a Toll of Ships paſſing up the *Elb*; beſides, it is a Hanſe-town: By all which means, no wonder it was once rich and populous. But it ſeems *Hamburg* out-ſtrip't it, and this place became ſo poor, that they were forc'd to ſell its great Privileges to that City, and put themſelves under the Protection of the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*, and it is now ſubject to the King of *Sweden*. It was anciently the Capital of a County ſubject to its own Earl, which was annex'd to the Archbiſhoprick by *Philip Duke of Schwaben* and Earl of *Stade*, about the year 1240. After its decay above-mentioned, our *Engliſh* Merchants, upon ſome Abule offer'd them at *Hamburg*, remov'd hither; which reviv'd its Trade, and in a little time made it again rich and populous, and it is at preſent in good condition. The Town is well built, and the Market-place, Town hall and Churches, are worth a Traveller's ſight.

*Buxtehude*, another Hanſe-town, is ſeated on the River *Eſſa* near the *Elb*, in a very fruitful and pleaſant Country, 15 miles from *Stade* to the W. and as many from *Hamburg* to the E. It is a Granary to *Hamburg*, that City receiving a great part of its Proviſions from this.

*Bremerſude*, a wall'd Town, on the Road betwixt *Bremen* and *Stade*, being diſtant 25 m. to the N. from the firſt, and 15 to the S. from the latter. It was once the Palace of the Archbiſhop, and has a Caſtle, wherein, becauſe it commands the neighbouring Plains, the *Sweeds* keep a good Garrifon. The Town is otherwiſe not conſiderable, having little or no Trade.

*Ottersberg*, a ſmall fortified Town defended by a ſtrong Caſtle, which was for ſometime the place of Reſidence of the Archbiſhop, ſtands 16 miles from *Bremen* to the Eaſt.

*Rutzenbittel* is a ſtrong Fort at the mouth of the *Elb*, 32 miles to the North-weſt from *Stade*, and not 10 miles from the utmoſt point of Land of this Country. It belongs to the *Hamburgers*, who have alſo another ſmall Fort near it, call'd *New-Werck*, and a ſmall Territory round them.

The Duke of *Sax-Lawenburg* is Lord of that part of this Country call'd *Hadelland*, which is the moſt N. E. part of it, but contains nothing conſiderable enough to deſerve a particular Deſcription. The extent of it the Reader may judge by the Map, when he knows that *Nukenhays* on the *Elb* and *Carlſtadt* on the *Weſer* belong to the *Sweed*. *Hadler*, which gives name to the Country, and *Otterſdorp*, are the two beſt Towns in it.

The Principality of *FERDEN* or *VERDEN*, formerly a Biſhoprick, and now ſubject to the *Sweed*, as aboveſaid, is ſituate next to *Lunenburg*, and bound-ed on the W. by the *Weſer*; it was made a Biſhoprick by *Charles the Great*. The chief Town of the ſame name ſtands upon the River *Aller*, which falls into the *Weſer*, and is diſtant 42 miles from *Zell* to the W. and 27 from *Bremen* to the Eaſt. It is ſupplied with all Foreign Commodities by Barges from *Bremen*: The City has nothing very conſiderable in it. It has been ſeveral times taken, viz. by Count *Tilly*, in 1626. by the Imperialiſts, in 1631. In 1676. it was ſeized by the Duke of *Lunenburg*, but reſtor'd to the *Sweed*, in 1629. to whom it ſtill remains.

*Rotenberg*, a ſmall City on the River *Weſen*, ſtands in the Bounds of this Principality and near the borders of it, 15 miles from *Ferden* to the North. It was at firſt the Biſhop's Palace, which was fortified in the year 1500. and the ſmall Village near it wall'd in and made a City; which ſince is conſiderably increas'd and grown a place of ſome Trade and well inhabited.

### The Cities of HAMBURG and LUBECK.

*HAMBURG*, that flouriſhing rich and populous City, is ſeated on the North-ſide of the River *Elb*, at the diſtance of 40 miles from *Lubeck* to the S. W. and 65 from *Bremen* to the N. E. and 30 from *Lunenburg* to the N. W. 60 from *Zell* to the N. and 72 from the mouth of the *Elb*; which River makes it a moſt commodious Haven, being ſo deep that Ships of very great Burden can come up to the very Walls of the Town, and the Tide flows up 16 miles above it. It is the chief Port and hath been long the greateſt Mart-town of *Germany*: The Haven is continually full of Ships, and the Exchange daily crowded with Merchants. The Town is divided into two parts, the old and the New, but both cloſe together and parted only by a Wall, and both well fortified. The Buildings are of Brick, and exceeding high and ſtately; the chief Church, formerly a Cathedral, is dedicated to *S. Peter*, and was built about 830. Several of the Earls of *Helfſtein* and *Schawenburg* lie buried in it. In *S. Catherine's Church* is a Pulpit of white Marble curiouſly carved, and adorn'd with Figures of Alabaſter and Ornaments of Gold. The Poor and Sick are extraordinarily well provided for in *Hamburg*, by the many Hoſpitals liberally endow'd, of which there are no leſs than 6 for the maintaining old, decrepit, poor People; for curing the Sick, for educating poor Children, to receive poor Strangers fallen ſick in Travelling, and for the maintenance of maimed Seamen: Beſides which, care is taken of the Widows and Children of thoſe that loſe their Lives in the Service of the Publick.

The Trade of the City conſiſts in all manner of Foreign Goods, as well as thoſe of the product of *Germany*, the former being receiv'd by Ships from all parts of the World, and from hence convey'd up the *Elb* to the heart of *Germany*; and the Commodities of the ſeveral parts of the Empire return'd by the ſame River, and transported to other Nations, to the great Profit of the Inhabitants, who are the Managers of this vaſt Traffick. Our *Engliſh* Merchants having brought great Profit to this City, are treated with great Civility and Reſpect, and have the Privilege of trying and deciding Controverſies among themſelves, before their own Reſident; and are permitted the free Exerciſe of their Religion, which is denied to other Nations. The Inhabitants, being *Lutherans*, forbid the Exerciſe of the Romiſh Religion.

This rich and powerful City is a free and imperial State, and independent of any power but the Emperor's, to whom they pay a ſmall Homage. They enact Laws, puniſh Criminals even to death, levy Taxes, make League and War as they pleaſe, by a Grant of the Emperor *Frederick I.* and confirm'd by *Ferdinand II.* The Citizens of *Hamburg* are exempted from all Tolls and Customs upon the *Elb*, betwixt their own City and the Ocean; notwithſtanding which, the King of *Denmark* has ſometimes compell'd their Ships to pay Toll at his Caſtle of *Gluckſtadt*, which occaſioned great Conteſts. This was made up in the year 1645. and the *Hamburgers* permitted to re-aſſume their ancient Privileges, upon the payment of 120000 *Rix Dollars* to that King.



The Government of this City is in its own Magistrates, who are 4 Burgomasters, 20 *Schepins* or Aldermen, and 12 Common-council, call'd *die Oberalten*, or chief Elders. These upon extraordinary Occasions call to their Assistance 60 more eminent Citizens, call'd *The Elders of the City*; and if it be too difficult a matter for them to determine, the whole Commonalty of Freemen are assembled. This City is able to arm 15000 Men.

It was taken by *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleswick* about the year 1200. who gave it *Albrecht* Earl of *Orlunda*, of whom the Citizens bought their Liberty, and so became a free State; which was several times confirm'd by the Earls of *Holslein* and *Schwerin*, his Posterity, to the last of that Family, who died A. 1459. after which, the Province of *Holslein* falling into the Hands of *Christian I.* King of *Denmark*, the *Hamburgers* contracted a League of Friendship with that Prince, whose Successors have often endeavour'd to have the Protection of this City, but could never obtain it. In the year 1510. the City of *Hamburg* was declared Free and Imperial by the Emperor *Maximilian* in the Diet, and the Duke of *Holslein* summon'd to make good his Pretensions to it, or renounce them for ever. In fine, the City has to this day preserv'd its Freedom, which it has been the better able to do, by reason of the continual Jealousies between the two Northern Crowns; for the *Swedes* being Master of the South-side of the *Elb*, as the *Danes* is of the North, what mischief this does them from *Gustavus*, will be reveng'd by the other from *Charles*. However, the *Dane* has several times fleec'd them; in the year 1679 he got 220000 *Rix Dollars* of them, to take them again into his Favour, as 'twas term'd in the Treaty; and in the year 1686. he again brought an Army and besieg'd it, but was bought off.

*LUBECK*, *Lubeca* & *Lubecum*, an Imperial City, and the Capital of all the *Hanse* towns, is conveniently seated near the Sea and on the Banks of the *Trave*, which having receiv'd the Waters of a lesser River into its Channel, form a kind of Marston round about the Walls, and passing through the City conveys Vessels of as large size as any that sail upon the *Baltick* up to the Town, which by that means, is a place of great Traffick. It was heretofore only a small Town, built by *Adolphus* Count of *Holslein*, under the Reign of the Emperor *Conrad III.* from whom it was taken by *Henry* the *Lyon* Duke of *Saxony*, afterwards conquer'd by *Waldemar* Duke of *Sleswick*; but being ill treated by the *Danes*, the Citizens expell'd them, and put themselves under the Protection of the Emperor *Frederick II.* who confirm'd it an imperial and free City, A. 1209. and it is at present one of the principal ones of *Germany*. It is distant 10 miles from the Coasts of the *Baltick* Sea, 37 from *Hamburg* to the North-east, and as many from *Wismer* to the West. The Streets are very fair and adorn'd with divers magnificent Buildings, the chief whereof are the Cathedral dedicated to *S. John*, the Collegiate Churches of the Virgin *Mary*, *S. James*, *S. Peter*, &c. It's Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Bremen*, was translated hither from *Oldenburg*, A. D. 1162. but the Bishops have been Protestants ever since the year 1561, when the Reformed Religion was introduc'd here by *Dietlerus* of *Reventlon*, and a Custom hath prevail'd, That the Administration of the Bishoprick of *Lubeck* should devolve as an *Appenage* or Inheritance on the younger Sons of the Duke of *Holslein Gostorp*, the shadow of an Election being only left to the Chapter, whence they are stiled Dukes of *Eurym*, from a Town about 4 miles from hence so called, wherein this Prelate usually Resides, and which was annexed to the Episcopal See by *Adolphus II.*

Count of *Holslein*, when it as yet retain'd the name of *Oldenburg*. The City is Govern'd by twelve Burgomasters, who are Civilians and Gentlemen. The Common-Council are compos'd of Lawyers and Merchants, Mechanicks being excluded. A remarkable Treaty of Peace was concluded at *Lubeck* between the Emperor and the King of *Denmark*, A. D. 1629.

The Duchy of *LATHENBURG* lyes on the Banks of the *Elb*, between the Dukedoms of *Holslein*, *Mecklenburg* and *Lunenburg*, and is subject to its own Duke, who is of the Family of the ancient Dukes of *Saxony*. The chief Town of the same Name is seated on the River *Elb*, 25 miles from *Lubeck* to the S. 35 from *Hamburg* to the East, and 15 from *Lunenburg* to the North. It is said to have been built by *Henry* the *Lyon* Duke of *Saxony*, and thence call'd *Leoburgum*; but in the Wars against that Prince it being much damaged, *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, who succeeded him, re-edified, enlarg'd and strengthened it, and gave it to *John* his Second Son, with this Duchy; from whence the last Duke of *Sax-Lawenburg* was descended, who dying in the year 1692. and leaving no Issue Male, the Succession to this Duchy hath been claim'd by the Elector of *Saxony* and other Princes.

*Ratzeburg*, seated on a Lake of the same name, 15 miles from *Lawenburg* to the North, and 12 from *Lubeck* to the South, is the See of a Bishop, under the Archbishop of *Bremen*, planted by *Henry* the *Lyon*, when he conquer'd these parts. It was subject to its Bishop before the Treaty of *Westphalia*, A. D. 1648. by which the Jurisdiction of it was divided between the Dukes of *Mecklenburg* and *Lawenburg*, the Town being given to the former, and the Castle to the latter. This Town receiv'd the *Augustan* Confession, A. 1566. It is the Capital of a Country of the same name, and the ancient Burial-place of the Dukes.

To this Duke, as hath been already said, some part of the Dukedom of *Bremen* is subject, as are also, *Frankenhausen*, *Sassenhausen*, and some other Towns on the *Elb*.

### The Dukedom of MECKLENBURG.

The Dukedom of *Mecklenburg* is situate between the Duchies of *Holslein* and *Sax-Lawenburg* to the West, the *Baltick* Sea to the North, *Pomerania* to the East, and *Brandenburg* to the South. It is a County reasonably large, and stor'd with Corn, Fruits, Fish and Fowl, but in an unpleasant Air, being not wholsom in the Summer, and extream Cold in the Winter: The ancient Inhabitants were the *Vandals*. At present the Country is divided between the two Dukes of *Swerin* and *Gustrow*. This Division was made in the year 1592. for the sakes of the two Sons of *John III.* the Eldest seated in *Swerin*, and the Youngest in *Gustrow*.

*Swerin*, seated upon a Lake of the same name, is distant 40 miles from the River *Elb* to the North, 20 from the *Baltick* Sea to the South, and 35 from *Lubeck* to the East: It was built by *Henry* the *Lyon*, A. D. 1163. who bestow'd it on *Guntzel* one of his Generals, with the Lordships belonging thereto, and made him Earl of *Swerin*, but his Family ending in 1355. it was annex'd to *Mecklenburg*. The Bishop's See, which had before been at *Mecklenburg*, was about the year 1250 remov'd to this City, at the request of *Henry*, who built the Cathedral and Library and endow'd it, since which time there was a continual Succession till the Treaty of *Munster*, when the Bishoprick was Seculariz'd. In this City the Duke of *Mecklenburg Swerin* keeps his usual Residence.

*Mecklenburg* is at present a small inconsiderable Village near *Wismar*, tho' anciently a large City, and gave name to this Dukedom. There are some little remains



Remains of Ruines to be seen for some miles round.

*Gustrow*, the place of Residence of the Duke of *Mecklenburg* *Gustrow*, is a strong well fortified Town, and stands 35 miles from *Swerin* to the East, and 18 from *Rostock* to the South.

*Rostock*, a Free Imperial City and Hanse-Town, but under the Protection of the Duke of *Mecklenburg*, is seated on the River *Warna*, which 8 miles below it falls into the *Baltick* Sea, and makes it a reasonable good Port, which was well frequented by Merchants Ships; but since the Treaty of *Munster* the *Sweeds* have built a Fort at the mouth of the River, and exact a Toll on all Ships that pass by, to the great decay of the Trade of this Town. An University was founded here by the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*, Anno 1419. which is now one of the most flourishing in *Germany*. It

stands 16 miles from *Gustrow* to the North and 36 from *Wismar* to the East.

*Wismar*, a Hanse-Town, is seated at the bottom of a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, 12 miles from *Swerin* to the N. *Henry de Mecklenburg* about the year 1266. establish'd the same manner of Government here as was at *Lubeck*, by which it quickly grew rich, and the Haven being convenient, it was made the Harbour of the Men of War belonging to the *Hanseatick* Society, and the Town very strongly fortified. This City was granted to the *Sweeds* by the Treaty of *Munster*, and was taken from him by the *Dane* in 1675. By the last Treaty of Peace between those two Princes, it was agreed to be deliver'd to the *Sweeds* upon payment of certain Sums of Money, which it seems are not yet paid for the Town still remains in the hands of the King of *Denmark*.

## CHAP. XIII.

### The Circle of WESTPHALIA.

THIS Circle lies on the West-side of the River *Weser*, from the German Ocean on the North, to the Province of *Hessen* on the South, and between the Lower *Saxony* on the East, and the *Netherlands* on the West. The utmost extent of it may be reckon'd about 200 miles from North to South, and from East to West in some parts 100. in others 150 miles; which Extents comprehends many Sovereignities, viz. the Principality of *East Frizeland*, and Bishopricks of *Munster*, *Osnabrug* and *Paderborn*; the Dutchies of *Cleeve* and *Fuliers* with several Smaller States, as is more particularly express'd in the Table annex'd.

It was anciently inhabited by the *Saxons*, and by them call'd *Westvelden*, from its situation on the West-side of the *Weser*, as the Country on the other side was call'd *Ost-velden*: From hence, some affirm, the *Saxons* came that Invaded *England*; and many Arguments, not altogether improbable, have been made by some Learned *Germans* to prove it. But since Mr. *Camden*, who was so indefatigable an Enquirer into, and so excellent a Judge of Antiquity, enclines to the common Opinion, that they came from the most Northern part of *Saxony*, it is most reasonable to be concluded by him, and reject the Arguments of others, how plausible soever they may seem.

When *Charles* the Great had conquer'd the *Saxons*, and planted Christianity among them, he erected several Bishopricks, to which he gave Lands for their support. In the part we are speaking of, we find three very considerable ones, besides that of *Liege*, who have Sovereign Princes; they were not made altogether so potent in his time, but encreas'd their Dominions at the general Partition that was made of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*, when *Henry* the *Lyon* was Proscrib'd; 'twas then that the Bishop of *Munster* enlarg'd his Country, and that the Archbishop of *Cologne* obtain'd that part of *Westphalia* which he still holds, and by that part of it styles himself Duke of *Westphalia*. The other Sovereignities are the County of *East Frizeland*, the County of *Oldenburg*, the Principality of *Minden*, the Counties of *Hoye*, *Lippe*, *Ravensburg*, &c. together with the Dutchy of *Cleeve*, *Fuliers* and *Berg*; all which have been erected at several times, upon several occasions, which we have not room here particularly to shew.

The Air, especially in the Northern part, is very

Cold, and great part of the Ground is Marshy, or Barren; however Corn and Pasture is produc'd in plenty, but the Fruit is very ordinary, and serves chiefly to feed the Hogs, whereof this Country hath good store, and of an excellent Kind; so that the Bacon which they send abroad, is very much esteem'd. The chief Rivers are the *Weser*, the *Eems*, the *Lippe*, the *Roer*, the *Aa*, &c. The Accommodations a Traveller may meet with here, is prettily enough express'd in this Distick, very common in *Germany*, viz.

*Hospitium Vile*, Groof Broot, dun Bier, lange Milen,  
*Sunt in Westphalia: Qui non vult credere*, Loop daer:

That is,

Who Travels in *Westphalia*'s sure to find, vile.  
Long Miles, small Beer, coarse Bread and Lodging

The Circle of *Westphalia* is thus divided;

The Bishoprick of *Munster*,  
wherein the chief Towns are

{ *Munster*,  
{ *Kuppenberg*,  
{ *Techt*,  
{ *Meppen*,  
{ *Tilligt*,  
{ *Koesfeldt*.

The Dutchy of *Westphalia*, subject to the Elector of *Cologne*. See the Division of it in the account of the Dominions of that Prince.

The Bishoprick of *Osnabrug*,

{ *Osnabrug*,  
{ *Iburg*.

The Bishoprick of *Paderborn*,

{ *Paderborn*,  
{ *Lippstadt*,  
{ *Warburg*.

The Abbey of *Corbey*,

{ *Hexter*,  
{ *Embsen*,

County of *East Frizeland*,

{ *Norden*,  
{ *Aurich*,  
{ *Eens*,  
{ *Fever*.

The County of *Oldenburg*,

{ *Oldenburg*,

The Principality of *Minden*,

{ *Minden*,  
{ *Petershagen*, C.

The County of *Bentham*,

*Bentham*.



The Dukedom of Cleve,	{ Cleve.	Orfer,
	{ Embrich,	Calhar,
	{ Riet,	Santen,
	{ West,	Meurs, C.
	{ Genev.	
The Dutchy of Juliers,	{ Dusseld.	See.
	{ Juliers, or Gulick,	
	{ Aken, or Aix la Chapelle,	
The Dutchy of Berg,	{ Dusseld.	
	{ Dusseld.	
The County of Mark,	{ Dortmund,	
	{ Uina,	
	{ Ham,	
	{ Soest.	
The County of Lippe,	{ Lippe,	
	{ Dittmold,	
	{ Horn.	
	{ Lemgo.	
The County of Ravensburg,	{ Ravensburg,	
	{ Herolden,	
	{ Bielefeld.	
The County of Schaumburg,	{ Schaumburg,	
	{ Saxhagen,	
	{ Buckenburg,	
	{ Oldendorf.	
The Counties of	{ Hye,	
	{ Diepholt,	
	{ Lingen,	
	{ Diemenhorst,	
	{ Teckenburg,	
	{ Steinfurt,	
	{ Ravensstein.	
	{ Ravensstein.	

THE BISHOPRICK of MUNSTER is stretched out on both sides the River *Eems*, from the borders of the County of *Emden* on the North, to the Dutchy of *Cleve*, County of *Mark*, and Dutchy of *Westphalia* on the South, being in length near 100 miles. On the East it is bounded by the Counties of *Diemenhorst*, & *Diepholt*, the Bishopricks of *Osnabrug* and *Paderborn*, and the Counties of *Ravensburg* and *Lippe*. On the West it hath the Province of *Overissel*, the County of *Bentheim*, and the County of *Zutphen*, containing in breadth in some parts 60. in others 40. and in some parts not above 20 miles. This Province is entirely subject to the Bishop, who is a Count of the Empire, and a powerful Prince, being able to maintain an Army of 15000 Men. The chief Cities and Towns in his Dominions are these, viz.

MUNSTER, *Monasterium*, olim *Minimogeda*, which is reckon'd the Capital of the Circle of *Westphalia*, takes its name from a Monastery built here by *Charles* the Great. It is pleasantly situated in a large Plain, on the Banks of the River *Aa*, which falls into the *Eems*, a little below the Town. This was an Imperial City and Hanse-Town, but hath been subject to the Bishop since 1651. It is adorn'd with a stately Cathedral, a College belonging to the Jesuits, and other fair Buildings; and is Fortified with a strong Castle and regular Out-works. An Insurrection of the *Anabaptists* here in the last Age was very remarkable; for these furious Enthusiasticks, under the Conduct of a Sanctified Taylor, call'd *John* of *Lyden*, seized the City, turn'd out the Magistrates, and Lorded it at pleasure for a Year's time: But at last their doughty Prince was taken Prisoner, and duly rewarded with a publick Execution, whereby the publick Peace was restor'd in the Year 1534. And in this Age, this City hath been made famous by a memo-

able Treaty in it held, and a Peace concluded between the Emperor and Princes of *Germany*, which put an end to the Civil War first began between the Emperor and the Elector Palatine, but had at last engag'd most of the Princes, and miserably barras'd all *Germany*, from about the year 1618. till 1648. in which year this *Westphalian* Peace was made. *Munster* stands 90 miles South from the *German* Ocean, 60 miles West from the River *Weser*, as many East from the *Rhine*, and 120 North from the *Maine*, in the Lat. of 52 deg. and Longit. 27 deg.

*Kloppenburg* stands at the head of the little River *Soeste*, near the borders of the County of *Oldenburg*, 65 miles North from *Munster*. It is a strong Fortified Town, but was taken by the *Swedes* in 1635. and recover'd soon after by the Bishop, to whom it is still subject.

*Teche*, the Capital of a small Barony, formerly govern'd by its own Lord, stands near the borders of the County of *Deipholt*, 15 miles S. E. from *Kloppenburg*.

*Meppen*, a strong fortified Town, stands on the River *Hase*, where it falls into the *Embs*, 25 miles S. E. from *Kloppenburg*. It was taken by the *Dutch* in 1557. but regain'd, and since, together with *Kloppenburg*, and another Fort call'd *Haselumen*, made over to the Bishop of *Munster*, by the Counts of *Tecklenburg*, to whom they then belonged.

*Tilligt*, which stands near the *Embs*, 10 miles West from *Munster*, was made famous by a Convention of the States of *Munster*, held in it, in 1532.

*Koelsfeldt* is a small Hanse-Town on the River *Berke*, 20 miles East from *Munster*.

The County of *Emden*, *Emmerlandt*, or *EAST-FRIESLAND*, is bounded on the North and East by the *German* Ocean, on the West by the County of *Oldenburg*, and on the South by the Bishoprick of *Munster*. This was part of the Kingdom of the ancient *Frisons*; but this part was made a Province of *Germany* by *Charles* the Great, and in 1453. *Ulrich* the Governor of it was made Count, and his Family have since been Princes of it to the present Count *Christian* *Everard*.

EMBDEN, *Embda*, *Amasia* aut *Amisia*, the Capital of *East Frizeland*, is seated near the mouth of the River *Embs*, and on the Bay call'd *Dollart*, at the distance of 25 miles from *Groningen* to the East, 60 from *Bremen* to the West, and 100 from *Munster* to the North. It hath a very convenient and deep Haven, and the People are of an industrious nature, it is therefore a place of good Trade, and much resorted to by Merchant Ships from Foreign parts: Our Merchants, upon their removal from *Antwerp*, brought hither the Staple, or chief Ware-house for *English* Cloth, but being ill-us'd, remov'd it to *Hamburg*. The Houses here are generally well-built, and the *Stadthuys*, or Town-hall, is very Magnificent. This City was formerly subject to the Count of *Frizeland*, but it hath thrown off his Authority, and is now a Free-State, under the Protection of the *Hollanders*. It is defended by two strong Castles, a Wall with Bastions and regular Bulwarks, and a double Ditch round about.

*Norden*, a pleasant Port-Town, about 15 miles N. from *Emden*, is well-built, but not fortified. The Harbour is not deep enough to receive Ships of any great Burden.

*Aurick*, in the middle between *Emden* and *Norden*, is the place where the Supreme Court of Judicature for this County is held. Here is a Castle belonging to the Count, and a slight Wall round the Town.

*Elens*, 12 miles North from *Norden*, is defended by a strong Castle.



*Münster* is a good large Town, about 7 or 8 miles West from *Esens*, both formerly Baronies, but devolved on the Count of *Friesland*. This was once a place of good Trade, but now much declined.

*Jever*, about 10 miles West from *Esens*, is a fair Town, and gives Title to a Baron. It has a good strong Castle, and by means of the River *Hoeck*, which falls into the Ocean 10 miles below, it hath acquir'd a pretty good Trade. This Baronny is now subject to the Count of *Oldenburg*.

On the West of *Embsen* lyes the County of *OLDENBURG*, a poor barren Country, extended along the Banks of the *Weser*, near 50 miles in length, and 25 in breadth. Its chief Town of the same name is seated on the River *Hunte*, at the distance of 35 miles from *Embsen* to the West, and as many from *Bremen* to the East. It is well Fortified with Walls and Ditches, and a strong well-built Castle, which is the Seat of its Earl. The Houses are very mean, but the place hath a pretty good Trade by the means of the River, which falling into the *Weser*, Ships of Burden can come up into the Town.

*DELMENHORST*, the Capital of a small County, lying next to *Oldenburg* on the South-east, is a strong fortified Town, but otherwise not considerable. It stands upon the River *Dilma*, 16 miles West from *Oldenburg*, and 10 East from *Bremen*.

*DIEPHLOT*, a small County, lyes on the South of *Delmenhorst*, and between *Münster* on the West, and *Hoye* on the East. It is now subject to the Duke of *Lunenburg*. The chief Town of the same name is seated near the Lake call'd *Dumnor*, out of which the River *Hunte* arises, and passes by this Town, which is distant 40 miles from *Oldenburg* to the South, and 35 from the *Weser* to the West.

*HOYE*, a County on the Banks of the *Weser*, East of *Diepholt*, and South of *Bremen*, was Govern'd by its own Lords, til 1582. when the last Count dying, it was parted among several Princes. *Hoye*, the chief Town, (a small place, but well Fortified) with *Nieburg*, *Lavenaw*, and *Bruchausen*, became subject to the Duke of *Lunenburg*; the Forts of *Selzenaw*, *Ezenburg*, and 5 more Towns, to the House of *Brunswick*; and *Freundenburg* and *Ucht* to the Landgrave of *Hesse*.

*MINDEN*, the Capital of a small Principality, is a large rich Hanse-Town, standing on the *Weser*, 55 miles from *Bremen* to the South, and 35 from *Osnabrug* to the East. This Principality was given to the Elector of *Brandenburg* at the Treaty of *Münster*. It is a good Country, and produces plenty of Corn; the extent of it is about 25 miles in length, and 20 in breadth.

The Bishoprick of *OSNABRUCK* lyes between *Minden* on the East, and *Münster* on the West, *Diepholt* on the North, and *Ravensburg* on the South, and in the middle between the two Rivers *Weser* and *Embs*. Its extent from North to South is 45 miles, and from East to West 25 miles. It is a fruitful Country, and subject to its Bishop, who is a Count of the Empire.

*Osnabruck*, *Osenburg*, *Osnabrugum*, aut *Osnabrucum*, the Capital, is subject to the Bishop, though call'd a Hanse-Town. It stands upon the River *Hase* in a fruitful Valley, 30 miles from *Münster* to the North-east, and 60 from *Oldenburg* to the South; it has a Fort for its defence call'd *S. Peter's Castle*. This City was Honour'd with a Treaty of Peace between the Emperor and the King of *Sweden*, in the year 1648. wherein an Agreement was made concerning all the Affairs of the Protestants, and the Bishopricks made

alternative between the *Roman* Catholicks and *Lutherans*, in favour of the House of *Brunswick*.

*Iburg*, stands about 12 miles South from the City, and is the place where the Bishop resides.

*TECKLENBURG*, a strong Castle and Fort, stands about 10 miles West from *Osnabrug*, and is the Capital of a small County, formerly under its own Counts; now subject to that of *Bentham*.

*SCAUMBURG*, or *Schaumburg*, an old Castle on the top of a Hill, on the North-side of the *Weser* 45 miles from *Hoye* to the South, and 50 from *Osnabrug*, and 16 from *Minden* to the East, gives name to a County of 25 miles extent from North to South, and 18 from East to West, which lies on the East of *Minden*, and South of *Hoye*; the River *Weser* passes cross it; besides which it is water'd with the Rivers *Hammel*, *Awe*, *Cassaw* and *Exter*; these yeild the Inhabitants abundance of Fish, and the Country plenty of Corn, Hay, Timber and Venison: Here are also Quarries of Stone, which they send abroad, and some Mines of Allum, Coal, &c. This County is subject to the house of *Lippe*.

*Saxenbagen*, or *Sassenbagen*, a Fort and Town in the most Northern part of this County.

*Buckenburg*, the Seat of the second Branch of the House of *Lippe*, who are thence stil'd Counts of *Lippe Bukenburg*.

*Oldenburg*, on the banks of the *Weser*, a small but strong Town, 5 miles from *Schaumburg*; it repell'd the Imperial Forces in 1633. but was taken by them in 1639. The Counts of *Lippe* have a Custom-house here to receive Duty paid by all Vessels that pass this way.

*LIPPE*, or *Liepstadt*, is a very strong and well fortified Town, seated on the River *Lippe*, 45 miles from *Osnabrug* to the South, and 35 from *Münster* to the East. This place was besieg'd by the *French* in the War of 1674. but defended it self so well that they were forc'd to raise the Siege. It is the Capital of a Country which lies between *Ravensburg* to the North, and *Paderborn* to the South, a narrow Tract of Land, in length from East to West about 50 miles, and in breadth 15 or 20. Its Counts are of a very ancient Family, and are not only Lords of this County, but of several other places in the Neighbourhood.

*Diethmold*, or *Dietmelle*, as 'tis writ in the Maps, 30 miles from *Lippe* to the North-east, and 25 from *Minden* to the South, is the place of Residence of the Eldest House of *Lippe*, but not considerable on any other account.

*Horn*, an old Town near *Diethmold*, once subject to Counts of its own, now to the Count of *Lippe*.

*Lemgow*, a rich and neat Hanse-Town on the River *Pega*, 7 miles North from *Dietmelle*, once subject to the Bishop of *Paderborn*, by whom made over to the Counts of *Lippe*, on whom it hath still some dependence, but hath obtained many Privileges.

The Bishoprick of *PADERBORN* is bounded on the North with *Lippe*, on the South with *Hesse Cassel* and *Waldeck*, and on the West with *Münster* and *Westphalia*, and contains in it 24 Market-Towns, 20 Castles, 54 Parishes, and 16 Monasteries, which are all subject to the Bishop.

*PADERBORN*, *Paderborna*, aut *Padraborra*, stands near the source of the River *Lippe*, from whence it is distant only 16 miles to the South, 30 from *Corway*, 45 from *Cassel* to the North-west, and 50 from *Münster* to the South-east, and is handsomly built and well fortified. The Emperor *Charlemagne* made it an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Mentz*, and held a Convention or Parliament there, A. C. 777. It was a free City, and one of the Hanseatick Society; but the Bishop hath been Temporal as well as Spiritual



Lord of it, and of the whole Diocets, ever since the year 1604. *Theodore of Sionemburg*, Bishop of *Paderborn* built the adjacent Castle of *Neuhause* or *Nienhus* near the confluence of the *Lippe* and the *Aime*, A. D. 1590, which serves as an Episcopal Palace; he also founded an University in the City, in 1592.

*Lippstadt*, about 5 miles from *Paderborn*, standing on the edge of a great Heath call'd *die Senne*, has a stately Castle belonging to the Dean and Chapter of *Paderborn*, who are Lords of the Town. The River *Lippe* springs near this Castle.

*Warburg*, a Hanse-Town, is seated in a fruitful Country on the River *Dymel*, 25 miles South-east from *Paderborn*. Some neighbouring Mines of Iron and Lead afford this Town a good Trade.

Between the Bishoprick of *Paderborn* and the River *Weser*, lies the Territory of the Abbey of *CORBEY*, founded by the Emperor *Lewis I.* It is about 15 or 16 miles in length, and in it, besides other Towns, stands

*Hexter*, a fair City on the *Weser*, 25 miles North from *Cassel*, and directly West from *Paderborn*, which by the means of the River, is a place of good Trade.

Besides this Territory, the Island of *Rugen* in *Pomerania* was given to this Abbey by the Emperor *Lotharius*, A. 824.

And now having survey'd all the Countries on the East of *Westphalia*, we must cross *Munster*, and before we come to *Cleeve* and its Dependances, view

The Earldom of *BENTHEM*, which lies on the West-side of the Bishoprick of *Munster*, stretching out into the Province of *Overijssel*, wherewith it is surrounded on all the other sides. It is in length near 40 miles, and in breadth about 15. The chief Town

*Bentheim*, stands near the South-border of the County, 30 miles North-east from *Munster*, 36 East from *Ostfildrig*, and 40 West from *Deventer*. It is fortified and has a Castle, but is a place of no Trade, being seated in a Wood and far from a River.

*LINGEN*, a strong Town on the River *Embs*, 20 miles North from *Munster*, is subject to the Prince of *Orange*; tho' the Country, of which it is Capital, be under the Bishop of *Munster*.

*STEINFURT* or *Borchstendord*, is also a small County, lying South of *Bentheim*, to whose Earl it is now subject, tho' formerly it had Lords of its own. The chief Town stands 20 miles North from *Munster*.

The Dutchies of *CLEEVE* and *JULIERS*, with their dependencies the Counties of *MARCK*, *BERG*, *RAVENSBURG* and *RAVENSTEIN*, lie mostly on the banks of the *Rhine*, but are so intermixt with other Countries, that it is difficult to give the particular Limits. In general, they are bounded on the North by *Guelderland* and *Munster*, on the South by the Archbishoprick of *Trier*, on the E. by *Hesse* and *Westphalia*, and on the W. by *Brabant*, *Liege* and *Limburg*. The principal Rivers here are the *Rhine*, the *Roer*, and the *Lippe*; which two latter fall into the *Rhine*, the first at *Duisburg*, and the last at *Wesel*. The Air is cold, but the Soil is fruitful in Corn, and yields some Pasture.

The Right of succeeding to these Territories, upon the death of *Joan-William* the last Duke, without Issue, in 1607, gave occasion to great Commotions in *Germany*; for the Elector of *Brandenburg*, the Duke of *Neuburg*, the Duke of *Deuxponts*, the Duke of *Saxony*, and the Marquiss of *Burgaw*, having all married Sisters or Daughters of the Sisters of *Joan-William*, all claim'd to succeed. But the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Duke of *Neuburg* only maintain'd their Claim by Force of Arms; the former, by the Assistance of the *Hollanders*, and the latter by that of the *Spaniards*. Until, at length, an Agreement was made, That *Juliers*

and *Berg*, with the small Territory of *Ravenstein* should be granted to the Duke of *Neuburg*, and that the Elector of *Brandenburg* should for ever enjoy the Dutchy of *Cleeve* and the Counties of *Marck* and *Ravensburg*; under which Princes they at present remain.

The Dutchy of *Cleeve* is a Country generally woody and hilly, but however produces divers sorts of Grain. It lies on both sides of the *Rhine*, between *Munster* on the East, *Guelderland* on the West, *Zutphen* on the North, and *Juliers* on the South, extending about 40 miles from North to South, and 25 from East to West.

The City *CLEEVE*, call'd *Clef* by the *German*, and *Clivia* aut *Clivis* in *Lat.* which gives name to the Country, (a very ancient Place, and supposed to have been founded by the *Romans*) stands on a Hill, among craggy Cliffs, between the *Rhine* and the *Maes*, about 12 miles South-east from *Nimeguen*, 70 West from *Munster*, and 60 North-west from *Cologne*. It is small, but well Peopled; near it are seen an old square Tower and other remains of Buildings, which shew it to have been formerly much larger. The Castle is old and not very strong, but pleasantly seated, and affords a delightful Prospect from the top of *Swart-tower*. The private Houses are but mean, and the chief publick ones are the great Church and two Monasteries. On the West-side of the Town is a very pleasant Park call'd *Prince Maurice's*, wherco are many Ponds and Water-works, above which is the high Hill call'd *Steenberg*, from whence *Utrecht* with 4 more Cities and several great Towns may be seen, through 12 *Vists* or strait Walks cut through the Wood. On the East of the Town stands the Prince's House, in which are many Rarities and Monuments of Antiquity.

*Embrick*, on the Eastern banks of the *Rhine*, 8 miles from *Cleeve* to the East, and

*Rees*, on the banks of the same River, about 10 miles higher, are both well fortified.

*Gennep*, at the mouth of the *Nierse*, where it falls into the *Maes*, near the borders of *Guelderland*, 10 miles South-west from *Cleeve*, was anciently a large and populous City, and well fortified; but in the late Wars its Fortifications were demolished, and the Town is much decreas'd and now of small moment, tho' conveniently seated for Trade.

*Goch* on the *Nierse*, 6 or 7 miles above *Gennep*, a small Town of no great Strength nor Traffick. All these four, tho' seated in the Dutchy of *Cleeve*, have been taken from it at several times by the *Dutch*, and are now subject to them.

*Calcar*, a place of great Strength, and built by the Dukes of *Cleeve* for a Refuge against any sudden approach of an Enemy, is seated near the Western Bank of the *Rhine* over against *Rees*, about 10 miles distant from *Cleeves* to the South-east. It quickly grew populous and rich by a Linnen-trade which they managed, and since they have been noted for making Malt, which is now a great Trade in this Town. The Town-house, *S. Nicholas* Church, and the Monastery of the Dominicans, are stately Buildings.

*Santen*, on the Western Bank of the *Rhine*, is a Town of very great Antiquity, but not considerable on any other account; it is said to be the place where the *Theban* Legion suffer'd Martyrdom under the Emperor *Maximianus*, and therefore call'd *Santen*, Holy.

*Wesel*, call'd *Nether Wesel* for distinction, seated in a fair Plain on the Eastern Bank of the *Rhine* near the mouth of the River *Lippe*, 25 miles distant from *Cleeve* to the South-west, and near 10 from *Santen* to the West, is a strong, populous and well-built City, reckon'd the largest and best in this Dutchy. It is a Hanse-Town, and was Imperial, but exempted by the Dukes of *Cleeve*, of whose Dukedom it was always



always a Member. It was taken and plunder'd by the French in the late War; and, the Burgers being rich, they exacted intolerable Contributions from them. Here is an Hospital for decrepit, old People, founded by *H. Oliver Baers*, and nobly endow'd by him and his Son.

*Duisburg*, a small City on the *Rher*, which a little lower falls into the *Rhine*, and on the Confines of *Cleve* and *Bergen*, 15 miles above *Wesel*, 35 South-west from *Cleve*, 15 from *Dusseldorp*, and 35 from *Cologne* to the North-east. It was once an Imperial City, but now subject to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, as Duke of *Cleve*, tho' the Burgers still claim their former Liberty. Here were formerly Fairs held yearly, which brought great Trade to the Town. An University is establish'd here by the D. of *Brandenburg*, which was open'd Oct. 14. 1655.

*Meurs*, a small City, the Capital of an Earldom, lying between the Dutchy of *Cleves* and the Archbishoprick of *Cologne*, belongs to the Prince of *Orange*, to whom it was given in 1600. by the last Countess; but is claimed by the Duke of *Brandenburg*, as part of the Dutchy of *Cleve*. In this Earldom stands also

*Osroy*, a small but strong Town, taken from the Dutch in 1634. by the Prince of *Orange*, and by the French in 1672. but abandon'd by them in 1674.

The Dukedom of *JULIERS* lies between the Rivers *Maes* and *Rhine*, bounded on the North by the Spanish *Guelde* and *Cleeve*, on the South by *Luxemburg* and *Trier*, on the East by the Bishoprick of *Cologne*, and on the West by *Liege* and *Limburg*, extending about 60 miles in Length and 30 in Breadth. The Country is fruitful in Corn, Hay and Wood, and yields also *Wood* for Dying, whereof the Inhabitants make great Profit; and an excellent Breed of Horses.

*JULIERS*, or *GULICK*, as the Inhabitants call it, *Juliacum*, the Capital of this Dutchy, is an ancient City seated on the River *Rher*, at the distance of 50 miles from *Cleeve* to the South, 25 from *Cologne* to the West, and 25 from *Mastricht* to the East. It is a small place, but neatly built; the Houses are of Brick, and the Streets broad and even: The Citadel is large, and render'd as strong as the best Ingeneers of *Germany* could make it: Notwithstanding which, it has been often taken in the present Age, but at last restor'd to the Duke of *Neuburg*, according to the Articles of the *Pyrenean* Treaty.

*Aken* or *Aquisgranum*, call'd *AIX LA CHAPELLE* by the French, anciently a very considerable Place, having been the Seat of the Emperor *Charlemain*, stands near the Borders of this Dutchy of *Juliers* and that of *Limburg*; it is distant 15 miles from *Juliers* to the South-west, 16 from *Mastricht* to the East, and 36 from *Cologne* to the West. It is an imperial and free City, and a very large beautiful Place; and, by reason of the hot Baths in it, which cause a great Resort thither, very populous and rich. The chief publick Buildings are the Collegiate Church and the Senate-house; the former was built by *Charles the Great*, who was buried in it, and is a very curious piece of Architecture of the *Gothick* Order: At the West-end stands a high Steeple with several Pyramids, and in the middle a Cupola, the inside whereof is adorn'd with a great number of Pillars of white Marble and of Brass gilt; also many gilded Statues, Brasses, Doors and Partitions; and the Roof is beautified with Mosaick Work. In this Church are kept many Relicks, which are visited by zealous Pilgrims. The Senate-house is a very stately Fabrick, built A.D. 1533. and adorn'd with the Statues of all the Emperors; the upper Story of it is only one Room of 162. foot in length and 60 in breadth, wherein the Emperors used to re-

ceive their first Crown of Iron, and entertain the Electors and others that attended at their Coronations.

The Baths are much esteem'd for their Virtue in curing Chronical Dilempers. It is said they were first found out by *Serinius Granus*, Lieutenant-General of *Gallia Belgica*, about the year of Christ, 53. who beautified them, and built a Palace near 'em. But the Place being afterwards destroy'd by *Attila*, the Baths lay buried till the time of *Charles the Great*, whose Horse (as he was Hunting here) accidentally strook his Foot into one of them, which the Emperor observing, caus'd them to be search'd out and rebuilt, and being much taken with the Pleasure of the place, built a Royal Palace and a large Town. Of these Baths there are Three, the chief of which is the very same that *Charles the Great* used often, with his Sons and Attendants, to swim in: It is now divided into many Apartments. These Waters rise so hot, that they cool them in 12 Houses before they are used. There are also others in the other part of the Town, but not so hot. Near the Town are many Mines of Lead, Sulpher, Vitriol and Iron, &c. In 1656 a great Fire happen'd in this City, which burnt down 20 Churches and 5000 Dwellings, (by which the Bigness of this Town may be guess'd at) which were quickly rebuilt, and it is now more large and beautiful. In 1668. a Treaty was held here, and Peace concluded between the Kings of *France* and *Spain*.

In the Village *Borsell* or *Porsetum*, about a Furlong South from *Aken*, are many other hot Springs, which are by Pipes convey'd into 28 Baths; these Waters are even hotter than those at *Aken*.

*Duren* on the River *Rher*, 15 miles E. from *Aix la Chappelle*, and 10 S. from *Juliers*, is a small City; the Building neat and uniform, with a clear Stream of Water running in the middle. It was made Imperial by *Charles IV.* and burnt by *Charles V.* but being rebuilt, is now subject to the Duke of *Neuburg*. This place pretends to great Antiquity, and according to *Cluverius*, it was the ancient *Marcodurum*.

*DUSSELDORP*, *Dusseldorpium*, is a very pleasant and well fortifi'd City on the Banks of the *Rhine*, 5 miles below *Cologne* to the North, and as many from *Juliers* to the North-east. It is the Metropolis of the Dukedom of *BERG*, which is extended along the banks of the *Rhine*, about 50 miles in length, and in breadth about 20, being craggy and mountainous, and therefore not very full of Inhabitants. The City is pleasantly seated upon the *Rhine*, and adorn'd with some publick Buildings, which make a delicate shew to the River, especially the Palace of the Duke of *Neuburg*, who commonly resides here. It was anciently an Imperial City and a place of much Traffick, and the yearly Fairs, since remov'd to *Frankfort*, were kept in it.

*DORTMOND*, *Tremonia*, aut *Dormania*, is seated on the River *Empfer*, almost in the midst between those of the *Lippe* and the *Rher*, scarcely distant 6 miles from both, as also from the Territories of the Bishoprick of *Munster* to the South; 30 from the City of *Munster*, 26 from *Soest* to the West, and 35 from *Dusseldorp* to the North-east. It is a free Imperial City, and one of the Hanse-Towns under the Protection of the Elector of *Brandenburg*; and is a small, but rich and populous Place. It is the Metropolis of the County of *MARK*, a Country of about 40 miles in length and 20 in breadth, bounded on the North by the Rivers *Empfer* and *Lippe*, which part it from *Munster*, on the West and South by the Dutchy of *Bergen*, and on the East by *Westphalia*. The Soil is like that of *Westphalia*, not very fruitful.

*Ums*, a poor Hanse-Town, but formerly a place of good Trade, till the War between the Dukes of *Brandenburg* and *Neuburg*, for the Right of these Coun-

tries,



tries, disturb'd and spoil'd it, stands 10 miles from *Darmund* to the East.

Hav. another poor Hanse-Town, stands 10 miles from *Ulm* to the North, on the Road between *Hol-land* and *Brandenburg*. The Country about it yields more of Corn, Hemp and Flax.

*Sege*, a large and populous City, seated in the neck of Land belonging to this County that shoots into *Westphalia*, 30 miles from *Darmund* to the East, and as many from *Munster* to the South. It is esteem'd the largest City in *Westphalia*, except *Munster*, fortified with a double Wall, whereon are 30 Watch-Towers, and a large deep Ditch. In it are 10 Parishes and many Churches, one of which is a Collegiate, and under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Cologne*. This City

has many Privileges and a Court of Judicature within it self, but under the Protection of the Elector of *Brandenburg*, to whom this County is subject.

*RAVENSBERG*, *Ravensberga*, a small Town, the Principal of a County, lying between *Osnaburg*, *Minden*, *Munster* and *Lippe*, stands on a Hill at the distance of 16 miles from *Osnaburg* to the South, about 25 from *Paderborn* to the North-west, and 30 from *Munster* to the East toward *Minden*.

*RAVESTEIN*, *Ravasteinum*, is a small Town seated on the River *Maes*, 20 m. W. from *Cleeve*, 20 N. E. from *Bolduck*, and 15 S. W. from *Nimeguen*; the Capital of a small Territory bearing the Title of a Lordship, appertaining to the Jurisdiction of the D. of *Neuburg*, but is at present possess'd by the *Hollanders*.

*The Biscoprick of Liege is usually reckon'd part of this Circle, but being spoken of already in the Description of the Netherlands, it must be omitted here.*

---

SWITZER.

---



# SWITZERLAND.

By Rob. Falconer.

## CHAP. I.

Switzerland, Helvetia, or the Swiss-Cantons, together with their Allies and Subjects, in general.

For a Map, consult that of Germany, wherein Swisserland is comprehended.

**T**HIS Country was anciently inhabited by the *Helvetii*, a People, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and *Tacitus*, of *Gallia Celtica*; who were divided into the *Ambrones*, *Tigurini*, *Tugeni*, and *Urbegei*; and were bounded on the North by the *Rauraci*, and *Vindelicia*, on the East by *Rhetia*, on the West by the *Sequani*, and on the South by the *Allobroges*, *Seduni*, and *Veragzi*. Their Chief Towns were *Aventicum*, now *Avenches*, *Eburodunum*, now *Yverdun*, *Salodurum*, now *Soleurre*, *Vitodurum*, now *Wintthur* and *Urba*, now *Orbe*.

They were a very warlike People, and having join'd themselves with the *Cimbri*, had a considerable share in the Victories which those *Barbarians* obtain'd over the Consuls *Manlius Servilius Cepio*, and *Lucius Crassus*; but after the bloody Battle which they lost against *Marius*, the *Helvetii* retir'd into their own Country, and lived peaceably until the Time of *Julius Caesar*; and having then form'd a Design of making themselves Masters of *Gallia Celtica*, they spent two Years in making the necessary Preparations for that Expedition; and having burnt all their Towns and Villages, to cut off all Hopes of returning, took the Field, in conjunction with the *Rauraci*, *Turingi*, and *Latobriges*, their Neighbours, making in all a Body of above 90000 fighting Men, besides old Men, Women and Children. But *Caesar*, by his good Conduct and Valour did so terrifie them that they were willing to come to Articles with him; and afterwards did gain such a signal Victory over them in a pitch'd Battle, that they humbly beg'd Peace, which he granted them, on Condition that they should return to their own Country, and re-build their Towns and Villages which they had burnt. This they punctually put in execution, and were afterwards faithful and true to the *Roman* Interest.

After the Declining of the *Roman* Empire, they put themselves under the Protection of the Kings of *Burgundy*, and afterwards under that of the Kings of *France*, who sent Governors to Rule them. *Raoul* Duke of *Starlinguen* taking advantage of *France*, when it was engaged in War with the *Normans*, made himself Master of this Country in the Reign of *Carolus Crassus*. *Raoul* the Third dying without Issue, in the Year 1027. the Emperor *Conrad* the Second, whom he left his Heir, did incorporate it with the Empire, as a Free-State; but during this

Union, which was about eighty Years, the Dukes of *Zeringhen*, who were descended of *Sigeberg* King of *Austria*, acted rather the part of absolute Masters than Governors.

This People having been for a long time kept under; and grievously oppress'd by their Governors, resolv'd at last rather to venture all than live in perpetual Slavery. The first that began were the three small Cantons of *Ury*, *Switz*, and *Under-Walden*, commonly call'd the three *Forrest Towns*. They enjoy'd very ancient Privileges, which they pretended to have been granted them by the Emperor *Lewis*, surnam'd the *Pious*, Son of *Charles* the Great; yet so that the Emperor us'd to send a Judge or *Vicar* thither, who had the supreme Jurisdiction in Criminal Affairs. During the Differences between the Emperors and the Popes, the Noblemen (of whom there were a great Number in that Country) got the ascendent over the Common People; and did mightily oppress their Liberty. The Divisions betwixt the Nobility and the People (the former siding with the Popes, the latter with the Emperor) grew very high, especially during the great Interregnum which happened after the death of the Emperor *Frederick* the Second, which breaking out into an open War, the Nobility was driven out of the Country; but by the Emperor *Rudolph's* Authority, a Reconciliation was made betwixt them, and the Nobility restor'd to their Estates. Thus these Countries did enjoy their former Liberty 'till the Reign of *Albert* the First, about the Year 1300. who having conceiv'd a hatred against them, because they had sided with his Rival *Adolph* of *Nassau*, was very desirous to annex them to his Hereditary Countries. The Monasteries, and most of the Nobility having, upon his desire, submitted themselves to the Jurisdiction of the House of *Austria*; and the three above-mention'd Places refusing to do the like, they had Imperial Vicars set over them; who, contrary to ancient Custom, began to reside in strong Castles; and greatly oppress the People, whose Petitions and Complaints found no manner of Redress from the Emperor; which so encourag'd the Tyranny and Insolence of those Vicars, that *Geissler*, the Judge of *Under-Walden*, was so ridiculous as to set his Hat upon a Pole at *Altorf*, and demanded the same Respect to be paid to it as to himself; which one *William Tell* refusing



ing to do, was ordered to shoot an Arrow through an Apple which was placed upon his own Son's Head; but this Man making his Escape, stirr'd up the Hatred of the People against the Judges; and so the three foremention'd Places entered into a Confederacy to rid themselves of this Tyranny, and restore their ancient Liberty, *An.* 1307. In the Year 1315, *Leopold* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, the Son of *Albert* the First, march'd against them with an Army of 20000 Men, but was defeated near *Morgarten*. After which, they renew'd their Confederacy, and confirmed it by solemn Oaths, that it should continue for ever; which was done at *Brun*, on the 7th of *December*, 1320. But tho' they administer'd their own Affairs at Home, and did not send Deputies to the Diets of the Empire, they were not declar'd Independent of the Empire 'till the *Westphalian* Peace. *An.* 1648. In the Year 1332, *Lucern*, and in the Year 1351, *Zurich* entered into this Confederacy. Immediately after *Glaris*, in the Year 1352, *Zug* and *Bern*, in the Year 1451, *Fribourg* and *Solothurn*, in the Year 1501, *Basil* and *Schaffhausen*; and at last all *Appenzell*, were united with this Confederacy; which made up the whole Body of the *Swiss-Cantons*, consisting of thirteen Common-wealths: Whereof *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Basil*, *Friburg*, *Solothurn*, and *Schaffhausen*, are Cities; *Uri*, *Switz*, *Under-Walden*, *Glaris*, and *Appenzell*, are Countries. in which are a good number of Towns and Villages. The *Switzers* (which is a general Name for them all) have also some other Confederates. viz. the Abby and City of *St. Gall*, the *Grisons*, the *Vaudois*, the Cities of *Retwil*, *Muntusen*, *Bienne*, the *Biel*, *Geneva*, and *Newburg* on the Lake; besides several Cities and Countries (which we shall treat of particularly afterwards) that are either subject to the whole Confederacy, or to some particular Common-wealths: Every one of these Cantons is absolute within itself; but they differ as to the Nature of their Government and Constitution, some being more Aristocratical, others more Democratical.

The Christian Religion is said to have been planted in this Country pretty early; and the Reformation was begun here by *Zuinglius*, who was afterwards slain in a Battle against the *Roman* Catholics. The Cantons of *Uri*, *Switz*, *Under-Walden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburg*, and *Solothurn* are Popish; *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Basil*, and *Schaffhausen* Protestant; but tho' the number of the latter be lesser, their Power is greater. The Catholics hold their Conventions at *Lucern*; the Protestants at *Aarau*; and the General Assemblies are held at *Baden*, where they meet every Year about the end of *June*, to deliberate about the Affairs of the whole Body of the *Swiss*. This Diet is compos'd of two Deputies from each Canton; those of *Zurich* have the first Place, and the antienter of the two Presides; and it is his part to send circular Letters for convocating the Diet. And however they may differ in Religion and Form of Government, yet they all agree in the defence of their Liberty and common Interest.

The SOIL in these Countries is different; for in the mountainous Parts scarce any thing but Pa-

sture Grounds is to be met withal; but the Vallies and flat Country produces good store of Corn and Wine, tho' scarce enough for the number of the Inhabitants; and Foreign Commodities cannot be imported without great difficulty, and what is deficient in the Soil is not repair'd by Traffick and Manufactures. They enjoy this benefit by the Situation of their Country, that by reason of the high Mountains and narrowness of the Passages, it is almost inaccessible, especially on the *Italian* Side, and in the midst of the Country; but some of the outward Parts are of a very easy access.

As to the *Genius* of the People, they are generally Honest and True to their Word, Simple and Plain-dealing, without any great Cunning or By-designs, Stout and easily Provok'd, Stedfast in their Resolutions, and abundantly Valiant; which together with their Talents and Strength of Body, has so recommended them to a great many Princes, that they have chose them for their Guards, particularly the King of *France*, who maintains a considerable Number of them. They do not care for undergoing much Hardship and Labour, and expect to have their Pay duly, otherwise they are ready to make good the Proverb, *No Money, No Swiss*.

The main Strength of this Commonwealth (as the Judicious *Puffendorf* observes) consists in the number of its Inhabitants. For the Canton of *Bern*, which has the greatest Territories, pretends alone to be able to send into the Field 100000 Fighting Men, and the rest proportionably. So that their not having extended the Bounds of their Dominions beyond what they are, seems to be owing, partly to their Inclination, which does not prompt them to encroach upon their Neighbours; partly to the Constitution of their Government, which seems to be unfit for great and sudden Enterprizes; and partly to the difference of Religion among them. So they are the best Neighbours in the World; as being never to be fear'd, and always ready to assist you in case of Necessity, if you pay them for it.

The most considerable Rivers in *Switzerland* are, the *Rhine*, the *Aar*, the *Russ*, the *Inn* and the *Tessin*; but the *Russ* and *Inn* are the most serviceable. The Principal Lakes are those of *Geneva*, *Constantz*, *Zell*, *Neufchatel*, *Biel*, *Moral*, *Thun*, *Brientz*, *Lucern*, *Zurich*, *Zug*, *Oern* and *Riva*.

The modern Bounds of all that Country which goes under the Name of *Switzerland*, especially if you take in the Allies and Subjects of that State are different from those of the antient *Helvetia*. It is extended from South to North for the Space of about 180 Miles, from the Bailiage of *Mendrisi* to the Frontiers of *Schwaben*; and 280 from West to East, from the County of *Birmio* to Mount *St. Claude*. It is bounded on the North with *Alsace* and *Schwaben*, on the South by *Lombardy* and the Lake of *Geneva*, on the East by the County of *Tyrol*, and on the West by *Burgundy*. The whole of it may be divided into four Parts, viz. The 13 Cantons, the Allies, the Subjects, and Stipendiary Towns; as is to be seen in the following Table, where the Cantons are set down according to their Precedency in the General Diets.



Switzerland divided into 4 Parts.

I. The 13 Cantons.

- |                  |                         |                             |
|------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Zurich. Prot. | 6. Underwald. Pop.      | 10. Friburgh. Pop.          |
| 2. Bern. Prot.   | 7. Zug. Pop.            | 11. Solothurn. Pop.         |
| 3. Lucern. Pop.  | 8. Glaris. Prot. & Pop. | 12. Schaffhausen. Prot.     |
| 4. Uri. Pop.     | 9. Basil. Prot.         | 13. Appenzell. Prot. & Pop. |
| 5. Schwitz. Pop. |                         |                             |

II. Allies of Switzerland.

The Grison Leagues, Comprehending The Cardue or Gottshespiint. The 10 Jurisdictions. The Valteline. The County of Chiavenna.	{	The County of Bormio. The Republick and Abbey of St. Gal. The Valais or Wallisland. The County of Neufchatel. The Town of St. Gal.	{	Towns and Territories of	{	Malhausen. Rotweil. Bienne. Geneva.
---	---	--	---	--------------------------	---	--

III. Subjects of Switzerland.

The Bailiages of Usnach and Gufstal. The County of Sargan. The Free Provinces. The Country of Targow. The Country Rote.	{	The Bailiages of	{	Moral. Orbe. Granfon. Schwartzenburg. Lugan. Lucarn.	{	The Bailiages of	{	Menduse. Valmedie. Belizone. Velbrun. River.
--	---	------------------	---	---	---	------------------	---	--

IV. Stipendiary Towns of Switzerland.

Baden.	{	Mellingen.	{	Tramenfeld.
Bregmarten.	{	Rapersweil.	{	

## CHAPTER II.

### The SWISS CANTONS.

THE Canton of ZURICH, *Tigurinus Pagus*, is bounded with *Schaffhausen* on the North, *Appenzell* on the East, *Zug* and *Switz* on the South, and *Bern* and *Lucern* on the West. Its Extent South and North is about 60 Miles, and 48 from East to West. This Canton is very powerful, and richer than that of *Bern*, altho' it be not so large. It is so well Peopled, that in Twenty four Hours it is able to raise Fifty thousand Men: And comprehends One and Thirty *Bailiages*; whereof there's Nine that are call'd *Great Bailiages*, and the rest *Chatellanies*. The Bayliffs and Chatellans that are sent to them have full Power to Judge both in Matters Civil and Criminal, and are chose out of the Grand Council. The People of this Canton enjoy greater Privileges, and are more highly Tax'd than in most others, where the Bayliffs are in a manner absolute Masters. The great *Bailiages* are those of *Griffensee*, *Gruningen*, *Wadischnuil*, *Regensburg*, *Eglisow* upon the *Rhine*, *Andelfingen* along the River *Thur*, *Lauffen*, below the Cataracts of the *Rhine*, and *Kiburg*. The most considerable *Chatellanies* are those of *Stein* upon the *Rhine*, and *Wintenthur*, upon the *Eulac*. The most considerable Towns and Villages in this Canton are,

Zurich, Ch. Cit.	{	Andelfinger.
Kiburg.	{	Griffensee.
Gruningen.	{	Ktingenew.
Lauffen.	{	Eglisow.
Rufy.	{	Regensburg.
Wadischnuil.	{	Stafen.

*Zurich*, *Tigurum*, *Casar* and *Livy* place it in *Gallia Celtica*, and it is call'd *Turegum* by the Authors of the Middle Age. It lies in the midst betwixt *Schaffhausen* and *Lucern*, about 25 Miles from either, 11 from the *Rhine* to the South, 30 South-West from *Constance*, and about 60 North from the *Alpes*, and is divided into two Parts by the River *Simath*, where it comes out of the Lake of *Zurich*. It is thought to be one of the most ancient Towns in that Country; for according to an ancient Tradition it is said to have been built sixteen Years after *Treves*. It shook off the unsupportable Yoke of its Lords in the Year, 1218. After the Death of *Berthold* 5th Duke of *Zertingen*, and put it self under the Protection of the Emperor, upon Condition that it should never be alienated; which was confirm'd by the Emperor *Richard*, in the Year, 1262; but 68 Years after, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, being drain'd by an expensive War, and not in a Condition to Pay, after the Battle of *Muldorf*, to *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, the Sum which he had promis'd him to renounce his Pretences to the Empire, offered to give him the



Towns of *Zurich*, *Schaffhausen*, *Rhinfeld* and *Neuburg*; but the Inhabitants of *Zurich* opposing that Alienation, he was fain to give *Brisac* in lieu of it; which so enraged the Dukes of *Austria*, that they turn'd his mortal Enemies, and made as many others so as they could, which was the principal Cause of their entering into Alliance with *Switz*, *Underwalden* and *Lucern*. There is in this City a noble Library, a Strong, regularly Fortified, and well furnish'd Arsenal; and several other Things very well worth the observation of a curious Traveller, particularly a fine Collection of Medals. The Lake of *Zurich* is about 24 Miles long, and 2 or 3 broad: And the River is very useful for carrying away to the *Rhine* their Manufactures, whereof that of Crape is the most considerable, and turns to the best Account.

*Kilburg*, *Kilburgium*, stands upon a Hill, near the River *Tess*, about 7 Miles from *Zurich* to the East, towards *Constance*, and about half a Mile from the Ruins of *Mantona* or *Mintona*. It was once famous for its Counts, who were Men of great Note.

The Canton of *BERN*, *Bernensis Pagus*, is bounded on the North with that of *Solothurn*, and a part of the Bishoprick of *Basle*, on the East with *Lucern* and *Underwald*, on the South with the *Valais* or *Wittland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*, and on the West with the *French Comtes*, and the County of *Neuchâtel*. It is very large, and comprehends almost a third part of *Switzerland*, being in length from South-East to North-West about 172 Miles, in breadth, from West to East, about 132. It contains 72 Bailiages, which comprehend the greatest part of *Nidland*, *Argow*, and the *Pays de Vaud*. Those which lie within *Argow* and *Nidland* do make that which is call'd the *German Territory*, and the *Pays de Vaud*, the *French Territory*, or the *New Conquests*. The first contains 301 Parishes, the other 150. The Bailiffs who govern these Bailiages are nominated by the Council of *Bern*; and are at once both Judges and Governors, and their Office continues six Years. They choose their Assessors in the Country under their Jurisdiction, and to them Appeals may be made from the *Chatellanies*; but after they have pass'd Sentence of Death, it cannot be put in execution, before it be confirm'd by the Grand Council. The Towns of greatest note in this Canton are,

<i>Bern</i> , Ch.	}	<i>Bruck</i> .
<i>Lausanna</i> .		<i>Nicu</i> .
<i>Thcim</i> .		<i>Sana</i> .
<i>Arberg</i> .		<i>Aubone</i> .
<i>Vangen</i> .	}	<i>Briençz</i> .
<i>Lansburg</i> .		<i>Waien</i> .
<i>Erinch</i> .		<i>Yerden</i> .
<i>La Serre</i> .		

*Bern*, *Berna*, is seated on the Banks of the River *Aar*, between *Solothurn* and *Friburg*. It is not a large City, but very neatly built, and is said to owe its Name to a Bear which *Berthold* the 4th Duke of *Zerichgen* kill'd as he was laying the Foundations of it; for *Bern* in the Language of the Country signifies a Bear. *Berthold* the 5th finish'd it, Ann. 1191. The Emperor *Frederick II.* did incorporate it with the Empire, 1220. and granted considerable Privileges to it. It did afterwards own for its Superiour *Philip* Earl of *Savoy*, to whom it sent Commissioners, in the Year, 1268. to Swear Fealty to him. *Philip's* Successors did afterwards restore them to

their ancient Liberty, in recompence of the good Service they had done them against the Bishop of *Lausanna*, the Earls of *Neuburg*, and *Charles the Terrible*, Duke of *Burgundy*. This City stands in a Peninsula wash'd on three sides of it by the *Aar*, the fourth being well Fortified with Battions and Trenches. The Streets are very neat, and watered with clear Brooks running through the middle of 'em, and adorn'd on each side with Portico's, Arches and Pillars of Free-stone. The principal Church is a very noble Structure, as are also the Town-House, the Court of Chancery, the Arsenal and publick Library. In one of the Apartments of the Arsenal, which is furnish'd with Arms for 40000 Men, is to be seen the Statue of *William Tell* of *Schwitz*, whom the Governor commanded to shoot an Apple off his Son's Head, with an Arrow; which with other Grievances provok'd the *Switzers* to take up Arms for asserting their Liberty.

*Lausanna*, *Lausanium* or *Lausanna*, is the chief Town of the Country of *Vaud*, and has its Name from its Situation between the Brooks *Laus* and *Anna*. It stands near the North-side of the Lake of *Geneva*, which because of the Situation of this Town is often call'd the Lake of *Lausanna*. It is 30 Miles from *Geneva* to the North-East, 64 from *Bern* to the South-West, 28 from *Friburg*, 20 from *Yerden* to the South, and 70 from *Lucern* to the West. The Situation of it is pretty odd, it being built on three Hills; and that part of it which they call *The Old Town* enjoys great Privileges, especially that of the Power of Life and Death. It was formerly a free and imperial Town, but has been under the Jurisdiction of *Bern* since the Year, 1536. It was also an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Besanzon*, but after the Protestants had made themselves Masters of the Town, it was translated to *Friburg*. There is an old Tradition passes among the Inhabitants, that *Hercules* in his Passage from *Spain* into *Italy*, finding the Country adjacent to this Place so Fruitful and Pleasant, left some of his Troops under the Command of *Arpentinus*, who they say was the Founder of *Arpentina*, upon the Ruins of which *Lausanna* (as they say) is Built: But the Reader may believe as much of this Story as he thinks fit.

*Yerden*, *Ebrodunum*, lies in the Country of *Vaud*, upon the Lake of *Neuchâtel*, where the *Thile* runs into it, about 10 Miles from the Confines of the County of *Burgundy*, and 15 from *Friburg*. Formerly both it and the adjacent Country was under the Jurisdiction of the Duke of *Savoy*; but in the Year, 1536. it was taken by the *Bernois*, who are still Masters of it.

The Canton of *LUCERN*, *Lucernensis Pagus*, borders with those of *Bern*, *Zug*, *Schwitz* and *Underwald*. It was anciently the Country of the *Ambrones*, who having join'd the *Teutoni*, were defeated by *Marius* in the Plains of *Porriers* in *Provence*. It is divided into 12 Bailiages, which are governed by the Counsellors of *Lucern*, except those of *Wiken* and *Sempach*, whose Bailiffs are chosen from among the Burgers of these Towns, by the Grand Council of *Lucern*. This Canton is extended from North to South for the space of about 48 Miles, and from West to East 32, and was united to the other confederated Cantons in the Year, 1332. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Lucern*.



Lucern, Ch. } Sualhusen.  
 Sempach. } Wiken.  
 Sursee. } Willisow.  
 Rot. } Hotburg.

*Lucern*, *Luceria* or *Lucerna*, is situated on the Lake of *Lucern*, at the Mouth of the River *Rufs*, 36 Miles from *Bern* to the East, and 40 from the *Rhine* to the South. Some Historians say, That it was call'd *Lacucerna*, as if one should say, *Quod vicinum lacum cernat*; but there is more reason to believe, that it was so call'd from a Lantern, which was set up there in the Night-time to direct Travellers; for one may now see an old Tower near the Bridge, which seems to have been design'd for that use; and to confirm this Opinion, there is to be seen another Tower of the same kind near *Zurich*, which is call'd *Vallenberg*. This Town owes its Original to an Abbey which *Vigard* Brother of *Robert*, Duke of *Swabia*, founded there. *Pepin* gave it to the Abbey of *Murbach*; and this Donation was confirm'd by *Lotharius*, An. 850. The Abbots of *Murbach* gave it great Prerogatives; but one of their Successors sold it for 2000 Marks of Silver to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*. This Town is the ordinary Residence of the Pope's Nuncio: And from hence Goods may be carried down the *Rufs* into the *Rhine*, and so to the Ocean. It was once a free and imperial City, but united it self to the other Cantons, An. 1332. The Things most remarkable here are, the great Church, adorn'd with two large Steeples, an Altar beautified with fine Marble Columns, an excellent pair of Organs and fair Cloyster. The Market-place also is both large and stately; and so is the Town-house and College of Jesuits, and two Bridges about 500 Paces long.

*Sursee*, stands on the Lake of *Sempach*, about 20 Miles from *Lucern* to the N. W. The *Avoyer* or Governor of it takes an Oath of Fidelity to this Canton. There is one thing peculiar to this Place from all the rest of *Switzerland*, which is, that they only make use of a brass Cornet instead of a Trumpet; because, as they say, they had one of these presented to them by *Charles* the Great, in Recompence of the good Service they did him in the Wars against the *Sarazens*.

The Canton of *URI*, *Pagus Uranius*, or *Urienfis*, lies between the Mountains of *Crispaltberg* and *St. Gothard*, and the River *Rufs*; having the Canton of *Schwitz* to the North, those of *Underwald* and *Bern* to the West, the Valley of *Verzasco* to the South, and the *Grison League* with the Canton of *Glaris* to the East. It is in length, from South to North, about 60 Miles; and in breadth from West to East, about 20. This Country belong'd antiently to the Abbey of *St. Felix*, and *St. Regulus* of *Zurich*, by the Donation of the Emperor *Lewis* the *Debonaire*, whose Daughter *Hildegade* was first Abbess of it; but it was transferr'd from the Abbesses of *St. Felix* to the Abbots of *Vertinger*; having afterwards purchas'd its Freedom by a Sum of Money, did put it self under the Protection of the Emperors, who sent Governors to it, from whose Sentence there was no Appeal in Matters Criminal, there being other Judges for Civil Causes who were assist'd by certain Counsellors chosen from among the People of the Country: And thus they continued so long as the Emperors let them enjoy their ancient Privileges; but so soon as the Dukes of *Austria* began to encroach upon them, and endeavour to make

themselves absolute, they took up Arms for the defence of their Liberty and Privileges, as we have said before. This Canton is divided into 10 Parts, which the Inhabitants commonly call *Gnoszaminen*, and has under its Jurisdiction these Towns,

Altorf, Ch. } Ariola.  
 Altinghusen. } Gessinen.  
 Fornike. }

*Altorf*, or *Altdorf*, *Altorsum*, that is to say, the old Village is seated in a Plain, near the River *Rufs*, at the Foot of the *Alps*, about 12 Miles from *Lucern* to the South East, and about 24 from *Schwitz* to the South. It is a very fine and delightful Place, the Houses being very neat, and the Streets well pav'd; and there being so many Gardens and Country-houses round about it, it affords a most lovely Prospect; and which contributes to its greatness, and helps to encrease its Riches, is, that the Courts of Justice for the whole Canton are held in it. But it is a Place of very difficult Access, by reason it stands at the bottom of the dangerous Precipices of the Mountain *St. Godard*; near to which four considerable Rivers, viz. the *Rufs*, the *Tessin*, the *Rhine*, and the *Rhone* have their Source. Besides this, there are under the Jurisdiction of this Canton, that which the Ancients call'd *Leopontiorum Vallis*, and now by the French call'd *la Vallee de Liviner*, situated at the Foot of those Hills which the *Italians* call *Monte di San Bernardino*, which is govern'd by a Bailiff, that is chang'd every third Year, and is Judge in all the Affairs, together with Assessors, who are chosen from among the Inhabitants. The Inhabitants of *Ment St. Godard* are also subject to this Canton.

The Canton of *SCHWITZ*, *Suitionis Pagus*, is bounded on the North with those of *Zurich* and *Zug*, on the West of *Lucern* and *Underwald*, on the South by that of *Uri* and part of *Glaris*, and on the East by the same Canton of *Glaris*, and the Bailiage of *Gasteren* and *Ulzenach*, and is extended from North to South about 28 Miles, and from East to West about 36. The whole Country that now goes under the Name of *Switzerland*, has its Denomination from hence; either because the Wars which these People began for recovering their Liberty took their Rise here; or because they first entered into a Confederacy for that end in this Place. The Inhabitants of it pretend to be descended from the *Cimbri*; but I am apt to believe that it is much easier for them to say than to prove this. This Canton is divided into 6 Parts, and the most considerable Towns it it are,

Schwitz, Ch. } Wag.  
 Kusnach. } Grinow.  
 Elrifelden. } Eunchen.

*Schwitz*, *Suitia*, is only a large Village standing on the Banks of the River *Muse*, in a Valley surrounded with Hills, which for the most part are covered with Snow; about 2 Miles from the Lake of *Lucern*, 10 from the Town of the same Name to the East; and as many from *Glaris*. This little Town was once an imperial and free one; but it ceas'd to be so in the Year 1315.

The Canton of *UNDERWALD*, which by Geographers is commonly call'd *Sylvania*, or *Sylvadiensis Pagus*, from a Forest of Oak Trees which divides it into two Parts, viz. *Above* and *Below* the *Wood*. The whole Canton has its Name from the latter, *Underwald* being no other than *sub Sylva*, or under



under the Wood. It lies between *Schwig* and *Lucerne* to the North, between the Provinces of *Lucerne* and *Bern* to the West and South, and that of *Uri* to the East; and is extended North and South 32 Miles, East and West 24. *Leopold Duke of Austria* invaded this Country, *An.* 1336. and was defeated: Nevertheless he attempted it again, with an Army of 15000 Men, and marched as far as *Narol*, but was again worried by a handful of the Inhabitants of *Glaris* and *Schwig*, and forced to leave the Field, with the loss of 300 Men. Since which time these People have retained their Liberty. This Canton contains no very great Towns; but those of greatest Note are,

*Stanz*, Ch. } *Liurzeren*.  
*Kriens*, } *Bakerviet*.  
*Sarnen*, } *Hamfald*.  
*Engelberg*, }

*Stanz*, *Stanzia*, is no more than a large Village near the Lake of *Lucerne*, at the Foot of the Mountains, about 12 Miles from the Town of *Lucerne*, to the South East. In this Place the Great Seal of the Canton used to be kept.

The Canton of *Lucerna*, *Lucernensis Pagus*, is bounded with that of *Uri* on the North, that of *Schwig* on the East and South, and that of *Lucerne* on the West. Its breadth and length are much about one, neither exceeding 12 Miles. It was anciently governed by Lords of its own; but afterwards came under the Jurisdiction of the Dukes of *Austria*; whose insupportable Yoke it threw off with the rest, in the Year 1310. that is 44 Years after *Schwig*, *Uri*, and *Underwald* had done so. It comprehends 6 Bailiages, and the most remarkable Towns in it are,

*Luc*, Ch. } *Egen*.  
*Cram*, } *Ror*.  
*Bar*, } *Oberwil*.

*Luc*, *Tugium*, is a pretty little Town, standing on a Lake of the same Name, at the Foot of a Hill, some part of which produces good store of Grapes, the rest is Pasture Ground and Wood, which affords plenty of Game. It is 12 Miles from *Lucerne* to the East, and 18 from *Luc* to the South.

The Canton of *Glaris*, *Glarensis Pagus*, is bounded with the River of *Rhein* on the North, the *Glaris* on the East and South, and the Cantons of *Schwig* and *Uri* on the West. It is about 30 Miles North and South, and 20 East and West. *Uri* and *Lucerne* who were Lords of it, gave this Country to the Abbey of *St. Julien*; to which the Inhabitants paid the tenth and hundred parts of their Rents; but the Mayordom depended on the Emperor. The Emperor *Berthold* gave it to *Otto*, Count Palatine of *Burgundy*; and from his Posterity it passed to the House of *Habsburg*; and from thence to that of *Austria*. This Canton is partly Popish, partly Protestant, which is the cause of frequent Squabbles between them; and therefore it is appointed that all Differences shall be decided by Judges, two thirds of whom are of the Defendant's Persuasion. The most considerable Towns in this Canton are,

*Glaris*, Ch. } *Wald*.  
*Hein*, } *Elin*.  
*Uster*, } *Quart*.

*Glaris*, *Glaris*, Ch. } Bands in a Valley of the same Name, upon the River *Sarner*, surrounded by the Mountains called *Glaris*, 18 Miles

from *Altorf* to the North East, as many from *Schwig* to the South East, and 30 from *Chur* or *Chir*. The Inhabitants are reckon'd the wisest People in *Switzerland*.

The Canton of *Basile*, lies betwixt *Briskow*, the Canton of *Lucerne*, the Bishoprick of *Basel*, and *Sungrow*. It is of no great extent, containing only five Bailiages, and about 30 Parishes, and is intirely Protestant. The most considerable Towns and Villages are,

*Basel*, Ch. } *Veltemburgh*.  
*Dug*, } *Gredingen*.  
*Dernach*, } *Di menach*.  
*Augst*, } *Belingen*.  
*Leichstall*, } *Videstein*.  
*Marlsstein*, } *Ramsstein*.  
*Hamfald*, } *L*.

*Basel*, *Basilea*, stands upon the *Rhine*, on the Confines of *France* and the *Empire*, about 24 Miles from *Basel*, 64 from *Constance* to the West, 48 from *Zurich*, and 56 from *Strasbourg* to the South. It is thought to have rise from the Ruines of the old *Augusta Rauracum*, or *Raurica*, some Veltigia of which are still to be seen near the Village *Augst*, about 7 Miles distant from it to the East. *Cuverius* thinks it was formerly call'd *Ariallinum*; but it owes its Name of *Basilea* to *Julian* the Apostle, who would have it call'd so in honour of his Mother *Basina*. The *Romans* sent a Colony to it under the Conduct of *Munatius Plancus*, and the Emperor *Gratian* did greatly enlarge it. The *Hungarians* having ruin'd it, the Emperor *Henry* the Second, caused it to be re-built, *An.* 1010. and granted such Privileges to those who would set up there, that in a little time it became considerable. There was a Council held here, *An.* 1431. under Pope *Eugenius* the Fourth, and was adorn'd with an University, 1460. The *Rhine* divides it into two unequal Parts. That which lies on the *German* side, is call'd the Lesser, and is not much above the fourth Part of the whole Town, and is join'd to the other by a large Stone-Bridge. It was formerly an Episcopal See, suffragan to the Bishop of *Bisanz*; but since the Protestant Religion got footing there, the Bishops have been oblig'd to live at *Brontout*, or *Perentreu* (as the French call it, upon the Confines of the Higher *Alsace*). The most remarkable Things in this City are, the Cathedral Church of *St. Mary*, the Arsenal, and their Guildhalls, and the curious Paintings in the *Dominicans* Choyler, and the University; where, besides many others, *Des Erasmus*, *Amerbachius*, and *John Buxtorf* were educated. There are also several considerable Libraries, and some fine Collections of Medals, particularly that of *Mr. Sebastian Fisch*. The Repository also of *Erasmus* and *Amerbachius*, belonging to the University, in which are preserved 20 Original Draughts of the famous Painter *Holben*, a Native of this City. There is also in the Publick Library a rare Manuscript Copy of *Virgil*, and another of the *Adam*, written on *China Paper*. Ordinary Paper is said to have been first made here by *Antony* and *Michael Galician*, *An.* 1417. And Printing was first began here by *Bernard Richel*, 1478. And the Reformation advanced by *Oecclampadius*, 1522. *Erasmus* died, and was buried here in *July*, 1536. aged 77 Years. This Town is well fortified, as you may see by the following Draught.

The Canton of *Friburg*, *Friburgeris Pagus*, is surrounded almost by that of *Bern*, and is divided into



into two Parts by the River *Sane*. It comprehends 19 Bailiages, 5 of which are about *Friburg*, the rest are in *Nuitland*; among which is that of *Gruyeres*, which was once the Residence of the Counts of that Name; the last of whom sold it to *Bern* and *Friburg*, who divided it, *An.* 1554. And it is to be observ'd, that the Earls of *Gruyeres* were Vassals of the Duke of *Savoy*, and always paid him Homage for the Lordships of *Louanel*, *Gingin*, *Granges*, *Chatelard*, *Molon*, and *Treves*. It join'd in Confederacy with the rest, *An.* 1481. The Towns of greatest Note are,

<i>Friburg</i> , Ch.	}	<i>Corbert.</i>
<i>Romont.</i>		<i>Rut.</i>
<i>Gruyeres.</i>		<i>Peterlingen.</i>
<i>Tavernach.</i>		<i>Montenach.</i>

*Friburg*, *Friburgum*, stands upon the River *Sane*, in a very pleasant Country, about 28 Miles from *Solothurn* to the South, 24 from *Lausanne*, and 9 from *Bern* to the South West. It was built in the Year 1179. by *Berthold* the Fourth, Duke of *Zeringen*, who also built *Friburg* in *Brisgaw*. It was for some time possess'd by those descended from him; but after the death of *Berthold* the Fifth, who was the last of that Race, *An.* 1218. it came into the Hands of the Earls of *Kiburg*. *Eberhard* Count of *Hapsburg* became Master of it, *An.* 1260. and in the Year 1277. sold it to the Emperor *Rodolphus*, for four thousand Marks of Silver. Some time after, it did redeem it self from under the Sovereignty of the House of *Austria*, and put it self under the Jurisdiction of the Duke of *Savoy*, by an Act of the 10th of *June*, 1450. upon Condition that he should preserve and maintain them in the full use of their Privileges; but afterwards there hapning some Difference betwixt *Yoland* Dutches of *Savoy* and them, upon the account of some Money which she was obliged to pay them, they shook off that Yoke, *An.* 1477. and for the better securing of their Liberty, entred into a Confederacy with the rest, *An.* 1487. The most remarkable Things in it, are its Piazza's and publick Buildings, as, the Cathedral with its high Altar, the Town-house, and high Tower, the Fountain with its Basin and Foot, a Commendary of *Malta*, and several Churches and Convents of *Jesuits*, and a College of these founded by *Petrus Canisius*, who died, *An.* 1597. The 2d of *May* and the 22d of *June* are observ'd as great Festivals in this Place, for two signal Victories obtain'd over *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* on these days. But the Reader must not confound this Town with another of that Name in *Brisgaw*, which was taken by the French, under the Conduct of *Mar. de Crequi*, from the House of *Austria*, *An.* 1677. and restor'd by the Treaty of *Nimiquen*, *An.* 1679.

The Canton of *SOLOTHURN*, or *Soleure*, *Salodorusensis Pagus*, is bounded on the North by that of *Basil*, and part of *Alsace*, on the West by the Bishoprick of *Basil*, and on the South and East by the Canton of *Bern*. It is divided into 12 Bailiages, and the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Solothurn</i> , Ch.	}	<i>Leingen.</i>
<i>Osten.</i>		<i>Baistern.</i>

*Solothurn*, which the French, and Inhabitants commonly call *Soleure*, stands upon the River *Aar*; and as it is a delightfully situated Town, so it is thought to be one of the most ancient in that Country. It stands betwixt *Basil* and *Friburgh*, about 28 Miles from either, and 20 from *Bern*. It is said to have been built at first by some of the ancient

Kings of *Gaul*; but this Opinion has no other Foundation than that of an old Inscription, which calls it *The Sister of Treves*. Some Historians do say, That it owes its Name to an old Tower, which is still to be seen there, call'd *Seltun*; that is, the Tower of the Sun. Queen *Bertha* gave this Town to a Chapter that she founded there. It came afterwards under subjection to the Bishop of *Geneva*; and after that was an Imperial Town, and then subject to the Empire, whose Yoke it at last shook off, and entred into a Confederacy with the other Cantons, *An.* 1481. In the Year 1531. the People of this Place were pretty well disposed to receive the Protestant Religion; but a popular Commotion arising on that account, the Mass was re-establish'd, and to they still persist in their Superstition. Bishop *Bunnet* gives an account of them and their Religion in his Letters. In their great Church they have God the Father represented as an old Man with a black Beard, with *Jesus Christ* on his Knees, and a Dove over his Head. Stupidity equal to, if not exceeding, that of the wildest Heathens. The Houses of this Town are very fair, and the Streets large, adorn'd with many Fountains. There is also a stately Church, and a College of *Jesuits*, towards the building of which, the present King of *France*, *Lewis XIV.* gave 10000 Livres. The Fortifications likewise are very strong, and have cost a vast Sum of Money, being all of very fine and large Stones.

The Canton of *SCHAFFHAUSEN*, *Scaphusianus Pagus*, is bounded on the West with the *Black Forest*, on the South with the Canton of *Zurich*, on the East with *Targaw*, and on the North with *Schwaben*. It is but of small extent, not exceeding 12 Miles North and South, and about 20 East and West. The Chief Towns in it are,

<i>Schaffhausen</i> , Ch.	}	<i>Newkilch.</i>
<i>Herblingen.</i>		<i>Halaw.</i>

*Schaffhausen*, *Scaphusia*, stands upon the *Rhine*, on the German side, about 4 Miles from *Constance* to the West, 2 from the Lake of *Zell*, 6 from *Basil*, and 4 from *Zurich* to the North. It is sometimes call'd *Probalopolis*, because it has a Sheep for its Arms, which is also stamp'd on its Coin. It owes its beginning to an Abbey founded there by *Eberard* Count of *Nellemburg*, about the Year 1052. in honour of *All Saints*. The Emperor *Frederick II.* made it a free and imperial City, in which the Abbey enjoy'd great Privileges. In the Year 1320. the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* engag'd it, together with *Rhinfeild*, *Newburg* and *Brisac*, to *Frederick le Bel* Duke of *Austria*; but about 80 Years after the Emperor *Sigismund* restor'd it to its Liberty. It entred into a League with *Zurich* and *St. Gall*, *An.* 1424. and with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and some other Cantons, *An.* 1501. The Reformation was carry'd on by *Jacobus Riegius* and others, *An.* 1520. The Cataracts of the *Rhine* oblige the Vessels that come from the Lake of *Constance* to unload their Merchandise in this Town; which are put on Board again below it, where the Stream becomes more gentle. The Streets of it are broad, and the Houses for the most part painted without, as in many Places of *Switzerland*. At the upper end of the Town stands a large Tower, which, they say, the French King keeps in Repair according to a Treaty of Alliance with the *Swiss*; it has a good number of Guns mounted on it; but serves more for Ornament than Defence to the Town.



The Canton of *APPENZEL, Abbatifelsenfis*, lies betwixt the Abbey of St. Gall, and the *Rhine*, which separates it from the *Grisons*, having the Republick of *Luzern* on the West, and the Country of *Rhodes* on the East, about 30 Miles long and 22 broad. It is divided into 12 Communities; which they call *Roden*. There are 6 of 'em call'd by the French, *Les Ordres du dedans*, that is, the *Inner Appenzel*; the other are nam'd, *Les Ordres du dehors*, or *Outer Appenzel*. This Country is so called from a Town of that Name. Both Papists and Protestants are tolerated in this Canton, as that of *Glarus*. It formerly depended on the Abbey of St. Gall, and entred into the general League with the other Provinces. *Ann.* 1513. The Protestants possess the *Outer* and the Papists the *Inner Appenzel*. It is the last in order of all the 13 Cantons, and contains these Towns.

*Appenzel, Ch.*

*Gessen.*

*Urnäsch.*

*Appenzel, Abbatifelsenfis*, is a rich and populous Town, situated near the Source of the small River *Sinera*, near 30 Miles from *Cham*, about 16 from St. Gall, and 30 from *Constance*. It was formerly

the Residence of the Abbots of St. Gall; but the Inhabitants redeem'd themselves from under the Jurisdiction of those with a good Sum of Money, at a Treaty concluded at *Constance* with *Canon de Stoufen*, Abbot of St. Gall, by the Emperor *Robert's* Mediation; and for the better security of their Liberty, entred into a League with the Cantons of *Uri*, *Schwitz*, *Underwald*, and *Lucern*. The Abbots of St. Gall, protested against this Alliance; and *Henry of Maudry* renewed his Pretensions, at the Emperor's Court, *Ann.* 1425. and had them declar'd Enemies to the Empire. The People of *Appenzel* were not much troubled at this; but march'd into the Territories, demolish'd some Castles, and oblig'd him to make Peace. Not long after the Abbot of St. Gall entred into a Confederacy with the Nobility of *Constance* against them; but their Troops were beat; and the *Appenzelins* made themselves Masters of *Rhodes*, and oblig'd the Lords of *Rangewil*, who held that Valley by Engagement, to pass from their Right for six thousand Crowns. In the Year 1457. they made a perpetual Alliance with the seven other Cantons, and did considerable Service against the Dukes of *Austria* and *Burgundy*; and at last in the Year 1513. they were received into the number of the 13 Cantons.

## CHAP. III.

### *The Allies of the Switzers.*

#### The *G R I S O N S*.

THE Country of the *Grisons* is a part of the ancient *Rhaetia*. (the old Inhabitants of which, a Savage People, were subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius*, in the time of *Augustus*, and was call'd *Rhaetia Prima* by the *Romans*, who govern'd it by a President that depended upon the *Præfatus Prætoris* of *Italy*). This Province was ravag'd by the *Germans*, and afterwards expos'd to the Irruptions of the *Barbarians*, submitted it self to the Emperors of the West. The People of this Country, being born Soldiers, have often list'd themselves in the Service of foreign Princes, especially the Kings of *France*. In the Year, 555. they assisted *Chilperic* against the *Lombards*. And served *Thierry* King of *Burgundy* in the Year, 616. *Charlemain* had many of them in his Service, in his War with the *Saxons*. And under the first Kings of the third Race, we find them in many Battles against the Enemies of *France*. *Lewis XI.* employ'd them in his Conquest of *Burgundy*. *Charles* the VIII. in the Kingdom of *Naples*. *Lewis XII.* when he attack'd the Duchy of *Milan*. *Francis* the I. did comprehend them in the Treaty of *Perpetual Peace*, which he made with the *Swiss*. *Ann.* 1516. and was renew'd by some of his Successors; but *Lewis XIV.* excluded them. *Ann.* 1663.

This Country is bounded with *Savoy* on the North, *Tin* on the East, the State of *Venice* and the *Milan* on the South, and the *Swiss* on the West. It is a mountainous and barren Country, which obliges them to bring Corn from the *Milan* for their Subsistence (altho' they might have as much as they have occasion for from *Alsace* and the State

of *Venice*) which makes them adhere so much to the Interest of *Spain*.

The *Grisons* in general make up a Commonwealth, which is commonly call'd the *Grison Leagues*; because it is compos'd of Three lesser Leagues; each of which has its own Laws and Jurisdiction, and forms a particular State, whose Government is popular. The First is that which the French call *La Ligue haute; ou Grise*, the *Upper League*, which comprehends 25 Communities; whereof 18 are Popish, and 10 Protestant. Each Community is a little sort of State by it self, and the People of it meet every Year to chouse their Judges, whom they call *Ammans*, who determin in all Matters Criminal and Civil, and from whom there is an Appeal to the Assembly of the League. The Second is the League of the *House of God* or *Cadee*, which the *Germans* call *Gottshuspunt*, which comprehends 24 Communities, almost all Protestant. The Third is the *League of the ten Jurisdctions*, which the *Germans* call *Zehen Gerichtspunt*, and the French, *les dix Droitures*. These three Leagues entred into a perpetual Alliance in the Year, 1437. and the Sovereignty is represented by a *Diet*, which meets sometimes at *Tin* in the *Grison League*, sometimes at *Chur* in the *Cadee*, and sometimes at *Davas* in the *Ten Jurisdctions*. It consists of 67 Deputies, viz. 28 from the first League, 24 from the Second, and 15 from the Third, who must all be Men known to be true to their Country, and who have no Pension from, or are in the Service of any Prince. When any Affair of great Importance happens, which requires speedy Dispatch, it is remitted to the Senate, which



is made up of the principal Magistrates, and the chief Men of the three Leagues, viz. The *Grand Prevot* of the *Grison League*, the *Burgomaster* of *Chur* for the *Cadce*, and the *Amman* of *Davas*, for the *Ten Jurisdictions*; but their Resolutions must be confirm'd by the Communities.

The *Grisons* possess likewise the *VALTELINE*, and the Counties of *Chiavenna* and *Bormio*, ancient Dependences of the Dutchy of *Milan*; which *Maximilian Sforza*, Duke of *Milan* gave them in recompence of their good Service done him; and which *Francis I.* afterwards confirm'd to them. Of these we shall treat particularly afterwards.

The *GRISON League*, is bounded with the Canton of *Glaris* on the North, that of *Uri* on the West, the 4 Governments of *Italy* on the South, and the ten Commonalties on the East, and has within it these Towns,

*Ilantz*, Cap. } *Flintz*.  
*Dissentis*. } *Splagen*.

*Ilantz*, a small Town upon the *Rhine*, about 15 Miles from *Chur* to the South-West, wherein the Assemblies of the three Leagues meet.

The League of *Cadce* or *Gotthspunt*, is bounded on the North with the *Ten Commonalties* and the Province of *Tirol*, on the South with the Country of *Chiavenna*, on the West with the *Grison League*, and on the East with the County of *Bormio*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Chur*, Cap. } *Vesprun*.  
*Cassaccia*. } *Bergon*.

*Chur*, *Curia*, by the *French* call'd *Coire*, is the Chief City of this League, and the most considerable Town in the *Grison Territories*, seated at the foot of two Mountains, on the Banks of the little River *Plesur*, about a Mile and a half from the *Rhine*, 26 Miles from *Chiavenna* to the North, 41 from *Altorf* to the East, and 60 from *Constance* to the South. It was formerly defended by the Castles of *Marsoil* and *Imburg*, and was a free imperial Town till the Year, 1498. The Bishop of *Chur* is a Prince of the Empire: And his Revenues were formerly very considerable, the greatest part of the League of *Gotthspunt* depending on him. But the most part of the Commonalties of that League redeem'd their dependance with a Sum of Money, and the rest shook off the Yoke upon the change of Religion; so that his Revenue is not now above Sixteen thousand *Livres per Annum*.

The League of the *TEN JURISDICTIONS*, *Fœdus decem Jurisdictionum*, viz. *Taffas*, or *Davas*, *Alfenau* or *Belfort*, *Churwalden*, *Langwis*, *S. Peter*, the *Abbey* in *Perigow*, *Schiers*, *Languart* and *Mayenfeld*. The first Eight of these belong'd to the House of *Austria*, by a Donation made in the Year, 1489. by *Gaudens* Count of *Amat*, who was Heir to the Counts of *Toggenburg*, who succeeded the Barons of *Vatz*. The other two belong'd to the Counts of *Toggenburg*, from whom the Counts of *Brandis* did purchase them. Their principal Town is *Davas*, which stands on a Lake about 20 Miles from *Chur*, to the North-East.

The *VALTELINE*, *Vallis Tellina*, or *Volturena Vallis*, is a part of *Rætia propria*, anciently inhabited by the *Vennones*. It is a long and pleasant Valley, stretch'd out betwixt the Lake of *Como* and *Tirol*. It owes that name to the Castle of *Tell*, situated on the top of a Hill, whose foot is wash'd by

the *Adda*. It is bounded by the *Grisons* on the North, *Tirol* on the East, the State of *Venice* on the South, and the *Milanes* on the West. The Soil of it is very Fertile, and the Country well Peopled. It is ordinarily divided into 3 Parts, or *Tertiaria*, which the *Italians* call, *il Terzero di Sopra*, or the upper third Part, *Terzero di Mezzo*, or the middle, and *Terzero di Sotto*, or the lower. In the First of these is *Tirano*, in the Second *Sondrio*, and in the Third *Morbegno*.

*Tirano*, *Tiranum*, the chief Town of this Province, is seated on the Banks of the River *Adda*, about 6 Miles from the Frontiers of *Italy* and Territories of *Venice*, 85 South-East from the Lake of *Constance*, and 50 from *Chur* to the South-East. It has eleven Communities depending on it.

*Sondrio*, *Sondrium* or *Sondrisium*, the chief Town of this Part of the *Valtelline*, stands also upon the *Adda*, where it receives the Brook *Maler*, almost in the middle between *Tirano* to the East, and *Morbegno* to the West, 37 Miles from *Chur* to the South, and 40 from the Head of the *Rhine* to the East. It is the Place of greatest Strength in all the *Valtelline*; and the Captain of the *Valtelline*, who is both first Administrator of Justice and Commander in chief of the Forces, keeps his ordinary Residence there. He can substitute a Deputy to determin Causes both Civil and Criminal, but there lies an Appeal from him to the General Diet of the *Grisons*.

*Morbegno*, *Morbonium*, a little Town, in this Valley, about 8 Miles from the Lake *Como*, and 16 from *Sondrio* to the North-East, on it there depends eleven Communities.

The Spaniards have, since the beginning of this Century, attempted several times to make themselves Masters of this Valley, that they might the more easily bridle the *Grisons*, and secure the Communication betwixt the Territories of the House of *Austria* in *Germany*, with those of that House in *Italy*, but the *French* have not suffer'd them to keep possession of it.

The County of *CHIAVENNA*, *Comitatus Clavennæ*, which is of no great extent, is bounded on the North and West by the *Grison League*, on the South by the 4 Governments of *Italy*, and on the East by the *Valtelline*. It is divided into two *Bailiages*, viz. *Chiavenna* and *Pleury*.

*Chiavenna*, *Clavenna*, is a little Town upon the River *Maira*, at the foot of the Mountains, which a little below falls into the Lake of *Como*; it is delightfully Situated, and very well Built. It was once much larger than it is now, but about Five hundred Years ago, all the north Part of it was Buried in the Ruins of a Mountain. The like sad Accident befel the Town of *Pleury*, on the 25th of *August*, 1618. It was not so large a Town as *Chiavenna*, but the Houses were finer, insomuch that it pass'd for one of the finest Towns in *Italy*; but the Inhabitants were horribly leud and debauch'd, and so drew down that heavy Judgment upon themselves.

The County of *BORMIO*, *Bormiensis Comitatus*, by the *Italians* call'd *il Contado di Bormio*, is bounded on the North and West by *Cardee*, on the West by the *Valtelline*, on the South by the *Venetian Dominions*. It is surrounded with inaccessible Mountains, and divided into 5 *Bailiages*, which they call *Communities*, or *Neighbourhoods*.

*Bormio*, *Bormium*, is the Chief Town of the County of that name, and is otherwise call'd *Worms* by



by the *Germani*. It stands on the *Albia*, 3 Miles from its Spring, near the entrance of the *Vaite ine*, and the South side of the River *Ozbia*, 40 Miles from *Clus* *una* to the East, near 50 West from *Tient* to the West, and 30 from *Clus* to the South-East.

The ABBEY OF S. GALL, *Forum Sancti Galli*, or *Reipublica Sancti Galli*. This Abbey, from which the Country has its name, was founded in *Turgow*, in the Reign of *Dagobert*, by one *Gall*, a *Scotoman*, who having successfully preached the Gospel in those Parts, about the Year, 630. retired, as they say, the Bishoprick of *Constance*, and retired into a Desert, and was followed by a great many People, and founded this Monastery, or rather it was built afterwards in Honour of him. *Sigebert* King of *Austria* bestowed great Revenues on it. About 80 or 100 Years after, the King of *France* erected it into an Abbey, and gave the Monks the Privilege of choosing their own Abbots. *Omer* having been chose Abbot, and finding St. Gall's Rules to be a little too rigid, changed them for those of St. *Benedict*. Several of the Bishops of *Constance* enjoyed this Dignity, till the Monks growing jealous of the Bishops, they resolved to own none for their Government but their own Abbots. This of *Aufax* was made a Prince of the Empire by the Emperor *Philip*, and extended his Dominions considerably. *Carlo* the 5th. had great Differences with the People of *Alsace*, who had redeemed themselves from under his Subjection. *Henry* of *Mandiff* renewed his Pretensions at the Emperor *Sigismund's* Court, Ann. 1420. But *Gaspard* of *Landerberg*, a Man of greater Temper and Moderation than his Predecessors, knowing very well that those Pretensions would be the ground of a perpetual War, did renounce them, by the Alliance which was made with the Cantons of *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Schwitz*, and *Glaris*, in the Year, 1454. This Territory lies on the North of the Cantons, and on the Banks of the Lake of *Constance*.

The Town of S. GALL, has its Name from an Abbey, which we have describ'd. It stands in *Turgow*, 3 Mile from the Lake of *Constance*, and 12 from *Lindaw* to the West. The Emperor *Frederick* I. made it an Imperial City, and bestow'd upon it great Privileges, which were confirm'd by the Emperor *Frederick* II. Ann. 1220. It redeem'd itself with a Sum of Money, and entered into Alliance with the Cantons of *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Lucern*, *Schwitz*, *Zug* and *Glaris*, in the Year, 1454. The Government of this Town is in the Hands of a Society of the Nobility, and six Companies of *Tibuts* of the People; the first of which is that of the Weavers, because *Linnen Cloth* is the greatest and most profitable Commodity of that Country. Out of all these Companies there are 90 Chosen, 66 of whom make up the Grand Council, and 24 the Lesser. The former meets five times a Year; the other every *Tuesday* and *Thursday*, except Holy-days and Fair-days. There are several other Courts of Justice, particularly one for inspecting the Cloth; which as we have said, is their greatest Manufacture.

Besides this, the Abbot of St. Gall possesses the Country of *Toggenburg*, the Seigniorie and Town of *Gerschnus* in *Turgow*, and several other places in *Rhinland*.

The County of *VALAIS*, *Vallesia*, by the *Germani* called *Walgensland* and *Valinga*, by some

Writers of the middle Age, the ancient Seat of the *Seduni* and *Veragri*, a People of *Gallia-Narbonensis*, lies among the Alps, between *Switzerland* on the North and East, the *Milanese* and the *Duchy of Acul* on the South, and *Savoy* on the West. It is divided into the Higher and Lower; the Higher is divided into 7 Parts, call'd *Dizains* by the *French*, *Zenden* by the *Germani*. The Lower, which lies to the West of the other, is divided into six Parts or Communities, call'd *Bannieres*, according to *Plantina*. They entered into Alliance with the Cantons of *Lucern*, *Uri* and *Unterwald*, in the Year, 1446. and with that of *Bern*, 1475. at last the Bishop of *Sion* and the other *Dizaines*, have entered into and confirm'd a particular Alliance with the seven Popish Cantons, by the Treaties made in the Years 1553, 1600 and 1634. This Country is a large, pleasant and fruitful Valley, surrounded with Hills and Rocks, having but one Passage into it, where there are two Gates and a Castle. It produces plenty of Corn, Safron, Grapes and other Fruits; also some Mines, and Springs of Mineral Water. It is reckoned to be 80 Miles long, and between 10 and 20 broad. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Sion*, Cap.

*Martinach*.

*St. Maurice*.

*Sion*, *Sedunum*, anciently a Town in *Gallia Narbonensis*, possess'd by the *Seduni*, and now call'd *Sitten* by the *Germani*, stands upon the River *Sitte*, which throws it self into the *Rhone* a little below. It is situated in a delightful Plain, overlook'd by a Hill of a moderate height, on the East-side. The Hill rises up with two Tops; upon the highest of which *Majria*, as they call it, there is a Fortrefs, where the Bishop for the most part resides. Upon the other top is the Fortrefs call'd *Valeria*, and the Third call'd *Turbillon*, is a Fortrefs built upon the top of the *Majria*. This Town is distant from *Bern* to the South about 55 Miles, from *Geneva* 65, to the East, and 100 from *Milan* to the West. It belongs to the Bishop ever since the Donation made by *Charlemain* to *Theodorus*, who then govern'd that Church. *Adrian* of *Rithmal* made an Alliance with the Seven Catholick Cantons, in the Year, 1533, chiefly for the sake of their Religion.

*Martinach*, or *Mantigny*, the ancient *Ostodurum* or *Ostodurus*, as *Rhenanus* and *Simleius* think, a Town in *Gallia Narbonensis*, according to *Cæsar*, tho' there was another *Ostodurum* in *Hispania Tarraconensis*. It stands upon the little River *Dranse*, which falls into the *Rhone* a little below. There is to be seen the Ruins of a strong and very fine Castle; and here they say it was that the *Thebane Legion* call'd *Fulminatrix*, whereof *St. Maurice* was Chief, was first decimated, and afterwards cut in Pieces, under the Emperor *Dioclesian*, for not assisting at the Pagan Sacrifices, and embracing that Religion. It lies 12 Miles to the West from *Sion*, 30 to the North from *Aculie* in *Piedmont*, and 20 East from the Lake of *Geneva*.

The County of *NEUCHATELL*, call'd *Neu-stat* by the *Germani*, lies extended for the space of about 22 Miles, between the Mountains *Jura* on the West, which separates it from *France* and *Burgundy*, and the Lakes of *Neuchatell* and *Bien* on the East, which divide it from the Canton of *Bern*, and between *Basil* on the North, and *Laufanna* on the South. *Meimphis* was Count of *Neuchatell*



*Neufchatell* about the Year 815; but to trace down the Succession from him to this present time, would be tedious; and therefore we shall only put the Reader in mind, That *Johana* of *Hochberg*, Heiress of *Neufchatell*, having married *Lewis* of *Orleans* Duke of *Longueville*, about the Year 1504. translated that County into this Family. *Francis* his Son dying without Issue, 1551. *Leonor* of *Orleans*, Marquis of *Rotelin*, his Cousin, succeeded him; *James* of *Savoy*, Duke of *Nemours*, Son of *Philip* and *Charlotte* of *Orleans*, Sister of *Lewis* Duke of *Longueville*, laid claim to the half of the County, which *Leonor* would have consented to, but the States of that Country would not allow it, because they could not endure to have two Masters. Thus the Matter stood undecided for some time, 'till the Year 1557. that the Estates summon'd the Dukes of *Longueville* and *Nemours* before the Council of *Bern*, where it was concluded, That the County of *Neufchatell* should remain intirely in the Possession of the Duke of *Longueville*; and that the Duke of *Nemours* should have 2000 Livres a Year in Land, in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, and 2000 Crowns from the Town of *Neufchatell*. *Leonor* left by *Mary* of *Bourbon*, *Henry* I. who had by *Katharine* of *Gonzague*, *Henry* II. who died, *An.* 1663. leaving by his first Marriage with *Louisa* of *Bourbon*, Daughter of *Charles* of *Bourbon*, Count of *Soissons*, *Mary* of *Orleans*, who was married to *Henry* of *Savoy*, Duke of *Nemours*, in the Year 1657. *Henry* II. took for his second Wife *Ann Genevieve* of *Bourbon*, Daughter of *Henry* of *Bourbon*, Prince of *Conde*, by whom he had *John-Lewis-Charles*, and *Charles-Paris*; the former of whom gave the County of *Neufchatell* to his Brother, in the Year 1668. upon Condition that if he should die without Children, the County should return to him; which case happening in the Year 1672. he entred again into the Possession of his Estate; and so the Dutcheß of *Nemours* his Sister, putting in for his Successor in the County of *Neufchatell*, the Matter was brought before the Estates of the Country, who rejected her Pretensions, and adjudged the Sovereignty to his Brother.

The Town of *Neufchatell*, is seated on a Lake of the same Name, and so call'd from a Castle built on a Hill that commands the Town, being distant 30 Miles from *Lausanna* and the Lake of *Geneva* to the North, 28 from *Bern* to the West, and 30 from *Solothurn* to the South West.

*MULHAUSEN*, *Mulhusia*, stands in the upper *Alsace*, upon the River *Ell*, about 10 Miles from *Pfirt* to the North, as many from *Basil* to the North West, and *Nemburg* to the West. It freed it self from the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Straßburg*, *An.* 1261. and was made an imperial City, and has been in Alliance with *Switzerland* since the Year 1515. There is another City of this Name in *Thuringen* under the Protection of the Duke of *Saxony*.

*ROTWEIL*, *Rotevilla*, a Town in *Schwaben*, and one of the Allies of *Switzerland*. It stands on the River *Necker*, near the Mountains of *Albenow*, about 40 Miles from *Brisac* to the East, and 42 from *Schaffenhause*n to the North. Duke *Conrade* III. erected a Court of Justice here for the whole Province of *Schwaben*, *An.* 1147. and Mr. *de Guebriant* Marshal of *France*, being mortally wounded in the Siege of this Place, died in it after it was taken by the French, 17 Nov. 1643.

*BIENNE*, *Bienna*, is a small Town on the Banks of the River *Tschus*, which empties it self into the Lake of *Bienna*, a little way from the Town. It lies within the Bishoprick of *Basil*; but is free and independent. The Bishops of that See have had great Pretensions to it; and therefore finding it self like to be hard put to it, allied it self with the Canton of *Bern*, *An.* 1552. and afterwards more strictly, *An.* 1567; which it confirm'd with *Solothurn*, *An.* 1597. and not long after with the Canton of *Friburg*. However, notwithstanding this Alliance, it does in some measure own the Bishop's Superiority, since it is obliged to furnish him a certain Number of Men in the time of War, and to pay him Tithes. The Valley of *S. Immer*, otherwise call'd the Lordship of *Largue*, belongs to this Town. It is divided into several Communities, who have each of 'em their *Amman*, from whom there lies an Appeal to the Council of the Town.

*GENEVA*, *Geneva*, or *Genuensium Civitas*, anciently a City of the *Allobroges* in *Gallia Narbonensis*, stands on the River *Rhone*, where it comes out of the Lake *Leman*, commonly call'd the Lake of *Geneva*. In the Latitude of 46. 20. Long. 26. at the distance of about 80 Miles from *Bern* to the North West, as many from *Lions* to the East, and 110 from *Basil* to the South West. The *Rhone* divides it into two Parts, the South part of it, which stands upon a rising Ground, and is the greater, is call'd *Geneva*; the other, which properly belongs to the Country of *Gex*, is call'd *Gervais*. This City is very considerable, for its Antiquity, advantageous Situation, the great number of its Inhabitants, and its Commerce. It was here that *Cæsar*, to prevent the Irruptions of the *Helvetii*, caused an Entrenchment to be made 19 Miles long, and 16 Foot high, from the Lake of *Geneva* to the Mountains *Jura*; some Vestigia of which are still to be seen near *Gingin*. It was almost burnt to Ashes in the Time of *Heliogabulus*, and ordered to be re-built by *Aurelian*, who would have it nam'd after him; but after his death it resum'd its former Name. The *Burgundians* are said to have driven the *Romans* from hence, and after the fall of their Kingdom, it became an imperial Town; and a long time after the Bishops of it were both Spiritual and Temporal Lords; but it was with great difficulty that they preserved their Sovereignty, by reason it was disputed by the Counts of *Geneva*, after they became Vicars of the Empire. *Peter* dying without Children, *An.* 1392. appointed *Humbert de Villars*, his Nephew, his Heir; who died, *An.* 1400. *Odo de Villars*, his Uncle succeeding, sold the Country of *Geneva* to *Lewis* Count of *Savoy*, *An.* 1401. But the Male Race of the House of *Geneva* failing, this Prince was forc'd to desire a new Investiture; which the Emperor *Sigismund* granted him, *An.* 1424. and *Maximilian* I. confirm'd it, *An.* 1519. as did also *Charles* V. *An.* 1530. The Dukes of *Savoy* pretended that the Town of *Geneva* was under their Jurisdiction. It is true, they did appoint Judges and Notaries in it, and coin'd Money; but all this was owing to the weakness of the Bishops, who were not able at that time to oppose such Incroachments. The Publick Cries were made always in Name of the Bishop or his Vidame; the inferior Officers did so much depend upon him that he could depose them when he thought fit: And the Magistrates received Power from the Bishop to judge in Criminal Causes, when the Person was not an Ecclesiastick. Nor need it be brought as an Ar-



gement against their Sovereignty, that before they entred upon Possession of their Bishoprick, they took an Oath to maintain the Liberty and Privileges of the City, since that it is no more than what most Kings and Princes in *Europe* do at their Coronation. At last, in the Year 1535. the Reformation prevailing in this City, the Bishop, *Peter de Beaum*, together with the *Roman* Catholics, was obliged to leave the City; nor has he or any of his Successors ever been able to return, but live in the enjoyment of their empty Title at *Anncy*, about 26 Miles from *Geneva*. After this Revolution, the Form of Government was chang'd, and a new Constitution established, which is popular, and not much different from that which is in most of the *Swiss* Cantons; for the Sovereignty is lodg'd in the Council of 200, out of which Number 25 are chosen to make up the lesser Council; both are for Life, and serve as Checks on one another; the Sovereignty residing in one and the Magistracy in the other. The lesser inspects into the great, when they choose the Counsellors; and the great examines all that the lesser does. Besides these two, there is a third Council, consisting of 60 Persons chosen out of that of 200, which is properly the Council of State; and it is they who direct and advise the lesser Council, in Matters of Importance and Difficulty. The Syndicks are the Chief Magistrates of this little Commonwealth; and are elected by the whole Body of the Burgesies on the first Sunday of the Year. There are several other inferior Courts and Judges, appointed by the grand Council, whose Office is annual.

This City is pretty well fortified, and their Ramparts might secure it against any sudden Surprise or Scalade, but are not sufficient against the vigorous and frequent Attacks of a numerous Army; and therefore they place their greatest Strength and Security in that firm Alliance which they preserve with the Cantons of *Zurich* and *Bern*. The most remarkable Things in this City, are the Arsenal, which is very well furnish'd, and (as Doctor *Burnet* says) the best in the World in proportion to the State, there being Arms in it for more Men than there are in the State; with good store of Cannon. In the Arsenal are also to be seen the famous Scaling Ladders, which the *Savoyards* made use of when they attempted to surprize the Place. *An. 1602.* and the Petard, with which they design'd to have broken the new Gate.

The Town-house, which has a Stair-Case of singular Workmanship, and is a very fair and stately Building. The publick Library, which is, at the College, and consists of about 3000 Volumes; but it is not in very good order, by reason here is no Fund for augmenting the number of Books or maintaining a Library-keeper. The Academy; which is furnish'd with able Professors; but since the Protestants were expelled *France*, the number of Students of Divinity is much less: But to make amends for that, especially during the late Wars, many come to this Place to learn their Exercises, especially Protestants. The principal Church is dedicated to *St. Peter*, and in it is to be seen the Tomb of *Hen. 11. Duke of Rohan*. There is also a *Dutch* and *Italian* Church, and there was an *English* one.

The Streets of this City are very large and beautiful, and the greatest part of their Houses, especially such as have been built within these 20 or 30 Years are of free Stone; but the Town is neither large nor very fine, yet it may (according to *Misson*) be call'd a very lovely Town. It has the advantage of pleasant Walks, and the Conversation of the Inhabitants is very familiar and easie. The common People are clownish, but honest; and the Persons of Note are extremely kind, civil and ingenious. The vulgar Tongue here is *Savoyard*, but People of Quality and Breeding speak French. The Revenues of this little State may amount to about 100000 Crowns: And they keep some Gallies on the Lake, and so does the Duke of *Savoy* and the *Switzers*.

The Lake is above 50 Miles long, and 12 at most broad, but its depth is not equal. It is very well stocked with great Variety of good Fish, especially Trouts, some of which weigh above 50 Pound. Which tho' it looks a little strange to us here, Mr. *Misson* says, he saw one in one of the Halls of the Arsenal of *Munich*, that weigh'd 73 Pounds. The Water of the Lake is extremely clear and fresh, except when it is disturb'd by the Winds, then it rages like a little Sea. Nor is it credible, that the *Rhone* passes through it without mingling his Waters, as *Polybius*, and after him other Authors have maintain'd; for considering the length and crooked Figure of the Lake, that seems absurd and impossible.

## C H A P. IV.

### *The Subjects of the Switzers.*

THE Cantons of *Switzerland* having entred into Alliance with one another, not at the same, but at different times, they must have their particular and separate Subjects; because when a new Canton was receiv'd into the Society of the perpetual League, they did not at the same time enter into the Participation of what the rest possess'd, but only those that they should hereafter acquire. So the Bailiages of *Uznach* and *Gustal* belong to the Cantons of *Schwitx* and *Glaris*, and *Rhinthal* to the seven first Cantons, and that of *Appenzel*. These Bailiages and Places are all govern'd after the same manner, without derogating from their Laws or encroaching upon their Privileges and Customs.

The Cantons to whom they belong send once a Year or once in two Years sometimes Governors, who are Judges in all Matters, who receive the Revenues and Customs, and make account of their Managements to the Diet of *Baden*. Nevertheless those Governors are not look'd upon as such in the Bailiages before they take an Oath for maintaining inviolable the Privileges of the Country, which they call their *Municipal Laws*. In *Switzerland* these Governors are call'd *Bailiffs*; but in *Italy*, Captains. In Criminal Cases they make the Country Magistrates their Assessors, and give an account of their Administration to the Deputies who are sent by the Cantons to *Lugan* to determin Appeals. In the time of War these Bailiages



Bailiages are oblig'd to send their Militia to be list'd under the Banners of the Cantons to which they belong.

The Bailiages of *Usnach* and *Gustal* lie between the Lakes of *Zurich* and *Wesen*, and because they depend upon the Canton of *Schwitz* as well as that of *Glaris*, they have a Governor from each Canton by turns.

*Rhental*, *Rhingovia*, has its Name from the Situation of it along the *Rhine*, extending from the Lake of *Constance* to the Barony of *Sax*. It is divided into two Bailiages; that which lies on the right Bank of the *Rhine* belongs to the House of *Austria*, that on the other side belongs to the 7 first Cantons and that of *Appenzel*; and in it there are two little Towns, *viz.* *Altest* and *Rhinec* upon the *Rhine*, in the latter of which the Bailiff keeps his Residence. The Inhabitants of this Valley are chiefly employed in spinning Flax, the greatest part of which is employed in the Manufacture of *St. Gall*.

The County of *Sargan*, *Sargantia*, is separated from the *Grisons* by the *Rhine*, and owes its Name to the River *Sarn*, which divides it into two; tho' others are of opinion that it is so call'd from the *Sarnutes*, People of *Rhetie*, who dwelt about the Source of the River *Inn*; but it is not worth the while to debate it. This County was sold to the 7 first Cantons by the Count of *Montfort*, in the Year 1488. There are in it, besides *Sargan*, which is a pretty little Town, and enjoys several Privileges, *Valhenstat*, upon the Lake of *Riva*, *Ragatz*, and the Abbey of *Pfuers*, of the Order of *St. Bennet*, founded, *An.* 720.

The Free Provinces, *Provincia Libera*, consist in certain Villages and Castles lying along the River *Rufs*, above and below *Bremgarten* on the left Bank of the River. They are call'd Free, because the Villages of *Mayenberg*, *Richensea*, and *Argow*, set themselves at Liberty, and choose their particular Magistrates. These Provinces formerly made up the County of *Rore*, the Lord of which resided at *Arow*. The *Lucernois* made themselves Masters of it in the time of the Council of *Constance*, and would have appropriated it to themselves, in prejudice of the 7 old Cantons; but the Canton of *Bern* being made Umpire to decide the Matter, condemn'd the *Lucernois*, and made the other Cantons Sharers. Within this Country is the Abbey of *Muren*, which is the ordinary Residence of the Bailiff.

The Country of *Turgow*, *Turgea* or *Turgovia*, is of a pretty large Extent, reaching from the Lake of *Zurich* to that of *Constance*, and takes its Name either from the *Taurisci*, who inhabited it, or the River *Thur*, which washes it. The 7 old Cantons possess only a small part of it, *viz.* that where *Dissenhow* lies, upon the *Rhine* between *Stein* and *Schaffhausen*; which the *Swiss* made themselves Masters of, *An.* 1460. The rest is possess'd by several Proprietors, some of whom are Lay-men, some Clergy-men. The Bishop of *Constance* possesses the Lordships of *Arbon*, *Tanneg*, *Guttingen*, *Gottliche*, and *Bischoffzell*. The Chapter of *Constance* that of *Altnaw*; the Abbot of *St. Gall*, a considerable part of it. Among the Lay-mens Possessions may be reckon'd, the Seigniories of *Pfin*, *Winfilden*, *Burglen*, *Wingi*, and *Spiagberg*.

The County of *Rore*, comprehends the Burroughs of *Meimberg*, *Richaee*, *Mury*, *Bremgarten* and *Vil-vergen*.

The Bailiage of *Morat*, lies between the County of *Arbeg*, the Canton of *Friburg*, and the Bailiages

of *Louppen* and *Avenzel*. It is the first of the 4 Bailiages that depend on the Cantons of *Bern* and *Friburg*. Which they made themselves Masters of during their Wars with *Charles* the Terrible, Duke of *Burgundy*.

The Town of *Morat*, *Moratum*, or *Muratum*, lies in the Country of *Romont*, on a Lake of the same Name, about 6 Miles from *Friburg* to the North, and 12 from *Bern* to the West. It is famous on the account of a signal Victory which the *Switzers* obtain'd over the Forces of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* on the 22d of *June*, 1476 in which they slew above 18000 of his Men; and as a Monument of their Victory, built a Chappel in the Field of Battle, in which they put the Bones of the slain. At *Friburgh* they renew the Memory of this and another Battle, by solemn Feasts and publick Rejoicing, twice a Year, *viz.* the 2d of *March*, and 22d of *June*.

The Bailiage of *Orbe*, is so call'd from a little Town of the same Name, which stands on a Hill, near the little River *Orbe*, about 5 Miles from *Iverdun* to the West, and 18 from the Lake of *Geneva* to the North. It is said to be the ancient *Urba*, where the *Urbigeni* dwelt. In this Bailiage also stands the Borough of *Eschalen*, near the little River *Talen*.

The Bailiage of *Granfon*, is likewise so call'd from a Town of that Name, near the Lake of *Newschatel*, about a Mile from the Town of *Newschatel* to the South, and 3 from *Friburg* to the West. It is also famous for the Battle which the *Bernois* and *Friburgois* gain'd over *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, *An.* 1476. on the 2d of *March*; where this Prince left all his Baggage, which consisted in Money and other Things of great Value.

The Bailiage of *Schwartzenburg*, is upon the Confines of the Canton of *Friburg*, and is very well peopled, having many good Villages in it; the chief of which are *Valeren*, *Albingen*, and *Guggisberg*.

The Bailiage of *Lugan*, *Lucarn*, *Mendrise*, and *Valmedie*, belong to the 12 first Cantons, by a Donation, which *Maximilian Sforza* made, in the Year 1512. which was confirm'd by *Francis* I. after the Battle of *Marignan*. The Governors of these Bailiages are sent from the several Cantons to which they belong, by turns. They are very well peopled; that of *Lugan* comprehending 90 Villages, *Lucarn* 5 Parishes, and the rest proportionally.

The Bailiages of *Belizone*, *Valbrun*, and *Riviere*, belong to the Canton of *Uri*, *Schwitz* and *Underwald*. They did depend on the Duchy of *Milan*; but were given to these Cantons in the Year 1422. The Dukes of *Milan* took Possession of them again; but by the Treaty of Alliance which was made between *Francis* I. and the Cantons, it was agreed, That they should return to the Cantons of *Uri*, *Schwitz*, and *Underwald*, to be enjoy'd by them for ever.

### The Stipendary Towns of the Switzers.

THE Towns of *Baden*, *Bremgarten*, *Mellingen*, *Rapservivil*, *Frawenfeld*, are under the Dominion of some of the Cantons, and are call'd *Stipendary*, because they enjoy some Immunities, as, to live according to their own Laws and Customs, and to choose their own Magistrates; but are oblig'd in the time of War to raise a certain number of Troops, and maintain them at their own Charges.

*Baden*,



*Baden, Castellum Aquarum, or Thermarium*, anciently call'd *Aqua Helvetia*, stands upon the River *Limach*, which a little below falls into the *Aar*. It is distant 6 Miles from the *Rhine* to the South, 30 from *Basil* to the East, and about 12 from *Zurich* to the North West. It was the chief Town of a County which pass'd into the Hands of the Counts of *Kyburg*. *An.* 1180. by the death of *Henry* last Count of *Baden*. *Herman* of *Kyburg* leaving no Children, and the Succession being disputed by several Pretenders, *Radolph* Count of *Hapsburg* made himself Master of it; and his Successors kept it till the time of the Council of *Constance*. This Town, on the account of the Conveniency of its Situation, several Houses in it being fit for great Assemblies, was chosen for the ordinary Place of the Meetings of the General Diets of the Cantons, and for entertaining Foreign Ambassadors. It is famous for a Conference that was held in it about Matters of Religion. *An.* 1526. and the mutual League made with the Cantons the same Year. It is call'd *Ober Baden*, or *Upper Baden*, to distinguish it from another Town of that Name in *Schwaben*. Both of them are famous for their hot Baths, and each of 'em are defended by a strong Castle built on a Hill.

*Bremgarten, Bremocartum*, is a little Town upon the Banks of the River *Russ*, 15 Miles from *Baden*, towards *Lucern*, and 3 from *Zug* to the North. It was once an imperial Town, afterwards subject to the Counts of *Hapsburg*, from whom it pass'd to the Dukes of *Austria*, and from them to the *Swiss*, and belongs to the 8 first Cantons.

*Mellingen, Mellina*, stands upon the same River, about 12 Miles from *Zurich* to the West, and about 28 from *Lucern* to the North. The Emperor *Sigismund* sold it to *Zurich*, and it now belongs to the 8 old Cantons.

*Raperswil, Rapersville, or Ruperti Villa*, stands upon the Lake of *Zurich*, where it is divided into the Lake of *Zurich*, properly so call'd; and the *Upper Lake*. It formerly belong'd to the Counts of that Name, who were succeeded by the Counts of *Hapsburg*. The People of *Zurich* having ruined it, it was re-built, *An.* 1351. by *Albert* Duke of *Austria*. It is 26 Miles from *Zug* to the East, and 15 from *Zurich* to the South East, towards *Cham*.

*Trawenfeld*, stands upon the River *Murg*, about 20 Miles from *Constance* to the West. The *Swiss* made themselves Masters of it; *An.* 1460. in the time of *Sigismund* Duke of *Austria*.



# SAVOY, Sabaudia.

By Rob. Falconer.



**T**HIS Country was anciently inhabited by a part of the *Allobroges*, the *Centrones*, the *Nantuates*, *Garocelli*, the *Veragri* and the *Sallassi*. The *Allobroges* possess'd that part of the Country which lies between the *Rhone* where it comes

out of the *Lake Leman*, the Country of the *Nantuates*, that of the *Centrones* and the *Isere*. The *Centrones* lived in the Vallies of the *Alpes Graie* (le *Mont Foux*) now call'd *Tarantaise*; The *Garocelli*, in the Country now call'd *Maurienne*; The *Nantuates* in that



that which is now *Chablais* and *St. Maurice*; The *Verag* is in that part of the *Valais* where *Martigni* is; And the *Saaz* is in that which is now the Valley of *Acuit*. *Terentius Varro* subdued the *Salassii*, and *Augustus* vanquished the rest of those People. After the *Roman* Empire became a Prey to the barbarous Nations, this Country was possess'd sometimes by one, sometimes by another of them. The *Burgundians* remain'd Masters of it for a long time, and incorporated it into the Kingdom which they establish'd of a part of *Gallia Celtica* and *Gallia Narbonensis*. *Bism*, Count of *Ardenne*, who married *Ermengarde*, Daughter of *Lewis II.* Emperor of *Italy*, caus'd himself to be chosen King of *Picardie* by the Estates of that Country, assembled at *Mental*, in the Month of *October*, 579. *Lewis* his Son, surnam'd the *Blind*, who was likewise King of *Italy*, left by *Adelias*, *Charles* Constantine Prince of *Vienna*, who had by *Theberge*, *Amadeo* Father of *Humbert*, surnam'd *White Hands*; from whom some Authors derive the Succession of the Princes of *Savoy*; tho' others, considerable both for their Authority and Number, will have them come from *Berold* of *Saxony*, as the more honourable Stock. And therefore since Historians are so much divided about it, we must desire the Reader to have recourse to those Authors, and go on to that which more properly belongs to a Work of this Nature.

*Savoy*, is bounded on the North by the Lake of *Geneva*, and *Italy*, on the East by the Vallies of *Sela* and *Piedmont*, on the South by *Dauphine*, and on the West by the *Rhone*; which separates it from *Bugey*. The Soil of this Country is generally very good; the Vallies affording plenty of Corn and Grapes, and the Mountains Pasture for great Numbers of Cattel, and good Variety of Game. The Lakes afford good store of Trouts, Pikes, and Carps, and several other sorts of Fishes. This Country is very well provided with Timber, especially Walnut and Chestnut Trees. The Air is also cool and temperate, by reason of the great number of Mountains that are always cover'd with Snow. The *Isere*, *Arche*, and *Arve*, are the most considerable Rivers, as those of *Biurget* and *Annecy*, are the most noted Lakes. The *Savoyards* are an industrious and courteous People, and of a gentle Disposition, especially the Persons of Quality, who have something of Greatness in their Looks and Meen. They are all of the Roman Catholick Religion.

The chief Commodities of this Country are Paper, Fustians, raw Silks, Hides, Cloths, Linnen, Thread, Iron-work, Fir-trees for Masts of Ships, and other valuable Things.

**J U S T I C E** is administred in this Country very regularly and orderly. There are three Senates to whom Appeals are made from the Bailiages and inferior Tribunals. The first is for *Savoy*, the second for *Piedmont*, and the third for the County of *Nice* and its Dependencies. The Seat of the first is at *Chambery*; and it is compos'd of 4 Presidents, 15 Senators, without reckoning the Abbot of *Haute-comb*, who is a Senator born, one Advocate General, one Procurator General, two Registers, and two Secretaries. It was instituted by *Amadeo VIII.* 1430. The Senate of *Piedmont* was establish'd by *Lewis I.* Duke of *Savoy*, who resolv'd to reside in *Piedmont*, d'd by his Ordinance of the 15th of *May*, 1459. create a Council, in the City of *Turin*, to determine Affairs in that Country without Appeal; which afterwards assum'd the Name of Senate. It consists of 4 Presidents, 2 Knights, 15 Senators, an Advocate

General, and a Procurator General. The Senate of *Nice* was instituted by *Charles Emanuel*; and it is compos'd of 2 Presidents, 6 Senators, an Advocate General, and a Procurator General.

Besides these Sovereign Courts, there are two Chambers of Accounts, and a Council of Finances. That of *Savoy* was instituted by *Amadeo the Green*, An. 1351. and *Philbert Emanuel* declar'd it Sovereign and Independant of the Senate of *Chambery*, by an Edict, dated at *Mondovi*, 6 Oct. 1630. and at the same time created that of *Turin*, with the same Prerogatives. The Superintendant of the Finances presides in the Council of that Name, and appoints the Meetings of it. He examines all the Accounts of those who have the Management of the publick Monny; and it is here that all Affairs relating to the Finances are examin'd and determin'd.

Altho' the Duke of *Savoy* be a Vassal of the Empire, he governs his own Dominions with an absolute Authority. His Revenue in all may amounts to about 5000000 Livres; and his Army in time of Peace is very small, but in time of War about 10 or 11 thousand Men. The Situation of his Dominions upon the Confines of *France*, and at the entry to *Italy*, renders this Prince considerable, if he be so wise as to know his true Interest. The *Alps* were formerly a Rampart to them against the Attacks of their Enemies; but after the French King took *Pignerol*, those Mountains were found not to be inaccessible. *Savoy* is defended by several strong Places, the best of which is *Montmelian*. *Nice*, when it is in the Duke of *Savoy's* Hands, secures the Communication with the *Mediterranean*; and towards *Lombardy* there are several well fortified Places, to oppose the Insults of the *Spaniards*, who questionless would most willingly have *Piedmont*, which without doubt is one of the finest Countries in *Italy*.

#### Earls and Dukes of *Savoy*.

- |       |   |
|-------|---|
| 999.  | 1. <i>Berold</i> of <i>Saxony</i> .   |
| 1027. | 2. <i>Humbert</i> the first Earl of <i>Maurienne</i> .  |
| 1048. | 3. <i>Amadeo I.</i>   |
| 1076. | 4. <i>Humbert II.</i>   |
| 1109. | 5. <i>Amadeo II.</i>  |
| 1154. | 6. <i>Humbert III.</i>  |
| 1201. | 7. <i>Thomas</i> , Son of <i>Humbert</i> .  |
| 1234. | 8. <i>Amadeo III.</i>   |
| 1246. | 9. <i>Boniface</i> , <i>Amadeo III.</i> 's Son.   |
| 1257. | 10. <i>Peter</i> , call'd little <i>Charlemain</i> .  |
| 1268. | 11. <i>Philip</i> , <i>Peter's</i> Brother.   |
| 1285. | 12. <i>Amadeo IV.</i>   |
| 1323. | 13. <i>Edward</i> , his Son.  |
| 1329. | 14. <i>Amadeo V.</i> <i>Edward's</i> Brother.   |
| 1342. | 15. <i>Amadeo VI.</i>   |
| 1385. | 16. <i>Amadeo VII.</i>  |
| 1397. | 17. <i>Amadeo VIII.</i> first Duke of <i>Savoy</i> .  |
| 1434. | 18. <i>Lewis</i> , his Son.   |
| 1461. | 19. <i>Amadeo IX.</i>   |
| 1475. | 20. <i>Philbert</i> , his Son.  |
| 1481. | 21. <i>Charles</i> , <i>Philbert's</i> Brother.   |
| 1484. | 22. <i>Charles II.</i>  |
| 1495. | 23. <i>Philip II.</i>   |
| 1496. | 24. <i>Philbert II.</i>   |
| 1504. | 25. <i>Charles III.</i> thrust out of his Dominions by <i>K. Francis I.</i>                         |
| 1559. | 26. <i>Emanuel Philbert</i> , restor'd by his Marriage with <i>Margaret K. Francis I.'s</i> Sister. |
| 1580. | 27. <i>Charles Emanuel</i> .  |
|       | 28. <i>Amadeo X.</i> call'd <i>Victor</i> .   |
| 1637. | 29. <i>Charles Emanuel II.</i> Son of <i>Amadeo Victor</i> .  |
| 1675. | 30. <i>Victor Amadeo Francesco</i> .  |



*Savoy* is commonly divided into 8 small Provinces, as you may see in the following Table,

<i>Savoy</i> , properly so call'd,	<i>Montmelian</i> , Ch. Town.
The County of <i>Geneva</i> ,	<i>Annecy</i> .
The County of <i>Chablais</i> ,	<i>Tonnon</i> .
The Country of <i>Aouste</i> ,	<i>Aouste</i> .
The <i>Tarentaise</i> ,	<i>Mouffriers</i> .
The Valley of <i>Morienne</i> ,	<i>St. Jehn de Maurienne</i> .
The County of <i>Feffigny</i> ,	<i>Bonneville</i> .
Part of <i>Bugey</i> ,	<i>Tenne</i> .

*S A V O Y* in particular, or properly so call'd, is bounded on the North with the County of *Geneva*, on the East by *Tarentaise* and *Maurienne*, on the South by *Dauphiny*, and on the West with *Bugey* and the *Rhone*. The Chief Towns in it are,

<i>Chambery</i> , Ch. } <i>Rumily</i> .
<i>Montmelian</i> . } <i>Aix</i> .

*Chambery*, *Cameriacum*, or *Camerium*, stands on a Plain, at the Confluence of the two little Rivers *Laisse* and *Albans*, 10 Miles from *Montmelian* to the South, 7 from the Lake of *Bourget* to the North, about 60 from *Lyons* to the East, and 30 from *Geneva*, and 70 from *Geneva* to the South. It is a rich and well peopled City; and some take it for the ancient *Forum Voconii*, which *Pliny* and the Itinerary of *Antoninus* make mention of; tho' *Cluverius* and others think *Draguignan* in *Provence* has a better Title to that ancient Name: And some think it is *Civara* that *Cicero* speaks of in his Epistles; but whatever may be of that, it is now the Chief City of the Duchy of *Savoy*, and a very well built Town. The publick Buildings are very beautiful, particularly an ancient Castle, the principal Church dedicated to *S. Leger*, the Jesuits College, and some Monasteries. Divers Channels of the River *Albans* run through the City, as do several little Streams of Springs rising in *St. Martin's Hill*. In this Place the Emperor *Sigismund* erected the County of *Savoy* into a Duchy, 19 Febr. 1416. It was taken by the French, 1690. and restor'd by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*, 1696.

*Montmelian*, *Montmelianus*, is a little City on the right Bank of the *Isere*, defended by a Cittadel, whose principal Strength consists in its Situation, being founded on a Rock; in which is cut out a large Well which supplies the Garrison with fresh Water. The French under the Command of the Constable of *Lefdiguières*, took it 9 Nov. 1600. And again it was Belieged by the French, under the Command of *M. Catenat*, 1691. and taken, after a vigorous Resistance; but restor'd by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*, 1696.

*Aix*, *Aque Gratiæ*, is the chief Town of a Marquisat, and famous for the hot Baths, which were the Work of the Romans; as the Town was rebuilt by the Emperor *Gratian*. It stands at the Foot of the Mountains between *Chambery*, *Annecy* and *Rumily*. Its Waters are impregnated with Allom and Sulphur, and are very much frequented.

The County of *GENEVA*, *Genevensis Tractus*, lies between *Bugey*, the County of *Gex*, *Faucigny*, *Savoy*, properly so call'd, and the *Rhone*, about 45 Miles long. It was formerly possess'd by its own Lords, who did bear the Title of Counts, and were Vassals to those of *Savoy*. Pope *Clement VII.* was the last of that Family: After whose Death, his Sisters, the eldest of whom was married to the *Sire de Villars*, the other to the Prince of *Orange*, preten-

ded to succeed him; but the Emperour *Sigismund* adjudg'd it to *Amadeo* the 8th Duke of *Savoy*, and with it all the Right the Empire could pretend to that Country, and came to an Accommodation with the House of *Villars* for their Pretensions: And after he was in peaceable Possession of it, gave it to his Son *Amadeo*, who died without Children, as *Fanus* Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Savoy* also did. *Philip* youngest Son of *Philip* Duke of *Savoy* got it for his Appenage, or Portion, together with *Faucigny* and *Beaufort*; and so it has been handed down from one to another, and at last to this present Duke. The Chief Towns of this County are,

<i>Annecy</i> , Cap. } <i>Tonnes</i> .
<i>Albi</i> . } <i>Clairmont</i> .
<i>La Roche</i> . } <i>Chaumont</i> .

*Annecy*, *Annecium* or *Annecciacum*, stands on the Lake of the same name, at the foot of the Mountains, about 20 Miles from *Geneva* to the South, 24 from *Chambery* to the North, and about as many from *Bellay* to the East. There are several little Streams flowing from the Lake through the Town, which form themselves into a River call'd *Troud*, and render the Situation of the Town very delightful, and is a great convenience to the Inhabitants. It was formerly a very large and well Peopled City; but since the Fire that happened in it, *Ann.* 1448. it has hardly recovered its former greatness, or number of Inhabitants. It has been the Residence of the Bishop of *Geneva* ever since the Year, 1535. that the Reformers drove him out of *Geneva*: And here, in the Cathedral Church is preserved the Corps of *S. Francis Sales*, Bishop of *Geneva*. There are here also two Collegiat Churches, a Seminary of Priests of *S. Lazarus*, a College of *Barnabites*, a Convent of *Dominicans*, a Monastery of *Capuchins*, and one of *Benedictins*, and several others, some of which are very Magnificent. This Place was taken by the French in the Year, 1630. and again by them in the Year, 1690. but restor'd *Ann.* 1696. by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*.

The Country of *CHABLAIS*, *Caballicus Ducatus*, is bounded on the North with the Lake of *Geneva*, on the East with the *Valais*, on the West by the Counties of *Feffigny* and *Geneva*. The Emperor *Conrad-Sali* gave it to *Humbert White Hands*; and the Emperor *Frederick* the II. erected it into a Duchy, *Ann.* 1238. Formerly it reached as far as *St. Maurice*: The *Valeese* made themselves Masters of this Country, *Ann.* 1536. when *Bern* and *Friburg* were engaged in a War with *Charles III.* Duke of *Savoy*. They were ordered, by an Arrest of the Imperial Chamber to restore it; and *Charles V.* sent an Herald to Summon them to do it; but they mock'd the Emperor's Threatnings; and by the Treaty of the fourth of *August*, 1569. they yielded only all that lies between the Rivers *Morfes* and *Dranse*; the *Bernois* having before, in execution of the Treaty of *Laufanna* 15 Oct. 1564. surrender'd all that they possess'd in the Bailiage of *Tonnon*, *Terricer* and *Galliard*. This Province is about 30 Miles long, and 12 broad. The Chief Towns in it are,

<i>Tonnon</i> , Cap. } <i>Ternier</i> .
<i>Evian</i> . } <i>Galliard</i> .
<i>Aups</i> . } <i>Ripaille</i> .

*Tonnon*, *Tunonium*, stands upon the Lake of *Geneva*, about 25 Miles from the City of that Name to the East, 30 from *Annecy* to the North-East, and



15 from *Laufanna* to the South; and is a very delightful Place.

The Dutchy of *MOUSTE*, *Augustanus Ducatus*, is bounded with *Valais* on the North, *Verceillois* and the Valleys of *Sala* on the East, *Maurienne* on the South, and *Savo* and *Faucigny* on the West. It is a mountainous but fertile Country, and is divided commonly into 7 Parts or Valleys. It was anciently inhabited by the *Salassi*, and afterwards had its own particular Masters, till the Marquis of *Sala* took possession of one part; and the Bishops of *Aoste* became Proprietors of a part of their Diocesis under the Emperors. Some eighty. This Dutchy was united to *Savo* by the Marriage of *Adelaide* of *Sala* with *Amadeus* the II. Count of *Savo*, together with the Marquisate of *Sala*, and the Dutchy of *Turin*. The Emperor *Frederick* the II. erected it into a Dutchy in the Month of *February*, 1248, in favour of *Thomas*. The chief Towns in it are,

<i>Aoste</i> , B. Cap.	}	<i>Chambellin</i> .
<i>Morges</i> .		<i>Cour-mayeur</i> , anciently
<i>Iffegne</i> .		<i>Curia Mayor</i> .
<i>Minginet</i> .		<i>Donas</i> .
<i>Bardone</i> .		

*Aoste*, *Augusta Prætoria* or *Augusta Salassorum*, stands in the middle of a Valley of that Name, upon the Banks of the *Drua*, where the Rivulet *Baurzeggie* runs into it; 25 Miles from *Geneva* to the South, 50 from *Turin* to the North, and but 14 from the Confines of the *Milanese* to the West. *Augustus* (as it is commonly believed, sent a Colony here, and would have it nam'd after him. *Augusta Prætoria*, whereas before it was call'd *Corduba* by the *Salassi*, from one *Cordulus Salassius*, who, they say, was the Founder of it. There is still to be seen here a Triumphal-Arch rais'd in honour of *Augustus*, in Memory of the Victory he obtain'd over the People of the *Alpes*; and 'twas for this Reason that it was call'd the *Trophaeum* of the *Alpes*; which some less knowing Writers have plac'd at *Turbie* near *Monaco*. The Bishop of *Aoste* is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Tarentaise*. *St. Anselm* Bishop of *Canterbury* was Born here.

The *TARENTAISE*, *Tarentissa*, is bounded with the *Alps*, and the Dutchy of *Aoste* on the East, *Tignes* on the North, *Savo* proper on the West, and the Valley of *Maurienne* on the South. It was anciently inhabited by the *Centrones*, and for a long time was governed by Lords of its own; from whom it pass'd to the House of *Biancon*. *Amery* did treat his Subjects so cruelly, that *Humbert* II. Count of *Savo*, being invited by *Heracius*, Archbishop of *Tarentaise*, made himself Master of this Country, and united it to his Dominions. It lies extended between the Village *S. Germain*, which is at the Foot of the Hill call'd *Little S. Bernard*, to Mount *Sapey* and *Rognes*, about 36 Miles in length. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Maurfriers*, Ch. Ar B.  
*S. Maurice*.  
*Briongen*.

*Maurfriers*, *Monsærium*, or *Forum Nervæ*, stands upon the *Iser*, where the Brock *Druon* runs into it, 43 Miles from *Chambellin* to the East, towards *Aoste*, 60 from the Lake of *Geneva* to the South, and 60 from *Turin* to the North West. The River *Iser* divides into two Parts, and the Avenues to it are extremely difficult, by reason there is no way to come at it but by descents, or narrow passes betwixt Torrents and Precipices. Some Geographers have taken

this for the ancient *Tarentia*, which had been formerly call'd *Forum Claudii*; but they mistake it; for after this Town was ruined, the Archbishoprick was transfer'd to *Mandiers*. The Bishopricks of *Aoste* and *Savo* are Suffragan to it.

The County of *MATRIENNE*, *Mauriana*, lies between the *Alpes* and the *Iser*, between *Tarentaise* on the North, and *Dauphiny* on the South. It is a Valley of about 50 Miles long, beginning at *Chambellin*, a little below the Confluence of the *Arche* and *Iser*, and ending at the foot of Mount *Conis*. It is a fertile Country, particularly of Saffron and Pasturage, and contains about 100 Parishes: And is a part of the ancient Estate of the House of *Savo*; for *Philip* the White Hands, had for his Patrimony the County of *Savo* and that of *Maurienne*, together with *Chambellin* and *Valais*. The only considerable Town in it is *S. Jean Maurienne*, altho' there be several others of less note, as,

<i>S. Andrew</i> .	}	<i>La Chambre</i> .
<i>S. Michael</i> .		<i>St. Julian</i> .
<i>Medane</i> .		<i>Iffé</i> .

*S. Jean Maurienne*, *Fanum S. Julianis Mauriani*, stands upon a Plain in the middle of a Valley, upon the Banks of the little River *Arche*, 10 Miles from the Frontiers of *Dauphiny* to the East, 65 North West from *Turin*. It is a very fair Town, but not Fortified: And is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Vienne*. In the Cathedral Church of *S. Jean* are to be seen many Tombs of the Dukes of *Savo*.

The Province of *FOSSIGNY*, or *Faucigny*, *Fœciliacensis Tætiæ*, lies at the Foot of the *Alpes*, between the County of *Geneva* on the West, of which it was formerly a part, and that of *Valais* on the East. For a long time it was governed by particular Lords, descended from *Emerald*, who lived in the 10th Century, and whose Posterity fail'd, *Ann.* 1200, in the Person of *William*, whose only Daughter and Heiress married *Thomas* Count of *Savo*. It has been the Portion of the Brothers of this Family, but was re-united to the Dukedom of *Savo*, 1659. The most remarkable Towns in it are,

<i>Bonneville</i> , Cap.	}	<i>Sallanches</i> .
<i>Paffi</i> .		<i>Cuse</i> .
<i>Vieu</i> .		<i>Tanning</i> .

*Bonneville*, *Bonnopolis*, stands in the Low *Faucigny*, at the foot of the Mountains, on the River *Arche*, 16 Miles below *Cuse*, 15 from *Annecy* to the North, and 20 from *Geneva* to the South East. It is defended by an old Castle, and is the Seat of the chief Justice of the Country.

That part of *Bugey*, which remains in the possession of the Duke of *Savo*, by the Treaty of *Lions*, comprehends only that which lies on the other side of the *Rhone*, and is 24 Miles long, and 6 broad; from the Mountain *Chal* to the *Rhone*. The most remarkable Towns in it are, *Yenne*, a little Town, surrounded with a Wall, *Loiffey*, a considerable Burrow, and chief Town of a Barony, and the Suburbs of *Pent-Beauvoisin*, a Town in *Dauphiny* upon the River *Gue*, which is the Bounds betwixt this Province and *Dauphiny*.

The County of *NICE*, &c.

THE County of *Nice* is bounded on the North with the Marquisate of *Salusse*, the County of *Tende* and the *Genovesat* on the East, the Mediterranean



anean Sea on the South, and the County of *Bueil* and *Provence* on the West. The *Vediantri* were the ancient Inhabitants of it. *Amadeo the Red*, Duke of *Savoy*, got it by a voluntary offer of the People of *Nice*, in the Year, 1388. *Ladislas* Son of *Charles de Duras* not being in a Condition to give them Succour. *Ladislas* is said to have confirm'd this Alienation by an Act made at *Viterbo*, the 18th of *January*, 1402. And by the Treaty of *Chambery*, the 5th of *October*, 1419. *Yoland* of *Arragon*, Mother and Tutors to *Lewis III.* King of *Naples*, and Count of *Provence*, did resign to *Amadeo the VIII.* all the Right that her Son could claim to that County, and the Principality of *Barcellone*; in recompence of which *Amadeo* did discharge the Sum of a Hundred and sixty thousand *Livres*, which *Amadeo the VI.* his Uncle had lent to *Lewis the I.* Uncle of *Lewis the III.* for his Expedition into *Naples*. But this Cession of *Yoland's*, as most think, was contrary to the Fundamental Laws of the Land, and the express Acts of the Counts of *Provence*, and consequently of no Force. However the Case may be, we must leave it to be decided by others, and go on to that which is more properly our Business. The most considerable Towns in this County are *Nice* and *Ville franche*.

*Nice*, *Nicaea*, from whom the County takes its Name, stands on the Sea, and is defended by a good Citadel, which also may command the Port; which is none of the best, the Anchorage not being good. This Town was built by a Colony of the *Marsilians*; from the Ruins of the ancient *Cemenelium*, a City of the *Vediantii*. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Ambrun*: And is distant about 2 Miles from the Mouth of the River *Varo*, and 7 from *Monaco*, and 15 from the Frontiers of the *Genouevse* to the West, and 60 from *Pignerol* to the South. It was taken by the *French* in the Year, 1691. and restor'd, *Ann.* 1696. by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*.

*Ville Franche*, *Olivula*, stands upon the Sea of *Genoua*, about 2 Miles from *Nice*. It is thought to be the ancient *Olivula Portus*, by some; but others, particularly *Petrus Jofredus*, think that *Olivula Portus* stood 5 Miles to the East of *Nice*; but whatever may be of that, *Charles II.* King of *Naples* and Count of *Provence* caused it to be built, *Ann.* 1295. It stands in a Bottom among high Hills, which render its Harbour an excellent Shelter from Winds, and the entry to it is defended by a Castle, and within by a Citadel; which *Emanuel Philbert* Duke of *Savoy* caus'd to be built. It was restor'd to *Savoy* by the King of *France*, *Ann.* 1696. by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*.

The Principality or Valley of *BARCELLONET*, *Barcino*, is bounded on the North with the Marquisat of *Salusse* and *Ambrun*, on the East by the County of *Nice*, and on the South and West by *Provence*. The Inhabitants of it acknowledg'd *Amadeo the VII.* Duke of *Savoy* for their Lord, in the Month of *May*, 1388. The Town of *Barcellone* is no very large one, tho' it be the only one of

any Note in this Valley. It stands upon the little River *Hubay*, near the Frontiers of *Dauphine*, and 20 Miles South East from *Embrun*; and was built by *Ramond Berenger*, Count of *Provence*, *Ann.* 1230. There are besides in this Principality *Poget*, and the Valley of *Etienne*, which has its own particular Governour, and is properly an Annex of the former.

The County of *Tende*, *Comitatus Tendensis*, is bounded on the North by *Piedmont*, on the East by the County of *Genoua*, and on the South and West by the County of *Nice*. It was formerly in the Possession of the Family of *Lascais*, who were descended from the Emperors of *Constantinople* by the Mother's side. It pass'd into the Family of *Savoy* by the Marriage of *Ann*, only Daughter of *John Antony* last Count of *Tende*, with *Rene* of *Savoy*, natural Son of *Philip* Duke of *Savoy*; who in consideration of this Marriage, gave his Son all his Estate; which was done the 28th of *January*, 1501. The Town of *Tende* is a pretty little Burrow, in the *Appenines*, upon the Confines of the County of *Genoua*, about 30 Miles from *Nice* to the North, and near 50 from *Turin* to the South.

The County of *Bueil* or *Boglio*, *Boleensis Comitatus*, is bounded with *Barcellonet* on the North, the County of *Nice* on the East, and *Provence* on the South and West. For a long time it belong'd to the Family of *Grimaldi*; who had a very just Title to it; but the Senate of *Nice* having condemn'd *Hannibal Grimaldi*, Count of *Bueil* as guilty of Treason, under the Reign of *Charles Emanuel*, confiscated all his Estate. *Andrew Grimaldi* his Son, was restor'd to it by Prince *Maurice*; but by some secret Article of the Accommodation, agreed upon between this Prince and the Dutchess of *Savoy* the 14th of *July*, 1642. She, without either approving or disapproving what *Maurice* had done in favour of this *Andrew*, promis'd to allow him 30000 *Livres per Annum* during the Minority of the Duke of *Savoy*, her Son: And that, till he should be of Age to do him Justice, he should remove out of the Dominions of *Savoy* with all his Family: Since which time, neither he nor his Children have been able to obtain Satisfaction for this Usurpation. The Town of *Boglio* or *Bueil*, stands on the Frontiers of *Provence*, about 30 Miles from *Nice* to the North, and 40 from *Pignerol* to the South.

The Principality of *Oncille* or *Oneglia*, *Onelia Tractus*, is almost enclosed within the West part of the *Genouevse*. It formerly belong'd to the Family of *Doria*; till *Jerom Doria*, either exchange'd it for some other Lands, or sold it to *Emanuel Philbert* Duke of *Savoy*, in the Year, 1576. *Charles Emanuel* erected it into a Principality, by his Letters Patents dated at *Turin*, the 17th of *December*, 1620. It comprehends the Lordships of *Marro* and *Prela*, which are very fertile and well Peopled Countries. The Town of *Oneglia* or *Oncille*, stands upon the Sea, about 10 Miles from *Nice* to the West, 20 from *Vintimeglia*, and as many from *Mondovi* to the South: And drives a great Trade in Oyl.

3 AU59



# ITALY.

By Rob. Falconer.

## CHAP. I. Of ITALY in General.



**I**TALY, as it was anciently the most famous Country in the World, being the Seat of the glorious Roman Empire, from whence Laws and Decrees were issued our almost over all the then

known World, for the Government of those mighty States and powerful Kingdoms which it had swallowed up and brought under its Subjection; So it is at this time one of the most Fertile, and on many Accounts



Accounts most delightful Countries on Earth. If one does consider the vast number of valiant and prudent Generals, as, *Camillus*, *Fabius Maximus*, the *Scipio's*, *Pompey*, *Cæsar*, &c. The famous Orators, as, *Cicero*, *Hortensius*, *Antonius*, &c. the Admirable and almost inspir'd Poets, as, *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibullus*, *Plautus*, *Terence*, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, *Persius*, &c. all excellent in their kind; the renown'd Historians, as, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, *Salust*, &c. I say if one should consider all these, and besides, the stupendous and lasting Monuments of Power and Wealth, such as, particularly, their Publick Buildings, Causeways, and such like, he must necessarily confess, that never any Country had more advantages than this has had; insomuch, that the Gods and Muses seem to have been emulously concern'd to make it the Glory and Envy of the World in those days, as it is the Wonder and Admiration of all who see it in these. And altho' the Art of War and Arms flourish'd more in this Country anciently than it does now, when the softer Arts, of *Painting*, *Architecture*, *Musick*, &c. seem to be the chief Study and Employment of the Inhabitants; yet it cannot be said that the former has been quite neglected, or that the Muses have forsaken this Country. *Thomas Aquinas*, *Bellarmino*, and *Baronius*, were great Divines in their way: *Rodolphus Volaterranus*, and *Picus Mirandula*, were good Humanists; *Ficinus*, *Cardan*, *Galileo*, *Torricelli*, *Malpoggi*, *Borelli*, *Redi*, &c. good Mathematicians and Philosophers; *Panigarole* and *Loredano* good Orators; *Guicciardine*, *Bentivoglio*, *Davila*, and *Strada*, excellent Historians; *Tasso* and *Arosto*, famous Poets, and *Raphael*, *Michael Angelo*, *Titian*, &c. admirable Painters.

As for the NAMES of this Country, it has had several, as, *Hesperia*, *Saturnia*, *Aufonia*, *Oenatria*, and *Latium*, which, tho' they were but the Names of particular Parts of it at first, were used by the ancient *Grecians* to signify the whole; and in that they were imitated afterwards by the Latin Poets. How it came to be call'd *Italia*, is much (and perhaps too nicely) disputed among the Antiquaries; some deriving it from the Greek word *Ἰταλῶς*, which signifies the same as *Taurus*, a Bull; because this Country abounded with such, of an extraordinary size, and very beautiful. Others, with greater probability, bring it from one *Italus*, King of the *Siculi*, who first inhabited *Sabina* and *Latium*; and that this Name afterwards was given to the whole Country betwixt the *Alpes* and the *Streights* of *Messina*, or *Il faro de Messina*. There are several other Accounts of it, but we hope the Reader will excuse the omitting them here; or if he has a mind to know more of this Matter, he may consult *Boschart* and others, who have laboured abundantly in that sort of Criticism.

Nature seems to have had more than ordinary care of this Country, in giving it so convenient a Situation; it being bounded on the North with the *Alpes*, on the East with the River *Arso*, in *Histria*, and the Gulf of *Venice*, on the South with the *Tuscan* Sea, on the West by the *Alpes* and the River *Var*. Its length (according to *Cluverius*) from *Aouste*, a Town at the Foot of the Mountain call'd *Great S. Bernard*, to *Regio*, and the *Capo del Armi*, is about 900 Miles. Its breadth is different, but under the *Alpes* it is about 560 Miles broad. It lies between 26 and 38 degrees Longitude, and 37 and 46 Latitude; the figure of it resembling a Man's Leg; and some, who trace this Comparison a little nicely say,

that the end of it serves to kick *Sicily* into the Sea; tho' indeed I should think this Island deserved better Treatment from *Italy*; for it was very useful to the ancient *Romans*, by reason of its Fertility and great Product of Corn; and the modern *Italians*, no doubt, are often beholding to it. They say farther, that the Toes of it appear at the *Faro* of *Messina*, the Heel about *Otranto*, the Soal towards *Mount S. Angelo*, the Calf about *Ancona*, the Ham about *Ravenna*, the Knee towards *Piombino* and the Port of *Lighorn*, and the Thigh towards the *Alpes*.

The SOIL, generally over all *Italy* is very good, and watered with a good number of Rivers, whose Courses are not long by reason the Country is not very broad; and the Air (some Places in the Ecclesiastical State excepted) healthful and pretty temperate; but after hot Days the Nights are found to be very cold in comparison. The Product of *Italy* is, Corn, Grapes of several kinds, of which many sorts of Wine are made, Oranges, Citrons, Lemons, Pomegranates, and Olives, whose Oyl turns to good account. And in the South parts of it, are some Sugar, Almonds, and abundance of Mulberry-Trees, which have render'd that Country famous for its Silk Manufactories. Their Meadows are well stock'd with Buffles and other sorts of Cattle, as their Forests are with great variety of Game. There are likewise in this Country Rocks of *Alabaster*, and a rich kind of *Jasper*; also Mines of Iron, *Allem*, *Sulphur*, *Gold* and *Silver*.

The most considerable Rivers are, the *Po*, the *Tyber*, the *Arno*, the *Adige*, the *Adda*, and the *Tessin*. The chief Lakes are those of *Como*, *Isco*, *Lugano*, *Garda*, that of *Trafimenus*, *Ussin*, *Braciano*, *Tusinas*, *Fundi*, *Lago di Castello*, *Gendalphe*, *Celano*, *Andora*, *Varam*, *Lersino*, and that of *Bolsano*. The most remarkable Mountains are, the *Alpes*, the *Appennines*, *Mount Masso*, *Mount Barbaro*, *Vesuvius*, and *Mount S. Angelo*.

*Italy* hath been differently divided by the Ancients, according as Nations shifted their Habitations or mingled with one another. After vast Numbers of the *Gauls*, who liv'd betwixt the Ocean, the *Rhine*, the *Alpes*, the *Mediterranean* Sea and the *Pyrenees*, had cross'd the *Alpes*, and taken Possession of that part of *Italy* which lies between the *Alpes* and the *Appennines*, as far as the River *Æsis*, or *Esino*, the *Romans* call'd that Country *Gallia Italica*, and *Gallia Citerior*, and *Cisalpine*, and *Gallia Circumpadana*, and also *Togata*, because they had assum'd the *Roman* Habit as well as their Customs; whereas that on the other side was call'd *Gallia Comata*, because the Inhabitants used to wear their Hair long. The Emperor *Augustus*, as *Pliny* relates, divided *Italy* into 11 Regions, viz. *Liguria*, *Ætruria*, *Latium*, *Campania Felix*, *Samnium*, *Picenum*, *Umbria*, *Gallia Togata*, *Gallia Transpadana*, *Venetia* and *Istria*. *Strabo* divided it into 8 Regions or Parts, viz. *Venetia*, *Liguria*, *Picenum*, *Lucania*, *Tuscia*, *Roma*, *Campania*, and *Apulia*. *Antoninus* the Emperor in his Itinerary, divides it into 16 Provinces; and *Ptolomy* into 45 Nations or People. After the Dignity and Seat of the *Roman* Empire was translated to *Germany*, *Italy* was at several times strangely harass'd and torn in a great many little Pieces, which were establish'd into Principalities, Dutchies, Counties, and Marquissates, as the Marquissate of *Istria*, the Dutchy of *Friuli*, the Dutchy of *Milan*, the Dutchy of *Mantua*, and a great many more. *Italy*, as it is now, may be very fitly divided according to the several Sovereignities in it; of which we shall treat afterwards.

Who



Who the first Inhabitants of *Italy* were, is a very hard matter to tell, it being so long ago since it was first peopled. Whether any one People sometime after the Flood came into this Country and in time spread themselves over it all, or whether different People at different times came into it and possess'd themselves of such Parts of it as they found uninhabited, and gave different Names to the Places where they settled, is more than can be well determin'd. The *Aufones* are said to be the most ancient, and to have possess'd the most Southern Parts of *Italy*, where the *Brutii* and *Lucani* liv'd afterwards; next to these the *Opici* and *Osci*, who liv'd in *Campania* and *Samnium*; then the *Siculi*, in *Sabina* and *Larum*; the *Umbri*, whose Territories reach'd between the *Mare Superum*, or *Had iatick*, and *Inferum*, or *Tyrrhenian Sea*; next to these the *Tusci*, whose Country reach'd as far as the *Alpes*; and next to them again the *Ligures*, whose Dominions reach'd as far into *Gallia* as the *Rhone*; beyond these were the *Veneti*, whom some will have to be come from *Illyricum*, others from the *Hireti*, a People in *Paphlagonia*. The *Gauls* drove out the *Tusci*, as these did the *Umbri* out of their Territories. A certain People, call'd *Oenatrii* from their Leader, drove the *Aufones* out of their foresaid Habitations, and forc'd them to seek themselves a new Seat as far North as the River *Luis* or *Brigiano*, and *Vulturnus*, or *Vulturno*; and not satisfied with that, they likewise expell'd the *Siculi* out of their Country, and assum'd the Name of *Aborigines*, as they did afterwards that of *Latini*. The *Sabini* were descended from the *Opici*, of those came the *Picentes*, *Vestini*, *Marsi*, *Prentani*, *Peligni*, *Mauccini*, *Samnites*, and from these the *Campani* *Lucani*, and the *Brutii*. In the mean time several Families arriving from *Greece*, at different times, fill'd all the Sea Coast along the *Mare Superum* and *Inferum*, and built many good Towns; and by this means, as *Strabo* and *Trogus* relate, *Italy* and *Sicily* came to be call'd *Magna Græcia*. But other People having expell'd the *Grecians* out of most of their Possessions, forc'd them to confine themselves within that which afterwards was call'd *Magna Græcia*, and is now call'd *Calabria Superior*. But after the *Roman* State was become powerful, and had subdued all *Italy*, it continued under the *Roman* Jurisdiction, divided and distinguished into Regions and People, as we've said already, 'till the time of *Honorius* the Emperor; when the *Goths*, *Vanda's*, and *Heruli*, People of *Germany*, and the *Huns* passing the *Alpes*, invaded this whole Country, and divided it into several little Kingdoms and States. *Fusian* having driven out all these, establish'd the *Exarchat* of *Ravenna*, whilst *Rome* lay in its Ruins. At last the *Longobards* having taken *Ravenna*, establish'd their Kingdom in *Gallia Togata*; but they were rooted out by the Valour and Conduct of *Pepin* King of *France*, and his Son *Charlemaign*, who had been call'd into *Italy* for that end by the Pope; to whom he gave a great part of the Revenues of that Country, reserving to himself the Sovereignty. *Pepin* died in the Year 768. and *Charlemaign* was Crown'd Emperor in 800.

I am hopeful the Reader will not think himself abused, or look upon it as a thing foreign to a Work of this Nature, if we refresh his Memory a little here with some few Hints concerning the Rise, Progress, and Fall of the *Roman* Empire. Every Body almost knows that the first Inhabitants of *Rome* were a sorry Rabble of indigent People, and the very Dregs of *Italy*; who might justly be call'd a Den

of Wolves, since they liv'd by continual Robberies, and thirsted after their Neighbours Goods and Blood. The hand-breath of Ground which they first possess'd, was too little to maintain a considerable number of People; and therefore they must either have always remain'd Beggars, or cut out their Fortunes with their Swords. As mean and inconsiderable as their beginning was, by the Valour of some of their Kings, and prudent Management of others, and afterwards by the good Qualifications of their Generals, and Wisdom of their Senate, they grew up to such a Pitch of Power and Glory, that never any State on Earth was able to equal, much less to excel them. One good Politick of theirs was, that they no sooner conquer'd a Nation, than they transplanted the best and richest Men of it to *Rome*, and sent *Romans* in their Places. *Athens* and *Lacedæmon* seldom naturaliz'd Strangers; but *Rome* observ'd that good Politick; *Remulus* its Founder having set the Copy; for 'tis said of him, That he us'd to receive as Citizens of *Rome* in the Evening, those with whom he had fought in the Morning. *Servius Tullius* did prudently correct a considerable Mistake in the former Reigns; for under them it was allow'd that every Body without distinction should serve in the Wars; whereas he ordered that only the ablest and most wealthy Citizens (except upon extraordinary Occasions) should serve as Soldiers, who were to equip themselves according to their Ability; wisely considering, that their Wealth was a Pledge of their Fidelity; and by fighting valiantly for their Country, they secur'd their private Possessions; whereas a poor Man carries all his Wealth with him; and if he has a Prospect of being better with the Enemy, 'twill be no hard matter to persuade him to desert his own Party. And after this Custom grew out of fashion, in the time of the Emperors, yet they us'd to keep part of the Soldiers Arrears behind, to secure the Fidelity of the Army, which was never clear'd 'till they were dismiss'd.

Never any but *Porfenna* and the *Gauls* were able to bring them to dishonourable Conditions of Peace; the first having oblig'd them to give Hostages, that they should make no Iron-work, but what was requisite to Till the Ground; the other, forcing them to prevent the utter Ruin of *Rome* by a Sum of Money. For the Story of *Camillus's* coming up just at the time of weighing out of the Gold, and driving the *Gauls* from the Capitol, is look'd upon by many as fabulous. The former of these the *Roman* Writers have cautiously avoided to speak of, as they have taken care to disguise the other. These, I think, are the only Instances. Upon all other Occasions they did bear their Misfortunes and Losses with the greatest Fortitude and Constancy imaginable, and sometimes rather deliver'd up their Generals, and suffer'd their Soldiers to be made Slaves than agree to base and disadvantageous Conditions. It is very well known that their Form of Government was various. They began with the Kingly, which lasted 242 Years, 'till *Sextus Tarquinius* gave some sort of Pretence for altering it, by his ravishing *Lucretia*. The Fact was abominable, 'tis true, and *Junius Brutus* had good reason to be angry; but whether his and the Peoples Resentment ought to have been carried so high, is more than I will say. For (as the judicious *Puffendorf* observes) a Fact, tho' never so criminal, committed by a Son, without the Knowledge and Consent of his Father, ought not to be prejudicial to the Father and Family; much less could be a pretence to depose a King from a Throne which he



he lawfully possess'd; especially since to take Vengeance of Criminals belongs to the King, and not to the Subjects. After the Expulsion of the Kings, an Aristocratical Form of Government was introduc'd, which prov'd as heavy a Yoke to the Necks of the People as the former. For at that time there were no written Laws in Rome; and the Nobility being in Possession of all publick Offices, give Sentence more according to Favour and Affection than Justice. And the Citizens being obliged to serve in the Wars at their own Charge, became miserably exhausted, and were forc'd to borrow from the richer sort; and not being able to pay their Debts, were grievously oppress'd by their Creditors, and at last reduc'd to that degree of Despair that they unanimously left the City. Neither could they be persuaded to return, before the Senate had agreed to constitute Magistrates, call'd Tribunes of the People, who were to protect the Commons against the Nobility; which, as it form'd a new Division in the State at that time, did afterwards afford perpetual Fuel for Civil Dissentions, 'till at last they broke out into Civil Wars, and sheath'd their Swords in each others Bowels.

After this Common-wealth, notwithstanding all those intestine Commotions and Divisions, had arriv'd to its highest Pitch of Greariness, it return'd again to a Monarchy, tho' not of the best kind. *Augustus*, as he laid the Foundation of it, so by his wise and prudent Management he seem'd to have settled it pretty well; but the Nobility not being able to brook the Government of one Person, who was rais'd by the Soldiers, without their Consent, was always for recovering their ancient Liberty; which obliged the succeeding Emperors, first to weaken, and afterwards extinguish the Power and Splendor of this Order, insomuch that within the space of 200 Years, few of 'em were left, and upstart Favourites put in their Places. Thus the Senate and People became empty Names; and the Emperors were no more than the Creatures of the Army: And as double Pay and great Presents purchas'd them the Favour of the Soldiers, and procur'd them the Title; so the want of Money to support themselves withal, was thought sufficient ground for taking away their Lives, to make way for another whose Coffers were fuller. Hence came nothing but Misery and Confusion in the *Roman Empire*: And oftentimes the bravest Princes were basely murder'd, and some of the lowest Rank and meanest Capacity set up in their Room: And sometimes two or more were declar'd Emperors, by several parts of the Army, who made horrid slaughter among the Citizens in deciding their Titles to the Empire. As this did mightily weaken the Strength of this vast Body, so *Constantine the Great* hasten'd its Fall, by transferring the Imperial Court to *Constantinople*, and sending away the veterane Legions which guarded the Frontiers of the Empire along the *Danube* and *Rhine*, to the Eastern Parts, whereby the Western Provinces, destitute of their Guards, became a Prey to other Nations. After the Western Empire had fallen into the Hands of the *Germans*, *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Suevians*, *Franks*, and others, the Eastern Provinces remain'd for a great many hundred Years after, 'till at last the City of *Constantinople* being storm'd and taken by the *Turks*, in the Year 1453. this part of the *Roman Empire* also was brought to its fatal Period, and *Constantinople* made the Place of the ordinary Residence of the *Ottoman Emperors*.

### The Roman Emperors who resided in Italy.

A. M.

3918. 1. *Julius Caesar*, the last Dictator, and first Emperor.

3923. 2. *C. Octavius Caesar Augustus*, in whose time J. Christ was born.

A. C.

17. 3. *Tiberius Nero*, *Augustus's* Son-in-Law.

39. 4. *Caius Caligula*.

43. 5. *Claudius Caesar*.

57. 6. *Domitius Nero*, the last of the *Cæsars*, and first publick Persecutor of the Christians.

70. 7. *Sergius Galba*.

8. *Salvius Otho*.

9. *Aulus Vitellius*.

71. 10. *Flavius Vespasianus*.

80. 11. *Titus Vespasianus*, the brave and fortunate Conqueror of the Jews.

82. 12. *Flavius Domitianus*, the second Persecutor of the Christians.

97. 13. *Nerva Cocceius*, the first Emperor that was not a Roman born.

99. 14. *Ulpus Trajanus*, a Spaniard, and Persecutor of the Christians.

118. 15. *Ælius Adrianus*, who continued the Persecution.

138. 16. *Antoninus Pius*.

162. 17. *Marcus Antoninus*, the Philosopher, who associated *L. Verus* in the Government, and persecuted the Christians.

181. 18. *L. Antoninus Commodus*.

194. 19. *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperor against his Will.

20. *Didius Julianus*.

195. 21. *Septimius Severus*, the fifth Persecutor of the Christians.

213. 22. *Basianus Caracalla*.

220. 23. *Opilius Marinus*.

221. 24. *Varius Heliogabalus*.

225. 25. *Alexander Severus*.

238. 26. *Maximinus*, a Man meanly born, and sixth Persecutor of the Christians.

241. 27. *Gordian*, elected by the Senate against *Maximinus*.

247. 28. *Philip*, an Arabian, suppos'd to be a Christian.

252. 29. *Decius*, the seventh Persecutor of the Church.

254. 30. *Gallus Hæstilianus*.

256. 31. *Æmilianus*, the Moor.

256. 32. *Valerianus*, the eighth Persecutor of the Church.

33. *Gallienus*, Son to *Valerianus*.

271. 34. *Claudius II.* who abdicated in favour of

272. 35. *Quintillus*, his Brother, who reign'd but 17 days.

272. 36. *Valerianus Aurelianus*, a great Persecutor of the Church.

279. 37. *Annius Tacitus*.

38. *Florianus*, who reign'd only 2 Months.

280. 39. *Valerius Probus*.

286. 40. *Aurelius Carus*, with his Sons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.

288. 41. *Dioclesian* the tenth, Persecutor of the Church, resign'd the Government and liv'd a private Life at *Salona*.

308. 42. *Constantius Chlorus*, with *Galerius*, *Severus*, *Maximianus*, &c.

310. 43. Con-



310. 43. *Constantine*, the Great, the first Christian Emperour, who removed the Seat of the Empire from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, and divided the Empire into several Independent Sovereignities, among his three Sons, allotting to *Constantius* *Greece*, *Thrace* and all the Provinces of the East; to *Constant*, *Italy*, *Illyricum* and *Africa*; to *Constantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain* and *Britain*.

The Western Emperours,

341. 1. *Constant*, the youngest Son of *Constantine* the Great, sole Emperour of the West, after the Death of his Brother *Constantine*.  
 354. 2. *Constantius*, who after the Death of both his Brothers reunited the Empire.  
 3. *Valentinian*, Emperour of the West, while *Valens* ruled the East.  
 4. *Valentinian* the II.  
 399. 5. *Honorius* the II. Son of *Theodosius* the Emperour.  
 425. 6. *Valentinian* the III.  
 455. 7. *Maximus*, who kill'd *Valentinian* the III. and was himself ston'd to Death by his own Soldiers.  
 456. 8. *Avitus*.  
 457. 9. *Majoranus*.  
 461. 10. *Severus*.  
 467. 11. *Anthemius*.  
 471. 12. *Olybrius*, who reign'd only 4 Months.  
 472. 13. *Glycerius*.  
 14. *Julus Nepes*.  
 473. 15. *Augustulus*, vanquish'd by *Odoacer* King of the *Hermuli*, &c.

As to the Forms of Government and Administration of Justice in *Italy*, the Reader is to expect that in the particular Descriptions of the several Sovereignities in it; and so we go on to the

GENIUS and CUSTOMS of the *Italians*. They are generally very Ingenious, ready Witted, and of great Application in Study and Business: Of a middle Temper, between the Starcht Gravity of a *Spaniard*, and the Levity of a *French* Man. They have a great Sense of Gratitude, and are willing and ready upon all Occasions to return a Favour done them, tho' never so inconsiderable; but on the other Hand, they are revengful in the highest degree, and cannot forget Injuries. They have a great Affection towards their Kindred and Alliance; and are very Ambitious of Honours and Preferment. To keep the World and themselves in Mind that they are the Successors of the old *Romans*, they mightily affect their ancient Names with a little variation, as, *Camillo*, *Scipione*, *Julio*, *Mario*, *Pompeio*, &c. For all their Gravity, there's no People on Earth that can Act a Buffoon, Mimick or Scaramouch, comparable to them. They shun all occasions of Quarrelling, especially with Strangers; to whom they are very Civil and Courteous, after once you have got their Acquaintance. They are great Lovers of Liberty; and therefore in many Places Discourses and Books about former Revolutions are forbid. The *Italian* Nobility and Gentry live most in Towns, and lay out their Money more upon fine Houses and Gardens, Pictures, Statues, and such Things as may contribute to the adorning

their Houses: And upon fine Coaches and a handsome Retinue of Servants (who are for the most part on Board-wages, than on luxurious Tables and strong Liquors; which is too common in other parts of *Europe*. If there are two or more Brothers in a Family, it often happens that only one of them Marries, commonly the Eldest; and the rest live upon Parashese. In many Places they have Hospitals for entertaining Pilgrims and poor Travellers; and others for Nursing and bringing up Children, whom Fear or Shame obliges the Parents to expose. When they lay them down, they have no more to do but ring a Bell, and tell the Officer that comes for the Child, whether it be Baptized or not. The *Italians* are the most scrupulously nice upon all the little Punctilios of Civility of any People in the World, and profusely lavish of their Complements and high Titles: And know exactly how to receive and entertain Persons of all Ranks and Conditions. They never Whisper in a Company, or Talk in another Language, or interrupt any Man before he has done what he had a mind to say; and nothing is thought more odious among them than Slandering and Backbiting. They never visit Persons of Note without first sending them Word. The right Hand is more Honourable than the Left, when two Walk together, and the middle when Three. Their Conversation is very Civil and Obliging, nor does the greatest Familiarity make them forget their courteous Carriage.

They have some Customs more peculiar to themselves, such as their reckoning their Hours from Sun-set to Sun-set, as the *Athenians* of old did. They Sleep commonly two Hours after Dinner. They make their Children go Bare-headed till they are five Years old, to harden them and prevent Catarrhs when they come to be old. Their Women affect yellow Hair, as the *Roman* Ladies and *Curtezans* did of old, and have a particular Wash for it. After the Men have been abroad visiting or so, they throw off their Hat, Bands and Cuffs; and put on a Gray Coat and a Cap, which they commonly Dine in. When they call one at a distance, they point to him with their Finger downwards, looking upon't as an Affront to do it upwards. At their Meals, they begin with their roast Meat and end with their Pottage; and roast their Meat very dry. Boy'd Snails serv'd up with Pepper and Oyl, and fry'd Frogs serv'd up the same way, are in great esteem. They commonly eat *Kites*, *Hawks*, *Maggies*, *Jackdaws* and several other lesser Birds which are not us'd here: And drink their Wine in Winter as well as in Summer out of Snow.

The *Italian* Language is the old *Latin* corrupted by the *Goths*, *Vandals* and other Nations. In *Savoy* and *Piedmont* the *French* is generally Spoke. There are in *Italy* above 30 Archbishopricks; and the inferiour Bishopricks, as they are generally small, so they are almost innumerable. There are also 12 Universities, viz. *Padua*, *Venice*, *Turin*, *Pavia*, *Siena*, *Bonovina*, *Rome*, *Ferrara*, *Macerata*, *Fermo*, *Naples* and *Salerno*. *Bononia* was formerly Famous for the Study of the *Roman* Laws, as *Salerno* was for that of Medicine. There are several of the most considerable Cities and Towns in *Italy* that have peculiar Epithets commonly given them, as, *Rome*, the *Holy*, because it is the Seat of the Pope; *Naples* the *Noble*, because of the great Number of Nobility and Gentry that are in it: *Florence* the *Fair*, because of the stateliness of the Houses, and the broadness and cleanness of its Streets; *Venice* the

*Rich*,



Rich, because of its power and great Riches; *Genoua* the *Stately*, because of its Magnificent Buildings; *Milan* the *Great*, because of its largeness and great number of Inhabitants; *Ravenna* the *Ancient*, because it is so; *Padua* the *Learned*, because there Learning flourish'd; *Bononia* the *Fat*, because of the Excellency of the Soil about it; *Leghorn* the *Merchandizing*; *Verona* the *Charming*; *Lucca* the *Folly*; *Casal* the *Strong*, &c.

As we have said already, *Italy* cannot be more fitly divided, considering the present State of it, and by whom it is now possess'd, than according to the several Dominions and Sovereignities that are in it, viz. Those of the King of *Spain*, the *Pope*, the *Republick of Venice*, the *Great Duke of Tuscany*, the *Republick of Genoua*, the *Duke of Parma*, the *Duke of Savoy* in *Piedmont*, the *Swissers* beyond the *Lakes of Maggiore* and *Como*. The *Grisons* in the *Alpes*, the *Arch-Duke of Austria* in *Tirol*, *Friuli* and *Istria*, the *Duke of Modena*, the *Duke of Mantua*, the *Duke of Urbino*, the *City of Lucca*, the *Count of Mirandula*, and the *Republick of S. Marino*. But because, throughout all this Work we have observ'd one Order of describing the Kingdoms and Countries according as they are situated next to one another, (tho' perhaps describing the Dominions of particular Princes all together, however they may be dispersed, as those of *Spain* are in *Italy*, would be no ill Method) we shall begin with that part of *Italy* that lies next to *France*, and so go on to the most southern Parts of it, in the same Order as you see in the following Table.

- I. The Dominions of the Duke of Savoy in *Piedmont*.
- II. The Coasts of *Genoua*.
- III. The Marquisate of *Montferrat*.
- IV. The Dutchy of *Milan*.
- V. The Dutchy of *Parma*.
- VI. The Dutchy of *Modena*.
- VII. The Dutchy of *Mantua*.
- VIII. The Republick of *Venice*.
- IX. The Republick of *Lucca*.
- X. The Dominions of the Duke of *Tuscany*.
- XI. The Ecclesiastical State.
- XII. The Republick of *S. Marino*.
- XIII. The Kingdom of *Naples*.
- XIV. The Islands of *Sicily*, *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, &c.

Which are subdivided thus,

- I. *Piedmont* divided in ten Parts. Chief Town.
  - 1. *Piedmont* proper, whereof the Ch. T. is *Turin*.
  - 2. French *Piedmont*. *Pignerol*.
  - 3. The Lordship of *Vercell*. *Vercell*.
  - 4. The Principality of *Mafferan*. *Mafferan*.
  - 5. The Marquisate of *Furea*. *Furea*.
  - 6. The County of *Asti*. *Asti*.
  - 7. The Marquisate of *Susa*. *Susa*.
  - 8. The Marquisate of *Saluzzo*. *Saluzzo*.
  - 9. The Valleys of the *Vaudois*. *Pragelas*.
  - 10. The Principality of *Boglio*. *Boglio*.
- II. The Coasts of *Genoua* comprehending,
  - The Dominions of the Republick. *Genoua*.
  - The Principality of *Monaco*. *Monaco*.
  - Several Towns belonging to other States.

- III. The Dutchy of *Montferat*, divided between
  - The Duke of *Savoy*, *Alba*.
  - The French King (till the late Peace) possess'd *Casal*.
  - The Duke of *Mantua*. *Acqui*.
- IV. The Dutchy of *Milan*. *Milan*.
- V. The Dutchy of *Parma*. *Parma*.
- VI. The Dutchy of *Modena*. *Modena*.
- VII. The Dutchy of *Mantua*. *Mantua*.
- VIII. The Republick of *Venice*, divided into
  - The *Terra Firma*. *Venice*.
  - The Territories of *Paduano*, *Veronese*, &c.
  - Several Towns on the Coast of *Dalmatia*.
  - Several Islands in the *Adriatick Sea*.
  - Several Islands in the *Archipelago*.
- IX. The Republick of *Lucca*. *Lucca*.
- X. The Dominions of the Great Duke of *Tuscany*.
  - Divided into the Territories of *Florence*.
  - of *Pisa*.
  - of *Sienna*.
- XI. The Pope's Dominions, which contain,
  - The Campaign of *ROME*. *Viterbo*.
  - St. Peter's* Patrimony. *Orvieto*.
  - Sabina*. *Magliana*.
  - Ombria* or the Dutchy of *Spoletto*.
  - The Country of *Perugia*.
  - The Marquisate of *Ancona*.
  - The Dutchy of *Urbino*.
  - Romandiola* or *Romagnia*, *Ravenna*.
  - Bologna*.
  - Ferrara*.
- XII. The little Republick of *St. Marino*.
- XIII. The Kingdom of *Naples* divided into 12 Parts.
  - 1. The Province of *Lavaro*. *Naples*.
  - 2. The farther Principality. *Benevento*.
  - 3. The higher Principality. *Salerno*.
  - 4. *Basilicata*. *Acerenza*.
  - 5. The higher *Calabria*. *Cosenza*.
  - 6. The farther *Calabria*. *Regio*.
  - 7. The hither *Abruzzo*. *Chieti*.
  - 8. The farther *Abruzzo*. *Aquila*.
  - 9. The County of *Molise*. *Bolano*.
  - 10. The Province of *Capitana*. *Manfredonia*.
  - 11. The Province of *Bari*. *Bari*.
  - 12. The Province of *Otranto*. *Otranto*.
- XIV. The Islands on the Coasts of *Italy*.
  - Sicily* divided into 3 Parts, the Valleys of *Palermo*.
  - Sardinia*, divided into 2 Parts. *Messina*.
  - Corfica*. *Nolo*.
  - Capo di Cagliari*.
  - Capo di Lagudori*.
  - Bastia*.
  - Lipari*.
  - Volcano*.
  - Stromboli*.
  - Lisca Bianca*.
  - Le Saline*.
  - Paschu*.
  - Felicur*.
  - Capri*.
  - Ischia*.
  - Ponza*.
  - Giblio*.
  - Elba*.
  - Capraria*.
  - Gorgona*.



## CHAP. II.

## PIEDMONT.

**P**iedmont, *Pedemontium*, owes its Name to its Situation, at the foot of the Mountains. It was anciently called *Gallia Subalpina*, and is bounded (according to *Baudrand* and others) with the Dutchy of *Milan* and *Monferrat* on the East, the *Genoensis* and the County of *Nice* on the South, *Dauphiny* and *Savoy* on the West, and the Dutchy of *Aoste* and a small part of the Dutchy of *Milan* on the North: And divided into two Parts by the River *Po*. It is about 140 Miles long South and North, and 100 broad East and West. *Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, divided it into 12 Parts or Provinces, to which his Successour Duke *Victor Amadee* added 4 more: So that now (according to *Franciscus Augustinus*, Bishop of *Saluzzo*) it is divided into 16 Provinces.

*Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*, having vanquish'd *Odoacer* King of *Italy*, gave this Country to the *Heruli*; who were subdued by the *Lombards*; whose 17th King, *Aripert*, gave it to the Church of *Rome*; but it lying far off, and not being confirmed by his Successours, at the Subversion of that Kingdom, it fell into the Hands of the Kings of *Italy*, of the House of *Charles the Great*. *Thomas* and *Peter*, Counts of *Savoy*, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it by force of Arms; the former in the Year, 1210. the latter in the Year, 1256. Since which time the eldest Son of *Savoy* is stil'd Prince of *Piedmont*. The Marquisate of *Saluzzo* (which we shall have occasion to speak of afterwards) was annex'd to it by the Marriage of a Daughter of this Family, with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, An. 1481.

*Piedmont* as it is a very fertile and rich Country, so it is also one of the most pleasant and plentiful in all *Italy*. It produces plenty of *Corn*, *Wine*, *Fruit*, *Hemp*, *Flax*, *Metals*, and affords good store of *Cattle*, and every thing fit for the use and delight of Man; and is so populous, that the *Italians* us'd to say, *That the Duke of Savoy had but one City in Italy 300 Miles in Compass*. Notwithstanding the different Divisions that have been made of this Country at several times, as we said before, it may not improperly be divided now into 10 Parts: Although one of them, call'd the *French Piedmont*, was restor'd to the Duke of *Savoy* by the Treaty of Peace at *Turin*, An. 1696. The 10 Parts are,

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| 1. <i>Piedmont</i> , properly so call'd. | } | 7. The Marq. of <i>Susa</i> .           |
| 2. <i>French Piedmont</i> .              |   | 8. The Marq. of <i>Saluzzo</i> .        |
| 3. The Lordsh. of <i>Vercell</i> .       | } | 9. The Valleys of the <i>Vaudois</i> .  |
| 4. The Prin. of <i>Mafferan</i> .        |   | 10. The Principality of <i>Boglio</i> . |
| 5. The Marq. of <i>Fuesa</i> .           |   |   |
| 6. The County of <i>Asti</i> .           |   |   |

*Piedmont*, properly so call'd, is bounded with *Monferrat* on the East, the Territories of *Genoa* on the South, the Marquisate of *Saluzzo* on the West, and that of *Susa* and a part of *Monferrat* on the North. The principal Cities and Towns in it are,

<i>Turin</i> , Ch.	}	<i>Ceva</i> .	}	<i>Chieri</i> .
<i>Fossano</i> .		<i>Savillano</i> .		<i>Moncallier</i> .
<i>Mondovi</i> .	}	<i>Coni</i> .	}	<i>Orbasson</i> .
<i>Cerignan</i> .		<i>Cerasco</i> .		<i>Vigen</i> .

*Turin*, *Augusta Taurinorum*, and *Taurinum*. *Pliny* and *Ptolemy* place it in *Gallia Subalpina*. *Livy* and *Appianus Alexandrinus* call it *Taurasia*, and *Stephanus Taurenis*. This City is seated at the end of a Charming Plain, upon the River *Po*, which furnish it abundantly with all Necessaries and Conveniencies of Life. It is enclosed with strong Walls, and surrounded with broad, deep, and well lin'd Ditches. The Citadel is a Master-piece of Fortification; and the present Duke has done all he can to make it Impregnable. The Streets of the new Town are broad and straight, but the old Town is very irregular, the Streets narrow and crooked, and the Houses not worth looking at. The publick Places in the new are Spacious, the Palaces are the noblest Improvements of Architecture, the Paintings, Guilding and other Ornaments of the Churches are suitable to the beauty of the Buildings, the Shops are all well Furnish'd, and the Academies for *Riding*, *Dancing* and *Martial Exercises*, well provided with Masters; and in short, hardly any thing wanting to make it a most glorious City. And to compleat the Glories of the Place, there is a Court, that, notwithstanding its smallness, may be justly reckon'd the Seat of Gallantry and Politeness. All the Ornaments of this City are Modern; except what's to be seen in the Duke's Gallery, there's scarce any thing of Antiquity here. It is full of all Sorts of fine Paintings, rare Manuscripts, Medals, Vases, and other Curiosities of that Nature. There is lately added to the Cathedral Church, dedicated to *St. John*, a Chappel of surprizing Beauty and Riches. It was Built on purpose in Honour of the Holy Sheer, or Cloth (as they say) in which our Saviour was wrapt at his Burial, and upon which the Image of his Face was miraculously Stamp'd. The University was erected here under the Pontificat of *Benedict XIII*. An. 1405. and the Citadel built by *Emanuel Philbert*, Duke of *Savoy*, An. 1565. which, notwithstanding its great Strength was taken by the *French*, under the Command of Count *Harcourt*, An. 1640. It stands in the Lat. of 44. 40. about 12 Miles from *Pignerol* to the North East, 76 from *Vercelli*, 27 from *Asti* to the West, and 80 from *Genoa* to the North West, 70 from the *Mediterranean Sea* to the North, and 100 from the Lake of *Geneva* to the South East.

*Fossano*, *Fossanum*, so call'd from the wholesome Springs that are in its Neighbourhood. It was built in the Year, 1236. and stands upon the River *Stura*, between *Saluzzo* to the West, and *Mondovi* to the South West, 6 from *Coni*, 24 from *Turin* to the South, and 26 from *Pignerol* to the South East. Pope *Gregory XVIII*. founded an Episcopal See here, under the Arch-bishop of *Milan*.

*Mondovi*, *Mons Realis*, or *Mons Vici*, stands at the Foot of the *Appennines*, 2 Miles from the River *Tanaro*, 13 from *Coni* to the East, 26 from *Final* to the North West, and 37 South from *Turin*. It was once a part of the Marquisate of *Monferrat*, 'till at the Solicitation of *Theodore II*. Marquis of that Name, it was erected into a Bishoprick, An. 1388. subject to the Archbishop of *Turin*. Pope



*Pius V.* was sometimes Bishop here, call'd then Cardinal *Michael Giflerius*. There was formerly an University here, which was translated to *Turin*. In the beginning of the Year 1699. the Inhabitants of the flat Country, about *Mondovi*, join'd with the *Banditi*, who were the Ringleaders of it, formed a formidable Rebellion against the Duke, and in several Skirmishes wasted his Forces, and killed several Officers of Quality, and a great many of his Soldiers. 'Tis true, the *Mondovi* in general, are no better than the *Banditi*; but whether His Royal Highness's Rigour toward his Subjects was to blame for this, or no, we leave to others to decide: He at last extinguish'd this Flame, by the Blood of such of the Offenders as were taken.

*Carignano, Carinianum*, stands on the *Po*, about 5 Miles from *Turin* to the South, and near as much from *Carmagnole*; and did bear the Title of a Principality, with which *Thomas Francis* of *Savoy*, fifth Son of *Charles Emanuel I.* and *Catharine Michelle* of *Austria*, was honoured, as he was likewise with that of *Great Master of France*. It is defended by a strong Castle, and has the Advantage of a stately Bridge over the *Po*. It was taken by the French, *An. 1691.* and regain'd the same Year by the Duke of *Savoy*.

*Ceva, Ceba*, or *Ceva*, stands upon the River *Tanaro*, near the Confines of the Dutchy of *Montferrat*, about 7 Miles from *Mondovi* to the East, and 40 from *Turin* to the South East. It had formerly *Marquesses* of that Title, and from it the neighbouring Country was call'd the *Marquisate of Ceva*.

*Savillano*, or *Savigliano, Savillanum*, stands upon the River *Magra*, in the middle between *Fossano* to the East, and *Saluzzo* to the West, about 5 Miles from either, and 20 directly South from *Turin*. It is most advantageously situated between 2 Rivers, inasmuch that 'tis said that *Philbert Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, design'd to make it the Metropolis of his Dominions.

*Coni*, or *Cunio, Cunenum*, is a strong Town and Castle built on a Hill, at the Confluence of the Rivers *Stura* and *Ges*. It held out against *Francis I.* King of *France*; but was taken by Count *Harcourt* in the Year 1641. in the Reign of *Lewis XIII.* of *France*. In the Year 1691. the French attempted to take it; but were forc'd to raise the Siege. It stands about 11 Miles from *Fossano*, and 30 from *Turin* to the South, and is said to have been built in the Year 1150.

*Cherasco, Carrea*, stands in the County of *Asti*, upon the River *Tanaro*; but this old Name, according to *Francis Augustin* Bishop of *Saluzzo*, belongs rather to *Chieri* in *Piedmont*; which was once a considerable free Town, before it fell into the Hands of the Duke of *Savoy*. It stands about 5 Miles from *Turin* to the East.

The Country which of late has been call'd **FRENCH PIEDMONT**, does not now deserve that Name; since by the Treaty of Peace between *France* and *Savoy*, concluded at *Turin, An. 1696.* it was agreed, That the City and Cittadel of *Pignerol*, after the Fortifications should be demolished, at the King's Charge, together with the Forts of *St. Bridget*, the *Perouse*, &c. as well as the Territories and Dominions compris'd under the Name of the Government of *Pignerol* (which did belong to the House of *Savoy*, before the Cession or Surrender, that *Victor Amadeo*, the first Duke of that Name, made to *Lewis XIII.* of *France*) should be

restor'd to the Duke of *Savoy*. This Country lies between *Piedmont* properly so call'd, and the *Valleys* of the *Vaudois*; and contains these Places,

*Pignerol, Cap.*

*Perouse.*

*Briqueras.*

*Pignerol*, or *Pinarolo, Pinariolum*, stands upon the River *Chisius*, commonly by the *Italians* call'd *Il Chiese*, at the Foot of the *Alpes*, near the Confines of *Dauphiny*. It was lately a very well fortified Town; and the Cittadel, as it was before the demolishing of it, might have been justly reckon'd one of the Strongest Places in *Europe*; and a terrible Thorn in the Duke of *Savoy's* Foot while it remain'd in the French King's Hands; which one day might have made him halt, if he had not taken care to pluck it out by the late Treaty. It was formerly under the Jurisdiction of *Savoy*, and was commonly an Appenage of the younger Sons of that Family, 'till it was taken by the French Forces, under the Conduct of *Armand John de Pleffis*, Cardinal of *Richelieu*, in the Year 1630. and afterwards sold by Duke *Victor Amadeo*, together with the Fort and Valley of *Perouse*, for the Sum of 494000 Crowns to the King of *France*; who, besides this Sum, resign'd to the Duke the City of *Alba* in the Dutchy of *Montferrat*, with the adjacent Territories, by a Treaty concluded at *Cherasco*, 31 March, 1631. In the Year 1693. the Duke of *Savoy*, at the Head of the Confederate Forces, laid Siege to it; but afterwards his Royal Highness thought fit to leave it and go meet General *Catinat*, who then lay encamp'd with 12 or 14000 Men between the Mountains of *Fenestrelle* and *Bossa*, about 20 Miles North West of *Pignerol*; but finding it hard to come at him, went back and opened the Trenches before *Pignerol*, in *September*. In the mean while *Catinat's* Army was re-inforc'd with several Detachments from *Germany* and *Catalonia*; and the Confederates rais'd the Siege, blew up the Fortrefs of *St. Bridget* (which has a Communication with the Cittadel by a cover'd Way, and a Passage under Ground) and set forward to meet him, near *Orbessan* in the Plains of *Marseillane*; where a bloody battel was fought on the 4th of *October*, 1693. in which the French won the day, but lost above 6000 Men, and the Confederates about 5500. The City of *Pignerol* (as we said before) was surrendred to the Duke of *Savoy*, and all its Fortifications demolished, by the Treaty of *Turin*, 1696. It stands about 20 Miles from *Turin* to the South West, 24 from *Susa* to the South, 15 from *Saluzzo* to the South, above 40 West from *Casal*, and 350 from *Paris* to the South East.

*Perusa*, (or *Perouse* by the French) *Perusa*, stands near the River *Clurius*, or *Il Chiese*, at the Foot of the Hills, and gives Name to a Valley. It belong'd formerly to the Duke of *Savoy*; but fell into the French King's Hands, *An. 1631.* and was restor'd by the Treaty of *Turin*, 1696. It stands 4 Miles from *Pignerol* to the North; and must not be confounded with another Town in the Pope's Dominions, which the French call *Perouse*, but the *Italians* *Perugia*; in Latin *Perusia*, of which we shall have occasion to treat afterwards.

*Briqueras*, or *Bricherasco* by the Inhabitants, *Briquerascum*, stands near the little River *Peles*, on the Confines of *Dauphiny*, about 5 Miles from *Pignerol* to the South. In the Year 1592. it was taken by the French, under the Command of *M. de Lesdiguières*, who caus'd it to be well fortified, but *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy* afterwards re-took it.



The Lordship of *VERCELLI*, or the *Vercellese*, *Vercellense Dominium*, is bounded on the North and East with the Dutchy of *Milan*, on the West with the *Biellesè* and *Canavese*, and on the South with *Maurfessè*. By the Treaty of *Turin*, 1427. *Philip Maria* Duke of *Milan* resign'd it to *Arnaldo* Duke of *Savoy*, reserving to himself only that part that lies between the *Nuvareffa* and the River *Sesia*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Vercell.*

*Bielia.*

*Santia.*

*Vercell*, or *Vercelli*, *Vercellia*, stands on the Confines of the Dutchy of *Milan*, upon the River *Sesia*, or *Sessues*, which 10 Miles below, falls into the *Po*, about 12 Miles from *Casal* to the North, in the midst between *Milan* and *Turin*, about 20 Miles from each, and 30 from *Furnea*. It is the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*. It has a Castle and Cittadel, and is pretty well fortified; and contains several fine Churches, and a good Hospital. Pope *Leo IX.* conven'd a Council in this Town against *Berengarius* Arch-deacon of *Arger*, who was cited, but did not appear. The *Spaniards* made themselves Masters of the Town, *An.* 1638. and restor'd it to the Duke of *Savoy* by the *Pynenian* Treaty.

*Bielia*, *Bielin*, and *Bogell*, stands at the Foot of the Mountains, 25 Miles from *Vercell* to the West, about 12 Miles from *Furnea* to the North East, and gives Name to the adjacent Country, call'd the *Biellesè*.

*Santia*, *Fanum Sanctæ Agathæ*, gives Name to the adjacent Country, in the *Vercellese*; and is distant about 16 Miles from *Vercelli* to the West, and 20 from *Furnea*. *Francus d'Este*, the second Duke of *Modena*, that famous Warrior died here, 14 Octob. 1638.

The Principality of *MASSERAN*, or *Masserano*, *Masserani Principatus*, lies near the Confines of the Dutchy of *Milan*, between the *Vercellese* and the *Biellesè*. It had formerly Princes of its own of the Family of *Flijca*; but by Adoption fell into the Hou'e of *Ferrera*, and so now its Princes are call'd of the Family of *Ferrera Flijca*. It is a Vassalage of the *Pepe's*, and has under its Jurisdiction *Crevicore* adjacent to it, and some other Places of little moment. The only remarkable Town in it is,

*Messeran*, or *Messerano*, *Messeranum*, seated on a Hill, in the Confinnes of *Milan*, about 18 Miles from *Furnea* to the East, about 20 to the North West of *Vercelli*, and 36 from *Turin* to the North East.

The Marquisate of *TURÆA*, *Eporredienfis Marchionatus*, was anciently a considerable part of *Gallia Subalpina*. About 200 Years ago it was a considerable Country in *Italy*, lying along the Foot of the Mountains, between them and the *Po*, and was under the Jurisdiction of its own Marquesses; but afterwards came to be divided into several Parts and to lose its old Name, as *Baudrand* says; who mightily blames some modern Geographers, for placing this Marquisate in part of *Italy*, now call'd *Il Canavese*. The only Town of Note in it is,

*Furnea*, a Town anciently belonging to the *Salassi*, which *Pliny* calls *Eporredia*, *Strabo*, *Eporadia* and *Antoninus*, *Eporredia*, stands on the River *Dereæ Baltea*, where there is a stately Stone Bridge; and was built, as some say (particularly *Buno*) about 100

Years before the Birth of Christ. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Turin*, and is a Place of great Importance to the Duke of *Savoy*, into whose Hands it came, according to *Baudrand* and others, in the Year 1313. being well defended by a Cittadel and Castle. It was taken by the French, *An.* 1554. and restor'd sometime after. It is distant from *Turin* about 25 Miles to the North, 30 from *Aouste* to the South, and as many from *Vercelli* to the West. It is famous for the excellent Cheeses that are made in and about it.

The County of *ASTI*, *Contado d'Asti*, *Astensis Comitatus*, anciently a part of the Dutchy of *Milan*; but has been subject to the Duke of *Savoy* since the Year 1531. by the Concession of the Emperor *Charles V.* who had taken it from the French two Years before. It is bounded on the West by *Piedmont*, and on all other Parts by the Dutchy of *Montferrat*. The Towns of any Note in it are,

*Asti.*

*Verrua* or *Verua*.

*Asti*, *Aste*, by the French, *Asta*. *Ptolomy* makes it the Name of a Town and Colony of *Gallia Cisalpine* in *Liguria*. It stands on the River *Tenaro*, about 15 Miles from *Alba* to the North East, 16 from *Casal* to the South West, and 26 from *Turin* to the East. It was once a considerable Republick, but afterwards fell into the Hands of the Viscounts, and so became a part of the Dutchy of *Milan*; from which, after many Turns and Revolutions it fell in to the Duke of *Savoy*, by the Gift of the Emperor *Charles V.* to *Charles III.* Duke of *Savoy*, *An.* 1531. It consists at present of several Parts, viz. the City, the Burrough, the Cittadel, the Fort and Castle of *St. Peter*; all which are pretty well fortified. The neighbouring Fields are very Fertile, and produce, particularly, a fine sort of Melon, very much esteem'd.

*Verrua* or *Verua*, *Veruca*, is a Fortrefs, built on a Rock, on the Banks of the *Po*, over against *Crescentino*, near the Confines of *Montferrat* and the *Canavese*, about 16 Miles from *Turin* to the East, and somewhat less from *Casal*, and 12 from *Asti* to the North. It was strongly fortified by *Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, and in vain attempted by the Spanish Forces, *An.* 1625.

The Marquisate of *SUSA*, *Segusinus Marchionatus*, lies along the Foot of the *Alpes*, between *Piedmont*, properly so call'd, on the East, and *Dauphin*, on the West. It was formerly of greater Extent and inhabited by the *Segusini*, according to *Cluverius*; and is now subject to the Duke of *Savoy*. The only Town of Note in it is,

*Susa*, *Suse* by the French, *Segurium*. Is a little City seated among the Mountains, by which it is commanded almost on every side, on the River *Doria*. It gives Name to the Marquisate; and is distant about 3 Miles from the Confines of *France* and *Dauphiny*, 24 from *Turin* to the West, and as many from *Briançon*. Here, they say, is to be seen a Triumphal Arch erected in Honour of *Augustus* A. U. C. 740. (which Mr. *Misson*, I think, takes no notice of) And some think this is the Town where that Emperor set up his Trophy 14 Years before the Birth of Christ; tho' others are of opinion it was not here, but at a Place call'd *Tourbie* at the Foot of the *Maritime Alpes*, because there is a Stone to be seen in that Place with this Inscription, *Sente Alpina devictæ*. At this Place was found the Sepulchre



pulchre of *Cottus*, from whom the *Alpes Cottie* took their Name. The French took this Place, *An.* 1630. and fortified it strongly; but afterwards restor'd it. They took it again in the Year 1690. and restor'd it, *An.* 1696.

The Marquisate of *SALUCES* as the French call it, and the Italians *Saluzzo*, *Salutiarum Marchienatus*, lies at the Foot of the *Alpes*, having *Piedmont* on the East, *Dauphiny* on the West, and the County of *Nice* on the South. It formerly belong'd to *France*, 'till *Henry IV.* gave it to *Charles Emanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*, in Exchange for *Bresse*, *Bugey*, and other Places on this side the *Rhone*, in the Year 1601. That River takes its Rise near this Country, from the Mountain *Viso*, which is thought to be the highest of the *Alpes*. The Marquesses of *Saluzzo* have caused a famous Vault 4 Miles long to be hewed out of the Rock, near this Place, through which Mules may easily pass with Goods from *Italy* into *France*. This Family deserves its Original, they say, from one *William*, an Italian Count, who flourished about the beginning of the tenth Century. The most remarkable Towns belonging to this Country are,

<i>Saluzzo.</i>	}	}	<i>Cental.</i>
<i>Carmagnola</i>			<i>Requispariero.</i>
<i>Revel.</i>			<i>Birgues.</i>
<i>Stafforda.</i>			

*Saluzzo*, or *Saluces*, *Salutic*, and *Augusta Vagiennorum*, stands on a Hill, at the Foot of the *Alpes*, about a Mile from the River *Po*, 10 from *Fassano* to the West, 24 from *Turin* to the South, and 12 from *Pignerol*. It has been an Episcopal See, under the Archbishoprick of *Turin* since the Year 1511. and the Cathedral Church is very Magnificent and Rich. It was taken by the French, *An.* 1691. and re-taken the same Year.

*Carmagnola*, *Carmaniola*, is seated above 2 Miles from the *Po*, and 8 from *Turin* to the South. It was taken in the Year 1588. during the Civil Wars of *France*, by *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and had it confirm'd to him by a Treaty of Peace, 1600. The French took it in the Year 1691. but lost it again that same Year.

*Stafforda*, is a small Town, no other way remarkable than for the Victory which the French obtain'd near it over the Duke of *Savoy*, in the Month of *August*, 1690. where the French were said to lose 500. and His Royal Highness near double that Number.

*Cental*, *Centalis*, is a little Town, not long ago fortified, upon the Rivulet *Matea*, in the midst between *Coni* and *Savigliano*.

The Country commonly call'd the *THE VALLIES OF THE VAUDOIS*, lies between French *Piedmont* on the West and North, *Piedmont* properly so call'd on the East, and the Marquisate

of *Saluzes* on the South, and is commonly divided into 5 remarkable Vallies, viz.

<i>Pragelas</i> or <i>Cluson</i>	}	}	<i>Angrogne.</i>
<i>Perouse.</i>			<i>Lucern.</i>
<i>St. Martyn.</i>			

The People commonly call'd the *Vaudois*, owe their Name, as it is said, to one *Peter Valdo* or *Vaud*, a rich Merchant of *Lyons* in *France*, about the Year 1160. who seeing a Friend of his die suddenly, became mighty serious upon't, and sell a reading the Bible; and by that means discover'd the Errors of the Church of *Rome*, and communicated what he had learned to a great many of his Friends and Neighbours, who very quickly grew up to a considerable Party. Whereupon *Peter* was excommunicated by the Clergy, and several of his Disciples persecuted; which oblig'd them to retire into the Vallies of *Piedmont*. They have suffer'd many Persecutions, and particularly in the Year 1688. the Duke of *Savoy* persecuted the poor Inhabitants of those Vallies; who having in vain endeavour'd to preserve their Religion and Liberties, many of 'em were made Prisoners, and the rest, at the Solicitation of the Protestant Cantons, permitted to go where they would. In the Year 1689. a great many of them put themselves in Arms in the Cantons of *Bern* and *Switzerland*, and with a Secrecy that prevented even the Suspicions of their Enemies, form'd two Bodies, one of 1200 and the other of 3000 Men; and imbarcking on the Lake of *Geneva*, forc'd their way through *Savoy* into their own Country, in spite of the united Forces of *France* and *Savoy*, who oppos'd their Passage, and oblig'd them to five or six little Battles, in which the *Vaudois* had still the Advantage: And all this without any Officers, except one Mr. *Arnaud*, a Minister; and under him a Mason, nam'd *Turel*, for their Lieutenant General. In the Year 1690. the Duke of *Savoy*, by the Mediation of King *William*, re-call'd these Refugees, and restor'd them to their former Privileges and Immunities. But by the Treaty of Peace between the King of *France* and the Duke of *Savoy*, concluded at *Turin*, 1696. it is agreed, That the Inhabitants of the Vallies of *Lucern* call'd the *Vaudois*, shall have no Communication in Matters of Religion, with that King's Subjects: Nor shall His Royal Highness suffer any of His Majesty's Subjects to make any Settlement in the Protestant Vallies, under Colour of Religion, Marriage, or any Pretence whatsoever; nor any Protestant Ministers to come from thence into any of His Majesty's Dominions, without incurring the severest Corporal Punishment. Since which time His Royal Highness has been very severe upon those poor People, and driven them all out of his Dominions into the Protestant Countries of *Europe*, and *England* since the beginning of this Year 1699. has had its share.

As to the Counties of *Boglio*, *Oncile* and *Tende*, they are treated of already in our Description of *Savoy*.



## C H A P. III.

*The Coasts of Genoa, or Genoua, Ora Genuensis.*

**W**HEN we speak of the Coasts of *Genoua*, we do not mean only the Places and Towns on those Coasts belonging to that Republick, but also several other little Towns and Countries along the Coast of that Sea, commonly call'd the *Sea of Genoua*, in the Possession of several Princes and States: Extending in length from the River *Var* that separates *Provence* from *Italy*, to the *Magra*, which falls into the *Mediterranean Sea* near the Ruins of the City *Luna*, now call'd *Luna Desfrutta*. Its length is computed to be about 150 Miles, from West to East. and its breadth about 30 at the broadest, and not above 6 or 7 at the narrowest. It is bounded on the South by the *Mediterranean Sea*, on the North by the Dutchies of *Parma*, *Milan* and *Monserrat*, on the East by *Tuscany* and *Massa*, and on the West by the River *Var* and *Provence*. It makes up the greater part of the ancient *Liguria*; which was divided into *Liguria*, *Littorea* and *Liguria Mediterranea*; the former of which seems to have been the Country we are now treating of; which (as we said before) comprehended several Places besides what belong to the Republick of *Genoua*, as you may see in the ensuing Table.

Subject to divers Sovereigns,	{ <i>Nice</i> , <i>Villefranche</i> , <i>Maro</i> , <i>Donas</i> , <i>Monaco</i> , to the Prince of <i>Monaco</i> . <i>Final</i> , to the King of <i>Spain</i> .	} belonging to the D. of <i>Savoy</i> .	{ Eastern and Western Coasts.	<i>St. Remo</i> . <i>Ventimiglia</i> . <i>Albenga</i> . <i>Noli</i> . <i>Savona</i> . GENOVA. <i>Sarzana</i> . <i>Brugnato</i> . <i>Rapallo</i> . <i>La-Vegna</i> . <i>La-Pezza</i> . <i>Torreghia</i> .

We have already treated of *Nice* and *Villefranche* in the Description of *Savoy*; *Donas* and *Maro* are so inconsiderable that we find very little said concerning them, only that the latter is both the Name of a Town and a Marquisate, belonging to the Duke of *Savoy*.

*Monaco*, *Herculis Monaci Portus*, call'd by the People of *Provence*, *Mourgues*, is a little Town, but well fortified, with an old Castle, and a very safe Harbour. It stands upon the Confines of the Country of *Nice*, 6 Miles from the Town of that Name towards *Albenga*. This Town gives Name to a little sort of Principality, governed by its own Princes of the Family of *Grimaldi*, who are also Peers of *France*; and having expell'd the *Spaniards* in the Year 1641. were obliged to crave Protection of the French King, and receive a Garrison of his Soldiers. This Principality is so little that besides the Town of *Monaco*, it comprehends only a little Town call'd *Menton*, and a Village *Roccambruna*. The present Prince is the French King's Minister at the Court of *Rome*.

*Final*, *Finalium* or *Finarium*, stands in the midst between *Savona* and *Albenga*, on the Coasts of *Ge-*

*noua*, and is dignified with the Title of a Marquisate. It was formerly govern'd by its own Princes of the Family of *Carrelo*; but has been under the Jurisdiction of *Spain* since the Year 1599. that *Andreas Sforza*, the last Marquis, sold it to the *Spaniards*. The Town is at present pretty well fortified, and hath a strong Castle on the top of a Hill; the Avenues of which are guarded by 2 Forts.

*San Remo*, *Fanum Romuli*, stands on the Coast of *Genoua*, (to which Republick it belongs) about 9 Miles from *Vintimiglia* to the East, about 30 from *Nice*, and 15 from *Monaco*. It is a Place of Importance, and stands in a very fertile and pleasant Valley, that produces *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Olives* and other Fruits.

*Vintimiglia*, *Albintemelium*, (the same with *Vintemelum* and *Albintimilium*, mentioned by *Tacitus*; *Varro*, and other Authors) stands on the Sea-Shoar, near the Frontiers of *Savoy* and the County of *Nice*, 14 Miles from the Town of *Nice* to the East, 7 from *Monaco*, 30 from *Coni* to the South, and 80 from *Genoua* to the West. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*, and has been under the Jurisdiction of *Genoua* ever since the Year 1238.

*Albenga*, *Albigaunum*, or *Albingaunum*, stands on the Sea-Shoar, on the West part of the Coast of *Genoua*, over against a little Island, or rather a Rock in the Sea, call'd *l'Isolotto d'Albenga*, 50 Miles to the West of *Genoua*, 35 from *Ventimiglia*, and 40 from *Aba* to the South. It was erected into an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Genoua*, in the Year 1179. It was formerly a considerable and rich Town; but of late has begun to decay.

*Noli*, *Naulum* or *Naulium*, stands in a pleasant Plain on the Coasts of *Genoua*, not above a Mile from *Final*, between *Savona* to the North East, and *Albenga* to the South West, 10 Miles from the former, and 12 from the latter. It is a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Genoua*, and was formerly a free Town, but is now under the Jurisdiction of *Genoua*; and has not the advantage of a Harbour.

*Savona*, *Savona* stands on the West Coasts of *Genoua*, about 3 Miles from *Vado* to the North East, 8 from *Noli*, 30 from *Albenga*, as many from *Genoua*, and 22 from *Acqui* to the South. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Milan*, and is defended by a Cittadel and 2 Fortresses. It had once a very large and good Harbour, but it was stop't up by the *Genuense*, upon jealousy of its being too much favoured by *Francis I.* King of *France*.

*Genoa* or *Genoua*, *Genua*, is a very ancient Town in *Liguria* in *Gallia Cisalpina*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and others. It was sack'd by *Mago* the *Carthaginian*, 549 Years after the building of *Rome*; and afterwards re-built by the *Romans*. There has been a great deal of Dust rais'd about the Etymology of this Word, some maintaining it came from double-fac'd *Janus*; others, that it was derived from *Janua*, because it was, in a manner, a Gate into *Italy*; some from *Janus* first King of *Italy*, or *Janus* King of the *Trojans*; but 'tis not worth the while



while to examin who has the most Reason for his Assertion, only this is plain, that the fore-cited Authors call it *Genoa*, and so does *T. Livius*, and a Stone that was found by a Peasant as he was Tilling the Ground, *An. 1507.* has an Inscription on it, where the *Genoese* are call'd *Genuates*. It was dignified with the Title of an Archbishoprick, by Pope *Innocent II. An. 1152.* It was burnt by the Saracens in the Year, 935. all the Citizens being either Kill'd or carried away Prisoners; but they were brought back by the Means of the Doge of *Venice*, and the Town Rebuilt, and made more Magnificent than it was before. It is now the Capital City of *Liguria*, and Head of a Republick; and Seated at the Bottom of a little Gulf, on the declivity at the Foot of a Hill, seeming to consist of several Stories. The Port lies very open towards the Sea, and therefore cannot afford safe Anchorage for Ships. The City contains 35 Parishes, the Streets are for the most part uneven and very narrow; and the Houses are six or seven Stories high in the lower part of the Town; but by degrees as the Ascent rises, the Houses are lower, and built at a greater distance. The Situation of it affords a very fine Prospect; but is very inconvenient for those that would ride in Coaches; and therefore Persons of Quality use Litters and Chairs. It is absolutely false that this City is built of Marble as most People believe; Brick and Stone, or both mixt together, are the ordinary Materials of its Houses; and the Walls are generally covered with Plaister. There are some Houses, among those more lately Built, that are richly adorn'd with Marble; but there's as good Reason for saying *London* is built of Stone, as *Genoa* is built of Marble. But tho' the City is not built of Marble, it may justly boast of some very Beautiful Structures; for the Houses are extreamly large and fair in five or six Streets that are of a considerable Breadth, and in the Magnificent Suburb of *S. Pietro d' Arena*. This City suffered very much by the Bombardment in the Year, 1684. but few of the most beautiful Edifices received any great hurt by the French Bombs, private Persons, and those of inferiour Rank having suffered most by it.

The Government of this Republick is Aristocratical. The Doge (whose Government lasts two Years) is the supream Magistrate, assisted by 8 Senators or Governors, a certain Number of Procurators, and a Grand Council consisting of a certain Number of the Nobility, who are in all 700. The Doge cannot be continued above two Years, but may be Chosen again five Years after the end of his Government: And none of his Relations can be elected immediately after him. He is stil'd His Serenity, as the Senators are Their Excellencies, and the Noblemen Most Illustrious. The Power and Grandeur

of this Republick is extreamly decreased since those glorious Days, when they extended their Conquests to the *Tanais*, and made themselves Masters of all the Coasts of *Asia*, and the Islands of *Cyprus*, *Scio*, *Lesbos*, &c. They still retain the Island of *Corfica*, with the Title of a Kingdom, and are extreamly proud of it; for the Doge is crown'd with a Royal Crown of Gold, and a Scepter is put into his Hand, because of it. The Trade of *Genoa* is very much decay'd. It consists particularly in Velvet, Point, Gloves, Dry Confections, Anchoves, and several sorts of Fruits. There are some private Persons very Rich, but the Republick is Poor. Neither Corn or Wine are Sold in the Markers; for the Government reserves that Trade for it self, and the Bakers must fetch their Corn from the Publick Granaries. This City stands 270 Miles from *Rome* to the North West, 75 from *Turin*, 135 from *Florence* to the West, 220 from *Venice* to the South West, and 80 from *Milan* to the South. Latit. 44. 50. Longit. 27 0.

*Sarazana*, *Serezana* or *Sergianum*, stands near the Mouth of the River *Magra*, in the midst between *Massa* and *Spetoia*; about 34 Miles from *Lucca* to the North West, and 18 from *Brugnetto*. It is defended by a strong Castle, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Pisa*. It's rise is from the Ruins of a Neighbouring Town called *Luna*; and Pope *Nicolas* the V. a Native of this Place, translated the Bishoprick of *Luna* hither, with the Title of both Sees, in the Year, 1450.

*Brugnetto*, *Brunetum*, or *Bruniacum*, stands upon the River *Verra*, at the foot of the *Appenines*, nine Miles to the West of *Pontiermoli*, as many from *Spetoia* to the North, and 50 from *Genoa* to the East. It is but a small Town, and not well inhabited, but is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Genoa*.

*Rapallo*, *Rapallum*, is a little Town, under the Jurisdiction of *Genoa*, upon that Coast, with a Harbour, about 23 Miles from *Genoa* to the East, and 3 from *Portofino*. Near to it is the little Bay call'd *Golfo di Ripallo*. The Reader must take notice that *Rapolla* in *Basilicata* in the Kingdom of *Naples* sounds very like this, tho' the Latin Word for that is *Rapallo*, as *Rapallum* is for this.

*Lavagna*, *Lavania*, or *Lebonia*, a little Town on the Coast of *Genoa*, at the Mouth of the River *Entella*, belonging to the Republick of *Genoa*, between *Chiavari* to the West, and *Cestre di Levante* to the East.

*La Spezza*, or *La Spetia*, *Spedia*, is a little Town, belonging to the Republick of *Genoa*, standing at the bottom of the *Golfo della Spetia*, 7 Miles from *Sarazana* to the North West, as far from *Lunade-strutta*, 4 from *Porto Venere*, and 11 from *Brugnetto*.

## C H A P. IV.

### The Dutchy of Montferrat.

**M**ontferrat, *Monsferratus*, or *Monsferranus*, so call'd from the fruitful Soil of the Hills and rising Grounds in it, as if it were *Mons-ferax*, is bounded on the East by the Dutchy of *Milan*, and a part of the Dominions of *Genoa*, on the North by the *Vercellese* and *Bugellese* and the

*Canavese*, on the West with *Piedmont*, properly so call'd, and the Countrey of *Asti*, and on the South by the western Dominions of *Genoa*, from which it is separated by the *Apennines*, and comprehends a great part of the ancient *Liguria Mediterranea*. It fell into the House of *Mantua*, in the Year, 1535, by



by the Marriage of *Margaret*, Wife of *Frederick I.* Duke of *Mantua*, after the Death of *Boniface* her Brother, last Marquis of the Family of the *Paleologi*. It was formerly of greater Extent, comprehending a part of the *Canavese*, and of the Higher *Langhe*; which were given to the Duke of *Savoy* by the Treaty of *Cherasco*, in the Year 1631, together with a part of *Montferrat* beyond the *Po*; so that after that it was divided into two parts, viz. into *Montferrat*, properly so call'd, which lies to the East and South, and is under the Duke of *Mantua*, (except *Casal*; of which afterwards) and *Montferrat* near *Piedmont*, which lies towards the West and North, under the Duke of *Savoy*. So that the whole of this Duchy is now divided into three parts, as you may see in the following Table.

Casal, belonging to the French.	{	<i>Alba,</i>	{	belonging to the D. of Savoy.
		<i>Bianza,</i>		
		<i>Saussia,</i>		
		<i>Verclense,</i>		
		<i>Acqui,</i>	{	belonging to the Duke of Mantua.
		<i>Ripalia,</i>		
		<i>Ossimian,</i>		
		<i>Belziz.</i>		

**CASAL**, *Casale*, called by the *Ligurians* *Bedintomagus*, by the *Romans*, *Industria*, afterwards *Sedulia*, as appears by the Annals of the City. It is also call'd *Casale di S. Vito*, from *S. Evasius*, its Patron, to distinguish it from other Towns of the same Name.

It stands on the *Po*, 4 Miles from *Trino*, to the East, 15 from *Asti* to the North, 40 from *Turin* to the East, and about as many from *Milan*. In the Year 1474, Pope *Sixtus IV.* erected it into a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Milan*, at the Request of *Gulielmus Paleologus* Marquis of *Montferrat*. It is famous for the many Sieges which it has sustain'd. *Gonzales* at the head of the Spanish Forces Invested it in the Year 1629, but was forced to leave it in the Night time, on the approach of the French Forces. The Spaniards attempted it

next Year after, under the Command of *Ambrosio Spino la*; but the Marquis *de Torias* defended it so Vigorously that they lost their Labour. In the Year 1640, they came before it again, under the Command of the Marquis *de Leganes*; but Count *Harcourt* drove them away taking several of their Standards, their Baggage and Ammunition, and above 2000 Prisoners, and Kill'd a many. In the Year 1652, the Spaniards taking advantage of the Commotions of *France*, made themselves Masters of it, and afterwards Surrender'd it to the Duke of *Mantua*; who kept a Garrison in it, till he Sold it to *Lewis XIV.* King of *France*, on 30 September, 1651. The Duke of *Mantua* receives still some inconsiderable Dunes from it. It was lately a very well Fortified City, with a Castle and Citadel which was of great Importance; The French having corrected all the Irregularities of the Fortifications and added a great deal more to what there was formerly; but in pursuance of the Articles of Capitulation with the Duke of *Savoy*, who besieged it with the Confederate Army, 1695, it was Demolish'd.

*Alba*, *Alba Pompeia*, stands on the River *Tanaro* 12 Miles from *Asti* to the South, 7 from *Cherasco* and 28 from *Turin* to the South West. It formerly belong'd to the Duke of *Mantua*, but was yielded to the Duke of *Savoy* by the Treaty of *Cherasco*, Ann. 1631. It has suffered several Changes and Revolutions, and is in a Decaying condition, and indifferently Inhabited. It is however an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Milan*.

*Acqui*, *Aqua Statella*, or *Statella*, or, according to *Pliny*, *Aqua Statyella*, stands on the River *Barnia* near the *Apennines*, 16 Miles from *Allessandria* dell. *Paglia* to the South, as many from *Savona*, somewhat more from *Asti* to the South East, and *Alba* to the East. It is famous for its hot Sulphurous Waters, to which great Numbers of People come to be freed from their cold noxious humours, as *Ferrarius* relates; and to the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*.

## CHAP. V.

### The Duchy of Milan, Mediolanensis Ducatus.

**T**HE Duchy, commonly call'd the *Milaneſe*, is the North Part of *Liguria*, and was anciently Inhabited by the *Inſubres*. The *Longobardi*, a People of *Germany*, having over-run *Pannonia*, in the Year of Christ 526, made Incursions into *Italy* in the Year 552, and having expell'd the *Goths* in the Year 572, Establish'd a new Kingdom, which lasted about 206 Years, till *Charles* the Great abolish'd it. About the Year 1359, the French first laid claim to this Country; and upon this account, *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Charles VI.* Married *Valentina*, the Daughter of *John Galeazzo*, Viscount of *Milan*, with this condition, that he should receive immediately as a Dowry, not only a great Treasure of Money and Jewels, but also the County of *Ast*; and in case her Father should die without Issue, the whole Countrey should be devolv'd to *Valentina* and her Children: Which Contract has not only furnish'd *France* with a pretension to *Milan*; but has also been the occasion of great Calamities. In the Year 1499, *Lewis XII.* pretending a Right to this Dukedom by his Grandmothers side, Conquer'd it in 21 Days, and forced *Lewis* the Black to fly into

*Germany*; but the Inhabitants of *Milan* not being able to endure the too free Conversation of the French with their Wives, recall'd their Duke, who being assisted by an Army of *Swiss*. Regain'd the whole Countrey except the Castle of *Milan*, and the City of *Novaro* but *Lewis* sending timely Relief from *France*, and the *Swiss* proving Treacherous to the Duke, and refusing to Fight against the *French*, he was forc'd to endeavour his escape in a common Soldiers Habit: and being taken, was kept Prisoner at *Leches* ten Years, where he died; and so the French were absolute Masters of *Milan*; but in the Year 1512, they were forc'd to leave *Italy*, and *Maximilian*, Son of *Lewis* the Black, was restored to the Duchy of *Milan* by the help of the *Swiss*. Afterwards *Francis I.* Invaded *Italy*, and beat *Maximilian*, having Kill'd 10000 *Swiss*, with the loss of 2000 of his best French Troops. After which *Maximilian* surrendred himself and the whole Countrey to the King, on condition of an Annual Pension of 30000 Ducats to be paid him. In the Year 1521, *Francis* was led out of *Milan* and *Francis Sforza* Restor'd, by the means of the Emperor and the Pope; but at last after



ter so many Changes and Revolutions, by the Peace Concluded at *Cambray*, in the year 1529. *Francis* renounced all his Pretensions to *Milan*, and afterwards the Emperor *Charles V.* annexed it to the Crown of *Spain* for ever.

This Country is well Watered, and very Fruitful, producing abundance of *Corn*, *Wine*, *Flax*, and several sorts of good Fruit. It is Ruled by a Governor sent from the King of *Spain*; who Rules the Inhabitants with absolute sway, and squeezes great Sums of Money out of them, besides the King's Revenue; which some say amounts to 3000000 *Livres*, besides a Million more in time of War. The Countrey is commonly divided into these Parts or Territories, viz. *il Territorio di Milano*, *il Pauesè*, *il Novaresè*, *il Comasco*, *il Lodigino*, *il Cremonesè*, *il Tortonese*, *l' Alessandriano*, *il Contado di Augbiera*, and *la Laumellina*; and the Chief Towns in it are,

<i>Milan.</i>	<i>Lodi.</i>
<i>Alessandria.</i>	<i>Novara.</i>
<i>Bobbio.</i>	<i>Pavia.</i>
<i>Como.</i>	<i>Vivegano.</i>
<i>Cremona.</i>	<i>Mortara.</i>
<i>Tortona.</i>	

*Milan*, *Mediolanum*, is Situated in a pleasant Plain, and Watered by the little River *Olna*, and has also the advantage of two Canals, one of which is call'd *Novatia Delle Martezano*, which begins at *Terra*, and reaches in a strait Line, within half a Mile of *Milan*, being 20 Miles in Length; and supplied with Water from the *Adda*. The other is call'd *Novatia Tessinello*, and comes from the *Tessin*. This City is said to have been Built by the *Gauls*, 395 years after the Building of *Rome*: and tho' it hath been often wasted, and even destroyed by the terrible Scourges of War and Pestilence, having been Besieged 40, and taken 22 times; and particularly Raz'd and Sowed with Salt, by *Frederick Barbarossa*, Ann. 1162; yet it is so well recovered at present, that it justly deserves the Name of Great, and may be reckoned among the best and finest Cities in Europe. Its Figure is round, its Walls are Ten Miles in Compass, and its Inhabitants are thought by some to be 250000, by others 300000. It is divided into 6 Parts or Regions, which have their Names from so many Gates. The Citadel is a regular Hexagon, well li'd and stored with Canon, and surrounded with a great Ditch and Counterscarp. The Principal Buildings in *Milan*, without mentioning the Churches and Convents, (which are very many) are the Archbishops Palace, the Houses of the Marquis *Homodeo*, Count *Bartolomeo*, *Arce*, and Signior *T. Marini*; the Seminary, a noble Structure, Founded by *Charles Borromeo*; the Colleges of the *Switzers* of *Breva*, and of the *Jesuits*; The Town-house, and the Chief Hospital; The *Lazaret*, or place appointed for those that are Sick of Pestilential Distempers, begun Ann. 1489, by Duke *Lewis Sforza*, call'd the Moor, and Finish'd by *Lewis XII.* 1507, consisting of 4 Galleries joyn'd in a Square, each containing 92 Chambers, the Doors of which are so contriv'd, that all the Sick Persons may see the Mass said from their several Beds; the Altar being in the middle of the Square, under a Dome, supported by Columns. The Cabinet of the late Canon *Manfredi Settula*, a Person of great Learning and Ingenuity, as well as a dextrous Workman in several things, is very well worth seeing; for there are several sorts of very ingenious Machines, contriv'd for finding out the perpetual Motion, Looking-Glasses and Dials of all sorts, Ancient and Modern, Musical Instruments, Books, Medals, Seals, Rings,

Pictures, Indian-works, Mummies, Arms, with an infinite variety of all sorts of Antiquities, a great piece of Cloth made of the Stone *Amiantbus*, and several Monsters, a Dish of yellow Amber, two Foot in Diametre; also several rough pieces of the same sort of Amber, enclosing Ants, Spiders, Grasshoppers, Flies and other Insects, which appear distinctly in the middle of them; a piece of Crystal also, in which several sorts of Substances are enclosed, particularly an Olive Leaf, and a drop of Water, which seems to move. The Cathedral Church likewise deserves the particular notice of a Traveller, being a prodigious Work, beyond *St. Peter's* in *Rome*, for the laboriousness of its Structure, tho' a Sixth part less. The Ambrosian Library, so Nam'd by Cardinal *Frederick Borromeo*, Archbishop of *Milan*, who Founded it, and Dedicated it to *St. Ambrose*, is said to contain 14000 Manuscripts, besides Printed Books; which some say are in Number 72000. There is also adjoining to the Library an Academy for Painting, in which are a great many curious Pictures: Besides all these, there are an infinite number of Curiosities, and things worth an Ingenious Man's particular notice, too many to be inserted here, and therefore those who have not had the advantage of Travelling and seeing them, must have recourse to the late Travellers, for a more full account of them. This City is distant 43 Miles from *Casal* to the East, 65 from *Genoua* to the North, 72 from *Parma* to the N. West, 80 from *Turin*, as much from *Modena* to the West, and 192 to the N. West of *Rome*.

*Alessandria della Paglia*, or *Alexandria*, *Alexandria Statelliorum*, is divided into two parts by the River *Tanaro*, above 52 Miles from *Milan* to the South West, and in the midst between *Genoua* to the South, and *Turin* to the West 44 Miles from either, according to *Philippus Ferrarius*, who was Born in this place. The Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa* call'd it *Casarea*; but Pope *Alexander III.* would have it nam'd *Alexandria*. 'Tis false that ever any Emperors were Crown'd in this City with a Crown of Straw, (as Mr. *Misson* observes) and it will be pretty hard to prove that *Frederick* in derision call'd it *Alexandria* of Straw; However it retains that name to this Day. The City is but little, and the Fortifications at present are but indifferent. The foresaid Pope Erected it into a Bishoprick, subject to the Archbishop of *Milan*, in the year 1175.

*Bobio*, or *Bobi*, *Bobium*, is a little Town upon the River *Trebia*, Situated in a Plain, upon the Confines of the Dutchy of *Parma*, and not far from those of the *Genuese*. It was anciently only an Abbey Built by *St. Columbanus*, through the Liberality of *Theodolinda* Queen of the *Longobards*; but afterwards grew up to a considerable Town under those, the Monastery still remaining. It gives name to a Countrey call'd after it *il Bobiese*: and is a Bishops Seat Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Genoua*. It stands 35 Miles from *Dertona* to the South East, 35 from *Genoua*, 23 from *Piacenza* to the North, and 35 from *Pavia*.

*Como*, *Comum*, or *Novocomum*, stands upon a Lake of that name, about 25 Miles from *Milan* to the North, as many from *Burgomo* to the West, and 80 from *Turin* to the North East: and gives name to the adjacent Country, call'd *il Comasco*; the People of which *Livy* calls *Comenses*. *Pomponius Trogus* says it was Built by the *Gauls*, as *Milan*, *Trent*, *Verona*, and several other Towns were. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Milan*, in the Patriarchat of *Aquileia*. This City has given Birth to several Illustrious Persons, particularly *Pliny* the younger,



*Paulus Favianus*, and Pope Innocent XI. of the Family of *Odescalchi*.

*Cremena*, *Cremona*, is Seated on the left Bank of the Po, on the Confinés of the Dutchy of Milan, in the midit between *Potenza* to the West, and *Mantua* to the East, about 40 Miles from either, 50 from *Milan* to the East, and 18 from *Placenza*. 'Tis a pretty large City, but Poorer and less P opulous than *Placenza*. Their famous Tower, somuch talk'd of, especially by some of their own Authors, is neither handsom nor very high. The Castle is an old, shapeless, and ruinous Mass; which never deserv'd the name of a Fort, tho' it might have signified something in the days of Yore, when Cro's bows were in Fashion. The Tower is said to have been Built by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, Ann. 1154. The People of *Cremena* boast much of the Antiquity of their City, but want Proofs to confirm it. It is said to have been Built the 445th year of the City of *Rome*, and afterwards made a Roman Colony. It hath suffered many Changes and Revolutions, and hath often changed its Masters. *Hannibal* Pillaged it in his Passage into *Italy*, the *Goths* committed horrible outrages in it, and the *Visigoths* and *Lombards* entirely ruined it; and *Frederick Barbarossa* Rebuilt it. It was once Govern'd by its own Viscounts, but the French, Venerians, Duke of Milan, and the Spaniards have at different times been Masters of it; the last of which is still in possession of it. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of Milan.

*Tortona*, *Dertona*, or *Tordena*, which *Strabo* calls *Derton*, is a little, Ruinous and ill Fortified City, upon the River *Tisa*, or *Stafiera*, about 8 Miles from the Confinés of the Dominions of *Genova* to the North, as far from the Po, 10 from *Alessandria* to the East, 25 from *Pavia*, and 45 from *Placenza*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of Milan. It is defended by a Citadel, which is regular and naturally Strong, but not kept in very good order. This Town as well as *Milan*, was destroy'd by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, and Rebuilt by the Milanese; but has never recovered its former greatness. It was taken by the French in the year 1642, and recovered by the Spaniards the year following. It gives name to the adjacent Country called *il Tortonese*. The ancient *Dertone* stood on the Eminency where the Citadel stands at present.

*Lodi*, *Laus Pompeia*, was an ancient Town in *Insubria*, according to *Strabo*, and the name of a Colony. It is said to have been Built by the Gauls, call'd *Belli*, when they came first into *Italy*, according to *Pliny*; and call'd *Pompeia* afterwards, because *Pompeius Strabo*, Father of *Pompey* the Great, carried a Colony thither. It stood on the River *Silaro*; but was destroyed by the Milanese, Ann. 1153, and is now only a little Village, call'd *Lodi Vecchio* and *Lodive*, by Abbreviation, that is, the old *Laus*. The new *Lodi*, which stands about 5 Miles from it, on the River *Addua*, in the Dutchy of Milan, was Built by *Frederick Barbarossa*, 46 years after the destruction of the other; and stands at the distance of 20 Miles from *Milan* to the West, and as many from *Cremena*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of Milan.

*Novara*, *Novaria*, the Chief City anciently of the *Levi*, in *Insubria*, stands about 25 Miles from *Milan* to the West, 16 from *Casal* to the North-East, and 14 from *Vercell* in *Piedmont*. There are several In-

scriptions on *Marble*, which plainly shew its Antiquity. It is an Episcopal See, whereof *Benedictus Odescalchi*, afterwards Pope Innocent XI, was once Bishop, under the Archbishop of Milan. *Lewis Sforza*, Duke of Milan, was taken by the French before this place, Ann. 1536, and *Petrus Lombardus*, Master of the Sentences, (as he's commonly call'd) was Born here. This Town gives name to a very Pleasant and Fertile Country, lying about it, call'd *il Pavese* by the Inhabitants.

*Pavia*, *Ticinum*, anciently Inhabited by the *Insulres* and said to have been Built by the *Levi* and *Mauri* before *Milan*. It was afterwards call'd *Flavia Papia*, and *Papia* by *Paulus Diaconus*, and other late Authors. It was Subdued by the Romans, Sack'd by *Attila* in the 5th Century, and at last Ruin'd by *Odoacer*. It was taken by *Albinus*, King of the Lombards; and in the year 774, *Charles* the Great Storm'd it, and carried *Didier* last King of the Lombards away Prisoner. In the year 931, it was taken by the Emperor *Otho I* and in the year 1045, it was almost entirely laid in Ashes by an accidental Fire. In the year 1059, it entered into a bloody War with *Milan*; and after that time was subject to several Masters, till it was annex'd to the Territories of *Milan*. *Francis I*, King of France laid Siege to it, Ann. 1525; but his Army years was Routed, and himself taken Prisoner; and two years after the French took it under the Command of *Odet de Laure*. At last the Spaniards made themselves absolute Masters of it. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of Milan, but exempted from his Jurisdiction, and depends immediately on the See of Rome. The City of *Pavia* has lost all its ancient Lustre, in somuch that one who sees it now will hardly be persuaded that it was once the Metropolis of a Kingdom and the Residence of 20 Monarchs. The Castle and Fortifications are in a very ruinous condition; and the University (which as they say, was Founded by *Charles* the Great) is Decayed as well as the Town. The Cathedral is an old dark Structure, Built awry over against which there is a Figure on Horseback of *Praetor*, said to be the Statue of *Antoninus Pius*. This City stands upon the River *Tesin*, 4 Miles from the Po, 150 from *Genova*, and 34 from *Placenza* to the West, and gives name to that part of the Dutchy of Milan, which is call'd *il Pavese*, or *Territorio di Pavia*.

*Vigevano*, *Vigilbanum*, is a little Town upon the River *Tesin*, with a Castle, about 20 Miles from Milan to the West, as many from *Casal*, and 12 from *Pavia*. It is so call'd, as *Gaudentius Merula* conjectures from *Vitis Gieba*, because of the bad Soil of the Neighbouring Country, to which it gives Name. It is an Episcopal See, of no long standing under the Archbishop of Milan.

*Mortara*, *Montaria*, is a pretty large Town and well Inhabited, upon the River *Gogna*, about 4 Miles from *Vigevano* to the South-West, 10 from *Novara* to the South East, and 24 from *Pavia* to the West. It is the chief Town of a Country call'd *Lumellina*; and was anciently call'd *Bellisaria*; but afterwards *Mertaria*, on the account of the signal overthrow which the Lombards receiv'd by the Army of *Charles* the Great, when he took their last King *Didier* Prisoner, and put a period to their Kingdom. In the year 1658 it was taken by the French under the Command of *Francis* Duke of *Modena*, but restor'd to the Spaniard by the Pyrenian Treaty, Ann. 1660.



## CHAP. VI.

*The Dutchy of Parma. Ducatus, or Ditio Parmensis.*

**T**HE Dutchy of *Parma*, which the Italians call *Ducato di Parma*, is Bounded with the Dutchy of *Milan* on the North and West, that of *Modena* on the East, and the Dominions of *Genoa*, and part of the Valley of *Magra* on the South: and was anciently Inhabited by the *Anamani*, a People of *Gallia Cispadana*, and a part of the *Belli*. The parts into which it is commonly divided are the Dutchy of *Parma* strictly taken, the Dutchy of *Placenza*, the State of *Buffeto*, and a part of the State of the Valley of *Taro*, and formerly comprehended also the Dutchy of *Castro* and the State of *Ravenna*. After many Changes and Revolutions, this Country fell into the hands of the Pope. And Pop. *Pius III.* before his Accession to the Chair, call'd *Alexander Farnese*, Created *Pedro Luige Farnese* Duke of *Parma*, in the year 1545. and so this Duke is a Vassal of the See of *Rome*, to which he Pays a yearly acknowledgment of 1000 Crowns. The Revenues of this Dutchy are said to be about 400000 Crowns, and his ordinary Forces 5000 Men. This Dutchy's being a Fief of the Pope's Demains, had like to have prov'd fatal to Prince *Ramucio*, Son and Heir to *Alexander Farnese* Duke of *Parma*, and Governor of the *Netherlands*; For Pope *Sixtus V.* having by repeated Orders forbid the carrying of secret Arms, was inform'd, that this young Prince ordinarily carried Pocket Pistols; and thereupon (this Prince being his Vassal) ordered him to be Arrested, and his Pistols taken from him in one of the Chambers of the Popes Palace, and afterwards to be carried to the Castle of *St. Angelo*. His Uncle Cardinal *Farnese* left no means untried to procure his Liberty, but all in vain: for the Pope sent an Order to the Governor of the Castle to cause him to be Beheaded; but the Cardinal coming shortly after, (as if he had known nothing of the fatal Order) to renew his Solicitations, the Pope to be rid of him, sent him away with a new Order to the Governor, to let *Ramucio* at Liberty, nor doubting but it would come too late. The Cardinal having by Money procured all the Clocks in the City to be kept back, except the Pope's, and coming to the Castle in all haste, found his Nephew all in Tears, in the Arms of his Confessor; but quickly producing his new Order, and the Governor concluding that the Pope had at last been prevail'd with, delivered up his Prisoner, who by his Uncles Command immediately took Post, without staying to thank his Holiness for his Life; which by chance had been rescued from the Jaws of Death. This Country produces plenty of good Wine and Oyl, and was famous for excellent Cheese; which they say is not at present made here, but in the *Milanese* about *Lodi*. The most considerable Cities and Towns in it are,

*Parma*, } *Borgo S. Domino*,  
*Placenza*, } *Bierenguala*.

*Parma* *Parma*, Anciently a City Inhabited by the *Belli* in *Gallia Cisalpina*, according to *Strabo* and *Pliny*, stands upon a River of the same Name, which divides it into two parts, about 10 Miles from the *Po* to the South, in the midst between *Modena* and *Placenza*, 35 Miles East of the first, and as many West of the o-

ther, 86 from *Florence* to the North-west, 60 South-East from *Milan*, and above 200 from *Rome*. It is a very pleasant City, and the Avenues to it are Broad and Straight. The most remarkable things in it are, the great Theatre, which is so rare a Structure, that neither *Paris* nor *Venice*, can boast of the like. It is extremely large, but so contriv'd that the least whisper can be heard thro' all the Parts of it. Instead of Boxes, the Floor is surrounded with Benches, rais'd after the manner of an Amphitheatre. It may be fill'd with Water to the Height of above 3 Foot: and this little Lake is cover'd with Gilt Boats; which make a very charming Spectacle, by the help of a fine Illumination. The Citadel of *Parma* was Built after the Model of that of *Antwerp*, and the Fortifications of the City are also very good. The Ducal Palace has nothing extraordinary in it; but that which was a building in the year 1688, is Larger and more Regular. Besides the ordinary Schools of the University, there is a large College, call'd the College of the Nobility: and not only the Sciences, but also all manner of Exercises are taught here. There is abundance of good Company and Fine People, to be seen here at the *Cours* or Walk, especially handsome Women; but it is thought as great a Crime, and would be as odd to see both Sexes in one Coach, as to walk naked about the Streets. This City is honoured with an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Bologna*; but was formerly Subject to that of *Ravenna*.

*Placenza*, *Placentia*, Anciently a Town in *Gallia Cispadana*, Inhabited by the *Anamani*, now call'd by the Inhabitants *Placenza*, stands upon a Plain, about half a Mile from the *Po*, 40 Miles from *Milan* to the South East, 35 from *Parma*, 30 from *Pavia* to the East, and 18 from *Cremona*. It is the chief Town of a Dutchy of that Name, Subject to the Duke of *Parma*, since the year 1540. It is a very ancient Town, and was Burnt and Pillag'd by the *Carthaginians*, under the Command of their General *Hamilcar*, (as *Livy* informs us) and afterwards did bravely sustain a long Siege, which *Attila* King of the *Goths* laid to it. It is a pleasant Town, Bigger than *Parma*; the Houses are low and prettily Built. There is in the street which they call *Stradon*; a Foot-path next the Houses defended with Posts, as in *London*, about 10 Foot distance from each other. The Town is thinly Inhabited: and the Houses are generally of Brick. The Fortifications are not very considerable, tho' they are very much extoll'd commonly. The Statues of *Alexander Farnese* Governor of the *Spanish-Netherlands*, and of his Son *Ramucio* the First, are set up in the great Place.

*Borgo S. Domino*, *Fidentia*, Anciently a Town belonging to the *Anamani*, in *Gallia Cispadana*, according to *Antonnius*. It appears by an old Inscription that it was call'd *Julia Fidentia*; *Livy* calls it *Fidentiola*, and the Roman Martyrology *Julia*. It is now a little Disinhabited Town on the Confines of the State of *Buffeto*, about 15 Miles from *Parma* to the West, and 20 from *Placenza*. It had been an Episcopal See; but ceasing to be so for some time, was restor'd to that Dignity by Pope *Clement VIII.* Ann. 1601.



*Fierenzola, Fiorentola*, Anciently a Town in *Gallia Cispadana*. Inhabited by the *Ananani*, stands in the County of *Butera*, about 13 Miles from *Piacenza* to the East, 6 from *Borgo S. Domina*, and 22 from *Parma*; it is the name also of a pleasant Valley, in

a Barren and Desert Country, between *Florence* and *Bologna*. It was Built by the *Florentines*, Anno 1332. There are other Towns of this Name, viz. one in *Tuscany*, and another in *Apulia*.

## CHAP. VII.

### *The Duchy of Modena. Mutinensis Ducatus.*

**T**HIS Duchy is made up of several little Duchies and Principalities, viz. The Duchy of *Regio*, the Principality of *Carpi*, the Principality of *Corregio*, the Signorie of *Sassuolo*, *Frignana*, and the greater part of *Gragnana*; and is Bounded on the North with the Duchies of *Mantua*, and *Mirandola*, on the East with the *Bolognese*, and the Territories of the Church, on the South with the Dominions of *Tuscany*, and those of *Luca*, and on the West with the Duchy of *Parma*. Its Length from South to North is about 60 Miles, according to *Barboud* from East to West 45. It was anciently Inhabited by the *Boii*, People of *Gallia Cispadana*, and was formerly Subject to the Dukes of *Ferrara* of the Family of *Este*; but the little Principality of *Corregio* was but lately annexed to the Dominions of *Modena*; being formerly Govern'd by its own Princes. The most considerable Towns in this Duchy of *Modena* are,

<i>Modena.</i>	} } <i>Regio.</i>
<i>Carpi.</i>	
<i>Corregio.</i>	
	} } <i>Bersello.</i>

*Modena, Mutina*. Anciently a Colony and Town in *Gallia Cispadana*; but Ruin'd by the *Goths*, and *Lombards*, and afterwards Built at the Charge of the Citizens. During the distractions of *Italy* between the Emperor and the Pope, *Guido* the Pope's Legat and Bishop of this Place, consigned it to *Azzo*, of the House of *Este*, Lord of *Ferrara*, Ann. 1314. upon the Payment of 10000 Crowns a year; since which time it hath for the most part continued in the Possession of that Family. It is Seated on a Plain, upon the River *Secchia*, about 20 Miles from *Bologna* to the West, 16 from *Regio* to the East, 20 from the *Po* to the South, and 40 from *Mantua* to the South East. It is at present destitute of Trade, and consequently Poor. Its Fortifications are in a decaying condition. The Portico's with which the Streets are Bordered are low and narrow, neither are any of its Churches remarkable. In short, were it not for its ancient Reputation, and because it is the Residence of the Duke at present, it would hardly be taken notice of. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Bologna*, whereas formerly it was Suffragan to that of *Ravenna*.

*Carpi, Carpsum*. Stands upon a Canal of the River *Secchia*, 12 Miles from *Modena* to the North, and next 2 from *Corregio*. It is but a little Town, with a pretty Strong Castle: but is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, which is no great matter in *Italy*, and was for a long time Possessed by the Fa-

mily of the *Pici*'s; but at last in the year 1550, it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Modena*. The Collegiat Church in it was first Built by King *Aistulphus*, and afterwards Repaired with much Magnificence, by *Albertus Pius*, then Prince. It is in no Diocesis, and is exempted from the Jurisdiction of the Neighbouring Bishops, by the Concessions, particularly of Pope *Julius II.* and *Leo X.*

*Corregio, Corregium* or *Corrigium*, is a pretty large and well Inhabited Town, with a Castle, about 10 Miles from *Regio*, and 13 from *Modena* to the West. It was formerly under Princes of that Name; but since the year 1635, it has been Subject to the Duke of *Modena*.

*Regio, Reggion, Regium Lepidi*, to distinguish it from *Regium Julium*, another Town of that Name in *Calabria ulterior*, (of which afterwards in its due place) is Seated in a pleasant Country, between *Parma* to the West, and *Modena* to the East, about 20 Miles from either. Mr. *Miffen* tells us, that there is nothing particularly remarkable in this City, except that it is better Built, and more pleasant than *Modena*. Tho' they boast much of their Church of *S. Prosper*; yet it is nothing in comparison with those at *Rome* or *Naples*. They drive also (says this Author) to gain some Reputation by making Spurs, and working in Bone; of which they make Rings for *Ed.* a Dozen, Deaths-Heads, Scrivens for Relicks, *Agru Dei's*, &c. all very coarse. It is an Episcopal See, formerly Suffragan to *Ravenna*, but now to *Bologna*. *Bersello, Brixellum*, Anciently a Colony and City in *Gallia Cispadana*, which *Suetonius* and *Pliny* call *Brixillum*, stands upon the *Po*, over against *Viadana*, 8 Miles from *Parma* to the North, 25 from *Mantua*, 28 from *Crownia* to the West, and 17 from *Regio* to the South West. The Roman Emperor *Otho* died here after the Battle of *Bedriacum*. Now call'd *Cerneto*, which he Fought against the Forces of *Vitellius*, his Rival for the Empire.

*Micandula, Minantula*, is the name of a little Duchy, and also of the Chief Town in it; which is said to have been Built in the time of *Constantin*, Son of *Constantin* the Great. The Duchy lies between that of *Mantua* to the North and *Modena* to the South. The Town (which is Fortified and Defended by a Castle) stands about 10 Miles from the *Po* to the South, and 22 from *Modena* to the North. This Place with the adjacent Country, hath for a long time been subject to the Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picus Minantula*, that Famous Scholar) as also the County of *Concordia*.



## C H A P. VIII.

*The Dutchy of Mantua. Mantuanus Ducatus.*

**T**HIS Dutchy is bounded on the East with the Dutchy of *Verona*, on the North with the Territories of *Brescia* and the *Veronese*, on the West with part of the Dutchy of *Milan*, near *Cremona*, and on the South with the Dutchies of *Mantua* and *Mirandola*; where anciently a part of the *Cenomani* dwelt. A great part of the Dutchy of *Mantua* belongs to this Duke; who is descended from the House of *Gonzaga*, in whose Possession these Territories have been ever since the Year, 1327 or 1328. that *Lewis de Gonzaga* a Nobleman, with the assistance of the People, kill'd their Tyrant *Pissarino Benecolli*, and took the Government upon him. The Emperor *Sigismund* created *John Francis Gonzaga* Marquis, *Ann.* 1431. and *Charles V.* erected it into a Dutchy, *Ann.* 1530. This is a Fertile Country, affording Plenty of Corn and Pasturage, but the Wine is not so much commended: And the most considerable Towns in it are,

*Mantua*, Ch.

*Guastalla*.

*Castiglione delle Stivere*.

*Mantua*. *Mantua*, a very ancient City, Built before *Rome*, anciently Inhabited by the *Cenomani* in *Gallia Cispadana*. It stands on a spot of firm Land within a Marsh, made by the River *Mincio* upon a flat Country; which cannot properly be called a Lake; for in some parts of it the Water is always in Motion, tho' in others it Stagnates, which makes the Air so Infectious that few stay in the City during the great Heats, except such as cannot conveniently leave it. This City is not well Fortified, being only enclosed with a Wall, and defended by a Cittadel: The City is indifferently large, and the Streets are broad and straight; but the Houses are very indifferent, and generally unequal. The Dukes Palace is a large and commodious Pile of Building, but has very little else to recommend it. It is said to have been very richly furnish'd, before *Colalto*, General of the Emperor's Forces, pillaged it in *July*, 1630. and however this Palace may be furnish'd at present, the Duke's Apartment is in very good

Order: And the Hall of Antiquities is full of rare and fine Pieces; and the Cabinet of Curiosities is pretty well furnish'd. The Duke has Seven or Eight Pleasure-Houses, most of which are very lovely Seats. Besides the Cathedral, the Churches of the Jesuits, *St. Barnabas*, *St. Maurice*, *St. Sebastian*, *St. Ursula* and *St. Barbara*, the Town-House, Theatre, Manufactories, the Mill of the 12 Apostles, Synagogue and Shambles are all very well worth one's seeing, as is also the Palace of Justice: Near this City, in the Village *Andes* was the immortal *Virgil* Born; which is one of the most considerable Things that render this City Famous. It is an Episcopal See, under the Patriarchat of *Aquileia*, but exempted from that Jurisdiction ever since the Year, 1453. and stands about 5 or 6 Miles from the *Po*, 75 East from *Milan*, 75 West from the Gulf of *Venice*, 90 North from the Mediterranean Sea, and 30 North East from *Parma*.

*Guastalla*, *Guardistallum*, or *Vastalla* and *Guastalla*, stands near the River *Po*, on the Borders of the Dutchy of *Modena*, in the midst between *Mantua* to the North, and *Regio* to the South. It, with a little Country about it, is honoured with the Title of a *Principality*. There was a Council held here, under Pope *Paschalis* the II. *An.* 1106. It has been subject to the Duke of *Mantua* ever since the Year, 1677. that its last Duke died.

*Castiglione delle Stivere*, *Castilio Stiverorum*, is a little Fortified Town, with a pretty Strong Castle, on the Confines of the Dutchy of *Mantua*, 12 Miles from *Peschiera*, and almost in the middle between *Mantua* and *Brescia*. It gives Name to the adjoining Country, which together with the Town are subject to a Prince of the Family of *Gonsagua*.

*Bozolo*, *Bozolum*, is a little sort of a City, enclosed with certain Works, which pass for Fortifications: And stands 2 Miles from the River *Olio*, and almost in the middle between *Mantua* and *Cremona*. It gives Title to a Duke, who besides this Place, is Sovereign of a Territory that extends four or five Miles.

## C H A P. IX.

*The Republick of Venice. Ditio Veneta.*

**T**HE Dominions of the Republick of *Venice*, or the State of *Venice*, taken in a large Sense, may be divided into three Parts, according to the distinct Countries in which they ly, viz. *The Venetian Dominions in Italy*, which they commonly call *la Terra ferma*, in *Dalmatia*, comprehending their Dominions on that Coast and some adjacent Isles: And their Dominions in the *Ionian* and *Ægean* Seas, which the Italians call *il Levante*. We shall treat particularly of the first Two in this Chap-

ter, and some of the Third, the rest being describ'd in that which treats of *Turkey in Europe*.

Whatever the Venetians may pretend for the Antiquity of their State, and the perpetual Freedom and Independency they have ever enjoy'd, this seems pretty clear, That their City, and consequently their State, owes its Original to that of *Padua*. For we are told by Authors of undoubted Credit, that the Seat of this City did belong to *Padua* before the Building of *Venice*; which was not till about the Year,



Year, 1268, and then Padua had a little sort of Consistory there, for the Convenience of Trade and Commerce before, even the Senate of this City was laid, or bled, by the coming of *Arnold*, King of the *Illyrians*; that Consul, an Italian, Tutoring of *Arnold's* depending on Padua, it is as certain that for a considerable time there were Consuls chosen in Padua, who went to court *Venice* and there to exercise the Supreme Authority: And not only so, but as a further confirmation of this Dependency, they sent an *Aegidius Fumani*, a Man of singular Prudence, and eminently skilful in the Laws to frame such Laws and Constitutions for them, as he should think most fit and convenient for this Infant City; which, as we hinted before, ought to date its being, to be a Town from the Day on which the Church of St. James de *Rialta* was Consecrated, which was, as *Paul Fret* said, a Man well enough affected to the Interest of *Venice's* affairs, on the 25 of May 1268. There is no Question but the number of its Inhabitants were mightily increased, and consequently the Bounds of the City enlarged after *Arnold's* leaving that Country; for he having destroyed *Arnoldia*, *Adria*, *Quarta*, *Cornelia* and *Padua*, the Inhabitants of these Cities fled to the little Islands upon which *Venice* now stands, about the Year 1255, which beyond all doubt, as it did mightily increase her City, so in many respects it began to look quite another thing from what it had been formerly, and to grow in Riches and Trade as well as Extent of Dominion, till it has at last arriv'd at that pitch of Grandeur which we now see it. Whoever desires to have a full and distinct, and at the same time a brief Account of this Republick, as to its Antiquity and Independency, he may, I suppose, find Satisfaction in a little Book written by *Don Afonso de la Guerra*, Ambassador from the Court of Spain to the State of *Venice*, call'd originally *Squadrino della Libertà Veneta*; which tho' it may be thought the Product of his ill Will to that State, yet the Gentleman being one of the greatest Geniuses of his Age, and a Man of Honour and Wisdom, 'tis not to be thought that he would invent both Authors and Citations from them; which the Reader is particularly concern'd in in that little Treatise. He clearly proves, First, That *Venice* was not originally a free State, nor has always been so in any Sense, but has been Subject to another. Secondly, That it has been Subject to the Emperors, to Ottomans, and the Great Kings of Italy. Thirdly, That it came again under Obedience to the Emperors after the Destruction of the *Gris's*, and continued so to be for the space of a hundred Years. Fourthly, That in process of Time it recover'd its Liberty in a manner; that is, not in respect of private Persons, but only of the Duke, in whose Hands solely the whole Administration was lodg'd. Fifthly, That afterwards it was restor'd to a full and intire Liberty, in which all the Citizens shar'd in common, and were equally capable of sitting in their Council. Sixthly, That afterwards this universal Liberty came to be restricted and confin'd to the Rank of those who now are only capable of holding the Reins of Government, that is, the Nobility, to the exclusion of all the rest of the Citizens. These Propositions being prov'd, as We think this Author does to the satisfaction of any unprejudic'd Person, they must certainly be in a vast Mistake who do with so much Passion and Heat maintain the original and perpetual Liberty of this State, as well as those who endeavour to prove its present Freedom and Independencie, in a large Sense, that is, including the whole

Body of the Citizens. Since it is plain that the Nobility only are so, the rest not having the least degree of Freedom. I say'd what *Padua*, *Verona*, and the other Cities under the Obedience of this State enjoy.

The first Government then of this City was Consular, which lasted about 20 Years, and then was chang'd for that of the *Tribunes*; then came in the *Doges* or *Dukes*, who for a long time were either appointed or confirm'd by the Emperor, or the *Emperors*, by whom also this State was confirm'd in its former Privileges, and allow'd to Coin Money. Afterwards the *Doges* became absolute, and exercis'd arbitrary Power: And then the City was just as free as *Rome* was in the first *Consul's*; but now the Case is quite alter'd; for the *Doge* of *Venice* is no more than a meer gawdy Slave load'd with Fetters, which are not the less heavy because they are gilded; and his Authority extends no further than to nominate some Officers of the Palace, to have two Voices in the Great Council, and to create some Knights of St. Mark. He is as much Subject to the Laws as the meanest Person: And the Inquisition of the State is more severe upon him than upon others. He is chosen by the whole Body of the Nobility, and enjoys this imaginary Honour during Life. When he is Sick or Dies, a certain Counsellor takes his Place and represents his Person in publick Ceremonies, and other Occasions; but neither wears his Habit, nor sits in his Seat. The *Doge* cannot Pardon Criminals; nor take a Journey to the Continent without permission from the State; and when he goes, he leaves all his Honours behind him, and is no more than a private Nobleman: And the very Moment he's elected all his Relations who were in Offices are turn'd out. The Letters of Princes are directed and presented to the *Doge*, but he must not open them before they are communicated to the Council; that is, the Council receives them by his Hands. He gives Answer to Ambassadors; but must not alter one Syllable of what the Council has put in his Mouth, otherwise he must expect a Reprimand on the very Spot. As to what concerns Acts of State, he is but the Herald; the Senate Enacts, and the *Doge* Publishes them. His Revenue according to Mr. *Misson* amounts to near 4000 *Sagins* or 2200 Pound English. He has some Marks of seeming Honour put upon him; which in effect, are rather given to the Republick in his Person than to him. He is call'd Prince, and has the Title of Serenity bestowed on him. There are some Marks of Royalty in his Apparel also. When he marches in State he has a Torch carried before him, a Chair with two Arms and no Back, and a Cushion, 8 Silver Trumpets, some Hautboys, and 8 Standards, and a kind of Canopy like an Umbrella carried hard by him; tho' there's no Canopy in his Apartment, nor even in the Hall where he gives Audience to Ambassadors. He never pulls off his *Crown*, but either at the Moment of the Elevation of the Host, or when he receives a Visit from a Prince of Royal Blood, or from a Cardinal.

As to the Nobility of *Venice*, tho' they all bear the same Name, and are united into one Body, their Families are not equally illustrious. The first Classis or Rank consists of those Families who founded the Republick, and were Nobles before that Time. The Second comprehends those who were elected before the shutting up of the Council; which was call'd *Il Senato del Consiglio*. The Third contains those who obtain'd that Honour as a Recompence



for some eminent Services done to the State: And therefore call'd Gentlemen by Merit. The Fourth is made up of *Nobili per Soldi*, or *Gentlemen by Purchase*, who bought the Title. But notwithstanding these Differences, all of 'em, from the highest to the lowest, have an equal Right to give their Voices, and enjoy the same Privileges: All go to the *Great Council*, and are honoured with the Title of *Excellentiss.* The Order of Knighthood may be divided into these Classes or Ranks. The First comprehends the Knights of the *Golden Star*, who are all Noble Venetians, that owe their Dignity to their Merit, and wear a Star bordered with a Gold Galleon. The Second Rank consists of the *Knights of St. Mark*, who are call'd *Knights of the Senate*: And this Honour is usually confer'd as a Recompence, on Colonels, and even sometimes on Captains, who have signaliz'd their Bravery in an extraordinary Manner, or rendered some important Service to the Republick. The Captain-General recommends the Person to the Senate, who, if the balloting run in his Favour, receives the Order, and with it a Pension of at least a thousand Ducats a Year. These Knights wear a Medal at one of their Button-holes, with the Figure of *St. Mark* on one side, and a Device on the Reverse, according to the Pleasure of the Senate. This Honour is indifferently bestowed on all, Noble or Ignoble, Venetian or Foreigner. The Third Rank is made up of the Doge's Knights, who confers this Honour on whom he pleases, and oftentimes on very mean Persons; who can buy it at any time for a hundred Chequins. This Class consists chiefly of Foreign Officers, who besides the additional Respect it begets them, are by this means secured in their Places.

As to the Government and Administration of Justice, we are told, that there are 5 Principal Councils or Courts establish'd in this State. The First is the Grand Council, comprehending the whole Body of the Nobility, who are of Age to sit in Council, that is 25 Years old; whose Number is thought to be about 1400, tho' not above one half of 'em are at Home at one Time, being employ'd in other

Places, either in Civil or Military Offices, or on Embassies to Foreign States. The Second, call'd *Procuratori*, determines all Matters relating to Peace and War, Alliances and Leagues. The Third is the College, compos'd of 26 Noble-men, that give Audience to Ambassadors, and report their Demands to the Senate, which alone hath Power to return Answers. The Fourth is call'd the Council of Ten, and decides all Criminal Matters. This Court is renew'd Yearly, and 3 Inquisitors of State are chosen from among them every Month. The Fifth is the Spiritual Council, in which the Patriarch of *Venice* presides; who is always a Noble-man, and is elected by the Senate, and confirm'd by the Pope. His Dignity is very eminent, but his Authority is extremely bounded. He can only nominate to two Benefices, for the Clergy are chosen by the People, and can hardly be said to acknowledge any Superiority but that of the State.

The Forces of this Republick both at Sea and Land, hardly amount to four and twenty Thousand, and of these there are usually twelve or fifteen Thousand in the Field. The Captain-General who Commands 'em, is always a Noble *Venetian*, and has under him a General of the Land Forces, Lieutenant-Generals, and Sergeant-Majors, who are almost always Foreigners; for the Noble Venetians are not very Ambitious of Military Employments, because they must come to the highest Posts by degrees; and a Noble Venetian can hardly find in's Heart to stoop so low, as to carry a Musket, or even to accept a Captain's Commission. A Foreign Captain's Pay is a hundred Ducats, or 250 French Livres a Month, a Lieutenant's 30, and an Ensign's 25, but the Italian Officers have but half so much. The Common Soldiers have but 3 *d.* a Day, and out of that must furnish their own Cloaths; but those who serve at Sea have Cloaths given them.

We said before, that the whole Dominions belonging to the Republick of *Venice*, might be divided into 3 Parts, according to the several distinct Countries where they ly, as you may see in this Table:

I.

The Terra firma, or Dominion of Venice strictly taken,	Contains the Countries of,	Istria.	And the Terri- tories of,	Paduano.
		Friuli.		Veronese.
		Trevigiana.		Vicentino.
		Dutchy of		Bresciano.
		Venice.		Bergamesco.
		Rovigno.		Cremasco.

II.

On the Coast of Dalmatia, the Towns of,	Zara.	Trau.	And the Isles of,	Cherso.	Pago.	Lefina.
	Nona.			Osero.		
	Spalato.	Cliffa.		Veglia or Vegia.		Curzola, &c.
	Sebenico.	Cattara.		Arbe.	la Brazza.	

The Fortresses of *Chonin*, *Sigu*, *Ciclut*, *Gabella*.

III.

The Levante or Venetian Do- minions in the East, the Isles of,	Cephalonia.	Cerigo.
	Corfu.	
	Zant.	Kimolo or Argentara.
	la Praga.	The Morea.
	Milio.	



## TERRA FIRMA.

THE first of these, viz. The *Terra Firma*, or Dominion of *Venice*, strictly taken, was Anciently a part of *Gallia Cisalpina*, Inhabited by the *Veneti*, *Carni*, *Istri*, and *Euganei*; and is Bounded on the North with the *Païsine*, County of *Tirol*, and *Carinthia*, on the West with the Duchy of *Milan*, on the South with the Duchy of *Mantua*, the Ecclesiastical State, and the Gulf of *Venice*, which Bounds it also on the East. Its greatest Length from East to West is about 220 Miles and greatest Breadth about 100, but in some places it is very Narrow.

*ISTRIA*, was Anciently a part of *Gallia Transpadana*, on the Confines of *Lyricum*. It is bounded on the North with *Germany*, and the Duchy of *Carinthia*, from which it is separated by the *Monte della Isonzo*, on the East with the Gulf of *Carnaro*, on the West with the Gulf of *Venice*, with which also it is Bounded on the South. It is in Length from North-West to South-East, about 60 Miles, but not near so Broad. The Air of it is not very Healthful, especially on the Coast, but the Country is abundantly Fertile, producing Corn, Timber, Grapes and Olives. The Senate of *Venice* sends a Governor to it, and receives a considerable Revenue from thence. The chief Towns in it under the *Venetians* are,

*Capo d'Istria*, } *Città Nuova*.  
*Parento*, } *Palma*.

*Capo d'Istria*, *Julinopolis*, from *Justin* the Emperor, who Rebuilt it, whereas formerly it had been call'd *Egidia*, according to *Pliny*. It stands in an Island, within three Arrow-shots from the Continent, to which it is joyned by certain Bridges, that may be drawn at Pleasure, which makes the place so strong that it is call'd on that account *Castellum Leonis*, or the *Lion-Castle*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, and stands on the Coasts of the Gulf of *Venice*, about 25 Miles South from *Treviso*, and 15 from *Venice* to the East.

*Parento*, *Parentum*, which *Pliny* and *Psalmus* make mention of, as a Town in *Italy*, is seated upon a Peninsula and Fortified, and has a pretty good Harbour; but is Inhabited by very few, by reason of the Unwholesome Air. It is however the name of an Episcopal See, under the Patriarchat of *Aquileia*, about 7 Miles distant from *Città Nuova*, 25 from *Capo d'Istria* as much from *Palma*, and 50 from *Venice* to the East.

*Città Nuova*, *Civitas Nova*, is a little Town near the Gulf of *Venice*, that rose from the Ruins of the old *Emonia*, which was destroyed by the Hungarians. It stands upon the River *Quiera*, about 3 Miles from the Ruins of *Emonia*, 30 from *Treviso* to the South, and 8 from *Parento*. It has the name of an Episcopal See, under the Patriarchat of *Aquileia*; but the Air being so bad, nobody lives in it but a few Fishermen in the Winter time; for in the Summer it is quite desolate and abandon'd.

*Palma*, *Palma*, was anciently call'd *Julia Palma*, according to *Pliny*, and Built by the *Celti*. It is a little Inhabited Town, near a Promontory of the same name, about 55 Miles from *Parento* to the South, 60 from *Treviso*, and about 100 from *Ancona*, and is an Episcopal See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

The County of *FRIULI*, *Frum Julium*, or *Julius Provincia*, was Anciently Inhabited by the *Carni*; and is Bounded on the South with the Adriatick Sea, and the Gulf of *Treviso*, on the West by the *Marcha di Terzignano*, and a part of the County of *Tirol*, on the North by the higher *Carinthia*, and

the higher *Carniola*, and on the East by *Carniola Siccata*, and part of *Istria*. This Country comprehends several lesser ones, as *il Cadore*, *la Carnia*, *il Carso*, which are Subject to the *Venetians*, the County of *Gorizia*, and the Territories of *Aquileia*, that are Subject to the House of *Austria*. This Province was formerly given by the Emperors to the Patriarchs of *Aquileia*; from whom afterwards the Dukes of *Austria* and *Carinthia* took a great part of it: And after many bloody Battles between the *Venetians* and the Patriarchs of *Aquileia*, at last by a Treaty of Peace, in the year 1455, the Province of *Friuli*, excepting what we just now mention'd, was yielded to the *Venetians*. Besides *Aquileia*, which belongs to the House of *Austria*. The most Remarkable Towns in it, Subject to this State, are,

*Udine*, } *Palma Nuova*.  
*Venezia*, } *Città di Friuli*.  
*Marano*, }

*Aquileia*, *Aquileia*, of old the Chief City of the *Carni*, according to *Itiny* and *Pliny*, Stands upon the River *Natisone*, not far from the Shoar of the Adriatick Sea; about 50 Miles from *Venice* to the North-East, about 30 from *Treviso* to the West, and as many from *Concordia* to the West. It was Anciently a Famous and very Rich City, by reason of its Commodious Situation for Trade and Commerce: and was the Bulwark of *Italy* on that side; and therefore it was that two noble Romans who had been Consuls maintain'd it against *Maximius*, as *Constantinus* did against his Brother *Constantinus*, and afterwards *Maximus* endeavoured to possess himself of it against *Theodosius* the Emperor. *Attila*, King of the *Huns*, after a Three years Siege, took and Sack'd it, in the year 452. *Narses* afterwards Repair'd it; and in the year 590 it was reduc'd to Ashes by the *Lombards*; and afterwards Rebuilt by the Patriarch *Pope*; whose Successors were Possessors of it a long time, till at last it fell into the Hands of the Archdukes of *Austria*, who remain Masters of it. At present there's hardly any body living in it, except a few Fishermen, by reason the Air is so Unwholesome, and the Rubbish of the old City so lying scattered up and down. The Patriarch of it lives now at *Udine*.

*Udine*, *Utinum*, Anciently a City belonging to the *Carni*, Stands near the River *Torre*, 20 Miles North from the Shoar of the Adriatick Sea, as many to the North-west of *Aquileia*, 11 from *Palma*, 20 from *Gorizia* to the West, and 8 from *Ciudad di Friuli*. It is now the Chief Town of this Country, since the Patriarch remov'd his Seat from *Aquileia* hither; whereas formerly it was an Episcopal See, but no great Town. It has been subject to the State of *Venice*, since the year 1420.

*Palma*, *Palma*, is a Place of great Strength and Importance, being Built upon the Confines of the Austrian Territories, in a Plain near the River *Natisone*, where formerly the Church of *St. Laurentius de Ronchi* stood, about 10 Miles from *Udine* to the South East, as many from *Aquileia*, 18 from *Marano* to the North, and 15 from *Gorizia* to the South-West. The Foundation of it was laid on the 24th of October, 1593, and was design'd by the *Venetians*, as a defence to their Dominions against the *Austrians*.

*Ciudad di Friuli*, *Frum Julii*, was Anciently a Colony and Town belonging to the *Carni*, according to *Psalmus* and *Tacitus*, which *Paulus Diaconus* calls *Castrum Julienſe*. It stands on the River *Natisone*, about 7 Miles from *Udine* to the East, and 15 from *Gorizia*. The



The Country of *TREVIGIANA*, or *La Marca Trevigiana*, lies betwixt the Territories of *Friuli* on the East, and those of *Vicentino* and *Trento* to the West. It was formerly much larger; but now comprehends only the Territories of *Trevigiano*, *Bellunese* and *Feltrino*, and is computed to be 48 Miles East and West, and 68 North and South. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Treviſo</i> , Cap.	{	<i>Cinegliano</i> ,
<i>Belluno</i> ,		<i>Oderzo</i> ,
<i>Feltre</i> ,		<i>Val Meta</i> ,
<i>Ceneda</i> ,		<i>Cadara</i> .
<i>Saravalle</i> ,		

*Treviſo*, or *Treviſi*, *Tarvifiſium*, Stands upon the Banks of the River *Sile*, about 18 Miles from *Venice* to the North West, 15 from *Oderzo* to the South West, and 20 from *Padua*. It is a pretty large and Strong Town, eſpecially on the account of its being almoſt ſurrounded with Water, which makes it almoſt Inacceſſible and Impregnable. It has been ſubject to the State of *Venice*, ſince the year 1335, for tho' the Emperor *Maximilian* took it in the year 1509. yet it was reſtored to the Venetians ſhortly after. It is an Episcopical See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

*Belluno*, or *Credal di Belluno*, *Bellunum*, mentioned by *Pliny* and *Ptolemy*, is a little Town, but well Inhabited, on the River *Piave*, about 30 Miles to the North West of *Treviſo*, and 50 from *Venice*; and gives name to the adjacent Country. It is an Episcopical See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

*Feltre*, *Feltia*, which *Antoninus* places in *Venetia*, in *Gallia Cijaipina*, Stands upon the River *Aſo*, which a little below falls into the *Piave*, about 10 Miles from the Confines of the County of *Tirol* to the East, 15 from *Ceneda* as many from *Belluno*, and 45 from *Venice* to the North. It is an Episcopical See and gives Name to the adjacent Country, and hath been under the Jurisdiction of *Venice* ſince the year 1404.

*Ceneda*, *Ceneta*, or *Ceneda Agathia*, and Anciently *Acedum*, Stands at the Foot of the Hills, near the Spring Head of *Montegano*, in the midit, between the Rivers *Piave* to the West, and *Livenzo* to the East, at the diſtance of 10 Miles from either, 13 from *Belluno* to the South, as much from *Oderzo*, and 15 from *Trevigiana*. It is a pretty little Town, and well Inhabited. The Episcopical See of *Belluno* which was Subject to the Patriarch of *Aquileia*, was Tranſlated hither; but the Biſhop ordinarily Reſides at *Saravalle*, a little Town about 2 Miles from this Place.

*Oderzo*, *Opitergium*, which *Strabo* places in *Venetia*, of *Gallia Tranſpadana*, Stands upon the little River *Montegano*, about 12 Miles from *Trevigiana* to the North East, 35 from *Udine*, as many from *Ceneda* to the South East, and 24 from *Aquileia* to the West. It was formerly an Episcopical Seat; but was deſtroyed by *Rotharius* King of the *Lombards*, and the Biſhops Seat Remov'd to *Ceneda*, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

The *DOGADO* or Duchy of *Venice*, is a little Country lying along the Shoar of the Gulf; round the City almoſt, extending from the Mouth of the River *Livenzo*, as far as the *Adige*, having *Friuli*, the Territories of *Padua* and *Revgino* on the West and South, and comprehends the *Lagune di Venetia*, *Lagune di Mirano*, and all betwixt the Village call'd *Capo d' Argere*, or *Cavarzere*, as far as *Grado*, for the ſpace of about 34 Miles Long, and 7 or 8 Broad. The moſt conſiderable Towns in it are,

<i>Venice</i> ,	{	<i>Lio</i> ,
<i>Chiozza</i> ,		<i>Relba</i> ,
<i>Torcello</i> ,		<i>Mo'ano</i> ,
<i>Grado</i> ,		<i>Ma'amoco</i> ,
<i>Caſtel-novo</i> ,		or the Port
<i>Caborle</i> ,		of <i>Venice</i> .
<i>Loredo</i> ,	}	

*VENICE*, *Venetia*, or *Venegia*, ( of whoſe Beginning and Encreaſe we have ſpoken already, in our account of the Riſe and Progreſs of the Commonwealth, whereof this City is the Celebrated Seat ) is commonly ſaid to ſtand upon 72 Iſlands, ( tho their number is much greater ) but whether they are Natural or Artificial is not agreed among Travellers; ſome thinking that the Venetians might dig their Channels, for the more convenient Carriage of their Goods, which by this means are brought to their Doors: And for the Embellishment of the City; which is the only Town in the World that can boaſt of ſuch a Situation; others maintaining, that if Nature had not done it, the Venetians would never have thrown away ſo much of their Ground, which they have always taken ſo much care to Husband. And beſides, that if they had cut out ſuch Channels for their conveniency, why would they have left ſo many large ſpots of Ground entire; for tho' it is commonly Reported that a Man may go in a Boat to any Houſe in the City, yet we are not to take that in a ſtrict ſenſe, ſince there are ſome Houſes not within ſeveral Hundred Paces of a Canal. But whether this Account or that be the Truer, it is moſt certain, that no City on Earth affords a finer Proſpect from without, or greater variety of diverting Objects within. At the diſtance of 30 Miles one begins to ſee the Spires of the Churches, and the Proſpect is ſtill enlarged the nearer one approaches, which gives the Raviſh'd Spectator the Idea of a great City Springing out of the Water; nor can one get free of the deluſion before he has enter'd the City, for all the outer Houſes of it are Founded on Piles in the midſt of the Water, for it ſtands entirely ſeparated from the main Land of *Italy*, but the diſtance is only Five Miles. And the Gondola's Paſs from *Meſtre* in the *Paduano* to *Venice*, in an Hour and half. The Port is a large Plain covered with Water, in which there are certain Iſlands, or Riſing Grounds Level with the Water, on the biggeſt of which *Venice* is Built, moſt of the other Iſlands are covered with Buildings, and make particular Towns; the moſt conſiderable of which is call'd *Judeca*, or the Jews Quarter. Theſe Iſlands are call'd *Lacunes*, or *Lagunes*. Two of them are ſet apart for the uſe of thoſe who come from the *Levant*, where they are oblig'd to perform their Quarantain, in certain large Hoſpitals call'd *Lazaretto's*, one of which call'd *Lazaretto Vecchio*, is a Mile diſtant from *Venice*, the other 5. The deſign of theſe Places is to preſerve the City from contagious Diſtempers: and thoſe who keep them are ſo very nice and ſcrupulous, that they will not receive any thing from a Stranger that there's a Thread in, nor ſo much as a Letter till it be open'd and Smoak'd.

The City of *Venice* has neither Gates, Walls, nor Citadel, and yet cannot be juſtly ſaid to be Weak. Many Authors have eſteem'd it Impregnable: and the Venetians themſelves have told Strangers the Story ſo often, that now they are fully convinc'd themſelves that it is ſo. The opinions concerning the extent of this City and Number of its Inhabitants are very different. It is commonly ſaid to be 8 Miles in Compaſs;



pals; but Mr. *Mifon* makes it pretty plain that it is not so. The number of the Inhabitants have been said to be 2 or 3 Hundred thousand Souls, and some have advanc'd it to four; but whatever it might be when the Trade of *Venice* Flourish'd, it is thought at present not to contain above a Hundred and forty thousand Souls, comprehending the Isle of *Giudea*. The World has been impos'd upon by some who have endeavour'd to make People believe that there were a vast number of Gardens and Places in *Venice*. As to the former, setting aside that towards *Santa Maria del Orto*, and about twenty more less considerable ones, all the rest will not be one with another above ten Foot Square; and as for the latter, properly speaking, there is but one Place in *Venice*, the Famous and Magnificent Place of *St. Mark*; which is really the Soul and Glory of that City. 'Tis Two hundred and fifty Paces Long, and eighty Broad, or according to others 200 Long, and 100 Broad. The Church of *St. Mark* faces one end of it, and that of *St. Geminian* the other. 'Tis Bordered on each side with these stately Piles of Building call'd the old and new *Procuration*, or Lawyers Offices and Lodgings. That on the right hand as you go to *St. Mark's* Church is call'd the new, and that on the left the old *Procuration*. The first has two principal Fronts, one of which looks into the Place of *St. Mark*, and the other into the *Bucintaur* ever against the Palace of *St. Mark*; which is an Ancient and Magnificent Structure, where all the Councils meet; such as the grand Council, the Council of Finances, call'd the *Cassa*, the Marine Council, &c. Here the Money is Coin'd, and the publick Treasure kept in great iron Chests, secur'd with three Locks: the Keys of which are committed to three Procurators, who under pain of Death, dare not make the least attempt to open them till they are all met together. The Council sits twice a Week; which are the only days for all sorts of Payments. All the Streets of the City, without exception are narrow and crooked; but to make amends for these Disadvantages, they are so clean that one may walk a whole year in them without meeting with any Dirt, and besides they are Pav'd with large square Stones; which always after a Shower grow as white as Marble. One may go to most Houses in *Venice* by Water, as well as by Land: there being about 430 Bridges over the Canals, the Principal of which is that of *Rialto*, an admirable Structure, consisting of one Arch Founded on Ten thousand Piles of Elm, and is said to have cost two hundred and fifty thousand Ducats. Mr. *Mifon* gives us the exact measure of this Arch, whose words are these, viz. *The length of the Arch makes exactly the third part of a Circle, and the Breadth on the Level of the Water, from one extremity of the Arch to the other, is Ninety five Feet, and the height exactly four Feet.* The Air of *Venice* is pretty wholesome, but the Water not so; for of an hundred and fifty Wells that are within the City, there are but two or three good for any thing; and the best they have is Rain-Water, which they preserve in Cisterns. Some have reckon'd the Palaces in *Venice*, to be about 400, but tho' this is a bold Assertion, one may venture to say that they are so numerous and Magnificent, that they are sufficient to Adorn Ten Cities; and the finest of them are upon the great Canal.

The most remarkable things in *Venice*, next to the Place of *St. Mark*, are, the Arsenal, which claims a particular observation. It is almost two Miles in compass; for within its inclosure are comprehend-

ed the Magazines for the Vessels, Melting-Houses, Rope-yards, Forges, Lodges for the Gallies, Gallies, and the Bucintaur, besides the Havens and Docks, for Building and Repairing of Vessels. The Ammunition with which the Arsenal is crowded, is said to be sufficient to Arm and Equip 15 Gallies, 4 Gallies, as many Ships, and 10,000 Men. It is Govern'd by three Noblemen, and under them by the Pilot of the Republick, whom they call the Admiral, who is Intrusted with the Care and Inspection of the Ships; and Steers the Bucintaur on Ascension-day, when the Duke, accompanied by all the Nobles, performs the Ceremony of Wedding the Sea. The Treasury is so much Richer, but that contains a great deal of rare and valuable things, as the two Crowns of the Kingdoms of *Candia* and *Cyprus*, many fine Vessels of Agate, Emerald and Crystal, a Sapphire of 10 Ounces, the Dage's Corno, Valued at 200000 Crowns, and many other rare and precious things, which the Reader may find in the latest Travellers. The Republick, as *St. Didier* says, had a Chain of Gold enough for 40 Men to Carry, to which there was a Link added every year and 15 Millions in Gold, which they kept as a reserve for extraordinary occasions; but this Treasure was partly lost by the War of *Candia*, and partly by some Venetian Families, who have Enrich'd themselves with the Spoils of it. The Palace of *St. Mark* where the Doge Lodges, is a large Building, after the Gothick manner, but Magnificent. It has been Burnt 4 or 5 times, and the various Reparations of it, have spoil'd the Uniformity of the Structure. The *Bucintaur* is the Walk of the Nobles, who always take up one side of the Place. This is the general Rendezvous where Visits are made, and Business Dispatch'd. No inferior Person is suffer'd to Walk on that side where the Nobles are, but the other side is free. When a Young Nobleman is come to Age, and puts on the Gown, and is fit to sit in Council, he is Introduced by some of his Friends with a great deal of Ceremony into the *Bucintaur*. *St. Mark's* Church is a huge Structure, Square on the out-side, cover'd with a Leaden Domes, without any Spires or Steeples. The Top is surrounded with Stone Balisters, for the conveniency of Walking. The little Arsenal of the Nobles (which is the Parish of *St. Mark*) is full of the Noblemens Arms, which are always kept ready Charg'd, in case of a Surprize. The Library of the Procurators, has several rare Greek Manuscripts in it, but no great number of Books, nor kept in good order, but has abundance of good Painting, of *Titian's*, and other Famous Masters doing; and several fine Greek Statues. There are several other good Libraries in *Venice*; and as many Paintings as there are at *Rome*.

The Carnival begins always the second Holy-day of Christmas, that is, from that time People are permitted to wear Masks, and to open the Play-Houses and Gaming-houses. There is then an Universal Change in the Habits, Customs and Laws. All marks of Distinction and Superiority are forgotten, or at least neglected; All Persons are, or seem to be equal; Respect, Constraint, Ceremony, Care and Business, are Banish'd from Society; and are succeeded by Joy, Liberty, and an agreeable sort of Folly. During the Fair, the whole Place of *St. Mark*, and part of the *Bucintaur*, is cover'd with Shops: the other part is full of Jugglers, Tumblers, Puppet-Players, Dancing Bears and Mountebanks; which are frequented by all sorts of People, from the Nobleman to the Gondolier.

The



The Opera's and Comedies may be reckon'd one of the Principal diversions of the Carnival. All the Beauty of the Opera's consists in Vocal Musick and Machines; for there is nothing in the Habits, Dancing, and even in the Plays themselves, that deserves a particular description. The *Radotti* or Gaming-Houses, are properly Academies of *Basset*; and are opened at the same time with the Theatres: and none but Noblemen keep the Bank. There are a great number of fine Churches in this City, particularly that Dedicated to *S. Mark*: and one of the peculiarities of *Venice* is, that some of them are Dedicated to Saints that were never Canoniz'd such as *Job*, *Moses*, *Samuel*, *Jeremy*, *Daniel* and *Zachary*, &c. There are also many rich Cabinets, particularly those of the Palace of *Rosini*, of the Procurator *Justiniani*, of the Family of *Capello*, &c. There are a great many other Things which deserve particular Observation, but it would be tedious to insert them all; and therefore we must send the Reader to the latest and best Travellers to be more particularly inform'd.

The Noblemen of *Venice* are variously represented by Travellers; some making them a parcel of proud, insulting, and cruel Men; but we have good reason to believe that it is otherwise. 'Tis true, they take care to maintain the Honour of their Birth, and their Authority over the Citizens and the rest of their Subjects; but they are so far from insulting or Tyrannizing over them, that they are always ready to grant their Protection to Honest Men: and as for Strangers, there is no City in the World where they meet with a kinder and more civil Entertainment. And however that Barbarous Custom of employing Bravo's to Murder and Abuse People, might have for a long time been too much used; yet the Government has taken such effectual ways for removing them, that now the whole Race of them seems to be almost extinguish'd. The Noblemen never appear Publickly but in their Black Robes: nor must they meet in Cabals, or Converse with the Servants of Foreign Ambassadors. A Nobleman may Poison his Wife for Adultery, and cause her Gallant to be Poinarded, without fearing to be call'd in question for so Bloody a Revenge. Which cruel Custom, if it were in Fashion in some other great Cities of the World, the Prices of Poison would quickly Rise, and Dagger-making become a considerable Trade. The Venetians in their Marriages regard only Kindred and Riches; and for the most part, the Persons to be Married never see one another till they come to be joyn'd in the Lawful Bond of Matrimony. It is ordinary here for Mothers to find out Concubines for their young Sons, to keep them out of Contagious Pits: and a Man that has a mind may have choice of handsom Girls, whom their Mothers expose to Sale as commonly, as Sheep with us in *Smithfield*. One may Purchase a handsom Maiden-girl for 150 Crowns in hand, and as much a Year for Entertainment, and for 200 one may have the choice of the Market.

*St. Theodore* was formerly Patron of *Venice*, but *St. Mark* has had that Office ever since the Ninth Century; about the beginning of which, as the Story goes, the Merchants of *Venice* brought the Body of *St. Mark* thither, from the City of *Alexandria*. Greeks, Armenians, and Jews are allow'd the free Exercise of their Religion in *Venice*; but no Jesuits are allow'd to live there, except those that are Natives of the State, and their Superior must be one Born in the City.

The City of *Venice* is divided into 6 Parts, which

they call *Sestiers*, viz. *Sestier di Castello*, *Sestier di Mon Marco*, *Sestier di Conarejo*, *Sestier di San Paulo*, *Sestier di Santa Croce*, and *Sestier di Dorsoduro*. It was from the year 774 an Episcopal See, under the Patriarch of *Grado*: and then the Bishop was call'd *Episcopus Olivulensis*, and afterwards *Castellanus*. But in the year 1455 Pope *Nicolas* the 5th, Translated the Patriarchat from *Grado* to *Venice*; which is Situated 260 Miles from *Rome* to the North, 280 from *Vienna*, 100 from *Ravenna* to the North, 150 from *Milan* to the East, 70 from *Palma*, and 80 from *Grado*. Latit. 45. 30. Long. 30. 20.

*Chioggia*, or *Chioggia*, *Clodia Fossa*, a Town of *Venetia*, according to *Pliny*, call'd by later Authors, *Clugia*, stands in a little Island of the Gulf of *Venice*, on the Coast of the *Dogado*, near the *Lagune di Veneta*, about 15 Miles from *Venice* to the South, towards *Loredo*, near the Island *Brondelo*; and has a very good Harbour. It sprung from the Ruins of the ancient *Motemaucum*: and is the Seat of a Bishop, Subject to the Patriarch of *Venice*. It was heretofore famous for the Victory which the *Genoese* obtain'd at it, when they made themselves Masters of it, in the year 1380. but is now subject to the State of *Venice*.

*Torcello*, *Torcellum*, is a small Town, about 5 Miles from *Venice* to the North, near the *Altino*, from whence the Episcopal Seat was Translated hither, in the year 635. It is very ill Inhabited, by reason of the unwholsomness of the Air.

*Grado*, *Gradus*, or *Aquileia Nova*, stands in an Island of the Gulf of *Venice*, of the same Name, near the Borders of the Province of *Friuli*, but in the *Dogado* of *Venice*, (to which State it is subject) near the Continent, about 12 Miles from *Aquileia* to the South, and 50 from *Venice* to the East. It was Built by the *Aquileians*, after *Attila* had destroyed their City. It was for some time the Seat of the Patriarch; but he returning to *Aquileia*, the People of *Grado*, set up a Patriarch of their own, in the time of *Charles* the Great, as *Eginhardus* and *Reginus* relate, and so the Patriarchat was divided into that of *Aquileia*, and that of *Grado*; but in the year 1455 Pope *Nicolas* the 5th Translated it to *Venice*, where it still continues.

*Cabrie*, *Caprula*, is a little Ill-inhabited Town, because of the Unwholsomness of the Air, in an Island of the same Name, near the Confines of *Friuli*, about 4 Miles from the River *Lemene*, about 40 from *Venice* to the North-East, 30 from *Aquileia*, and 11 from *Concordia* to the South. It is the Name of a small Bishoprick, under the Patriarch of *Venice*, to which State it belongs.

The Country call'd by the *ITALIANS* *Il Polesine di Rovigno*, *Rodigina Peninsula*, lies East and West between the *Po* and the *Adige*, South and North between the *Paduano*, and the Duchy of *Ferrara*. It was formerly a part of *Romandiola*. Subject to the Duke of *Ferrara*; but hath been under the Jurisdiction of *Venice*, ever since the year 1500. The Towns of any Note in it are,

*Rovigo*.

*Adria*.

*Labadia*.

*Rovigo*, *Rhodigium*, is a little City, Encompas'd with a Ruinous Wall, upon the Confines of the *Paduano*, 20 Miles from *Adria* to the West, 25 from *Ferrara* to the North, and as many from *Padua*. It belong'd formerly to the Duke of *Ferrara*, but is now subject to the State of *Venice*: and is the Residence of the Bishop of *Adria*. That Ancient and Famous City, which gave



its Name to the Gulf, being now but a pitiful half drown'd Village.

*Adria.* *Adria*, Anciently a Town in *Gallia Transpadana*, in the Country of *Venetia*, according to *Strabo*, which *Mela* calls *Adria* and *Hadria*, stands upon the little River *Tarraro*, almost five Miles from the Confines of the Ecclesiastical State, and Dutchy of *Ferrara*, 50 from *Riverna* to the North, 30 from *Ferrara* to the North-East, and 25 from *Venice* to the South. It was formerly a Bishops Seat, Suffragan to the See of *Ravenna*; but now a very inconsiderable Town, being almost destroy'd by the violence of the Waves of the Sea, so that the Bishop resides at *Rovigo*. *Pliny* calls it *Adria*; and the Sea had its Name from it; being first call'd *Adriaticum Mare*, afterwards *Adriaticum*; and by *Horace* *Adri-anum*.

The *PADUANO*. *Patavinus Ager*. Anciently Inhabited by a part of the *Veneti*, is Bounded on the North with the *Mare di Terrigiana*, on the East with the *Degado di Venezia*, on the South with the Country of *Rivigno*, and on the West with the *Veronese*. It owes its name to the Chief City of it: and has been under the Jurisdiction of *Venice*, since the year 1403. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Padua</i> . Ch.	}	<i>Orto</i> .
<i>Este</i> .		<i>Cittadella</i> .
<i>Campi S. Pietro</i> .		<i>Montagnana</i> .
<i>Pieve di S. Pietro</i> .		<i>Castellano</i> .
<i>Mirano</i> .		<i>Monfalcone</i> .

*Padua*, or *Padua*. *Patavium*. Anciently a City in the Country of *Venetia*, in *Gallia Transpadana*, according to *Pliny*, *Ptolemy* and *Mela*, stands about 24 Miles from *Venice* to the West, 18 from *Vicenza*, and 48 from *Ferrara* to the North. It was anciently, according to *Mela*, one of the Richest and most Flourishing Cities in *Italy*; but is now (according to *Milfon*) a Poor and Ill-peopled City. The Circuit of it is very considerable (some reckoning it 8 Miles) but there's a great deal of Waste Ground, where there are no Houses, and many Houses wherein there are no Inhabitants. The Ancient *Padua* hath still retain'd its first Walls; but the City falling into the Hands of the Venetians, in the year 1403, in 1519. they pull'd down the Suburbs, in which were 10 Monastries, 6 Churches, 7 Hospitals, and about 3000 Houses. There are Porches or Piazza's almost throughout the whole City, which are convenient to shelter People from the Rain, but make the Streets both Narrow and Dark, and give opportunity to those frequent Robberies and Murders, which they call in *Padua*, *Qui va li*. It is a sort of a Sport which the Students there have; who hiding themselves between the Pillars, watch the coming of some unhappy Passenger, whom they immediately kill or lame, without the least hope of Redress. But the University has of late been in so Poor a condition, and the number of the Students so small, that People are not much afraid of the *Qui va li*. Some are of opinion, that *Padua* was Anciently a Sea-Port-Town; because the Ancients speak of it as a very Rich Place; and because when they dig Wells and Foundations of Houses, they find in several Places Anchors and Marks. But whether it has so, or Ships brought up there by a large Canal, we will not determine. *Antenor* is commonly been believed to have been the Founder of this City; but tho' we are told that he came into this Country, and Built a City call'd *Patavium*, we are not very sure that this is the Place.

The most remarkable things in *Padua*, are, the Church of *St. Anthony* of *Lisbon*, whom they call *St. Anthony* of *Padua*, because (altho' he was a *Franciscan* of *Lisbon*) he Died and was Buried there. It is very large and full of fine pieces of Sculpture and Painting. Also many Magnificent Tombs, particularly that of *Alexander Contarini*, Admiral of the Republick, and Procurator of *St. Mark*; and that of Count *Horatio Sizzo*, who was Kill'd at *Vienna* in the last Siege. In this Church are also the Chappels of *St. Anthony* and *St. Felix*, both very well worth an Ingenious Man's Observation. The Church of *St. Justina*, is also a very fine one; and the Monastery is very Large and Noble. The Hall of the Town-House is very large, but Dark, being 250 Foot Long, and 56 Broad; and is of the Figure of a Rhomboides; but Supported by no Pillars. *Pete Aponus*, who was the Architect, and a Famous Necromancer, says *Cardan*, Adorn'd the Roof with Constellations, and Astronomical Figures, which are still to be seen. There is a Monument Erected in the Palace of Justice in Honour of *Tit. Livius* the famous Roman Historian, who was Born in this Place for in the year 1413. there was found in the Gardens of *St. Justina*, a Coffin of Lead, which they presently concluded to be that of *T. Livius*; and supposing what was within it in a Coffin of Wood, the most considerable Persons of the City carried it to *St. Justina's* Church, where it lay till the year 1447 when it was remov'd to the aforesaid Palace, and the Monument Erected; to which they added an Inscription, which was found near the Place where the Temple of Concord stood; and Placed over the Inscription a Head of Marble, which had been in the Possession of a Gentleman of *Padua*, thought to be that of *Lentulus Marcellinus*. 'Tis true, both Head and Inscription are old, but by a late Dissertation it appears, that this Inscription did not belong to the Famous Historian; but to one *T. Livius*, a Freed Man of one of the Historians Daughters. There are in this City a great many knowing Antiquaries, and several Cabinets of Curiosities. The University is in a very mean condition; for of Ten Colleges there are Nine employ'd to other uses; but that which remains is a fine Building. This University was Founded, or (as some say) Repair'd and Re-establish'd by the Emperor *Frederick*, Ann. 1222. The City was taken by the Emperor *Maximilian* 1509, but recovered not long after.

*Este*, *Atesie*, Anciently a Town in *Gallia Transpadana*, according to *Pliny* and *Tacitus*, upon the River *Bachiglione*, near the Hills call'd *Monti di Padua*; about 12 Miles to the South of *Padua*, 5 to *Monfalcone*, and 30 from *Venice* to the South-west. It was formerly a Bishops Seat under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*; and from hence the Princes of *Este* had their Name, in whose Possession the Dutchy of *Ferrara* was for a long time, as now *Modena* is.

The Country call'd *PERONFSE*. *Veronensis Ager*, is Bounded with the County of *Tirol* in *Germany* on the North, the *Vicentino* and *Paduano* on the East, the Dutchy of *Mantua* on the South, and the *Bresciano*, and the *Lago di Garda* on the West: and was Anciently Inhabited by a Part of the *Cenamani*. It lies South-East and North-West, for the Space of 56 Miles; and the Towns of any note in it are,

<i>Verona</i> .	}	<i>Garda</i> .
<i>Palchiara</i> .		<i>Chiuse</i> .
<i>St. Benifacio</i> .		<i>Legnago</i> .

*Verona*,



*Verona*. *Verona*, anciently a City of the *Cenomani*, in *Gallia Transpadana*, according to *Strabo*, *Livy* and *Ptolemy*; in *Rhetia*, according to *Pliny*, was built by the *Euganei* and *Rheti*, and afterwards possess'd by the *Cenomani*. It has always been a famous City in many respects. The Situation of it is admirable, the Air good, and the City large: And affords a ravishing Prospect from any neighbouring Eminency. It is divided into two Parts by the *Adige*, over which there are Four stately Stone Bridges, which make the Communication between these Parts. The Castles of *St. Felix* and *St. Peter*, command the Town, but the other Fortifications of this Place are much neglected, and very irregular. The Amphitheatre in *Verona* is a most surprising piece of Antiquity: The outward Wall is almost destroy'd, but Care has been taken to repair and preserve the Benches, whereof there are 44. The longest Diameter of the *Arena* is 233 French Feet, and the shortest or breadth 136. Every Step is one Foot 3 Inches of the same Measure, and about 2½ Foot broad. It is commonly believ'd that *Augustus* built it, tho' some attribute it to the Emperor *Maximin*. The Cathedral is a little dark Church; in which is to be seen the Monument of Pope *Lucius III.* who, as well as his Predecessor *Alexander the III.* had great Broils with *Frederick Barbarossa*. The Church of *St. Zeno* is said to be built by *Peppin*, Son of *Charlemain*, and King of *Italy*; who, as some believe, lies Buried here. Near the Church of *St. Maria Antica*, there are several Magnificent Tombs of the *Scaligers*, who were Princes of *Verona*, before that City belong'd to the Republick of *Venice*. The Cabinet of Count *Miscardo* is a rare and wonderful Collection of Pictures, Books, Rings, Animals, Plants, Monstrous Productions of Nature, and curious Works of all Fashions; but especially, a vast Number of old Instruments and Urinals, which were used in the Pagan Sacrifices; above Five Thousand of all Sorts of Metals, great variety of Coins, some whereof are of Leather, and also a great Collection of Shells, Tossils, Lamps, Urns, and a Thousand other Things too many to be inserted here.

This City has been Subject to the Republick of *Venice* since the Year, 1403. and in an old Inscription is call'd *Colonia Augusta*. It was the Birth-place of the Poet *Catullus*: And was taken by the Emperor *Maximilian* in the Year, 1509. but restor'd in the Year, 1516. to the Venerians. It is an Episcopal See, under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*: And is distant 35 Miles from *Trento* or *Trente* to the South, 22 from *Mantua*, 40 from *Brescia* to the East, and 15 from *Paschiera* to the North-West.

*Chiufa*, *Veruca*, which *Cassiodorus* makes mention of as a Fortrefs of *Rhetia*, stands upon the River *Adage*, at the Foot of a high Rock, with a Passage leading to it, cut out of the same Rock, on the other side whereof is a *Precipice*, the bottom whereof is wash'd by the River *Adage*. *Cluverius* thinks that *Veruca* is rather the Name of a Fort, call'd *il Castello della Pietra*, in the County of *Tirol*, belonging to the House of *Austria*, about 4 Miles from *Rovereid* or *Rovere* to the North, and 9 from *Trente*.

*Legnago*, *Leonicum*, stands upon the *Adige*, about 27 Miles from *Verona*, and as many from *Ferrara*: And is improperly taken by some for *Linicum*.

The Country call'd *il VICENTINO*, *Vicentinus Ager*, is bounded with the County of *Tirol* on the North, the *Marca di Trevigiana* on the East, the

*Veronese* on the West, and the *Paduano* on the South and partly on the East. The Towns of Note are *Vicenza* and *Lonigo*.

*Vicenza*, *Vicentia*, anciently a City in *Gallia Cisalpina* according to *Tacitus*, by *Ptolemy* call'd *Vicenta*, and *Vicetia* by *Pliny*, stands at the Confluence of the Rivers *Bachiglione* and *Rerone*, 18 Miles from *Padua* to the West, 30 from *Verona*, and as many from *Feltri* to the South. It is about half as big as *Verona*, and encompass'd only by old Walls; and the two or three little Rivers which meet here tho' they are very useful, yet are not Navigable till they all meet. There are some pretty good Churches in it; but these, as well as other Things that are to be seen here, do not at all deserve the lofty Names the Inhabitants give them. The Church call'd the *Coronata* is well Pav'd and Wainscoted: That of the Nuns of *St. Catherine* hath three fine Altars. The Town-House is very indifferent, but they boast of it as a rare Piece. There are some Ruins of an ancient Amphitheatre at *Vicenza*; and the Theatre in the Academy of the Olympicks is the Work of the famous *Palladio*. The Triumphal-Arch without the Gates, at the Entrance of the Plain, which is call'd the *Field of Mars*, is in Imitation of the ancient way of Building, by the same *Palladio*. This City was taken by the Emperor *Maximilian* in the Year, 1509. but restor'd by a Treaty of Peace in 1516. and hath continued ever since under the Republick of *Venice*. It is an Episcopal See under the Patriarch of *Aquileia*.

The Country of *BRESCIANO*, *Brixianus Ager*, which was formerly a part of the Dutchy of *Milan*, but subject to the Republick of *Venice* about 200 Years, is bounded on the North with the *Valtelline* and the County of *Tirol*, by the *Cremonese* on the South, the *Veronese* on the East, and the *Bergomasco* on the West: And was anciently Inhabited by a part of the *Cenomani* and *Euganei*. The Towns of any Note in it are,

<i>Brescia.</i>	} <i>Recca d' Anso.</i>
<i>Asala.</i>	
<i>Montebiaro.</i>	
<i>Salo.</i>	
<i>Iseo.</i>	
	} <i>Ponte Vigo.</i>
	} <i>Orci Nuovi.</i>
	} <i>Orci Vecchi.</i>

*Brescia*, *Brixia*, anciently a City and Colony of *Gallia Transpadana*, and Metropolis of the *Cenomani*, according to *Strabo* and *Pliny*, and at present a well Inhabited Town, and of considerable Traffick, stands on the River *Mela*, 15 Miles from the Lake of *Garda* to the West, almost as much from that of *Iseo* to the East, 30 from *Mantua* to the West, near as much from *Bergamo*, and about 50 from *Milan*. It is a fortified Place with a Cittadel upon an adjacent Rock. It is said to have been built by the *Insubres* or by the *Senones*, together with *Como* and *Bergamo*. It is a Bishop's Seat, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Milan*. The Palace of Justice in this City is a great and fair Building of a certain hard Stone resembling Marble. Opposite to this Palace there is a Portico 500 Paces long, almost quite fill'd with Armourer's Shops. The Fire-Arms that are made here being famous over all *Italy*. In the Cathedral they preserve with great Veneration that which they call *Constantine's Oriflame*; which they say is a Blew Cross of an unknown Matter; but it, is never fully shown, and so we cannot describe it; only this much is certain, that this cannot be the Cross which appear'd to *Constantine* when he Fought against



against *Maxentius*, since that was only a Figure in the Air, and not a palpable Substance.

*Salò*, *Salodium*, stands on the West side of the Lake *Garda*, between *Brescia* and *Trente*, 20 from the former, and 30 from the latter, and 30 also from *Verona* to the West.

*Orci Nuvvi*, *O di Nuvvi*, is a place of considerable Strength, being upon the Confines of the Duchy of *Milan*, near the River *Oglio*.

The Country call'd *BERGAMOSCO*, *Bergomense Territorium*, anciently a part of *Gallia Transpadana*, inhabited by the *Orobii*, formerly belong'd to the Duchy of *Milan*, but in the Year, 1428. it revolted to the Venetians, who still retain the Possession of it. It is bounded on the North with the *Valtellina*, on the East by the *Bresciano*, on the South and West by the Duchy of *Milan*, and contains these Towns,

<i>Bergomo.</i>	} {	<i>Romano.</i>
<i>Martinengo.</i>		<i>Calepio.</i>
<i>Clusano.</i>		

*Bergomo*, *Bergomum*, anciently a City in *Gallia Transpadana*, inhabited by the *Orobii Commani*, is at present a Strong Town, and a Place of considerable Trade, seated on a little Hill at the foot of the *Alpi*. Besides its Fortifications, which are well lin'd, and in good Repair, it has a Citadel with some Forts and advanc'd Works, which defend the rising Grounds that Command it. It has also five Suburbs, every one of which is worth a little Town. In the Cathedral Church is to be seen the Tomb of the brave *Birch Cigione*, Commander of the Venetian Forces against *Milan*, and who was the first General who brought Cannons into the Field. *Ambrosius Calepinus*, who was Born at *Calepio*, a Village near this Place, lies inter'd at the *Augustin's*. The *Bergomese* Jargon is reckon'd so ridiculous, that the Italian Buffoons affect to imitate it; but that which makes them more disagreeable is the Wens or Lumps on their Throats, which disfigure their Countenances. These are natural to 'em, and they think it an Ornament rather than a Blemish. This City was formerly Subject to the Duke of *Milan*, but after the Death of Duke *Philip*, the Inhabitants came under the Venetian Jurisdiction. *Lewis XII.* King of *France*, having beat the Venetian Army in the Battle of *Agnadell*, took *Bergomo*, but restor'd it to that Republick six Years after, by a Treaty of Peace, *An.* 1516. It is an Episcopal See under the Arch-bishop of *Milan*; and stands between the River *Serio* to the East, and that of *Brembo* to the West; 30 Miles from *Brescia* to the West, as many from *Milan*, and 30 also from *Cemo*.

*Calepio*, *Calepium*, is a little Town on the River *Oglio*, near the Confines of the *Bresciano*, about 12 Miles from *Bergomo* to the East, and 3 from the Lake of *Iseo*. It gives name to the adjacent Valley, and was the Birth-place of that learn'd Man *Ambrosius Calepinus*.

The Country call'd *CREMASCO*, *Cremenfis Ager*, owes its Name to the Chief Town of it, and is surrounded by the Territories of the Duke of *Milan*. It is but of small Extent; but very Fertile, and well Watered. It formerly belonged to the Duke of *Milan*, but is now subject to the Venetians. The only Place of any Note in it is,

*Crema*, *Crema*, a Fortified Town on the River *Serio*, 9 Miles from *Lodi Vecchio* to the North-West, 24 from *Brescia*, 20 from *Piacenza*, and 24 from

*Bergomo* to the South. It was formerly call'd *Diuguntorum*, according to *Cluverius*, and was erected into a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Bulgaria*, in the Year, 1579.

### The Venetian Dominions on the Coast of Dalmatia.

*Dalmatia*, so call'd either from *Delmius* or *Delminium*, a City in *Illyricum*, was anciently the Eastern Part of *Illyricum proprium*. The *Dalmatiani* having asserted their Liberty in the Reign of *Gentius* King of *Illyricum*, and having twenty Cities under their Jurisdiction, gave the Country the Name of *Dalmatia*: And having afterwards added sixty Towns more to their former Dominions, and extended their Conquests as far as to the Sea Shoar, began to make Incursions into the Territories of the *Tragurini* and *Egetini*; which was the Ground of the first *Dalmatian* War; at which Time the *Romans* reduced that Country into a Province. But afterwards, the *Dalmatians* having acquir'd the Western Part of the Country from the *Liburni*; as they did *Illyricum proprium* from the *Romans*, extended their Dominions all along between the Rivers *Titius* (now *il Kerk*) and *Drilo* (now *la Drino*) *Liburnia* being then included in *Dalmatia*. After the declining State of the Roman Empire its Limits were further extended: And a long time after it came to be confin'd within much narrower Bounds, so that it bordered with *Pannonia Savia* on the North, the *Upper Moesia* on the East, *Istria* on the West, and the *Adriatick* or *Illyrian* Sea and *Macedonia* on the South. It was otherwise divided into *Dalmatia on the Coast*, and *Inland Dalmatia*: And of all the Provinces of the Western *Illyricum*, *Dalmatia* alone retain'd its ancient Name; till it fell into the Hands of the *Slavi*, and then it was divided into *Croatia*, *Servia*, and *Dalmatia*. The *Slavi* (People who came from the *Palus Meotis*) were subdued by the *Hungarians*; from whom the Turks at last took the Inland Country of *Dalmatia*, and the Venetians possess'd themselves of a great part of the Sea-Coast, and are now Masters of these Places following.

*Zara*, *Jadera*, anciently a Colony and City in *Illyricum*, according to *Pliny*, and Metropolis of *Liburnia*, stands on the *Adriatick* Sea, or rather is almost quite surrounded with it, and join'd to the Continent by a Bridg. It formerly belong'd to the Kingdom of *Hungary*, till the Year, 1409. that King *Ladislaus* Sold it, together with *Novigrad* and some other Places, to the Venetians, for 100000 Ducats, as *Joh. Lucius* relates. It is now the Metropolis of *Dalmatia*, and the Seat of an Archbishop; and defended by a strong Castle. It stands in the Latitude of 44. 30. and is distant 180 Miles from *Venice* to the East, 100 from *Pola* in *Istria*, 40 from *Sebenico* to the North-West, and 116 from *Ancona* to the North-East; and gives a Name to the adjacent Country, vulgarly call'd *il Contado di Zara*. Near this Place lies *Zara Vecchio*, where the Ruins of the ancient *Jadera* are still to be seen.

*Nona*, *Enona*, or *Encna*, according to *Pliny*, stands on the *Adriatick* Sea, almost encompass'd with the Water, and well Fortified. It is no very large Town, but an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Zara*. It stands over against the Island of *Pago*, from which it is divided by a Streight four Miles broad, about 10 Miles from *Zara*, and 35 from *Segna* or *Zeng*.



*Spalato*, *Spalaturn*, and *Aspalathum* by *Constantinus Porphyrogenitus*, is a pretty large and strong Town, with a very safe and large Harbour; and was anciently Honoured with the Palace of the Roman Emperor *Diocletian*, to which it is said to owe its Name. It owes its Rise to the Ruins of *Salona*, an ancient Town four Miles to the North of it; in whose place it was made the Seat of an Archbishop. It has belong'd to the Venetians since the Year, 1420. notwithstanding several fruitless Attempts made by the Turks to make themselves Masters of it. It is distant 10 Miles from *Traw* to the East, 35 from *Schenico*, and 15 from *Almissa*.

*Schenico*, *Schenicum*, or *Sibenicum* (which some inconsiderately take for the ancient *Sicum*, the Ruins of which are to be seen on the Coast between *Traw* and those of *Salona*) is a fortified Town upon the Adriatick Sea, about 3 Miles from *Zara* to the East, 23 from *Traw* to the North-West, and 300 from *Venice* to the East. It has been under the Venetians Jurisdiction since the Year, 1412. and Pope *Boniface* the VIII. erected it into a Bishoprick.

*Traw*, *Tragurium*, which *Strabo* and *Pliny* make mention of as a Town in *Dalmatia*, is now a little but pretty strong Town, built upon a small Island, and join'd to the Continent by a Bridge, over against the Island of *Bua*, to which a Bridge likewise joins it, about 70 Miles from *Zara*, 12 from *Salona*, and as many from *Spalato*. It is a Bishop's See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Spalato*, and has belong'd to the Venetians since the Year, 1420.

*Cliffa*, *Cliffa*, anciently call'd *Andervium*, as *Joh. Lucius* of *Traw* relates, is a strong Castle in *Dalmatia*, built on a Rock, about 6 Miles from the Shoar, as many from *Spalato* to the North, and 4 from the Ruins of *Salona*. It formerly belong'd to the Turks, but was taken by the Venetians in the Year, 1648. and confirm'd them, together with a little part of the adjacent Country by the Treaty of Peace at *Candia*.

*Cattaro*, *Cattara*, stands on a Gulf of the same Name, and is defended by a strong Castle built on a Neighbouring Hill. It, together with 17 little Villages, has been subject to the Republick of *Venice* since the Year, 1420. and is the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Bari*, but formerly to *Regium*. *Dominicus Niger* takes this Place for the ancient *Aferivium* or *Aferium*, mentioned by *Pliny* and *Ptolemy*, others think that Name belongs rather to *Città-Nova*, on the same Gulf; and some to *Melata Grande*, a Fortrefs upon the Coast of the Adriatick.

The Island of *CHERSO*, which *Pliny* calls *Crex*, *Ptolemy* *Crepsa*, is one of the *Alsyrtides*, in the *Gulfo di Carnero*, lies between *Istria* and *Morlachia*, and is join'd by a Bridge to the Island *O'ero*, whereof formerly it was a part. Upon this Island stands a Town of the same Name, about 12 Miles from *Fiume* to the South, and as many from *Fianina* to the East.

The Island of *OSERA*, which *Mela* calls *Alforus*, *Ptolemy* *Apforus*, and *Pliny* *Alsyrtium*, is also one of the *Alsyrtides*, according to *Strabo*, and separated by a small Streight from *Cherso*, to which it is join'd by a Bridge; having upon it a Town of the same Name, dignified with the Residence and Title of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Zara*. It lies 30 Miles from *Senga* in *Morlachia* to the South-West.

The Island of *Vegia* or *Veglia*, *Curia*, lies in the *Gulfo di Carnero*, a few Miles off the Coast of *Liturnia* or *Morlachia*, which lies to the East of it, as

that of *Alforus* does to the West, and *Arbe* to the South: And is about 55 Miles in Circumference. The Town of the same Name (*Curia*) stands upon the West Side of the Island, and has the advantage of a good Harbour, and a Castle to defend it. It is about 16 Miles from *O'ero* to the East, and as many from *Senga*: It is an Episcopal See, and has been under the Venetian Jurisdiction since the Year, 1430.

The Island of *Arbe*, *Arba*, lies in the *Gulfo di Carnero*, and is said to be 15 Miles East and West, and about 4 from the Coast of *Liturnia*. The Town of the same Name stands on the South side of it, and is dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Zara*. It stands over against *Senga*, from which it is 13 Miles distant.

The Island of *Pago* or *Giffa*, lies on the West of *Arbe*, along the Coast of *Morlachia* also, from which it is divided by a Streight 3 Miles broad. It is reckon'd 16 Miles long, and 46 in compass: And lies between the Island *Arbe* to the North-West and the Town of *Nena*, which is distant 4 Miles from it.

The Island of *la Bragga*, *Brattia* or *Brachia*, mentioned by *Pliny* and *Antoninus*, lies off the Coast of *Dalmatia*, between *Spalato* to the West and *Narenta* to the East, not far from *Traw* and the Isle of *Legina*, which lies on the South of it.

### *The Venetian Dominions in the Ionian and Aegean Seas*

*Cefalonia*, *Cephalenia*, an Island in the *Ionian Sea*, between that of *Leucada* or *St. Maura* on the North, and *Zante* on the South, 12 Miles from the former, and 20 from the other, and not above 24 Miles from the West Coast of the *Morea*. It has been by some call'd *Samos*, *Melana*, *Teleboa* and *Tapsus*, and is 90 Miles in Compass. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Corfu*, and hath been Subject to the State of *Venice* these several Ages; and the Inhabitants observe the Rites of the Greek Church. There were formerly Four considerable Towns in it; but now only a few Villages, with a Fort, call'd *Cefalonia*, built on a Hill, about 6 Miles from which lies the Port of *Argostoli*, on the South side of the Island. It is said to have its Name from *Cephalus* an Athenian: And *Hemer* reckons the *Cefalonians* among those who followed *Ulysses* in his Trojan Expedition. *Antoninus*, *Cicero's* Colleague in the Consulate was banish'd to this Island: And began to Build a City, but never finish'd it.

The Island of *Corfu*, *Coreyra*, mentioned by *Pliny* and *Strabo*, and call'd *Pheacia* by the Poets, lies off the Coast of *Epirus*, the North part not being above 4 Miles from the Continent, extended 50 Miles in length, from North to South, and is 120 in Compass, between *Monte della Chimera*, (*Montes Acrocrannii*) to the North, and the Island of *Leucada* to the South, from which it is 150 Miles distant, and 85 from *Capo di Santa Maria di Luce* (*Fapygium Promontorium*) to the South-East. It has been under the Venetian Jurisdiction, since the Year, 1386. that the *Coreyreans* willingly offered themselves Subjects to that Republick; and in the Year, 1401. their Title was fully confirm'd, by *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*, for 30000 Ducats. The *Corinthians* are said to have transplanted a Colony hither in the Reign of *Numa*. It was anciently Famous for its Naval Force, and in it was *Cassiope* (now *Sant Maria di Cassiopo*) where stood the Temple of *Jupiter*.

The



The Town of *Cerigo*, *Cerigia* *Urbs*, stands on that side of the Island that lies opposite to *Epirus*, from which it is distant above 12 Miles to the West.

The Island of *Sanctus*, *Sanctus Insula*, lies in the *Ionian Sea*, about 18 Miles from the *Cape Teneze* in the *Morea*, to the West, and 12 from *Cephalonia* to the South: And the Streight betwixt these Two is call'd the *Canal of Sanctus*. It is divided into three Parts, viz. *la Magna*, *il Picciola*, and *la Piazzola*; and contains near 100 Miles in compass, and produces great store of delicious Wines, both *Muscata* and other Sorts. But since *Italy* is sufficiently furnish'd with these Commodities, the Inhabitants dry most of their Grapes, and send them to *England* and *Holland*.

The City of *Sanctus* stands on the East part of the Island, with the Harbour, are commanded by a very strong Castle, where the *Proveditor*, who is always Chosen out of the Principal Nobility of *Venice*, resides. The Inhabitants are Rich, and there are several Gentlemen among them. Those of the Greek Church abound most in this Place; but the *Venetians* have built several Churches for the use of those of the Roman Faith; and do what they can to establish that Religion, in opposition to that of the Greeks. Here, as at *Venice*, those that come from the *Levant* are not suffered to go ashore till they have performed their *Quarantine*.

*Mitsos* is fully describ'd in the Account of *Turkey* in

*Europe*, and therefore we shall say nothing of it here.

The Island of *Cerigo*, *Cithera*, anciently (according to *Pliny*) call'd *Porphyris*, and *Porphyrysa* by *Aristotle*, by others *Scythera*, is the farthest West Island in the *Aegean Sea*, or *Archipelago*; and lies about eight Miles from the *Cape Maio* in the *Morea*, to the South. It has been subject to the *Venetians*, since the Lords of the *Morea* gave it them: And is reckoned to be about 60 Miles in compass. It is a Mountainous Country, but has a good Harbour towards the South Part of it: And is distant 15 Miles from the Island (or rather Rock) call'd *Cecerigo*, and 35 from the nearest part of the Island of *Candia*, to the North-West. There is a Bishop of the Greek Church in it.

The Island of *Tinos*, *Tenos*, one of the *Cyclades* (according to *Ptolemy*.) and by *Aristotle* call'd *Hydrussa*, for its great Plenty of Water (as *Pliny* relates). It is said to be about 35 Miles in compass: And is distant 7 Miles from *Andros*, 18 from *Siro*, 12 to the North of *Mycone*, and as many from *Delos*. It has been subject to the Republick of *Venice* about 30 Years: And there is at present a Bishop of the Latin Church in it.

*Kimeli*, or *Agencara*, *Cimonis*, is described in our Account of *Turkey* in *Europe*; whither we must refer the Reader for a full Account of the *Morea*, with all the remarkable Places and Things in and about it.

## CHAP. X.

### *The Republick of Lucca: Lucensis Ditio.*

THIS little State lies on the Coast of the Mediterranean Sea, between the *Genuefe* on the West, *Medena* on the North, and the Dominions of the Great Duke of *Tuscany* on the East; is reckon'd to be about 31 Miles long, and 24 broad. It is a Fief of the Empire, and under its Protection. Its Government is purely Aristocratical, the Sovereignty being lodg'd in the Hands of 240 Nobles, who are divided into two Bodies; which succeed one another every six Months, with the *Gonfalonier*, or Standard-bearer, at their Head. This *Gonfalonier*, is their Chief Magistrate, and is assisted by nine Counsellors, call'd *Anziani*; but he enjoys the Supream Dignity but two Months, during which time he has the Title of a Prince, and so styl'd his Excellency; but all the Advantage he gets by it, is to have his Table maintain'd at the Publick Charge: And after an Interval of six Years he is capable of being chosen again. The Publick Revenues are said to be about 100000 Crowns. How far this may go towards maintaining an Army, or supporting the Dignity of a free State; I will not determine: Some say they can raise, upon occasion, 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, and others screw it up to 30000 in all; but that is to be understood, I suppose, in Cases of great Danger and Necessity, when they put all in Arms that are able to carry them.

The City of *Lucca*, *Luca*, (which is said to have been built by the *Tuscans*, and owes its Name to *Lucumo* one of their Kings) stands in the midst of a fertile Plain about 15 or 20 Miles long, and is

surrounded with very rich and well-inhabited Hills, near the River *Serchio*, about 13 Miles from the Shoar of the *Tuscan Sea* to the East, 10 from *Pisa* to the North, 45 from *Florence* to the West, 60 from *Siena*, and 30 from *Luna*. It gives Name to the adjacent Country call'd *il Lucchese*, and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Pisa*; from whose Jurisdiction it is now exempted. This City is not very large, since one may walk round the Ramparts in an Hour. The Fortifications are pretty regular and well lin'd, but their Foundations are almost level with the Plain. The Things most remarkable in this Place, are, the Palace of the Republick, where the *Gonfalonier* Lodges with his nine Counsellors: The Arsenal, where there is a considerable quantity of Arms for so small a State, and kept in very good Order. The Cathedral, Dedicated to Saint *Martin*, in which is the Chapel of the *Volto Santo*, where the famous Crucifix is kept, that the Angels finish'd after *Nicodemus* had for a long time in vain endeavour'd to do it. The Church of St. *Fredian*, in which there is a Tomb-stone, with this Inscription, *Hic jacet Corpus Sancti Riccardi Regis Anglie. Hinc lies the Body of St. Richard King of England*; but it is hard to tell who this Royal Saint should be, since it is very well known that all the Kings of *England* of that Name died and were Buried elsewhere. This is still a populous City; but several Noble Families, as, the *Catendrini*, *Burlamachi*, *Turresini*, *Micheli*, *Minsteli* and *Diedari*, and several others remov'd from this Place to *Geneva*, about the Time of the Reformation.



## C H A P. XIV.

*The Dominions of the Great Duke of Tuscany.*

**I**T is certain, that the Bounds of the Ancient *Hetruria*, were much larger than those of the Modern *Tuscany*, this being but a part of that *Hetruria* or *Etruria*, was Bounded on the North and East, with the *Apennine* Mountains, and the River *Tyber* on the West, and South with the *Tyrrhenian* (now *Tuscan*) Sea, from the River *Magra*, to the Mouth of the *Tyber*; but the Modern *Tuscany*, which the Italians call *Toscana*, comprehending the greater part of the Ancient *Hetruria*, is Bounded (according to *Baudrand*) with the *Appennines* on the North, on the West and South with the River *Magra*, and the *Tuscan* Sea, on the East with the Rivers *Tyber* and *Arno*: and comprehends the Territories of *Florence*, call'd *il Fiorentino*, those of *Siena*, call'd *il Senese*, of *Pisa*, call'd *il Pisano*, and *il Luca*, call'd *Luchese*, (now a free and separate State) with several other Countries and Places belonging to the Duke of *Modena*, the State of *Genova*, and the King of *Spain*.

The Dominions of the great Duke of *Tuscany*, are Bounded on the North and East with the Ecclesiastical State, on the South with the *Tuscan* Sea, on the West with the Territories of *Lucca*, and *Modena*. It is a Pleasant and Fruitful Country, producing abundance of Olives, Citrons, Oranges, Safron, Flax, and Wooll, and in several Places there are Mineral Waters, which effectually cure many dangerous Distempers. The Manufactures also of Serges, Woollen-Cloth, Silks, Tapestries, Gilded-Leather, Earthen Vessels and Perfumes, contribute much to its Riches.

That the Reader may the more distinctly conceive the Constitution and Government of this Dukedom, it will not be amiss to refresh his Memory with some hints of its Rise and encrease; beginning from the very original of the City of *Florence*, and tracing it down to the present time. The City of *Florence*, (as *Machiavel* relates) was begun by the Merchants of *Fiesole*, (*Fesula*) and Augmented by Colonies sent thither from *Rome*; for those Merchants finding it convenient for People to come to them, either to Buy from them, or Sell to them, by reason their Town stood on the Top of a Hill, appointed a place for them in the Plain, betwixt the Foot of the Mountains, and the River *Arno*, so that what was at first but Store-houses for keeping Commodities, became afterwards a Town, and a place of Habitation. After the Civil Wars in *Rome*, first betwixt *Marius* and *Silla*, then betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*; afterwards betwixt the Murderers of *Cæsar*, and the Revengers of his Death; by *Silla* first, and then by *Cæsar Augustus*, *M. Antonius*, and *M. Lepidus*, who Revenged the Assassination, and divided the Empire, Colonies were sent to *Fiesole*; all or most of whom settled in the afore said Plain, where the Town was already begun; which did so mightily enlarge its Bounds, and encrease the number of its Inhabitants, that it justly might claim a place among the Cities of *Italy*. It was at first called *Arnina*, afterwards *Florentia*; but whatever might be the Original of that Name, whether from one *Florinus* the Chief Man of the Colony, or the Flourishing State of this Infant City, this is certain, that it was Founded under the Emperors of *Rome*, being mentioned in the History of the first Em-

perors: That when the Barbarians made Inroads into, and Ravag'd the Empire, *Totila*, King of the *Ostrogots*, Demolish'd *Florence*. That 250 years after it was Rebuilt by *Charles* the Great, from whose time till the year 1215, it followed the Fortune of the rest of *Italy*, and was subject to those that commanded; first to the Successors of *Charles*, afterwards to the *Berengarii*, and last of all to the Emperors of *Germany*. In those days it was not in the Florentines power to extend the Bounds of their Dominions, by reason they were subject to a Foreign Power, unless in the time of an *Inter-regnum*, between the Death of one Emperor, and the Creation of another, when all the Cities were free; as in the year 1010. when they took *Fiesole*, when the Inhabitants were employed about celebrating their Festival of *St. Romulus*. But afterwards the Popes assuming more Power, and the Emperors losing what they formerly had, the Cities began to disregard their Princes, and *Italy* seem'd divided betwixt the Emperors and the Popes. The Florentines in the mean time submitting themselves to the Conquerors, kept themselves quiet and intire, till the year 1215. After which, they fell into Divisions, and Civil Commotions were never long satisfied with any form of Government, but always contriving new Models; which bred infinite Confusion in the State, (a thing unavoidable in a Society, where Restless and Turbulent Spirits are suffer'd to Live) and Animosities among the People. Sometimes the Nobles fell out among themselves; sometimes these with the Citizens, and sometimes the Richest with the Inferior sort. In all which unreasonable Jars, no sooner was any Faction uppermost, than it split and divided again; and the true and natural effect of all this was, Murder, Banishment, and Dispersion of Families, where oftentimes the Wisest and best deserving had the hardest Fate, whilst those of no worth enjoyed what was only due to true Merit; which often happens where Passion prevails over Reason, or the unthinking Multitude meddles in the Affairs of State. Notwithstanding all those Divisions, and the innumerable Changes in their Form of Government, the State of *Florence* preserv'd it self, but was certainly depriv'd of vast Advantages it might have reap'd, had it been Managed by Wise and constant Politicks. Had the Florentines been so happy, after they shook off the Emperors Yoke, to assume such a form of Government, as would have preserved themselves in Unity; it is highly probable, that in process of time they might have vey'd in Riches and Power, with almost any State, ancient or Modern: as we may see in this one Instance. For after they had expell'd the *Ghibelins*, who were so numerous as to fill all *Tuscany* and *Lombardy*, the *Guelfs* and such as staid behind, in the expedition against *Arezzo*, were able to draw out of their own Citizens 12000 Foot, and 1200 Horse. And in the War against *Philippo Visconti*, Duke of *Milan*, being to try their Fortune rather with their Purfes than their Swords, in the space of 5 years that the War lasted, the Florentines expended 5 Millions, and 3 hundred thousand Florins; and after all that, when the War was at an end, they March'd out with an Army, and



Besieg'd *Lucca*. Thus the Florentines continu'd in a free State, till about the year 1410. that *John de Medicis*, (whose Posterity are now Dukes of *Florence*) became so Rich, and acquir'd such Repute among them, by defending the People against the Nobles, that almost the Sovereignty of the City was put into his Hands. His Son *Cosmo* Reform'd the State, and enlarg'd its Dominions, by the addition of *Casertina*, and several other Places. He Died in the year 1461. and left the Management of Publick Affairs to his Son *Peter*; who transmitted it to his Sons *Lorenzo* and *Julian*; but the People growing jealous of their Liberty, and fearing lest the Sovereignty should become Hereditary to this Family, put the Administration of the Government into the hands of that of the *Soderani*, whom they Entrusted with it, knowing how fickle the Multitude was, devolved all upon the 2 young Gentlemen: against whom the *Pazzi* conspiring, kill'd *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* Escap'd; and afterwards went to *Naples*, where he enter'd into a perpetual League with King *Frederick*. After his Death his Son *Peter* fell in Disgrace with the *Florentines*, and was Banish'd with his whole Family, but was Restor'd by his Kinsman Pope *Leo* the 10th. After whose Death they were again Banish'd; but Pope *Clement* 7. Son to the aforesaid *Julian*, prevail'd with *Charles* the 5th to Besiege the City, which yielded after two years Resistance. The Emperor then gave it to *Alexander de Medicis*, *Peter's* Grandchild, by his Son *Lorenzo*, Ann. 1531. but he was Murder'd by his Cousin *Lorenzo de Medicis*, who fled to *Venice*. After which the Family of *Medicis* sent to the Country for *Cosmo*, (who was then but 18 years old) to be their Prince, being next Heir to the Family, according to the entail made by the Emperor *Charles*. He was Crown'd with the Title of Great Duke of *Tuscany*, in the Court of *Rome*, by Pope *Pius* the 5th, Ann. 1570. By this the Reader may see how this State began, and advanc'd, and what the nature of its Government was, and how much different from what it is at present. The Duke of *Tuscany* is a Rich and Powerful Prince: his ordinary Revenue (as is generally reported) is about 1500000 Crowns, and some raise it to 2000000. and he is said to have in his Treasury 20000000 pieces of Gold, besides Jewels and other things of great Value. Which if it is so, 'tis no hard matter for him to Raise 40000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, and to put to Sea 12 Gallies upon occasion, 2 Galleasses, and 20 Ships of War.

We have already told what the Bounds of the ancient *Etruria* was, and how different that was from the Modern *Tuscany*, whose Bounds are of a much narrower compass, and also what share of *Tuscany*, in a larger Sense, belongs to the great Duke; whose Dominions are commonly divided into 3 parts, as you may see in the following Table.

TUSCANY Divided into 3 Parts.

I.

The Territories of Florence.	{	Florence.	{	Borgo S. Sepulchro.
		Pistoia.		Empoli.
		Prato.		Arezzo.
		Cortona.		Fiesoli.
		Scarpazia.		

II.

The Territories of Pisa.	{	Pisa.	{	Volterra.
		Leghorn.		Campiglia.

III.

The Territories of Siena.	{	Siena.	{	Monte Pulciano.
		Pienza.		Chiusi.
		Mont-Alcino.		Massa.
		Piombino.		Grassetto.

{ *Orbitello.*  
 { *Port-Hercule.* } belonging to the Spaniards.

*FLORENCE*, which the Italians call *Fiorenza*. *Florentia*, (of whose original and increase we have spoke already, in our account of that State, whereof it is the Metropolis) stands upon the River *Arno*, in a delightful Plain, Surrounded with very fertile Hillocks, on all sides, except that which looks to *Pistoia*; which rise insensibly, and unite themselves to the Mountains. The vast number of Houses which cover both the Hills and the Interjacent Plain, make a most Ravishing Prospect, from any Eminence or Tower within the City. It is said by some Travellers, to be 7 Miles in compass, by others but 6. According to one of our latest Travellers, it is said to contain within its Walls 8800 Houses, 60000 Souls, (tho' others screw up their number to 70000) 22 Hospitals, 89 Convents, 84 Fraternities, 152 Churches, 18 Halls or Galleries, belonging to Merchants, 72 Courts of Justice, 6 Columns, 2 Pyramids, 4 Bridges, 7 Fountains, 17 Palaces or Courts, and 160 publick Statues. The Streets are all Pav'd with large pieces of gray Stones, call'd by the Inhabitants *Pietra forte*, brought from the Neighbouring Quarries: and the Palaces of *Florence* are reckon'd the handsomest Structures in *Italy*. The most remarkable things in this City are, the Celebrated Palace *Pitti*, where the great Duke Lodges, at the great Gate of which is a large Load-stone, said to weigh about 5000 Pound. In this Palace there are several Galleries, and other Rooms full of all manner of Rarities, both Ancient and Modern; the most precious and valuable of which are kept in the Octogonal Room, call'd the *Tribune*, Built by *Buontalenti*, which is 24 Foot in Diameter, and is cover'd with an Arch'd Dome. The Floor is Pav'd with several sorts of Marble, Artificially laid together, the Walls are Hung with common Velvet, Beautified with an infinite number of rare Ornaments, the Windows are of Crystal, and the inside of the Dome is overlaid with Mother of Pearl. Nothing is admitted into this Place, but what is of great Value, and exquisite Beauty, the Chief of which is that lovely and famous Diamond, which Weighs 139 Carrats and a half. There is also an Antique Head of *Julius Caesar* of one intire Torquoise, as big as an Egg, a Cupboard full of Vessels of Agat, *Lapis Lazuli*, &c. A large Table and Cabinet, wholly made up of Oriental Jasper, Chalcedony, Rubies, Topazes, and other precious Stones, admirably well Wrought: A Collection of rare Medals, and a prodigious number of Antique Pieces of Carv'd and Engrav'd Work Select Pictures and Statues. The Cathedral is a very large and stately Building, tho' several parts of it are of Gothick Architecture. It is all Cover'd over on the outside, and Pav'd within with Polish'd Marble, of several Colours. It is 490 Feet long, and 380 high, to the Top of the Cross on the Globe, and contains many pieces of fine Painting and Statues. *S. Laurence's* Church is very Large and Rich, and the famous Chappel, if Finish'd, is the finest Edifice of that nature in the World. The Library of *St. Laurence* is particularly Famous for its Manuscripts; among which there is one of *Virgil's* Works, of the Age of *Theodosius*, and a large Greek one, containing the Chirurgery of *Hippocrates*, *Galen Asclepiades*, and other Ancients. The Arsenal and Cittadel of *St. John Baptist*, is a Strong Place, and in very good order; but the 2 Forts of *Belvedere* and *St. Miniato*, are in a manner wholly neglected. This City as we



we said before was begun by the Merchants of *Fiesoli*, (then *Fesule*) enlarged by the Colonies sent thither by *Augustus*, *M. Antonius*, and *Lepidus*, Sack'd by *Tullia*, Rebuilt by *Charles* the Great, and again almost quite reduced to Ashes, (whether by Accident or done on purpose by a certain Nobleman is uncertain) in the Month of *July* 1344. made an Archbishoprick by Pope *Martin* the 5th 1420. and honour'd with a general Council, under Pope *Gregory* the 10th *Ann.* 1429. in which *St. James* Patriarch Emperor of *Constantinople* was present. It stands about 7 Miles from *Bononia* to the South, 60 from *Modena* to the South East, 90 from *Parma*, 104 from *Mantua* to the South East, 126 from *Venice* to the South, and 102 from *Rome* to the North-West.

*Pistoia*, which *Pliny* calls *Pistorium*, *Antoninus*, and *Pistoris*, stands in a Plain, on the Banks of the Rivulet *Stella*, in the midst between *Lucca* and *Florence*, about 30 Miles from each, 12 from the Borders of the Ecclesiastical State, and the *Bolognese*. It is at present (as Mr. *Misson* relates) a very Poor and Desolate City, quite destitute of Trade, and subsisting merely by the Fruitfulness of the Neighbouring Country. It is bigger than *Lucca*, and its Streets are large and freight, and the Remainders of its Ancient Beauty, are sufficient to convince one that it was formerly a fine City. *Buno* tells us that *Desiderius* King of the *Lombards* Built a Wall round it; and that the *Florentines* threw it down. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Florence*; and the People are great Adorers of *S. James*, to whom they say they are mightily beholden, and therefore preserve a great number of his Relicks.

*Prato*, *Pratum*, is a little Town in the midst between *Florence* to the East, and *Pistoia* to the West, and is the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Florence*. *Buno* calls it one of the four strongest Fortresses in *Italy*, and Built by *Frederick* the 2d. and says that here the Girdle of the Blessed Virgin is carefully preserved.

*Cortona*, *Cortona*, the name of a Colony, and one of the most Ancient Cities in *Hetruria*, according to *Livy* and *Ptolemy*, and call'd *Cortynium*, according to *Polibius*. *Buno* tells us, that it is a very Ancient Town, having been Built long before the Trojan War: and that the *Pelagi* took it from the *Umbri*, under the Conduct of their Leader *Tarco*, and made use of it as a Bridle upon the *Umbri*; and that *Herodotus* says, that in his days the *Crotonians* spoke the *Pelasgic* Language. It stands near the Confines of the Ecclesiastical State and *Ombria*, 4 Miles from the Lake of *Perugia* to the N. 45 S. E. from *Florence*, and 8 from the Lake of *Chiana* and 35 from *Siena* to the East: and was made a Bishoprick by Pope *John* XXII. under the Archbishop of *Florence*, in the year 1325. but it depends now immediately on the See of *Rome*.

*Bugio-San-Sepulchri*. *Burgum S. Sepulchri*, is a little Town in the *Ombria*, on the Confines of *Tuscany*, near the River *Tyber*, about 50 Miles from *Florence* to the East, and 5 from *Citta di Castello* to the North. It is the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Florence*; and formerly belong'd to the Ecclesiastical State, before Pope *Eugenius* IV. Pawn'd it to the Duke of *Florence*. It was made a Bishoprick by *Leo* X. *Ann.* 1515.

*Empoli*. *Emporium*, is a neat little Town, upon the River *Arno*, 20 Miles from *Florence* to the West, and 30 from *Pisa*.

*Arezzo*. *Arretium*, according to *Pliny*, and by *Ptolemy* call'd *Arretium*, stands in a Valley, about 3 Miles from the Fens of *Clina*; which empty themselves into the *Arno* a little below, 23 from *Siena* to

the East, 30 from *Perugia* to the North-West, 40 from *Florence*, and 16 from *Citta di Castello* to the West. It is said to have been Built by *Arcta*, the Son of *Janus*, and was one of the first 12 Tuscan Colonies. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Florence*, but exempted from his Jurisdiction: and *S. Donatus* was Bishop, and Suffer'd Martyrdom here. The Vessels that were made in this Place, were in great esteem with the Ancients, as *Martial* in his 14 Book of Epigrams makes mention: and *Guido* the famous Musician, who invented the Musical Notes, *ut, re, mi, fa, sol, la*, was Born here.

*Fiesoli*, which *Pliny* calls *Fesule*, *Ptolemy* *Fesule*, and *Silius* *Fesula*, was Anciently a Town of Note, being a Place of Commerce and Trade, to which *Florence* ow'd its beginning as we have said before in the description of that City. It was destroy'd by the Goths, afterwards taken by Stratagem by the *Florentines*, *Ann.* 1111. who sent all the Inhabitants to *Florence*: and now lies in its Rubbish, nothing remaining except the Cathedral Church, a Monastery and some few dwelling Houses. It has however the Title of a Bishoprick under the Archbishop of *Florence*; from which City it is about 2 Miles distant to the North-West.

*PISA*. *Pisa* or *Pisa*, (Anciently *Ilula* *Julia Pisana*, said to have been Built by the *Pisani*, a People of *Peloponessus*, according to *Strabo*, stands in a level Plain, on the River *Arno*, 6 Miles from the Mouth of it into the Tuscan Sea, 54 from *Florence* to the West, 11 from *Lucca*, 14 from *Leghorn*, and 55 from *Siena* to the North-West. It is a great City, being the second of *Tuscany*, and the Streets are large, Straight and Pav'd with great Stones, and the Houses generally well Built; but at present it is very Poor and Ill-inhabited; which seems partly to be owing to the Miseries it suffer'd during the last War with the *Florentines*, partly to its Situation in the Neighbourhood of *Leghorn*, to which many Inhabitants have remov'd. It was once a Free State, and while it was so, gave several Proofs of its Power; for it took *Sardinia* from the *Saracens*, made itself Master of the *Baicares*, subdued *Carthage*, and prov'd very useful to the Eastern Christians. But it was taken by the *Florentines*; and tho' *Charles* VIII. King of *France*, Restor'd it to its former Freedom; yet it fell again into the hands of the *Florentines*, where it still remains. It was made an Archbishoprick, by Pope *Urban* II. *Ann.* 1092. Adorn'd with an University, *Ann.* 1349. There was a Council held in it in the year 1400. where *Alexander* V. was created Pope. Pope *Gregory* VIII. Died there, in the year 1187. and the Knights of the Pope and Martyr *S. Stephen*, (whom the great Duke *Cosmo* I. Instituted, on *August* 6. 1561. after he had won the Battle of *Marciano*) have their Residence here. The most remarkable Things in *Pisa*, are, the Cathedral Church, which was Finish'd *Ann.* 1153. The Baptistry, which is 180 Foot round, and in which there was formerly a Pillar, on which were discover'd all the private Machinations against the State, as in a Mirrour. The leaning Tower in shape of a Cylinder, Built by one *Bonannus*, 188 Foot high. The Burial-place call'd *Campo Santo*, because the Earth of the *Pisans* brought from the Holy Land, (when they assist'd *Fredrick* I. call'd *Barbarossa*, who took *Jerusalem*) in the year 1228. is a kind of Cloyster, 190 Paces Long, and 66 Broad, comprehending the breadth of the Portico's: under one of which there is an Inscription, which is a Decree of the City of *Pisa*, occasion'd by the Death of *Cesar*, ordaining the People to wear mourning a whole year, and in the mean time to abstain from all Publick Diversions.



*Leghorn*, which *Polybius* calls *Livornus*, *Antoniatus*, *Livorni Portus*, *Cicero* *Lab'o* and others *Lignus*, is a famous Sea-Port Town, standing in a Plain, about 14 Miles from *Pisa* to the South, 10 from the Mouth of the *Arno*, 17 from *Vada*, and about 60 from *Florence* to the West. It formerly belong'd to *Pisa*, while that City flourish'd, but being almost destroy'd by the *Genoese*, while they were in Possession of it, it was afterwards by a Treaty of Peace, *Ann.* 1297. restor'd to *Pisa*. Afterwards *Charles VIII.* King of *France*, took it from the *Pizans*, and gave it to the Great Duke, in whose Possession it remains: and is his only Sea-Port Town. It is surrounded with handsome Fortifications, lined with Brick. The Streets are large, straight, and Parallel; the Houses equally high, and for the most part Painted on the outside. The Harbour tho' it is both large and safe, is not so well stor'd with Ships (as *Mr. Misson* relates) as several others; but the Trade of the Bank is very considerable: and it is the Station of the Great Duke's Gallies. The ancient *Livorni* were famous for making light, and swift-sailing Gallies, that the *Romans* call'd all such Vessels, wherever they were made, *Livornice Navis*.

*Volaterra*, *Volaterræ*, the name of a very ancient City in *Italy* and one of the 12 first Colonies of *Etruria*, stands on a Hill near the right Bank of the River *Creina*, 31 Miles from *Florence* to the South, and 37 from *Leghorn* to the East. There were a Company of People who had been proscrib'd by *Sylla* thither, and having form'd a Body of 4 Cohorts of Arm'd Men, held out the Place for the space of two years, before they yielded it, and submitted to the Roman Government. Near to the ancient *Vada Volaterrana*, now *Vada*, and the *Aque Volaterrane*, which are very remarkable hot Springs, that send forth such strong sulphurous Steams, (that as *Bunsen* particularly relates) the Birds whose hard Fate it is to Fly over these Waters, immediately drop down Dead: and so violent a motion there is in them, that they rise about 9 Foot high, and fall down with a great noise, and the Heat so great, that if one throws in the Carcass of any Creature, in a trice you shall see it thrown up. Boyl'd to that degree, that the Bones are as bare of Flesh as a Cane is. *Volaterra*, is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Florence*.

*Siena*, which *Florentinus* call's *Sena*, *Prætorius Sena*, *Pisani Colonia Senensis*, others *Sena Julia*, and *Sena*, stands near the Confines of the *Florentines*, 32 Miles from *Florence* to the South, 107 from *Rome*, 26 from *Mont Pulciano* to the West, and 15 from *Perugia*. It was a Free City, and Head of a Republick for several Ages, but was taken by the Spaniards, in the year 1555. and restor'd to the Duke of *Tuscany*, 1557. together with the adjacent Country, excepting some few Towns, which still belong to *Spain*. It is an Archbishoprick, and the third City in *Tuscany*, and one of the most pleasant Places in it. Its Situation being high and low (as *Mr. Misson* observes), makes it somewhat incommodious, but it enjoys a good Air, and its Streets are neat, and almost all Pav'd with Bricks laid side-ways; besides, the Houses are handsome, and the Waters excellent: and here the *Tuscan* Language is Taught, and Spoke to perfection; which obliges those who would Learn the Italian to reside for sometime here. The most remarkable Things in this City, are, the Cathedral, which tho' it be of Gothick Work, yet is compleat in all its parts, the Walls being covered over with Marble, without and within; and the Pavement of Mosaick Work is very well worth Observation. The Place where the

Library was formerly kept, where are now those fine Pictures, which represent the whole Story of *Pope Pius II.* design'd by *Raphael*, but the Painting was perform'd by *Pietro Perugin*, his Matter, and some others. The Citadel of *Siena* is a very good one, and there are also 15 or 20 square Towers like those at *Viterbo*.

This City bears for its Arms, the famous *Serpent* giving Suck to the Royal Twins; which was often set up (as appears by several Medals), in the Town, that were made Roman Colonies. The great Place of *Siena* is hollow, like a Boat or Scalop Shell, and may be fill'd with Water when any Fire happens in the City.

*Pienza*, *Pientia*, anciently *Cosvinianum*, stands upon a Hill, about 50 Miles from *Siena*, and 55 from *Florence* to the South-East, and 10 from the Confines of the State of the Church. It was call'd *Pienza* by *Pope Pius II.* who before was call'd *Æneas Sylvius*, because he was Born there while his Father was in his Banishment: and afterwards Erected into a Bishoprick by him, under the Archbishop of *Siena*, in the year 1462.

*Piombino*, *Plumbinum*, is said to owe its Rise to the Ruins of the ancient *Pfulvium*, which are to be seen not far from it. It stands on the Coast of the *Tuscan* Sea, in the middle between *Orbetello* to the South-East, and *Leghorn* to the North-West, 50 Miles from either, as many from *Siena*, and about 10 from the Island *Elba*; which belongs to this little Principality, which is Govern'd by its own Princes, under the Protection of the King of *Spain*, who keeps a Garrison in this Place.

*Monte Pulciano*, *Mons Politianus*, is a little Town standing upon a Hill, near the Confines of the *Pope's* Dominions, about 28 Miles from *Perugia* to the West, as many from *Siena* to the South-East, and 12 from *Chiusi*. It is famous for the generous Wine that grows about it: and was Erected into a Bishoprick by *Pope Pius IV.* *Ann.* 1561.

*Chiusi*, *Chisium*, which was the name of an ancient City in *Heretia*, according to *Strabo*, and *Polybius*; and one of the first *Tuscan* Colonies, and ordinary Residence of old King *Porfenna*, stands on the Confines of the *Pope's* Dominions, in a little Country call'd *Valle di Chiana*, from a Lake of that name near to which this Town stands: about 40 Miles from *Siena* to the South East, 20 from *Perugia* to the West, and 10 from the Lake of that name. It is a small Town, and but indifferently Inhabited, by reason of the unwholesomeness of the Air; but is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Siena*.

*Massa*, *Massa*, or *Massa Veternensis*, is a small Inhabited Town on the Coast of *Tuscany*, standing upon an height, 35 Miles from *Siena* to the South, and 18 from *Porto Braccato*, where the Ruins of *Populonium* are. It has the name of a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Siena*; under the Jurisdiction of which are the Islands of *Elba* and *Capraia*. *Onuphrius* says, the Emperor *Constantinus Gallus* was Born here. This is the name of several other Places, particularly of a Duchy, belonging to the Family of *Cibo*, lying between the Territories of *Genoa*, on the West, those of the Great Duke of *Tuscany* on the North, those of *Lucca* on the East, and the *Tuscan* Sea on the South.

*Grosseto*, *Rosetum*, or *Grosetum*, stands 6 Miles from the *Tuscan* Shoar, about 3 from the River *Ombro* to the West, 6 from the *Lago di Castiglione*, 30 from *Piombino*, and 40 from *Siena*. It owes its Rise to the Ruins of ancient *Ruffelle*, near to which it stands, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Siena*.

*Orbetello*, *Orbetellum*, and *Urbicellum*, stands near the *Tuscan* Shoar, at the foot of the Mountain *Argentario*.



*natro*, 35 Miles from *Civita Vecchia* to the West, and 50 from the Island *Elba* to the East; and depends on the Abbot of *le tre Fontane*, in Spirituals, as it did formerly in Temporal. It owes its beginning to the Ruins of *Cesæ*, now lying in its Rubbish not far from this Place. This Town belonged to the State of *Siena*, from the Year, 1451. till the Time that

*Siena* fell into the Hands of the Great Duke: And then *Orbitello* came under the Jurisdiction of the Spaniards, together with *Telamone*, *Porto Hercule*, *Porto Stephano* and *Mount Argentaro*, which they Fortified, and put Garrisons in; so, inasmuch that the adjacent Country lying along the Coast, is call'd commonly *Lo Stato delli Presidii*; The Country of Garrisons.

## C H A P. XII.

### *The Pope's Dominions, Dominium Pontificis Romani.*

THE Pope of *Rome* being no inconsiderable Temporal Prince, we shall take the same Method in describing his Dominions, as we have done in those of other Kingdoms and States. We have already, in our General Description of *Italy*, put the Reader in Mind who the ancient Inhabitants of those Parts were, and what were the most remarkable Changes and Revolutions that happen'd in them: As also hinted a little at the Beginning, Progress, and Decay of the famous Roman Empire: And therefore we shall now only consider briefly the Ways and Methods by which this Ecclesiastical Monarchy, has raised it self, from so small a beginning to its present Grandeur: And what the Nature, Constitution and chief Pillars of it are.

The Increase of this Papal Monarchy is owing, First, to that Barbarity and profound Ignorance, which after the Decay of the Roman Empire did overspread the Western Parts of it: For bad Wares are best vented in the Dark, or at least by a dim Light. Those barbarous Nations no sooner invaded this part of the Empire than they destroyed the Schools, and sent the Teachers to shift where they best could: And wherever they set up, either out of Zeal for their Religion, or hatred of the Heathen Philosophers, who were no Friends to it, they were sure to endeavour all they could to extirpate and forbid the Reading of Heathen Authors; as appears by an Act of the Council of *Carthage* 400 Years after the Birth of Christ: And the small Remnants of Learning that were left, were lodged among the Clergy, who were the only Instructors of Youth, and in whose Power it was to form their tender Minds as they thought fit. But afterwards the Popes, perceiving that some among the most considerable Nations in *Europe* could be no longer kept in this gross Ignorance, introduc'd into the Schools (over which they had assum'd an absolute and supreme Direction) the most miserable sort of Pedantry, that ever plagued the Reason of Mankind; and which some are mighty fond of to this Day. And being ambitious to raise their own Authority and Power, did endeavour to lessen that of the Civil Magistrate, and breed a hatred of Monarchy in the Minds of those People over whom they had got an Ascendant; which the Emperors, by their Lives and tyrannical Proceedings soon confirmed.

*Rome's* being the Residence of this Ecclesiastical Monarch, did not a little contribute to the advancement of the Papal Power and Authority; for this was the glorious Seat of the celebrated *Roman Empire*, and here the Christian Religion did first rise and mightily encrease in those Parts: And therefore the Bishops of *Rome* thought this a plausible Topick

for their having the first Place, as those of *Constantinople* claim'd the Second, as Bishops of *New Rome*: And after the Western Empire had come to decay, and the City lost its primitive Lustre, disputed the Precedency with the Roman Bishop. The Emperor *Phocas*, out of Spite to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, granted the Precedency to *Boniface* the III. the then Bishop of *Rome*; but this extended no farther than a bare Precedency, and imply'd nothing of Jurisdiction over the rest: Or if it did, it was owing merely to the Emperor's Bounty, whose Laws were of no force without the Limits of his Empire. And admitting that other States have allowed the Popes a certain Power over the Churches in their Dominions: This being an Act of the State, and probably done for Reasons of State, may be annul'd when the same State in other Circumstances sees good Reason for doing so.

The Emperors removing their Court from *Rome* gave the Popes a fair Opportunity: And the Barbarous Nations, who had establish'd several new Kingdoms within the Western Empire, being converted to Christianity by the Church of *Rome*, which on that account commanded a great deal of Respect and Veneration from them, did mightily contribute to the Growth of this rising Sovereignty. And 'tis to be remark'd, that after the 5th Century, the Bishops that lived on this side of the *Alpes*, used to go to *Rome*, to pay their Devoirs to the Sepulchers of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*; which Voluntary Devotion was by degrees made necessary, and the Bishops at last obliged to come to *Rome* for his Holiness's Confirmation. It was usual also for some other Bishops and Churches, who were but Novices in respect of *Rome*, to come there for Advice in Matters of Moment, or when Debates happen'd (as 'tis natural for the younger to have recourse to those of greater Experience) which the Bishops of *Rome* so wisely improv'd, that they soon began to issue out their Decrees, before their Advice was desir'd, to decide Controversies, depose Bishops, and bring Causes before their Tribunals. In the 8th Century, an English Frier, whose Name was *Winifred*, before he changed it for that of *Boniface*, having a Zeal to reform the lew'd Lives of some Clergy-men, and establish the Christian Religion in *Germany*, the better to procure the Pope's Favour, became a vigorous Defender of his Authority; in recompence of which good Service, he receiv'd the Episcopal *Pall*, with the Title of Archbishop of *Mayence*: And was constituted Pope *Gregory* the III's Vicar, with full Power to call Councils, and constitute Bishops in those Parts where he had planted the Faith. By which means, and the Assistance of the French King, his Authority became so great, that he brought over all



all the Clergy in Germany and France to the Papal Interest; and was the First who put it upon the German Bishops to receive the Pall from the Pope; who sent it to those of France without their Request, to unite them the more to the Chair. And this growing Customary, at length became necessary: And the Popes assum'd a Power of transferring Bishops, and annulling Acts of Provincial Synods: And Pope Gregory the VII. forc'd the Bishops to Swear Fealty to the Pope, and to give all Confirmation where Appeals were made to him.

As this Ecclesiastical Sovereignty grew up and came to Perfection, the Wealth and Riches of the Church did increase in Proportion. The Foundation was laid by the Liberality and Charity of Princes and others, and the Superstructure advanced by those who believed it meritorious, as certainly it is, when confin'd within moderate Bounds. As Wealth encreases, so Avarice rises in proportion with it, and that finds out Ways and Means to encrease the Stock, without considering whether they be just and reasonable or not. Then came in Masses for the Dead and Living, Purgatory, Indulgences, Dispensations, Pilgrimages, Jubilees and the like, without Measure: and in the 11th and 12th Centuries Crusades too turn'd to very good Account. For in those Expeditions, after People had received the Sign of the Cross to assist in the Recovery of the Holy Land, the Popes pretended to the supreme Command and Direction: and took the Persons and Estates of such People under their Protection: And the Popes Legats had the absolute Disposal of all the Alms, Collections and Legacies that were given for that Purpose: And under the same Pretext received Tithes from the Clergy, and even put their Commands upon Princes themselves to relieve the Cross.

In the 11th Century, Friars and Nuns (who first appear'd in the time of Persecution, and us'd to live by their Handy-work, were very much in Vogue, and multiplied exceedingly, by the Bounty of Princes and great Persons, who fill'd every Place with Monasteries and Nunneries; but at last, in the 13th Century, Charity began to cool, and even seem'd almost exhausted: And then the Mendicant Friars were erected: who, as they were a Plague to the Laity, and a Curb on the Clergy, so they were of singular use to the Pope; who employ'd them as so many Spies upon the Bishops, who could no sooner think of attempting any thing against the Papal Chair than they inform'd their General at Rome of it: And he told the Pope, who was sure to take effectual ways for preventing any Designs the Bishops might have against him.

Thus the Wealth and Power of this Ecclesiastical Sovereignty began and advanced, and Ecclesiasticks multiply'd exceedingly, but without an Independence from any Temporal Power this Monarchy could never have been absolute: And therefore, First, it was necessary that he should reside at a Place free from all Subjection to any Civil Power, and be Master of an Estate sufficient to support his Grandeur: And which no pretext whatsoever could deprive him of. But this was hard to bring about, so long as there was an Emperor of the West, or the Empire of the Greeks lasted in Italy. But this being destroy'd by the Emperor *Fuysinian*, and Rome made a Province of the Roman Empire; and the Emperor's Authority growing weak in Italy, partly by their own Fault, and partly by the Mismanagement of their Governours at *Ravenna*, the Popes had a

fair Opportunity to bring about what they so earnestly long'd for. Besides, some of the Emperors being against the Adoration of Images, and *Leo IX.*, particularly, having thrown them out of the Churches, his Holiness was so nettled at it, that he stirr'd up the Romans and Italians to refuse to pay the Emperor his usual Tribute, and they kill'd his Governor at *Ravenna*, while he was endeavouring to maintain his Master's Rights. Whereby the Grecian Emperors lost all their Jurisdiction in those Parts, and the Cities and Countries began to set up for free and independant States. By these Means the Pope rid himself of the Eastern Emperor's Jurisdiction; but was very hard put to't by the Kings of the *Lombards*, till *Charles the Great*, having conquer'd them, gave to the Papal Chair all that Tract of Land, which had been formerly under the Eastern Emperor's Jurisdiction; which were held of the Emperors as Sovereigns, till the Reign of the Emperor *Henry the IV.* And tho' *Henry the V.* endeavour'd to recover what his Father had lost, and made Pope *Boniface VIII.* create him so, the Clergy created him so much trouble, that he was oblig'd to resign all in to the Pope's Hands, about the Year, 1122. And the two Parties of the *Guelphs* and *Gibellins* (the former were of us for the Pope, the other for the Emperor) arising, and growing so Powerful in Italy, created such Confusion, and gave the Emperors so much Work, that they were never able afterwards to reduce that Country to entire Obedience. And the long vacancy happening after the Death of the Emperor *Fredrick the II.* the Empire was put into such a confused State, and the succeeding Emperors found so much Work in Germany, that they had no leisure to mind Italy, and by this Means the Pope had a fair Opportunity to establish an Independent Sovereignty over the Dominions of the Church.

The Popes having by degrees rais'd themselves to this pitch of Power and Grandeur, they began to assume a Superiority over Princes, to decide Controversies betwixt them, to relieve those that pretended to be oppress'd, to maintain Subjects in their Liberties and Properties, and free them from their Allegiance to their lawful Sovereigns, whom they sometimes Excommunicated; To forbid to Marry within the seventh Degree of Consanguinity, and the Fourth of Affinity, without a Dispensation from the Pope; which turn'd to very good Account both as to the encrease of their Riches, and creating Dependence on them: And they also took special care to have the ablest and wisest Men they could find about their Court, who were to be promoted according as they were able and diligent in advancing the Papal Greatness and Power.

But after the Popes seem'd to have fix'd and establish'd a lasting Spiritual Sovereignty over *Christendom*, and a Temporal Jurisdiction over their Dominions in Italy, there happen'd several Things which had almost reduc'd this Monarchy to a tottering Condition. The Schisms that arose about the electing of the Popes, and their Anti-popes; who mutually revil'd and excommunicated one another, were like to prove very pernicious; and laid open to publick View Things which they had no mind to discover. *Clement the V's.* transferring the papal Seat from Rome to *Avignon* weaken'd their Power in Italy, and prov'd very prejudicial to their Revenues there: And Rome it self grew Disobedient; but at last submitted, and suffer'd *Boniface the IX.* to put on the Bridle, by Building the Castle of *St. Angelo*. Afterwards when the Papacy seem'd to have



have recover'd its former Grandeur, *Luther* stood up, and in all appearance would have given it a fatal Blow, had not the Divisions among the Protestants, and the licentious Lives of some of 'em prevented it. And now the Chair seems to be pretty well fix'd, that Church having in a great measure either quite abolish'd such Things as *Luther* most upbraided it with, and would have done it most Mischief; or Matters are transacted in a more decent Manner, and with greater Art and Cunning. Princes are treated more Civilly, the Clergy are more Learn'd, and lead better Lives. They are active and diligent in the Conversion of Heathens, and bringing Protestants over to their Church; tho' by different Methods; Violence and Persecution being us'd where they safely may, and softer ways where they may not: And the Riches of that Church enable them to provide a suitable Maintenance for those who want Bread, or would have more plentifully.

As to the Nature and Constitution of this Papal Sovereignty (which is certainly the most artificial Fabrick of this kind in the World) it is Monarchical: And a Monarchy it must be, since no other Form would have been consistent with its Constitution. It is also an Elective Monarchy, and no other it could be; for if it had been Hereditary, Minors might sometimes have mounted the Chair, and then it would have been very unseemly to see the Head of the Church, and Christ's Vicar on Earth, under Tutors, and perhaps riding a Hobby-Horse. Nor must this Spiritual Monarch be Married, for then there must have been a vast Train of Ladies and Women about the Court; which would have been very unsuitable to the Gravity and Sanctity (tho' it had been but seeming) of such a Court: And besides, the Dominions of the Church must have been entail'd on a Family, and divided into several Appenages of the younger Sons.

The College of Cardinals is as it were the standing Council of the Ecclesiastical State, as the Chapters of Cathedrals are to Bishops. In the time of Pope *Paschal* the 1st, about the Year, 817, the Parish Priests in *Rome*, by reason they were near and ready at every Election, to adorn their Power with a more illustrious Title, began to be call'd *Cardinals*, assuming to themselves (after they had banish'd the popular Election) the sole Power of creating Popes: And that out of their own Number. With these Cardinals the Pope advises concerning Matters of the greatest Moment, only sometimes, he with his Nephews do Business without them. Their Chief Prerogative is that they have the Power of Choosing a Pope, and that out of their own Body, as being best acquainted with the Affairs of that Court. Their ordinary Number is 70; but that Number is seldom complet. Their Title formerly was that of *Illustrious*; but that growing too Common in *Italy*, they have now that of *Eminence*. The Election of them depends absolutely on the Pope; who in that Matter is often influenc'd by *France*, *Spain*, or some other State. They pretend to have the Precedency before the Electors of the Empire: And some of the Court Parasites maintain that their Cap is not inferiour in Dignity to the Crown of some Sovereign Princes. Since the time of Pope *Urban* the VIII. a Custom has been introduc'd to make one of the Pope's Nephews Chief Minister of the Ecclesiastical State, whom they call *Cardinal Patro-*  
*no*, or *Patroon*.

By what has been said, we may consider the Pope in two Respects, *viz.* as he's Spiritual Monarch of *Christendom*; and Secondly, as a Prince in *Italy*. In the First, his Subjects may be divided into Two several Sorts; the First of which comprehends the whole Clergy, the Second all the rest of *Christendom*, as far as the same professes the Roman Catholick Religion. The First may not unfitly be compar'd to the standing Army of a Prince, who thereby maintains his Conquests; the rest are to be deem'd as Subjects that are Tributaries to the Prince, and are obliged to maintain those Forces at their Charge. One may guess how vast the Number of the Clergy is, from what is related of Pope *Paul* the IV. who us'd to brag that he had 228000 Parishes, and 4400 Monasteries under his Jurisdiction, if he did not mistake in his Account, especially as to the Monasteries. In the Second Place we may consider the Pope as a Potent Prince in *Italy*, (whose Sovereignty is principally supported by a Jealousie and even Ballance betwixt the Crown of *France* and *Spain*) tho' in no ways to be compar'd with the other Princes in *Europe*. The Popes Revenues (which we will not particularly determine) are very considerable, and out of them a good Number of Souldiers could be maintain'd; but his Military Force is scarce worth taking notice of, since he uses means to maintain his State quite different from those of other Princes. He maintains about 20 Gallies; which have their Station at *Civita Vecchia*. The Countries under his Jurisdiction are, the City of *Rome*, with her Territories, situated on both sides of the *Tyber*, the Dukedom of *Benevento* in the Kingdom of *Naples*, the Dukedoms of *Spoletto*, *Urbino*, and *Ferrara*, the Marquisate of *Ancona*, several places in *Tuscany*, *Romaniola* and *Flaminia*, where are situated *Bologna* and *Ravenna*. In *France* the Country of *Avignon* belongs to him. *Parma* is a Fief of the Church, which *Paul* the III. granted to his Son *Lewis Farnese*.

The Pope's Dominions, call'd by the Italians *lo Stato della Chiesa*, lies about the middle of *Italy*, and is bounded (not including the Territories of *Benevento* in *Naples*, and *Avignon* in *France*) on the North with the Venetian Dominions, and the Gulf of *Venice*, on the East with the Kingdom of *Naples*, on the South with the *Tuscan* Sea, and on the West with the Dukedoms of *Tuscany* and *Modena*: And is in length (according to *Baudrand*) from North to South about 240 Miles, in breadth from East to West, at the broadest, that is, between *Ancona* to *Civita Vecchia* 120, but in other Places much less, as in *Romaniola*: And comprehends the abovesaid Countries, as you may see more plainly in the following Table, according to the forecited Author.

The Campaign of *Rome*, comprehending the *Campagna di Roma*, properly so call'd, and *la Marina*.

St. *Peter's* Patrimony, comprehending the Dutchy of *Castro*, the Territory of *Orvieto*, and the County of *Ronciglione*.

*Sabina*.

*Ombria*, or the Dutchy of *Spoletto*, comprehending the Territories of *Perugia*, and the *Contado di Citta di Castello*.

The Marquisate of *Ancona*.

The Dutchy of *Urbino*.

The greatest Part of *Romandiola*, comprehending *Romandiola*, properly so call'd, or *Romagna*, the *Bolognese* and the Dutchy of *Ferrara*.

The



The Campaign of *ROME*, *Campania Romana*, which comprehends the greatest part of the ancient *Latium*, where the *Latini*, *Æqui*, *Hernici*, *Rutuli*, and most part of the *Volsi* dwell, is bounded on the West with the Province of the *Patrimony* and the *Tyber*, on the North with *Sabina*, and the River *Anio*, now *Tiberone*, on the South with the *Tuscan Sea*, and on the East with *l'Abuzzo Oltra*, and the *Terra di Lavoro*, Provinces of *Naples*: And is divided, as we said, into *la Campagna*, properly so call'd, which lies most northerly, between the River *Anio*, and the Mountains call'd, *Mons Lepinus*, or *la Montagne di Segni*, and is a very Mountainous Country; and *la Marina*, which lies between the foresaid Mountains and the *Tuscan Sea* extended from East to West; which tho' it be a plain Country is but indifferently Inhabited, because of the unwholsomeness of the Air, and the neighbouring Lakes. The most noted Cities and Towns in the *Campagna di Roma* (as the Italians call it) are,

<i>Rome.</i>	{	<i>Terracina.</i>
<i>Tivoli.</i>		<i>Veletri.</i>
<i>Fregescati.</i>		<i>Segni.</i>
<i>Ofiz.</i>		<i>Anagni.</i>
<i>Palestrina.</i>		<i>Aibano.</i>

*ROME*, *Roma*, (once the Mistress of the World, and for several Ages last past the Seat of the Spiritual Monarch of *Christendom*) is said to have been founded by *Romulus* and *Remus*. It was anciently call'd *Septicollis*, because it stood on seven Hills or rising Grounds of an easie and almost insensible Ascent. Before the Reign of *Servius Tullius*, the number of these Hills was no more; but since that time it has been much enlarg'd, and at present contains 12, viz. *Monte Capitolino*, *Palatino*, *Aventino*, *Celio*, *Esquilino*, *Viminale*, *Quirinale* or *Monte Cavallo*, *Janiculo*, *Pincio*, *l'aticano*, *Citorio* and *Giordano*. Whatever *Vespiscus* (who liv'd under the Reign of *Dioctesian*), and who positively asserts that the Walls which *Aurelian* built round this City were 50 Miles in compass, and others may say, it is certain (as several later Authors have demonstrated) that these Walls, which are almost the same with those which *Aurelian* built, do not exceed 13 Miles. 'Tis true the Suburbs extended very far on all sides, and made the City in a manner infinite; but we are not to imagine that all these were within the Walls. At present there is not above one third of that which is comprehended within the Walls inhabited; the other Two being fill'd with Gardens and Ruins. 'Tis as hard a matter almost to determine the exact number of the present Inhabitants of this City (which as some say are about 200000 Souls) as to reconcile the accounts of ancient Authors concerning it; for some tell us that under the Reign of *Augustus* there were 3001037, others 4000000, others 5000000; and *Suetonius* computes that in the Reign of *Tiberius*, who was the immediate Successor of *Augustus*, there were only 1600000.

It is not to be expected that in a Work of this Nature we should give the Reader a full and particular account of the ancient and present State of this famous City, especially considering that many learn'd and judicious Writers, as *Onuphrius Panvinius*, *Boitard*, *Justus Lipsius*, *Phil. Cluverius*, and some late Travelers have done that to so good purpose already; that it would only be repeating, and perhaps confounding, what they have said so well on the Subject, and swelling this Work beyond its design'd Bounds, if not altering the Nature of it.

We shall therefore confine our selves to that which is more properly our Business, and only take notice of such things as are most remarkable in and about this City, and refer those that have a Mind to be further inform'd to the fore-cited Authors, and the latest and best Travellers, particularly *M. Misson*, who seems to be a diligent and curious Enquirer into such Things.

The City of *Rome* stands on the River *Tyber* (which hath received more Honour from the City; than the City from it) about 12 Miles from the Sea, 120 from the City of *Naples*, 60 from *Terracina* to the North West, 140 from *Florence*, 300 from *Genova*, 135 from *Ancona*, and 120 from *Loreto* to the South. About 365 Years after the Building of the City, and 3d of the 97th *Olympiad*, it was taken by the *Galli Senones*. In the Year of Christ, 410. by the *Goths* under their King *Alaricus*. In the Year, 455. by the *Vandals*, under their King *Geinsericus*; 15 Years after by the *Heruli*; 14 Years after that by the *Ostrogoths*; 12 Years after that by the *Goths* under their King *Totila*; and at last on the 6th Day of May, 1527. it was taken, and miserably plundered by the Emperor *Charles* the V's. Army, when his Holiness was besieged in the Castle of *St. Angelo*, and forc'd by Famine to surrender, and comply with the Emperor's Conditions. There are above 300 little Towers upon the Walls of the City, but many of 'em are gone to Ruin. It is divided into 14 Parts or Regions call'd *li Rioni*, and has 10 Gates, and 5 Bridges over the *Tyber*, one of which is ruinous. The Houses are, for the most part, built of Brick, plaistered and whited over on the outside: And the Roofs of 'em are ridg'd; but the Angle at the Top is very obtuse. That part of the City which stands on the Right Bank of the River is not above a fifth or sixth part of the other: And is called *Trastevere*. 'Tis impossible (says *Mr. Misson*) to walk fifty Paces in or about this City without observing some Remainders of its ancient Grandeur. The Statues of *Rome* have been call'd a *Great Nation*, and the *Colosses* might not unfitly been call'd the *Giants*: And besides these, the City was wonderfully adorn'd with Temples, Palaces, Theatres, Representations of Sea-Fights, Triumphal-Arches, Circues, Columns, Fountains, Aqueducts, Obelisks, Mausoleums, and other magnificent Structures; which tho' at present they lie almost buried in their own Ruins, seem still to discover a great deal of their ancient Splendour. If we consider the Magnificent Monuments of Antiquity, and the modern Structures and Ornaments of this City, we shall find it much easier to admire than form a right Imagination of it: And to frame an Idea of it than represent it distinctly to others. The Pantheon, tho' it hath lost much of its ancient Magnificence, is still one of the most entire and beautiful antique Edifices in *Italy*. Whether it was anciently so call'd because its figure resembled that of the Heavens, or because *Agrippa* consecrated it to *Jupiter* and all the Gods, is uncertain; but at present the Common People call it *Rotunda* from the Roundness of its Figure. Pope *Boniface* the IV. dedicated it to the Virgin, and all the Martyrs, and call'd it *Santa Maria ad Martyres*; but some of the succeeding Popes would have all the Saints come in for a share in the Dedication with the Martyrs. There are said to be 300 Churches in *Rome*, the greatest and most magnificent of which is that of *St. Peter*, the most noble and majestick Structure of that kind in the World. The Harmony and proportion of the Architecture are so judiciously



P



of that nature in Italy. The Cascade of the River *Anio* or *Teterone*, is the most remarkable thing in this little Town. This River (says Mr. *Miffen*), forms a very large and pleasant Sheet, but the Fall is not very high. The Hill of *Tivoli* has furnish'd time out of mind, the greatest part of the Stones that are used at *Rome*. The *Coliseum* or Amphitheatre was cover'd over within, and the front of *St. Peter's Church* is Built of the same.

*Frescati*, *Tusculum*, which *Licinius*, *Strabo*, *Pliny* and others, make mention of as a very ancient Town in *Latium*, and which *Kocher* says was Built 300 years before the Trojan War, is now a very small Town, Seated on the Brow of a Hill, 12 Miles from *Rome*; in which there are several Houses of Pleasure, belonging to some Roman Princes, as, the *Muse Dracene*, belonging to the Prince *Borghese*, *Benedictine*, to the Prince *Pamphili*, and the *Villa Ludovica*, to the Dutchess *Guadagnola*, the Constable *Celina's* Sister. There are some who think that not the Town of *Tusculum*, but *Tusculanum*, *Cicero's* Country-House, where he wrote his *Questions*, stood formerly where *Frescati* is now; but both the Situation of *Frescati* and *Strabo's* Description of *Tusculum* contradict this opinion; for the *Tusculanum Ciceronis*, where there are a great many Ruins to be seen still, and where now the *Grotta Ferrata* stands, is 16 Miles from *Rome*, whereas *Frescati* (as we have said) is but 12, and the great plenty of Water, and standing near a high and steep Rock, agrees with the latter, but not at all with the former. The ancient *Tusculum* was quite demolish'd in the time of Pope *Celestin III.* and *Frescati* was erected into a Bishoprick by Pope *Paul III.* in the Year 1537. the Bishop of which is call'd *Episcopus Tusculanus*, and is one of the 6 eldest Cardinals.

*Osia*, *Osia*, anciently a Town and Colony of *Latium*, 12 Miles from *Rome*, near the Mouth of the *Tyber*, and therefore call'd *Osia Tiberina* by *Strabo*, *Pliny* and others, and said to have been Built by *Ancus Martius*. It was destroyed by the *Saracens*, and now lies almost Buried in its Ruins, and Inhabited by few or none because of the unwholesomeness of the Air. It still retains the Title of a Bishoprick, which is joyn'd to that of *Veettri*, and its Bishop is always Dean of the College of Cardinals. Here *Minica St. Augustine's* Mother Died.

*Palestrina*, *Præneste*, anciently a Town in *Latium*, on the Confines of the Country of the *Æqui*, according to *Proclus* and *Strabo*, and call'd sometime *Stephane*, according to *Pliny*; and from a Colony made a Free Town by *Tiberius Augustus*, as *Genius* relates, stood anciently, partly on the Top of the Hill, and partly on the Valley, where there are still to be seen the Ruins of some old Walls, and Subterraneous Passages, through which *C. Marius* when he was Besieged by *Lucretius Asella*, one of *Sylla's* Faction, in vain endeavouring to make his Escape, with *Pontius Telesinus*, who was in the same Circumstances. They both drew their Swords, and the former Kill'd the other: and afterwards procur'd the favour of his Servant to dispatch him. Here stood the famous Temple of *Fortuna Primigenia*, where the *Sortes Prænestinae* were kept. The old Town of *Præneste* was Demolish'd by Pope *Boniface VIII.* and the new one Built in the Valley, near the River *Ofa*, about 22 Miles from *Rome* to the North-East, 12 from *Tivoli* to the South-East, 16 from *Agnani*, and 12 from *Segni*. It is the Title of a Bishoprick, which is commonly bestowed on one of the eldest Cardinals: and is dignified with the Title of a Principality, be-

longing to the Family of the *Barbarini*. Whoever has a mind to be further inform'd concerning this Place may consult the description of it written by *Joseph Maria Smeasse* a Frenchman.

*Terracina*, *Anxur*, *Terracina* or *Tarracina*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Volsci*, and sometime call'd *Ti. acine*. The old Castle stood on the Top of an Hill, where the Ruins are still to be seen, of a square Figure, but the greatest part of the Town was Built in the Plain where *Terracina* now stands. On the Top of this Hill stood the Temple of *Jupiter Anxur*, and the Vestiges of the Harbour of *Terracina* are still to be seen in the Sea. We find mention made of the *Aqua Terracinenfes*, which were very wholsom Waters, and the *Fons Neptunius*, of which (as *Vitruvius* says) whosoever had the ill luck to Drink, shortly after lost their lives. *Solinus* and *Martianus Capella* are mightily mistaken who think that *Terracina* was sometime an Island; but it is certain, that all that Plain, about *Velettri*, *Ceri*, *Norma ruinata*, *Sermoneta*, *Sezze* and *Piperno*, as far as *Terracina*, was call'd *Campus* or *Ager Pomptinus*, from the Lake *Pomptinus*, which *Julius Caesar* design'd to have drain'd, and *Augustus* accomplish'd. This Town stands near the Mouth of the River *Tyber*, now call'd *il Portatore*, 2 Miles only from the Confines of the Kingdom of *Naples* to the West, 15 from *Gaeta*, and about 50 from *Rome*; but is very Ill-inhabited because of the unwholesomeness of the Air, which is occasion'd by the Neighbouring Lake now call'd *Paludi Pontine*.

*Velettri*, *Velitra*, the name of a Colony, and very ancient Town belonging to the *Volsci*, according to *Livy*, *Halicarnassus*, and *Suetonius*, said to have been taken by King *Ancus Martius*, and almost quite dispeopled by the Plague afterwards (as *Livy* relates) in the Consulship of *Furius Camillus* and *C. Menius Nepes*, its Walls were demolish'd, because of its frequent Rebellions, and the Inhabitants sent to dwell on the other side of the *Tyber*. It is an Episcopal See, joyn'd to that of *Osia*, and is a pretty handsom Town, and well Inhabited, distant about 20 from *Rome* to the East.

*Segni*, *Signia*, a Town anciently belonging to the *Volsci*, according to *Strabo*, *Livy* and *Pliny*, which owes its name to the *Signa* or *Ensigns*, which the Roman Soldiers set up there; for the Soldiers keeping the Winter Quarters there, did so fortifie themselves and dispose every thing for their convenience and accomodation, that the Camp differed very little from a Town, insomuch that King *Tarquin* led a Colony thither, as *Dien Halicarn*, relates. It is now an Episcopal See, and Honour'd with the Title of a Dukedom, which one of the Family of *Sforza* enjoys: and is distant about 32 Miles from *Rome* to the East, *Palestrina* to the South.

*Anagni*, *Anagnia*, Anciently the Chief Town of the *Hernici*, and now an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none. It stands on a Hill, and is of no great Compass, but neat and well Inhabited, at the distance of 36 Miles from *Rome* to the East, 16 from *Palestrina*, 32 from *Terracina*. It was here that *Marcus Antonius*, after he had Divorc'd *Octavia*, *Augustus's* Sister, Married *Cleopatra*: and here were Born Pope *Innocent III.* *Gregory IX.* *Alexander IV.* and *Boniface VIII.*

*Albano*, *Albanum*, Anciently call'd *Villa Pompeii*, (according to *Baudrand*) which afterwards became so considerable as to bear the Title of a Bishoprick, whose Bishop is subject only to the See of *Rome*, and one of the first six Cardinals. Mr. *Miffen* in his Travels, says he visited this little Town of *Albano*, where the



the famous City of *Alba* formerly stood: and that he saw there a kind of Ruin'd Mausoleum, commonly call'd the Tomb of *Afcanius*. This little Town is distant 14 Miles from *Rome* to the East, and about 2 from the Ruins of *Alba Longa*, which *Tullus Hostilius* Raz'd, and from the Ruins of which *Albano* sprung; it is mention'd by *Horace*, and was Famous for the Excellent Wine that grew thereabouts.

The *PATRIMONY*, or Province of the *PATRIMONY* of St. *PETER*, which the Italians call *la Provincia del Patrimonio*, makes a great part of the Dominions of the Pope, and was anciently the South part of *Hetruria*. It was given to the Church of that Famous Woman *Mathildis*, and comprehends (according to *Baudand* and others) the Country call'd *il Orvietano*, the Duchy of *Castro*, and the Country call'd *Lo Stato di Ronciglione*. It is Bounded on the North with *Ombria*, on the East with *Sabina*, and the *Campagna di Roma*, on the West with the *Senese*, in the South of *Tuscany*, and on the South with the Tuscan Sea: and the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Viterbo</i> .	7	{ <i>Suni</i> .
<i>Civita Vecchia</i> .		<i>Bracciano</i> .
<i>Civita Castellana</i> .		<i>Castro</i> .
<i>Corneto</i> .	3	{ <i>Orvieto</i> .
<i>Toscanella</i> .		<i>Aquapendente</i> .
<i>Orti</i> .		<i>Bagnarea</i> .
<i>Nepi</i> .	J	L

*Viterbo*, *Viterbium*, (sometimes call'd *Tetrapolis*, and the Inhabitants *Quaterni Populi*, because it was one of the four Cities which *Desides* last King of the *Insubrians* united under the name of *Viterbo*) is at present a City indifferently big, almost wholly Built of Stone, and enclos'd with a Wall, distant about 40 Miles from *Rome* to the North-West, and among other Things remarkable in this City, there are 8 or 10 square Towers, which are seen at a distance and make an odd kind of Prospect, and were a sort of Forts or Retiring Places, Built hard by the Houses of the Richest Inhabitants, during the fury of the *Guelf*, and *Gibelin* Factions.

*Civita Vecchia*, *Centumcellæ*, a Town in *Hetruria*, (according to *Pliny*, *Antoninus* and *Paterculus*) on the Coast of the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuscan* Sea, formerly a Bishops Seat. It was destroy'd by the *Saracens*, and afterwards Rebuilt by Pope *Leo III.* on a Hill about 5 Miles distant, and call'd *Cincelle*; which now lies hid in its Rubbish, the Inhabitants having all return'd to their old City, which some of the late Popes, particularly *Urban VIII.* have been at the Charge to Fortifie, and make a good and large Harbour, which is the Station of the Pope's Gallies, and defended by a strong Castle. It is but Ill-inhabited by reason of the Air: and is distant about 40 Miles from *Rome* to the West.

*Corneto*, *Cornuetum* or *Cornetum*, stands on a Hill near the River *Marta*, on the Confines of the Duchy of *Castro*, near the Ruins of *Graviscæ* and *Tarquiniæ*, 4 Miles from the Tuscan Shoar, 22 from *Viterbo* to the South, and 46 from *Rome*. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none; but is very Ill-inhabited because of the South-winds, which are great Enemies to health in those parts.

*Toscanella*, *Tuscania*, is now but a small Town, on the River *Marta*, on the Confines of the Duchy of *Castro*, and 15 Miles from *Viterbo* to the South-West. It was anciently call'd *Salumbronia*, afterwards *Tyrrhenia*, *Tuscia*, and *Tuscanæ*; and was then a very large and flourishing City; which probably gave the name of *Tuscia* to the Country; but it has been

sixteen times Taken and Ruin'd, and now lies in its own Rubbish.

*Orti*, *Hortanum*, or *Ota*, (according to *Paulus Diaconus*) is a little Town in the Province of the *Patrimony*, standing on the *Tyber*, where the River *Nara* falls into it, on the Confines of *Ombria*, near *Oriceli*, about 34 Miles from *Rome* to the North, and 14 from *Viterbo* to the East. It has the Title of a Bishoprick, which in the year 1437. was perpetually united to that of *Civita Castellana*, by Pope *Eugenius IV.*

*Nepi*, *Nepes*, which *Livy* calls *Nepete*, *Ptolomey* *Nepeta*, *Strabo* *Nepita*, and *Procopius* *Nepetes*, stands on the Rivulet *Pozzolo*, between *Rome* and *Viterbo*, and has the Title of a Bishoprick, which has been united to that of *Sutri* since the time of Pope *Eugenius IV.* An. 1436. and is Suffragan to no other See but that of *Rome*.

The Duchy of *CASIRO*, *Castrensis Ducatus*, was formerly subject to the Duke of *Parma*, but has been in possession of the Pope since the Year 1649. and is bounded on the North with the *Orvietano*, on the East with the Province of the *Patrimony*, on the South with the Tuscan Sea, and on the West with the *Senese*. The chief Town of it was *Castro*; which now lies so hid in its own Rubbish, that one can hardly know that ever there was a Town there. It was a strong Town, and the Seat of a Bishop till the year 1649. that Pope *Innocent X.* caus'd it to be Raz'd, to avenge the Death of *Christopher Giarda*, last Bishop of it, who was Slain April 13. 1649. near *Monterosi*; and the Bishoprick was Translated to *Aquapendente*. It stood about 13 Miles from the Tuscan Shoar to the North, and as many from *Toscanella* to the West; and sprung from the Ruins of a Neighbouring Town call'd *Velscia*.

The Territory of *Orvieto*, or *il Orvietano*, *Urbevetanus Ager*, is Bounded with *Ombria* on the East and North, the *Senese* on the West, and the *Patrimony*, properly and strictly so call'd on the South. It was anciently a part of *Hetruria*: and the most considerable Places in it now are, *Orvieto*, *Aquapendente* and *Bagnarea*.

*Orvieto*, *Oropitum*, or *Urbs Vetus* by *Paulus Diaconus*, *Herbanum* by *Pliny*, *Urbevetanum* by *Procopius*, and *Urbiventum* or *Orbivetum* by others, is a Town Built on a rising ground, and naturally strong, being surrounded with high Rocks and Precipices; about 20 Miles distant from *Viterbo* to the North, 60 from *Rome* to the North-west, and about 15 from the Confines of the Duke of *Tuscany's* Dominions, and the *Senese* to the East.

*Aquapendente*, *Acula* or *Aquila*, stands on a rising ground, about 40 Miles from *Siena* to the East, and 20 from *Orvieto* to the South-west. It was Erected into a Bishoprick by Pope *Innocent X.* in the year 1650. in the room of *Castro*, which he caus'd to be Raz'd, to punish the Inhabitants for Murdering their Bishop.

*Bagnarea*, *Balneoregium*, stands upon a Hill, between *Orvieto* to the North, and *Montefiascone* to the South, about 6 Miles from either, and 10 from *Viterbo* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, but a small and Ill-inhabited Town: and by some thought to be *Novempagi* mention'd by *Pliny*.

*Ronciglione*, *Roncilio*, stands about 30 Miles from *Rome*, and 10 from *Viterbo*. It belong'd formerly to the Duke of *Parma*, and gives name to the adjacent Country, which the Italians call *lo Stato di Ronciglione*.

The Province of *SABINA*, *Sabina*, is Bounded on the North with *Ombria*, on the East with the farther



ther *Apruzzo*, on the South with *Compagna di Roma*, and on the West with the Province of the *Patrimony*, is of much narrower Bounds than the Country of *Sabina* formerly was, and has only one Town of any note, call'd *Magliano*, the Residence of the Bishop of *Sabina*, near the *Tyber*, and 30 Miles North from *Rome*.

*Ombria*, or the Duchy of *SPOLETO*, *Umbria* *see Ducatus Spoletanus*, seems to have had the latter of these names from those Dukes whom *Longinus* the Exarch appointed. The Longobards having made themselves Masters of it, under King *Aboinus*, about the year 571, it retain'd the name of a Duchy, and was govern'd by 8 Dukes successively of its own, and 13 likewise descended from *Charles* the Great, till the year 1198. Afterwards it retain'd the same Name and Dignity under the Popes of *Rome*, till the year 1440. when it recover'd the ancient name of *Umbria*, or *Ombria*; but the ancient *Umbria* was of much larger extent than this Country is now. It lies on the North of the *Patrimony* and *Sabina*.

These are the Chief Towns.	{	<i>Spoleto.</i>	{	<i>Todi.</i>
		<i>Narni.</i>		<i>Nocera.</i>
		<i>Otricoli.</i>		<i>Torni.</i>
		<i>Reati.</i>		<i>Affisi.</i>
		<i>Foligno.</i>		<i>Amelia.</i>

*Spoleto*, *Spoletum*, mention'd by *Livy*, *Cicero* and *Ptolemy*, as a City in *Umbria*, and the Chief one of the Duchy of *Spoleto*, now of the Province of *Ombria*, is distant 40 Miles from *Rome* to the North, and as many from *Perugia* to the South-East. *Baudrand* says it is a large Town, Built partly on a Hill, partly in the Valley, and Mr. *Misson* says, it is a poor City, thinly Peopl'd, ill Built, and in a very uneven Situation. The most remarkable Things in it are, the Cathedral, the Castle, which (as the latter of these two says) is only strong by its Situation, and has nothing in it to recompence the trouble of going up to it. About half a Mile from the City there is a Temple anciently Consecrated to Concord; which is now call'd the Chappel of the Holy Crucifix. There are also to be seen here, a Triumphal Arch half Ruined, some remainders of an Amphitheatre, and an Aqueduct, which joyns the Mountain of *St. Francis*, to that of *Spoleto*; which is intire, and has been in use ever since it was first Built. 'Tis 350 Paces long, and about 100 English Foot high. *Marphes* Cardinal *Barbarini*, afterwards Pope *Urban VIII.* was Bishop of this Place.

*Narni*, *Narna*, or *Narnia*, stands at the Foot of a Hill, on the River *Nera*, (from which it has its Name) near the Confines of *Sabina*, between *Torni* and *Otricoli*, 6 Miles from the former, and 8 from the other, and 40 from *Rome*. It was one of the 12 Towns which refus'd to assist the Romans against *Hanibal*: and was anciently (according to *Pliny*) call'd *Nequinum* from *Nequitia*, (frowardness) because when it was Besieg'd, the Inhabitants chose rather to kill themselves and their Children than Surrender. It is at present (as Mr. *Misson* relates) a desolate, dirty and beggarly Place; but that there are observable in it, 2 pretty handsom Fountains of Brass: and near it the Ruins of a stately Bridge, (Built as they say; by *Augustus*; which joyn'd the Mountain of *Spoleto*, to a Neighbouring Mountain; it is of an extraordinary height, but of its four Arches there remains but one intire. The Top of the greatest is broken; but he says he was credibly inform'd that the breadth of this Arch is 170 Foot.

*Otricoli*, *Otriculum*, or *Otriculum*, stands in a Plain,

about 2 Miles from the *Tyber*, about 3 from the conflux of that River with the *Nera*, between *Narni* and *Civita Castellana*, and about 30 Miles from *Rome*. The ancient *Otriculum* is often confounded with the *Ocrea* or *Interocrea* of *Antoninus*; but most Authors believe that *Otricoli* stands now where the ancient *Otriculum* stood, and that the Ruins that appear a little lower on the right hand towards the *Tyber*, are the remainders of *Ocrea*; but the conjecture would not be unreasonable if one should say that *Otriculum* is only a diminutive of *Ocrea*, implying the Suburbs of it.

*Reati*, *Reate*, mentioned by *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*, as a Town in the *Sabines*, stands upon the River *Velinus*, near a Lake of that name, upon the Confines of the Kingdom of *Naples*, and the farther *Apruzzo*, in the midit between *Aquila* to the East, and *Narni* to the West, and 25 from *Spoleto* to the East. It is a pretty well Inhabited Town considering the Air; which is unwholsom by reason of the Neighbouring Marshes: and is an Episcopal See, subject immediately to that of *Rome*.

*Foligno*, *Fulginium*, stands at the Foot of the *Apennines*, in a Plain, 21 Miles from *Perugia* to the South East, 10 from *Affisi*, and 13 from *Spoleto*, and has the Title of a Bishoprick. It is Seated in a Terrestrial Paradise, (as Mr. *Misson* says) but has nothing else to recommend it, except that it is said to have a better Trade than most other Cities in the Ecclesiastical State. The Trade of it consists in Cloth, Gold and Silver Lace, some Silks, and Spicery. It was several times Plunder'd by the Goths, and there are no old Monuments remaining.

*Todi*, *Tuder*, or *Turde*, according to *Ptolemy*, stands on a Hill near the *Tyber*, almost in the midit between *Perugia* to the North, and *Narni* to the South, about 20 Miles from either, and has the name of an Episcopal See.

*Nocera*, *Nuceria*, call'd *Constantia Colonia*, in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus*, stands at the Foot of the *Apennines* on the Confines of the *Marca d' Ancona*, 16 Miles from *Spoleto* to the North, 15 from *Camerino* to the West, and as many from *Foligno* to the North-East: and is an Episcopal See, immediately subject to that of *Rome*.

*Terni*, *Interamna*, or *Interamnina*, stands in a Plain, on the River *Nera*, near the Confines of *Sabina*, about 12 Miles from *Spoleto* to the South, and 6 from *Narni*. It is a very ancient City, having been Built about 670 years before Christ, in the days of *Numa Pompilius*. It owes its ancient name to its Situation, between the 2 Arms of the River which waters it, and the Bridge, (as the Inscription which was put on it in the time of Pope *Urban VIII.* says) was Built by *Pompey* the Great. The whole Trade of this City consists in Oyl, of which (as they say) they make during Six Months of the year, 100 Charges every day, each Charge Weighing 600 Pounds, and is worth 12 English Crowns.

*Affisi*, *Affisium*, or *Affisum*, stands on a Hill, 4 Miles from the River *Chiascio*, 11 from *Perugia* to the East, and near 60 from *Rome* to the North-west. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none: and the Birth-place of *St. Francis*, and *St. Clara*.

The Country of *PERUGIA*, *Perusinus Ager*, call'd by the Italians *il Peruzino*, is Bounded with the *Tyber*, and ancient *Umbria* on the East, the Marshes of *Chiana*, and the Territories of *Fierence* on the West, and the Territories of *Orvieto* on the South; and owes its name to the Chief Town in it.

*Perugia*,



*Perugia, Perusia, Perusium, and Ferrasium*, was a very ancient City, and famous for the Calamity which befell it, when *Octavius Augustus* block'd up *L. Antonius*, the brother of *Marcus* the *Triumvir* within it; and having forc'd him to surrender, let him go without any harm, pardon'd the Soldiers; but executed the utmost degree of Rage, not only on the *Perusians*, but also on the *Romans*, not sparing those of the first and second Quality, who were cruelly Butcher'd at the Altar of *Julius Caesar*, tho' this seems to have been the effect rather of the brutal fury of the Soldiers than the Orders of the General. One of the Citizens of *Perusia*, having set fire to his House with all his Goods, and thrown himself into the Flame, it burnt so violently that it quickly brought the Neighbourhood into the same Calamity; and in a little time the whole Town, except the Temple of *Vulcan*, was reduc'd to Ashes. But not long after, a new City sprung up from these, which was call'd *Augusta Perusia*. Between this City and *Cortona* lies the *Lacus Thrasimenus*, or *Perusinus*, famous for the signal overthrow which the *Romans*, under the Consul *Flaminius*, in the second *Punic War*, receiv'd from *Hanibal* the *Carthaginian General*, on the North Borders of it. It was one of the first 12 *Tuscan Colonies*, and is at present a large and pretty well Inhabited City, Situated on a Hill near the *Tyber*, about 28 Miles from *Orvieto* to the North, and 60 from *Rome* to the North-West, and 12 from *Affesi*, towards the Lake now call'd, *Lago di Perugia*, or *Lugo di Castiglione*, which is about 9 Miles from the City. It has the Title of a Bishoprick, and is adorn'd with an University, and defended by a strong Cittadel.

*Citta di Castello, Tifernium Tiberinum*, is a Fortified Town, and well Inhabited, on the Confines of *Tuscany*, near the *Tyber*, 25 Miles North from *Perugia*, and gives name to the Country about it, call'd *il Contado di Citta di Castello*.

The Marquisate of *ANCONA*, or *Marca d'Ancona, Marchia Anconitana*, which anciently made up the greater part of *Picenum*, is a Fertile and Pleasant Country, producing particularly abundance of Wax and Flax; only the Air is bad. It is Bounded on the North with the Gulf of *Venice*, on the East with the Dutchy of *Urbino*, on the West with the farther *Apruzzo*, and on the South divided from *Umbria*, by the *Apennines*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Ancona.</i>	} } }	<i>Osimo.</i>	} } }	<i>Recanati.</i>
<i>Macerata.</i>		<i>Camerino.</i>		<i>Tolentino.</i>
<i>Ascoli.</i>		<i>Fermo.</i>		<i>San Severino.</i>
<i>Fesi.</i>		<i>Loretto.</i>		

*Ancona, Ancona*, is a very ancient City, said to have been Built by the *Syracusians*, who left their Country to avoid the Tyranny of *Dionysius*. It stands on the *Adriatick Shoar*, over against *Dalmatia*, near the *Promontory*, anciently call'd *Cruenerum*, now, *il monte S. Ciriaco*, about 30 Miles from *Fermo* to the North, 15 from *Osimo* to the North-East, between *Loretto* to the East, and *Sinigaglia* to the West, and 110 from *Rome* to the North. It has a very good Harbour (as *Mr. Misson* relates) but the Trade is quite ruin'd. The unevenness of its Situation, renders it very inconvenient. The Streets are narrow and dark. There are neither fair Houses, nor fine Churches in it. The Cittadel commands both the City and Haven; and at the entrance of the Mole or Peer, there is a *Triumphal Arch* of very fine white Marble; which was Erected for *Trajan* by order of the Senate. The

fore-cited Author says, that *Victuals* are very dear and scarce in this Place: Insomuch that a *Fricasse* of 3 Eggs, or as many *Pilchards*, was brought them for a Supper to serve 6 Persons; and that you must fight for them too before you can have 'em.

*Macerate, Macerata*, stands on a Hill, not far from the Ruins of *Helvia Recina*, in the midst between *Recanati* to the East, and *Tolentino* on the West, and 20 Miles South from *Ancona*. It was Built (as some say) from the Ruins of *Helvia Recina*, Ann. 410. Pope *Nicholas IV.* Erected its University in the year 1290. and Pope *John XXII.* made it a Bishoprick in the year 1586.

*Ascoli, Asculum Picenum*, stands on a Hill, near the River *Tronto*, on the Confines of the farther *Apruzzo*, and was anciently the Chief City of *Picenum*. It is divided (as *Baudrand* says) into 4 Parts, has two old Castles, 100 old Towers, 6 Bridges and 9 Gates; and is distant 20 Miles from the *Adriatick Sea* to the West, 9 from *Montalto* to the South, 18 from *Fermo*, and 20 from *Aquila*: and is a well-inhabited and Fortified Town.

*Osimo, Auximum, or Oximum*, stands on a Hill, about 10 Miles from *Ancona* to the South, and about as much from *Fesi* to the West, and *Loretto* to the East: and is in a decaying condition, tho' it has the name of a Bishoprick; which in *Italy* are generally small, as they are very numerous.

*Camerino, Camorinum*, is Situated at the Foot of the *Apennines*, on the Confines of *Umbria* in the midst between *Macerata* to the North-east, and *Spoleto* to the South-west, and 60 from *Rome* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, subject to none but the Pope, and formerly was govern'd by its own Dukes.

*Fermo, Firmium*, mention'd by *Strabo, Mela* and *Cicero* as a Town and Colony of *Picenum* in *Italy*, is pretty well Inhabited, and Built on the rising ground, near the Coast of the *Adriatick Sea*, 30 Miles South-East from *Ancona*, and 90 from *Rome* to the North-East. It was Dignified with the Title of an Archiepiscopal See by Pope *Sixtus V.* who had formerly been Bishop there.

*Loretto, Lauretum*, stands about 3 Miles from the Shoar of the *Adriatick Sea*, 10 from *Fermo* to the North-West, 20 from *Ancona* to the South-East, and near 100 from *Rome* to the North-East. It is a little Place, but very well Fortified, and has the Title of a City and Bishoprick, Erected by Pope *Sixtus V.* Anno. 1586. to which the See of *Recanati* was united Anno 1591. *Loretto* has been a famous Place for a long time, but because every body does not particularly know the reason why it is so, they must be put in mind, that it is pretended that the House in which the *Virgin Mary* is said to have been Born, where she was Betroth'd and Married to *Joseph*, where the Angel saluted her, and where the Son of God was Incarnated, was brought by the Angels from *Nazareth* to *Dalmatia*, and plac'd on a little Mountain call'd *Terfatto*, on 12 May 1291. That 3 Years and 7 Months after it was remov'd thence, and brought by them to a Forest in the Territory of *Recanati* in the *Marca d'Ancona*; from whence after it had been 8 Months there, it was remov'd a Mile further to the same Hill where it now stands. But a difference happening between 2 Brothers, to whom the ground belong'd, it was remov'd some Paces from thence, and set down in the midst of a High-way, from whence it has never stirr'd since. To prevent inconveniences that might happen, particularly a new removal, they Built a Magnificent Church,



Church, in the midst of which it remains secure against all Assaults; about which they have since Built 4 Walls. The *Santa Casa* consists of one Chamber, 44 Spans Long within, 18 Broad, and 23 High; 14 Palm. being 13 Inches English Measure. The Holy Tabernacle stands East and West, and over the little Chimney in the Chamber, in a Nich. stands the great Lady of *Loretto*, about 4 Foot High, made (as they say) of Cedar-wood, and Wrought by St. Luke. The Ornaments with which she is usually deck'd, especially the Mantle, which is Adorn'd with an infinite number of precious stones, are of an inestimable Value. She has a great number of Robes for change, and 7 different Mourning Habits for the Holy Week. Her Triple Crown was presented her by *Louis XIII* of France, who also gave a little Crown to the Infant *Jesus*, both wonderful Rich, the former being all cover'd with precious stones. The Altar made by the hands of the Apostles, and the Stone upon which St. Peter celebrated his first Mass, were Transported at the same time with the Houfe. All round the Statue there is nothing but Lamps, Statues, Pillars, and other Figures of Gold and Silver; 28 Candles of Silver and Vermilion, 12 of Massy Gold. Waxen Candles 2-Pound each. 'Tis incredible what vast numbers of Pilgrims come here to pay their Devotion, especially at *Easter*, and the Virgins Nativity; (which is Solemniz'd in the Month of September) inasmuch that in the years of greatest concourse they have counted 200,000 Pilgrims and upwards, during these 2 Festivals. The Treasury-Chamber is a spacious Room, having 10 large Presses with Folding-Doors, instead of Waincoat to the Walls; which are fill'd with pure Gold, Jewels of the greatest Value, and Vessels and Ornaments more precious than Gold; for Silver is not admitted into these Presses, but lies in confus'd Heaps, in several Places, till they have occasion for't. 'Tis impossible to imagine the vast quantity and variety of Riches that are amass'd here; and it would be in vain to attempt a particular account of them. They have been bestow'd by Princes, States, and People that own the Papal Supremacy, who have emulously strove who should out-do one another. Nor is the Treasury all the Riches that belong to this Place, There are settled Revenues, and Lands Purchas'd out of Sight, and they have Built not only a stately Church, but also a Magnificent Palace, and no doubt have Chests full of Money. There is also an Arsenal; but not very considerable. In the publick Place an admirably beautiful Fountain of white Marble, enrich'd with Statues of Brals, and a fine Statue of Pope *Sixtus V.* Erected by the Inhabitants of *Loretto*, in acknowledgment of the Privileges they receiv'd from him. The principal Trade of this little City, consists in Medals, Rosaries, Sanctified Beads, Images of *Jesus Dei's*, and such like Commodities.

*Ravenna*, *Ravennatum*, is a little City on the Top of a Hill, near the River *Potenza*, about 4 Miles from *Loretto* to the South-west, 10 from *Macerata*, and 13 from *Ancona* to the South. It has been an Episcopal See, since the year 1220, but in the year 1591, it was united to that of *Loretto*.

*Tolentino*, *Tolentinum*, is a little Town, Situated on a rising Ground, about 25 Miles from *Ancona* to the South, and 15 from *Camerino* to the North-East. It was made a Bishoprick by Pope *Sixtus V.* Ann. 1556. under the Archbishop of *Formo*, but it is now united with the See of *Macerata*.

*San-Severino*, *Septempeda*, is a little Town, on the Banks of the River *Potenza*, 6 Miles from *Tolentino*

to the West, and 12 from *Camerino* to the North. The ancient Town of *Septempeda* was destroyed by the Goths, in the year 543, and from its Ruins *Septempeda Nova* did arise, or *Fanum Sancti Severini* (from whence the Modern Italian name *San Severino*) in the year 1198. where formerly a little Castel stood, call'd *Castrum Regale*, near the Ruins of the old Town. It was Erected into a Bishoprick by Pope *Sixtus V.* Ann. 1556. whereas formerly it was in the Diocess of *Camerino*.

The Dutchy of *URBINO*, *Urbini Ducatus*, is a part of the ancient *Umbria*, beyond the Apennines, where the *Vilumini* dwelt of old; and is Bounded on the North with the Gulf of *Venice*, and *Romandiolia*, on the East with the *Marca d'Ancona*, on the South with *Ombria*, and on the West with *Tuscan*. It had formerly Dukes of its own; and the Family of *Ravero* was the last that had it; for the Male Race failing in the Person of *Francis Maria Ravero*, he sometime before he died, to prevent all discords that might happen after his Death, gave it to Pope *Urban VIII.* in the year 1631. It may be divided into these Countries, the Dutchy of *Urbino*, the County of *Montefeltro*, the Territory of *Gubio*, the Signiory of *Pesaro*, and the Vicariate of *Senigaglia*; and comprehends these Towns,

<i>Urbino.</i>	}	<i>Pesaro.</i>
<i>Cagli.</i>		<i>Sinigaglia.</i>
<i>Gubio.</i>		<i>Urbania.</i>
<i>Fossombrone.</i>		

*Urbino*, *Urbini*, stands on a Hill near the Head of the River *Foglia*, about 20 Miles from the Adriatick Shoar, 80 from *Florence* to the East, and 100 from *Rome* to the North. It was Erected into an Archbishoprick by Pope *Pius IV.* Ann. 1563. and was the Birth-place of *Polydore Virgil*, and the famous Painter *Raphael*.

*Gubio*, *Eugubium*, anciently call'd *Iguvium*, stands at the foot of the Apennines, on the Confines of the *Marca d'Ancona*, 26 Miles from *Urbino* to the South, and 16 from *Perugia*. It is an Episcopal Sec, under the Archbishop of *Urbino*, but not subject to his Jurisdiction.

*Fossombrone*, *Ficium Sempronii*, stands near the River *Marro*, about half a Mile from the old Town, 10 Miles from *Urbino* to the East, in the midst between *Pesaro* to the North, and *Cagli* to the South, about 15 Miles from either. It was Sold to *Frederick* Duke of *Urbino* by *Galazzo Malatesta*, Lord of it, for the Sum of 13000 Florins of Gold, in the time of Pope *Sixtus* the IV.

*Pesaro*, *Pisaurum*, the Name anciently of a Town and Colony of *Umbria* in Italy, according to *Pliny* and *Strabon*, is at present a large, well built and pleasantly situated Town, on the River *Foglia* near to where it empties it self into the Adriatick Sea, in the midst between *Sinigaglia* to the East, and *Rimini* to the West, and 20 Miles from *Urbino* to the North-East. It was rais'd by *Totila* King of the Goths, and rebuilt by *Belisarius* (as *Procopius* relates), and is an Episcopal Sec Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Urbino*. It is tolerably well Fortified, tho' somewhat after the old Fashion, and the Houses are generally handsome: And it is excellently provided with all the Conveniences of Life. The best Meat (as Mr. *Milner* says) costs not full two Farthings a Pound, which weighs 13 Ounces; and the Bread, Wine and other Things are proportionally cheaper: But the Air is very bad in Summer, and extremely dangerous in July and August.

*Sinigaglia*,



*Sinigaglia, Senogallia*, anciently a Town of *Umbria* in *Italy*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo*, *Paul. Diaconus* and others. *Protonius* calls it *Sena Gallica*: And it is mentioned by *Livy*, *Polybius* and *Stephanus*. It was built by the *Galli Senones*, in the 396th year of the City of *Rome*: And is now a little but delightfully situated Town in a Plain, near the Adriatick Sea, and on the Confines of the *Marca d'Ancona*, in the midst almost between *Ancona* to the East, and *Pesaro* to the West, 22 Miles from either, and 34 from *Urbino* to the East. It belong'd formerly to the Family of *Malatesta*, afterwards to the Dukes of *Urbino*, till it fell in to the Church in the time of Pope *Urban* the VIII.

*Urbania*. *Urbania*, a little, and no very old Town, distant about 7 Miles from *Urbino* to the South-West, and 9 from *Citta di Castello*. It was formerly call'd *Casfel Durante*, from *William Durant*, a Frenchman, Bishop of *Mande*, who built it, An. 1280. Pope *Urban* the VIII. erected it into a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Urbino*, and call'd the Town after himself *Urbania*, An. 1635.

*ROMANDIOLA Propria*, or *ROMAGNA*, anciently call'd *Æmilia Regio*, is bounded on the West with the *Bolognese*, on the North with the Dutchy of *Ferrara*, on the South and West with the Dutchy of *Urbino* and *Tuscany*. A great part of it towards the *Apennines* is subject to the Duke of *Tuscany*, and therefore call'd *Romandiola Florentina*. The most considerable Towns in that part of it which belongs to the Church are,

<i>Ravenna.</i>	}	{	<i>Forli.</i>	}	{	<i>Cervia.</i>
<i>Faenza.</i>			<i>Bertinero.</i>			<i>Cesena.</i>
<i>Imola.</i>			<i>Rimini.</i>			<i>Sarsina.</i>

*Ravenna*. *Ravenna*, anciently a City of *Gallia Cispadana*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo* and *Protonius*, was one of the chief Cities in that Country we now call *Italy*, and the Residence of the *Exarch* or *Governour* sent by the Emperour of the East to govern that Country. It was formerly the Principal Haven that the Romans had on the Adriatick Gulf: And its situation is represented by the ancient Geographers like that of *Venice*; but the Case is quite altered now; for not only the *Lagunes* are dried up, but the Sea has retir'd almost three Miles from it, and those Plains that were formerly under Water, are now the most fruitful Fields in *Italy*. There are to be seen in the Walls towards the Sea, great Rings of Iron, which served formerly to fasten the Vessels, and the Remains of the *Pharos* are still visible. By reason of the many Disasters which this City hath suffered by the Wars, there are but few Marks of Antiquity left in it. Without the Walls, near the ancient Haven, stands the *Mausoleum* which *Amalasuntha* erected for her Father *Theoderick*, King of the *Ostrogoths*, who kept his Court at *Ravenna*, which they have turn'd to a little Church, and call it *Rotunda*; and which is covered with a Stone 38 Foot in Diameter and 15 thick. The Cathedral is an old Church, the Nave or Body of which is supported by 56 Pillars of Marble, of the *Archipelago*. There are several other fine Churches, as, that of the *Theatines*, *St. Vitalis*, *St. Apolinarius*, *St. Romaldus*, *St. Andrew*, *St. Celsus*. In the Great Place stands a fair brazen Statue of Pope *Alexander* the VII. and at the other end of it are two Columns, upon which were the ancient Patron, and the Arms of *Venice*, while *Ravenna* belong'd to that State; but since it belong'd to the Church, the Pope has plac'd on these Pillars, the Statues of *Victor* and

*Apolonarius*, who are the Patrons of *Ravenna*. It was taken by the Longobards in the Year, 744. and is now the chief City of *Romandiola*, distant about 45 Miles from *Bologna* to the East, 102 from *Ancona* to the North-West, 60 from *Florence* to the North-East, and 42 from *Ferrara* to the South-East.

*Faenza, Faventia*, anciently a Town in *Gallia Cisalpina*, according to *Livy* and *Pliny*, upon the River *Ancmo*, now *Lamone*, in the midst between *Imola* to the West, and *Forli* to the East, and 8 from the Confines of the Great Duke of *Tuscany's* Dominions, 25 Miles West from *Ravenna* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

*Imola* or *Fumola, Forum Cornelii*, anciently a City belonging to the *Lingones* in *Gallia Cispadana*, sometimes call'd *Connelium*, and *Syllæ Forum*, is at present a pretty near Town, and well Inhabited, distant about 20 Miles from *Bologna*, to the East, 10 from *Faenza*, 15 from *Ravenna*, and 16 from the Confines of the Dominions of *Florence* to the North: and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

*Forli. Forum Livii*, anciently a City of the *Senones*, in *Gallia Cispadana*, Situated in a Plain near the Mountains, 15 Miles from *Ravenna* to the South, and 4 from *Citta di Sole*, and the Confines of *Tuscany*; and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

*Rimini, Ariminum*, stands in a Plain, on the Coast of the Adriatick Gulf, at the Mouth of the River *Ariminus*, now *la Marecchia*. *Baudrand*, (who Travelled that Country not very long ago, and is reckon'd a pretty good Geographer) calls it *culta & elegans*; but Mr. *Misson* says, it is a little poor City. It is distant 20 Miles from *Pesaro* to the North-West, 25 from *Ravenna* to the South-East, somewhat less from *Urbino* to the North, and in the midst between *Bologna* to the West, and *Ancona* to the South-East: it was Fortified by *Sigismundus Pandolphus Malatesta*, but at present it has only a Wall, and that in no good condition. The Bridge of Marble, Built by *Augustus* and *Tiberius*, and the Triumphal Arch Erected by *Augustus*, the Ruins of an Amphitheatre, the Tower of Brick, which was anciently the *Pharos*, but now encompass'd with Gardens (since the Sea has fallen back half a Mile) are the only Monuments of Antiquity now remaining. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

*Cervia. Cervia*, anciently call'd *Phicocle*, *Ficocle*, and *Ficode*, stands in the midst of a Boggy Country, near the Coast of the Adriatick Gulf, about 12 Miles from *Ravenna* to the East, and 15 from *Rimini*. It is but thinly Inhabited, by reason the Air is very bad, insomuch (as *Baudrand* relates) there are not above 400 Inhabitants in it; but it has the Title of a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

The Country call'd *BOLOGNESE*, *Bononiensis Ager*, was anciently Inhabited by a part of the *Boii*, and *Lingones* in *Gallia Cispadana*; and is Bounded on the North with the Dutchy of *Ferrara*, on the East with *Romandiola*, properly so call'd, on the West with the Dutchy of *Modena*, and on the South with *Tuscany*, from which it is separated by the *Apennine Mountains*. It's Soil is very Fertile and well Improv'd: and it was given to the Church by *Pepin King of France*, and *Charles the Great*. The most considerable Places in it are, *Bologna*, and *Benetivoglio*, tho' there are several others of less Note.

*Bologna*,



*Bononia*, *Bononia* (commonly call'd the *Fat*) is plac'd in *Gallia Cispadana* by *Pliny*, *Liwy* and *Tacitus*: a Town at first call'd *Felina*, from *Felinus* a Tuscan King, by whom it is said to have been Built. It stands on the little River *Reno*, 25 Miles from *Ferrara*, and 32 from *Verice* to the South, 32 from *Florence*, and 192 from *Rome* to the North-West, between *Modena* to the West, and *Arezzo* to the East, 125 from the former, and 135 from the other. It has been the Seat of an Archbishop, who has also the Title of a Prince of the Empire, since the year 1532, that Pope Gregory XIII. Erected it; and is Greater and Richer, as Mr. *Millet* relates, than *Florence*, and containing more Inhabitants by a third part. All the Fortifications of this City is a single Wall; for when it was submitted to the Pope, *Ann.* 1273. (*Nicholas* being then in the Chair, they made an Honourable Condition with his Holiness, viz. That he should never Bindle them by a Citadel, or Confiscate their Estates upon any pretext whatsoever; and that they should have an Auditor of the *Rota*, and an Ambassador at *Rome*. The Houses are generally Built of Stones or Brick, Plaster'd over, and the Streets are pretty straight. The University was Founded by *Thomas* the younger, *Ann.* 1213, but it owes most of its Splendor to *Cassiodorus*. There are several fine Churches in this City, particularly that of *St. Peter*, which is the greatest; and in which is to be seen *Cassiodorus* Mark an Line, drawn on a Copper Plate, from the Pavement, and is 228 Foot long. The Church of the *Dominicans*, in which are the Chapel and Tomb of *St. Dominic*, is very magnificent. There are also several stately Palaces in this City, whereof that which belongs to General *Caprara* is the finest. The Cardinal Legate, and the *Generale* with his Counsellors Lodge in the Publick Palace, above the Gate of which there is a Statue in Brass of *Gregory XIII.* which weighs 11000 Pounds, and on one side of the Gate, that of *Boniface VIII.* There are likewise in this City several Cabinets of Curiosities, particularly that of *Aldrandus*. It is also worth ones while to observe the great Tower *Azzurra*, which was Built by *Gerrard Asinelli*, *Ann.* 1119. It is 376 Foot high, as that of the other Tower near to it, call'd *Garisenda* from its Founder, is 137. The latter was Built by *Otto*, and *Philip Garisendi*, *Ann.* 1116, and leans to one side like the Tower of *Pisa*; and its inclination is about 9 Foot. The flining Stones, known by the name of *Bononian Stones*, are found on the Hill *Paderna*, about 3 Miles from the City. There are in this City 400 Silk-mills; and the Trade consists chiefly in Wax, Hemp, Flax, Hams, Sauciges, Soap, Snuff and Perfumes; and sometime their little Dogs turn'd to a very good Account.

*Bonivoglia*, *Bonivoglia*, formerly call'd *Pons Peliculus*, stands about 11 Miles to the North of *Bologna*, toward *Ferrara*. It was formerly a very fine Place, but now is almost quite Ruin'd. From hence the *Bonivoglia*'s had their name, who had the Jurisdiction of this Place many years.

The Duchy of *FERARRA*, properly so call'd, became a part of the Ecclesiastical State, after the Death of *Charlus II.* *Ann.* 1598, and is Bounded on the North with the *Polesine di Rovigno*, on the West with the Duchy of *Mantua*, on the South with the *Bolognese*, and *Romandiola* properly so call'd

and on the East with the Gulf of *Venice*. It is divided (by *Baudrand*, into these following Parts, *il Polesine di Ariano*, *il Polesine di Ferrara*, *il Polesine di S. Giorgio*, *la Valle di Comacchio*, *la Valle di Marara*, *la Valle di Maremonta*; and the most considerable Towns in it are, *Ferrara*, *Comacchio*, and *Cento*.

*Ferrara*, *Forum Aferi*, anciently call'd *Forum Aferi*, stands on a little Branch of the *Po*, call'd *Po Mereto*, from whence there is a Canal made to *Francolino*, about 6 Miles long, for the conveniency of Commerce. It stands in the midst between *Modena* and *Comacchio*, and about 25 Miles from *Bologna* to the North-East, 32 from the Adriatick Sea to the West, and 60 from *Verice* to the South: While it remain'd in the Hands of the Princes of the House of *Este*, it might justly have been reckon'd one of the most flourishing Cities in *Italy*; but since it became a part of the Ecclesiastical State, it has mightily decayed, inasmuch that at present tho' it be a large and pretty handsome Town, it is very ill Peopl'd, Poor and almost Desolate. In the year 1570, in the space of 40 Hours, it suffer'd 16 shocks of a dreadful Earthquake, which had well nigh reduc'd it all to Rubbish. The Citadel, which was Built by *Clement VIII.* and which they say, cost 200000 Crowns, is still in good order; but the other Fortifications are quite neglected. The Ducal Palace, the Marquis *de Villa's* House, the Cathedral and several other Churches and Convents, are worth a Traveller's Notice; but do not deserve a particular description.

*Comacchio*, *Comacolum*, or *Comacina*, is a little Town standing in a Marshy Ground, about 3 Miles from the Adriatick Shoar to the West, 20 from *Ravenna* to the North, and 35 from *Ferrara* to the East. It is Inhabited only by a few Fishermen, by reason of its unwholsom Situation; but has been mightily distress'd by the Venetians, who in the year 932, almost quite destroy'd it. It is however an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Ravenna*.

The Republick of *St. MARINO* has its name from a Mountain in the Province of *Romandiola*, and a Town of that same Name; which is so call'd from a certain Holy Man call'd *Marinus*, who liv'd a Hermit there in the time of the Emperor *Dioclesian*. It has been a free State ever since the year 600, and has under its Jurisdiction several little Towns and Villages in the adjacent Country; for in the year 1100, in the time of the Emperor *Otto* the III. it Bought the Castel of *Pennavesta* from the Count of *Montferrat*; and that of *Casola*, in the Reign of the Emperor *Fredrick Barbarus*; each of which places is about a Mile distant from *St. Marino*. In the year 1463, Pope *Pius II.* gave them the Castels and Villages of *Serravalle*, *Faenza*, *Mongiardano*, and *Ficrentino*, and the Village of *Piagge*. It had several others, but the Dukes of *Urbino* have taken them from this State: so that the whole Inhabitants of this little State, are not thought to be above 6000. The Town of *St. Marino* (*Titulus*) stands on a steep Hill, and is pretty well Fortified. It is Govern'd by 2 Officers, call'd Captains, who are chang'd twice a year, viz. in the Months of *March* and *September*. This Town is distant above 30 Miles from *Ravenna* to the South-East, 21 from *Urbino* to the North-East, and about 60 from *Florence* to the East.



## C H A P. XIII.

*The Kingdom of Naples, Regnum, Neapolitanum.*

**T**HE Kingdom of *Naples*, which comprehends those Parts of *Italy*, that were anciently call'd *Samnium*, *Campania*, *Apulia*, and *Magna Græcia*, owes its Modern name to the City of *Naples*; it having been formerly call'd the Kingdom of *Sicily*, on this side the *Pharo*, (*viz.* of *Messina*) It came to be reduc'd into the form of a Kingdom (as *Cluverius* and others relate) in this manner. About the year of Christ 1000. the Saracens being in possession of this Country and the Island of *Sicily*, one *Tancred* a Norman, who had 12 Sons, and not over-much to give them, came together with them into *Italy*, and offer'd his Service against the Saracens; who being happily expell'd *Italy* and *Sicily*; he and his Sons had large Possessions assign'd them, both in the Kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*. After which his Son *Robert* was made first Duke of *Apulia* and *Calabria*; whose Son *Roger* was Created King of *Sicily* and *Naples*; and both together were call'd the Kingdom of the 2 *Sicily's*; for that which is now call'd the Kingdom of *Naples*, was then call'd *Sicily* on this side the *Pharo*. and the Island it self *Sicily* beyond the *Pharo*. *Roger* was succeeded by his Son *William*, Ann. 1135. His Son *William*, surnam'd the Good, (as his Father had been call'd the Bad) Succeeded him. Ann. 1166. who left both the Kingdoms to his Bastard Son *Tancred*: against whom the Pope conceiving a mortal hatred, and resolving to do him a Mischief, caus'd *Henry VI.* Son of the Emperor *Frederick I.* Duke of *Swaben* to Marry one *Constantia*, whom he brought out of a Nunnery, and declar'd him Heir of those Kingdoms. The Emperor *Frederick II.* *Henry* the VIth's Son by that Marriage Married *Iole*, *John* of *Brenne's* Daughter, King of *Jerusalem*, and by that means laid claim to the Title, and therefore the succeeding Kings of *Sicily* were likewise call'd Kings of *Jerusalem*. The Popes still entertaining an inveterate hatred against this *Frederick* and his Posterity, Pope *Urban VIII.* prevail'd with *Charles I.* Earl of *Anjou*, to come from *France* and Invade *Manfred*; and having first Kill'd him, and then *Conradin Frederick* the II'd's Grand-child, he took Possession of the Kingdom. But he did not enjoy it long; for he with his Frenchmen did so oppress the *Sicilians*, that they form'd a Conspiracy against them, and on *Easter Eve*, Ann. 1282. upon a Signal given as was agreed, put all the French to the Sword; which Action is still known by the name of the *Sicilian Vespers*. *Peter* of *Arragon*, who had Married *Constantia*, *Manfred's* Daughter, and whom *Conrad* a little before his Death had appointed his Heir, deliver'd the *Sicilians* from the Tyranny of the French, and having made *Charles II.* who had been beat at Sea, his Prisoner, did not dismiss him before he had consented to content himself with *Naples*, *Calabria*, *Apulia*, and *Tarentum*, and resign *Sicily* and *Sardinia* to the *Arragonians*. *Robert* who in vain attempted to recover *Sicily*, Succeeded *Charles*, to whom Succeed *Joanna I.* After her *Charles* of *Durazzo*, then *Ladislaus*, next *Joanna II.* who first nam'd *Alphonfus* of *Aragon* her Heir, but repenting of that before 2 years were at an end, She nam'd *Lewis IV.* Duke of *Anjou*, who disputed the Kingdom of *Naples* with *Alphonfus*, till the year 1434. that both

he and *Joanna* Died. Afterwards *Alphonfus* did expel *Rene*, who pretended to succeed his Brother: and by his latter Will appointed *Ferdinand I.* his Bastard, his Heir: with whom *John* Duke of *Lorraine*, *Rene's* Son, disputed the Title, and was Crown'd by Pope *Pius II.* But after several Battels, fought with various success, was forc'd to leave the Kingdom; *Charles VIII.* King of *France* claiming the Crown as Heir to the Earl of *Anjou*. *Charles* did also drive *Ferdinand II.* out of the Kingdom, but shortly after, *Charles's* Affairs obliging him to return to *France*, *Ferdinand* was call'd home by the *Neapolitans*. At last *Frederick*, *Ferdinand's* Uncle, being at once attack'd by *Lewis XII.* of *France*, and *Ferdinand* the Catholic, and not being able to make head against both, surrender'd himself to the former, and let his Kingdom fall to the Conquerors; but a strife arising about the dividing of it, they went by the Ears, and the *Spaniards* drove the French clear out: and *Ferdinand* united *Sicily*, and *Naples* to his other Dominions. And so ever since the year 1504. it hath been subject to the King of *Spain*, who pays a certain acknowledgment of Homage due to the Pope, as a white Gennet, and a Sum of Money, presented with great Ceremony every year, in Testimony of this Kingdom's dependence on the Holy Sec.

This Country has been variously divided at different times. Under its first Kings, it was divided into 4 Parts, *viz.* The Provinces of *Lavaro*, *Abruzzo*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*: afterwards into 7 Provinces, and at last into 12. of which we shall treat particularly hereafter. It is Bounded on the North with the Gulf of *Venice*, on the South with the *Tuscan Sea*, on the East with the Mouth of the Gulf of *Venice* and the *Ionian Sea*, and on the West with the Ecclesiastical State: and is in length (according to *Cluverius*) from the River *Tronto*, to the Promontory now call'd *Capo Spartivento*, 360 Miles, in Breadth, from the Promontory *Massa* to *Monte di St. Angelo*, 120.

The Air in some places is excessively hot, especially on the South-side of the *Apennines*, but on the other Temperate, except in *Apulia*. It is almost every where well provided with Springs and Rivers, which flow from both sides of the *Apennines*. The Soil produces Wine and Oyl, and pretty good Pasture: and the *Neapolitan* Horses are in great esteem. Also good store of Almonds, Olives, Figs, Citrons, Oranges, Grapes, Corn, Hemp, Line, Pulse, Anniseed and Coriander Seed. There are said to be no Venomous Creatures in this Country, except the *Tarantula* and *Chersydros*, an amphibious kind of Serpent; and the Locust that sometimes annoys the product of the Ground. The Soil of *Campania*, is so Fertile, that it produces the same Flowers twice a year. The Air of the hither Principality is reckon'd very temperate, and the People live to a great Age. The farther Principality abounds in Cattle, and several sorts of good Fruit. *Basilicate* produced Saffron, and plenty of Honey and Wax. *Calabria*, especially affords good store of Manna. The hither *Calabria*, produces Corn, Oyl, and Mulberries, the farther excels in good Horses, and fine Honey. *Apulia*



*p. 12.* by reason of the excessive Heat, is so plagued with Flies, that this is a common Proverb, If one would have a fore-taste of Hell Torments, let him go spend a Summer in *Abruzzo*. In *Capitanata*, the Soil is dry and sandy, and the Grass short, but very good. In *Bari*, the Air is pretty Temperate, but the *Tarantula* is very Troublesome, and so are some other little Serpents, whom the Stork is a great Enemy to. *Otranto* is said to produce as much Oyl as might serve all *Italy*. In *Molise* there's so great plenty of Venison, that it is much cheaper than Beef or Mutton. The higher *Abruzzo* is the coolest place of the Kingdom, yet produces plenty of Corn, Wine, Oyl and Saffron.

As to the Genius and Manners of the Neapolitans, we shall only tell you the Proverb that passes commonly in *Italy*, viz. The Kingdom of *Naples* is a Paradise, but the Inhabitants Devils. They are naturally Seditious, and abominably unclean. They are very Sumptuous in their Apparel, especially on Sundays and Holy days, insomuch that 'tis hard to distinguish a Lady from a Cobler's Wife.

It is very well known the Kingdom of *Naples* is Govern'd by a Viceroy sent by the King of *Spain*, whose Government is commonly for 3 years: He is commonly one of the Grandees of *Spain*; and the People have no great reason to brag of the Gentleness of his Government. The Revenues of this Kingdom are said to be about 300000 Ducats, and if we may believe Mr. *Laffes*, the Kingdom is able to raise 150000 Foot, and 100000 Horse. The number of Cities and great Towns in this Kingdom are said to be 145. Archbishopricks 20. Bishopricks 125. and the number of Princes, Dukes, Marquesses and Earls is incredible.

The latest and most common division of the Kingdom of *Naples*, as we said before, is into 12 Provinces, as you may see in the following Table.

- I. The Province of *Latara*.
- II. The farther Principality.
- III. The hither Principality.
- IV. *Basilicata*.
- V. The hither *Calabria*.
- VI. The farther *Calabria*.
- VII. The hither *Abruzzo*.
- VIII. The farther *Abruzzo*.
- IX. The County of *Molise*.
- X. The Province of *Capitanata*.
- XI. The Province of *Bari*.
- XI. The Province of *Otranto*.

The Province of *LAVARO*, *Terra Laboris*, comprehends a part of the ancient *Campaniana*, *Felix*, (so call'd by *Pliny* for its fruitfulness) and *Latinum Novum*; and is Bounded on the North with the Country of *Abruzzo*, on the East with the Country of *Molise*, and the farther Principality, on the South with the hither, and on the West with the *Tyrrhenian Sea*, and the Champaign of *Rome*. It is watered by the *Garigliano*, and the *Volturno*: and is said to be about 74 Miles long, and 40 broad. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Naples.</i>	}	<i>Gaeta.</i>
<i>Puzzoli.</i>		<i>Aquino.</i>
<i>Capua.</i>		<i>Sora.</i>
<i>Sorrento.</i>		<i>Cassino.</i>
<i>Nola.</i>		<i>Venafro.</i>
<i>Aversa.</i>		<i>Tiano.</i>
<i>Cajazzo.</i>	}	

*Naples*, *Neapolis*, which *Cicero*, *Pliny* and *Strabo* place in *Campania Felix*, was anciently call'd *Parthenope*, from the Sea-Nymph, or *Cirene* of that Name, whose Inchantments, as the Story goes, *Ulysses* and his Companions had enough to do to escape: or from *Eumelus* the King of *Theffaly's* Daughter, who is said to have brought hither a Colony. Some are of opinion that the Grecians Built it, and call'd it *Neapolis*; others affirm that *Augustus* gave it that name; but however that may be, it is certainly one of the noblest and finest Cities in the World, distant about 100 Miles from *Rome* to the South East, 200 from *Palermo* to the North-east, 200 from *Florence* to the South-east, and about 300 from *Venice* Lat. 41° 0. Long. 32° 40. It is seated on a Gulf of the same name with the City, and has a large and safe Harbour to the Mediterranean Sea. It is a large and well Peop'd City, and is reckon'd nine Miles in compass round the Walls, and 18 if you include the Suburbs. It is divided into 29 Parts, call'd *Ottine*, and is Pav'd throughout with large square Stones, Chequer-wise. The Streets are straight, and most of 'em broad. The Houses are high and uniform, and have flat Roofs, and are generally very beautiful. The Sea washes it on the South-side, on the North there are little Hills, that rise insensibly into *Campania Felix*, on the East, a Plain which leads to Mount *Vesuvius*, and on the West the upper Town. There are in this City many very fine Palaces, viz. that of the Viceroy, those of the Dukes of *Matalone*, *Gravina*, *Airola*, and *de la Tour*, &c. The three Castles which defend the City; the Academy, which they call *Studii Novovi*, the Academy for Riding the great Horse, the Convents, Arsenal and Magazines for the Gallies, are all very fine Buildings. There are also many Fountains, which are very convenient, and serve to adorn the City. But above all, the Number and Magnificence of Churches surpasses imagination. Their Frontispices and Gates, the Chappels, Altars and Tombs, seem to be pieces of the finest Architecture in the World. One that would see the rarest Pictures, Sculptures, and Vessels of Gold and Silver, must go to the Churches. The Roofs, Wainscots, Walls are all cover'd with pieces of precious Marble, most Artificially laid together, or with Compartments of *Bass Relievo*, or Joiners Work, Guilded and Enrich'd with the Work of the most famous Painters. There is nothing to be seen, but Jasper, Porphyre, Mosaick of all Fashions, all Master-pieces. In a Cloyster belonging to the Carthusians is to be seen, the famous Crucifix of *Michael Angelo*, drawn as they say, after the Life from a certain Peasant, whom that Painter Crucified for the purpose. The Picture is upon Wood, and is not above half a Foot high. Mr. *Misson* finds fault with *Michael*, for he says the Crucifix holds his Head exactly straight, which is not like a Man expiring on a Cross.

Altho' the greatest part of the Antiquities of this Place be buried in the Ruins, yet there are several to be seen still. The Front of *St. Paul* major, one of the Theatine Churches, is the old Frontispice of the Temple of *Apollo*. The Columns of *San. Restituta* are said to have been taken from Temple of *Neptune*. There are also some remains of an Amphitheatre, and a Statue of the Nile, Supported by a Crocodile: Also the Head and neck of a large Brazen Horse, without a Bridle; which formerly stood in one of the Publick Places of *Naples*, as an Emblem of its Liberty, when it was a Common-wealth; but King *Conrad* caus'd a Bit to be put in the Mouth of it,



it, to signifie they had now lost it. In this City, as in most places of *Italy*, the Women are all hid. The Habits and Equipages of this City are of Black and Dark Colours. They are forbidden to Wear Gold or Silver, or Silk upon Silk, and the Spanish Dress is generally used. The greatest Lord can keep but 2 *Staffieri*, or Footmen, and their Coaches are for the most part drawn by Mules. The Trade of this City is much decay'd; and consists at present in Soap, Snuff, Stockens, Waistcoats of fine *Naples* Silk, &c.

It will not be improper to subjoyn to this short Description of *Naples*, a brief account of those Things that are most Remarkable in the Neighbourhood of it. In the first place the famous Mount *Vesuvius*, to which the Ancients gave different Names, but all ending or sounding very like this. It is now call'd by the Italians *Vesuvio*, or *Monte di Somma*, and is distant about 8 Miles from the City of *Naples*. During the first 4 Miles along the Coast, there are many good Villages, and a very well Manur'd Country, which seems to have receiv'd little or no Damage by the Eruptions; but tho' one may travel on Horseback 2 Miles further, it must be through loose Stones, and Heaps of burnt Earth, which the Mountain hath vomited up; and the further one advances, he finds the Ground Crack'd, Dry, and Cover'd with calcin'd Stones, and the Channels of Sulphur and Bitumen, which have run down the Mountain. To omit the less formidable and more recent Eruptions, since the Birth of Christ it is said to have had Twelve dreadful ones, particularly that in *December*, 1631. when the Sea retir'd several times, and left the Ships dry on the Shoar, and the Floods of Fire ran in great Streams into the Sea, many Villages were turn'd topsy turvy, and above 30000 Persons, with an infinite number of Cattle Perish'd; and the Beautiful City of *Naples* was threatned with its last Calamity. But we must refer the Reader to be more fully and particularly inform'd, concerning the more ancient Eruptions before *Augustus's* time, and those that have happen'd since the middle of this Age, with the several Alterations they have made on the Mountain, to those Authors who have wrote fully and Learnedly on the Subject, particularly *Julius Caesar Recupitatus*, and *Mr. Misson*; the latter of which tells us, that the Country about it is very Rich, and that the East-side of the Mountain it self bears abundance of good Vines; and 'tis from hence we have the famous *Greco*, *Malateste*, and *Lacryme Christi*.

Between the Suburbs of *Naples* and *Puzzoli*, there's a little Hill call'd *Pausilypus*; which has a most charming Situation, and is all cover'd over with Houses of Pleasure, and abundance of excellent Vines, and is very well cultivated. The Ascent to it is not very difficult, and might have been easie, but out of an extravagant humour, they have Pierc'd the Mountain, and made a Hole, which is a shorter, but much more troublesom Passage. This Cave is call'd the *Grotta* of *Puzzoli*, and is in some Places cut through the Rock, in other Places thro' the Sand. It is almost a Mile Long, between 30 and 40 Foot high, and about 18 Broad. It has no light but at the ends, and thro' a little Hole in the middle, over an Oratory which is made in the Rock, by enlarging that part of the Way a little. This is an ancient Work, and *Seneca* makes mention of it. It is said to have been made by one *Cocceius*; but whether he was a Prince of that Country, or only the Undertaker, is no easie matter to tell.

A little beyond *Pausilypus* is the Lake *Agnano*, be-

tween two little Hills. It is round, and about a Mile in Circumference. On the Banks of it are two Caves, which deserve to be taken notice of, viz. the Caves call'd the *Bath* of *S. German*, and the *Grotto del Cane*. The former of which is said to be an excellent Remedy for the Gout, and several other Distempers; for you no sooner go down 3 or 4 Stairs, than you are Seiz'd with a Heat, which smells of Brimstone, and puts one into a sudden Sweat. The other is as it were the beginning of a Cave, at the Foot of a Hill, and is 9 or 10 Foot Long or Deep,  $4\frac{1}{2}$  Broad, and 5 High. There arises out of the Earth in this *Grotto*, a thin and piercing Exhalation, without any Smoak, which Seizes on the Breath, and choaks one in a Moment; but two Foot or less from the Earth there is no danger, because the Spirits or Steams, grow thin, and are disperfed. The Experiment has been tryed on Dogs, and other Animals, and sometimes on Malefactors; who in an instant lost their Breath, and seem'd to be quite Dead, and would really have been so, if they had not immediately been put into the Lake, (which is not above 20 Paces from this *Grotto*) where in a Minute they resume their Spirits, and come to themselves again; which effect the open and free Air has often produc'd.

*Puzzoli*, *Puteoli*, Anciently a great and famous City, which *Pliny* says was formerly call'd *Dicæarchia*, and *Delos Minor*, according to *Festus*, because there was a Temple there Dedicated to *Apollo*, after the manner of that at *Delos*. It was Built by the *Sami*, (according to *Stephanus*) and is said to owe its name to the word *Putor*, Stink or Rankness, because of the Sulphurous Exhalations that arise near it. It was anciently (according to *Strabo*) a Haven belonging to the *Cumani*, and that which is now call'd the Gulf of *Naples*, was then call'd *Sinus Cumanus*. It was the most famous Port on all that Coast, for the Corn and Goods brought thither from *Egypt*: And here were the Houses of Pleasure, and delightful Retreats of the Roman Emperors; but now it is a very inconsiderable Place, about 8 Miles from *Naples* to the West, and 3 from *Baja*. Wars, Earthquakes, Insults of the Sea, and Time, that brings all things to Destruction, having almost reduc'd it to nothing. The great quantity and variety of stately Ruins that are to be found about it, do evidently demonstrate its former Magnificence. There are the Ruins of an Amphitheatre, the *Arena* of which was 172 Foot long, and 88 broad: near to which there are other Ruins, almost quite Buried, which they say was anciently a Labyrinth, but it looks like those of a Fish-pond. The Cathedral is Built on the Ruins of a Temple of *Jupiter*. Betwixt the City and the Amphitheatre, are to be seen the Ruins of a Temple of *Diana*: and when the Sea is Turbulent, it throws out several marks of the Magnificence and Richness of the ancient Palaces of this Place, among which are oftentimes Cornelian Stones, Agats, Jasper, Amethysts, &c. and between this and the Lake *Lucrin*, are to be seen the remains, as they call 'em, of the famous Bridge, which *Caligula* Built between *Baja* and *Puzzoli*; tho' there is better reasons for believing that *Caligula's* Bridge was of Boats, and not of Stone or Bricks.

The Lake of *Lucrin* is about 2 Miles from *Puzzoli*, and is now but a little Pond (as *Mr. Misson* says)  $\frac{1}{2}$  Mile long, 100 Paces broad, and about 70 from the Sea; to which it was formerly joyn'd, but separated from it by Art. The Waters of it are Salt; and the Oysters found in it were anciently reckon'd the best. The new Mountain, call'd *Monte Nuovo*, hath almost



fill'd it up. This Mountain was brought forth in the Night, between the 15th and 17th of September 1538. Its perpendicular Height is about 400 Fathoms, and its Circuit about 3000 Paces. On the other side of the Lucrin Lake stands another Mountain, call'd *Monte di Christo*, and about a large Mile from it is the Lake of *Averno*, that other Gulf of Hell; which is as big almost as that of *Agnano*. Whatever *Virgil*, *Lucretius*, *Silius Italicus*, *Pliny*, and others have written concerning the deadly Vapours that ascended from it, and Choaked those poor Creatures, whose hard Fate it was to fly over it, it is certain says Mr. *Misson* that now Birds fly over it, and swim in it, without any harm.

Near to this, is the Cave which they call the *Grotto of Sybil*, the principal Entry to which, they say, was near *Cuma*, but is now fill'd up. It has been about a League long, 10 Foot broad, and 12 high; and does not at all seem to be the Lodging of *Sybil*, it being too large for her either to have Made, or Liv'd in. The Italian *Cimerians*, who liv'd between *Bais*, and the Lake *Averno*, were notorious Robbers and Murderers. seem rather to have been both the Work-men and Inhabitants of it. Read Mr. *Misson's* Discourse concerning it.

*Capua*. *Capua*, anciently a famous City in *Campania Felix*, standing in a Plain, near the River *Vulturnus*, and Built by the *Osci*, according to *Halicanus*. It Revolted to *Hannibal* in the second Punick War, which so enraged the Romans against it, that they laid Siege to it, and having taken it, put 30 of their Senate to Death, made 300 of their greatest Men of their City Prisoners, and Sold a vast number of the Inhabitants. It was Raz'd by *Genfericus*, King of the Vandals, Rebuilt by *Narses*, and afterwards destroy'd by the Longobards. From its Ruins there arose another *Capua*, upon a Neighbouring Hill call'd *Piscus*; but it being often almost quite destroy'd by Fire, Count *Lando*, and *Landolphus* the Bishop remov'd it to the Place where New *Capua* now stands, about the year 856. It is Situated in a most fertile Plain, on the River *Volturno*, 2 Miles from the Ruins of the ancient City of *Capua*, 16 from *Naples* to the North, as many from *Sessa* to the South-East, and 12 from the Tuscan Shoar. Pope *John XIII.* made it an Archbishoprick, in the year 968. *Conrad*, Son of the Emperor *Frederick II.* did almost quite Ruin it; which with several other Calamities it hath since suffered, have put it in a Decaying condition, insomuch that at present (as Mr. *Misson* Relates) it is a very small and inconsiderable City in all respects.

*Sorrento*, *Surrentum*, mention'd by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and *Livy*, as a Town in *Campania*, stands on the Shoar of the Gulf of *Naples*, in a pleasant Plain, on the Confines of the hither Principality, 24 Miles from *Naples* to the South, and 6 from *il Capo Campanello*, or *Promontorium Minerva*. It is thought by some to owe its name to the *Sirenes*, who had their Residence near this Place. The *Surrentini Colles*, (now *la Montagna Sorrento*) were famous for the excellent Wine that grew upon them.

*Nola*. *Nola*, anciently the name of a Town and Colony in *Campania*, stands about 12 Miles from *Naples* to the East, and somewhat nearer to *Sarno* and *Aversa*. It is pretty well Inhabited, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Naples*. *Augustus Caesar* Died in or near this Place, and *St. Paulinus* its famous Bishop was Born in it.

*Aversa*, or *Adversa*. *Aversa* is a little City, Situated in a delightful Plain, in the midst between *Capua*

to the North, and *Naples* to the South. It is said to have been Built from the Ruins of *Atella*, or *S. Arpino*, by *Robert Guiscard* Duke of *Normandy*. It was destroyed by *Charles I.* King of both *Sicilies*, and afterwards Rebuilt. The Bishoprick of *Atella* was Translated hither by Pope *Leo IX.* and tho' the Bishop Lives within the See of *Naples*, he is not under that Archbishop's Jurisdiction.

*Gaeta*, *Caleta*, anciently a City belonging to the *Aurunci* in *Latium Novum*, according to *Ptolemy*, is Situated on a Rock, on the Tyrrhenian Shoar, about 40 Miles from *Naples* to the West, 155 from *Rome*, and 15 from the Confines of the Pope's Dominions to the East. Between this Town and *Formia*, (now *Mola*) stood the *Vila Ciceronis*, call'd also *Formianum*, where *Cicero* was Murder'd by an Order from *Antonius*, by *Herennius* a Centurion, and *Papilius* a *Tribun*, (for whom he had once Pleaded when he was Try'd for Murder) in the 64th year of his Age. Here are to be seen, the Tomb of *Charles of Bourbon*, Constable of *France*, who was Kill'd at the Sacking of *Rome*: and an ancient *Mausoleum* of *Minutius Plancus*, now call'd the Tower of *Orlando*, or *della Guardia*. The Cathedral Church, (the Steeple of which they say, was Built by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, by way of Penance for his Sins) is very well worth the seeing. There is a Pillar in it, which they pretend belongs to *Solomon's* Temple, and an ancient Vessel in form of a Bell, made of white Marble, which serves for a Font in the Baptistry of the Church: and is a curious piece of Work. This Place is defended by a Garrison of Spaniards; and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Capua*, but not subject to his Jurisdiction.

*Aquino*, *Aquinum*, anciently the name of a Town and Colony, on the Confines of *Campania*, stands on the Rivulet *Melfa*, not far from the *Liris* or *Garigliano*, and about 5 Miles from the Borders of the Pope's Dominions, and 45 from *Naples*. It was Sack'd by the Emperor *Conrad*, and is at present a place of no great note; but an Episcopal See, and the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas*, that famous Schoolman.

*Sora*. *Sora*, stands on the *Liris*, or *Garigliano*, about 16 Miles from *Aquino* to the South, 28 from *Gaeta* to the North, and 55 from *Rome* to the East. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to none; and the Title of a Dutchy, impropriated to the Family of *Boncompagno*, and the Birth-place of the Learned Cardinal *Cesar Baronius*.

*Cassino*, *Casinum*, anciently a City of the *Volsci*, in *Latium Novum*, on the Confines of *Campania*, but now lying in its Rubbish: from which hath arisen the Town of *S. Germano*, distant about 48 Miles from *Naples* to the North, towards *Aquila*, 5 from the River *Garigliane*, 6 from *Aquino* to the North-West, and 12 from the Confines of the Pope's Dominions. Near to this Place is the Hill call'd *Monte Cassino*, upon which stands the fair Monastery of the *Benedictines*, where their Founder Liv'd many years, and where he also Died.

*Venafro*. *Venafrum*, is a little Town Situated upon a rising Ground, near the River *Volturno*, 26 Miles from *Gaeta* to the South-East, and 22 from *Capua* to the South-West. It is Honoured with the Title of a Principality, which one of the Family of *Sabelli* in *Rome* enjoy, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Capua*.

*Teano*, *Teanum Sidicinum*, is a small Town, Situated on a Hill, in the midst between *Sessa* to the West, and *Calvi* to the South-East, 6 Miles from either,



either, 12 from *Capua*, and 26 from *Cassino*. It is an Episcopal Sec, under the Archbishop of *Capua*.

The Farther *PRINCIPALITY*, *Principatus Ulterior*, anciently Inhabited by the *Hirpini*, lyes towards the Appennine Mountains, between the *Capitanata* to the North and East, *Campania Felix* to the West, and the hither Principality to the South. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Benevento.</i>	}	{	<i>St. Agatha.</i>	}	<i>Monte Morano.</i>
<i>Conza.</i>			<i>Trevico.</i>		<i>Monte Verole.</i>
<i>Avellino.</i>			<i>Bisaccia.</i>		<i>Nusco.</i>
<i>Ariano.</i>			<i>la Cedogna.</i>		

*Benevento*, *Beneventum*, anciently a City and Colony of the Samnites, Bordering upon the *Hirpini*. *Pliny* says it was formerly call'd *Maleventum*, and *Ptolomy* calls it *Venebentus*. It is said to have been Built by *Diomedes*, and is distant 28 Miles from *Capua* to the East, as many from *Salerno* to the North, and 32 from *Naples* to the North-East. It stands at the Conflux of the Rivers *Sabato* and *Calore*, and call'd by *Frontinus* *Concordia Colonia*. It was given to Pope *Leo IX.* by the Emperor *Henry III.* in the year 1053. for *Bamberg*, a Town in Germany, and is an Archiepiscopal Sec. Near to this Place *Manfred*, King of both the *Sicilies*, was Defeated and Kill'd by King *Charles of Anjou*, Ann. 1266. It gives name to the adjacent Country call'd by the Italians, *il Territorio di Benevento*; but the Dutchy of *Benevento* was of much larger extent, comprehending all *Apulia*, *Samnium*, *Campania*, and a small part of the Country of the *Bruttii*. It was Erected by *Autharis* King of the Longobards, and lasted till about the year 850. Consult *Camillus Peregrinus* of *Capua's* Dissertation on this Subject.

*Conza*, *Compsa* or *Consa*, stands on a rising ground, at the Foot of the Appennines, near the Springs of the River *Aufidus*, or *Ofanto*, on the Confines of the *Capitanata*, and the hither Principality. 50 Miles from *Naples*, 25 from *Salerno*, and 30 from *Benevento* to the South-East. *Baudrand* says, there is not now above 70 Families, and 120 Souls in it; so small a Town is it at present.

*Avellino*, *Abellinum*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Hirpini*, stands about 2 Mile from the River *Sabato*, in the midst between *Benevento* to the North, and *Salerno* to the South, 16 Miles from either, and 40 from *Naples* to the East, and 4 from *Monte Vergene*. It is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, Enjoy'd by the Family of *Caraccioli*, and is an Episcopal Sec, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*, but united to that of *Fricenti*.

*Ariano*, *Arianum*, stands on a steep Hill, at the Foot of the Appennines, 12 Miles from *Benevento* to the East, and 30 from *Salerno* to the North-East. It is a pretty neat Town, subject to the Duke of *Bovino*, who is Count of this Place, and an Episcopal Sec, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*. There is another Town of this name in the Dutchy of *Ferrara*, near the Confines of the Venetian Dominions.

*Sant. Agatha di Goti*, *Agathopolis*, or *Fanum S. Agathe Gothorum*, stands near the Confines of the *Terra di Lavarò*, in the midst between *Benevento* to the East, and *Capua* to the West, 14 Miles from either: and is an Episcopal Sec, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

*La Cedogna*, *Laquedonia*, or *Aquilonia*, anciently a Town of the *Hirpini*, in *Samnium*, according to *Livy* and *Pliny*, but destroyed a long time since. *Cluverius* thinks this ancient name belongs rather to

*Carbonara*, a little Town in this Principality, near the River *Aufidus* or *Ofanto*, in *Capitanata*, between the ancient *Alcidonia* to the West, and *Monte Verde* to the East, and as many from *Benevento*, but the former opinion seems more probable. It is an Episcopal Sec, under the Archbishop of *Conza*.

*Monte Marano*, *Mons Maranus*, is a very small Town, on the Banks of the River *Calore*, about 16 Miles from *Avellino* to the East, and 6 from *Nusco*. It is an Episcopal Sec, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

*Monte Verde*, *Mons Viridii*, a small Town, on the Banks of the *Aufidus*, or *Ofanto*, on the Frontiers of the *Capitanata*, and *Basilicata*, between *Melfi* and *Cedogna*, 13 Miles from *Conza* to the East, and 23 from *Acerenza* to the North-West: and is an Episcopal Sec, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Conza*.

*Nusco*, *Nuscum*, is a very little Town, at the Foot of the Appennines, between *Monte Marano*, and *St. Angelo*, 18 Miles from *Benevento* to the South-East, and 25 from *Salerno* to the North-East.

The hither *PRINCIPALITY*, *Principatus Citerior*, comprehends that part of Italy which the *Picentini* anciently Inhabited, and the West part of *Lucania*: and is Bounded on the North with the farther Principality, and part of *Campania Felix*, on the West with the *Tyrrhenian Sea*, and on the South and East with the Province of *Basilicata*. It reaches from North-West to South-East, for the space of 70 Miles; and the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Salerno.</i>	}	{	<i>Campagna.</i>	}	<i>Nocera.</i>
<i>Amalfi.</i>			<i>Scala.</i>		<i>Minori.</i>
<i>Acerno.</i>			<i>Policastro.</i>		<i>Capaccia.</i>
<i>Sarno.</i>			<i>Marisco Nuovo.</i>		<i>Caggiana.</i>

*Salerno*, *Salernum*, anciently a Town and Colony of the *Picentini*, stands on a Bay of the same name, near the Coast of the *Tyrrhenian Sea*, 24 Miles from *Naples* to the South-East, as many from *Capo Capucllo*, and 30 from *Benevento* to the South. It is the chief City of this Province, and was formerly the Title of the eldest Sons of the King of *Naples*. It is an Archiepiscopal Sec, and has a very good Harbour, and strong Castle, and is pretty well Inhabited. On a Hill hard by it, there are to be seen several Vestiges of a Town; which has made some People think that *Salernum* stood formerly there. The University of this place has been famous for the study of Physick.

*Amalfi*, *Amalphis*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Picentini*, now a little and Ill-inhabited one, on the Bay of *Salerno*, (the West part of which is call'd *la Costa d' Amalfi*) 11 Miles from *Salerno* to the South-West, and 24 from *Naples* to the South-East. It is an Archiepiscopal Sec, and Honour'd with the Title of a Dutchy. The use of the Seamans Compass is said to have been first found out here, by one *Flavius Blendus*, or *Gioia*, about the year 1300. and here they say, the Body of *St. Andrew* the Apostle is kept.

*Acerno*, *Acernum*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Picentini*, is now a very small one, (tho' a Bishop's Seat, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*) standing at the Foot of the Hills, about 15 Miles to the North-East of *Salerno*.

*Sarno*, *Sarnum*, stands partly on a Hill, and partly on a Plain, about 13 Miles from *Salerno* to the North, 8 from *Nola*, and 5 from *Nocera*, and the Source of the River of the same name. It is an Episcopal Sec, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*, and belongs to the Family of *Barberini*.

*Campagna*, *Campania*, stands near the Rivers *Atro* and *Tenza*, 16 Miles from *Salerno* to the East, and 11 from the Sea-Coast. It is an Episcopal Sec, under the



the Archbishop of *Conza*, and formerly belong'd to the Prince of *Minaco*.

*Scala*, *Scala*, anciently call'd *Cama*, stands about 2 Miles from *Amalfi* to the East, and as many from the Bay of *Salerno*. It seems by the Ruins and Vestiges that are still to be seen, that it was formerly a great Town, but at present it is a very inconsiderable one, not containing above 150 Houses. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Amalfi*.

*Policastro*, *Policastrum*, or *Palaccastrum*, is a small Town, almost deserted, and no better than a Village, on the Coast of the Tuscan Sea, 8 Miles from the Confines of the Province of *Basilicata*, 17 from the Promontory of *Painuro* to the East, and 55 from *Salerno* to the South-East. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*.

*Marisco Nuovo*, *Mariscum*, is so call'd to distinguish it from *Marisco Vecchio*, in the Province of *Basilicata*; and is a pretty little Town standing on a rising Ground, at the Foot of the Appennines, near the Source of the River *Agri*, on the Confines of the *Basilicata*. 6 Miles from *Marisco Vecchio* to the North-west, 55 from *Salerno*, and 10 from the Gulf of *Polignastro* to the North; and is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Salerno*.

*Nocera*, *Nuceria*, anciently a Town of *Campania Felix*, by *Livy*, call'd *Alphaterna*, and mention'd by *Silius* in his 8th Book, stands between *Sarno* and *Caserta*, 10 Miles from *Amalfi* to the North, 8 from *Salerno* to the North-West, and 22 from *Naples*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Salerno*, and Honour'd with the Title of a Duchy, enjoy'd by the Family of *Barbini*. There is another Town of this name in *Ombria*, within the Pope's Dominions.

*Capaccio*, *Caput-aquum*, a Town of no great Note, which sprung from the Ruins of the ancient *Pestum*, or *Pestii*; which was Raz'd by the Saracens, *Ann.* 931. and stood 3 Miles from *Capaccio*; which formerly stood on a Neighbouring Hill, and was defended by a strong Castle, before it was destroy'd by the Emperor *Frederick*, *Ann.* 1249. but was afterwards Built on a Plain at the Foot of the same Hill, and lies now in Ruins, about 22 Miles from *Salerno* to the South; and retains the Title of a Bishoprick under the Archbishop of *Salerno*.

The Province of *BASILICATA*, which formerly comprehended the greater and better part of *Lucania*, is Bounded on the North with the Province of *Bari*, and a part of *Otranto*, on the East with the Bay of *Taranto*, on the West with the 2 Principalities, and on the South with the hither *Calabria*: and is a Barren Country, and no ways improv'd or well Inhabited. The Towns of any note in it are,

*Acerenza*. } *Melfi*.  
*Potenza*. } *Rapolla*.  
*Tricarico*. } *Venosa*.  
*Lavello*.

*Acerenza*, or *Cirenza*, *Acherontia*, or *Acherontus*, is the chief Town of *Basilicata*, and stands at the Foot of the Appennines, 10 Miles from *Venosa* to the South-East, and 28 from *Marera*. It is a little Town, and in a decaying condition, but has the Title of an Archbishoprick, to which the See of *Venosa* is united.

*Potenza*, *Potentia*, stands at the Foot of the Appennines, about 15 Miles from *Acerenza* to the South-West, and as many from *Marisco Nuovo* to the South: and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Acerenza*.

*Lavello*, *Lavellum*, or *Labellum*, is a little Town, on the Confines of the *Capitanata*, about 3 Miles from the River *Aufidus* or *Ofanto*, between *Melfi* to the West, and *Minervino* to the East, and 20 from *Acerenza* to the North-West. It is subject to the Prince of *Minervino*, and an Episcopal Sec, under the Archbishop of *Bari*, and there are several pieces of Antiquity to be seen about it.

*Melfi*, *Melfis*, stands upon an uneven Height, on the Rivulet *Meisa*, on the Confines of the *Capitanata*, and the farther Principality, 4 Miles from the River *Ofanto*, 65 from *Naples* to the East, and 40 from *Policastro*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Acerenza*; and has been united with the See of *Rapolla*, since the year 1528. It is a pretty large and well Inhabited Town, and is honoured with the Title of a Principality, enjoy'd by the Family of *Diria*.

*Rapolla*, *Rapolia*, is a little Town, almost desolate; about a Mile from *Melfi* to the East, 20 from *Conza* to the East, and 50 from *Policastro* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Siponto*, but was united to the See of *Melfi*, by Pope *Clement VII.* in the year 1528.

*CALABRIA*, which was otherwise call'd *Mesapia*, was quite different from the Country that bears that name now. It was Bounded on the North and East with the Adriatick Sea, on the South with the *Salentini*, and on the West with *Apulia* *Peucetia*. The Country that bears that name, now lies towards the South, over against *Sicily*, and is that part of *Magna Græcia*, which the *Brutii* anciently Possess'd. It has the Title of a Duchy, which formerly the Eldest Sons of the King of *Naples* used to have: And is Bounded with the Province of *Basilicata* on the North, with the Ionian Sea on the East, the Tyrrhenian Sea on the West, and on the South with that of *Sicily*; and sometime comprehended the Country of *Basilicata*. Also *Calabria* strictly taken, is divided into the hither and farther *Calabria*. The former of which lies most Northerly, and comprehends these Towns, viz.

*Cosenza*. } *Amantea*.  
*Rossano*. } *Martorano*.  
*Casano*. } *Cariati*.  
*Bisignano*. } *Umbriatico*.  
*Strongoli*. } *Cirifano*.

*Cosenza*, *Consentia*, anciently a City belonging to the *Brutii*, according to *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and others, stands on a Plain near the River *Grati*, where the *Vasento* falls into it, about 12 Miles from the Shoar of the Tuscan Sea to the East, 40 from the Ionian Sea, 60 from *Policastro*, and 150 from *Naples* to the South-East. It is the chief Town of the hither *Calabria*, and an Archbishoprick. *Isabel* of *Aragon*, *Philip* the Hardy's Queen Died here in the year 1270. as did also *Alaricus* King of the *Visigoths*.

*Rossano*, *Ruscianum*, or *Ruscianum*, is a pretty large and well Inhabited Town, Built on a Hill, Surrounded almost with high Rocks, about 3 Miles from the Gulf of *Taranto*, 16 from that of *Bisignano*, 35 from *Cosenza* to the North-East, and 12 from the Ruins of the ancient *Thurium*. It has the Title of a Principality, and is an Archiepiscopal See.

*Cassano*, *Cassanum*, or *Cesanum*, is a little Town, near the River *Bano*, about 10 Miles from the Appennine Mountains, as many from the Gulf of *Taranto*, and 20 from *Rossano* to the North. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Cosenza*.

*Bisignano*,



*Bisignano*, *Besidia*, or *Desidia*, aciently a Town belonging to the *Brutii*, stands on a Hill, and is defended by a Castle, distant 15 Miles from *Rossano* to the West, as many from the Coast of the Tuscan Sea, and 36 from *Cosenza* to the North. It has the Title of a Principality, belonging to the Family of *San Severino*, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Resano*, but exempted from his Jurisdiction.

*Amantea*, *Amantia*, or *Adamantia*, aciently a City of the *Brutii*, stands on the Coast of the Tuscan Sea, near the *Golpho di S. Euphemia*, and 15 Miles from *Cosenza* to the South-West. It belongs to the Prince of *Besigano*, and was once a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Regio*.

The Farther *CALABRIA*, *Calabria ulterior*, makes up the South part of the Duchy, and is wash'd by the Sea on the East, South and West. There are few Towns of any Note in it, but the most considerable are these,

<i>Regio.</i>	<i>Taverno.</i>	<i>Melito.</i>
<i>S. Severina.</i>	<i>Nicastro.</i>	<i>Oppido.</i>
<i>Cotrone.</i>	<i>Monte.</i>	<i>Booa.</i>
<i>Isola.</i>	<i>Leone.</i>	<i>Givra.</i>
<i>Belcastro.</i>	<i>Seminara.</i>	
<i>Nicotera.</i>	<i>Squillaci.</i>	

*Regio*, *Rhegium Julium*, aciently a City belonging to the *Brutii*, stands over against *Sicily* on the opposite Coast of the *Pharo of Messina*, 28 Miles from the *Zephyrium Promontorium*, now *Tarfu*, and about 90 from *Cosenza* to the South. It is said to have been Built by the *Chalcidenses*, and is at present pretty well Inhabited, considering how oft it has been Pillag'd by the Turks.

*San Severina*, *Siberena*, a small but well Built City, and the See of an Arch-bishop, stands on the Confines of the Hither *Calabria*, near the Coast of the Ionian Sea, 40 Miles South-East from *Rossano*, and as many East from *Cosenza*.

*Cotrone*, *Croton*, aciently a Town in *Magna Græcia*, belonging to the *Brutii*, and more lately call'd *Crotona*, stands at the Mouth of the *Esaro*, on the Coast of the Ionian Sea, about 6 Miles from the Promontory call'd *Capo delle Colonne* to the North, and 50 from *Cosenza* to the East. It is said to have been Built by *Miscellus*, 80 years after the Building of *Rome*, and was aciently a great City, 12 Miles in Compass, ( as *Baudrand*, from *Livy* relates ) the River running through the middle of it. The best Wrestlers and Boxers used to be brought from this Place, among whom *Milo* call'd from hence *Crotoniates*, was very famous. The Emperor *Charles V.* Built a Fort, and put a good Garrison in it, for a Guard to that Coast, but this Place is now dwindled into a little Town, and but indifferently Inhabited, and nothing like what it was formerly.

*Nicotera*. *Nicotera* is a little Town, which sprung from the Ruins of *Medama* or *Rossarno*, about 10 Miles from the Mouth of the River *Marro* to the North, and as many from *Tropea*. It stands on a Hill, and was almost reduc'd to Rubbish by an Earthquake, in the year 1638. but still retains the Title of a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Regio*.

*Taverno*, *Taberna*, stands at the Foot of the Appennines, near the Ruins of the *Trischene*, from which it took its rise, about 8 Miles from *Catanzaro* to the North, 15 from *Squillaci*, 37 from *Rossano*, and 14 from *Nicastro* to the East. It was formerly an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Regio*, but in the year

1122, Pope *Calistus* the II<sup>d</sup>. remov'd it to *Catanzaro*.

*Squillaci*, *Scyllacum*, aciently a Town and Colony in *Magna Græcia*, according to *Mela* and *Solinus*, stands on a Hill, near the Rivulet *Favelone*, about 3 Miles from the Coast of the Ionian Sea, 18 from that of the Tyrrhenian, 75 from *Regio* to the North, 45 from *Palepoli*, or the Ruins of the ancient *Locri*, and 36 from *Cosenza*. It is at present a little ill Inhabited Town, consisting of about 300 Houses, but is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Regio*.

*Bova*. *Bova*, aciently a Town belonging to the *Brutii*, stands on a very high Hill, Surrounded with Rocks, about 5 Miles from the Shoar, 7 from the *Capo di Spartivento*, aciently call'd *Herculis Promontorium* to the West, and 22 from *Regio*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Regio*.

Having now passed *Naples* from West to East on the South-side, we shall return back to view the Provinces on the Adriatick Coast, beginning in the West as before.

*ABRUZZO*. *Aprutium*, taken in a large Sense, comprehends the County of *Molese* also, and was formerly Inhabited by the *Frentani*, *Marrucini*, *Marfi*, *Peligni*, *Vestini*, and a great part of the Samnites; but taken strictly, it contains only the farther and hither *Abruzzo*.

The farther *ABRUZZO*, *Aprutium ulterius*, where the *Marci Vestini*, and a part of the *Picentini* aciently dwelt, is Bounded on the North and West with the Pope's Dominions, on the South with the *Campagna di Roma*, and *Terra di Lavarò*, on the East with the Adriatick Sea, and the hither *Abruzzo*, and is almost divided in two by the Appennines. The Towns in it of greatest note are,

<i>Aquila.</i>	{ <i>Teramo.</i>
<i>Atri.</i>	{ <i>Civita di penna.</i>

*Aquila*. *Aquila*, the chief Town of this Country, stands near the River *Pescara*, about 60 Miles from *Rome* to the North-East, 70 from *Ancona* to the South, and 90 from *Naples* to the North-West. It was either Built or Enlarged by the *Longobards*, from the Ruins of *Amiteum* and *Forconium*, and Fortified by the Emperor *Frederick II.* It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Chieti*; Pope *Alexander IV.* having Translated the See of *Forconium* hither, in the year 1257.

*Atri*, *Atria*, *Adria*, or *Hadria*, the Birth-place of the Emperor *Hadrian*, and aciently a Town and Colony of *Picenum*, is Situated on a Hill, about 4 Miles from the Adriatick Sea, and 30 from *Aquila* to the North-East. It is Honour'd with the Title of a Principality, belonging to the Family of *Aquaviva*, and is an Episcopal See, immediately subject to that of *Rome*, Erected by Pope *Innocent IV.* Ann. 1252.

*Teramo*, *Interamnina*, aciently a Town belonging to the Samnites, stands near the River *Trontino*, 20 from *Aquila* to the North, and 14 from the Adriatick Sea to the West. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Chieti*.

*Civita di penna*, *Pinna*, aciently a Town of the *Vestini*, is Situated 20 Miles from *Aquila* to the East, and 10 from the Adriatick Sea to the South. It belongs to the Duke of *Parma*, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Chieti*; and was united with the See of *Atri*, by *Innocent IV.* 1252.

The Hither *ABRUZZO*, *Aprutium Citerius*, aciently Inhabited by the *Frentani*, *Marucini*, and *Peligni*,



*Peligni*, is Bounded on the North with the Adriatick Sea, on the East with the Province of *Capitanata*, on the South with the County of *Molise*, and part of the *Terra di Lavoro*, and on the West, divided with the farther *Abruzzo*, by the River *Pescara*. The Towns of greatest note in it are,

*Chieti* or *Civita di Chieti*. } *Pescara*.  
*Lanciano*. } *Ortona*.  
*Sulmona*.

*Civita di Chieti*, *Teate*, or *Theatea*, anciently the chief City of the *Marcucini*, according to *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*, is now the chief Town of this Province, and the Residence of the Governor. It is large and well Inhabited, and Situated on a Hill, near the River *Pescara*, on the Confines of the farther *Abruzzo*, in the midst between *Lanciano* to the South-East, and *Attri* to the North-West, 14 Miles from either, 100 Miles from *Rome* to the North-East, and 25 from *Aquila* to the East, and as much from the Adriatick Sea. The order of the *Theatines* have their Names from hence; for *John Peter Caraffa*, Archbishop of this Place, afterwards Pope *Pau. IV.* was their chief Founder. *Pliny* relates, *l. 2. ch. 53.* that about the latter end of *Nero's* Reign, there happen'd a Prodigy near this Place; for a whole Olive-garden is said to have risen up, and plac'd it self on the other side of a High-way, the Fields on the other side shifting to the Place where the Garden had been.

*Lanciano Anxanum*, anciently the Town belonging to the *Frentani*, according to *Ptolemy*, is a large well Inhabited Town, and famous for its Fairs, to which People come, from both sides of the Adriatick. It is distant a few Miles from the Adriatick Sea, 60 from *Naples* to the North, and 90 from *Rome* to the North-East, and has the Title of an Archbishoprick, since the year 1562.

*Sulmona*, *Sulmo*, anciently the chief City of the *Peligni*, according to *Livy* and *Strabo*, stands on a Plain that is surrounded with Mountains between two Rivulets, that rise in the Apennines, about 5 Miles from the Confines of the farther *Abruzzo* to the East, and 26 from *Aquila* to the South-East. It has the Title of a Principality, belonging to the Family of *Borghese*: and is an Episcopal See, within the Archbishoprick of *Chieti*; but exempted from that Jurisdiction. It was the Birth-place of the Poet *Ovid*, who makes mention of it in his *lib. 2. Amor.* as *Silvius* does, *lib. 8.*

*Pescara*, *Alaternum*, anciently a City of the *Marcucini*, stands on the Confines of the farther *Abruzzo*, at the Mouth of a River of the same name, 16 Miles from *Lanciano* to the North-West, 12 from *Civita di Penna* to the East, and 8 from *Civita di Chieti* to the North. It is a Fortified Town, with a Castle, and is the Title of a Marquis, to whom it belongs.

*Ortona*, *Ortona*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Frentani*, in *Samnium*, according to *Pliny*, is call'd *Ortona a Mare*, to distinguish it from another place in that Province, call'd *Ortona di Marfi*. It is distant about 8 Miles from *Lanciano* to the North, and has a very safe Harbour, but is thinly Inhabited: and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Chieti*.

The County of *MOLISE*, *Molissinus Comitatus*, anciently Inhabited by a part of the Samnites, is Bounded with the hither *Abruzzo* on the North, the

the *Capitanata* on the East, and the *Terra di Lavoro* on the West: and comprehends these Towns,

*Bolano* } *Trivento*.  
*Molise* } *Isernia*.

*Bolano*, *Boianum*, or *Bovianum*, a Town and Colony, anciently of the *Samnites*, according to *Strabo*, stands at the Foot of the Apennines, on the River *Bijerno*, 23 Miles from *Capua* to the North, and 40 from *Sora* to the East. It is a little Town, and thinly Inhabited, but has the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

*Molise*, *Molisia*, is a place of some Strength, but in a decaying condition, distant 10 Miles from *Bolano* to the North.

*Trivento*, *Triventinum*, is a very little Town, standing on the River *Trigno*, upon a Hill, 17 Miles from *Bolano* to the North, and 20 from the Adriatick Sea. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

*Isernia*, or *Sernia*, *Æsernia*, anciently a Town and Colony in *Samnium*, now a pretty large and well Inhabited one, stands 4 Miles from the River *Voltorno*, and 30 Miles from *Sora* to the East, and as many from *Capua* to the North: and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Capua*.

The Province of *CAPITANATA*, formerly call'd *Apulia Daunia*, is Bounded on the North and East with the Adriatick, on the West with the County of *Molise*, and on the South with the hither Principality. The Country is very Fertile and well Watered, and comprehends these Towns,

*Manfredonia*. } *Ascoli*. } *Torcanuola*.  
*Monte S. Angelo* } *Lucera*. } *Volturata*.  
*Troja*. } *Vieste*.

*Manfredonia*, *Manfredonia*, or *Spontum Novum*, because it stands near the Ruins of the ancient *Sipontum*, which was Raz'd by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Charles the Great*, and whose Ruins are still call'd *Siponto*. It is Seated at the bottom of a Bay of the Adriatick Sea, 75 Miles North-East from *Naples*, 50 North from *Cirenza*, and 85 from *Taranto* to the West. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick, to which it succeeded in the place of *Sipontum*.

*Monte S. Angelo*, so call'd from the Apparition of *Michael* the Arch-angel. Some give this as a general name, to the whole *Mons Garganus*, which (as *Baudrand* says) makes the greater part of the *Capitanata*, and is about 80 Miles in Circumference, taking in that part of *Apulia* which juts out into the Adriatick Sea, between the Bays of *Siponto* and *Rodi*. But the Town of *Monte S. Angelo* stands on Mount *Gargano*, about 7 Miles from *Manfredonia* to the North.

*Troja*, *Troia*, formerly call'd *Æca*, *Æcana* and *Ecana*, is a little Town, with the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Benevento*, but exempted from his Jurisdiction at the Foot of the Apennines, 25 Miles from *Benevento* to the East, and somewhat more from *Manfredonia* to the West. It was Built in the year 1008. and has the Title of a Principality.

*Ascoli*, *Ascu'um*, *Apulum*, stands on the Confines of the farther Principality, at the Foot of the Apennines, 35 Miles from *Benevento* to the East, 16 from *Conza* to the North-East, and 30 from *Manfredonia* to the South. The old Town was laid in Rubbish by an Earthquake, in the year 1399. but the Inhabitants Built the new one in the year 1410. not far from the former. It is an Episcopal See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Benevento*.

The



The Province of *BAR I. Barianus Ager*, a great part of the Country formerly call'd *Apulia Peucetia*, is Bounded on the North and East with the Adriatick Sea, on the West with the *Capitanata*, from which it is divided by the River *Ofanto*, on the South with the Province of *Basilicata*, and the Province of *Otranto*; comprehends these Towns.

<i>Bari.</i>	} } <i>Conservano.</i>	} } <i>Ruvo.</i>
<i>Andria.</i>		
<i>Bitonto.</i>		
<i>Monopoli.</i>		
	} } <i>Graviano.</i>	} } <i>Trani.</i>
	} } <i>Molfetto.</i>	} } <i>Biseglia.</i>
	} } <i>Polignano.</i>	} } <i>Canosa.</i>

*Bari*, *Barium*, *Baris Varia*, stands on the Adriatick Sea, in the midlt between *Polignano* to the East, and *Trani* to the West, 20 Miles from either, 35 from *Manfredoni* and 120 from *Naples* to the East, and (according to *Festus*) has its name from *Ba-ra*, a little Island near *Brindisi*. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick.

*Andria*. *Andria*, is a pretty large and well-inhabited Town, Situated in a Plain, 4 Miles from *Barletta*, 6 from *Trani*, and 25 from *Bari* to the West. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Trani*, but a very little one, for it reaches no farther than the Town.

*Monopoli*, *Monopolis*, is a little but finely Built Town, 20 Miles from *Bari* to the East, 25 from *Taranto* to the North, and 40 from *Brindisi* to the North-West. It stands on the Gulf of *Venice*, and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Bari*, but has little or nothing under its Jurisdiction without the Town.

*Trani*, *Tranium*, stands on the Coast of the *Adriatick*, in a fruitful Country, about 6 Miles from *Andria*, and 24 from *Bari* to the West. The Inhabitants pretend that it was anciently call'd *Trajanum*, from the Emperor *Trajan*, who they say, Built it. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and once had a very good Harbour, but now 'tis fill'd up with stone.

The Province of *Otranto*, *Hydruntina Provincia*, where anciently the *Salentini* and *Calabri* dwelt, is almost in form of a *Peninsula*, and is Bounded with the Adriatick Sea on the East, and partly on the North; the Gulf of *Taranto* on the South, the Province of *Bari* on the North, and *Basilicata* on the West. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Otranto.</i>	} } <i>Castellanea.</i>	} } <i>Matera.</i>
<i>Brindisi.</i>		
<i>Lecce.</i>		
	} } <i>Gallipoli.</i>	} } <i>Nardo.</i>
	} } <i>Ostuni.</i>	} } <i>Taranto.</i>

*Otranto*, *Hydruntum*, anciently a City Inhabited by the *Calabri*, stands on the Adriatick Sea, and is a Place of Strength with a Castle, which *Mahomet II.* Emperor of the Turks, Took and Pillag'd in the year 1480. but was retaken by the Christians, and is possess'd by the Spaniards. It was formerly the chief City of this Province, but is in a decaying state. It stands on the Sea-shore, on the extreme South part of *Italy*, 40 Miles from *Brindisi* to the South, 20 from *Lecce*, 24 from *Gallipoli* to the East, about 20 Leagues from the nearest part of the Coast of *Epirus*, and 19 from *Cape d' S. Maria di Leuca* to the North, and has the Title of an Archbishoprick.

*Brindisi*, *Brindisium*, anciently a City of the *Sal-*

*lentini*, call'd otherwise *Brendisium*, by *Ptolomy*, and *Brentesium* by *Stephanus*, is a Town with a large and safe Harbour, on the Adriatick Sea, 36 Miles from *Taranto* to the East, 40 from *Otranto* to the North, and 64 from *Bari* to the East. It is said to have been Built by the *Aeoli*, *Diomedes's* Companions: and here *Cesar Octavius*, and *M. Antonius* lay Encamp'd, the latter being nearer the Town, because he had invell'd it: and *Servilius* designing to go over from hence to *Cesar*, with a Body of 7000 Horse, was surpris'd by *Antonius* with a handful, and routed near (*Uria*) before they were quite awake. *Cesar* in the 1st Book of his Comment, gives a description of the Harbour of this Place.

*Lecce*, *Aletium*, and *Litium* by latter Writers, anciently a Town belonging to the *Salentini*, is a large and well inhabited City, and one of the most Populous in all the Kingdom of *Naples*, the City of that name only excepted. It stands between *Brindisi* to the North, and *Otranto* to the South, at the distance of 20 Miles from either, 7 from the Adriatick Sea to the West, 15 from *Nardo*, 50 from *Taranto*. It is an Episcopal Sec, under the Archbishop of *Otranto*.

*Gallipoli*, *Gallipolis*, or *Callipolis*, anciently belonging to the *Salentini*, stands on a Rock in the Gulf of *Taranto*, and tho' it be little, is a very strong and well inhabited Place; being surrounded by the Sea, except at one Place where it is joyn'd to the Land by a Bridge, which is defended by a strong Fort; which with its Scituation makes it almost impregnable. It is distant 25 Miles from *Otranto* to the West, 36 from *Taranto* to the South-East, and 24 from the Promontory call'd *Capo di S. Marcadi di Leuca*, and is an Episcopop See, under the Archbishop of *Otranto*, but the Bounds of the Diocess, are the same with those of the City.

*Taranto*, *Tarentum*, anciently a City of the *Salentini*, call'd *Taras* by *Strabo*, and *Oebalia* by *Virgil*. It was Built by the Lacedemonians, and was once the Head of a Republick, which made War against the Romans, in the year of their City, 472. After *Pyrhus*, whom the Tarentines had invited over to their Assistance, was defeated, the Romans became Masters of it. In the Punick War, *Hanibal* Took it, but it was Retaken by *Q. Fabius Maximus*, who brought away their famous *Colossus* of *Hercules*, made of Brass, and the Workmanship of *Lyfippus*, and set it up in the Capitol at *Rome*. In the year of the City, 631. *Tarentum* was (according to *Velleius*) made a Roman Colony. It is now a little Town, but well Inhabited, and defended by a Fort, in which there are a strong Garrison of Spaniards. It is Situated in a *Peninsula*, in the bottom of the Gulf of *Taranto*, near the Mouth of the River *Tara*, 32 Miles from *Brindisi* to the West, 20 from the Ruins of *Metapontus*, 90 from *Promontorium Japygium*, now *il Capo di S. Maria di Leuca* to the West, and 35 from *Matera* to the East. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick: and had once a very large Harbour, but it is now so stopp'd up with great Stones, and spoil'd, that none but very small Vessels can come into it.



## CHAP. XIV.

*The Islands on the Coast of Italy.*

THESE Islands, since they belong to some State or another in the Continent of *Italy*, cannot be more properly plac'd than after the description of that Country. We shall Treat of them according to their Dignity, and in their particular descriptions inform the Reader, in whose Possession they are at present. The number and order of them are to be seen in this short Table.

<i>Sicily.</i>	{	The Isles of <i>Lipari.</i>	{	<i>Capri.</i>
<i>Sardinia.</i>		The Isles about <i>Sardinia.</i>		<i>Ischia.</i>
<i>Corfica.</i>		The Isle of <i>Elbe, &amp;c.</i>		<i>Procida.</i>

*The Island of Sicily and Sicilia.*

*SICILY* is the Largest and most Fertile Island in the *Mediterranean* Sea; and if we will believe the ancient accounts of it, once a part of the Continent of *Italy*. We shall not trouble the Reader with a tedious Enquiry into the Erymology of its Name, only putting him in mind that it was call'd *Silia* from the *Siculi*, a People in *Italy* and *Sicania*, from a King call'd *Sicanus*, who before the time of the Trojan War, Landed there with a great Body of Iberians or Spaniards, and call'd both the Island and People after his own Name. It has also been call'd *Trinacria* and *Triguetra*, from its Triangular Form. It lies between 35 Deg. 40 Min. and 38 Deg. 30 Min. Latitude, and 35 and 39 Longitude. Its greatest Length (according to *Cluverius*) between *Pelorum*, or the *Capo di Faro*, and *Lilybaeum*, or the *Capo Boco*, is 200 Miles; its Breadth from *Pachinum*, or *il Capo Pessaro*, to the Town *Cephalidis*, or *Cefalu*, 150. and its Circuit 600.

The Air of *Sicily* is very Good, and Healthful, and the Soil so Fertile, that this Island hath been deservedly call'd, the Store-house of *Italy*; for it abounds in Corn, Wine, Fruits, Sugar, Honey, Wax, Oyl, Saffron, and Silk. It affords also some Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron and other Metals; Salt Agates,

*Emeralds*, *Jasper*, *Porphyry*, &c. and on the Coasts towards *Trapano*, the Inhabitants find a good deal of excellent Coral.

The first Inhabitants of this Island (according to *Cluverius*) were the Cyclopes and Lestrigones, Barbarous and Savage People. After these came the Iberi from *Spain*, under the Conduct of *Sicanus*, as we said before. Next came the Siculi from *Sicily* in *Italy*. After these came the Phœnices from *Tyre* and *Sidon*, and Possess'd themselves on the Coast of this Island; but the Grecians drove these away, and introduc'd their own Language.

The Form of Government that was first used here was Monarchical; which continu'd till the Carthaginians had made themselves Masters of the greatest part of the Island. But the Romans having Defeated these, became Masters of it, and reduc'd it into the Form of a Province, which was the first they ever made. In the time of the Emperor *Justinian*, the Vandals from *Africa*, took Possession of it; but *Belisarius*, General of that Emperor's Forces, having driven them out, the Saracens afterwards Invaded it. At last *Tancred* the Norman Expell'd them, and his Grandchild *Roger* was declar'd King of *Apulia* and *Sicily*. Afterwards the Suevi from *Germany*, became Masters of *Sicily*; but were Expell'd by the French; who being all cut off, at the famous Sicilian *Vespers*, the Island fell first into the hands of the Kings of *Aragon*, and at last into those of the Kings of *Castile*.

This Island is govern'd by a Viceroy, sent from the King of *Spain*, and the yearly Revenue Paid to His Catholick Majesty, is said to be about Four Millions of Crowns; the Inhabitants (as *Puffendorf* observes) are an ill sort of People, who must be kept under, according to the old Proverb, *Insulani quidem mali, Siculi autem pessimi*.

*Sicily* has been variously divided at different times, but is now commonly divided into 3 Parts or Provinces called Valleys, as you may see in the following Table.

*Sicily divided into Three Parts or Provinces.*

I.	Palermo.	II.	Messina.	III.	Noto.
Valley of <i>Mazara</i> , in which are these Cities and Towns.	<i>Montreal.</i> <i>Mazara.</i> <i>Gergenti.</i> <i>Palymita.</i> <i>Marfalla.</i> <i>Castella Mare.</i> <i>Catalasimi.</i> <i>S. Vito.</i> <i>Trapani.</i> <i>Xacca.</i> <i>Castel Veterano.</i> <i>Salemi.</i>	Valley of <i>Demoni</i> , in which are these Cities and Towns.	<i>Catania.</i> <i>Cefalu.</i> <i>Pati.</i> <i>S. Marco.</i> <i>Melazzo.</i> <i>Polizzi.</i> <i>Termini.</i> <i>Centorvi.</i> <i>Nicosia.</i> <i>Randazzo.</i>	Valley of <i>Noto</i> , in which are these Cities and Towns.	<i>Syracuse.</i> <i>Augusta.</i> <i>Iarratana.</i> <i>Castro Giovanni.</i> <i>Calata Xibeta.</i> <i>Modica.</i> <i>Birtera.</i> <i>Terra Nuova.</i> <i>Alicata.</i> <i>Calcata Giorne.</i> <i>Ragusa.</i> <i>Mazarino.</i>

*Palermo*, *Panormum*, or *Panormus*, is a large and well Built City, on the North-Coast of the Island, distant about 60 Miles from the Promontory, anciently call'd *Lilybaeum Promontorium*, now *il Capo Boco* to North-East, 4 from *Mont Real*, 140 from *Messina* to the West, and 150 from the Promontory, now

call'd *Capo di Faro*, anciently *Pelorum Promontorium*; It was Built by the Phœnicians, about the time of the Grecians coming into *Sicily*, and made the Metropolis of the Island, in the time of *Roger* Count or Earl of *Sicily*: and is now the ordinary Residence of the Spanish Viceroy. It has a large and safe Harbour, and



and is defended by a strong Castel, call'd *Castel a Mare*, with a Garrison of Spaniards. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and near it the Spaniards and Dutch were soundly Beat by the French, in the year 1676.

*Montereal*, *Mons Regalis*, is a little Town standing on a Hill, about 4 Miles from *Palermo*, where *William* the III<sup>d</sup>. King of *Sicily*, Built a Magnificent Church, and Endow'd it with large Revenues, and procur'd the Title of an Archbishoprick to this Place, from Pope *Lucius* the III<sup>d</sup>. in the year 1182.

*Mazara* or *Mazera*. *Mazara*, stands on the South-side of the Island, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, with a Large, Safe, and well defended Harbour, in the midlt, almost between *Termini* to the East, and the *Capo Raso* to the West, 24 Miles from *Trepuni* to the South-East, and 55 from *Gergenti* to the West. It was formerly the Residence of the Saracen Princes, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Palermo*.

*Gergenti*, *Agrigentum*, call'd *Agragas* by the Grecians, was anciently the Greatest and Richest City in all this Island: and no less Famous for its Hospitality to Strangers, than 'twas Infamous for its Luxury. It was Built by the Gelenses, near the River *Agragas*, now call'd, (according to *Baudand*) *il Fiume di S. Biagio*, or *Gergenti*. It stands about 3 Miles from the Sea, 55 from *Palermo* to the South, 64 from the *Capo Raso* to the East, and 72 from the *Capo Pessaro*, or *Parbunum*. It was anciently 10 Miles in Compass, but is now much decayed. On the North side it is defended by a strong Fort, and there is but one Passage into it. It was formerly remarkable for the Cruelty of the Bloody *Phalaris*, who used to torment People in his Brazen Bull, which *Perillus* made; and had the first Experiment of it try'd upon himself. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Palermo*.

*Marsala*, *Marsala*, stands on the West side of the Island of the Promontory, call'd *il Capo Raso*, and has risen from the Ruins of the Town of *Lilybaeum*. It was so call'd by the Saracens, and had once an excellent Harbour, before *Charles* the V<sup>th</sup>. caus'd the Mouth of it to be stop'd up with great Stones, lest the Africans should make use of it.

*Trapano*, *Drepanum*, anciently a famous Mart-Town, with an excellent Harbour, on the West side of the Island, about 15 Miles from *Lilybaeum promontorium* to the North, 22 from *Mazara*, and 55 from *Palermo* to the South-West, near the Foot of the Mountain *Eryx*, now *il Monte di Trapano*, where there was a Temple of *Venus*, and *Anchises*'s Burial Place. It was well Fortified by *Hamilcar*, *Hanibal*'s Father, who kept it a considerable time, and made it the Seat of War against the Romans, till by an Order from *Carthage*, he made a Peace with *Lutatius*.

*Messina*, *Messana*, *Mesene* or *Messane*, anciently called *Zanche* is a large and fine City, and the greatest Mart-Town in all the *Mediterranean* Sea, having a very large and safe Harbour, about 6 Miles from the Coast of the Farther *Calabria* to the West, 12 from *Regio*, about 140 from *Palermo*, 12 from the *Capo di Faro* to the South, and 60 from *Catania*. The private Houses in it are very fine, and the publick Buildings Magnificent, especially the Viceroy's Palace, and the Arsenal, which is very well Furnish'd with Arms and Ammunition. It has 4 Suburbs, call'd *Zacra*, *San Filippo*, *San Deo*, and *Porta Imperial*, which lye stretch'd along the Shoar for a great way, and its Situation between the Mountains, and the Sea makes it a very long City. The Emperor *Charles* the V<sup>th</sup> Fortified it with 14 Bastions, and 4 Forts, in the year 1535

whereof one is within the Town, the rest without for the Defence of the Port. This City was recover'd from the Saracens by *Roger* the Norman, in the year 1060. and afterwards Govern'd by the Kings of *Sicily*, now by a Spanish Officer, whom they call *il Stradigo*. But being mightily gall'd by the Spanish Yoke, it was provok'd to shake it off, on the 7<sup>th</sup> of *July*, 1674. and maintain'd its Liberty, with the Assistance of the French, till the 16<sup>th</sup> of *March*, 1675. when it willingly return'd to its former Allegiance. Its chief Trade consists in Silk, with which it furnishes a great part of *Europe*: And it is an Archiepiscopal See.

*Catania*, *Catana*, or *Catina*, stands on the Coast or Ionian Sea, on a Gulf of the same Name, near the little River *Judicello*, 40 Miles from *Syracuse* to the North, and 50 from *Messina*. It was Built by the Chalcidenses, as *Eusebius* Relates, and was Fortified by *Charles* the V<sup>th</sup>. It is the great Unhappiness of this Town, that it stands so near Mount *Aetna*, which is now call'd *Il Mon-Gibello*, whose fiery streams have often provid fatal to the Neighbouring Country. This Mountain is reckon'd 9 Miles High, but not of Perpendicular Height, and in Compass 50. The South side of it is almost cover'd over with Vines, and the North side with other Trees and Shrubs, and no part of it is Barren and Unmanur'd, except the Top. The most considerable Eruptions that have happen'd, were in the years 1169. 1329. 1408. 1444. 1447. 1536. 1554. by the last of which, *Catania* and the adjacent Country were well nigh destroy'd, as they were also in the year 1669. But we must refer the Reader for the causes of those Eruptions, and a particular account of them to those who have written fully on the Subject, particularly *Thomas Fazellus*, and *Philippus Cluverius*.

*Patti*, *Pasta*, or *Pasta*, a pretty well Inhabited little Sea Town, on the North-Coast of the Island, near the Ruins of *Tyndaris*, now call'd *S. Maria di Tyndaro*, 48 Miles from *Messina* to the West, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  a Mile from the Tyrrhenian Sea. It has the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Messina*.

*Noto*, *Netum*, or *Nea*, from which the third Division or Valley of *Sicily* has its Name, is a large and well Inhabited Town, standing on a high Hill, Surrounded with High and Steep Rocks, in the South part of the Island, 8 Miles from the Sea, 15 from *Capo Pessaro* to the North-West, and 25 from *Syracuse* to the South.

*Syracuse*, or *Saragosa*, *Syracuse*, anciently a famous and great City, said to have been Built by *Archias* a Corinthian, consisting of 5 Parts, viz. *Acra*, *dina*, *Tycha*, *Neapolis*, *Insula*, and *Epipolae*, and 180 Stadia, or  $22\frac{1}{2}$  Miles in Compass. It was first grievously oppress'd by the *Dionysii*, afterwards by *Agathocles* and others. It suffer'd a Siege of 3 years, by the Romans, in the first Punick War, when its holding out so long was owing to the singular Art of that famous Mathematician *Archimedes*, who was unhappily Murder'd by a barbarous Soldier, contrary to the express Orders of the Roman General *Marcellus*, when he took the City. It has now lost much of its ancient Splendour and Greatness, being confin'd within the Island *Ortygia*, but has 2 Harbours, which the Inhabitants call *il Porto Maggiore*, and *il Porto Piccolo*, and one Gate on the little *Isthmus*, defended by 2 Forts. It is distant 40 Miles from *Catania* to the South, 23 from *Augusta*, 38 from the *Capo Pessaro*, and 60 from the little Town, now call'd *Castro Joanni*. It was formerly an Archbishoprick, but is now under the See of *Monreal*.



*Augusta, Augusta*, a little but well Inhabited and strong Town. Built at first in a *Peninsula*, on the East side of the Island, about 18 Miles from *Catania* to the South, and 24 from *Syracuse*. It was Built by the Emperor *Frederick*, in the year 1229. who also Built a Fort which commands it, in the year 1232. Above an hundred years since it was Fortified, and the *Peninsula* on which it stood made an Island, and joyn'd to the Continent by a Wooden Bridge. It was taken by the French, after a vigorous Resistance, in the year 1675. and deserted by them 3 years after. It has a very large and safe Harbour, and as *Cluverius* says, was anciently call'd *Xiphenia*.

### The Island of Sardinia.

The Island of *Sardinia*, which the Grecians call'd *Sardom* and *Jeknusa*, lies North and South, between the Tuscan Sea on the East, and the Sea of *Sardinia* on the West; between 37 Deg. 20 Min. and 40 Deg. 10 Min. Lat. and 31 Deg. 10 Min. and 33 Deg. 15 Min. Long. It is in Length from *Calaris* or *Cagliari*, to the Channel betwixt *Sardinia* and *Corfica*, (according to *Cluverius*) 150 Miles, and in Breadth from the *Capo di Monte Falcone*, and *Capo di Argentera*, to the *Capo Sarda*, 104. But *Baudrand*, who makes it 500 Miles, in Compass, will have it to be only 170 in Length, from South to North, and 90 in Breadth, and others less, as to both. We shall not trouble the Reader with the various conjectures about the Etymologies of its name, and the first Inhabitants of it; but only put him in mind, that anciently the Carthaginians were Masters of it; next them the Romans, who kept possession of it, till the declining State of that Empire, when it fell into the hands of the Saracens; who were expell'd by the Genouese and Pisans. At last in the year 1326. Pope *Boniface* the VIIIth. gave it to *James* the IIId. King of *Aragon*, who after a great deal of struggling made himself Master of it, and handed it down to his Posterity. It is now subject to the King of *Spain*, who governs it by his Viceroy.

The Air of this Island is very Unhealthful, but the Soil is good, and fit to produce Corn, Wine, and Oyl; but the Inhabitants, being for the most part Barbarians, are Lazy, and do not Cultivate and Improve the Ground as it ought to be, which is the reason why this Island tho' it be large, is not very Rich. It was formerly divided into 4 Parts, which were subject to their respective petty Princes; but now it is divided into two Parts or Provinces, call'd *il Capo di Cagliari*, and *il Capo di Logudori*; which with their several Towns are to be seen in the following Table.

I.

*Capo di Cagliari,*  
in which are  
these Towns.

*Cagliari.*  
*Oristagni.*  
*Villa d' Iglesias.*  
*Galtelli.*  
*S. Pietro.*

II.

*Capo di Logudori,*  
in which  
are these  
Towns.

*Sassari.*  
*Castel Aragonese.*  
*Bosa.*  
*Algheri.*  
*Sardara.*  
*Terra Nuova.*

*Cagliari, Calaris*, is the chief City of *Sardinia*, and gives Name to a Province, a Gulf, and a Pro-

montory, and is the Residence of the Spanish Governor. It is said to have been Built by the Phenicians, and afterwards Inhabited by the Carthaginians. It was destroyed by the Arabians, and afterwards Rebuilt by the Pisans. It was taken by *James* the IIId. King of *Aragon*, in the year 1330. since which time it, together with the whole Island, has been subject to *Spain*. It is a pretty large City, having 3 Suburbs, viz. *Estampache*, *Villa Nova*, and *la Marina*, and is distant 30 Miles from *Oristagni* to the East; and has the Title of an Archbishoprick.

*Oristagni, Arborea*, stands in the West part of the Island, 6 Miles from the Sea, 60 from *Sassari*, and 30 from *Bosa*. It has the Title of an Archbishoprick, as also that of a Marquisate, which was formerly govern'd by its own Princes, call'd Judges, who are famous in the Histories of those times, when the Aragonians Invaded this Island; but at present it is very thinly Inhabited because of the Unhealthfulness of the Air.

*Sassari*, or *Sacer, Saffaris*, is a pretty large Town, in the North part of the Island, about 12 Miles from the Ruins of *Turritana*, or *Turris Libissonis*, (which the Longobards Raz'd, in the year 596.) to the South, as many from the Sea, and 18 from *Algheri*. It stands in a Plain, but is well Fortified: And the Archiepiscopal See of *Turritana*, was Translated hither, by Pope *Eugenius* the IVth. Ann. 1441.

*Castel Aragonese, Castrum Aragonense*, is a little well Inhabited and Fortified Town, with a Castle, in the North part of the Island, standing on a Rock, and having the advantage of a good and large Harbour, at the Mouth of the River *Cequinas*. It is distant about 100 Miles from *Caligari* to the North, 80 from *Oristagni*, and 24 from *Sassari*. The See of *Emporie* was remov'd from thence to this Place, in the year 1503. and is under the Archbishop of *Sassari*.

*Bosa. Bosa*, stands on the West part of the Island, on the Coast of the Sea of *Sardinia*, at the Mouth of the River *Bosa*, 30 Miles from *Oristagni* to the North, and 35 from *Sassari*. It has the advantage of a large Harbour, and a Fort call'd *Saravalle*.

*Algheri*, or *Algher, Alerium* or *Algaria*, is a little but well and Fortify'd Inhabited Town, in the North-West part of the Island, about 16 Miles from *Sassari* to the South, and as many from *Bosa*. *Cluverius* says it was anciently call'd *Coraxa*; but *Franciscus a Vico, a Sardinian*, says, it sprung from the Ruins of a Neighbouring Town, call'd *Tylium*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Sassari*.

### The Island of Corfica.

The Island of *Corfica*, call'd also *Cyrnus* by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* lies between 40 Deg. 20 Min. and 42 Deg. 15 Min. Lat. and 31 Deg. 20 Min. and 32 Deg. 30 Min. Long. It is in Length according to *Cluverius*, from the *Sacrum Promontorium*, now *Punta di Marone*, or *Capo Iorfo*, to the Promontory *Granianum*, or *Capo di Manza*, 120 Miles; in Breadth, from the Promontory call'd *Capo di Foro*, to *Aleria Destrutta* 80. But *Baudrand*, who makes it 280 Miles in Compass, allows it only 110 of Length, and 50 of Breadth.

It has been subject to the Republick of *Genoua*, since the year 1144. that they expell'd the Saracens out of it; notwithstanding the several attempts that have been made by the Pisans, and the Kings of *Aragon* to take it from them, particularly in the years 1320. and 1435. and the *Doge* of *Genoua* is Crown'd

with



with a Royal Crown of Gold, and a Scepter put in his hand, because of the Kingdom of *Corfica*. It is Govern'd by one sent thither every 2 years from that State, who is assisted by a Lieutenant, and several Commissaries.

The Air of this Island is very unwholsom, and the Soil for the most part but indifferent, the Country being Mountainous and Woody, and the Ground Stony. In some Places however, it brings forth good Corn, Vines, and several sorts of Fruits, as Figs, Almonds and Chestnuts; nor are the Forests and Pastures unprovided of Venison, Cattel and Wild-Fowl. The Natives of *Corfica* are said to be Revengeful, Cruel and Unciviliz'd, and some are of Opinion that the Word *Corfairs*, which signifies *Py-rats*, or *Rovers* on the Sea, has its Original from them.

The Island of *Corfica* is computed to be about 100 Miles from *Genoua* to the South, 60 from *Leghorn* to the South-West, and 65 from *Piombino* to the West. It was formerly divided into 2 Parts, viz. South and North, but is now (according to *Baudrand*) divided into 4. viz. *Di quo di Monti*, or on this side the Mountains; *Il lato di dentro*, or the inner side; *Di la di Monti*, on the other side of the Mountains; and *Il lato di fuori*, or on the outer side: And the Towns that are now, or have been of any Note in it, are,

<i>Bastia.</i>	7	{ <i>Ajazzo.</i>
<i>Corte.</i>		{ <i>Bonifacio.</i>
<i>Nebbio.</i>		{ <i>St. Fiorenzo.</i>
<i>Mariana.</i>	}	{ <i>Calvi.</i>
<i>Aleria.</i>		{ <i>Accia.</i>
<i>Sagona.</i>		{ <i>Sarteni.</i>
<i>St. Pietro.</i>	J	{

*Bastia.* *Bastia*, or *Bastila*, is the chief City of this Island, Situated in the North part of it, with the advantage of a good Harbour, and a Fort, distant about 20 Miles from the *Capo di Corso* to the South, and 70 from *Bonifacio* to the North. It stands where the Town of *Mantinum* formerly stood, and is the ordinary Residence of the *Genouese* Governor.

*Corte*, *Cenestum*, a small City next *Bastia*, reckon'd the chief of the Island, it stands in the very Centre of it, and is an Episcopal See.

*Nebbio*, *Nebbium*, a Ruinous and Decay'd Town, in the North part of the Island, about a Mile from the Sea, not about a half from *St. Fiorenzo*; which some think arose from its Ruins, and 9 from *Bastia* to the South-West. It was the Seat of a Bishop, who now Resides at *St. Fiorenzo*, and is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Genoua*; but at present there are not above 15 Houses, and about 70 Souls in it.

*Mariana.* *Mariana*, was anciently a considerable Town, and the Name of a Roman Colony, and Adorn'd with several Magnificent Buildings, and a Colossus; but is now lying in its Ruins, which are call'd *le Rouina di Mariana*, nothing remaining but the Cathedral Church, and some other Buildings, without Roofs. It stood upon the River *Eolus*, which divided it into 2 Parts, viz. the South, call'd *Casinea*, and the North, call'd *Mariana*: And is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Genoua*. It is distant 20 Miles from the Ruins of *Aleria* to the North, and 15 from *Bastia*, where its Bishop hath Resided since the year 1575.

*Aleria* and *Sagona*, have scarce any thing but their Names left.

*Ajazzo*, *Adjacium*, anciently call'd *Urcinium*, is a pretty well Inhabited Town, with a Fort and a

good Harbour, on the West side of the Island, on a Bay of its own Name, about 40 Miles from *Bonifacio*, to the North-West, 40 from *Calvi* to the South, and about one from the Ruins of the old *Adjacium*. It is subject to the State of *Genoua*, but its Bishop is under the Archbishop of *Pisa*.

*Bonifacio*, *Bonifacium*, is a Fortified and well Inhabited little Town, on the South Coast of the Island, Situated on a Rock, which is almost Surrounded by the Sea; and from it the Channel which separates this Island from *Sardinia* is call'd, *le bocche di Bonifacio*, formerly *Fretum Taphros*.

*Calvi*, *Calvium*, stands on the West side of the Island, with a very strong Fort, in form of a *Peninsula*, which makes it only accessable at one Place, where the Franciscans Convent stands. It has been several times in vain attempted by the Saracens and French; and is distant 35 Miles from *Bastia* to the West, and 30 from *Ajazzo* to the North.

### Several other Islands of less Note.

The Liparean Islands which *Pliny* calls the *Æolie*, and *Vulcanie*, and the Grecians *Hephestiades*, lie off the North Coast of *Sicily*, in the Tyrrhenian or Tuscan Sea, where as the Poets say, blustering King *Æolus* Reign'd of old. These Islands did anciently belong to *Sicily*; but afterwards the Kings of *Naples* unjustly wrested them from it, and *Charles* the Vth. confirm'd the Possession of them to *Naples*, till at last, in the year 1609. they were restor'd to *Sicily*, to which they are still subject. They are in number 7. viz.

*Lipara*, now *Lipari*.  
*Hiera*, now *Volcano*.  
*Strongylæ*, now *le Saline*.  
*Evonymos*, now *Lisca bianca*.  
*Didyme*, now *Stromboli*.  
*Ericusa*, now *Paschu*.  
*Phenicusa*, now *Felicur*.

*Lipari*, *Lipara*, is the biggest of all the *Æolian* or *Vulcanian* Islands, being 18 Miles in Compass; and distant about 40 Miles from the North Coast of *Sicily*, and 50 from the nearest part of the Farther *Calabria*. This Island did formerly Vomit up Fire, as may be seen still by the Vestiges and Marks of it, and its Baths were very wholsom. There is a Town in it of its own name, which was almost destroyed by *Barbarossa*, the Turkish Admiral in the year 1544. but afterwards Repair'd and is now pretty neat and well Inhabited, and has a strong Fort, call'd *la Pignataro*. Pope *Eugenius* the III<sup>d</sup>. Erected this Place into a Bishoprick, in the year 1151. and since the year 1627. it has been exempted from the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Messina*, till of late, that it owns its subjection to that Metropolitan.

The most considerable of those little Islands that lye about *Sardinia*, are,

*St. Pietro.* } *Di Toro.*  
*St. Antiocha.* } *Tavolato.*  
*Di Vaccha.* } *Afinaria.*

The most considerable of those that lye along the Coast of *Italy*, between the Lyparean Islands and *Genoua*, are these,

*Capri.* } *Monte Christo.*  
*Ischia.* } *Formiche.*  
*Ponza.* } *Pianosa.*  
*Gianuti.* } *Capraccia.*  
*Giglio.* } *Maloria.*  
*Elba.* } *Gorgona.*

*Capri;*



*Capri*, *Caprea*, an Island in the Tyrrhenian Sea, belonging to the Kingdom of *Naples*, in the Province of *Terra di Lavoro*, at the entry of the Gulf of *Naples*, near the *Capo Campanella*, from which it is divided by a Channel 3 Miles Broad, call'd *le bocche di Capri*. It is about 12 Miles in Circuit, and has a little Town in the South part of it, of its own name, which has the Title of a Bishoprick, the Revenues of which are Paid in Quails, which at two Seasons of the year are catch'd in vast numbers in this Island. This Place was once the delightful Retreat of the Emperor *Tiberius Augustus*: and the Island is call'd *Telamonis* by *Silius*. It contains at present about 1500 Souls, who are exempted from all manner of Taxes.

*Ischia*, or *Isla*, *Ischia*, otherwise call'd *Inarime*, and *Anaria*, lies in the Tyrrhenian Sea, off the Coast of *Naples*, in the Province of *Terra di Lavoro*, from the Coast of which it is distant 2 Miles, as many from the *Capo Miseno*, and one from the Island of *Prochita*. It is about 20 Miles in Compass, having a Town of its own name, with a strong Fort, on the South side of it, join'd to the Island by a Bridge. *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* made this his Refuge, in the time of *Charles* the VIIIth. King of *France*, who in a few Days over-ran that whole Kingdom, in the year 1495. This Town has the Title of a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Naples*.

*Ponza*, *Pontia*, is an Island in the Tyrrhenian Sea, reckon'd a part of the Kingdom of *Naples*, but belonging to the Duke of *Parma*, 13 Miles from the *Circæan Promontorium*, now *Monte Circella*, 20 from *Terracina*, and 5 from *Pandataria*, now *Santa Maria*. There was a Colony sent into this Island (as *Livy* Relates) in the year of the City 441. and a Town Built in it by the *Volsci*; but being quite dispeopl'd afterwards, there were new Inhabitants sent into it, in the year of Christ, 1583. It was anciently a

Place where many Banish'd Romans were oblig'd to go, particularly *Caligula's* Sisters, whom he sent thither.

*Giglio*, *Ægilium*, or *Igium*, is an Island in the Tuscan Sea, off the Coast of the *Sinefe*, of which it is a part, and subject to the Great Duke of *Tuscany*, 10 Miles from the Shoar of *Cesano*, and as many from *il Monte Argentario*. It is subject to the spiritual Jurisdiction of the Abbot of *Tre-fontane*, near *Rome*, and about 25 Miles in Compass.

*Elba*, *Iua*, or *Æthalia*, is an Island in the Tuscan Sea, over against *Piombino* in *Tuscany*, from which it is distant about 10 Miles. It is about 40 Miles in Compass, and abounds in Iron, belong'd formerly to the Republick of *Siena*, but is now a part of the Principality of *Piombino*, under the Protection of the King of *Spain*, who has a Fort in it of considerable Strength, call'd *Porto-longone*, and the Duke of *Tuscany* has another, call'd, *Porto-Ferraro*.

*Capraria*, *Capraria*, so call'd, from the great abundance of Goats which used to be in it, is an Island in the Tuscan Sea, lying between the State of *Tuscany* to the East, and *Corfica*, (on which it depends) to the West. It is very Mountainous, and about 18 Miles in Compass. It belongs to the Coast of *Genoua*, who have a Fort and a Garrison in it, to defend it from the Pyrats, and contains about 600 Inhabitants.

*Gorgona*, *Gergon*, or *Urgo*, according to *Pliny*, is a little Island in the Tuscan Sea, between the Coast of *Tuscany* to the East, and *Corfica* to the West, and about 25 Miles from *Leghorn* to the South-West. It was formerly subject to the Pisans, but belongs now to the Great Duke of *Tuscany*. It is 10 Miles in Compass, and has only one little Town, and a sort of a Fort in it.



# SPAIN.

By Rob. Falconer.

## SPAIN and PORTUGAL



**S** PAIN, is the Western Part of all the Continent of Europe, environ'd on all sides with the Sea, except towards France, from which it is separated by the Pyrenean Mountains. It is Bounded on the East and South with the Mediterranean Sea, the Streights of Gibraltar (anciently call'd *Fretum Gaditanum*) and a part of the Atlantick Ocean; on the West with the same Ocean; and on the North with the Bay of Biscay, and the Pyrenean Mountains, by which it is separated from France. It is Situated betwixt 37 and 44 Degr. of Latitude, and 8 and 20 of Longitude. It is in form of a Peninsula, and commonly compared to an Ox-hide, the Neck making the Isthmus, which separates it from France, and is said to be (according to *Cluverius*) in its greatest Length, from the *Sacrum Promontorium*, now call'd

*Cabo de S. Vincente*, to *Fons Salsule*, or *Salsas*, on the Confines of France, on the Mediterranean Sea, 760 Miles. Its greatest Breadth from the *Promontorium Celticum*, or *Cabo Finis terra*, to the *Promontorium Saturni*, or *Cabo de Palos*, 600.

The Romans anciently divided it into 3 Provinces, viz. *Batica*, *Lusitania*, and *Tarraconensis*. *Batica*, was Bounded on the North and West with the River *Anas*, or *Guadiana*, on the South with the Ocean and the Mediterranean Sea, and on the East with the *Tarraconensis*. *Lusitania* was Bounded on the North with the River *Durius*, or *Duero*, on the West with the Ocean, on the East with *Tarraconensis*, and on the South with the River *Anas*, or *Guadiana*. *Tarraconensis* comprehended all the rest of Spain; which was otherwise divided into 4 Parts, viz. *Citerior* and *Uterior*, or the



the Hither and Farther ; and from hence it is, that we sometimes find *Hispania*, in the Plural number, put to signify *Spain*. *Hispania Citerior*, was the same with *Tarragonensis*, the *Uterior* comprehended the Provinces of *Barcia* and *Lusitania*.

As to the different names that have been given this Kingdom at several times, tho' 'tis hardly worth the while to account for them, it being a thing full of uncertainty and conjecture ; yet because 'tis usual, we shall put the Reader in mind, that we find it sometimes call'd *Hesperia*, either from *Hesperus*, a suppos'd King thereof, or from *Hesperus* the Evening Star, under which the Ancients, they say, suppos'd it Situated ; and call'd it *Ultima*, to distinguish it from *Italia*, which they likewise call'd *Hesperia*, with the addition of *Minor*. It was also call'd *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*, now *Ebro*, or the *Iberi*, a People Inhabiting *Georgia* in *Asia* ; and *Celtiberia*, from the *Celts* in *Gaul*'s mixing with these *Iberi*. But how it came by the name of *Hispania*, is what the Criticks have warmly disputed, and are never like to agree upon. Some maintaining that the Grecians call'd it *Σπάρτα*, from the thinness of its Inhabitants, and dryness of its Soil : Others, especially *Bischart*, from the Punick Word *Spanija*, which signifies a Conie, because the Country abounded with such. *Justinus* will have it call'd *Hispania*, from a certain King call'd *Hispanus*, and *Claudian* is of Opinion, that it owes its name to *Hispalis*, the chief City, anciently of the Kingdom ; But we leave the Reader to choose which he likes best, having given him variety of conjectures concerning it.

As to the first Inhabitants of *Spain*, we will not trouble the Reader with the dispute concerning *Tubal*, *Noah*'s Grandchild's coming into it, not long after the Deluge, or whether the *Celts*, the Offspring of *Askenaz*, were the first that Peopl'd it, and several other Countries in *Europe* ; only put him in mind that *Spain* was in ancient times divided into a great many States independent of one another ; which was at that time the condition of most other Countries of *Europe*. And by reason of this Division, and their scarcity of good Commanders, it was, that they were neither formidable to their Neighbours, or able to defend themselves at home. For not to mention how the *Celts* pass'd out of *Gaul*, and the next adjacent Parts of *Spain*, who being mix'd with the *Iberians*, were from thence call'd *Celtiberians* ; neither how the *Rhodiens* Built *Roset* : The Citizens of *Σατα*, *Σαγουνιον* ; the *Phenicians*, *Cadix*, *Malaga*, and other Cities : the *Carthaginians* above the rest, immediately after the first Punick War with the Romans, began to Conquer a great part of *Spain*. Wherefore in the second Punick War, the Romans did at first send their Forces into *Spain*, where they Fought so long with the *Carthaginians*, till at last *Scipio Africanus*, made a great part of it a Roman Province ; the other parts were subdu'd by degrees, till *Augustus* at last entirely Subduing the *Cantabrians*, who liv'd next to the Pyrenean Mountains, joyn'd all *Spain* to the Roman Empire, under whose Protection it was peaceably Govern'd for a considerable time, except that the Spaniards now and then were drawn in to take a part in the Civil Wars among the Romans. But the Western parts of the Roman Empire declining, the *Vandals*, *Suevi*, *Alani*, and *Silingi*, invaded *Spain*, and divided it among them, but did not enjoy it long ; for the *Vandals* passing over into *Africa*, the *Suevi* Routed the *Alani*, and Subdu'd the *Silingi* ; and by that means were in a fair way to make themselves Masters of all *Spain*,

had they not been prevented by the *Goths* ; who having under their King *Alarick*, Ravish'd *Italy* and *Rome* itself, settled themselves upon the Borders between *France* and *Spain* ; Possessing themselves first of *Catalonia* and *Languedok*, and not long after of other Provinces of *Spain*. About the year 586. the Empire of the *Goths* was arriv'd at its highest pitch of greatness, as comprehending not only some Neighbouring Provinces of *France*, and a great part of *Mauritania*, but also all *Spain*, except a small part Possess'd as yet by the Romans ; from whence they were Chas'd afterwards by King *Suintila*, about the year 646. Afterwards the *Goths* degenerating from their ancient Valour, and *Roderick* having provok'd *Julian*, his Governor of the Gothish *Mauritania*, and that part of *Spain*, that lies about the *Seigles*, by Ravishing his Wife ; *Julian* to revenge the Affront, sow'd Sedition among the *Goths*, and brought over vast numbers of *Saracens* from *Africa*, and gave his Master *Roderick* Battle ; who being kill'd in the Flight, and his faithful subjects dispers'd, and left without a Head, all the great Cities fell into the Hands of the Enemy ; *Asturia*, *Biscay*, a part of *Gallicia*, and some Countreys lying near the Pyrenees remaining to the *Goths*. Thus fell the Power and Splendor of the *Goths*, which had been famous in *Spain* for 300 years ; and the *Saracens* became Masters of it.

About the year 716. *Pelagius* descended from the Gothish Kings, being chosen King, recollected the remaining Forces of this unfortunate Nation, and defeated the *Moors*, and took several Towns from the *Saracens* : And his Successors, (tho' most of them did nothing considerable) did several times defeat, and gain'd ground on the Enemy. *Ramirius* gave them a particular overthrow, and *Garfias* was Victorious also, but Dyed soon : And his Brother transferr'd the Seat of the Spanish Kingdom from *Oviedo* to *Leon*, and Dyed in the year 932. About this time *Garfias Semenus* Erected the Kingdom of *Navarr*, as *Aznar*, Son of *Eudo* Duke of *Aquitain*, did the Earldom of *Aragon* : And *Lewis* Son of *Charles* the Great, constituted *Bernard* Earl of *Barcelona*. About the year 1025. *Sanctius*, King of *Navarr*, having Married the Sister of *Garfias*, Earl of *Castile*, who was Murder'd by his own Vassals, took upon him the Title of King of *Castile*. Thus *Castile* and *Navarr* were united ; and *Leon* shortly after was added to them by the Marriage of *Ferdinand* of *Leon*'s Sister and Heiress. Thus all the Provinces of *Spain* which were possess'd by the Christians, were joyn'd in one House. But the division which *Sanctius Major* made among his 4 Sons, prevented the Expulsion of the *Moors*, which otherwise might have been easily brought about ; for leaving to his eldest Son *Garfias*, *Navarr* and *Biscay* ; to *Ferdinand*, *Castile* ; to *Gonsalvo*, *Suprarbe* and *Riparesa* ; and to *Ramirius*, *Aragon*, and to each of them the Title of King, they quickly fell by the Ears, all of them affecting to be Superior. *Ferdinand* surnam'd the Great, (who Dyed in the year 1065.) did also divide the Empire among his 3 Sons, to the great detriment of *Spain*, the same natural effect following, as after the former Division. *Alonso VIII.* about the year 1140. divided his Kingdom again, leaving to his Son *Sancho IV.* *Castile*, and to *Ferdinand*, *Leon* and *Gallicia*. In the year 1210. these Kings in Confederacy, Fought the memorable Battel of *Lasa*, against the *Moors* ; where the latter were Beat, with the loss of 20000 Men ; and by that means lost all their Strength ; for in the year 1232. King *James* of *Aragon* took *Majorca* from them.



them: In the year 1234. *Minorca*, and in the year 1238. *Torca*. In the year 1235. *Ferdinand* took from them *Merida* and *Bejades*, and several other Places; and in the year 1236. the City and Kingdom of *Corduba*; and *Murcia* Surrendered it self to the protection of *Castile*. In the year 1243. *Jaen*, *Sevil*, and the greater part of *Andalusia*. In the year 1324. the Moors receiv'd a great Reinforcement out of *Africk*: Nevertheless the Castilians obtain'd a signal Victory over them, in the year 1340. where they lost 20000 Men, and the Spaniards 25000. In the year 1478. in the Reign of *Ferdinand*, (whom the Castilians call the Vth. or the Catholick) the famous Inquisition was instituted against the Moors and Jews; and in the year 1492. an end was put to the Kingdom of the Moors in *Spain*, after it had stood there for above 700 years. And to prevent their ever encreasing again, there were 170000 Families of Moors and Jews Banish'd out of *Spain*; which despoil'd that Kingdom not only of a great number of Inhabitants, but also of vast Riches. In the year 1478. *Ferdinand* the Son of *John II.* King of *Aragon* and *Navar*, by a second Wife, Marrying *Isabella*, Sister and Heiress of *Henry IV.* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, united all these Dominions in one House, and by that means laid the Foundation of the Spanish Monarchy, and of the great Power of that Kingdom; which was mightily advanc'd and improv'd by his Grandchild, and immediate Successor *Charles V.* Emperor of that name.

Concerning the Genius of the Spaniards, we shall borrow almost the very words of the judicious *Puffendorf*. The Spanish Nation, says he, is commonly esteem'd to be very Wise, and to take remote Prospects, throughly weighing a thing before it undertakes it: Whereby nevertheless, the Spaniards being over cautious in executing their Counsels, do often lose the opportunities of Action. They are very constant in their Resolutions, and tho' they fail once in an attempt, they will try their Fortune again. They are very fit for War, and not only Brave at the first Attack, but will also hold out till the last; and their sober way of living, and spare Bodies, make them fit for hardship. They are grave in their Words, and proud in their Behaviour, to a Proverb, but some are of opinion, that this Gravity of theirs is not so much the effect of their Pride, as of a melancholy Constitution and ill Custom. They are seldom fit for any Trade or Business, where any hard labour is required; such as Husbandry, or any other Handycraft Trades; wherefore these are chiefly manag'd among them by Foreigners. It is credibly reported, that in *Madrid* alone there are above 40000 Frenchmen, being for the most part Merchants, Artists, Handycraftsmen and Labourers; who go under the name of Burgundians, thereby to avoid the hatred, which the Spaniards naturally bear against the French. Altho' the Spaniards think such trifles as these below them; yet they think nothing to drudge all their life time under a Musket, in hopes sometime to be made an Officer. Their Pride, Cruelty, Coverousness, and rigorous Proceedings, make them hateful to all such as are under their Command: *Spain* at present has hardly a number of Inhabitants proportionable to its extent; for which several Reasons may be given. For the Women by reason of the Climate, and the thin constitution of their Bodies, are not so fruitful as in the Northern Parts. Whoring also being allow'd here, many choose rather to make shift with a Whore, than be at the trouble and charge of maintaining of a Family. Then, those who are in Holy

Orders must not Marry, which deprives the Nation of a vast number of People, these being very numerous. The Wars also, especially in *Italy* and *Flanders*, have devour'd a great many Spaniards. The Peopling of *America*, and Banishing so many Jews and Moors out of *Spain*, (as we said before) have effectually contributed to the Dispeopling this Kingdom.

Concerning the Soil of *Spain*, it is not Fertile alike in all Places; the most remote Parts from the Sea-Coast being barren, and producing nothing fit for the subsistence of Men or Beasts; but nearer the Sea-shoar, for the most part it is very Fertile. There is abundance of Sheep here, and the Horses are very fine, but too few to serve themselves withal. This Kingdom is very well fitted for Trade, being surrounded almost by the Sea, and having abundance of good Harbours. The product of their Ground, and Commodities fit for Exportation are, especially Wool, Silk, Wine, Oyl, Raisins, Almonds, Figs, Citrons, Rice, Soap, Iron, Salt and such like. In former times the Spanish Gold Mines were most famous, but now-a-days, neither Gold nor Silver is digg'd out in *Spain*. Some will alledge for a Reason, that it is forbidden under severe penalties, to keep it as a reserve, in case of great extremity, but 'tis more probable, that the Avarice of the Spaniards hath entirely exhausted the Mines long ago.

The greatest Revenue of *Spain* comes from the *West-Indies*, from whence Gold and Silver flow into it, and are from thence convey'd into other parts of *Europe*, in so great streams, that considering how much of it falls to the share of the Italian, French, English and Dutch Merchants, it will be found that the least part remains to *Spain*; so that the Spaniards (as a judicious Author observes) may be said to keep the Cow, but others have the Milk; by which means other Nations are impow'ed to chastise the haughty Spaniard with his own Money. And 'tis but just it should be so, considering the unparallel'd Cruelty and Barbarity by which they attain'd those Countries; which were possess'd by People not so Barbarous, as some imagine; there having been found among them such excellent Laws and Constitutions as would make some Europeans blush. But whether the pretended Barbarity of the People, or the Bull of Pope *Alexander VI.* or a Providential possession, (which some Christian Authors make a sufficient Title) makes the Spaniards Title to those Countreys good enough, we leave to others to decide.

Considering the many and large Dominions belonging to this Crown, *Spain* must be look'd on as a powerful Kingdom; for besides the Kingdoms of *Peru* and *Mexico*, and those vast Islands of *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, and *Porto Rico* in *America*, there are under the Spanish Jurisdiction, the Canary Islands, *Sardinia*, *Sicily*, the Kingdom of *Naples*, the Dukedom of *Milan*, the *Netherlands*, and the *Philippine* Islands in the *East-Indies*. Nevertheless, this vast Kingdom has its Infirmities, which has brought it so low that it is scarce able to stand on its own Legs. Among those the want of Inhabitants in *Spain* is one, there not being a sufficient number in it to keep those great Provinces in obedience, and at the same time to make Head against a powerful Enemy. Another weakness is, that those Provinces are mightily disjoyn'd; which makes it a very hard matter to send Succours to them when they are attack'd by any Neighbouring State; or to enquire into the Mal-administration of the Governors or Grievances of the



People; which may sometime provoke them to shake off the Yoke, when a fit opportunity is put into their hands. Besides, *América* being the Treasury of *Spain* is divided by the vast Ocean from the Court, whereby their Silver Fleets are expos'd to the hazard of the Seas, and Pyrats. And if it happen that such a Fleet is lost, the whole Government must needs suffer extremely by it; the Inhabitants of *Spain* being so exhausted, as not to be able to raise sufficient Sums to supply the publick Necessities. The Spaniards also are mighty deficient in regulating their *Indi-Indian Trade*; which is ill manag'd, that the greatest part of their Riches are convey'd into other Nations: And the Nobles, partly by the carelessness of some of their Kings, and partly by the long Minority of the present, have so encreas'd their Power, that they have got all the Riches into their hands, and left very little to the Commonalty; nor are they over-forward in assisting the King, when the Necessities of the State require it. And should the present King, as is more than probable, die without Children, it is no hard matter to foresee the confusion and dismal consequences which must follow to that Kingdom.

The most considerable Rivers in *Spain*, are, 1. the *Ebro*, which rises near the Mountains of *Astoria*, and after it has receiv'd the streams of several other lesser ones, falls into the Mediterranean Sea, 9 Miles beyond *Tortosa*. 2. *Guadquivir*, which rises in the Mountains call'd *La Sierra de Guadivir*, near the Confines of *Murcia*, and empties it self into the Bay of *Cádiz*, near *S. Lucar de Barameda*. 3. The *Taj*, which rises from a double Spring, one of which the Inhabitants call *Los reguiles de Taj*, the other *Fuente Garcia*, at the foot of the Mountains *Vallegiño*, in new *Castile*, on the Confines of *Aragon*, near the Village call'd *Frias*; and falls into the Atlantick Ocean, 6 Miles below *Lisbon*. 4. *Duro*, which rises near the Town of *Agreda*, in old *Castile*, near the Confines of *Aragon*, and empties it self into the Atlantick Sea, near *Oporto*. 5. *Minio*, which rises in *Galicia*, near a Town call'd *Castro de Rey*, and empties it self into the Atlantick Ocean, 15 Miles below *Tay*. There are several others of less Note, most of whom join their streams with those above mention'd. The most considerable Mountains are, 1. The *Pyrenees*, which divide *France* from *Spain*. 2. Those formerly call'd *Ilubeda*, which have different names given them by the different People who live near them, as, in *Biscay*, *Los Montes Siguera*, in old *Castile*, *Los Montes d'Occa*, on the Confines of new *Castile*, *la Sierra d'Astienza*, *Los Montes de Toledo*, &c. 3. *Oroxoreda*, or *La Penna de los Enamorado*. 4. *Cuipo* or *Ceuta*. 5. *Ibi*, near *Barcelona*.

The Universities, great and small in *Spain*, are those of *Avila*, *Breça*, Erected in the year 1535. *Zaragoza*, by the Emperor *Charles V.* *Avila*, by *Francis Cardinal Ximenes*, in the year 1517. *Compostella*; *Granada*, by the Emperor *Charles V.* Ann. 1537. *Sevil*, a very ancient one; *Lerda*, before the time of Pope *Calixtus III.* *Onnate*, a very little one, in the year 1543. *Huesca*, an ancient one; *Oviedo*, by *Ferdinand I.* *Valdes*, Ann. 1536. *Pamplona*, Ann. 1618. *Salamanca*, by *Alphonfus IX.* King of *Leon*, Ann. 1200. *Tarragona*, under the Reign of King *Philip II.* *Toledo*, a very ancient one; *Valencia*, Ann. 1470. *Valadolid*, by Pope *Clement VI.* in the time King *Alphonfus XI.* Ann. 1346. and *Ovuna*, Ann. 1529. There are 5 Archbishopricks, viz. *Toledo*, *Burges*, *Compostella*, *Sevil*, *Granada*, *Zaragoza*, *Tarragona* and *Valencia*; and 46 Bishopricks, without including those of the Kingdom

of *Portugal*. Of all which the Reader may find particular account in the description of those Places.

The Christian Faith is said to have been Planted here by *S. James* the Apostle, about 4 years after the Death of our Saviour; but *Barnius* and others reject this Tradition. That *S. Paul* design'd to come hither is evident, and that he did actually come, is affirm'd by *Cyprius*, *Theodoret*, and several others. And tho' *S. Peter* did not accompany him in the Journey yet he seconded the Preaching of that Apostle, by sending the Bishops and other Presbyters into those Parts, as appears from the *Martyrologies*. Since the year 1478, that the Inquisition was establish'd, no other Religion but the Roman Catholick is Profess'd or Tolerat'd here. This Inquisition was first Instituted against the Jews and Moors, but hath since been turn'd against Protestants, or indeed, against all who are not rampant Roman Catholicks. It is deservedly esteem'd an inhuman and execrable Tribunal among other Nations, and carries the greatest Injustice with it, in ordering the Children to bear the guilt of their Parents; nor permitting any body to know his Accusers, to clear himself against them. The least suspicion of Heresie, or Commerce or Affinity with Hereticks, reproving the Lives of the Clergy, keeping prohibited Books, or even discouraging matters of Religion, are sufficient Crimes. If 2 Witnesses can be found, Torture must be then us'd; and if 3 Witnesses not that will do, yet they must be under severe restraint, and endure great hardship for several years, to terrifie others: And if they come off so, upon the first suspicion, the second infallibly brings present Death. A strange way for propagating the Christian Religion, which is gentle and full of Mercy, or for reclaiming those who are in error; since by such means Hypocrites may be made, but not sincere Christians.

All the Spaniards, (says *Mariana*) at present use one Language, which we call *Castilian*, and is compounded of many other Tongues, especially the Latin, which appears by the name it bears, being call'd *Romane*; and its so great affinity, beyond the Italian; for that Latin, or Spanish, either in Prose or Verse, agree in the very words and manner of Composition. The Portuguese have a Language peculiar to themselves, being a mixture of the French, and Castilian. The People of *Catalenia* and *Valencia*, use a distinct Language, very like that of *Languedoc*: Only the *Biscainers* still retain their Mother and Barbarous Tongue, void of all Elegancy, totally different from any other in *Spain*; but the Ancientest, and that which was formerly used throughout the whole Kingdom, before the coming of the Romans, who spread their Language wherever they Conquer'd.

Most European Nations look on the Spanish Habit, as ridiculous, and they on the other hand look upon other Europeans as Fools for changing their Fashions of Cloaths. The Spaniards appear at Court in Black, which Colour is generally wore over all the Kingdom. Their Habit consists of a Doublet, straight Breeches, button'd down the Thighs, a short Cloak, and a Girdle about their Belly: Shoes cut out, and resembling those which Rope Dancers use, black Stockens, so like Net-work, that the white ones under are plainly seen: A Sword about four Foot and a half long on the left side, and a Dagger on the other. The finer sort of the Men have a little Hat lined with black Taffeta, and a Band of black Lace about it; and a *Gonille* or Ruff about their Neck for a Cravat. They are sure always to have a little Pocket in their Doublet for Snuff,



Snuff, without Snuff-box, or Paper about it; which they use very frequently, when they can't find one to borrow from. Their Complexion is Tauny, their Hair black and short, and their Mustaches in form of a Crescent, and with all these Accoutrements they march along as grave as so many Ostrages. The Women also wear Black, with large *Vertugadins*, or *Verdingales*, as wide as the Hoop of a Tun; and they lay on the red and White Paint so thick, that their Faces look as if they were plaistered. Among the other Customs which the Spaniards have singular to themselves from all *Europe*, their wearing of Spectacles is not the least; for not only old Men and Women, but also young People of both Sexes, sitting at Table and walking in the Streets wear them, without any manner of Necessity, but only for Gravity; and the larger they are, the more honourable the Person that wears 'em is esteem'd. The Women never go to Processions; but are allowed to come to the Balconies, both to perform their Devotions to these, and also to see and be seen by their Lovers. The Jealousie of the Husbands seldom allows the Wives to come abroad; and when they go to Church, they are under a large Vail, and guarded by an old Woman; but they find out ways to see their Gallants now and then, either at a Friend's House, where they go to Visit, or some other convenient Place. They have been very hard put to't of late, for formerly it was the Custom for the Men to stand by the Holy-water Pot, and present the Water to the veiled Ladies when they came into the Church; and by that means had a convenient Opportunity to give or receive a Billet; but the Nuncio has forbid that Custom some Years ago, under pain of Excommunication. The excessive heat in *Spain* obliges the Inhabitants to keep within Doors, either on their Beds, or in cool Rooms, from ten in the Forenoon to five in the Afternoon; insomuch that during all that time, you shall rarely see a Shop open, or any Body walking in the Street.

The Diseases that reign in most *Spain*, are, a Swelling in the Throat, which often degenerates into the King's Evil; a Rheumatism, which if neglected, quickly over-runs the whole Body and makes it impotent. The finess of the Air is commonly blam'd for this; for if they do not take special care to shut the Windows of their Bed-Rooms at Night, and cover their Stomacks well in the Morning, they are infallibly put in disorder. The Spaniards are temperate in their eating and drinking. The People of Quality have great Retinues of Servants, much Plate, but few and ill-fill'd Dishes. Bread is often very scarce among them; both because there is scarcity of Corn, and because they have few Wind-Mills, and their Water-Mills have oftentimes no Water by reason of the excessive Drought. The Women never sit at Table, because, according to the Custom of *Spain*, they are not allowed to sit on a Stool, but on the Ground, with their Legs (unnaturally) a-cross, as our Taylors do. People travel commonly in *Spain*, on Mules, who walk with almost as much Gravity as their Masters: And it is very seldom that one rides post, except the King's Courier, or those who have a Licence from the Court.

Concerning the Mony of *Spain*, they have Pieces of Gold which they call *Dublone*, that is, *Pistols*, others of Silver, call'd *Reals*, and Pieces of Eight Reals, about 58 Pence in value. That which they call *Reals of Billon*, are only imaginary Money, as *Livres* are in *France*, or *Pounds* in *England*. The

other Pieces of Mony are only Augmentations or Diminutions of Pistols or Reals, as double Pistol, Quadruple, Half, &c. and a fourth or eighth part of a Real. It is to be observed, that they do not weigh their Mony in *Spain*; and therefore the Jews who clip the Coin of that Country and send it elsewhere, make a vast Profit by it.

The Crown of *Spain* is Hereditary, descending to the eldest Son; and the presumptive Heir is call'd Prince of the *Asturias*, because it was to that Part of the Kingdom that *Pelagius* retir'd with the handful of Christians, who would not acknowledge the Moors, after they had conquer'd almost all *Spain*; And because it was the first that shook off the Yoke of the Infidels.

### A Table of the Succession of the Kings of Spain.

#### The Kings of the Goths in Spain.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Vallia</i> .        | 17. <i>Vitoricus</i> .    |
| 2. <i>Theoderick</i> .    | 18. <i>Gundebaris</i> .   |
| 3. <i>Therismund</i> .    | 19. <i>Sisebulus</i> .    |
| 4. <i>Theodorick II</i> . | 20. <i>Richard II</i> .   |
| 5. <i>Euricus</i> .       | 21. <i>Suintilla</i> .    |
| 6. <i>Alaricus</i> .      | 22. <i>Sisenanda</i> .    |
| 7. <i>Gensfaleric</i> .   | 23. <i>Suintilla II</i> . |
| 8. <i>Amalaric</i> .      | 24. <i>Tulgas</i> .       |
| 9. <i>Theudes</i> .       | 25. <i>Vidisumdu</i> .    |
| 10. <i>Theologisdus</i> . | 26. <i>Ricesuind</i> .    |
| 11. <i>Agila</i> .        | 27. <i>Bamba</i> .        |
| 12. <i>Athanagildus</i> . | 28. <i>Ering</i> .        |
| 13. <i>Luiba</i> .        | 29. <i>Egypta</i> .       |
| 14. <i>Leonigild</i> .    | 30. <i>Vitiza</i> .       |
| 15. <i>Richard</i> .      | 31. <i>Roderick</i> .     |
| 16. <i>Luiba II</i> .     |                           |

After the Gothish Splendor and Greatness in *Spain* had come to a Period in the Person of *Roderick*, who was kill'd in a Battel against the Saracens, who at that time made themselves Masters of *Spain*, about the Year 714. the first that undertook to recover the Liberty of that Country, was one descended from the Race of the Gothish Kings, call'd,

1. *Pelagius*, who being chosen King by the Remnant of that unfortunate Nation, was victorious over the Moors and Saracens, and was succeeded by his Son
2. *Favila*, who did nothing worth mentioning, and was succeeded by his Son
3. *Alonso* the Catholick, who died, Anno 757. and was succeeded by
4. *Favila*, his Son, who, after he had been victorious over the Moors, was kill'd, Anno 768. and was succeeded by his Brother
5. *Aurelius*, who died, Anno 774. and was succeeded by
6. *Silo*, *Alonso* the Catholick's Son-in-Law, who died, Anno 783. and was succeeded by
7. *Alonso*, the Son of *Favila*, who was driven out of his Kingdom by the Usurper *Mauregatus*, and died, Anno 788. and was succeeded by
8. *Veremundus*, who was succeeded by
9. *Alonso* the Chaste, who died, Anno 844. and was succeeded by
10. *Ramirius*, an excellent Prince, who died, 851. and was succeeded by his Son



11. *Ordonius*, who died, *Anno* 862. and was succeeded by his Son
12. *Alonso* III. fir-nam'd the Great, who was fortunate in his Wars against the Moors, but dethron'd by his Son
13. *Garcias*, whose Reign was short, and who was succeeded by
14. *Ordonius* II. who transferr'd the Seat of the Spanish Kings from *Oviedo* to *Leon*. He died *Anno* 923. and was succeeded by his Son
15. *Fastis*, a bloody Tyrant, who was succeeded by
16. *Alonso* IV. who surrender'd the Government to his Brother
17. *Ramirus* II. who died, *Anno* 950. and was succeeded by his Son
18. *Ordonius* III. who was a valiant Prince, but his Reign was short, and he was succeeded by his Brother
19. *Sanctius* Craxus, who was succeeded by
20. *Ramirus* III. who was succeeded by
21. *Peremundus* II. who died about the Year 999. and was succeeded by his Son
22. *Alonso* V. to whom succeeded his Son
23. *Peremundus* III. in whose time *Garcias*, Earl of *Castile*, being murdered, and *Castile* falling to *Sanctius* King of *Navarre*, who had married *Garcias*'s Sister, he assumed the Title of King of *Castile*, and was call'd
24. *Sanctius* Major, and oblig'd *Peremund* to give his Sister and Heiress *Sanctia* in Marriage to *Ferdinand* his Son; by which means, *Leon*, *Navarre*, and *Castile*, were united in one House. He died, *Anno* 1035. having divid'd his Dominions among his three Sons; the eldest of whom was
25. *Sanctius* III. who, having taken Possession of the Territories belonging to his Brethren, was slain in the Siege of *Camora*, and was succeeded by his Brother
26. *Alonso* VI. who died, *Anno* 1109. and was succeeded by
27. *Alonso* VII. King of *Aragon*, who had married *Urraca*, Daughter and Heiress of *Alonso*; but was forc'd to part with the Kingdom to
28. *Alonso* VIII. Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymund* of *Burgundy*, her first Husband. He died, *Anno* 1157. having divid'd his Dominions betwixt his three Sons, giving *Castile* to the eldest, who was call'd
29. *Sanctius* IV. who died, *Anno* 1158. and was succeeded by his Son
30. *Alonso* IX. in whose time the famous Battle of *Lasa* was fought against the Moors, where 200000 of 'em were kill'd. He died, *Anno* 1214. and was succeeded by his Son
31. *Henry*, who dying without Issue, *Anno* 1217. was succeeded by
32. *Ferdinandus Sanctus*, Son of *Berengaria*, *Henry*'s Sister, who was married to *Alonso* King of *Leon*; by whose death *Leon* and *Castile* were reunited, under *Ferdinand*, who died, *Anno* 1252. and was succeeded by his Son
33. *Sanctius* V. in whose Reign, *Anno* 1282. happened the *Sicilian Vespers*. He died, *Anno* 1293. and was succeeded by his Son
34. *Ferdinand* IV. who died in the flower of his Age, and was succeeded by his Son
35. *Alonso* XI. in whose time the Castilians obtain'd a signal Victory over the Moors. (*Anno* 1340.) where 200000 of 'em were kill'd. He died in the Siege of *Gibraltar*, *Anno* 1350. and was succeeded by his Son
36. *Peter*, fir-nam'd the Cruel; who was kill'd in a Battle, *Anno* 1369. by his Bastard-Brother, call'd
37. *Henry* II. whom the Castilians, having rebell'd against *Peter*, had set up for their King. He died, *Anno* 1374. and was succeeded by his Son
38. *John* II. who died by a Fall from his Horse, *Anno* 1390. and was succeeded by his Son
39. *Henry* III. who died, *Anno* 1407. and was succeeded by his Son
40. *John* III. a Child of two Months old, who died, *Anno* 1453. and was succeeded by his Son
41. *Henry* IV. whom the Castilians deposed, and set up his Brother *Alonso*; who dying during the intestine Wars, *Ferdinand* Son of *John* II. King of *Aragon*, married *Isabella*, *Henry*'s Sister. *Henry*, at last, after much ado, being reconciled to them, died in the Year 1472. and was succeeded by
42. *Ferdinand* V. call'd the Catholick, and *Isabella*; in whom the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Aragon*, were united, and under whom the bloody Inquisition was establish'd, *Anno* 1478. and the Kingdom of the Moors in *Spain* brought to a Period after it had stood 700 Years. *Isabella* dying, *Anno* 1504. and *Ferdinand* returning to *Aragon*, they were succeeded by
43. *John*, Prince of *Castile*, and *Philip* the Netherlander; but he happening to die soon after, and the not being in her right Wits the Administration of the Government was committed to *Ferdinand*, who dying, *Anno* 1516. was succeeded by his Grandson
44. *Charles* V. Emperor of that Name; who voluntarily abdicated the Government, leaving the Imperial Crown to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all his Kingdoms and Territories, except those in *Germany*, to *Philip*. He died in the Convent of *St. Justus*, in *Spain*, *Anno* 1558. and was succeeded by
45. *Philip* II. whose Invincible Armado (with which he made no doubt to destroy *England*) consisting of 150 Sail of Ships, which carried 1600 great Pieces of Brass Cannon, and 1050 of Iron, 8000 Seamen, 20000 Soldiers, besides Volunteers; and whose Preparations cost twelve Millions of Ducats, was almost destroyed, few returning home, and those in a miserable condition. He died, *Anno* 1598. and was succeeded by his Son
46. *Philip* III. who died, *Anno* 1621. and was succeeded by his Son
47. *Philip* IV. who died, *Anno* 1665. and was succeeded by his Son
48. *Charles* II. being then a Child of four Years old.

The King of *Spain*'s Dominions being very large and scattered, is the reason why he appoints so many Viceroies and Governors of Countries. Of the former there are nine, viz. those of *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Aragon*, *Valencia*, *Navarre*, *Catalonia*, *Perru*, and new *Spain*. The principal Governors are those of the *Netherlands*, *Milan*, *Galicia*, *Biscay*, the Isles of *Majorca* and *Minorca*; and in the *Indies*, *Lima*, *Casra*, *St. Michael*, *Plata*, &c. Those in *Europe* are for three Years, and those in the *Indies* for six.

The *Cortes* (which is somewhat like our Parliament) is the High Court of the Nation; but (according to a Regulation made by *Charles* V.) only sixteen Towns and two Burroughs have a Privilege of sending Deputies to it, viz. *Burges*, *Leon*, *Granada*,



*nada, Seville, Cordova, Murcia, Jaen, Toledo, Segovia, Salamanca, Huelva, Toro, Zamora, Cuenca, Sorria, Guadalaxara; and the two Burroughs are, Valladolid and Madrid, because they are not enclosed with Walls. There are several sorts of Councils that sit within the Palace at Madrid: As 1. The Council of State, whose number is not fixt, but meets every Monday and Thursday, and twice on Saturday. 2. The Council Royal of Castile, consisting of 48, which meets every Friday for deliberating about the Affairs of Castile. 3. The Council of War, which was establish'd in the Year 720. and meets every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, about the Affairs of the Army; but the number of Counsellors is not fixt. 4. The Council of Inquisition, which (as we said before) was instituted by Ferdinand and Isabella, Ann. 1478. 5. The Council of Orders, which was establish'd, Ann. 1489. for considering of Affairs relating to the Knights of Calatrava, Alcantara, and St. Jago. 6. The Council of Aragon, establish'd by Ferdinand, Ann. 1494. and confirm'd by Charles V. for judging in the Affairs of Aragon, Valencia, the Isles of Majorca, Minorca, and Sardinia. 7. The Council of Italy, erected by Charles V. for considering Affairs of the Spanish Dominions in Italy; and consists of a President and six Counsellors. 8. The Council of the Indies, erected in the Year 1511. which takes Cognizance of the Affairs of the new World. 9. The Council of Finances, or the *Erasmenda*, erected by Philip III. in the Year 1602. for inspecting of the Royal Revenues; and it consists of a President and eight Counsellors. 10. The *Junta de Millones*, erected by Philip IV. Ann. 1653. to ease the Council of Finances, when they had too much, or too weighty Business on their Hands; and is properly a General Court for receiving all the Duties upon Goods; and because the greatest Sums pass through their Hands, this Court is call'd that of *Millions*. 11. The Council of the Croisade, establish'd, Ann. 1509. by virtue of a Bull of Pope Julius II. which allowed the King of Spain a Privilege to raise a Tax upon Ecclesiasticks, on Condition that the same should be employed against such Infidels as infested the Coasts of Spain. This Council gives Orders for publishing of *Jubilees*, Licenses for printing of Books, and eating of Meat, &c. 12. The Council of Flanders, erected by Philip IV. Ann. 1628. for taking Cognizance of the Affairs of the Netherlands. 13. The Council d' *Aposento*, establish'd by Don Alonso, Ann. 1241. for ordering the Lodgings of the Officers of the King's Household, and Cognosing of the Right which his Majesty has in all the Houses of Madrid. 14. The Council of the Chamber of Castile, erected by Charles V. Ann. 1518. to give an account to the President of Castile of all the Posts and Offices that were vacant in the two Castiles. 15. The *Junta de Bosques Reales*, erected by Charles V. to have Inspection of the King's Woods and Forests.*

As to the Revenues of the Crown of Spain, if his Catholick Majesty did not draw vast Sums from the Indies, all that he has from the Low-Countries and Italy, would prove little enough for maintaining a suitable number of Men for the security of those Countries. And his whole Revenues from Spain, the Indies, the Netherlands, Naples, Milan, Sicily, &c. are thought to amount to no more than Twenty Four Million, Eight Hundred and Twenty Two Thousand Livers, one Year with another in time of Peace; so that it seems pretty clear that he could not

by his own Forces maintain his Dominions abroad, if his Neighbours and Allies did not assist him. These Revenues arise principally from the Duties on all manner of Commodities Exported and Imported, and the Imposts on Bread and Wine, and all sorts of Provision; which are only Sold by Commissioners appointed by the Farmers of these Duties. His Majesty also receives considerable Profit from Stamp'd Paper; the Tax upon which is in proportion to the use they make of it, or according to the Importance of the Subject that is written on it.

Concerning the Forces of Spain, this Monarch is not much to be Feared either by Sea or Land; and his Preparations are always very slow. Eight Thousand Men together at once make a great Spanish Army, and Twenty Five War Ships are seldom seen under the Command of one Admiral. The Spanish Infantry is thought generally very good, but the Cavalry indifferently so.

There are three sorts of Grandees in Spain, distinguished by certain Privileges. The first are those who are cover'd before they speak to the King; the second are those that are covered after they have begun to speak; and the third those who are not cover'd before they have done speaking, and return'd to their Place: And this Honour being sometimes annexed to certain Lands and Seigniories, falls often to Daughters, who confer it on their Husbands. There are also some who enjoy it only for themselves, but cannot transmit it to their Posterity: And neither one nor the other put on their Hats before the King makes a sign to them, which he never fails to do. The Spanish Nobility are not very much esteem'd, unless they be dignified with some Military Order, or Cloath'd with the Title of Duke, Count or Marquiss; however they enjoy a certain Privilege, call'd *Mayozango*, by which, if their Creditors should happen to Arrest their Rents, the Judge is obliged to allow them a suitable maintenance for themselves and their Retinue; which sometimes exceeds the yearly Rent of their Estate: For the Spaniards keep a great many Servants; and the Custom among them is, that when a Master dies, his Servants pass into the Service of his next Relations; which, as it mightily encreases the number of their Domesticks, so it quickly empties their Coffers; because these are all at Board Wages, and ly out a Doors.

In the Beginning of our Description of Spain, we put the Reader in mind of the Ancient Divisions of it, and now we come to those that have been made by late Geographers; who generally agree in dividing it into fifteen Parts, commonly call'd Kingdoms: As you may see in the following Table; where we have plac'd them as they ly from North to South, in the same order as we design to Describe them.

The Kingdom of Spain divided into Fifteen Parts.

1. Biscay.	7.	10. New Castile.
2. Asturia.	8.	11. Extremadura.
3. Galicia.	9.	12. Andalusia.
4. Navarre.	10.	13. Murcia.
5. Old Castile.	11.	14. Granada.
6. Leon.	12.	15. The Islands of Ma-
7. Catalonia.	13.	jorca, Minorca, Ivica,
8. Aragon.	14.	and Formentera.
9. Valencia.	15.	

BISCAY, Biscaya, is bounded on the North with the Sea of that Name, anciently call'd *Mare Cantabrum*.



Castile, on the East, with the Provinces of *Alava* and *Biscay*; on the South, with Old *Castile*; and on the West, with *Asturia*. It was anciently Govern'd by Princes of its own, of the Family of *Haro*; who falling, in the Siege of *Algezira*, it fell in to *Don King of Castile*. It is said to be about 100 Miles long, but not near so broad; and is divided into several Parts, call'd *Merindades*, viz. *Gármina*, *Bañua*, *Ulle*, *Arreola*, *Bedia*, *Corzona*, *Durango*, *Marguina*, and *Presamero Mayor*. There are in this Country several good Mines of Iron and Steel; which turn to good account to the Inhabitants, there being (as is computed) about 3000000 pound weight Exported from thence into other Countries every Year. The most considerable Towns are,

<i>Bilbao</i> .	}	{	<i>Ordunna</i> .
<i>Durango</i> .			<i>S. Sebastian</i> , in
<i>S. Ande.</i>			<i>Guipuscoa</i> .
<i>Laredo</i> .			

*Bilbao*, thought to be the ancient *Flaviobriga*, a Town Inhabited of old by the *Asturigenes*, in *Cantabria*, formerly call'd *Portus Amanus*, is now the Chief City of *Biscay*, and a famous Mart-Town, standing on the River *Nervio*, about 6 Miles from the Mouth of it, and about 50 from *S. Ande* to the East. Lat. 43. 30. Long. 14. 30. *Jo. Mariana* says that this Town is not so ancient, it having been built by *Didacus Lupus* of the Family of *Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*, about the Year 1298, in the place where *Portus Amanus* formerly stood. But whether this or that be the true Opinion, it is at present a Place of great Trade and one of the most considerable Ports in *Spain*, tho' great Vessels cannot come up so far, but must ly at a place half a League nearer the Sea. Its Trade consists chiefly in Swords and Armour; the former of which are famous over all *Europe*.

*Durango*, *Durangum*, is a pretty well Inhabited Town, about 12 Miles from the Sea, 16 from *Bilbao* to the East, and 24 from *Placencia*, and is the Title of a Family in that Country.

*S. Ande*, *Andreapolis*, Anciently call'd (according to some Authors) *Flaviennavia*, stands on the Bay of *Biscay*, on the Confines of *Asturia*, and has a very Commodious Harbour, defended by an old Castle, distant, about 50 Miles from *Bilbao*, and 24 from *Laredo* to the West, and as many from *Sant Ilana*. It was formerly destroyed, but afterwards Rebuilt by *Alonso IX.* King of *Castile*, in the year 1174, and was formerly well Inhabited, and neat, but is now in a decaying Condition. It is in the Diocess of *Burgos*; and has been lately Honoured with the Title of a Bishoprick.

*Laredo*, *Laredum*, is a little Town on the Coast of *Biscay*, but has a large and safe Harbour, and reckon'd one of the four Principal Sea Port Towns of that Country. It stands among rugged Rocks and Hills, about 30 Miles from *Bilbao* to the West, and 6 from *S. Ande*.

*Ordunna*, *Ordunia*, is a little Town, situated near the Mountains, about 36 Miles from *Bilbao* to the South, and 5 from the Sea of *Biscay*; And was formerly (according to *Gregorius de Argai*, call'd *Dardania*.

The Country call'd *GUIPUSCOA*, is a Province of *Spain*, and a part of *Biscay*, taken in a large Sense; but was formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Navarre*; and was anciently Inhabited by the *Varuli* and *Cavisti*. It is bounded on the North with the Sea of *Biscay*; on the West with *Biscay* properly

so call'd; on the South with the Province of *Alava*; and on the East with *Navarre*, and part of *France*. *Alonso IX.* King of *Castile*, took it from *Sancho* the last of that Name, King of *Navarre*. The Towns of greatest note in it are,

<i>S. Sebastian</i> .	}	{	<i>Tolosa</i> .
<i>Fuentaravia</i> .			<i>Plasencia</i> .

*S. Sebastian*, or *Donastien*, as the Inhabitants call it. *Sebastianopolis*, or *Fanum Sebastiani*, is a Fortified Town, situated at the Foot of the Mountains, on the Coast of *Biscay*, at the mouth of the River *Orio* about 10 Miles from the Borders of *France* to the West; and has the advantage of a commodious and large Harbour. It is reported of this Town, That no Stranger is allowed to higher a House for himself but must Lodge with some of the Burghers, ever since the Flemings began to Traffique here; for to oblige the Inhabitants at first, they voluntarily allowed their Landlords one in the hundred of all the Goods they Sold there; and now the *Spaniards* have brought that Custom into a sort of a Law.

*Fuentaravia* or *Fentarabia*, *Fons Rapidus*, is a Fortified Town upon the Coast of the Sea of *Guienne*; at the Mouth of the River *Bidassoa*, on the very Confines of *France*, near the Ruins of the ancient *Olaso*, or *Aiso*, about 12 Miles from *S. Sebastian*, and 24 from *Bayone*. It was Built by the *Goths*, in the year 625, and was formerly included within *Aquitain*, it lying on the French side of the *Pyrennees*; and belonged to the Diocess of *Bayone*; till the year 1571, that *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, separated it from thence. The River upon which it stands separates *France* from *Spain*, *Fontarabia* being on the Border of *Spain* on one side of the River, and *Andaye* on the Border of *France*, opposite to it, on the other. The French exact Custom from those that go into *Spain*, and the *Spaniards* from those that go into *France*. This River also Forms that little Island, call'd by the French *Isle de Faisans*, where the Peace was concluded between the two Crowns, in the year 1659.

*Tolosa*, *Tolose* is a pretty handsome Town, lying near the River *Orio*, near the Foot of the *Pyrennees*, about 16 Miles from the Sea of *Biscay* to South, as many from *S. Sebastian*, and about as many from *Monte de S. Adrian*. The French call *Tolosette*, to distinguish it from *Toulouse* in *Languedoc*.

*Plasencia*, *Placentia*, is a little Town in this Province, first begun by *Alonso IX.* King of *Castile* in the year 1343; and is Famous for the Arms all sorts that are made there.

The little Province of *ALAVA*, which was formerly of much larger extent, is bounded on the North, with *Guipuscoa*; on the East, with *Navarre*; on the West, with *Biscay*; and on the South, with *Rucania* or *La Rioja*. It was once a part of *Navarre*, till the year 1342, that *Alonso IX.* King of *Castile* took it from *Sancho*, the last of that Name, King of *Navarre*, and for ever United it to the Kingdom of *Castile*. The Towns of greatest Note in it are,

<i>Vitoria</i> .	}	{	<i>Salvaterra</i> .
<i>Trevinno</i> .			

*Vitoria*, *Victoria*, is the Chief Town of this Province, Situated at the Foot of the Mountain call'd *Monte de S. Adrian*, near the Province of *Biscay* about 60 Miles from *Pompelona*, to the West; 4 from *Bilbao*, to the South; and 80 from *Burgos* to the North East. It was Built (according to *Mari-*



us) by *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, about the year 1150, where formerly stood a Village call'd *Gastis*.

*Trevinno* and *Salvaterra*, are so inconsiderable that they hardly deserve a particular Description; The former of which stands about 20 Miles from *Vitoria*, to the South West. The other about 12 to the East, near the Province of *Guipuzcoa*.

*ASTURIA*, Lyes on the West of *Biscay*, between that and *Galecia*; The former of which Bounds it on the East; the latter on the West; Old *Castile* and *Leon* on the South; and the Sea on the North. It is about 140 Miles in Length, from East to West; and about 60 Broad, South and North. It is commonly divided into *Asturia de Oviedo*, that lyes next to *Galecia*; and *Asturia de Santillana*, which is the East part of it, and lyes next to *Biscay*: And is otherwise divided into 7 parts call'd *Merindads*. The little Province of *Lieba*, which lyes among the high Mountains call'd *Europe*, (and of which we shall take occasion to speak afterwards,) is a part of it. It was into this Province that *Pelagius* the famous Maintainer of the Spanish Liberty, Fled, with the other Christians who would not submit themselves to the *Moors*, when they Conquered the rest of *Spain*: And it is the Title of the Presumptive Heir of *Spain*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Oviedo*. } *Santillana*.  
*Aviles*. } *S. Vincent de la Varquera*.  
*Gijon*. } *Llanes*.

*Oviedo*, *Ovetum*, is the Chief City of this part of *Asturia*, distant about 20 Miles from the Sea of *Biscay* to the South; 70 from *Astorga*, and about 60 from *Leon* to the North West. It was formerly the Seat of the Kings of *Oviedo*, and gave Name to the Kingdom. It is now neither in good Condition, nor well Inhabited; but is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Compostella*, and has a sort of an University, Erected in the year 1580.

*Aviles*, *Avila*, is a little Town in this *Asturia*, near the River *Nalen*, and not far from the Sea of *Biscay*, about 36 Miles from *Oviedo* to the North; and 12 from *Cabo de Penas*; and is by some thought to be the ancient *Flaviana via Paesicorum*.

*Gijon*, *Gigia*, is a little Town Scated in a Plain, near the *Cabo de Penas*, about 20 Miles from *Oviedo* to the North; 60 from *Leon*; and near 50 from the Confines of *Galecia* to the East. It is almost surrounded by the Sea, and has the advantage of a Harbour and a Castle; and was formerly the Chief Town of the Province.

*Sant Illana*, *Fanum Sancte Juliana*, is a little Town, but the Chief one in that part of *Asturia* to which it gives Name. It stands about 3 Miles from the Sea of *Biscay*, and 20 from *S. Andero* to the West; and is thought to have been formerly call'd *Concana*.

The little Province of *LIEBANA* (as we said before) is Situated among the high Mountains of *Asturia*, call'd *Europe*, or *los Montes de Europa*, in *Asturia Santillana*, and is above 30 Miles Long, and near 20 Broad; and is divided into 5 Vallies, call'd, *Cillorigo*, *Voldeprado*, *Vahabar*, *Cereceda*, and *Polan*; in which they reckon 366 Villages and Hamlets, but very little ones, and indifferently Inhabited. The Chief Town of it is *Potes*, a little Town about 30 Miles from *Santillana*.

*GALLICIA*, or *Galizia*, according to the Spanish Pronunciation, *Gallecia*, is the most Westerly Province of *Spain*; anciently Inhabited by the *Callaici Lucenses*, and a part of the *Callaici Braccarii*. It is Bounded on the North and West by the *Atlantic* Ocean, on the South by *Portugal*, and on the East by *Asturia* and the Kingdom of *Leon*. It is about 180 Miles Long, and 150 Broad. There are in it several Springs of hot Waters, which make the Air somewhat unwholsom. There are also several Mines of Gold, Copper, Lead, Iron and Vermilion; and the Sea Coast is plentifully provided with many sorts of good Fishes. It had formerly the Title of a Kingdom, but is now by most Authors reckon'd a part of that of *Leon*, and entirely Subject to the King of *Spain*. It is a very Mountainous Country. And the most considerable Towns in it are,

*Compostella*. } *Monddonede*.  
*Corunna*. } *Tuy*.  
*Lugo*. } *S. Maria Finis Terre*.  
*Orense*. } *Mongia*.  
*Baiona*. } *Rivadeo*.

*Compostella*, *Compostella*, the Capital City of *Galicia*, stands on a rising Ground, about 36 Miles from *Corunna* to the South, and 50 from *Cabo Finisterre* to the East. It was built by King *Alonso* the Chaste, Ann. 835. from the Ruins of *Iria Flavia*, which stood about 10 Miles to the South of the place where *Compostella* now stands; and is now call'd *Padron*. This City is chiefly famous for the great number of Pilgrims that resort hither to pay their Devotions to *St. James*; for they say, that this Apostle being sent into *Spain* to preach the Gospel, suffered Martyrdom at *Compostella*; that in the year 835 his Body was found in this Place: And that in the year 844. he appear'd to King *Ramirus*, and assur'd him of certain Victory over the *Moors*, on Condition he would refuse to pay the yearly Tribute of an Hundred Christian Virgins, which *Mauregatus* King of *Leon*, had formerly undertaken to pay them. Since which time *Spain* has Honoured this Apostle as their Patron. But whatever may be of that, *Alonso* caus'd a stately Church to be Built at *Compostella*, and obtained a Bull from Pope *Leo* III. for transferring the Episcopal Seat of *Iria Flavia* hither. It was made the Seat of an Arch-Bishop by *Calixtus* II. in the year 1124 in the place of *Emerita Augusta*, or *Merida*, which was then miserably oppress'd by the *Saracens*. The Spaniards commonly call it *Santiago*, and some give it the Name of *Iria Nova*, for the reason above mentioned. There are here a small Castle and an University; and this was the Birth-place of *Alonso* I. King of *Castile* and *Leon*.

*Corunna*, *Coronium*, which *Ptolomy* makes mention of as a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, stands upon the North Coast of this Province, between the two Promontories of *Cabo Finisterre*, and *Cabo de Ortegal*, about 30 Miles from *Compostella* to the North, and 360 from *Lisbon*; having the advantage of a large Harbour, and is defended by two Neighbouring Forts. It is a place of great Riches, and good Trade, and by the English commonly call'd the *Groy*: And is an Episcopal See, Subject to the Arch-Bishop of *Compostella*.

*Lugo*, *Lucus Augusti*, mentioned by *Pliny*, as the Chief Town anciently belonging to the *Callaici Lucenses*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, is now a little Town, Situated among the Mountains, near the Head of the River *Minho*, about 70 Miles from *Compostella* to the East, 30 from the Confines of *Asturia de Oviedo*, as many from *Modonnede* to the South;



South; and about 30 from *Orense*. *Alonso* recover'd it from the Moors, Anno 753, and it is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Compostella*.

*Orense*, *Auria*, or *Agus Calida Celsinum*, mentioned by *Ptolemy*, as a Town in *Hispania Tarracoenfis*, call'd *Agus Celina* by *Antoninus*, and *Amphilechia* by *Strabo*. Stands upon the River *Mirno*, about 56 Miles from *Compostella* to the South East, as many from *Lago* to the South, and near as much from *Tuy*. It has its ancient Name from its excellent hot Baths, which prove an effectual Cure for several sorts of Disorders: And it is an Episcopal See under the Arch-Bishop of *Compostella*. Some are of opinion, that these old Names belong rather to *Baiona*, a Town on the Coast of this Province, at the Mouth of the River *Mirno*; but the other seems to have a better Title to them.

*Mindonia*, *Mindoria*, or *Minden*, thought to be the ancient *Ocelum*, is a little Town that owes its rise to the Ruin of a Neighbouring one, call'd *Bretoria*, or *Bretagna*, in the same Province: And stands about 16 Miles from the Sea of *Biscay* to the South; 32 from *Lago* to the North; and 24 from *Ribadesella*, a little Town in this Province. It is situated in a Valley call'd *Mindonia*, and is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Compostella*; but is at present very inconsiderable and thinly inhabited.

*Tuy*, *Tude*, is a little Fortified Town, in this Province, on the Confines of *Portugal*, standing on the River *Mirno*, about 24 Miles from the Mouth of it; 28 from *Orense* to the West; and above 60 from *Compostella* to the South; and is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Compostella*.

*S Maria Finisterre*, is a little Town about 40 Miles from *Compostella* to the West; near the Promontory call'd *Cabo Finisterre*, anciently call'd *Arcturum*, and *Celticum* by *Pliny*, and *Neium* by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo*; which juts out into the Sea to the West; and is very well known by the European Mariners. *Petrus de Medina* thinks these old Names belonged rather to another Promontory call'd *Cabo Tourinhan*, 20 Miles to the North of *Finisterre*.

### Navarre, Navarra, And Navarra Regnum.

NAVARRÉ, which is the North East part of the Kingdom of *Spain*, was anciently Inhabited by the *Vascones*; and is bounded on the North with *France*; on the East and South with *Aragon*; and on the West with *Old Castile*; and is divided by the *Pirenean* Mountains into two parts, viz. the Higher and the Lower: The former of which is much the larger, and belongs to *Spain*; The other belongs to *France*, and lies on the French side of the Mountains. *Navarre* was formerly Govern'd by its own Kings for several Ages, until the year 1512 that *Ferdinand V.* King of *Aragon*, Invaded it, and drove out its Lawful King, *John Albrecht*, without any Cause of Offence given, or any Allowance from the Pope; tho' the Spaniards pretended a Bull granted by *Julius II.* for that end; but the French alledge, and *Mezeray*, particularly, proves, that this Bull was afterwards procured by the solicitation of the Spaniards. But whether of the two be in the right, we will not now enlarge upon it; only this is certain, that since that time, the Higher *Navarre* has been subject to *Spain*, as the Lower has been to *France*, since the time of *Henry the Great*. The Higher *Navarre* is a

Dry, Barren, and very ill Cultivated Country; insomuch that the King of *Spain* does not Receive so much Revenue out of it as maintains the Troops, he is oblig'd to keep there: But the Lower is both well Watered, Improved and well inhabited. The Higher is divided into Five Districts, call'd *Merindades*, viz. *Merind. de Pampelona*, *Merind. de Olite*, *Merind. de Sanguesa*, *Merind. de Estella*, and *Merind. de Tudela*. And the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Pampelona</i> .	} <i>Estella</i> .	
<i>Olite</i> .		} <i>Tudela</i> .
<i>Sanguesa</i> .		

*Pampelona*, *Pampelen*, and *Pompeopolis*, anciently a City in *Hispania Tarracoenfis*, belonging to the *Vascones*, according to *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*, is the chief Town of this Province, and a place of great strength, with a strong Citadel to bridle the French, built by King *Philip II.* It hath been subject to *Spain* since the Year 1512, that *Ferdinand* of *Aragon* invaded this Country. It stands upon the River *Arga*, in a Valley surrounded with high Mountains, about 60 Miles from *Baiona* to the South, 75 from *Bilboa*, and 110 from *Burgos* to the West. It is said to have been built, or at least repair'd, by *Pompey* the Great, who, together with *Metellus*, obtain'd several Victories over *Sextorius* in this Country; and therefore *Strabo* calls this place *Pompeii Torpca*. In the Year 735, King *Alonso*, having driven out the Moors, took this Town and several others in this Country from them; and here *Ignatius Loyola* valiantly fighting, was so wounded, that he was obliged to lay aside the Sword, and betake himself to a Monastick Life, and afterwards instituted the famous Order of the *Jesuits*.

*Olite*, *Olitum*, or *Oligitis*, the chief Town of the *Merindada* or District of that name, stands on the little River call'd *Cidacos de Navarra*, near *Tasalla*, 22 Miles from *Pampelona*, to the South, and as many from *Tudela*.

*Tudela*, *Tutela*, is a fine and well situated Town, standing on the River *Ebro*, where the Rivulet *Queiles* falls into it; 24 Miles South from *Olite*, 16 from *Tarazona* to the North-East; and 60 from *Zaragoza*; and gives name to the District in which it lies.

### Old Castile, Castella Vetus.

OLD CASTILE, which was anciently inhabited by the *Aveace Murbogi*, *Vaccas*, and part of the *Celtiberi*, is bounded on the North, with *Asturia Santillana* and *Biscay*; on the East, with *Navarre*, and part of *Aragon*; on the South, with *New Castile*; and on the West, with the Kingdom of *Leon*. It is divided into seven Districts, call'd *Merindades*; and taken in a large sense, comprehends *Alava*, *Biscay*, both the *Asturias*, and *Guipuscoa*; but otherwise *Old Castile* is *Castile* properly so call'd, and known by this name for two Centuries, before the Kingdom of *Toledo* was call'd *New Castile*. *Old Castile* was formerly a Kingdom by itself, but was united with *Aragon* by the Marriage of *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, in the Year 1474. It is a mountainous and barren Country, except in the little Vallies and Dales, which produce Corn and Wine, and several sorts of good Fruits. The most considerable Towns in it are,



Burgos,	{	Segovia,	{	Lerma,
Avila,		Valadolid,		Frias,
Calahorra,		Osma,		Soria,
La Calzada,				Nagera.

*Burgos, Burgi*, the chief City of this Province, stands among the Mountains, near the River *Arlanza*, upon a rising Ground, about 140 Miles from *Madrid* to the North; 60 from the Coast of the Sea of *Biscay* to the South; 160 from *Zaragoza* to the West; and *Placentia* to the East. It is said to have sprung from the Ruins of the ancient *Auca*, now call'd, *Nuestra Señora de Oca*, and was formerly the Seat of that little Kingdom. It was made a Bishop's Seat in the Year 1075. and an Archbishoprick, in the Year 1571. by Pope Gregory XIII. And the yearly Revenues of that Prelate are said to amount to 40000 Ducats. It claims the first place in the Estates of the two Castles, tho' *Toledo* disputes it. It has an excellent Bridge over the *Duera*, which joins the City to the Suburbs; but the Streets of it are narrow, and the Houses ill Built. The Cathedral Church is very Magnificent; and the Abby of *las Huelgas*, wherein are maintain'd 150 Nuns, all Daughters of Noblemen, is a large Pile of Building. There is also a Royal Hospital, the yearly Revenues of which amount to 80000 Livers, a College of *Prudens*, a Monastery of *Augustines*, and another of *Franciscans*. This City is also adorn'd with several Palaces and many Fountains. *Alonso* the VII. King of *Aragon*, recovered it from the *Saracens*, Anno 1106 and not far from hence, there is said to be a Well whose Water effectually cures *Flaxes*.

*Avila, Abula*, mentinn'd by *Ptolomy*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*; and by some call'd *Arbacula* and *Abucella*, stands on a little Hill, hard by the Rivulet *Adalia*, Surrounded with Hills and Rocks, and enclosed with very good Walls: In the midlt between *Madrid* and *Salamanca*, about 60 Miles from either; and 100 from *Burgos* to the South. It is an Episcopal See, under the Arch-Bishop of *Compostella*; and is reckon'd famous for being the Birth-place of *S. Teresa*: And is the Title of a Noble Family.

*Calahorra, Calaguris*, a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, according to *Pliny*; otherwise call'd *Caligurris*, by *Livy*; and *Calagorina* by *Ptolomy*; stands near the River *Ebro*, where it Receives the Rivulet call'd *Cidices de Castilla*, on a rising Ground, on the Confines of *Navarre*, in the midlt between *Logrono* to the West, and *Tudela* to the East, about 24 Miles from either, 90 from *Burgos* to the East; and as many from *Pamplona* to the South. *Afranius* (as *Mariana* Relates) did so closely Besiege this place, that the Townsmen lived for some time, upon the Fleth of their Wives and Children; which gave occasion to the *Romans*, to call any great Famine, *Fames Calagurritana*; but at last the Town was taken and demolish'd, and the Inhabitants put to the Sword. It was first made an Episcopal See, under the Arch Bishop of *Tarragona*, by Pope *Alexander VI.* Ann. 1498, but is now under the Arch-Bishop of *Burgos*.

*Calzada, Calciata*, call'd also *Dominicapolis*, and sometimes by the Inhabitants *Domingo de la Calzada*, is a little Town in the Province of *Rioja*, standing on a River, in a Plain surrounded almost with high Hills, distant about 48 Miles from *Calahorra* to the West, and 12 from *Najera*. It was anciently only a Monastery, but is now an Episcopal Seat, under the Arch-Bishop of *Burgos*, and since the year 1236, its See has been united with that of *Alava*; which was transfer'd to *Calahorra* by Pope *Alexander VI.* in the year 1498.

*Segovia. Segovia*, or *Segubia*, according to *Ptolomy*, anciently a Town belonging to the *Arevaci*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, stands in a pleasant Valley, at the foot of the Mountains, the North side of it being wash'd with the little River *Eresina*, into which two Torrents fall, call'd *Clamores* and *Frio*. 90 Miles South from *Burgos*; and 37 North East from *Avila*. It is a large, fine, and well Peopled Town; and is call'd *Labriosa*, because there's no Body to be there seen either Idle or Begging, except such as Age or Sickness have rendered unfit for Work or Business: There are two things principally remarkable in this City, the first is an Aqueduct of a prodigious length, consisting of two Rows of Arches, the one above the other, which carry's Water to Serve the whole City; but they are not agreed by whom it was made, some giving King *Hispalus* the Honour of it; others, the Emperor *Trajan*; others, *Lacinius* Governor of *Spain*, under *Vespasian*; and others, the *Moors*; but these seem to have no Title to it, since it is probable that it was Built before they had any footing in *Spain*. The second thing is the famous Mint-House, where the Mony is struck by a Machine managed by the force of Water. Every Body is free to Coin their Mony here, of the same Weight, and with the same Impression as the King's has, provided only they furnish the Silver or Gold, and pay a small Duty to the King; which is entirely laid out upon the House, so that the King has no profit by it. This City is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, and is famous for its Woollen Manufactories.

*Valadolid, Pintia*, anciently a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, belonging to the *Vaccæi*, is a large and fine City, but without any Walls, standing in a Plain, on the River *Pisuerga*; which a little below falls into the *Duero*, on the Confines of *Leon*, 45 Miles South from *Burgos*, and 50 North from *Segovia*. It hath sometime been the Residence of the Spanish Kings, and there is still a Palace Royal in it; where were born, *Henry IV.* King of *Castile*, Ann. 1425. *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, Ann. 1527. *Philip IV.* Ann. 1605. and *Anna of Austria*, Queen of *France*, Ann. 1601. Its Situation is very delightful, being in a plentiful Country; and the Inhabitants, for Civility and Politeness, are said to be inferiour to none in all *Spain*. It was made an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, by Pope *Clement VIII.* on the 25th of *November*, in the Year 1595. and the King soon after gave it the Title and Privileges of a City.

*Osma, Uxama*, the name of a very ancient Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, destroy'd by *Pompey* the Great, afterwards rebuilt, and at last sack'd and raz'd by the *Moors*, and now consists of a few forry Houses, which stand upon the *Duero*, where the Rivulets *Avion* and *Uxero* fall into it; but near to it, on the other side of the River, there is a place call'd *el Borgo d' Osma*, where the Bishop resides; and there is a sort of an University, founded in the Year 1550. and is distant, 40 Miles from *Signenza*, to the North West; 80 from *Burgos*, to the South East, and 42 from the Rubbish of *Numencie*, now call'd *Garay*.

*Soria. Soria*, is a Town standing near the Head of the River *Duero*, 3 Miles from the Ruins of *Numantia*, call'd *Garay*, 30 Miles above *Osma*, and 100 East from *Valadolid*, and 32 from *Tarazona*, to the South West. It is situated among Hills, and is well inhabited, and has Jurisdiction over a great many neighbouring Villages.



Naga, a River, stands on a Rivulet, at the Foot of the Mountains, in the Province of *Riqua*, which is a part of *Old Castile*, and has the Title of a Dukedom; but its Episcopal See was removed to *Calagaza*. It stands between *Legorria* to the West, and *Calagaza* to the South West; and is remarkable for a memorable Battle fought between *Peter* the Cruel, and *Henry* King of *Castile*, in the Year 1367.

The Kingdom of *Leon*, properly so call'd.

*Legionum Regnum propriè dictum.*

The Kingdom of *LEON*, taken in a large sense, is of much greater Extent than that we are now treating of; for *Gallicia*, *Asturia*, *Oviedo*, *Asturia Septentrionalis*, the Province of *El Condado*, and likewise *Old Castile*, were all anciently under the Dominion of the Kings of *Leon*. Which Kingdom, as the Spanish Writers say, did begin, under King *Pelagius*, in the Year 717. But the French Historians are of another Opinion, and say, That the Kingdom of *Leon* had not Kings of its own, of the Race of *Pelagius*, till a great many Years after; and that at last, in the Year 1230, it was for ever united unto that of *Castile*, under King *Ferdinand*. But however that may be, *Leon*, which we are now describing, is of much lesser Extent, comprehending only that part of *Spain* that lies stretched towards the North; which was anciently inhabited by the *Astures Cismontani*, a part of the *Vaccæi*, and some of the *Vettonæi*; and which is bounded, on the North, with the Principality of *Asturia*; on the East, with *Old Castile*; on the South, with *Extremadura Legionensis*; and on the West, with *Portugal* and *Gallicia*, and is about 150 Miles long, and 120 broad. It is divided into two Parts by the River *Duero*, viz. *Leon* on this side the *Duero*, which lies most Southerly; and *Leon* beyond the *Duero*, which lies most Northerly. This Country is Mountainous, but in some places produces good increase of Corn, and near *Zamora* there are abundance of that precious Stone call'd *Turquoise* found. It was subdued by *Augustus Cæsar*; and after it had been subject to the *Romans* for the space of about 500 Years, the *Goths* made themselves Masters of it; who about 400 Years after, were expell'd by the *Moors* and *Saracens*; who possess'd it till the Year 722, that *Pelagius*, a Prince of Gothic Extraction, recovered this Province from them. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Leon</i>	}	<i>Zamora.</i>
<i>Palencia</i>		<i>Toro.</i>
<i>Salamanca.</i>	}	<i>Astorga.</i>
<i>Ciudad Rodrigo.</i>		<i>Alca de Tormes.</i>
<i>Medina del Campo.</i>		<i>Tordesillas.</i>

*Leon*, *Legio Germanica*, and *Septima*, anciently a City of *Hispania Citerior*, according to *Ptolemy*, is seated at the Foot of the Mountains of *Asturia*, near the Source of the River *Esla*; in the midit between *Valadolid* and *Oviedo*, 70 Miles from the former to the North West, and 30 from the latter to the South East, and 70 Miles from *Burgos* to the West. It was built according to *Miriana*, under the Emperor *Trajan*, by the Soldiers of the seventh Legion, call'd *Gemina*, after they had quitted *Sublancia* in *Asturias*, because it stood on the Ridge of a Hill. It was taken from the *Moors* by *Pelagius*, in the Year 722, and in the Year 935, it was taken from the Christians

(after a Year's Siege, and a resolute Resistance) by these Infidels; who put all within it to the Sword, without any distinction, either of Sex or Age. It was for some time the Royal City of the Kingdom; but now, tho' it is large, yet it is but thinly inhabited. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Compostella*; and has hardly any thing remarkable in it except its Cathedral Church.

*Palencia*, *Palentia*, anciently a City of the *Vaccæi* in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, according to *Ptolemy*, stands in a Plain, on the River *Carrión*, which a little below falls into the *Pisuerga*, on the Confines of *Old Castile*, about 48 Miles from *Burgos*, to the West; 32 from *Valadolid*, to the North; and 60 from *Leon*, to the South East. It was ruined during the Wars with the Infidels; but repair'd by King *Sancho*, in the Year 1032. It is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Burgos*; but was formerly Suffragan to the See of *Toledo*, and is now in a flourishing Condition.

*Salamanca*, *Salmantica*, anciently (according *Ptolemy*, a Town belonging to the *Vettonæi*, in *Hispania Lusitania*, probably the same with *Elemanica* in *Peisibus*, is a pretty large Town, standing on the River *Tormes*; but very ill built, being situated on three Hillocks, most part of the Houses being ruinous, except the Churches, Colleges, and Monasteries. It is distant, 30 Miles from *Zamora*, to the South; 24 from the Confines of *Portugal*; about 50 from *Valadolid*, to the South West; and 50 from *Ciudad Rodrigo*. King *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, to oblige the Inhabitants of this Country, and because this place was conveniently situated for that purpose, transfer'd the University of *Palencia* hither about the Year 1239, his Father *Alonso* King of *Leon*, having laid the Foundation of an University there before. The University has for a long time been in a flourishing Condition, and all the Professors are very well provided for. This City is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Compostella*.

*Ciudad Rodrigo*, *Rodericopolis*, has its name from Count *Roderick*, who laid the Foundation of it, under the Reign of *Ferdinand*, King of *Leon*, Ann. 1170 and is a pretty neat and well inhabited Town, on the River *Agueda*, situated in a pleasant Country and distant about 12 Miles from the Confines of *Portugal*, to the East; and 45 South from *Salamanca*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Compostella*.

*Medina del Campo*, *Metina Campensis*, so called because of its Situation in that Tract of Ground in this Country call'd *la Tierra de Campos*, and to distinguish it from others of that name. It stands on the little River *Zapardiel*, on the Confines of *Old Castile*, about 30 Miles from *Valadolid*, to the South; 6 from the River *Duero*, and about 40 from *Avila*. It was formerly a pretty large Town; but is now in a decaying Condition. *Ferdinand* I. King of *Aragon* was born here, Ann. 1380. The Emperor *Ferdinand* I. Ann. 1503. And *Isabella* Queen and Heiress of *Castile*, died here, 26 November, 1504.

*Zamora*, *Sentica*, anciently (according to *Ptolemy*) a Town belonging to the *Vaccæi*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, is now a wall'd Town, standing on a rising Ground, on the River *Duero*, about 32 Miles from the Confines of *Portugal*, to the East; 45 from *Valadolid*, to the West; and in the midit between *Astorga*, to the North, and *Salamanca*, to the South, about 40 Miles from either. It was ruined by the *Moors*, Ann. 888, and afterwards repair'd, and made



made an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Compostella*, Ann. 1124.

*Astorga*, *Asturiga* *Auguila*, anciently (according to *Ptolemy*) a Town and Colony of the *Asturi* *Cismon-tani*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, bordering with the *Lusci*; is now a decaying Town, or thinly inhabited, upon the River *Tera*, about 21 Miles from *Leon*, to the South West; 5 from *Bages*, to the West; 40 from *Zamora*; and near 40 from *Zamora*, to the North; and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Compostella*.

*Tordesillas*, *Turris Syriana*, stands on the River *Duero*, about 20 Miles from *Valencia*, to the West; 12 from *Simancas*; 20 from *Toro*; and 31 from *Zamora* to the East. It is sometimes call'd *Fugum Syllanum*, and *Otero de Silius*; and there is an old Castle in it, in which *Fernand*, Queen of *Castile*, and Mother to the Emperor *Charles V.* died, Ann. 1555.

### Catalaunna, Catalonia.

**CATALONIA**, which is said to derive its name from the *Goths* and *Alans*, as if one should say *Gothalonia*, was anciently inhabited by the *Ausetani*, *Castellani*, *Hergetes*, *Indigetes*, *Lactani*, and *Lacetani*, People of *Hispania Tarraconensis*; and is bounded on the West, with *Aragon* and *Valencia*; on the East and South, with the *Mediterranean Sea*; and on the North, with the *Pyrenean Mountains*. It was formerly govern'd by the Counts of *Barcelona*, under the Protection of the Kings of *France*; but afterwards fell to the Kings of *Aragon*, in the Year 1137. by the Marriage of *Raymund*, Count of *Barcelona*, with *Petronilla*, Queen and Heiress of *Aragon*. It is a mountainous Country, but pretty Fertile, and well water'd; and if the Soil is not so good as could be wish'd, the Bowels of the Earth make, in a good measure, amends; for they produce Amethysts, Agats, Crystal, Alum, Alabaster, Coral, Gold, Silver, Vitriol, and Salt; whereof there are several Mines, particularly that at *Girone*. In the Year 1640. the Catalonians revolted; and being assist'd by the French, came under the Protection of that Crown which sent Viceroy's or Governors to Rule it, till the Year 1659. that by the 42d and 43d Articles of the Peace, then concluded, it was agreed, That the *Pyrenees* should be the Bounds betwixt the two Kingdoms of *France* and *Spain*. This Country is divided into two Parts, viz. Old *Catalonia* and New *Catalonia*; the former whereof comprehends the East part of it, as the other does the West. It hath been variously divided at several times; sometimes into 56 Regions, sometimes into 17 Districts or Vicariates, &c. The Inhabitants are said to be the most liberal and industrious People in all *Spain*: And *Buno*, particularly, says there are 56 Cities and free Towns in it: The most considerable of which are,

<i>Barcelona.</i>	}	<i>Refes.</i>
<i>Solsona.</i>		<i>Tarragona.</i>
<i>Tortosa.</i>		<i>Vich.</i>
<i>Girone.</i>		<i>La Seu d' Urgel.</i>
<i>Lerida.</i>		<i>Palamos.</i>
<i>Puygcerda.</i>		

*Barcelona*, *Barcino*, a Town (according to *Pliny*) in *Hispania Tarraconensis*; which *Ptolemy* calls *Barcinon*; *Livy*, *Barcin*, and others, *Faventia*, is the chief City of this Province, and a famous Maritime Town, with a tolerable Road for great Ships, and strong Fort, and a Mold that runs out into the Sea,

for the space of 730 Paces; which secures the Gallies against the Violence of Winds and Storms. It is situated on the South Coast, between the Mouths of two Rivers, viz. *Besos* on the East, and *Cardener* on the West; about 40 Miles from *Tarragona*, to the East, 50 from *Girona*, to the South West, and 40 from *Vich de Offna*, Lat. 41. Long. 20. It is a very ancient City, inasmuch that some will have it to be built by *Hercules*; but 'tis generally agreed, that it was built by *Hamilcar*, surnam'd *Barcas*, a Carthaginian; about 300 Years before the Birth of Christ. In the Year 805. the Emperor *Lewis the Pious* routed the Moors, and recover'd his City; and in the Year 935. the Moors laid Siege to it on the first of *July*, and took it on the sixth; but it was quickly recover'd by the Christians. In the Year 1472. it was besieged by the King of *Aragon*, and surrendered upon honourable Terms after it had made an obstinate Defence. On the 17 Octob. 1652. after a tedious Siege of fifteen Months, it surrendered to the King of *Spain*; because, by reason of the Civil Wars in *France*, it could not have necessary Succours from thence. It was besieged by the French in the Year 1697. and, after an obstinate Defence, surrendered to Duke de *Vendome*, but restored in the succeeding Treaty at *Ryswick*. It is well fortify'd, and several of the Churches are very magnificent; and the common Opinion is, That it is as big as *Naples*, but falls short in the number of Inhabitants. The Nobility enjoy great Privileges in this City, it not being in the Power of any Man to put a Gentleman in Prison. The High Court of Justice of this Province sits in this City, as does also a Court of Inquisition, and it is the Residence of the Viceroy; and an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Tarragona*: The Pope is Heir to the Bishop; whose Breath is no sooner out of his Body, than his Holiness's Officer (whom he has always ready there on such Occasions) seizes on all the Goods and Chattels belonging to him.

*Salsona*, *Celfona*, stands at the Foot of the Mountains, on the River *Cardener*, about 60 Miles from *Barcelona* to the North, 30 from *Girona* to the East, and 40 from the *Pyrenean Mountains* to the South. It is in no good Condition, and thinly inhabited; but is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Tarragona*.

*Tortosa*, *Dertosa*, anciently (according to *Ptolemy*) a Town of the *Illercaones* in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, by others call'd *Dertossa*, and *Dertusa*, is a fortified Town, of great Importance, being seated near the Mouth of the *Ebro*, and therefore fitted for Traffick; which is not so great now as it has been formerly. It is distant, about 12 Miles from the Confines of *Valencia*, to the East; 40 from *Tarragona*, to the West; and 42 from *Lerida*, to the South. In the Year 1148. *Raymund*, Earl of *Barcelona*, with the Assistance of the *Genoese Fleet*, took it from the Moors. It was taken by the French in the Year 1649. and surrendered to the King of *Spain* in September 1650. when both it, and all the Country along the *Ebro*, was reduced, and return'd to their former Allegiance to that Monarch. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Tarragona*.

*Girona*, *Gerunda*, anciently (according to *Pliny*) a Town belonging to the *Ausetani* in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, stands about 20 Miles from the Coast of the *Mediterranean* to the West; the County of *Roussillon*, to the North; 62 from *Perpignan* to the S. and about 50 from *Barcelona* to the N. E. It is Seated (says *Mariana*) on the side of a Hill, at the Foot whereof



run the River, and is call'd *Tibi*, now *Tera*; which has so wash'd away the Banks next the City, that they add considerably to its Strength. The Walls are well Built, the Towers of Stone, and Strong. In the highest part of the City stands the Cathedral, and Bishop's House, a large and beautiful Fabric: It was besieged and taken by the French in the year 1655. Taken off by them in the late War, and restor'd to his Catholick Majesty by the Treaty of *Ryswick*, *Ann.* 1697, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Tarragona*.

*Lerida*, *Idem*, Anciently according to *Cæsar* and *Pliny*, the chief Town belonging to the *Illyrians*, is Situated on a little Hill, which suddenly almost terminates in a Valley, upon the River *Sagra*, 10 Miles from *Tortosa* to the North-West, 50 from *Tortosa* to the North: about 100 from *Barcelona* to the North-West, and 30 from *Saragosa*. It was recovered from the Moors, *Ann.* 1123, and hath been since that time often Taken, and Retaken, and in the year 1623, it Surrendered to his Catholick Majesty, after an obstinate Defence, and returned to his Allegiance, from the French, who had taken it under the Command of *Monsieur de Mire*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Tarragona*, and has a sort of an University, Founded in the year 1317.

*Pergula*, *Idem*, *Cercennum*, is the chief Town of the little Province of *Cerdania*, standing on the River *Sagra*, in the North part of the Province, on the Confines of *France*, about 22 Miles from *Perpignan* to the East, and 15 from *Urgel*. It was taken by the French in the year 1655, and restor'd to the Spaniards the year following, by the Treaty of *Nimwegen*.

*Roset*, or *Roda*, by the Inhabitants *Rhoda*, anciently according to *Livy*, a Town in *Hispania Citerior*, belonging to the *Indigetes*, which *Stephanus* call's *Rhoda*, and *Pliny* *Rhodiopolis*, stands on the Borders of *France*, and County of *Roussillon*, on the Coast of the Mediterranean Sea, about 20 Miles from *Rosellon*, or *Perpignan* to the South; and 28 from *Girona* to the North. It was taken by the French in the year 1645, and restor'd by the *Pyrenean* Treaty; and again taken by them in the year 1693, and restor'd by the Treaty of *Ryswick*. It was first Fortified by the Emperor *Charles V.* it being only an Abbey before that time.

*Tarragona*, *Tarroco*, anciently according to *Livy*, *Serale*, and others, a famous Town in *Hispania Citerior*, which from it was call'd *Tarracenenfis*; stands on the South Shore of the Mediterranean Sea, at the Mouth of the River *Francia*, 10 Miles from *Tortosa* to the East, and 60 from *Barcelona* to the West. It was Built by *Cæsar* and *Pallus Scipio*; and for many years was the Metropolis of the Roman Empire in *Spain*; where they kept their Courts, and the Majority of their Government Resided. It was anciently so noble and large a City, that as *Strabo*, particularly says, in *Strabo's* time it was as Populous as *Carthage*. It was destroy'd by the Moors, but Rebuilt afterwards, and is now nothing like what it was formerly: it having been often expos'd to the calamities of War in these late times. There are to be seen in it several marks of its Antiquity and Greatness, particularly, the Ruins of an old Circus, in the Street call'd *Pompey's Theatre*; And it was adorn'd with an University by Cardinal *Gasper de Contarini*, its Archbishop, in the time of *Philip II.*

*Cordà*, *Urgell*, call'd, *La Seu d'Urgel*, stands on the River *Sagra*, in the County, or little Province of

*Cerdania*, at the Foot of the *Pyrenæes*, about 20 Miles from the Border of *France*, to the South; and 70 from *Perpignan* to the West. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Tarragona*; and gives name to a pretty large Tract of Land, call'd, *el Plano d'Urgel*.

*Palencia*, *Palamus*, is a Fortify'd Town, with a Harbour, on the Mediterranean Sea, about 20 Miles from *Girona* to the East; as many from *Jimpuia* to the South; and 66 from *Barcelona* to the North-West.

*Roussillon*, formerly part of this Province, being now subject to *France* hath been already spoken of in our account of *Languedoc*.

### Aragon, Aragonia.

*ARAGON*, which takes up a great part of the ancient third part of *Spain*, call'd *Tarracenenfis*, and has its name from the River *Aragon*, is Bounded on the North with *Nature*, and *France*, from which it is separated by the *Pyrenean* Mountains; on the East with *Catalonia*; on the West with the 2 *Castiles*; and on the South with *Valencia*. It was at first only a County: but several Places that were taken by the Moors, being annexed to it, as also the Kingdom of *Schlarke*, which comprehended the Counties of *Schlarke*, and *Ribagorza*, it became a Kingdom, under King *Rimilus*; and was govern'd by its own Princes, till the time of *Ferdinand V.* that it was united to the Kingdom of *Castile*, *Ann.* 1474. The Kingdom of *Aragon*, properly so call'd, is divided into 2 by the River *Ebro*; and is a dry and barren Countrey, except the Vallies, which produce Corn, and Wine; as the Mountains do some Mines of Gold and Iron: which turn to no great account. This Province was one of the first that shook off the Yoke of the Moors: And finding that the Race of their ancient Kings was extinct, chose for their Prince, one *Garcias Vimentes*, a Man of great note in that Countrey; but did so limit his Authority, and tye up his Hands, that he held his Government at their Discretion: The least breach of the Contract made betwixt them, being enough to Depose him, and free them from their Allegiance. But the manner of his Swearing to a strict observation of these Conditions, and the great Privileges which the People assum'd, were abolish'd in an Assembly of the States, in the presence of King *Pedro*, surnam'd *El Punyal*, who gave them other Privileges in lieu of the former; This Country was formerly divided into 6 Parts, call'd *Junta's*, viz. *Caragoga*, *Huesca*, *Schlarke*, *Exea*, and *Tarazona*: but is now divided into 7 Dioceses, viz. those of *Balbastro*, *Caragoga*, *Jaca*, *Albarazin*, *Huesca*, *Teruel*, *Tarazona*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Caragoga</i> .	}	<i>Teruel</i> .
<i>Balbastro</i> .		<i>Tarazona</i> .
<i>Calatayud</i> .	}	<i>Veruela</i> .
<i>Jaca</i> .		<i>Miranda</i> .
<i>Albarazin</i> .	}	<i>Boria</i> .
<i>Huesca</i> .		

*Caragoga*, or *Saragoga*, *Cæsar Augustus*, anciently (according to *Pliny*) a Town in *Hispania Tarracenenfis* belonging to the *Elitani*, stands on the River *Ebro*, near to where the Rivers *Guerro* and *Gallego* fall into it, about 90 Miles from *Tortosa* to the North-West, 60 from the Confines of old *Castile* to the East, 70 from the *Pyrenæes* to the South, and 160 from *Valencia*, to the North. It is the Capital Province, and was formerly the Residence of its Kings, who kept their Court in a Palace that stood without the City, which



which serves for a Court of Inquisition. The Christians recover'd it from the Moors in the year 1118. was made a Metropolitan See by Pope John XXII. Ann. 1318. and is reckon'd one of the chief Cities of Spain. It is adorn'd with an University, defended by a strong Garrison, and is the place where the Supreme Court of Justice of that Province is held.

*Jacca, Jacca*, anciently (according to *Ptolomy*) a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, belonging to the *Vascones*, stands on the River *Aragon*, near the Foot of the *Pyrénées*, 64 Miles from *Saragoza* to the North. 22 from *Huesca*; and was as many from the Confines of *France*. It is thought to have been Built by *Pompey* the Great, and was once the Capital City of the County of *Aragon*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Saragoza*, and is defended by a naturally strong Castell.

*Albacazin Lebetum*, anciently (according to *Ptolomy*) a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, Inhabited by the *Lebetani*, is now a little Town, Situated on a Hill, the Foot of which is wash'd by the River *Guadalaviar*, on the Confines of *New Castile*, about 15 Miles from *Teruel* to the West. 42 from *Cuenca* to the North-East; and 50 from *Saragoza* to the South. It is said to be a very ancient Town, and was made an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Saragoza*, in the year 1171.

*Huesca, Osca*, anciently (according to *Ptolomy*) a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, belonging to the *Ilergetes*, and Situated on a little River, about 30 Miles from *Saragoza* to the North-East; 24 from *Jacca* to the South; and about 20 from *Balbastro* to the West. It is now a little Town, but neat and well Inhabited, and is thought to be a very ancient one; there being a sort of an University there, Founded by *Sertorius*, (who was Killed here by *Perpenna*, and his Accomplices) for the Education of young Gentlemen of *Spain*, who were given as Hostages. It was recover'd from the Moors, Ann. 1094. and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Saragoza*.

*Tarazona, Turiaso* anciently (according to *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*) a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, Inhabited by the *Celtiberi*, stands on the River *Queios*, near the Frontiers of *Old Castile*, about 12 Miles from *Tudela* to the South-West; and 60 from *Saragoza* to the West. *Alonso VIII.* recover'd it from the Moors, Ann. 1010. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Saragoza*.

### *Valencia, Valentia.*

This Country, was anciently Inhabited by the *Edetani* and *Contestani*, is Bounded on the East with *Catalonia*, and the Mediterranean Sea; on the North with *Aragon*; on the West with *New Castile*, and the Kingdom of *Murcia*; and is divided into 3 Parts, viz. *de Millares*, which is the most Northerly; *de Xucar*, which is in the middle, and *de Segura*; which is the most Southerly. The Air in it is so temperate, that there one may be said to enjoy a perpetual Spring; which is the reason why the Soil for its Fertility may be said to be best in all *Spain*. The most considerable Towns in it are,

*Valencia.* } *Xativa.*  
*Segorve.* } *Elche.*  
*Orighuella.* } *Alicante.*

*Valencia, Valentia*, anciently a City in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, belonging to the *Edetani*, stands in a Fruitful and Pleasant Country, on the River *Guadalaviar* near the Mouth of it, into the Gulf of *Valencia* to the South-West; as many from *Toledo* to the East; about the same from *Saragoza* to the South; and 30 from *Denia* to the North. It was Built by

*Junius Brutus*, in 616th year of the City of *Rome*. *Roderigo Bivar*, surnam'd *El Cid*, recover'd it from the Moors, in the year 1025. But after his Death, it was Retaken by them, till the year 1236. that *James I.* King of *Aragon* took it from them. In the year 1492. Pope *Alexander VI.* made it an Archbishoprick; whereas before it had been Suffragan to the See of *Toledo*. It is a Large, Noble, and Rich City, not yielding to any in *Spain*, except *Madrid* or *Lisbon*, for Neatness, and Number of Inhabitants. It is honour'd with the chief Court of Justice, and a flourishing University, and is the Residence of the King's Viceroy. There is no Garrison kept in it, because the Citizens Guard themselves. Among the other Riches that are to be seen in the Cathedral Church, there is a Calice of Agat, which they say, is the same as our Saviour used at his last Supper with his Disciples; and several other Relicks, too tedious to be here Related.

*Segorve, Segobriga*. Geographers, and others, pretending to the skill of Antiquity, are not agreed in this matter: Some maintaining that a Village, call'd *La Cabeza el Griego*, or *Iniesta*, a Town hard by it, has the best Title to the ancient name *Segobriga*; but others, with more reason think, that that ancient Town stood where *Segorve* now stands, which is upon the River *Morvedre*, about 24 Miles from *Valencia* to the North; 15 from the Ruins of *Saguntum*, or *Moraedre*; as much from the Gulf of *Valencia*; and 63 from the *Tortosa* to the South-West. It is a little Town, and thinly Inhabited; but was made an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, in the time of King *Bambas*.

*Orighuella, Orcelis*, anciently (according to *Ptolomy*) a Town belonging to the *Bastitani*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, is now a small Town, and in no good condition; but Seated in a pleasant Valley, at the foot of the Mountains, upon the River *Seguera*, 12 Miles from the Town of *Murcia* to the East; 15 from the Gulf of *Alicanti*; and 72 from *Valencia* to the South. It is sometimes by later Authors call'd *Orcola*, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Valencia*.

*Xativa, Setabis*, mention'd by *Pliny* and *Ptolomy*, a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, and sometimes call'd *Augusta Valeria*, stands on a little Hill near a Rivulet of the same name, about 27 Miles from *Valencia* to the South; and 18 from the Gulf of *Valencia* to the West. It is an ancient Town, and was long ago made an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, but is now very inconsiderable, and almost Ruinous.

*Alicante, Alone*, or *Alonæ*, mention'd by *Mela* and *Ptolomy*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, stands on a Gulf of the same name, in the Mediterranean Sea, about 30 Miles from *Murcia*, to the North-East; 54 from *Valencia* to the South, and 42 from *Carthagera* to the North-East. It is a large and safe Harbour, defended by a strong Fort, Built by *Philip II.* which makes it a place of great Commerce and Trade, with all Nations in *Europe*, especially for good Wine and Fruits.

### *New Castile, Castella Nova.*

This Country was anciently Inhabited by the *Carpetani* and *Oretani*, People of *Hispania Tarraconensis*, and is Bounded on the North with the *Old Castile*; on the East with *Aragon* and *Valencia*; on the South with *Murcia* and *Andalusia*; and on the West with the Province of *Extremadura*. It comprehends the South Part of the Kingdom of *Castile*, and is commonly call'd the Kingdom of *Toledo*, and is a very Fruitful and Plea-



Pleasant Country. It is divided into 3 Parts, viz. *L' Alagarría*, which lies most Northerly, *La Mancha*, most Southerly, and *La Sierra*, which makes the East Part of it: And the most considerable Cities and Towns in it are,

<i>Madrid.</i>	}	<i>Siguencia.</i>
<i>Toledo.</i>		<i>Alcala.</i>
<i>Ciudad Real.</i>		<i>Calatrava.</i>
<i>Cuenca.</i>		

**MADRID**, *Mad itum*, stands in the first division of this Country, call'd *Algarroia*, on the little River *Manzanares*, about 15 Miles from *Alcala*; 36 from *Toledo* to the North, and 120 from *Burgos* to the South. Lat. 40 25. Long. 13. 45. It is said to have rise from the Ruins of *Manta Carpetanorum*, now called *Villa Mantua*, about 2 Miles from it, and is at present a flourishing City. It stands on a little height, upon an uneven Foundation, and has been look'd on as the Capital City of *Spain*, ever since *Philip II.* and his Successors made it their ordinary Residence. The Air about it is very wholesom, inasmuch that the Emperor *Charles V.* is said to have been cur'd of an Ague by it. Some Spaniards have represented it as a City as big as *Paris*, but this is what no body, especially a Frenchman will allow: For *Madrid*, including all the Gardens and Suburbs is said not to be above 15600. common Paces in the Compass; whereas the Circuit of *Paris*, together with its Suburbs, is said (by Frenchmen) to be about 26800. And altho' the foresaid little River, that runs by it be almost dry in Summer; yet *Philip II.* thought fit to Build a Bridge over it, at so great Charge, that some were pleas'd to say, that *His Catholick Majesty would be obliged to Sell the Bridge to Buy Water for the River*. The Streets of this City are for the most part ill laid, and very dirty, because they throw out all their Nattiness into 'em. The Houses generally, are but indifferently Built, and the first Floor belongs to the King, unless the Proprietor Buys it of him, which many can't afford to do: And if one happens now and then to meet with a fine House, he may certainly conclude, that it has been Built by some Viceroy or Governor, after he has return'd from his gainful Post. The Place Major, is the finest in all the City, being environ'd with the stateliest Houses in it, 6 or 7 Stories high, but without Cimetry or Order, and loaded with Balconies, from whence they may see the Bull Baiting, on certain Festival Days. The Royal Palace is very Spacious, but its Magnificence is not proportionable to the Grandeur of the King of *Spain*; and one may venture to say, that there are Subjects in *Madrid*, that have more convenient Lodgings, and better Furnish'd than *His Catholick Majesty* has. The Cathedral Church is a Magnificent Building: And the Altar of the Blessed Virgins Chappel, and the Rails are of Massy Silver; and there is to be seen a Statue of the Virgin, which *St. James* (as they say) brought from the Holy Land.

Besides the Royal Palace in *Madrid*, the King has two other that ought not to be quite omitted, viz. *Aranjuez* and the *Escorial*; the former of which has one of the most delightful Situations in all *Castile*, between the Rivers *Tajo* and *Xarama*, which meet below it. Within the Apartments there is hardly any thing that's very fine, except some pieces of Painting; but all the Beauty and Greatness is within the Gardens and Park, where there are several long and very fine Walks, a great number of rare Bras Statues and Jerdean's.

The *Escorial*, *Scoriale* or *Escorial*, is the name of a Village on the Confines of *Old Castile*, about 20 Miles from *Madrid*, near to which King *Philip II.* Built a noble Monastery, for the Order of *St. Jerom*, with a stately Church, in honour of *St. Lawrence*, on whose day his Generals obtain'd a Signal Victory at *St. Quintin*, over the French, in the year 1557. It was begun the 23d April, 1563. and the Work continu'd and carry'd on till year 1584. It is of a square figure, each side being 250 Paces; which makes the Circuit of it 1000. and has all the Splendour, Richness and Ornament that was requir'd to make it Great and Magnificent. *Philip IV.* augmented the Church by adding to it a Chappel, for a Burying-place for the Kings and Queens of *Spain*; which is call'd the *Pantheon*, because it is Built after the manner of that of *Rome*. It is 35 Feet Diameter, and all cover'd over with Black Marble. But it is to be observ'd, that not all the Kings and Queens of *Spain* are honour'd with this Burial place, but only such of them as give a Successor to the Crown; and therefore the late Queen is laid in another Vault apart: And if this Rule is observ'd, 'tis very like his present Majesty King *Charles II.* will be sent to keep her Company.

*Toledo*, *Toletum*, anciently (according to *Ptolomy*) the Capital City of the *Carpetani*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, stands almost in the middle of *Spain*, for the most part upon an ascent; and is distant 48 Miles from *Madrid* to the South; 190 from *Burgos*, 168 from *Cordoba*, 200 from *Valencia* to the West; and about 300 from *Lisbon*. Three Parts in four (says *Mariana*) are encompass'd by the River *Tagus*; which coup'd up betwixt high Banks, runs in very narrow Channels among the Rocks. The other part which is on a high and steep Ascent, was enclos'd with the ancient Roman Wall, not so large as that of *Wamba*, the Ruins of it are still (says he) to be seen in the Market-place of *Zocodover*, and at the Gate *del Hicorro*. It was (as we have said) at first the Capital City of the *Carpetani*, and afterwards the Residence of the Gothish Kings, and a large Metropolis, when *S. Eugenius* the Martyr, first enlightned it with the Christian Faith; but it was taken by the Saracens, in the year 705. and became the Seat of the Moorish Kings, till the year 1085. that *Alonso* King of *Castile*, drove them out and recover'd it. Altho' *Madrid* pretends to be the Capital City, by reason of the Kings Residing there; yet in the Assembly of the Estates, *Toledo* assumes the first Rank, while *Madrid* takes place only as a Burrough. It is a large City, divided into 3 Parts, call'd *Barrio's* and contains 38 Monasteries, for both Sexes; but it is in a decaying condition, and is said now not to contain above 8000 Inhabitants. Its Diocess is very large, comprehending 800 parochial Churches; and the Archbishop assumes the Title of Primate of *Spain*: And his yearly Revenue amounts to 300000 Ducats. This City is famous for the great number of Councils that were held in it, which were above 20. On the North side of the City, without the Walls, are to be seen some *Vestigia*, of an ancient Theatre: And here is also to be seen the remains of a Machine, which the Moors made long ago, for raising the Water of the *Tajo* to a height, from whence it was convey'd into the several parts of the City; but through the negligence of the Spaniards it is quite Ruin'd. The Cathedral Church is one of the most Magnificent Structures of that kind in all *Spain*, and its Treasury is full of inestimable Riches; among the rest, a Mantle of the Blessed Virgin, cover'd over with Pearl, and



Bordre'd with Diamonds, Rubies, and Emeralds. About a Mile and a half from the City, are to be seen the Ruins of the Enchanted Tower, which King *Rodrigo* caused to be opened, and entred, and where he saw strange things, in the days of *Tore*; and some Miles further is to be seen the Forrest of the Hundred Maids, call'd *La Deheffa de las cien Donzellas*; in which the Moors used to keep the Hundred Maids, which they had oblig'd the Spaniards to pay them as a Tribute, till they should have an opportunity to send them over to *Africk*.

*Ciudad Reale*, otherwise call'd, *el Pozuelo*, *Civitas Regia*, is a little Town about 10 Miles from *Calatrava*, but is so inconsiderable, and in such a decaying State, that we have nothing more to say concerning it.

*Cuenca*, *Concha*, is the Chief Town in that part of this Province, which is call'd *La Sierra*, Situated among Mountains, on the Ascent of a Hill, on the River *Xucar*, where the Rivulet *Guescar* runs into it, about 30 Miles from the Confines of *Aragon* to the West; and near 80 from *Toledo* to the East. It was Built by the Goths, from the Ruins of a Neighbouring Town, call'd *Valeria*, for which it is often taken. The Spaniards recover'd it from the Moors, in the year 1177. And it is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*.

*Siguenza*, *Seguntia*, anciently (according to *Livy* and *Pliny*) a Town in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, belong to the *Celtiberi*, stands on a little height, at the Foot of the Mountain *Atienza*, about 24 Miles from the Confines of *Aragon*; 90 from *Saragosa* to the West; and near 100 from *Toledo* to the North-West. *Ambrosius Moralis* thinks, that not this Town, but not another call'd *Villa Vseja*, about a Mile from it, stands in the room of *Seguntia*, and if so, then this Town must have only risen from the Ruins of it. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, and is Fortified with a Wall and Castle, hard by which the River *Henares* runs.

*Alcala de Henares*, *Complutum*, stands in a Plain, on the River *Henares*, near 20 Miles from *Madrid*; 45 from *Toledo*; and not far from the Source of the *Tajo*. During the Gothish Empire in *Spain*, it was an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, and in the time of King *Alonso* the Wise, it was call'd *Alcala S. Jusli*, because that Saint suffer'd Martyrdom without the Walls of it. Cardinal *Francis Ximenes*, Archbishop of *Toledo*, Founded an University there, after the manner of that of *Paris*, in the year 1517. which among other things, has been famous for the *Biblia Complutensia Polyglotta*, which was Printed there, at the Charges of the foresaid Bishop.

*Calatrava*. *Calatrava*, which gives name to the Country about, stands on the River *Guardiana*, about 14 Miles from its Source, and 50 Miles South from *Toledo*. It owes its rise to the Ruins of the ancient *Calatrava*, or *Orcum*, about 6 Miles from it. In the year 1130. it was taken after a long Siege, from the Moors, and given to the Archbishop of *Toledo*; who gave it to the *Knights Templers*; but these not being able to defend it against the Moors, restor'd it to the King, who could find no body that would undertake to keep it, except two Cistercian Monks; who were mightily commended for their undertaking, and assisted with Men and Money by the Archbishop, and the People in the Country about, at his perswasion. And many having joyn'd the Monks for the defence of this Place, was the Original of the *Knights of Calatrava*, the King having given the

Town to the Cistercians for ever: And the Order was confirm'd by a Bull of *Alexander III.* Ann. 1164. 6 years after that brave undertaking of the Monks.

### *Estremadura*, *Extramadura*.

This Country, which makes the South part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, is Bounded on the North with *Leon*, on the South with *Andalusia*; on the West with *Portugal*; and on the East with *New Castile*. It is divided into 3 Parts, viz. *Tra los Guadiana*, that lies to the North; *entre Tojo e Guadiana* in the middle and *Tra los Tajo* to the South: And the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Alcantara.</i>	}	<i>Placentia.</i>
<i>Bajadoz.</i>		<i>Trugilla.</i>
<i>Merida.</i>		<i>Medelin.</i>

*Alcantara*, *Norba Cesarea*, a Town anciently (according to *Pliny*) in *Lusitania*, stands on the River *Tajo*, 120 Miles from *Toledo* to the West, 9 Miles from the Confines of *Portugal* to the East, and 120 from *Salamanca* to the South. It is a little Town, but has been Fortified in these latter times, to bridle the Incursions of the Portuguese. It has the advantage of a noble Bridge over the *Tajo*, said to have been Built by *Trajan*, 670 Foot long, 28 broad, and 200 high. This Town was recover'd from the Moors, by King *Alonso VIII.* Ann. 1013. and given to the *Knights of Calatrava*, for good services to be done against the Enemy.

*Bajadoz*, *Pax Augusta*, which *Pliny* calls *Colonia Pacensis*, and *Strabo* *Paxaugusta*, is the Chief Town of this Province, and a large and Fortified one, with a Castel lately Built, standing on the River *Guadiana*, (over which it has a stone Bridge) on the Confines of *Portugal*, 45 Miles South from *Alcantara*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Compostella*; and was in vain Besieg'd by the Portuguese in the year 1658.

*Merida*, *Emerita*, or *Augusta Emerita*, anciently the Capital City of *Hispania Lusitanica*, stands 27 Miles from *Bajadoz* to the East; 70 from *Sevil* to the North; and 40 from *Alcantara* to the South. It is said to have been Built by *Augustus Caesar*, and bestow'd by him on his invalid Soldiers. It is now but a little Town, under the superiority of the *Knights of St. James de Spatha*; and its Archiepiscopal See was transferr'd to *Compostella*, by Pope *Calixtus II.* Ann. 1122.

*Placencia*, *Placentia*, is Situated in a Plain, on the River *Xerte*, about 36 Miles from *Coria* to the East; 60 from *Toledo* to the West, 78 from *Salamanca* to the South; and 20 from the River *Tage* to the North. It sprung from the Ruins of *Deobriga*, a Town in *Lusitania*, belonging to the *Vettones*; And was Built in the year 1180. by *Alonso VIII.* and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Compostella*.

*Medelin*, *Metallinum*, which *Pliny* calls *Metallensis Colonia*, stands on the River *Guadiana*, about 56 Miles from *Bajadoz* to the East; and 15 from *Merida*. A little above it there is a stately stone Bridge over the *Guadiana*; which River some have reported to come above ground near this place, after it had hid it self for the space of 20 Miles; but these Authors have either dream'd it, or been mightily misinform'd.

### *Andalusia*, *Vandalitia*.

*Andalusia*, properly so call'd, makes up the greatest part of the ancient *Betica*; and is Bounded on the North with *Extramadura*, and *New Castile*; on the







Bordre'd with Diamonds, Rubies, and Emeralds. About a Mile and a half from the City, are to be seen the Ruins of the Enchanted Tower, which King *Rodrigo* caused to be opened, and entred, and where he saw strange things, in the days of *Yore*; and some Miles further is to be seen the *Forrest of the Hundred Maids*, call'd *La Debeffa de las cien Donzellas*; in which the Moors used to keep the Hundred Maids, which they had oblig'd the Spaniards to pay them as a Tribute, till they should have an opportunity to send them over to *Africk*.

*Ciudad Real*, otherwise call'd, *el Pezuelo*, *Civitas Regia*, is a little Town about 10 Miles from *Calatrava*, but is so inconsiderable, and in such a decaying State, that we have nothing more to say concerning it.

*Cuenca*, *Concha*, is the Chief Town in that part of this Province, which is call'd *La Sierra*, Situated among Mountains, on the Ascent of a Hill, on the River *Xucar*, where the Rivulet *Guescar* runs into it, about 30 Miles from the Confines of *Aragon* to the West; and near 80 from *Toledo* to the East. It was Built by the Goths, from the Ruins of a Neighbouring Town, call'd *Valeria*, for which it is often taken. The Spaniards recover'd it from the Moors, in the year 1177. And it is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*.

*Sigüenza*, *Seguntia*, anciently (according to *Livy* and *Pliny*) a Town in *Hispania Tarracensis*, belong to the *Celtiberi*, stands on a little height, at the Foot of the Mountain *Atienza*, about 24 Miles from the Confines of *Aragon*; 90 from *Saragosa* to the West; and near 100 from *Toledo* to the North-West. *Ambrosius Moralis* thinks, that not this Town, but not another call'd *Villa Vieja*, about a Mile from it, stands in the room of *Seguntia*, and if so, then this Town must have only risen from the Ruins of it. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, and is Fortified with a Wall and Castle, hard by which the River *Henares* runs.

*Alcala de Henares*, *Complutum*, stands in a Plain, on the River *Henares*, near 20 Miles from *Madrid*; 45 from *Toledo*; and not far from the Source of the *Tajo*. During the Gothish Empire in *Spain*, it was an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*, and in the time of King *Alonso* the Wise, it was call'd *Alcala S. Jusli*, because that Saint suffer'd Martyrdom without the Walls of it. Cardinal *Francis Ximenes*, Archbishop of *Toledo*, Founded an University there, after the manner of that of *Paris*, in the year 1517. which among other things, has been famous for the *Biblia Complutensia Polyglotta*, which was Printed there, at the Charges of the foresaid Bishop.

*Calatrava*. *Calatrava*, which gives name to the Country about, stands on the River *Guardiana*, about 14 Miles from its Source, and 50 Miles South from *Toledo*. It owes its rise to the Ruins of the ancient *Calatrava*, or *Oretum*, about 6 Miles from it. In the year 1130. it was taken after a long Siege, from the Moors, and given to the Archbishop of *Toledo*; who gave it to the *Knights Templers*; but these not being able to defend it against the Moors, restor'd it to the King, who could find no body that would undertake to keep it, except two Cistercian Monks; who were mightily commended for their undertaking, and assist'd with Men and Money by the Archbishop, and the People in the Country about, at his persuasion. And many having joyn'd the Monks for the defence of this Place, was the Original of the *Knights of Calatrava*, the King having given the

Town to the Cistercians for ever: And the Order was confirm'd by a Bull of *Alexander III.* Ann. 1164. 6 years after that brave undertaking of the Monks.

### *Estremadura*, *Extramadura*.

This Country, which makes the South part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, is Bounded on the North with *Leon*, on the South with *Andalusia*; on the West with *Portugal*; and on the East with *New Castile*. It is divided into 3 Parts, viz. *Tra los Guadiana*, that lies to the North; *entre Tojo e Guadiana* in the middle and *Tra los Tajo* to the South: And the most considerable Towns in it are,

<i>Alcantara.</i>	}	<i>Placentia.</i>
<i>Bajadoz.</i>		<i>Trugilla.</i>
<i>Merida.</i>		<i>Medelin.</i>

*Alcantara*, *Norba Casarea*, a Town anciently (according to *Pliny*) in *Lusitania*, stands on the River *Tajo*, 120 Miles from *Toledo* to the West, 9 Miles from the Confines of *Portugal* to the East, and 120 from *Salamanca* to the South. It is a little Town, but has been Fortified in these latter times, to bridle the Incursions of the Portuguese. It has the advantage of a noble Bridge over the *Tajo*, said to have been Built by *Trajan*, 670 Foot long, 28 broad, and 200 high. This Town was recover'd from the Moors, by King *Alonso VIII.* Ann. 1013. and given to the *Knights of Calatrava*, for good services to be done against the Enemy.

*Bajadoz*, *Pax Augusta*, which *Pliny* calls *Colonia Pacensis*, and *Strabo* *Paxaugusta*, is the Chief Town of this Province, and a large and Fortified one, with a Castel lately Built, standing on the River *Guadiana*, (over which it has a stone Bridge) on the Confines of *Portugal*, 45 Miles South from *Alcantara*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Compostella*; and was in vain Besieg'd by the Portuguese in the year 1658.

*Merida*, *Emerita*, or *Augusta Emerita*, anciently the Capital City of *Hispania Lusitanica*, stands 27 Miles from *Bajadoz* to the East; 70 from *Sevil* to the North; and 40 from *Alcantara* to the South. It is said to have been Built by *Augustus Caesar*, and bestow'd by him on his invalid Soldiers. It is now but a little Town, under the superiority of the *Knights of St. James de Spatha*; and its Archiepiscopal See was transferr'd to *Compostella*, by Pope *Calixtus II.* Ann. 1122.

*Placencia*, *Placentia*, is Situated in a Plain, on the River *Xerte*, about 36 Miles from *Coria* to the East; 60 from *Toledo* to the West, 78 from *Salamanca* to the South; and 20 from the River *Taye* to the North. It sprung from the Ruins of *Deobriga*, a Town in *Lusitania*, belonging to the *Vertones*; And was Built in the year 1180. by *Alonso VIII.* and is an Episcopal See under the Archbishop of *Compostella*.

*Medelin*, *Metallinum*, which *Pliny* calls *Metallensis Colonia*, stands on the River *Guadiana*, about 56 Miles from *Bajadoz* to the East; and 15 from *Merida*. A little above it there is a stately stone Bridge over the *Guadiana*; which River some have reported to come above ground near this place, after it had hid it self for the space of 20 Miles; but these Authors have either dream'd it, or been mightily misinform'd.

### *Andalusia*, *Vandalitia*.

*Andalusia*, properly so call'd, makes up the greatest part of the ancient *Betica*; and is Bounded on the North with *Extramadura*, and *New Castile*; on the



the East, with the Kingdom of *Granada*; on the West, with *Portugal*; and on the South, with the Ocean, and the *Mediterranean Sea*, and is about 120 Miles long, and 150 broad. The Soil of this Country may justly be call'd the best in *Spain*; since it produces plenty of all Things that grow in any part of that Kingdom; and its Pasturage, among other Beasts, nourishes the famous Spanish Horses, call'd *Gernets*, so much esteem'd over all *Europe*. And altho' some of the Mountains in it are barren, because of the excessive Heat of the Climate; yet there are found within them, Mines of Silver, Brass, Lead, Quick-Silver, and Vermilion. Those who speak of the excessive Jealousie of the Spaniards, say, That it reigns most in this Country; for the Wives, for the most part, are bred up to that degree of Submission, that they serve their Husbands at Table, altho' they have abundance of Servants to do it for them; which unreasonable Treatment often provokes the Women, who possibly might otherwise be honest enough, to plant a pair of Horns on their Husband's Head, whenever a fit Opportunity offers. Most part of the Domestick Servants in this Country are Christian Slaves, which is directly opposite to the Laws of Christianity; which the Spaniards are not over observant of, when their Avarice, Ambition, or Luxury must be served. The Moors did formerly establish two little Kingdoms in this Country, viz. those of *Cordoua* and *Sevilla*; which *Ferdinand III.* annexed to the Kingdom of *Castile*, when he drove the Moors into *Granada*. The most considerable Towns in this Province, are,

<i>Sevilla.</i>	}	<i>Cadiz.</i>
<i>Xeres de la Frontera.</i>		<i>Jaen.</i>
<i>Ecija.</i>		<i>Ubeda.</i>
<i>Baeza.</i>		<i>Medina.</i>
<i>Gibraltar.</i>		<i>Sidonia.</i>
<i>Cordoua.</i>		<i>Arco.</i>

*Sevilla* or *Sevil*, *Hispalis*, the Capital City, anciently, of *Hispania Betica*, according to *Pliny*; who calls it also *Colonia Romulensis*, is now the chief City of *Andalusia*, properly so call'd, or the *Lower*. 'In the utmost part of *Spain* (says *Mariana*), towards the West, stands the City of *Sevil*, the Metropolis of *Andalusia*; and for Riches, may be reckoned the chiefest in *Europe*. Its Strength consists not only in the Walls, but the number of Inhabitants, its Beauty in the numerous, stately Buildings, and splendor of the People. Betwixt this City, which is on the left Hand, and a Suburb call'd *Triana*, on the right, runs the River *Guadalquivir*, hemmed in with high Keys, and carrying Water enough for Ships of great Burden; which render it commodious, for the Trade of the Ocean and *Mediterranean*. A Bridge of Wood built upon Boats, joins the Suburb to the City. In the City is the old Palace, inhabited by the ancient Kings; in the Suburb, facing the East, is another stately Royal House. Near the River stands a Tower, for the excellency of its Workmanship, commonly call'd the Golden Tower. Near the Cathedral, is another Tower of Brick, exceeding all the others; being 60 Yards in breadth, and four times that high. So far this famous Historian. This City, notwithstanding the great Trade of *Cadiz*, is very considerable, especially by reason that all the Gold and Silver that comes from the *Indies* for *Spain*, is unloaded there; and there is the General Mint, for Coyning the Pieces, which the In-

habitants call, *la Casa de la Contaduría de las Indias*. There is also in this City a famous University, and a magnificent Cathedral, 170 Paces long, and 100 broad, where is to be seen the Tomb of *Ferdinand III.* who drove the Moors out of *Sevil*, 22 Decemb. 1248. after a Siege of sixteen Months; these Infidels having been Masters of it for the space of 534 Years. It is the only place in *Spain*, except *Segovia*, where Gold is coin'd. It is an Archbishop's See, and is distant, 48 Miles from the Shoar of the Ocean, to the East; 66 from *Cordoua*, 108 from *Granada*, 165 from *Lisbon*, and as many from *Toledo*, to the South.

*Baeza*, *Bistia*, anciently a Town (according to *Pliny*) in *Hispania Betica*, and formerly call'd *Ubs Betica*, is now a pretty large Town, situated on a Hill, in the most eastern parts of the Province, 3 Miles from the River *Guadalquivir*, to the North; 50 East from *Cordoua*, 120 South from *Toledo*, and 40 North from *Granada*. It was anciently a Colony of the *Romans*, and was recovered by the Christians, in the time of *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile*, Ann. 1227. It has an University, founded in the Year 1538. and was formerly an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*; but in the Year 1249. it was united with that of *Jaen*, by Pope *Innocent IV.*

*Gibraltar*, *Calpe*, is a little fortified Town, with a large Harbour, in the Streights of that name, standing at the Foot of a steep Hill that terminates towards the Sea in a Plain, and juts out into the Sea for about 2 Miles, and is call'd one of *Hercules's Pillars*, or *Ne plus ultra*, over against *Abyle*, or *la Sierra de las Monas*, in *Africk*, the other Pillar; from which the Town is distant, 15 Miles to the North; 40 from *Tangier*; 48 from *Cadiz* to the South East, and 4 from the Ruins of *Heraclea*, now call'd *Gibraltar Vieja*. At the end of the fore-said Plain, there is a Chappel dedicated to the Blessed *Virgin*, which they call, *Nuestra Sennea d' Europa*; and over against it, on the top of the other Hill in *Africk*, there is another Chappel, call'd *Nuestra Sennora de Africa*.

*Cordoua*, *Corduba*, anciently a famous City in *Hispania Betica*, and the Birth-place of *Seneca* and *Lucan*, is seated (as *Mariana* describes it) almost in the midst of *Andalusia*, in a Plain, at the Foot of *Sierra Morena*. On the left hand it is watered by the River *Guadalquivir*; which having received many other Streams is there Navigable. The City lying along the Bank of the River, makes a long Square. Whil'st the Moors possess'd it, much of its beauty was lost, they being not at all curious in Architecture. Formerly it had 5 Gates, now 7. The Suburbs are as great as a good City, especially that which is call'd *Axarquia*, on the Bank of the River, without the East-Gate, which is encompassed with a Wall, and joins to the City. The King's Palace is on the West side, shut up within a particular Wall. On the River is a beautiful Bridge, the Foot of which reaches to the Cathedral. It was formerly call'd *Colonia Patricia*, because of the great number of Nobility that lived there. All the Country round about it is fruitful and pleasant, and even the Mountains bear Vines, Olives, and other sorts of Trees. Thus far the Historian. Whil'st the Moors possess'd this City, they built a noble Mosque, the best they had next to that at *Mecca*. It had 24 Gates; it was 600 Foot long, and 50 broad; and was supported by 850 Columns of black Marble, about a Foot and a half



a half diameter; and was afterwards turned into the Cathedral Church. This City stands in the midst between *Granada* to the East, and *Sevil* to the West, about 60 Miles from either, 126 from the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and 24 from *Ecija*, to the East, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Sevil*.

The Island of *Golding*, *Cadiz*, *Gades*, lies in the Atlantick Ocean, between the Mouth of the River *Guadalquivir* and the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and is called by *Ptolomy*, *Gadita*; by *Strabo*, *Eiythia*, and in the most ancient Times, *Catinusa*. It is about 12 Miles long, lying East and West, but was formerly both longer and broader. It lies off the Coast of *Andalusia*, and so near to it, that it is joined to it by a Bridge, call'd, *la Puente de Suaco*. The Gulf of *Cadiz* is about 12 Leagues in Circuit, and 2 broad; and is defended by several strong Forts; the principal of which are those call'd, *Puntal* and *Maragorda*, built on the Shoar, at the narrowest place of the Gulf. The Ports of *St. Mary* and *Cadiz*, are the best and most frequented in all the Bay; and 'tis in the latter of these where the Gallions, designed for the *Indies*, do rendezvous. It was built by the *Fyrrians*, and was taken and plundered (as was the whole Island) by the English, under the Command of *Drake*, in the Year 1596. It is now a strong and populous Place, and a great Mart-Town, in the West side of the Island, about 70 Miles from *Sevil*, to the South; 26 from the Mouth of the River *Guadalquivir*, and 56 from *Gibraltar* to the North West. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Sevil*.

*Zaen*, *Giennum*, stands at the Foot of the Mountains, call'd *Sufanna*, about 8 Miles from the River *Giudalbolten*, 36 from *Granada*, to the North; 12 from the *Guadalquivir*; and 10 from *Bacza*, to the South. It was recovered from the Moors, by King *Ferdinand*, in the Year 1246. and two Years after erected into a Bishoprick, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*.

*Medina Sidonia*, a Town mentioned by *Ptolomy*, in *Hispania Batica*, situated on a Hight, 27 Miles from *Cadiz*, to the East; 60 from *Sevil*, to the South; and 12 from the Shoar. It has the Title of a Dukedom, and was once an Episcopal See.

*Arcos*, *Arcensium Colonia*, anciently a Town in *Hispania Batica*, is now a pretty neat Town with a Castle, situated on a high and steep Rock, on the River *Guadalete*; 16 Miles from *Xera de la Frontera*, to the East; 48 from *Sevil*, to the South; 20 from *Medina Sidonia*, and 70 from *Gibraltar*.

## MURCIA, Murcia, or Regnum Murcianum.

This Country, as most Authors think, was anciently inhabited by the *Bastitani*, and whilst it was a Kingdom, was of large Extent, but is now bounded, on the North, with *New Castile*; on the East, with the Kingdom of *Valencia*; on the West, with that of *Granada*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean Sea*, and the Gulf of *Carthage*. It has the Title of a Kingdom, because it was once so, under the Moors, for many Years. It owes its name to its Capital City, and is but a little Province, not above 70 Miles long, and 60 broad. It is a Mountainous Country, but produces abundance of Fruits of several sorts, as, Oranges, Citrons, Olives, and Mulberry-Trees, for the nourishing of Silk-Worms, which turn to a very good account to

the Inhabitants; as also Rocks of Allum, Amerhylls, and Castidony; but Corn and Wine are not plentiful in this Country. The Towns of greatest note in it are,

Murcia. Carthage. Lorca. Caravaca. Alinacaren.

*Murcia*. *Murcia*, anciently call'd *Vergilia*, is the Capital City of this Province, and stands in a delightful Plain, on the River *Segura*, on the Confines of *Valencia*, 9 Miles from *Oricknella*, to the West; and 18 from *Carthage*, to the North. It is a pretty large and populous Town, and was recovered from the Moors, by *Alonso X.* King of *Castile*, Ann. 1265. It used to have a great Trade in Silk, but the only Thing that is very remarkable about it, besides its pleasant Situation and delightful Gardens, is the famous Stair-Case of the Steeple, where, they say, a Coach drawn by Horses or Mules may go up.

*Carthage*, *Carthago Nova*, anciently (according to *Ptolomy*) a City in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, belonging to the *Contestani*, said to be built by *Asdubal*, General of the *Carthaginian* Army, a little before the second Punick War, in a *Peinsula*, about 20 Miles from *Murcia*, to the South; as many from the Promontory, call'd, *el Cabo de Palos*, to the West; and 96 from *Valencia*, to the South. It was formerly one of the most considerable Towns in all *Spain*, and gave name to the adjacent Country; and Laws, as 'tis reported, to 62 several sorts of People. It was first taken by *Scipio* the same day he came before it, then destroyed by the *Vandals*, and next by the *Goths*, who raz'd it to the Ground. After which it lay buried in its own Rubbish, until the Year 1570. that *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, caus'd it to be re-built. It has the advantage of one of the best Harbours in all *Spain*, and is defended with a strong Fort; and is remarkable for the great quantity of Mackrel that are catch'd there, by reason of which fishing the neighbouring Island is call'd *Scombraria*. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Toledo*; but its Bishop has resided at *Murcia* ever since the Year 1291.

*Caravaca*. *Caravaca*, call'd *Cruz de Caravaca*, is a little Town with a Castle, standing on the River *Segura*, near the Confines of *New Castile*, and situated among Mountains; and remarkable only for a Story that's told, and believed by such as easily swallow down such Things, of a Cross that's kept there, which, they say, fell down from Heaven, whilst a Priest was about to administer his Office before a Moorish King, on the 3d day of May, 1231.

*Lorca*, *Eliocrata*, anciently (according to *Antoninus*) possessed by the *Bastetani*, in *Hispania Tarraconensis*, and otherwise call'd *Ilorcis*, stands on the River *Guadalentin*, near the Confines of *Granada*, about 40 Miles from the Sea, and the Gulf of *Carthage*; as many from *Baza*, to the East; and 48 from *Murcia*, to the West. It is a little Town, and was the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Toledo*, in the time of the Gothic Empire in *Spain*, but its See was afterwards united with that of *Carthage*.

## GRANADA, Granata, or Granatense Regnum.

This Country, which comprehends the East part of *Batica*, and is properly the *Higher Andalusia*, has



has its modern name from its Capital City; and is bounded, on the North and West, with *Andalusie*, properly so call'd; on the East, with the Kingdom of *Marcia*; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. It is surrounded with Mountains, which make the entry to it very difficult, especially, about *Marbota*, the Country of the valiant *D. n. Quixote*; for there is but one Passage cut through a high Mountain, about 15 Miles long, and not above four Yards broad. Ever since King *Philip III.* drove the Moors out of this Country, it has lain desert and uncultivated, although the Soil is very good and fertile. It is about 220 Miles long, and not above 30 broad, at its greatest breadth, and the most considerable Towns in it are.

*Granada.* } *Malaga.*  
*Guadix.* } *Ronda.*  
*Almeria.* } *Baza.*

*Granada*, *Granata*, is the Capital City of this Province; which, as *Marianus* describes it, by reason of its Situation, Largeness, Forts, Walls, and Bulwarks, seems impregnable. On the West-side of it is a large Plain, 15 Leagues in Compass, pleasant and fruitful, as well of its own Nature, as by reason of the Blood that has been there shed for many Years, which made it fat; besides 36 Springs running down the Mountains, do render it more beautiful and rich than can easily be imagined. On the East of it is the Mountain *Elvira*, where formerly stood the City *Ilibris*, as appears by the name *Elvira*. The snowy Mountain, call'd *Sierra Nevada*, lies on the South side of it, and runs down as far as the *Mediterranean* Sea. The City itself is seated partly upon the Plain, and partly upon two Hills: betwixt them runs the River *Darro*, which, as soon as out of the City, mixes with, and loses its name in the River *Xenil*, that runs quite across the Plain in length. Between the two Castles, *Alambra* and *Alcaizin*, lies the City. The Suburb, call'd *Ciudad*, and the Street *de las Gomeles*, is on the side of *Alambra*, on the other side the Street *Elvira*, and the Ancient *Zeuxo* most ill contrived, the Streets narrow and crooked, because the Moors were nothing curious in their Houses. Thus it was in this native and famous Historian's days, to whom we refer the Reader for a more particular Account and Description of it. The Arsenal of *Granada* is one of the best furnish'd in all *Spain*; full of Arms, ancient and modern, and Statues of all sorts of Metal. The City itself, as it is one of the greatest, so it is one of the best built Cities in *Spain*, enclosed with good Walls, with a hundred and thirty Towers. It has eighteen Gates, and five great Places, and one that would walk round it must spend four hours before he can end his Journey. Towards the Plain, where the access is easiest, stands the Cathedral, once a Moorish Mosque, nothing curious, now beautiful and rich: And near the Church is the great Market-Place, call'd *Bazar-rambla*, 200 Foot broad, and three times as long. After the Moors had possess'd this City, together with the little Kingdom whose Capital it is, for the space of 700 Years, *Ferdinand* the Catholick, in the Year 1492, drove them thence and out of all *Spain*, together with 120,000 Jews. It is commonly represented, as divided into 4 Parts, viz. *Granada*, *Alambra*, *Alcaizin*, and *Antiquerula*; and is distant, about 100 Miles from *Sevil*, to the East; as many from *Marcia* to the West, and 38 from *Jaen* to the South, and 45 from the Coasts of the *Mediterranean*

Sea. It was made an Archbishopric See by Pope *Alexander VI.* shortly after it was recovered from the Moors, and the University was founded by King *Ferdinand*.

*Guadix*, *Acil*, anciently a considerable *Roman* Colony, but now of no great Note, stands at the Foot of the Mountains, near the River *Fardes*, 30 Miles from *Jaen*, to the South West; 27 from *Granada*, to the East; 20 from *Baza*; and 50 from *Almeria*, to the North. It is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Sevil*, and was taken from the Moors by King *Ferdinand V.* Ann. 1489.

*Almeria*, *Almeria*, stands on the Coast of this Province on the *Mediterranean* Sea, having the advantage of a large and good Harbour, about 60 Miles from *Granada*, 45 from *Guadix*; and between the Promontory, call'd *el Cabo de Gates*, to the East, and *Adra* to the West, 20 Miles from either. It has its name from *Almericus*, a Gothish King, who ruled *Spain*, about the Year 515. It was taken from the Moors, by *Alonso*, King of *Aragon*, in the Year 1147, and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Granada*; *Ctesiphon*, one of *St. James* the Apostle's Disciples, having been, as they say, first Bishop of it.

*Malaga*, *Malaca*, or *Malcha*, stands in a Plain on the Coast of the *Mediterranean* Sea, about 70 Miles from *Sevil*, to the South East; as many from *Cadix*, to the East; 60 from the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and 64 from *Granada*. It was built by the *Phenicians*, and, after a long Siege, was taken by *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, in the Year 1487. It is a famous Mart-Town, especially for the Exportation of Wine, and other Goods, from *Granada* and the adjacent Country. It has a Mole 570 Paces long, and 20 broad, defended by two Castles, whereof one commands the other, call'd *el Alcazaba* and *Gibralfaro*; and between which there is a Passage betwixt two Walls. It is the Armory and Outworks of all *Spain*, against any Attempts from *Africk*: And is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Granada*.

*Ronda*, is a little, but pretty neat Town, standing on the Confines of *Andalusia*, near the River *Guadiaro*, and not far from two others, viz. *Goza* and *Guadalquivir*; about 36 Miles from *Gibraltar*, to the North; and almost 40 from *Malaga*, to the West. It rose from the Ruins of the ancient *Arunda*, which is now call'd *Ronda la Vieja*, and is the most considerable Town of the little Country about it, call'd *la Serrana de Ronda*.

### *The Isles of Majorca, Minorca, &c.*

The Islands of *Majorca* and *Minorca* were anciently call'd *Balears* and *Balearides*, probably from the Greek word *βαλλω*, to throw, because the Inhabitants were wonderfully dexterous at throwing Darts and such like. They were also call'd *Gymnesia* by the *Grecians*, because the Inhabitants are said to have gone naked. They lived by Piracy, and used to assist the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans* till about 20 Years after the third *Punic* War, that *Metellus* (who was for that reason call'd *Balearicus*, subdued them. Afterwards the Moors, from *Africk*, invaded, and made themselves Masters of them, and having added *Ivica*, to the Isles of *Majorca* and *Minorca*, erected the little Kingdom of *Majorca*; which lasted till the Year 1230, that *James*, King of *Aragon*, recovered them from the Moors, and gave them to his second Son; but they were afterwards united to the Kingdom of *Aragon*, and are



are now Subject to the King of Spain, as King of Aragon.

The Island of *Majorca* (or *Mallorca*, by the Inhabitants) lyes on the *Mediterranean* Sea, about 70 Miles from the Coast of *Valencia*, between 20 and 21 deg. Longitude, and 38. deg. 40. min. and 40 deg. Latitude, and between the Island *Minorca*, to the East, and *Ivica* to the West. It is, according to *Baudrand* and others 120 Miles in Compass: And, as *Mariana* describes it, its Figure is Square, the four Angles pointing to the four Parts of the World. In the West side (says this *Historian*) is the Port *Palumbaria*, and opposite to it, the Island *Dragoneria*. Cape *Salinas* looks towards the South, and in the Mid-way betwixt it and the Port, is seated the Principal City, call'd as well as the Island, *Majorca*. The Capes *Piedra* and *St. Vincent*, Point to the East and North: Thus far he. The ancient Inhabitants of this Island, as well as those of *Minorca*, are said to have been so Plagued with Hares and Rabbits, who destroy'd all their Corn, that they were forced to beg of the Emperor *Agustus*, that he would send them some of his Troops to assist them against those formidable Enemies. The only Town of any note in this Island is *Majorca*.

*Majorca*, or *Mallorca*, stands on the West side of the Island, and has the advantage of a good Harbour. It is the Residence of the *Spanish* Viceroy, or Governor of these Isles, and the Seat of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Tarragona*; and the Inhabitants have the Reputation of the best Privateers in the *Mediterranean*.

The Island of *MINORCA*, *Minorica*, or *Balearis Minör*, lyes 30 Miles to the East from *Majorca*, between 39 deg. 30 min. and 40 deg. Latitude, and 21 deg. 15. min. and 22 deg. Longitude; Its greatest length being 36 Miles, and greatest breadth 27, and in Compass 100, according to some, tho' *Baudrand* and others, allow it to be in Circuit only 56. It abounds in Cattle, especially great Mules. The Town of greatest note in it is *Citadella*.

*Citadella*, thought to be the same with the ancient *Zamna*, which is mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Mela*, stands on the West side of the Island, over against *Majorca*, and has a pretty large Harbour, with some sort of Fortifications; but not near so considerable as the Town of *Majorca*.

The Island of *IVICA*, *Ebusus*, is one of the two *Pityusæ*, and was formerly a part of the King-

dom of *Majorca*. It lyes between the Island of *Majorca*, which is distant 48 Miles from it to the East; and the Coast of *Valencia*, which 60 is Miles from it to the West; and between 38 deg. 30 min. and 39 deg. Latitude; and between 19 and 20 deg. Longitude. Its circuit (according to *Baudrand*, who finds fault with others who allow much more) is only 20 Miles or 5 *Spanish* Leagues; but some later Geographers say, it is 30 Miles long, 18 broad, and 80 in circuit. It produces Corn, Wine, Fruits, and Salt in great abundance; and tho' it be a very Woody Country, there is no kind of Venomous Creatures to be seen in it. The only Town in this Isle that deserves to be taken notice of is *Ivica*, which stands on the South Coast of it, and has the advantage of a pretty good Harbour.

The Island of *FORMENTERA*, is the other of the *Pityusæ*, and lyes about 4 Miles to the Southward of *Ivica*; but it is so full of Serpents, that no Body can live in it. And if this proceeds from the Nature of the Soil, it must be very much different from that of these other three Islands, where no such Creatures are said to be found. There are some who say, that the first Inhabitants of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, and *Ivica*, Transported all the Serpents that were in these Islands to *Formentera*, because, according to their opinions, they ought not to kill any living Creature; for fear the Soul of some of their Ancestors might be lodged within them: but the Reader may believe as much of this Story as he shall think fit.

There are a great many little Islands scattered up and down about *Ivica*; but they are so inconsiderable, that they hardly deserve a particular Description, and therefore we shall only Name some of them, for the sake of those who may have occasion to Sail that way. To begin at the most Easterly of them, there is the *Isleta Nigra*, and *Isleta de los Abocados*; and nearer the Coast, where the Salt is Ship'd, *Isla de la Esponja*; near Fort *St. George*, *la Isla de los Ratones*, and a little way from the Shoar two other, call'd *de los Poros*; near the Fort of *Ivica*, *La Isla del Escollo Negro*, and *del Bixote*; and somewhat further from the Shoar, two little Islands, call'd *de los Dardos*, and *el Escollo Dorado*; and next to these, *Bota-fuego*, and *de los Conejos*, *Isla de Cabo Librel*, *La Isla de la Punta del Arabi*, *Tago Mago*; and toward the South, two Islands call'd, *La dos Hormigas*, *Balançat*, *Las Isla Murada*, then the four call'd, *Las Bladas*, and several others, which are hardly worth mentioning.



# The Kingdom of Portugal, *Portugallia*.

By Rob. Falconer.

---

Consult the Map of Spain.

---

THE Ancient *Lusitania*, (which was one of the three Parts into which *Spain* was divided by the *Romans*) comprehended the greatest part of that which is now call'd the Kingdom of *Portugal*, a part of *Old*, and some of *New-Castile*; and was Bounded on the North with the River *Durius*, or *Duro*, on the West with the Ocean, on the East with *Hispania Tarraconensis*, and on the South with the River *Anas* or *Guidiana*. So that altho' the modern *Portugal* is taken for the ancient *Lusitania* by the Generality of Authors, it is evident that their Bounds are not the same; since all *Portugal* is not comprehended within the ancient *Lusitania*, nor this within the modern Bounds of that; altho' the most part of *Lusitania* lyes within *Portugal*. For all the *Interamnensis* Province, or the Country commonly call'd *entre Douro e Minho*, was without *Lusitania*; and that part of *Lusitania* which lay next to *Tarracensis* (now call'd *Extremadura*) is not a part of *Portugal*; which is bounded, on the West with the *Atlantick* Ocean; and on the South with the same, if you take in *Algarve*, which is United to this Kingdom; on the North with *Gallicia*; and on the East with *Leon*, *Estremadura* and *Andalusia*; and lyes between 36 deg. 36 min. and 42 deg. Latitude; and between 8 and 12 deg. Longitude.

Concerning the Soil of this Country, as *Portugal* is not very large, so neither is it very Fruitful, the Inhabitants living most upon such Corn as is imported: Yet is the Country full of Cities and Towns, and has a great many Commodious Sea-Ports. The Commodities of the Growth of *Portugal*, fit for Exportation (as *Puffendorf* observes) are Salt, of which a great quantity is from *Setubal* or *St. Hubes*, Transported into the Northern Countries: As also Oil, some Wine, and allsorts of Fruits. The Silver Mine call'd *Guscaldane*, is said to be of the yearly value of 175 *Quents* of Silver (each *Quento* amounting to 2673 Ducats, 8 Reals, and 26 Marvedoes.)

We shall not trouble the Reader with the various and tedious Conjectures that are about the ancient and modern Names of this Country; since 'tis no great Matter whether it was called *Lusitania*, from from *Lysus* and *Lysa*, two Fabulous Companions of *Bacchus*, or from the *Lusitani* who Inhabited it; or whether the Modern Name of *Portugal* or *Portugallia*, comes from *Pertus Cale*, the Latin Name of *O Perte*, or from *Pertus Gallorum*, because the French frequented this Harbour very much while the rest were in the possession of the *Moors*.

Concerning the Origin of this Kingdom, we shall refer the Reader to our Account of *Spain* for the first Inhabitants, and more ancient State of this Kingdom, and here only put him in mind, That the Province, which the Romans call'd *Lusitania*, fell, with the rest of *Spain*, under the last Gothish King *Roderick*, into the hands of the *Moors*; who were in Possession of it for

a long time; till the year 1093, that *Alonso I.* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, making all possible preparations against the *Moors*, and craving also the Assistance of Forreign Princes, and others who would Signalize themselves in this War; among others who came, was one *Henry*, whom some will have to be Descended of the House of *Burgundy*, and make him a younger Son of *Robert* Duke of *Burgundy*, whose Father was *Robert* King of *France*, Son of *Hugh Capet*: Others derive his Pedigree from the House of *Lcrain*, and say that he was call'd a *Burgundian*, because he was Born at *Besanscn*. But whether the former or latter of these be the truer Account, this is certain, that *Henry* did so distinguish himself on this occasion, that *Alonso* thought fit to Reward his Valour by giving him in Marriage *Theresia* his Natural Daughter, together with all that part of *Portugal* which was then in the Possession of the Christians, comprehending that part of the Country where are the Cities of *Baga*, *Coimbria*, *Visco*, *Lamego*, and *Perto*, as also that Tract of Ground which is now call'd *Tra los Montes*; with full Power to Conquer the rest of that Country, as far as the River *Guadiana*, and to keep it under his Jurisdiction; upon condition only, that he should be a Vassal of *Spain*, repair to the Dyets of the Kingdom, and be obliged to Serve in the Wars with 300 Horse. His Son *Alonso I.* of *Portugal*, defeated the *Castilians* in a Battle, by which Victory he pretended to have freed himself from the Spanish Subjection; and having undertaken an Expedition against King *Ismar*, (whose Dominions lay on the other side of the *Tajo*; assum'd the Title of King, and defeated *Ismar*, with four other little *Moorish* Kings, who had join'd in Confederacy with him: And afterwards took a great many Cities from the *Moors*, particularly *Lisbon*, in the year 1147. Of his Race were the next Succeeding eight Kings; *Ferdinand*, who died *Ann.* 1383, was the last of the true Race of the Kings of *Portugal*; his Daughter *Beatrice* being Married to *John* King of *Castile*, was the Cause of great Troubles in *Portugal*; the *Portugueses* not enduring to be rul'd by the *Castilians*, after a great deal of Confusion and Bloodshed, chose *John* the Natural Son of *Peter* King of *Portugal*; in whose Family the Crown remained till the death of *Henry* the Cardinal, *Ann.* 1580. After which *Philip II.* King of *Spain* sent the Duke *de Alba* into *Portugal* with a powerful Army, who made himself Master of it in a short time, and so it continued under the Jurisdiction of *Spain* till the year 1640, that the *Portugueses* shook off that Yoke and chose *John IV.* Duke of *Braganza* their King; and by that means became a Free Independant Monarchy, and continue to be so.

The *Portugueses* (says *Puffendorf*) are not inferior to the Spaniards in Pride and Haughtiness; tho' they are not esteem'd so Prudent and Cautious as these, but



but are over Secure in Prosperity, and in time of Danger Rash and Fool-hardy, and Rigorous and Cruel when they get the upper-hand. They are mightily addicted to Covetousness, and love Usury, and have search'd after Money in all Corners of the World. Some will have them to be very malicious, which they say is the Remnant of the Jewish Blood intermingled with that of the Portuguese Nation. Tho' this Country for its bigness, is very Populous, yet it is (considering the number of *Portugueses* that have Settled in *Brasile*, on the Coast of *Africk*, and the *East-Indies*;) not able to raise a numerous Land Army without Foreign help, or to fit out a great Fleet of War Ships; and have enough to do to Garrison well their Frontiers, and to keep Convoys for their Merchant Ships. However, in case they should be Attack'd by *Spain*, they are able to bring out 25000 Men into the Field, which is the greatest number that *Spain* can keep on Foot on that side, by reason of the scarcity of Provisions. The Welfare and Strength of *Portugal* depends chiefly on their Commerce with the *East-Indies*, *Brasile* and *Africa*; by which it is evident, that the Strength and Power of *Portugal* in comparison of other more Potent States, is not capable to Attack any of 'em, or gain any thing upon them. So that it seems more its true Interest to preserve it self in the Condition it now is, than to endeavour the enlarging of its Dominions, or engaging in a War with any other State that is strong at Sea.

The Roman Catholick Religion alone is Tolerated in *Portugal*; and altho' there are a great many Jews in it, yet they pretend to be of the Religion of the Country, and frequent their Churches, seemingly with as much Zeal and Devotion as any; but neither the Jewish Converts to Christianity, nor their Children are capable of enjoying any Office in the Administration of Justice, except it be by the special Favour of the King, or for some considerable Service done to the State. The Jews, whose Fate it is to be discover'd, and fall into the hands of the Inquisition, are burnt alive without Mercy.

The *Portuguese*, generally wear Black, and their Habit is not much different from that of *Spain*, only the King and Court follow the French Mode. They count their Money by Rees, 2000 whereof goes to a Pistol, 600 to a Real Marcado, 500 to a Crusade, 100 to a Teston, and 20 to a Vingtin.

The King of *Portugal* is an Absolute and Independent Monarch, and in all his Patents Stiles himself, *King of Portugal and Algarve, Prince of Brasil, Lord of Guinea, of the Navigation, Conquests and Commerce of Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia, and the Indies*. His Revenues are said to be eight Million and nine hundred Thousand Livres, besides the Revenues of the House of *Braganza*; which are not annexed to the Crown of *Portugal*, and may amount to about two hundred and fifty Thousand Livres.

There are several other Countries and Places belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*, besides what they possess in *Spain* taken in a large Sense, viz. *Brasile*, which is a long tract of Land in *America*, but very narrow, extended along the Sea Coast, and producing abundance of Sugar, Ginger, Cotton, Wool, Indigo, and Woad for Dyers. The *Portugueses* are also Masters of the Islands of *Cape-Verd*, and the *Azores* in the *Atlantick* Sea, whereof *Tercera* and *Madera* are the principal; of *Mazagan* on the Coast of *Barbary*, and the Fortresses of *Mina*, *Arquin*, and some others on the Coast of *Guinea*; also some on the Coast of *Congo*, *Lovango* and *Angola*:

The Forts of *Sofola*, *Mofambique*, *Merlinda*, *Quiloa*, and *Monbazo*, on the Coasts of *Zanquebar*. In *Asia*, of *Goa*, *Diu*, *Daman*, and *Chaul* near *Surat*; *Macao* in an Island not far from the Continent of *China*, and the Island of *Timor* on the Coast of *China*, &c. Their Trade on the West side of *Africa* is not very considerable, since the *Hollanders* have interfer'd with them, and those parts which they possess on the East side serve only to enrich their Governors. The *Portugueses* had formerly a great Interest in *Japan*, which was chiefly procur'd by means of the *Jesuits*, who are said to have Converted above 400000 of the *Japanese* to the Christian Religion; but about 40 years ago, the *Dutch* by their Practices and Artifices render the *Portugueses* suspected to the Emperor of *Japan*, having Intercepted or Forg'd a Letter from the *Jesuits* to the Pope wherein they promised to bring, ere long, the whole Kingdom of *Japan* under the Obedience of the Sec of *Rome*. Which the *Hollanders* improv'd and Interpreted to their own Advantage and the Ruin of the *Portugueses* in that Country; for they made the Emperor believe that the new Converts had a mind to Dethrone him, and that the Pope would certainly give his Dominions to the King of *Spain*, to whom *Portugal* then belong'd. They also shew'd the Emperor of *Japan*, in a Map, how the Conquests of the King of *Spain* did extend on one side, as far as *Manilla*, on the other as far as *Macao*, so that by Subduing of *Japan*, he would have the opportunity of Uniting his Conquests. The *Japanese* were easily perswaded, and there followed a most horrible Persecution against the Christians; neither did they cease, till there was not one Christian left in *Japan*, and the *Portugueses* were upon pain of Death for ever Banish'd the Country. And the *Hollanders* (as *Puffendorf*, to whom, particularly, we owe this short Account, goes on) when afterwards they sent any Ships to *Japan*, used to forbid their Subjects to shew the least appearance of Religious Christian Worship; but if they were ask'd, whether they were Christians? To answer, *They were not, but were Hollanders*. It ought to be matter of great sorrow to all good Christians, that such an Answer should ever have come from any that did but bear the Name of Christian, or that any, especially of the Reform'd Church, should have been the cause of so Bloody and Cruel a Persecution: *Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, Auri Sacra fames?*

### The Cronological Succession of the Kings of Portugal.

1. Henry Earl of Portugal, was succeeded by his Son
2. *Alfonfus I.* of Portugal, who assum'd the Title of King, and was very succesful against the *Moors*, and took *Lisbon*. He died Ann. 1185 and was succeeded by his Son
3. *Sanctius*, who was succesful against the *Moors*, and died 1212, and was succeeded by his Son
4. *Alfonfus II.* who died 1223. and was succeeded by his Son
5. *Sanctius II.* Surnam'd *Capellus*, who being a careless Man and rul'd by his Wife, was remov'd from the Administration of the Government, and his Brother *Alfonfus* advanc'd to it. *Sanctius* died an Exile in *Toledo*, 1246.
6. *Alfonfus III.* was Excommunicated by the Pope, for putting away his Wife because she was somewhat



what Ancient and Barren, but his Reign was, otherwise, very Glorious. He died, *Ann.* 1274. and was succeeded by his Son

7. *Dionysius*, who was singularly famous for his Justice, Liberality and Constancy. He died *Ann.* 1325. and was succeeded by his Son
  8. *Alfonso IV.* Surnam'd the Brave, who died *Ann.* 1357. and was succeeded by his Son
  9. *Peter*, Surnam'd the Cruel, who died *Ann.* 1365. and was succeeded by his Son
  10. *Ferdinand*, who by his frequent wars prov'd very pernicious to *Portugal*, and died, 1353. being the last of the true Race of the Kings of *Portugal*; his Daughter *Beatrice* being Married to *John* King of *Castile*, was the occasion of great troubles in *Portugal*: The *Portugueses* not enduring to be Ruled by the *Castilians*, after a great deal of Bloodshed, and much Confusion, did Choose *John* the Natural Son of *Peter*, King of *Portugal*.
  11. *John*, the Bastard, who died, *Ann.* 1433. and was succeeded by his Son
  12. *Edward*, a very Vertuous Prince, but short Liv'd. He died of the Plague, *Ann.* 1435. and was succeeded by his Son
  13. *Alfonso V.* who after great Contests with *Ferdinand* the Catholick and *Isabella*, died *Ann.* 1451. and was succeeded by his Son
  14. *John II.* who was the first that found out the way to sail unto the *East-Indies*. He died, *Ann.* 1495. leaving no Heirs behind him, and was succeeded by his Cousin
  15. *Emanuel*, Son of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Visco*, Grandchild of King *Edward*, under whose Reign the Jews and Moors were expell'd *Portugal*; the first Sea Voyage to the *East-Indies* made; the whole Trade and Commerce of *Africa*, and the remotest parts of *Asia* engross'd by the *Portugueses*; and *Brasil* discover'd. This King (whose Reign was call'd by the *Portugueses*, the *Golden Age*) died *Ann.* 1521, and was succeeded by his Son
  16. *John III.* who sent the famous *Francis Xavier*, and some other Jesuits into the *East-Indies*, to plant the Christian Religion. He died, *Ann.* 1557. and was succeeded by his Grand-child.
  17. *Sebastian*, a Child of three years of Age; who when he came to Age, undertook a fatal Expedition into *Africa*, where, in the year 1578. while he was assisting *Muley Mahomet* King of *Morocco*, against *Muley Molucco*, his Uncle, who had Banish'd him, they all three fell in that famous Battle, where the Flower of the *Portugueses* Nobility was miserably Routed, and all the Soldiers cut to pieces or made Prisoners. *Sebastian* was succeeded by
  18. *Henry* the Cardinal, his Uncle, who dying in the year 1580.
- Philip II.* King of *Spain*, sent the Duke *de Alba* with a great Army into *Portugal*, who in a few days became Master of the whole Kingdom, which lay under the Jurisdiction of *Spain* till the year 1640, that the *Portugueses* shook off the Spanish Yoke, and Proclaim'd for their King
19. *John IV.* Duke of *Braganza*, whose Grandmother had stood in Competition with *Philip II* for that Crown. *John* died in the year 1656, and was succeeded by his Son
  20. *Afonso VI.* who being a wild and awkward sort of Man, was forced by his Brother *Don Pedro* to surrender to him the Administration of the Kingdom, receiving to himself a Maintenance only of 270000 Livres per *Ann.* and the Palace

of *Braganza*, with all its Appurtenances: *Don Pedro* in the mean while assuming only the Title of Regent, and Marrying his Brother's Wife by the Pope's Dispensation.

The Kingdom of *Portugal*, if you take in *Algarve*, may be divided into 6 Provinces, which you may see in the following Table, in the same order they lye, North and South; with their Vulgar Names, and the most Remarkable Cities and Towns that lye within them.

#### *Portugal Divided into 6 Provinces, viz.*

- I. *El Entre Douro e Minho.*
- II. *Tra los Montes.*
- III. *La Beira.*
- IV. *Extremadura Portugallia.*
- V. *El Alentejo, or Entre Tejo e Guadiana.*
- VI. *Algarve.*

The Province call'd *EL ENTRE DOURO E MINHO*, *Interamnen's Provincia*, or *Interamnia Portugallia*, which was Inhabited by the *Callaici Bracarii*, is bounded on the North with the River *Minho*, on the South with the *Douro*, which divides it from *Beira*, on the West with the *Atlantic Ocean*, and on the East with a part of *Gallecia* and the Province of *Tra los Montes*; and the most remarkable Places in it are,

*Braga.* } *Viana*  
*O Porto.* } *Puente de Lima.*

*Braga*, *Bracara*, or *Augusta Bracarum*, anciently the chief City belonging to the *Bracarii* in *Hispania Tarracensis*, stands on the River *Gretones*, about 15 Miles from the Sea; as many from *Viana de Foz de Lima*, to the East; between *Tux*, to the North; and *O Porto* to the South; about 20 Miles from either. Lat. 41. 35. It is a very ancient Town, and was the Residence of the *Suevian* Kings for the space of 170 years: And is the Seat of an Archbishop, who is also a Temporal Prince, and had formerly many more Suffragans under him than he has at present.

*O Porto*, *Portus Cale*, is a large and famous Mart Town, especially for Wine, of late, having a large and safe Harbour, and seated near the mouth of the River *Douro*, about 2 Miles from the Sea, about 20 from *Braga*, to the South, and 36 from *Lamego*, to the West; and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Braga*.

*Viana de Foz de Lima*, *Viana Limii*, stands, on the shoar of the *Atlantic Ocean*, at the mouth of the River *Lima*; about 18 Miles from *Braga* to the West, and about 9 from the mouth of the River *Douro*, and was anciently the Seat of a Bishop.

The Country call'd *TRA LOS MONTES*, *Transmontana Provincia*, is that part of *Portugal*, which is bounded on the North with *Gallecia*; the River *Douro* on the South; the Kingdom of *Leon* on the East; and the Province call'd, *el entre Douro e Minho* on the West. It is divided into 4 Districts, which they call *Comarca's*, and the Towns of greatest note in it are, *Miranda de Douro* and *Braganza*.

*Miranda de Douro*, *Miranda Durii*, stands on the Confines of the Kingdom of *Leon*, about 2 Miles from the River *Douro*, 36 from *Zamora* to the West; as many from *Salamanca* to the North-West; and



18 from *Braganza* to the South. It is pretty well Fortified towards the Mountains, and is said to have been Built in the year 1312: And was made an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Braga*, by Pope *Paul III.* in the year 1555.

*Braganza*, *Brigantia*, or *Brigecium*, stands near the Confines of *Gallecia* and *Leon*, 21 Miles from *Miranda*, to the North; 100 from *Barga* to the East; and 45 from *Zamora* to the West. It is an ancient Town mentioned in *Antoninus*, and is Honoured with the Title of a Dukedom, whose Duke was chosen King of *Portugal*, after that Kingdom had shook off the Spanish Yoke, *Ann.* 1640.

The Province of *LA BEIRA*. *Beira*, lyes between the Rivers *Douro*, on the North; and *Mondego* on the South; the *Atlantick* Ocean on the West, and the Kingdom of *Leon* to the East. It is divided into 6 Districts, call'd *Comarca's*, and the Towns of greatest note in it are,

*Coimbra*. } } *Lamego*.  
*La Guarda*. } } *Viseo*.

*Coimbra*, *Conimbrica Nova*, stands on the River *Mondego*, which divides it in Two; about 20 Miles from *Lisbon* to the North; 18 from the *Atlantick* Ocean; and 90 South from *Barga*; 24 from the mouth of the foresaid River; It rose from the Ruins of the ancient *Conimbrica*, which was destroy'd by the *Alani*, and is now a pitiful Village, call'd *Condexa la Vieja*: The Town we are Describing, is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Braga*, and has an University, founded in the year 1290, by King *Dennis*, but it was Transferr'd afterwards to *Lisbon*, from whence it was brought back to this place, by *John III.* in the year 1550. It was the Birth-place of several Kings of *Portugal*, viz. *Sancho I.* *Alonso II.* *Sancho II.* *Alonso III.* *Alonso IV.* *Pedro* and *Ferdinand*: And here died, *Alonso Henrique*, First King of *Portugal*, in the year 1185. as also his two Successors, *Sancho I.* in the year 1212. and *Alonso II.* *Anno* 1223.

About 24 Miles from *Coimbra*, are the Waters, or Fountains of *Cedima*; which have such a surprising attractive quality that they suck in and swallow whatever but touches their Waters, as great Logs of Wood and such like, as has been found by many Experiments; but none more convincing than one, which a Dane (as a late Traveller relates) who being hard of Belief, would needs try it upon his Horse; and having put a Rope about his Neck, and another about his Leg, and tyed the other ends of 'em to a Ring fixed some Paces from the Water, put the Poor Creature into it; who had no sooner entred than he was drawn in with so great force that the Rope that was about his Neck broke, the other being stronger, or the force not being so great upon it, kept fast the Leg, which was all the Gentleman had left him to ride home upon.

*Lamego*, *Lameca*, or *Lamacum*, stands on the Confines of *Miho*, in the mid'st between *Braga* to the South-East, and *Guarda* to the South-West; 3 Miles from the River *Douro* to the South; and 36 from *O Porto* to the East; and is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Braga*.

*Guarda*, stands 60 Miles South-East from *Lamego*, and 70 East from *Coimbra*; it is an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Lisbon*. It sprung out of the ancient City *Igedita*.

*Viseo*, *Viseum*, stands near the Rivulet *Montorio*, 27 Miles from *Lamego* to the South; and 36 from

*Guarda* to the West. It was once Honoured with the Title of a Dutchy, and has still the Name of an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Braga*. It is the same Town with that which in some Maps is call'd *Viseu*, but ought not to be so call'd.

The Province call'd *ESTREMA DURA*, or *Estremadura Portugalia*, to distinguish it from *Estremadura* in the Kingdom of *Spain*, strictly so call'd, lyes towards the mouth of the River *Tajo*, and is bounded on the North with the Province of *Beira*, on the East and South, with that call'd *Alentejo*; and on the West with the Ocean. It is divided into 6 parts, and the Principal Towns in it are,

*Lisben*. } } *Alenquer*.  
*Santaren*. } } *Setuval*, or *St. Ubes*.

*LISBON*, *Olisippo*, or *Ulyssippo*, is not only the chief City of this Province, but also of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*: And stands (according to the Spanish Historian *Mariana*) almost in the middle of *Portugal* on the North side of a large and secure Port formed by the River *Tago* or *Tajo*, about 6 Miles from the Sea; 18 from the *Cabo de la Roca Sintra*, to the West; 18 from the *Cabo de Espichel* to the North; 135 from *O Porto*; and 100 from *Coimbra* to the South; 150 from *Sevil* to the North-West; and 240 from *Toledo* to the West. Some Authors will have it to have been Built by *Ulysses*, after the Siege of *Troy*, and for that reason call'd *Ulyssippon*. It was taken by King *Alonso II.* of *Leon*, from the *Moors*, in the time of *Charlemaine*, about the year 792. In the year 1148, *Alonso I.* King of *Portugal* took it from them again. And in the year 1384. King *John* of *Castile* laid Siege to it, but was forced to raise it.

It is the noblest and richest City in *Portugal*, the Seat of the King, and one of the Places of greatest Trade in *Europe*. At the back of it (says the aforementioned Historian) are certain Hills of easie ascent, and the tops of 'em covered with Buildings. The breadth of the City is not so much as the length. (which some late Travellers say is about 6 Miles) Most of the Streets are narrow and crooked; and in some places very steep; but the new Buildings surpass the old in beauty. About it are many Villages, and good Country-houses, and a Soil beautified with Vineyards and Orchards, of Orange and Lemmon-Trees. The Palace Royal stands below the City, and has the Prospect of the Port. It is a pretty regular Pile of Building, in and about which are to be seen several Master-Pieces of Painting, Sculpture, and Architecture. In short, the Magnificence of this Court is greater than that of *Spain*. The Cathedral Church, dedicated to *St. Vincent*, who, they say, suffered Martyrdom there, has hardly any thing extraordinary about it, except its Antiquity. This City had formerly the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Merida*; but in the Year 1390. Pope *Boniface IX.* made the Bishop of it a Metropolitan.

About a Mile from *Lisbon*, towards the Sea, and on the Banks of the *Tajo*, there stands a little Town call'd *Belem*, where the Kings and Queens of *Portugal* are buried. Their *Mausoleums* are within the Church of the *Hieronimites*, which is all lined with white Marble. Near to *Belem*, there is a Tower, upon which are planted a good number of Cannon, and over against it another little Fort, which together



ther, serve to hinder any Enemy's Ships from entering the Port: And besides these, there are several other little Ports, down as far as the Sea; the Principal one of which is that of *St. Katherine* at the Mouth of the River, which answers to that on the other side, call'd the *Wooden Fort*, because it stands on Piles, in the Sea.

*Santarem*, *Scalabis*, or *Julium Praesidium*, is a pretty large Town, seated on a rising Ground, near the River *Tajo*, 42 Miles from *Lisbon*, to the North East; and 32 from the Atlantick Ocean, to the East. It is said to have its name from one *St. Irene* a Virgin, who having been kill'd in a Town call'd *Tomar*, about 20 Miles from hence, and her Body thrown into the River *Nabacn*, was carried by the *Tajo*, into this place, and there buried with great Solemnity. Wherefore this Town, laying aside its former name, began to assume that of *St. Irene's*, which afterwards was corrupted into that which it now has.

*Setuval*, or *St. Ubes*, *Cetobrica*, or *Cetebria*, according to *Ptolemy*, stands at the Mouth of the River *Zadson*, on the Atlantick Ocean, 18 Miles from *Lisbon* to the South; as many from the *Cabo de Espichei*, to the East, and 48 from *Euora*, to the West. It has the advantage of a good Harbour, and is a place of considerable Trade, especially for the excellent Salt that is found near that place.

The Province of *ALENTEIO*, *Trans-Tazana Provincia*, is otherwise call'd *Entre Tejo e Guadiana*, because it lies between these two Rivers, by the former of which it is bounded on the North; by the other on the East and South East, as it is by the Atlantick Sea, on the West, and *Algarve* on the South. It is divided into five Districts, and the Towns of greatest Note in it are,

*Euora.* } { *Elvas.*  
*Beja.* } {

*Euora*, *Ebora*, or *Ebura*, is a pretty large Town, and the Capital one of this Province, situated among the Mountains, 48 Miles from *Bajadoz* to the West, 24 from the River *Guadiana*, and 57 from *Lisbon* to the S. East. It had formerly the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Merida*, afterward that of *Compostella*; and at last its Prelate was made a Metropolitan, by Pope *Paul III.* Ann. 1540. There was an University founded in it by *Henry* the Cardinal; and it was taken by *John* of *Austria*, in

the Year 1655. but bravely recovered by the *Portugueses* a few days after.

*Beja*, *Pax Julia*, anciently inhabited by the *Turdani*, is now a pretty near Town, and honoured with the Title of a Dukedom. It is distant, 6 Miles from the River *Guadiana*, to the West; 39 from the Atlantick Ocean; 37 from *Euora*, to the South; and about 60 from *Bajadoz*, to the South West. Near to this place there is a Lake, which roars like a Bull, so as to be heard 15 or 16 Miles round, before great Rains, or a Storm.

*Elaa*, *Helia*, or *Ela*, stands on a Hill, on the Borders of *Estremadura*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Leon*, 6 Miles from the River *Guadiana*; 33 from *Euora*, to the East; and 12 from *Bajadoz*, to the West. It has been pretty well fortified of late; and therefore in vain besieged by the Spaniards, in the Year 1659. who received a signal Overthrow from the *Portugueses* near to it. It was made an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Euora*, by Pope *Paul IV.* in the Year 1555.

The Province of *ALGARVE*, *Algarbia*, whose greatest length from East to West, is not above 60 Miles; and greatest breadth from North to South, not above 25, is divided from the rest of *Portugal* by the Mountains *Caldearon* and *Monchique*; and is bounded on the North with *Portugal*, strictly so call'd; on the East, with *Andalusia*; and on the West and South, with the Atlantick Ocean. It was annexed to *Portugal* by King *Alonso III.* with the Title of a Kingdom, and is divided into two Districts or *Commarca's*, viz. *Commarca de Tavira*, and *Commarca de Lagos*.

*Tavira*, *Tavira*, is a Town on the Sea Coast, 20 Miles East from the mouth of the River *Guadiana*, about 60 Miles West from Cape *St. Vincent*, and is by some Authors taken for the ancient *Balsa*, mention'd by *Ptolemy* and *Pomponius*; but others think that that old Name belongs rather to *Albuferra*, which lies on the Coast, between *Lagos* to the West, and *Faro* to the East; about 15 Miles from either; 50 from *Beja*, to the South; and 30 from *Cabo de S. Vincent* to the East.

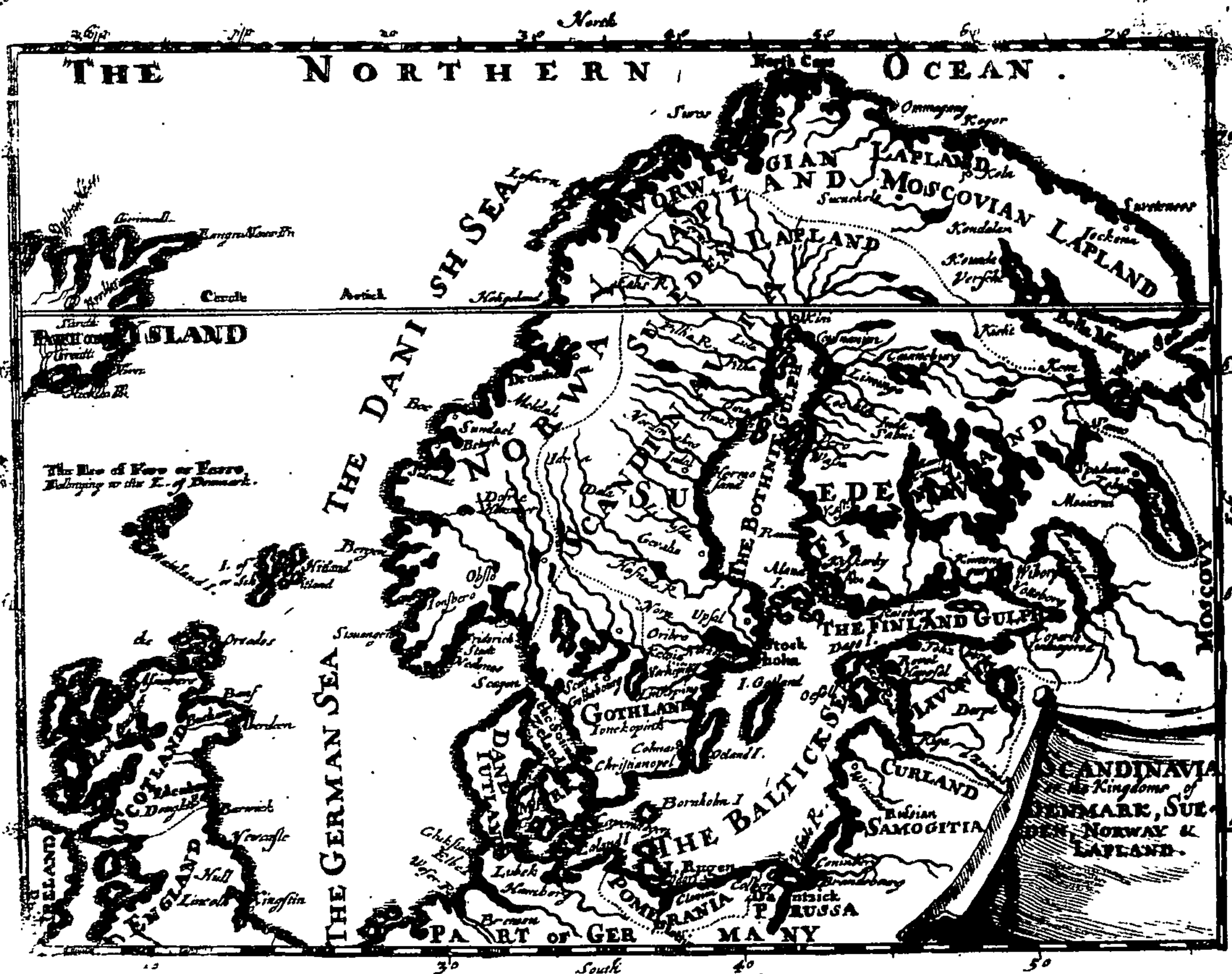
*Faro*, *Pharus*, stands on the Bay of *Caes* near the *Cabo de S. Maria*, 27 Miles from *Tavira* to the West, and about 40 from *Cabo de S. Vincent* to the East. It has the advantage of a good Harbour, and has been an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Euora*, since the Year 1590.



# SCANDINAVIA,

COMPREHENDING

*Normay, Sueden, and part of Denmark.*



**S**CANDINAVIA, which Pliny falsely calls *Insula incomperta Magnitudinis*, an Island, whose Bounds were unknown; and which according to Diodorus and Ptolomy, was anciently call'd *Balthica* and *Basilea*, (the latter perhaps being but a corruption of the former) comprehended all that vast Tract of Land, in form almost of a *Peninsula*, which is now call'd *Sueden* and *Norway*. It is the utmost Bounds of *Europe*, towards the North, and is Bound-ed with *Denmark* and *Germany* on the South, with the Ocean on the North and West, and *Russia* on the East, and lies between the 56th and 72d. Degree of Latitude, and 25th and 60th of Longitude.

Its Soil according to *Andrew Bureus*, and others, in the South parts of it, where the elevation of the Pole is not above 60 Degrees is abundantly Fruit-ful, and the Air pretty Temperate: But about the middle between the 60th Degree, and the Arctick Circle, the Soil is much encumbred with Woods and Rocks, and otherwise but indifferent, and the Air very Cold. But the most Northern parts which lie beyond the Arctick Circle, have very little of the Blessings of either the Heavens or the Earth: Only Nature has kindly provided the Inhabitants with Plenty of Fish and Venison to supply the wants of Fruit and Corn,

X x

How



How it came to be called *Scandinavia* or *Scandia*, and what the Etymologies of these and such like words are, is hardly worth the Enquiry; and whether the *Scanij* gave name to the Place, or the Place to the People. That being neither instructing nor delightful, we shall rather proceed to give a brief Account of the ancient Inhabitants of that Country, and how they were seated in respect to one another. The *Scanij* or *Scandij* possess'd that part now called *Schonen*. The *Hilleviones*, whom *Tacitus* calls *Helufij*, and *Amianus*. *Marcellinus*. *Helij*, inhabited *Haland*; the *Sirones*, whom some have called *Ganipotes*, *Norway*; which was anciently called *Nerigon*. Beyond these lived the *Marchio-Finni*, commonly call'd *Marchjinnen*, and the *Scrito-Finni*. To the East of whom were the *Lappones* or *Lappij*. To the South lay the *Suiones*, commonly called *Sueds* or *Sweeds*; and next to them the *Gutæ* or *Guti*, whose Country is now called *Gutland* or *Gotbland*.

*Scandinavia* seems to have been much more populous of old than it is now, as appears by the frequent Expeditions that have been made from thence into other Parts of the World, which may be attributed partly to the fruitfulness of the People, partly

to the barrenness of the Soil and scarcity of Provisions which forced them to seek better, as well as to the war-like disposition of the People. The great heaps of Stones, which formerly have been gathered together for clearing their Grounds, and now found in the middle of large Woods, are a probable Argument that those Places were once well cultivated.

Some Writers have attempted to give account of the Religion, Policy, Government, and way of Living of these People, but we will neither trouble the Reader with our own Guesses nor repeat those of others. Only thus much we think, that 'tis more than probable, these People lived more like Brutes than Men, that they were absolute Strangers to all manner of Commerce, without Laws, Government, or Religion, and buried in profound Ignorance. And so we leave them and return to the Country, which, as we have said, comprehended *Norway* and *Sweden*, and a great part of *Denmark*. But *Norway* being now subject to the King of *Denmark*, and *Denmark* being the noblest and better part of that Prince's Dominions, we shall give it the first Place, and afterwards Travel thro' *Norway* and *Sweden*.



# DENMARK, Dania.



**D**ENMARK is one of the most ancient Kingdoms of Europe, and is divided into two Parts by the Baltick Sea, viz. Jutland and the Islands. The former is that which was Anciently call'd Chersonesus Cimbrica, and is now Divided into North and South Jutland. It is bounded on the North and West with the German Ocean, on the East with the Middlefart Sund, commonly called the Lesser Belt, and the Baltick; and on the South with the River Eyder which divides it from Holstein. The length of it (according to Buno) from Cape Scagen to Holstein is 212 Miles; the breadth is not alike in all parts of it, but at most does not much exceed 80 Miles. The Islands which make up the other part of this Kingdom are Seeland, Falster, Langeland, Funen, Lolland, Bornholm, and many others of less

note; as, Mona, Femeren, Alsen, Arroe, Anout, Lefloe, Samsoe, &c. of all which hereafter more particularly. The King of Denmark hath also other Territories, as the Isles of Fero and Island, &c. The Countries of Oldenburg and Delmenhorst in Germany; Christianburg on the Coast of Guinea; a Fort call'd Tranquebar, in the East-Indies, and St. Thomas's Island in the West-Indies: But we must Refer the Reader for a Description of these to the Kingdoms and Countries where they lye.

The Duchy of HOLSTEIN, tho' in strictness it be reckon'd part of Germany, yet having been several times subject to the King of Denmark, we have chosen to Place the Description of it here, preceeding to Sleswick, to which it is contiguous, as the Reader



der will find after we have done with the general account of *Denmark*.

The AIR, tho' very cold in *Denmark* is not so sharp as in some places of *Germany*, that are Situate much more South; which may be attributed to the Seas flowing about it, which 'as in *England*, keeps the Air warm in Winter, and by gentle breezes makes it cooler in Summer. The SOIL, tho' in most places Barren and built with Mountains and Woods hath been of late much improv'd by the Inhabitants, and yields the Husbandman Corn, Hay and Pasture, wherein vast Herds of Kine are fed, and an excellent Race of Horses bred. The Rivers of *Denmark* cannot be navig'd; for according to Mr. *Mollart*, there is not one Navigable, the *Eyder* is the best, the *Else* being reckon'd only a Boundary and not in this Country. There are indeed some Lakes that afford good quantities of Fish. The Forests are abundantly stock'd with Venison of all sorts, as Stags, Elks, Wild-Beasts, Hares, Conies, &c. and Wild Fowl in great plenty.

The extent of *Denmark* cannot be exactly set down, because of the disjunction of its parts, and intervention of the Sea. It was much larger before *Schonen*, *Beeking* and *Holst* were taken from it by the King of *Sweden*, to whom these were granted for ever, at the Treaty of *Reschild*, in 1658, which was again confirm'd in 1660. We have already spoken of the extent of *Fuuland*, and the Islands will be particularly describ'd hereafter.

The Commodities of *Denmark* for Exportation are very few. Cattle is the chief, which they vend to the *Netherlands*: But Manufactories they have none.

The first INHABITANTS of *Denmark* were the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*, who were also call'd *Dani* and *Cedani*, from whom 'as *Claudian* says, the Country derives its name. This Kingdom is thought to have been establish'd long before the Birth of Christ, but for want of good Histories, it cannot be precisely determin'd when it began, how long each of its ancient Kings Reign'd, or what great Acts they did. According to Mr. *Daucler* the *Cimbri* inhabited *Fuuland* and the *Teutones* the Isles. It is uncertain from whence they came into that Country: but finding it at last 'says he' too little for them, resolv'd to seek themselves a more convenient Seat: And about 110 years before Christ, joyning all in one Body, they march'd into *Germany*, and having travers'd all that Country divided themselves into two Bodies and took different courses. The *Teutones* and *Ambrones*, march'd into *Gaul*, and committed great Ravage there. The *Cimbri* march'd against the Roman Army, Commanded by M. *Junius C. Illius*, and both in that and several other Engagements, worsted the Romans, till *Marius* happily put a stop to the Career of their Victory, by Routing the *Teutones*, and *Ambrones* at *Aix in Provence*, as he did the *Cimbri* afterwards at *Vercell*.

After the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* had left the North, 'as this Author continues, the *Fur*, a People originally of *Germany*, took possession of their Country, and chose for their King *Danus*, the Son of *Humbius* King of *Gothia*, who Reign'd about the year of the World, 3509. And after his Family was extinct, *Hoser* the Son of *Artili*, King of *Sweden* Reign'd, whose Posterity fail'd in the Person of *Haldan* III. But the History of those times being very Imperfect and Fabulous, we shall trouble the Reader no more with them.

It is evident, 'as *Plinius* observes, the Danes are not so Warlike now as they were formerly. The Nobility is turn'd Lazy, and the Commons have follow'd their Example.

The Danish LANGUAGE, is, no other than a corrupted High-Dutch, being manifestly a Dialect of the Old Teutonic; and High-Dutch is much affected by the Gentry, and ordinarily spoken at *Copenhagen*, and other Trading Cities.

The Popish Religion had been predominant here, till the time of *Christian I.* who introduc'd the Augsburg Confession into all the Churches of his Dominions, and made a League with the Protestant Princes of *Germany*; whose Son *Christian III.* continu'd the work, and establish'd the LUTHERAN, which hath ever since been the only RELIGION profess'd here, except one French Calvinist Church at *Copenhagen*, and one Popish Chappel at *Blackbynde*.

The form of GOVERNMENT in *Denmark*, is mightily alter'd from what it was; formerly the States had all the solid and substantial part of Government and Management of Affairs, and left the King nothing but the appearance of Royalty. He could neither make Peace nor War without them, nor lay any Taxes on the Subject but by their consent. They oblig'd him to Swear at his Coronation, that he would consent to his own degrading if without their allowance or consent, he dur'd touch'd the Publick Treasure which was kept in *Cronenburg*, and reserv'd for the extraordinary necessities of State: And besides this, they had the disposal of all Offices and vacant Fiefs, which created them many Dependants and Creatures. But the Case is now quite otherwise, for in the year 1660, the Crown was made Hereditary, and the King absolute. This remarkable Revolution is particularly related by Mr. *Moldsworth*, who tells us, that upon the finishing the War between *Sweden* and *Denmark*, a large debt remain'd on the Nation; wherefore the States were assembled, to consider of the Ways and Means for Paying that, and re-establishing the Publick Affairs: But a difference happening between the Nobility and the Commons, the former pretending themselves Priviledg'd from Taxes, and the latter having Fought well during the War, and been very much exhausted by it; and withal the Nobility having always exercised a sort of despotick Power over their Tenants, and now in this Assembly express'd great contempt of the Commons; they were so far provok'd, that breaking up from the Assembly, the Commons, together with the Clergy, (which compos'd the other Estate) assembled themselves in another place, and in few Hours resolv'd to make the King a Present of an absolute Power, and his Family the Succession to the Crown, (that was before this Elective) which they accordingly the next day put in execution; and tho' at first the Nobility hesitated on the matter, they also were fain to comply, and in three days time the alteration was compleated: And since that the King Governs in such manner as he thinks fit, without the contradiction of the Nobility or Senate.

For the administration of Justice, there are 4 Tribunals in *Denmark*. 1. The *Byeght's* Court, in Cities and Towns. 2. *Heredsoght's* Court, of the same nature in the Country: from both which lies an Appeal to the 3 *Landstag* or general Head Court of the Province; but the 4th and Supream Court is the *High-Recht*, which is held at *Copenhagen*, and compos'd of the Principal Nobility of the Kingdom, and even



even the King himself sometimes sits in it. There are also a Chancery Court ; a Rent Chamber, like our Exchequer, for judging the Causes relating to the Revenue ; and an Admiralty Court for Maritime Affairs. But it is very remarkable, that Law-causes are the soonest decided here of any place whatsoever, none being permitted to lie above a year and a month, altho' it pass thro' all the Courts. The whole body of the Law is compriz'd in one Volume in *Quarto*, and written so plainly, that every Man understands it, and may plead his own Cause. The Judges are appointed by the King, and their Salaries paid out of the Exchequer, no Fees being paid them by the Clients: And upon unjust proceeding they forfeit half their Estate, whereof one moiety to the injur'd Person. Altho' the word Nobility be used, it is not to be understood, as in *England*, for there are not above half a dozen that bear the Title of Counts or Barons; the rest tho' without that Title, having the same Honours and Privileges. The greatest distinction seems to be the Order of Knighthood of the *Elephant*, which is conferr'd by the King, on Persons of eminent Honour and Merit; it is a very ancient Order, but when comenc'd is uncertain; the Knights wear a white Elephant, adorn'd with 5 large Diamonds, in a blue Ribbond cross their Shoulder. They have also another Order call'd the *Danebroke*, Founded by King *Waldemar I.* and reviv'd by the late King in the year 1672. the Knights wear a White Cross edg'd with Red, in a Red Ribbond.

The Revenues of the King of *Denmark*, are reckon'd by Mr. *Moldsworth* to amount to 2 Millions, and 200000 Rix Dollars; each Rix Dollar being somewhat less than an English Crown. They arise by Excises, Customs, Tolls, Poll-Tax, or Fortification-Tax: The Revenues of *Norway*, Crown-Lands, and the Toll or Ships passing thro' the *Ore Sundt* and *Belt*. This Duty or Custom on Ships is very considerable; for the Straight of the *Sound*, being the most frequented of any in *Europe*, except that of *Gibraltar*, and all Nations except *Suedes*, Paying for every Ship that passes, (the Sum uncertain, because it has been often alter'd, but as near as I can gather,) about 100 Rix Dollars. Great Controversies have at several times arisen, between the *Danes* and the *Hollanders*, as also the *Hanse Towns*, about the exorbitant encrease of this Toll, from time to time, which produc'd several Treaties and Agreements about it: And since the *Suedes* have had the opposite Shoar of *Schonen*, the *Danes* have always been more moderate in their Demands.

The ancient History of *Denmark* is so confus'd, that 'tis not possible to draw out an exact Chronology of the Succession of their Kings; wherefore omitting the earlier times, we will give a List of those since Christianity began to be Preach'd here, which is as follows.

A Chronological Table of the KINGS of Denmark.

Began to Reign.			
<i>Harald,</i>	826.	<i>Canute the Great.</i>	1014.
<i>Eric,</i> about 845. or 850.		he was King of <i>England</i> ,	
<i>Canutus,</i>	902.	<i>Denmark</i> and <i>Norway</i> .	
<i>Frotho,</i>	912.	<i>Hardicanute.</i>	1041.
<i>Gormo,</i>		<i>Magnus.</i>	1041.
<i>Harold Blatand,</i>		<i>Sweno.</i>	1048.
<i>Sweno,</i> who Invaded		<i>Harold.</i>	1074.
<i>England.</i>	975.	<i>St. Canute.</i>	1076.

Began to Reign.

<i>Olaus,</i>	1082.	<i>Margaret,</i>	1375.
<i>Eric,</i>	1096.	<i>Eric,</i> Son to the Duke of	
<i>Nicholas,</i>	1106.	<i>Pomeran.</i>	1412.
<i>Eric Edmund,</i>	1135.	<i>Christopher,</i> D. of <i>Bava-</i>	
<i>Eric Lamb,</i>	1135.	<i>ria.</i>	1439.
<i>Sweno and Canute,</i>	1147.	<i>Christian I.</i> Count of	
<i>Waldemar,</i>	1147.	<i>Oldenberg.</i>	1448.
<i>Canute.</i>	1182.	<i>John,</i>	1482.
<i>Waldemar, II.</i>	1203.	<i>Christian II.</i> De-	
<i>Erick,</i>	1241.	<i>pos'd.</i>	1514.
<i>Abel,</i>	1250.	<i>Frederick I.</i>	1523.
<i>Christopher,</i>	1252.	<i>Christian III.</i>	1533.
<i>Eric Glipping,</i>	1259.	<i>Frederick II.</i>	1559.
<i>Eric Menved,</i>	1286.	<i>Christian V.</i>	1587.
<i>Christopher II.</i>	1316.	<i>Frederick III.</i>	1648.
Interregnum.		<i>Christian V.</i>	1660.
<i>Waldemar III.</i>	1334.	<i>Frederick IV.</i>	1695.

The whole Kingdom of *Denmark* may be divided into the Continent, and the Islands.

The Continent contains *Jutland*, (which is divided into North *Jutland*, or *Jutland*, properly so called, and South *Jutland*, or the Duchy of *Sleswick*) and the Duchy of *Holstein*. The Subdivisions whereof are thus,

Holstein contains,	I. <i>Holstein</i> , properly so call'd, wherein these Towns are most considerable.	<i>Kiel.</i>
		<i>Rensburg.</i>
		<i>Wilster.</i>
		<i>Itzehoe.</i>
	II. <i>Ditmarsh</i> , wherein are these Towns.	<i>Nieumunster.</i>
		<i>Meldorp.</i>
		<i>Heyde.</i>
		<i>Lunden.</i>
	III. <i>Stormar</i> hath these Towns.	<i>Brunsbüttel.</i>
		<i>Hamburg.</i>
		<i>Altena.</i>
		<i>Gluckstadt.</i>
	IV. <i>Wagria</i> , or <i>Wagerland</i> , wherein are,	<i>Krempe.</i>
		<i>Pinnenburg.</i>
		<i>Bredenburg.</i>
		<i>Lubeck.</i>
	Sleswick.	<i>Segeberg.</i>
		<i>Oldesloh.</i>
		<i>Ploen.</i>
		<i>Oldenburg.</i>
Sleswick, or South Jutland, is divided into many Bailiages, whereof the particular names are unnecessary. These are the Cities and Towns of most Note.		<i>Gottorp.</i>
		<i>Toning.</i>
		<i>Flensburg.</i>
		<i>Appenrade.</i>
		<i>Hadersleben.</i>
		<i>Eckrenford.</i>
		<i>Christianpris.</i>
		<i>Lucksburg.</i>
		<i>Tonderen.</i>
		<i>Husum.</i>
The		<i>Fredericksstadt.</i>
		<i>Lohm-Closter.</i>



Jutland, called North Jutland, divided into 4 Dioceses, viz.	The Diocess of <i>Ripen</i> , wherein are these Towns.	<i>Ripen.</i> <i>Kolding.</i> <i>Weile.</i> <i>Varde.</i> <i>Ringkopinge.</i> <i>Lemwick.</i> <i>Holstebro.</i>	Funen or Fionia.	<i>Odensee.</i> <i>Nuburg.</i> <i>Schwinburg.</i> <i>Foborg.</i> <i>Affens.</i> <i>Middlefar.</i> <i>Sophia odds.</i>
	The Diocess of <i>Aarhusen</i> , wherein are,	<i>Aarhus.</i> <i>Horsens.</i> <i>Randers.</i> <i>Ebeltoft.</i> <i>Marieger.</i> <i>Hobro.</i>	Langeland.	<i>Rutkoping.</i>
	The Diocess of <i>Wiburg.</i>	<i>Wiburg.</i> <i>Halkier.</i> <i>Nybe.</i>	Laland.	<i>Naxkow.</i> <i>Newstadt.</i> <i>Mariebo.</i>
	The Diocess of <i>Alburg.</i>	<i>Alburg.</i> <i>Tyfiel.</i> <i>Nikoping.</i> <i>Seeby.</i> <i>Scagen.</i> <i>Wensyssel.</i>	Falster.	<i>Nykoping.</i> <i>Stubkoping.</i>
			Mona.	<i>Stekoe.</i>
			Femerer.	<i>Borg.</i>
			Amaga.	<i>Hollenderdorp.</i> <i>Sund-bye.</i>
			Bornholm.	<i>Sar. wyck.</i> <i>Rottum.</i> <i>Nexoa.</i> <i>Hammerhusen</i> &c.

The *Ilands*, with the principal Cities and Towns on them are these, viz.

In the *Baltick.*

<i>Seiland</i> or <i>Zeeland</i> , the chief Towns whereon are,	<i>Copenhagen.</i> <i>Resbild.</i> <i>Elfseneur.</i> <i>Fredericksburg.</i> <i>Holbeck.</i> <i>Kallenburg.</i> <i>Ringstede.</i> <i>Sor.</i> <i>Koge.</i> <i>Presiae.</i> <i>Warienburg.</i> <i>Nestved.</i> <i>Skelskor.</i> <i>Korsor.</i>

On the Coast of *Jutland*, in the *German Ocean.*

Allen.	<i>Sunderburg.</i> <i>Nordburg.</i>
Sylt.	<i>Syderdorp.</i>
Fora.	<i>Uersena.</i>
Northrant.	<i>Kelworm.</i> &c.

Territories in *Germany.*

The Counties of	<i>Oldenburg.</i> and <i>Delmenhorst.</i>
-----------------	---

## CHAP. II.

### Of HOLSTEIN.

**H**OLSTEIN, *Helsatia*, lyes on the South of the *Cimbria Chersensius*, or *Peninsula* of *Jutland*. Bounded on the East by the Duchy of *Lauenburg* and the *Baltick* Sea; on the South by the River *Eibe*; on the West by the *German Ocean*; and on the North by the Duchy of *Sleswick*. Its Extent from North to South is about 50 Miles. and from East to West about 100 Miles. The whole Country including *Ditmarsch*, *Wagerland* and *Stermar*, was formerly known by the Name of *Nordalbingia*, or the Country Northward of the *Elb*: The modern Name of *Holstein*, being derived (as *Adam Brorss* says) from *Holts-Geseten*, i. e. seated in a Wood or Forest. It was at first only a Province of the great Duchy of *Saxony*, but was bestowed by the Duke (afterwards Emperor) *Lotharius*, upon *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg* about the year 1114. and at last chang'd into a Dukedom by the Emperor *Frederick III.* Anno Dom. 1474. in favour of *Christi-*

an the twelfth Earl, who succeeding in the Throne of *Denmark*, conveyed *Holstein* to that Crown, and the *Danish* Kings are on that account reckon'd among the Princes of the Empire, tho' not obliged to repair to the Dyets. Afterwards it became an Appenage, and with the Title of Duke was conferr'd on *Adolph* Brother to *Christian III.* Upon the Decease of this Duke without Issue, the Title was conferr'd upon *Ulrick* Brother to King *Christian IV.* From him have in time sprung up divers Families or Houses of *Holstein*, as *Sunderburg*, *Norburg*, *Arnsbeck*, *Gottorp*, *Plcen* and *Oettingen*; of these *Christian Albert* Duke of *Holstein Gottorp* is the chief; and claims the same Authority and Privileges as were given to Duke *Adolph* above mentioned. But the Grandeur of this Prince giving Jealousie to the late King of *Denmark*, or rather being provok'd by his siding against him, during his War with the *Swede* in 1675, he Seized on his Person and Country, obliging him



him to renounce and resign his Right; but the Duke afterwards protesting against these Violences, and the Neighbouring Princes at length intermeddling in his favour, especially his Majesty King William III. of Great-Britain, the greater part of his Countries were restored in 1689: But in this year 1700, a new War hath been Commenced here, by the King of Denmark, by reason of some Forts the Duke of Holstein has Built, which the King of Denmark would have demolish'd, the success of which War is in every Bodys Memory.

The Country is very Fertile, and being Seated conveniently for Trade, Holstein is reckon'd the Richest part of Denmark. The Inhabitants are of a strong Constitution and undaunted Courage, and so Sincere and Just, that Holstein Glaube, or the Fidelity of a Holsteiner has even pass'd into a Proverb.

The Towns in Holstein properly so called, that chiefly deserve to be taken Notice of are these, viz.

*Kiel*, *Chilonum*, a well frequented Mart-Town on the Baltick Sea, so call'd (as some are of opinion) from its situation in a Neck of Land, between the Mouths of two Rivers, the German word *Kiel* signifying a Wedge. It stands in the Latitude of 54. 15. and the Longitude of 30. at the distance of 30 Miles from Hamburg to the North, and about 40 from Lubeck to the North-West. It has a large commodious Haven, well frequented by Ships from Germany, Sweden, &c. and a Castle on the Top of a Hill which secures the Town and Haven. The Industry and Traffick of its Inhabitants makes the Town Populous and Wealthy, which together with its being the Place where the Annual Assembly of the States of Holstein are held, renders this the Capital of all Holstein. It is adorn'd with a Stately Palace and other fair Buildings, particularly a Franciscan Monastery Founded by Adolph of Schaumburg; but since the Reformation, changed into an Hospital: Here is also a College, and an University Established in the year 1669. This Town suffer'd much during the War between Sweden and Denmark.

*Rensburg*, or *Reinolsburg*, stands on the River *Eyder* (by which it is almost encompassed) on the Borders of *Sleswick*, near 20 Miles West from *Kiel*. It is reckon'd the strongest Town in Holstein, having besides its Situation, a strong Castle, and good Fortifications for its Defence. The Castle was Built by *Gerhard II.* Earl of Holstein, but the Town owes its Foundation to one *Reinold*, of whom there is no certain Account, except that he was a Prince of the Blood, or at least a very considerable Nobleman. Its Fortifications are lately much improv'd and render'd, *a la Moderne*, very considerable.

*Wilster*, is a neat well Built Town, seated on a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Stoor*; about 30 Miles South West from *Rensburg*.

*Iszthoa*, stands a few Miles East from *Wilster*, on the Navigable River *Stoor*, which furnishes it with Fish, and Traffick from abroad.

*Nieumunster*, about 20 Miles more Eastward, not far from the Head of the River *Stoor*.

**DITMARSH**, lyes between Holstein Proper, and the German Ocean, having the River *Elbe* for its Southern, and the River *Eyder* for its Northern Bounds. Some write the word *Deuteschmarsh* or *Tetzschmarch*, i. e. *Dutchmarsh*, because the Inhabitants of this Province, are the Offspring of the an-

cient German Saxons, and retain'd so much of their ancient Valour as not to be made submit to the Earls of Holstein, as their Neighbours the *Stormarians* and *Wagrians* had done, untill the force of all Denmark threaten'd them, when the Earldom was United to the Crown; nay, even then, they soon threw off the Yoke, and refused to do Homage to Christian Earl of Oldenburg and Holstein, to whom the Emperor Frederick III. had given their Country: But at last they were by Frederick II. King of Denmark, Anno 1559. assisted by the Duke of Holstein, entirely subdued, and the Country shar'd between the King and the Duke. The chief Towns in it are.

*Meldorp*, seated on the German Ocean, 30 Miles South West from *Rensburg*, and 20 Miles North from *Gluckstadt*, the chief Town of the Province, and a place of good Trade,

*Heyde*, a large but poor City, seated on the Border of the great Barren Sand of the same Name, which over-spread the middle of the Country.

*Lunden*, near the Mouth of the *Eyder*, 15 Miles North from *Meldorp*.

*Brunsbüttel*, a Sea Town on the *Elbe Stroom*; about 12 Miles South from *Meldorp*. And

*Weslingburn*, near the Sea shoar about the midway between *Meldorp* and *Lunden*.

**STORMAR or STORMARSH**, according to the signification of its Name is a Morass or Marshy Ground lying along the Banks of the River *Stoor*; it lyes on the South of Holstein Proper, and from it is divided by the River *Stoor*; and on the North of the River *Elbe* and *Lunenburg*. The Soil here, as also in *Ditmarsh* is rich, and in most places resembles that of Holland, not only in its Fertility and manner of improvement, but also in the Dikes and Banks raised by the Inhabitants, to keep out the swelling Ocean, which however often overflows the lower Grounds. The People here make good Advantage by the Traffick they are able to carry on by means of their Neighbourhood to the *Elbe* and the City of *Hamburg*, which stands in the Limits of this Province, but is one of the *Hanse-Towns* and Governed by its own Magistrates. Having already given a Description of that City, in our Account of Germany, we refer the Reader thither, and shall now proceed to speak of the other Places of note in this Province.

*Altena*, a small City, remarkable for the Treaty held there between the King of Denmark, and the Duke of Holstein; stands within a Mile or two of *Hamburg*.

*Gluckstadt*, is a little City seated on the Bank of the *Elbe*, 30 Miles below *Hamburg*, and 35 Miles South of *Rensburg*. It was first Fortified by Christian IV. King of Denmark, about the year 1620. and afterwards much improv'd by his Successors, tho' its Strength soon after the Building was so considerable as to resist the Siege the Emperor Ferdinand II. laid to it, for two years together. It is at present, a Strong-hold, and of considerable Importance to the *Dane*, for it Commands the passage of the *Elbe*, and thereby keeps the *Hamburger's* in Awe.

*Krempe* or *Crempen* seated on a small River of the same Name, which a little below falls into the *Stoor*, about 5 or 6 Mile from *Gluckstadt*, is also a place of great Strength and reckon'd one of the Keys of Denmark. Christian IV. likewise Fortified this, and



and in the years 1627. and 1628. it was famous for gallantly resisting a Siege and furious Attacks of Count *Hallensheim* for thirteen Months; and tho' at last it was forced to submit to that fortunate General yet obtain'd very honourable Terms.

*Pommern* lies about 100 Miles South East from *Glücksb.* and 100 from *Hamburg*; it is not very considerable and only mention'd because it gives Name to a County.

*Brickburg* is one of the fairest little Towns in all *Denmark*, and the ancient Seat of the Noble Family of the *Rantzau's*. It was remarkable for the stout opposition it made to Count *Hallensheim*, who at last took it, and put all the Garrison to the Sword.

*WACEREN* or *WAGERLAND*. *Wagria*, lies on the East of *Holstein*, is almost encompassed by the Baltic Sea, and the two Rivers, *Trave* on the South, and *Sarmin* on the West. Its extent is about 50 Miles from North to South, and about 30 from East to West. The Country had its Name from the *Wagris* a People of *Sclavonia*, who Conquered these Parts, and is a Fertile Land well Peopled. In the Limits of this Province stands the Hans-Town *Lubeck*, which being like *Hamburg*, an Independent State, and part of the Empire, we have already describ'd it in our Account of *Germany*. And therefore pass on to the other places of Note here.

*Segeberg*, stands on the River *Trave*, about 12 Miles from *Lubeck*, and 100 from *Glücksb.* to the East, and 100 to *Hamburg*, it was anciently call'd *Helberg*, and took its present Name

from the Castle Built by the Emperor *Lotharius* about the year 1134, upon a high Hill, to Check the *Sclavonians*.

*Oldesloh*, or *Odeffe*, is a fair Town seated also on the *Trave*, about 10 Miles west from *Lubeck*, and not above 7 South from *Segeberg*. It was purchased in the year 1338. by *John* Earl of *Wagria*, for 10000 Marks of Silver, and continued for a long time in a flourishing condition: But having suffered much in the Wars between *Eric* of *Pomeran*, and the Dukes of *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, it could never yet recover its beauty and Grandeur.

*Ploen* is a Town of good Antiquity, and has been always valued for its Strength. It stands on a Lake (to which it gives Name,) that almost surrounds it, and has a strong Castle built not long since by *Frederick Ernestus* Duke of *Holstein*. This place has the Honour to give a Title to one of the Houses of *Holstein*; the Valiant Prince that bears it at present, has signaliz'd himself on several occasions in the late War.

*Oldenburg*, a place considerable for its ancient State, stands in the North-East Corner of *Wagerland* upon the River *Breckaw*, about 25 Miles from *Ploen* to the North-East. It gives Name to a small County, and was anciently the Metropolis of the *Wagris* and *Pomeds*, two Warlike Nations, to whom the greatest part of *Mecklenburg* was subject. *Otho* the Great founded a Bishoprick here, which was afterwards Translated to *Lubeck*. It had a great Trade, and was exceeding Populous, but the Port being stop't up by command of Queen *Margaret*, and a great Fire having destroy'd its Buildings, the place is now not very considerable.

## CHAP. III.

### Of South-Jutland, or SLESWICK.

THE Duchy of *SLESWICK* is an ancient Dependence on the Kingdom of *Denmark*, which King *Nicolas* I. in the year 1128. gave to his Nephew Count Son of *Eric*. Surnamed *Eieged*. *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* confirm'd it to the Earl of *Holstein* and his Successors in the year 1335. which Earl the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Created Duke of *Sleswick*, whose Posterity failing in the Person of *Adolphus* in the year 1459. *Christian* I. United it to the Kingdom of *Denmark*, and now it is partly under the Jurisdiction of *Denmark*, and partly Subjected to the Duke of *Holstein Gottorp*; but their Dominions and the Divisions of the Country are so intermix'd that it is hard to give a distinct Account of them. The Bayliages of *Hadersleben*, *Ripen*, *Flensburg*, the Territory of *Cirrisianpræ*, the Isles of *Røm*, *Mandø* and the West side of the Isle of *Foer* are under the King of *Denmark*. The Bayliages of *Gottorp*, *Tondern*, *Appenrade*, *Husum*, *Eiderstedt*, and *Lohm-Cleßer*, the Isles of *Femeren*, *North-frond*, *Sut*, and the East side of *Foer* are under the Duke of *Holstein*. And *Aree* and *Aisen* are under the Duke of *Sunderburg*. The Chief Towns in *Sleswick* are these

*Sleswick* or *Sleswick*, *Slesvicum*, the Metropolis of the whole Province, is seated on a River, or rather a small Arm of the Sea Nam'd *de Sje*, at the

distance of about 20 Miles from *Kiel* to the North-West. Christianity was Established here in the ninth Century, and the great Church was then Founded by King *Eric Ban*, aid'd by St. *Anfchar* Bishop of *Hamburg*; and in 930 King *Harald Blatand* Established an Episcopal See in it; afterwards in 1064 the *Sclavonians* invaded these parts, ruin'd the Church and Re-established the Heathenish Superstitions; but soon after these Foreigners were entirely expelled, Christianity Restored, and the Cathedral Re-edified. In the next Century it was a Place of very great Trade, and much frequented by Merchants from *Britain*, *France*, *Spain*, *Flanders*, &c. And even so considerable was this City that *Adam Bremenfs*, who flourished about the year 1100, calls it *Civitatem Opulentissimam ac Populosissimam*. The *Angles*, who were great Traders here, Built the Church Dedicated to the Holy Ghost, and the Hospital adjoining. In the last Age, viz. 1536. King *Fredrick* II. took this City and annexed it to his Dominions. Near the Walls of it are to be seen the Ruins of a Temple, which the *Sclavonians* Built in Honour of the Deity which they Worshiped.

Within a few Miles from *Sleswick* to the South are yet to be seen in many places the Ruins of the famous Wall and Trench, which was Built in ancient



ent times by the *Danish* Kings against the Incursions of the *Saxons*. It is thought to have been begun by *Gotheric*, or *Gothofred*, King of *Denmark*, to exclude the Armies of the Emperor *Charlemagne*, about the year 808. afterwards improved by Queen *Thyra* and other *Danish* Monarchs, and made so strong as to be esteemed impregnable by the Councillors of *Henry* the *Lyon*, Duke of *Saxony*, who dissuaded that Victorious Prince, from attempting so hazardous an undertaking. This Rampart was called *Danemark*, and like *Hadrian's Wall* in *England*, is reported to have reached from Sea to Sea, quite cross this Neck of Land.

*Gottorp*, the ancient Palace of the Earls and Dukes of *Holstein*, stands about 15 Miles West from *Sleswick*, on a Lake made by the River *Sleye*, which almost Environs it; the Waters whereof are clear and full of Fish: and carries Vessels of small burden to and from the *Baltick* Sea: This is reckoned one of the finest Seats in all these Northern Parts, having very large Gardens, beautified with curious Fountains, Walks, &c. besides a noble and spacious Park, or, rather Forest adjoining, well stock'd with Deer, wild Boar and other sorts of Game. The Palace is a noble Building, and is especially adorn'd with a very choice Library containing a large Collection of Printed Books and Manuscripts, and among other Rarities one of singular Ingenuity, viz. a Globe of Copper Ten Foot and half in Diameter, with a Sphere, wherein the Sun moves on the Ecliptick, and all the Heavenly Bodies are carried round in exact order by the means of certain Wheels which are turned about by Water convey'd from the adjacent Mountain. *Gottorp* is well Fortified, and has a Toll-Booth, or Custom-House, where Toll is paid every year, for 50000 Head of Cattel, which pass out of *Jutland* into *Germany*.

*Eckrenford* or *Ekelford*, stands on the bottom of a Bay, of the *Baltick* Sea, which makes a very Commodious Haven, about 10 Miles South from *Sleswick*, and near 20 North from *Kiel*. Its said to have its Name from the abundance of Squirrels found in the Neighbouring Woods, tho' with more probability, it is called so from an old Castle, out of whose Ruins it arose. It is a Town of good Trade, and one of the safest Ports on the *Baltick* shoar.

*Christianpris* is a Sea-Town about 15 Miles South-East from *Eckrenford*, Seated on the neck of the Haven of *Kiel*, and seems to have been built to command that Passage.

*Frederickstadt*, is a little Town on the Bank of the River *Eyder* at the distance of 30 Miles from *Eckrenford* to the West. It owes its Foundation to *Frederick* Duke of *Holstein*, and *Sleswick* who endeavour'd to settle a Silk Trade there, and to that purpose sent a famous Embassy to *Muscovy* and *Persia* which gave occasion to *Adam Olearius* Secretary of it to Publish an excellent Book of Travels in an account thereof.

*Tonningen* Seated also on the River *Eyder* about 5 Miles below *Frederickstadt*, and about 4 Leagues from the *German* Ocean, is a place of Traffick, and very well Fortified.

*Husum* stands upon the Gulf of *Hever* 10 Miles South from *Frederickstadt*, and has a good Harbour, which opens to the *German* Ocean; it is defended by a Citadel built by *Adolph* Duke of *Holstein* in 1581. after his Victory over the *Ditmarsians*: It was fortified during the late Wars, but the King of *Denmark* has since Demolished them.

Over against the Gulf of *Husum* lyes the Island of *Nortstrant*.

*Flensburg*, so called from the Bay of *Flens* on which it stands, and by it receives Ships of Burden from the *Baltick* Sea; is about 20 Miles distant from *Husum* to the North-East. It is a fair City of one large street near two Miles in length, and the Haven so commodious that the Burghers can Load and Un-Load the Ships at their very Doors; the Suburbs are Guarded by a Castle that stands on the top of a Hill, and Commands both the Town and Harbour. The Situation of this Place is extream Pleasant, being a Fruitful Valley encompass'd with Hills. The Country lying between this place and *Sleswick* was formerly Inhabited by the ancient *Angles*, that Invaded *Britain*, and gave it the Name of *England*, as *Ethelweerd* an ancient English *Saxon* Historian affirms.

*Apenrade* is Seated on another Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, about 15 Miles North from *Flensburg*, and is much frequented by *Danish* Fishermen.

*Luxburg* or *Glucksburg*, a little Town and Castle 4 Miles East from *Flensburg*, has the Honour to give Title to the Dukes of *Holstein* *Glucksburg*.

*Hadersleben*, a Noted Sea Port, on a River or rather narrow Bay, that about 3 Leagues below falls into the *Baltick* Sea, about 30 Miles distant from *Flensburg*, and 15 from *Apenrade* to the North, is a fair well built Town, the Streets large, and the Buildings uniform. It had formerly a strong Castle on the top of a Hill near the Town, for its defence, but that was demolished by *John* Earl of *Holstein*, Son to King *Christian* I. who began to build a new one called from his Name *Hansburg* (or *John's* Building) which was afterwards finished by King *Frederick* II. This Town and Castle were twice taken by the *Suedes*, during their Wars with the *Danes*, and restored by the Peace concluded in 1658. It is also remarkable for giving Birth to *Frederick* III. in 1609.

*Tunderen*, two Port Towns, the greater and less, stand on the Western Shoar, or Coast of the *German* Ocean, about 25 Miles West from *Apenrade*, and the same distance North from *Husum*.

*Lohm Closter* stands about 10 Miles North from *Tunderen*.

The Islands adjacent to *Sleswick*, are these.

*ALSEN*, Situated in the *Baltick* Sea, over-against the Country that lyes between *Flensburg* and *Apenrade*; on it are two Towns, besides several Villages, viz.

*Sunderburg*, which stands on the South part of the Island, and is the ordinary Residence of the Dukes of *Holstein* *Sunderburg*: It is a good Town and adorn'd with a stately Castle built by *Christopher* I. King of *Denmark*. This is a very strong Hold, and was able to sustain the Attack of General *Wrangel*, and even make him quit the whole Island.

*Nordburg*, Seated on the North part of the Island, and the Residence of another Duke of the Family of *Holstein*, who has his Title from it. Was Built by King *Sueno*, called *Grottenbede*, about the middle of the Twelfth Century.

And on the Western Coast in the Ocean, are these Islands.

*NORTSTRANT* which lyes over-against *Husum*, with several smaller Isles about it.



FORA a little North of it, and *Amrum* behind it. these are no very considerable Towns, and therefore  
 SYLT over-against *Tarsum*. ROM a little we shall pass them by, and proceed to the Third and  
 North of it, with *Langland*, *Mindø*, &c. but on last Division of *Holstein*.

## CHAP. IV.

### Of North-Jutland.

**J**UTLAND, which takes up all the Northern part of the Country, was the Country of the ancient *Jutes*, who had the Neighbours, the *Angles* in the Conquest of *Britain*; and according to the Opinion of some Learned Men, was very anciently Inhabited by Men of a Gigantick Stature, who being in this Country Language, call'd *Kempers* gave occasion to the Romans, who wanted the Letter K to call them and the whole Nation from them *Cimbri* whence the whole Country, together with *Sleswick* and *Holstein*, *Cimbriæ* *Cimbriensis*, q. d. The Peninsula of the *Jutes* or *Kempers*. The whole Country is subject to the King of *Denmark*, and is divided into divers great Lordships; but according to other Geographers, we shall consider it as divided into 4 Bishopricks, and note the most considerable Towns therein.

The Diocesis of *RIPEN* takes up all the South-West part of *Jutland*, and has within the Districts of it according to *Bouland* 30 Prefectures, 252 Parishes, 10 Royal Forts, and these 7 Cities, viz.

*Ripen*, Seated on the River *Nipick*, which parting its self into 3 Streams, divides the City into so many parts, and falling into the German Ocean, makes a commodious Haven; about 10 Miles South-West from *Ferding*, and 30 West from *Harsleben*. It is a place of considerable Traffic, and good Structure; the Cathedral especially is magnificent, being Built of hewn Stone, and has a Steeple of great height, which serves as a Land-mark, to the Sailers on these Coasts. This Church was Founded by King *Eric Bern*, about the year 845, but the Episcopal See, not established till 1150 years after, when the Pagan Idolatry having again prevail'd here, was expelled, Christianity reestablish'd, and the Church reedified. It is also adorn'd with a sort of University, and Guarded by a Castle of Reasonable Strength. In the Suedish War A. D. 1645, this City was taken by them, but recover'd by the Danes soon after.

*Kolding*, Seated on a River that falls into a Bay of the Baltick Sea, over against the Island of *Finland*, near 30 Miles East from *Ripen*, and 70 North from *Sleswick*, is a City of good Trade and Strength; being the Seat of the King's Custom-house, where the Oxen and Horses, and other Cattel, and Merchandize, that pass from *North-Jutland* to *Holstein* and other parts, are oblig'd to pay considerable Imports; and is Fortified by a strong Citadel or Castle nam'd *Amsburg*. The City was Founded about the year 1268, by King *Eric Glipping*, in the place of an old ruinous Castle, and strengthened with good Walls, and deep Ditches, to serve as a Frontier to the Danish Dominions, which at that time extended no farther. King *Christian III.* was so pleas'd with the Situation and Pleasantness of the Neighbouring Country, that he not only Repair'd the Castle of *Amsburg*, but remov'd his Court thither, and Died in it. The Buying and Selling of Cattle by the Drovers that come from all parts every year, is a great part of the Trade of this Town.

*Fredericksside*, is a small Port, on the Banks of the lesser *Belt*, 20 Miles East from *Kolding*; not remarkable, except on account of *Gustavus's* Passage over the Ice, from it to *Funen*, and the other Islands, in the year 1657.

*Witt*, Seated like *Kolding*, on a little River that falls into the *Baltick*, and makes a large Harbour, is a compact, neat and well Built City, but not very large; about 15 Miles distant from *Kolding* to the North. Over against it about 30 Miles directly West, stands *Wande* on a River that falls into the German Ocean, and makes it a place convenient for Trade.

*Ringkøping*, stands about 30 Miles North from *Wande*, on a Bay of the German Sea, made by a Neck of Land, that stands near 30 Miles from North to South, between it and the Ocean, and thereby makes an excellent Haven.

*Lemwick*, stands on the Banks of the Bay of *Limford*, whence it has its name, on the utmost Northern Bounds of the Diocesis of *Ripen*; about 30 Miles North from *Ringkøping*.

*Hodsebro*, or *Holstebro*, stands about 20 Miles South-East from *Lemwick*, and about the same distance North-East from *Ringkøping*. It is an Inland Town, but stands on a River which falls into a Lake, that opens to the German Ocean.

The Diocesis of *ARHUSEN* is the South-East part of *Jutland*, extending about 60 Miles along the Coasts of the Baltick Sea, and contains 304 Parishes, 5 Castles or Forts, and these 7 Cities and Wall'd Towns.

*Aarhus* or *Arhusen*, stands on the Cargat, at the Mouth of the *Guden*, which falls into the Baltick, 110 Miles directly North from *Sleswick*, 60 Miles East from *Ringkøping*, and *Hodsebro*, and about 90 Miles South from the *Scager-Riff* or utmost North-Land of *Jutland*, and 30 Miles North from the Island *Funen*. It is a neat and pleasant Town, Seated in the heart of *Jutland*, and furnish'd with all manner of necessaries, which the Country affords them plentifully; and Foreign Commodities of all sorts are daily brought them by Shipping. It is adorn'd with a Cathedral Church, of curious Architecture, and Beautified with many stately Monuments of Prelates, Noblemen, &c. But the Bishop's Palace, which was formerly a magnificent Structure, is fallen to decay. The Episcopal See was established here about the latter end of the Tenth, or beginning of the Eleventh Century. This City was taken, and almost destroy'd by the Suedes, in 1644.

*Horsens*, stands about 15 Miles South from *Aarhus*, on a River that falls into a Bay of the Baltick.

*Randers* stands about the same distance North from *Aarhus*, and has the same convenience for Navigation, being Seated on the River *Gudden*, that a few Leagues below falls into the *Baltick*, and is a place of good Trade, and famous for the best Salmon in *Jutland*.

*Ebelstoft* 15 Miles, and *Grinaa* 20 Miles North-East from *Aarhus*, are both Towns of Trade, on the Baltick; as is also,

*Mariager*,



*Marieger*, about 12 Miles North from *Randers*,  
*Hobro*, stands on the same River a few Miles above it.

The Diocess of *WIBURG*, lies into the middle of *Jutland*, having *Akalburg* on the North, *Arhusen* on the East, and *Ripen* on the West and South. It is of smaller extent than the other Diocesses, being not above 40 Miles over, and of form near round. Altho' it be an Inland Country, it wants not the convenience of Navigation, for here are large Lakes that branch out into several parts of this Land, and from whence by the means of the *Lymford* that passes out of them, and falls at last into the Baltick Sea, they receive Vessels of great Burden: Among these Bays or Lakes, there is one, nam'd, *Ottefundt*, from the Emperor *Otho*, surnamed the Great, who about 948. made an inroad this way, and penetrated even as far as this Land, and casting his Javelin into the Water, gave it the name it still retains; the best Horses in *Denmark*, are bred in that part of this Diocess, named *Salling*. In this Territory are comprehended 16 Baylywicks, 218 Parishes, and 3 Garrisons. the Towns of chiefest note are these,

*Wiburg*, which stands in the very middle of *Jutland*, in an exact Line, between *Hodsebro* to the East, and *Randers* to the West, 130 Miles North from *Sleswick*, 35 North-West from *Aarhus*, and 35 South from *Aalborg*. It is a place of great Resort, being the Seat of a High Court of Judicature, which receives the Appeals from Inferiour Courts, but none can be made from it, save to the King: It has been the See of a Bishop for above 600 years, but the exact time cannot be fix'd, for it is a matter still disputed whether this or *Aalborg* be the most ancient.

This place was anciently call'd, *Cimmersburg*, as being the Chief City of the *Cimbri*, and whence it had its present name, is not very certain; but by a reasonable Conjecture, a late Author supposes it to be call'd so from its being the Habitation of the Pyrates, that anciently were very powerful in these parts and were call'd *Wigs* or *Wikenger*.

*Harkier*, 25 Miles North from *Wiburg*, and

*Nybe*, about 10 Miles North-East from it, are both noted Horse-markets.

The Diocess of *AALBURG*, otherwise call'd *Burglaw*, is the extream North part of *Jutland*, and surrounded by the Sea, on all parts but the South, where it is divided from *Wiburg* and *Ripen*, by the Bay, call'd the *Lymford*, which runs from the Baltick Sea, above 100 Miles an end, and is shut out of the German Ocean, by a narrow *Isthmus*, made by the Sandhills on the West Shore of *Jutland*; over against the great Shoal, call'd the *Futsche Riff*. It is a fruitful Country, and pretty well enrich'd by Trade. Its Length from North-East to South-West, is 130 Miles, but the Breadth is not proportionable. It is divided into 13 Bailywicks or Herriets, which contain 165 Parishes, 100 Castles, and 6 Principal Towns.

*Aalborg*, stands on the narrow Branch of the *Lymford*, about 15 Miles from the Sea, 50 Miles from *Arhus*, and 35 from *Wiburg* to the North. The Bishoprick was Founded about the year 1060. but the Bishops Resided at *Borlum*, a Neighbouring Village, till the Reformation; since when the Lutheran Bishops have had their Palace here. The City was anciently call'd *Burgle*, and is said to have taken its present name from the multitude of the Eels taken near it in the *Lymford*, and by the Inhabitants Sold to other parts.

*Tysted*, stands near 50 Miles from *Aalborg*, in the middle of a *Peninsula*, made by the *Lymford*, and the German Ocean, which is reckon'd the most Fertile part of this Diocess. The Place is noted for a kind of University in it, which was at first a Free School only, Founded by King *Christian III*.

*Nikoping*, about 15 Miles South-East from *Tysted*, stands in an Island made by the *Lymford*, call'd *Mors Insula*.

Northward of *Aalborg*, lies the Country call'd *Wensyssel*, whose Inhabitants are reckon'd the lustiest and hardiest of the King of *Denmark*'s Subjects; the chief Town bearing the same Name, stands about 20 Miles West of *Aalborg*.

*Seeby*, a Port Town on the Eastern Shoar, 20 Miles North from *Aalborg*, stands in this Territory; as does also,

*Scagen*, Seated on the Promontory, the most Northern Land of *Jutland*, which it gives name to; and is, a place of considerable Trade, being much frequented by Merchants, from all parts of *Europe*.

On the Eastern Coast of these Countries lie several Islands, whereof *Samsoe* over against *Aarhus*, and *Lessow* over against *Aalborg*, are only worth mentioning.

### Of the BALTICK SEA, and the rest of the Principal ISLANDS of DENMARK.

The *BALTICK SEA*, (call'd also the East Sea) wherein these Islands that make so considerable a part of the Kingdom of *Denmark*, do lie, was anciently call'd *Sinus Codanus*, q. d. the Danish Bay, and 'tis thought took its Modern name from the Word *Belt*, as the Straights between *Seeland* and *Funen*, and that between *Funen* and *Jutland*, are at this day call'd. It is a very large Bay extending from the 54th Degree of Latitude to the 66th, and washes the Shores of *Denmark*, *Sueden* and some part of *Poland* and *Muscovy*; by the means whereof the Inhabitants of those Countries enjoy the great convenience of Navigation, and cheap communication, with all the Maritime parts of *Europe*. The passage into it is by the narrow Straights of the *Belt*, and the *Sundt*, the former as we have said, lying between the two Islands, &c. the latter is on the East side of *Seeland* between that and *Sueden*, which is the most frequented, and by the power the King of *Denmark* has over it, he raises a vast Income, by the Toll of Ships that pass in and out, pay him at his Castle of *Cronenburg*.



## C H A P. V. O F S E E L A N D.

**S**EELAND, or ZELAND, the largest and most fruitful Island in the Baltick Sea, lies in the Latitude, between 55. 31. and 56. 32. Longitude, between 31. 0. and 33. 0. being in Length about 60. and in Breadth about 40 Miles. It is divided from *Schonen*, a part of *Sueden* on the East by the *Sund*, and from *Fulen* on the West, by the greater *Bel*, and has *Fister* and *Laland* on the South. It is a Country in most places, very pleasant, being beset with little Hills, Woods of Beech-Trees, Rivulets and Lakes; the Soil also is very fertile, producing Rye, Oats and Barley in abundance, and the Pastures have very good Grass. Some pretend its modern name, came from the plenty of Corn, that is *Seeland* or *Seeland*. The Lakes and Rivers are stor'd with Fish, and the Forests with Game, such as Stags, Roe-Bucks, Wild-Boars, &c. According to *Cassius*, this and the Neighbouring Islands, were inhabited by the ancient *Tenites*, who by a variety of Dialect, were call'd *Gedani*, *Cedani*, and *Dani*, whence the Island was anciently nam'd *Codemonia*. In it are 340 Parishes, and these Principal Cities and Towns.

**COPENHAGEN**, *Hafnia*, or *Havnia*, the Chief City of the Island, and the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, stands in a Plain on the Banks of the *Sund*, about 5 Leagues West from the Coasts of *Schonen*, call'd by the Inhabitants *Kiekenlaun*, and by the Germans *Copenhagen*, corruptly for *Kiebsmanhagen*: q. d. *Portus Mercatorum*, or the Merchants Haven. It is a place of no great Antiquity, having grown up from a Castle, Built about the year 1165 by *Axel Uide*, the Archbishop, which being a Protection from the Pyrates, the Neighbouring Inhabitants resort'd thither, and Building themselves Houses, laid the Foundations of a Town, which being improv'd by all the Danish Kings, especially *Christian IV.* it is become a City of the first Rank, and for the Beauty Strength and Bulk, not exceeded by very many. It was also at several times endow'd with Immunities, especially in the year 1243. by *Christopher* of *Bavaria*, King of *Denmark*; which were afterwards Ratified by King *Christian III.* and *Frederick II.* The Situation of this City is exceeding advantageous, having on the Land-side, a very pleasant Country, and on the Sea-side one of the finest Havens in the World, capacious enough to hold 1000 Sail of Ships, the Road without is very safe, and fenc'd from the violence of the Waves by a large Bank of Sand, and the entrance of the Port so narrow, that but one Ship can pass at a time; this is shut up every night with a Boom, and the Passage Guarded by the Citadel on one side, and a Block-House on the other. The whole City is environ'd with deep Ditches and high Ramparts of Earth, according to the modern Fortification, and on the East side it is joyned by a Bridge to the Island *Amaga*. The Streets are broad, clean and neat; and tho' formerly Citizens Houses were but poorly Built, at present they are fair enough. The chief Churches are those dedicated to the Holy-Ghost, *S. Nicholas* and the Cathedral of *S. Mary*, wherein the Kings are usually Crown'd: It is adorn'd with a stately Copper Spire, Built at the Cost of King *Christian IV.* This is a Bishops See, and the Seat of an University, Founded

by *Christian I.* in 1478. And not many years ago an Academy was establish'd here for teaching all sorts of Martial Exercises, Foreign Languages and the Mathematicks: The late King much improv'd this College, and endow'd it with considerable Revenues and Privileges. Among the other publick Buildings, the chief are the Citadel, the Observatory, call'd the Round Tower, the Royal Palace, with the adjoining Gardens, and Banqueting-House of *Retenueg*, the Exchange, and the Arsenal, which is reckon'd one of the best in *Europe*, and much celebrated for that wonderful Celestial Globe, of 6 Foot Diameter, made by *Tycho-Brake*: The Market-Place is very spacious, and a great Ornament to the Town. The City is govern'd by 4 Burgo-Masters, one of whom is for Life. In the Suedish War *Copenhagen* was Besieg'd by *Charles Gustavus*, Ann. 1659. but the City held out, and the Suedes were forc'd to leave it.

Over again'd *Copenhagen*, on the other side the Haven to the Eastward, lies the Island of *Amaga*, about 6 Miles in Length, which is wonderfully stock'd with all sorts of Fowl and Venison, has plenty of Corn and Milch-kine, and furnishes the Markets at *Copenhagen*, with Weekly Supplies. In this Island are 2 Towns, call'd *Hollander Dorp*, and *Sundbye*. The Suedish Forces, made a Descent here on the 9th Octob. 1658. and the next day burnt down the Villages, but on 17 Decemb. following, they were so warmly attack'd by the Danes, that King *Charles Gustavus*, and General *Wrangle* were forc'd to leave their Army Engag'd, and make their escape in a Fisher-Boat.

*Refchi d*, stands at the bottom of a narrow but deep Bay, call'd the Bay of *Isfœre*, 20 Miles West from *Copenhagen*. It was formerly the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, having had in it (as *Lysander* informs us) no less than 27 fair Churches; but the encrease of *Copenhagen* so near it, has drawn off its Trade and Inhabitants, and the place is at present not very considerable. About the year 1012. King *Sueno* establish'd an Episcopal See here, which is now remov'd to *Copenhagen*. Afterward *Sueno Gratenthede* Fortify'd the Town with a Wall, Ditch, and Ramparts. The Cathedral is a large old Church, and famous for the Tombs of many Danish Kings, some whereof are very Magnificent: Among these stands a Marble Pillar, on which *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* hung the Whetstone that *Albert* King of *Sueden* scornfully sent her to sharpen her Needles; but the Jest cost him dear, for this Heroine defeated and took and detain'd him Prisoner Seven years, and made him renounce his Right to the Kingdom of *Sueden*. It is still a Town of some Trade, and is notable for a Treaty of Peace concluded in it, between the Suedes and Danes, in 1658.

*Elseneur*, *Elsenore*, *Helsingher*, *Helsingor* or *Helsingør*, (as it is variously Written) is so nam'd q. d. *Hals en Oor*, i. e. an Ear in the Neck, as being at first only a Watch-Tower. Built on the Neck, or Straight of the Sea, call'd the *Scund*, or *Oe Sund*; It is also probable that the Castle of *Helsingborg*, on the opposite Shoar derives its name from the same Origine: Between these 2 Forts pass all Vessels that Trade in the



the Baltick, so that this Straight next that of *Gibraltar*, may be esteem'd the most frequented of any in *Europe*. *Elfenore* stands about 15 Miles North from *Copenhagen*, and is defended by the Neighbouring impregnable Castle of *Cronenburg*, which commands this side of the Sound, as *Helsingburg* does the other. It was Built by *Frederick II.* of Free-stone brought from *Grithland*. Every Ship that passes this Straight must strike Sail at *Cronenburg*, and come to the Town to Compound for the Cuttom, under a Penalty of Confiscating his Vessel and Cargo. *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sueden*, took it in the year 1658, and restor'd it at the Treaty of *Copenhagen*, in 1660.

*Fredericksburg*, about 12 Miles W. from *Elfenore*, and 20 N. from *Copenhagen*, is a stately Castle and Royal Palace seated in a pleasant Wood. It was a Monastery, and turn'd into a Castle by *Frederick II.* whose Son *Christian IV.* not only compleated the Building, but adorn'd it with Painting, Statues, and the richest Furniture; to which his Successor *Frederick III.* still added, so that it has the character of one of the finest Palaces in *Europe*, and is the King's place of Retirement for Pleasure.

*Hilbeck*, stands about 18 Miles West from *Roskild*, at the bottom of a Bailiwick, it has the advantage of a small Traffick.

*Kalenburg*, stands on the Western Coast of the Island, just over against *Copenhagen*, at 50 Miles distance from it, and 35 from *Roskild*, to the West. It is a place of considerable Traffick, and has a very safe and commodious Harbour; formerly being a small Village Inhabited by Fishermen, it was call'd *Hamir*, till *Esbern*, Brother to *Axel* or *Abfalom Huyd*, Archbishop of *Lunden*, about the middle of the 12th Century, rais'd it to the dignity of a City, and beautified it with a Church, Castle and other publick Edifices.

*Ringstede*, Seated near the middle of *Seeland*, about 15 Miles from *Roskil* to the South, and 15 from *Koge* to the West, is a place of the greatest Antiquity in *Seeland*, except *Roskild*, and has been honour'd with the Interment of many Danish Kings, particularly *Waldemar I.* and *Eric* the Pious; But it being a place of no Trade is not at present very considerable.

*Sor*, *Soor* or *Sora*, is seated in a pleasant Woody Country, 7 Miles from *Ringstede*. About the middle of the 12th Century, *Abfalom Huyd*, Archbishop of

*Roskild*, and Bishop of *Lunden*, Founded a fair, Monastery here, and endow'd it with large Revenues for the maintenance of Learned Men, by the encouragement whereof, *Saxo Grammaticus* collected Materials, and compos'd his excellent History of the Danish Kings. *Esbern* the Archbishop's Brother enlarg'd it, and augmented the Revenues by the addition of 14 Villages. Afterwards King *Frederick II.* remov'd the School he had establish'd at *Fredericksburg*, for the Education of young Noblemen to this Place, and from a rich Popish Monastery, it was converted into one of the noblest Free Schools in the Reform'd part of Christendom; to which *Christian IV.* added Professors with proper Salaries, to teach Academical Learning: And also constituted an Academy, with Masters to instruct young Gentlemen in all sorts of martial Exercises. So that *Sora* became a considerable University, and well Endow'd, the Lands of the Demolish'd Nunnery of *Maricbo* in *Laland*, having been given to it in 1621. But at present all its Revenues are posses'd by the King; and tho' he sometimes talks of restoring them, the Professors of *Copenhagen* will use their interest against it, and *Sor* is still likely to remain only a pleasant Country Town.

*Koge*, is a small but very Populous Town, Seated on a small Bay of the Sound, 20 Miles South from *Copenhagen*. It is enrich'd by Traffick, which consists chiefly in Corn and Fish, and the Country about it is remarkably Pleasant.

*Prestoe*, a Trading Town, stands on the Bay of the Sound, on the South side of *Seeland*, over against the Island *Mona*, 30 Miles South from *Koge*.

*Warienburg*, stands about 10 Miles South West from *Prestoe*, on another small Bay, over against the Island *Falster*, and is a place of some Trade.

*Nestved* stands 20 Miles North from *Warienburg*, on a small River that falls into the *Belt*.

*Skelskor*, stands on the West side of *Seeland*, on the Coast of the *Belt*, 30 Miles North-West from *Warienburg*, and 35 West from *Koge*.

*Korsor*, about 8 or 9 Miles, North-West from *Skelskor*, stands on a Promontory or small Cape, that jets out over against *Funen*, and makes a good Haven, on the North side of it. This was the Place that *Carolus Gustavus*, King of *Sueden*, first arriv'd at with his Fleet, in 1658. when he Invaded this Island.

## CHAP. VI.

### OF FUNEN.

**F**UNEN, or *FIONIA*, the next considerable Island of *Denmark*, lies on the West of *Seeland*, between that and *Futland*, being separated from the former by the Straight, call'd the greater *Belt* on the East, and from the latter by the Straight, call'd by the Inhabitants the *Medilsarsund*, or the lesser *Belt*: It is about 50 Miles long, and 40 Miles broad, and produces plenty of Corn, even enough to export abroad, and has Pasture for a vast number of Cattle that are bred here; whereof the Horses are much esteem'd. This Island is an Appenage of the eldest Son of the King of *Denmark*; and the Government of it is one of the most considerable in the Kingdom. Here are 264 Villages, 4 Garisons, and these 4 considerable Towns.

*Odenfee* or *Ottenfee*, the chief City, stands in the middle of the Island, about 80 Miles West from *Copenhagen*, 70 North from *Sleswick*, and about 20 Miles South from the beginning of the Straight of the *Belt*. The annual Sessions of the Nobility and Magistrates are held here, as were formerly the general Conventions of the Realm, till the Crown was made Hereditary, in the year 1660. It is a handsome Town, the Buildings being fair, and the Streets broad and uniform; the Town-House is a stately Structure, and stands on a very spacious Market-place. Among other publick Buildings are 2 fair Churches, dedicated to *St. Francis*, and *St. Cnut* a Danish King, who was Marry'd in this City, *Ann. Dom.* 1086. and whose Body was found in this Church, as the

Work.



Workmen were Repairing the Quire, in the year 1552. the Coffin that contain'd it was of Copper Gilt, adorn'd with precious Stones, and bore an Inscription, declaring who it was. This is an Episcopal See, Erected in the year, 950. and in the Town-Hall the ancient League between the Crown of *Denmark*, and the Dukes of *Holftein*, and *Sleswick* was renew'd by *Frederick II.* in the year 1575.

*Nuburg*, or *Nyburg*, Seated on the Eastern side of the Island, over against *Kerfer* in *Seeland*, 15 Miles East from *Odenfee*, is one of the Principal Towns in *Funen*, and the usual passage from thence to *Seeland*; And has a capacious and safe Haven, wherein Ships of the largest Burden may ride at Anchor. It is also well Fortify'd, and has been anciently honour'd with the Residence of the Danish Kings, and the Session of their Parliaments.

*Schwinburg*, stands on the South-East corner of the Island, 32 Miles South from *Nuburg*, and has a large and commodious Harbour; it is famous for the passage of the Swedish Forces, over the Ice (in the year, 1658.) from hence to *Seeland*.

*Fiborg*, stands also on the South Coast, 10 Miles Westward from *Schwinburg*.

*Affens*, stands on the western Coast over against *Hærseben* in *Sleswick*, and 30 Miles South West from *Nuburg*.

*Middlefar* lies also on the Western Shore, 25 Miles North from *Affens*, and is the common passage from this Island to *Kelding* in *Jutland*. *Charles Gustavus*, King of *Sweden*, led his Army from *Jutland*, over the Ice to this place, on the 13 Jan. 1658. and overrun all the Island.

*Sophiaodde* stands about 10 Miles North from *Middlefar*, just over against *Frederickodde* in *Jutland*.

## C H A P. VII.

### Of *Langeland*, *Laland*, and the rest of the smaller Islands of D E N M A R K.

**L** A N G E L A N D, so call'd from its long narrow Form, lies on the South-East of *Funen*, in length about 30 Miles, but in breadth hardly 8. It is a fruitful Soil, and adorn'd with many Noblemens Seats; on it are 16 Parish Churches, and a strong Fort, call'd *Franecker*. The chief Town is *Rutkeping*, Seated on the Western Coast, over against *Schwinburg* in *Funen*; between which lies the small Island *Tassing*. And a little to the West and on the South of *Funen*, over against *Foburg*, lies *ARROE*, another small Island.

*L A L A N D*, or *L A W L A N D*, lies on the S. of *Seeland*, from which it is separated by the narrow Strait of *Gronsfend*, or *Golderfend*, as it is written in the Maps, and takes its name from its low Situation. Its extent is about 30 Miles from East to West, and 20 from North to South, having a Rich Soil that produces Corn and Pasture in abundance. In it are 4 Herriets or Lordships, and 4 good Towns, among which *Naxkow* that stands on a Bay that opens to the *Belt*, is the Principal, and is well Fortified, *Næstædt*, was once famous for a noble Monastery, Founded there *Ann.* 1268. And the Nunnery of *Mariebo* mention'd in the description of *Sor*, was sometime as remarkable as any place in the Island.

*F A L S T E R* adjoins to *Laland*, being divided by only a narrow Bay, and lies on the South of *Seeland* (whence it is separated by the *Gronsfundt*) just over against *Warienburg*. Its length from North to South, is about 20 Miles, but the lower part of it is but very narrow; on the North part it is about 16 Miles broad. Its Soil is very fruitful, and much Corn is sent from hence to *Mecklenburg*, and other parts of *Germany*. It is divided into 2 Bailiwicks, viz. *Narre-Herriet* and *Synder Herriet*; and has several Towns, among which the Principal are, *Nykøping*, Seated on the West side of the Island, one of the most pleasant and best Built Towns in the whole Kingdom, and stiled by *Dr. Heylin*, the *Naples of Denmark*. *Stubkøping*, Seated on the North Coast and a place of Trade, and the usual passage from *Seeland*,

*MON*, *MEVN*, *MONEN*, or *Mona* lyes on the North-East of *Falster*, and South of *Seeland*, 15 Miles in length, and about 5 or 6 in breadth. It is a Landmark to the German Vessels, that frequent these Coasts. And because of its Situation was formerly given to the Admiral of *Denmark*, being a convenient place for his Residence. Its chief Town is *Stekoe* or *Stege*, which was remarkable for the gallant defence it made against the *Lubeckers* in 1510. And the Valour of the Inhabitants of the whole Island, was signalized in 1659. when they defended themselves better against the *Suedes*, than the other larger Islands had done.

*F E M E R E N* Seated on the Coast of *Wagerland*, from whence it is parted by a very small Channel; tho' it be but a small Plot of Ground, has always been esteemed of great importance, being one of the Keys of *Denmark* on the side of *Germany*. And on that account King *Christian IV.* in the year 1628. caused the chief places on it, especially *Borg*, to be strongly Fortified.

*S A M S O E*, lyes on the North of *Funen*, and a few Leagues East from the Coast of *Jutland* over against *Aarhusen*. It is an Island of small extent, yet has been lately Erected into a County by the late King *Christian V.* in favour of Madam *Mose* a Citizen's Daughters of *Copenhagen*, on whom that Prince begot two Natural Sons, and Created the Mother Countess of *Samsøe*.

*H U E N*, or, as others Write it *Ween*, is a small Island Situate in the Strait of the Sound between *Seeland* and *Schonen*, to the North-West of *Copenhagen*, and was formerly famous for the Castle or Tower of *Uraniburg*, wherein that noble Danish Baron *Tycho Brahe* made his Astronomical Observations; but it is now demolished: He had also here a deep Dungeon called *Stelliburg*, from whence he could view the Stars in the Day time.

The Island of *B O R N H O L M* lyes very remote from *Denmark*, viz. 25 Leagues from *Seeland* to the East,



East, and not above 6 Leagus from the Coast of *Schonen* to the South-East. It is about 20 Miles in extent, from North to South, and about 12 from East to West, and of an Oval Form. It was anciently called *Boringia*, *Borunda*, and *Ho'ma*, and is said to have been discovered by *Thielorau*, the Son of a *Futland* Prince. It is a place of great Importance for its Situation and Fruitfulness; and once belonged to the Archbishop of *Lunden*, but *Christian II.* took Possession of it 1524. being absolutely necessary for the Fleet which he designed against the *Sweeds*. Which Usurpation *George Seftberg*, who was then Archbishop, opposed with all his Power, but in vain, for he was at last forced to fly into *Germany*, to avoid the effects of the King's displeasure. During the late War this Island was often wasted by the *Sweeds*, to whom it was surrendered by the Treaty of *Roschild*, but the *Danes* have since redeemed it by the Exchange of several Lands in *Schonen*. *Sandwyck* on the Northern Coast, and *Rettum* on the South-western, are the chief Towns, besides which, there is the Town of *Nexoa* and the Castle of *Hammerhusen*, and several Villages.

There are many other small Islands on the Coasts of *Futland* and *Zeeland*, but they are not considerable enough to deserve a particular Description.

Besides the Continent and Islands above mentioned the King of *Denmark* is possessed of the two Counties of *OLDENBURG* and *DELMEN-*

*FORST* in *Germany*, which lye separated from *Holstein* by the Duchy of *Bremen*.

*OLDENBURG* is a flat Moorish Country lying in the Circle of *Westphalia*, between the Duchy of *Bremen* on the North-East, *East-Frisland*, or the County of *Emden* on the West, and part of the Bishoprick of *Munster* to the South, and the *German* Ocean on the North: It is about 50 Miles in length, and 25 in breadth. The chief Town which gives Name to the County, is seated on the River *Hunte*, at the distance of 50 Miles from *Emden* to the East, and 30 from *Bremen* to the West. It is well Fortified with Walls and Ditches, and a strong well built Castle. The Houses are very mean, but the place hath a pretty good Trade by means of the River, which falling into the *Wefer*, Ships of small Burden can come up to the Town. This Country is noted for an Excellent Breed of Horses, introduced some years ago, by *Anthony Hunter*, the last Count, descended from *Wittikind* the first Duke of *Saxony*, whose Line intirely failing in the year 1676. this County fell to the King of *Denmark*, who is descended from that Family.

The small County of *DELMENHORST* adjoins to *Oldenburg* on the South East, the chief Town of the same Name, stands on the River *Dilma*, 16 Miles East from *Oldenburg*, and 14 West from *Bremen*: It is strongly Fortified, but otherwise not very considerable.



# NORWAY, Norwegia.

Consult the Map of Sweden.

**N**ORWAY has its Name from its Situation towards the North Pole; for *Nordweg* in the Language of that Country signifies the Way of the North. It was anciently according to *Pliny* called *Nerigon*, and by others *Nordmania*. As the story commonly goes, *Norus* the Son of *Humbus* King of *Sweden* was the first King, who by his prudent Management, and good Example, reclaim'd and Civiliz'd, the barbarous *Sitones*, the first Inhabitants of this Country. After his Death, they fell to parting the Kingdom among themselves, and so were engaged in Civil Wars; and at last being either weary of shedding their own Blood, or forced for want of Provisions, they left their own Country, and betaking themselves to Piracy on the Seas, became at last formidable Conquerors. They Ravag'd the Coast of *Frisland* and *Britain*, and after many Engagements, wherein they always came off Victorious, *France* at last became the Object of their Ambition, and having enter'd the Mouth of the *Loire*, after the Death of *Charlemain*, they Sack'd the Cities of *Nantes*, *Tours*, and *Angers*, but from thence Marching into *Gascogne* were repul'd and entirely defeated. A party of them went into *Italy*, expecting the Fortune of the *Goths*, but proceeded no further than the surprizing some places in *Liguria*, and return'd to *France*, where they joined a new Herd of their Countrymen, and under the Name of *Normans* became considerable; insomuch that in the time of *Charles* the Simple, they settled themselves in *Neufria*, from them, since called *Normandy*; which that Prince was obliged to surrender to them. Some Historians are of opinion that *Charles* encouraged them, in order to have their assistance against *Eudo* his Rival for the Crown, for he Married his Daughter *Giselle* to *Rollo*, their General, who became Duke of *Normandy*, and was succeeded by his Posterity. The Posterity of *Norus* being extinct *Subdager* Son-in-Law to *Gram* King of *Denmark*, came to be King of *Norway*. *Harald* Surnamed *Harfager* Reigned about the year 975, and after the Death of *Olaus*, the last of his Race, the Crown of *Norway* was conveyed to *Denmark* by the Marriage of *Haquin* their King, to *Margaret* Daughter of *Waldemar* III. King of *Denmark* A. D. 1357. Since which time *Norway* has been Governed by a Vice-Roy of the King of *Denmark*. The *Norwegians* have made several attempts to set up Kings of their own Nation, particular *Hermundus Huldhat*, but to no purpose, and those Conspiracies have only tended to the increasing of their Chains. The best account we can give the Reader of the Succession of these Kings, the History of this Country being very obscure, is here set down.

## A Cronological Table of the Succession of the Kings of *Norway*.

Began to Reign.		
<i>Arold</i> , <i>Harald</i> , or		<i>Magnus</i> IV. 1180
<i>Arand</i> I.	978	<i>Haquin</i> , a Tyrant 1232
<i>Sueno</i> , or <i>Suenin</i> ,	998	<i>Olaus</i> , Surnam'd <i>Ango-</i>
<i>St. Olaus</i> ,	1011	<i>sanus</i> , 1263
<i>Sueno</i> ,	1031	<i>Eric</i> I. 1250
<i>Magnus</i> , I.	1039	<i>Haquin</i> II. 1300
<i>Hercla</i> , or <i>Erwald</i> ,	1055	<i>Magnus</i> V. King of
<i>Magnus</i> II.	1070	<i>Sweden</i> 1315
<i>Magnus</i> III, Expell'd	1110	<i>Haquin</i> III. 1326
<i>Harald</i> II.	1138	<i>Magnus</i> VI. 1328
<i>Magnus</i> III. Re-esta-		<i>Haquin</i> IV. 1359
blish'd	1148	<i>Olaus</i> III. 1375
<i>Ingo</i> surnam'd <i>Gibbus</i>	1158	<i>Haquin</i> & <i>Margaret</i> 1389
An Interregnum of 4 years,		

**NORWAY** is a long, but narrow (in comparison of its length) Tract of Land, on the West side of *Scandinavia*, between *Sweden* and the Ocean; having on the East side a long Ridge of Mountains call'd at parts by different Names, as *Fille-Field*, *Dofre-Field*, *Rund-Field*, *Daar-Field*, &c. but they are commonly by Historians stiled the *Dofrine* Mountains: These divide *Norway* from *Sweden*, and the Ocean washes all the Western Coast, as also the Southern and Northern. It lyes between 58 and 72 Deg. of Lat. and 24 and 52 Deg. of Long. its length is about 800 Miles, Reckoning from the North Cape in *Finmark*, to the *Nare* in the mouth of the *Baltick*, but its breadth is not above 100 Miles, and in some parts not near so much. The Southern Part is reasonably Temperate, but the AIR is very Cold, and the Land produces very little Corn or Fruits; its Wealth consisting chiefly in the vast Forests of mighty Fir Trees, whose usefulness in Building makes the Merchants of *England*, *Holland*, and other Nations flock thither to Buy 'em: The Earth hath Mines of Iron, Copper, and some Silver; with Pitch and Tar, and Fish, (whereof great quantities are taken on the Coasts and exposed.) are COMODITIES of this Country.

The INHABITANTS are generally Strong and Courageous: And (as *Puffendorf* observes) undergo all sorts of hardship, with more Vigour than the *Danes*, being inured to Severity by their Soil and Climate: But the *Danes* keep them under, and give 'em no opportunities of shewing their Strength, and have gradually removed all their ancient Nobility, to prevent any potent Faction to arise. The King being



being careful to keep this Country to himself, especially on account of the good Revenue he receives from it, which is reckon'd by Mr. *Moldsworth*, at seven hundred Thousand Rix Dollars *per Annum*. The *Norwegians* are good Sea-men, and are therefore Cherished by the *Hollanders*.

The Christian RELIGION is said to have been planted here, about the middle of the Tenth Century, and the Reformation was Introduced by the *Danes*, so that Lutheranism is the profess'd Religion.

Norway is divided into five Dioceses or Prefectures, *viz.* those of *Aggerhusen* or *Obslo*, *Bergben*, *Drontheim*, *Wardhus*, and *Babus*, and several Islands.

The Cities and chief Towns are these,

In the Diocess of <i>Aggerhusen</i> , or <i>Obslo</i> ,	{	<i>Obsloor</i> <i>Christiana</i>
		<i>Aggerhusen</i> .
		<i>Frederickstadt</i> .
		<i>Saltzberg</i> .
		<i>Hollen</i> .
In the Diocess of <i>Bergben</i> .	{	<i>Hammer</i> .
		<i>Tonsberg</i> .
		<i>Scheen</i> .
		<i>Bergben</i> .
		<i>Staffanger</i> .
In the Diocess of <i>Drontheim</i> call'd <i>Nidrosiana</i> ,	{	<i>Eyde</i> .
		<i>Bischopsware</i> .
		<i>Drontheim</i> .
		<i>Leerstrand</i> .
		<i>Stronden</i> .
The Diocess of <i>Wardhus</i> divided into	{	<i>Scoerdale</i> .
		<i>Opdael</i> .
		<i>Sundael</i> .
		<i>Romsdaalen</i> .
		<i>Solendael</i> .
In the Diocess of <i>Babus</i> subject to the <i>Suede</i> ,	{	<i>Melanger</i> .
		<i>Scheen</i> .
		<i>Wardhus</i> , and
		<i>Finmark</i> ,
		<i>Babus</i> .
		<i>Maelstrand</i> .

The Islands depending on Norway.

Island.	
<i>Schetland</i> ,	
<i>Fero</i> ,	
<i>Hitteren</i> ,	off the Coast of <i>Drontheim</i> .
<i>Maelstrom</i> .	{ more to the North.
<i>Lofaeren</i> .	
<i>Tromanes</i> .	
<i>Sanien</i> .	{ off of <i>Warehus</i> .
<i>Sallero</i> .	
<i>Sueroy</i> .	{ on the Coast of <i>Finmark</i> .
<i>Maggero</i> .	

*Groenland* and *Greenland*, are also reckon'd dependencies on Norway.

The Map of Norway is joyned to that of *Sueden*, and contained in the same Plate.

The Province of *AGGERHUSE* is the South East part of Norway, being Seated between the Pro-

vince of *Bergben* on the West, the Confines of *Sueden* on the East, the mouth of the *Baltick* Sea on the South, and the Government of *Drontheim* on the North; its extent from North to South is about 250 Miles, and from East to West in the South part about 180, but grows narrower Northwards till it ends in a Point, being in form of a Cone. The Land is Mountainous and Woody, but the Vallies are reasonably Fruitful, watered by many Rivers and Lakes, that pass through the Country and fall into the *Baltick*. It is divided into six smaller Governments, *viz.* *Agdesinden*, *Halingdal*, *Hammer*, *Hennemark*, *Romeriket*, and *Teilemark* which *Ortelius* takes to be the ancient *Thyle*. The chief Cities and Towns are

*Anslo* or *Obslo*, call'd also *Christiana*, seated at the bottom of a narrow Bay, at the distance of about 14 Leagues from the *Baltick* Sea, and 50 Leagues from the *Scagen* Cape in *Futland* to the North, in the Latitude of 60 deg. 30 min. and Longitude 28. 30. is the Seat of the chief Court of Judicature for the whole Kingdom, as also an Episcopal See. The City owes its Foundation to King *Harold*, Contemporary with *Sueno Estbrith* King of *Denmark*, who about the Middle of the eleventh Century kept his Court here: But the old Town being destroy'd by Fire, *Christian IV.* King of *Denmark* and *Norway* Rebuilt it about the year 1614. and gave it the Name of *Christiana*, by which it is at this day generally called, and is a place of good Trade for Fir Timber, Pitch, &c. The Cathedral is Dedicated to St. *Alward*, and in it is shewn the Sword of *Haquin*, one of their ancient Kings, the Hilt whereof is of Crystal, and is a notable Curiosity for Art, as well as Antiquity. In this City the Nuptial Rites between King *James VI.* of *Scotland*, afterwards King of *England*, and *Ann* the Daughter of *Frederick II.* King of *Denmark*, were Solemniz'd on 23 November 1589. that Prince having taken a Voyage hither upon the Ladies being driven back by contrary Winds when the first set out for *Scotland*.

*Aggerhusen*, or *Aggerhuslot*, from which the whole Province takes its Name, is a strong Castle seated on the other side of the Bay, over against *Anslo*, from which it is distant but a few Leagues to the West. It was remarkable for the brave resistance it made against the Suedish Army in the year 1567. which Besieged it hotly for eighteen weeks together, but was at last beat off, and forced shamefully to Retire.

*Frederickstadt* stands on another Bay of the *Baltick*, called the *Catgat*, and the mouth of the River *Glammen*, that rises in *Drontheim*, and having passed through the Province of *Aggerhusen*, here falls in the Sea, and by the convenience thereof affords the Town a good Trade. It is seated about 60 Miles from *Christiana* to the South East, and about the same distance from *Futland* to the North. It had its Name from *Fredrick III.*

*Saltzberg* stands on the River *Drammen*, about 20 Miles North-West from *Christiana*, it is a good City having a considerable Trade from the Neighbouring Copper and Iron Mines.

*Tonsberg*, seated on the Bay of *Obslo*, and *Scheen* but a few Miles from it, about 40 Miles South from *Saltzburg*, are both places of good Trade, by means of the same Miues, and a Silver one that was discovered in the Reign of *Christian IV.*

*Hollen*, seated on the Lake *Nordsee*, 15 Miles North-West from *Tonsberg*, is remarkable for its Church, which is cut out of the Rock called *Vear*, and



has a Burying place on the Top of it; it is very ancient, and supposed by *Olaus Wormius* to be originally a Heathenish Temple.

*Hammer* formerly a Bishops See, which is now united to that of *Anslo*, stands on the River *Gammern*. 50 Miles North from *Anslo* or *Christiana*. Near this City in a little Island call'd *Mies* (as *Olaus Magnus* reports) a monstrous Serpent always appears before any Notable Revolution in the State of *Norway*.

The Northern part of this Province is very Mountainous, and not very Populous, so that there are few Towns of note that way.

The Province or Government of *BERGHEN* takes up all the West side of *Norway*, lying between the Government of *Aggerhusen*, and the Coasts of the Ocean, from the Cape called the *Naze* in the South, up to the Latitude of 63. c. where the Government of *Drontheim* begins. It is divided into the Governments of *Berghen* and *Staffenger*. Which are again subdivided into smaller Prefectures. Those under *Berghen* are, *Nord-Herland*, *Sud-Heland*, *Hardanger*, *Vestfrendal*, *Lerdal*, *Segbene*, *Sud-fierd*, *Nord-fierd*, and *Sundmarland*.

*Be gien*, an ancient and famous Sea-Port mentioned by *Pomponius Mela* and *Pliny*, stands on a Bay of the Ocean which makes a Commodious Harbour, in the Latitude of 61. c. at the distance of 140 Miles from the *Naze* to the North, and as many from *Christiana* to the West; it is almost surrounded with Hills, from whence it has its Name. It is reckon'd the largest, most beautiful and most Populous City of *Norway*, as also the Principal Mart and Magazine for Merchandize, divers sorts of Furrs, vast quantities of Hides, Tallow, Fir Timber, &c. being brought hither from the Neighbouring Provinces and Shipt off to Foreign parts. The Inhabitants especially, drive a great Trade in *Stock-Fish*, which are taken on these Coasts. The Buildings were formerly very mean, but through the flocking of Strangers hither, on account of Trade, from *Ham-burgh*, *Lubeck*, *Holland*, *England*, &c. the Place is so Enriched, that the Houses are not only new Built, but it is also Beautified with a Fair Exchange. The Haven is surrounded with Hills, which render it secure from the Weather, is very Capacious, and deep enough to receive Ships of above 200 Tuns, and is defended by a strong Castle. The City is endowed with many Privileges, and Honoured with the Presence of the Viceroy. All which, render this the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

*Eyde* about 15 Miles East from *Berghen*, and

*Bischopsware* 10 Miles from *Eyde*, are reckon'd the other Principal Towns in this Government.

*Staffanger* or *Stavanger*, is seated in a Peninsula, upon a spacious Bay of the Ocean, full of small Islands, at the distance of 90 Miles from *Berghen* to the South, and 150 from *Christiana* to the West. The Harbour is very large and safe; and tho' the City be but a small one it is the See of a Bishop, and the chief of a Government, which has under it the Prefectures of *Carmen*, *Ryfoll*, *Feren* and *Dalerne*: And is Guarded by the strong Fortrefs of *Doef-wick* which stands to the Sea-ward, about 2 Miles from the Town.

The Government of *DRONTHEIM* is the largest part of *Norway*, being near 500 Miles in

length, and in some parts 120, tho' generally about 80 Miles in breadth. It lyes a long the Coasts of the North Sea, from the 63d. to the 69th Degree of Latitude, having some Provinces of *Sueden* and the *Suedish Lapland* on the East, the Ocean on the West, *Berghen* on the South, and *Wardhuys* on the North. The Country is Mountainous, Woody, Cold and Barren; so that tho' it be large the Towns are not very considerable. For Civil Government, it is divided into the Prefectures or Districts of *Nordmer*, *Surendal*, *F. Jerlen*, *Stadt-lurgen*, *Nordbregden*, *Nomandal*, *Faderogen*, *Massen*, *Scorduel*, *Strinden*, *Sel-bee*, *Lenstrand*, *Buynes*, *Scheenien*, *Guldael*, *Mesdael*, *Oerckedael*, *Singefegan*, *Rendebone*, *Obdael* and *Salten*. The Provinces of *Femprland* and *Hardendal*, were also part of this Government before they were united to the Crown of *Sueden* by the Treaty of *Brosbroe*; and indeed the whole Country was given to the *Suedes* by the Treaty of *Roschild* in 1658. but was restored by the Treaty of *Copenhagen* in 1660.

*Drontheim* or *Truntheim* is seated on the Coasts of the Northern Ocean, at the mouth of the River *Nider*, from which it was anciently Named *Nidrosia*, in the Latitude of 65. 20. about 300 Miles North East from *Berghen*. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and was heretofore the Royal Seat of the ancient Kings of *Norway*, being then a large City, but is at present not considerable, having suffer'd thro' many Conflagrations particularly in 1522. when the Stately Cathedral, Dedicated to *St. Olaus*, which surpassed in Beauty all the Churches in the Northern Countries, was almost destroy'd. The Palace also is fallen to decay, and the Walls, Bulwarks, and Trenches in Rubish; so that the City is rather now a Village, the Port is incommodious, the Entrance being obstructed by Rocks, and in general the place not at all considerable, except for the Seat of the Governor, who usually Resides in the Castle.

The Country round about is very Barren, and even Wood is so scarce that a little beyond the City, the People are fain to use Fish Bones for Fuel and divers Utensils.

*Leerstrand* stands about 10 Miles South from *Drontheim*.

*Stronden* stands 40 Miles South East from *Drontheim*, on the River *Nider*.

*Scoerdale* stands on the other side of the same Bay, about 7 Leagues North West from *Drontheim*.

*Opdael* and *Sundael*, both seated at the bottom of a narrow Bay about 10 Leagues from the Ocean, and 100 Miles South from *Drontheim*.

*Romsdalen* stands at the bottom of another Bay, 70 Miles South East from *Opdael* and 170 from *Drontheim*.

*Solendael* about 30 Miles South West from *Romsdalen* stands on another Bay. They are all places of some Trade, but we find nothing Remarkable of 'em in Authors.

Northward, on the extream Point of this Province, near the Confines of *Wardhuys*, and in the Latitude of 69. 20. stands *Melangar*, upon the Bay of the Ocean, and about 80 Miles from it stands *Scheen*, which are the two chief Towns of the North Division of *Drontheim*, called the Government of *Salten*.

The Province of *WARDHUYS*, or the *Norwegian Lapland*, and *Finmark*, or as it is called by the Natives *Taakemark*, is the most Northern part of *Norway*, and bounded on the North and West



West by the Ocean, on the East by the Muscovite *Lapland*, and on the South by the Suedish *Lapland*. Its extent is near 300 Miles from East to West, and 200 from North to South. From the Northern Situation we cannot expect much produce of the Earth, or plenty of People, and consequently no Cities or considerable Towns that make any figure in History. It was anciently Inhabited by the *Finni*, of whom *Tacitus* says, *They are a People extraordinary Savage, and miserably Poor, have neither Horses, Arms, House, nor Home; but feed upon Roots, and such Provisions as their Bows and Arrows can procure, and are Cloathed with the Skins of Wild Beasts.* And to this day they live very Rudely; but their Manners being much the same with the Suedish Laplanders, we shall refer the Reader thither, intending to speak more particularly of these People who are so different from other Nations.

*Wardhuys*, the Seat of the Governor, is a Castle, with a Street or small Town of Cottages, Inhabited by Fishermen, on the Island *Warda*, which lies on the North-East point of *Norway*, near the Confines of the Muscovite *Lapland*; the Castle is old and not very well Fortify'd, and the Island is but small being only 14 or 15 Miles in Circumference, and separated about 2 Leagues from the Continent. The Inhabitants of this and the Neighbouring Islands live upon Dry'd Stock-fish, and have neither Bread nor Beer, but what is brought them from other Parts, by the English and Dutch Ships that come this way for Fish.

On the Island *Maggero*, (the Land whereof makes the North Cape, or *Promontorium Rutubæ*) as also on *Suroy* and *Trommes*, 2 other Islands more Southward, are Churches for Christian Worship, but on the Continent the People are Stupid Idolaters.

We have said above that the Government of *Wardhuys* comprehends *Finmark*, and the Norwegian *Lapland*, 'tis necessary to subjoyn that the Maritime part of it is *Finmark*, and the upland and Southern part is *Lapland*.

There are a great number of Islands lie along on the Coasts of all this Kingdom, but they are not considerable enough to deserve naming. Only *Iseland* must not be omitted.

*ISELAND*, so call'd from its extream Coldness, is an Island Seated in the Northern Ocean, about 150 Leagues Eastward from the Coast of *Norway*, and 120 Leagues North from *Scotland*. The *Arctick Circle*, and the *First Meridian* both pass over this Island, so its Latitude and Longitude is easily guess'd at. Its extent from East to West, is near 300 Miles, and from North to South about 150. The Soil (tho' the most South part of the Island, lie in near the same Latitude with *Drontheim*, where the Land is barren) is reasonably Fertile, and affords Pasture for Horses, Cows, Oxen, and other Cattel: The Air is extream Cold, but very Healthy, and the Inhabitants are strong and remarkable for their long Lives, without knowing the use of Physick. In the Woods are White Bears, Foxes, Hares, and other Game, of whose Skins the Inhabitants make their Cloaths. On the Coasts they catch Whales, and so great a quantity of other Fish, that when they want Hay, they dry 'em to give their Cattle. The Mountains are always cover'd with Snow, three of them are *Vulcanos*, and continually cast out Fire, the most remarkable whereof is Mount *Hekla*, which cannot be approach'd nearer than 2 Leagues without Danger; at the Foot of it are several Mines of Brimstone; such

Shoals of Ice with melted Snow come down from the Mountains, that frequently Trees and Cattle are carry'd away. The People are Honest, and reckon'd the best and faithfullest Servants in the World; and in the Towns, the Christian Religion, according to the Lutheran perswasion, is profess'd, but in the ruder parts Idolatry is still follow'd. The chief Town is *Skalholt*, which stands in the Latitude of 66.0. to the North-East of Mount *Hekla*; the other chief Towns are *Hola* on the North Coast, *Beredt* on the South-East, *Hamer* on the South-West, &c. In the Castle of *Bested* the King's Viceroy Resides. The Houses are Built of Wood, and cover'd with the Bark of Trees, Skins or Turfs; the Villagers upon the Sea-Coasts, and along the Rivers remove their Houses, as their occasions or inclinations lead them. The Havens of *Hancfroid* and *Keplaurch*, are much frequented by Ships from *Hamburg*, *Denmark*, *England*, and other parts, who bring the Inhabitants the necessaries they want, and receive in Exchange, Tallow, Hides, Butter, Whale-oil, Dry'd Fish, and Sea-Horse-Teeth, which is as good as Ivory.

The Islands of *Schetland* and *Fero*, which lie between *Iseland* and *Scotland*, in the same Latitude with the Government of *Berghen* in *Norway*, are also Subjects to the King of *Denmark*.

The King of *Denmark* also reckons *Greenland* and *Greenland* part of his Dominions; but of it we shall speak hereafter when we come to treat of the Countries, lying about the North and South Poles.

And now having pass'd from the *Naze* to the North Cape, and taken a sufficient View of *Norway*, we might pass on to *Sueden*, but that the little Province *Babus*, tho' belonging to the *Suede*, was formerly part of *Norway*, must be mention'd here.

The Province or Government of *BAHUS*, is the most South part of *Norway*, a narrow Tract of Land lying on the Coast of the Baltick Sea, about 90 Miles in Length, from North to South, between the *Baltick* on the West, *Sueden* on the East, *Aggerhusen* on the North, and *Gothland* on the South; its Breadth is not proportionate to the Length, being in some parts but 10. in none above 25 Miles Broad. The Country is fruitful enough, but a great part of it is taken up by large Lakes of Water. It formerly belong'd to the King of *Denmark*, till by the Treaty of *Roschild*, in 1658. it was given to the *Suede*, to whom it is now subject; and is divided into two Parts, *Inlandt* and *Wychsiden*.

*Babuys*, which gives name to the Province, is a strong Castle, Built on a small Island, made by the River *Trolbeta*, 150 Miles South-East from *Aggerhusen*, 9 Miles from *Gotteberg*, and 20 Leagues East from the Cape *Schagen* in *Futland*. It was Founded by *Harquin II.* King of *Norway*, in the year 1309. and stands on a steep Rock near the Banks of the River, and was reckon'd a sufficient Bulwark against the *Suedes* and *Ostrogoths*. It was Surrender'd with the Province to the *Suedes*, in 1658. but afterwards in 1678. when the *Danes* assembled to retake it, it withstood their Assaults.

*Maelstrand* or *Maesterland*, is the only remarkable Town in the Province of *Wychsiden*, and is seated on a Rocky Peninsula, about 10 Miles below *Babuys*; it is a place of great Trade for Herrings, and other Sea-Fish; and is guarded by a strong Castle, Built at the Mouth of the River *Wener*, which not far from thence falls into the *Catgat*. It was taken by the *Danes*, in 1676. but restor'd by the Treaty at *Fountainbleau*, in 1679.



# SWEDE N, Suecia.



**S**WEDE N, which makes up the greatest part of Scandinavia, is Bounded with Norwegian, Lapland, and the North Sea on the North, the Baltick Sea on the South, Muscovy on the East, and Denmark and Norway on the West. The extent of the whole Kingdom is about 800 Miles from North to South, and much about the same from East to West. It lies between the 58 Degrees, 40 Min. and the 68 Degrees, 30 Min. of North Latitude, and from the 30th Degree to the 60th Degree of Longitude, in form resembling a Vine Leaf, whereof

the Gulf of Bothnia, is the Stem, round which the several parts of Sweden, are seated; Gothland and Sweden Proper on the West side, Finland and Livonia on the East and Lapland on the North. The Country is very much cover'd with Lakes and Forests, and some parts with craggy Mountains; however, the other parts of the Land afford Corn sufficient for the Inhabitants, Pasture and Breeds of Horses and Cattle: Westmania and Dalecarlia, have rich Copper Mines, and even one Silver one. Finland produces Pitch, Tar, and Fir-Timber, and Vermelandis good



good store of Mafts for Shipping. So that the Native COMMODITIES of *Sueden* are Copper, Iron, Tar, Pitch, Hemp, Malts, Deal Boards, &c. which are fo useful Commodities, that all the Nations of *Europe* Refort hither, and bring the Inhabitants every thing they want in Exchange. But the Commodities whereof they make the greateft account, are Copper and Iron, which they Manufacture, and fend abroad in great Quantities.

The Seas which wash the Coasts of *Sueden* are, the *Ore-Sund*, vulgarly call'd the *Sound*: The *Baltick* or *East-Sea*: The Gulf of *Bothnia*, or as the Natives call it the *Bodem Zee*, and the Gulf of *Finland*. The *Sund*, divides *Gothia* and *Scania* from *Denmark*; the *Baltick* flows between *Schonen* and *Germany*, and alfo between *Gothia* and *Poland*: The *Bothnick-Bay*, lies between *Sueden* and *Finland* and *Liefland*, and has alfo communication with the Lake *Ladoga*, by means of the River *Nieva*, which paffes out of that Lake into the Gulf. The Lakes within the Land are almoft innumerable, but thofe of greateft extent are the *Wiener*, *Wetter* and *Meller* in *Gothia*, the *Ula Toeft* in *Bothnia*: The *Jende* or *Pejende* in *Finland*: The *Onega* and the *Ladoga* on the Confines of *Finland* and *Muscovy*, and the *Peibus* in *Livonia*. Into thefe and the other Lakes, run a vast number of Rivers, which not only afford the Inhabitants abundance of Fish, but alfo a conveyance of their Copper and Iron, as the Forests do Fuel, by means whereof their Mines are wrought with great facility; and do in effect produce more of thefe Metals, than any other Country in the World.

The INHABITANTS, are undoubtedly the Progeny of the ancient Goths, (of whom more hereafter) with great mixture of Germans, and other Neighbours. They are in their Temper Honest, Frank and Plain-Dealers, of a large Stature, and handfom Proportion; the Gentry Travel much, and ufually fpeak feveral Languages. The Women are alfo Handfom, Modest and Near, and the Common People Laborious and Frugal.

The ancient Bards that fung the Stories of their Heroes, and the *Runick* Character in which they Wrote them, are curious Speculations to Learn'd Criticks; but otherwife Learning was anciently in no great Vogue in *Sueden*; but fince Chriftianity has been Eftablifh'd, many Universities have been Erected, and feveral Persons of eminent Learning, have flourifh'd here.

The LANGUAGE of *Sueden* is a Dialect of the ancient *Teutonic*, and not exceedingly different from the German and Danish; it is harfter of the three, and therefore in Writing the Dutch is rather ufed by the Gentry.

The ancient Inhabitants of the *Sueden* were grofs Idolaters in Religion, till about the year 800. at the Request of *Biorno* then King of *Sueden*, the Emperor *Charles the Great*, fent able Minifters to Preach Chriftianity here, which was continu'd with application, but the Eftablifhment of it not effected, till 1015. at which time *Ethelred* King of *England*, fent *Sigifrid* Archbishop of *York* on this Pious Work, who Baptiz'd the King *Olaus*, and caus'd Churches to be Built in every Province, and Chriftianity continu'd to be exercis'd, but with the intermixture of Popifh Superftition, till about the year, 1530. King *Gustavus I.* eftablifh'd the LUTHERAN REFORMED RELIGION, which has ever fince been profess'd here.

### Of the ancient State of Sueden.

The various and different accounts of Authors, about the Primitive State of *Sueden*, is fo diftracting, that it is almoft impoffible to draw a coherent ftory out of them, and therefore we choofe rather to give the Reader a fummery of what is related on this Subject by the Judicious Historian *Samuel Puffendorf*, who was a Native of this Country, and an able Statesman, and may be fuppos'd to know the Affairs of his own Country. The Suedifh Historians, fays he, have out of their ancient Monuments, fhewn the World that this Kingdom is the moft ancient in *Europe*, and that this Country was after the Deluge fooner ftored with Inhabitants than the other parts of *Europe*: Nevertheless, it is very uncertain who were the firft Inhabitants, and at what time they firft fettled here, aslikewife whether they were immediately Govern'd by Kings, or whether the Fathers of Families had the chief fway among them, till the Regal was grafted on the Paternal Power. The Names and Deeds of their Kings, and the times of their Reigns are alfo not eafie to be determin'd, for the Lift of thefe Kings which have been Publish'd, is not fo authentick, but that it may be call'd in queftion. And as to the Transactions of thofe Times, they are moft of them taken out of ancient Songs, and fabulous Legends, and fome of them out of the allegorical Traditions of their ancient Poets, or Scalders, which perhaps have been wrongfully Interpreted by fome Authors. And *Johannes Mefenius* in his *Scandinavia Illustrata*, does not ftick to fay that the old Suedifh Historiographer *Johannes Magnus*, did ftrove to outdo in his History; the Danish Historian *Saxo Grammaticus*. *Joh. Magnus*, makes *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, and Grandfon of *Noah*, the firft Founder of the Scythick and Gothick Nations; and fays, that from his Two Sons, *Sweno* and *Gether*, or *Gog*, they had their Names. He Relates, that after this Family was extinguiſh'd, *Sueden* was for the fpace of 400 years, under the Government of certain Judges; and that about 800 years after the Deluge, both the Kingdom of *Sueden* and *Goths* were united under *Bericus*, who in Perfon Planted a Colony of the Goths, beyond the Seas, after having Conquered the *Ulmiruges*, who then Inhabited *Pruffia*; from whence he extended his Conqueſts over the *Vandals*. A confiderable time after, thefe Nations fettled themſelves not far from the Mouth of the *Danube*, near the Black-Sea; from whence having undertaken feveral Expeditions, both into *Aſia* and *Europe*, at laſt in the Third and Fourth Centuries after the Birth of *Chrift*, they enter'd the Roman Provinces on this fide the *Danube*, and carried their Conquering Arms into *Italy* and *Spain*, where they Erected Two Kingdoms. But the former part of this Relation is contradicted by *Mefenius*, who alfo rejects the Lift which *Joh. Magnus* has given us of the Kings before our Saviour's Birth, alledging that the times before *Chrift*'s Nativity, are all involv'd in fabulous Narrations, as to thofe Northern Parts: And that moſt of thefe Kings Liv'd after the Birth of our Saviour. But the Chronology even of the firſt Centuries after our Saviour, and the Genealogies of thefe Kings being uncertain, we ſhall only give the Reader a Lift of the Names and Succeſſion of thoſe that have Reigned ſince Chriftianity began to be Preach'd here; which according to *Puffendorf* is as follows.



*A Chronological Table of the KINGS of  
S U E D E N.*

	Began to Reign, A. D.
<i>Bero or Biorno III.</i>	780.
<i>Armandus.</i>	824.
<i>Sigardus II.</i>	827.
<i>Herotus or Haraldus.</i>	834.
<i>Charles VI.</i>	856.
<i>Biorno IV.</i>	868.
<i>Ingeilus.</i>	883.
<i>Olaus, converted to Christianity</i>	891.
<i>Ingo his Son.</i>	900.
<i>Eric, Weatherhat.</i>	907.
<i>Eric, Segerbafel.</i>	917.
<i>Steenchild the Mild, suppressing Idolatry, he was Massacred by the Pagans.</i>	
<i>Olaus, Skot-konung.</i>	1012.
<i>He was Baptized by Sigiftid, sent by King Ethel- red of England. He united the Kingdom of Suedes and Goths.</i>	
<i>Amund Slemme.</i>	1035.
<i>Haquin the Ruddy.</i>	1041.
<i>Steenchild the Younger.</i>	1059.
<i>Ingo the Pious.</i>	1059.
<i>He destroy'd the Idol at Upsal, for which he was Murther'd by the Pagans.</i>	
<i>Halstan.</i>	1066.
<i>Philip</i>	1080.
<i>Ingo III.</i>	1100.
<i>Ragwald Knaphofde.</i>	1129.
<i>Swercher. II.</i>	1140.
<i>Eric, the Saint.</i>	1154.
<i>Charles Son of Swercher.</i>	1162.
<i>Cnutte the Son of Erick,</i>	1168.
<i>Swercher, III. Son of Charles</i>	1192.
<i>Eric Cnutson.</i>	1210.
<i>John Son of Swercher.</i>	1219.
<i>Eric the Lifper.</i>	1223.
<i>He converted Finland to Christianity.</i>	
<i>Waldemar.</i>	1251.
<i>Magnus.</i>	1279.
<i>Briger II.</i>	1291.
<i>Magnus Smeek.</i>	1319.
<i>He was depos'd.</i>	
<i>Albert Duke of Mecklenburg,</i>	1364.
<i>Margaret Queen of Denmark and Norway,</i>	1388.
<i>She made a solemn union of the 3 Kingdoms, at Calmar, 1395. Appointing her Nephew Eric to suc- ceed.</i>	
<i>Erick XIII.</i>	1396.
<i>He Married the Daughter of Henry IV. King of England. The Suedes Rebell'd against him, and constituted a Marshal to Govern the Realm.</i>	
<i>Christopher Duke of Bavaria,</i>	1439.
<i>Charles Cnutson, Marshal, chosen King.</i>	1448.
<i>Christian I. King of Denmark.</i>	1458.
<i>He was expell'd and forc'd to resign.</i>	
<i>Erick Axelsson, Regent.</i>	1466.
<i>John King of Denmark.</i>	1481.
<i>Steno Sture the Regent oppos'd him</i>	
<i>Christian II. King of Denmark.</i>	1520.
<i>He Murder'd the Nobility and Senate and com- mitted many Barbarities.</i>	
<i>Gustavus Erickson, oppos'd the Danes, and chosen King.</i>	1523.
<i>The Crown was made Hereditary to his Family, and he introdu'd the Reformation of Religion.</i>	
<i>Erick XIV. his Son.</i>	1559.

He introduc'd the Titles of Earls and Barons, and made them Hereditary.

On account of Disorders between him and the Family of the *Stures*, a Rebellion was fomented, and he at last Depos'd.

*John III.* his Brother Succeeded. 1568.

He made his offers at restoring Popery, but was oppos'd in it by his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Sudermania*.

*Sigismund*, his Son King of *Poland*, Succeeded. 1592.

But *Charles* his Uncle Administer'd the Government.

*Sigismund* endeavouring to introduce Popery, caus'd a Defection in *Sueden*, and was in the end depos'd, and his Son also Excluded. Wherefore his Uncle

*Charles IX.* Son of King *Gustavus*, Succeeded. 1604.

*Gustavus Adolphus* his Son, 1611.

An Heroick Valiant Paince, whose Actions are sufficiently known. He was Kill'd in the Battle, of *Lutzen* in *Germany*, Nov. 6. 1633.

*Christiana* his Daughter Succeeded. 1633.

She resign'd the Crown to her Nephew.

*Charles Gustavus* Duke of *Deux Ponts*, who was accordingly the same day Crown'd King of *Sueden*, June 6. 1654.

*Charles XI.* his Son Succeeded. 1666.

*Charles XII.* his Son now Reigning. 1697.

'Tho' the Suedish and Gothick Nations have been anciently famous for Warlik Archievements, and the Men are very fit to endure the fatigues of War, yet were their Military Affairs in former times, but very indifferently order'd; their chief Force consisting in the Boors, till *Gustavus*, and his Successors with the assistance of some German and Scotch Officers and Soldiers, have introduc'd such Discipline as that now they do not stand in need of Foreigners, except upon an emergency to make up the number of Men, where-with they are not overstock'd, especially since the late great Wars under *Gustavus Adolphus*. The late King has put their Forces both Horse and Foot into a better condition than ever they were before, and they are maintain'd with very small Charge to the Crown, the Foot being maintain'd by the Boors, and the Horse have for the most part small Farms of the Kings assign'd them, the Rents whereof are their Pay; so that only the King's Guards are Paid out of the Treasury. For the Naval Security the Kingdom of *Sueden* has a considerable Fleet of Ships of War, the Station whereof was formerly at *Stockholm*, but of late years a new Harbour has been made at *Bleking*, whence the Ships may put to Sea with more expedition and convenience. And on the Land side *Sueden* is Guarded with inaccessible Rocks towards *Norway*, and strong Forts towards *Muscovy* and *Poland*.

*Of the Government of Sueden.*

The Crown of *Sueden* was anciently bestow'd by Election of the Great Men, and Estates of the Realm, on such person of Merit as they thought fit, till the Kings of *Denmark* by their Interest, having got into the Throne, and used the Suedes with too much severity, especially *Christiern II.* who committed great cruelties on them, *Gustavus Ericus*, a Nobleman of great Courage and Honour, and Nephew to *Steno Sture*, the preceeding King, appearing at the Head of the remainder of the Suedish Nobility, that had escaped the Massacre, drove out the Dane, and in reward had the Crown conferr'd on him, and made



made Hereditary to his Posterity; this happen'd in the year 1544. And tho' the Estates at that time reserv'd to themselves the power of choosing again, if the Race of that Prince should happen to fail, yet when Queen *Christina*, the only Issue of *Gustavus Adolphus*, resigned the Crown, and nominated *Charles Gustavus* Duke of *Deux Ponts*, her Nephew, to succeed her, it was not oppos'd: And furthermore in the Year, 1680. in the Assembly of the Nobility held at *Stockholm*, it was agreed, That in case of the King's dangerous Sicknels he might nominate his Successor without the Advice of the Five Great Officers, which was confirm'd by the Estates. And in 1682. it was further enacted that Daughters should succeed in case of failure of Male Issue.

The Estates of the Realm (whose Authority was much greater before the Form of Government was chang'd) consist of four Orders, *viz.* The Nobility, the Deputies of the Clergy, Burgesses and Peasants. The Nobility have for their President the Marshal of the Dyet, appointed by the King; the Clergy the Archbishop of *Upsal*, as Primate of the Kingdom: The Burgesses usually the Burgomaster of *Stockholm*; and the Peasants chuse a President or Speaker of their own.

Next to the States General the Senate is the most considerable Body in the Nation. The Number of Senators is not fix'd, they are sometimes more, and sometimes fewer, as the King sees fit. In Queen *Christina's* time they were Forty, in *Charles Gustavus's* time Twenty four, and now they are but Twelve. They were formerly called Senators of the Kingdom, but now the King's Senators. Formerly they were Judges of the King's Actions, but now they are no more than Witnesses. And altho' he takes their Advice in Matters of State, they are not permitted to Prescribe. The King alone has the Power of establishing Imposts, of regulating the Magazines for the Soldiers in the Provinces, of Coining Mony, and Digging Saltpetre-Mines. He Names all Magistrates and Officers, and has Power, in case of necessity, to take the tenth Man in the Nation for the Wars; though oftentimes he takes Mony for them, and hires Foreigners, which is the Reason there are so many Strangers, and especially Germans in the Swedish Armies.

The Five Officers of the Crown are, 1. The *Drotset*, or Chief Justice; 2. The Lord High Constable, 3. The High Admiral, 4. The High Chancellor, and 5. The Treasurer. The *Drotset* is the Chief Officer in the Nation, and was formerly a kind of Vice-Roy; he has the Honour of putting on the King's Crown at the Coronation: He Presides in the Supreme Court of Justice, to which there is appeal from all other Courts. The Constable Presides in the Council of War, and has the Inspection of the Discipline and managing the Army, and has many great and honourable Privileges. The Admiral's Power is also very great, he has the ordering of the Fleet, and the naming all the Officers in it, with many other Priviledges. The Chancellor is the Chief Officer in the State for administering Justice under the King, for rectifying Abuses, and giving necessary Rules for the good of the Publick; he keeps the Great Seal, and Dispatches all Affairs of State. The Lord High Treasurer has the Administration of the King's Revenues, Pays all the Officers of the Kingdom, and Presides in the Chamber of Accounts: He has also many Privileges.

The REVENUES of the KING of *Sueden* were anciently so small, that they were hardly enough

to maintain him, consisting only of Duties on Exported and Imported Goods, and the discovery of Mines. But the Riches and Revenues of the Church, that have been Seculariz'd since the Reformation, have contributed much to the encrease of them: And the Resumption of Lands granted away from the Crown by preceeding Kings, to the Nobility and Gentry, have rais'd them to the highest Degree. This was done by the late King, in the Year, 1680. and tho' it was much oppos'd by the Assembly of the Estates, yet the lower Orders consenting, the Nobility were fain to comply. Besides these Branches the King has a third part of all Fines, when they do not exceed 40 Marks of Silver; and if they do, he takes it all. He has also all Forfeitures upon Account of High-Treason; and the Estates of Strangers, if their Heirs do not appear within a Year after their Death.

The Administration of JUSTICE in *Sueden* is perform'd in Five several Courts. 1. The King's Chamber, wherein all superior Causes, as between Noblemen, Senators and Publick Officers are heard, and Appeals received from inferior Courts: The *Drotset* sits as Judge here. 2. The Court Marshal, wherein all Matters relating to War are determin'd: The Grand Marshal of the Army is President of it, and has two Assessors that are Senators or Officers of State, to assist him. 3. The Court of Chancery, where all Mandates, Edicts, Commissions, &c. in the King's Name are made: The Chancellor of the Kingdom presides in it, and is assisted by four Senators, Assessors, and the two Secretaries of State. 4. The Court of Admiralty, which transacts all Business Marine: Here the High Admiral Presides, attended with four Vice-Admirals, as many Senators, and several Captains Assessors. 5. The Court of Exchequer for deciding Controversies relating to the King's Revenue. The Grand Treasurer Presides here and has four Assessors, two Senators, and two Noble-men to assist him.

There are other Courts that Judge all common Causes, both Civil and Criminal without Appeal; they were Established by King *Gustavus Adolphus*, and planted in convenient places all over the Kingdom. Each consists of a President, who is a Senator, and a certain number of Lawyers and Gentlemen for Assessors. These Parliaments are held at these Cities, *viz.* 1. *Stockholm*. 2. *Jönköping* in *Gothia*. 3. *Abo*, in *Finland*. 4. *Derpt*, in *Livonia*. And 5. at *Wismar*, in *Germany*.

### *The Dominions of the King of Sueden, consist of these Eight Parts.*

I. *S U E D E N* properly so called, lying between *Norway* on the West, and the *Bothnick-Bay* on the East.

II. *G O T H L A N D*, on the South of *Sueden*.

III. *F I N L A N D*, on the East side of the *Bothnic Gulf*.

IV. *L I V O N I A*, on the South side of the *Finnic Bay*.

V. *I N G R I A*, on the East of *Livonia*.

VI. *Suadish L A P L A N D*.

VII. Several *I S L A N D S*, in the *Baltick Sea*.

VIII. *P O M E R A N I A*, and some other parts of *Germany*.

The



The Sub-divisions whereof are seen in this Table, and the Principal Cities and Towns in each, are described in the Particular Accounts of the Provinces which follow.

*Sueden in General, in Eight Parts, is thus Divided.*

I. *Sueden* properly so called, in Eleven Parts.

{ *Uplandia.*  
*Sudermania.*  
*Westmania.*  
*Nericia.*  
*Gestrucia.*  
*Helsingia.*  
*Dalecarlia.*  
*Medelpadia.*  
*Angermania.*  
*Femptia.*  
*Bottnia.*

II. *Gothia*, in Three Parts.

{ *East-Gothland.*  
*West-Gothland.*  
*South-Gothland.*

These are Sub-divided into Nine smaller Parts.

East-Gothland.

{ *East-Gothland* proper.  
*Smaland.*  
*Oenaland.*

West-Gothland.

{ *West-Gothia.*  
*Wermeland.*  
*Dalia.*

South-Gothland.

{ *Schonen* or *Scania.*  
*Bleking.*  
*Halland.*

III. *Suedish Lapland*, in Five Parts.

{ *Torne-Lapmarck.*  
*Kimi-Lapmarck.*  
*Lula-Lapmarck.*  
*Pitha-Lapmarck.*  
*Uma-Lapmarck.*

IV. *Finland* in seven Parts.

{ *Finland* proper.  
*Cajania.*  
*Savolaxia.*  
*Kexholm.*  
*Carelia.*  
*Nylandia.*  
*Tavasthia.*

V. *Livonia*, or *Liefland*, into three Parts.

{ 1. *Esthonia* which is subdivided into five Parts { *Alentakia.*  
*Wiria.*  
*Harria.*  
*Witka.*  
*Fervia.*  
2. *Oedepoa.*  
3. *Letten*, or *Letitia.*

VI. *Ingria*,

{ *Ingria* proper.  
*Ingermania.*  
*Soluska.*

VII. The Islands of

{ *Gothlandia.*  
*Oeland.*  
*Oesel.*  
*Dagbo.*  
*Aland.*  
*Huena.*  
*Rugen.*

VIII. The *Upper-Pomerania*, *Bremen* and *Ferden*, in Germany.

## *The particular Description of the Kingdom of S U E D E N.*

### CHAP. II.

#### *of S U E D E N properly so called.*

**S**UEDEN Properly so called is bounded on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gothland* and *Schonen*, on the East with the *Bottnic Bay*, and the West with the *Dofrine Mountains*; extending 300 Miles from North to South, and 200 from East to West, a Fruitful but in some parts Mountainous Country, abounding with Rich Mines of Copper, and affording Conveniencies of Water and Fuel for Working them. It is divided into Eleven Parts, viz.

1. *Uplandia*, a small Province, but the most Fruitful, it is surrounded by the *Baltick Sea* on the North-East and South-West, having *Sudermania* on the South, *Nericia* and *Westmania* on the West, and *Gestrucia* on the North.

2. *Sudermania*, divided from *Upland*, on the North, by the Lake *Meller*; hath *East-Gothland* on the South; *Nericia* on the West; and the

*Baltick* on the East. This is the place of Building Ships.

3. *Westmania*, lyes on the West of *Uplandia*, having *Nericia* on the South, and *Dalecarlia* on the North. The Soil is Fruitful, and the Mines afford Steel, Iron, Copper, Lead and Sulphur.

4. *Nericia*, lyes between the three above mentioned. It abounds with Mines.

5. *Gestrucia*, is North of *Upland*, along the Coast of the *Bottnic Gulf*. It has some Iron Mines, and good Corn.

6. *Helsingia*, North of *Gestrucia*, having the *Bottnick Gulf* on the East, and *Dalecarlia* on the West. The Soil produces Corn and Pasture, and the Inhabitants are chiefly imploy'd in Breeding Cattle.

7. *Dalecarlia*, an inland Province on the West of these Two, and bounded on the West by *Normay*; is a large Tract of Land from North to South, but is



is a Woody, Barren, and somewhat Mountainous Country, however 'tis Considerable on account of the Mines of Copper, Allum and Vitriol, with which it abounds.

8. *Medelpadia* on the North of *He'fingia*, and formerly part of it, is a smaller Country of the like Soil, only more Woody and Mountainous.

9. *Angermania*. And 10. *Jemptia*, lye on the North of *Medelpadia* and *Dalecarlia*; the former is a very Fruitful and Pleasant Country, the Soil Rich, and producing plenty of Corn, but withal somewhat Mountainous; it has the *Bothnic* Gulf on the East, and *Bothnia* on the North. *Jemptia* is more Mountainous, and lyes on the West of *Angermania*.

11. *Bothnia*, called *West-Bothnia*, the opposite Land in *Finland* being the *East-Bothnia*, is a narrow Tract of Land lying along the Shoar of the *Bothnic* Bay, and on the other parts surrounded by *Lapland*. It is a Sandy Barren Soil, but has store of Fish.

The Cities and chief Towns in these Provinces are these.

In Upland,	{ <i>Stockholm.</i> <i>Upsal.</i> <i>Engkoping.</i>
Sudermania,	{ <i>Nykoping.</i> <i>Stregnes.</i> <i>Torsilia.</i>
Westmania,	{ <i>Arosio.</i> <i>Koping.</i> <i>Arboga.</i>
Nericia,	{ <i>Ordbro.</i> <i>Kunda.</i>
Gestricia,	{ <i>Gevalia.</i> <i>Coperberget.</i>
Helsingia,	{ <i>Hundswickwald.</i> <i>Dilsbo.</i> <i>Alta.</i>
Dalecarlia,	{ <i>Idra.</i> <i>Limna.</i> <i>Hedemora.</i>
Angermania,	{ <i>Hernofand.</i> <i>Natra.</i>
Medelpadia,	{ <i>Tuna.</i> <i>Judal.</i>
Jempthia,	{ <i>Restundt.</i> <i>Lidk.</i>
West-Bothnia,	{ <i>Torne.</i> <i>Uma.</i> <i>Pila.</i> <i>Lula.</i>

*Stockholm*, *Holmia* aut *Stocholmia*, the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, being the Seat of the King; Is Situated on the side of the Lake *Meller*, on several small Islands like *Venice*, in the Latitude of 59.0. and Longitude of 38.0. but few Leagues from the *Baltick* Sea, near 300 Miles from *Copenhagen* to the North East, and as many from *Christina* to the East. It is encompass'd especially toward the Sea with steep craggy Rocks, as also with high Mountains and Lakes, which render its Prospect somewhat uncouth. It was heretofore a place of little note, founded by King *Birgerus* in 1291. and took it's Name from the great quantity of Timber us'd in Building it,

*Stock* signifying *Wood*, and *Holm* an *Island*. In 1407. it was consum'd by Lightning, and some Thousands of People perished in the Conflagration. By the Tyrannical Oppression of *Christian II.* King of *Denmark* the Inhabitants fled away, but were called home again by *Gustavus I.* in 1529. In 1552 a Fire happened, which by reason of the Wooden Houses consumed the greatest part of the Town. But it was soon Re-built upon Piles, partly with Stone and partly with Brick, so that it is at present a beautiful City, and has for these two Ages been the Seat of the *Swedish* Monarchs. It's Haven which opens into the *Baltick*, is of dangerous access by reason of the Rocks, but within is one of the most Commodious in *Europe*, for the Ships of the largest size lye close to the Keys, and so securely from the Wind, that they need no Anchors or Cables to hold 'em: Its Entrance is defended by two Forts, and the City is guarded by a Strong Castle. It is the most considerable place for Trade in the whole Nation, and one of the chief Empora of *Europe*: Corn, Honey, Wax, Fir-Timber, Copper, Iron, Steel Lead, Pitch, Tar, Hides, and Tallow, are the Commodities they Export. The City consists of Six small Islands and two Suburbs, the Islands are *Stockholm*, *Ridderholm*, *Konungsholm*, *Heglandsholm*, *Schipsholm*, and *Ladduggarland*, which are joyned together by Bridges. In the first, which is properly called the City, stands the Palace of *Kiddarchuset*, where are held the Assembly of the States, the Grand Market place, the Citadel and Castle, which is the King's Palace, the King's Chappel, and the Magnificent Church of St. *Nicholas*, Founded by King *John*, on Marble Pillars and cover'd with Copper. In the Castle, besides the stately Apartments of the King and Queen, are the Senate House, the Court of Chancery, the Criminal College, and a famous Library. In *Ridderholm*, or the *Knight's Island*, are many pleasant Gardens, and the Cloister Church, wherein the two late Kings *Gustavus Adolphus*, and *Carolus Gustavus*, lye Interr'd. *Heglandsholm* is Inhabited chiefly by Mechanicks. In *Schipsholm* are the Courts of Admiralty, the Arsenal, and other Magazins of Naval Stores. *Ladduggarland* is filled with Houses of Pleasure, Gardens, and the King's Warren, Aviaries, &c. And in the Southern Suburbs live the Wealthy and Industrious Merchants, who have a stately Exchange, and drive a great Trade to all the Neighbouring Nations.

*Upsal* stands on the River *Sall*; (which falls into the Lake *Ekolen*.) 40 Miles from *Stockholm* to the North. It was heretofore the Capital City of the Kingdom, and Seat of the King, and is at present the only Metropolitan See, and a University. The See was Established in 1148. and the Archbishop is esteemed the first Person in the Kingdom, next the Royal Family: There are seven Suffragan Bishops, and many Superintendents that exercise Episcopal Jurisdiction under him. At the Reformation the Learned *Johanes Magnus*, who was then Archbishop, not submitting to the *Lutheran* Confession, was forc'd to retire to *Rome*. The University begun at first in the year 1306. by a College of four Professors, but in 1476. being honour'd with large Priviledges by Pope *Sixtus IV.* and Endowed with large Revenues and Immunities by King *Charles IX.* and *Gustavus Adolphus*, it became considerable as any, and is stiled by Authors, *Academia Insignis & Illustris*. The Cathedral Church is cover'd with Copper, adorn'd with a Clock of admirable Workmanship, and honoured with the Tombs of divers Princes.



Here is also a Royal Palace, wherein the late Queen *Christina* Abdicated the Crown: And a Castle of Modern Fortification seated on a Neighbouring Hill, which Commands the Town.

*Enköping* stands on the Lake *Meller* at the Confines of *Westmania*, near 40 Miles Westward from *Stockholm*, and 20 South from *Upsal*.

*Nyk-ping* the chief City of *Sudermania*, and the Seat of it's Ancient Dukes, stands on the *Baltick*, 10 Miles South-West from *Stockholm*; it has a good Haven, and is a Place of Trade. As are also *Torpa* and *Telga*, both standing on the same Coast, in the way to *Stockholm*.

*Stregnes* a Bishop's See, stands near the Lake *Meller*, 30 Miles North from *Nyk-ping*, and as many South from *Enköping*.

*Torslia*, stands on the same Lake, 18 Miles North-West from *Stregnes*.

*Orebro*, The Chief Town of *Nericia*, stands on the *Hielmer* Lake, or *Telmer* Sea, at the Mouth of the River *Trosta*, 40 Miles East from *Torslia*.

*Orsio* or *Westeras*, the chief City of *Westmannia*, stands on the North-side of the Lake *Meller*, 35 Miles West from *Upsal*. It is a Bishop's See, and in the Cathedral are found several antient Gothic Inscriptions. In this City the Agreement was made by the Estates of the Kingdom in 1544. whereby the Crown of *Sueden* was given to *Gustavus I.* who had rescued the People from the Tyranny of the Danes, and made it Hereditary to his Family, whereas before the Kings were always Elected.

*Coping* or *Koping*, and *Arbogia*, stand to the West of *Orsio*, the former 20, and the other 25 Miles distant.

*Gevalia*, The Chief City of *Gestrucia*, is seated on the Gulph of *Botnia*, at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, 50 Miles North from *Upsal*, and is a Place of good Trade.

*Coperberget* stands 50 miles West from *Gevalia*.

*Hundswickwald*, The Chief Town of *Helsingia*, stands on the Gulph of *Botnia*, 80 miles North from

*Gevalia*, a Place of great Trade for Fir-Timber, Pitch, Robin, Corn, Hides, &c.

*Disbo* stands 25 miles West from *Hundswickwald* and *Aua*, near 40 miles South from *Disbo*.

*Tuna*, the chief Town of *Medgadia*, stands on the River *Nieuand*, near the *Baltick* Gulph, 25 miles North-West from *Hundswickwald*, and is said to have been the Seat of the antient Kings of *Helsingia*.

*Dals* stands on a River of the same Name, 20 Miles North from *Tuna*, and as many West from the *Bothnick* Bay.

*Hernsand* is the chief Town of *Angermania*, and stands on the *Bothnick* Bay, 50 Miles from *Hundswickwald*, and like that, is a place of good Trade.

*Nat* stands 30 Miles to the North of *Hernsand*.

*Uma* in *West-Bothnia*, stands on the *Bothnick* Gulf, at the mouth of a River of the same Name, 80 Miles North of *Hernsand*.

*Pila* and *Lula* likewise stands at the mouths of two Rivers to which they give Name, 80 Miles North from *Uma*.

*Torne* the chief Town of *West-Bothnia*, stands at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bothnia*, near the Confines of *Lapland*, 60 Miles North-east from *Pitha*. It has a good Haven, and is a place of Trade.

*Refsundt* a Fortrefs in *Fempria*, stands 80 Miles West from *Hernsand*.

*Lidb* or *Lida* reckon'd the Chief Town of *Fempria*, stands about 20 Miles North from *Refsundt*.

Tho' *Dalecarlia* be a very large Province, yet being an Inland Mountainous Country, it hath but few Towns of note.

*Idra*, which stands on the River *Elswan*, 170 Miles West from *Hundswickwald*.

*Lima*, 50 Miles South from *Idra*, and

*Hedemora* on the River *Dalecarlen*, near the Confines of *Westmania*, 60 Miles North-west from *Upsal*; are reckon'd the chief Towns.

### C H A P. III.

#### Of G O T H L A N D, or Gothia.

**G** O T H I A or *Gothland*, a large Fruitful Country, lyes on the South of *Sueden*, properly so called, and surrounded on the East, West and South, with the *Baltick*-Sea. Its extent from the Confines of *Dalecarlia* in the North, to the Coasts of *Schonen* in the South, is about 270

Miles, and from *Gotteberg* in the West to *Stegeberg* in the East, about 160 Miles. It is divided into three great Parts, *East-Gothland*, *West-Gothland*, and *South-Gothland*, which are again sub-divided into Provinces, thus

*East-Gothland*; contains,

*East-Gothland* properly so call'd; the chief Towns whereof are,

*Smaland*; the chief Towns are,

*Oenaland*,

*Northkoping.*  
*Soderkoping.*  
*Lincoping.*  
*Wadstena.*  
*Schoning.*

*Calmar.*  
*Wexia.*  
*Jonekoping.*  
*Ekesio.*  
*Westerwick.*

*Barkholme.*  
*West.*



West-Gothland.	{	West-Gothland proper.	{	Gottemborg.
				Lidköping.
				Scaren.
	{	Wermeland.	{	Mariefstadt.
				Talleköping.
				Carolstadt.
	{	Dalia.	{	Philipsstadt.
				Ruscog.
				Daleborg.
	{	Schonen.	{	Tweta.
				Lund.
				Malmagen.
	{	Bleking.	{	Landskroon.
				Helsingborg.
				Ydstede.
	{	Halland.	{	Christianople.
				Christianstadt.
				Ahuys.
	{		{	Retenby.
				Elleholm.
				Helmstede.
	{		{	Falkenberg.
				Labolm.
				Wardberg.

*East-Gothland*, properly so call'd, lies between *Sudermania* on the North, *Smaland* on the South, the *Baltick-Sea* on the East, and the *Lake Wetter* on the West; it is a Champaign Country, and produces plenty of Corn and Cattle, as also Fish, Fowl, and Venison.

*Smaland* has *East-Gothland* on the North, *Bleking* on the South, the *Baltick* on the East, and *Halland* on the West; it is a large Province, abounds much in Wood, and has great store of Cattle which are exported abroad; here are also Mines of Copper, Lead, and Iron.

*Oenalandia* is a pleasant and fruitful Island, lying off the Coast of *Smaland*, formerly belonging to the *Dane*, but yielded to *Gustavus Adolphus*, A. 1613.

*West-Gothland*, properly so call'd, is also a large Province, lying North from *Smaland*, between the *Lake Wetter* on the East, and *Halland* and the *Baltick* on the West; it affords abundance of excellent Pasturage, whereby great quantities of Cattle are bred, and the Country made wealthy by the Vent of them.

*Wermeland* is parted from *Westro-Gothland*, on the South, by the large Lake of *Wenner*, hath *Dalecarlia* on the North, *Westmannia* and *Nericia* on the East, and *Dalia* on the West. It is a mountainous and woody Country, having some Mines of Iron, and one of Copper; many Lakes, and some Rivers.

*Dalia*, a smaller Province than any of the former, lies on the West of the *Lake Wener* and *Wermeland*, hath the Government of *Babus* (already mention'd in our Account of *Norway*) and the Province of *Aggerhuys* on the East and South: It is a mountainous and barren Country; but being water'd with many Rivers and Lakes, it affords pretty good Pasturage for the Cattle, which are of a larger size than ordinary.

*Schonen* or *Scania*, is a *Peninsula*, surrounded by the *Baltick Sea*, except on the North, where it is joyned to *Smaland*. *Luyts* calls it *Provincia Nobilissima Gothiae*; it abounds with Corn, Cattle, Fowl,

and all Conveniencies of Life, and hath also Mines of Silver, Lead, and Iron: It is in Form near square, and about 50 or 60 Miles over either way. This Province formerly belong'd to the *Dane*, and was yielded to the *Sweeds* in 1660. as was also at the same time time

*B'eking*, a narrow Tract of Land, lying along the Coast of the *Baltick* on the South of *Smaland*, and East of *Schonen*: It is a mountainous and woody Country, and not to compare for fruitfulness with *Schonen*.

*Hallandia* is another Tract of Land, lying along the Coast of *Sinus Codanus*, or mouth of the *Baltick*, having *Westro-Gothia* on the East and North, and *Schonen* on the South: It is a pleasant and fruitful Country. This also was formerly part of *Denmark*; but was in 1645. put into the Hands of *Queen Christina*, as a Security for the *Sweeds* free passing the Sound; and since, by Treaty at *R'schild* in 1658. it was granted to 'em for ever.

### *A more particular Account of the Cities and Towns of chief Note in Gothland.*

*Lunden*, the Metropolis of *Schonen*, stands in the Latitude of 56 Deg. 30 miles East from *Copenhagen*, 250 South East from *Stockholm*, and about 10 miles West from the Streight of the Sound. It was formerly the Seat of an Archbishop; but in 1527. when the *Sweeds* took the City, that Bishopric was removed to *Copenhagen*; and it is now only an Episcopal See, and adorn'd with a University, erected by the *Sweeds* in 1668. It has been a very considerable City, having in it 22 Churches; whereof the Cathedral of *St. Laurence* is a magnificent Structure, having a very high Spire that is a Land-mark for Sailors; and a Clock of most ingenious Contrivance, said to be the Work of *Caspar Bartholinus*: which not only shews the Hour, Day, Month, and Year, together with all the Festivals, but also the Movements are so artificially contriv'd, that at the Hours two Horsemen come forth and encounter each other, giving so many blows as the Hammer is to strike upon the Bell; then a Door opens, discovering the Virgin *Mary* sitting on a Throne with Christ in her Arms, and the *Magi* doing Reverence, and two Trumpeters sounding the while. The Altar also of this Church is of beautiful Structure, and the Vault under the Quire very spacious. At present, the City is not in so flourishing a State as it has been. Near it is a Hill, where (according to *Joan. Meursius*) in ancient Times the Kings were elected.

*Malmogen*, a Port-Town of good Trade, stands on the Sound, over against *Copenhagen*, and 10 miles South East from *Lund*; it is sometimes named *Ellebogen*.

*Landskroon* stands also on the Sound, 16 miles West from *Lund*; it is a strong, well fortified Town, built by *Ericus VIII.* in 1413. having a very good Haven, a fair Market-Place, and is much resorted to by Merchants, especially at its Annual Fair at *Midsummer*. *Christian III.* King of *Denmark*, built the Castle and improv'd the Fortifications; and it is at present a Place of great Importance and Strength.

*Helsingberg* a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Castle, stands on the Shoar of the Sound, 20 miles North West from *Lund*, over against



*Elfsneur*, and is the other Key to the Passage of the Sound; in the Castle there is a very high square Tower, which is a Direction to Sailors; and in the Town are held two Annual Fairs, wherein great Quantities of Merchandize are vended. It was granted to the Swedes by the Treaty of Roschild in 1558. re-taken by the Danes in 1676. but restored the next Year.

*Ahus* in *Beking*, stands on the Baltick, on the Confinnes of *Schonen*.

*Christianstadt* stands a few miles to the Northward; it is a strong Place, being built in a Marsh which renders it inaccessible; but it was taken by the Danes in 1676. and re-taken by the Swedes two Years after.

*Eklm* or *Elskhelm*, are both Port-Towns on the Baltick, as is also

*Christianopis*, the chief Town in *Beking*, situated on the extrem East part of it, 100 miles North East from *Lund*, and near 30 South from *Calmar*: It was very well fortified by *Christian IV.* against the Irruptions of the Swedes.

*Calmar*, the Capital of *Smaland*, is a considerable City, situate on the Baltick, over against the Island *Oeland*, 160 miles South West from *Stockholm*, and about 100 North East from *Lund*. It has a very convenient Harbour much frequented by Merchants from divers Nations, and gives name to the Channel between it and *Oeland*, called *Calmar Sund*. The City is regularly fortified, and the Citadel much esteemed for its Strength. This was formerly a Bishop's See, and the Cathedral dignified with the Privileges of an Ecclesiastical College; at present a Superintendent for the Government of the Clergy resides here, who is honoured with a Place in the publick Consistory of the Kingdom. In 1647, so dreadful a Fire happen'd here, that the whole City, except about 60 Houses, were burnt down; but it was soon re-built, and is a Place of very good Trade, and the Passage from Sweden to Germany. In the Wars between Sweden and Denmark, this City was several times taken and re-taken, particularly in 1611. *Christian IV.* King of Denmark gaining it by Storm, put all the Inhabitants to the Sword.

*Wexio*, a Bishop's See, where some of the first Planters of Christianity lie buried, stands on the Bank of a Lake near 60 miles West from *Calmar*.

*Westerwick*, a Port-Town of good Trade on the Baltick Sea, stands 50 miles North from *Calmar*.

*Ekeflo* stands 50 miles West from *Westerwick*, And,

*Fenecping* 20 from it, 75 from *Calmar* to the North West, and 35 directly North from *Wexio*, and stands on the Lake *Wetter*. It is a City naked of Walls, but of great Antiquity; and some Trade by means of the Lake.

*Halmstadt*, the Capital of *Halland*, stands on the *Sinus Codanus*, or Mouth of the Baltick, 130 miles

West from *Calmar*, and 60 North from *Lund*, is a good Port and a Place of Trade.

*Falckenberg* stands on a River of the same name, not 20 miles from *Helmstadt*.

*Laholm*, a fortified Town, on the South side of *Helmstadt*, on the River *Laga*: And,

*Warbe g* about 20 miles North from *Falckenberg*, are all Port-Towns and Places of Trade.

*Gottenburg* or *Gothburg*, the chief Town of *Westro-Gothia*, stands on the *Sinus Codanus* at the Mouth of the River *Treibetta* in the Latitude of 58.0. about 110 miles North from *Lund*, 170 West from *Calmar*, and 260 South West from *Stockholm*. It is a considerable Mart-Town, with a very commodious Harbour, and endowed with many Privileges which make it frequented by Merchants Ships from all Nations. The Town is strongly fortified, and was able to resist the Danish Fleet, who attack'd it in 1644.

*Sara* or *Scaren*, the ancient Seat of the Gothish Kings, and at present a Bishop's See, stands 75 miles to the North East of *Gottenburg*. It is now a fenceless City, tho' heretofore the Metropolis of *West Gothia*.

*Lidköping* stands 15 miles North from *Scaren*, and on the Banks of the Lake *Wener*; and *Marionsladt* on the same Lake, 30 miles East from *Lidköping*, are both Cities, but at present not very eminent.

*Deleberg*, the chief Town of *Dalia*, stands on the Lake *Wener*, 45 miles North from *Gottenburg*.

*Treta*, stands also on the same Lake, 30 miles more to the North.

*Carolsstadt*, the Capital of *Wermelandia*, is seated on the North East side of the same Lake *Wener*, 150 miles West from *Stockholm*. It was built by *Charles IX.* King of Sweden in the place of the ancient City *Tingvalla*.

*Philipsstadt* stands about 20 miles East from *Carolsstadt*: And,

*Ruscog* about the same distance South from *Philipsstadt*.

*Linköping*, the Capital of *Ostro-Gothia*, stands in the middle of that Province, 80 miles North from *Calmar*, and near 100 South East from *Carolsstadt*. It is a pleasant, but small City, the See of a Bishop, and has a stately Church, built by one *Herebertus*, one of the first Planters of Christianity here.

*Suderköping*, a handsome, but fenceless City, stands about 20 miles East from *Linköping*.

*Steegeberg* stands on the Baltick, a few miles East from *Suderköping*.

*Norköping* stands on the Banks of a Lake, between *Linköping* and *Suderköping*.

*Schening* was anciently a famous City, wherein a Council was held in 1284. but is now a ruin'd and inconsiderable Town.

*Wedstena* stands on the Lake *Wetter*, 25 miles West from *Linköping*.



## C H A P. IV.

## Sweedish L A P L A N D.

**A**N D now having surveyed *Gothland* and *Sweeden*, we shall pass to *Lapland*, the Inhabitants whereof being far different in their Manners and Customs from the other Europeans, we shall detain the Reader with a short Account of them.

**SWEEDISH LAPLAND** is a large Country lying North of *Sweeden*, properly so called, extending from East to West above 400 miles, and from the 65th to the 68th Degree of Latitude; being bounded on the North by the Province of *Wardbys*, or the Norwegian *Lapland*; on the East by the Muscovian *Lapland*; on the West by the Mountains of *Daarfeild*, which divide it from *Norway*; and on the South by the Provinces of *Femptia*, *Angermania*, *West Bothnia*, the Gulf or Sea of *Bothnia*, and *East Bothnia*. The Air is extream Cold, and the Soil barren, except in the southern Parts, where some Pot-herbs and Roots, as Parsnips, Coleworts, &c. are produc'd, but no sort of Grain will grow here. The Country is water'd with many Rivers and Lakes, so that vast Woods are found here, which shelter abundance of wild Beasts; such as Bears, Elks, Rain Deer, Stags, Wolves, Foxes, Sables, Martins, Ermines, Otters, Beavers, &c. the Skins whereof afford the Inhabitants Cloathing, and their Flesh, Food. Horses, Oxen and Sheep they have none, but make use of Rain-Deer to draw the Sledges on which they Travel and carry Burdens, and slide along on the Snow with great Celerity. The Inhabitants are of short Stature, but strong and nimble, and employ themselves in Hunting the wild Beasts: They are in their Temper, superstitious, timorous, and mean spirited, exceedingly addicted to Magick, and very revengeful; but withal, they are Charitable; and tho' notoriously Deceitful in bargaining, are never guilty of Theft. Their Houses are but Tents, made of Posts, and cover'd with Canvas, or by the poorer sort, only with Boughs of Trees; and are removed as their Occasions for Hunting or Fishing require, or as the Season invites 'em Northward or drives 'em Southward. Their Garments are made of the Skins of wild Beasts, or else of our coarsest woollen Cloath, which the better sort wear on Holy-days; on their Heads they wear Caps made of the Skin of some Fowl, with the Feathers outwards, and Wings on. Their Diet is either Fish, or the Flesh of Rain-Deer, which they sometimes eat raw, or the better sort boil it, but most commonly it is dryed in the Sun; and for Bread, they make use of dryed Fish ground small: Their Drink is fair Water, and sometimes when they can get it, Brandy, which they much esteem, as also Tobacco: Their Children they use to great Hardiness, dipping 'em as soon as born in cold Water, afterwards in hot Water; and then covering 'em in Moss, carry 'em many Miles to be Baptiz'd; as they grow up, they use them betimes to the Bow and Arrow, and place their Victuals on a Post which they must shoot down before they eat it. Marriage is held sacred among them, and Adultery rarely committed, or if known, constant-

ly punished; Polygamy is never allowed, nor clandestine Marriages ever contracted. Their Wealth consists in the numbers of Rain-Deer; and the Tribute they pay the King, consists in dryed Fish, Furrs, and sometimes Rain-Deer, or in lieu of it Money, which every Man pays annually, according to his Circumstances, to the King's Commissioners. They have Markets and Fairs among them, to which Merchants resort out of *Sweeden*, *Muscovy*, and *Norway*, to buy Furrs and sell Cloaths and other Necessaries: Some Money the richer sort have, but not much; and the generality live without it upon the Beasts and Fish they catch themselves.

The *Laplanders* are supposed by some, to have been descended from the *Finlanders* and *Samieds*, who were driven from their own Country, first by the *Tartars*, and afterwards fled from the *Sweeds*, when about the middle of the Thirteenth Century King *Ericus* subdued the *Finlanders* and planted Christianity among them. The word *Laplander* implies a banish'd Man or Runagade, wherefore the better sort of 'em will not to this day be call'd so. They lived for some Ages in a stragling condition, without Laws or Government, practising their stupid Idolatry and diabolical Magick, 'till in the end they were intirely subdued by the *Sweeds* about the Year 1600. and Christianity planted among them. King *Gustavus Adolphus* built publick Schools and many Churches, which by the pious care of succeeding Princes being encreased, and Ministers maintain'd by the King out of the Tributes paid by the People, Christianity has made considerable Advances; not but that there are still a great many Idolaters and Magicians in *Lapland*. In their Idolatry they worship the Sun, and several Deities which they represent in Wood, every Family having one. The chief God to whom they make publick Sacrifice, they call *Thor*; he is represented by the Stump of a Tree, and the usual Sacrifice is a Rain-Deer; another of their Gods they call *Storjunkaer*, whom they suppose to be *Thor's* Lieutenant. The Temples of the God *Thor* are usually in the Woods, consisting in Trees laid in round form one on another without any covering; *Storjunkaer* they worship in Mountains and Rocks. Their Magick is exceeding wonderful, at least if the Relations of Travellers be true; for they tell us, that the Mariners for a Sum of Money, can procure of them such Winds as their Voyage requires, receiving a String with several Knots, which being untied, cause the Wind to encrease. In their Divinations they use a Drum, which having struck violently on, they lye down as in a Trance for a short space, and then answer the Question. They have also magical Darts, whereby they do what Injuries they please; and even so powerful are their Charms, that they will split Rocks and level Mountains. But these devilish Practices are suppress'd by the *Sweeds*, and being discovered are severely punished, which makes 'em much less frequent than formerly.



*The Smeedish Lapland is divided into five Provinces, viz.*

*Torne Lapmark* the most Northern part, in which stands the Town *Tingwara*, in the Latitude of 65. 40. *Segguro* about 30 miles to the South of it; *Peldjerfui* 100 East from *Tingwara*; *Kittilabay* on the Confines of *Kimi Lapmark*, 70 miles South from *Peldjerfui*; and *Torne* a Port-Town at the bottom of the *Bothnick Gulf*.

*Kimi-Lapmark* on the East of *Torne*, and on the North of *Cajania*; in it are *Somby*, *Kimibi*, *Kelajerfui*, all within 20 miles of one another, at the Foot of the Mountains, which part this from the Norwegian and Muscovite *Lapland*. *Solden-Kyle*

and *Kitjerfui* ye more to the Southward, and *Kimi* on the *Bothnick Gulf* near *Torne*.

*Lula-Lapmark* lies on the South of *Torne* from the Confines of *West Bothnia* to the *Defrine Mountains*, and has these Towns, *Terpajour* in the North part, *Sirkelucht* 30 miles more South, and *Jekmuka* to the Westward.

*Pitha-Lapmark* the next southern Province, hath *Sitononia* in the North near the *Defrine Mountains*, and *Lochtari* near the Confines of *Bothnia*.

*Uma-Lapmark* the last and most southern Province, adjoining to *Angermania* with *Bothnia* on the East, and the *Defrine Mountains* on the West, hath *Loisby* or *Laisby* in the middle, and *Semisjerfie* on the Confines of *Pitha*.

In the Province of *Torne-Lapmark* is a Mine of Iron, and in *Pitha-Lapmark* is a Mine of Silver.

## CHAP. V.

### F I N L A N D.

**F**INLAND, a large Country, extending from the Arctick Circle, or the Confines of *Kimi-Lapmark* in the North, to that Branch of the *Baltick Sea*, to which it gives name in the South; the *Onega-Lake* and *Muscovy* being its Boundary on the East, and the *Bothnick-Bay* on the West, being 400 miles in length and as many in breadth. It was formerly a barbarous Nation, govern'd by Kings of their own, but conquer'd about the middle of the Thirteenth Century by *Ericus IX.* King of *Sweden*; and since that hath been sometimes the Inheritance of the Brothers of the Kings of *Sweden*, but is now united to the Crown. It is divided into these seven Parts, viz.

*CAJANIA*, otherwise called *East Bothnia*, the most northern Province extending from *Kimi-Lapmark* along the Gulf or Sea, to which this and the other *Bothnia* give name, near 300 miles in length: It abounds with Rivers which empty themselves in the *Bothnick-Bay*, and hath a large Lake called *Ula Tresk*; Mountains also fill up the northern and eastern Parts, and the rest of the Country is reasonably Fertile.

*SAVOLAXIA*, which hath *Cajania* on the North, *Carelia* on the South, *Kexholm* on the East, and *Tavasthus* on the West. This Province, as also *Kexholm*, abounds with Lakes and Rivers which discharge themselves into the great Lake *Ladoga*, and afford the Inhabitants abundance of Fish.

*KEXHOLM* lies between *Savolaxia* on the West, and *Muscovy* on the East, *Muscovian-Lapland* on the North, and the Lake *Ladoga* on the South. It is a large Tract of Land, but on the North and East very mountainous, and the other part almost cover'd with Lakes. It formerly belong'd to the *Russians*, but conquer'd by *Gustavus Adolphus*, was granted to him at the Treaty in 1616. This Province, by some Geographers, is included under the general name of *Carelia*.

*CARELIA* lies on the South of *Savolaxia* to the Banks of the Gulf of *Finland* and Lake of *Ladoga*. It is a flourishing Country, extending from

East to West near 200 miles, but its breadth is not proportionable.

*NYLANDIA* is a small Province on the Gulf of *Finland*, between *Carelia* on the East, *Finland* on the West, and *Tavasthia* on the North, so call'd, q. d. *New Land*, because its ancient Inhabitants the *Finlanders* being driven out, new Colonies of *Sweeds* were sent to possess it.

*TAVASTIA* is an inland Province between *Finland* on the West, *Savolaxia* on the East, *Cajania* on the North, and *Nylandia* on the South; it hath several Lakes, especially the great one of *Jende*.

**FINLAND**, properly so call'd, hath *Nylandia* and *Tavasthus* on the East, the *Finnic-Bay* on the South, *Cajania* on the North, and the *Bothnick-Bay* on the West. It is in some parts mountainous, but otherwise a rich Soil; and being half encompass'd by the Sea, hath the advantage of much Traffick. The Country is so pleasant that some have fancied it to be called *Finland*, q. d. *Fine-Land*. This Province, *Nylandia* and *Carelia* afford good Pasturage and large Breeds of Oxen, Horses, and other Cattle.

*The Cities and chief Towns in the respective Provinces are these,*

In <i>Cajania</i> ,	<i>Cajeneburg.</i>
	<i>Ulabourg.</i>
	<i>Ula.</i>
	<i>Lochta.</i>
<i>Savolaxia</i> ,	<i>Wassa.</i>
	<i>Koskinpe.</i>
	<i>Rumal.</i>
<i>Kexholm</i> ,	<i>Nyslot.</i>
	<i>Lexa.</i>
	<i>Kexholm.</i>
<i>Carelia</i> ,	<i>Wiburg.</i>
	<i>Wekelax.</i>
	<i>Mala.</i>

*Nyland,*



Nyland,	{	Helsingfors.
		Borgo.
		Elima.
Tavasthia,	{	Tavasthus.
		Haubo.
		Padafioiki.
Findland, di- vided into South and North,	{	Bjorneborgh.
		Abo.
		Raumo.
		Nykirky.
		Masko.
		Raseborg.

*Cajaneburg*, is a Fort seated on the North-East side of the Lake *Ula*, about 30 or 40 miles from the Confines of *Lapland*, and 120 from the Coast of the *Bothnick* Gulf, in the Latitude of 65. 0.

*Ulabourg*, another Fortress stands on the Coast of the *Bothnick* Bay, in the same Latitude with *Cajaneburg*.

*Ula* is a Sea Town near it, at the Mouth of the River, to which it gives name.

*Lohta* and *Wassa* are both Sea-Towns on the same Coast; the former 60 and the latter 150 miles to the South of *Ula*.

*Koskinpa* the chief Town of *Savolaxia*, stands on a Lake in the Latitude of 62. 0. about 180 miles from the *Bothnick* Coast.

*Nyslot* is a strong Fort, seated on a Lake about 80 miles East from *Kospinge*. It was built in the Year 1475. by *Eric Axelsson*, Governor of *Abo*, and is of use against the Invasion of the *Muscovite*.

*Runal* is named by *Luytz* as one of the chief Towns of this Province, but by the Maps *Saminge*, which stands on the Banks of the same Lake, a few miles South from *Nyslot*, as *Runal* does about 30 miles more to the West, seems rather to deserve the Character.

*Lexa*, in the North part of the Province of *Kexholm*, stands on the Banks of a Lake in the Latitude of 63. 40. Longitude 55. 0.

*Kexholm*, which gives name to the Province, but called by the *Russians*, *Carelogorod*, stands on the West-side of the Lake *Ladoga*, in the Latitude of 61. 10. It is a strong Town, and with the Province, formerly was subject to the *Muscovite*, 'till about the beginning of this Century, when the Czar promised *Charles IX.* King of *Sueden* to surrender this Town and Country to him if he would assist him against the *Poles*, by whom he was then hardly beset; but being freed from the Danger, refused to perform, which made the *Sweeds* invade

his Countries, and oblige the *Russes* to yield up by Treaty, in the Year 1616. Not only this place, but also the most considerable Places of *Ingria*.

*Wiborg*, the chief City of the *Suedish Carelia*, stands at the bottom of a Bay of the *Finnick* Gulf, about 40 miles South-West from *Kexholm*: It is a Place of great Trade, and the See of a Bishop; has a convenient Haven, and is fortified with Trenches, Forts, and a strong Castle, by the means whereof it has often resisted the furious Attacks of the *Muscovites*.

*Mala* stands about 30 miles South from *Wiborg*, on a small Bay that reaches to *Kexholm*, and falls into the Lake *Oncga*.

*Wekelax* is a Sea-Port on the *Finnick* Bay, about 60 miles West from *Wiborg*.

*Helsingfors* the chief City of *Nylandia*, stands near the Mouth of the River *Winda*, which falls into the *Finnick* Gulf, 150 miles West from *Wiborg*, and about 90 East from *Abo*.

*Borgo*, another Port-Town, stands at the Mouth of a small River, about 20 miles East from *Helsingfors*.

*Tavasthus*, called also *Croneburg*, the Capital of *Tavasthia*, is a strong Fortress built by *Berjerus Ferl*, the *Suedish* General in 1250. when he had conquer'd this Country and establish'd Christianity there. It stands 70 miles North from *Helsingfors*, and about 90 North-West from *Abo*.

*Haubo* stands on a Branch of the Lake *Jende*, which extends almost the length of this Province, about 20 miles North from *Tavasthus*.

*Padafioiki* stands on the Lake *Jende*, about 30 miles North-East from *Haubo*.

*Abo*, the Capital of South Finland, stands on the River *Aviorki*, near the *Baltick*-Sea, and about 50 miles from the Gulf of Finland, in the Latitude of 61. 0. Longitude 44. 0. and 160 miles North-East from *Stockholm*. It is the See of a Bishop, and adorn'd with a University; and is also a City of good Trade.

*Bjorneburg*, the chief Town of North Finland, stands on the Coast of the *Bothnick* Gulf, 90 miles North from *Abo*.

*Raumo* and *Nykirky* stand both on the same Coast, the former 30 and the latter 60 miles South from *Bjorneburg*.

*Masko* stands about 10 miles West from *Abo*.

*Raseborg* stands on the Gulf of Finland, 50 miles East from *Abo*. It is by some Geographers reckon'd to stand within the Limits of *Nylandia*; and has sometime had a Territory belonging to it which constituted a Principality.

## CHAP. VI.

### LIVONIA or Liefland.

**L**IVONIA, or as it is called in the Language of the Country, *LEIFLAND*, is a Fertile Country, lying on the South side of the Gulf of Finland, having a part of the *Baltick* Sea, denominated the Gulf of *Riga*, on the West, *Muscovy* and *Ingria* on the East, the Dutchy of *Courland*, and some part of *Lithuania* on the South, and as we have said, the *Finnish* Gulf on the

North. So that it is surrounded on the West and North with the Sea, on the East hath the great Lake of *Peibus*, and on the South the commodious River *Dwina*; which rising in *Muscovy*, passes by the Confines of *Livonia*, dividing it from *Courland*, and thereby the convenience of Navigation is afforded to every part of this Province: In the middle of it are three other Lakes, and many small Rivers, which water



water the Country; and tho' in some Parts it is marshy, yet in the general 'tis very fruitful, yielding especially Corn, Pasture, and Honey in abundance. Its Extent from North to South is about 160 miles, and from East to West 120 miles. The many Conquests this Country has suffered render its Inhabitants a mixture of *Muscovites*, *Suedes*, *Polanders*, and *Germans*, the latter whereof being the most numerous makes their Language generally spoken. In its ancient State the Dutchy of *Courland* and *Samigallia* were reckon'd part of *Livonia*; but the *Suedes* having this, and the *Poles* those, it has, for some time stood thus divided. From the first Conversion of this Country, the Archbishop of *Riga* and the Teutonic Order seem to have had the Government of it, 'till about 1557. upon a Difference between the Archbishop and the Grand Master, the Czar of *Muscovy* invaded *Livonia*; but the *Suedes* being call'd in to assist the *Lieflanders*, drove out the *Muscovites*; and the *Poles* having Pretensions to this Country, for some time a Contest was carried on between them, 'till by the *Muscovites* gaining Ground, they perceiv'd their Mistake and agreed; and finally, in the Year 1660. this Province was resign'd to *Sueden* by *John Casimir* King of *Poland*. It is to be noted, that the most southern Part of *Liefland* is still subject to *Poland*. It is divided into three Parts, 1. *Esten* or *Esthonia*, which takes up all the northern Part. 2. *Odepoa*, the middle; And, 3. *Letten* or *Letitia*, the southern Part. *Esthonia* is again divided into five Parts, viz. *Alentakia*, *Wiria*, *Harrja*, *Wicia*, and *Fervia*. The chief Towns in this Province are these,

In <i>Esthonia</i> , subdivided into these Parts,	{	<i>Alentakia</i> ,	{ <i>Narva.</i> <i>Nieslot.</i>
		<i>Wiria</i> ,	{ <i>Wesenberg.</i> <i>Tolsburg.</i> <i>Borchholm.</i>
	{	<i>Harrja</i> ,	{ <i>Revel.</i> <i>Badis.</i>
		<i>Vika, Wicia,</i> or <i>Wikke</i> ,	{ <i>Habsel.</i> <i>Lebal.</i> <i>Wickel</i> or <i>Wyck.</i>
	{	<i>Fervia</i> ,	{ <i>Wittenstein.</i> <i>Oberpalen.</i> <i>Las.</i>
			{ <i>Parnaw.</i> <i>Derpat</i> or <i>Derpt.</i> <i>Warbeck.</i> <i>Ringen.</i>
	{	In <i>Odepoa</i> ,	{ <i>Odepol.</i> <i>Nienhausen.</i> <i>Marienburg.</i> <i>Tarnest.</i> <i>Fellin.</i>
			{ <i>Riga.</i> <i>Dunamund.</i> <i>Koekenbaus.</i> <i>Walmer.</i> <i>Wenden.</i> <i>Sevold.</i>
	{	In <i>Letten</i> ,	{ <i>Riga.</i> <i>Dunamund.</i> <i>Koekenbaus.</i> <i>Walmer.</i> <i>Wenden.</i> <i>Sevold.</i>
			{ <i>Riga.</i> <i>Dunamund.</i> <i>Koekenbaus.</i> <i>Walmer.</i> <i>Wenden.</i> <i>Sevold.</i>

*Narva* is seated on a River of the same name (which separates *Livonia* from *Ingria*, and here falls in the *Finnic* Bay) in the Latitude of 59. 0. Longitude 50. 0. at the distance of 170 miles from *Riga* to the North-East, and 100 from *Revel* to the East,

and is called the *German Narva*, to distinguish it from the *Russian Narva*. It is a place of great Strength and Consideration, and well garison'd by the *Suedish* Soldiers; it is also defended by a strong Castle, named *Juanogored*, which stands on the other side of the River in *Ingria*, and was taken by *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1617. In general it is reckon'd one of the best Fortresses in this Country. The Town was built by *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark* in 1223. was taken by the *Muscovites* in 1558. recover'd by the *Suedes* in 1581. and granted to them by Treaty in 1599. It has a convenient Port to the Gulf of *Finland*, and is a place of Trade.

*Nieslot* or *Neuschlos* is a strong Fort on the River *Narva*, near the Lake *Peipus*.

*Borchholm* stands about 60 miles West from *Narva*.

*Wesenberg*, 20 miles North-West from *Borchholm*, near the River *Weisenaa*, is a place of Strength, and was taken from the *Muscovites* by the *Suedes* in 1581.

*Tolsburg*, a Port-Town on the *Finnic* Gulf, is about 12 miles distant from *Wesenberg* to the North.

*Revel* or *Revalia*, anciently the Metropolis of *Liefland*, is a small but handsome and well fortified City, seated on the *Finnic* Gulf, about 60 miles from *Tolsburg*, and about 100 from *Narva* to the West. It is one of the most considerable Mart-Towns in these Parts, and is adorn'd with a *Gymnasium* or small University, wherein Professors and Tutors are maintain'd to teach the Liberal Arts. It was formerly an Episcopal See, but since Lutheranism has been establish'd here, a Superintendent governs the Ecclesiastical Affairs. The City was founded by *Waldemar II.* King of *Denmark* in 1230. was sold to the great Master; and in 1561. being in danger of falling into the *Muscovites* Hands, it subjected its self to the *Suede*, who has ever since had the Protection of it, but it still enjoys large Immunities, and is very considerable on account of its Trade and commodious Haven.

*Badis* or *Padis*, is a Fort seated on the River *Assa*, about 20 miles West from *Revel*.

*Habsel*, Seated on a small Gulph of the *Baltick*, to which it gives Name, over against the Island *Dagbo*, 30 miles South-West from *Padis*, and about 40 South-West from *Revel*, was formerly subject to the Danes, but in 1572. being taken by the *Muscovite*, was gained by the *Suede*, in 1581. and was sometime the See of a Bishop.

*Lebal* stands also on the *Baltick*, 15 miles South from *Habsel*, is a place of Strength, and has a Castle of good Force.

*Wickel* or *Wyke*, is another Fort in the same Neighbourhood.

*Wittenstein*, 70 miles East from *Lebal*, and 45 South-East from *Revel*: As also *Oberpalen* and *Lanate*, all Places of Moment for Strength.

*Parnow*, *Parnavia*, seated on a River of the same Name, which here falls into a small Bay of the *Baltick*, at the distance of about 50 miles from *Revel* to the South, 90 from *Riga* to the North. It is a small City, but a Place of good Trade, great quantity of Corn especially being Ship'd hence for the *Netherlands*. It is pretty well Fortified, but owes its Strength chiefly to its Citadel. The *Polanders* made this the Capital of one of their Palatinates, when it was under their Jurisdiction; but since the Year, 1617. it has been subject to the *Suede*, after having been taken and re-taken many times in the last Age.



*Derpat* or *Derpt*, *Torpatum*, a large and ancient City on the River *Embeck*, 15 miles from the Lake *Peipus*, and somewhat more from the *Werczer-zee* another Lake, 100 miles from *Parnow* to the East, and 120 from *Riga* to the North-East. It was formerly the See of a Bishop, and is at present adorn'd with an University founded by *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1632. on account of its being a pleasant, healthy Place, and abounding with Provisions and all Necessaries: The Buildings are of Stone and Brick, but not so well maintained and inhabited as they have been. It has a strong Castle for its Defence, seated on a Hill, but has however been subjected to many Masters, for the *Teutonic* Knights took it from the *Muscovites* in 1280, the *Poles* took it in 1582, afterwards the *Suedes* drove them out, but in 1603 they regain'd and kept it till 1625, when the *Suedes* finally took it again, and have ever since possessed it.

*Warbeck* stands on the Mouth of the River *Embeck* near the Lake *Peibus*

*Nienhaus* 40 miles South from *Derpt*, on the Borders of *Muscovy*. And

*Marienburg*, about 20 miles South-west from *Nienhaus*, are all three Ports of good Strength.

*Odenpol*, 12 miles South from *Derpt*, is a small Town, and only considerable for giving Name to this Division of *Livonia*.

*Fellin* stands on a small River that passes from the *Werczer-zee* to *Pernaw*, 50 miles from that City to the East, and as many from *Derpt* to the West.

*Ringen* is a Fort 35 miles distant from *Fellin* to the South.

*Tarnest* is another Fort formerly very strong when in the Hands of the *Muscovites*, but so demolished when the *Poles* took it, that tho' the *Suedes* have spent much in repairing it, is not yet arrived to what it was.

*Riga* called *Riig* by the Inhabitants, and *Rigen* by the Germans, is the Metropolis of *Livonia*, the See of an Arch-bishop, and a great Emporium. It is seated on the River *Dwina* near its Mouth which makes a commodious Haven, from the Gulf of the *Baltick* Sea that takes its Name from this City, in the Latitude of 57. 0. Longitude 46. 0. and at the distance of 90 miles from *Pernaw*, and 120 from *Revel* to the South, 25 from *Mittaw* in *Courland* to the North, not above 4 Leagues from the Gulf of *Riga* to the East, and about 80 Leagues from *Stockholm* to the South-East. It is a very considerable City, being well built, full of Inhabitants, and a

place of vast Traffick for Corn, Hemp, Flax, Pitch, Tar, Planks, Skins and Furs of all sorts, all which with many other necessary Commodities are brought hither on Sledges over the Ice and Snow in the Winter, and stor'd up for the English, Dutch and German Merchants, who send large Fleets of Ships in the Summer-time to fetch these, and carry the Inhabitants the other Goods of Southern Countries. The City was first founded about the latter end of the Twelfth Century, and in 1215. was made a Metropolitan See by Pope *Innocent III*. It was sometime the Seat of the Great Master of the *Teutonic* Order, and afterwards entred in the *Hanseatick* League, and was for some Years a free Town, under the Protection of the Emperor; in 1581. it was taken by the *Poles*, and soon after endowed with large Immunities: The *Suedish* King, *Charles IX*. twice attempted it, and his Son *Gustavus Adolphus* finally took it, since when it has always been subject to the *Suede*.

It is a large City, but however well fortified, having strong Walls, Bulwarks, and a very large Trench on the Land-side, and a strong Castle on the River, wherein resides the general Governor of *Livonia*. The Haven is furthermore securely guarded by the

*Dunamund*-Fort, or as it is called, the *Dunamunder Schans*, seated about 2 Leagues below the City near the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, as its name declares, and is a Fortrefs of great Importance, having the command of the Passage to *Riga*; so that without leave from the Governor no Ship can sail thither. It was always esteemed a Place of great strength, but could not however resist the Courage of the King of *Poland's* *Saxon* Army, who by general Assault took it in the Year 1699.

*Kakenhusen* or *Kockehaus*, is a strong Fort seated on the River *Dwina*, 60 miles East from *Riga*: It was anciently the Residence of the Archbishop.

*Sewold* or *Segenwold*, stands 30 miles, and *Wenden* 45 miles, North-East from *Riga*, both on the South-side of the River *Teyder*: And,

*Wolmer* stands on the North-Bank of the same River, 60 miles North-East from *Riga*.

Many lesser Towns and Forts are found in this Country, particularly *Dumenburg*, seated on the *Dwina*, 60 miles above *Kakenhausen*; but this being subject to *Poland*, may be more properly spoken of there.

## C H A P. VII.

### I N G R I A.

**I**NGRIA or *INGERMANLAND* is a fruitful and pleasant Province lying on the North-East of *Livonia*, having on the North the Lake *Ladoga*, the River *Nieva* (which divides it from *Carelia* in *Finland*) and the Gulf of *Finland*, on the South and East *Muscovy*, and on the West *Livonia*. Its Extent from East to West, is near 150 miles, and from North to South about 80 miles. It is a good Country, free from Lakes, but water'd with Rivers, and produces the Necessaries for Life. It abounds with Cattle and Beasts; and has espe-

cially a great number of *Elks*, who in the Summer Season change their Quarters and swim over the River *Nieva* into *Carelia*; but at the approach of Winter return the same way. This Country was formerly subject to the *Muscovite*, but added to *Sueden* by *Gustavus Adolphus*, to whom it was entirely resign'd by the Czar *Michael Federowitz*, in the Treaty of *Stockholm*, A. D. 1618. which was afterwards confirm'd in 1661. Its Situation renders it very considerable, being a Communication between *Finland* and *Livonia*, and a Frontier against *Muscovy*.



*Muscovy*. It is by some Geographers divided into three Parts, 1. *Ingria*, 2. *Ingermania*, and 3. *Soluskia*. The chief Towns in this Province are,

*Notteburg*, or *Oreska*. } *Ivanogorod*.  
*Coporio*. } *Jamagorod*.

*Notteburg*, called by the *Russians*, *Oreska* or *Nut*, from its compactness and strength, is seated on a small Island, in the Mouth of the River *Nieva*, near the Lake *Ladega*, in the Latitude of 60. 0. Longitude 54. 0. 300 miles from *Riga*, and 120 from *Narva* to the North-East. It is the chief Town of this Province both for Trade and Strength, being very well fortified, and besides well secured by the breadth of the River. When *Gustavus Adolphus* besieged it, in the Year 1614, it made so vigorous a

Resistance, that 'till an unhappy Distemper seized the Inhabitants, he was by no means able to take it.

*Ivanogorod*, called also the Russian *Narva*, is seated over against *Narva*, and built on a Rock in an *Isthmus*, made by the Confluence of two Rivers, and is a Place of very great Strength.

*Coporio*, a strong Fort, stands on the *Finnick Gulf*, 30 miles North from *Ivanogorod*.

*Jamagorod*, another Fortrefs, is seated on the River *Laga*, about 15 miles from *Ivanogorod* to the South-East.

These and several other Towns and Forts, together with the whole Country, were delivered up to the *Suedes* by the *Muscovites*, at the Treaty above mentioned.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The ISLANDS belonging to Sueden are these.*

**G O T H L A N D** Isle, situate in the *Baltick*, 20 Leagues from the Coast of *Gothland* to the East, about 60 Leagues from *Livonia* to the West, and in the Latitude of 56. It is a narrow Tract of Land, stretch'd out in length from North to South about 70 miles, and not above 20 in breadth. It is fruitful, and affords good Pasture for Cattle, especially Horses and Oxen. This Island was formerly subject to *Denmark*, but granted to the King of *Sueden* in 1645. in 1677. re-taken by the *Danes*, and in 1679. restored by Treaty to the *Suedes*.

*Wisby* or *Visburg*, the chief Town of this Island, and the Seat of its Governor, was heretofore a large and famous Mart, containing 10 Churches, and 4 Monasteries, but is now much decayed. It is reported, that Hydrographical Tables and Sea Charts, and the Rules for Navigation were first Printed here.

**O E L A N D**, a narrow slip of Land over against the Continent of *Gothland*, from which it is distant not above 5 or 6 Leagues, is in length about 70 miles from North to South, but hardly 10 miles broad. The Soil affords good Pasture, and many Herds of Oxen, Horses, and Fallow Deer. The chief Place upon the Island is *Bernholm* or *Barkholm*, a strong Fortrefs seated in the middle of the Isle, just over against *Calmar*. There are many other Forts and Castles to defend this Island, which has been often attack'd; in 1536. *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark* took it; soon after it was regain'd by the *Suedes*, but being lost again, *Gustavus Adolphus* finally recover'd it in 1613. since when it has been constantly possess'd by the King of *Sueden*.

**O E S E L** and **D A G H O** two Islands lying off the Coast of *Livonia*, make the Gulf of *Riga*; the former is much the larger of the two, being about 40 miles long and 20 broad; whereas the other is hardly 20 miles either way. *Oesel* lies about 15 Leagues West from *Pernaw*, and has on it the City of *Arnsburg*, fortified with a Castle, and another Fortrefs called *Sonneburg*.

*Dagho* lies to the North of *Oesel*, about 7 Leagues West from *Lehal*; it is of a Triangular Form, and has on it two Castles, called *Padem* and *Dagheroart*.

**A L A N D**, an Island in the Mouth of the Gulf of *Bothnia*, surrounded with a great number of smaller Islands, lies between *Uplandia* to the West, and *Finland* to the East, in near the same Latitude with *Upsal*, and in the Midway between *Stockholm* and *Abo*. It abounds with Fish, and has some Cattle; on it stands the Fort of *Castleholm*.

**H U E N A**, a very small Island in the *Ore Sund*, just over against *Landskroon*, Lat. 56. 20. On it stands *Traniburg*, a small City and Castle, built at the Cost of the King of *Denmark*, for the use of the famous Mathematician *Tycho-Brabe*. It was surrendered to the *Suede* by the Treaty in 1660.

**R U G E N**, an Island on the Coast of *Pomerania* in *Germany*, is also subject to the King of *Sueden*; but of that, as also of **U S E D O M** and **W O L L I N**, having already spoken in our Account of *Germany*, need not here be repeated.

To the King of *Sueden* are also subject some part of *Germany*, as the *Upper Pomerania*, and the Dutchies of *Bremen* and *Ferdin*; which have likewise been spoken of in their proper Places.

As also the Province of *Bahus*, whereof we have spoken already in our Account of *Norway*.

## P O L A N D.



# POLAND.



## CHAP. I.

### Of POLAND in General.

**T**HE Kingdom of POLAND which is now of vast Extent, was at first (according to Cluverius) not above 320 Miles long, and 240 broad, consisting at that time only of that part, which for distinction, is usually Named, Poland properly so called, but it hath since Received great Additions; Lithuania, the Lesser or Red-Russia, Podo-

lia, Volhynia, Polesia, Massovia, Prussia, Samogitia and part of Livonia, having been annexed to it. The Sarmatae, as the same Author shews, were the first Inhabiters of it, and the Country anciently Nam'd Sarmatia. It owes it's present Name, as Reiskius particularly says, to some Colonies of the Sclavi who came into that Country, and either drove out



or mingled themselves, with the ancient *Sarmatae*, and called the Land *Pole*, which signified in their Language, a Plain. Tho' some are of opinion, that the word *Polacki*, is as much as to say, the Posterity of *Lechus*. This Nation, as *Puffendorf* says, did formerly Inhabit nearer to *Tartary*; but after vast numbers out of *Germany* entered the *Roman* Provinces, their places were supplied by the Nations behind them; and it seems that *Poland* being in the same manner left by its Inhabitants, which were then the *Venedi* or *Wends*, they made room for the next that took their place. These then as it is said, having taken Possession of this Country, about the year 550 did under the Conduct of *Lechus* lay the Foundation of a new State.

*Poland* as it is now extended, is bounded on the North with *Livonia*, *Muscovy*, and the *Baltick*; on the South with Upper *Hungary*, *Transylvania*, and *Wallachia*; on the East with *Muscovy*, and the Little *Tartary*; and on the West with *Germany*. Its Extent is from the Frontiers of *Silesia* in the West, to the Frontiers of *Tartary* in the South-east, above 700 Miles; and from the Frontiers of *Livonia*, to the *Carpathes* or *Krempach* Mountains, which are the Limits of *Hungary*, above 500 Miles. And its Situation is between the 45th. and the 7th. Degree of Latit. commencing in Longit. at the 37th. Degree from *Teneriff*, and extending to the 55th. Degree: And some part of *Volhynia*, even 2 Degrees more.

By the Situation it may be guessed that the CLIMATE is Temperate, and the AIR not excessive Cold, as in effect it is, except in the Northern part of *Lithuania*. The SOIL also is generally very Fertile, fit for Tillage and Pasture, and produces vast quantity of Corn and Cattle; even enough to Feed the Populous Nation of *Holland*, who yearly send vast Fleets to *Dantzick* to Buy the Corn and Oxen, sent downthither from the several parts of *Poland*. *Lithuania* produces Honey, Wax, Hemp, Flax, Leather, Potashes, Salt, Woad, Saltpetre, Vitriol, and Quicksilver. With these Staple Commodities they purchase those of other Nations, viz. Wines, Cloath, Stuffs, Wrought-Silks, &c.

It is a plain flat Country, rather enclining to Marsh than Mountain Lands, so that no considerable Mountains are found here, except those that make the Frontier to *Hungary*, which is a craggy Ridge of 300 Miles in Length, and called the *Carpathes* or *Krempach* Mountains. But RIVERS it abounds with, the most considerable whereof are the *Vistula*, the *Niemen* or *Choronus*, the *Nieper* or *Beristhenes*, the *Niester* or *Tyras*, the *Beg* or *Vegus*, whose Springs and Courses, are more distinctly perceiv'd by Viewing the Map, than by giving account of them.

As to the GENIUS of the People, they are, as *Puffendorf* observes, commonly Downright and Honest; very seldom guilty of Dissimulation, of a Generous Spirit and expect a great deal of Respect, to which they make you suitable returns. They are also fierce and extravagant, much inclin'd to an uncontrolled Liberty, or rather Licentiousness and Petulancy, which produces frequent Factions and Conspiracies. They do not want Courage, but are more fit for sudden Action than the long Fatigue of a War: This is spoken of the Gentry. But the meaner sort are Poor Spirited, and therefore the Polish Infantry are not valuable, but *Cossacks*, or Foreigners are made use of on all occasions of War. This abject Spirit of the Peasantry proceeds

from the Servile Vassalage they pay to their Lords, who exercise it with all the Haughtiness imaginable; and not only does the poor Labourer never acquire Wealth, but he is even hardly permitted to gain himself Bread, being oblig'd to Work for his Lord four or five days in the Week without Pay or Food.

As to the Military Force, their chief Strength consists in the Nobility. It has been given out that the *Poles* could raise 150000 or 200000 Horse, but unless one should Reckon their Attendants and Servants, the number is too great to be Credited. It must be acknowledged, there is no Kingdom in *Europe* can pretend to so great a Number of Nobility as they can do; and therefore considering that they are Brave, 'tis morally impossible to Conquer their Country so long as they are unanimous. And the surprizing progress that the Army of *Charles Gustavus* made here, was owing to the differences at Home; which was made appear by the precipitate Flight of the *Suedes* as soon as the *Poles* return'd to their Duty. The *Cossacks* can furnish them a considerable Infantry, and their Neighbours readily serve in their Armies, if the Nobility will permit the King to Levy Taxes to Pay 'em: But tho' they are Rich enough, they are not over ready in giving Supplies, or paying them when Assess'd.

The Inhabitants of *Poland* were Converted from Paganism to Christianity by *Adelbert* Archbishop of *Gnesna*, about the year 964. and ever since the RELIGION of the Church of *Rome* hath been Predominant here; except in *Red-Russia* where the People adhere to the *Greek* Church; and in *Prussia* there are whole Cities of *Lutherans*, as *Dantzick*, *Elbing*, *Thorn* and *Marienbourg*, and some *Calvinists*, especially in the Ducal *Prussia*. *Faustus Socinus* the Reviver of the *Arian* Heresy, was of this Nation, and his followers from him call'd *Socinians*, grew numerous in the last Century, but King *John Casimer* expelled them in the year 1658.

Concerning the Form of GOVERNMENT in *Poland*, it is to be observ'd, that the *Poles* live under one Head, who bears the Title, and lives in the Splendor becoming a King; but if you consider his Power, as it is circumscrib'd within very narrow Bounds, he is in effect no more than the Prime or Chief Regent in a Free Commonwealth; since he can do nothing without the bounds of that Authority, which the Laws of the Land have given him, and the Nobles take care to maintain. This King is always Chosen by a Free Election, where every Nobleman present has his Vote; and tho' the *Poles* may have some inclination to the Royal Race, yet have they never consented to declare a Successor during the Life of the present King, but have always expected the Vacancy of the Throne, that they might at that time regulate Abuses and by the *Pacta Conventa* which the King solemnly Assents to, secure to themselves their Liberties. During an Interregnum the Archbishop of *Gnesna* is *ex Officio* Regent of the Kingdom, or if there be no Archbishop of *Gnesna* the Office devolves to the Bishop of *Cujavia*; and if that See be Vacant, to the Bishop of *Pesnania*. The *Poles* have had an ancient Maxim, That their King ought rather to be Elected out of a Foreign Princely Family, than out of their own Nobility; being of opinion that thereby the equality among the Nobility may be the better preserved. In the two Elections preceeding this last, they swerved from this Maxim, and Chose out of their own Nobility; but whether it had not been better to have done so  
now



now too, Time will shew, if they are not sensible of it already.

'Tis the Nobility or Gentry only, that have any share in the Government, the other Subjects being by the Laws deemed Boors; for the Traders being mostly Foreigners, and the Husbandmen meer Vassals, the Gentry totally exclude them both from any share in the Legislation or Administration. The Senate or Diet of *Poland*, is made up of the Bishops, Great Officers of State, viz. the Great Marshal of the Kingdom, the Great Marshal of the Duchy, the High Chancellor of the Kingdom, the Chancellor of *Lithuania*, the Vice-Chancellor of the Kingdom, the Vice-Chancellor of *Lithuania*, the Treasurer of the Kingdom, the Treasurer of *Lithuania*, the Marshal of the Court of the Kingdom, and the Marshal of the Court of the Duchy, and the Palatines: To which are added the Lesser Senators, which are the Castellans or Lieutenants of the Palatinates, and the Deputies of the Nobility: This Court which in the whole consists of one hundred and fifty Persons, is look'd upon as the Bulwark of the Commonwealth, against the attempts of the King, and therefore four of them are always about his Person, on pretence of giving him Counsel, but in truth to be Spies upon him. However the King having the disposal of the Great Offices, and the Bishopricks, he can in time make a sufficient Party in the Senate, and the rather, because the Palatines are commonly divided among themselves. This is the Legislative Power of the Nation, like as our Parliament in *England*, but with this difference, that the Deputies of the Nobility, are like the Tribunes of the People in Old *Rome*, and have Power by the Dissent of but one Voice, to hinder the Passing any Decree. And the Time of the Dyet's Sitting being confined to six Weeks, it has often happen'd that the Labour of a whole Session has been lost, by the Caprice of one Member.

But the Great Dyet, or General Assembly of the Nation, is the whole Body of the Nobility or Gentry, (for they are not distinguish'd by Titles in these Countries) which is exceeding Powerful, both by reason of their Number and Wealth. These meet on Horseback in the Plains near *Warsaw*, and are seldom Assembled but for the Election of a King. And 'tis they that prescribe the Rules by which he must Govern, call'd the *Pacta Conventa*: The Heads of the Principal parts whereof, it will not be amiss to set down, viz. The King must not call in, or admit Foreign Forces, without the Consent of the Estates. He must not encrease the number of the Militia, raise Forces privately, or send Aid to any other Prince without the Consent of Estates. He must not commit the Trust of Forts and Castles, to Strangers or Boors. He must not make an Offensive War, without the General Assembly. He must not make Peace, without the Approbation of the Estates: Only ancient Alliances may be Renewed by the King, with consent of the Senators residing at Court. And because the King has the disposal of all Civil and Ecclesiastical Dignities, it is usually stipulated in the *Pacta Conventa*, that he shall not encrease or Diminish the number of those Officers. Many other Conditions are prescribed in the *Pacta Conventa*, which the King solemnly Swears to maintain.

For the Administration of Justice, Civil and Criminal, several Courts as usual, are held in *Poland*, but the most considerable are the Parliaments, Composed of a certain Number of Gentlemen,

Clergy and Laity, who are Chosen in each Palatinate, the Lay Members once in four years, and the Ecclesiastical once in two years. Of these Parliaments there are two for the Kingdom, and one for the Duchy. Those for the Kingdom, Sit at *Lublin* in Upper, and *Petrow* in Lower *Poland*. And that for the Duchy is held one year at *Vilna*, and the other year at *Minski* or *Novogrodeck*, by turns. These Courts receive Appeals from Inferior Courts, and from them Lyes no Appeal, except to the King and Senate.

The Revenues of the King of *Poland* arise out of the Salt-Pits, the half of the Customs of *Dantzick*, and the Royal Oeconomies, all which may amount to 100000 *l. per Annum*, but then it is all clear to himself, for he pays no Troops, nor even his own Guards. And all the Officers of the Household are Gentlemen of *Poland*, who Serve without Salary in expectation of some Office. And all the Charges of the Army, and other publick Expences, being provided by the Senate, he has no manner of Charge but that of his own Family. Moreover the Estates provide a suitable Maintenance for the Queen, after the King's Death; but then he cannot Marry or Divorce, without their consent, nor can the Queen be Crown'd without being of the *Romish* Religion.

*The Succession of the Kings and Princes of POLAND, as well as it can be Collected from History, is as follows.*

	Anno Dom.
1. <i>Lechus</i> , The Founder of the Monarchy.	550
After his Death the Government of the Kingdom was committed to 12 Palatines.	
2. <i>Cracus</i> , who built <i>Cracow</i> .	700
3. <i>Lechus</i> II. the Son and Murderer of <i>Cracus</i> .	
4. <i>Venda</i> , both a Beautiful and Valiant Princess.	750
After her Death the Kingdom was again Governed by 12 Palatines.	
5. <i>Primislaus</i> , or <i>Leschus</i> I. Rais'd from a low condition to the Throne, for his extraordinary Courage and Wisdom.	760
6. <i>Leschus</i> II. Surnam'd the <i>Black</i> .	804
7. <i>Leschus</i> III. Son and Successor of <i>Leschus</i> II.	810
8. <i>Popiel</i> I. a Debauch'd and Effeminate Man.	815
9. <i>Popiel</i> II. Son of <i>Popiel</i> I. who was eaten up by Mice.	830
10. <i>Piaustus</i> , advanc'd from the Plow to the Throne.	842
11. <i>Semovitus</i> , or <i>Ziemonitus</i> , a Warlike Prince.	861
12. <i>Leschus</i> IV. who concluded Peace with all his Neighbours.	892
13. <i>Semislaus</i> , or <i>Ziemomislus</i> , a Peacable Prince.	913
14. <i>Mescho</i> , or <i>Miecislus</i> , the first Christian Prince of <i>Poland</i> .	964
15. <i>Boleslaus</i> I. Surnam'd <i>Chrobri</i> , who is said to have assum'd the Title of King, whereas his Predecessors had contented themselves with that of Duke.	999
16. <i>Mesco</i> , or <i>Miecislus</i> II. an Effeminate Prince.	1025
17. <i>Casimir</i> I. was Dethron'd, and enter'd into a Cloister, but afterwards he Defeated the Usurper.	1041
18. <i>Boleslaus</i> II. Surnamed the <i>Bold</i> , a Valiant Prince, before he degenerated into a barbarous Murderer, and fell in Love with a Mare; for which detestable Crimes, both he and his Successors were Depriv'd of the Royal Dignity	1059



- |  | Anno Dom. |
|--|-----------|
| 19. <i>Uladislaus I. Sirmam'd Hermannus.</i>   | 1082      |
| 20. <i>Boleslaus III. Sirmam'd Crivus.</i>   | 1103      |
| 21. <i>Uladislaus II. who was Expell'd the Kingdom.</i>  | 1139      |
| 22. <i>Boleslaus IV. Sirmam'd Crispus.</i>   | 1146      |
| 23. <i>Miecislavus III. Sirmam'd the Aged, who was Depos'd for Oppression, and Exorbitant Impositions.</i>   | 1174      |
| 24. <i>Casimir II. who Redress'd all the Grievances of his Brother's Reign.</i>  | 1178      |
| 25. <i>Leschus V. Sirmam'd the White, who was Murder'd by his Uncle Miecislavus the Aged.</i>  | 1195      |
| 26. <i>Boleslaus V. Sirmam'd the Chaste.</i>   | 1226      |
| 27. <i>Leschus VI. Sirmam'd the Black.</i>   | 1279      |
| 28. <i>Premislaus II. who Reassum'd the Regal Title by the advice of the Nobility, but was kill'd in his Camp, in the first year of his Reign.</i>   | 1295      |
| 29. <i>Wenceslaus, King of Bohemia, obtain'd the Crown of Poland.</i>  | 1296      |
| 30. <i>Uladislaus III. Sirmam'd Lechus.</i>  | 1305      |
| 31. <i>Casimir III. Sirmam'd the Great, a Just and Peaceful Prince.</i>  | 1333      |
| 32. <i>Lewis King of Hungary was chosen King of Poland.</i>  | 1370      |
| 33. <i>Uladislaus IV. call'd Jagello, who United the Duchy of Lithuania (whereof he had been Duke) to the Crown of Poland.</i>   | 1386      |
| 34. <i>Uladislaus V. who was kill'd in a Battle against the Turks.</i>   | 1434      |
| 35. <i>Casimir IV. Sirmam'd the Great.</i>   | 1447      |
| 36. <i>John Albert.</i>  | 1492      |
| 37. <i>Alexander, successful against the Moscovites and Tartars.</i>   | 1501      |
| 38. <i>Sigismund I. who subdued Prussia.</i>   | 1507      |
| 39. <i>Sigismund II. Sirmam'd Augustus.</i>  | 1548      |
| 40. <i>Henry of Valois.</i>  | 1574      |
| 41. <i>Stephen Bathori, Prince of Transilvania.</i>  | 1576      |
| 42. <i>Sigismund III. Son of John King of Sweden, renounc'd the Protestant Religion, and was chosen King of Poland.</i>  | 1587      |
| 43. <i>Uladislaus VI. Son and Successor of Sigismund.</i>  | 1632      |
| 44. <i>John Casimir, formerly a Jesuit and Cardinal.</i>   | 1648      |
| 45. <i>Michael Coribush Wisnowieczki, descended of the Family of the Dukes of Lithuania.</i>   | 1669      |
| 46. <i>John Sobieski, descended of a very Noble Family in the Palatinate of Lublin, was chosen May 10.</i>   | 1674      |
| 47. <i>Frederick Augustus, Duke of Saxony, after a years Interregnum, was chosen King of Poland, (notwithstanding the Primate and a considerable Party with him, chose the the Prince of Conti, one of the most Accomplish'd Princes of this Age) June 27.</i> | 1697      |

### The particular Description of Poland.

The Kingdom of Poland Consists of these Parts.

- I. POLAND, properly so call'd.
- II. PRUSSIA.
- III. The Great Dukedom of LITHUANIA.
- IV. SAMOGITIA and CURLAND.
- V. WARSOVIA, POLACHIA, and POLESIA.

VI. RED-RUSSIA.

VII. PODOLIA:

VIII. VOLHINIA, and the UKRAIN.

Of these, *Curland* and *Samogitia* Lye in the North part.

*Prussia* on the Banks of the *Baltick* Sea.

*Poland* takes up all the Western part.

*Masovia*, *Polachia* and *Polesia*, the Middle.

*Lithuania*, *Volhinia* and the *Ukrain*, the Eastern part. And

*Red-Russia*, with *Podolia*, the Southern.

The Sub-divisions whereof are thus,

*Poland* properly so call'd, is divided into the Upper and Lower.

Upper Poland, called also, the Lesser Poland, contains the three Palatinates of,

{ *Cracow.*  
*Sandomir.*  
*Lublien.*

{ *Posnania.*  
*Kalisch.*  
*Brzestye.*  
*Waldislaw.*

Lower or Greater Poland, contains the ten Palatinates of,

{ *Lencici.*  
*Inowloz.*  
*Sirad.*  
*Rawa.*  
*Ploczko.*  
*Dobrizin.*

*Prussia* is divided into,

{ *Royal.*  
*Ducal.*

{ *Wilna.*  
*Troki.*  
*Breslaw.*

*Lithuania* is divided into eight Palatinates,

{ *Novogrodeck.*  
*Minski.*  
*Mzeislaw.*  
*Witepsk.*  
*Polocza.*

*Samogitia* hath these Cities.

{ *Rosiem.*  
*Midnik.*  
*Schwende, &c.*

*Curland* is divided into,

{ *Semigallia.*  
*Curland.*

*Warsovia*, otherwise call'd *Masovia*, hath one Palatinate of,

{ *Czersko.*  
 and the City  
 of *Warsaw.*

*Polachia*, the Palatinate of

*Bielsck.*

*Polesia.*

{ *Bressici.*  
 or  
*Breste.*

*Red-Russia*, contains three Palatinates.

{ *Lemberg.*  
*Belcz.*  
*Chelm.*

*Podolia* divided into,

Upper, wherein the Palatinate of *Caminiac.*

Lower, wherein the Palatinate of *Braclaw.*

*Volhinia*, divided into the Upper, which contains the Palatinate of *Lusuck.*

The Lower, which is commonly called the *Ukrain*, contains the Palatinate of *Kiom.*



## C H A P. II.

*Of P O L A N D, properly so call'd; divided into the Upper and Lower.*

**T**HE Upper or Lesser *Poland*, is situated between the Lower *Poland* and *Warsovia* on the North, *Hungary* on the South, *Red-Russia* on the East, and *Germany* on the West, containing in extent from East to West, near 200 Miles; and from North to South, above 120; lying between 49. and 51 Degrees of Latitude. The River *Vistula* passes through it, the River *Warta* hath its Source here, and several other smaller Rivers Water the Land, which is reasonably Fruitful, but over-run with Woods. It is divided into three Palatinates, wherein are these Cities and chief Towns, *viz.*

In the Palatinate of *Cracow*, being the South-west part of the Province, are

{ *Cracow.*  
*Novoguira.*  
*Severia.*  
*Czenterow.*  
*Lelow.*  
*Ozwiecin.*  
*Zator.*  
*Wielicz.*  
*Bochna.*  
*Sandecz.*  
*Lubowla.*  
*Byecz.*

In the Palatinate of *Sandomir*, which is the middle part, are

{ *Sandomir.*  
*Zawichost.*  
*Cunow.*  
*Schedlowitz.*  
*Radom.*  
*Zarnaw.*  
*Malogocz.*  
*Pikzow.*  
*Wislickia.*  
*Corezin.*  
*Polaniez.*  
*Pilsno.*

In the Palatinate of *Lublin*, which is the North-east part, are

{ *Lublin.*  
*Kazimiers.*  
*Piotrowin.*  
*Urzendow.*  
*Opol.*  
*Scodleck.*

*Cracow*, *Cracevia*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Poland*, is seated on a Rocky Bank of the River *Vistula*, about the middle of the Palatinate, 50 Miles North from the Confines of *Hungary*, 40 East from *Germany*, 250 South from the *Baltick-Sea*, and in the Latitude of 49. 40. Longitude 40. 20. It had its Name as is supposed from one *Cracus* a Person of great Reputation, and as the *Bohemians* brag, one of their Princes, whom the *Polanders* entreated to take upon him the Government, after they were weary of the Twelve Waywodes, that succeeded King *Lechus* I. but others make it the *Carodunum* of *Ptolomy*. It is the largest and best built of any Town in *Poland*, the Houses being of Free-Stone and very high, the Streets large, and the publick Buildings Magnificent: Among which the King's Palace seated on a Hill which affords it an admirable Prospect, the Cathedral of St. *Stanislaus*, the Church of St. *Mary* in the Grand Place, sur-

rounded with four ws of very fine Buildings, with 50 other Churches, are the most considerable. This City was made the See of an Arch-bishop, at the first planting of Christianity here, in the year 964. but about 100 years after, upon some difference with the Pope, it was reduced to an Episcopal, and made Suffragan to *Gnesna*. It is also adorned with a University; Honoured with the Session of the Supream Court of Judicature, the keeping of the Royal Ensigns or Regalia, and is the place of the King's Coronation. *Cracow* in general Comprehends, the three parts of 1. *Cracow*, 2. *Stradomira*, and 3. *Cazamira*. The first is encompassed with a Ditch and Wall, Flank'd with round Brick Towers, and in it stands the Castle a Mile in Compass, Founded on a Rock, with noble Buildings of Stone, round a square Court, and Galleries supported by Marble Pillars; the King's Apartments are adorn'd with very curious Paintings and Statues; and the North Gallery Built by King *Sigismund* affords a Prospect over all the fine Country in the Neighbourhood.

*Novoguira* 25 miles west from *Cracow*. *Siberia* 30 miles North from it. *Lelow* the same distance North-east from *Siberia*, with some other Towns in their Neighbourhood, are noted for their Silver and Lead Mines. *Czentocho* on the River *Warta*, near the Confines of this Palatinate, 60 Miles North-west from *Cracow*, is famous for its well endowed Monastery of Hermits and Religious Votaries. *Ozwiecin* and *Zator* on the South side of the *Vistula*, over against *Novoguira*, are Honoured with the Title of Dukedoms. *Wielicz* on the same side of the *Vistula* a few Miles from *Cracow* and *Bochna*, famous for Rock Salt, as hard as Stones dug out of Mines.

*Sandecz* 40 Miles South from *Cracow*, hath Mines of Gold and Copper; as *Byecz* 20 Miles East from it, hath of Vitriol. *Lubowla* 20 Miles South from *Sandecz*, is a strong Fortrefs, formerly in the hands of the *Hungarians*, but now Possessed by the *Poles*.

*Sandomir* the Capital of the Palatinate, stands on a Rock near the Banks of the *Vistula*, where it Receives the *Sanus*; about 100 Miles East from *Cracow*, and 120 South from *Warsaw*. It is a pleasant City and Fortified with Walls, a strong Castle, and some Regular Out-works raised by *Casimer* the Great. Among the publick Buildings, the Monastery of *Dominican* Fryars, is chiefly remarkable. This Town was Sack'd by the *Tartars* in 1240. and was taken by the *Suedes* in 1655. but Restored the year following.

*Zawichost* stands on the East side of the *Vistula*, near 20 miles below *Sandomir*. *Kunow* 40 Miles North from *Sandomir*, hath Quarries of Marble. *Schedlowitz* 30 Miles West from *Kunow*, and 50 North-west from *Sandomir*, abounds with Iron and Steel.

*Radom* stands on the North-East of *Schedlowitz* about 20 Miles, and *Zarnaw* is about 40 Miles from it to the West. *Mologocz* stands 70 Miles East from *Sandomir*, and *Pikzow* 25 South from it. *Wislickia* stands in the midway between that and *Corezin*, which stands on the *Vistula*, as doth *Polaniez*, about 25 Miles below it. *Pilsno* stands on the South, about 20 Miles



Miles from the *Vistula*, and near 60 from *Sandomir*.

*Lublin*, the chief Town of the other Palatinate, stands at the Foot of a Hill near the River *Ustricza*, 50 miles from *Sandomir*, and 90 from *Cracow* to the North-East, and 80 from *Warsaw* to the South-West. It is not a very large, but well built Town, and much frequented by Merchants from *Moscow*, *Germany*, and other Parts, at the three great Fairs kept Annually here. The great Church dedicated to *St. Michael*, and several Monasteries here are magnificent Structures; and the Town is honoured with being the Seat of one of the two Supreme Courts of Judicature in *Poland*. It is walled round, and environ'd with Marshes; and is, besides, defended by an adjacent Castle that was at first built by the *Russians*, all which render this a Place of Strength.

*Kazimiers* and *Piotrowin*, stand on the *Vistula*, about 15 miles asunder, and 25 from *Lublin*. *Urzędow* is about 12 miles South-East from *Piotrowin*. *Opal* stands 25 miles North from *Lublin* and *Scadlock* as far beyond it near the Confines of *Warsavia*.

The LOWER or larger *POLAND*, so called, because *Lecchus* the first King of the *Poles* chose this Country for his Seat, lies on the North of the Upper *Poland*, between *Warsavia* on the East, *Germany* on the West, *Prussia* on the North, and the Lesser *Poland* and *Silesia* on the South. It extends from the 51st to the 53d Degree of Latitude, and from the 37th to the 42d Degree of Longitude; being from North to South about 100 miles, and from East to West above 200 miles. It is generally a level Champaign Country, abounding with pleasant Rivers, Lakes, and Ponds, among which the River *Warta* is most considerable, and passes thro' a great part. The Land produces plenty of Corn, and the Inhabitants are plentifully furnish'd with Cattle, Fish, and Fowl. This Province comprehends 10 Palatinates, wherein these Cities and Towns are of chiefest Note, viz.

In the Palatinate of *Pesnania*, the most western Part of *Poland*,

*Pesnan.*  
*Regesno.*  
*Krosnian.*  
*Cieblow.*

The Palatinate of *Kalish* lies on the East of *Pesnania*,

*Kalish.*  
*Gnesna.*  
*Kamin.*  
*Laudeck.*  
*Nakel.*

*CUZAVIA* lies on the North-East of *Kalish*, and comprehends the three Palatinates of

I. *Brzestye*,

*Brzestye.*  
*Cowale.*  
*Kruswick.*

II. *Wladislaw*,

*Wladislaw.*

III. *Inowlocz*,

*Inowlocz.*

The Palatinate of *Dobrzin*, lies on the East of *Cujavia*,

*Dobrzin.*  
*Libna.*  
*Rippina.*

The Palatinate of *Plocsko*, lies on the South-East of *Dobrzin*,

*Plocsko.*  
*Rasuntzi.*  
*Plonsko.*

The Palatinate of *Rava*, lies on the South of *Dobrzin* and *Cujavia*,

*Rava.*  
*Lewick.*  
*Gostomin.*  
*Gabin.*

The Palatinate of *Lencicia*, is on the West of *Rava*,

*Lencicia.*  
*Bressini.*  
*Inowlocz.*

The Palatinate of *Sirad* is the most southern Part of the Lower *Poland*,

*Siradia.*  
*Widun.*  
*Pietrikow.*

*Pesna*, *Pesnania*, called *Poznan* by the Inhabitants, and *Posen* by the *Germans*, is situated on a Plain, in the midst of Hills, and on the Banks of the River *Warta*, 170 miles North-West from *Cracow*, 150 West from *Warsaw*, and 100 miles South from *Dantzick*. It is a City of small Compass, but well built and adorn'd with a stately Castle: It is also the See of a Bishop, and a Place of good Trade: The Mayor or chief Magistrate, who is chosen Annually, is dignified with the Title of, *General of Great Poland*. *John Lubranski*, sometime Bishop here, founded a small University, in the Suburbs of *Pesna*; which Structure was afterwards very much beautified by *Adam Canar* one of his Successors, and it is in a flourishing state. The other most considerable Buildings are the *Jesuits College* and *Monastery*. The Inhabitants of this City are very Wealthy and Civil, and appear finer in their Apparel and Houses than ordinary.

*Regesno* stands about 20 miles North from *Pesna*. *Krosnian* in the very middle of the Palatinate, 30 West from *Pesna*. *Cieblow* 20 miles West from *Krosnian*, stands on a small River that a little below falls into the *Oder*.

*Kalish* stands in a marshy Land near the Banks of the River *Drosna*, 40 miles South-East from *Pesna*. It is fortified with a strong Brick-Wall, and adorn'd with a stately College of *Jesuits*.

*Gnesna*, called *Gnisen* by the *Germans*, the chief City of the Lower *Poland*, and formerly the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, and Seat of the King, stands in the middle of the Palatinate, 30 miles from *Kalish* to the North, and as far from *Pesna* to the West. It was built, as is generally reported, by King *Lecchus I.* Founder of this Monarchy, and called *Gnesna* from an Eagle's Nest found there, which in the *Polish* Language is called *Gnesiad*. A dreadful Fire which happen'd in 1613. miserably laid it waste, and it has ever since declined. This is the See of the Archbishop, a Person of great Dignity and Power, being Primate of all *Poland*, Legate of the Holy See; and in case of the King's Death, is Regent till a new King be chosen, whom also he claims the right of Declaring and Crowning. The Cathedral is a venerable Building and exceeding Rich, having Gates of *Corinthian* Brass, and a Treasury of inestimable Value.

*Kamin* and *Laudeck*, both stand on the River *Warta*, 20 or 30 miles East and South-East from *Gnesna*. *Nakel* stands on a River to which it gives name, 35 miles North from *Gnesna*.

*Brzestye* stands upon a Causeway among Marshes, 60 miles East from *Gnesna*, and is only considerable on account of its being the Seat of a Palatine. *Cowale* stands upon the *Vistula*, 20 miles East from *Brzestye*. *Kruswick* stands upon the Lake *Gropi*, about 30 miles West from *Brzestye*, and is remarkable for the Death of *Popiel II.* Duke of *Poland*, who was devour'd by Rats, a just Punishment



nishment from Heaven for having poisoned a great number of his Friends and Relations at a Feast, as *Staravolscius* relates. *Bidzet*, in this Palatinate, has been mention'd in History on account of the Treaty of Peace concluded there, Nov. 6. 1657. between the King of Poland and the Duke of Brandenburg.

*Wladislaw*, *Uladislawia* stands upon the *Vistula* in the Midway between *Ploczko* and *Thorn*, about 20 miles from *Brzestye*, to the North, in a marshy Soil, but surrounded with a plentiful Country. It is the Seat of the Bishop of *Cujavia*, whose stately Palace is the chief Ornament of the City. The Cathedral is an old Building, but very rich in Plate and Furniture. This is the chief Palatinate and Capital of *Cujavia*.

*Inowlocz* about 30 or 40 miles West from *Uladislaw*, is the Seat of the third Palatine of *Cujavia*, but otherwise not very considerable. *Bydgosz*, a wall'd Town, stands on the River *Barde* which falls into the *Vistula*, and is a Place of good Trade, especially for Salmon.

*Dobrzyn* is a little Town, built upon a Rock near the Banks of the *Vistula*, about 15 miles East from *Uladislaw*, and only notable for being a Palatinate; and about 25 miles North from it stands *Libna* and *Rippina*, a Fortrefs.

*Ploczko* the chief City of the Palatinate, and the See of a Bishop, is seated on a high Bank on the *Vistula*, whence is a fair Prospect of a pleasant and fruitful Country: It is distant 15 miles from *Dobrzyn* to the South, near 30 from *Brzestye* to the East, and about 50 from *Warsaw* to the North-West; and is a populous Place, having several Religious Houses and Churches, besides the Cathedral, very well endowed. *Rassuntz* and *Plonsko* stand about 30 miles to the North-East from it.

*Rava*, a populous City, the Head of the Palatinate, stands on a River of the same name, 50 miles

South from *Ploczko*, and about as far South-West from *Warsaw*. It is built and guarded by a Castle which is the Prison of such Persons of Quality as are committed, and also the Repository of part of the Crown Revenues. Here is also a wealthy College of Jesuits. About 25 miles North from hence stands *Lowicz*, the Residence of the Archbishop of *Gnesna*, whose Palace is a magnificent Fabrick: The Town is very populous, and much resorted to by Merchants at its Annual Fair. *Gostyrim* stands about 10 miles North from *Lowicz* on the River *Bsura*, as does *Gabin* 10 miles East from it.

*Lancicia* or *Lanschet*, which gives Denomination to a Palatinate, stands on the River *Bsura*, about 40 or 50 miles from *Rava* to the North-West, and 80 from *Warsaw* to the West. It stands among Marshes, and hath a good Castle for its Defence, built on a Rock. *Bressini* and *Inowlocz*, stand in the extream South-West part of this Palatinate, near the Confines of Upper Poland, about 60 miles from *Lancicia*.

*Sirad* stands upon a Plain on the Banks of the River *Warta*, 60 miles West from *Rava*, and near 70 South from *Pozna*: 'Tis a mean built Town, the Houses being of Wood, but is surrounded with a strong Brick-Wall. It is the Head of a Palatinate, and was formerly a Dukedom, usually given to the second Son of the King. *Petrikow*, about 30 or 40 miles from *Sirad*, to the East, is a neat and well built Town, but stands among Marshes, and was almost quite burnt down in the Year 1640. Here was formerly a Royal Palace, but is now ruinous. The other Parliament or Supream Court of Judicature in Poland, is held yearly in this Town for deciding Differences between the Nobility, and determining Causes by Appeal from inferior Courts. *Widlim* is a neat Town built of Brick, stands about 25 miles South from *Sirad*.

### C H A P. III.

### Of P R U S S I A.

**P**RUSSIA is a large Country, lying on the North of Poland Proper, between that and the Baltick Sea, with *Lithuania* and *Samogitia* on the East, and *Pomerania* on the West. Poland Proper, as we have said, with *Warsovia*, being the southern, as the Baltick Sea and *Samogitia* is the northern Bounds. It lies between the 53d and 55th Degree of Latitude, and in Longitude from the 38th to the 44th Degree. Its length is about 200 miles; the breadth in the Eastern part is at most but 80 miles, but in the Western part it runs up to near twice as much. The Soil is reasonably fruitful, but somewhat over-run with Woods: and abounds with Rivers, whereof the *Wesel* or *Vistula* is the most considerable; that River rises in the Mountains, on the Borders of Hungary, passes cross Poland, and falls into the Baltick at *Dantzick*, having first divided its self into several Branches, and made the three Islands called the *Werder*: The larger Branch passes by *Marienburg*, and at *Elbing* falls into the Bay called *Frisch-Haft*, which is a safe Harbour from the Baltick. Here are also many small Lakes,

which afford the Inhabitants plenty of Fish, as the Woods do with Venison, and the Lands with Cattle and Corn; one Commodity especially, Prussia hath peculiarly, which is Amber, found on the Sea Coasts in great plenty. Prussia was formerly a rude Country, inhabited by Barbarian Idolaters, long after Poland had received Christianity; for though many Endeavours were used to Convert 'em; nothing could be effected till the Knights of the Teutonic Order attempted it; who in the middle of the Thirteenth Century conquer'd the Country, planted Christianity, and succeeded in the Sovereignty of the Eastern part of it; and *Albert*, Marquis of Brandenburg and first Duke of Prussia, becoming Master of the Order, conveyed the Dominion of that part, since called the Ducal Prussia, to his Successors the Marquises of Brandenburg, who still enjoy it: But the Eastern part was conquer'd by the Poles, and is still part of their Country. At the Reformation the Lutheran Religion prevail'd here, and is still generally profess'd in the Regal Prussia; but the late Marquise of Brandenburg introduced



duc'd *Catholicism* into *Königsberg*, and other Parts of the Ducal *Prussia*.

*Prussia* is divided into two large Parts, viz. Royal and Ducal. The former subject to the King of *Poland*, is the Western part, bounded on the North by the *Baltick*, on the South by *Poland*, on the East by the Ducal *Prussia*, and on the West by *Pomerania*. It is divided by the River *Vistula*, that part lying on the East of the River, being called *Pomerelia*. The chief Cities and Towns are these, viz.

In *Pomerania*,

*Dantzick*.  
*Dischew*.  
*Stargard*.  
*Grabow*.  
*Pautzko*.

Within the *Weichsel*.

*Elbing*.  
*Marienburg*.  
*Culm*.  
*Culmsee*.  
*Thorn*.  
*Wartemberg*.  
*Braunsberg*.

*Dantzick*, *Danziscum* aut *Gedanum*, the Capital City of *Pomerania*, is seated on a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea, near the Mouth of the River *Vistula*, 140 miles North-West from *Warsaw*, near 120 East from *Szerin* in *Pomerania*, and about 30 West from *Elbing*, in the Latitude of 54. and Longitude of 40. It is a large, well-built, rich, and populous City, the greatest Emporium of the *Baltick*-Sea, and perhaps one of the chief of the *Hanse* Towns, and a famous Mart Town for Corn and other Commodities of *Poland*; vast Fleets of *Holland* Ships come yearly hither, from whence they fetch almost all the Corn used in *Holland* and *Zealand*. It was erected into a City in 1295. by King *Przemislaus*, and in 1343. walled round by the Knights of the Teutonic Order, whose Master *Conrad Wallenrodt* built that part of the City called *De rechte Stadt* in 1390. besides which, *Dantzick* consists of two other Parts, which are govern'd by three distinct Senates, and so might be called three Towns; but is, however, but one City, under the Government of its own Magistracy and Protection of the King of *Poland*. Two Rivulets pass thro' the Town, and feed it with Water, as well as drive many Mills for the Convenience and Profit of the People. The publick Buildings are very fair, especially the Church of *St. Mary*, which is very magnificent in its Building, and rich in its Ornaments, the Font alone being said to have cost five thousand Pounds; The Town-House, the Arsenal, the Exchange, the place of *St. Dominick*, and a College of *Jesuits*, with several Churches, are the other Buildings of chiefest Note here. This City hath suffer'd many Revolutions: About the Year 1100. the *Danes* possess'd it, afterwards the *Polanders* gain'd it; in 1305. the Teutonic Knights were Masters of it; in 1454. *Casimir* III. King of *Poland* regain'd it, and granted great Privileges to the Citizens; who afterwards, in defence of the *Augsburg* Confession, sided with *Maximilian* of *Austria* against the *Poles*, which provok'd King *Stephen Bator* to besiege them in 1577. but by the Mediation of other Princes, they were restor'd to their Religion and Liberties in 1597. and in 1632. the City was made a Member of the State, and admitted to a Suffrage in the Election

of the King. In 1656. they vigorously repuls'd the *Suedes*, and adhered to the Interest of King *Jeha* *Casimir*.

*Stargard* and *Dischew* stand about 20 miles South from *Dantzick*, the latter on the *Vistula*. *Grabow* stands on the Borders of *Pomerania*, 80 miles South-West, and seated in the Bay.

*Elbing* stands on a little River of the same name, which rises out of the Lake *Dausen*, and falls here into the *Frisch Haff*, a Bay of the *Baltick*, which is the Haven of this City, at the distance of 4 or 5 miles from the *Vistula*, 30 from *Dantzick* to the East, about 60 from *Uladislaw* to the North, and 120 North-West from *Warsaw*. It has a most delightful Situation, is very populous, and a Place of great Trade, the Inhabitants being wholly addicted to Business and Commerce. The City was built in 1239. and is divided into the Old and New Town. It was at first a free and imperial City, but afterwards fell into the Hands of the Knights of the Teutonic Order, and when *Dantzick* and *Thorn* shook off their Yoke, it followed the example, and submitted its self upon certain Conditions to the King of *Poland*. In the Year 1629. it was taken by the *Suedes*, and being afterwards surrender'd, was taken again by them in 1655. There is an University in it, which was founded by *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*. This Town, together with *Thorn* and *Dantzick*, are the Repositories of the Treasure and Archives of Royal *Prussia*. On the 14th of October, 1695. General *Brandt*, with a Body of Horse, of the Elector of *Brandenburg*'s Forces, came into the Neighbourhood of this Place, with a design to put a Garrison into it, upon account of an Agreement formerly made between the then King of *Poland*, and the late Elector of *Brandenburg* at the Treaty of *Velaw* and *Bidgost*, that this City should be put into the Hands of the Elector as Security for Payment of a Debt of 400000 Dollars due to him for the Assistance he had given the Republick of *Poland* in the War against *Sueden*, neither of which having been performed he came now to demand it, but the City not receiving his Garrison, he block'd it up and made every thing ready for Bombarding it. Upon which the Citizens, unwilling to let things come to extremity, and despairing of Relief from *Poland*, which was then in great Confusion, submitted upon Articles, and 1200 *Brandenburgers* entered the 11th of November, and kept Possession of the Place till the beginning of the Year 1700. when the *Poles* agreed to pay the Money; and till it could be raised, put into the Elector's Hands the Jewels of the Crown, and accordingly the *Brandenburgers* quitted the City which remains in its former State.

*Marienburg*, *Marieburgum*, called also *Margemburg* by the Inhabitants, and *Malbork* by the *Polanders*, is seated on the *Nogat*, a Branch of the *Vistula*, at the distance of 25 miles from *Dantzick* to the South-East, and about 20 from *Elbing* to the South-West. It was heretofore the chief Seat of the Teutonic Knights, having been founded by a Cross-bearer of that Fraternity; and took its name, they say, from a miraculous Image of the Virgin *Mary*. The Castle was built in 1281. and reckon'd one of the strongest in these Parts; but in the *Suedish* Wars in 1614. it was burnt down, and the new one since built is not so considerable, nor the Town very notable; the Houses being of Wood and but mean, and the Inhabitants but poor. The Town was taken by the *Poles* in 1460. and by



by the *Suedes* in 1625. and in 1655. but was restored afterwards to the *Poles*, who still possess it.

*Culm*, an ancient famous City, stands on a Hill, the Foot whereof is water'd by the *Vistula*, 50 miles South from *Dantzick*, and 40 North-West from *Uladislaw*; it is at present in mean State, having suffer'd much in the *Suedish* War, but was anciently a Fortrefs of great importance; the Town built by the Cross-bearers of the Teutonick Knights in 1223. and afterwards well fortified against the Irruptions of the Heathen *Prussians*. *Herman de Salza*, Master of the Order, preferib'd Laws for its Government, which were so considerable as to be taken notice of publicly, and a Specimen of them have been publish'd by *Lambecius*. It was also honoured with an Episcopal See, but since the decay of the City, the Bishop hath been translated to *Colmensee* or *Culmsee*, a small Town about 12 miles South-East from *Culm*.

*Thorn*, *Torunum*, which stands on the *Vistula*, about 20 miles South from *Culm*, and 30 North-East from *Uladislaw*, 100 North-West from *Warsaw*, and 50 South-East from *Dantzick*, is the fairest and best-built Town in Royal *Prussia*, the Streets being much broader, and the Houses statelier than at *Dantzick*; it is also adorn'd with a *Gymnasium*, or small University, a Library, Hospital, and a stately Town-House, exceeded by none but *Amsterdam*. All which Structures were erected in the beginning of this Century, thro' the Care and Industry of *Henry Scroband*, one of the Burgo-masters, who died in 1609. It was heretofore subject to the Teutonick Order, from whom it revolted in 1454. and was afterwards a free imperial City; and tho' at present exempted from the Empire, and under the Protection of *Poland*, enjoys many Privileges. Here is a Bridge over the River, and at Old *Thorn*, a mile off, are still the Ruins of a Castle. The famous *Nicolas Copernicus*, Author of the Theory, was born here. This City was taken and regain'd several times in the *Suedish* Wars, from 1655. to 1665.

*Braunslaw* stands on the *Frisch-Haff*, 20 miles North-East from *Elbing*.

*Wartemberg* is 45 miles East from *Elbing*, in that part of the Regal *Prussia*, which advances forward into the middle of the Ducal.

The Ducal *Prussia* (which may now be also called Royal, in regard that the Elector of *Brandenburg* hath chosen this part of his Dominions to Honour with the Title of Kingdom, in his late Creation) is bounded on the North with the *Baltick* and *Samogitia*, on the South with *Warsavia*, on the East with *Lithuania*, and on the West with *Prussia* Royal. It is the larger part of *Prussia*, extending Eastward from the Sea Coast above 100 miles, and Southward towards *Warsavia* as far. The chief Towns in it are,

*Koningsberg*. } *Pillaw*.  
*Memel*. } *Heiligpeil*.  
*Labiau*. }

*Koningsberg*, the chief City of the Ducal *Prussia*, and a Place of great Trade, stands at the Mouth of the River *Pregel*, which here falls into the *Frisch-Haff*, 80 miles East from *Dantzick*, about as far West from the Confines of *Samogitia*, and 130 miles North from *Warsaw*. It is a large and well built Town, divided into three parts; whereof that which is properly the Old *Koningsberg*, and was built in 1260. by the Teutonick Order, hath the Ducal Palace in it; the second stands in an Island, and is called *Kniphoff*, from an Officer of that name, who joined it to *Koningsberg* in 1380. In this part stands the Cathedral of the Bishoprick of *Smarland*, and an University founded by Duke *Albert*; the third is called *Lehenicht*, which *Berthold* of *Austria*, added to the two former. The Lake called the *Frisch-Haff* opens to the *Baltick* Sea, and makes a convenient Port to this City which is thereby a great Emporium, and hath been subject to the *Brandenburger* since the Year 1525.

*Memel* stands at the extrem North part of *Prussia*, upon a Lake of fresh Water, called the *Curisch-Haff*, which opening to the *Baltick* makes a convenient Port, at the distance of 90 miles from *Koningsberg* to the North, and 60 from *Mittaw* in *Courland* to the West. It is seated among Lakes, and is fortified with a strong Castle which renders it the northern Key of this Country.

*Labiau* stands at the bottom of the *Curisch-Haff*, about 25 miles North-East from *Koningsberg*. *Pillaw*, a very safe Port on the *Baltick*, at the Mouth of the *Frisch-Haff*, about 30 miles West from *Koningsberg*. *Heiligpeil* stands over against it, within side the Lake.

## CHAP. IV.

### Of Samogitia and Courland.

**S**AMOGITIA lies on the North of *Prussia*, in a Triangular Form, between *Courland* on the North, *Lithuania* on the East and South-East, and Ducal *Prussia* on the South-West; a small part of it extending quite to the *Baltick* on the West, and the extent of it is about 100 miles. It is a marshy Soil, whence the Country has its name, *Sampgitz* signifying such in the Language of the Inhabitants, and hath abundance of Rivers and Lakes that often overflow the Land, which yields Pasture and Corn; but especially Woods in abundance, wherein great quantity of excellent Honey is found: A Race of Horses are bred here, which, tho'

small, are of a sprightly generous Nature. The River *Chronus*, otherwise called the *Russe*, passes thro' the South Point of this Country, whence running cross *Prussia* falls into the Lake *Curisch-Haff*. The Inhabitants are a dull stupid People, and were with great difficulty converted from Paganism by King *Uladislaus Jagello*; nor even to this day is it intirely rooted out, the Inhabitants of some of the more desert Parts worshipping Idols. This Country was sometime subject to the *Russians*, afterwards to the Teutonick Order, and at last conquer'd by *Uladislaus Jagello* King of *Poland* in the Fourteenth Century, and hath ever since been part of the Kingdom.



There are no considerable Cities here; those of greatest Note are,

Rosheim. }  
Midnik. } Birze.  
Schanden. } Kiedany.

*Rosheim* or *Rosennie*, is a small City seated near the River *Dubissa*, in the Latitude of 55. about 70 miles East from the Baltick Sea, near 50 West from the Confines of *Lithuania*, near 30 North from the River *Russ*, and about 80 miles North-East from *Koningsberg*. It is a place of no great Note, but is by some reckon'd the Capital of *Samogitia*: Tho' others give that Honour to

*Midnick* or *Vormatia*; because it is the Seat of the Bishop of *Samogitia*: It stands on the River *Wiratta*, about 25 miles North-West from *Rosheim*, and is but a very poor ordinary Place.

*Kiedany* stands 30 miles South-East from *Rosheim*. *Schanden* 60 miles to the North of *Rosheim*, and near the Confines of *Courland*. And *Birze*, which bears the Title of a Dukedom, stands 100 miles East from *Schanden*.

**C O U R L A N D**, or *Kurland*, lies on the North of *Samogitia*, between that and the River *Duina*, which divides it from *Livonia*; whereof this was formerly reckon'd a part. The Baltick Sea bounds it on the West, the Gulf of *Riga* and *Duina* on the North, *Samogitia* on the South, and *Lithuania* on the East. It is in length above 150 miles, but the breadth is not proportionate, being but 40, and in the Eastern part not above 20 miles. The Country is plain and fruitful, abounding with Corn and Honey; some parts of it are Fenny and full of Lakes and Rivers. The River *Duina* washes its Coasts, and affords them Water Carriage for their Goods to *Riga*, as the Baltick Sea does for Foreign Trade. This Country was formerly subject to the Teutonick Order, afterwards to the Poles,

and tho' at present it has its own Duke, he pays Homage to the King of *Poland*. It is divided into two Parts, 1. *Courland*, and 2. *Semigallia*; the chief Towns whereof are,

In *Courland*, which is the Western part, divided from *Semigallia* by the River *Mussa*, { *Goldingen*.  
{ *Windaw*.  
{ *Piltyn*.

In *Semigallia*, the Eastern part beyond the *Mussa*, { *Mittaw*.  
{ *Egypten*.  
{ *Bauske*.

*Goldingen* is usually reckoned the Capital of *Courland*, but otherwise not considerable. It stands upon the River *Wetaw*, about 30 miles from the Baltick, 130 miles North from *Koningsberg*, and 60 South-West from *Riga*.

*Piltyn* is the Seat of the Bishop of *Courland*, and stands upon the same River about 20 miles North from *Goldingen*.

*Windaw*, called by the Inhabitants *Kies*, is seated at the Mouth of the River *Wetaw* near the Baltick. It was formerly the Seat of the Provincial of *Liefland*; and the Sessions of the Parliament of *Courland* made it populous; but its ancient Splendor is lost, and at present 'tis only considerable on account of some Trade, Pitch, Tar, Wax, and other Commodities being exported hence to Foreign parts.

*Mittaw* stands on the Banks of the River *Mussa* or *Maus*, 50 miles South-East from *Goldingen*, 35 South from *Riga*, and above 250 North from *Warsaw*. It is the Capital of *Semigallia*, and the Seat of the Duke of *Courland*. The Town is mean, but the Castle is magnificent. It was taken by *Gustavus Adolphus* in 1621. but restored in 1629.

*Bauski* stands upon the same River, about 25 miles East from *Mittaw*.

*Egypten* stands on the Borders of *Lithuania*, 70 miles East from *Bauski*.

## C H A P. V.

### Of the Great Dutchy of LITHUANIA.

**LITHUANIA**, called *Litwa* by the Inhabitants, *Litweski* by the Poles, and *Littawen* by the Germans, the largest Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, lies on the East of the Provinces we have been speaking of, and is bounded on the North by *Courland*, *Livonia*, and *Muscovy*, on the South by *Volhinia* and *Polesia*, and on the East by *Polachia* and *Samogitia*. It extends from the 52d to the 56th Degree of Latitude, and from the 44th to the 45th Degree of Longitude, in Form almost Circular, and about 250 miles over. The Land is flat and marshy, and was formerly over-run with Woods, but by the Industry of the Kings they are in some measure cut down and the Land cultivated: Here are many Lakes and Rivers which afford the Inhabitants plenty of Fish, as the Forests do Venison, Honey, Pitch, and Furs; which last is very useful to the Inhabitants, for the Air is very cold and makes such Cloathing very necessary. The Land yields Corn (but the Cold often spoils the Harvest)

and feeds great Herds of Cattle, wherewith the Country is well flock'd. Pitch, Tar, and Timber are sent hence by the Merchants, and Wine, Salt, and Woollen Cloath receiv'd in Return; all other Necessaries the Inhabitants have at home.

*Lithuania* was formerly govern'd by its own Prince, called the Great Duke, and comprehended also *Volbinia* and *Polachia*; 'till *Uladislaus Jagello*, their Duke, being chosen King of *Poland*, annexed it to that Crown, but with the preservation of the ancient Laws and Form of Government: This was sometimes, in future Successions, opposed by the *Lithuanians*, and many Differences happen'd thereupon; 'till in the Year 1569. it was finally agreed that the *Lithuanians* should never elect a Great Duke, but should assemble with the *Polish* Nobility upon an Interregnum, and both Nations together choose one Prince, and that *Volhinia* and *Polachia* should be granted to *Poland*.



The Inhabitants were formerly most stupid Idolaters, till *Uladislaus Jagello* being converted, introduced the Christian Religion here, built a Cathedral, and founded a Bishoprick at *Vilna*, and erected divers other Churches; so that in time Idolatry was suppress'd; but the lower sort being very ignorant and stupid, do to this day in many places retain some remains of it, and because a Serpent was the God they worshipped formerly, do still keep in their Houses an Adder which they feed and cherish with great Care. The Nobility here, as in *Poland*, are very Proud, and domineer over the Comonalty, which are as sneaking, and submit to a strange degree, the Tenant being his Lord's Slave, and the greatest part of his time bellowed in his Service. The whole Country is divided into eight Palatinates, wherein are these Cities and Towns of Note.

In the Palatinate of *Wilna* which  
adjoyns to *Samogitia*.

*Wilna.*  
*Wilkomirz.*  
*Osmiana.*

In the Palatinate of *Braflaw*, which  
adjoyns also to *Samogitia*, and lies  
on the North of *Wilna*.

*Braflaw.*  
*Miadzial.*  
*Narocz.*

In the Palatinate of *Poloczko*, lying  
East from *Braflaw*.

*Poloczko.*  
*Druio.*  
*Driffa.*  
*Pliffa.*

Eastward of *Poloczko* lies the Palati-  
nate of *Witepsk*; in which are,

*Witepsk.*  
*Wisciffa.*  
*Ula.*  
*Surafs.*

On the West of *Wilna* lyes the Pala-  
tinate of *Troki*, divided into two  
parts by the River *Niemen*.

*Troki.*  
*Kowno.*  
*Grodno.*  
*Bielica.*  
*Merecz.*

The Palatinate of *Minski*, lies on  
the East of *Wilna*, and South of  
*Braflaw*, in which are.

*Minski.*  
*Borissow.*  
*Brodziet.*  
*Swislocz.*

In the Palatinate of *Mscislaw* which  
lies on the East of *Minski*, and  
South of *Witepsk*.

*Mscislaw.*  
*Mchilow.*  
*Orffa.*  
*Robaczow.*

The Palatinate of *Novogrodeck* is the  
South-west corner of *Lithuania*,  
having *Troki* on the North, and  
*Minski* on the East.

*Novogrodeck.*  
*Wolkowisca.*  
*Nesweis.*  
*Slonim.*  
*Slucz.*

*Wilna* or *Vilna*, called also *Vilenski* by the Inhabitants, and *die Wilde* by the Germans, is seated at the Confluence of the *Wilia* and *Wilna* Rivers, in the Latitude of 54 30 at the distance of 120 Miles from *Koningsberg* to the East, 180 from *Warsaw* to the North-East, and near 120 South from *Mittaw*. It is the Capital of *Lithuania*, and is a large and very populous City, founded by Duke *Gediminus* in 1305. the Houses are low, of Wood and mean, but the publick Buildings are fine, among which are the Castle, the Duke's Palace, the Cathedral and several Churches all built of Stone, the Bernardine Monastery, the University Founded by King *Stephen*, in 1379. and the foreign Merchants Houses, which are built of Stone, and well adorn'd, especially that

of the Muscovian Company. *Wilna* is an Episcopall See, founded as we had said by King *Uladislaus Jagello*, and a Place of Trade; but it is chiefly carried on by Foreigners, the Inhabitants being Poor and much addicted to Drunkenness. The Parliament or chief Court of Judicature sit here one Year and the next Year at *Minsk*. The Ducal Palace hath an Armory very well furnished. About two Miles from hence stands another Palace built of Wood by King *Sigismund*, adorned with a Park, Orchards and Gardens: It is called *Wersupa*, being near the Water, which the Word signifies. In 1655. the Muscovites took *Vilna*, but it was afterwards recover'd.

The River *Wilia*, on which this City stands, divides the Palatinate into two equal Parts, and then washing the Borders passes through some part of *Samogitia* and *Prussia*, and falls at last into the *Baltick*, having first received several other Rivers, and changed its Name into that of *Russe*.

*Wilkomirz* stands in the lower part of the Palatinate, 35 miles North-West from *Wilna*, on the River *Swiera*: And *Osmiana* stands in the upper part; 25 Miles South West from *Wilna*.

*Braflaw* stands near the Confines of *Courland*, 70 Miles North-East from *Wilna*; it is the Capital of a Palatinate, and has a strong Castle built upon a Rock. The Town is seated upon a Lake, whence issues a small River, that about 20 Miles off falls into the *Duina*.

*Miadzial* stands 50 miles South from *Braflaw*, upon another small Lake and River, and *Narocz* stands upon a River of the same Name, 20 miles South-West from *Miadzial*. Both these Towns by means of this River have communication with *Wilna*.

*Poloczko* stands upon the River *Duina*, and another small River to which it gives Name, 100 miles East from *Braflaw*. It is the Capital of the Palatinate, which was formerly a Duchy, a large and populous Town, and guarded by two Castles, one on the *Duina*, and the other on the *Polotta*. It was taken by the Muscovites in 1563. regain'd by K. *Stephen* in 1579. and since that again taken by the Muscovites, and retaken by the Poles.

*Druio* stands upon the *Duina* 70 Miles below *Poloczko*, and 30 East from *Braflaw*, and hath a Castle near it. *Driffa* stands at the Mouth of a River of the same Name which falls into the *Duina*, 20 miles East from *Druio*; and *Liffa* is about 30 miles South from it.

*Witepsk*, the Capital of a Palatinate is seated on the *Duina*, where it receives the *Witza* 50 miles East from *Poloczko*; it hath a Castle which was often taken and retaken in the last Muscovite War. It had formerly Dukes of its own, till *Olgerd* was chosen Great Duke.

*Wisciffa*, stands near the *Duina*, 20 miles below *Witepsk*, and *Ula* 20 Miles below it at the Mouth of a River of the same Name. *Surafs* on the *Duina*, also is about 25 miles East from *Witepsk*.

*Troki* the Capital of a Palatinate, and formerly the Seat of the Great Duke, is seated among inaccessible Marshes, whence Issues the River *Brasala* that 10 miles below falls into the *Wilna*: It is distant about 20 miles from *Wilna* to the West, and hath a strong Castle for its defence, built by *Guedimin* Great Duke, in 1322. taken by the Muscovites, and the Town very much destroy'd, in 1655.

*Kowno* stands on the River *Niemen* near its mouth into the *Wilna*, 30 miles West from *Troki*. *Grodno* is seated partly on a rising Ground, near the Banks



of the River *Niemen*, over which it has a stately Bridge of Wood. The Town is Fortified with a Castle Founded upon a Rock, and is 60 miles distant from *Troki* to the South. *Bielia* stands also on the *Niemen* 60 miles above *Grodno*. And *Merecz* 40 miles below *Grodno* on a River of the same Name which there falls into the *Niemen*.

*Minsk* the Capital of an other Palatinate, is seated in a Marsh near the River *Swislocz*, 80 miles South-east from *Wilna*. It is a well Built Town, and hath a Castle for its defence. *Boryssow* stands upon the River *Berezina*, 50 miles East from *Minsk*, which is a regular Fortification, with deep Ditches, and a double Palisade, and hath a Morass on one side. *Brodzieck* upon the same River 40 miles to the South. And *Swislocz* 20 miles more South where the River of the same Name falls into the *Berezina*.

*Mscislaw* stands upon the River *Sesl*, in the Confines of *Muscovy*, 170 miles East from *Minsk*. It was taken by the *Muscovites* in the last War, and regained by King *Sigismund I.* whose General *Constantine* Duke of *Ostrog*, did here cut to pieces the *Muscovite* Army of 40000 Men. *Mobilow*, seated on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Boristhenes* or *Nieper* (which passes quite through this Palatinate) 50 miles South-east from *Mscislaw*, is a good well built Town. It was taken by the *Muscovites* in 1654. and retaken by the *Poles* in 1656. *Orssa* stands also on the *Nieper*, where it receives the River *Osa*, 60 miles West from *Mscislaw*. It is a good Town and

hath a strong Castle, but was taken by the *Muscovites*. *Robaczow*, the Capital of a Territory, which by some Geographers is reckon'd as separate from this Palatinate, is a large good Town seated on the *Nieper*, where it receives the *Odrucz*, 80 miles South-west from *Mscislaw*.

*Novogrodeck*, call'd also *Litawiski*, is one of the best Cities in *Lithuania*, and used formerly to be given to the Great Duke's second Son. It is Seated upon the River *Niemen*, 60 miles South-west from *Minsk*, and 60 South from *Wilna*. In this City and in *Minski*, the Dyet or Parliament of *Lithuania* is alternately held. *Walkowisca* stands upon the River *Ross* 60 miles West from *Novogrodeck*. *Stonim* stands upon the *Szura*, 30 Miles South from *Novogrodeck*, and *Nesweis* stands on the Eastern Confines, 60 miles from *Novogrodeck*, and as far South from *Minski*. *Slucz* bears the Title of a Duchy, and was formerly a separate Territory. The City stands upon a River of the same Name, 80 miles South-west from *Novogrodeck*, and is a large Town, but the Houses are of Wood. Near this City a famous Victory was obtain'd by the *Poles* over the *Tartars*, in the time of King *Sigismund I.*

And now having Survey'd *Poland* properly so call'd, *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, *Samogitia* and *Courland*, we shall proceed to *Warsovia*, wherein stands the City *VVarfaw*, whence passing through *Polackia*, *Polesia*, *Red-Russia*, *Podolia* and *Volhinia* finish our Journey in the *Ukraine*, the extream South east part of the *Polish* Dominions.

## CHAP. VI.

### Of *Warsovia*, *Polackia* and *Polesia*.

**W**ARSOVIA or *Masovia*, called by the *Poles*, *Mazowsze*, and by the *Germans*, *Die Masaw*; may be reckon'd the most considerable part of the *Polish* Dominion, being the Seat of the King, and the Grand Dyet of the Kingdom, as also of a vast number of Nobility. It lyes in the middle of the Countries we have been Treating of, having *Prussia* on the North, the Upper *Poland* on the South, *Polackia* which parts it from *Lithuania* on the East, and the Lower *Poland* on the West. This is it's present Bounds, but formerly all *Polackia*, and that part of Lower *Poland* on the other side the *Vistula*, that is, the Palatinates of *Dobrzin* and *Ploczko*, were part of it, and the whole Govern'd by a Duke of it's own, doing Homage to the King, till in the year 1495. the Race being Extinct, *Ploczko* and *Dobrzin* were United to the Crown, and the rest given to *Conrade* Brother to King *John Albert*, whose Issue Male failing, in the year 1526, it was finally annexed to the Crown. And *Polackia* which had been joyned to *Lithuania*, was also annexed to the Crown in 1567.

It lyes between the 51 Deg. 30 Min. and 53 Deg. 20 Min. of Latitude, in form near Oval, extending from North-east to South-west about 130 miles, and in breadth about 90 miles. It has the benefit of several Navigable Rivers, especially the *Vistula*, or *VVeissel*, which runs through the Southern

part, and the *Bug* passes quite cross from East to West. The Country is plain, and the Soil fruitful, yielding Corn, Cattle, Fish and Fowl, in good plenty.

It is but one Palatinate denominated from *Czersko*, which is the Seat of the Palatine; but *VVarfaw* is the Principal City, which with the other chief Towns are as follow.

<i>VVarfaw</i> .	}	<i>Zakrocin</i> .
<i>Czersko</i> .		<i>Novigrod</i> .
<i>Latowicz</i> .		<i>Lumsa</i> .
<i>VVieschgod</i> .		

*VVarfaw*, the Metropolis of *Poland*, is Seated upon the *Vistula*, in the Latitude of 52 Deg. 10 Min. 150 miles North from *Cracow*, 120 South from *Koninsberg*, 100 East from *Gnesna*, and about 100 West from the Confines of *Lithuania*. It is a large and populous City, the Seat of the King of *Poland*, and of the Sessions of the Grand Dyet of the Kingdom. It is divided into four parts, viz. The Old and the New Town, the Suburbs of *Cracow*, and the *Prag*. The Palace is a noble Structure, inform four-square, built by *Sigismund III.* and much beautified by his Successors. The chief Church of *St. John Baptist* is very fine, as are the other publick Buildings, which are the Arsenal, the Castle, the Market-place, &c. Over the River here is a stately Wooden Bridge, and beyond it stands another Palace



Palace of the King's, called *Viasdow*, wherein the Dyer Assembled. It stands amidst many delicate Gardens and Groves; and not far from it in the Suburbs of *Crasow*, is to be seen the Monument of *Demetrius Suiscius* Great Duke of *Muscovy*, who being taken Prisoner, died a Captive in *Poland*, whose King to Honour him, built a small Chappel over it. In the Plains near this City the Election of the King is made.

*Czersko* stands also on the *Vistula*, 30 miles South from *Warsaw*. It is a small City, the Seat of the Palatine, but else not very considerable. *Latowicz* stands on the River *Lwierz* 30 miles East from *Czersko*. *Wischnegrad* is seated on the *Vistula*, where the *Bug* falls into it, about 50 miles North-west from *Warsaw*, and hardly 20 from *Ploczka*. *Zakroczyn* stands upon the *Bug* 20 miles above *Wischnegrad*. *Novograd* is seated on the River *Narew* in the North-east part of this Province, 80 miles from *Warsaw*; and 20 miles above it stands *Lumsa*.

*POLACHIA*, call'd by the Inhabitants *Podlaske*, and by the Germans *Podlachien*, is but a small Province, lying between *Masovia* and *Lithuania*, with *Polesia* and *Lublin* Palatinate on the South, and *Prussia* on the North. It extends in length, from North to South 120 miles, but in breadth it is hardly 30. The River runs through the Southern part, and several smaller Rivers water the other parts. It is but one Palatinate, whereof the Capital is *Bielsk*. The Towns of chiefest note are,

*Bielsk.* } *Narew.*  
*Droiczyn.* } *Suras.*  
*Mielnick.* } *Augustow.*  
*Lozicze.* }

*Bielsk* the chief City of *Polachia* is seated on the River *Biala*, in the midway between *Grodno* in the North, and *Brest* on the South, 100 miles East from *Warsaw*, and 30 West from *Sluczk*. It is guarded by a strong Castle, and is a place of good Force. *Droiczyn* stands on the River *Bug*, 50 miles South-east from *Bielsk*, as doth also *Mielnick* 10 miles

above it. *Lozicze* is on the other side of the River, 20 miles to the South. *Narew* stands 15 miles from *Bielsk* to the North, and *Suras* 20 miles further, and *Augustow* in the extream North part 60 miles from *Bielsk*.

*POLESIA* is of much larger extent, comprehending in length from East to West above 200 miles, but in breadth not above 60, or at most 70 miles: It lies on the South of *Lithuania* and *Polesia*, on the East it is bounded with *Volhinia*, on the West with *Upper Poland*, and on the South with *Red Russia*, and *Volhinia*. It is a very Marthy Soil, and abounds with Forests, and Rivers, and consequently hath plenty of Venison and Fish: Honey also is found in the Woods, which the Inhabitants vend abroad. This Province is sometimes call'd the Palatinate of *Brest* or *Bressici*, that being the chief City and Seat of the only Palatine in the whole Province. The chief Cities are these, viz.

*Bressici.* } *Wyhoneffcz.*  
*Koden.* } *Olewsko.*  
*Miedzyrzeci.* } *Pinsk.*  
*Fanow.* } *Davidow.*  
*Bialla.* } *Wielk.*

*Brest* or *Bressici*, is Seated on the River *Bug*, 50 miles South from *Bielsk*, and 100 East from *Warsaw*; it is the Capital of this Province, and is Fortified with a Castle built upon a Rock. *Koden* stands upon the same River 20 miles above it. *Miedzyrzeci* stands in the Confines upon the River *Krffina* 30 miles to the West. Upon the same River 10 miles to the East, and 20 West from *Koden* stands *Bialla*, the Palace of the Duke of *Radziwill*, adorn'd with a *Gymnasium* or a small University. *Fanow* stands upon the *Bug*, 20 miles West from *Brest*. *Pinsk* stands upon the River *Pina*, 90 miles West from *Brest*. *Wyhoneffcz* is 30 miles North from *Pinsk*. *Davidow* 70 East from *Pinsk*. And *Widlec* a Castle, 20 miles more to the East. *Olewsko* stands in the extream South-east part of *Polesia*, on a River of the same Name.

## C H A P. VII.

### Of Red Russia, Podolia, Volhynia and the Ukrain.

**R**ED-RUSSIA in its ancient extent comprehended all *Volhinia* and *Podolia*, as well as the Province which now bears that Name, *Russia*, because formerly possess'd by *Russes*, and *Red* from a Clay of that Colour very frequent here; and because in the Woods the Earth is very Black, the Country is by some call'd *Black-Russia*, as also *Little-Russia*, to distinguish this from *Russia* or *Muscovy*: And in those days it was Govern'd by Princes of their own, who were formidable both to *Poland* and *Muscovy*; till in the year 1341. *Casimer II.* called the Great, did Incorporate it with *Poland*. It's present Bounds are *Polesia* on the North, *Volhynia* and *Podolia* on the East, *Upper Poland* on the West, and on the South the *Carpathian* Mountains divide it from *Hungary* and *Transilvania*. It extends from 48. to 51 Degrees 20 Minutes of Latitude. 200 Miles from North to South, and in the Southern part 160, but

in the North but half so much in breadth. The Country is something Mountainous, but water'd with abundance of Rivers, which render it very Fruitful. The River *Bug* rises here, and passes from South to North, almost the whole length of the Country. The River *Niester* by the Ancients Nam'd *Turla*, hath also it's Source here.

The whole Province is divided into three Palatinates, which passing from North to South Occur in this Order.

The Palatinate of *Chelm* in which are, { *Chelm.*  
*Kranoslaw.*  
*Turisk.*

The Palatinate of *Belz*. { *Belz.*  
*Zamoscie.*  
*Rubieffow.*

The



The Palatinate of Lemberg.

Whereof the South-East part is called *Pocutia* or *Pocutk*.

Lemberg.  
Przemyslaw.  
Jaroslaw.  
Nidmerow.  
Grodzka.  
Festyn.  
Halicz.  
Sniatyn.

*Chebm* stands in the Latitude of 51 Degrees; 60 miles South from *Bresle*, 110 South-East from *Warsaw*, and 30 East from *Lublin*. It is but a small City tho' the chief of the Palatinate, and formerly an Episcopal See; but this place being much destroyed by the *Muscovites* and *Tartars*, during the Wars, the Bishops Seat was Translated to *Krasnostaw*. So that at present the Town is not very considerable, but is Guarded by a Castle of Wood.

*Krasnostaw*, or *Krasnostaw*, stands 20 Miles to the South-west from *Chebm*, on the River *Wieprz* which here makes a Lake; it is a small City, but in good Condition, and enjoys the Honour of an Episcopal See. *Turisk* stands on the Borders of *Volhinia* 30 Miles East from *Chebm*.

*Belz*, or *Belez*, stands among Marshes 50 Miles South from *Chebm*. It is a small City built of Wood, and only considerable by being the chief of the Palatinate. *Samoscie* stands about 30 Miles South from *Chebm*, and 40 North-west from *Belz*, and *Rubiescow*, 30 Miles from *Samoscie*, and as far North from *Belz*.

*Lemberg*, *Leopoli* call'd *Lwów* by the *Poles*, is the most considerable place of this part of *Poland*, being an Arch-Episcopal See, the Capital of a Palatinate, and of all *Red-Russia*, and also a City of very good Trade. It is Seated upon the River *Peltem* which falls into the *Bug*, and is distant 40 miles from *Belz* to the South, 90 North from the Confines of *Transylvania*, 150 East from *Cracow*, and 180 South East from *Warsaw*. It is no very large City but well Built, and in good State, and hath two Castles for its Defence, one within the Town, and the other without the Walls. *Przemyslaw*, *Premisla*, a well Built Populous City, and Episcopal See, is seated on the River *Sana*, 60 miles West from *Lemberg*. *Neimeraw* stands 20 miles West from *Lemberg*, and *Jaroslaw* 40 miles beyond that Eastward. *Grodzka* is 30 miles South-west from *Lemberg*. And *Festyn* is near 30 miles South-west from it.

*Halicz* the Capital of the Territory of *Pocutia*, stands upon the River *Tyr* 50 miles South-east from *Lemberg*. It was formerly a very considerable place, having been the Capital of a little Kingdom, afterwards had its own Dukes: and lastly, was the Seat of the Arch-bishoprick, now Translated to *Lemberg*. But the Wars and Revolutions have altered its State, and it is now not very notable, but hath a Castle for its defence. *Sniatyn* upon the River *Pruth*, 40 miles South east from *Halicz* on the Confines of *Moldavia* is by some reckon'd the Capital of *Pocutia*.

*PODOLIA* lyes on the East of *Red-Russia*, having *Volhinia* on the North, the River *Niester* or *Turla* on the South, *Oczacow* *Tartars* on the East, and the Palatinate of *Lemberg* on the West. It is a large Country being 250 miles long, and near 50 miles broad. The River *Boegh* runs quite through it from West to East, and the River *Niester* washes its Southern Frontier, and several other smaller Rivers water the Country, which is exceeding Fruitful, yeilding especially *Wax* and *Hony* in abundance. The

Neighbourhood of the *Turks*, hath subjected this Province to frequent Invasions, especially in the year 1672. the *Turkish* Army entred it, and took *Caminiec*, which the King of *Poland* granted to them, to obtain a Peace; but the Nation resenting it, in 1673 declared War against the *Turks*, and the *Polish* Army under the General *John Sobieski*, afterwards King, obtained a great Victory, and took some places; but *Caminiec* remained in the *Turks* Hands till the late Peace at *Carlowitz*, wherein it was agreed that it should be restor'd to the *Poles*, and the *Turks* quit all pretensions to *Podolia*, and the *Ukraine*. The Eastern part of this Province, altho' it be good Land, is in a manner a perfect Defart, by reason of the frequent Invasions and Ravage of the *Turks*.

It is divided into two parts Upper, and Lower, wherein are these Towns, viz.

In Upper *Podolia*, which is the Western part, a Populous and Fruitful Country.

*Caminiec*.  
*Bouckzowka*.  
*Trambowl*.  
*Tarnopol*.  
*Zbaras*.  
*Bar*.  
*Chelminck*.

In the Lower *Podolia*, the Eastern part, call'd also the Palatinate of *Baclaw*.

*Baclaw*.  
*Vinnicza*.  
*Haman*.  
*Konieczpole*.  
*Oribow*.  
*Cazarne*.

*Caminiec* or *Kaminiec*, call'd *Kaminiec Podolski* by the *Poles*, is the Capital of *Podolia*, and of a Palatinate, seated on the River *Smotrzcic*, which a little below falls into the *Niester*, at the distance of 100 miles from *Lemberg* to the South-east, and not above 12 from the Confines of *Moldavia*. It is a Populous well built City, and an Episcopal See, surrounded with high craggy Rocks, and besides Fortified with Walls, and a very strong Castle; so that it is the strongest place on this side, and used to be reckoned the Key of *Poland*. It hath several times been attacked by the *Valachians*, *Tartars* and *Turks*; in the year 1669. it suffer'd miserably by Fire, and in 1672. was taken by the *Turks*, who kept possession of it, and thereby often made Inroads into *Poland*, and carried away vast numbers of Captives, till by the late happy Peace concluded at *Carlowitz*, in the year 1699. it was agreed to be surrender'd, and accordingly the next Spring evacuated, and the *Poles* put in possession of it. *Bouckzowka* stands 20 miles West from *Caminiec*, *Trambowl* 40 miles North from it, and *Tarnopol* 30 miles more North. *Zbaras* hath the Title of a Dukedom; it stands 20 miles North from *Tarnopol*, and near the Confines of *Volhinia*. *Festyn* stands 50 miles North from *Caminiec*. *Bar* 60 miles North-east from *Caminiec*, is a strong Fortres. *Chelminck* stands on the River *Boeg* among Marshes, on the Borders of *Volhinia*.

*Baclaw* the Capital of a Palatinate, and of the Lower *Podolia*, is seated on the River *Bug*, at the distance of 90 miles from *Caminiec* to the East, and 40 from the Confines of *Moldavia*: It cannot be expected that this should be a very flourishing City, considering the long Neighbourhood of the *Turks*, by whom it was laid wast in 1672. *Vinnicza* stands upon the same River, 30 miles to the North. *Haman* stands 60 miles East from *Baclaw* towards the *Ukraine*, *Konieczpole* stands upon the *Bug* 60 miles South-



South-east from *Bracław*. *Oribow* is seated on the other side the *Niester* in the Confines of *VValachia*. And *Cazarne* is a Fort on the Confines of *Oczaków* Tartary near the *Niester*, in the South-east Corner of this Province.

*VOLHINIA* is a very large Tract of Land, especially if we comprehend the Upper *Volhinia*, otherwise called the *Ukrain*, for then it is 500 miles in length from East to West; but of that we shall speak by it's self, and at present consider *Volhinia* Superior, or the Palatinate of *Lusuc*; which is generally known by the Name of *Volhinia*, and is of it self a large and plentiful Country, near 200 miles in length, and 100 in breadth. It is bounded on the North with *Polesia*, on the South with *Podolia*, on the East with the *Ukrain*, and the on West with *Red-Russia*. And hath in it's Limits these Cities and Towns of note.

<i>Lusuck</i> or <i>Lucko</i> .	}	<i>Olyka</i> .
<i>Krzemienec</i> .		<i>Baranowka</i> .
<i>Ostrog</i> .		<i>Zytomierz</i> .
<i>Zaslav</i> .		<i>Berdiczow</i> .

*Lusuc* called *Lucko* by the Inhabitants, is the Metropolis of *Volhinia*, and the Palatinate to which it gives Name. It is seated on the River *Ster* 90 miles North-east from *Lemberg*, 130 miles North from *Caminiac*, 170 miles South-east from *Warsaw*. It is a large City, and the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Arch-bishop of *Gnesna*; but is chiefly Inhabited by *Jews*, *Armenians* and other Eastern People, that Traffick in these Countries. *Krzemieniec* is a small City seated on a Hill near the River *Icu*, 35 miles South-east from *Lusuck*, it is the Capital of a Territory, and hath a Castle founded on a Rock. *Ostrog* formerly the Seat of a Duke, to whom a great part of this Country was Subject, stands about 50 miles East from *Lusuck*. *Olyka* 20 miles East from *Lusuck* bears the Title of a Duchy; as doth also *Zaslav*, 20 miles South from *Ostrog*. *Beretsko* stands 20 miles South from *Lusuck*. *Zytomierz* stands towards the Confines of the *Ukrain*, 120 miles from *Lusuck* to the East, and *Berdiczow* upon the same Confines 40 miles South from *Zytomierz*.

*VOLHINIA INFERIOR*, commonly call'd the *UKRAIN*, or the Palatinate of *Kiow*, is of much larger extent than the Upper *Volhinia*, being near 300 miles in length, and 150 in breadth. The River *Boristhenes* or *Nieper* passes through the middle of it, from North-west, to South-east; and it hath besides abundance of other smaller Rivers. The Land is very Fruitful, but the Eastern part of it is however, a meer Desert by reason of the Neighbourhood of the *Tartars*. This is the Country of the *COSSACKS*, which being a People often mention'd in the History of these parts, it will not be amiss to give a short account of 'em. They have their Name from *Kosa* a Scythe, their usual Weapon, and were originally a Crew of dissolute Rovers, that Assembled together from the Frontiers of *Russia*, *Volhinia* and *Podolia*, to practise Piracy on the *Baltick* Sea: They appear'd first in the Reign of *Sigismund* I. to the Number of six Thousand, who with shallow Boats, could pass those Rocks in the mouth of the *Boristhenes*, that hinder the Navigation from the *Ukrain* to the *Black* Sea, and during the Summer they Rov'd all over the *Black* Sea, and it's Coasts, pillaging and spoiling wherever they came. This they continued

many years. *Stephen Bathory* King of *Poland* form'd them into an orderly *Militia*, intending to use them against the *Tartars*, gave them the Town and Territory of *Trethimirow*, appointed a General over them, and gave them many Priviledges; and for some time they were serviceable to *Poland*, in opposing the *Tartars*. But being sensible of their Strength, they begun to set up for themselves, and in the year 1587. Rebell'd, but their General being taken and Executed, it was quieted for a time. About the year 1600. they were so Powerful that the *Poles* were forced to raise a large Army against them, who often worsted 'em, and took their Generals, but still they continued mutinous, wherefore their Priviledges were taken away; and they continued in a state of enmity: Till about the year 1640. King *Uladislaus*, VI. making War upon the *Tartars*, collected them together, and set over them for General *Bogdan Chmielniski*; who was afterwards a bitter and formidable Enemy to *Poland*: For the *Cossacks*, being oppressed by the *Polish* Lords their Landlords, and on complaint receiving no redress, they Armed in vast Numbers, and calling in the *Tartars*, furiously attack'd the *Poles*; but King *John Casimer* so well resisted them, that the *Tartars* accepted of a Peace in 1649. But *Chmielniski* not trusting to that, obliged the Prince of *Moldavia* to join with him, which produced another War, in the year 1651. wherein the *Tartars* and *Cossacks* were worsted. And since that time they have not been so considrable.

The Land as we have said, is fruitful, producing Corn and other Commodities, but by reason of the Ravage of the *Turks*, hath been but little Cultivated: For in the year 1677. by Agreement, this Country was Resigned to the Grand Seignior, who kept it till the year 1699. when by the Peace concluded at *Carlowitz*, it was restored to the *Pole*.

The whole Province is but one Palatinate, denominated from *Kiow*, the chief Cities and Towns, whereof are these.

<i>Kiow</i> .	}	<i>Czernobel</i> .
<i>Bialogrod</i> .		<i>Trethymirow</i> .
<i>Bialacerkew</i> .		<i>Czirkassy</i> .
<i>Kotelma</i> .		<i>Kudack</i> .

*Kiow*, *Kiovia*, is seated on the River *Boristhenes* or *Nieper*, in the Latitude of 51. at the distance of 200 miles from *Lucko* to the East, 60 miles South from the Frontiers of *Lithuania*, and 100 North from *Podolia*. It is an Episcopal See, a Palatinate, and Adorn'd with a kind of University; hath Ten Churches, whereof four for the *Roman*, and the rest for the *Greek* way of Worship; it is also a place of some Trade for Corn, Furs, Tallow, &c. and is Guarded by a Castle, and Surrounded with a Trench, and some other Fortifications; but is not very Populous, nor comparable to the ancient *Kiow*, which stood a little distant, and was formerly a very large and opulent City, whereof the Ruins of many stately Buildings and large Walls, are still to be seen. The two Churches of *St. Sophia*, and *St. Michael*, which remain in tolerable good State, were Sumptuous Buildings, the Walls of the former being Adorn'd with Mosaick Work; and the Roof of the latter very richly Gilt. The City was Founded by a *Russian* Prince Named *Kius* in the year 861. and was the Metropolis of *Tauro Scythia*. Then it became the Seat of the *Russian* Empire, and was afterwards Govern'd by it's own Princes. It was Storm'd and Pillag'd by the *Tartars* in 1615. and has ever since declined.



Above *Kiow* about 30 miles to the South, stands *Starky*, and 10 miles above that *Ryszow*, both noted for Passage of the River *Nieper*.

*Bialograd*, stands 10 miles South-west from *Kiow*. *Katelnia* on the Frontiers of the Upper *Volhinia*, 40 miles South-west from *Kiow*. *Bialacerkiew* stands about the same distance South from *Kiow*. *Trethmir* the place which King *Batbory*, as has been said, gave to the *Cossacks*, stands upon the *Nieper*, 50 miles above *Kiow*, and is a place of Strength having a Castle for it's defence. *Czernobel* stands also on the River, but as many miles below *Kiow*. *Czyrkassy*, stands upon the River too, 80 miles above *Kiow*, and

*Kudack* a strong Fort, built by the *Polanders* in 1635. against the Incursions of the *Tartars*, stands in the extream East Confines of the *Polish* Dominions, on the West side of the River near the Confines of *Tartary*.

Some part of the *Ukrain* on the East side of the River, is Subject to the *Muscovite*.

And thus we conclude our Account of *Poland*, having passed through all the Provinces of this great Kingdom, and according to the best Informations could be procured, not omitted mentioning any considerable City or Town.

M U S C O V Y.



# MUSCOVY or RUSSIA.

*Muscovia, aut Alba Russia.*



## CHAP. I.

### Of MUSCOVY in General.

**M**USCOVY otherwise called *White Russia*, and *Russia Magna*, to distinguish it from the Province of Poland, called *Russia Rubra*, was anciently the greatest part of the *Sarmatia Europea*. The Name of *Russia* was taken from the People, called *Rossi*, *q. d.* dispersed or scatter'd, being Originally wanderers without any Government. The *Moschi* mention'd by *Strabo*, were one Nation of these People, whence the Name of the Province

of *Muscovia*, most probably, was derived; and since the Monarch has made this his Seat, the Name of this Province hath been Communicated to the whole Empire. It is the largest Country under one Government in *Europe*, nay perhaps in the *World*, being above 3000 miles broad. It lyes between the 46th. and 70th. Degree of Latitude, including from the 7th. Climate of the Temperate Zone, to the 2d. Climate of the Frigid Zone: And in Longitude



from the 55th. to the 105th. Degree. It is bounded on the North with the Ocean, Denominated from its Shoars *Muscovian* and *Tartarian*, *Nova Zemla*, divided from the Continent by the Straights of *Vizga*. On the South with *Tartaria Minor*, the *Palus Meotis*, *Crim-Tartary* and *Turky*, and the *Caspian Sea*, which parts it from *Persia*. On the East with the *Assiack* or Great *Tartary*, and on the West with some Provinces of *Sueden*, *Lithuania*, *Poland* and the *Ukraine*. It is in vain to talk of it's utmost Extent, for the Eastern part is all Wilderness, by reason of the *Tartars*; and the North-part the same, because of its extream cold Climate. So that tho' the whole Empire be reckoned 3000 miles extent either way, yet that part of it that is Populous and well Cultivated (being the South-west part) is not above 600 miles Square.

The CLIMATE must necessarily be very different in so vast a Tract of Land, but in general it is very Cold, and at *Moscow* it self, in the Winter time the AIR is not tolerable, the extream parts of Men's Bodies, as Noses, Ears, &c. being often mortified with the Cold; and tho' they wrap themselves up in Furrs, yet without continual Chafing their Noses and Fingers they are in danger of losing 'em when they come out of the Air. 'Tis said if a Man spits it shall be frozen by that time it comes to the Ground, and Water thrown into the Air will fall down Ice. The Summer on the contrary is sultry hot, but then it is short, and immediately follows the Winter; for no sooner is the Snow off the Ground, but the Corn shoots up so fast, that in two Months time they cut it; this is Attributed to the Snow, which lying on the Ground not only Mellows the Land, but also keeps the Plants from the Air, and lets them take good Root. As soon as they have Reaped they must Sow immediately for the Summer is not above three months long. But notwithstanding this extream Cold, the SOIL is very Fruitful, producing Plenty of Corn and divers Sorts of Fruits, particularly excellent Melons; also Rhubarb in great quantity, Flax, Hemp, good Pasture, Wax and Honey. Many of the Provinces have large Forrests, wherein are taken Bears, Foxes, Sables, Ermins, and those other Wild Beasts, whose Furrs are so esteemed in all Parts; besides which, *Russia* furnishes the World with the Leather, called *Russian* and *Buff*, Pot-ashes for Soap, Cavear made of the Rows of Sturgeon and Belluga, Iling-glass, Morfe's Teeth, Sperma Cetis, and divers other very useful COMMODITIES, which are very Commodiously Transported by means of the many Navigable RIVERS wherein this Country very much abounds. Those of chiefest note are the *Volga*, the *Don* or *Tanaïs*, the *Occa*, the *Suchana* and *Fugb* which compose the *Dwina*, the *Kama*, the *Oby*, and the *Jenesaïda*. Of these the *Volga* must be reckon'd the Noblest, being of singular use to the *Russians* who by the means of it, have Water-Carriage from *Persia*, quite up into the very Heart of their Country. This was the *Ria* of the Ancients, and hath its Source in the Province of *Rezbek*, which lyes on the West of *Moscow*; and after a Course of near 2000 miles, it falls into the *Caspian-Sea*, in 40 mouths at *Astrachan*, in its way receiving the *Occa*, which rises in *Werotin*, and receives the *Moska*, as it passes by that Province, and falls into the *Volga* at *Nisi-Novogorod*; The *Kama*, which rises in *Piermia*, and falls into the *Volga*, a little below *Casan*; and several other smaller Rivers, which contribute to enlarge this great Stream, so as to make it several Leagues broad.

before it issues into the Sea. A particular account of it, is given us by a late *Dutch Traveller*, who Sail'd down the Stream from *Moscow* quite to *Astrachan*, by whose Journal it appears that he was near 4 months on his Voyage.

The *Don* or *Tanaïs*, by some reckon'd the Limits of *Asia* and *Europe*, on that side, rises in the Province of *Rezan*, and passing by *Pole*, and the *Rezbou Donski* dividing it from *Crim Tartary*, comes so near to the *Volga*, that an attempt was made to cut a Canal from one to the other, but the *Nagaym-Tartars*, who at that time possessed the Kingdom of *Astrachan* opposed it, and with a great Army beat off the *Crim-Tartar* and *Turks* from the Work: From hence the River *Don* winding to the West, falls at last into the *Palus Meotis* at *Asoph*. The *Oby*, the greatest River of *Muscovy*, flows out of the Lake *Katbay* in *Great-Tartary*, passes through the *Muscovian-Tartary*, making in its Course divers Lakes and Islands, and receiving many other Rivers, falls into the Northern Ocean at *Samoieda*. The *Jenesaïza* rises also in *Tartary*, and falls into the same Sea, 100 Leagues East from *Oby*. The *Dnieper* falls into the White Sea at *Archangel*; the Courses of the *Suchana* and *Fugb*, whose confluence Compose it, will be seen in the Map, as will also the Course of the other Rivers, which we shall have occasion to mention in our following Description of the Country.

The INHABITANTS of *Muscovy* have the misfortune to bear but an ill Character abroad; whether they deserve so bad as they have, I cannot determin; but considering that they want the two chief means of Improving Men's Morals and Manners, which are Learning and Travel, we may the less scruple to believe Travellers, who all affirm that they are perfectly Illiterate and Brutish, and so very much addicted to Drunkenness, that more than ordinary severe Laws are made against that Vice, and smoking Tobacco, with which they also used to Intoxicate themselves. They affect Fatness, looking upon it as Graceful. In their Dealings they are Crafty and not over Honest: Jealous, Cruel and Proud; but withal of mean Spirit, when severely Treated. The Common People live in great subjection to the Lords, and they in as absolute dependance on the Emperor, who takes Care to keep 'em Ignorant, and therefore no Publick School, much less a University, is to be found in all his Dominions; even the Priesthood have no more Learning than serves them to Read Divine Service. Also the Gentry are by Law forbid to Travel. But the Present Czar, having himself in the years 1696. and 1697. taken a Journey abroad and Visited the Courts of *Poland*, *Sueden*, *Denmark*, *Germany*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, and *England*; in seeing the Politeness of those People (added to his own Inclination to Arts and Sciences) hath been induced to change that Politique and on the Contrary to encourage the Study of Languages: and already hath Erected Schools at *Moscow*, and sent the young Nobility to Travel, so that in all Probability this Nation will in a short time be much improved. They are of a robust and healthy Constitution, Strong and fit to endure any Fatigue in War; the Women are well Favoured and fair enough, very Obedient to their Husbands, and patient under their Churlishness, tho' it often proceed to Blows; nay some Authors relate that they expect Beating, and Love their Husbands the better for it.

The *Russian* LANGUAGE is a Dialect of the *Slavonian* as well as the *Polish*; so that he who under-



understands either of them cannot be at any great loss in this. The Bibles and such few other Books as they have, are writ in *Slavonian*; and those who pretend to any degree of Learning, affect that Language in their writing and speaking: The Character they use has a near resemblance to the Greek, but they have augmented the number of their Letters to thirty eight.

The Christian RELIGION was first taught in *Muscovy* in the Time of *Wolodimir* Great Duke of *Russia* (A. D. 989.) who having by the Conquest of many Provinces render'd himself very considerable, was honoured with an Embassy from the Emperor *Basilus*, in whose Time (according to *Zonaras*) a Bishop was sent from *Constantinople* to convert the *Russes*, the Prince himself embracing Christianity, and soon after marrying the Daughter of *Basilus*, he contributed all his Power to the establishing it, which was accordingly effected. This is the most certain Account in History of the Conversion of *Russia* from Paganism. But the *Russes* pretend that *St. Andrew* the Apostle planted Christianity here, which was afterwards expell'd by the *Tartars*. As they receiv'd Christianity from *Constantinople*, so they have always continued in the Faith and Practice of the Greek Church, disbelieving Transubstantiation and Purgatory, communicating in both kinds, but pray to Saints and use Images; the Athanasian Creed is their Rule of Faith; and they have a settled Liturgy which is used three times a day. They observe Lent and many other Fasts very religiously, and have abundance of Festivals in Comemoration of Saints. But by reason of their Ignorance, they are miserably involv'd in superstitious Ceremonies. The Government of the Church is by Metropolitans, Archbishops, and Bishops; whereof the Metropolitan of *Moscow*, who was ordain'd by the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, was Primate, 'till about the Year 1588. when *Hieronimus*, Patriarch of *Constantinople* (that City being then in the Hands of the *Turks*) came to *Moscow* and very solemnly resign'd his Patriarchal Dignity to the Metropolitan of *Moscow*, whose Successors have ever since born that Dignity, and is supream Head of the Russian Church: Immediately upon the Elevation of this Metropolitan (who was before the only one) two other Archbishops were made Metropolitans, viz. those of *Novogorod*, *Veliki* and *Rostbow*, and since that two more have been added, whereof one resideth at *Casan* and the other at *Moscow*. The Bishops are chosen by the Emperor, and the Patriarch by the Bishops.

The GOVERNMENT of *Russia* is absolutely Monarchical; for the Grand Duke, who is called *Czar* (supposed to be deriv'd from *Casar*) is absolute Master over all his Subjects; the Legislative, as well as the Administrative, Power being solely in him. He appoints the Waywoods or Governors of Provinces, and all the Civil and Military Officers. The Nobility are very numerous, and were formerly very considerable, the Dukes being absolute Lords in their Provinces; but the *Czars* have from time to time taken away their Power, and they, as well as the other Nobles, are now Dependants on the Emperor, by whose Favour they obtain the Governments and Offices of Honour and Profit. At present, the chiefest degree of Nobility, is that of the *Boiars*, which are those whom the Emperor honours with being of his Council; out of which he chooseth the Waywoods and other chief Officers.

The LAWS for deciding Civil Controversies formerly depended upon the Equity of the Judge: But in the Year 1647. by the *Czar's* command, a Code or Body of the Law was compiled by the wisest Men in the Kingdom, and comprehended in one Volume in Folio, entituled, *Sabrona Ulofienia*; that is to say, Universal and General Right: By which the Judges are to regulate their Sentences.

Several Courts of Judicature are held suitable to the Causes that come before 'em; whereof 'tis unnecessary to give a particular account.

## A Short Abstract of the History of Russia.

IT is almost impossible to know the Origine and Acts of a roving Nation of illiterate People; wherefore the Reader must not expect a very ancient Account of the *Russes*, whose very Name, as we have said, denotes Straglers; and who have apparently chang'd their Seat; for the *Russia Rubra*, now a Province of *Poland*, had undoubtedly its Name from them; and that *Volhinia* also was possess'd by the *Russes* is evident, since the Seat of their Monarchy was *Kiow*, before *Wolodimir* remov'd it to the City of his own Name, which he built; so tho' the *Muscovites* are now in Possession of some Provinces formerly belonging to *Lithuania* and *Poland*, they are but an equivalent of what they have quitted to *Poland*. But the Acquisitions of the *Russes* have been all on the other side, viz. on the *Tartars*, who were for many Ages their most cruel Enemies: So that the Conquests of the Tartarian Provinces they now possess is a singular happiness to them; for whereas formerly the *Tartars* made Inroads upon the *Russes* to the very Heart of their Country, and imposed most ignominious Terms upon their Princes. [as for Example, *Batus* the Tartar in 1237. having slain the Great Duke *George*, order'd that the *Tartars* hereafter should choose the Princes of *Moscow*, who should be obliged to go out to meet the Tartarian Ambassador on foot and bare-headed, present him a Platter of *Mare's* Milk, and give his Horse Provender out of his Cap; and for 200 Years together the Tartar had a House and a Guard in the Castle of *Moscow*] I say, whereas formerly the *Tartars* were their cruel Masters, the Case is now so alter'd, that almost all the *European* Tartary is subject to the *Muscovite*. At what time all these vast Regions were conquer'd, will be seen in this

## Account of the Princes of Russia.

Of these Princes we have no certain History before the Time of

1. *Wolodimir*, who having made great Conquests Eastward, removed the Regal Seat to *Wolodimir*, the chief City of that Province, which he built and gave name to. He also, as we have said, married the Daughter of the Emperor *Basilus*, and planted Christianity in *Russia*. He died in the Year 1015. and was succed'd by his Son
2. *Wolodimir*, or according to others *Jaroslaw*, and said to have built that City. He died, A. D. 1146.

3. *Wolodimir*



3. *Wolodimir* his Son succeeded, and was succeeded by his Son
4. *Vitzetoldus*.
5. *George*, slain by *Battus*, a Tartarian Prince, in the Year 1237. from which time the *Russes* were Tributary to the *Tartars*.
6. *Jaroslav*, Brother to *George*, succeeded.
7. *Alexander* his Son.
8. *Daniel* or *Danielou*, surnam'd *Caleta*. He remov'd the Regal Seat to *Moscow*, and assum'd the Title of Great Duke.
9. *Ivan* or *John*, his Son succeeded, being chosen by the *Tartars*, and much favour'd by him.
10. *Ivan Ivanowicz*, or *John's* Son succeeded.
11. *Demetri Ivanowich*. He obtain'd great Victories over the *Tartars*, but at last was slain by them.
12. *Vasile* or *Basil Demetriowich*. He chased the *Tartars* out of *Russia*, and conquer'd *Bulgar*. Thro' Jealousie of his Wife he disinherited his Son, and was succeeded by his Brother
13. *George*, who at his death restor'd the Crown to his Nephew
14. *John Vasiliewick Grotzdyn*. He was the first that united *Russia* into one considerable Body, by taking away the Power of the Dukes, and uniting their Dominions to the Crown. He called himself Czar, King, or Emperor rather, and by some thought to be, *q. d. Cesar*, in imitation of the western Emperor. He is judged to have begun to Reign about the Year 1450. He conquer'd the Duke of *Novogorod*, and added that Province, as also *Twer* to the Crown. He turned the *Tartar-Governor* out of *Moscow*, and shook off their Yoke. He put by his eldest Son, and appointed *Gabriel*, his Son by a second Marriage, to succeed him, who changed his name to
15. *Vasile Ivanowich*, and began to Reign in 1492. conquer'd *Plescow* and *Smolensko*, and gained great Victories against the *Tartars*, over whom he set a Governor. He died in 1532. leaving his Uncle *George* Guardian to his Son
16. *Ivan Vasiliewich* a Child, who began to Reign in 1540. He became a very great Tyrant, but withal a great Conqueror. In his Time the *Tartars* ejected the Governor placed over them by his Father, and invading *Russia*, proceeded as far as *Moscow*, which they burnt and pillag'd, insomuch that the Czar was forced to submit to very ignominious Terms. This War was carried on by two Brothers, *Mendligeri* and *Sapperi*; who returning homeward, *Sapperi* settl'd himself King of *Casan*, but *Mendligeri* sat down before *Razan*; and summoning it to surrender, told the Governor what had happen'd at *Moscow*, who replying, he could not believe it, the *Tartar* sent him the Original Instrument, subscrib'd by the Czar to convince him; the Governor seizing the Paper, return'd answer, That he would keep that and the City as long as he had Life: And so courageously he defended it, that the *Tartar* was forced to raise the Siege; and then the Governor sent the Writing to the Czar, with an account of what had happen'd; which so chang'd the Face of Affairs, that an Army was presently raised and marched against *Sapperi*, who was still in *Casan*; which City, after a long Siege, he took, *July* 9. 1552. and thereby very much enlarg'd the *Russian* Dominions; and pursuing his Victory, in the Year 1552. he took *Astrachan* also, which brought the Monarchy to its utmost height. He died, *March* 28. 1584.
17. *Fedor* or *Theodore*, Son to *Ivan Vasiliewich*, succeeded, and was a weak Prince. He married the Sister of *Boris Fedorowich Godanow*, who murder'd him and his Brother *Demetri*; and having made a Party in the Kingdom, was chosen Emperor. *Theodore* reigned 12 Years, and died, *A.* 1597.
18. *Fedorowich Godanow*. He made away with many of the Nobility, and gave his Family all the profitable Employments; which gave such Disgust, that an Impostor starting up in the name of *Demetrius*, the Brother of *Fedor* abovemention'd, obtained such countenance, that the Army revolted to him. *Fedorowich* died, *April* 13. 1605. suppoised by Poison, and soon after his Wife and Son *Fedor*. So that
19. *Demetrius* the Impostor entering *Moscow* the 20th of *June* 1605. was crown'd without opposition; but the *Russes*, soon discovering their mistake slew him, and advanced to the Throne
20. *Vasile Ivanowich Zuskie*, who was crown'd *June* 1. 1606. Another pretended *Demetrius* started up in *Poland*, and being assisted by that Nation caus'd great Troubles; and in the end *Zuskie* was deposed and thrust into a Monastery, the *Russes* chusing for their Monarch
21. *Uladislaus* Son to the King of *Poland*; which raising the Minds of the *Polish* Army, at that time before *Moscow*, made 'em Insolent; and upon a Quarrel with the *Russes*, run in and plunder'd and burnt the City, pillag'd the Treasury, and made such miserable Havock, that it is said 40000 Houses were burnt, and 200000 Persons slain. In this desperate State the *Russes* were quite heartless, 'till a Butcher stepping out, propos'd a Gentleman named *Pozarskey* for their General, under whom, with an honest Treasurer, he told 'em the Disorders might be composed. Accordingly the People immediately chose *Pozarskey* for their General, and made the Butcher Treasurer, bringing to him what Mony they could spare; with which he raised an Army, which, together with a Body of *Cossacks* then in Service in *Muscovy*, soon expell'd the *Poles* and restor'd in some measure the publick Peace; whereupon the Nobility assembled and chose for their Czar *Michael Federowich*, Son to *Philaretus Nikiditz* of the House of *Romanow* who was made Patriarch.
22. *Michael Federowich* began to Reign, *A. D.* 1613. and by the Advice of his Father (a Man of great Wisdom and Virtue) soon restored the publick Tranquility. He made Peace with the *Poles*, and with the *Suedes*; who, during the Troubles, had possess'd themselves of divers *Russian* Cities and Provinces; these were restor'd, and *Muscovy* made happy in a wise and good Monarch, who dying in 1645. was succeeded by his Son
23. *Alexis Michaelowich* a Martial, but mild Governor, who having reigned successfully thirty Years, died in the Year 1675. and was succeeded by his Son



24. *Feodore Alexiowich*, who died in 1682. leaving two Sons, who for some time reigned together, but the elder being found incapable by reason of his natural Weakness, was put by, and the younger
25. *Peter*, his present *Czarish* Majesty has ever since had the Sole Government. He is a Valiant Prince, a Lover of Science, especially Mathematics: And if it please God to give him Life; he will in all probability raise the *Russian* Empire to the highest degree it ever was: For he has already in the late *Turkish* War made himself Master of *Azoph*, an eminent Port at the Mouth of the *Don* in the *Palus Mæotis*, whence is a passage to the Black Sea, as also taken *Kasikermant* on the Black Sea, at the Mouth of the *Nieper*; and is very buisy in Building Ships of War, by the means whereof he may in time be able to dispute the Mastery of the Black Sea with the *Turk*: And moreover by the Encouragement he gives the Nobility to Study and Travel abroad, their Manners will be abundantly Polished and the *Russians* become fit for Conversation, and be esteemed like other Nations.

The REVENUES of this mighty Prince is very large, it arises by 1. The Crown Lands, valued at 250000 Rubbles *per Annum*, each Rubble being of the value of Ten Shillings Sterling. 2. The *Tagla* and *Podat*, which are an Impolition upon Corn, and a Subsidy upon every Town, Reckon'd to bring in 400000 Rubbles yearly. 3. The Customs, producing about 300000 Rubbles *per Annum*. 4. The Duty upon Stoves. 5. A great Duty upon Law Suits. 6. The *Czar* hath the Monopoly of Commodities as *Furrs*, *Ising-glass* and *Caviare*. 7. Lands set apart for the maintenance of his Guards. And besides the Nobility and Gentry are oblig'd to Serve him in the Wars with Men, Horses, Arms, and Provisions, proportionate to the Lands they possess; in the Nature of Knight's Service.

The Emperor maintains a Constant Guard of 16000 Foot, and near 4000 Horse at *Moscow*, and in Garrisons on the Frontiers to the Number of 100000 Men more; and in time of War, he hath ordinarily an Army in the Field of 300000 Men well Arm'd and provided, besides his Garrisons and Guards.

Thus much for the Civil, proceed we to the Geographical Account of this Great Empire.

*Muscovy* Consists of a great number of Provinces. which being not distinguished by Priority of Jurisdiction we shall consider them according to Situation; dividing the whole Empire into three Parts; viz.

- I. Provinces Situated on the South side of the *Wolga* between that River and *Tartaria Minor*; which are,

In the Western Part.

{ *Czernichow*.  
*Severia*, or  
*Novogord-Siwierski*.  
*Worotin*.  
*Smolensko*.  
*Bielski*.  
*Reschow*.  
*Muscovy*.  
*Twer*.  
*Rosthow*.  
*Jarostaw*.

In the Eastern Part, or rather the Midland of *Muscovy*.

West,

East,

North, and upon the River *Oby*,

South, upon the River *Wolga*,

{ *Wolodimer*.  
*Susdal*.  
*Rezan*.  
*Ogrinia*.  
*Pole*.

And the People  
*Mordua Tartar*.  
*Rosdori Donski*.  
*Vashines*.  
*Czermise* divided  
into { *Nagornoi*.  
*Logowi*.

- II. The Provinces Seated on the North side of the *Wolga*, and the *Muscovian* Sea; which are.

{ *Plieskow*.  
*Novogorod-Weliki*.  
*Biele Ozero*.  
*Wologda*.  
*Cargapolia*.  
*Muscovian Lapland*, divided into three Parts,  
viz. { *Bella-morskoj*.  
*Mauje-manskoi*.  
*Terskoj*.

{ *Duina*.  
*Juhorsky*.  
*Petxora*.  
*Condora*.  
*Permia*.  
*Oustjugh*.  
*Nisi-Novogorod*.

- III. *Muscovian Tartary*, wherein are,

{ *Siberia*, comprehending the  
*Nagaia*, } People.  
*Cosaski*, }  
*Scibauski*, }  
*Lucomoria*.  
*Tingoesht*, People.  
*Wiadski*.  
*Samoieda*, comprehending  
*Obdora*.  
*Manamo*.  
*Loppa*.  
*Hugritsch*, } People.  
*Vogulici*, }  
*Nova-Zemla*.

{ *Casan*.  
The Kingdoms of { *Bulgar*.  
*Astracan*.

The chief Cities of *Muscovy*, as more particularly Expressed in the following Account, of the Provinces, are these, viz.

## CHAP. II.

*Czernihow*.  
{ *Novogrodeck-Sewerski*.  
*Bransko*.  
{ *Worotin*.  
*Aarol*.  
{ *Crom*.  
{ *Smolensko*.  
*Dragobusa*.  
{ *Bielha*.

{ *Reschow*.  
{ *Woloczk*.  
{ *Twer*.  
{ *Terfack*.  
{ *Moscow*.  
{ *Troytes*.  
{ *Columna*.  
{ *Jarostaw*.  
{ *Roma-Nova*.

## CHAP.



CHAP. III.

<i>Pleskow.</i>	{ <i>Biele Ozoro.</i>
{ <i>Novogorod-Weliki.</i>	{ <i>Gebloua-Slaboda.</i>
<i>Stara-Russia.</i>	{ <i>Wologda.</i>
<i>Ladoga.</i>	{ <i>Sooska.</i>
{ <i>St. Nicholas.</i>	{ <i>Strelitz.</i>
<i>Mologa.</i>	<i>Cargapol.</i>

In Lapland.

<i>Soma.</i>	{ <i>Kola.</i>
<i>Omba.</i>	{ <i>Wersya.</i>
<i>Kandalay.</i>	<i>Lockena.</i>

CHAP. IV.

In Duina Province.

<i>Arch-Angel.</i>	<i>Wirchatoura.</i>
{ <i>St. Nicholas.</i>	<i>Permia.</i>
<i>Colmagrod.</i>	<i>Oustiugh.</i>
<i>Marsnowitz, Island.</i>	{ <i>Nisi-Novogorod.</i>
{ <i>Zubora.</i>	{ <i>Wafilogorod.</i>
{ <i>Colgoza, Island.</i>	{ <i>Balagna.</i>
{ <i>Petzora.</i>	
{ <i>Weliki Poyassa.</i>	
{ <i>Papinowgorod.</i>	

CHAP. V.

<i>Woldemier.</i>	{ <i>Rezan.</i>
{ <i>Safdal.</i>	{ <i>Donkagorod.</i>
{ <i>Castromsigorod.</i>	{ <i>Toul.</i>
{ <i>Galerz.</i>	{ <i>Moruma.</i>
	{ <i>Adima.</i>

CHAP. VI.

In Samoiada.

<i>Zergolt.</i>	{ <i>Toom.</i>
<i>Naxenscoy.</i>	

In Siberia.

<i>Pohem.</i>	{ <i>Zaphanim.</i>
<i>Tobolsca.</i>	{ <i>Vergateria.</i>
<i>Calami.</i>	{ <i>Taara.</i>
<i>Ostro.</i>	{ <i>Lipen.</i>
<i>Twonen.</i>	

*Grustinsky.*

{ *Serpenow.*

In Wiadski.

<i>Cotelinitz.</i>	{ <i>Oorloff.</i>
<i>Oblioff.</i>	

<i>Casan.</i>	{ <i>Astracan.</i>
{ <i>Kockschaga.</i>	{ <i>Soratos.</i>
{ <i>Malmisch.</i>	{ <i>Czaritsa.</i>
{ <i>Tetus.</i>	{ <i>Czarefgorod.</i>
{ <i>Bulgara.</i>	{ <i>Tzornogar.</i>
{ <i>Samara.</i>	

CHAP. II.

The Western Provinces of MUSCOVY, lying between the Wolga, and the Lesser Tartary.

HAVING in our Table shewn Muscovy divided into three large Parts, we shall in this following Account of it, begin with the western Provinces adjoining to Poland; and having Survey'd all the South-west Part, pass Northward to Lapland; and then return from North to South, through the midland Provinces; and lastly, proceed to the Muscovian Tartary. Accordingly in passing from Poland to Muscovy, we may enter either at *Pleskow*, *Bielski*, *Smolensko*, *Novogorod*, or *Czernibow*. But that we may proceed in a Travelling order, and pass through all the Countries as they lye, we will begin with the most South-west part of Muscovy, which is

The Duchy of *CZERNIHOW* bounded on the South by the *Ukrain*, on the West by *Lithuania*, and on the East by *Severia*; it is in length near 120 miles, and in breath, in the South, about 80 miles, but decreases Northward till it ends in a Point.

The chief City, *Czernibow*, is seated on the River *Dezna*, but a few miles from the Confines of the *Ukrain*; and is a well built, tho' small City.

The Duchy of *SEVERIA* or *NOVOGRODECK SEWERSKI* adjoins to *Czernibow* on the East. It is a large and fruitful Province, formerly subject to its own Princes, who in time became Feodals to the Duke of *Lithuania*, and afterwards to the *Czar*; but the Duke being accused of Treason, in the Reign of *Vasilie*, lost his Royalty, and the Country was annexed to the Crown.

The chief City *Novogrodeck Siwerski* stands upon the River *Dezna*, 50 or 60 miles above *Czernibow*; hath a Castle and good Fortifications, according to the *Russian* manner, for its Defence. *Bransko* reckon'd the other chief City stands 100 miles more North.

*WOROTIN* another Duchy, lyes next to *Severia* on the East, having the Lesser Tartary on the South, whereby being expos'd to their Ravage, that part is Desert and Woody. But the Northern part is a good Country, Fertile and Populous.

The chief City *Worotin*, stands on the River *Occa*, about 200 miles North-East from *Novogrod Sewerski*, and is guarded by a Castle. And higher upon the same River stands *Boigoff*, *Atsch*.



*Aarol* and *Crom*, the Towns that are next considerable.

On the North of these two last mentioned Provinces, lyes the Duchy of *SMOLENSKO*. Stretcht out from East to West, about 200 miles, but in breadth not half so much. And was formerly subject to *Lithuania*, but Conquer'd by the Czar, and afterwards Recover'd by the *Poles*, who kept it for some time, notwithstanding the frequent Attacks of the *Russes*, till in the year 1654. it was finally Surrender'd and is still subject to the Czar. The River *Nieper* or *Boristhenes* rises in the North-east Border of this Country, and passes quite through it.

*Smolensko* the Capital, is seated on the *Nieper*, near the Confines of *Poland*; a large well built City, Fortified with good Walls and a strong Castle. *Baudrand* says, the Walls are six Cubits broad, and have 52 Towers upon them, and that the City contains 8000 Houses, or more. This City hath frequently chang'd it's Masters; for sometimes it belonged to the *Poles*, sometimes to the *Muscovites*, as did the whole Province. *Sigismund III.* King of *Poland*, Established here an Archbishop for the *Greeks* of the *Roman* Communion, and a Bishop for the *Roman* Catholics; but Czar *Alexis* put a *Grecian* Bishop in their place. The City is surrounded with Woods, wherein are taken the best Furs in *Muscovy*. *Dragobusa* the next chief place, is seated also on the *Nieper*, 50 miles above *Smolensko*.

*BIELSKI*, a very small Province; lyes on the North of *Smolensko*; whose chief City *Bielha* or *Bielow*, stands on the River *Osca*, about 80 miles North-east from *Smolensko*. This was formerly a Dukedom, and Govern'd by its own Princes, subject to *Lithuania*, till *Basilus* subjected himself to the Czar.

*RESCHOW*, another Duchy, lyes on the North of *Bielski* and *Smolensko*, it joyns to *Lithuania* on the West, and was sometimes subject to that Duke. The Country is full of Forests and Lakes, particularly the Forest of *Wolckoniski*, wherein the River *Volga* hath its Source, as also the River *Dzwina* which passes through *Lithuania* and *Livonia*. The chief City *Reschow*, stands in the East part of the Province in the way to *Moscow*. And *Wolocz* 40 miles South from it, this place is noted for a People remarkably Courteous and Genteel, and for White Hares in the Neighbouring Forests; the Hunting whereof is often the Diversion of the Czar.

*TWER*, a small Province lying on the North-east of *Reschow*, with the Title of a Duchy, is a very Fruitful and Populous Country. The chief City *Twer* seated on the *Tweartza* (at its Confluence with the *Volga*) 40 miles North from *Reschow*, is a large Town, having near sixty Churches, very Populous and Rich; the See of a Bishop, and the Station of a Mint. *Terfack* or *Torfack* another large Town, stands upon the same River, 20 miles to the North.

The Duchy of *MUSCOVY* or *MOSCUA* the chief Province of the Empire, adjoyns to *Twer*, *Reschow*, and *Smolensko*, and hath *Rosthow* on the North, *Rezan* on the South, and *Rezan* and *Susdal*

on the East. Its extent is near 200 miles in length from East to West; and the breadth about 100 miles. The SOIL is not very fruitful, but the AIR exceeding wholesome; which with the convenience of its Situation amidst the best Provinces of the Empire, makes it Chosen for the Residence of the Czar.

The City *Moscow*, the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, is seated on the River *Moska*, in the Latitude of 55. 36. Longitude 64. Of its Magnitude in former times, strange things are related; but it is so subject to Fire by reason of its Wooden Houses, that mighty Conflagrations have happen'd there, and reduced the bulk of it half in half. In the great Fire and Ravage of the *Tartars*, which happen'd in 1540. they relate that 80000 Persons perish'd, being either Burnt, Slain, Drown'd or Trod to Death. In 1611. the *Poles* burnt down (as they Report) 41000 Houses: And yet in the year 1662. when my Lord *Carlisle* was there, Embassador from our King *Charles*, it was judg'd to be 16 miles in Compass, and contain'd about 40000 Houses; but the *Russians* pretend it contain'd above twice that Number. It is of Circular Form, and consists of 4 distinct Parts, viz. 1. *Catagorod* or Mid-City, surrounded by a Brick-Wall, in it stands the Castle, which is Fortified with 3 strong Walls and a Ditch, and in the Castle are 2 Palaces of the Czar's, one of Timber, and the other of Stone; the Palace of the Patriarch, the Exchequer, the Magazine, Two Monasteries, 5 Churches, (among which that of *St. Michael* is adorn'd with the Tombs of the Grand Dukes or Czars) and several other publick and private Buildings. At the Castle Gate stands the stately Church of *Jerusalem*, and before the Castle is the great Market place: The great Bell, weighing 336000 pounds, hangs in a Tower in the Castle, it is 23 Foot Diameter. 2. *Tzargorod* encompasses the other, and is Wall'd about with Stone; herein is the Arsenal. 3. *Skorodom* on the North-west of the other, is chiefly Inhabited by the Woodmongers; that Sell Houses ready made. 4. *Strelitza Slavoda* is the Quarters of the *Strelitz* or Guards of the Czar, and is Fortified with Wooden Ramparts. The Houses here are generally very mean, being built only of Fir-Timber Squar'd, and Dovetail'd one into another, and the Chinks fill'd with Moss; these are ready cut out, and when a Fire happens 'tis but going to Market, and you have a new House presently: Nor is their Furniture much better; so that except the Merchandise and Lives that may be lost by a Fire, the damage is inconsiderable, which makes them never attempt to extinguish it any other way, than by pulling down the Neighbourhood, to hinder its spreading. The Streets are not Paved with Stones, but Plank'd with Fir-Timber. The Merchants have Vaults of Stone for their Magazines, to prevent the so frequent damage by Fire. In the City there are no less than 2000 Churches and Chappels, if we may believe the constant Accounts. *Moscow* was first Founded in the year 1334. by *George Duke* of *Wolodimer*, and soon after the Great Duke *Daniel Alexandrovitz* taking a liking to the Place, made it his Residence, from which time it continually encreased, till it became the Greatest and Richest City in all the North. But the *Tartars* reduc'd it much, when they Took and Burnt the City, on the 24th of May, 1570. already mention'd. The *Polanders* also Took it in 1611. and Burnt down, as we have said, 41000 Houses.



However the Enemies were Beat off, and the City Repair'd; and tho' it may not now be so exceeding large, as formerly, it is however very considerable, being the ordinary Residence of this great Monarch, the Seat of the Patriarch, and a great Emporium, or Place of Trade.

The other most remarkable Towns are, *Troytes*, 30 miles North from *Moscow*, and *Columna* or *Communes*, upon the River *Mosca*, near its confluence with the *Occa*, 60 miles South-east from *Moscow*; it is a fair City encompassed with a Wall, and Dignified with an Episcopal See.

*ROSTOW* or *ROSTHOW* lyes on the North of *Muscovia*, a Fruitful and plentiful Country, anciently Govern'd by its own Princes, till *Ivan Vasilowick* put to Death the last Prince, and annex'd it to the Crown. The chief City *Rostow* stands on a Lake of the same Name, 120 miles North from *Moscow*. *Uglitz* in the same Province seated on the *Wolga*, 80 miles West from *Rostow*

is noted for its excellent Bread. A few miles below stands *Chlopigred*, which was formerly a great Mart, for all the Neighbouring Nations, but is now ruined. *Perisslaw* another chief Town of this Province stands on the Borders of *Muscovy*, 50 miles South from *Rostow*. It is a large Town and very Populous. The Czar comes frequently hither in the Hunting-Season, to divert himself.

*JAROSLAW* lyes next to *Rostow* on the North, and is a Rich and Fruitful Country, abounding with Corn, Cattle, and Hony. It was formerly the Royalty of the younger Sons of the Czar, till *Ivan Vasilowick* in 1565. took it to himself. The chief City *Jaroslaw* is large and populous, said to contain above 40000 Inhabitants; strongly Fortified, and hath a great Trade; it stands upon the River *Wolga*, which passes through the middle of this Province. *Roma Nova* the other chief Town, stands on the other side the *Wolga*, 20 miles above *Jaroslaw*.

### C H A P. III.

#### *Of the Western Part of Muscovy, between the Wolga and the Sea.*

**T**HIS Part of the Czarish Empire, is bounded on the West by *Sueden* and *Norway*, on the North by the *Muscovian* Ocean, on the South by the Provinces we have mention'd, and on the East by the *Duina* and *White Sea*. Comprehending these six Provinces, viz. *Pleskow*, *Novogorod-Weliki*, *Biele-Jezoro*, *Wologda*, *Cargopolia*, and *Muscovian Lapland*.

The Duchy of *PLESKOW*, formerly a Powerful and Free State, but now subject to the Czar, is the most western part of his Dominions; bounded on the North with *Ingria*, on the West with *Livonia*, (part of the *Suedish* Dominions) on the South with *Lithuania*, and on the East with *Novogorod*. The chief City *Pleskow*, called by the *Russes* *Pfscow*, is the See of an Archbishop, a City of very large extent, and reckon'd one of the strongest in all the North: It is divided into four Quarters, each of which hath its Wall, and is defended by a Castle built on a Rock. It was Govern'd by its own Princes, till *Ivan Vasilowicz* in 1509. united it to the Crown, and the Citizens who were till then famous for their Valour, Civility and Honesty in Trade, were Transported, and *Muscovites* put in their place. There are several other strong Places in this Province, which as they gave the Czar great trouble in Conquering, are maintain'd now for defence of this advanc'd Frontier. Below *Pleskow* is the Lake *Peibus*, the Eastern part whereof which hath many Islands, is in this, Duchy the rest in *Livonia*.

*NOVOGOROD*, call'd *WELIKI*, or the Great, to distinguish it from others of the same Name, is a large and fruitful Province, seated between *Pleskow* on the West, *Ingria*, *Carelia* and *Kexholm* (parts of *Sueden*) on the North, *Roscow* and *Twer* on the South, and *Rostow*, *Jaroslaw*, &c. on the East. Its extent from East to West in the

Southern part, is 250 miles, but Northwards it grows exceedingly narrow. The Products of the Country are Wheat, Flax, Hemp, Hony, Wax and Leather, which formerly caus'd a vast Traffick here, when Govern'd by it's own Princes; but the *Muscovites* often Warring against 'em diminish'd their Traffick, and since it has been under their Dominion 'tis not in so Flourishing a State. In the middle of the Southern part is the Lake *Ilmen*, whence Issues the River *Wolobowa*, which passes into the Lake *Ladoga*. On this River stands the chief City *Novogorod Weliki*, in the Latitude of 58. 23. Longitude 55. 0. called by the *Dutch* *Newgarten*: It is a large City surrounded with a Rampart of Timber and Earth, and Guarded by one Castle in the middle of the City well Fortified, and another on the other side the River, which is joyn'd to the City by a large Bridge; and wherein lives the Weywood or chief Governor in Civil affairs, and the Metropolitan or Archbishop, who has the care of Ecclesiastical Matters. This City was once of vast Extent as the Ruins of it's ancient Walls demonstrate, and its Power and Wealth, obtained by the mighty Traffick, was so great that it became a Proverb, *Who can hurt God and Great Novogorod?* *Vitold* Great Duke of *Lithuania*, and at that time General of the *Polish* Army, was the first that diminish'd its Grandeur, having in the year 1427. oblig'd it to pay a Tribute to that Crown. about 50 years after *John Basilowicz Grotzdyn* Warring against them, obtain'd a great Victory, and forced them to submit to his Government, and not long after caused the City to be Pillag'd, and many of the Inhabitants to be Transported to other places, and in the Pillage 'tis said he carried off 300 Cart Loads of Gold, Silver, and Jewels, besides abundance of other rich Goods; so Wealthy was the place at that time. Afterwards in 1569. *John Basilowicz* came again with an Army, and destroy'd the Inhabitants most cruelly. The City and Province have



have since been subject to the Czar, except in the year 1611. when it was taken by the *Poles*, but in the following Treaty restor'd. The Town is but poorly built, the Houses being of Wood, but is adorn'd with 70 Monastries, and above 100 Churches, whose Steeples and Towers are cover'd with Copper gilt; among them that of *St. Sophia* is the Cathedral of this Archi-Episcopal See. In the same Province are, *Stara Russa* seated on the opposite shoar of the Lake *Ilmen*, whence issues a River that passes through the Town, and out of which Salt is made, that yields the Inhabitants a profitable Traffick. Some Authors affirm that from the Name of this Town the whole Nation were call'd *Russes*. *Ladoga* and *St. Nicholas* upon the River about 100 miles North from *Novogorod*, and near the Lake *Ladoga* (which in part belongs to this Province, and part to *Sweden*.) *Mologa* at the Confluence of the *Nissa* with the *Volga* on the Confines of *Biele Ozoro*, are the other Towns of Note in this Province.

*BIELE IEZORO* or *OZORO* a small Province of circular form lying on the East of *Novogorod*, takes it's Name from a Lake of about 13 L. long, call'd the White Lake, as the Name signifies, on which stands the chief Town of the same Name, 200 miles East from *Novogorod*, and as many North from *Moscow*: It is a considerable Town and strong, especially the Castle which stands in the Lake, is esteem'd Impregnable. The Province is full of Woods and Lakes, and therefore the Ways impassable but in Winter.

*Gebel Sabloda* on the *Volga* 60 miles above *Jarslaw* is a place of Trade.

*WOLOGDA* lyes on the East of *Novogorod*, and on the North of *Jarslaw*, it is a large Province, but very Woody and Mountainous. The chief City *Wologda* stands in a Bog on the River of the same Name (which falls into the *Duina*) at the distance of 120 miles from *Biele Ozoro* to the East: It is Walled with Stone, and it's Castle is reckon'd so strong that to it and the Castle of *Biele Ozoro*, the Emperor sends his Treasure in time of Danger. *Sooska* and *Strelitz* upon the River, 60 or 70 miles to the East, are reckon'd the next chief Towns of this Province.

*CARGAPOLIA* lyes on the North of *Wologda* and on the West of *Duina*, extending to the White Sea, otherwise called the Bay of *St. Nicholas*. It is a large Province, but Mountainous and Barren. The People live somewhat like the *Laplenders*, tho' not quite so barbarous, having among them some Towns, whereof *Kargapol* is the chief, seated on a Lake out of which flows the River *Onega*, that crossing this Province falls at last into the White Sea.

Northward from hence lyes the *Muscovian LAPLAND*, called *LEPORIE*, by the *Russes*, and divided into three Parts, viz.

*BELLAMORESKOY LEPORIE*, which lyes at the bottom of the Bay called the *White Sea*, or *Bella More*, extending from the 64th. to the 68th. Degree of Latitude, and round about all the West and North-west Coast of that Bay: The Country is Barren, the Air extreme Cold, and the Inhabitants a rude uncultivated People: And in general the whole Country is like the *Suedish Lapland*, of which we have already given an Account. Some few Towns here are, whereof the chief are, *Soma*, on the Frontiers of *Cargapol*, and the very entrance of *Lapland*, seated on the White Sea, in the Latitude of 64. More North on the same Sea stands *Keretti*, Latitude 66. 30. *Ombay* on the opposite shoar of the same Bay, 20 Leagues to the North-east; and *Kandalax* more Northward, at the very utmost Northern Shoar of the same Bay. *MOUREMANSKOY LEPORIE* the most Northern part, lying between the *Norwegian Lapland* on the North-west, the *Suedish Lapland* on the West, and the *Bella Moreskoy* on the South. It is a Mountainous and Woody Country, and hath no Towns of any note; *Kola* a small Port-Town at the Mouth of a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Muscovian Ocean*, is the chief, it stands in the Latitude of 69 Deg. *TERSKOY LEPORIE* is the East part of the *Muscovian Lapland*, it is almost surrounded by the Sea, and is the Land that makes the Bay called the White Sea. This is also a Woody Barren Country. *Warsiga* is the chief Town in it, and stands on the South Coast over against *Archangel*. *Lockena* another small Port stands at the Mouth of the River of the same Name, which falls into the Ocean, in the Latitude of 68 Deg.

## CHAP. IV.

### Of the Eastern part of Muscovy, between the Wolga and the Sea.

THE Eastern part of *Muscovy*, which lyes between the *Volga* and the *Muscovian Sea*, contains these Eight Provinces, viz. *Duina*, *Juhorsky*, *Petgora*, *Condora*, *Permia*, *Oustjough*, and *Nisi-Novogorod*.

*DUINA* is a Province of very large extent being near 300 miles broad, in form of a Lozenge; having the Straights of the White Sea on the North-west, *Cargapol* on the South-west, *Condora* on the East, and *Oustjough* on the South-east. It

takes its Name from the River which runs cross it, and is called *Duina* q. d. Twain, because it consists of the two Rivers *Sushana* and *Jugh* united, and falls into the White Sea. The Country is Barren and hath but very few Cities and great Towns: The Inhabitants live upon dry'd Fish and Venison, (the Land producing no Corn) and their chief Commodity is Salt, the Vent whereof was their only Trade, before the *English* came to Traffick at *Archangel*; but now the conveying Goods from all parts of *Muscovy* to that Market;



doth somewhat enrich the Country. The Chief City of the Province is

*Archangel* or *St. Michael Arch-Angel*, called by the Russes *Archania*, seated on the East Side of the River *Duina*, near its Mouth, in the Latitude of 65, and Longitude of 63 Degrees. It is no very large City, but Rich and Populous, of modern Structure, being not considerable till the English Ships coming there to Traffick made it resorted to. At present 'tis the See of an Arch-bishop, and its Haven so much frequented, that in the Summer Season (for in the Winter 'tis frozen up) there are often seen 3 or 4 Hundred Ships at a time from *England*, *Holland*, *Sueden* and *Denmark*. And indeed 'tis in a manner the only Port of *Muscovy*; for since the way to it has been discovered, the Voyages to *Narva*, where formerly the Russian Commodities were bought, are left off. The Custom of Merchandize in this City amounts to Twenty thousand Pound Sterling *per Annum*. The English were the first Discoverers of it, for Sir *Hugh Willoughby* in the Year, 1553. having receiv'd a Commission to discover the North-East Passage to *China*, *Richard Chancellor*, Master of one of the Ships, was separated from the Fleet, and accidentally fell into the Bay of *St. Nicholas* or *White-Sea*, where he was well receiv'd, and being sent for to Court, was kindly Entertained by the Czar *Ivan Vasilowich*, and a free liberty given to the English to Trade in his Dominions; insomuch that a Company of Merchants were Incorporated at *London*, in 1555. and large Priviledges granted them by the Czar; upon which Encouragement a Trade to *Russia* was carried on, to the great Profit of both Nations, which for some Time the English enjoy'd only. The Dutch and other Nations struck in for a share of it, but could not Trade upon the same Advantages, by reason of our Priviledges, till the Civil War, and the Death of *K. Charles I.* provok'd the Czar so far against the English, that he took away those Priviledges; and tho' by a solemn Embassy from *K. Charles II.* soon after the Restauration, they were endeavour'd to be regain'd, it could not be effected, and our Merchants have now little better Advantages than other Nations. About 20 Miles to the East of *Arch-Angel* stands *St. Nicholas*, a small Port on the *White-Sea*, which seems to be the more ancient Place, since it has given Name to all this Bay. *Colmogorod* upon the *Duina* 20 miles above *Arch-Angel*, is also reckon'd one of the chief Towns of this Province.

On the North of *Duina*, in the *Muscovian-Sea*, lies the Island *Marsenowitz*, divided by a narrow Strait; in the East Part of it stands the Town *Candenoes*, whence the Island is sometimes called *Candenora*, and is mention'd in some of the Northern Voyages.

*JUHORSKI*, called also *Jugoria*, *Jugria*, &c. lies on the North-East of *Duina*, having the Sea on the North and East, and *Oustiugh* on the South. By its Northern Situation 'tis no Wonder that the Land is Barren, the Soil overrun with Forrests, and the People of mean Condition. *Juhora*, the chief Town, stands on a small Bay in the North Coast, in the Latitude of 68 Degrees. And over against it, about 20 Leagues off in the Sea, lies the Island *Colgoya*.

Eastward from hence lies the large Province of *PETZORA*, a Barren and Woody Country,

surrounded with Mountains. A River of the same Name rises in the East Confines, and runs quite thro' the Province, and falls at last into the Ocean by many Mouths, on which stands the Chief Town *Petzora* or *Pusse Ozoro*, about 30 Leagues from the Sea, *Weliki Poyassa* stands near the head of the River, and *Papinewgorod* about 100 miles below it.

The *Montes Ryphei* five *Obii*, commonly called *Stolp*, and by the Russes *Weliki Kamien Poyas*, i. e. the great Girdle of Rocks, begin from the Bay of the *Muscovian-Sea*, near the Straights of *Wygats*, and continue on almost quite round this Province, and a good part of *Siberia*.

*CONDORA* or *CONDINSKY*, lies between *Duina* on the West, *Juhorsky* on the North, *Petzora* and *Siberia* on the East, and *Permia* on the South. It is a large Province with the Title of a Dutchy, but not considerable, being very Woody and Mountainous. The chief Town is *Wirchataura*, seated in the Northern Part, in the Latitude of 66.

*PERMIA* or *PERMSKY*, lies on the South of *Condora*, between that, *Oustiugh*, *Wiadski* and *Siberia*. It is a Mountainous Country, and not considerable but for the Rivers; the great River *Kama* hath its rise here, as also *Yuga*, which falls into the *Wisogda* and several other smaller Streams arise in these Mountains. The chief Town *Permia* should be large by its Name, being called *Weliki* or *Great Permia*; but it is not mention'd by Authors as considerable, and few Travellers have been this way to inform us. It stands upon a small River that falls into the *Kama*, Lat. 62.

*OUSTIUGH* a large Province, lies between *Permia*, *Condora*, *Duina*, *Cargopola* and *Wologda*; this also is but a Poor Country; a great part of it is cover'd with Woods, wherein are the best black Foxes, whose Furrs are the chief Commodity of the Land: The River *Jugh* rises on the East Side of the Province, and the *Suchana* enters it out of *Wologda* on the West, and both meeting together about the middle make the great River *Duina*, at the Confluence whereof stands the chief Town *Oustiugh*, q. d. (according to *Luyts*) *Ostium Juge*, which is noted for the Fairs held Annually in it for the Sale of Fox Skins, &c.

The Dutchy of *NISI-NOVOGOROD* or *Novogorod Inferior*, lies on the South of *Oustiugh*; it is a large Province, and though a great part of it be cover'd with Woods, yet it is a pleasant and fruitful Country. The River *Wolga* passes thro' it, and receives the *Occa* here, near which Confluence on the South Side of the River stands the City of *Nisi-Novogorod* in the Latitude of 56. 40. Longitude 75. and at the distance of 350 miles from *Moscow* to the East; it hath a Castle Seated on a Rock, but it is not in very good Condition; being less useful since the adjoining Provinces of *Tartary* have been Subject to the Czar. *Wasilogorod* (Built by the Czar *Vasilie* against the Inroads of the Tartars) on the same side the River near 100 miles to the East, and *Balagna* somewhat more to the West, are the other Towns of chief Note in this Province; with which we finish our Account of the Countries lying between the *Wolga* and the Ocean.



## C H A P. V.

*Of the Eastern Part of Muscovy, between the Wolga and the Lesser Tartary.*

**H**erein are comprehended the Provinces of *Volodimer, Susdal, Rezan, Ogrinia, Pole,* the People or Hords of *Rosdori-Donski, Vachines, Czermiffi* and *Mordua-Tartars.*

The Duchy of *WOLODIMER* is a small Province, but one of the most fruitful in all *Muscovy*, is Seated between the Rivers *Wolga* and *Occa*, on the South-West of *Nisi-Novogorod*, having *Susdal* on the West, which divides it from *Muscovia*, *Rezan* on the South, and *Tartaria Mordua* on the East. The River *Clesma*, which rises in *Muscovy*, runs thro' this Province, and on it stands the chief City *Volodimer* 200 miles East from *Moscow*, and 150 West from *Nisi-Novogorod*; it has its Name from *Volodimer* its Founder about the Year, 928. and was for a considerable time the Residence of the Great Dukes of *Muscovy*, till *Danielau Michaelowitz* removed the Regal Seat to *Moscow*, since which time it declined, but the Ruins of its large Walls and Houses are undeniable Proofs of its former Grandeur. The City is still considerable, and the Country about it so Fruitful that it yeilds Thirty for One.

The Duchy of *SUSDAL*, a much larger Province than *Volodimer*, lies on the North-West of that, having *Nisi-Novogorod* on the East, *Wologda* on the North, *Jaroslau* and *Rostbow* on the West, and *Muscovia* on the South-West. It is Water'd by the River *Wolga*, which runs cross the middle of it; and the *Clesma* in the South Part, on which stands the City *Susdal* an Episcopal See, Seated as we have said on the River *Clesma*, 70 miles West from *Volodimer*, and 130 East from *Moscow*; famous for a stately Monastery of Nuns, and for having been sometime the Metropolis of *Russia*. *Castromoisgorod*, called also *Castrum*, on the River *Volga* in the Western, and *Galetz* in the North Confines, 180 miles from *Susdal*, are the other chief Towns of this Province.

The Dutchy of *REZAN*, a long Tract of Land, lies on the South of *Muscovia*, *Susdal* and *Volodimer*, extending from East to West near 300 miles along the Banks of the River *Occa*; 'tis the most fruitful Soil in the World, if the Russian Accounts may be credited, who say, that one Grain produceth many Stalks, and each Stalk many Ears, and grows so thick that a Horse can hardly pass thro': The Fruits also are very good, and the Inhabitants Couragious and Civil, and so Populous is this Province that they are able to send 15000 Horse and 40000 Foot to the Wars. It was formerly Govern'd by it's own Duke, who was a very powerful Prince, but 'tis now Subject to the Czar. The great River *Don* or *Tanais* hath its Source here, which, after a long angular Course, falls into the *Palus Meotis* at *Azoph*. The chief City *Rezan* is Seated on the River *Occa*, 150 miles East from *Moscow*, and 60 South-West from *Volodimer*. It is a large City, the See of a Bishop, Populous and in good State, and especially famous on account of its notable

Defence against the Tartars, in the Year, 1570. whereby the whole Empire was preserv'd. *Denkagorod* 40 miles South from *Rezan* near the Head of the River *Don* and *Toul* in the western Confines, near the Limits of *Worotin*, which hath a strong Castle Built by the Czar *Basilus*, soon after he took it; are the Places of chiefest Note.

The Province of *OGRAINA*, a large Tract of Land lying on the South of *Rezan*, is water'd with divers Rivers, and hath a reasonable good Soil, but adjoining to the *Lesser Tartary* it is so subject-ed to the Insults of that Barbarous People, that it is not very Rich or Populous. Many small Towns there are, but no Cities nor any Places of considerable Note except *Voronits* or *Veronecz* seated on the River *Don*, and of late Years especially very considerable, on account of the great Ships of War built there by the immediate Direction and Inspection of the Czar, The River being it seems deep enough to carry them down to the Black-Sea; to which, since the taking of *Azoph*, the Muscovites have free Access. We must not omit taking notice of a Mistake in all the common Maps, of the Situation of this Town, and the Course of the River *Don*; for whereas they place it East-South-East from *Moscow*, and make the Course of the River (in the 70 Deg. Long.) to arise Northward as high as the 56 Deg. Lat. and pass Eastward to the 74 Deg. of Longitude; The Town in Truth stands almost directly South from *Moscow*, at about 200 miles distance; and the River continues running Southward from its very Fountain, without ever turning Northward at all: It also flows Eastward no farther than the 69 Deg. of Long. and then returns Westward and falls into the *Black-Sea* at *Azoph*, in the 47 Degree of Latitude, and not in the 51 Degree as they lay it. This Correction we have from Mr. *Theising*, an Ingenious Merchant in *Holland*, at whose House the Czar himself Lodged, and gave him an Opportunity of making a Map from the original Surveys that that Prince had caused to be made of the Course of this River, and Situation of *Azoph*. Again, the quick Passage of the Ships from *Woronitz* to *Azoph* confirms this Account, which is perform'd in four Days; but if the River winded about so much as the old Maps make it, 'twould take up more than double that Time.

On the West of *Ograina* lies *POLE*, and on the South of it the *ROSDORI DONSKI*, the former a large Bog, and the latter almost all Forest; so that tho' there be some Villages on the Banks of the *Don*, which River passes thro' both Provinces, and divides the latter from the *Circass Tartary*, yet no City or Town of Note is found here. This Country, as also the greatest part of what follows, was formerly part of *Tartary*, and from time to time has been Conquer'd by the Czars. The ancient *Tanaitæ*, and the *Essedones* lived here. At present 'tis Inhabited by the *Cossacks*, who are obliged to assist the Czar in his Wars, and are in return protected by him, but are not immediately Govern'd



Govern'd by him, or indeed by any Body, only as their Wars make 'em chuse a General, whom they obey with great Submission.

*TARTARIA MORDUA*, is surrounded by *Pole* on the South, *Razan* and *Wolodimer* on the West, *Nish-Novgorod* on the North, and *Czermisse* on the East. It is the Habitation of the *Mordua-Tartars*, who are the more Civiliz'd of those People, and have Towns, whereof the chief is *Adema*, 120 miles East from *Wolodimer*, and 60 South from *Nish-Novgorod*. And *Moruma* seated on the *Occa*. This is but a small Country, but

The *CZERMISSE* on the East of it is a very large Tract of Land, extending from the 54 to the 61 degree of Latitude; it is divided by the River *Wolga* into two Parts, the Southern whereof, which adjoyns to *Mordua*, is called the *NAGORNOI*, because Mountainous, and the Northern *LOGO-*

*WI* because a Flat Pasture Land. On the South of these live the *WACHINES* on the Banks of the *Wolga*.

The Inhabitants of these Countries are a rude barbarous People, having a peculiar Language among themselves, and living in Tents and Huts. Those of the *Logowitz* are notable Graziers; for their Country yeilding good Pasture, they breed abundance of Cattle; they are also very expert Archers and Hunt in the Woods. In Religion they are Pagans, believing there is one supreme God, and a Devil to whom they Sacrifice to avoid harm. They also Worship the Sun and Moon, but have neither Temple nor Priest. The Women are clad in white Cloath, and all cover'd but their Face; Polygamy is frequent among em, and for want of Children a Wife is often put away. They are Subject to the Czar, and are oblig'd to assist him in War, but pay no certain Tribute, and only make voluntary Presents.

## C H A P. VI.

### Of *Samoieda*, *Nova-Zemla* and the *Tartarian-Muscovy*.

**H**AVING described all the Western and Midland part of the *Muscovian* Empire from North to South, we proceed next to the Eastern Part, which tho' of near as large Extent, is by no means comparable for Wealth and Cultivation; this being Inhabited by Tartars, who being in general a rude unpolished People, we must not expect to hear of fine Cities and cultivated Lands amongst them; so that tho' there be large Kingdoms, there are only a few Cities which the Russians have Built to maintain their Authority over the Natives. In passing thro' these Countries we shall begin in the North, and proceed to the South till we come to *Astrachan* the utmost City in *Europe*.

*NOVA ZEMLA* q. d. *New Land*, is separated from the Continent of *Muscovy*, by the Straights or *ITzagatz*, or as the *Dutch* call it, the *Strait van Na-Tu*, which lyes in the Latitude of 70 Degrees North from the Equator; and this Land which makes the Strait, is a Promontory advancing Southward from the main Country; which is conceived to reach far more North; and is by some affirm'd to joyn to *Tartary*. But the contrary was supposed by our Navigators, who sought that way to pass to *Cashy* and *China*.

The *Englisch* first discover'd this Land in the year 1556, since when it has been often visited by *Englisch* and *Dutch*, in search of the North-east Passage. But the Coldness of the Air, and the Mountains of Snow which cover'd the Land, hinder'd 'em from giving any great Account of it. Some *Dutch* Men Winter'd there in the Year 1575, but the Cold was so severe that they had enough to do to keep themselves alive. However some parts of it, they say, are Inhabited by a People of low Stature, Idolaters, and Barbarous. The Grand Czar having sent to discover the Country assumes the Title of it, tho' he receives no Obedience nor

exercises any Authority there, the Air being too Cold for a Governor to live in it. What can more be said of it, the Reader will find in our Account of the Countries about the Pole, at the latter end of this Work.

The most Northern part of the Continent of *Muscovy* is Inhabited by several Nations of Barbarous People, call'd by the *Russes* *SAMOIDES* or *Self-Eaters*, and thence the Country *SAMOIEDA*: Which is divided into *OBDORA* (where liv'd the *Vogulici* and *Hugritschbi*) seated on the West side of the River *Oby*; and *MANAMO* and *LOPPA* on the East side of the River. The Mountains *Ryphai*, that surround *Petgora*, is the Boundary on the South side, and the Sea on the North, but Eastward it extends to the *Asiatick Tartary*. The Inhabitants are of low Stature, with broad flat Faces, black Eyes, resembling much the *Laplanders* and *Greenlanders*, as well in Form, as way of Living; only they Feed more vilely, for they eat raw Flesh, and even Carrion, and to Regale a Stranger, Kill a young Child and Serve it up. Those that live near *ITzagatz* will not suffer the *Russes* to Land, but if they Catch any, Kill and eat 'em: They have no Towns nor settled Habitations, but like the *Laplanders* remove from Place to Place seeking the best Game for themselves, and Pasture for their Rain-Deer; which, as in *Lapland*, is their only Cattle of Service. They Travel in Sleds drawn by Rain-Deer, in which they will run 200 miles in a day. They Lodge in Tents made of Skins and Furs, extended upon Sticks and Poles, are very nimble, and excellent Archers, which they acquire by Hunting Wild Beasts for their Food. Their Habits are all of Fur, and made close to their Bodies: They are of a Hardy and Healthy Constitution, Strong and Active. In Religion they are *Pagans*, Worshiping the Sun, and Sacrificing to Idols: They are also addicted to Scicery



Sorcery, like the *Laplanders*: But this is much Suppressed in those Parts Subject to the *Muscovite*, where Christianity hath been Planted, and pretty well Received.

The means whereby they became Subjected to the *Czar*, may be worth Relating. In the Time of *Ivan Basilowitx*, that is about 150 Years ago, there lived in the Province of *Oustiugh* upon the River *Witfogda*, a Husbandman Named *Onako*, who by Industry had acquired some Wealth; and having Three Sons to assist him, they fell into a Trade with the *Samoieds* that used to bring Furs to the Fair at *Ostiugh*. And finding the Furs exceeding fine, had the Curiosity to Enquire out their Country; accordingly he insinuated himself into their Acquaintance, and sent some of his Servants Home with them, with strict Orders to observe the Country, and way to it. At their Return, Commanding his Servants to be silent, he sent divers Friends, and more Servants the next Year, and with them some Commodities of small Value, which might be useful there; these passing as far as the River *Oby*, found those Rich Furs very Plenty, and to be purchased at easy Rates: Wherefore Lading themselves with their Purchase, brought Home a very profitable Return to their Master. Which Trade being continued by this Family, they grew exceeding Rich, so as to Build many Churches and Towns, Employ 10000 Servants, and Pay the King 20000 Rubbles a Year for Custom. But when they had sufficiently Feather'd their Nest, to prevent Destruction by Envy, they resolved to inform the *Czar*: Accordingly some of them Repairing to Court, with Presents to the chief Minister, informed him what they knew of these Countries, which was received very kindly; and the *Czar Theodore* being informed of it, Rewarded the Family of *Onako's* with great Privileges and Honours; and sent many Gentlemen and Soldiers under their Conduct, to make further Discovery. These being Richly Clad and Furnished with such small Presents as might be acceptable to the Natives, took a Journey to *Samoieda*; where behaving themselves discreetly, and bestowing their Presents freely, they gained the Affection of the People; and by extolling the Goodness and Greatness of their Monarch, prevailed upon them to submit to his Government, and pay as an Acknowledgment a pair of Sables every Year for every Head that was able to Shoot, which was but a Trifle to them, but a great Wealth to the *Czar*: and to satisfy the *Samoieds*, they took several of them with 'em to *Moscow*, (leaving Hostages for their Return) who were so astonished at the Pomp of that Court, the Greatness of the Armies, the Convenience of the Houses, and the like, that they immediately desired to be accepted as the *Czar's* Subjects, and have Persons sent to Instruct them in this Regular way of Living. Since which time the Christian Religion hath been taught among them, and the People are become more Civilized.

The Chief Towns Built by the *Russes* here are *Olschogorod* in a *Peninsula* near the Mouth of the *Oby*; but that being found too near the Sea was razed, and in its stead *Zergolt* was built in an Island of the *Oby*, in the Latitude of 69 Degrees, and above that upon the *Oby* in the Latitude of 67. 30.

*Naxenscoy*, or as others wrote it, *Nicuenscoy*, at first a Castle only, now grown into a good City. Southward from hence on the *Oby* also stands *Toom*, in the Latitude of 66. 0. The Chief City of that part of the Country is called *Loppa*, and seems by the Maps to be the Chief City of all *Samoieda*. Several other smaller Towns have been built on the other side.

South and East from hence lies *TINGOESIA*, or Habitation of the *Tingoesi*, a Mountainous Country beyond the River *Jenizai*, and properly belonging to *Tartary*, but is by some Geographers reckon'd part of *Muscovy*.

The Great Province or Kingdom of *SIBERIA*, lies on the South of *Obdora*, between the River *Oby* on the East, and *Petżora*, *Permia*, and *Wiadski* on the West, extending no less than Ten Degrees in Length, viz. from the 58th to the 68th. The Land is Woody and Marshy, and the Inhabitants are chiefly of the *Tartarian* Race. The Chief Cities Built here by the *Russes* are, *Pobem*, a Castle near the Confines of *Obdora*, and *Petżora*. *Tobolsca* the chief City, seated upon the Rivers *Irtisch*, and *Tobol*, in the Latitude of 65. Here is a Bishop's See, a Supreme Court of Judicature for all *Samoieda*, and *Siberia*; and hither the Tribute is brought from all the Provinces beyond, and conveyed to *Moscow*. *Calami* upon the *Oby*, and *Ostro* on the other side a little above it. *Tumen* or *Tinna*, South from *Tobolsca*, on a River of the same Name, where is held a great Market for Furs. *Japbanim* more to the North-west, Seated upon the River *Toera*, Built for a Stage to Travellers this way, as was also *Ver-gateria*, the First Town in *Siberia*, out of *Permia*, it was Built in the Year 1590. and is the Residence of a Governor and Garrison, who yearly distribute out the Corn and Provisions to the further Garrisons that live where the Ground is not Tilled. *Taara* in the middle of the Province, Seated on the *Irtische*, in the Latitude of 62. 0. *Lipen*, or *Lopen*, much farther South, viz. in the Latitude of 59.

In this Province are comprehended the People, *Calami*, *Pega-Horda*, *Schibanski*, *Cofaski*, and *Nagaya-Horda*.

On the East-side the *Oby*, over-against *Siberia* lie *LUCOMORIA*, and *Grustinsky*, wherein are *Grustina* on the *Oby*, in Latitude 62, and *Ser-penow* above 200 miles from it to the East.

The Duchy of *WIADSKI* lies on the West of *Siberia*, having *Permia* on the North, *Oustiugh* on the West, and *Casan* on the South. It is a Barren and Marshy Country, Conquer'd from the *Tartars* by the Emperor *Vasilie*. The great River *Kam* passes thro' it, and falls into the *Volga* at *Casan*; and the River *Wiadka* gives Name to the Country. The Chief Towns are *Cotelinitz*, upon the *Wiadka*, near the Confines of *Casan*. *Slaboda*, more to the North-west. *Chlinoff* on the *Wiadka*, near the Confines of *Permia*, and *Oorloff* on the same River in the middle of the Province.

Southward from hence lies the Kingdom of *CASAN*, formerly Subject to its own Prince, who was a powerful Monarch, but Conquer'd by the Great Duke *John Basilowitx*. The River *Kam* runs thro' it from North to South; and the River *Volga* washes it's South-west part. The Chief City



City *Casan* is Seated on a River of the same Name near its Confluence with the *Wolga*: It is a large City, the See of a Metropolitan, and the Seat of the Czar's Governor of these Parts, and is well fortified. On the *Wolga* 70 miles more West, stands *Kockschaga*, and 130 miles to the North is *Malmisb* on the River *Casan*; and on the Borders of *Bulgar*, *Tetus* Seated on the West-side the *Wolga*.

The Kingdom of *BULGARIA*, otherwise called the Region or *Horda* of *Zavolhani*, lies on the South of *Casan*. The Chief Cities are *Bulgaria* in the North part, 70 miles South from *Casan*, and *Samara*, 120 miles South from *Bulgar*, and not far from the *Wolga*.

More South lies the Great Kingdom of *ASTRACHAN*, which reaches from the Confines of the *Czermisse*, and *Bulgaria*, as far as the *Caspian* Sea, and is the most Eastern Country of *Europe*; being divided from *Asia*, by the Mountains on the East, and by the *Caspian* Sea on the South-East; the former separates it from Great *Tartary*, and the latter from *Persia*. Its West and Southern Bounds are *Rosdori Donski*, and *Pole*, and on the North the Kingdom of *Bulgar*. The Land is fructiferous enough; but the *Tartars* that Inhabit it are a People that never Cultivate; so that the Country lies in a manner Desert, and the Inhabitants only Live in *Tents*, which they Pitch where their Convenience or Fancy invite them. The *Russians* have several Towns on the Banks of the River *Wolga* which runs through this Kingdom, and falls into the *Caspian* Sea at the Chief City of it. Those of the chiefest Note are these that follow.

*Saratof*, Seated in the Latitude of 52 Degrees, 32 Minutes: It is a Fort with a Garrison constantly in it, to defend Travellers from the Robberies and Insults of the *Tartars*. Here begins the Country of the *Calmac Tartars*, a very Deformed, Barbarous, and Rapacious People. *Tzaritzza*, *Czaritzza*, q.d. *Casaria*, and in some Maps erroneously written *Larissa*, which lies on the West side the River *Wolga*, is a strong Town having a good Wall with Six Bulwarks, and a good Garrison always maintained in it. It is Seated in the Latitude of 49 Degrees, 42 Minutes.

A little below this City is the Trench that was attempted to be cut to make a Communication of the *Wolga* with the *Don* or *Tanais*.

Below this is seen the Ruins of *Czaref-gorod*, which was Demolish'd by *Tamerlain*. And some Leagues lower, in the Latitude of 48. Degrees, 40 Minutes, on the west side the River stands *Tzornogor*, call'd otherwise, *Michael-Novogorod*, a small City, but well Fortified, and the Station of a good Garrison; it is Environ'd with Palisadoes, and hath Watch-Houses at a miles distance on every side, whence they can see an Enemy. The reason of building of this place, was to defend the Passage of the River against the *Cossacks* who used to Rob here, and in particular defeated a Russian Convoy with great Wealth, letting the Soldiers pass first, who by reason of the rapidity of the Stream could not return to the assistance of the Merchants

though they saw 'em Robb'd. Upon the Banks of the River all along grows abundance of Liqueurice, but the Country lyes all Waste and Untill'd. Three days passage more down the River lyes the Famous City

*Astrachan* in the Latitude of 46. Degrees, 22. Minutes, and about 50 Leagues from the *Caspian* sea. It stands in an Island made by two Branches of the *Wolga*, which by many Mouths falls into the *Caspian* Sea. It was heretofore the Royal Seat of the *Nagayan-Tartars*, till taken by Assault by the Czar, *Ivan Basilowitx*, after his Conquest of *Casan*, in the year 1554. and the *Tartars* being driven out, he Re-peopl'd it with *Muscovites*, and Encompass'd it with a Stone Wall and other Fortifications. It was at that time a small City, but becoming a place of Trade, the Czar *Michael Federowitx* added a large part, call'd, the *Strelitzza-gorod*, or *Soldiers-Town*, to which many private and publick Buildings have been added, which has encreas'd it to a large City: The Walls are strong, and guarded with 500 Peices of Brass Canon, the Gates carefully shut up every Night, and no *Tartar* ever suffer'd to live in the City, neither are they permitted to build Towns, or to Fortify places. The convenient situation of this City makes it resorted to by *Persian*, *Armenian*, and other Merchants, and creates so great a Traffick that the Czar Receives for the Customs, 25000 Crowns per Annum, altho' the Duties be very low; Besides the convenience of vending all the Native Commodities of *Russia*, and receiving in Exchange the Silks and other valuable Commodities of *Persia* and *India*.

It is seated in a Temperate AIR, and in a Fruitful SOIL, producing all sorts of *European* Fruits, particularly Vines so plentiful as to make a great quantity of Wine. They have Beef, Mutton, Wild-Swine which make very good Pork, Fowl and Fish, in great Plenty. On one side the Town in a dry and barren Heath, they find abundance of Salt, which is dug out of the Hollows of Rocks, and is vended abroad to great profit. Hereabouts is found a strange sort of Fruit, call'd *Baronez*, or the *Lamb*, being in Form Resembling that Creature, and cover'd with a Down so thick and strong, that the Skins are used in Garments; it grows upon a Stalk 2 Foot high fasten'd at its Naval, the Head always inclining to the Grass; and such is its Vegetative Heat, that it consumes all the Grass near it; which makes the People confidently aver that it eats Grass. In the year 1669. this City was taken and plunder'd by the *Cossacks*, under the Leading of *Steno-Radzin*, who upon a disgust, on account of his Brother, being punished at *Moscow*, Rais'd a Rebellion and ravag'd all this Country, and even passed over to *Persia*, where he Plunder'd *Tercki* and other Cities on the *Caspian-Sea*. But the year after the Czar sent an Army against him which Retook the City and totally Routed him and his Party.

Below this City towards the *Caspian-Sea*, in the River *Wolga*, they take abundance of the Fish call'd *Biloege*, the Rows whereof makes that which we call *Cavear*, whereof they make great profit.

HUNGARY;



# HUNGARY, Hungaria.



**H**UNGARY is a part of the Ancient Pannonia, which comprehended all that is now called Carniola, Croatia, Carinthia, Styria, a great part of Austria, almost the half of Hungary, Slavonia, Bosnia, and a part of Servia. It was divided into Pannonia Superior, or Prima Consularis, and Inferior, or Secunda Consularis. The Former lay towards the West, and comprehended Carniola, Croatia, Windorum Marchia, Carinthia, Styria, and the greater part of Austria. The Latter lay towards the East, comprehending Bosnia, Slavonia, and as much

of Hungary as lies between the Rivers above a Third Danube, Drave, and the Raab. So that not Part of that which is now called Hungary, lay within the Ancient Pannonia, the rest lying in the Countries of the Jazyges Metanastæ, and the Daci. Whether the Pannonii, who first Inhabited Pannonia, gave Name to the Country, or it to them, is more than can be Learned, (as Reiskius observes) from the Grecian or Roman History. Julius Caesar first invaded it, C. Octavius Caf. Augustus Subdued it, and Tiberius Reduced it into a Province.



vince. From that time until the declining State of the Roman Empire, it was under the Jurisdiction of Rome; but afterwards the Goths invaded it, who were expelled by the Huns, as these were by the Longobards, whom the Hungarians drove out again. At last about the Year 900, in the time of the Emperor *Ottó*, there came a Warlike People out of *Serbia*, who overcame the Hungarians, and mixing with the Remnants of the others were called themselves Masters of all that Country, that is now called Hungary: which is bounded according to *Claudian* with Mountains *Carpathi* on the North, which divide it from *Pannonia* and *Rhaetia*; on the East with *Thracia* and *Illyria*; on the South with the *Danube*; and on the West with *Sclavonia*, *Austria*, and *Moravia*. It lies between 45 and 49 Degrees Latitude, and 15 and 22 Longitude.

The Air of this Country is abundantly Temperate, but not very Healthful in many Places, where Mists and Fogs are not frequent; but the Soil is good, and yields such plenty of all things, for the Life and Delight of Man, that it hardly yields to any Country in Europe: For it brings forth all sorts of Corn, especially Wheat in great Abundance, and produces plenty of Generous Wine. It so abounds in Cattle, that one Year with another the Number of Oxen and Cows that go to pasture to *Vienna*, have been computed to be about Five score thousand; which are not all consumed there, but dispersed over a great part of Germany. And there is so great Plenty of Venison and Wild-Fowl, that Hunting and Fowling being free to every Body, Hares, Pheasants, Partridges, and other such like, which seem the property of the Great and Rich among us, are the common Food of the meanest Boars there. This Country is also mighty Rich in Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals of less value: which we shall give a particular Account of when we come to describe the Towns and Places near to which they are, and especially that at *Göpping*, in which they have Worked more than hundred and Fifty Years. There are also many excellent Hot Baths in this Country; particularly those at *Buda*, which are esteemed the Noblest in Europe, not only in respect of the Large and Hot Springs; but the Magnificence of their Building.

There is no Country in Europe better Rivered than Hungary: on the East-side it is washed with that Noble and Navigable River *Tisza*, or the *Tyssa*, which runs into the *Danube* between *Parva Waradin*, or *Belgrade*. On the West-side runs the River *Rha*, or *Rod*, which rises in *Serbia*, and falls into the *Danube* near *Freiburg* or *Ratis*. On the South runs the *Drave*, which rising in the Territory of *Salzburg*, falls into the *Danube* near *Erded*, or *Old Turckingham* and *Utsch*: about Three hundred miles from its Spring. On the same side is also the River *Tane*, which arising in *Carinthia*, enters the *Danube* at *Belgrade*. Upon the North-side of Hungary are the Rivers *Gren* and *Wag*, which rise from the *Carpasian Mountains*. But above all, the great *Danubius* or *Tisza* is most considerable. It runs quite through Hungary, and begins to be Navigable at the City of *Ulm* in *Swabland* or *Suevia*; and passing by *Inghstadt*, *Ratisbon*, *Straubing*, *Passau*, *Liniz*, and *Vienna* to *Presburg*, and from thence through Hungary, makes a Course of above Three hundred miles before it passes by *Belgrade*; and having washed the Shoars of *Serbia*, *Bulgaria*, *Wallachia*, and *Moldavia*, at last empties

at many Mouths, into the *Euxine*, or *Black Sea*, after having drank in above Sixty considerable Rivers, and performed a Course of above Fifteen hundred miles.

As this Country excels in Rivers, so has it also many Considerable and Long Bridges, as that at *Vienna*, which takes above Two thousand Trees to make it. The Long Bridge of Boats over the *Danube* between *Stegabay* and *Parla*. That between *Buda* and *Pest*, is above Half a mile long. There is also a Bridge at *Cracow*, very Handsome and well contrived. But the most considerable of all is that at *Eggen*, built partly over the *Danube*, partly over the *Fenns*, which are often overflowed. It is Five miles long, and has Towers built upon it at the distance of every Quarter of a mile, and is handsomely Railed on each side, and Supported by great Trees, Erected under it, Nine or Ten in a Rank to each Arch.

There are also in this Country Two considerable Lakes, viz. the Lake *Balaton*, or *Platsee*, which lies between *Vesprim* and the *Drave*, and has some Fens upon it: And the *Newfidel-See*, so called from the Town *Newfidel*. The former of which is said to be above Forty, the other about Twenty Eight miles long. There are also in this Country several Long and Spacious Plains: Inasmuch that *Dr. Brown*, in his Description of it, says, he Travelled from *Vienna* to *Belgrade*, about Four hundred miles, upon continued and uninterrupted Plains.

Many Roman Emperors have Honoured this Country with their Presence. Birth, Death and Achievements, (not to omit *Trajan*, *Caracalla*, *Galienus*, *Constantius*, and many more) the Emperors *Aurelianus*, *Polus*, *Gratianus*, *Maximianus* were Born at *Sirmium*. *Claudius Gothicus* Died in or near it. *Fertian* and *Valentinian* were Born in *Pannonia*, *Irgimus* and *Vetricus* were saluted Emperors there. And at *Sirmium* was held a General Council. And the Roman Armies being much in this Country, is the reason why such vast Quantities of Old Medals have been found in it.

As to the Genius of the Hungarians, however Barbarous their Ancient Predecessors might be, the Modern Hungarians are a Warlike and Politick People; but are by the Generality of Writers charged with Laziness, Idleness, and Gluttony, which seems to be the Natural Effect of their Excellent and Fruitful Soil; and they are generally of a Turbulent and Rebellious Disposition. This Country having been the Seat of War so long, and the Turkish Power so much prevailing in those Parts, Learning has not been allow'd to flourish, and so we are not to expect any University beyond *Vienna*. Those who have a mind to be Scholars, and have Money to bestow upon their Education, do commonly Study at *Vienna*, *Prague*, or *Breslaw*.

The Language of the Hungarians is proper to themselves, and different from all other: A Specimen of which we shall set down for the Curious Reader's Speculation, out of the Lord's Prayer. *Mi Atyán k Kyrágy az menighe meg Szent! Tiszek az te neved.* &c. In some parts of Hungary they speak *Sclavonian*. The great difference between the Languages of these Countries obliges them to learn other Languages, especially the Latin, which the Gentry and Soldiers generally speak. It is very useful for a Traveller till he come to *Belgrade*, but below it of no use to him at all.

As to the Government of Hungary, Historians are divided about it; for some maintain, particularly *Conringius*,



*Cenringius*, that even after the Establishment of Christianity, *Hungary* was no Kingdom, nor Governed by any set kind of Laws, before the 12th Century ; but the *Hungarian* Writers say, That in the Time of Paganism, their Country was Ruled by Dukes, who Exercised Monarchical Power, tho' they never assumed the Title of Kings ; and that the last of these Dukes was one *Geysca*, or *Geysa*, who in his Old days resigned the Government, and recommended his Son *Stephen* to the Nobility ; who out of the respect they bare to the Old Man, chose his Son their King, and Crowned him during his Father's Life ; from whom down to this present Time we have a Succession of 45 Kings, as the Reader may see in the following Catalogue. The Nature of the *Hungarian* Monarchy has been long in Dispute, some maintaining that it was Hereditary, others, that it was Elective ; but the Civilians of that Nation are now generally agreed, That the present Emperor has a just Title to that Kingdom, and that *Jure Hereditario*. It has been also hotly disputed, Whether *Hungary* was an Independent and Absolute Kingdom, or a Tributary Province, under the Emperor of Germany's Protection ; but *Lazius* proves by many Examples, That the Kings of *Hungary* have always done Homage to the Emperors, before their Accession to the Crown of that Nation.

The *Hungarian* Horsemen, whom they call *Hufars*, are much better Soldiers than the Foot, whom they call *Heyducks* ; which may be ascribed in a great Measure to the vast Number of Excellent Horses, which are bred in this Countrey. In former Ages, the *Hungarians* never went to the Field without their long Shields ; but in the Year 1572. their General, *George* Count of *Serin*, persuaded them to lay them aside, by reason they were too great a Burthen to them. Their Naval Force which the Emperor uses for defending this Country, consists in his Ships and Gallies upon the *Danube*. At the Siege of *Belgrade*, as Doctor *Brown* Relates, from the *Turkish* History, the *Hungarians* sent down the Stream from *Buda* 200 Ships and Gallies, as *Mahomet* the Great brought the same Number up the Stream, all well appointed : And certainly there never was such Numbers of Ships of Force, nor such Signal Engagements at such a distance from the Sea, as there have been upon the *Danube*.

The Revenues of this Crown arise from the Mines of Silver and other Metals, the Impost upon Cattel, and other Customs and Taxes less considerable ; which in all is computed to amount to Two hundred Twenty and Four Thousand Ducats Yearly : And an *Hungarian* Ducat being valued at 10 Shillings English, the Emperors Revenue, as King of *Hungary*, is an Hundred and Twelve thousand pound Sterling.

The Established RELIGION of *Hungary*, since the Emperor's Conquest of it, is the *Roman Catholick* ; tho' the Number of Protestants be very great ; for the *Lutheran* Reform'd Religion prevailed here, but for many Years it was Persecuted, and Civil Wars Ensued thereupon, the People chusing rather to be under the *Turk*, with whom they might enjoy Liberty of Conscience, than submit to the Emperor who was Zealous in Establishing Popery. But now, as we have said, that is the Predominant Religion, and for the Government of the Church there are Two Archbishops at *Gran* and *Colocza*, and Sixteen Suffragan Bishops,

whereof Five are Subordinate to the Archbishop of *Gran* ; Eight to the Archbishop of *Colocza*, and the other Three are under the Archbishop of *Spalato* in *Dalmatia*.

### A Chronological Table of the Succession of the Kings of *Hungary*, since the year of our Lord, 1000.

1	<i>Stephen</i> I. in 1000. or 1020. died in the year	1038
2	<i>Peter</i> the German Succeeded, but Expell'd.	1038
3	<i>Ovon</i> or <i>Aban</i>	1042
4	<i>Peter</i> the German, Restor'd	1044
5	<i>Andrew</i> I.	1046
6	<i>Bela</i> I.	1061
7	<i>Solomon</i>	1063
8	<i>Geiza</i> or <i>Geycza</i> I.	1074
9	<i>Ladislaus</i> I.	1077
10	<i>Coloman</i> or <i>Colman</i>	1095
11	<i>Stephen</i> II.	1114
12	<i>Bela</i> II.	1132
13	<i>Geiza</i> II.	1141
14	<i>Stephen</i> III.	1161
15	<i>Ladislaus</i> , an Usurper	1172
16	<i>Stephen</i> IV.	1172
17	<i>Bela</i> III.	1173
18	<i>Emerycus</i>	1195
19	<i>Ladislaus</i> II.	1204
20	<i>Andrew</i> II, of <i>Jerusalem</i>	1205
21	<i>Bela</i> IV.	1233
22	<i>Stephen</i> V.	1260
23	<i>Ladislaus</i> III.	1272
24	<i>Andrew</i> III. the Venetian <i>Charles</i> I. Martel	1290
25	<i>Veneslaus</i>	1301
26	<i>Otho</i>	1305
27	<i>Charles</i> II. Robert, or Charobert	1310
28	<i>Lewes</i> I.	1342
29	<i>Mary</i>	1382
30	<i>Charles</i> III. the Little	1383
31	<i>Sigismund</i>	1387
32	<i>Albert</i> of <i>Austria</i>	1438
33	<i>Ladislaus</i> IV.	1440
34	<i>Joan</i> . <i>Corvinus Huniades</i>	1445
35	<i>Ladislaus</i> V.	1452
36	<i>Matthias Corvinus</i>	1458
37	<i>Ladislaus</i> VI.	1460
38	<i>Lewes</i> II. the Younger	1486
39	<i>John</i> of <i>Zapol</i>	1526
40	<i>John</i> <i>Stephen</i> , or <i>Sigismund</i>	1540
41	<i>Ferdinand</i> I.	1527
42	<i>Maximilian</i> I.	1564
43	<i>Rodolph</i>	1576
44	<i>Matthias</i>	1612
45	<i>Ferdinand</i> II.	1629
46	<i>Ferdinand</i> III.	1637
47	<i>Ferdinand-Francis</i> , Elected in	1657
48	<i>Leopoldus-Ignatius</i> , now Reigning	1657
49	<i>Joseph</i> Elected in	1687

*HUNGARY*, by the Inhabitants call'd *MA-GIAR*, and by the *Sclavonians* *Wagierska* ; was sometime a Kingdom of vast Extent ; for in the middle Ages these Monarchs subdued all the neighbouring Provinces, Eastward as far as the *Black-Sea*, and Southward to the *Adriatick-Sea* ; so that *Sclavonia*, *Croatia*, *Bosnia*, and *Dalmatia*, as well



as *Transylvania*, *Servia*, *Wallachia*, *Moldavia* and *Besserabia*, were under their Subjection till the Turks took Possession of 'em. But now as we have shewn the *Drave* is the Southern, and the Mountains on the Limits of *Transylvania*, the Eastern Boundaries.

It was divided into many Counties, the Number whereof, is not agreed on by Authors, some reckon 74. others 73. and some again Contract the Number to 60, 54, or 50. But the large and long Possession of the *Turks*, might well confound those Divisions: And we shall consider it as divided by the *Danube* into two parts. The Upper or Larger, on the North and East side of that River, and the Lower on the South side of it. These two Parts are subdivided into Governments; the Upper into Four, viz. of 1. *Presburg*. 2. *Bergstet*, or the *Berg Towns*. 3. *Newhaufel*. And 4. *Caschau*. And the Lower into Three, viz. of 1. *Buda*. 2. *Raab*. And 3. *Canisja*.

### The Principal Cities and Remarkable Towns are,

#### In the Upper Hungary.

<i>Presburg</i> .	7	[ <i>Eisenbach</i> .
<i>Newhaufel</i> .		<i>Esperies</i> .
<i>Schintz</i> .		<i>Caschau</i> .
<i>Tyrnaw</i> .		<i>Ungwar</i> .
<i>Leopoldstadt</i> .		<i>Tockay</i> .
<i>Neytra</i> .		<i>Novigrad</i> .
<i>Trenschin</i> .		<i>Agria</i> .
<i>Ciremnitz</i> .		<i>Fitzek</i> .
<i>Schemnitz</i> .	3	[ <i>Paj</i> .
<i>Newsol</i> .		<i>Celocz</i> .
<i>Puggantz</i> .		<i>Zolnoch</i> .
<i>Koningsburg</i> .		<i>Szegedin</i> .
<i>Tillen</i> .		<i>Gyula</i> .
<i>Hern-Grunde</i> .		<i>Varadin</i> .
<i>Glashtitten</i> .		<i>Zatmar</i> .
<i>Liberen</i> .		<i>Mengatz</i> .
<i>Leutsebe</i> .	1	1

#### In the Lower Hungary.

<i>Buda</i> .	7	[ <i>Weisburn</i> .
<i>Grann</i> .		<i>Alba-Régalis</i> .
<i>Raab</i> .		<i>Canisja</i> .
<i>Comorra</i> .	3	[ <i>Sigeth</i> .
<i>Altemberg</i> .		<i>Five-Churches</i> .
<i>Odemburg</i> .		<i>Mehatz</i> .
<i>Kerment</i> .	1	1

**PRESBURG**, otherwise call'd **POSON** by the Inhabitants, is pleasantly seated on the North side of the *Danube*, 32 miles East from *Vienna*, 25 from *Raab* to the North-west, 32 from *Newhaufel* to the West, and not above 5 miles from the Frontiers of *Austria*. It is a pleasant well built City, the Capital of the Upper Hungary, and of a particular County; and after the loss of *Strigonium* or *Gran*, made the Place of Convention of the States of the Realm: It is well Fortified, and has a Castle built of Stone on the top of a Hill, which has four Towers, in the strongest whereof is kept the Royal Crown of Hungary, so much talk'd of, and by the *Hungarians* wonderfully esteem'd, as being believ'd to be presented by an Angel from Heaven to St. Stephen their first

Christian King. Here are many Churches, among them a Fair on Built for the *Lutherans*, in the year 1638. and a Dome or Cathedral whereof, the *Jesuits* have the Use. The Archbishop hath a Palace here in the Suburbs, well adorn'd with Gardens, Walks, Fountains, &c.

*Newhaufel*, call'd *Vywar* by the *Hungarians*, stands on the River *Neutra*, or *Nitrach*, 32 miles East from *Presburg*, 64 North-west from *Buda*, and 10 miles from the *Danube*; a place of small extent, but the Capital of a large County, and a Fortress of great Importance, being the Bulwark against the *Turks* on this side. It is built in a Moorish Plain, but hard at the bottom, and every where passable; its Fortifications are in form of a Star, with 6 points, each Defended by a high rais'd Bastion, encompass'd with a large wet Ditch; to which is added by the present Emperor, a Fort nam'd *Leopoldstat*. There are but two Gates to the Town which are defended by a Half-Moon on each. In the year 1663. it was taken by the *Turks*, after a great Loss, and a long Siege. But in the late War Prince *Charles* of *Lorraine*, Set down before this Town, *An*. 1685. and having defeated the *Seraskier*, who was marching to its Relief, he took it by Assault, after a Siege of 40 days, and found in it 100 Peices of Brass Cannon and a Booty of Immenfe Value.

*Schintz*, a large Fort of 4 Bastions, stands on the River *Vagus*, 20 miles North from *Newhaufel*.

*Neytra* stands 10 miles East from *Schintz*, on a small River of the same Name, which 25 Miles below falls into the *Danube*.

*Leopoldstadt*, a noble, regular Fortification, of 6 Bastions; stands on the River *Vagus*, 20 miles from *Schintz*, and 40 from *Newhaufel* to the North.

*Tyrnaw*, *Tyrn* or *Dyrn*, otherwise call'd *Szombat*, is a small Town on a River of the same Name, 20 miles South-west from *Leopoldstadt*, and 30 North-east, from *Presburg*: Chiefly noted for the Residence of the Archbishop and Chapter of *Gran*, whilst that City was in the Possession of the *Turks*.

*Trenschin* the Capital of a County, is a very fair Town seated on the Top of a Rock, 20 miles from *Tyrnaw*, and 10 from *Leopoldstadt* to the North, and not very far from the Confines of *Silesia*. It is defended by a very strong Castle, which renders it almost Impregnable, and stands so high that it is seen at a great distance. About a Mile from this Town are two Hot Baths, much frequented by Strangers. These Waters are so common hereabouts, that the People dig Pits wherein they find hot Water, and that so near the Rivers, that they can reach their Arms into the cold Water whilst the rest of their Body is Sweating in the Pit.

*Ciremnitz* is reckon'd the first among the Berg or Mine-Towns, which Honour is paid to its Antiquity rather than Grandeur, being of small extent, but surrounded with Suburbs, and defended by a strong Castle, supposed to stand on the highest Ground in Hungary, 50 miles distant from *Newhaufel* to the North-east, 40 miles from *Leopoldstadt* to the East, and 50 miles North from the *Danube*. It is Famous on account of its Gold-Mine, which has been wrought above 900 Years; the Entrance into the Mine is thro' one Cuniculus or Horizontal Passage, call'd the *Erbsal*, which is 170 Fathoms



Fathoms deep, and the Vein runs 9 or 10 miles in length, and some of the Passages, which have formerly been cut thro' Rocks, by being disused are grown up again and hardly passable, tho' undoubtedly at first they were wide enough. So Rich is this Mine that they sometimes find lumps of pure Gold, Specimens whereof are seen in the Emperors Repository at *Vienna*. And even the common Earth on the neighbouring Hills being washed affords Gold.

Not far from the Gold Mine there is another of Vitriol 80 Fathoms deep, the Earth whereof purified and reduc'd to a Calx is used in making *Aqua Fortis*. In the Town is established a Mint wherein Gold Ducats and other Pieces are Coin-ed.

*Schemnitz*, the fairest of all the Seven Berg or Mine-Towns, is built on a Rocky Hill which renders the Streets uneven, 20 miles distant from *Cremnitz* to the South, and 30 from the *Danube* to the North. The Town is adorn'd with Three beautiful Churches, and defended by as many Castles. One whereof is exceeding high, and was used as a Watch-Tower, to discover the Approach. The Air of this Place is not Healthy, but the neighbouring Baths are very restorative. And the Country being Rocky, Provisions are difficulty brought hither, so that if it were not for the Rich Silver-Mines, this Town would have few Inhabitants. Of these Mines there are several, but the Two call'd the *Trinity*, and the *Windschat*, are the chief, the former is 70 Fathom deep, and mostly supported by Props, being an Earthy Soil; the latter is much deeper, and in some Places wonderfully Hot. The Ore is Rich, and besides most of it holds some Gold; which they separate by melting the Silver, then grinding it, and afterwards dissolving it in *Aqua-Fortis*, made out of the Vitriol of *Chremnitz*, wherein the Gold subsides, and the *Aqua-Fortis* is drawn from the Silver by Distillation, and made to serve again. Not far from *Schemnitz* is a Rock where is found a red Substance which grows to the Ore called *Cinnaber* of Silver, and which is used for Paint, making as fine a Vermilian as the *Cinnaber* its self. There are also found in these Mines Crystals, Amethysts, and Vitriol naturally Crystalliz'd.

*Newsol* or *Beskricia*, 10 miles North from *Cremnitz*, is the Third in the Number of the Berg-Towns, and stands on the River *Gran* at the Foot of a Hill, on which stands the Castle and the great Church cover'd with Copper. It is a good Market Town, to which is brought plenty of Provisions; but is chiefly remarkable for the Copper-Mines near it, the most considerable in *Hungary*; wherein the Ore is so firmly Incorporated with its Stone-Bed, that the separation cannot be made without great Pains and Difficulty, the Ore being often melted 14 times before it can be made fit for use. The Inhabitants are Lutherans, and Speak the German, Hungarian and *Wenlish* Tongues. At *Mismills*, a Village near *Newsol*, are many Furnaces for melting the Mettle, and Silver is sometimes extracted out of the Copper.

*Puggantz* was heretofore a fair Town, and still retains a fourth Place in the Rank of the Berg-Towns, but hath been so often burnt and laid wast by the frequent Incurfions of the Turks, that the Miners were forced to give over their Work till peaceable Times should come.

*Konigsberg*, the Fifth of the Berg-Towns, stands

near the River *Gran*, 10 miles West from *Schemnitz*; it doth not much exceed *Puggantz* in Note and Dignity at this Day, the Miners having for the most part retired from thence to *Chremnitz* and *Schemnitz*, where they meet with much better Employment. However this Town is noted for a sort of softer Mineral Water that hath wrought many notable Cures.

*Tillen* another Berg-Town of great Antiquity, but of late Years fallen to decay and deserted, because of the failure of the Veins.

*Libeten*, 15 miles North-East from *Newsol*, the last of the seven Berg-Towns, was likewise formerly more noted than at present, being left for the same Reason. Altho' still some small Quantities of Copper, with a little Silver, are dug out of the Mines.

Besides these there are other Towns remarkable for Mines, tho' they are not registred among the former, *viz.*

*Hern-Grundt*, about 7 miles distant from *Newsol*, where lies a Copper Mine in the Rocks, the Ore whereof is extream Rich, yielding ordinarily 20 or 30, nay sometimes 40, 50, and even to 60 Pounds of Metal in the Hundred Pound of Ore; which is either of a yellow or black Colour, the former yielding the more Mettal, but the latter containing some Silver. There are also several Sorts of Vitriol found in this Mine, *viz.* White, Green, Blew, and clear transparent Red, besides a green Earth or waterish Sedement call'd *Berg-grun*, used in Painting. Moreover here are two Springs of Vitriolate Water that in 14 Days turn Iron into Copper; these Fountains are esteemed, because thereby the worst old Iron is made pure Copper, more Ductile and Malleable than other.

*Glasbitten*, 7 Miles from *Schemnitz*, was sometime noted for a rich Gold Mine, which has been lost ever since *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, over-run this Country, and forced the Inhabitants away. The Place is however much resorted to on account of the Hot-Baths, whereof there are Five; the Waters are very clear, the Sedement Red and Green, and the Wooden Seats under Water incrustated with a Stony Substance. And Silver is gilded by lying in the Water. Among these, the Hot Springs of that call'd the Sweating Bath drain thro' a Hill, and fall into a Bagnio built on purpose to receive 'em. At one end whereof is erected a noble Stove, heated by the Steams of those Waters, and so contrived, that by choosing a higher or lower Seat, ones Sweating may be regulated, and any Degree of Heat obtain'd at Pleasure.

*Eisenbach* lies about 4 miles from *Glasbitten* and 5 or 6 from *Schemnitz*, and is Famous for its Hot-Baths, Two of which are very convenient and much frequented; but the Third, which is made of the wast Water of the former, is not much used, being almost continually full of Snakes, who delight in this Warmth. The Water is of a Petrifying Nature, the Sedement, which is of a red Colour, turns to Stone, and the Planks which surround the Bath are all Petrified. Silver is chang'd Yellow by lying in it.

*Esperies* or *Eperies*, is a strong Town seated on the River *Tarkzel*, near the Frontiers of *Poland*, 150 miles East from *Presburg*, and 60 miles North from the River *Teyffe*. It is the Capital of the County of *Sero*, and Famous for its Fairs and Salt-Mines. And about half an Hour from the Town there



there is a famous Salt-Mine, the Veins whereof are so large, that there are dug out Pieces of 1000 Pound Weight of pure Salt, which is of a grayish Colour, but being ground to Powder becomes exceeding White; Some Pieces are Blew, some Yellow, &c. and so hard that they Carve it into divers Figures. The Water of this Mine is so impregnated with Salt, that being Boyled up it affords a Blackish Salt which they give to their Cattel. Near this place Spring Two deadly Fountains, the Waters whereof kill the Birds and Beasts that Taste 'em; wherefore they are always kept Cover'd and Wall-ed round to prevent any coming to them.

*Lewfske*, the Capital of the County of *Zips*, stands near the Frontiers of *Poland* 20 miles West from *Eperies*, on the Top of a High-hill, whence is a fine Prospect of the Neighbouring Country. It is a handsome Large Town, having a considerable Annual Fair, and Inhabited chiefly by *Germans* of the *Lutheran* Religion, who however Talk the *Hungarian* Tongue, and hold a Traffick with all the Neighbouring Places: They are Remarkable for their Courteous Behaviour and Sincerity in Dealing.

*Caschau* Seated on the small River *Tarza* 20 miles South from *Eperies*, and 40 North from the *Teyffe* and 100 N. East from *Newhausel*. It is one of the Royal Free Towns Govern'd by the Emperor's immediate Deputy, which makes a great resort of Persons of Quality, and hath render'd the Town one of the best built in *Hungary*. It is very well Fortified, and hath an Arsenal the most considerable in the Kingdom. The great Church is supplied by a *German* and *Hungarian* Minister by Turns, both which Languages are ordinarily spoken here. The Air is as pestilential and unhealthy as any in *Hungary*, which renders Strangers subject to Sicknes. Moreover their Wine is bad, being ringed with Chalk or Lime, and breeds Lameness in the Joints; and yet the same Wine being carry'd abroad is very good; and the chief Trade of the Town consists in the Vent of it into *Poland* and elsewhere. This Place being formerly possess'd by the *Turks*, was regain'd in the Year 1685.

*Agria*, called *Eger* by the *Germans*, and *Erlaw* by the Inhabitants, is seated in the middle of all *Hungary* on the small River *Agria*, which about 15 mile below falls into the *Teyffe*, 60 miles from *Buda* to the North-East, and 120 from *Presburg* to the East. It is a considerable City, being the See of a Bishop, and a regular Fortification of great Strength. The Castle stands on the other side the River on a Hill, and has the reputation of being one of the strongest Holds in the Kingdom. When *Solyman II.* besieg'd this City in the year 1552. with 70000 Men, tho' it was not then guarded by such Fortifications, it was defended with wonderful Courage and Resolution, so that after the *Turks* had Batter'd it 40 days with 50 pieces of Canon, and made many Assaults in which they lost 8000 Men, they were fain to draw off and quit the Siege. But in the Year 1596, *Mahomet III.* took it, and put the Garrison to the Sword. Since when the *Turks* held it till the late War, when it was regain'd by the Imperial Forces after they had Block'd it up for three Year, in which time 10000 *Turks* perish'd in it, either through Hunger or Diseases, 4000 Inhabitants march'd out with the Garrison, 300 staid and demanded Baptism, and many Christian Slaves were set at Liberty. The *Turks* left

in the place 150 pieces of Artillery, 7 Mortars, and great store of Provisions and Ammunition. And by this Conquest all the adjacent Country was reduc'd to the Imperial Obedience.

*Filleck* is a very considerable Portress by reason of its advantageous Situation, on the top of a Craggy Hill; so inaccessible that there is only one way up to it, and that so very Narrow that only one Person can pass at a time. It stands on the Road from *Presburg* to *Transylvania*, 20 miles West from *Agria*, and 40 North from *Buda*. It was Fortified with a Castle and Strong Walls, but taken by the *Turks* however in 1560, and recovered by the Imperialists in 1593, and again taken by the *Bassa* of *Waradin* in 1682. But some Differences arising between him and Count *Teckely's* Party, he caused it to be Dismantled and Deserted. Near this Town is a Curiosity Viewed by Travellers, being a Hole or Cavern in a Rock, wherein the Water dropping from the Arch at Top, Petrifies at the bottom, and becomes a White Stone used by Painters.

*Novigrad*, a small but very strong Town, and the Capital of a County, is Seated 30 miles South-west from *Filleck*, 15 miles from the *Danube*, and 50 South-east from *Newhausel*. It is defended by a strong Castle, Founded on a High-Rock, and Encompassed with a Moat cut in the Rock 34 Foot deep. It was taken by the *Germans* from the *Turks* in the Year 1594, but lost again in 1663, and now Recover'd and Subject to the Emperor.

*Pest* or *Pesth*, a Large Town Seated on the *Danube* over-against *Buda*, to which you pass by a Fine Bridge of Boats Half a mile long. It is built of a Quadrangular Form, and by reason of its fair Walls and Towers of the *Turkish* Mosques, affords a delightful Prospect at a distance. This place hath been often Taken and Re-taken by the *Turks* and *Christians*, but was assured to the Emperor by the Conquest of *Buda* in 1686.

*Colocz*, *Colocia*, *Coloza*, & ad Statuas *Coloffias*, is an Ancient City Seated on the *Danube*, 50 miles South-east from *Pest*: The Capital of the County of *Bath*, and the See of an Archbishop, but for some Ages over-run with *Mahometanism*, and recover'd by the Imperialists in the Year 1686.

*Bath Monster*, which gives Name to the County stands near the *Danube*, 25 miles South-east from *Colocz*. *Bodrock* which gives Name to another County stands also on the *Danube* 25 miles below *Bath*.

*Segedin*, or *Seged*, the principal Town of the County of *Bodrock* is Seated on the River *Teyffe*, or *Tibiscus*, over-against the Mouth of the *Merisch*, 55 miles from *Colocz* to the South-east, and 60 from *Belgrade* to the North. It was taken by the *Turks* in 1552, and Recover'd by the Imperialists after the taking of *Buda* in 1686. This is the furthest Town on the *Tibisc* Subject to the Emperor.

*Gyula* called *Gywa* by the *Hungarians*, is a strong Town Seated on a Lake 30 miles North-east from *Segedin*, and as many South from *Great Waradin*. It was taken by the *Turks* in 1566, but Recover'd with the rest of *Hungary* in the late War.

*Lippa* stands on the South-side of the *Maresch*, 35 miles South-east from *Gyula*. Being Situate in the County of *Temeswar*, which was granted to the *Turks* by the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, it was by the same Article agreed to be dismantled.



*Cavansebes* stands in the same Territory upon the River *Temes*, 50 miles East from *Temeswar*, also dismantled by the same Treaty.

The Iron-Gate mention'd in the History of the late War, stands on the Frontier of *Transylvania* and *Wallachia*, 30 miles East from *Cavansebes*.

*Temeswar* being surrender'd to the *Turks*, we shall speak of that in our Account of their Countries.

*Waradin*, commonly call'd *Great Waradin*, is Seated on the River *Kereş*, in the Confines of *Transylvania*, to which it sometime belonged, 60 miles from *Segedin* to the North-east, and 50 miles from *Zolneck* to the East. It is the See of a Bishop, and a Place of great Strength, being Fortified with a strong Castle on the East-side, and firm Ramparts, besides Five Royal Bastions, and a Regular Ditch Supply'd by Water from the Rivers: And within is another Enclosure consisting of some Bastions, and a High Wall to serve as it were for a Citadel. In the Year 1290 K. *Ladislaus III.* built the Cathedral Church: And in 1642, the City was taken by the *Crim Tartars*, but quitted soon after: In 1662, it submitted to the *Turks*, but was recover'd by the *Imperialists* after a Memorable Siege and Blockade in 1692.

*Zolneck*, the Capital of a County to which it gives Name, stands at the Confluence of the River *Zigwa* with the *Teyssse*, 60 miles above *Segedin* to the North, and in the Midway between *Great Waradin* to the West, and *Buda* to the East about 50 miles from both. The Two Rivers almost surround it, and make it a convenient place for a Garrison, being also large enough to receive 4000 Men, and very well Fortified. Nevertheless this strong Hold was shamefully quitted by a Garrison of 850 Men in the Year 1552, when the *Turks* had Besieged it but Three days, notwithstanding the Governor's Courage and Resolution to Hold out to extremity; who being taken in the Castle was civilly Treated, and at his Request the Garrison was pursued, and all cut to pieces by the *Turks*. It continued in their Hands till the Year 1685, when it was recover'd by the *Imperialists*.

*Debreczen* stands 40 miles East from *Zolneck* towards *Transylvania*, and is notable for an Illustrious School, or small University Establish'd in it.

*Zatmar*, a small but well Fortified Town in the Mountains towards *Poland* and *Transylvania*, 50 miles North from *Waradin*, as many East from *Teckay*, and about 40 South-west from the Head of the River *Teyssse*. It is surrounded by the River *Samaşch*, and is a Hold of great Strength taken by Count *Teckely* in the Year 1680, and afterwards Regain'd by the *Imperialists*. It is the chief of a Territory lately made a County under the Emperor's Jurisdictions.

*Montzatş*, or *Munkatş*, stands a little beyond the River *Teyssse*, towards the Frontiers of *Poland*, 40 miles East from the Head of that River, 30 North from *Zatmar*, 50 South-east from *Eperies*. It is a Fortrels of impregnable Strength, built on a Steep Rock, and consists of Three Castle one above another, the First commanding the Second, and the Second the Third, each encompass'd with a Trench cut in the Rock, and the whole surrounded with a Morass. The Town stands at the bottom of the Rock in the County of *Pereczas*. This Place was for a long time defended by the Princess *Ragotsky*, Wife to Count *Teckely*, against a very con-

siderable Army, that were oblig'd to raise the Siege; but continuing a Blockade for some Years, she was at last forced to surrender in the Year 1688.

*Ungwar*, or *Ughuar*, Seated on the River *Ungh*, near the Frontiers of that part of *Poland*, Nam'd *Red-Russia*, 20 miles North-west from *Mungatş*, 40 East from *Eperies*, and 90 North-east from *Zolneck*, is by some Authors assum'd to give Name to the whole Kingdom, altho' at present it be not considerable except for its Strength, and Commodious Situation at the Foot of the *Karpach* Mountains. It is the chief of a County; and being in the possession of Count *Teckely*, he Lodged his Treasures and best Goods in it, till it was taken by the *Imperialists* in 1683.

*Teckay*, a very strong Town and Citadel, is Seated on a Marthy Plain at the Confluence of the *Teyssse*, and the *Bodach*, 40 miles South from *Ungwar*, 50 North from *Zolneck*, and 30 East from *Agria*. It is the chief Town of the County denominat'd from *Zemlin*, which stands 20 miles North of it, and is Noted for its good Wine. Count *Teckely* seized it in 1683, but the *Imperialists* recover'd it in 1685. Near this place is found a sort of Earth call'd *Bolus Teckaviensis* much esteem'd for its Medicinal Virtue.

These are the Places of chiefest Note in *Upper Hungary*.

### In Lower Hungary, are

*B U D A*, *Buda* aut *Aquineum*, call'd *Offen* by the Inhabitants, and *Buden* by the *Turks*, Anciently and still reckon'd the Capital of the Kingdom, took it's Name probably from *Buda* King *Attila's* Brother it's Restorer, or according to others from the *Butini*, a *Scythian* People mention'd by *Herodotus*. It is Seated on a Hill on the South-Bank of the River *Danube* over-against *Pesth*, 90 miles from *Presburg* to the South-east, 100 Miles from *Esseck* to the North-west. It is a large City, Rich, Populous, and very strongly Fortified; it was very much Enlarg'd, and Adorn'd with publick Edifices by *Sigismund K.* of *Hungary*, who was Crown'd in 1387, and among others he built the Castle, which is very strong, and was afterwards the Seat of the Kings, it stands on the Top of the Hill, and commands the Town, and is surrounded by a deep Ditch, divers old Towers, and some Modern Ramparts. The City lies on the Declivity of the Hill, and the Suburbs call'd *Wasterland*, beyond it towards the *Danube*, over which you pass by a very fair Bridge of Boats to *Pest*. The many Sumptuous Buildings that were formerly seen in this City, are all fallen to decay during the time the *Turks* Possess'd it: For in the Year 1526, *Solyman II.* took this City; but *Ferdinand* Archduke of *Austria* recover'd it the next Year. In 1529 the same *Solyman* took it a second time, after the Garrison had endured Eleven General Assaults. Again in 1541, it was attack'd by *Ferdinand*, but by *Solyman* again Reliev'd, and the Siege Raised. The Archduke *Matthias* attempted to Besiege it in 1598, and 1601. But both these Enterprizes proved ineffectual. At length the late most Valiant Prince *Charles Duke of Lorraine*, set down before this City in 1684, but could not then effect what he afterwards accomplish'd: For in the Year 1686, after a Memorable Siege of Ten Weeks continuance, he recover'd this important Place to Christian Obedience, being taken by Assault on



on the 15 June 1686. The Baths of *Buda* are reputed the Noblest in *Europe*, not only on Account of the plentiful Hot-Springs, but also for the Magnificence of their Buildings. They are Eight in Number, being appointed for Men in the Morning, and Women in the Afternoon. The chief of them is that of *Izoly*, having a strong sulphurous Small and petrifying Juice; but it is so intensely Hot, that to make it tolerable a mixture of Cold Water is usually thrown in.

*GRAN. Szigonium*, stands on the South Bank of the *Danube*, 3 miles above *Buda*, 60 South-East from *Presburg*, over against *Bacsana*, which stands at the Mouth of the River *Gan*. It is a very considerable City, formerly the Seat of the Kings, and at present the See of an Archbishop who is Primate of the Kingdom, Chancellor and President of the Royal Council. And adorned with many magnificent Buildings, whereof the Cathedral Church dedicated to *St. Stephen*, the Archbishop's Palace and the Castle are the most considerable: Here are also two large Towers, one towards *Themesburg*, and the other facing the River towards *Bacsana*; these are joined by a Wall, fortified with divers Redoubts and a Ditch flank'd with heavy Stone, besides a Terrace, environ'd with strong Palliades, and 4 great Points like Ravelins. The whole is divided into two Parts, the upper standing on the side of a Hill, and the lower along the Banks of the *Danube*, and fenced with a strong Fort built on the Hill of *St. Thomas*, so that an Enemy has in a manner three different Towns to take before he can be Master of *Gran*. But notwithstanding this Strength it was taken by *Solyman II.* in the Year 1543. and in vain Besieg'd by *Matthias* Arch-Duke of *Austria* with 50000 Men in 1574. Afterwards the Imperialists again set down before it in 1595. and their General Count *Mansfield* routed the Turkish Army; but he dying soon after, the Siege was continued by the Arch-Duke with great Vigour, and the City at last taken. In this Siege *Sir Tho. Arundel* of *Wardour* Castle in *Wiltshire* signaliz'd great Valour, he storm'd the Water-Tower, and pull'd down the Turkish Banner; for which Service and his continual Bravery during the whole Siege, the Emperor *Rudolph* created him a Count of the Empire, and King *James I.* made him a Baron of *England*; which Honours his Posterity still enjoy. Afterwards the *Turks* under *Mahomet III.* retok it in the Year 1606. and possess'd it till the late War, when in Year 1693. after the Defeat of the Turkish Army before *Vienna*, the Imperialists recover'd it, and defended it against the *Turks*, who again attack'd it in 1695. but were entirely defeated by the Dukes of *Lorraine* and *Bavaria*. The adjacent Country is exceeding fruitful, affording great quantities of generous Wines.

*Komorra. Comorra. Komara* or *Komara*, is a very strong and populous Town, seated on the East-corner of the Island *Schut* on the Bank of the *Danube*, 20 miles East from *Presburg*, and 25 West from *Gran*. It is almost encompass'd with the Rivers *Danube* and *Witz*, and surrounded with a pleasant Champaign Country, over which from its Towers may be seen many Turkish Forts. It was first Fortified by King *Matthias Corvinus*, and became the chiefest Bulwark of *Christendom* against the *Turks* after the loss of *Gran*. And therefore a good Garrison was always there maintain'd, under

a trusty Governor, of whom *Baron Basta* testified his Fidelity very legally, for after the taking of *Rach* in 1591. *Simon Basta* belieg'd *Comorra* with 60 Ships, and a large Army of *Turks* and *Tartars*, endeavouring at the same time to Corrupt the Governor; but he instead of accepting the Bribe, beheaded four of the five *Turks* sent to him on the Errand, and spared the 5th only to go back to his Master with the Answer, that he scorn'd his Offers: And in the end they were forc'd to raise the Siege. Since that time the Town hath been enlarg'd, and better strengthened with a Fort, call'd the *Tortoise*, and 2 Bastions.

*Rach* or *Fara in*, a small City dignified with an Episcopal See, stands on the Southern Branch of the *Danube*, that makes the Island *Schut*, where it receives the River *Rach*, 20 miles South from *Komorra*, 25 South-east from *Presburg*, and 30 West from *Gran*. It is a strong Town, being Fortified with Seven Large Bastions, and Four Cavaliers, or High Mounts overlooking them. The Country round it is Champion, and nothing can command it but a Neighbouring Hill, which is undermined, and may be blown up at pleasure: Somewhat farther in the open Field stands a Watch-Tower; from hence an Enemy's Approach may be seen at a distance. *Simon Basta* belieg'd this City, and at one Attack lost 12000 Men before it: But at last it fell into their Hands, by the Treachery of Count *Hardeck* its Governor, for which he was Beheaded at *Vienna*; and was surpriz'd by Stratagem in the Year 1606, by Count *Swartzenburg* Governor of *Comorra*, and so Recover'd, and ever since Remain'd in the Emperor's Possession. The Famous General *Montecuculi* was Governor of this Town, and us'd to Reside here when his leisure permitted.

*Altenburg, Ovaria*, call'd *Omar* by the *Hungarians*, is a very strong Town and Fortress, Seated on the *Danube*, where it receives the *Leytha*, by which Rivers it is surrounded, over-against the West-End of the Island *Schut*, and 20 miles South from *Presburg*. It is Esteem'd the best Fence the *Austrians* have on this side, and is a considerable Out-work to *Vienna*, from which it is distant 50 miles to the East.

*Alba Regalis, Stuhl Weissenberg*, called *Stolin-Biograd*, by the *Slavonians*, and *Ekekeis Feiervax* by the *Hungarians*, stands in the midst of an inaccessible Marsh on the Banks of the River *Zarniza* near the Lake *Balaten*, whence that River issues, in the middle between the *Danube* and the *Drave*, 40 miles South from *Gran*, as many South-west from *Buda*, and 80 South-east from *Presburg*. It is well Fortified with Three Bastions, and Two other Works on one side, the other being sufficiently cover'd with the Morass, and joyned to the firm Land by Three Causeways. It was heretofore Famous for the Coronation and Interment of the Kings of *Hungary*, till it was taken by the *Turks* 1543. From whence it was recover'd by the Duke of *Mecklenburg* in 1612. But they took it again the year following, and kept it till the year 1698. when it was Regain'd by the *Imperialists*.

*Leiprin*, or *Weissburn*, the Capital of a County, and the See of a Bishop, stands near the Lake *Balaten*, 15 miles from *Alba Regalis*, and 55 from *Buda* to the West. This City was taken by the



the *Turks* in 1593, but afterwards Recover'd, and now Subject to the Emperor.

*Canisa*, or *Kanischka*, is one of the strongest Holds in these Parts, Seated on the River *Sala*, which a little below falls into the *Drave* about 20 miles West from the Lake *Baletton*, 6 South-west from *Alba Regalis*, and near 100 South from *Presburg*. It fell into the Hands of the *Turks* in the Year 1600. and in the following Year the Archduke of *Austria* endeavour'd to Regain it; but after a Siege of Two Months he was fain to quit it. In 1604. Count *Serini* laid Siege to it, and had carried it if timely Succours had been sent him. In the late War it was block'd up by an Army of 8000 under Count *de Budiani* from the 30 July 1688, till Apr. 1690. when at last it was surrender'd with this Expression from the *Turkish* Officer, *I here resign you the Strongest Fortrefs in the Ottoman Empire.*

*Sigeth*, or *Zygeth*, is Seated in a *Morass* near the River *Alme*, which 20 miles below falls into the *Drave*, 44 miles from *Alba Regalis*, to the South, 64 from *Canisa* to the East, and 74 from *Buda* to the South-west. It is a strong Town being Fortified with a well-built Castle besides Three Walls, and as many Ditches. It was taken by the *Turks* in the Year 1566. after a Siege of Two Months, notwithstanding the brave Defence of *Nicolas Esdrin* its Governor, who perished with his Guard of 200 Men in Encountering the whole Body of *Ottoman* Forces: During this Siege *Solyman* II. died in the Camp. In the Year 1688. the *Imperialists* recover'd this Important Fortrefs, and found 85 Pieces of Cannon in it. There is another Town of this Name in *Transilvania* near the Spring-Head of the River *Teyffe* or *Tibiscus*.

*Five Churches*, or *Funff-Kirken*, *Quinque Ecclesie*, takes its Name from Five Fair Christian Churches in the Town, it stands on the River *Keoritz* 12 miles from the *Drave*, 30 miles East from *Sigeth*, 50 West from *Esseck*, and 70 South from

*Buda*; some Authors make this the *Teuoburgium* of *Antoninus*; but others with more probability fix that Old Roman Fort at *Erdwy*, a Hamlet on the Mouth of the *Drave*. It is not a place of equal strength with those we have been mentioning. It was burnt by Count *Serini* in the former War, in his Return from *Esseck*, and in the late War in the Year 1686, it was taken by surprize by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*. *St. Stephen* King of *Hungary*, made this City a Bishop's See.

*Mohatz*, a small Town Seated near the *Danube*, between the Rivers *Zarmiza*, and the *Drave* 30 miles South from *Colocza*, 25 North-west from *Esseck*, and 35 East from *Five Churches*, chiefly memorable for Two Battels fought near it: The first between *Solyman* the Magnificent, and *Lewis* or *Lodowick* II. King of *Hungary*. Wherein this Prince being in the Heat of his Youth, Adventur'd with an Army of 20000 Men to Engage the Army of 300000 *Turks*, by whom he was over-power'd, many of the Nobility kill'd, and himself in endeavouring to Escape, Rode into a Bog; where thro' the Weight of his Armour, he perished in the 20th Year of his Age. The Consequence of this Battel was very Fatal; for the *Turks* pursuing their Blow slew 200000 *Hungarians*, and got such Footing in the Countrey, that they could never be remov'd; till the late happy War, whereby all *Hungary* was regain'd. The Second Battel was almost as fortunate on the *Christian* side; for on the 29th of July 1687. the Prime Visier pass'd the *Drave* at *Esseck*, with design to attack the *Christian* Army under the Duke of *Lorraine*; accordingly on the 12th of August the Battel was Fought, wherein the *Turks* were entirely Defeated with the loss of 12000 Men, all the Tents, Baggage, Treasure, and 100 Pieces of Ordinance, 12 Mortars, with Ammunition and Provisions proportionate.



# TRANSILVANIA.

**T**RANSILVANIA, call'd *Erdely* by the *Hungarians*, and *Siebenburgen* by the *Germans*, derives both its *Latin* and *Hungarian* Names from Woods and Forests, with which it is encompass'd almost on all sides; but the *High-Dutch* Denomination hath a different Original of much later Date, taken from the 7 chief Towns in this Principality, and alluding to the manner of Living of the ancient *Pannonians*, who having fix'd their Tents in those Parts, for the more ready suppressing of any Insurrection that might be rais'd against them by the Natives, were wont to keep in distinct Bodies, and accordingly divided themselves into 7 Bands or Regiments, every one of which contain'd 3357 able Soldiers. Thus being encamp'd in several quarters of *Transilvania*, they made Entrenchments round about, and for their better Security built a Fortrefs or Castle at every Camp, which first occasion'd the alteration of the Name of this Country; *Siebenburgen* in the *German* Tongue, signifying 7 Forts or Towns. It was added to the *Roman* Empire under the Name of *Dacia*, by the Emperor *Trajan*, and contain'd in compass about 1000 *Italian* miles, according to the Report of *Eutropius* and *Fernandes*; but at present nothing more is comprehended under the Name of *Transilvania* than only a part of the Old *Wallachia*, lying in form of a Rhomb or Lozenge, and being bounded on the North by *Poland*, on the South by *Wallachia* proper, and part of *Hungary*, on the East by *Moldavia*, and part of the same *Wallachia*, and on the West by Upper *Hungary*: It's extent from North to South, consisting of about 50 Leagues, and 65 from East to West. The AIR is altogether as temperate here as in any part of *Hungary*, and not so much corrupted with Infectious Vapors, altho the Waters are Unwholsom, by reason that they pass through Mines of Alum and Mercury. The Country (as the Name imports) is every where environ'd with Forests, growing for the most Part on the Sides of high Hills and Mountains. The chief of these is Mount *Carpathus*, nam'd *Crapack* by the *Transilvanians*, and *Biescid* by the *Russians*, which runs along the North of the whole Principality, dividing it from the *Russian* Empire; and indeed the Inlands are almost as Mountainous as the Limits, inasmuch that one can hardly Travel from one great Town to another, but by a Road, leading through a Wood, and over some rocky Hill. The highest inland Mountain stands near *Fagaras*, on the River *Alt*, its Top being inaccessible and always cover'd with Snow: However the SOIL brings forth abundance of Corn, Pulse, and delicious Fruits; affording likewise good Grapes, Honey and Wax, together with several Mines of Gold, Silver, Lead, Quick-silver

and other Minerals. The chief Mines are at *Sculatti* and *Rimici Dominurda*, in the latter whereof the Miners have sometimes found large lumps of Virgin-Gold, and sent them to the Mint without any further Purifying. The best Silver Mines are near *Offera* and *Radna*, where they have also good store of Copper, and accidentally light on a Vein of Gold. In the Copper-Mines they usually meet with Brimstone and Iling-Glass, as also plenty of Steel at *Cock*, and of Iron at *Thoresch* and *Huniad*. Lastly, the County of *Macromarus* affords vast quantities of Stone-Salt, even so far as to supply the greater part of the Neighbouring Nations with that Mineral. The Pasture Grounds yield Fodder to innumerable Herds of Cattle, more especially large Oxen, with which the *Transilvanians*, in time of Peace, are so over stock'd, that a fat Ox may be then bought for 12 or 14 Shillings, and sold again for 50 or 60 Rix-Dollars in *Austria*. They have also a good Breed of stout and swift Horses, that are very much esteem'd in Foreign Countries. The Forests abound with Buffles, Elks, Stags, and a sort of wild Horses that run incredibly swift, and have large Mains hanging down to the Ground, wild Boars, Foxes, Martins and other sorts of Game. The Hares are much larger here than in the Western parts of *Europe*, and their Skins carry a far purer Furr. The Wolves and Bears in *Altland*, and other adjacent Counties, run often in Drovers, viz. 30 or 40 together, and do much Mischief, during the Winter, among the Horse and other Cattle. There is no Nation in the World where Wheat grows more plentifully than in *Transilvania*, so that even the Peasants feed on no other sort of Bread, the Blade of this Grain being here usually as thick as an ordinary Reed, and shooting up to a great height. Their Wines are reckon'd much more noble than those of *Wallachia*, the *Windisch* Marquisate, *Austria* and *Moravia*, but far inferior to the *Rhenish* and *Hungarian*, having commonly a Tincture of Chalk or Sulphur; for which Reason it is reputed a mighty promoter of the Gout, and such like Distempers. The most remarkable Rivers are, the *Marisk*, the *Alt*, the *Samos* and the *Chrysa*: The 2 former of these Spring forth out of the *Scythian* *Carpathus*; the *Alt* falls into the *Danube*, but the *Marisk* and *Samos* intermix their Waters with those of the *Teisse*.

The Principality of *Transilvania* is Inhabited by three sorts of People, that have different Laws and Customs, viz. The *Ciculi* or *Siculi*, the *Saxons* and the *Hungarians*. Of these the first lay claim to the greatest Antiquity, and are still Govern'd by their old Laws and Constitutions, being really a Branch of the ancient *Scythians*, who were



driven out of *Pannonia*, by *Attila* and his *Huns*. They divide themselves into seven *Cantons*, every one of which is Absolute with in it self: Tho' all of them are united with the *Transilvanians*, and one with another for the defence of their Country against the Common Enemy. As for the *Saxons* (according to the Opinion of *Toppeltine*) they are the true Relicts of the Ancient *Daci*; calling themselves even at this day *Decen Defen*, or *Detschen*, which is an easie Corruption of the *Daci* or *Deci*. The *German* Writers, especially those of the best Repute, acknowledge the whole *German* Nation (and consequently their *Saxons*) to be the Off-spring of the ancient *Transilvanians*. But whence soever their Original is deriv'd, they are certainly near of Kin to the Inhabitants of the Lower *Saxony*, and use the same Dialect, altho' the corruption of their Tongue, by a mixture with the *Hungarian*, renders the *High-Dutch* more difficult to be understood among them. Those *Saxons* possess the Province call'd the *Seven Towns*: The *Siculi* dwell on the Banks of the River *Marisk*; and the *Hungarians* possess the Frontiers of *Walachia*; the two latter are for the most part *Calvinists*, and the *Saxons* almost generally embrace the Doctrine of *Luther*, but none will allow any Pictures or Images to be set up in their Churches. There are also among them some *Roman* *Catholicks*, *Greeks*, *Trinitarians*, *Photinians* and *Anabaptists*, tho' their Parry is not so considerable.

However, these three distinct Nations are Govern'd by one Sovereign, stiled the Waywood, or Prince of *Transilvania*, whom the Grand Signior often caus'd to be Elect'd and Depos'd at his pleasure. But the Power of the *Turks* is now expell'd. The two Noble Families of *Bathori* and *Ragotski*, have supplied this Country with many Princes, who were oblig'd to send a certain Tribute to the Port, until *Michael Abasti* the 23d. Prince from *John Huniades*, who succeeded *John Kermant*, A. D. 1661. with the consent of the States of *Transilvania*, resign'd the whole Country to the Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Hungary* for ever, as it appears from the Act bearing Date at *Hermanstadt*, May 9. 1688. Whereupon Imperial Garisons were accordingly receiv'd into all the principal Places. Afterward, the said Prince dying in 1690. the States in a general Assembly, resolv'd to adhere to the Interests of the Emperor and the young Prince Son to the Deceased, who was confirm'd by his Imperial Majesty, against all the Pretensions of Count *Teckely* and the *Ottoman* Port. Thus the Principality of *Transilvania* remains entirely Incorporated with the Crown of *Hungary*, under the Imperial Protection. Its chief Revenues arise from the Sale of Salt, very great quantities whereof are made at *Tarda*, and convey'd from thence on the River *Marisch*, into *Hungary*. And the first Article of the Treaty of Peace between the Emperor and the Turk, at *Carlowitz*, declares that *Transilvania* shall remain entire to his Imperial Majesty, with the ancient Limits as before the War. The chief Towns here are,

*Hermanstadt*, *Hermanopolis*, aut *Cibinium*, call'd *Zebeu* by the Inhabitants, the Metropolis of *Transilvania*, and the Royal Seat of the Prince, stands in the middle of a large Plain, on the side of the Rivulet *Ciben*, which a little below falls into the *Alt*, being distant 60 miles from *Coloswar* or *Clausenburg* to the East, and 32 from *Gula Feiruar*, or *Weissenburg*, toward the Frontiers of *Moldavia*;

as also 500 from *Belgrade* to the North-east. It is a large and fair City, bearing the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Colocza* in *Hungary*, altho' at present destitute of a Bishop; neither is its Strength less considerable, the great Number of Fish-ponds and Pools of Water rendring it inaccessible, besides its firm Walls and Ramperts. The Houses within the Gates are generally well-built, and for the most part cover'd with Slate, which is esteem'd an extraordinary piece of Magnificence in the Apartments of a *Transilvanian* Citizen. There are also many good Springs; and the River-water is convey'd by small Channels through every Street; nevertheless the Air is thought to be very Unhealthy, and to cause the Gout, the epidemical Distemper of the Burghers, insomuch, that many of the best Houses want Inhabitants. Here are usually held the General Conventions and Courts of Judicature of the other 6 chief Towns of the *Saxons*, all Actions at Law being brought thither to Tryal. The principal Trade of the Place consists in Cloath and Mead, both which are here made in great quantities and sent into the Neighbouring Territories. The Princes of *Transilvania* were wont formerly to put themselves under the Protection of the Grand Signior; but Prince *Abasti* at the solicitation of the late Duke of *Lorraine* adher'd to the Emperor's Interest, and was prevail'd with to receive an Imperial Garison of 3000 Men into this City, A. D. 1687.

Having Travelled about a *German* mile from *Hermanstadt*, we meet with *Saltzburg*, or *Wizagna*, that takes its Name from the Salt-pits, which (as it hath been already intimated) bring yearly a very considerable Revenue into the Prince's Exchequer. Not far from hence appears *Michelberg*, a strong Fortrefs erected on the top of a Hill, wherein are laid up all the Arms and Military Ammunition of the whole Territory of *Hermanstadt*. Two miles from this place stands *Roche-Thurn*, or the *Red-Tower*, so Nam'd from the Colour of the Free-stone with which it is built, where the Inhabitants are forc'd to keep a continual Watch and Ward, for fear of some sudden invasion by the *Turks*, out of whose Dominions there lies only a very narrow Road this way into *Transilvania*.

*Cronstadt* or *Brassaw*, *Corona* aut *Stephanopolis* and *Brassovia*, is pleasantly situated in the midst of fair and rich Vineyards, about 65 miles from *Hermanstadt*, almost to the North-east, near the Confines of *Moldavia* and the *Carpathian* Mountains. It is also taken by some Authors for the *Prætoria Augusta* of *Ptolemy*. However it is a Bishop's See, and a place of some strength, as being tolerably well Fortified with Walls and Ramperts of Earth. The Houses are high and well-built, but generally cover'd with Laths instead of Slate. The Citizens are all *Saxons*, without the least mixture of *Hungarians* or *Walachians*; so that their peculiar Language is here spoken in its greatest Purity. A good School hath been Founded here for some time, besides a Library, that goes beyond any throughout the whole Kingdom of *Hungary*.

The Country round about *Cronstadt*, bears the Name of *Burzia*, or *Burzland*, and is the outmost boundary of the Principality of *Transilvania*, which gave occasion to the *Hungarian* Proverb, *That Burzia says Amen to the High-Dutch Paternoster*: Meaning, that this Country is the last wherein the *German* Tongue is understood, the *Slavonian* entering on the Frontiers of *Walachia*. Moreover, it may



not be improper to observe here, that the Road from *Aitland* and other parts of *Transilvania*, leads directly to *Zeidenwald*, a Forest extending for the space of 10 miles in length; during which unpleasant Passage, Travellers are carried over a continued Bridge or Causey of Planks, the Soil being for the most part Marshy and full of Boggs.

*Bistricz*, *Besterca*, or *Besterza*, *Bistrizia*; sometimes also call'd *Nosenstadt*, by the Germans, is remarkable for its situation in a spacious Plain, on the Banks of a River of its own Name. It is a Town of small extent, but very neat, and of so good Note, that many of the *Hungarian* Historiographers allow it the third place in the Catalogue of the *Saxon* Cities, giving it the precedency to *Segeswar* and *Megiez*. The Burghers (as it is generally reported), speak as good *Dutch* here or better than at *Cronstadt*. But the Air and Water of the adjacent Country are both reputed very Unwholesome; so that the Inhabitants, especially the meaner sort, that drink Water, are very apt to be Deaf, Dumb, and very Unactive. This Town is distant about 80 miles from *Hermanstadt* to the North-west, as also 20 from *Burgis*, and 60 from *Weissenburg* to the North.

*Megiez* or *Medwesch* is seated in the very heart of *Transilvania*, on the Banks of the same River with *Segeswar*, in a Country well furnish'd with Wine and other rich Merchandizes. Indeed it is not very large, yet indifferently well fortify'd with a deep Ditch and an old Wall. But its greatest Strength lies in the Church founded on the top of a Hill, according to the usual custom of the Inhabitants of those parts, who built their Churches Castle-wise, to avoid being put to a double Charge.

*Schesburg*, or *Segeswar*, (as it is Nam'd by the *Hungarians*) *Segetbusa*, extends it self along the side of a Hill and the Banks of the River *Cocbel*, at the foot of the *Carpathian* Mountains, about 10 miles from *Hermanstadt* to the North, and 14 from *Cronstadt* to the West. As to its Form, it very much resembles *Buda*, but falls far short of that City in its largeness and number of Inhabitants. It is divided into two parts, viz. the Upper and Lower, the former being built on a Hill and a place of great Strength; but the latter is not well defended, tho' more Populous by reason of the convenience of Water for the use of the Burghers for carrying on their several Manufactures; more especially that of dressing their Cloth, whereas the other part of the Town is destitute of any Brook or Spring.

*Milembach*, or *Zaassebes* according to the *Hungarian* denomination, *Zabesus* aur *Sabejeus*, is a Town of much Antiquity, but otherwise scarcely considerable, lying on a very hollow Valley, and Westward tolerably well secur'd with Bogs and Moorish Grounds. But it may be easily attack'd on the other side, and is by no means a place of Strength.

*Clausenburg*, *Claudiopolis*, is situated on the Rivulet *Samos* near the foot of the Mountains towards the Borders of *Hungary*, at the distance of 36 miles from *Weissenburg* to the North, as many from *Besterca* or *Bistricz*, and 60 from *Waradin* to the East. It is a large Populous Town, and the principal of a County of the same Name, being Fortify'd with an old Castle and other Bulwarks, so as to be capable of enduring a smart Siege; as it did in the year 1661, when *Abasi* Prince of *Transilvania*, joyning with a Body of *Turks*, laid Siege to it; it being at that time Govern'd by *David Retani*, a valiant and faithful Soldier, who notwithstanding

ing the Town was but indifferently Fortify'd, and very ill provided with Cannon and Ammunition (inasmuch that he was forc'd to Found Artillery out of the Town Bells) bravely Sall'y'd out upon the Enemy, and was very successful, till General *Schedinau* who was then in *Hungary*, getting together about 6000 Men, came to his Relief; upon the News of which, the *Turks* thought fit to raise the Siege, and make the best use they could of their Heels, leaving great quantities of Victuals and Provision behind them. It is also a place of great Traffick, and well frequented by reason that all the Conventions of the States of *Transilvania* and Provincial Courts of Justice are held therein by the Prince. It heretofore perhaps bore the Name of *Patruissa*, but is at present call'd *Colcswar* by the *Hungarians*. The greatest part of the Towns-men are *Arians* and *Photinians*, inasmuch that the other six Towns (where *Lutheranism* is generally profess'd) took an occasion to exclude *Clausenburg* out of the number of the seven States of *Transilvanian-Saxons*, and to admit *Bross* or *Zafusras* into it's room. Moreover, the *Hungarians* may be made free of this Town, and are allow'd to bear Offices therein; a Priviledge never granted them in any other *Saxon* City.

There are divers other small Towns and Burghs in *Transilvania* entirely Inhabited by the *Saxons*, but all of them by some means or other, depend on the seven preceeding.

#### *The chief Towns in Transilvania Inhabited by the Hungarians, Walachians, Siculi, &c.*

*Weissenburg*, *Alba Julia*, call'd by the *Hungarians*, *Giula Fejerwar*, is conveniently situated on a rising Ground, from whence, almost 2 miles round about, one may take a most delightful Prospect of a champain and fruitful Country. It is water'd with the gentle Streams of the River *Marisk*, and was in times past much larger than it is at present; as may still be discern'd from its old Boundaries without the Walls, containing 5 miles in compass. And it continu'd for a long time the Metropolis of *Dacia*, being honour'd with the Royal Palace and constant Residence of the Monarchs of that Kingdom. It was also formerly a Bishop's See under the Metropolitan of *Colocza*, but that Dignity was transferr'd elsewhere by Queen *Isabel*, the Widow of *John I.* King of *Hungary*. This City is distant 34 miles from *Hermanstadt* to the West, 68 from *Temesware* to the North-east, 90 from *Waradin* to the East, and 196 from *Buda*. The ancient Inscriptions and Characters, upon Tombs and Tables, that are found in and about this Place, do plainly show that the *Goths* anciently Inhabited this Country. And the Coins and Medals that are found in it, are an evident Proof that the *Roman* Legions were once here: It ow's its Name of *Alba Julia* to *Julia Augusta* the Mother of *Marcus Aurelius Antonius Pius*, as appears from an old Inscription upon a Marble Table in the Church of *St. Michael*, which is this,

I. O. M. E. Junoni.

Pro Salute Imp. M. Aur. Antonii Pii Aug. & Juliae Aug. Matris Aug. M. Ulpius. Mucianus. Mil. Leg. XIII. Gem. Horologiare Templum a Solo de suex voto fecit, Falcone & Claro. Cos.

Theod.



*Thorda* is suppos'd to stand in or near the same place with the *Salin* of *Ptolemy*, which Town took its Name from the great number of Salt-Pits in the adjacent Territory.

*Deva*, a Town chiefly noted for affording a sort of excellent Wine, and guarding the Passage thro' the *Eysenthor*, in the Turkish Dominions. It was taken after a small Resistance by *Michael Abafsi* late Prince of *Transilvania*, during the Wars maintain'd by him against his Competitor *Kemeni Janos*, A. D. 1662.

*Enguedine*, call'd *Annium* by the *Romans*, from a Causeway leading towards it, which one *Annius* a Captain of one of their Cohorts had caus'd to be rais'd. Some Fragments of this ancient military Way are yet to be seen, besides other Monuments of Antiquity often found in and about this Town.

*Newmark*, *Nova Marchia*, or *Waser-Heley* according to the *Hungarian* denomination, is seated on the River *Marisch* at the foot of the *Carpathian* Mountains, 36 miles from *Clausenberg* or *Coloswar* to the North-East. In this Town the general Assemblies of the *Siculi*, are usually conven'd at certain appointed times.

*Agnabat* or *Agnethin*, is one of the chief Towns of *Transilvania*, though of little Strength, and water'd by the River *Herbach*, 25 miles from *Hermanstadt* almost to the North. Queen *Isabel* assembled a Diet there for the Preservation of her Son, but *Marvinus* caus'd it to be dissolv'd, and levy'd War against his Sovereign Prince, the end of which prov'd fatal to both.

### PROVINCES recover'd from the Turks, viz. SCLAVONIA, CROATIA and MORLACHIA.

The Province of *SCLAVONIA* lies on the South-West of *Hungary* between the two Rivers *Drave* and *Save*, having the *Danube* for its Eastern and *Stiria* for its Western Bounds, comprehending in extent from East to West, according to *Cluverius*, 50 German Leagues (or 200 English miles) and in Breadth 12 Germ. Leagues (or 48 Eng. mil.) it is part of the ancient *Pannonia*, and took its present Name from the *Sclavi* a Northern Nation, who came from *Scythia* about the time of the Emperor *Justinian*, and over-run *Greece* and the neighbouring Countries, as well as *Poland* and *Moravia*. And on their account in those times, all the ancient *Illyricum* also (which comprehended *Croatia*, *Bosnia* and *Dalmatia*) bore the Name of *Sclavonia*. Their Force was first broken by the *Venetians* who conquer'd this Country, and to keep the Natives under, oblig'd them to submit to the most servile Employments which their robust, strong Bodies, made them fit for; and some Etymologists pretend that the word *Slave* came from these People thus subjected. They were undoubtedly in former times a very considerable Nation, as is demonstrated by the Extent of their Language, which is one of the four original ones of *Europe*, and is spoken by the *Poles*, *Russes*, *Hungarians*, and many other Nations: Dr. *Heylin* reckons up twelve, but *Gesner* says no less than 60 Nations speak the *Sclavonian* Language. By divers Revolutions the Country became at last tributary to the *Hungarians*, from whom it was taken by the *Turks*; *Solyman* the Magnificent invading this Province in 1540.

and reduc'd it to his Subjection, under which it remained till the late War, when in the year 1687. after the defeat of the *Ottoman* Forces at *Mohatz*, they mutinied against the Grand Visier, which oblig'd the *Turks* to Desert it, and to the whole Territory, except *Gradisca*, submitted to the Emperor; and by the late Treaty at *Carlowitz* the greatest part of the Province is for ever resigned up by the Grand Seigneur to his Imperial Majesty.

The Air is temperate and the Soil fruitful, producing Corn, Cattle and Pasture. The People Robust and Warlike; those that Inhabit the Eastern Parts on the Banks of the *Save* as well as on this side as the *Servian* are called *Ratzians*, by which Name they are often mentioned in the History of the late War. Both the *Greek* and *Roman* Profession of Christianity is followed here, and the Papists are permitted to have Mass said in their own Language. The Division of the Province into Counties cannot exactly be set down; some divide it into seven, and others six, and others make but four. The Turkish Power has confounded that distinction, and 'tis sufficient to say these are principal Cities, viz.

*POSSEGA*, otherwise call'd *Picentina*, and *Segovitz*, the Metropolis of the Province and the Capital of a County to which it gives Name, lies in the middle of the Province with respect to East and West, and 15 miles North from the River *Save*, in the Lat. 45. 30. Long. 36. and is seated on the River *Oriana*, 50 miles from *Five Churches* to the South, and 120 from *Belgrade* to the West, in an exceeding fertile Country. It contains about 1000 Houses, and is surrounded with Walls and other Fortifications; and is a place of consequence on account of its Jurisdiction over 400 Villages, and its considerable Traffick. The *Turks* under *Solyman* took it in 1544. and retained it till the year 1687. when the *Germans* besieging it, the Turkish Governor made some shew of Resistance by firing some Canon, but soon deserted the Place, and left in it a great quantity of Ammunition and Provision, and 5 Pieces of Canon.

*Walpo* or *Valpo*, stands on a River of the same Name 35 miles North-East from *Possega*, and about 10 from the *Drave*, It was taken by the *Turks* in 1543. and retaken after a short Siege by General *Dunewalt* in 1687.

*Esseck*, a Place of much Antiquity, and suppos'd to be the ancient *Mursa*, which Conjecture is corroborated by part of an ancient Latin Inscription still to be seen on one side the Gate, wherein is read the Emperor *Ælian's* Name in fair Characters. It is a large and populous Town seated at the confluence of the *Drave* with the *Danube*, and is particularly remarkable on account of its famous Bridge which is five English miles long, and near 30 yards broad; the reason of its Length is because it not only lies over the River *Drave* which divides into Branches, but also passes over a large Morass. It consists of thick Oaken Planks supported by great Trees, nine or ten in a Rank between every Arch; It is railed on each side, and hath Watch-Towers at every quarter of a mile's distance; and is in the whole so noble a Work that it surprizes the Eye with the View of it, and the Imagination in considering whence that vast quantity of Timber could be fetch'd. By this Bridge the Turkish Forces used to march and invade the Christian Countries; wherefore in the former War, viz. A. 1664. Count *Serini* attacked and burnt



burnt a great part of it; and in this late War, A. 1685. Count *Lesley* set Fire to it a second time, and took the Town, but the Castle holding out he blew up the Magazines and left it. The next year, the *Turks* having begun to Repair it, the Duke of *Lorraine* after the taking of *Buda*, marched this way and again destroyed what they had in many Months, by the Hands of 8000 Men, been raising. In the year 1687. the *Turks* deserted the Town, which the Imperialists took possession of and held it, notwithstanding the Attack made in 1690. by an Army of 15000 *Turks*. The Town is large and populous, well furnished with Shops and *Cafes* or Inns (as Sir P. *Rycant* tells us) for accommodation of the Armies and great number of Travellers that pass through it. The Houses are of Wood, and the Streets instead of Paving, plank'd with Trees; which render'd it so liable to Fire, as to be almost entirely burnt down by accident in 1685. when Count *Lesley* was there. The Fortifications are not very strong notwithstanding the Cost and Pains the *Turks* have bestow'd on 'em. In History 'tis noted that *Magnentius* the Usurper and Murderer of *Constantine II.* was defeated by *Constantius* in the year 359. and *Leopold II.* the young King of *Hungary* was routed by *Solyman II.* near this place. *Essek* is distant 80 miles from *Posséga* to the North-East, and 60 from *Belgrade* to the North-West.

*Walcwar* upon the River *Wa'po* near its Mouth into the *Danube*, about 20 miles South from *Essek*. And

*Illok* about 10 miles South-West from *Walcwar* and near the Banks of the *Danube*, have been both often mention'd in the History of the late War.

*Peterwaradin*, *Acuminium* aut *Petro-Varadinum*, seated on the Bank of the *Danube* 30 miles South-East from *Essek*, in the County of ancient *Sirmium*, hath been famous during the late War. The *Turks* made it a Head-Quarters after they had lost *Buda*, and kept a Bridge of Boats here over the *Danube*. It was often Taken and Retaken during the late War, and being dismantled in 1688, by the Imperialists, and afterwards burnt by the *Turks*, it was re-fortify'd by the Emperor in 1691. and made a place of great Strength.

*Salankment* stands 15 miles East from *Peterwaradin*, which is a Town of no great Note except for the Battle fought near it in the Year, 1691. between Prince *Louis* of *Baden* and the Grand Visier, wherein the former obtain'd a very signal Victory with the death of 25000 *Turks*, among which were the Grand Visier, the Serasquier, and many of the principal Officers: The Particulars whereof the Reader will find in Sir *Paul Rycant's* late History of that War.

*Carlowitz*, famous for the late Treaty of Peace in the Year 1699. between the Emperor and his Confederates on one Part, and the Grand Seigneur on the other, stands near *Salankment*.

*Semlyn* in the Road to *Belgrade*, and on that account often mention'd, stands 12 miles East from *Salankment*, and about as far West from *Belgrade*.

*Alt-Sirmium*, *Sirmium*, or *Sirmich*, called *Szwim* by the *Hungarians*, the Capital of a County to which it gives Name, was heretofore the Metropolis of *Pannonia Inferior*, afterwards the Seat of the *Præfatus Prætorii Illyrii*, and hath been honour'd with the Personal Residence of many Emperors,

and on that account the Scene of many Actions. Here *Vetranio* or *Borranio* was proclaimed Emperor by the *Illyrian* Soldiers at the death of *Constantine the Great*, but was deserted and soon obliged to submit to *Constantius*. In its Christian State it was the See of a Bishop, and honour'd with a Council wherein the Emperor *Constantius* was present, A 356. An *Arian* Synod was also held here soon after; and the City was considerable till the *Turks* became Masters of it, who have so far alter'd its State, that modern Travellers tell us 'tis but a poor Village. It stands 25 miles South-West from *Peterwaradin*, 60 West from *Belgrade*, and not above 5 from the River *Sava*.

From hence to *Posséga*, along the Banks of the *Sava*, being subject to the *Turks*, no considerable Town is seen; only *Bredt* a small Town on the *Sava* 15 miles South from *Posséga*, is remarkable for a Victory obtained over the *Turks* by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* in 1688. Beyond *Posséga* to the West, stands

*Gradisca* or *Graduk*, seated on the Banks of the *Sava*, about 30 miles from *Posséga*, a strong fortified Town, taken by the Imperialists under the Duke of *Croy* in the year, 1691.

*Vircovitz* or *Wirobitiza* a City guarded with a Castle, which was taken by Count *Lesley* in 1684. and thereby the Passage open'd to *Essek*; stands near the *Drave* 50 miles North-West from *Posséga*.

*Zagrab* or *Agram*, seated near the River *Sava* 100 miles West from *Posséga*, and about 12 from the Frontiers of *Carniola*, is the Capital of a County, and the See of a Bishop; 'tis divided by a small Rivulet into two Parts, one of which being nam'd *Agram*, has occasioned the whole Town to be sometime so called: It is adorn'd with a fair Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Peter* the first Christian King of *Hungary*, and strengthened with good Walls and other Fortifications, and is a populous City.

## CROATIA and MORLACHIA.

This Country was part of the ancient *Pannonia Superior*, according to *Ortelius* and *Cluverius*, or part of *Illyricum* according to the late *Oxford* Maps. And after the declining of the *Roman* Empire was over-run by the Northern Barbarians, and in time became a considerable Kingdom: Which, according to *Baudrand*, extended from the River *Drave* to the Adriatick Sea, and was divided into three Parts, viz. 1. *Croatia Savia* or *interamnensis*, which lay between the *Drave* and the *Sava* [the present *Slavonia*]. 2. *Crotia propria*, or the present *Croatia*, lying between the *Sava* and the Mountains *Rebius* and *Albius*. The Third lay between those Mountains and the Adriatick Sea, which is the present *Morlachia*: And tho' that Monarchy be long since terminated, yet the Emperor of *Germany* still retains the Title of King of *Croatia*.

The present Boundaries of this Province are the River *Sava* on the North, and *Morlachia* on the South, if *Morlachia* may be reckon'd a separate Country, and not rather a part of *Croatia*, as many Geographers do, and then the Adriatick Sea must be reckon'd the Southern Boundary. *Bosnia* lies on the East, and *Carniola* on the West; its utmost extent may be reckon'd about 80 miles either way. It is a fruitful Soil, producing Wine and Oyl as well as all Necessaries for Life. The People are called



*Croats*, and by the Germans *Krabaten*, are valiant, hardy, and good Soldiers, especially the Horsemen, who are so noted that they are Entertained in most of the Courts in *Germany* as the Princes Horse-Guards. The Foot, called *Uskokes*, are exceeding swift, and run up the Mountains like Bucks.

The Chief Towns are,

In Croatia,	Carlstadt.	In Morlachia,
	Siseg.	
	Petrinitz.	
	Castanovitz.	
	Wibitz.	
	Dubiza, } Turkish.	
		Segna.
		Fablonitz.
		Ostrowina.
		Novigradt.

*Carlstadt*, seated on the River *Margunitz* near the Frontiers of *Carniola*, and 20 miles South from the River *Draua*, the Capital of the Imperial *Croatia*, took its Name from *Charles* Arch-Duke of *Austria*, who first caus'd it to be Fortified, A. D. 1579. It is a strong Fortreis, and always well furnished with a good Garrison and Stores, which is maintained by the *Carniolans*, to whom it is a Bulwark against the *Turks*.

*Siseg* or *Sisaken*, mention'd by *Pliny* and *Antoninus* under the Name of *Sisia*, is seated on the *Sava* 35 miles from *Carlstadt* to the East. It was famous for the stout Resistance it made against the *Turks* in 1593. when they besieged it and hoped to force a Passage this way into *Germany*; but the Inhabitants gallantly held out till some Dutch Regiments came up, and falling on the *Turks* totally defeated them with the Slaughter of 8000 of their Men.

*Castanovitz* is a strong Castle consisting of three Towers and a Wall according to the ancient manner of Fortification, near the River *Wana* or *Unna*, 34 miles from *Gradiſca* to the West, and 40 from *Carlstadt*. It was taken from the *Turks* by Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* in 1688. Note, this River *Unna* is made the Boundary of the Turkish Dominion on this side, by the late Treaty of Peace. Accordingly,

*Dubiza* on the East-side the same River and near the *Sava*, is subject to the *Turk*; as also

*Wibitz* or *Bighion*, seated on the same River 40 miles S. from the *Sava*, and near 50 South-E. from *Carlstadt*. It was formerly the Capital of *Croatia* till taken by the *Turks* in 1592. which was a mighty Loss; for this had been the Bulwark of *Christendom* for 150 years, and that Conquest open'd a Passage for the *Turks* to *Sclavonia*, which they soon after over-run.

*MORLACHIA*, which was the ancient *Liburania*, lies on the South of *Croatia* on the Banks of the *Adriatick* Sea, about 90 miles in length, but not above 25 miles in breadth. The chief Towns are,

*Segna* or *Zeng*, seated on the Bay of *Carnaro* or *Quarnaro*, antiq. *Flanaticum*, over against the Islands *Vegia* and *Aibe*, is the Metropolis of *Morlachia*, and an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *Spalato*, distant 45 miles from *Carlstadt* to the S. and 50 from *Wibitz* to the W. It is well Fortified as well as naturally strong, having vast Woods and craggy Mountains on the Land-side, and but a bad Haven on the Sea. This Place, being about the year 1539. in the possession of the Count *de Brangipani*, was claimed by *Solyman II.* as a dependance on *Hungary*, a great part whereof he had then subdued. Which made the Emperor *Ferdinand* take it under his Protection, and for its better Defence entertain'd the *Uskokes*, who practis'd Piracies upon the Coasts like our *Bucaniers*, sheltering themselves in the adjacent Rocks, Creeks and small Islands. These Rovers became powerful in time, and so much annoyed the *Turks*, that it occasion'd a new War in 1592. between them and the *Austrian* Family. However, the Town continu'd still a Receptacle for those sort of People. Father *Paul* in his History of the *Uschochi*. tells us that in 1613. *Segna* was inhabited by three sorts of People, viz. the *Casalini* or Citizens, consisting in about 100 Families; the *Stipendarii* or listed Men being 200 under 4 Captains; and the *Venturini*, who were Renegado's out of *Turky*, *Dalmatia*, and *Apulia*; their whole number not amounting to above 2000, and yet they were wonderfully serviceable to the House of *Austria*; which made Arch-Duke *Ferdinand* take their part against the *Venetians*, who had been provok'd by their many Piracies, and endeavour'd to Root them out; this occasion'd a War in 1615. wherein the Dutch taking part with the *Venetians*, the Arch-Duke was constrain'd the next Year to suppress this Nest of Pyrates, who were never heard of after.

*Fablonitz*, *Ostrowina* and *Novigradt*, ly 15, 20 and 25 miles East from *Segna*, but are not very considerable.

The Islands lying on the Coast of *Morlachia*, being subject to the *Venetians*, have been already spoken of in our Account of the Dominions of that State.

TUR-



# Turkey in Europe.



**T**HAT Part of Europe now Subject to the Turks, and by their Arbitrary Government, render'd in a great Measure depopulated, was formerly the most considerable of all this Continent, and hath been the Habitation of Nations that made the greatest Figure in Ancient History. The Valour, Wisdom, and Learning of the Ancient Grecians is known to all the World. Thracia, Mæsia, Dacia, Pannonia, and Illyricum, were for many Ages, the Seats of

considerable Nations, and their Actions often remember'd in History. And these Parts were by much the most Cultivated and Populous of all Europe. But as Wealth begets Luxury and Pride, and those breed Effeminacy and Animosities; These People lost their Primitive Virtue, and by Wars for Superiority, were in time so weaken'd, that they became a Prey, first to the Macedonians, and afterwards to the Romans; who made all these Countries Provinces of their Empire. But still



so considerable was this Country, that *Constantine the Great* removed his Seat into *Thrace*, and the Succession of that Monarchy continued here, after it was Terminated in *Italy*. But as the Numerous Swarms of *Goths* and other Northern Nations, had over-run *Spain* and *Italy*; So the *Hunns*, *Goths*, *Sclavi*, &c. as much infested the Eastern Empire in *Europe*, as the *Sarazins* did in *Africa* and *Asia*, insomuch that the latter Emperors had little more than the Title of that Dignity (their Dominions and Power being reduc'd to a small Compass) before the *Turks* attack'd them.

*Mahomet*, the great Prophet of the *Turks*, from whom the Origine of that Nation is deduc'd, came into the World soon after the Year of Christ, 600. He was by Profession a Merchant at *Mecca* in *Arabia*, Illiterate, but of a great Spirit and subtil Wit; and having acquir'd Wealth, set himself to Work to obtain Reputation, by pretending himself a Prophet; which he was at first tempted to by Fits of the Falling-sickness that he was subject to. These Fits he pretended to be Trances that he was cast into by God Almighty, and in them instructed in his Will; and by the assistance of a *Sergean* Monk, he formed a Religion which consisted of *Gentilism*, *Judaism*, and *Arian-Christianness* blended together. For he Taught that *Moses* was a Prophet sent by God, whom the *Gentiles* having not Receiv'd, nor the *Jews* Obeyed, he had sent *Jesus Christ* the Second and Greater Prophet; but his Doctrin being not duly Receiv'd, God had now sent his Last and greatest Prophet *Mahomet*. By owning *Moses* and *Jesus Christ*, he gained the *Jews* and *Arians*; who being at that time prosecuted by the *Greek* Emperors, fled in great Numbers to *Arabia*; and by his other Doctrins of *Polygamy*, and Promise of Sensual Delights after this Life, he gained all the Libertines of the Times. And that he might Erect an Earthly as well as Spiritual Power, he enjoyned all his Votaries to propagate their Faith; and to those that lost their Life in that Service, an especial Promise of future Beatitude was made. These Doctrines pleased so well, that they spread far and near, and even in his own Lifetime *Mahomet* had the satisfaction to see his Religion Receiv'd, not only in *Arabia*, but also in *Syria*, *Aegypt*, and a great part of *Persia*. And under the Name of *Sarazens* they made mighty Conquests in *Asia*, and elsewhere. In time they became a People distinct from the *Sarazens*, and under their own Princes from *Tangrolipix* (who began to Reign about 1050.) Conquer'd *Syria*, *Persia*, &c. but were stopp'd in their Career by the *Tartars* and *Mammalukes*, who suppress'd the *Turkish* Power from about the Year 1200. to near 1300. at which time *Ottoman*, a Man of Great Spirit and Active Parts, tho' by his Birth-right a Prince of but small Dominions, acquired a mighty Monarchy; for he succeeded in the Throne of *Persia*, and by his Arms Conquer'd *Nice* in *Bithynia*, and then invaded *Europe*, where the unhappy Divisions at that time on Foot gave him opportunity of having too much Success. In short, his Successors pursued the Work; and tho' for some time they were interrupted by the Invasion of the *Tartars* upon them, they never rested till *Constantinople*, and soon after all *Greece*, and the Neighbouring Provinces

were subjected to them. That fatal Conquest happen'd A. D. 1453. Since which time *Constantinople* has always been the Seat of the *Ottoman* Empire. A particular Account of the Progress of their Arms would be too long to set down here, but the Reader will be able to gather it up, out of the Accounts we have given in the Description of these Countries.

The Present Boundaries of *TURKEY* in *EUROPE*, are the River *Niester* or *Turla*, and the *Carpack* Mountains, which divide it from *Poland* on the North; the *Archiepelago*, the Gulf of *Lepanto*, and the *Ionian* Sea on the South; the *Euxine* or *Black-Sea* with the *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the *Propontis* on the East; and *Transilvania*, *Hungaria*, *Sclavonia*, and *Croatia* on the West, comprehending in the whole these Countries, viz.

*GREECE*, which is subdivided into Five Countries, viz.   
 { 1. *Macedon*,  
 2. *Theffaly*,  
 3. *Achaia*,  
 4. *Epirus*,  
 5. *Albania*:

To which must be added, (being always reckon'd part of *Greece*) tho' now not subject to the *Turks*.   
 { 6. *The MOREA*,  
 or *Peloponnesus*.

The Provinces of *ROMANIA*,  
*BULGARIA*,  
*SERVIA*,  
*BOSNIA*, and part of *DALMATIA*.

The Republick of *RAGUSA*. } Tributary to  
 The Provinces of { *WALACHIA*, } the *Turks*.  
 { *MOLDAVIA*, }

Allies of the *Turks*.  
 The *BUDZACK*, *OCZAKOW*,  
 and *CRIM-TARTARIES*.

Islands on the Coasts of *GREECE*, Viz.  
 In the *Ionian* Sea, { *Corfu*,  
 { *Cefalonia*,  
 { *Zante*,  
 { *Pachsu*,  
 { *Antipachsu*,  
 { *St. Maura*,  
 { *Ithica*,  
 { *Colombos*.  
 In the *Mediterranean* Sea,  
*CANDIA*,  
*Cirego*,  
*Sapienza*.

The *Cyclades* Inf. viz.  
*Milo*,  
*Paro*,  
*Naxia*,  
*Morgo*,  
*Sdilles*,  
*Tono*,  
*Andro*,  
*Termia*, &c.  
*Negropont*,  
*Agina*,  
*Coluri*,  
*Sciro*,  
*Lemnos*,  
*Tasso*,  
 and many other smaller Islands.



## C H A P. II.

## Of G R E E C E, bodie Rumelia.

**G**R E E C E is judg'd to have been the part of *Europe* first Inhabited which its early flourishing State, together with its Neighbourhood to *Asia*, from whence we know all the Earth was Peopled, gave very good Grounds to believe. Ancient History is full of the Actions of the many Nations that Inhabited these Parts; and the Learned World is full indebted to the many Wise Philosophers of this Country, whose Writings continue to be most instructive to Mankind. To say nothing of its Celebrated Historians, Orators and Poets; the Wisdom of its Lawgivers, the Valour of its Captains, and Morality of its Inhabitants are sufficiently known to every body that knows any thing of Antiquity. In short, *Greece* was anciently the most Celebrated Region of the Universe, surpassing all others in Arms, Arts and Science. It was for many Ages divided into many small Kingdoms and States, till *Philip* King of *Macedon*, and *Alexander* his Son reduc'd it all to his Subject. This Kingdom was afterwards pull'd down by the *Romans*, and *Greece* made a Province of the Empire, as it continued but mangled by the *Barbarians* and *Huns*, till the *Turks* overrun it, here are the present Masters, and have effaced all its ancient and magnificent Monuments, as well as reduc'd the People to the most servile Slavery, and ignorant Stupidity.

The ancient Name of this Country was *Hellas*, which the *Latins* chang'd into *Græcia*, and the *Turks* now call *Rumelia*. But it must be remember'd that the ancient *Hellas* comprehended only that Province since nam'd *Achaia* and by the *Turks* is call'd *Livadia*; but that Name is often extended and made to mean the whole Country; which is Seated between the 36 and 43 Degree of Latitude, and between the 37 and 45 Degree of Longitude: Bounded on the North by *Romania*, *Bulgaria* and *Serovia* whence it is divided by a Chain of Mountains, whose Eastern part was call'd *Scordus* by the Ancients; on the South the *Morea* is washed by the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the East the *Archeipelago*; and on the West the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulph of *Venice* bounds it. Extending in length, from the Mountains above mention'd in the North, to Cape *Caglia* in the *Morea*, in the South, 100 *German Leagues*, according to *Cluverius*, which

makes 100 *Englisc* miles; and its utmost breadth he reckons to be 59 *German Leagues*, i. e. 356 miles.

The *AIR* is exceeding Temperate and Healthy; and the *SOIL* very Fruitful, abounding in Corn, Wine, delicious Fruits, and great Herds of Cattle, together with Fowl and Venison in great plenty.

The *CHRISTIAN RELIGION* was plant'd in *Greece*, immediately after the Death of our Saviour by *St. Paul* and *Timothy*, and it flourished there for many Ages with more Purity than in the Western Church; Producing many Champions for the Faith, and venerable Fathers, whose Writings convey to us the Discipline and Doctrine of the Church in its Native Purity: Of which Religion there hath been a continu'd Succession to this time; but since the *Turks* have been Masters, and made the People Slaves, its State is much decay'd.

The Ancient *LANGUAGE* of *Greece* is still known to us, being preserv'd in the Writings of *Aristotle*, *Plato*, *Xenophon*, *Herodotus*, *Thucydides*, *Plutarch*, *Demosthenes*, *Æschines*, *Isocrates*, *Hesiod*, *Homer*, *Sophocles*, *Aristophanes*, and many other Philosophers, Historians, Orators and Poets; and has been deservedly esteem'd as well by the *Romans* in their most flourishing State, as by all *Europe* ever since; And to us *Christians* it is particularly Valuable, by being the Language of the Gospels and the rest of the New Testament, whereby we receive the means of Eternal Salvation. The *Greek* was spoken in 5 different Dialects, viz. The *Attick*, the *Dorick*, the *Æolick*, the *Ionick*, and the Common Dialect; and was the most Manly, Haughty, Comprehensive, and yet most Sweet and Mellow, of any Language extant. But the Modern *Greek* is so far Chang'd by the mixture of Foreign Languages, that the Genuine Stile is very little understood among the present Inhabitants.

Because this Country is very much mention'd in ancient History, and the *Classick* Authors; we shall set down its ancient Division, according to *Cluverius* and *Laurenburger*, before we proceed to its present State, viz.

*Ancient Greece was Divided into Five Parts, viz. HELLAS, THESSALIA, MACEDONIA, EPIRUS, and PELOPONNESUS. Which were Sub-divided thus,*

*Hellas* vel *Græcia* propria, ut & *Achaia*, was divided into these Regions.

{ *Ætolia*,  
| *Locris Ozolæa*,  
| *Doris*,  
| *Phocis*,  
| *Megaris*,  
| *Attica*,  
| *Bœotia*,  
| *Orchomenus*,  
{ *Locris Epicnemidia*,

The chief Cities, and places Teste *Cluverius*.

*Chalcis*, *Chalcidion*, *Olenus*,  
*Naupactus*, now *Lepanto*.  
*Bijum*, *Cyrtinium*, *Pindus*.  
*Anticyra*, *Chyrrha*, *Pythia*, *Delphi*, *Parnassus*.  
*Megara*, *Eleusis*.  
*Marathon*, *ATHENS*.  
*Thespie*, *Lebadia*, *Cheronea*, *THEBÆ*, *Platæa*.  
*Delium*, *Aulis*, *Leuctra*, *Ostium*, *Helicon*.  
*Cenemides*, *Opus*, *Elaſia*, *Lilæa*.

*Thessalia*



<i>Thessalia</i> vel <i>Æmonia</i> , which is sometimes reckon'd part of <i>Macedon</i> .	[Thessaly proper,	<i>Hypata</i> , <i>Sofstenes</i> , <i>Cypera</i> .
	Estiotis,	{ <i>Gomphi</i> , <i>Phestus</i> , <i>Tricca</i> , <i>Ætinium</i> , <i>Philippi</i> ;
	Pelagia,	{ <i>Pharsalia</i> .
	Magnesia,	<i>Pythæum</i> , <i>Atrax</i> .
<i>Macedonia</i> , <i>Æmathia</i> antea dict.	Phthiotis,	{ <i>Folcus</i> , <i>Hermenium</i> , <i>Castanea</i> , <i>Melibæa</i> , <i>Metbone</i> ,
	Taulantia,	{ <i>Thermopylae</i> .
	Ælymiora,	{ <i>Phthia</i> , <i>Thebae</i> <i>Thessal</i> . <i>Echinus</i> , <i>Larissa</i> , <i>Deme-</i>
	Orestis,	{ <i>trias</i> , <i>Pagasa</i> , <i>Tempe</i> .
	Dassareta,	<i>Æpidamnum</i> vel <i>Dyrrachium</i> , <i>Apollonia</i> , <i>Aulon</i> .
	Æmathia,	<i>Ælimaca</i> , <i>Bullis</i> .
	Ægea,	<i>Grytone</i> .
	Pieria,	<i>Lychnidos</i> , <i>Evia</i> .
	Mygdonia,	<i>Pella</i> .
	Paraxia,	<i>Ædessu</i> , <i>Idomena</i> , <i>Scydra</i> , <i>Europus</i> , <i>Tyrisa</i> .
	Chalcidica,	<i>Pidna</i> , <i>Phylace</i> , <i>Dion</i> .
	{ Amphaxitis,	<i>Antigonis</i> , <i>Physca</i> , <i>Carrhabia</i> , <i>Leta</i> , <i>Terpilus</i> .
<i>Epirus</i> , qui & <i>Albania</i> , dict.	Bisaltæ,	<i>Antigone</i> , <i>Pellone</i> , <i>Cassandra</i> , <i>Torone</i> .
	Edonij,	<i>Augæa</i> , <i>Singus</i> , <i>Acanthus</i>
	Orbeli,	<i>Thessalonica</i> , <i>Stagira</i> .
	Sintici,	<i>Euporda</i> , <i>Ossa</i> , <i>Calliteræ</i> .
	Pelagones,	<i>Amphipolis</i> , <i>Scotusa</i> , <i>Berga</i> .
	Lyncistæ,	<i>Gariscus</i> .
	Jororum,	<i>Heraclea</i> , <i>Paræopolis</i> , <i>Tristolus</i> ,
	Almopum,	<i>Stobi</i> .
	Æstræorum,	<i>Heraclea</i> .
	Eordeorum,	<i>Forum</i> , <i>Alorus</i> .
		<i>Europas</i> , <i>Albanopolis</i> , <i>Apsalus</i> .
		<i>Æstraum</i> .
<i>Peloponnesus</i> hodie <i>Morea</i> .	[Molossia,	<i>Daulia</i> , <i>Dibolia</i> , <i>Scampis</i> .
	Dryopis,	<i>Dodone</i> .
	Chaonia,	<i>Oricum</i> , <i>Antigonis</i> , <i>Panormas</i> , <i>Eleus</i> .
	Thesprotia,	<i>Butheum</i> .
	Cassiopea,	<i>Nicopolis</i> .
	Dolopia,	<i>Amphilochia</i> , <i>Argos</i> <i>Amphil</i> .
	Aimene,	<i>Ambracia</i> , <i>Actium</i> , <i>Leucas</i> , <i>Stratos</i> .
	Amphilochia,	
	Acranania,	
	{ Achaia, <i>Propr. dict.</i>	<i>Corinthus</i> .
	Elis,	<i>Olympia</i> , <i>Cyllene</i> .
	Messenia,	<i>Messene</i> , <i>Pylus</i> .
	Arcadia,	<i>Tegea</i> , <i>Stimphalus</i> , <i>Mantineia</i> , <i>Megalopolis</i> .
	Laconia,	{ <i>L A C Æ D E M O N</i> vel <i>Sparta</i> , <i>Leuctrum</i> ;
	Argia,	{ <i>Amycle</i> .
		<i>Argos</i> , <i>Hippium</i> , <i>Nemea</i> , <i>Troezen</i> , <i>Epidaurus</i> .

## GREECE in its present State may be thus divided.

<i>Macedon</i> , wherein these Towns are of Note.	[Salonichi.	<i>Epirus</i> .	{ Preveza.
	<i>Amphipoli</i> .		{ Chimera.
	<i>Siderocapsa</i> .		{ Larta.
	<i>Philippi</i> .		{ Butrinto.
	<i>Cavalla</i> .		{ Perga.
	<i>Contessa</i> .		{ Actium.
<i>Albania</i> now <i>Arnaut</i> .	<i>Pella</i> .	<i>Thessaly</i> , now <i>Fanna</i> .	{ Larisa.
	<i>Strymon</i> .		{ Armiro.
	[Stagyræ.		{ Volo.
	[Scutari.		{ Pharsalus.
	<i>Durazza</i> .		{ Scorusa.
	<i>la Valona</i> .		{ Tricala.
	<i>Ducagini</i> .		{ Demetriada.
	<i>Alessio</i> .		{ Fanna.
	<i>Albanopoli</i> .		{ Gomfi.
	<i>Croya</i> .		{ Zitton.
	[Lychnidos.		{ Mount-Olympus.



*Achaia new Liradia,*

[ *Lepanto.*  
*Delphi or Castri.*  
*Athens or Setines.*  
*Maraton.*  
*Thebes or Stivers.*  
*Aulis.*  
*Mezara.*  
*Livallia.*  
*Orchomene.*  
*The Dardaneli.*  
*Helicon & Parnajus.*

## M A C E D O N

Sometime called *Æmathia*, from *Æmathius* one of its Kings; and took its present Name from *Macedon*, the Grandson of *Deucalion*, as *Solinus*, or more particularly, Son of *Jupiter* and *Thyia* the Daughter of *Deucalion*, as *Stephanus*; but by *Cluverius* rather thought to be deriv'd from *Mygdonia* a Province of this Country. Was a considerable Kingdom founded by *Ceræus*, and of above 400 years standing before *Philip* extended its Bounds, and added *Thessaly* with part of *Epirus* and *Albania* to it; but his Son *Alexander*, firnam'd the Great, rais'd it to the highest pitch of Grandeur; for he not only subdu'd all *Greece* and *Thrace*, but also conquer'd *Asia*, *Egypt* and *Lybia*, so that his Empire extended from the *Danube* to the River *Indus*, and from the *Black* to the *Red* Sea.

The ancient Bounds of *Macedonia propria*, were *Thrace* and Mount *Scardus* on the North, which divided it from the Upper *Mæsia* and *Illyricum*; on the West the *Adriatick* Sea; on the South *Epirus* and *Thessaly*. Its ancient Division we have already set down; but when *Paulus Æmilius* the Roman General had overcome *Perseus* the last *Macedonian* King (which happen'd A. M. 3782. U. C. 585. after the first erecting this Monarchy by *Ceræus*, 645. and before Christ 163 years) and made this a Province of the Empire, it was divided into four Provinces or Regions, *Teste Livio*; The first, which border'd on *Thrace* was subdivided into four parts, *Edonia*, *Odrysia*, *Bisaltia* and *Sintica*, seated on the River *Strymon*. In the second Region were nine Parts, *Orbelia*, *Almopia*, part of *Prævia*, *Foria*, *Pelagoria*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Chalcidica*, and *Prævia*. In the third were six parts, *Pieria*, *Bottia*, *Æmathia*, *Lyncæstis*, part of *Peonia*, and *Æpireis*. In the fourth and last Region, which was the Western part, and lay on the *Ionian* or *Adriatick* Sea, were twelve or rather ten parts, *Albania*, *Taulantia*, *Elymiotis*, *Eo desis*, *Dassareta*, *Parthæsi*, *Deuriopus*, *Pelagonia*, *Symphthalis* and *Orestis*. *Teste Livio*.

The present *Macedon* is bounded on the West by *Albania*, on the East by several Bays of the *Archipelago*, on the North by *Romania* and *Bulgaria*, on the South by *Thessaly*. It is Rich in divers Mines of Gold, abounds with Corn, Pasture, Cattle, Venison, and in some parts Wine and Oil. Here are many Mountains and Rivers, but none very large or Remarkable, except Mount *Atbos*, whereof we shall speak in its place. By the *Turks*, *Macedon* is divided into three Parts, viz. 1. *Gamboli*, which contains the first and second Region of the *Romans*. 2. *Camemolitari*, part of the third Region. And 3. *Macedon*, which is the greatest part of the third Region. The chief Cities are,

*Thessalonica*, commonly call'd *Salonichi*, heretofore the Capital of the second Region of *Macedon*, now the Metropolis of the whole, and the Seat of the Turkish Prefect, stands on the bottom of a Bay to which it gives Name, in the Latitude of 41. 20. Long. 23. 200 miles East from the Coast of the *Adriatick* Sea, 350 West from *Constantinople*, 150 South from the *Danube*, and 10 North from the Isthmus of the *Morea*. The City was anciently call'd *Thermia*, and the Bay *Sinus Thermicus*, and it was formerly adorn'd with many sumptuous publick Buildings, whereof only a *Triumphal Arch* remains. *St. Paul* preach'd the Gospel and wrote two Epistles to the People of this City; all which denote its ancient Splendor, and tho' by many Revolutions and the Turkish Government it be somewhat reduc'd, it is however still a very considerable Place, being a celebrated Emporium and a large and populous City, inhabited by Christians and Jews as well as *Turks*; and bears the Title of a Metropolitan See. It is encompass'd with old Walls which are reckon'd to be four Leagues in circuit, and defended by a Citadel on a Hill o' one side, and two Forts on t'other. The Christians have 3 Churches and 5 Convents; and the Jews 36 Synagogues, and two Colleges whereto their Youth resort from all Parts, to study: The Churches are stately, especially that of *St. Mary*, but the *Turks* have taken that as well as *St. Demetrius* the Cathedral, *St. Sophia* and *St. Gabriel*, for Mosques. There is a great Traffick here and the Haven much resorted to, for Silk, Leather, Iron, Cotton, Wax, Honey, Wool, Corn, &c. which is chiefly carried on by the Jews, who are numerous and wealthy. *Salonichi* was first built by *Cassander* and *Thessalonica* Daughter to King *Philip* and Sister to *Alexander* the Great. It was the Birth-place of *Eustathius* who wrote the Comment on *Homer*, of *Constantius Hermenopolus*, *Demetrius Cydenius*, and *Theodorus Gaza*. It always underwent the Fate of *Macedon*, and so was subject to the Greek Emperors, from whom it was snatch'd in 1180. by *William* King of *Sicily*, but soon recover'd by *Andronicus Paleologus*, and sold to the Republick of *Venice* in 1313. from whom Sultan *Amurath* II. took it, and the *Turks* have ever since possess'd it.

*Amphipolis*, Tur. *Emboli*, sometime the Capital of *Macedon*, stands upon the River *Strymon*, which a little below falls into a Bay of the *Archipelago*, and gave Name to it; 60 miles from *Salonichi* to the North-East. It was heretofore known by the Names of *Urbs Martis*, and *Novem Vix*, and is often mention'd in ancient History, for *Aristagoras* the Milesian flying from *Darius*, endeavour'd to settle here but was oppos'd by the *Edonii*; the *Athenians* planted a Colony here, which were cut off by the *Thracians*; afterwards *Aginon* the Son of *Nicias* repell'd the *Edonii* and planted a Colony. It is an Archbishop's See and inhabited by some Christians, but it has now only its ancient Grandeur to brag on.

*Siderocassa*, *Sidrus*, *Syderos* & *Scydra*, Ptol. a small Town notable for its neighbouring Gold-Mines, which were discover'd in King *Philip's* time, and yielded him 1000 Talents every year; they are still wrought, and afford the Grand Seigneur a considerable Revenue. It is a Bishop's See, and stands on the South-East of *Salonichi* near Mount *Atbos*.



*Philippi* or *Filippa*, a City at the foot of Mount *Pangæus*, on the Confines of *Thrace*, 20 or 30 miles North from *Amphipolis*, is famous for the Battle fought in its neighbouring Fields, where *Brutus* and *Cassius* the Murderers of *Cæsar* were defeated by *Marc Antony* and *Octavius*. Its ancient Splendor is testified by an Amphitheatre almost entire, and other Ruins of sumptuous Buildings. Christianity was planted there by *St. Paul*, and the People honour'd with an Epistle, which is part of our Canon of Scripture; 'tis still an Archbishop's See, but a place of small Habitation.

*Contessa* and *Cavalla*, seated on the *Strymonian* Bay (which runs between *Thrace* and Mount *Athos*) do both give Names to it, being by some called *Golfo di Contessa*, and by others *de Cavalla*. *Strymon*, which first gave Name to this Bay and the River on which it stands, is a little distant from *Amphipolis*. *Stagyræ*, now *Libanona*, famous for the Birth of *Aristotle*, stands on the West Shore of the same Bay.

Mount *Athos* often mention'd in Antiquity for its Height: *Pomp. Mela* tells us, That it rises into the Clouds, above the lower Region of the Air: And *Pliny* says, Its Evening Shadow reaches as far as the Island *Lemnos*, which is 60 miles distant: It stands on a Promontory jetting into the Sea, between the Gulph of *Strymonium* or *Contessa*, and the *Sinus Singiticus* or *Golfo di Monte Santo*, about 70 miles East from *Saloniki*: The *Isthmus* being 12 *Stadia* broad, *Xerxes* dug through, and from thence *Athos* is sometimes call'd an Island. It is now nam'd *Monte Santo*, from 24 Monastries which stand upon it, mostly of the Order of *St. Basil*, these are so fully stock'd with Monks of the Greek Church, and are so well esteem'd, that the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, Elects all his Bishops out of them.

*Pella* 30 miles South-west from *Theffalonica*, and now call'd *Zuchria*, (and by others *Feniza* or *Faniza*, tho' that be only a new Town of the *Turks* built near it) is judg'd to have been a Royal Seat of *Philip* and *Alexander*, which the Marbles and Royal Buildings daily dug up do Testifie.

## ALBANIA *hodie*. Arnaut,

Between *Macedon* and the most Eastern part of the *Venetian* Gulph, and near its Mouth, lies *Albania*, by the *Turks* call'd *Arnaut*: It is sometimes call'd *Albania* Proper, or Upper, to distinguish it from *Epirus* which is the Lower, and bounds it on the South, as the Mountains *Maritas*, or *Argentaro*, and *Servia* do on the North. It extends about 160 miles from North to South, and about 100 from East to West. The SOIL is Fruitful, producing Generous Wine, Flax, and Cotton, as also Wax in the Woods, and Salt dug out of the Mountains. The Inhabitants make Tapistry, which with the other Commodities they vend abroad.

This with *Epirus*, was the Country of the Famous Prince *George Castriot*, commonly call'd *Scanderbeg*, whose mighty Valour against the *Turks* is Celebrated in History: With a small Army, for many Years, he oppos'd the whole *Turkish* Power, and gain'd 22 Battles over them. At his Death he left his Country to the *Venetians*, but they were not able to maintain the Inland part of it, which

was soon reduc'd by *Mahomet II.* whose Successors have held it for the last two Ages. The People are eminently Valiant, and their Horses exceeding Swift, so that their Cavalry are made use of by *Turks*. The chief Towns are

*Scutari*, *Scodra*, *Turc. Iscodar* the Metropolis, is seated on a Rock, near a Lake, whence Issues the River *Boiana*, 25 miles North from the *Venetian* Gulph, about 20 from the Frontiers of *Dalmatia*, and 70 from *Ragusa* to the East, 240 from *Saloniki* to the West, and about 40 from the Mountains to the South. *Bandrand* says, It was the Seat of the ancient Kings of *Illyrium*: It is now a good large City, defended with a Castle seated on a Hill, and has been for these 200 years Subject to the *Turks*. But the Christians have however a Bishop here; and some Churches.

*Ducagni*, *Ducaginum*, stands on the East side of the River *Drino*, 25 miles from *Scutari* to the East.

*Alessio*, *Lissus*, stands on the same River, 30 miles below *Ducagni*, near its Mouth into the *Adriatick* Sea, and forms a Bay now call'd the Gulph of *Drino*, anciently the *Illyric* Bay. It is by some reckon'd the Capital of *Albania*, and is particularly famous for the Sepulchre of *Scanderbeg*, who died here in 1467. and even the *Turks* have such veneration for him, that they carry away pieces of his Tomb for Relicks, and esteem it as a Charm to animate their Courage in Battle. It is fenced with a Castle, and is the Seat of a Bishop; but Subject to the *Turks*.

*Dolcigno*, *Dulcinium*, *Olcinium*, seu *Ulcinium*; is a safe Port Town, with a Castle, seated on the Gulph of *Venice*, 30 miles South-west from *Scutari*, and 40 West from *Alessio*.

*Antivari*, *Antibarum*, another Port Town seated on a Rock, 10 miles West from *Dolcigno*.

*Croja*, *Croia*, or *Crua*, by *Brietius* stil'd the Metropolis of *Albania*, is an impregnable and inaccessible Fort, seated on the River *Lizane*, 30 miles South from *Alessio*, and as many East from the Sea. By reason of its Strength it was chosen by *Scanderbeg*, for his place of Residence, and by him strongly defended against the frequent Attacks of the *Turks*; but a few after years his Death they took it.

*Durazzo*, *Drazzi*, the *Dyrrhachium* of the *Romans*; and *Epidamnus* more anciently. Is a noted Sea Port on the Gulph of *Venice*, at the Mouth of the River *Argentaro*, 20 miles South from the Gulph of *Drino*, and 40 South-west from *Alessio*: It is a large, and was formerly a very fair City; Memorable for the Exile of *Cicero* in it, and the Landing of *Pompey* (when he retir'd before *Cæsar*) from *Brundisium* in *Italy*, over against which it stands, and this was therefore the common Passage thither. In early times, viz. *A. U. C.* 315. this City was Besieg'd by a Company of *Banditti* or *Corfsairs*, and the Citizens implor'd the assistance of the *Corinthians*, who were defeated by the *Corfsairs*, and these assisted by the *Athenians*, which gave occasion to the *Corinthian* War, and became at last the Leaven as it were of the great *Peloponnesian* War, so famous in the *Greek* History. Latterly it has been Subject to the *Turks*, since the time of *Bajazet II.* who took it, but it is not much Inhabited by reason of the unwholsomeness of the Air.



*Albanopoli*, an Inland Town seated not far from the head of the River *Drino*, 70 miles East from *Durazzo*, and as many South East from *Ducagni*, was anciently the Capital of *Albania*, but now destroyed, and but a small Town.

*Otrida*, *Lycinidas*, *Turc Guistandel*, seated upon a Lake of the same Name, whence issues the River *Drino*, 25 miles South from *Albanopoli*, and 80 South-east from *Durazzo*; an Archbishop's See; but now Subject to the *Turks*.

*La Valona*, *Aulen*, *Ptol. Aulen Nava is*, stands on the Mouth of the Gulph of *Venice*, 40 miles from *Durazzo*, and 60 from the Gulph of *Drino* to the South, and 50 from *Otrida* to the West. It is a very capacious Port, and was formerly a place of Strength, but the *Turks* took it from the *Venetians*, and held it till the late War, when in the year 1690. they deserted it, upon the taking of *Canina*, by the *Venetians*, and the appearance of their Army before it.

Over against *Valona*, about 2 Leagues to Sea, stands the Rocky Island of *Saseno*, a deserted place, and frequented by none but *Turkish* Pirates.

### EPIRUS, or *Canina*.

On the South of *Albania*, along the Coast of the *Ionian* Sea, lies *Epirus* (call'd by some *Albania Inferior*, and by others *Canina*, which Name others restrain to the North-part of *Epirus*) having *Theffaly* on the North-east, and *Achaia* on the South-east. It is from South-East to North-west near 100 miles in Length, and about 60 in Breadth. It is divided from *Albania* by the Mountains *Chimera*, *olim Montes Acroceraunii*, or the *Ceraunian* Mountains, which by reason of their great height were often torn by Thunder; and from *Theffaly* by the Mountains *Mezzuo*, *olim Mons Pindus*, and from *Achaia* by the River *Achelous*, now *Carochi*. The Soil is good, and especially on Mount *Chimera* the Cattel are exceedingly Fatted.

This Country was Anciently Subject to it's own Princes; then was United to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, afterwards Subjected to the *Romans*, and by them very much Ravag'd by reason the Inhabitants often Revolted. Then again to it's own Princes, and now to the *Turks*, except some Places which the *Venetians* have Regain'd in the late War.

In the Ancient Account of *Albania*, this comprehended the Provinces of *Chaonia*, *Theffprotia*, *Almema*, *Dolopia*, *Amphilochia*, and *Acarinia*. And in the middle of it in the Province of *Theffprotia*, stood the famous City *Dodona*, near which was the Temple and Grove of *Jupiter*, wherein were Trees that Answer'd, and Vocal Oaks, as the Poets Relate. The Chief Towns at present are,

*Chimera*, a very strong Town, Seated in the North part of *Epirus* on the Mouth of the Gulf of *Venice*, near the Confines of *Albania*, 80 miles from *Durazzo* to the South, and 20 from the Island *Corfu* to the North. It is a well-built City, and a Place of Trade, the Capital of a Territory of the same Name, and the See of a Bishop, but Subject to the *Turks*.

*Butrinto*, *Buthrotum*, *fron Butrotus*, a Port Town ever-against the Island *Corfu* 35 miles S. E.

from *Chimera*, 100 from the Mountains to the South, and 60 from *Larta* to the North-east. It was formerly a considerable, now but an ordinary Town inhabited chiefly by Fishermen by reason of the abundance of Fish in the Bay to which it gives Name. It is the See of a Bishop, but has been Subject to the *Turks* above 100 Years.

*Perga*, *Torone*, a Port-Town, with a Castle Subject to the *Venetians*, stands also over-against *Corfu*, 20 miles South from *Butrinto*; the *Venetians* gave the Inhabitants the Two Islands on the South of *Corfu*, call'd *Pachsu*, and *Anti-Pachsu*, wherein is very Fat Pasture.

*Larta*, or *Ambrachia*, *Ambracia*, and *Arta*. It grew up out of the Ruins of the Ancient City *Ambrachia*, sometime the Regal Seat of the Kings of *Epirus*; others make *Ambrachia* a different Place. It is Seated at the bottom of the *Sinus Ambrochianus* now Gulf of *Larta*, 20 miles from the Sea. 60 from *Butrinto*, and 140 from *Durazzo* to the South-east, 60 from *Lepinto* to the North-west, and 200 from *Saloniki* to the South-west.

*Preveza*, Seated at the Mouth of the Gulf, 20 Miles West from *Larta*, and 40 South-east from the Island *Corfu*, stands in the place of the Ancient City *Nicopolis*. It was a place of Strength, and possess'd by the *Turks* till the Year 1684. when the *Venetian* General *Morosini* took it, and by the Treaty of *Carlowitz* it was agreed to be demolished.

Over-against it on the Mouth of the same Bay stands *Aclium*, now Cape *Figalo*, Famous for the Naval Battel between *Marc Antony* and *Augustus*, formerly an Eminent City, wherein stood a Temple of *Apollo*, now an Ordinary Sea-Port and Promontory.

The Island *CORFU*, *Corcyra*, ut et *Pheacia*, lies in the *Ionian* Sea, over-against the Coast of *Epirus*, but a few Leagues from it, and 30 Leagues from the Coast of *Italy*, extending from South-east to North-west about 40 miles. It was Anciently Inhabited by a sort of *Corfuirs*, and the People are mention'd in History, particularly in the *Corinthian* War above-mention'd. The Island is possess'd by the *Venetians*, to whom it has been Subject ever since the Year 1382. and enjoys a most fertile Soil, producing Corn, Wine, Oyl, Honey, Flax, Salt, Medicinal Herbs, &c. It is divided into Four parts, and besides many Towns and Villages hath one good City.

*Corfu*, Seated on the Eastern Coast over-against *Butrinto*, and in the Latitude of 40 Degrees, it has a very Capacious Port, and is guarded by Two Castles.

### THESSALY, *Theffalia*.

The Countrey next adjoining to *Epirus* on the East between that and the *Aegean* Sea, and Gulf of *Salonichi*, is *Theffaly*, anciently called *Aemonia*, and *Pyrrhea*. According to *Brietius*, a large part of it is now called *Fanna*, and the other part *Comenolitari*. *Macedon* bounds it on the North, and *Achaia*, or *Livadia* on the South. From both which it is divided by Mountains, and also from *Epirus* by Mount *Pindus*, so that it is surrounded with them except on the East, where it opens to the Sea.



It enjoys a Fertile Soil, and Healthy Air, and yields all sorts of Grain and Delicious Fruits, such as Oranges, Lemons, Figs, Pomegranates, Grapes, Olives, &c. The Ancient Inhabitants were Noted for their Courtesy, but accused of Gluttony and Sorcery. In the Tradition of those Times they were accounted the first that tamed Horses, and set out Ships. *Deucalion* Reigned here cotemporary with *Cerops* the first King of *Athens*, in whose time happened the Deluge (by the overflowing of the River *Peneus*) known by his Name, and mention'd in History. And to his Sons are Attributed the Honour of giving Name to many parts of Greece, as *Hellen* to *Hellas*; *Doris* to the *Dorians*, near Mount *Parnassus*. *Xuthus* his Third Son was Father to *Aheus* Founder of the *Acheans*, and *Ion* from whom the *Ionians* or Inhabitants of *Attica*.

The Modern *Thessalians* are for the most part *Christians*, but Subject to the *Turk*, remarkable for their Comeliness and Warlike Disposition. The Extent of *Thessaly* is about 120 miles either way, and the chief Towns in it are,

*Larissa*, *Turc.* *Asababa*, the Capital, is on the Banks of the River *Peneus*, about 40 miles above its Mouth into the Gulph of *Saloniki*, 50 from *Saloniki* to the South, 50 from the Island *Negropont* to the North-west, and 100 from *Lepanto* to the North-east, and very near Mount *Olympus*. It is one of the most flourishing Cities of Greece; and hath been sometime honoured with the Grand Seignior's Residence (especially during the War of *Candia*) who hath a Palace here in the upper-part of the Town. It is the See of an Archbishop, and Adorn'd with good Buildings, particularly a very fair Stone Bridge of Nine Arches over the River. This was the Birth-place of the famous *Achilles*. It was taken by the *Bulgarians* in 981. and by the *Turks* in the 15th Century.

*Tricala* stands upon the same River *Peneus* about 50 miles West from *Larissa*, and was formerly Notable for a Fine Temple Dedicated to *Aesculapius*.

*Fanna*, from which all this part of the Country is Named, is a good well-built City, Seated on a Lake of the same Name, 40 miles from *Tricala*, and as many North from *Lepanto*.

*Scotusa*, a small City, and the See of a Bishop, is Seated 18 miles West from *Larissa*. In this place there was an Oracle of Old, not inferior to that of *Dodona*. And near it *Q. Flaminius* with the Roman Army obtained a Signal Victory over *Philip* the Son of *Demetrius*.

*Pharsalus*, *Farfa*, Famous for the Battel fought in its Fields between *Pompey* and *Cesar*, wherein the former was intirely Defeated; whence *Lucan's* Poem of this Battel is Entituled *Pharsalia*; is Seated 30 miles South from *Larissa*, as many North from *Zeitton*, and is the See of an Archbishop. But we dare not determine this to be the Ancient *Pharsalus*, because *Cluverius* places that in *Estiotis*, and then it ought to lie more to the Westward, and *Laurenburger* in his Map places it in *Pelasgia*, 50 miles North from *Larissa*, whereas *Sansen*, and the Modern Maps place *Farfa*, as we have said in the mid-way between *Larissa* and *Zeitton*, and about 20 West from the Gulf of *Armiro*.

*Demetriada*, *Demetrias*, 50 miles South-east from *Larissa*, Seated upon the Gulf which is sometimes called by its Name, otherwise Named *Sinus Pelasgicus*, or *Pegaseus* from the City

*Pagasa*, now *Volo*, on the North-side of the same

Bay, 20 miles East from *Demetriada*; 50 East from *Larissa*, and 40 North from the Island *Negropont*. It hath a spacious Harbour, and was a strong Fortrefs after the Ancient manner, and in the late War made use of by the *Turks* for a Magazine for the Provisions they gather'd in the Neighbouring Provinces, till General *Morosini* took it, and found there a vast quantity of Victuals, and 27 Pieces of Canon; which having carried off, he set Fire to the Magazines, Houses, and Molques, and demolished the Walls.

*Armiro*, *Eretria*, at the bottom of the same Bay, and gives the present Name to it, being stil'd in the Modern Maps *Golfo del Armiro*, stands over-against *Demetriada*, 20 miles South from it, and 25 North from *Negropont*, is an Ancient place, being mention'd by *Strabo*, *Thucydides*, *Polybius*, *Stephanus*, *Livy*, and others; and by some reckon'd the Port whence the *Argonauts* set Sail; and that it was here that *Xerxes* Fleet was so sorely shatter'd by Tempest, that Greece was deliver'd from his intended Invasion.

*Zeitton*, or *Zeitton*, *Thebe Pthiotica*, or *Thessalica*, Seated upon the *Sinum Malicum*, gives the Modern Name to that Bay which runs between into the Land of *Thessaly* over-against *Negropont*, being now called *Golfo de Zeitton*, it stands 30 miles from *Armiro*, and near 60 from the River *Peneus* to the South, and 30 from the Shoar of *Negropont* to the West.

*Capo di san Georgia*, *Magnesia Promontorium*, a Cape with a Sea-Town on the North of the *Golfo del Armiro*, 20 miles from it, and 30 East from *Pegasa*, and not far from the Mount *Pelion*.

Before we leave *Thessaly*, we must take notice of Mount *Olympus* so Famed in Antiquity for its height, the Top reaching above the middle Region of the Air, it stands on the North of *Larissa*, and is a continued Ridge for many miles.

*Ossa*, more to the South on the other side the River *Peneus*, and *Pelion* somewhat more to the East are Two other Notable Mountains. And between *Olympus* and *Ossa* on the Banks of the River *Peneus*, lie the fruitful and pleasant Valleys of *Tempe*.

## ACHAIA; HELLAS, sive Græcia Propria, hodie LIVADIA.

This Province, tho' the last in our Description, may be reckon'd the most considerable part of Greece, as comprehending the Famous Cities of *Thebes*, *Athens*, *Delphi*, *Pythia*, &c. also the Mountain *Parnassus*, *Helicon*, and other places most Eminent in Ancient History. And it is plain that it was Anciently esteemed the principal part, by its Name being Communicated to the Whole; and the Ancient Geographers by way of Excellence term this *Græcia Propria*. Its Name of *Achaia* seems to have been borrow'd from a small Province in *Peloponnesus* so called. And the present, of *Livadia*, is most probably taken from the Town so called, of which we shall speak in its Place.

*Achaia* lies on the South of *Thessaly*, from which it is divided by Mount *Oeta*, now *Lacha*, having on the South, the *Morea*, divided from it by the *Corinthicus Sinus*, now *Golfo di Lepanto*, the *Corinthian Isthmus*, and the *Mare Saronicum*, now *Golfo di Engia*. On the West the *Ionian Sea*; on the N. W. by *Epirus*; and on the East the *Aegan Sea* and



and the *Euripian* Strait, which separates it from *Negropont*, and is thence denominated *Golfo de Negropont*. It is a Pleasant and Fruitful Country, extending from East to West along the Sea-Coast about 220 miles, and from North and South about 50 miles.

It was divided, as we have shewn in our Table of Ancient Greece into Eight Parts: At present being Subject to the *Turks* who are not very polite; we cannot pretend to set down any Division; but the Principal Towns are,

**THEBES**, *Thebe*, Surnam'd *Beotica*, being the Capital of that Province, and *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges* the King of *Beotia*; also *Heptapyls* from its Seven Gates; at present by the Inhabitants called *Toiva*, and by others *Striva* or *Strives*, as it is written in the common Maps. Stands on a rising Ground near the River *Asopo*, 20 miles from the Gulph of *Negropont* to the South-west, 40 from the Isthmus of *Corinth* to the North-east, and 150 miles from *Lepanto* to the East, in the Latitude of 38 Degrees, 22 Minutes. It was Anciently a very considerable City, and with the Country about it one of the most powerful States of Greece. At present, as Sir Geo. Wheeler informs us, it is reduc'd to a small Town, and hardly Inhabited but in that place, which was the Castle of *Cadmus*; so that tho' the extent of it may be near 3 miles in Circuit, the Inhabitants are not reckon'd above 3 or 4000, whereof the greatest part are Christians, they having several Churches, and an Archbishop whose Cathedral is Named *Panagia Chrysopboritia*, whereas the *Turks* have only Two Mosques. As to its Ancient State 'tis said to have been Built by *Cadmus*, who as the Poets Story, being sent by his Father *Agenor* in quest of his Sister *Europa* carried away by *Jupiter*, after many fruitless Journies coming to *Beotia*, he was admonish'd by the Oracle to Build a City, to which he added a Fort which always after bore his Name. Many Stories are Related of *Cadmus*, that he Killed a Dragon, whose Teeth being Sowed in the Ground grew up Armed Men; that he was the Son of a King of *Sidon*, whereas in Truth he was but the Son of a Cook; that he brought Letters into Greece. Some say he had a large Posterity that Reigned after him; Others that he liv'd to see the end of his Family, and he with his Wife turn'd into Serpents: That *Amphion* expell'd him out of *Thebes*, and Built the Walls of it by the Harmony of his Lute. Thus far the Poets. Ancient History deduces the Princes of *Thebes* from *Cadmus*, and Name *Amphion* as the 5th Prince, who expell'd the Line of *Cadmus*, and Walled the City; his Son *Lajus* succeeded, and him *Oedipus*, whose Story is well known; his Sons *Eteocles*, and *Polynices* quarrelling, caus'd the famous Siege of *Thebes*. *Cadmus* is reckon'd to have been Cotemporary with *Josuah*, and the *Theban* Siege to have happen'd 37 years after that of *Troy*. King *Philip* of *Macedon* took the City, and put the Garison to the Sword; and afterwards *Alexander* quite destroy'd it, leaving no House standing but that of the Poet *Pindar*. *Cassander*, the Son of *Antipater*, and King of *Macedon*, Rebuilt it. *Hercules*, and the God *Bacchus*, as well as the Poet *Pindar*, are said to be Natives of this Place; as also the two great Captains *Epaminondas* and *Pelopidas*. But of all its ancient Grandure there now only remain some Vestigia of the *Cadmean* Fort, and some Inscripti-

ons that certify its former State. In the Suburbs is seen a most clear Fountain, suppos'd to be the ancient *Dirce*. It must be noted that there were other Cities of the same Name, which are mention'd in History, as *Thebes* in *Cilicia*, which was Sack'd by the *Greeks* when they went against *Troy*. *Thebes* in *Egypt*, near *Troy*, the largest of that Name; it had 100 Gates, and gave Name to the Province *Thebesis*. Another in *Ionia*: Another in *Thesaly*, &c.

*Aulis*, a Sea Port, over against *Negropont*, about 20 miles East from *Thebes*, was famous for its Harbour; and was the Rendezvous of the *Grecian* Fleet when they Sailed to the Siege of *Troy*.

*Orcomone*, *Orchomenus*, formerly celebrated for its Horses, stands 30 miles West from *Thebes*, and near the Centre of the Country, a few miles North from the Lake of *Thebes*, anciently *Copias Lacus*. Here was a very rich Temple, Dedicated to the Graces, now a strong Castle.

*Livadia*, *Libadia*, Whence the Country is Nam'd, stands on the Gulph of *Lepanto*, about 20 miles West from the Isthmus of *Corinth*. Here was anciently the Altar of *Trophonius*, celebrated for its Oracle. It is Inhabited chiefly by *Greeks* and *Jews*, who drive a Trade in Corn, &c.

*Platae*, a City often mention'd in History, but especially on account of the notable Battle fought between *Mardonius* the *Persian* General, and *Pausanias* the *Lacedemonian*, wherein the vast Army of *Persians* were routed, and 40000 kill'd, by a handful of *Greeks*, which finish'd the Ruin of *Xerxes*. It stands between *Thebes* and *Athens*.

**ATHENS**, *Athens*, by the *Turks* *Athina*, corruptly *Saitina*, *Satinas* and *Setines*, as it is written in the Modern Maps, is seated near the Sea, 40 miles from *Thebes*, and a little more from *Negropont* to the South, 40 miles East from the Isthmus of *Corinth*, and about the same distance West from Cape *Raphai*, the utmost eastern Land of *Achaia*. It was anciently the Metropolis of Greece, as well as the Capital of *Attica*, and one of the most famous and Flourishing Cities of the Universe; whether you consider its Antiquity, Power, Grandeur of its Republick, Senate and Academy; or especially that it was a long time the Seat of the Muses, and the Nursery of all Arts and Sciences, which made it Renown'd throughout all Nations. And we have *Cicero's* Testimony That the *Athenians* were perfect Masters of Politicks, Philosophy, and Husbandry: That they were the first Founders of Law and Equity: And that they Transmitted these Things to the rest of Mankind. It is at present the Capital of a Duchy, which before the *Turks* took it, was Subject to its own Dukes, and had the good Fortune to escape the *Turkish* Fury, better than the other Cities of Greece, being still a good large City, well Inhabited, and place of a pretty good Trade for Wine, Oil, Fish, &c. the Town standing but 2 miles from the Sea, call'd the Gulph of *Engia*, which opens to the Archipelago. It is water'd with the Rivers *Cephissus*, and *Ilissus*, whence by Aqueducts under Ground, the Water is convey'd into the City, to the publick Fountains, and private Houses. The SOIL round it is exceeding fruitful, and yields very rich Wines, incomparable Olives, as well as Corn, and Pasture in good plenty. And the AIR is so pure, that when the Plague rages all round it, *Athens* is Healthful. The City



is encompass'd on the North side with the Mountain *Parmus*; on the North-east by that of *Pentelicus*, 6 miles off; and the Hills *Coridalia* now *Daphni-bouni*, on the North-west; and *Hemattus* or *Teli-Bouni*, on the South-east; and on the Sea side stands the Citadel, a mile and a half in length, but it is not very strong. Near the Town stands a pointed Rock, now call'd from the Chapel on the Top, St. George's Mountain, which is probably the *Anchermus* of *Pausanias*: The River *Ilissus* flows round it by the Hill heretofore Nam'd *Musaum*, from the Poet *Museus*, whence it falls into the *Cephissus*, which passes through a Wood of Olive Trees, at least 6 miles long, now the greatest Wealth and Ornament of the *Athenian* plain. In the Town the Houses stand very close, and the Streets are narrow. The Haven, formerly known by the Name of *Portus Phalereus*, was formerly a very good one, but now much choak'd up with Sand. The Inhabitants are reckon'd about 10000, whereof three parts are always *Christian* *Greeks*, and no *Jews* are admitted. *Christianity* was in pretty good State here, when the Town was under the *Turks*, the Archbishop having then a Revenue of 4000 Dollars *per Annum*, and the *Christians* enjoyed no less than 200 Churches, in and about the City, besides several Convents. The *Turks* had 5 Mosques, whereof one is the ancient Temple of *Minerva*.

As to the Ancient State of *Athens*, we are told it was founded by *Cecrops*, who Nam'd the Town *Cecropia*, and Reign'd King there 50 years; this is suppos'd to have happen'd soon after the *Deucalian* Flood, 800 years before the building of *Rome*, and 1550 before the Birth of Christ; He Enacted many excellent Laws, Erected the Council *Arcopagus* afterwards so celebrated in the World, and added other Cities to his Kingdom; which daily encreas'd in Wealth Grandeur and Strength. In the time of *Erichonius* the 4th King, the Name of the City was alter'd to *Aghyn*, *Athena*, in Honour of *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call'd by that Name, and to whom the City was Dedicated. It continued a Monarchy for near 500 years, till *Codrus* by his singular Magnanimity threw himself among the Enemies in Battle, that by his Death he might save his Country; the Oracle having Predicted that the Party who lost their King should be Victors. After which the *Athenians* would not admit of a King, that no Man might enjoy the Honour that *Codrus* had had, whose Memory they so much Reverenced. They were afterwards Govern'd by Magistrates, call'd *Archontes*, under whom they most Valiantly defended their Liberties and Territories, against all Enemies, even the *Persians* with their numerous Armies under *Darius* and *Xerxes*. The *Lacedonians* were their constant Enemies, with whom they contended for the Sovereignty of *Greece*. The *Spartans* once took the City and set 30 Tyrants over it, but they soon threw off that Yoak, and with the assistance of the *Thebans* under *Epaminondas* entirely defeated them, and thereby extended their Dominion exceedingly. But at last growing into Luxury, they were Effeminated and became a Prey to the *Macedonian* Monarch. Under the *Romans* they were Protected, and enjoy'd Liberty; except when *Sylla* to Revenge their siding with *Mithridates*, Plunder'd the City, and put the Inhabitants to the Sword. Among the Emperors, *Constantine* the Great was their peculiar Patron and Benefactor, Ho-

nouring their Government, with the Title of Arch-Duke: And *Constantine* II. gave them several Islands in the *Archipelago*. In the time of *Arcadius*, they were miserably haras'd and pillag'd by the *Goths*; and underwent divers Revolutions afterwards, till at last the City was taken by the *Turks*, in 1455, and remain'd Subject to them till the year 1687, when the *Venetians*, happily retook it after a short Siege. The *Christian* Religion was Planted here by St. Paul, as we are told in Sacred Scripture, and one of the *Arcopagus*, with other Persons of the first Quality were his Converts.

The present *Vestigia* shew the ancient Splendor of its Buildings. Sir George *Wheler*, gives us an ample Account of those Monuments, too large to Insert here; having only Room to Name the chief of 'em; which are, The *Acropolis*, a Fortress built on a Rock, on the West end of the Town, with inaccessible Precipices on every side but the North-west where you mount by a steep Ascent to the Entrance. This is suppos'd to have been the first City, round which the Buildings encreas'd, and this serv'd afterwards for a Castle, as it still does, but is now separate from the Town, the Houses about it being falen down; toward the bottom of the Hill, are seen the Remains of ancient Walls, suppos'd to be those built by *Theseus*, when he enlarg'd the City. The Temple of *Minerva*, the most Beautiful Piece of Antiquity, stands in the Citadel: The Theatre of *Bacchus*, on the South side of the Castle: The Magnificent Pillars, Gate, and Aqueduct of the Emperor *Adrian*: The *Stadium* where the Publick Games call'd *Panathenaea* were exercis'd, as also the Publick Races, Fighting of wild Beasts, &c. The Ruins of the *Arcopagus*: The *Odeum*, or Musick Theatre: The Temples of *Theseus*, *Augustus*, and *Jupiter Olympus*: The Tower of *Andronicus Cyrrhastes*, or Temple of the Eight Winds: The *Phanari*, or Lanthorn of *Demosthenes*: These are still to be seen but the *Academy* where *Plato* Taught his Philosophy; The *Portico* where *Zeno* the Cynick held his Lectures; and the *Lyceum*, which was the College where the incomparable *Aristotle* taught Philosophy; are all effac'd.

*Marathon*, still call'd *Marathona*, and *Mirafon*, seated on the Gulph of *Negropont*, 40 miles North-east from *Athens*, and 60 South-east from *Thebes*, is now an ordinary Village, but formerly a considerable Town; memorable for the great Victory of the *Athenians* under *Miltiades*, over the *Persians*; wherein 11000 of the former, beat 60000 of the latter, having kill'd no less than 100000 of them. It is also mention'd by *Ovid*, on account of *Theseus*, who drag'd a wild Bull through the Town and Sacrific'd it to *Apollo* at *Delphos*.

*Megara*, *Lisæa* vel *Lissa*, Anciently the Seat of a Monarch, and afterwards a Republick, who were considerably enough to maintain Wars against the *Athenians* and others, and Plant a Colony in *Sicily*; was Honour'd with the Birth of *Euclid* the great Mathematician, and gave Name to the Country round it; is now but a poor Village Seated about 10 miles from the Sea, 30 miles West from *Athens*, and 20 East from the Isthmus of *Corinth*. The old City stood on two little Rocks, where some of its Footsteps remain, but at present it consists of about 3 or 400 sorry Hutts rather than Houses, on one of those Rocks. The *Turks* had formerly a Veyvode here, but a



Party of the Pirates, that frequently infested these Coasts, carried him away, which has frightened all from thence; so that none but *Christians* are its Inhabitants.

*Elruss* now call'd *Lepina*, a Sea Town 20 miles West from *Athens*, tho' now a poor Village was formerly a considerable City, and some time even Vied with *Athens*. But it has been so often pillag'd by Pirates, that it is now in a manner destitute of Inhabitants. The stately Temple of *Ceres* made the City much resorted to, and the ruins of it do still invite Travellers to Visit it; where are visible marks of a most superb Structure, all of a very fine white Marble adorn'd with excellent Carvings and Statues.

*Delphi*, *Salona*. now *Castris*, the Capital of *Phocis*, was anciently much Celebrated for its Temple and Oracle of *Appollo*, the Temple was a Magnificent Structure enrich'd with innumerable Gifts which render'd it exceeding Glorious: In it was a dark Cave where the Priestess Nam'd *Pythia*, and the Cave *Pythium*, sitting on a Tripos, or Stool with three Legs, receiv'd the Inspiration of the God, Swelling, Foaming, and Raving like one possess'd, or Distracted; the Answers were always Ambiguous, and so Mysterious, that it was difficult to understand 'em; and yet it was plainer than others, for *Hermes* the Philosopher says, that those that did not understand the Answers at *Dodona*, came hither for an Explication. The Town of *Castris* which sprung out of the ruins of *Delphi* consists only of about 200 Houses Inhabited most by *Christians* who have 5 or 6 Churches, and the *Turks* but 1 Mosque. It is surrounded with craggy Rocks. *Delphi* stands in the middle of Greece, and by ancient *Greeks*, call'd the Navel of the Earth, the Poets telling that *Jupiter* let fly two Eagles, one from the East, and the other from the West, that he might discover the middle, and those Eagles met at this place. Near it stands the Famous Mountain

*Parnassus*, Sacred to *Apollo* and the Muses, the high Cliffs of it appear in 2 points, which makes it to be call'd *Biceps Parnassus*, and between 'em the Water falls down after Rain or Snow in great abundance, and hath almost worn them assunder: And just below the Clift rises a Spring with a very plentiful Source of Water, which is undoubtedly the ancient *Casialis*, wherein the *Pythian* Prophets and the Poets that pretended to Inspiration us'd to Bath themselves, and Drink of its Waters: It has Marble Steps at its descent, and Niches for Statues cut into the Rock: This Stream running down a steep Precipice, falls into the River *Pleistis*, and separates Mount *Cirphis* from *Parnassus*, whence it runs by *Crista*, and falls into the Bay of *Salona*.

Not far from *Parnassus*, but more Eastward, and reckon'd in the Limits of *Boetia*, stands

*Helicon*, the other Mountain Consecrated to *Apollo*.

*Lepanto*. *Naupactus* aut *Naupactum*, now call'd *Epaclus* by the *Greeks*, and *Einebachri* by the *Turks*, is the chief City on the Gulph whereto it hath lately communicated its Name, tho' formerly it was denominat'd of *Corinth*. It stands near the Straight of the *Dardanelis*, 40 miles from *Delphi*,

80 from the *Corinthian* Isthmus, and 120 from *Athens* to the West, 120 from the Island *Corfu* to the South-east, and not above 8 Leagues from the opposite Shoar of the *Morea* to the North. It is built on the side of a high Hill, rising up from the Shoar, in 4 several Stages, between every one of which is a Wall, and at the bottom lies the Port, of Oval form, whose Mouth is so narrow that a Chain may be drawn Cross it, and it is defended by a small Castle on each side, with Cannon; this Harbor is lin'd with Walls, which appear of ancient Structure; but the Port cannot admit large Ships, because the Mouth is shallow: Neither are the *Christian* Ships of bulk permitted to come up to the Cattle, but stay at *Patras* on the *Peloponesian* Shoar. It is a place of Trade for *Turky* Leather, Oil, Tobacco, Rice, Barly, &c. And on each side of the Town, under the Mountain (which is probably the ancient *Corax*) fruitful Vallies are stretch'd out toward the Sea; that westward is planted with Olive Trees, Vineyards and Corn; and the other side is divided into Gardens of Oranges, Citrons and Lemons; it is also water'd with many fresh Streams, that issue from the Mountain, and shadow'd with Plain Trees: The Wine here is the best in Greece. This is the Account Sir *George Wheeler* gives us of this Place, which must needs be very Pleasant, and would undoubtedly be well Inhabited, if the *Turks* did not treat the *Christians* ill, insomuch that the Archbishop is oblig'd to live at *Arta*. The Emperor *Manuel Palaeologus*, gave this City to the *Venetians*, in the year 1408. who Fortifi'd it, and made it so Strong, that in 1475. it was able to Resist *Mahomet* the Great, who Besieg'd it with an Army of 30000 Men. But *Bajazet* II. in 1498, partly by the Power of 150000 Men, and partly by Corrupting the Governor, took it. In the late War Anno 1697. the *Venetians* retook it, after a few hours Battery; having just before disheartn'd the *Turks*, by the taking of *Petrus*, the *Dardanelis*, and other places. But by the Treaty of *Carlowitz* in 1699. the *Venetians* are oblig'd to quit *Lepanto*, and demolish the Castle call'd *Romelia*.

Not far from hence happen'd a most memorable Sea Fight between the *Christians* and *Turks*, on the 2d. of Octob. 1571. Wherein the *Venetian* Fleet consisting of 210 Gallies, 6 Galeasses, and 28 great Transport Ships, obtain'd a most signal Victory over the *Turkish* Fleet consisting of 200 Gallies, and 70 Frigats, whereof 130 Gallies were taken, many more burnt and sunk, 30000 of their Men kill'd, and near 20000 *Christian* Slaves set at Liberty; with the loss of only 8000 Men, on the *Christian* side.

A few Leagues to the West of *Lepanto*, and 20 Leagues East from the Island *Cefalonia*, is the Straight of the Gulph of *Lepanto*, guarded by two Castles. The two Promontories that make the Straight were anciently Nam'd *Rhium* and *Anti-Rhium*, the former on the *Peloponesian* side now nam'd the Castle of *Morea* or *Patras*, and the latter on the *Achaian* Shoar now call'd *Capa Moliceo*, and the Castle *Romelia*. These Castles are strong and well provided with Cannon; and are Nam'd the *Dardanelis* of *Lepanto*, in allusion to those of the *Hellispoint*.



## CHAP. III.

## OF PELOPONNESUS, or the MOREA.

ON the South of *Achaia*, lies the Peninsula of the *Morea*, join'd to the Continent by the small Isthmus denominated from *Corinth*, because that City stands upon it; but otherwise surrounded by the Sea. On the North the Gulphs of *Lepanto* and *Engia*, flow between it and *Achaia*; the Gulph of *Patras* between it and *Cefalonia*, on the North-west; the *Ionian Sea* on the South-west; the *Mer de Sapienza*, and the Sea of *Candia* on the South; and the *Aegean Sea* on the East. It lies between 36 and 38 Degrees of Latitude, and between 40 and 44 Degrees of Longitude: Comprehending about 150 miles in breadth.

This Country hath been known by different Names in several Ages: It was at first call'd *Argos*, with the addition of *Achaicum*, to distinguish from *Argos Pelasgicum* or *Theffaly*. Afterwards *Aegialia*, from *Aegialus* a King of the *Sicyonians*: Then *Apia*, from *Apis* the third King of *Argos*: And at length *Peloponnesus*, from *Pelops*, the Son of *Tantalus*, who brought a Colony hither, out of *Phrygia*, and Reigned there for some time. The Modern Name of *Morea*, is said to have been derived from *Morus*, a Mulberry Tree, call'd in Greek *Μορέα*, either because the form of it resembles the form of that Leaf, or because those Trees grow plentifully here. Others make it deriv'd from *Romea* by a change of the Letters. And again, others say, the *Moors* gave it the Name.

This Peninsula is the most Noble of *Europe*, whether we consider the Courage and Virtue of its ancient Inhabitants, the Splendor of their Cities, and Power of their States; or the fertility of its SOIL, which produces plenty of Corn, Wine, Oil, most delicious Fruits, and all that can contribute to the Delight as well as Necessaries of Life. The Mountains, fill'd with Game and Medicinal Plants, were Celebrated by the ancient Poets; the most Remarkable are, Mount *Cyllene* in *Arcadia*, on which *Maia* brought forth *Mercury*. 2. *Menalus*, Consecrated to the God *Pan*, so call'd from *Menalus*, the Son of *Lycaon*. 3. *Minthe* now *Oline*. 4. *Nonacris*, where the River *Styx* takes its rise. 5. *Taigolus*, &c.

The Principal Rivers are, 1. *Carbon* or *Orfea*, anciently call'd *Alpheus*, and fam'd for its Virtue in taking away Spots and Blemishes in the Skin:

The Poets attribute a miraculous Course to this River, through the *Ionian Sea*, till it intermixeth with the Fountain *Arethusa*, in *Sicily*, because it is often swallow'd up in the Earth, and rises again with greater Force; but it really rises in the Mountain *Stymphalus*, runs through *Arcadia* and receives the Rivers *Celadon* and *Amarinthe*, with 140 other Rivulets, and falls into the Gulph of *Casiel di Tornese*. 2. *Eurotas* or *Valali Patamos*, which rises in *Arcadia*, runs through *Laconia*, and falls into the Gulph of *Pastel Rampani*. 3. *Planizza*, formerly call'd *Inachus*, and *Haliacmon*. 4. *Pamissus* or *Spirnazza*, that falls into the Gulph of *Coron*, near *Calamata*. 5. *Styx*, whose Waters are deadly, through their excessive Coldness, which gave occasion to the Poets to fain it to be one of the Rivers of Hell.

The Inhabitants are esteem'd Ingenious and Warlike, imitating their Ancestors, who maintain'd a War against the *Athenians* for 27 years, which is the Subject of the excellent Histories of *Thucydides* and *Xenophon*. *Pausanias* reckons but three Nations here, viz. the *Achaians*, *Arcadians*, and *Dorians*: But according to *Ptolomy*, It was anciently divided into eight Parts, tho' *Cluverius* reckons but six, as we have shewn in our Table (the other two, *Corinthia* and *Sicyonia*, being by him included in *Achaia propria*) wherein were comprehended many Powerful States, as, the *Lacedaemonians*, *Corinthians*, *Sicyonians*, *Argives*, *Arcadians*, &c. whose Actions are notably Remembred in History. After many Revolutions the whole Country became subject to the Emperor *Manuel Comnenus* about the year 1150, who divided it at his Death among his seven Sons; these Princes were call'd *Despotes*, and tho appointed by, and subordinate to the Emperor, were in a manner Absolute at Home, and the Emperor seldom putting by the next of kin, it was also Hereditary. *Demetrius* and *Thomas* the Brothers of *Constantine Paleologus*, were the last of these, for in their time the Turkish Sultan *Mahomet II.* took it, and beat out the *Venetians*, that were then upon it, since when they always held it and maintain'd a *Sangiack* at *Modon* till in the late War, the *Venetians* under General *Morosini* Re-conquer'd it, and by the Treaty at *Carlowitz*, the whole *Morea* is entirely resign'd by the *Turks*, to the *Venetians*.

It is now usually distinguish'd into Four Parts, viz.

- I. The Duchy of *Clarenza*, bounded on the North by the Gulph of *Lepanto*, on the East by *Saccania*, on the West by the Gulph of *Patras*, and on the South by *Laconia* and *Belvedere*. Containing the old Districts of *Achaia* proper, and *Sicyonia*. The most Remarkable Towns are
  - Patras*.
  - Chiarenza*.
- II. *Belvedere*, extended between the River *Carbon* or *Orfea*, which parts it from *Chiarenza* on the North, the Sea of *Sapienza* on the South, *Laconia* on the East, and the *Ionian Sea* on the West. It contains the ancient *Massenia* and *Elis*. The chief Towns are
  - Modon*.
  - Belvedere*.
  - Coron*.
  - Calamata*.
  - Navarino*.
  - Olympia*.



III. *Laconia*, or *Braccia di Mana*, the largest of the four, comprehend-  
 ing the ancient *Arcadia* and *Laconia*, and is situated between *Chiarenza*  
 on the North, *Saccania* on the East, *Belvedere* on the West, and the  
 Sea of *Sapienza* on the South.

Malvasia.

Mistra, or Lacedemon.

Zarnata.

Chielefa.

Megalopolis or Leontari.

Colochina.

IV. *Saccania*, or *Romania Minor*; Comprehending the ancient *Argia*,  
*Sicyonia* and *Corinthia*. It is Seated between the Gulph of *Engia* on  
 the North, and that of *Napoli* on the South, *Chiarenza* on the West,  
 and the *Aegan* Sea on the East.

Napoli di Romania.

Corinth.

Argos.

*Patras*, *Patra*, call'd *Badra* and *Balubathra* by the *Turks*, is Seated on a Hill near the Sea, at a little distance from the Mountain formerly Nam'd *Cerynea*, not above 10 miles from the Mouth of the Gulph of *Lepanto* to the South, near 20 Leagues from the Coasts of the Island *Cefalonia* to the East, and 90 miles from the Isthmus of *Corinth* to the West. It was Founded (according to *Pausanias*) by one *Eumelus*, who was instructed in the Arts of Husbandry and Architecture, by *Triptolemus*, and call'd the Place *Arva*, afterwards when the *Ionians* were expell'd the *Pelopnesian Achaia*, another Benefactor Nam'd *Patrus*, very much Enlarg'd it, so as to swallow up the old *Arva*, and gave it his Name. It is commonly written in the Maps *Patro Patras*, or sometimes *Patraso*. It was ruin'd some time after, in the Wars between the *Aetolians* and the *Graecus*, and was in ill State, till the time of *Augustus Caesar*, who having made use of its Harbour for his Navy, took notice of the Town, and conferr'd many Priviledges on the Inhabitants he Invited to it from the Neighbouring Towns, calling it *Colonia Augusta Arva Patrensis*. It is a considerable City, very Populous, especially of *Jews*; a place of good Trade, and the See of an Archbishop. It is defended by a strong Castle built on the Highest point of the Hills, from whence there is an easy descent every way, to a fruitful Valley, well Planted with Oranges, Lemons, and Citrons, much esteem'd for their most delicious Taste: In these Gardens, besides a great number of tall Cedars, there is a famous Cypress Tree, perhaps the oldest and biggest in the World, being 18 foot round, and the Branches shooting out 20 foot an end. In ancient times the Goddess *Diana* was Worship'd here, in most cruel manner, for a Beautiful young Man and Maid were Annually Sacrific'd to her; till by the Preaching of St. *Andrew*, *Eurypilus* was Converted to *Christianity*, and that horrid Superstition laid aside. But afterwards that Apostle suffer'd Martyrdom here, being Crucifi'd by order of *Aegaeus* the Proconsul of the Province. The *Christian* Religion however was so well Planted by him, that it continu'd to Flourish, and the Archbishop in the primitive Ages, was Honour'd with the second place in the Councils; and at present hath a Thousand Churches under his Jurisdiction. In the time of the *Despots* of the *Morea*, it enjoy'd the Title of a Duchy, and was Sold by the last of those Princes, to the State of *Venice*, in the year 1463. From whom the *Turks* took it, in 1463. The *Venetians* under the Famous *And. Doria*, Recover'd it in 1573, but lost it again the next year, and the *Turks* continu'd Masters of it till the late War. When in the year 1687, it was taken by the *Venetian* General *Morgani*, and is now Subject to the State.

This City gives Name to the Gulph or Sea between the Coasts of the *Morea*, and the Island *Cefalonia*.

*Clarenza* or *Chiarenza*, which gives Name to the Duchy, stands upon the Gulf of *Patras*, 25 miles South from that City. This is Suppos'd to be the ancient *Cyllene*, and was sometime of great Note, the Capital of the Duchy, and under its own Princes; it was also a place of Trade, having then a Commodious Haven, but is now choak'd with Sand: And the condition of the Town is so far alter'd, that there remains hardly any Footsteps of its former Grandeur. *P. Melis* honours this place with the Birth of *Mercury*, tho' others impute it to a Hill in *Arcadia* call'd *Cyllene*, and thence is he call'd *Cyllenius*. The Town of *Cyllene* was anciently the Sea Port of the City *Elis*, and a Commodious Harbour for Ships, that come from *Sicily*. But some are of opinion that not *Chiarenza*, but *Antravida*, stands in the place of the ancient *Cyllene*.

*Caminitza* a little Town upon the River *Evenus*, about 12 miles South from *Patras*, is thought to be the ancient *Olenus*, which *Strabo* and *Ptolemy* call a Town of *Achaia* in the *Peloponnesus*, built by *Olenus* the Son of *Vulcan*. It was an Episcopal See, under the Archbishop of *Patras*.

*Modon*, anciently call'd *Methene*, now *Maitune* or *Mutum* by the *Turks*, is seated on the Southern Shoar of the *Morea*, near the Cape, over against the small Island of *Sapienza*, about 140 miles South from *Patras*. It hath a fair Commodious Haven, and is a Strong, Rich and Trading City. Dignified with a Bishop's See, and was the Place of Residence of the *Turkish* Sangiack, or Governor of the *Morea*. This was one of the 7 Cities which *Agamemnon* promis'd to *Achilles*, and was at that time possess'd by *Menelaus* King of *Lacedemon*. In the *Aelian* War with *Anthony*, *Agrippa* at his first Landing made himself Master of this place, and took in it *Bochus* King of *Mauritania*, whom he slew. It sustain'd much damage in the time of the Emperor *Trajan*, by the Inroads of the *Illyrians*; but that Prince to make amends Granted it many Priviledges which were confirm'd by *Constantine* the Great. The *Venetians* took it in 1122, but were oured the next year by the Greek Emperor. In 1204, they got it again, but lost it for some time to the *Genese* Pirates, whose Captain *Leo Veteran* being taken, the Town was again recover'd, and held till 1493, when *Bajazet* II. Besieg'd it with an Army of 150000. Men, whose Power forc'd a Surrender, tho' it was long Defended. In 1659, the *Venetians* took it again, but the *Turks* recover'd it in the end of the *Candian* War. And finally, In the late War, the *Venetians* recover'd it, and now enjoy it.

*Coron*, *Corona*, one of the most Important Places in the *Morea*, is Seated about 20 miles East from the Cape de *Gallo*, which is the *Acritas Promontorium* of *Ptolemy*, on the west side of a Gulph to which it now gives Name, but formerly call'd

Sinus



*Sinus Messeniacus*, on the Southern Shoar of the *Morea*, about 25 miles East from *Modon*. It was anciently a Colony of the *Thebans*, call'd *Pedafus* by the Poets, *Epea* by *Pausanias*, and *Corona* by *Strabo* and *Pliny*, from a Brass Coronet found in digging its Foundation. The Town lies on a Tongue of Land, advancing into the Sea, the Land side being Guarded by a large Tower, built by the *Venetians* in 1463. and the two Angles to the Sea surrounded with an old Wall, and flank'd with strong Towers. It hath no immediate Port, but the Gulph which bears its Name, is a safe Harbour. The Country about affords good store of Fruits, Grain, Oil and Silks, which the Inhabitants Vend abroad, to their great Advantage. This Town also was Subject to the *Venetians* taken by *Leo Veteran*, in 1204. as well as *Modon*, and recover'd with that soon after. And with that also was lost to *Bajazet II.* in 1498. The *Spaniards* under *Andr. Doria*, *Charles V's* Admiral took it, in 1532. but soon lost it. And it remain'd under the *Turks*, till General *Morofini* in the year 1685 reduc'd it, notwithstanding the obstinate defence of the Besieg'd, and the Succors that came to their relief.

*Messeniga*, 10 miles North from *Coron*, is the ancient *Messene*.

*Calamata* tho' an unwall'd Town, had a Castle of good Force, which was surpris'd, and burnt, by General *Morofini*, in 1659. And again in the late War *Anno* 1685. the same General retook it, and caus'd it to be entirely demolish'd. It stands on the Confluence of the River *Aris*, with the *Camissus*, not above 10 miles from the bottom of the Gulph of *Coron*, about 20 miles from that City to the North, and 35 from *Modon* to the North-east, and is a place indifferently well Inhabited.

*Navarino*, *Navarinum*, aut *Pylus Messeniaca*, one of the most ancient Towns in the *Morea*, is seated on the West side of the same Promontory of Land, that *Modon* and *Coron* stands on, 13 miles North from the former, and 28 miles West from the latter. It is divided into the Old Town and the New, the former is seated on a Rock that advances out into the Sea, which is Naturally very strong, and besides well Fortifi'd: The latter stands on the side of a Hill, and is defended by strong Walls, and a Citadel with 6 Bastions, built by the *Turks*, in 1572. At the Bottom whereof, lies the Haven, the best and most capacious of all the *Morea*, and its Entrance Commanded by the Cannon of the Old Town: and therefore it was chosen by Sultan *Ibrahim*, for the Rendezvous of his Fleet, design'd for *Candia* in 1644. The *Turks* were Masters of this Place, from the year 1498. till 1686. when General *Morofini*, with a Fleet of 200 Ships, soon forc'd the Old Town to surrender, but the New Town made a resolute Defence, in hopes of Relief, till they heard of the Defeat of the *Seraskier*, by General *Coningmark*, which made 'em then surrender.

*Castle Tornese*, call'd *Clementzi* by the *Turks*, is a small Town near the Cape of *Tornese*, which shoots out into the Sea, on the West side of the *Morea*, between the Gulph of *Arcadia*, and that of *Patras*, and is distant 30 miles from *Chiarenza* to the South, 50 from *Navarino* to the North-west, and about 3 miles from the Sea Coasts. It was formerly Nam'd *Chelonates*, and stands on an Eminence that overlooks a pleasant Country. General *Morofini* took this place, after the taking of *Patras*, in 1687.

*Belvedere*, the *Elis* of the Ancients, gave Name to this Duchy, and is a large Town, seated on the River *Peneus*, 15 miles from the *Ionian* Sea to the East, about 10 from *Castle Tornese* to the North, as many from *Chiarenza*, and 40 from *Patras* to the South. Formerly famous for producing excellent Horses, and had its Name *Calloscopium* of the *Greeks*, and *Belvedere* of the *Italians*, from its pleasant Situation.

*Cyparissa*, seu *Cyparisse*, now *Arcadia*, sometime a City, and good Port, but now in decay; stands 20 miles North from *Navarino*, and gives its modern Name to a large Gulph now, as its ancient one did formerly, being then call'd *Sinus Cyparissus*.

*Langanico*, the ancient *Olympia*, vel *Olympia Pisa* is seated on the River *Alpheus*, not far from its mouth into the Gulph of *Arcadia*, 25 miles from that Town, and near 50 from *Navarino* to the North, and 55 from *Patras* to the South. It was anciently known throughout the World, for the famous Games instituted by *Hercules*, and Celebrated every fifth year, in its neighbouring Fields, wherein the bravest Youths of *Greece*, contended for the Prize, and esteem'd the obtaining it, the greatest Honour in the World. Hence came the Computation of Time by *Olympiads*, well known to Historians. It is now but a small Town, and not at all considerable.

*Mistra*, or *Misistra*, the ancient *L A C E D E M O N*, or *S P A R T A*; or rather a City about 4 miles from the Ruins of that, as Sir *George Wheeler* tells us; stands in the South-east part of the *Morea*, on the River *Eurotas*, 30 miles North from its Mouth, into the Gulph *Colochina*, or *Sinus Laconicus*, 100 miles South from *Corinth*, 60 North-east from *Coron*, 40 South-west from *Napoli di Romania*, and 40 from *Malvasia* to the West. The City was first call'd *Lelegia* from *Lelex* its first King, who was Cotemporary with *Cecrops* the first King of *Athens*, afterwards *Lacedemon* from the Name of his Successor, and *Sparta* from his Daughter or Wife, so Nam'd; or according to others, from *Spartus* the Son of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, whom they make its Founder. Its Antiquity was very great, so that a true Account of its Foundation is not extant; but 'tis judg'd to have been built in the Time of the Patriarch *Jacob*, and near 1000 years before the Building of *Rome*. We are Inform'd by *Polybius* that it was of a round form, extending 48 *Greek* Stadia or Furlongs, that is to say, 6 *English* miles in compass. There never was any City that surpass'd it for Military Glory, as having had the greatest share in those Noble Achievements, that made the *Grecian* Name so Illustrious; for they contended with *Athens* for Mastery, and Subdu'd almost all *Greece*. Their Law-giver *Lycurgus*, was famous for Wisdom, and left them such Rules for Government, that the *Lacedemonians* were as eminent for Politicks, as the *Athenians* were for Learning. They were Govern'd for many Ages by 2 Kings, at the same time under the Inspection of the 28 Gerontes or Senators, and afterwards of Five Magistrates, call'd *Ephori*. The last of the Kings was *Cleomenes*, who destroy'd the Power of the *Ephori*, and was himself Conquer'd by *Antigonus Dofon* King of *Macedon*, and the City, and State, made part of that Monarchy. This happen'd about 230 years before Christ, and about 1300 years after the Foundation of the City.



City. The Ruins of this City which Testify its ancient Magnificence are still to be seen, at *Mistra*, which is an Episcopal City of some Magnitude, consisting of four different Parts, viz. The Town, the Castle, and the two large Suburbs, one of which is call'd *Mesochorion* or the Middleborough, and the other *Hexachorion* or the Outerborough. The Castle, City, and *Mesochorion*, lie on one side the River *Euratas* now call'd *Isafeli-petamos*; and the *Hexachorion* on the other side of the River. The Castle or Citadel, now call'd *To Castrum*, advantageously seated on the top of Mount *Taygetus*, is surrounded with good Walls, and by some is affirm'd to be so strong, as never to have been taken by open Force: Within it formerly stood the Temples of *Diana Lipaschaia*, and *Minerva Panathaiaca*, besides the Monument of *Eurypylus* Son of *Eumen*, who was present at the taking of *Troy*. The Town lies at the Foot of the Castle, which covers it towards the North; it consists of 2 spacious Streets, and several small cross ones; the old Market place, call'd *Agora* by the Greeks, is beautify'd with a curious Fountain, and hath a Church near it, built out of the ruins of *Minerva's* Temple: Here are also the remains of 4 Marble Buildings, which are the most considerable Antiquities of *Mistra*, viz. The *Periclean* Gallery, or Portico, built in Memory of the Victory over the *Persians* at *Platæa*: The Temple of *Helena*; The Temple of *Hercules*; And the Temple of *Venus Armata*. In the Town stands also the Cathedral Church call'd *Panagia*, or *All-Holy*, It is a fine Building, having Marble Pillars to Support the Roof, which has 7 Domes, and the Pavement is a curious piece of Mosaick Work; The Bishop's Palace; The Monastery of the *Pandaneffis*, whose Church exceeds the Cathedral, for beauty tho' not so large. In the *Mesochorion* or Middle-suburb, is another Church call'd also *Panagia*, that is far more Sumptuous, than the two already Nam'd: And there also stood the *Turks* finest Mosque, for the Building of which they made use of the Ruins of *Lacedæmon*, and thereby undoubtedly destroy'd many notable Antiquities. Without the Walls are still to be seen the *Dromas* where the *Spartan* Youth perform'd their Racing, Wrestling and other Sports; and the *Platan* or Grove of Plane Trees, the shade whereof is very refreshing and delightful. The *Grecian* Emperors made this City an Appennage, of one of their Sons with the Title of *Despot* or Lord of *Sparta*; in which it remain'd till it was taken by the *Turkish* Sultan *Mahomet II.* soon after the taking of *Constantinople* about the year 1460. Three years after the *Italians* storm'd it, but could not Conquer the Citadel, and so rais'd the Siege. And again in 1473. the *Venetians* took the Town, but not the Castle, and it remain'd Subject to the *Turks*, till the year 1687. when General *Morisini*, having Conquer'd the greatest part of the *Morea*, oblig'd both Town and Castle to Surrender.

*Malissa* or *Napoli di Managla*, heretofore known by the Name of *Epidaurus*, and afterwards *Monambasia*, is seated on a Rock in the Sea, on the Eastern Coast of the *Morea* near the Mouth of the Gulph of *Napoli di Romania*, near 60 miles from that City to the South-east, about 20 from *Mistra* to the East, and about 30 from the Island *Cerigo* to the North. It is join'd to the Continent by a fair Timber Bridge, and is a place of notable Strength, being inaccessible but on one side, and defended by a triple Wall. It has a convenient

Harbour defended by the Fortrefs, which is of great advantage to the Inhabitants for their Traffick. Tho' it stands on a Rock it is supply'd with good Springs of fresh Water, sufficient for the use of the Town, and Gardens about it, which are very fruitful, and produce excellent Fruits, especially the Grapes whereof the Wine we call *Malmsey* is made. The City, tho' it be a small one, is dignify'd with a Metropolitan See, and has a Suburb enclos'd with a strong Rampart besides the Citadel. Tis said to owe its Foundation to a Colony of *Argos*, and was frequented on account of the Temple of *Æsculapius*; but *Baudrand* gives away this Honour to another Town; calling this *Epidaurus Limera*, in *Laccnia*; and distinguishes it from another *Epidaurus* in *Argia*, now call'd *Pigadia*, according to *Niger*, and *Æsculapio*, according to *Pinetus*; wherein stood that famous Temple which gave occasion to the Poets to call *Æsculapius* the *Epidaurian* Deity. *Buns* in his Notes on *Cluverius*, says the same, and places it in *Argia*. *Epidaurus* was also the old Name of *Ragusi Vecchio*, in *Dalmatia*. Tho' the Fortrefs of *Malvasia* seem almost impregnable, it was taken by the *French* and *Venetians*, from the *Greek* Emperor, and re-taken by the *Venetians*, who held it till 1573. when they deliver'd it to Sultan *Solyman*, to purchase a Peace. In the *Candian* War, the *Venetians* storm'd and Burnt it, but the *Turks* re-built and held it till the late War. In the year 1689. the Doge *Morisini* Attack'd it, but being call'd home, he left the place Block'd up, which continu'd from the 14th. of *September*, to the 10th of *August* following, when they Surrender'd, and was the last place in the *Morea*, that held out.

*Zarnata*, a Fortrefs of considerable Strength, stands on the West side of *Zaccnia*, 30 miles South-west from *Mistra*, and but a few miles from the Sea call'd the Gulph of *Coron*. It is seated on a Hill, and defended by Towers, and other Fortifications. But was however taken by the *Venetians*, in the year 1685. in the very fight of the Captain Bassa who durst not attempt its Relief.

*Chielefa*, a strong Town of a mile in Compass, seated on a Rock, at the distance of 20 miles from *Zarnata* to the South-east, and about 15 from Cape *Matapan* to the North, but 2 miles from the Sea, and near the place where stood the ancient *Vitulio*, a Trading City of good note, which gave Name to the Port, formerly well frequented, but now neither Commodious nor Safe. *Chielefa* is chiefly valu'd for its Strength, being surrounded with Walls, and flank'd with Towers, and the Rock on which it stands is very steep and craggy. General *Morisini* took it in 1685. and the *Turks* endeavouring to regain it next year, were Routed, and lost all their Artillery and Baggage.

Cape *Matapan* is the most Southern point of Land in the *Morea*.

*Celechina* in the midway between that Cape, and *Mistra*, and 30 miles East from *Zarnata*, is only notable for giving Name to a Bay, anciently Nam'd *Laccnicus Sinus*.

Cape *Malie*, *Malea Premont*, is the most Eastern point of the *Morea*, and 25 miles South from *Malvasia*. Overagainst it on the South, lies the Island *Cithera* now *Cerigo*.

*Metropolis*, the ancient Metropolis of *Arcadia*, and the Birth-place of the Historian *Polybius*, is now a small City, but Episcopal. Nam'd *Laccnia*;



it is seated at the foot of a mountain, on the River *Alpheus*, 40 miles North-west from *Lacedemon*, 75 from *Corinth* to the South; in the the Center of the *Morea*, and in the North Limits of the Duchy of *Zaconia*.

*Napoli di Romania*, the Capital of the Duchy of *Seccania* or *Romania minor*, was anciently Nam'd *Nauplia*, from *Nauplius* the Son of *Neptune*, and is call'd *Anaplia* by the Modern *Greeks*; it is a strong and fair City, seated at the bottom of a Gulph of the *Ægean* Sea, to which it gives the Modern Name, but anciently call'd *Argolicus Sinus*. It stands on the top of a small Promontory or Cape, which is divided into two Parts, one side whereof shoots forth into the Sea, making a safe and spacious Harbour, and the other toward the Land, renders the passage to the Town almost Inaccessible, being only thro' a narrow stony way between the Mountain *Palamida* and the Sea Shoar. The Haven is Spacious enough to receive a large Fleet, but yet so straight in its Entrance, that only one Gally can pass at a time. Besides this Natural Strength, there is a strong Citadel, about 100 yards from the City, and in the whole this is one of the strongest Places in all the *Morea*, and longer resisted the *Turks*. It is the Capital City of the *Morea*, with respect to Government, and the See of an Archbishop. And reckon'd to contain above 60000 *Greeks*, besides many other Inhabitants. It is seated, as we have said, near the bottom of the Gulph, about 60 miles North from *Mistra*, and 30 South from *Corinth*. This City had been Subject to divers Masters, before it was Sold to the *Venetians* in the year 1383, who bravely defended it against the Attacks of *Mahomet II.* in 1460. and *Solyman II.* in 1537. but were oblig'd to resign it two years after to procure a Peace. And it was the Seat of a *Turkish* Sangiack, till the *Venetians* recover'd it again in the year 1686, when General *Coningsmark* Besieg'd the Town, and *Morisini* defeated the *Seraskier*, on the 29th. of *August*, which oblig'd the *Garison* to Capitulate.

*Argos* or *Argo*, aut *Argos Peloponnesiacum*, was heretofore the Metropolis of the Dominions of King *Agamemnon*, and the Country of *Argia*. It is seated on the River *Planizza* or *Inachus*, now *Najo*, 30 miles North from *Napoli di Romania*, and 40 South from *Corinth*. It was anciently a very stately magnificent City, and the Capital of a Kingdom, for several Ages, till *Perseus* remov'd the Regal Seat to *Mycene*, afterwards it was a Commonwealth, and had a share in all the Wars of *Greece*. But it is now reduc'd to a very low Estate, consisting only of Paltry Houses, except the Citadel and the Bishop's Palace, for it is an Episcopal See. This City was Purchas'd by the *Venetians* in 1388. from whom it was taken by *Mahomet II.* in 1463. but recover'd by General *Morosini* in 1686. But we must note, that besides this, there were other Cities in *Greece* of the same Name, viz. *Argos Amphilocheium* in *Epirus*, *Argos Pelasgicum* in *Theffaly*, and *Argos Hippium* in *Achaia*, fam'd for its excellent Horses.

**CORINTH**, now commonly call'd *Corintho*, and *Coranto*, and by the *Turks* *Gereme*, was anciently call'd *Ephyra*. It stands about the middle of the Isthmus between the Gulph of *Lepanto*, and *Angia*, about 2 miles from the former, and 5 from the other, 85 from *Patras* to the East, 54 from *Athens* to the South-west, 25 from *Argos*, and 85

from *Mistra* to the North. Whether *Sisyphus*, the Son of *Æolus*, built it, about the year of the World 2616. or a Wrestler, call'd *Aletes*, or by neither is uncertain, but it was anciently the Capital City of *Achaia*, and the Glory and Ornament of *Greece*. Its Situation between the *Ionian* and *Ægean* Seas, render it Beautiful, Strong, and Rich. It was a Place of great Trade, and in Power and Command, Inferior only to *Athens* and *Lacedemon*. The *Athenians* and *Coreyceans* were sensible of its Naval Force, and it gave rise to the *Peloponnesian* War. *Dionysius* the *Sicilian* Tyrant, being Banish'd his own Country, came here and set up a School. Its commodious Situation between the Sea-ports of *Lechus* and *Cenchreae*, the former of which in the *Sinus Corinthiacus* or Gulph of *Lepanto*, the other in the *Sinus Saraconicus*; or Gulph of *Angia*, contributed mightily to its Richness; for *Lechus* lay to the West of it, and prov'd a most convenient and safe Port for the Ships which came from *Italy* and *Sicily*; the other, *Cenchreae*, lay towards the East, and receiv'd the Ships that came from *Asia*. But as Trade brought Wealth, so that brought in Lewdness and Luxury, Insolence and Contempt of their Neighbours; having the boldness to put Indignities even upon the *Roman* Ambassadors; which, with the Apprehensions which *Rome* had of its growing Power, was the Reason why *A. Luc. Mummius*, was sent to burn it; The *Corinthian* Brass is said to owe its beginning to the burning of this City; being a mixture of a great many Statues and Images of Gold, Silver, and Brass, which were melted down in that Conflagration; tho' others maintain that the *Corinthian* Brass or Metal was well known before this happen'd. Whoredom was so much practis'd, and Whores in such esteem in this Place, that they not only put all marks of Honour and Respect upon them, but offer'd up Publick Prayers to *Venus* for their Preservation and Encrease. *Julius Cæsar* in great measure Rebuilt and Peopl'd this City a new, by sending a Colony of *Veteran* Soldiers to it. It is defended by a Castle, known formerly by the Name of *Acro-Corinthus*, standing on a very high Rock, which is a perfect Precipice all round, except on the South side, where it slopes a little more. The ancient *Despotes*, or Lords of it, gave it to the *Venetians*, who kept Possession of it till *Mahomet II.* took it from them, together with the adjacent Country; but they recover'd it from the *Turks*, in the year 1687. It is now no better than a good Country Town: Nor must we judge of the number of its Inhabitants from its Compass, the Houses not being contiguous; but standing in 10, 20, or sometimes more together, with a good space between each of these parcels, commonly so large as to be a good Cornfield.

The Isthmus of *Corinth* being but 6 miles over, was often attempted to be cut, viz. by *Demetrius*, *Julis Cæsar*, *Caligula*, *Nero*, and by one *Herodes Atticus* a private Man. There was a Wall built cross from *Lechus* to *Cenchreae* call'd *Hexamilion*, because it was 6 miles long; which stood till the time of the *Turks*, and was by them twice thrown down, the *Venetians* having rebuilt it. The *Ionians* of old Erected a Pillar here, upon the side whereof that look'd to *Attica*, was written Τὰ ἑξ ἑκατὶ Περὶ ὀρνίθου καὶ ἰωνία: And on the side towards *Corinth*, Τὰ δὲ ἐξ ἑκατὶ ἢ Περὶ ὀρνίθου καὶ ἰωνία. And in this place Plays were solemnly Celebrated every Fifth year, (which were thence denominated the

*Isthmian*



*Isthmian Games*) in Honour of *Phaëmon* the Son of *Asphamos* King of *Thebes*, and his Mother *Ino* who leapt into the Sea with her Son in her Arms to avoid her Husband's Fury, who had in a mad Fit kill'd his other Son, and as the Poets Fable, they were receiv'd by *Neptune* into the Number of the Divinities of his Train. Others say they were Instituted by *Theseus* in Honour of *Neptune*, See *Potter's Antig Greece*. The Ruins of the Theatre, Stadium, Temple of *Neptune*, &c. are still to be seen.

*Sicyon*, now *Basilica*, or *Vasilica*, the Capital of *Sicyonia*, an ancient Kingdom, which was also call'd *Ionia*, and *Aegialia*, according to *Strabo*; and *Demetrias*, by *Plutarch*: Stands on the River *Aisopus*, about 20 miles South-west from *Corinth*, and not above 5 miles from the Sea, or Gulph of *Lepanto*. It is often mention'd by the Poets, being not'd for the fine Oil's growing in its Neighbourhood, also for Marble, Statuary and Painting.

It was the Country of the Poet *Aratus*. At present tis but a poor Town, and has only the Ruins to demonstrate its ancient Splendor,

*Nemea* a Village with a Grove, anciently famous for the Games there Celebrated in Honour of *Hercules*, who slew the Lyon whose Skin he afterwards wore, in this Wood. Or, according to others, in Honour of *Archemorus*, slain by a Serpent. It is now call'd *Trifina*, and stands about 30 miles South from *Corinth*.

*Mycene*, now Nam'd *Charia*, or *Agios Adrianos*, from a Castle built there by the Emperor *Adrian*; once the Capital of a Kingdom, remov'd from *Argos* by *Perseus*, and continu'd 200 years. This City was built by *Lacedemon*, the Son of *Semele*, and was in its time very considerable, but now tis no more than an ordinary Village, seated about 10 miles North from *Argos*, and 35 South from *Corinth*.

## CHAP. IV.

### Of the ISLANDS on the Coasts of GREECE, &c.

HAVING Travell'd through the Continent of Greece, we come now to the Islands that lye round about its Coasts, whereof there are a vast Number in these Seas, but many of them are so small that they are hardly worth mentioning. Those that deserve particular notice, such as *Candia*, *Negropont*, &c. we give as ample Account as is necessary, and if we pass over the rest with only Naming 'em, and their Situation, and a general Character, we hope it will not displease the Reader. Beginning then at the *Ionian* Sea, on the Coast of *Epirus*, we meet with *Corfu*, and the two *Pachsu*, whereof we have already spoken in our Account of *Epirus*. The next is

*St. Maura*, *Leucadia*, *Neritia*, on the Coast of *Achaia*, a pleasant, fruitful Place, with Vines in abundance. It was first Inhabited by a Colony of *Corinthians*, now subject to the *Venetians*. On the North-east Point stands the Town of *St. Maura*, which gives the Modern Name to the Island, and is not above a League distant from the Coasts of *Achaia*.

The *Echniades*, or *Curgelari*, are a Cluster of Islands that lye on the East of *St. Maura*, and at the Mouth of River *Achelous*. Whereof the chief is *Colombo*. *Dulichium*, near the Shoar of *Achaia*, subject to the *Turks*. The rest are very small.

*Cephalagna* or *Cefalonia*, *Cephalonia* quæ & *Samos*, an Island of good extent being 120 miles in Circuit, and a Fertile Soil, producing Wool, Wax, Honey, Silk, Wine and Oil; Seated between *St. Maura* on the North, and *Zant* on the South, and about 20 Leagues West from the Mouth of the Gulph of *Lepanto*. It is subject to the *Venetians*, and hath 2 chief Towns, viz. *Cefalonia* an Episcopal See; and *Argostoli* a very good Port on the Southern Shoar.

*Zant*, *Zacynthus*, about 4 Leagues South from *Cefalonia*, and above 7 or 8 West from the Coast of the *Morea*; is not of half the extent of *Cefalonia*, but is very Fruitful, affording Wine, and Oil, besides Currants in great plenty, Subject to the *Venetians*. The chief Town of the same name is large and populous, surrounded with a Wall, hath large Suburbs, and a very capacious Port, where the *English* have a Factory. There are also many other Towns, (some say 50) upon this Island.

The *Strophades*, or *Strivali*, are 2 small Islands on the South of *Zant*, producing Wine, and Oil: But subject to the *Turks*.

*Sapienza*, *Sephagia*, *Oenussa*, on the South of the *Morea*, over against *Cape de Gallo*; gives Name to the Sea that flows about it. But otherwise not considerable, being almost deserted by reason of the Incurfions of the Pirates.

*CANDIA*, olim *CRETA*, the largest and most Celebrated Island on the Coasts of Greece, was formerly known by divers Names, as *Heccatompolis*, *Aeria*, *Cureis*, *Marcaros*, *Marcaronesis*, &c. And was in times past a considerable Kingdom. It took its Name from *Crete* a Nymph, the Daughter of *Hesperis*, or as others from *Cretus* its King. It is seated in Latitude between 34 and 35 Degrees, being not above 60 miles in breadth, but from East to West, it extends from 42 Degrees 30 Min. to 47 Degrees, being in length from *Cape Salomon* in the East, to *Cape Cornico* in the West, (according to *Cluverius*, 70 German Leagues, i. e.) 280 *English* miles. It lyes South-east of the *Morea*, and is the Land that Includes the Sea call'd the *Archipelago*.

Its Soil is most Fruitful, producing Corn, Wine, the best Oil, Oranges, Lemons, Figs, and other delicious Fruits, Salt, Pleasant Pastures, Cypress, Laurel, Myrtle, and other curious ever-Greens



greens. The AIR also is Healthy and Temperate, except the South Wind, which is sometimes too Robust. Here are no Stags, Wolves, Foxes, or other Wild Beasts; but the Spider *Tarantula* is very troublesome, his Sting being Mortal unless Musick be appli'd to the Patient. Nor are here any large Rivers, only Brooks that Water the Meads. The most notable Mountain is *Psfioriti* or Mount *Ida*, mention'd in Antiquity for the *Corybantes* or *Idæi-Dactyli*, the Priests of *Cybele*, that took care to Nourish *Jupiter*, in his Infancy, and continually beat their Drums lest *Saturn* should hear the Child cry.

The INHABITANTS were always Infamous for their Vice and Piracy, but withal, The Invention of Navigation, The Use of Arrows, The Art of War; and Recording their Laws, is Attributed to them. *Teste Cluverio*. They were very early Govern'd by Kings; and afterwards by Dukes, till *Q. Metellus* Conquer'd, and made the Island a Province of the Roman Empire, and it continu'd under the Emperors of *Constantinople*

till about the year 823. when the *Sarazens* surpriz'd and took it, and built the City *Candia*, which in time gave Name to the whole Island. The Emperor *Nicephorus Phocas* retook it; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and Emperor, gave it to *Boniface* Marquis of *Monferat* who Sold it to the *Venetians* for a great Sum of Money. They held it for above 400 years, till Anno 1645. the *Turks* fell upon this Island, took *Canea*, and sat down before *Candia*, which was so well defended being assisted by divers Nations, that it held out 24 years, but was at last taken in 1669. and has since with the whole Island been subject to the *Turks*.

The Island was anciently notable for its Hundred Cities, whence it was call'd *Hecatompolis*. Whereof the most considerable (according to *Cluverius*,) were, *Cortyna* the Capital of the Island, *Cydon* which the *Greeks* call'd the Mother of Cities, *Gnossus* the Regal Seat of *Mines*, *Therapne*, *Dium*, *Lyctus*, *Lycastrus*, *Phæstus*, *Manethusa*, *Dietya*. Under the *Venetians* it was divided into 4 Territories, denominated from the 4 chief Cities, viz.

The Territory of *Setia*, which is the most Eastern Part; where-  
in are these chief Towns,

{ *Setia*.  
{ *Lasthi*.  
{ *Boniporto*.  
{ *Cinosa*.  
{ *Gerapetra*.

In the Territory of *Candia*, which lies on the West of *Setia*, are

{ *Candia*.  
{ *Gortina*.  
{ *Spinalonga*.

The Territory of *Retimo*, lies next to that of *Candia* on the West { *Retimo*.

The Territory of *Canea* is the most Western Part, and contains

{ *Canea*.  
{ *Garabusa*.  
{ *Sfachia*.  
{ *Fenichia*.  
{ *Castle Selino*.

*Candia* aut *Matium*, the Capital of the Island, is seated on the Northern Coast in the middle of the Isle, in respect to East and West. On a Plain, at the Foot of a Mountain, and hath a Commodious Harbour. It is a very large City, divided into the Old Town, and the New, and was a Metropolitan See (now the Seat of the *Turkish* Sangiack) Strongly Fortified by the *Venetians*, with a Castle and other Bulwarks, and an Arsenal well furnish'd with Military Stores, which enabl'd it to hold out that memorable Siege of 24 years continuance. For the *Turks* sat down before it in the year 1645. but were beaten off with great loss, yet not so but that they continu'd it Block'd up, till 1667. and then the Siege was renew'd with great Vigour, and the Town taken Sept. 27. 1669. Thus the Famous and Fruitful Isle of *Candia*, the Cause, and Occasion of all that Blood and Treasure that was spilt, and exhausted in 24 years War, fell at length to the Fortune and Increase of the *Turkish* Empire, being the most Impregnable Fortrefs of the World, strengthen'd with as much Art and Industry, as the Human Wit of this Age was capable to invent. After a strait Siege of 2 years, 3 months, the 27 days, allotted for the Surrender, being expir'd on the 24 of Sept. 1669. being Friday, the great Cross Erected on the Wall, was taken down, after Midnight; and about 9 that Morning, the Principal Citizens offer'd the Keys of the City to the Grand

Visier, in a Basin of Silver, on the Breach of *St. Andrea*. The *Turkish* Army took Possession that day, and the Grand Visier, made his Entry on the 4th. of October. Four Parts of five of the City was Ruin'd and Demolish'd, during the Siege. All the Bells and Ornaments of the Churches and Houses, to the very Locks of the Doors, were carri'd away; the Arms remaining, were old and rusty, and not above 350 Pieces of Cannon left upon the Walls, and those for the most part but very small. The Inhabitants (as *Sir Paul Ricaut* goes on) remaining were only 5, except some few decrepit *Jews* and *Greeks*, about 30 in Number, so that never could be a more sad Spectacle of Desolation, nor a more clear Mirrour of the Miseries of War.

During this Siege, on the *Venetians* side were kill'd and wounded 30985. of the *Turks* 180754. The Storms which the *Turks* made upon the Town, were 56. The Combats under Ground 45. Sal-lies made by the *Venetians* 96. Mines Sprung by the *Venetians* 1173. By the *Turks* 472. Barrels of Powder spent by the *Venetians* 50317. Granadoes of Brass and Iron 100960. Granadoes of Glass 84875. Canon-shot of all sorts 276743. Pounds of Lead 18044957. Pounds of Match 13012500. It is not certain what quantitie of Ammunition the *Turks* spent, only the Brass taken up in the Streets, which came from the Enemies Bombs, was so much, that whole Ware-houses were fill'd with



with the Metal, and was worth many thousand Crowns. In the year 1692, the *Venetians* attempted to Besiege *Candia*; but were repuls'd with loss.

*Gortina*, formerly one of the chief Cities of *Creta*, now a large Village. Nam'd *Gortina*, stands on the River *Lefcus* 20 miles east from Mount *Ida*, and near as far from the Southern Shoar. About 20 miles East of this Town, towards *Gnossus*, stood the *Labyrinth*, the Stupendous Work of *Daedalus*, and the Seat of the *Minotaur*, some Ruins whereof are still seen.

*Spiria rega*, a Castle, on a good Port, in the Northern Shoar, 50 miles East from *Candia*.

*Setia* or *Sittia*, *Cyrum*, the least of the four Principal Cities, stands on a very good Haven, in the North Coast, 70 miles East from *Candia*.

*Gnossus* formerly the Regal Seat of *Minos*, now a Village, call'd *Cinsfa*, stands about 30 miles West from *Setia*.

*Gerapetra* or *Hierapetra*, *Secra Petra*, a Town with a Castle, on the South Coast, 20 miles South-west from *Setia*, whence the Neighbouring Promontory takes its Name.

In the extreme East part of the Island are the 2 Capes *Sidera* and *Salemon*, near which was the *Pertus Pulcher* now *Bonipertus*.

*Retimo*, *Rhitymna*, *Retymnum*, the Capital of that Territory, stands on the Northern Coast, 50 miles West from *Candia*. It hath a Castle on a Rock, and a reasonable good Port.

The Mountain *Ida*, now *Pleriti*, mention'd above, stands in the Limits of this Territory.

*Canea* the ancient *Cydon*, call'd the Mother of Cities, a strong City of Quadrangular Form, with a Port, on the North Coast, 100 miles West from *Candia*.

*Sfakia* olim *Leuci Montes*, a Castle on the Southern Shoar over against *Canea*.

Castle *Selino*, *Lissus*, on the same Shoar 30 miles West from *Sfakia*.

Cape *Crio*, *Criumetopen*, The South-west Point of the Island, over against which, lies the Island *Claudas* now *Gozz*.

On the North-west of *Candia*, near the Coast of *Laconia*, lies the Island *Cythera*, now *Cerigo*, subject to the *Venetians*, with a Castle on the West side, and a safe Port.

### The Cyclades, or Islands of the Archipelago,

So call'd from the Circular Form they lye in, are situated between *Candia* on the South, and *Negropont* on the North. The Number of them is various. *Idorus* makes 'em 50. These that follow are of chief Note, and are all subject to the *Turks*, but *Tenos*, which the *Venetians* have.

*Millo*, call'd *Zephyria* by *Aristotle*, *Mimallus* by *Caſymachus*, and *Melos* by *Strabo*, about 20 Leagues North from *Candia*, an excellent Port, but chiefly frequented by Pirates: It is about 40 miles in Circuit, and the whole Country is Mountainous, except a Pleasant and Fertile Plain, 6 or 7 miles long, in the midst of which stands the City of *Millo*, con-

taining according to the *Sieur du Mont's* Description, about 20 narrow Streets. The Inhabitants are generally *Greeks*, but there are also 300 or 400 Souls of the *Latin Church*, who have their Bishop and Cathedral. The *Venetians* maintain a *Podjlar* in the Island, to gather the Tribute; but there is no Garrison kept in it, so that the first well attended *Corsair* that comes is King of it, so long as he pleases to reside in it. The Women are so accustomed to the Converse of the Pirates, that they are generally very liberal of their Favours, but not quite so frank as their Neighbours of *Argentera*, (anciently call'd *Cimolus*) which is another little Island about 20 miles in Compass, containing only a little Town, and Village, both Inhabited by about 500 Women; for there is not a Man in the Island except 7 or 8 *Papa's*, who perform Divine Service. These Women have no Trade to maintain 'em, but live purely on the Work of Nature; so that all the Marchants and *Corsairs* who come to the Island, chuse a Female Companion, either Fair or Brown, according to every Man's particular Fancy. The Children are left to the disposal of the Women; the Girls grow up, and Work to maintain their Mothers; but as soon as the Boys are 12 years old, they are put on Board the first Vessel that touches on the Island. *Milo* is surrounded by many smaller Islands, particularly *Argentera*, above mention'd so call'd from a Mine of Silver.

*Siffano*, olim *Siphnus*, a few Leagues on the North of *Milo*, hath a good Town of the same Name, and several Villages, it is about 40 miles in compass, (according to *Baudrand*) and belong'd formerly to the Family of *Gozadini* in *Venice*; but the *Turks* have been Masters of it ever since the year 1450. It was anciently famous for its Gold and Silver Mines. Its principal Town is Nam'd *Schinusa*, and stands on a high Hill. The Inhabitants are divided in matter of Religion, some following the *Greek*, and some the *Romish* way of Worship.

*Paros*, *Paris*, or *Pario*, a few Leagues to the East of *Siffano*, hath a good Town of the same Name, and a Commodious Haven; Famous for its good Wine, and excellent Marble.

*Naxos* now *Nicsa*, lies on the East of *Paros*, divided by a Channel of 2 or 3 Leagues Broad, hath a Town of the same Name, and some Commodious Havens. It has been noted for its plenty of good Wine, and excellent Marble.

*Amorgo* or *Morgo*, on the South-east of *Naxos*, hath a Castle, and some Villages.

*Delos*, or *S. Deli*, or *Sdilles*, 10 Leagues North from *Naxos*, formerly noted by the Poets, for the reception of *Latona*, who is said to have been deliver'd there of *Apollo*, and *Diana*: Here was a Temple of *Apollo* richly Endow'd.

*Mycone* on the East side very near *Delos*, Populous, and Fruitful, but the Inhabitants are Pirates tho' *Christians*.

*Tenos*, now *Tine* or *Titte*, on the West side of *Delos*, subject to the *Venetians*, is a high Rock of Marble, but in some parts Fertile. It has 2 Ports, and



and a Castle with a Town of the same, seated on a high Rock on the West-side.

*Rhena*, now *Suda*, and *Seladussa*, on the South-west of *Delos*.

*Andros*, or *Andrus*, olim *Cauros*, of near 30 miles extent, but Mountainous. The chief Town of the same Name stands on a Rock on a Bay in the South-Coast, and in the middle of the Island. Here are also Two other good Towns; *Dium* on the West-Coast, and *Hydrussa* on another Bay in the South-Coast from *Andros*.

*Zeæ*, *Cythus*, *Ophiussa* *Dryopis*, 8 or 9 Leagues South from *Andros*, and West from *Delos*, hath a Town of the same upon the Coast.

*Polyægos*, now *Fermenia*, lies next to *Zeæ* on the South, Mountainous and Woody.

*Seriphus*, *Serfino*, next to it, hath a Town of the same Name.

*Thera*, olim *Caliste*, now *Zermia*, lies a few Leagues South-west from *Seriphus*, and West from *Siphorus*; hath Salubrious Baths which are much frequented.

### Islands in the Gulph of Engia, Sinu Saronico, are,

*Engia*, or *Egina*, in the Mouth of that Gulph, which, as we have said, flows between *Achaia*, and the *Morea*. The Country of the Fabulous *Æacus* Judge of Hell: It is a fruitful Soil, and has a Town of the same Name with a Haven.

*Salamis*, now *Colure*, lies more within the Bay on the Coast of *Achaia*: It is of 50 miles compass, and has Three Towns, viz. *Coloumi*, *Metropolis*, and *Ambalachi*, near which stood the ancient City *Salamis*, memorable for the Defeat of *Xerxes's* Fleet, by *Themistocles*, and the *Athenians*. The Birth-place of *Soion*, and the Regal State of *Telamon* the Father of *Ajax*.

*Kera*, a Rock on which *Xerxes* sat on a Silver Throne to behold the Battle of the Two Navies.

### Islands in the Ægean Sea.

**NEGROPONT**, anciently nam'd *EUBOEÆ*, and now *Egripos* by the Modern *Greeks*, is an Island lying along the Coast of that part of *Achaia*, formerly nam'd *Bootia*, extending above 100 miles in Length, but not above 25 in Breadth. It is suppos'd to have been first joyn'd to the Continent of *Greece* by an Isthmus, which, either by the violence of the Tides, or as others, by an Earthquake was broken: It is divided from the Continent by the narrow Channel *Euripus*, whose Tide Ebbs and Flows Seven times a day, as says *Pomp. Mela*; nay, even sometimes much oftner, as 10, 11, 12, 13, or 14 times a day, being often very irregular; and again at other times observing the course of the Moon, and flows as regularly as the Sea. It is next to *Candia*, the largest Island in these Seas, and is called the Queen of the Ægean Sea, on account of

its Fertility as well as Largeness; The Soil producing Corn, Wine, Fruits, and Cattle in so great abundance, that all sorts of Provisions are wonderfully Cheap. The Mountain of *Caristo* is famous for its excellent Marble, and the Stone *Amiantos*, or *Asbestos*, whereof 'tis pretended incombustible Cloath was made was found here. After the Eastern Emperors had parted with *Negropont*, it fell into the hands of the *Venetians*, from whom it was taken by the *Turks* under *Mahomet II.* about the year 1470. who with a Fleet of 300 Sail, and 120000 Men attacked it, and have ever since held it.

The chief Towns are,

*Negropont*, or *Egripos*, in a Peninsula on the South-Coast, in the middle of the Island with respect to East and West, and over-against *Aulis* in *Achaia*, to which it hath a Stone-Bridge with a Castle in the midst of the Channel built by the *Venetians*. It stands in the place of the Ancient *Chalcis*, and is a large place, the Walls of the City being Two miles in Compass, and the Suburbs much larger. In the former live the *Turks* and *Jews*, and in the latter the *Christians*, the whole being esteem'd 14 or 15 Thousand Inhabitants. The *Turks* have Four Mosques, one whereof was the Cathedral Church of *St. Mark*: And the *Christians* have several Churches and a Bishop. This is the Seat of the Captain *Bassa*, or Admiral of the *Turkish* Navy, who is Governor of this City and Island, and also of *Achaia*: And in the Harbour which is very safe and capacious; there constantly rides a large Fleet of Gallies, ready at all times to go out against the *Corfairs* or other Enemies. The City is so strong that it cost the *Turks* 40000 Men to take it: And when the *Venetians* attack'd it in the Year 1688. they were fain to leave it without Success.

*Caristo*, or *Castelrosso*, a good City with a Commodious Port on the Eastern Shore of the Island 50 miles distant from *Negropont*. And a few miles North from it, is the Promontory *Capherus* mention'd in Antiquity, on account of *Nauplius* the Father of *Palemedes*, who there drowned himself because *Ulysses* and *Diomedes* had escap'd him.

On the North-east of *Negropont* lies the Island *Scyros*, by *Ortelius* said to be the lurking-place of *Achilles*: It is of Triangular, or rather Pyramidal Form, with a Ridge of Mountains cross it Two ways, and has a Town of the same Name, with a safe Haven on the Western Shore, besides some Villages.

At some distance to the North-east, and in the Mouth of the Gulph of *Salonichi* lie a Cluster of Islands, among which *Pelagnisi*, olim *Alonesus*, *Sciatus*, now *Sciatta*, *Scopelius*, now *Scopulo*, are the chief, but they contain nothing memorable.

**LEMNOS**, now *Stalimene*, a large Fruitful and well Cultivated Island, seated in the North of the Ægean Sea, at an equal distance almost from the Coasts of *Greece*: *Natalia*, and *Thrace*, in the Latitude of 41 Degrees, the chief Town standing directly over-against *Monte Santo*, or Mount *Athos*, whose Shadow reaches to its Marker-place, tho' it be 86 mile distant, as some say, tho' by the Maps it does not appear to be above 60 miles. The Form of the Island is Quadrangular, and its extent about 25 miles over. The chief Town of the same Name stands on the West-shoar: It is a small City, and hath a good



Port. Opposite to it on the East-shoar stands *Mazdra* another good Town, near which is dug the *Terra Lemnia*, a sort of Mineral Earth reckon'd good against Poysons, Infections, &c. and is much esteem'd, being sent Abroad in small Pellets mark'd with a Publick Seal. This Island is noted in Antiquity for the fabulous Fall of *Dulcan*; and for the Entertainment of *Jasen*, and the *Agonauts* by *Hypsipyle*.

*Samothrace*, now *Samandracchi*, a small Island North from *Stalimene*, in the midit between that and *Terrace*, has plenty of Honey and Wild-Deer, but no convenient Port, nor frequented but by Pirates.

*Lemros*, *Imbros*, lies on the East of *Stalimene*, near the Mouth of the *Dardanelles*. It has a Castle on the Top of a Mountain, and a safe Port.

*Tafis*, *Thassus*, seu *Thalassia*, lies near the Coast of *Terrace*, about 12 Leagues North-west from *Stalimene*. It has a Town with a good Harbour on the North-shoar, and several Castles.

The other Islands in the *Archipelago*, as *Tenedos*, *Lesbos*, *Scio*, *Samos*, *Icaria*, *Pathmos*, *Lero*, *Chios*, *Astypaia*, *Carpethus*, and *Sporades*, being situate on the Coast of *Asia* are described there, as well as *Cyprus* and *Rhodes*; so we shall now proceed to speak of the rest of the *European Turkey*.

## CH A P. V.

*Of the Western Part of Turkey in Europe, comprehending the Province of Bosnia, with a small Part of Slavonia, and Hungary; as also of the Republick of Ragusa, and Dalmatia.*

HAVING Travell'd through *Hungary*, *Slavonia*, *Croatia*, and *Morlachia*; and begun our Account of *Turkey in Europe*, with *Greece*, because the most noble part of it: We Return now to speak of the other Provinces of that Empire; and here the Province of *Dalmatia* first offers it self; but that being mostly recover'd by the *Venetians*, the principal Cities of it have been described in our Account of the Dominions of that State; so that it is only necessary here to say, that

*DALMATIA* is seated along the Coasts of the *Adriatick Sea*, between *Albania* on the East, and *Morlachia* on the West, having *Bosnia* and *Servia* on the North, and the Sea on the South, except where *Ragusa* intervenes: It extends very much in Length even near 200 miles, but its Breadth is not above 30. or at most 40 miles.

The Soil of it is in some parts Mountainous, but otherwise very fertil, producing Corn, Wine, Oyl, Honey, and Wax.

This Province was part of the Ancient *ILLYRICUM*, but that extended much farther both West and East; for *Cluverius* tells us, That it was joyned to *Italy* on the West, being parted by the River *Arfis* in *Ifria*; thence by a Line drawn to that Ridge of Mountains that part *Morlachia* from *Croatia*; which Mountains divided it from *Pannonia* on the North, and Eastward it extended to Mount *Scardus*, now *Chimera*, and the River *Drilo*, now *Drin*, in *Albania*; and so comprehended the present *Morlachia*, *Dalmatia*, and part of *Albania*. But its Limits were often extended and restrain'd during the time of its being a Kingdom; which was suppress'd by the *Romans*, and *Illyricum* made a Province of their Empire, a little before the Third *Punic* War. Afterwards the *Dalmatians* asserted their Liberty, and were for some time a considerable People, extending their Country on all sides; but in the end it became part of the Eastern Empire till its Declension, when the *Slaves* made it part of their Kingdom. After-

wards the *Huns* over-run it; who committing Piracies on their Neighbours, were Attack'd and made Tributary by the *Venetians*. In Process of time *Dalmatia* became a separate Government under its own Dukes, of whom *Demetrius* was about the Year 1076, invested by the Pope with the Title of King. Upon the failure of his Line in 1310, it was claimed by the King of *Hungary* as part of the Kingdom of *Croatia*, and part of it was possess'd by him, and part by the *Venetians*. At present the *Venetians* have all the Coasts, and the Principal Cities; and the *Turks* the Skirt of the Upland Country on the Limits of *Bosnia*, and *Servia*.

The chief Towns Subject to the *Venetians*, as we have said in our Account of *Italy*, are,

<i>Zara</i> ,	} }	<i>Traw</i> ,
<i>Nona</i> ,		<i>Cliffa</i> ,
<i>Sebenico</i> ,		<i>Cattaro</i> .

Other chief Towns not mention'd there.

<i>Scardona</i> ,	} }	<i>Budoa</i> .
<i>Castel-novo</i> ,		

And the chief Towns Subject to the *Turks*, viz.

<i>Trebigna</i> ,	} }	<i>Antivari</i> .
<i>Narenza</i> ,		

*Scardona*, call'd *Skardin* by the *Slavonians*, is a place of great Antiquity; by *Ptolomy*, plac'd in *Liburnia*, by *Strabo* call'd *Scardo*, and *Scordona* by *Porphyrogenita*, formerly the Metropolis of *Dalmatia*, but now Ruinous; however the See of a Bishop Translated from *Belgrade*. It stands on the River *Kerka* in the Frontiers of *Morlachia* and *Bosnia*, 20 miles North from *Sebenico*. It was sold to the *Venetians* in 1411. by the *Wood* of *Bosnia*; but being afterwards taken by the *Turks*, was recover'd by the *Venetians* in 1683.

*Narenza*, or *Narenta*, which *P. Mela* calls *Nara*, and *Pliny* *Narena*, stands on the River *Naro*. 70 miles



miles East from *Spalatro*, and 40 North from *Ragusa*. It was anciently a very Great and Powerful City, having under its Jurisdiction (according to *Varro*) 89 Towns, and assum'd the Sovereignty of the Gulph of *Venice*, but was subdued by the *Venetians* in 987, and lost almost all its Ancient Splendor. It was an Episcopal See; but in 1479 the *Turks* took and still possess it. Near to this place there is a Plain 30 miles Long, and 2 miles Broad, which is very Fruitful, and produces plenty of Corn in Six Months of the Year; but constantly about the middle of *October* it is overflow'd, and continues so the other Six Months.

*Trebigna* stands 40 miles South-east from *Narenza*, and the Frontiers of *Ragusa*, Subject to the *Turks*. An Episcopal See, formerly Subject to the *Ragusiens*.

*Cafiel-Novo*, is seated on the West-side of the Gulph of *Cattaro*, 3 Leagues from its Mouth, 15 miles West from that City, and near 60 East from *Ragusa*. It is a very strong place, being Built on a Rocky Ground, and defended on the North-side by the Castle *Salimenega*. This Town was taken from the *Turks* in 1583, by the Confederate Forces, but lost the next year. But in the year 1687, the *Venetians* finally took and still possess it.

*Budsa*, mention'd by *Pliny*, *Ptolemy*, and *Stephanus*, under the Names of *Butua*, *Buina*, and *Buthaer*, is situated on the Sea-Coasts between the Gulph of *Cattaro*, and the Town of *Dolcigno*, about 20 miles East from the former. It is an Episcopal See, and Subject to the *Venetians*.

*Antivari*, *Antibarum*, stands on the Borders of *Albania*, of which it is sometime reckoned part, on the Coast in the midway between *Budsa* and *Dolcigno*. It was under the *Venetians* an Archiepiscopal See; but has been Subject to the *Turks* above an Age.

The Territory of the Republick of *RAGUSA*, lies on the Sea-Coasts, partly Island and Peninsula, and partly on the main Land of *Dalmatia*, which bounds it on the East, as the Bay of *Narenza*, and the Island *Lefina* do on the North, and the *Adriatick* Sea on the South. The Country is about 60 miles Long, but not proportionately Broad. The Soil is not over-fruitful, but the Country is reasonably Populous, and a well-govern'd Republick, but Tributary to the *Turks*, and often snubb'd by the *Venetians*, and insulted by other Princes. But they are so fond of their imaginary Liberty, that they will not be persuaded to put themselves under any Potent Master who could protect 'em. The Government is somewhat like that of *Venice*, except that thro' the jealousy of the Inhabitants, the Doge is changed every Month, as also the Governor of the Castle of *Ragusa*. This little Republick brags of Antiquity beyond *Venice*, and put it self (as *Sir P. Rycaut* says) under the Protection of the *Turks* before they were Masters of any part of *Europe*: And by the Treaty of *Carlowitz* this Sovereignty is particularly conserv'd by the *Turks*.

The chief Towns are,

*Ragusa*, } } *Sabioncello*.  
*Stagno*, }

*RAGUSA*, call'd by the *Slavonians* *Dubrounick*, suppos'd to be the Ancient *Epidaurus*; but as others, Built by the *Epidaurians* after the Destruction of their own City, whereof they say *Ragusi*

*Vecchio*, 2 miles from it is the Ruins. The City is not much above a mile in Compass, but Populous, the See of a Metropolitan, and one of the chiefest Marts in these Parts, having a safe and commodious Harbour on the *Adriatick* Sea, near 100 miles South-east from *Spalatro*, 60 West from *Cattaro*, as also 120 West from *Durazzo*. It is well Fortified with a strong Castle, a steep craggy Rock, and good Bulwarks, and Environ'd with large Suburbs. It hath also a Garrison of 200 Men, and the Burghers keep constant Guard. The Port is named *Santa Croce*, and is secur'd by the small Island *Lacroma*, which lies about half a mile from the Town on the one side, and a Cape of Land on the other, which is Fortified. This City was miserably shatter'd by an Earthquake on the 6th of *April* in the Year 1667, whereby the greatest part of it was destroy'd.

*Stagno*, *Stagnum*, a small City with a Commodious Harbour, and an Episcopal See, 20 miles North from *Ragusa*, at the Isthmus of the Peninsula, in whose Western Part, 25 miles from it stands *Sabioncello*, or *Sabio*, another good Town, with a Haven over-against the Island *Curzola*.

To the *Ragusiens* are also Subject,

The Islands, *Meleda* and *Augusta*, or *Austa*, both lying near the Coasts of the Peninsula; the former about 20 miles in Length with a Town of the same Name, is not above a League distant; the other lies to the West of it, and on the South of *Curzola*, not so large.

*Curzola* *Corcyra niger*, *Strab.* an Island larger than either of these, lies also not above a League or Two from the Western Coast of *Ragusa*, the chief Town of the same Name, being seated on the North-shoar over-against *Sabioncello*, formerly Subject to *Ragusa*, but now to the *Venetians*.

There are Three or Four other small Islands but not considerable.

## B O S N I A.

On the North of *Dalmatia* lies *Bosnia*, call'd *Woffen* by the *Germans*, between that and the River *Save*, which parts it from *Slavonia* on the North, as the River does it from *Servia* on the East, and the *Unna* from *Croatia* on the West. It was anciently that part of *Pannonia*, call'd *Inferior*, or *Secunda Consularis*, and took its present Name from the River *Bosna*, or *Possna*, which runs through some part of it, and falls into the *Save*. It was sometime an independent Kingdom; afterwards became Tributary to the *Hungarians*; and Lastly, was Subjected by the *Turks*, who still enjoy it.

The AIR is Sharp, but the SOIL produces some Corn, and some Mines of Gold and Silver. It is divided into the Upper and Lower; the former being the Southern part toward *Dalmatia*; the latter on the Banks of the *Save*.



The chief Towns are,  
 In the Upper } *Bagnaluzza*,  
                     } *Tina*.  
 In the Lower } *Jayga*,  
                     } *Bosna-Serps*.

*Bagnaluzza*, or *Benialuck*, stands on the Confines of *Dalmatia*, 30 miles North from *Spalato*. It was taken by the Turks in 1527, and is the Seat of their Governor.

*Tina*, is 30 miles West from *Bagnaluzza*, near the Head of the River *il Kirk*, and near the Confines of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, 30 miles North from *Sebenico*.

*Jayga*, *Gleza*, or *Galtia*, thought to be the Ancient *Amate*, stands upon a Hill 50 miles North from *Tina*, 20 South from the *Sava*, and near 40 East from *Witch* in *Croatia*. It was formerly the Metropolis of *Bosnia*, and Seat of their King, taken by the Turks, and recover'd by the Hungarians in the 15th Century; but finally reconquer'd by the Turks in 1530, and made the Seat of their *Sangiac*. It has a strong Castle, and other Fortifications for its Defence.

*Bosna-Serps*, or *Serps*, stands upon the River *Miglasa*, 75 miles East from *Jayga*, 25 South from the *Sava*, and 15 West from the Frontiers of *Serbia*. It is now reckon'd the chief Town of *Bosnia*.

### *Of the Part of Slavonia and Hungary granted to the Turks.*

By the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, it is agreed, That a Line drawn from the Bank of the *Tibisch*, opposite to *Tina*, and to that Angle of Land made by the Confluence of the *Tibisch*

and *Danube*, thence over the *Danube*, and thence over part of *Slavonia* to the place where the *Bessur* falls into the *Sava* (which is over-against the Limits of *Bosnia*,) shall be the Boundary of the Two Empires: That part toward *Belgrade* being Subject to the *Turk*, and the rest of *Slavonia* remain to the Empire. In the *Turkish* part stands no considerable City; *Sallankment*, *Semlyn*, and what else was worth notice, we have already mention'd in our account of *Slavonia* in General.

By the same Treaty of *Carlowitz*, it is also stipulated, That the Province subject to the Fortress of *Temeswar*, (which is the South-east Corner of *Hungary*, bounded by *Transylvania*, and *Wallachia* on the East and North-East, the River *Marisch* on the North, the River *Tibisch* on the West, and the River *Danube* on the South, shall remain under the Ottoman Dominion; and that the Imperialists shall demolish, *Carnafetes*, *Lippa*, *Czanad*, *Berscho*, *Sabla*, and Three or Four other places never to be Rebuilt. The Imperialists and Turks to enjoy in common the use of the Rivers *Marisch*, and *Tersze*, and the Islands which his Imperial Majesty hath therein shall remain in his possession.

*Temeswar*, the Capital of this Province, is a large and strong Town, seated on the River *Temes*, (whence it took its Name) near the Confines of *Transylvania*, 40 miles North-east from *Belgrade*, 75 from *Great-Waradin* to the South, and 130 from *Buda* to the South-east. It was taken by the Turks in 1552, after a Vigorous Defence, made by a Spanish Garison, then in the place, who contrary to Treaty, were all cut to pieces by the Turks. It has ever since been the Seat of a *Bassa*; and is so strongly Fortified, that they call it Invincible.

## CHAP. VI.

### *Of SERVIA and BULGARIA, olim Moesia, Superior & Inferior.*

THE Ancient *Moesia*, containing these two large Provinces, except the most Eastern part, on the Banks of the *Black Sea*, which was possess'd by the *Scythians*, and call'd *Scythia Pontica*. It was divided into the *Superior* or *Prima*, which is the present *Servia*; and the *Inferior* or *Secunda*, now *Bulgaria*; the Division being at the River *Cishus*. In the Upper bordering upon *Macedon*, liv'd the *Dardani*, whence the Country was Nam'd *Dardania*. In the Lower, which borders upon *Thrace*, the *Triballi* were the most noted Nation: these had the Honour to Vanquish *Philip* King of *Macedon*, in his Return through their Country, from an expedition into *Sarmatia*. Beyond them Eastward, lay the *Scythians*, of whom the most considerable part were the *Getae*, Inhabitants of both sides the *Danube*, in *Dacia*, as well as *Moesia*.

*M. Licinius Crassus* entirely Subdu'd it, to the Roman Empire; and afterwards the Upper *Moesia*

took the Name of *Servia*; and the Lower, that of *Bulgaria*; and became in time two Independent Kingdoms; which were finally Conquer'd, by *Mahomet II.* and are still subject to the *Turks*.

*SERVIA* lies Eastward from *Bosnia*, having the Rivers *Danube*, and *Sava*, on the North, *Albania* and *Macedon*, on the South, *Bulgaria* on the East, *Dalmatia* on the South-west, and *Slavonia* on the North-west, from which it is divided by the River *Sava*, as the River *Drina* is its division from *Bosnia*. Its extent is above 250 miles in length, from East to West; and 130 in breadth, from North to South. Being seated in Latitude from 43 to 45 Degree. And in Longitude from 37 to 43 Degree.

The AIR is Temperate and Healthy, and the SOIL so Fruitful that *Moesia* was call'd by the Romans, the Granary for Corn; but by reason of the severe Government of the *Turks*, it is not half Cult-



Cultivated. Dr. Brown tells us, 'tis a Fruitful and Pleasant Country, consisting of Plains, Woods, and Hills, which would produce Wine, Corn, and Metals, if duly Manur'd: It hath also excellent Horses; and is well Water'd with Rivers.

The INHABITANTS were always reckon'd a Barbarous Cruel sort of People, much inclin'd to Robbery and Drunkenness, and tho professing Christianity, according to the Greek Church, are often guilty of Selling Children to the Turks. There are Roman Catholicks among 'em, but the Greeks and Jews (who manage the Traffick) Inhabit the Cities, and the Turks the Burghs and Fortresses.

The chief Towns in Servia are,

Belgrade.	} }	Nissa.
Semendria.		Scopia.
Widin.		Novibazar.

BELGRADE, call'd by the Germans, *Greichs-Weisemburg*, and *Nandor A'ba* by the Hungarians, *Alba Græca*, aut *Alba Bulgaria*; suppos'd to be the ancient *Taurunum*, seeing that is plac'd in the *Peutingerian* Tables, 3 miles from the Confluence of the *Danube* and *Save*, at least it grew up out of its Ruins. It is seated on a Hill in the Country of *Rascia*, on the South side of the *Danube*, and East side of the *Save*, at the Confluence of those 2 Rivers; in the Latitude of 45 Deg. and Longitude 38 Deg. 30 Min. It is a large City, very well Fortifi'd, and admirably seated for Trade; having besides the *Danube*, the convenience of the *Save*, *Drave*, *Tibiscus*, and other Navigable Rivers, to convey the Commodities, which the Fertility of the Country would Produce, if it were Inhabited by a Virtuous, and Industrious People; under a regular, and Favourable Government. And in effect this is the greatest Mart in all these Parts, being Traded to by the *Ragufans*, by the Merchants of *Vienna*, who have Factories in this City, and by the *Armenians* and *Jews*, who are numerous here, especially the former who have a Church. *Belgrade* was formerly the Bulwark of *Hungary*. It resisted the 2 Sieges of *Amurath II.* in 1439. and *Mahomet II.* in 1456. but was at last taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in 1521. The *Turks* slighted it for many years, having Frontiers so much more advanc'd. But when the *Imperialists* had taken *Buda* in 1686. they thought of repairing these Fortifications, which they immediately set to work upon. But however could not make it strong enough to resist the *Christian* Army, who under the Duke of *Bavaria* sat down before it, and *Septemb. 6.* took it. But it was a place of too much Importance to the *Turks* to sit down with the loss of: wherefore in 1690. they Invested it with an Army of 60000 Men, under the Command of the Grand Visier. The Garison consisting of 6000 Men, made a brave Defence, till the Magazine was unhappily blown up by the fall of a Bomb, the Store-houses Fired, part of the Walls blown up, and the Trenches fill'd with Rubbish, which gave the *Turks* so much advantage, that they enter'd with Sword in Hand, and cut all the Garison off, except the Governor and 300 Men, who found means to escape. And it is now the Frontier of *Turky* on this side. The River *Danube* is very broad here, and its Stream so Rapid that it permits not the

Waters of the *Save* to mix with it, but (as Dr. Brown expresses it) cuts that River off, and the Waters of the one, and the other, are very visibly distinguish'd; that of the *Danube* being white and thick, and the *Save* green and clear.

*Semendria*, anciently a *Roman* Colony, and afterwards the Capital of *Servia*, but now ruinous, stands near the Banks of the *Danube*, 20 miles East from *Belgrade*; near this Place *Sigismond* King of *Hungary*, was defeated by the *Turks* in the year 1409. and in 1427. they took the Place; which the *Christians* beat 'em out of, after they had taken *Belgrade* in 1688. but 2 years after the *Turks* retook it by Storm, and put all the Garison to the Sword.

*Widin* or *Viddin*, seated on the *Danube* at the Mouth of the River *Lem*, is a Fortress of great moment, for Covering the adjacent Parts, which made Prince *Lewis* of *Baden*, after he had beaten the *Turks* in 1689. and soon after taken *Nissa*, to march with a Party of *Germans* in the Month of *October* that year, to this place, which he took by Surprise; but the Castle held out for some time, which however was forc'd to submit to the Conqueror; and they held it till the year 1690. It stands 150 miles east from *Belgrade*, and about 70 North from *Nissa*. In the Neighbourhood of this Town, has happen'd several Battles, viz. in 1443. the Memorable one of *Hunniades*, who set upon the *Turks* by Night, and kill'd 30000 of them. In 1595. the *Turks* lost 19000 in Battle at a little distance from this place. And at the taking of the Town above mention'd, Prince *Lewis* slew 2000 of those that made defence.

*Nissa*, seated on a River of the same Name, which falls into the *Morawa*, the chief River of this Country, at the distance of 140 miles South-east from *Belgrade*, and 60 South from the *Danube*. It is a Town of Strength, and great Importance, and was the most advanc'd Town that the *Christian* Army Possess'd in their Progress in this Province. A. 1689. Prince *Lewis* of *Baden* with an Army of 15000. fought the *Turks* near it, entirely defeated their Army of 80000 Men, and immediately took Possession of the Town, which was reasonably well Fortified. But in the year 1690. the *Turks* retook it after a Siege of 3 weeks; and soon after the Frontiers of *Turky* were again extended to *Belgrade*, tho on this loss, the *Turks* were ready to accept Peace on any Terms. But it pleas'd God to Order it otherwise, and permit this Province to be still subject to these Arbitrary Masters.

*Scopia* or *Uscopia*, *Scupi*, *Ptol.* a City of great Trade, and the Largest in these Parts, as Dr. Brown says, is seated in a pleasant and plentiful Country, partly Hills, and partly Plains, on the River *Vardar* or *Axius*, at the Foot of Mount *Orbelus*, near the Confines of *Macedon*, 60 miles from *Nissa*, and 120 from the *Danube* to the South, 60 from *Sophia* to the West, and 100 from *Salonichi* to the North-west. It is a populous place, adorn'd with fair Houses, many Mosques, and delightful Walks all round it. 'Tis also a place of considerable Commerce, between *Bulgaria*, *Macedonia*, and *Belgrade*, and has Streets of Shops cover'd over, as the manner is at *Belgrade*, and other Trading Cities of *Turky*. When *Mahomet I.* Conquer'd it, he plac'd here a Colony of *Asiaticks*, which with *Jews* were its chief Inhabitants. Before that it had been an *Archi-Episcopal* See. In the year 1689. the *Turks* abandon'd this City, and



General *Picoimini* took possession, but because it was not strong enough to hold, he burnt and left it.

### BULGARIA, *five Mœsia Inferior.*

Eastward from *Servia*, along the Southern Banks of the *Danube*, quite to the *Black Sea* lies *Bulgaria*, bounded on the South by a Ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Thrace* or *Romania*. Its Extent is more in length than *Servia*, being near 300 miles from East West; but in breadth 'tis not above 60 in the Middle part, but near twice as much at each end. It hath high Mountains, fruitful Vallies, plenty of Oxen and Sheep, and in General a good Fertile Country. Formerly subject to its own Kings, now the *Turks*; and Inhabited by *Greek Christians*, as well as *Turks* and *Jews*.

The chief Cities are

<i>Sophia.</i>	<i>Axiopoli.</i>
<i>Silistria.</i>	<i>Proslaviza.</i>
<i>Nigeboli.</i>	<i>Baba.</i>
<i>Ternova.</i>	<i>Magneglia.</i>
<i>Higrad.</i>	<i>Varna.</i>
<i>Dorostero.</i>	<i>Mesember.</i>

*Sophia*, or *Sofia*, otherwise call'd *Triadizza*, the Capital of this Province, is seated on the River *Ichar*, in a spacious Plain, near Mount *Hemus*, at an equal distance from the Confines of *Servia*, *Romania* and *Macedon*, being 65 miles distant from *Scopia* to the East, 110 from *Salonichi* to the North, 90 from the *Danube* to the South, and 100 from *Phillipoli* in *Romania* to the West. It is a large populous and well built City, on the Road from *Constantinople* to *Belgrade*; the Seat of the Beglerbeg of *Rumeli*, but however destitute of Walls. It was anciently Nam'd *Sardica*, and took its present Name (as is generally believ'd) from *Sophia* the Wife of the Emperor *Justinian*, in whose Honour that Prince Re-founded it. It was for some time the See of an Archbishop, and was famous for a General Council held in it, in the year 347.

*Silistria*, a large City, the second of Note in *Bulgaria*, and by some reckon'd as the Capital, and the Seat of a *Turkish* Sangiack. Stands on the River *Abis*, or *Jatrus*, 25 miles North from *Sockia*, and 25 South from the *Danube*. *Sanfon* Places this City on the *Danube*, 150 miles more East, but with what reason, I can't tell, since all other Maps and Writings Place it as we have said.

*Nicopolis* or *Nigeboli*, and by the *Turks* *Sciltaro*, stands on the *Danube*, at the Mouth of the *Jatrus*, or *Ischar*, 25 miles North from *Silistria*. *Quintus* calls it *Gemina*, major & minor, quas *Danubius* interfluit; but as no Maps express so much, nor other Authors mention it, we must leave it to the Readers further search. It was built by the Emperor *Trajan*, after the Defeat of King *Decebalus*; and as *Baudrand* tells us, was an Archi-Episcopal See, in its *Christian* State. Near this Place *Sigismond* King of *Hungary*, was unfortunately Defeated, by *Bajazett* the *Turkish* Emperor, in the year 1396. which was owing more to the Divisions among the *Christians*, than the Bravery of the *Turks*; for as History relates there fell 60000 of the *Turks*, and 20000 of the *Christians*.

*Ternova*, another good City, stands on the River *Fantra* near Mount *Hemus*, about 20 miles from the Confines of *Romania*, 30 from *Silistria* to the East, and 40 from the *Danube* to the South. *Ferrarius* calls it, Archi-Episcopal, and the Metropolis of *Bulgaria*.

*Dorostero*, *Dorostorus*, *Dorostolon* aut *Dorostena*, formerly a considerable City, and a Bishop's See, now a Village only, seated near the *Danube*, 130 miles East from *Silistria*.

*Axiopoli* stands also on the *Danube*, 30 mile below *Dorostero*.

Towns in Bulgaria, on the Coasts of the Black-Sea, are

*Tomis*, *Tomisware* or *Balla*, seated in an Island made by the Mouths of the *Danube*, is the Place to which the Poet *Ovid* was Banish'd.

*Proslaviza* or *Chiustenge*, olim *Istropolis* stands at the Mouth of the South Branch of the *Danube*.

*Magneglia*, 20 miles more to the South, a small Port.

*Varna*, the *Dionysiopolis* of *Pliny*, stands upon the River *Zyza*, a few miles from Sea. A few miles from it a notable Battle was fought in the year 1444. between the *Turks* and *Christians*, wherein *Lewis* King of *Hungary* was kill'd. It stands in the Midway between *Magneglia* and *Mesember*.

*Mesember*, *Mesembria*, ut & *Menebria*, *Strabo*, *Mesambria*, *Herod.* Stands on the Confines of *Romania*, and on a small Bay, which is an ancient Port, mention'd by *Historians*, as the People about are by the Poet *Ovid*. *Ferrarius* calls it *Urbs Archi-Episcopalis*, but whether it be so still we dare not say.



CHAP. VII.

Of ROMANIA aut THRACIA. And of the Greek and Turkish Emperors.

**T**HIS Country had its first Name, as tis thought, from *Thrace* the Son of *Mars*; or as others, from the sharpness of the Air, and the rough Temper of the People, *quasi Tερχία aspera regio*, a sharp or cruel Country; Thus *Cluverius*. The Name of *Romania* was given it by the Emperors, when they had establish'd their Throne here: And since the *Turks* Conquer'd it, tis Named *Rumeli*.

It is a large Country, bounded on the North by Mount *Hemus*, call'd by the *Greeks* *Balkan*, *Sclavonians* *Cumoniça*, *Italians* *Monte Argentaro* or *Costonazza*, a long continu'd Ridge of high Mountains, which divide this Province from *Bulgaria*, on the South by the *Archipelago*, on the East the *Propontis*, and *Bosphorus*, and the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and on the West by *Macedon* and *Bulgaria*. Its utmost extent from East to West, is near 300 miles, that is from the City of *Constantinople*, to the Confines of *Macedon*: And its breadth is about 150 miles. The Air is Cold, but the Soil however produces plenty of good Corn and Pasture, and some, but very little, Wine. In the Mountains are Mines of Silver, Lead and Alom. It was anciently divided among many Nations or People, even no less than 50 according to *Pliny*. Afterwards made Tributary to the *Macedonians*; then Conquer'd by the *Romans*, under *Caius Scribonius Curio* Proconsul; long possess'd by the Eastern Emperors; and lastly Conquer'd by the *Turks*, who have Govern'd it for near 250 years past. The chief River is the *Meriza*, olim *Habrus*, which takes its rise at the foot of Mount *Rhodope*, near the Confines of *Macedon*, passes by *Philippipoli* and *Adrianople*, and falls at last into the *Archipelago*; in this River 'tis said Gold Sand is sometimes found.

The *Christian* Religion, according to the *Greek Church*, is generally Profess'd, notwithstanding that the Government is all *Mahometan*: there are also many *Jews*, and some *Papists*.

The chief Cities are,

<i>Janicoli.</i>	}	<i>Scutari.</i>
<i>Philippipolis.</i>		<i>Abdera.</i>
<i>Nicopoli.</i>		<i>Gallipoli.</i>
<i>Adrianople.</i>		<i>Sestos.</i>
<i>Trajanople.</i>	}	<i>Selivera.</i>
<i>Constantinople.</i>		<i>Rudisto.</i>
<i>Galata.</i>		

*Janicoli* or *Nonocolo*, stands on the River *Meriza*, on the Road between *Sophia* and *Philippipoli*, 60 miles East from the former, and 40 West from the latter.

*Philippipoli*, or *Philiba*, olim *Trimontium*, a large City, but without Walls, seated also on the *Meriza*, near 60 miles East from the Confines of *Bulgaria*, and as many North from the *Archipelago*. It is an Archiepiscopal See, and was taken by the

*Turks* in the Year 1360, who have ever since held it.

*Nicopoli* stands near the Confines of *Macedon*, 20 miles from the *Archipelago*, and 40 South from *Philippipoli*.

*Adrianople*, or *Adrinopolis*, call'd *Endrem* & *Drenale*, took its Name from the Emperor *Adrian*, by whom it was Repair'd in the Year 122, and is Seated on the River *Meriza* in the middle of the Province, 130 miles from the Confines of *Bulgaria* to the East, 150 from *Constantinople* to the West, 70 from the *Archipelago* to the North, and 60 from Mount *Hemus* to the South. It is a large well-built City in a wholesome Air, esteem'd the Second of *Romania*; and before the taking of *Constantinople* was the Seat of the *Turkish* Emperor, after the year 1362, in which they took it: And it is still very frequently honoured with his Presence, especially during the late War, and at any time when the Plague rages at *Constantinople*.

*Trajanople*, so named from the Emperor *Trajan*, being before call'd *Zermis*, stands on the *Meriza*, 50 miles South from *Adrianople*; it was formerly a considerable City, and the See of an Archbishop, but is now dwindled into a small Town.

*Abdera* or *Asperosa*, Seated on the Coast of the *Archipelago*, 70 miles South-west from *Adrianople*, and 50 West from the Mouth of the River *Meriza*, and about 15 from the *Bistonian* Lake. It is more notable for Antiquity than its present State. It was Built by *Abderus* the Son of *Diomedes*, or *Abdera* the Sister of *Diomedes*, according to *Solinus* and others. Again it is by others imputed to *Abderus* one of the Companions of *Hercules*, torn to pieces by *Diomedes* Horses; and was once in so good Estate as to be proverbially call'd *Abdera* the Beautiful. It was the Birth place of *Democritus* the Philosopher, who put out his Eyes that he might the better Contemplate, as also of *Protagoras* the Philosopher. The Inhabitants were addicted to Frenzy and Lunacy, which occasion'd the Proverb *Abderetica mens* to denote a Lunatick.

*Gallipoli*, a large City with a Castle, Magazine and Fortification, and a good Port in the Mouth of the *Dardanells* and *Propontis*, stands in the *Thracian Chersonesus* or *Peninsula* over-against *Lampsaco* in *Asia*, at the Mouth of the Straight call'd the *Dardanells* or *Hellepont* toward the *Propontis* or Sea of *Mamora*, 110 miles S. W. from *Constantinople*, and 130 S. E. from *Adrianople*. This place was heretofore much more considerable than at present; for tho' it be 5 or 6 miles in compass, it is not proportionately populous: The Inhabitants are reckon'd about 20000, whereof two Thirds are *Turks*, and the rest *Christians* and *Jews*. It hath two Bays convenient for Gallies, whereof that on the South-side is capable of Ships of Burden. And on the Shoar are some dry Stations for Ships. The Town appears more advantageously from without than within side; for the high Steeples of the Mosques, and the Cupolas of the *Bezestans*, or places of



Trade like Exchanges, both here and in all the chief Cities in *Turky*, make a fine Show at a distance; whereas within the Towns the Houses being low, Built of Wood and Earth; the Streets narrow and cover'd, make but an ordinary appearance. This is the Seat of the *Beglerbeg* of the Islands the Prefect of these Seas.

Sees the Ancient Town and Castle, the Ruins whereof still appear 25 miles South from *Gallipoli*, over-against *Abydos* on the *Asian* Shoar call'd the *Dardanelis*, famous for *Xerxes*-Bridge here over the *Hellepont*; and for the Story of *Hero* and *Leander*. These two Castles serve to command the passage of this narrow Straigh<sup>t</sup>, and secure *Constantinople* on this side, as do those on the *Thracian Bosphorus* on the other side of the *Propontis*.

*Rudiste*, or *Rodesto*, a City of good Trade, having a Commodious Haven on the *Propontis* 20 Leagues North from *Gallipoli*.

*Selivra*, another Port and large Trading City on the *Propontis* 12 Leagues North-east from *Rudiste*, and as many West from *Constantinople*.

The *Propontis* on which these Towns as well as *Constantinople* are Seated, otherwise called the Sea of *Marmora*, flows between the Archiepelago, and the *Euxine* or Black Sea, to both which it communicates only by Two narrow Straights; that on the South is the *Hellepont*, of which we have been speaking; the other on the North is the *Bosphorus* of *Thrace*, which leads to the Black Sea, both these Straights are very narrow, especially the latter; so that the *Propontis* seems but a Lake, the *Asian* Land, and the Cape on which *Constantinople* stands surrounding it except where these two Channels have broke through. It's 140 miles from East to West, and 60 from North to South.

**CONSTANTINOPLE** is Seated in *Europe*, very near the Shoar of *Asia*, on a Point or Tongue of Land that juts out into the Sea of *Marmora*, in a Triangular Figure, Six miles Long, and Fourteen in Compass, Two of its sides being washed by the Sea. At the distance of about Twenty miles it affords a Prospect of the finest Landskip in the World, to the Wonder and Astonishment of all those who look upon it; for it lies along the Shoar for above Six miles, and so situated sloping towards the Sea, that you perceive at once an infinite Number of Mosques, adorned with high Domes covered with Lead, and high Towers but especially with a lovely Prospect of the *Castle of the Seven Towers*, and of the *Seraglio*, which are particularly remarkable, both for their Largeness, and the vast number of gilt Globes and Spires resembling little Steeples. But it appears much more Glorious and Delightful without than it does within; for the Houses are generally of Wood, and the Streets so narrow, that in the greatest part of 'em Two loaded Horses cannot go a-breast; and their Houses jut out so far near the Top, that in several places one may step from one Window to another; which exposes it to the fatal Inconveniences of Fire, which breaks out frequently, and proceeds irresistibly till it meets with some Garden or empty place, where there are no Houses to be burnt: And besides, this sort of Architecture is very offensive to the Eye; for the Streets are extremely disfigured by this Irregularity: Nor have their Houses any External Ornament; for they are made for the most part of rough unplann'd Wood, daub'd over with nasty Red Paint, and look very ugly.

This City was founded by *Pausanias* King of *Sparta*, about 660 years before the Birth of Christ, and was called *Byzantium*; which Name it retained till *Constantine the Great*, resolving to make it the Metropolis of the World, ordered it to be Rebuilt with all imaginable Magnificence, and called it *Constantinople*, or *Constantine's Town*; but the *Turks* call it *Stambul*. The *French* in Conjunction with the *Venetians*, took it in the year 1203, and Fifty years after 'twas re-taken by the *Greeks*, who remained Masters of it till the year 1453, when it fell into the hands of *Mahomet II.* and at present it is the Capital City of the *Ottoman* Empire. The Air is so extremely pure here, that the Inhabitants are never Subject to any Reigning Disease except the Plague, which once every year sweeps off vast Numbers of 'em. The Walls which surround this City at present are the same that were built by *Constantine the Great*, except in some places where they have been repaired. They are double on one side next the Land, with Battlements after the Oriental Fashion, and Towers from place to place; and besides they are defended with a lin'd but shallow Ditch. These, with the *Castle of the Seven Towers*, are also the strength of *Constantinople*; for the Inhabitants, not being accus<sup>tom'd</sup> to War, would only serve to hasten a Famine; and Bombs would make terrible Work, considering the Manner and Materials of their Houses.

The Places and Things most worth seeing are, 1. The *Beseftin*, which is a distinct Canton of the City, enclosed with Walls and Gates, where all the Merchants keep Shops. This is the finest and most regular place in *Constantinople*: It is divided into Streets, and covered above with Planks, joyned together with Rafter<sup>s</sup>, which form a kind of Roof sufficient to secure them against all the Inconveniences of bad Weather. The Merchants in these Shops keep only a Pattern of what they have in their Warehouses. In one part of it there are Goldsmiths, in another Drapers, in another Mercers, and so all other Shopkeepers. And this is the only place in *Constantinople* where there are Shops; for the rest of the City consists of little narrow Streets so desolate, that one may see more Streets than Persons as he passes along. The Second place remarkable, is the *Hippodrome*, which was Built by the Emperor *Constantine* for Exercises on Horseback, and is still called the *Place of Horses*. It is an Oblong Square 400 Paces Long, and about 200 Broad: In the End of which that is opposite to the *Seraglio*, there are Two Obelisks, one of 'em consisting of one Stone, is 70 Foot high. The Third thing remarkable is, the Church of *Santa Sophia*, which questionless hath lost much of its Magnificence, and is now the principal Mosque of the City. It is at present 120 Paces Long, and 50 Broad. The Walls are square, but the Vault or Roof is round, and so Artificially contrived, that so large a Structure is supported without any Columns; for those Rows of Columns that form the Two lower Porticos, serve only for Ornament, and are so placed, that they cannot be suppos'd to carry any other weight than that of Two Galleries, and even the greatest part of these Columns are so old, that they are forced to bind them about with great Iron Hoops to prevent their falling. At the Four Corners of the Building where the Vault begins to be round, the *Four Beasts* mentioned in the *Apocalypse* are painted in *Mosaick*; but the *Turks* have disfigured these, as they have done the Image of



of our Saviour, which is over the principal Door. This Temple is paved with very fine Marble, Covered with Mats by reason of the Coldness of the Marble, which might incommodate these who come to pay their Devotion, who always put off their Shoes before they enter. This Mosque is the only Ancient Structure of that Nature in *Constantinople*; for all the rest were built in this and the last Age, by the *Sultans* or *Sultaneſſes*, whose Names they bear, the finest of which is that Built by the *Sultan's Valide*, Mother of *Sultan Mahomet IV.* The *Grand Signior's Arsenal* is at the end of the Port beyond *Cassum-pacha* and *Galata*, and contains a considerable Extent of Ground. The Gallies are laid up under 120 Arches; and 'tis said there are Arms in it for 60000 Men; but no Christian is allowed to see them. The *Seraglio*, so much admired and talk'd of by those who never saw it, is Built on a Point of Land that juts out into the Sea, and is surrounded with high Walls, with a Parapet at the Top, and Battlements like those of the City. It is almost Four miles in compass, the greatest part of which is taken up with Gardens. The Structure is irregular, and is nothing but a vast heap of Buildings, not unlike to some old Castles in *Christendom*. The principal Entry is near *Sancta Sophia*, and exactly resembles the Gate of an old paltry Town without Architecture or Ornament. On the Right-hand of the first Court, there are Apartments for the Sick, who are lodged as poorly as if it were in an Hospital. On the other hand are Magazines for 1000 Men, in case the *Grand Signior* had occasion at any time to arm his Domestick Servants for the Security of his person. In the next Court are the *Grand Signior's* Kitchens on one side, and Stables on the other for 100 Horses. Very near this *Seraglio*, and within the same Inclosure, stands the Old *Seraglio*, where the Wives of the *Sultan's* Predecessors are kept, and in a Third *Seraglio* the present *Sultan's* Wives are Lodged, joyn'd close to that of the *Grand Signior*. But a longer account of this famous place is not easy to be given, since few are allowed to survey it all, and besides by this time 'tis like the Reader has enough on't.

But above all those things that are to be seen about this City, the Harbour, which is called the Port by way of Excellency, is the most agreeably surprizing. 'Tis Three miles Long, and almost One Broad, clean and deep throughout, even to the Shoar, the largest Ship coming up to the Land. At the Entry into it there is a high square Tower, commonly called the Tower of *Leander*, from a person of that Name; who, as the Story goes, used to swim thither every Night to his Mistress, who was Imprisoned in the Tower.

It would be too tedious, and would swell the Description of this City, beyond what the Nature of this Work will allow, if we should relate all the various Accidents and Revolutions that have happened in it, from the time that *Constantine the Great* removed thither from *Rome*, till *Mahomet II.* Emperor of the *Turks* made himself absolute Master of it, on the 27th of May 1453, after having Slain *Constantine XV.* and last of the *Grecian* Emperors.

*Constantinople* stands in the Latitude of 41 Degrees, and 30 Minutes, and Longitude of 49 Degrees, and 30 Minutes: On the *Propontis* on one side, and the *Thracian Bosphorus* on the other, by which it is separated from *Asia*, but at so little distance, that common Boats pass over; and *Scutari* on the *Asian* side is reckon'd a Suburbs to it, as is also

*Galata* adjoining to *Constantinople* on the North-side the Port: It stands on the South-side of a steep Hill, which jets out a Promontory into the *Bosphorus*. It is a City of its self, being surrounded with Walls and large Suburbs, exceeding Populous, and chiefly inhabited by *Christians* and *Jews*. It is a place of great Trade, and hath a *Caravanſerai*, or Publick Store-house wherein the Merchants Lodge their Goods: It is handsomely Built and well Adorn'd with Cupola's, &c. On the Top of the Hill stands a round Tower adorn'd with Spires, and might be intended for a Fortress. On the North-side of *Galata* lies the Suburb

- *Pera*, by which Name is sometime understood all *Galata*. It consists of one large Street running Northward, with divers cross ones, and is honoured with the Residence of the Christian Ambassadors.

*Scutari*, or *Scudaret*, is Seated on the *Asian* Shoar over-against the Port between the Two Promontories of the *Seraglio* and *Galata*. It is a large Town, suppos'd to be the *Chrysopolis*, and *Diana Forum* of the Ancients, although there be now no Remains of Antiquity. It is Adorn'd with a Royal Mosque, Built and Endowed by the *Sultan's* Mother: As also a Palace or House of Pleasure of the *Grand Seignior's*. Not far from hence on the Brow of a Hill may be seen one of the most beautiful Prospects in the World; for the City of *Constantinople*, *Galata*, and *Pera*, the *Bosphorus*, and the *Propontis*, with the Country about on both Shoars may be seen at once.

*Constantinople* thus encreas'd with *Scutari*, *Pera*, *Galata*, as also *Cassum Pacha*, and *Tophana*, which all lie contiguous, may be reckon'd one of the largest Cities in the World, being thought to be near twice as big as *London*.



*A Chronological Table shewing the Succession of the Emperors of Constantinople, or of the East, from Constantine the Great, to Constantine Palæologus, Depos'd by the Turks.*

1	Constantine the Great
2	Constantius
3	Galius
4	Julian the Apostate
5	Jovian
6	Valentinian
7	Valens
8	Procopius
9	Theodosius the Great
10	Arcadius disposse'd by
11	Rufinus and
12	Gainas
13	Theodosius the Younger
14	Marcianus
15	Leo the Elder
	Asper & Patricius
16	Zeno the Isaurian
17	Basilicus
18	Marcianus and Procopius
19	Leontius
20	Anastatius
	Longinus
21	Justin the Elder
22	Justinian
23	Justin the Younger
24	Tiberius
25	Mauritius
26	Phocas
27	Heraclius
28	Constantine II.
29	Heracleonas
30	Constans
31	Constantius Pagonatus
32	Justinian Rhinotmetus
33	Leontius
34	Tiberius Apfimaros
35	Justinian Rhinotmetus, Re-establish'd
36	Philippicus Bardanes
37	Artemius or Anastasius II.
38	Theodosius of Adrianetum
39	Leo the Isaurian
40	Constantine Copronymus
41	Leo Chazarus
42	Constantine the Son of Irene
43	Irene
44	Nicephorus
	Stauracius
45	Michael Rhangabes
46	Leo V.
47	Michael the Stammerer
48	Theophilus
49	Michael the Drinker
	Bordas.
50	Basilus the Macedonian
51	Leo the Philosopher
52	Alexander the Son of Basilus
53	Constantine Porphyrogenetus
	Romanus Lecaperius
	Constantinus
	Stephanus
54	Romanus the Younger
55	Nicephorus Phocas
56	John Zimisces

A. C.

312

337

351

365

367

368

364

364

370

383

395

401

408

450

457

474

475

479

487

491

518

527

566

578

582

602

610

641

641

641

669

685

694

698

703

711

713

714

716

741

775

780

797

802

57	Basilus II. the Conqueror of the Bulgarians	975
58	Constantine the Younger	1025
59	Romanus Agrinopolis	1028
60	Michael the Paphlagonian	1034
61	Michael Calaphates	1041
62	Constantine Monomachus	1042
63	Zoe and Theodorus	1054
64	Michael Stratonicus	1056
65	Isaac Comnenus	1057
66	Constantine Ducas	1059
67	Romanus Diogenes	1068
68	Michael Parapinaceus	1071
69	Nicephorus Botaniates	1078
	Michael Ducas, and Constantine.	
70	Alexis Comnenus	1081
71	John Comnenus or Calo Johannes	1118
72	Manuel Comnenus	1143
73	Alexis Comnenus the Younger	1180
74	Andronicus Comnenus	1182
75	Isaacius Angelus	1185
76	Alexis Angelus the Tyrant	1195
77	Alexis the Younger	1203
78	Alexis Ducas Murzuffle	1204

*The 5 French Emperors of Constantinople.*

79	Baldwin I.	1204
80	Henry	1206
81	Peter de Courtenay	1217
82	Robert de Courtenay	1224
83	Baldwin II. who in 1261. lost Constantinople.	1234

*The other Grecian Emperors.*

84	Theodorus Lapharis	1204
85	John Ducas	1222
86	Theodorus the Younger	1255
87	John the Blind	1258
88	Michael Palæologus	1259
89	Andronicus Palæologus the Elder	1283
	Michael.	
90	Andronicus Palæologus the Younger	1327
91	John Cantacuzenus	1341
92	John Palæologus I.	1355
93	Manuel Palæologus	1384
94	John Palæologus II.	1419
95	Constantine Palæologus Dracofes	1438

The City of Constantinople was taken by Mahomet II. Emperor of the Turks. A. D. 1453.

*The Turkish Emperors that have Reign'd here, are*

1	Mahomet II.	1450
2	Bajazet II.	1481
3	Selim	1512
4	Solyman II.	1520
5	Selim II.	1566
6	Amurath II.	1574
7	Mahomet III.	1595
8	Achmet	1604
9	Osman	1617
10	Mustapha	1622
11	Amurath IV.	1623
12	Ibrahim	1640
13	Mahomet IV. Depos'd.	1648
14	Solyman III.	1687
15	Achmet II.	1691
16	Mustapha II. now Reigning	1694
	Of	



Of the Government and Customs of the Turks.

This Empire was Founded by *Ottoman* or *Osman*, the First, about the Year of our Lord 1300. and its Seat was at first Establish'd at *Prusa*, a City of *Bythinia* in *Asia Minor*, which they took in the Year 1325, afterwards it was Translated to *Adrianople* in *Thrace*, and at last fix'd at *Constantinople*; where generally their Emperor, whom we commonly call the *Grand Signior*, keeps his Court, and from whence he issues out his Absolute and Uncontroulable Commands over all those vast Dominions that are under his Jurisdiction in *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Asia*. For according to the Primitive and Fundamental Constitution of the Government, the *Turkish Empire* is absolutely and intirely *Despotic*; that is, the Supreme and Arbitrary Power is lodg'd in the person of the Emperor, whose Will is the only Law by which he Rules, and who acknowledges no other Maxim of Government than *sic volo, sic jubeo*. He is not curb'd by any Written Law or Custom, and those whom he oppresses have not so much as a Right to complain. He may take away any Man's Estate, and either keep it, or give it to another. Sometimes he passes by the most Ancient *Bassa's*, and in one day advances a simple *Chiaux*, or even a Cook to the Dignity of *Grand Visier*. He can and does send for the Heads of those he has a mind to be rid of, who are murder'd without any Tryal or Form of Justice, and even without knowing the reason of his Displeasure, which sometimes is more than he knows himself. In a word, his pleasure is the Supreme and Uncontroulable Law. This unlimited Power of the Sultan is Founded on the *Mahometan* Religion, which enjoyns a blind Obedience to all his Commands under the pain of Damnation.

The *Grand Visier* is the chief Minister of State, and is called *King* by the *Turks*, to shew how much their *Sultans* slight and undervalue that Title, in imitation of the old *Roman Emperors* who bestow'd Kingdoms on their Favourites. The *Grand Visier* is intrusted with the whole Management of Affairs, and his power is almost equal to the Sultan's. He is in a great Measure the Arbiter of Peace and War, and creates the Fortune of all the great Officers in the Empire. 'Tis true, he ought to do nothing without the Advice of a Council compos'd of Seven *Bassa's*, call'd the *Visiers of the Bench*; but they have only the Shadow of Authority, which scarce deserves to be mention'd.

The next to the *Vizier Azem*, or first *Visier*, are the several *Beglerbegs* (which as *Sir Paul Rycaut* observes, may not unaptly be compar'd to Archdukes in some parts of *Christendom*) having under their Jurisdiction many *Sangiacks* or Provinces, *Beyes*, *Aga's*, and others; to every one of these the Grand Signior in Honour gives Three Staves trimm'd with the Tail of a Horse, to distinguish them from *Bassa's*, who have only two.

The next in order are the *Bassa's*, who are a sort of Vice-Roys in the Provinces. Their Office is to Administer Justice exactly, and to keep the People in Subjection to the Government. But they often abuse their Authority, and exercise more Arbitrary Power and Tyranny over the People than the Grand Signior himself. Every *Bassa* maintains a certain Number of standing Forces at his own Charge, who are always at his Command upon all Occasions, being well paid, which the Emperor's Army sometimes is not for want of Money. This is the fatal source of all those Seditions that have so often shaken, and will at last over-turn the Empire. A Prince that would secure the Loyalty of his Forces must take care of 'em himself, visit 'em often, give out all Orders, prefer Men of Knowledge, keep both the Officers and Soldiers under an exact Discipline, and pay 'em punctually. The Grand Seignior observes not one of these, and therefore he may blame himself for the unruliness of his Army. The fate of Monarchs depends on their Armies, and without these neither *Alexander*, *Cæsar*, nor *Lewis XIV.* could have made such Conquests; or the Confederates in the late War been able to put a stop to his growing and formidable Power.

There are Two sorts of *Beglerbegs*, says *Sir Paul Rycaut*; the first is call'd *Has ile Beglerbeglik*, which have a certain Rent assign'd them out of the Cities, Countries, and Signiories allotted to the Principality; the second is call'd *Saliane Beglerbeglik*, who have a certain Salary Collected by the Grand Signior's Officers, with the Treasure of the whole Government, out of which also are paid the *Sangiack Beglers*, that is the Lords of the several Counties, Towns, and Cities, and the Militia of the Country. Of the first sort he reckons up 22. and of the other 6. for a particular account of both which, we must refer the Reader to the foresaid Author's *Present State of the Ottoman Empire*; where he may also find an account of all the other inferior Officers belonging to that Government.

As to the Manners and Customs of the *Turks*, they are opposite to us almost in every thing. We content our selves with one Wife, they marry several Wives; Our Habit is short, theirs long. We wear our Hair long, and our Beards shav'd, they shave their Hair, and suffer their Beards to grow: We write in a strait Line from Left to Right, and they in a crooked from Right to Left. And it were easy to add several other Instances of the same Nature, since the Opposition reaches even to the meanest Actions, such as the easing of Nature; for they crouch down to piss, like Women; and when they have done rub their Privities on a Wall which they think pacifies 'em. They obstinately adhere to their Ancient Customs, and accuse the *Franks* of *Fickleness* and *Inconstancy*, and boast of their strength of Mind, that fixes on solid Enjoyments, and take no notice of Trifles; but one that seriously considers the Genius of this Nation will easily find, That what they call *Strength of Mind, Constancy, and Solidity*, is at the bottom (as the *Sieur du Mont* observes) nothing else but a *pure Insensibility*, and a Weakness that is altogether inexcusable in any reasonable Creature. They are so far from endeavouring to improve their understanding, that one would think they affected Ignorance, and are so little



little acquainted with the Transactions of the World, that many of 'em scarce know the Name of the Reigning *Sultan*. They never publish any Books, Journals, Gazetts, or the leſt account of Publick Affairs. They are much addicted to the Study of Magical Divination, and of the Philoſophers Stone. They are ſurprizingly negligent of the Publick Intereſt, and in that reſpect, run exactly Counter to the Maxims that are obſerv'd in all Well-govern'd States. If we conſider this incurable Flaw in their Government, we may venture to conclude, that Poſterity will not find many objects of admiration in the future Monuments of their Power and Glory. If the *Egyptians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans*, had not been Inſpir'd with a nobler Ardour, we ſhould not now ſee ſo many Curious and Inquiſitive Perſons, undertake ſuch long and troubleſome Voyages, to Viſit the Ruins of their Ancient Grandeur, or diſcover the Medals that give Light to their Hiſtory. The *Turks* are ſo extremely careleſs of the managment of Publick Affairs, that their Streets are not ſo much as Pav'd: And if there were not Legacies left for ſuch uſeful Works, I am apt to believe, there would not be a Fountain in their Towns, or Bridge on their Rivers. They have no Incorporated Societies, Town-Houſes, Sheriffs or Burgo-Maiters. There are no fixt Poſts or Couriers, ſo that when a Man has occaſion to write to any remote place, except *Conſtantinople*, *Aleppo*, or *Cairo*, he muſt ſometimes wait a whole year for an opportunity: And even between *Smyrna* and *Conſtantinople*, there are only *Arabs*, who go on Foot, and frequently ſtay a Month before they ſet out.

As to their *Administration of Juſtice*, they have no written Laws, but what are contain'd in the *Alcoran*, which they hold to be the Rule of Faith, and the Standard of Juſtice, and every thing that it forbids is eſteem'd unlawful, and Punishable. Nevertheless the Cadis and Baſſas judge as they pleaſe, for the Book is very ſhort, and beſides, a great deal fuller of Dreams and Abſurdities, than of Laws or Moral Precepts; and thoſe few it contains are ſo ambiguouſly expreſs'd, and deliver'd in ſo looſe a manner, that theſe greedy Officers cannot deſire a more favourable opportunity to ſatiſfy their Avarice. Beſides, they judge without Appeal, and cauſe the Sentence to be executed upon the Spot. 'Tis true, ſome highly injur'd Perſons have recourſe to the Grand Signior's Divan; but that is ſeldom done, by reaſon it is Expensive and Troubleſom; and beſides, the Injuſtice done them muſt be very plain, or 'tis in vain to expect Satisfaction. All Civil affairs are Judg'd by the Cadis, according to the Depoſition of Witneſſes, without any regard to Writings. And if you can but bring two Perſons to ſwear that they ſaw you pay 1000 Piſters to your Creditor, which you ow'd him upon your Note or Bond, he loſes his Mony: and (as *Du Mont* ſays) there's always plenty of Knights of the Poſt, to be had for a ſmall matter: And beſides, the Cadi, whoſe Office laſts but for a year, and who grows Rich in a few months, thinks it not beneath the Dignity of his Office, to take a little Mony, and give Sentence as you would have it.

The Judgment of Criminal affairs belongs to the Baſſa, who proceeds much after the ſame manner; for Mony clears the moſt Barbarous Malefactor, and without that, Juſtice degenerates to

Cruelty. 'Tis true the Grand Signior ſends Superior Baſſas from time to time, attended with ſome Companies of Soldiers, to ſearch after unpuniſh'd Malefactores; but theſe Great Inquiſitors have not power enough to ſubvert the Charms of money. There are ſeveral ſorts of Punishments inflicted on the Malefactores in this Country; ſuch as Beheading, Drowning, Hanging, Strangling, Burning, Impaling, and the Strapado. The two laſt for *Turks* that renounce the *Mahometan* Faith. Robbers and Murderers are Hang'd. Women are drown'd. The Rebellious and Seditious are beheaded. *Chriſtians* who Blaſpheme *Mahomet* or the *Alcoran*, or lye with *Turkiſh* Women, are Burnt.

The Government of the Cities is manag'd by five kind of Officers, the Baſſa, Sub-Baſſa, Vaivod, Cadi, and the Receiver of the Customs. The Baſſa is properly the Governor, and judges Criminal Cauſes; and the Sub-Baſſa is as it were his Deputy. The Vaivod examines the Meaſures and Weights, puniſhes Drunken Perſons, and all Diſorders in the City. The Cadi is the Judge in all Civil Suits, and the Receiver of the Customs is impower'd to take Cognizance of all Fraudulent Practices relating to Pecuniary Duties, in all which Caſes he is both Judge and Party.

As for the Religion of the *Turks*, they ſay, God has ſent four Prophets to Reveal his Will to Mankind, viz. *Enoch*, *Moses*, *JESUS CHRIST*, and *Mahomet*. They call *Jeſus Chriſt* the *Breath of God*: They own his Miraculous Conception, and the Virgins perpetual Virginitie, but ſay that *Judas* was Crucifi'd and not his Maſter, which they ſay, ſerves better to diſplay the Glory of Chriſt, than the *Chriſtian* Doctrine; but for all they affirm that Chriſt was a Holy Man, and a *choſen Veſſel*. They will not be perſwaded to believe a Trinity. They differ from us in their Opinions concerning the Divine Attributes, only they have ſuch a peculiar Fondneſs for Predeſtination, that they extend it even to the moſt indifferent Actions. They believe that there is an infinite Number of Angels, ſome good, ſome bad; the firſt they call White, the other Black Angels or Devils, and that every Man has one of each ſort. They think that the Souls of the Wicked remain in their Graves, where they are Tormented by the Black Angels till the laſt day, when they ſhall be ſent to Hell, together with their Bodies, and be Punish'd there for a certain time, according to their Crimes, and then go to Paradice; for they think the Doctrine of Eternal Punishment abſurd. They believe that at the Day of Judgment the Beaſts will riſe and give Account before Chriſt, of all the Kindneſſes and Injuries they have receiv'd from Men. They are very Nice and Ceremonious about their Waſhings, and Bathings after Pollution. They Pray five times a day, in the Morning at Break of Day, at Noon, at 3 of the Clock in the Afternoon, at 6 in the Evening, and an hour after the Cloſe of the Evening. Friday is their Feſtival-day as Sunday is ours. Their Lent laſts but 30 days, but is very ſtrictly kept; for they neither Eat, Drink, nor Smoak Tobacco, while the day laſts; which is very hard upon them, when it happens in Summer. They neither Eat Hogs Fleſh, nor Drink Wine, nor can they endure Images. They think Deeds of Charity very



very Meritorious, and therefore leave many Legacies. There are several other things which a Turk must believe, and do, but it would be too tedious, and not so fit for a work of this Nature, to give the Reader a particular Account of them.

The whole *Turkish* Militia, (as Sir Paul Rycaut observes) is of two sorts, one that receives Maintenance from certain Lands or Farms, bestow'd on them by the Grand Signior; others that receive their constant Pay in ready Money. The great Nerve or Sinew of the *Turkish* Empire, is that of the first Rank, which are of two sorts, viz. *Zaims*, which are like Barons in some Countries, and *Timariots*, who may be compar'd to the *Decumani* among the *Romans*. Those of the second sort, paid out of the Grand Signior's Treasury, are *Spahi's*, *Janizaries*, *Gebegi* or Armourers, *Topzi* or Gunners, Sea Soldiers call'd *Levens*, who have no Pay for Life, or are Enroll'd amongst the Military Orders; but only make an Agreement for five or six Thousand Aspers for their Voyage; which being ended, they are Disbanded.

The *Zaims*, in all Expeditions of War, are oblig'd to Serve with their Tents, which are to be furnish'd with Kitchens, Stables, and other things suitable to their State and Quality; and for every 5000 Aspers of Rent receiv'd from the Grand Signior, they are to bring a Horseman into the Field, which is call'd *Gebelu*. The *Timariots* are oblig'd to Serve with lesser Tents, and to bring 3 or 4 Baskets for every Man that attends them, for carrying of Earth and Stones, for making Batteries and Trenches, while the *Janizaries* are in the Skirmish with the Enemy. And for every 3000 Aspers Rent, the *Timariots* are Sels'd in a Man and a Horse. Both *Saims* and *Timariots* are dispos'd into Regiments, under Command of Colonels, call'd *Alai-Begler*, these again under the Command of the Bassa, and he under the Beglerbeg, which Force being united in one Body, repair to their Rendezvous appointed by the *Serasker* or General, who is either the Grand Signior, the Visier Azem, or some Eminent Person. No excuse is allow'd in the time of the Grand Signior's Wars; if Sick thy are carried in Horse-Litters or Beds; if Infants, in Hampers or Baskets, and in the very Cradles, Accustom'd

to the hardship, hazard and discipline of War. These *Zaims* and *Timariots*, may (as Sir Paul Rycaut computes) be said to amount to in all above 83380, besides the Militia of *Cairo*, and other Orders of Soldiers. The standing Militia of the Kingdom of *Egypt* is 20000 Horse, besides which there is about 80000 *Timariots*. The *Tartars* of *Crim* are to send 100000 Men to the Grand Signior's Wars. The Princes of *Moldavia*, *Valachia*, and *Transilvania*, six or seven Thousand Men apiece. The *Spahi's* are generally well Educated, Courteous and Refin'd Men, and serve on Horseback, to the Number of 12000. Besides whom, there are, according to the aforesaid Author, four other sorts of *Spahi's*, who are rais'd according to the Necessity and occasions of War. The *Janizaries*, who serve on Foot, were at first not above 6 or 7000, but are now above 20000; but were there a List taken of all who assume this Title, to be freed from Duties and Taxes, the Number would amount to above one hunder'd Thousand. In former times this Militia consisted only of the Sons of *Christians*, but that Politick is now disus'd.

As to the Naval Forces of the *Turks*, tho they have much plenty of all things, fit for making a great Fleet, particularly Ports, Harbours and Docks, as at *Constantinople*, where no less than 130 Ships may be upon the Stocks at the same time, at *Sinopolis*, *Midia* and *Anchiale*, Cities on the *Black-Sea*; and abundance of Men to be imploy'd in the Sea Service, yet for several years, especially since the War in *Candia*, they have not been able to equip a Fleet much above 100 Sail of Gallies. The Pirates of *Barbary*, the Towns of *Tripoli*, *Tunis*, and *Algier*, used to be their Auxiliaries at Sea, but that is now in disuse. The Beyes of the *Archipelago* are bound, for certain Islands which are assign'd them in that Sea, to maintain 14 Gallies. The chief Admiral is call'd the Captain *Pashaw*, his Lieutenant General *Tershana Kiabiasli*, and the next Officer *Terfane Emini*, or Steward of the Arsenal. But for a more particular account of these Matters, the Reader may, if he pleases, have recourse to such as have writ fully on the Subject, particularly the forecited Author.



## C H A P. VIII.

Of the North part of TURKEY in EUROPE, being the Provinces of WALACHIA and MOLDAVIA, Tributary to the Turks. Together with BESSERABIA, and the OCZAKOW-TARTARY, Subject to the Turks.

HAVING taken a View of all the South side of the *Danube*, and Travell'd thro' *Transilvania*, in our passage from *Hungary*, we now come to the Countries on the North side of that River; which was the Ancient *Dacia*, that Comprehended these two Provinces with *Transilvania*, and so far of *Hungary* as to the River *Theisse*, and was divided into three parts, viz. *Ripensis*, containing part of *Hungary* and *Walachia*, on the Banks of the *Danube*; *Alpestris* part of *Walachia* and *Moldavia*; and *Mediterranea*, which was also Nam'd *Gepida*, the present *Transilvania*. The Inhabitants were of *Scythian* extract, fierce and barbarous, and were call'd *Getae*, before the *Romans* gave 'em the Name of *Daci*. They had Kings of their own, till *Trajan* Conquer'd the Country, and made it a Province of the Empire. Afterwards the *Sarmatians*, *Saxons*, *Goths* and *Huns*, at several times over-run these Countries. These Provinces now distinguish'd by two Names, were in the middle Ages, both Comprehended under the Name of *Walachia*, or *Woloska Zemia* in the *Sarmatian* Tongue, and the People *Wolochy*. Divided into *Major* and *Minor*, whereof the former afterwards took the Name of *Moldavia*. The other which in order as Situated, we are first to speak of, retain'd the Name of

## W A L A C H I A,

-Which is extended in a Triangular Form, between the *Danube* on the South, *Hungary* on the West, *Transilvania* on the North-west, and *Moldavia*, on the East, about 130 miles broad, but in its greatest extent near 200 miles long. The Air is Temperate, and the Soil Fruitful, producing Corn and Wine. Fruits, Wood, Pasture, Oxen, Sheep, and other Cattle, but especially Horses, for which this Country is Famous. The Earth also yields Mines of divers sorts of Metals. And the Forests Venison. The chief Rivers are the *Aluta* or *Olz*, the *Teisch*, the *Zalonicza*, and the *Missovio*; which rise in the upper part of the Province, and all run Parallel, and fall into the *Danube*.

The Country is Govern'd by a Waywood, Elected or approv'd by the Grand Signior; he is stil'd *Hispodar*, that is, chief General of the Militia, and Pays a Tribute to the Turks of 70000 Ducats *per Annum*, and yet is at all expence in the Government, and Defence of his Country.

The Christian Religion according to the Greek Church, is profess'd in *Walachia*, and

the Patriarch of *Constantinople* is their Metropolitan.

The Inhabitants Fancy themselves to be the true Offspring of the *Romans*, and their Assertion seems to be confirm'd by the Idiom of their Language, which in many Words and Phrases, comes nearer the Ancient *Latin*, than the Modern *Italians* do's, altho' now it is so corrupted with *Russian*, *Sclavonian*, and *Turkish*, that it hardly deserves any of that Character.

In the Government, the Waywood always Exercis'd a Sovereign Authority, and as long as the Kingdom of *Hungary* stood, was wont to put himself under the Protection of that Monarch. In the year 1391. the Turks Invaded this Province, and in 1415. compell'd the People, that had gallantly defended themselves in several Rencounters, to submit to the Ottoman Yoke, which the Waywood attempted to throw off 10 years after; but being soon reduc'd to extremity, was again oblig'd to Swear Allegiance to the Grand Signior, and promise to assist the Turkish Forces in all their Expeditions against the Christians. And tho' in 1595. *Sigismund Bathar* Prince of *Transilvania*, was able to secure this, as well as his own Principality, from the accusom'd Bondage, yet the Inhabitants were not able long to maintain their Liberty, but have since contentedly Paid their Tribute without attempting another Revolt.

The chief Towns are

<i>Tergowisch.</i>	} }	<i>Rebnick.</i>
<i>Bucharest.</i>		<i>Alauth.</i>
<i>Braschow.</i>		<i>Pedt.</i>

*Tergowisch*, *Terwisch* or *Tarvis*, the Capital City of *Walachia*, wherein the Waywood keeps his Court, is seated on the River *Launiza*, in a Marshy Ground, 60 miles North from the *Danube*, and as many East from the Confines of *Transilvania*.

*Bucharest*, the second chief City, stands on the River *Dombrowicen*, 25 miles South from *Tergowisch*, and 35 North from the *Danube*.

*Braschow*, *Braslow* or *Brasgow* is seated in the North part near the Confines of *Moldavia* and *Transilvania*, 50 miles from *Tergowisch*. It is a considerable City, and the See of a Bishop, Suffragan to the Metropolis of *Celocza*.



*Rebnick* stands upon the River *Alauta*, near its former State; and accordingly it is still the Confines of *Transilvania*, 40 miles East from *Targowisch*. Tributary to the *Turks*.

*Alauth* stands on the same River 30 miles below *Rebnick*.

*Pedt* is seated on the *Danube* on the very Limits of this Province towards *Hungary* 130 miles West from *Bucharest*, and 90 West from *Belgrade*.

The chief Towns are,  
*Jassy*, } *Moldadania*,  
*Soczow*, } *Vasloje*,  
*Targorod*, } *Romani-Wivar*,  
*Chotzyn*, } *Braila*.

*Jassy*, or *Jazy*, a considerable City, and formerly the Seat of the Prince, is seated on the River *Pruth*, in the North-part of the Province about 30 miles from the Confines of *Poland*, in the Latitude of 47. 30. Longit. 46 Deg. *Baudrand* says it was, probably, the ancient *Augusta* of *Dacia*.

*Chotzyn* on the River *Neister* near *Poland*, 90 miles North-west from *Jassy*, and 25 South-east from *Caminiec*, is a strong Town, and the chief Magazine of the Country, famous for a great Victory there obtain'd over the *Turks* by *John Sobiesky* late King of *Poland*.

*Zockow*, *Soczow*, or *Czukaw*, is a large and strong City, stiled the Capital of the Province, because the Prince usually resides there. It is Seated on the River *Sereth*, 50 miles West from *Jassy*, 70 South from *Caminiec*, and 30 East from the Confines of *Transilvania*, and guarded with a Castle.

*Targorod*, or *Trescott*, stands on the Confluence of the Rivers *Molda* and *Sereth*, 50 miles from *Soczow*.

*Moldadania*, on the River *Molda*, is about 20 miles distant from *Soczow* to the South.

*Vasloje* stands on the River *Bardalack* 60 miles East from *Targorod*.

*Romani Wivar* stands on the River *Sereth*, on the Confines of *Walachia*, and not far from the *Danube*.

*Braila* stands at the Mouth of the same River into the *Danube* 35 miles South-east from *Romani Wivar*.

## M O L D A V I A.

Lies on the North-east of *Walachia*, bounded on the North by the River *Neister*, or *Turla*, which divides it from the *Ukrain*, on the South with *Walachia* and the *Danube*, on the East with *Besserabia*, and on the West by *Transilvania*; It's extent is much greater than *Walachia*, being 240 miles from North to South, and 150 from East to West. The AIR is very Healthy, and the Soil Fruitful, producing all Necessaries; as Corn, Cattle, and excellent Horses. The Land is diversified into Mountains and Plains, and water'd with divers Rivers, the chief whereof are the *Moldavo* (whence the Country has its Modern Name) the *Pruth*, the *Sereth*, the *Bardalack*, &c.

*Moldavia*, says Sir Paul Rycaut in his present State of the Ottoman Empire, was first made Tributary to the *Turks* by *Mahomet* the Great, but under the small Tribute of 2000 Crowns per Annum, afterwards *Bogdamus* Waywood thereof, A. 1585. fearing to become absolute Vassal to the *Turk*, being assisted by *Poland*, took up Arms against *Solymus* II. by whom being drawn out of his Country, *John* a *Moldavian* Born, but one who had embraced the *Mahometan* Religion, was preferr'd by *Selymus* to that Principality; but as soon as he was in it, he return'd to his former Religion, which made the *Turk* set upon him too, and *John* losing his Life in the Quarrel, the Province fell to the power of the *Turks* in the Year 1574. who appoint the *Waywood*, and impose an Annual Tribute, which at that time amounted to 80000 Dollars; but now (that is, when he wrote, his Book) it is reduc'd to 66000 Dollars in Money, near 40000 pounds of Wax, as much Honey, and a vast quantity of Tallow for the Arsenal. But besides the Annual Tribute, this Author says, That there were so many accidental Expences, Pretensions, and Arts of the *Turks* to squeeze Money out of this oppress'd People, as did sometimes double the charge of their yearly Tribute. To which may be added, the price paid to the Grand Seignior and others for the Principality which amounts to 110000 Dollars. In the Year 1686. the *Polanders* over-run this Country, took the chief Cities, and oblig'd the Inhabitants to put themselves under the Protection of the Empire. But at the Treaty of *Carlowitz*, it was agreed, that the *Poles* should retire, and leave this Principality in

## B E S S A R A B I A.

By some reckon'd part of *Moldavia*, but more properly a separate Province, lies on the East of *Moldavia* between that and on the Black Sea, and between the Rivers *Danube* on the South, and *Niefter* on the North. It is partly Mountainous, and partly a Marshy Country; Inhabited by the *Budziack-Tartars*. The extent of it is about 150 miles from East to West, and 60 or more in the West part, from North to South.

The chief Towns are,  
*Tekin*, } *Kilia-Nova*,  
*Bialogorod*, } *Kilia Vechia*

*Tekin*, *Tegina*, or *Beuder*, is a large City, the Capital of the Province, seated on the River *Neister*, near the Confines of *Moldavia* 100 miles from the Black Sea to the West, 60 from the *Danube* to the North, and 100 miles from *Jassy* to the East. It  
M m m is



is guarded with a Castle, and reckon'd a strong Frontier.

*Bialogrod*, otherwise called *Akerman*, is a strong Fortress seated near the Black Sea, at the Mouth of the *Neister*. Some take this to be the ancient *Tyras*, which *Ptolemy* places at the Mouth of the *Neister*, and which *Herberstein* and others call *Menzafin*: But it is suppos'd the old *Tyras* being quite destroy'd, this Town sprung up near it.

*Kilia Nova*, is a strong Town seated on the Northern Branch of the *Danube* near its Mouth into the Black-Sea, over-against

*Kilia Veteris*, or *Vetus*, which stands in the Island, made by Two Branches of the *Danube*, to which it gives Name.

River *Bog*, which rising in *Poland*, here discharges its self into the Sea, other Rivers water it, and the *Ingulet* or *Mali* is its Eastern boundary.

The chief Towns are,

*Oczakow*, } } *Keczubi*.  
*Bilchowsie*, }

*Oczakow*, or *Ocziakow*, otherwise called *Dziarkrimenda*, is seated at the Mouth of the River *Borisphenes*, or *Neister* into the Black Sea, 60 miles North-East from *Bialogrod*, and near the Mouth of the River *Bog*. It is a strong Town with a Castle, founded by *Vitellus* Duke of *Lithuania*, and first Peopled by his Subjects, afterwards possess'd by the *Tartars* who had a Denomination from this place, and were powerful Enemies of *Poland*. But the *Poles* gave them a notable Overthrow in the Year 1644. at present it is Garrison'd by the *Turks*, though the Inhabitants be *Tartars*.

*Bilchowsie* is seated on the *Borisphenes* where the River *Ingulet* or *Mali* falls into it, on the extreme East part of this Province towards the *Crim-Tartary*, 20 miles North-east from *Oczakow*.

*Keczubi* is seated on the Black Sea, 30 miles West from *Oczakow*.

### The OCZAKOW-TARTARY

Lies on the North-east of *Besserabia* on the other side the *Neister*, surrounded by *Podolia*, or the *Ukrains*, except on the East where it is bounded by the Black-Sea, and the Mouth of the *Borisphenes*; and on the South where the *Neister* parts it from *Besserabia*. Its extent is not above 80 miles, and is divided by the

## CHAP. IX.

### Of TARTARY-MINOR, or the CRIM-TARTARY, Allies to the Turks.

THE *Tartars* were always a Roving People that Usurp'd upon their Neighbours on every side. Of their Conquests in *Muscovy* we have spoken, and shall have occasion to shew that *China* and *Indostan* are at this day Subject to Princes of that Race. *Persia*, and a great part of the *Turkish* Empire in *Asia*, was for a long time their Prey: And these Provinces of *Europe* last mention'd, as well as *Hungary*, were at several times over-run by them. But upon the Change of Fate in War, they were as often beaten back. At last about 300 Years ago they settled themselves in the Peninsula between the *Black-Sea*, and the *Palus Martis*, formerly named *Taurica Chersonesus*, wherein at that time the *Genoues* had Footing; and the adjacent Country Northward to the Frontiers of *Muscovy*, which from them has been since named *Tartaria Minor*. And tho' at first they owned a Subjection to the Grand *Cham*; yet having strengthened themselves sufficiently, they threw off that Obedience, and acknowledg'd for their Prince one of their Great Men; who being descended from the Royal Family, took upon himself the Royal Authority with the Title of *Han*, which in their Language signifies King. This Honour is Elective, but always

conferr'd on one of the Family if not the Son of the Predecessor, and is confirm'd by the Grand Seignior, with whom they are always in Alliance, and so far in Subjection to, that the Sultan assumes the Power of Deposing the Father, and setting up the Son, upon default of the usual Assistance or Duty. By ancient Compact between the *Turk* and the *Tartar*, it is agreed, That whenever the Grand Seignior goes in Person to the Wars, the *Han* is to accompany him with an Army of 100000 Men; but if the *Vizier* or some other Officer Command the *Turks* Army, he only sends his Son, or some principal Officer with an Army of 50000 Men. The *Turk* hath been used to hold the Son of the *Han* as Hostage for performance of this agreement; and as Sir *Paul Ricaut* tells us, the present *Han Mahomet Ghirei* was detained during his Fathers Life; first at *Jamboli*, and then at *Rhodes*; and before he mounted the Throne Swore Fealty to the Grand Seignior at *Constantinople*: But the Treatment he met with there sour'd him, that he has refused that part of the Subjection as being dishonourable to so powerful a People: But has nevertheless assisted the *Turk* in the Wars according to his Treaty. The *Tartarian* Army have no Pay, but are allowed the Plunder they

take,



take, which consists chiefly in Slaves, whereof they carry away great Numbers, and sell to great profit. In the Year 1663. they so pillag'd and wasted *Hungary*, *Moravia*, and *Silesia*, that Sir *Paul Rycaut* tells us they carried away in one Year 160000 miserable Creatures into Captivity. Such of the Slaves as are Wounded, or Sick and unable to Travel they kill, the rest they carry home, and sell to the *Turks*, especially the Young Boys and Girls, which is the best Traffick the *Tartars* pretend to.

By Contract on the *Turkish* side, it is agreed, That in case of failure of the *Ottoman* Line, that Empire is to devolve to these *Tartars*, which is the great knot of this Confederacy. The *Han* receives a sort of Pay from the Grand Seignior, and is oblig'd not only to assist him in War, but also not to engage in any War, except against the *Muscovite*, without his consent.

The Kingdom consists of Two Parts, *TARTARIA-MINOR*, and the

*Taurica Chersonesus*, or *Crim-Tartary*:

In the *Crim-Tartary* there are Towns Inhabited, and Palaces wherein the *Han* Resides; but in *Tartaria-Minor*, tho' it be a Fertile Rich Soil, and was anciently well Cultivated by several Colonies of *Greeks*, there is now no such thing as a City or Town, the Inhabitants being a fierce wild People that live in the open Air in Tents which they set up and remove as their Fancies or Occasions invite them. In February they are invited by the *Cham* to Till the Ground which some do, but the greatest part Neglect, esteeming it beneath them. Their Ordinary Food is Raw Flesh laid for some time between their Saddle and Horse's back, which they Eat (tho' Dead of Sickness or Putrid) without Bread or Salt; so that the greatest part of the Country, especially that toward *Muscovy* lies Waste, and is thereby nothing but Woods, Lakes, and unpassable Marshes. The *Han* with his chief Officers and Courtiers live in the *Crim-Tartary* in Palaces and Towns, and have Lands, Herds, and Wealth, as other People. The *Han* has large Revenues arising by Tributes and Aids Paid by his Subjects, and is able to bring into the Field a very large Army, even 300000 Horse, but no Foot; for Horses here are so exceeding plenty, that not only every Man is Mounted, but has also one or two spare Horses.

*TARTARIA-MINOR*, otherwise called *Nahaisky*, or the *Nagayan Tartary*, is a very large Tract lying on the South of *Muscovy*, between the Frontiers of that Empire, and the Black Sea. The Mouth of the River *Don* or *Tanais* being its Eastern Boundary, and the River *Nieper* or *Boristhenes* the Western. So that its Length may be reckon'd 300 miles from East to West, but the Breadth not proportionate. This Country is, as we have said, a kind of Wild Desert, the People roving about in Hords or Multitudes with their Tents, Cattle, Wives, and Children, and never fix in any certain place. The only Towns mention'd by Geographers being *Strelnicza*, at the Mouth of the *Boristhenes* and *Kasikermant* a little above it, on the Western Coast; and *Azoph* on the Eastern, at the Mouth of the *Don*.

The *Taurica-Chersonesus*, now call'd the *CRIM-TARTARY*, from the City *Crim*; and also *PRÆCEOP-TARTARY* from another Town; is as we have said a Peninsula between the *Black-Sea*, and the *Palus Maotis*; of about 80 Leagues in length, from East to West; and about 40 Leagues broad, from North to South; it is join'd to the Land by a very narrow *Isthmus*, in the North part, not above a mile over, thro' which also the *Tartars* have cut a Ditch.

The Country towards the South is Mountainous, and well Water'd with Rivers; the rest is Champaign, but wants fresh Water. Except the deep Wells which are dug.

The *Taurica Chersonesus* was Conquer'd by the *Romans*; and upon the declining of that Empire, the best part of it became Subject to the *Genoese*, who maintain'd a considerable Traffick there, before the *Tartars* Invaded it. The *Turks* have also at several times Attack'd it, and still possess some of its Towns: So that between one and the other, the *Genoese* have been expell'd these 200 years.

The chief Towns are

<i>Præcop.</i>	1	<i>Crim.</i>
<i>Sachingeri.</i>	1	<i>Sidagoy.</i>
<i>Ingermen.</i>	1	<i>Caffa.</i>
<i>Sarigermen.</i>	1	<i>Kerk.</i>
<i>Balacawa.</i>	1	<i>Pontico.</i>
<i>Mangut.</i>	1	<i>Kiderleri.</i>
<i>Cercissigermen.</i>	1	<i>Taman.</i>
<i>Baccassaray.</i>	1	<i>Karasu.</i>
<i>Almasaray.</i>	1	<i>Arabet.</i>

*Præcop*, call'd Or by the *Tartars*, Antiq, *Taphros* & *Taphra*, is seated upon the Dike, in the narrowest part of the *Isthmus*. It hath a Castle wherein Resides a Palatine of the *Hans*, who Commands the Guards on the *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*, and the *Tartars* in the Plains: And examines all Strangers that pass *Sachingeri* not far from it, on the *Black-Sea*, is a Town of 2000 Houses, and a place of good Traffick.

*Balacawa* or *Balacley*, stands on the South-west Coast, sometime Possess'd by the *Genoese*, and then call'd *Famboli*, from the store of Fish in the Neighbouring Sea. It is a small Town, Possess'd by the *Turks*, who here build their Ships and Gallies.

*Topetarkan* or *Sarigermen*, anciently call'd *Chersonesus* and *Corfuna*, and was the noblest City of all the Peninsula. Whereof the Ruins are still extant on the West Coast; but the place is hardly Inhabited.

*Ingermen* on the South-west Cape, anciently a great Town, whereof many Ruins and Greek Inscriptions remain; but it is now only a small Town with a Castle Possess'd by the *Turks*.

*Mangut* or *Mancus*, an inland Town, once a Magnificent City, now only a Tower and a kind of Castle, with some few Houses, Inhabited by the *Turks* and *Greeks*.

*Cercissigermen*, a Fort of the *Turks*, not far from *Mangut*.

*Caffa* or *Theodosia*, the Chief City of the Peninsula, stands on the South Coast, over against the *Isthmus*. It has 5 or 6000 Houses Inhabited mostly by *Christians*, who have many Churches; some *Turks* and a few *Tartars*,

M m m 2 under



under the Government of a *Turkish* Sangiack. It is a place of great Traffick, begun by the *Genoese*, from whom the *Turks* took it, in 1574. and is about two days Sail distant from *Constantinople*.

*Kerkey*, *Cimmerium*, is a little Town of the *Tartars*, seated on the East Coast, on the Strait denominated from it, and anciently call'd *Bosphorus Cimmerus*.

*Pontico*, olim *Panticapeum*, was formerly the chief City of all this Country, it stands on the Mouth of the same Strait.

*Kiderleri* is also on that Strait.

*Baccasaray*, which may be esteem'd the chief City, being the Seat of the *Han*, stands 20 miles South from the *Isthmus*, and about 15 from the Western Sea Coast: It is a Town of 2000 Houses, besides the Magnificent Palace of the *Han*, surrounded with a Pleasant Country for Hunting, and is nobly adorn'd with Gardens, Orchards, Baths, &c. Here is also a Mosque wherein are many stately Sepulchres of the *Hans*.

*Almasaray* is another Palace of the *Hans* with a small Town.

*Crim*, whence the Country, and People are Denominated, is a strong Castle, wherein is kept the Mint. It hath a small Town to it, which is chiefly Inhabited by *Turks*.

*Sidager* or *Sudacum*, was a very Noble and Strong City, seated in the Mountains, famous for the Wines growing near it, formerly Possess'd by the *Genoese*, from whom it was taken after a long Siege, by the *Turks*.

*Karasu*, 20 miles West from *Cassa*, is a Town of 1000 Houses, belonging to the *Cham*.

*Arabet* or *Orbotec*, stands near the *Palus Maotis*, 20 miles North from *Kerky*, it hath two Castles for its Defence, and is the Place where the *Han* keeps his Stud of Horses, which are reckon'd to be about seventy Thousand in Number.

In the very East part of the Continent of *Tartaria Minor*, on the Banks of the *Don* or *Tanais*, between its Mouth, and the Mouth of the *Doniec* stand several Towns, among which is

*AZOPH*, *Azow* or *Azek*, a strong Fortress seated on the Mouth of the *Don* or *Tanais*, into the *Palus Meotis*, in the Latitude of 47 Deg. Longitude 59 Deg. Taken from the *Tartars* by *Mahomet II.* and Possess'd by the *Turks* till the late War, when in the year 1694. it was Taken by the present Czar of *Muscovy*, and still held by him: Being a Post of that Importance, that he absolutely refus'd Peace with the *Turks*, unless he might keep it. And indeed it is a Place of great Moment, to a *Muscovite* Prince so active as his present Czarish Majesty, for by the Shipping he may build there, he may Command the *Palus Meotis*, and not only force his Passage into, but even dispute the Command of the *Black-Sea* it self, with the *Turks*: Wherefore, 'tis no wonder they so earnestly Insisted upon the Restoring it; and nothing could make the *Turks* sit down with the Loss, but the very low Estate the War had brought 'em to.

*Kafikermant* at the Mouth of the River *Nieper*, is another Fortress of great Importance, taken by the same Prince, and still held by him. It stands in Latitude 46. Longitude 58 Deg.

30 Min. and gives Passage into the *Black-Sea*.

The Situation of both these Places is seen in our Map of *Muscovy*.

With which we should Finish our Account of *Europe*, and proceed to that of *Asia*. But that it is necessary to speak a little of the *Palus Meotis*.

The *PALUS MÆOTIS* or the Sea of *Zabache*, is call'd *Limen More* by the *Russians*; *Gnilen Morze* by the *Poles*, and *Mare del Tana* by the *Italians*. It was anciently call'd by divers Names, viz. *Palus Sarmatiae*, *Cimmeriae Paludes*, *Scythica Stagna*, and *Pontici Euxini Mater*, Teste *Buno*. The modern Name of *Zabache* is deriv'd from a certain Fish taken there, at certain times of the Year. It is a large Sea, lying from South-west to North-east 130 Leagues in length, according to the Maps: But *Dionysius* makes its extent from the *Taurica Cbesonesus*, to the Mouth of the *Tanais*, 300 miles. It is bounded on the North and West by the *Lesser Tartary*; on the South-west by the *Tauric-Chersonese*; and on the East and South-east by *Sarmatia Asiatica*, now *Circass Tartary*. The River *Don* or *Tanais*, which is the Boundary of *Europe*, falls into its Eastern Bay. And the Lake *Sura Morzi*, on the West issues from it and makes the *Precop-Isthmus* so narrow. On the South it has Communication with the *Black-Sea*, thro' the Strait of *Kerky* or *Cassa*, which was the ancient *Bosphorus Cimmerus*.

We have now Survey'd all the Provinces of the *Turkish* Empire in *Europe*, and shall next take a View of the Countries of *Asia*, Subject to this Monarch, which are

Many Islands lying near its Coasts.

*Natolia* or *Asia Minor*.

*Turcomonia*: part of *Georgia* Tributary to the *Turk*.

*Affyria* or *Diarbeck*, Comprehending part of the ancient *Affyria*, with *Mesopotamia*, and *Chaldaea*.

*Syria* at large, containing *Syria Proper*, *Phenicia* and *Judaea*.

And a great part of *Arabia*.

A large part of *Africa* is also under the *Turkish* Dominion, viz.

The Kingdoms of *Aegypt*, and *Barca*, on the *Mediterranean*. And

The Coasts of *Abex* on the *Red-Sea*, with part of

The Upper *Aethiopia* on the same Sea.

Also the Kingdoms of *Tripoli*, *Tunis*, and *Algiers*, are Tributary.

All which vast Empire is Subject to the Absolute Dominion of the *Ottoman* Emperor, usually stil'd by us *Europeans* the Grand Signior, and is Govern'd by a great Number of Vice-roys, call'd *Beglerbegs*, with Subordinate Governors, nam'd *Sangiacks*. And a lesser Order, stil'd *Bassas*. Accordingly the Empire is divided into large Provinces call'd *Beglerbegships*, and those sub-divided into *Sangiates*. The particular Number whereof, is unnecessary to be set down here, but will be observ'd in our Descriptions of these Countries, which will be the Subject of the Second Part of this Work.

The End of the First Part.



A  
S Y S T E M  
O F  
G E O G R A P H Y:  
Or, A New and Accurate  
D E S C R I P T I O N  
O F T H E  
E A R T H,

In all its Empires, Kingdoms, and States.

---

P A R T the S E C O N D,

Containing the Description of

*ASIA, AFRICA, and AMERICA.*

Written in *Latin* by JOAN. LUYTS Professor in Acad. *Ultraj.*

---

*Englisch'd* with large additional Accounts of the *EAST-INDIES*,  
and the *Englisch* Plantations in *AMERICA.*

---

ILLUSTRATED with MAPS, Fairly Engraven on  
Copper, according to the Modern Discoveries and Corrections,  
by HERMAN MOLL.

---

L O N D O N;

Printed for Tim. Childe, at the *White-Hart* in *St. Paul's Church-yard*, 1701.



---

---

# P R E F A C E.

**E**UROPE being the Part of the World, that we our selves Inhabit, and the Nations of it our Neighbours, their Affairs are more immediately the Matter of our Enquiry, than are those of the other Quarters. Wherefore, after having given so particular Accounts of all the Cities and remarkable Places in all the Nations of Europe, we may be excus'd if we are shorter in the Description of Asia, Africa, and America. So that tho' the same Exactness shall be observ'd in setting down the Provinces and chief Cities, yet in passing over the less notable ones with a general Character only, we hope we shall rather Please than Disgust the Reader; since to be as particular here, as we have been in Europe, would be both Tedious and Unprofitable.

But in those Parts where England, and other Europeans have any Concerns, we have Enlarg'd our Accounts, as will be seen in the Descriptions of the East and West Indies.

To have given Historical Relations also of these Nations, as we have done in Europe, would have too much swell'd out our Work, which indeed does already exceed its intended Bulk. We have therefore been oblig'd to omit them, except in India, China, and Persia; which Countries, our frequent Trade thither, makes us Curious in the Enquiry after.

The particular Description here given of the Holy Land, will we hope be acceptable, since it serves very much to Illustrate the History of the Bible.

Nor will the Ancient Geography, whereby is shewn the Provinces and Cities of the Romans, Grecians, Assyrians, Persians, &c. be less agreeable, the ancient Historians being thereby Illustrated.

And lastly, we hope our Maps will meet a kind Reception, as being not only fairly Engraven, but also laid down according to the modern Corrections. In the Dutch Maps, and those of Sanson, the East Indies, and China, were plac'd at least 10 Degrees more Eastward than really they are, as was discover'd by exact Observations, taken by divers Eminent Astronomers and Travellers. The Coasts of Africa and America were also very Erroniously set down, till the Industry of this Age had Corrected it; this made the old Maps so confus'd and untrue, that a new Sett is absolutely Necessary for the right knowledge of the Situation of these Countries. The supplying in some measure this defect, is what we have attempted; but with what Success, we must leave to the Learned World to Judge.

A Gene-



# ASIA.

## CHAP. I. Of ASIA in general.

# ASIA



i.  
Asia

**H**ITHERTO we have been treating of Europe, let us now proceed to Asia, the second Part of the ancient World, and heretofore reputed the chief of all; in which Paradise was situated, the first Men led their Lives, all sorts of Arts, Sciences, Languages,

Part 2

and the first Monarchies deriv'd their Original: Where also the Christian Religion was first planted; for the great Author of it himself, being born in those Parts, perform'd all the Offices of his sacred Function, and almost the whole History of the Old and New Testament was there transacted.

B

Asia



*Asia* is bounded on the North by the Scythian or Tartarian Ocean; on the East, by the Sea of *Jesso*, or of the *Kaimachies*, and that of *Cina*; on the South, by the Indian Sea, properly so call'd, the Arabian and the Straights of *Babelmandel*; and on the West, by the Arabian Gulph, or the red Sea, and the *Isthmus*, - narrow Neck of Land, that lies between this and the Mediterranean, and by which it is parted from *Africa*: As also, by the Eastern Part of the Mediterranean, or Levantine Sea, the *Aegean*, or *Archipelago*; the *Hellepont*, or Strait of *Gallipoli*; the *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*; the Thracian *Bosphorus*, or Strait of *Constantinople*; the *Euxine*, or Black Sea; the Cimmerian *Bosphorus*, or Strait of *Cassa*; the *Palus Maeotis*, or Sea of *Zabachia*; the lower Part of the River *Tanais*, or *Don*; a Line drawn from that River to the Mouth of the *Volga*, and thence to the *Ob*; and lastly, the lower Course of the same River, by which *Asia* is separated from *Europe*.

II. The Continent of *Asia* is extended from West to East from the *Archipelago*, or *Aegean* Sea to that of *Jesso*; or from the 50th to the 152d Degree of Longitude; and from South to North, from *Ihor*, or *Ihor*, the most Southern Town of *Arca Chersonesus*, or the Peninsula of *India*, beyond the River *Ganges*, to the utmost Bounds of *Tartary*; or from the first to the 72. or according to others, the 74. Degree of North-Latitude: But the Islands that lie in the Indian Sea, over against *China* and *India*, reach to the 11th Degree of South-Latitude. So that the greater number of both Islands, and some Parts of the Continent, are situated within the Torrid Zone; the greatest Part of the Continent within the Northern Temperate Zone; and the least Parts in the Northern Frigid Zone: And the Extent of *Asia* does not only exceed that of *Europe*, but of *Africa* also.

III. As for the Figure of this Continent, some compare it to the Duke of *Venice's* Cap, to a Horse-cloth, or to *Pegasus*, the fabulous Winged Horse; and others, cutting off the Peninsulas from the Southern Bounds, fancy it to resemble the shape of an Egg. The Soil in its vast extent, may well be expected to be various; but it is in general very fruitful, bringing forth, even in the Torrid Zone, most exquisite and choice Fruits, which are not to

be found elsewhere; the Earth also yielding Precious Stones, and the best sort of Metals. Nor are Mountains and Rivers wanting, or indeed any thing that can contribute to the Necessaries, or even Pleasure of Life. The Inhabitants are generally effeminate, and of a disingenuous Temper, yet capable of the most curious Arts and Sciences, and great Lovers of Monarchical Government; which made *Tacitus* say, *Suavis Regibus Oriens*; as indeed they are so far, as to be meer Slaves to their Arbitrary Princes.

IV. All Authors are not agreed as to the particular Way of dividing *Asia*; for some distinguish it into the Continent and Islands: The latter lie in the Mediterranean Sea, or the *Archipelago*, over against the lesser *Asia*, or *Natalia*; or else in the Indian Ocean, opposite to *China* and *India*; and the Continent extends itself North and South. In the Northern Part of it is a Region of *Asia*, situated between the Black and *Caspian* Seas (the particular Provinces of which are *Georgia*, *Turcomania* and *Circassia*) and the Great *Tartary*, on the Sea of the same Name. In the Southern Part, in passing from East to West, we meet with *China*, *India*, *Persia* and *Arabia*, bordering on the Indian Ocean; and *Turkey* in *Asia* on the Mediterranean, *Aegean*, or *Archipelago* and Black Seas. Others divide *Asia* into five vast Empires, viz. the Turkish, Tartarian, Indian, Persian and Chinese. Some Geographers (reckoning the Islands of the Indian Ocean over against *China* and *India* for one Part) divide *Asia* into six, seven or eight Parts, accordingly as they think fit to enlarge or straighten the Bounds of *Turkey* in *Asia*: For some make *Georgia* and *Arabia* Parts of the Turkish Dominions, and consequently allow six Parts, or general Divisions of *Asia*: Others only separate *Arabia* from *Turkey* in *Asia*, but not *Georgia*, by that means admitting seven Parts of *Asia*. Lastly, others cut off both *Arabia* and *Georgia* from *Turkey* in *Asia*, and constitute eight Parts of *Asia*. Which last method we have follow'd, and consider'd it in eight Parts; that is to say, 1. *Turkey* in *Asia*, 2. The Country lying between the Black and *Caspian* Seas, 3. *Tartary*, 4. *China*, 5. The Islands over against *China* and *India*, 6. *India*, 7. *Persia*, and 8. *Arabia*: All which shall be methodically treated of in their Order.



## CHAP. II.

*A Description of Turkey in Asia, Natolia, and the Islands situated over against it.*



I. **A**MONG the Parts of *Asia*, that subject to the Turk first offers it self to our View, as lying next to *Turkey in Europe* last described; and in regard that this Region constitutes the chiefest Part of the *Ottoman Empire*, even upon that account it ought not to be separated. The Bounds of *Turkey in Asia* on the North, are the *Euxine*, or *Black Sea* and *Georgia*; *Persia* on the East; *Arabia* on the South; and on the West *Egypt*, the Eastern Part of the *Mediterranean Sea*, the *Archipelago*, the *Straight of Gallipoli*, the

*Propontis*, and the *Straight of Constantinople*. These Dominions thus bounded are situated between the 30th and the 43d Degr. of Northern Latitude, and the Soil produces every thing that is necessary for Humane Life; more especially Corn, Fruits, the best sort of Grapes, Saffron, Cotton, Silver, Copper, Iron, Crystal and Allum; but through the Severity of the Turkish Government it is not half Cultivated. The Division of the Countreys, with the chief Cities, is seen in the following Table.



General and Particular Tables of *TURKEY* in *ASIA*, among which are two extraordinary ones relating to Ancient *Judæa*, of which we shall hereafter give a large Description, useful in the Illustration of Sacred History.

*A General Table of Turkey in Asia.*

Turkey in Asia may be divided into Two Parts, viz.	The Western in which are	I. <i>Naxolia</i> , in which are	Natolia properly so called Caramania Aladulia Amasia
		II. The Islands over against Natolia, viz.	Tenedos or Tenedo Lesbos or Metelino Chios or Scio Samos or Samo Icaria or Nicaria Pathmos, Palmosa or Patina Leros or Lero Coos or Lango Altipalæa or Stampalia Carpathus or Scarpanto Rhodus or Rhodes Cyprus
	The Eastern containing	III. Syria containing	Proper Syria Phœnicia Judæa
		I. Diarbeck, in which are	Proper Diarbeck Yerack Curdistan
		II. <i>Turcomania</i>	

*The Particular Tables of Western Turkey in Asia.*

On the West, <i>Naxolia</i> , strictly taken, wherein are these chief Cities, viz.	I. <i>NATOLIA</i> , in which are	Pessinus Ancyra or Angouri Pompeiopolis Amisus or Simiso Sinope or Sinopi Amastris Heraclea Ponti or Penderachi Claudiopolis or Catomena Chalcedon or Calcedona Nicomedia or Comidia Nicæa Nice or Isnich Lybysia Lebysa or Gebise Prusa Cyzicus Spiga or Spinga Parium Pario or Paradiso Lampascus Lampasco or Lasipio Abydus or Aby The Dardanelles-Cast. Dardanus Antandros or St. Dimitri Trianopolis Adramyttum or Andramiti Pergamus or Pergamo Troja or Troy Alexandria Troadis Coryzum or Chium Midaium or Midelli Gordium Synnada or Sinnada Apamia or Apami Cibotus Hierapolis Colossæ or Chonos Lardicea Philadelphia Sardis or Sardo Thyatira Elea Myrina Cumæ Phocæa Fochia or Folia Vecchia Phocæa Nova or Fochia Nova Smyrna Clazomenæ, Urla or Vourla Erythræ Teos Lebedus Colophon Ephesus or Efeso Priene Miletus or Palæschia Cnidus or Gnido Ceramus Halicarnassus Myndus or Menese Mylasa or Melasso Antiochia or Antich Aphrodisias or Apodisa Stratonica Caunus or la Rojja.

On the East, comprehending these three Parts.

Caramania	Telmessus Xanthus Santo or Sirbi Andriace or Gorante Myra or Sirumita Limyra Olympus or Leville Phaselis or Fionda Attalia or Satalia Sida Selga Termessus or Termes Aspendus Perga or Pirgi Seleucia & Antiochia Piliat Lystra Isaura or Saura Iconium or Cogni Derbe or Dervase Selenus Antiochia ad Tra- gum or Antiochetta Anemurium Anemora or Salemura Seleucia Aspera or Selechia Corycus or Churco Soli or Soloe Palefoli Tarsus Tarso or Teraffa
	Aladulia Mallus Mallo Issus or Lajazzo Adana Metita or Mirasch Melitene
Amasia	Sebastopolis or Suras Tochata or Tocai Cæsaria Caisar or Tisaria Amasia Trapezus or Tre- bisonda.

The principal Rivers of *Naxolia* run into

The Euxine or Black Sea	Iris or Casalmach Halis Otinigiuth or Aly Sangarius Sangari or Zagari
The Mediter. Sea	Cydnus or Carasu Xanthus aut Sirbis Sirbi
The Egean Sea or Archipelago	Mæander sive Mæandrus Madre Granicus Cayster aut Caystrus Carason Hermus or Sarabat receiving the Pactolus Caicus Girmasli or Cagri Scamander or Scamandro

II. The Islands over against Natolia

In the Archipelago	Tenedos or Tenedo Chios or Scio Samos or Samo Icaria or Nicaria Pathmos or Palmosa Leros or Lero Coos Lango or Isola longa Altipalæa or Stampalia Carpathus or Scarpanto
	Rhodus or Rhodes Lindus or Lindo Camirus or Feracchio Rhodus or Rhodes
In the Mediterranean Sea	Cyprus Paphos or Baffo Amathus or Limisso Leucosia or Nicosia Ceraunia or Cerines Famagusta or Famagosta Salamis or Constantia Il Porto Cufanizo

III. Syria



III. Syria, containing	Proper Syria, in which are	On the North	Samofata or Schempsat Alepum or Aleppo Alexandriola or Aleffandreta
		On the South	Antiochia or Antioch Laodicea or Laudichia Apania or Hama Emessa or Hemz Palmyra or Fayd Laodicea Scabiosa or Laudiefa
	Phœnicia, in which are	Inland Country	Raalbec Damascus or Scham
		On the Sea-coasts	Tripolis or Tripoli of Syria Berytus Beyrut or Baruti Sidon or Sayd Ptolemais or Acri
	Judea, in which are	In the Inland Country	Nazareth Tiberias Bethfan Neapolis or Naplosa Jerusalem Hebron
		On the Sea-coasts	Joppe or Jaffa Azotus or Alzete Ascalon or Scalona Gaza or Gazara

The First Table of ancient Judæa.

I. JUDÆA divided into two Parts

I. The Country beyond Jordan, in which were two Tribes and half	I. The Tribe of Reuben	Lafah Kademoth Mephaath Baal-meon Medabah Heshbon Eleale Jahafah Kirjath-thaim Bamoth-Baal Beth-phogor Phogor Mount Ashdoth-pisgah Pisgah-Mount Nebo-Mount Macharus Livias Bosor Sethim Bethabara Abilah Beth-jesimoth Sarathafar Helon
	II. The Tribe of Gad	Dibon Aroer Nabbatha Mennith Jazer Arnon Mageth Rogelim Mizpeth Rabbath Ramoth-Gilead Casbon Thesba Dabir Beth-arion Succoth Penuel Mahanaim
	The half Tribe of Manasseh	Ephron Hippos Gadara Jabesh-Gilead Pella Gilead Casphor Kamon Kedar Jair Edrai Gamala Gergefa Magdala Dalmanutha Julias Corozaim or Chora- zin Sucta Gaulon Adrach Astaroth Theman Bozra Antiochi Pharanx Sogane Argob Naamath Selcha Gessur Seleucia Aram Gerson Machati Abela Marah Auran

II. The Country on the higher side of Jordan in which were nine Tribes and half

I. The Tribe of Naphtali	Lais or Leshem Heleph Reccath Abela Reblatha Aroseth Adami Jebnael Lecum Capharnaum or Capernaum Kadesh Nephtalim Arbellis Magdalel Carthan Sephet Nephtalim Naafon Bethshemeth Afor Kirjath-thaim Amothdor Emath or Amath Assedim
II. The Tribe of Asher	Elkath The greater Cana Roob Gabala Cabul Abdon Bethemeth Beth-dagon Labanath Sihor Acon Messal
III. The Tribe of Zabulon	Zabulon Cana of Galilee Anathon Kethron Berlabe Semera Damna Noa Dothaim or Dothan Bethulia Bethlehem of Zabulon Amathar Remmon Bethsaida Magdalum Castle Jotapata Tiberias Japhie Cartha Legio Cheseleth-Tabor Tabor Saffa Sephoris Buria Nazareth Naalol Sarid Gaba Sicaminum.
IV. The Tribe of Issachar	Carmel Mount Gilboa Mount Beth-shemesh Aphraim Naim or Nain Seon Endor Anaarath Rabbath Dabbereth Cefion Issachar Abez Ramoth Engannim Enhadda Bethpheses Cedes Jezrael Jaramoth Shunem Aphiek Esdrelon Casaloth
The half Tribe of Manasseh	Nopheth Dor Straton Tower Capharnaum Mageddo Jebnaan Adadremmon Gaber Geth-remmon Thanac Acrabata Aner Bethseca or Bethfan Salem or Salim Ennon Bezek Bethbera Ephra Alexandrium Castle Abelmaula Therfa Thebes Nais Machmeth Narbatha Manath Endor Galgal Capharalama
V. The Tribe of Ephraim	Sarona Gophna Bethoron upper Hyrcanium Castle Adarfa Addus Phanuel Pharamon Samaria the Royal Seat of the Kings of Israel Sichem Ebal Mount

Garizim



	Garizim <i>Moun:</i> Luza
	Benich Ennon
	Thanathfello Jechmaan
	Bethaven Taphua
	Ataroth-addar Jance
	Ataroth Naaratha
	Ephrem Archiataroth
	Doch Mello Gethremmon
	Naboth Ephron Machmas
	Silo Ruma Jephleti
	Thamnath-lara Gazer
	Lydda Ramatha
	Nebo Helam Masphat
	Nob Amosa
	Bethoron <i>lower</i> Gibeon
	Gibeah Rama Anathoth
	Gabaath Beroth Bethel
	Ai Bethaven Gilgal Lod
	Hadid Samaraim Almon
VI. The	Betharab Jericho
Tribe of	Ophera Sela Heleph
<i>Benjamin.</i>	Ophni Jarephel Bahurim
	Recem Bethera
	Jerusalem <i>the Metropolis of</i>
	<i>Judæa and of the Kingdom</i>
	<i>of Judah</i> Gethsemane
	Bethphage Bethany
	Soco Emaus Bethsur
	Mareth Bethanoth Eglon
	Ethan Bezek
	Bethlehem of Judah
	Thecua Debera
	Netophati Seger or Zoar
	Adama Seboim
	Gomerrah Sodom
	Engaddi <i>The City of Salt</i>
	<i>The Hill of Achilles</i>
	Cabseel Eder Jagur
	Cina Cedus Charmel
	Carmel <i>Moun:</i> Maon
	Ziph Jota Nebfan
	Gabaa Accain Zanoë
	Jucadam
VII. The	Hebron <i>the Royal Seat of King</i>
Tribe of	<i>David for seven Years.</i>
<i>Judah.</i>	Jezrael Gilo Helon
	Gesen Anim Hefron
	Adar Afemona
	Afernoba Samur Jether
	Jerimoth Keila
	Odellam or Adullam
	Leemas Naama
	Beth-dagon
	Kiriath-yearim Aazar
	Azecha Libnah
	Makkedah Cheslon
	Lachish Beth-shemesh
	Sacron Gaza Ascalon
	Azotus or Ashdod
	Accaron or Hecron
	Gath or Geth
	Joppe or Jaffa Jamnia
	Calphin Meiaiarcom
	Arechon Geth-remmon
VIII. The	Bane Thamna Baalath
Tribe of	Helon Aralon Jud
<i>Dan.</i>	Adiada Modin Elrecon
	Geder Nehel-Ethcol
	Saraa Heirfemes Jethela
	Gabbathon Esthaol

	Bethlebaath Sefenna
	Ziklag Medemena Selim
	Aen Remmon Harina
	Bethul Bethberai Afertual
IX. The	Assemon Afergadda
Tribe of	Molada Dabir Gerara
<i>Simeon.</i>	Beertheba
	<i>The sandy Desert</i> Majuna
	Anthedon Raphia
	Rhinocorura or Rhinoco-
	lura

The Second Table of Ancient Judæa.

II. JUDÆA under the Rom. div. into 6 Parts	On the hither side of Jordan,	I. Judæa	{ The Tribes of Benjamin Judah and Simeon The greater Part of the Tribe of Dan
		II. Samaria	{ The Tribe of Ephraim The half Tribe of Manasseh
	Beyond Jordan,	III. Galilee	{ The Tribes of Issachar and Zabulon Part of the Tribe of Naphtali on the Sea of Galilee
			{ The most Part of the Tribe of Naphtali The Tribes of Dan and Asher
	On the South of Judæa,	IV. Trachonitis	{ The Northern Part of the half Tribe of Manasseh
		V. Peræa	{ The Tribes of Gad and Reuben
The prin- cipal Ri- vers of Sy- ria run into		VI. Idumæa	{ Jordanis or Jordan, receiving the Jabbok. Arnon or Adramelech Kedron
			{ Kison or Hihar-ascalb Eleutherus or Valania Orontes or Almeimas.

A Particular Table of Eastern Turkey in Asia.

Eastern Turkey in Asia, di- vided in- to two Parts, viz.	I. Diarbeck in which are	Diarbeck	{ Orpha Bir Rika Karkise Harran Diar-beckir Afanchif Merdin Gezere Nisibin Mosul Tekrit
			{ Zab Felougia Cufa Ballara Gorno Vafet Bagdad.
		Curdian	{ Nineve Cherafoul Amadia Bitlis Salmaftra Van Tadian
			{ Manuscut Majafarikin Sumidchach Erzerum Nacktivan Karasbag Erivan Kais

The most remarkable Rivers of this Part fall into the Persian Gulph: { Euphrates { Melas Singas  
receiving { Chaboras Saucoras  
Tigris { Lycus Caprus  
receiving { Gorgus

Turkey



II. *TURKEY* in *ASIA* is not improperly divided into the Western and Eastern Parts; the former lying between the River *Euphrates*, and the *Mediterranean* and *Ægean* Sea; or *Archipelago*, and the latter between the same River and *Persia*: The former comprehending *Natolia* and *Syria*, and the latter, *Diarbeck* and *Turcomania*. Of these *Natolia* with the Islands over against that Continent and *Syria*, appear first in our Journey from *Europe*: *Natolia*; otherwise call'd *Anatolia* and *Anatole*, as also *Nadulu* by the *Turks*, i. e. the East, derives its Name from its Situation; for it bears Eastward, with respect to *Italy*; and *Turkey* in *Europe*: Upon the same account the Name of *Levante*, or the *Levant*, is given by the *Italians*, to these Parts and the Islands adjacent. This Country was anciently the Seat of many considerable Nations and Kings, and bore the general Name of *Asia*, but with the addition of *Minor* or the lesser, to distinguish it from the whole Continent, by which Name this one of the three Parts of the ancient World was always known: Among all the Parts of *Asia* this extends it self in it toward the West and nearest to *Europe*, in form of a *Peninsula*; (whose Isthmus is 300 miles broad) bounded on the South, by the Eastern Part of the *Mediterranean*, or *Levantine* Sea: on the West, by the *Archipelago*, the Strait of *Gallipoli*, the *Propontis* or Sea of *Marmora* and the Strait of *Constantinople*, by which it is separated from *Europe*; on the North, by the *Euxine*, or Black Sea; and on the East, by *Armenia*, or *Turcomania*, (where for the most part, the upper course of the River *Euphrates* serves for its Bounds) *Syria* and Mount *Amanus*, call'd *Montagna Neros*, i. e. the Watery Mountain by the Inhabitants, from the great plenty of Springs and Rivulets, with which it is water'd; but by others *Monte di Scanderona*, from the little Town of *Scanderoon*, or *Alexandreta*, that stands on the Foot of it.

III. *Natolia* is at present divided into four Parts, viz. *Natolia*, strictly taken; *Caramania*, *Aladulia* and *Amasia*; the first of which is situated toward the West and the rest toward the East. *Natolia* properly so call'd, lying next to *Europe*, takes up about one half of the ancient *Asia Minor*; extending it self from the Black Sea to the *Mediterranean*: It borders on the East upon *Caramania* and *Amasia*, and on the West, upon the *Archipelago*; the Strait of *Gallipoli*, the *Propontis*; and the Strait of *Constantinople*; and is subdivided into fourteen *Sangiackships*, or lesser Governments: And anciently it comprehended these following Countries, viz. *Galatia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, as also *Asia Minor* properly so call'd; the last of which lies toward the South, and the others toward the North.

*Galatia*. *Galatia* deriv'd its Name from the *Gauls*, who came out of *Italy* and settled in these Parts; it was also styl'd *Gallagracia*, from the *Gauls* and *Greeks*, by whom it was promiscuously inhabited: 'Tis now known by the Name of *Chiagare*, and borders on the East upon the Province of *Natolia*, which bears the Name of *Amasia*. The most remarkable Towns of *Galatia*, were *Pessinus*, or *Pessinus*; *Therma*, or *Germa* and

*Ancyra*, or *Angouri*; which last was formerly the *Metropolis* of the *Tectosagi*; famous for the Victory of *Pompey* over *Mithridates*; and for that of *Tamerlan* over *Bajazet*; and is as yet a Place of good Note.

*Paphlagonia*, now call'd *Roni*, according to *Papblagius*; and *Bolli* by others; was a Part of *Galatia* taken at large; situated between *Galatia* properly so term'd, and the *Euxine* Sea; the chief Towns of which were *Pomphionolis* in the inland Country, and on the Coasts of the Black Sea, *Amisus* or *Amisum*, now call'd *Simiso* by the *Greeks* and *Amid*, or *Hemid* by the *Turks*; as also *Sinope*, *Sinopi*, a large Town; with a Harbour on the Bay of *Simiso*, the See of a Bishop, and noted for giving Birth to *Diogenes* the Cynick Philosopher. Near it are found Brass-Mines, a rarity in *Asia*.

In the Province of *Pontus*, or *Genech*, which border'd upon *Paphlagonia* on the West, and the Black Sea on the North; on the Coasts; stood *Amastris*, now *Samaastro*, which some include within the Jurisdiction of *Paphlagonia* and *Heraclea Pontii*, now *Penderachi* a little Town; also *Claudiopolis*, otherwise call'd *Bithynium* and *Castromena* by *Castaldus*, on the River *Elaras*, in the inland Country.

In *Bithynia*, or *Becsangil*, which lay in the middle, between the said Province of *Pontus*, and the *Propontis*, having its Coasts also wash'd by the Black Sea; the principal Towns were *Chalcedon*; now *Scutari*, on the *Thracian Bosphorus*, or Strait of *Constantinople*, over against that Imperial City, famous for the fourth general Council held there: *Nicomedia*; or *Comidia* on the innermost Coast of the Bay of the same Name, formerly remarkable for the Baptism and Death of the Emperor *Constantine* the Great, but now almost bury'd in its own Ruins: *Nicaa*, or *Nice*, whose modern Names are *Isnich* and *Nichor*, or *Nichea*, lying near the *Ascania Palus*, or Lake of *Aëse*, toward the East, and noted for the first General Council conven'd there, against the Heretick *Arius*: *Lybissa*, now call'd *Lebassa*, and *Gebise* by others, heretofore made famous by the Death and Sepulchre of *Hannibal*, but at present only a small Village: And *Prusa*, or *Prusias ad Olympum*, at the Foot of which *Bursa* was built in a fruitful and well water'd Plain; where the *Ottoman* Emperors usually kept their Court, before they had got footing in *Europe*; and it is still reputed one of the chief Towns of these Parts, and fortified with a Castle on a Hill. We are inform'd by *Cluverius*, That *Bithynia* and *Pontus* which we have separately describ'd, though they were at first two distinct Provinces, were afterwards united; and esteem'd but one Province.

The remaining Part of proper *Natolia*, that lies toward the South; was formerly taken up by *Asia Minor* strictly so call'd; being Part of *Asia Minor*, before specify'd Sect. II. in which were the seven Churches mention'd in the Revelation of St. *John*: The particular Provinces of it were *Mysia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, *Æolis*, *Ionias*, and *Caria*, of which *Doris* constituted a Part. *Mysia* now known by the Name of *Natolia*, was twofold, that is to say, the lesser and the greater:

The



*Myſia Minor.*

The leſſer *Myſia* extended it ſelf more towards the North, and its Coaſts were waſh'd by the Sea of *Marmora*, and the *Helleſpont*, or Strait of *Gallipoli*; being otherwiſe call'd *Myſia Helleſpontica* and *Olympica*. The chief Towns of this Province, on the Sea-coaſts were *Cyzicus*, *Chizico*, by others termed *Spiza*, *Spinga* and *Palorus*, built 70 years after the City of *Rome*, on an Iſland, at a ſmall diſtance from the Continent, and abounding with Marble. Beyond this Town, toward the Weſt, appears the Iſland of *Præconneſus* in the *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*, and on the Coaſts of the leſſer *Myſia*, at preſent call'd *Marmora*, from the great quantity of Marble there digg'd out of the Quarries; being about 20 Miles in compaſs, well cultivated and adorned with a conſiderable Town: *Parium*: *Lampſacus* on the Strait of *Gallipoli* and the Mouth of the River *Granicus*, over againſt *Gallipoli* which is ſituated in the *Peninſula* of *Thrace* or *Romania*: *Abydos*, *Avit*, oppoſite to *Scius*, *Seſo*, in the ſame *Peninſula*; out of the Ruins of which was built one of the Caſtles call'd the *Dardanelles*, ſomewhat towards the South, on the *Helleſpont*, or Strait of *Gallipoli*, and at the Mouth of the *Propontis*, or Sea of *Marmora*: And *Dardanus*, or *Dardanium*, on the Coaſt of the ſame Strait of *Gallipoli*: from whence (as ſome conjecture) the two Forts of the *Dardanelles* erected for the defence of it, took their Names.

*Myſia Major.*

In the greater *Myſia*, the Situation of which was more Southerly and more Eaſtern than that of the other, the Principal Towns on the Sea-coaſts were *Anaxandros*, or *St. Dimiri*: *Adranatum*, call'd *Endromis* by the *Turks*, *Andranus* by the *Europeans*, and *Lindimiri* by *M. Spon*, with a Harbour on the Bay of the ſame Name: And *Pergamus*, *Pergamo*, now *Mantiſta* ſituated on the foot of a Hill and the Bank of the River *Coprus*, in a pleaſant fruitful and well water'd Plain; inhabited at preſent by the *Turks*, and ſome few Chriſtian Families, that get a livelyhood by Husbandry: This Place was heretofore noted for giving birth to *Galen*, an excellent Phyſician, and for a famous Chriſtian Church, which was the third among thoſe of *Aſia*.

*Phrygia Minor.*

*Phrygia* was in like manner anciently divided into the Leſſer and Greater. Under the former, being Part of a Province now call'd *Sackem*, *M. Sponſon* will have the greater and leſſer *Myſia* comprehended; making *Troas* and the Strait of *Gallipoli* Parts of the latter: Other Geographers reckon *Troas* a Part of the leſſer *Phrygia*, excluding it from both the *Myſia's*; and ſome take the leſſer *Phrygia* and *Troas* for the ſame Province, which was at firſt call'd *Troas*, and afterwards the leſſer *Phrygia*, when poſſeſſ'd by the *Phryges*. The moſt remarkable Towns of the leſſer *Phrygia*, were *Troy*, otherwiſe nam'd *Ilium*, ſituated between Mount *Ida* and the Sea-Coaſt; heretofore the moſt flouriſhing City of the whole Continent of *Aſia*, beſieged ten years, and at laſt ſtor'd and razed by the *Greeks*; the exploits of which Siege, are celebrated by the Poets *Homer* and *Virgil*: But now ſcarce any Remains of it are to be ſeen, that testi-

fic its ancient Grandeur, and its moſt famous Harbour is almoſt ſtopt up with Sand. And *Troas Alexandri*, or *Alexandria Troadis*, on the ſhore of the *Aegean* Sea, or *Archipelago*, built by *Alexander* the Great, at the diſtance of a few Miles towards the South; the Ruins of this Town are now call'd *Eski Sarnbul* by the *Turks*.

The greater *Phrygia*, at preſent known by *Phrygia* the Name of *Germian*, was much larger than *Myſia* the former, lying in the inland Country, between the leſſer *Phrygia* on the Weſt, and *Galatia* on the Eaſt; abounding (according to the report of *Q. Curtius*) more with Villages than Towns, the chief of which were *Cotiaum*, or *Cotyæum*, *Chiztaie*, the *Metropolis* of *Natolia* properly ſo call'd, and the Seat of the *Beglerbeg* or *Turkiſh* Governour of theſe Parts: It was ſometime the Seat of the Grand Seignior, before *Conſtantinople* was taken; it is ſtill a conſiderable City and ſeated on the River *Ayda*, 30 leagues South from *Burſa*: *Midaum*, or *Midaum*, *Midello*: *Gordium* on the River *Sangarius*, *Sangari*, or *Zagari*; where *Midas* the rich King of *Phrygia* kept his Court, and *Alexander* the Great not being able to untie the Gordian Knot, cut it aſunder with his Sword, to elude the purport of the Oracle: *Synada*, the Marble of which place was highly eſteem'd, and it ſtill retains its ancient Name, although almoſt entirely reduc'd to Ruins: *Apania*, otherwiſe call'd *Giborus* and *Celana*, now *Apaniz*, on the River *Maender*, near its confluence with the *Marſyas*, daily falling to decay: *Hierapolis*, which (according to *Ricau*) the *Turks* call *Bambouck-Kale*: *Coloſſe*, call'd *Chonos* by the Modern *Greeks*, on the River *Lycus*, or *Licho*, famous for *St. Paul's* Epistle: And *Laodicea*, water'd by the ſame River, which falls into the *Maender* a little below, where the ſeventh Church of *Aſia* was planted: 'Tis now call'd by the *Turks*, *Eski Hiſſar*, i. e. the Old Caſtle, and not *Laodichia*, as we are inform'd by *M. Spon* and others; but is altogether laid waſt; nothing being left but a Mill and four Marble-Theaters, which are the chiefeſt Monuments of its Antiquity.

*Lydia*, which alſo anciently bore the Name *Lydia* of *Maonia* (altho' only one Part of *Lydia* is term'd *Maonia* by *Cluverius*) and at preſent is known by that of *Craſſia*, was ſituated between the greater *Phrygia* and *Ionis*, and dignified with the Title of a Kingdom, whoſe King *Craſſus* was famous for his vaſt Wealth: Its principal Towns were *Philatelphia*, on the foot of Mount *Tomolus*, or *Tomaliſſe*, where the ſixth Chriſtian Church of *Aſia* was planted: The *Greeks* ſtill retain the ſame Name of this Town, but the *Turks* commonly call it *Allachſheir*, i. e. the City of God: It is ſtill well built and inhabited, containing four Churches, with no ſmall number of Chriſtians, and was the laſt of the Towns of *Aſia Minor*, that were forc'd to ſubmit to the *Turkiſh* Yoke: *Sardes*, or *Sardis*, *Sardo*, on the River *Pactolus*, famous for its golden Sands, and on the foot of Mount *Tomolus*; heretofore the chief City of *Lydia*, the Royal Seat of *Craſſus*, the richeſt Prince of his time, and the *Episcopat*

See



See of the fifth Church of *Asia*; but now a poor ferry Village, inhabited only by a few Shepherds and Plow-men: And *Thyatira*, call'd *Akhisar* by the *Turks*, i. e. the white Castle, situated near Mount *Hermus* in a very spacious and delightful Plain, only inhabited by *Turks*; where the fourth Christian Church of *Asia* was settled: In this Town is great store of Corn, and Cotton, with many footsteps of Antiquity; it is also of a large extent, but the Buildings are very mean, consisting for the most part only of green Turfs, dried in the Sun.

*Æolia.*

Between *Lydia* and the *Ægean* Sea, or *Archipelago*, *Æolis*, or *Æolia* extended it self, a small Province so call'd from the *Æoles* a People of *Greece*, who leaving their native Country, pass'd over thither, and having built twelve Towns (according to the report of *Herodotus*) settled themselves in those Parts. At present it constitutes Part of the Province call'd *Sarchan*, and its chief Towns on the Sea-coasts were *Elea* the birth-place of *Zeno* the Philosopher. *Myrina*, *Martiani*. *Cuma*, that gave a Surname to the *Cumane Sybil*. *Phocæa nova*, *Fochia nova*, a neat Town, with a Harbour and Castle: and *Phocæa* on the Frontiers of *Ionis*, now a Village of small note, known by the Name of *Fochia*, or *Foja Vecchia*, and seated on the *Ægean* Sea.

*Ionis.*

Next to *Æolis*, on the South *Ionis* took place; being at present a Part of the Province call'd *Sarcum*, or *Sarchan*, the Inhabitants of which were call'd *Iones*, as deriving their Original from the People of *Greece* that bore the same Name; who possess'd several Cities in this Continent, the most remarkable of which, were *Smyrne*, or *Imyr* according to the *Turkish* Dialect, situated on the *Hellespont*, or narrow Neck of the *Ionian Peninsula*, near the Gulph of the same Name, and the River *Meles*, partly on a Hill and partly in the Plain, in a healthful temperate Air and a fruitful Soil: This is reputed to have been the Birth-place of *Homer*, (altho' *Rhodes*, *Colophon*, *Salamis*, *Argos* and *Athens* likewise lay claim to that Honour) and is also famous for the second Church of *Asia* there planted. It has been often shaken with Earth-quakes, yet still continues to be a most renowned Mart-Town, inhabited by a great number of *Turks*, as also by *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Geors*, and the Consuls of several *European Nations*, particularly *England*, whereof there are several Merchants. *Clazomene*, or *Clazomenæ*, which gave Birth to *Anaxagoras* the noble Philosopher, and is now call'd *Lia*, or *Vourla*. The following Towns were also situated on the Coasts of the *Ægean* Sea, viz. *Erythra*; *Teos*; *Lebedus*; *Cleopha* and *Ephesus*, call'd *Efeso* by the *Italians*, and *Ajashouck* by the *Turks*; where heretofore stood the most stately Temple of *Diana*, burnt by *Herostratus*, and the first Christian Church of *Asia*; also where the third general Council was held: However it is now reduc'd to a Village and the Skeleton of a City, the largeness of whose Ruins, are the only proof of its former Magnificence. To the former Towns may be ad-

ded *Priene* the native Country of *Bias* the Philosopher; and *Miletus* or *Palatschia* a Village almost fallen to ruin in the Confines of *Caria*, which was formerly one of the greatest Cities of *Ionis*, seated on the *Archipelago*, at the Mouth of the *Meander* and near the Frontiers of *Caria*.

The remaining Part of *Natolia* strictly taken, was heretofore call'd *Caria*, now *Aidinelli*, lying between *Ionis* and the Sea of *Rhodes*; part of which was *Doris* situated between the same Sea and the *Sinus Ceramicus*, or Gulph of *St. Peter*. The *Dorii*, were descended from a People of *Greece* of the same Name, and the Towns of *Doris* were *Gnidus*, or *Cnidus*, *Gnido*, on the utmost Coast of the *Peninsula*, to the West; in former times reputed the chief of these Parts, having two Harbours, but now lying in Ruins; near which was a Promontory of the same Name, known at this day, by that of *Cape Crio*. *Ceramus* on the same Gulph, and *Halicarnassus*, some time the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Caria*, where queen *Artemisia* built a most stately Tomb for her deceased Husband *Mausolus*, call'd *Mausoleum*, and esteem'd one of the seven Wonders of the World: This Town was also famous for giving birth to the two renowned Historians *Herodotus* and *Dionysius*; but now it is so absolutely raz'd, that the true Situation of it is disputed; some placing its Ruins over against the Island of *Coos*, or *Lango*. Beyond *Doris* in *Caria*, appears *Myndus*, a Sea-port Town, the chief of that Province, and the Seat of the *Turkish* Governor. *Mylasa*, or *Mylassa*, *Melasso*. *Magnesia* on the River *Meander*, or *Madre*, commonly call'd *Man-gresia*, where *Themistocles* the Athenian General died in Exile. *Antiochia*, or *Tachiali*, on the same River. *Aphrodisias*, or *Aphrodisia*, now *Apodisia*. *Stratonica*; and *Cannus* or *la Rossa* a Sea-port Town on the *Sinus Glaucus* or Gulph of *Macre* in the Frontiers of *Lycia*.

Having thus given a particular Account of *Natolia* strictly taken, let us now proceed to the like Description of the three other Parts of this Continent, which have their Situation towards the East. The chief of these is *CARAMANIA*, so call'd by the *Italians*, and *Caramanili* by the *Turks*; bounded on the West by proper *Natolia*; on the North by *Amis*; on the East, by *Aladulia*; and on the South, by Part of the *Mediterranean* Sea, which lies between the Islands of *Rhodes* and *Cyprus*: That Part which borders upon the Sea, is known by the Name of *Caramania propria*. This considerable tract of Land, before it was subdu'd by the *Turks*, was for a long time govern'd by Princes of great Renown, and the present Government of it is divided into seven lesser Lieutenances, or Jurisdictions call'd *Sangiackates*. Here also were formerly situated the particular Provinces of *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Pysidia*, *Lycaonia*, and part of *Cilicia*.

In *Lycia*, or *Menteseli*, which was wash'd by the *Lycian* Sea, part of the *Mediterranean*, and extended it self in the middle, between *Caria* and *Pamphylia*; the most remarkable Towns were *Telmessus* or *Telmessus*, on a noted Bay.



Bay. *Xanthos*, now *Santo*, or *Sorbi*, on a River of the same Name, not far from its Mouth. *Pæra*, *Pæra*, a little Town on a Hill heretofore famous for the Temple and Oracle of *Apollo*, where Answers were given, during the Winter half year. *Andriace*, or *Gratie*. *Mira*, or *Morra*. *Stramita*, a large Town on a Hill, near the River *Limyrus*. *Limyra* now call'd *Mari*, or *Maira* by several Authors, on the same River *Limyrus*. And *Olympus* on the Sea-shore: as also, *Phajis*, *Flonda* a small Village in the Frontiers of *Pamphylia*.

*Pamphylia*. Next to *Lycia* on the East, *Pamphylia* took place, which was wash'd on the South, by part of the *Mediterranean* Sea that deriv'd its Name from thence, and at present constitutes the Western Part of *Caramania*: The principal Towns of *Pamphylia* were *Attalia*, call'd *Satalia* by the *Italians*, and *Satalyah* by the *Turks*, on the *Senus Attalicus* or Gulph of *Satalia*, of dangerous passage to Mariners, by reason of the frequent Storms and Shipwrecks: However its Harbour and Castle are reckon'd among the chiefest of this Country. *Sida*, *Candak*, a Sea-port Town on the Frontiers of *Cilicia*. *Selga*, more remote from the Sea. *Termessus*, *Termes*, a Village. *Aspendus*, or *Aspendum*. And *Perga*, or *Perge*, *Pirgi*, formerly adorn'd with a Temple dedicated to *Diana*.

*Pisidia*. On the Northern Confines of *Pamphylia*, *Pisidia* was situated, now known by the Name of *Persegeli*, which several Geographers will have compris'd under *Pamphylia*; but others think fit to separate it from that Province, whose Opinion we shall follow: The most noted Towns of these Parts, were *Selencia* and *Antiochia*, to which was added, for distinction sake, the Surname of *Pisidia*.

*Lycania*. *Lycania*, *Cogni*, extended it self more towards the North and East, which by some is reckon'd as a Part of *Cappadocia*, but others make it a distinct Province: The chief Towns of it, were *Lycra*, *Isaura*, *Saura*. *Iconium*, or *Cogni* formerly the Metropolis of *Lycania*, and at present of the whole Jurisdiction of *Caramania*, large and well built, where the Turkish Governor usually resides. And *Derbe*, or *Dervahia*.

*Cilicia*. Lastly, *Caramania* includes Part of *Cilicia*, which lying between *Pamphylia* and *Syria* reach'd to the *Cilician* Sea, part of the *Mediterranean*, being of a much larger extent, from West to East, than from South to North; and was twofold, viz. *Cilicia Trachiois*, i. e. the rugged, or mountainous, and *Compestris* i. e. the Champain, or proper *Cilicia*; the former of which was situated towards the West, and the other towards the East. Now *Caramania* comprehends within its Bounds, the mountainous Country, and the Western Part of the Champain: The most remarkable Towns in this Part of *Cilicia*, were *Selenus*, *Islenus*, on the Sea-shore. *Antiochia ad Tragum*, *Antiocheta*. *Artemurium*, *Anemora*, or *Scalemura*, according to others: *Selencia aspera*, *Selechia*. *Corico*, *Chorco*, with a strong Castle, and a spacious Harbour. *Pompeopolis*, which was otherwise call'd *Soli*, or *Soloe*, also *Tram-*

*polis*, and at present *Palefli*, reduc'd to a small Village. And *Tarsis* the Metropolis of *Cilicia*, on the River *Cydus*, or *Carasu*, not far from its Mouth; formerly a *Roman* Colony, made free of the City; and more especially famous for giving Birth to St. *Paul* the great Apostle of the Gentiles: At this day, it is call'd *Terafso* by the Inhabitants, *Tersis* by the *Turks*, and *Tarso* by the *Italians*.

The next Province after *Caramania* is *ALADULIA*, or *Aladuli*, which is bounded on the West, by *Caramania*, on the North by *Amasia*; On the East, by the River *Euphrates* and Mount *Amanus*; and on the South, by that Part of the *Mediterranean* Sea, which lies between *Syria* and *Cyprus*. That which is now the Southern Part of *Aladulia*, on the Sea-coasts, was formerly the Eastern Part of *Cilicia*; and in the Northern Part of the same, was situated the Southern Part of the lesser *Armenia*. In this Part of *Cilicia*, stood *Mallos*, *Mallo*, on the Mouth of the River *Pyramus*, now a Village. *Issus*, *Lajazzo*, or *La Jazzo*, in the Frontiers of *Syria*, or *Diarbeck*, near Mount *Amanus* and on the Gulph of *Lajazzo*; where *Alexander* the Great gain'd a signal Victory over *Darius* King of *Persia*: It is still a neat Town, with a safe Harbour. And *Adane*, *Adena* on the River *Pyramus*.

In that Part of the lesser *Armenia*, which is now comprehended under *Aladulia*, and commonly call'd *Bozoch*, were *Meitica*, *Maraz*, or *Maracsh*, a large and well built Town, the Capital of the *Beglerbeglick* of the same Name, on which depend four *Sangiackates* or lesser Governments. And *Melitene*, *Malawiah*, situated a little higher, formerly the chief Town of *Melitene* a little Province in *Asia Minor*.

It remains only to give an account of the VII. last Part of *Natolia*, call'd *AMASIA*, *Amasia*, which has for its Boundaries, *Turcomania* on the East; the *Euxine*, or Black Sea on the North; *Natolia* properly so call'd, on the West; and *Caramania* with *Aladulia*, on the South. A considerable Part of *Cappadocia* was here included, which consisted in the Northern Territories of the lesser *Armenia*, and those that border'd upon the *Euxine* Sea, particularly, on the Coasts of the *Cappadocian*, *Polemoniack* and *Galatick* Seas. The Towns of chiefest Note, were *Sebastopolis*, *Sivas*, which is large and fair, being the Seat of the Turkish *Beglerbeg*, under whose Jurisdiction are six lesser Governments, or *Sangiackates*. *Neocesarea*, the Modern Names of which are *Tosha*, *Tocas* and *Tocao*, of a large extent and well-built on the Foot of a Hill, with a Castle on a Rock, from whence the neighbouring Country is commonly call'd *Toca*. *Cesarea* heretofore known by the Name of *Mazaca* and at present by those of *Caesar*, and *Tisaria* on the River *Meia*, near Mount *Argæus*, which sometime had St. *Basil* the great for its Bishop. *Amasia*, or *Amnasan*, according to the Turkish Dialect, seated amidst the Mountains on the River *Iris*, or *Caselmach*, the Birth-place of *Strabo* the Geographer; a large Town and the Capital of the adjacent Territories, where the *Beglerbeg* of *Tocas* usually makes his Residence. And

VI.

VII.



And *Trapezus*, call'd *Trebisfunda* by the Inhabitants and *Turks*, and *Trebisfunda* by the *Italians*, on the Foot of a Hill, and the Coasts of the *Euxine*, or Black Sea, with a capacious Harbour. It was heretofore the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia*, as also the Royal Seat of certain Greek Emperors, or Princes of the Family of *Lascara*, for the space of 200 years, and is still the Capital Town of the *Beglerbegtick* of the same Name.

VIII. Having taken a view of all the Parts of *Natolia*, it may not be improper, here to give a short Account of its most remarkable Mountains and Rivers. There is a great number of Mountains in this Country, and several have been already mention'd in the particular Description of the adjacent Towns. But Mount *Taurus* very much exceeds all the rest in greatness, taking its rise on the Sea-coast of *Caramania*, and the ancient Frontiers of *Lycia* and *Pamphylia*: Afterwards it extends it self somewhat towards the North, and then towards the East, through those Parts of *Caramania* and *Aladulia*, that lye nearest the *Mediterranean* Sea; as also throughout the whole Continent of *Asia*, even to the Eastern Ocean. However, that part of the Mountain is properly call'd *Taurus*, in general, which is contain'd within the Bounds of *Natolia*, and the particular Names of which are different, according to the diversity of Places. Mount *Amanus*, nam'd *Montagna Neros* by the Inhabitants, which serves for a Boundary between *Natolia* and *Syria*, is a Branch of *Taurus*, and has been above specify'd. Another much greater Branch of the *Taurus*, separates *Caramania* from *Aladulia*, as also the latter from *Amasia*, and heretofore divided the lesser *Armenia* into two Parts; this Mountain was well known by the Name of *Antitaurus* and the Inhabitants, at this day, retain that of *Roham Thauri*.

IX. There are several Rivers which water *Natolia* discharging themselves some into the Black Sea, others into the *Mediterranean*, and others into the *Aegean*, or *Archipelago*: The chief of these are *Iris*, *Halis* and *Sangarius*. *Iris*, or *Casalmach*, formerly a River of *Cappadocia* and now of *Amasia*, rises in the Confines of the lesser *Armenia*, by *Sebastia*, or *Savstia*: Thence it runs through *Cappadocia*, and having water'd *Amasia*, or *Amnasan*, among other Towns, falls into the *Euxine*, or Black Sea, near the utmost limits of *Natolia* strictly so call'd. *Halis*, *Omagiuth*, or *Aly*, springing from Mount *Antitaurus*, ran through *Cappadocia*, *Galatia* and *Paphlagonia* into the *Sinus Amisenus*, or Bay of *Simiso*; but in the modern Mapps, this River is comprehended within the Bounds of proper *Natolia*. *Sangarius*, *Sangari* or *Zagari*, taking its rise in the greater *Phrygia*, out of Mount *Dindymus* directed its course through *Bitthynia* into the *Euxine* Sea, but at present only waters *Natolia* properly so call'd, being the greatest of the Rivers that flow through that Province into the Black Sea. Among the Rivers that run through *Natolia* into the *Mediterranean* Sea, *Cydnus* and *Xanthus* were of no small note. The former, was a swift and wholsome River of *Cilicia*, but so notably

Cold, that it had like to have been fatal to *Alexander* the Great; and in effect it was the Death of the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, who Bathed in it. At present it is call'd *Carasu*, from its black Waters, and passes through *Aladulia* and *Caramania*; where after having water'd *Tarsus*, it rolls into the Sea. *Xanthus*, *Xanthus* or *Sirbis*, *Sirbi*, formerly a River of *Lycia* and now of *Caramania*, took its rise from Mount *Calmus*, and water'd a Town of the same Name, below which it empties it self into the Sea.

Lastly, among the Rivers that run through *Natolia* into the *Archipelago*, the most remarkable are *Meander*, *Caystrus*, *Hermus*, *Caicus* and *Scamander*, which in passing from South to North, follow in the same order, and water the Southern Part of *Natolia* strictly so call'd. *Meander*, or *Meandrus*, *Maure*, flows from the greater *Phrygia* through *Caria* and *Ionia*, with a great many turnings and windings, and discharges it self into the Sea, on the North of *Miletus*, or *Palaescia*. *Granicus* now *Granicus Lazzara* according to *Niger*, or still *Granico fluvius* according to *Sanson* and others; rises in Mount *Ida*, and falls into the *Propontis* between *Cyzicus* and *Lampsacus*. This River is famous for the first Battel that *Alexander* fought against *Darius* on its Banks, wherein with 400 *Macedonians* he kill'd 22500 *Persians*, as *Plutarch* tells us. *Caystrus*, or *Cayster*, at present call'd *Carason*, i. e. Black-water, has its Spring-head likewise in the greater *Phrygia*, passes through *Lydia*, where it waters *Philadelphia*, and falls into the Sea in *Ionia*, between *Ephesus* and *Colophon*. *Hermus*, or *Sarabat*, taking its rise also in the greater *Phrygia*, runs through *Lydia*, where it is enrich'd by the River *Pactolus* famous for its golden Sands, and afterwards passing through the Confines of *Aeolis* and *Ionia*, rolls into the Bay of *Smyrna*. *Caicus*, now call'd *Caicus Girmasti*, or *Castri*, according to *Niger*, taking its Source in the greater *Mysia* between its Frontiers and those of *Lydia* and *Aeolis*, waters *Pergamus* and enters the Sea between *Pitane* and *Elaea*. *Scamander*, *Scamandro*, otherwise call'd *Xanthus* by *Homer*, a little River, but the most noted of the lesser *Phrygia*, flows down from Mount *Ida*, and falls into the Sea, below *Troy*, not far from the Promontory *Sigeum*, or *Cape Fannizari*.

X. Leaving the Continent of *Natolia*, let us proceed to the principal Islands, which are separated from its Western Coasts by the *Aegean* Sea or *Archipelago*, and from the Southern, by the *Mediterranean* Sea; being all subject to the Dominion of the *Turks*. In the *Archipelago* are *Tenedos*, *Tenedo*, a little Island over against *Troas*, with a Village and Citadel. *Lesbos*, now *Metelino*, of a much larger extent, over against the greater *Mysia*; where *Mitylene*, *Metelino*, the chief Town which now gives Name to the whole Island, is situated on the Eastern Part of it. *Chios*, or *Chius*, *Scio*, a mountainous Island over against *Ionia*, affording great store of Malmsey Wine, Honey and excellent Fruits, and famous for the Sepulchre of *Homer*. In it stands the Town of *Scio*, with a capacious Harbour, and a strong Castle: This Island



was sometime possess'd by the *Genoveses*, from whom it was taken by the *Turks* A.D. 1565, and in the late War recover'd by the *Venetians* in the year 1694, but lost again the year following. *Samos*, *Samus* and *Samo* still retaining the Name of *Samo*, one of the largest and most remarkable Islands in the *Archipelago*, lies also near *Ionia*, over against *Ephesus*; whence it was usually styl'd *Samos Ionica*; the chief Town of the same Name is small, besides which there are 2 or 3 others on the Island. It was once a Kingdom and was the Birth-place of *Pythagoras*. *Icaria*, *Nicaria*, on the West of *Samo*, from whence the Sea that surrounds it is call'd the *Icarian*. *Pachmos*, *Palmosa*, or *Paxina*, a fruitful place but Subject to Pyrates, appears more towards the South; where *St. John* the Divine being banish'd and inspir'd by the Holy Ghost, wrote his Revelation; it has a Town and Castle in the middle of the Island, and a Port call'd *Scala*, on the West-Coast, the best in all the *Archipelago*. *Leros*, *Lero*, with a Town and two convenient Harbours. *Cos*, or *Cos*, commonly call'd *Longo*, or *Isla longa*, i. e. the Long Island by the *Italians*, *Sinco* by the *Greeks*, and *Sanchio* by the *Turks* and Mariners, well cultivated and fruitful; being more especially famous for giving Birth to *Hippocrates* the Physician and *Apelles* the Painter, and containing the fortify'd Town of *Cos*, or *Longo* with several Villages. *Ahyalea*, *Samajala*, a somewhat long Island extending it self more towards the South-West, with a Town in the Southern Part of it, and two Harbours. *Carpachus*, *Sarpanto*, lying in the middle between *Gree*, or *Candy* and *Rhodes*; from whence the *Carpachian* Sea, and the Town of *Carpachus*, or *Sarpanto*, took their Names. Among the above-mention'd Islands, *Icaria*, *Pachmos*, *Lero* and *Ahyalea*, were the chief of those that were anciently styl'd *Sporades*; because they do not lye together, as it were in a Circle, as the *Cyclades*, but are dispers'd through the *Archipelago*, but Authors are not agreed as to their Number.

XI. In the *Mediterranean* Sea over against the Southern Coasts of *Natolia*, lie the Islands of *Rhodes* and *Cyprus*, which still retain their ancient Names. *Rhodes*, or *Rhodes*, is situated over against *Caria*, and enjoys a very healthful Air: Here stood the *Colossus*, or huge brazen Statue dedicated to the Sun, 70 Cubits high, which by reason of its vast Bulk, was reckon'd among the seven Wonders of the World, till it was overthrow'n and broken in pieces by an Earth-quake. This Island was sometime possess'd by the Knights of the Order of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, under the Name of Knights of *Rhodes*, who being expell'd by the *Ottoman* Emperor *Solyman* II. A. D. 1522, after a Siege of six Months, obtain'd the Island of *Malta*, by a special Grant, from *Charles* the V. Emperor of *Germany*, whence they are now commonly styl'd Knights of *Malta*. The Island of *Rhodes* abounds in Pastures and produces good store of Fruits; communicating its Name to the *Rhodian* Sea, with which it is encompass'd: The principal Towns of it were *Camirus*, *Ferachio*; *Lindus*, *Lindus*, and *Rhodus*, or

*Rhodes*, seated in the Eastern Part of the Island: This last was heretofore famous for the study of Philosophy, and is still a noted and well fortify'd Mart-Town, with a commodious Harbour, and the usual Place of residence of a Turkish *Beglerbeg*.

The Island of *Cyprus*, or *Kebros*, according to the Turkish Dialect, lies over against *Cilicia*, at a greater Distance from the Continent, being one of the four largest Islands that are contain'd in the *Mediterranean* Sea: Some reckon it to be about 130 Miles in compass, and its Extent is greater from West to East, than from South to North. The quality of the Air and Soil is so highly extoll'd by the Ancients, that among the several Names, by which this Island was distinguish'd, it was also call'd *Macaria*, or the Happy: Although the Air, does not now deserve so great Commendation, yet the Soil is fruitful in Corn, Grapes, Oil, Sugar, Saffron, Rhubarb, Cotton, Oranges, Lemmons and Copper; but it is much infested with Locusts. It has also some Mines of Gold and Silver. This Island which was sometime divided into nine Kingdoms, afterwards subjected to the *Romans*, and after the fall of the Empire, it came under the Dominion of *Guy de Lusignan*, from whose Posterity it was taken by *Richard* I. King of *England*, in his expedition to the Holy Land, and at present the Duke of *Sicily* by virtue of the right he claims to it, assumes the Title of King of *Cyprus*, and upon that account, he is plac'd in the Papal Chapel among the Crowned Heads, immediately after the *Venetians*: It is by *Ptolemy* divided into four Parts, according to the Quarters of the World, viz. *Paphia*, situated towards the West; *Amathusia*, or *Amathuntia*, towards the South, *Lapichia* towards the North; and *Salamina*, or *Salamina* towards the East; the Name of every Part being deriv'd from that of the chief Sea-port Town standing in it. *Cyprus* is at present distinguish'd into seven *Singiacakes*, and its most considerable Towns are *Paphos*, *Ruffo*, on the Western Coasts. *Amathus*, now *Limisso*, on the Southern Coasts, the chief Port in the Island, where Salt and other Commodities brought from *Laricko* is Laden. *Lencosia*, or *Nicosia*, an inland well fortified and large City; being the Capital of the Island, the Seat of the last Kings, and at this day, of the Turkish Governor, situated in a Moorish Plain: *Cerania*, *Cerines* on the Northern Coasts, with a capacious Harbour. *Famagusta*, otherwise call'd *Fama Augusta* and *Hamacoctos*, as also *Famagosta* by the *Italians*, a strong Town on the Eastern Coasts, with an excellent Harbour, Built out of the Ruins of *Salamis* by King *Kosts*. *Salamis*, which was not far distant from *Famagosta*, on the North, gave Name to the Eastern Part of the Island, and afterwards obtain'd that of *Constantia*; it was demolish'd by the *Saracens*, and its Ruins are call'd *Il Porto Constantino*. Tho' this Island be subject to the *Turks*, it is chiefly inhabited by Christian *Greeks*, who have an Archbishop at *Nicosia*, and three Bishops at *Famagosta*, *Paphos* and *Amathus*.



## C H A P. III.

## Modern SYRIA.

i. **A**FTER having taken a View of *Natolia*, and the Islands that lie over against it, we come to the third and last Part of *Turkey* in *Asia*, situated towards the West; and known by the Names of *Syria*, *Sourie* and *Souristan*, (call'd also *Affyria* and *Aram*, or *Charam* by the *Hebrews*, from *Aram* the Son of *Shem*;) was heretofore of a very large Extent, comprehending *Palæstina*, *Phœnicia*, *Syria* strictly taken, *Mesopotamia* and *Babylonia*, and in that Extent constituted that Monarchy, which was the first of the four Great Ancient Monarchie of the Earth. Begun by *Nimrod* the Son of *Cush* (who built the Tower of *Babel*) according to *Diodorus Siculus*; or by *Ninus* according to *Herodotus*; which continued in a Succession of 1300 years. After which in the year of the World 3148 *Sardanapalus* being conquer'd, the Monarchy was divided into the *Babylonian* and the *Medean*, till *Belshazzar* being overcome by *Cyaxeres* or *Darius* the *Mede*, it became again united; and at his Death *Cyrus* his Nephew, succeeding him, added *Persia* that had descended to him from his Father, whereby began the Second or *Persian* Monarchy: This lasted 200 years and was overthrown by *Alexander* the Great; after whose Death, his Captains dividing his Conquests, *Seleucus Nicator* became King of *Syria*, and was succeeded by his Posterity for about 250 years, after which it was made a Roman Province by *Pompey*. And at the fall of the Roman Empire it was over-run by the *Saracens*, and is now subject to the *Turks*. *Babylonia*, *Affyria* and *Mesopotamia*, being separated from it; only proper *Syria*, *Phœnicia* and *Palæstina*, retains that general Name which they still bear. This Continent of *Syria*, call'd *Soria* by the *Italians* and *Spaniards*, *Sourie* by the *French*, and *Souristan* by the Inhabitants, has for its Northern Bounds Mount *Amanus*, by which in former times it was parted from *Cappadocia*, or the lesser *Armenia*, and at this day, from *Aladulia* a Part of *Natolia*: For its Eastern Limits the River *Euphrates*, as far as the Town of *Thapsacus* seated on the same River, and afterwards *Arabia Deserta*, which separate it from *Mesopotamia* or *Diarbeck*. For its Southern Bounds *Arabia Petraea*; and for the Western, the same *Arabia*, and the Syrian, or *Levantine* Sea, being the most Eastern Part of the *Mediterranean*.

ii. *Syria* thus Bounded, within the concurrent Limits of Mount *Amanus* and the River *Euphrates*, and that Part of *Arabia Petraea*, which lies next to the Arabian Gulph, or Red Sea, is computed by *Cluverius* to take up 140 Leagues or 560 Miles in length. Its breadth is different in several Places, being even where it is greatest, but a third Part of its Length; it is narrowest in the Northern Parts; and widest between the Syrian Sea and *Arabia Deserta*. The Air is healthful and very tem-

perate, and the Soil is deep, level and pleasant, affording Pasture to numerous Herds of Cattel: It is also fruitful, (except in that Part which borders upon *Arabia*) and produces good store of Corn, Grapes, Figs, Oranges, Lemmons, Melons, Canes that yield a kind of Honey, Dates, Spices and medicinal Herbs. But where the Country lies wast, that is not to be imputed so much to the defect of the Soil, as to the frequent Wars, the continual IncurSIONS of the *Arabians*, the Revolt of the Inhabitants, and the Tyranny of the *Turks*, who to render their Dominion more firm, usually suffer those Countries that are possess'd by them to fall to decay, for want of Tillage.

The *Turks* have divided *Syria* into three general Governments, or *Beglerbeglicks*, viz. those of *Aleppo*, *Tripoli* and *Damascus*: The first of these, takes up the most Northern Part of *Syria*, comprehending nine *Sangiackates*, or lesser Governments; and the Capital Town of the whole Government is *Aleppo* the Seat of the Turkish *Beglerbeg*. The *Beglerbeglick* of *Tripoli* lies next to that of *Aleppo*, on the South, and derives its Name from *Tripoli* the chief Town of it, where the *Ottoman* Governor keeps his Court; having under his Jurisdiction four *Sangiacks*, or inferior Governors. The remaining Part of *Syria*, which lies most towards the South and West, is subject to the *Beglerbeglick* of *Scham*, or *Damascus*: This last takes its Name from the Town of *Damascus*, where the *Beglerbeg* usually resides, and ten *Sangiackates* depend upon it; among which some are hereditary, and may be more justly reputed distinct Principalities.

This Country is also divided at present; into *Syria* strictly taken; *Phœnicia* and *Judea*. *Syria* properly so call'd, being the largest Part extends it chiefly towards the North and East; and is bounded by the River *Euphrates*, *Arabia Deserta*, *Phœnicia*, the Syrian Sea and *Natolia*. The principal Towns in this Part of *Syria*, are *Samosata* once a considerable City seated towards the North, on the River *Euphrates*; in the Frontiers of *Diarbeck* and *Natolia*, the Native Country of *Lucian* and *Paulus Samosatenus*; but it is now decay'd and the Place call'd *Scempfat*. *Aleppum*, *Aleppo*, so call'd by the *Italians* and *English*, and *Alep* by the *French*, the ancient *Berrhæa*, *Beron*; or *Beroe*; according to the opinion of many Authors; although some will have it to be *Hierapolis*; and others *Chalybon*: However it is at present the Metropolis of all *Syria*; having three Suburbs and a very commodious Situation; between the River *Euphrates* and the Syrian Sea; which convenient Situation has made it the most famous Mart in these Parts: For by the Gulph of *Ormus* and the *Euphrates*; the *Persians*, *Arabians*, *Armenians* and other Eastern People, bring their Silks, Drugs, Jewels and other



other Merchandises; and on the other Side the *English, French, Dutch, Venetians, Genoese*, &c. by the *Mediterranean* Sea, convey the fine Cloath, wrought Silks, Lead, Furrs and many other European Commodities, which are thence vend'd all over the East. So that this City is frequented by Merchants both from the Eastern and Western Parts, and many *Europeans*, especially *English*, constantly reside, importing and exporting all sorts of Commodities, at *Alexandria, Alexandriola*, or the lesser *Alexandria*, call'd *Scanderona* by the *Turks*, and *Alexandria* by the *Italians*, seated on the Foot of Mount *Amanus* and on the *Ifficus* *Strait*, or Gulph of *Lazaro* in the Frontiers of *Nabata*, the Port to *Aleppo* and formerly a noted Mart-Town, of which now only remains a Stone-house belonging to the Captain of the *Fanzaries*, who exacts Custom for Merchandises, with a few Cottages, for the benefit of Merchants, that frequently travel from hence to *Aleppo*, or otherwise: The Air of this Place is so unhealthy, that if it were not for the convenience of Traffick, it would not be at all inhabited; but all European Ships that bring Goods to *Aleppo* arriving here, the Temptation of Profit obliges some Factors to reside here, who give advice to *Aleppo* of the Arrival of Ships by the means of Pigeons, that being bred up to that purpose, carry Letters with great expedition backwards and forwards.

V. The following Towns are situated more towards the South, viz. *Antiochia*, or *Antioch*, which for distinction sake was styl'd the Great, and *Epiphane* from *Daphne* its Suburb, and now *Antaccia* by the *Turks*, as also *Antaccia* by the *Arabians*; formerly the Metropolis of *Syria*, seated near the Mouth of the River *Orontes*, or *Almeimas*, partly on a Hill, and partly in a Plain; where the Disciples were first call'd Christians in the year 41. But now this famous Town has only a few Inhabitants, and part of it lies in ruins; yet the Walls are left almost entire to testify its ancient Grandeur. *Lodicea*, *Laudichia* and *Laudicea*, a little Town on the Sea-coasts falling to decay by degrees, yet still enjoying a capacious Harbour, and the *Vestigia* of four Marble Theatres. *Apamia* and *Apamea Hamma* situated on the River *Orontes* in a fruitful and pleasant Country. Farther in the inland Parts stands *Emisa*, or *Emessa*, now *Hemz*. *Palmyra*, now call'd *Fad*, *Tamos*, or *Tamere*, noted for that learned and valiant Queen *Zenobia*, who was well vers'd in the *Egyptian, Greek* and *Latin* Tongues, and who after many Wars, was at last taken Captive by *Aurelian* the Roman Emperor: this place was visited a few years since by the Chaplain of the *English Factory* at *Aleppo* and some curious Merchants, who found the ruins of most magnificent Buildings; a particular account whereof is given in a Letter from the Chaplain to Dr. Wallis, extant in the Philosophical Transactions. And *Lodicea Scabiola*, *Laudiesia*, near the Spring-head of the River *Orontes*.

VI Between *Syria* properly so call'd, on the North, and *Judea* on the South, lies *Phœnicia*,

a Maritim Country, in like manner, but of *Phœnicia* lesser Extent than *Syria*, now describ'd. The most remarkable Towns in the Inland Country are *Raalbec* and *Damascus*. The latter still call'd *Damasco* by the *Italians*, and *Scham* by the Inhabitants, is seated at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, in a Plain encompass'd with Hills, and water'd with a River antiently call'd *Chrysorrhœas*: 'Twas heretofore of great repute, and is at this day, the Capital of *Phœnicia*, affording a Place of Residence to the Turkish *Beglerbeg*, and to a *Greek* Patriarch, whose See was translated hither from *Antioch*: However its Inhabitants are few in number, but its Wines, Prunes, Wool and Silks both raw and wrought, still deserve much Commendation, and bring a considerable Trade to the City, which is chiefly manag'd by *Jews*. There is a fine Castle in the middle, which has been often demolish'd and rebuilt: Several Sects of Christians inhabit here and have Churches, and the Roman Catholics have two or three Colleges. On the Coasts of the Syrian Sea, stand *Tripolis*: *Syria*, or *Tripoli* of *Syria*, that adjunct serving to distinguish it from another *Tripoli* in *Barbary*; a large well-built Town, fortified with Walls, Towers and a Citadel on a Hill, where the Turkish Governor of that Province usually resides, enjoying also a convenient Harbour on the *Mediterranean* Sea. *Berytus* call'd *Bayru* by the Inhabitants, and *Baruti* by the *Italians*. *Sidon*, *Syd*, at present a very little Town, situated on the foot of a Hill, with an old Castle on a Rock, and a capacious but not very safe Harbour; yet lately dignified by the Pope, with the title of a Metropolitan See. *Tyrus*, or *Tyre*, call'd *Sur* by the Inhabitants and *Italians*, and *Sour* by the *French*; a very Celebrated City and mighty *Emporium* in ancient times, but now fallen so far to decay, that only an old Castle and about fifteen Houses are said to be left therein. And *Ptolemais*, formerly known by the Name of *Aco*, or *Acon* according to the *Hebrew* Dialect; at present call'd *Adri* by the *Italians*, and *Acre* by the *French*, as also sometimes *St. Jean d'Acre*, from the Knights of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, who resided here for a considerable time, and valiantly defended the Town against the *Saracens*. This City is mention'd in our *English Annals*, on account of the Valour of *K. Richard I.* at the Siege of it in the Year 1191, and *K. Edward I.* at a second Siege in 1270, but it is now almost buried in its own Ruins, and inhabited by a few Families.

*Judea*, now commonly call'd *The Holy Land* constitutes the third and last Part of *Sy-Judea*. *Judea*, lying in the middle between *Phœnicia* on the North, and *Arabia Petraea* on the South, and extending it self along the Coasts of the Syrian Sea. It is divided by some modern Geographers into eleven Provinces, eight of which are situated between the Syrian Sea, and the River *Jordan*, and the three others beyond that River, which are inhabited by the *Arabians*: Others only make four Cantons, or particular Districts between *Jordan* and the Sea, and six in that Part of *Judea*, which



which is extended from the same River towards the East.

The principal Towns of *Judea*, which at present are of little Note, and have their Situation at a greater or lesser distance from the Syrian Sea, may be reckon'd up in the following Order, *viz.* *Nazareth*, or *Nazra*, a ruinous Village, seated on a Hill near the Brook *Kifon*, but more especially famous for the Residence of our Blessed Lord Jesus Christ the Saviour of the World, and still reputed the Capital Town of the Nazarene Territory; in which are contain'd 25 small Villages. *Tiberias* or *Genesareth*, still call'd *Tabaryah* by the Inhabitants who are few in number, by reason of the Incursions of the *Arabians*; a very little Town on the Western Coasts of the Sea of *Tiberias*, or *Galilee*, and for the most part ruin'd, but formerly a considerable City, to which *Herod* gave that Name in Honour of the Emperor *Tiberius*. *Bethsan*, or *Bethsean* now reduc'd to a Castle, known by the Name of *Elbetsan* on the Western Bank of the River *Jordan*, a little below the said Sea: *Neapolis*, call'd *Naplosa* by the *Italians*, and *Naplosse* by the *French*, a Town situated in a Valley between two Hills, which rose up out of the Ruins of *Samaria*; being the Seat of a Turkish *Sangiack*, and the Capital of a Territory of the same Name, comprehending 100 Villages under its Jurisdiction. *Hierosolyma*, JERUSALEM, by the *Turks* call'd *Cudsembarich* and *Coudscherif*, as also *Elkods*, *i. e.* the Holy City, according to the Report of *Michael Nau*; the *Metropolis* of the Holy Land, and of the Territory of the Holy City, in which are contain'd 100 Villages. 'Tis at present of a small Compass, but fenced with Walls against the Inroads of the *Arabians*, scarce including ten Thousand Inhabitants, and daily falling to Decay: However, it is the Seat of a *Sangiack*, or Turkish Governor, and one of the four Towns, to which the Roman-Ca-

tholicks usually make their Pilgrimages, and a place to which all Christians resort to visit the Sepulchre of our Lord; which has a Church, wherein both the Greeks and Roman Christians continually officiate. The Pilgrimages hither is the chief Subsistence of the Town, and the Liberty of Possessing the Sepulchre costs the Christians an Annual Tribute to the Grand Seignior and the *Sangiack* of the Town. The Fate and Revolutions of this once so famous City is well known to all that read the Scriptures: The *Saracens* having got possession of it in the VIII. Century, the Christian Princes by a general Crusado assembled to regain it; and in effect it was recover'd, and *Godfrey* Crowned King in the Year 1099, his Posterity succeeded in that Honour for about 100 Years; but at last lost it again to the *Turks*, who have ever since enjoy'd it. See more of this City in our account of ancient *Judea*. *Hebron*, now call'd *Elkahil*, or *Elkhalil* by the Inhabitants, a neat Town, without Walls, seated partly on a Hill and partly in a Plain, the Capital of a District of the same Name, otherwise call'd the *Territory of the Friend of God*, in which are compris'd, about fifteen Villages.

On the Coasts of the Syrian Sea, or not far distant, are *Cesarea Palaestina*, *Caesar*, lying in Ruins. *Joppa*, *Jafa*, otherwise call'd *Jaffa* and *Giaffo*, part of which Town next the Harbour is now well inhabited, and furnished with several convenient Inns, for the Entertainment of Merchants and Strangers, that travel from *Europe* to *Jerusalem*. *Azotus* *Alzete*, almost quite ruin'd: *Ascalon*, *Scalona*, having few Inhabitants: And *Gaza*, or *Gazara*, a little Town, not much frequented; nevertheless it is govern'd by its own Prince commonly call'd the *Emir*, or *Bassa* of *Gaza*, under the Dominion of the *Turks*, and is the Capital of a Territory of the same Name; 300 Villages belonging to its Jurisdiction.







I.  
Ancient Ju-  
dæa.

**H**AVING thus describ'd the three Parts of modern Syria, viz. Syria strictly taken, Phœnicia and Judæa, it would also be worth the while, to give a particular Account of their ancient State, more especially of Judæa, in regard that it is so often mention'd in the Sacred Writings: Therefore we shall begin from thence in a retrograde Order, and afterwards proceed to Phœnicia and proper Syria. This Country was at first call'd the Land of Chanaan, from its ancient Possessor Chanaan, the Grandson of Noah, by his Son Cham, or Ham, who heretofore inhabited it, with his eleven Sons, as also did their Posterity for many Ages: It was styl'd The Land of Promise, ever since God promis'd it to Abraham and his Off-spring; and the Land of the Hebrews, or Israelites, when the Posterity of Abraham had taken Possession of the greatest Part of it, and divided it among the twelve Tribes: It was call'd Judæa, or the Land of Judah from that most potent and illustrious Tribe, and Palæstina; which latter Name is us'd by Ptolemy, as also by the Greek and Latin Writers; deriving it without doubt, from the most renowned and valiant Nation of the Palæstini, or Philistines, who settled themselves in the maritim Parts of Judæa, from the Frontiers of Egypt, to Casarea Stratonis, or Dor, which were very well known to the foreign Nations: Lastly, after the Death of our Lord and Saviour JESUS CHRIST, it was commonly call'd the Holy Land by the Christians, and still retains that Name, chiefly because the Prince of Peace being there conceiv'd, born and educated, promulgated the Doctrine of the Gospel, confirm'd it by Miracles, died, was buried, gloriously rose again, and triumphantly ascended thence into Heaven.

- II. The ancient Bounds of Judæa, on the South, were a certain Stream, or Rivulet of Egypt call'd Sichor, on the Mouth of which stood the Town of Rhinocorura or Rhinocolura, that heretofore belong'd to Egypt and afterwards to the Jews, taking its Name from the Inhabitants, who had their Noses maimed, or cut off: As also, the Desert of Bersabee or Beersheba and the mountainous Regions of Seir, or Schir, which were extended from the Spring-head of the River of Egypt, towards the East, to the hilly Country of the Moabites: And separated Judæa from the Desert of Pharan, which was the Seat of Hagar and Ishmael, from that of Kadesh-Barnea, from Idumæa, and from Arabia Petraea. It was bounded on the East, by the Country of the Moabites and Ammonites, or the Stony and Desert Arabia, also by the more Southern Part of Calosyria: On the North, by Phœnicia Damascena, Mount Antilibanus, and the Country of the Sidonians: And on the West, by the Mediterranean, otherwise call'd the Western and great Sea, to distinguish it from the lesser Seas, or Lakes that were included within the Continent of Judæa. These were the primitive Bounds of Judæa, but under the Reigns of David and Solomon, they were extended even to the River Euphrates, thro' Palmyrene, which was the most Eastern and Southern Part of

Part 2

Syria, call'd Aram Tzoba, or Soba by the Hebrews: Thus King Solomon is said to have enlarged his Empire, from the Town of Thapsacus, where there was a Passage over Euphrates, as far as Gaza.

Judæa was situated, with respect to the former Bounds, within the 31 and 33, or according to others, the 34<sup>th</sup> Degrees of Northern Latitude: For there is some little Difference in the judgment of Authors; some of them placing the Southern Bounds of Judæa nearer to the Equinoctial Line, and others removing it farther off: But they agree in this Particular, That the Latitude of Judæa consists of about three Degrees; and Geographers affirm, That it is situated in the Heart, or Middle of the World, which is not altogether without good grounds, when the Planisphere of the World, as it was known to the Ancients is understood. Its Longitude, or Length, according to the Scripture-Phrase, is extended either from the entrance into Emath, a Town of Naphtali seated on the Foot of Mount Antilibanus, the most received Northern Boundary of Judæa, to the City of Beersheba, in the Tribe of Simeon, and the Desert of the same Name, which are its well known Bounds, on the South: This last space, according to the Opinion of Adrichomius, includes about 67 French Leagues, every one of which makes almost three Italian, or English Miles, and may be measur'd by an Hour's Journey. Some Writers will have the utmost Extent of Judæa, from the Mediterranean Sea, to the Course of the River Jordan, where it runs most towards the East, to comprehend seventeen, or eighteen Leagues; but that it was spread beyond that River, appears from the Boundaries even now described.

Judæa was admirably fortify'd by Nature; for the Mediterranean Sea serv'd for its Bulwark on the West, on the Coasts of which were several very convenient Harbours, that afforded the fairest opportunity of promoting Navigation on all sides: Its other Boundaries were surrounded with noted Mountains; that is to say, it was fenc'd on the North, as it has been already hinted, by Antilibanus and Libanus, whose Names are often confounded; on the South, by the mountainous Territories of Seir, or Idumæa; and on the East, by the hilly Countries of the Moabites, as also by the Mountains of Arnon, Gilead and Hermon. The Inland Country was extremely pleasant, diversify'd with the finest Hills, Valleys, Fields, Groves, Springs, Rivers, Lakes and Seas: The Air was very temperate and healthful, and the Soil most fruitful; abounding every where, even beyond imagination, with numerous herds of Cattel, flocks of Birds, swarms of Bees, shoals of Fish, and great store of Corn, Wine, Oil, Sugar, Balsam, or Balm, Spice, Palm-trees Dates, Figs, Pomegranates, Flowers and all sorts of Delights. To these may be added the incredible multitude of the Inhabitants, and great number of Towns, Villages and Castles, which was no where exceeded throughout the whole World, within so small a space

D

of

III.

IV.



of Land. When the *Israelites* enter'd the Land of Promise, it contain'd 52 Kingdoms, five maritime Governments of the *Philistines*, and seven considerable Nations, viz. the *Amorites*, *Gergesites*, *Hivites*, *Perezites*, *Jebusites*, *Hittites* and *Canaanites*, descended from the Posterity of *Canaan* and destroy'd by *Joshua*, whose particular Seats shall be hereafter observ'd by the Way, in their proper Places.

- v. When the *Israelites* had taken possession of the most Part of *Judæa* by the Divine Appointment and Assistance, it was divided according to the Number of their Tribes, into twelve Parts, of which two and a half were settled beyond *Jordan*, and the rest had their Seats on the hither side of that River; the Tribe of *Levi* being dispers'd among all the others. Thus the Tribes of *Reuben* and *Gad*, with half the Tribe of *Manasseh* took up their abode beyond *Jordan*; but the Tribes of *Nephthali*, *Ashter*, *Zabulon*, *Issachar*, the other half Tribe of *Manasseh*, *Ephraim*, *Benjamin*, *Judah*, *Dan* and *Simeon*, possess'd the Territories on the hither side of the same River. All these Tribes at first constituted one Kingdom, but in the time of *Rehoboam*, were divided into two, that is to say, those of *Judah* and *Israel*; the Names being distinguish'd by the Schism, which before, were promiscuously us'd. In the Kingdom of *Judah*, only were compris'd the Tribes of *Simeon*, *Judah* and part of *Benjamin*, and the rest were united to the Kingdom of *Israel*: The Royal Court of the former was kept at *Jerusalem*, and that of the latter, for the most part at *Samarita*.

- vi. We shall first describe the Country of *Judæa* beyond *Jordan*, which was bounded on the West, by that River; on the East, by *Arabia* and *Syria*; on the North, by Mount *Herman*; and on the South, by the lowest Part of the River *Arnon*. This Part of *Judæa*, was distributed without casting Lots, (as it has been already intimated) to the Tribes of *Reuben* and *Gad* and the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, before call'd *Amorrhites*, and inhabited by the *Amorrhæi*, *Emorrhæi*, or *Amorites*, who after having march'd with their victorious Army beyond *Jordan*, expell'd the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* out of those Territories.

- vii. The Tribe of *Reuben*, took possession of the most Southern Part of *Judæa* beyond *Jordan*, which had for its Bounds on the South and East the River *Arnon*, and *Arabia Petrea*; on the North, the Tribe of *Gad*; and on the West, the lowest Territory of *Jordan*; by which it was separated from the Tribe of *Benjamin* and the dead Sea. Here the *Moabites* settled themselves, on the hither side and beyond the River *Arnon*; the People of *Israel* enter'd *Canaan* on the hither side of *Jordan* through this Country; and the Prophet *Elijah* was translated thence into Heaven. Within its Jurisdiction were compris'd divers well cultivated Plains, with most pleasant Hills and Valleys, and a great number of Cities, about the Situation of which, as well as with respect to that of the other Towns,

throughout all the Territories of *Judæa*, there is often a very considerable Disagreement in several Maps, which ought to be now observ'd and for the future.

Among the chief Towns belonging to the Tribe of *Reuben*, were *Lasah* afterwards call'd *Callirhoe*, from the Course of several fine Springs, with which it was water'd: *Kedemoth*, or *Kedemosh*; and *Jethson* a City of the *Levites*. As was *Mephath*, or *Mephar*, which *Judas Maccabeus* destroy'd with Fire, after having put the Men to the edge of the Sword. *Baal-meon* formerly a noted City. *Medabah* sometime the Capital of the *Ammonites*. *Heshbon* or *Esbon*, a Town which was afterwards given to the *Levites*, seated on a Hill in the Confines of *Reuben* and *Gad*, which some attribute to the latter; the Royal Seat of *Sihon* King of the *Amorites*. *Eleale* abounding in Vineyards. *Jabalah*, or *Jasa* a City of the *Levites*, with a Desert of the same Name. *Kirjath-shaim*. *Bamoth-Baal*, i. e. high *Baal*, a Town and Hill of the same Denomination, where *Baal* was worshipped. *Bethphogor*, i. e. the House of a Gap, or Breach, noted for the adoration of a certain Moabish Idol: *Phogor* a very high Mountain, from the top of which, *Balaam* the Sorcerer, by the impulse of God bless'd the People of *Israel*, although he had ascended it, with *Balaak* King of the *Moabites*, on purpose to curse them. *Alhodoth-Pisgah*: *Phalga*, or *Pisgah*, a Mountain of an extreme height, from the top of which, *Moses* by the special Order of God, took a View of the whole Land of Promise, which he was not permitted to enter. *Nebo*, a neighbouring Mountain; both which and more especially the former (according to *Adrichomius*) were the highest tops of the Mountains of *Abarim*, which taking their first rise in the Country of the *Moabites*, were extended along the Course of the River *Jordan*, to the hilly Country of *Gilead*. *Macherus*, a well fortify'd Town, built upon a steep Rock, with a dangerous Precipice on all sides, not far from the Northern Coasts of the Dead Sea, to which *St. John* the Baptist was sent bound by *Herod*, and afterwards beheaded there. *Livias*, or *Libias*, near the Mouth of the River *Jordan*, founded by *Herod* in honour of *Livia* the Mother of *Tiberius*. *Bozra*, or *Bezer*, a City of Refuge given to the *Levites*, in the midst between *Macherus* and Mount *Nebo*. *Sethim*, or *Suim*, according to the *Hebrew* Dialect, where the *Israelites* committed Fornication with the Daughters of *Midian* and *Moab*. *Beerabara* on *Jordan*, famous for *St. John's* Baptizing: It denotes, The House of Passage, either because here was a Ferry over the River, or in regard that the People of *Israel* pass'd over its Chanel on Foot, near the same Place. *Abilah*, a Town in the Plain-Country of *Moab*, the Soil of which brought forth great store of Palm-trees. *Beth-jesimoth*, the Northern Boundary of the same Plains of *Moab*. *Sarathasar*. And *Helon*.

The Territories of the Tribe of *Gad* were situated in the Province beyond *Jordan*, between the River on the West, by which it was separated from those of the Tribe of *Ephraim*,

The Amorites.

The Moabites.

The Tribe of Reuben.

viii

The Tribe of Gad.



*Ephraim*, and of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, the Brook *Jabbok*; on the North: the Country of the *Ammonites* and the mountainous Tracts of *Gilead* and *Arabia*; on the East: And the Seat of the Tribe of *Reuben*, on the South. It was a very pleasant and fruitful Country, comprehending the best Part of the Land of *Gilead*, which deriv'd its Name from the adjacent Mount *Gilead*; as also the Land of *Thob*, or *Tob*, formerly under the Dominion of the *Ammonites*, where *Jephtha* escap'd by flight and took up his Habitation:

The most remarkable Cities and Towns of this Country were *Dibon*, a large and well fortified Place. *Aroer*, call'd also *Ar*, *Arnon* and *Rabbath Moab*, i. e. great *Moab*, a noted City on the River *Arnon* and the Capital of the *Moabites*. *Nabartha*: *Mennith*, or *Minnith*, a Town of the *Ammonites*; whom *Jephtha* overcame in Battel, and pursu'd as far as that Place. *Fazer*; or *Fezer*, a City of the *Levites*, seated in a rich Soil, and on a Lake of the same Name. *Arnon* a Town and Mountain so call'd: *Mazeth* heretofore of a large extent. *Rogelim*; the Town of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, who entertain'd King *David* in his Flight: *Maspha*, *Masphat*, or *Mizpeth*, a City of the *Levites*, where *Jephtha* usually resid'd. *Rabba*, or *Rabbath* on the Brook *Jabbok*, heretofore a Royal Seat and the Metropolis of the *Ammonites*, who dwelt in the middle Way between the *Moabites* on the South, and the *Syrians* on the North; but they were first driven beyond the hilly Country by the *Amorites*, and afterwards by the *Israelites*: Here was King *Ogg's* Iron-bed nine Cubits long and four broad, and *Uriah* the *Hittite* was kill'd in the storming of this Place: But when the City and adjacent Country was subdued by *Ptolomey Philadelphus* King of *Egypt*, he impos'd on both (as they say) the Name of *Philadelphia*. *Ramoth-Gilead*, a City of Refuge, belonging to the *Levites*, where *Jehu* was anointed King: *Carbon*. The Forest or Champain of *Ephraim*, behind which was a Wood, where *Absalom* was kill'd. *Thesba*, or *Thesbe*, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Elijah*. *Dabir*, a Town near the River *Jordan*. *Betharan* somewhat higher. Also *Succoth*, render'd *Scenæ* in Greek, i. e. the *Tabernacles*, or *Tents*, where the Patriarch *Jacob*, was reconcil'd with his Brother, and *Gideon* chastis'd the Elders of *Succoth* with Thorns and Briers. *Phanuel*, or *Penuel*, where the same Patriarch wrestled with the Lord, and *Gideon* demolish'd the Tower of a Town, of the same Name, situated near the Brook *Jabbok*. *Mahanaim*, i. e. The Camps, a City of the *Levites* beyond the said Brook, in the Borders of *Manasseh*, on the farther side of *Jordan*; where the Angels of God appeared to *Jacob* in a Vision.

IX. The remaining Part of *Judæa* beyond *Jordan* was possess'd by the half Tribe of *Manasseh*: Its Bounds on the West, were the Sea of *Galilee* and the River *Jordan*, by which it was parted from the Territories of the Tribes of *Zabulon* and *Naphtali*: On the North, *Syria*, *Damascena* and Mount *Hermon*: On the East, the same Mountain and that of *Gilead*:

Part 2

And on the South the Possessions of the Tribe of *Gad*. The Mountains of *Hermon* and *Libanus*, with the adjacent Parts, were heretofore inhabited by the People call'd *Hevæi*, or *Hivites*. The inheritance of this half Tribe <sup>The Hivites.</sup> comprehended; the middle Part of the Territory of *Gilead*, and all the Dominions of *Og* King of *Basan*. *Basanitis*, or the Country of *Basan*, is extended in length; (according to *Adrichomius*) from the Town of *Mahanaim*; or the Brook *Jabbok*, to the Frontiers of *Damascus*, and the Country of *Gessuri* and *Machari*; as also in breadth, from the mountainous Tracts of *Gilead* and *Hermon*, to the Sea of *Galilee* and the River *Jordan*. In these Parts were verdant Pastures full of very fat Cattel, and numerous Groves that produc'd admirable Oaks; and they were inhabited by very strong Giants; whence the Country was also call'd the Land of *Raphaim*, or Giants, of the remainder of whom was *Og*; the last Monarch of the whole Kingdom of *Basan*, who was kill'd by the *Israelites*: Here were a great number of Distinct Territories; viz. those of the *Gergesites*, *Gamalitica*, *Garonitis* and *Batanea*, which last reach'd beyond the fruitful Soil of *Basan* towards the East, as far as the Deserts of *Syria* and *Arabia*; as also, those of *Trachonitis*, *Argob*, *Gessuri*, *Machari* and *Auranitis*.

This half Tribe had many famous, large and well fortify'd Cities and Towns; among which were *Ephron*, or *Hephron*, surrounded with Hills, not far from the Mouth of the Brook *Jabbok*. *Hippos*, or *Hippus*, on the Coasts of the Sea of *Galilee*. *Gadara* seated on a Hill, from whence the adjacent Country was call'd *The Gadarene*, inhabited chiefly by the *Gentiles*. *Jabesh-Gilead*, the Capital Town, of the Territory of *Galaaditis*, the Siege of which carry'd on by *Naash* was rais'd by King *Saul*. *Pella*, to which *Pella* a Town of *Macedonia* is suppos'd to have communicated its Name. *Gilead* built on a Hill so call'd; from which both the Town and neighbouring Territory took their Denominations; the native Country of *Jephtha*, one of the most valiant Judges, or Captains of the *Israelites*: *Casphor*. *Kamon*. *Kedar*, a neat Town mention'd in the Song of *Solomon*. *Jair*: *Edrai*; the Royal Seat of *Og* King of *Basan*. *Gamala*; built on a Rock that is steep on all sides, from whence the Province *Gamalitica* took its Name. *Gerasa*, heretofore *Gergesa*, inhabited by the *Gergesites*; from whence the Territory <sup>The Gergesites.</sup> lying round about, was call'd the Country of the *Gerasenes* and *Gergesenes*; but forasmuch as *Gergesa* was near to *Gadara*, it is probable, that the same Territory was so nam'd from both Cities. *Magedan*, or *Magdala*; not far from *Gerasa*: *Dalmanutha*, within the Borders of *Magdala*; so that 'tis no Wonder, that the Names of *Dalmanutha* and *Magdala* are promiscuously taken: *Julias* on the maritim Coasts of *Galilee* not far from the Influx of the River *Jordan* into that Sea; formerly call'd *Bethsaida*, as we are inform'd by *Josephus*; but if we may give credit to *Adrichomius*, it was then only a Village; on the other side of the Sea, under the Jurisdiction

D 2

of



of *Beſhſada*. *Corazaim*, in Greek *Chorazin*, on the very Mouth of *Jordan*, over againſt *Capharnaum* or *Capernaum*, which Town our Saviour honour'd with many Miracles and Sermons: altho' they prov'd ineffectual. *Succa*, *Succa*, or *Succa*, a noted Town, ſeated ſomewhat higher, in a very fertile Country: The Tents of *Kedar* were ſet up between this laſt Town of *Succa*, and that of *Kedar*, mention'd a little above, in very fruitful and pleaſant Fields, during the Fair, that was kept here at a certain Time: *Gadſon* otherwiſe call'd *Gadſon*, *Golan* and *Golan*, a fair City of Refuge, belonging to the *Levites* in the Province of *Basan*, from whence the adjacent Country is nam'd *Gadſon*, or *Gadſonitis*: as the Town of *Adach* communicates its Name to the neighbouring Territory of *Adach*. *Aſtaroth*, a large Levitical Town of *Basan*, and ſometimes one of the Royal Seats of King *Og*. *Theman*. *Beera* a fortify'd Town allotted to

the *Levites*, which as well as *Theman* ought to be diſtinguiſh'd from the Towns of the ſame Name in *Idumæa*. The *Pharanx*, or Valley of *Antiochus*. *Sogane* built in a very ſtrong Place: *Argob*, a Town and Territory ſo call'd. *Naamah*, which in *Hebrew* ſignifies Fair, a Town made (as ſome are of opinion) by modern Authors, and plac'd at a little diſtance from *Theman* and *Succa*, as it were the Seat of *Zophar* the *Naamahite*, one of *Job's* three Friends. *Selcha*, or *Salcha*, the Boundary of the Kingdom of *Baſan* on the North. *Geffar*, a Royal City, the Capital of *Geffuri* a bordering Country, where *Abſalom* fled, after he had deflour'd his Siſter *Thamar*. *Seleucia* a Town of a pleaſant Situation on the Waters of *Meron*, abounding in Springs. *Aram*. *Gerson*, a Town of Foreigners in *Basanitis*. *Michai*, a fortify'd Place. *Abela*. *Mara*. And *Auran*, from whence the Territory of *Auranitis* derives its Name.

## CHAP. V.

### Judæa on the hither ſide of the River Jordan.

I. **A**FTER having view'd the Country of *Judæa* beyond *Jordan*, we paſs to that which lies on the hither ſide of that River, and which was bounded on the Eaſt, by the ſea, or by the Courſe of the ſaid River *Jordan* flowing between both: On the South, by the little Country of *Sam* and the Rivulet *Sichor*: On the Weſt, by the Great, or *Mediterranean* Sea: And on the North, by the Country of the *Sidonians* and Mount *Ani-Libanus*. This Part of *Judæa* very much exceeds the former in largeneſs, and therefore was diſtributed by Lot, among the Nine Tribes and half, which were, (as we ſaid before in the fifth Section of the preceding Chapter) the ſix of *Naphtali*, *Aſſer*, *Zabulon*, *Iſſachar*, the half Tribe of *Manaſſeh*, *Ephraim*, *Benjamin*, *Juſaſh*, *Dan* and *Simeon*, whoſe poſſeſſions ſhall be deſcrib'd in the ſame Order.

II. Firſt then, as we enter *Judæa* on the hither ſide of *Jordan*, towards the North, the Territory of the Tribe of *Naphtali*, or *Nephthalim*, offer themſelves to our View; being bounded on the Eaſt, by thoſe of the half Tribe of *Manaſſeh* beyond *Jordan*, or by the River it ſelf, from its Spring-head to the Sea of *Galilee*; on the South, by the ſame Sea and the Poſſeſſions of the Tribe of *Zabulon*; on the Weſt, by thoſe of *Aſſer*: and on the North, by Mount *Ani-Libanus*. This Country extends it ſelf, for the moſt part, between the ſaid Mountain and the Sea of *Galilee*; but its Breadth is different, and it is leaſt of all, in the Northern Parts: the Soil was very fruitful and pleaſant, more eſpecially towards the Sea-coaſts; and Traffick might be eaſily maintained, with the reſt of the Tribes, as alſo with the *Phœnicians*, *Syrians*, and *Damaſcens*. The Provinces of *Emath*, *Paneas*, *Beſim*, and *Arbellis* were under the Jurisdiction of this Tribe: but we ſhall haſten to give a particu-

lar Account of the moſt conſiderable Cities and Towns.

Within the Borders of *Naphtali* (taking no notice of the magnificent Temple of *Auguſtus*, which the elder *Herod* caus'd to be built of white Marble, within the Springs of *Jordan*, and dedicated it to that Emperor, in his lifetime) ſtood *Lais*, *Laiſa*, or *Leſhem*, on the Foot of Mount *Libanus*, near the confluence of the Springs *Jor* and *Dan*, in a very fruitful Country afterwards call'd *Dan*, as being a Colony of the *Danites*: The ſame Town was alſo known by the Names of *Paneas*, or *Celærea Philippi*; and was the utmoſt Boundary of *Judæa*, on the North, from whence the adjoining Territory was nam'd *Paneas*. Beſides this Town, there were *Heleph*, or *Heleb*. *Reccah*, a ſtrong place. *Abela* and *Abel-berth-Maſcha*, whither *Sheba* the Traytor fled for refuge. *Reblaika*, or *Rebla*, a noted City, water'd by the Rivulet *Daphnis*: *Aroſeth* or *Harſeſh* of the Gentiles, the Town of *Sifara*, ſeated on the Waters of *Meron*, where the River *Jordan* paſſes out of them, and inhabited by ſeveral Nations.

Somewhat lower were *Adami*. *Jebnael*. *Lecum*. And *Capharnaum*, or *Capernaum*, according to the Greek Dialect; heretofore, a moſt wealthy and flouriſhing Mart-Town, ſituated on the Northern Coaſts of the Sea of *Galilee*, and the banks of the River *Jordan*, at its influx into it; in a fruitful and pleaſant Country, famous for the Reſidence, Sermons and Miracles of our Lord and Saviour *JESUS CHRIST*. This Town communicated its Name to the neighbouring Deſart and Mountain, which is alſo call'd *Chriſt's* Mount, and was much frequented by him. *Kadeſh-Nephthalim*, a City of refuge, belonging to the *Levites*, on the top of an Hill. *Arbellis*, from whence the Country lying round about, took



its Name. *Magdala*, a fortified Town. *Cartham*, under the Jurisdiction of the *Levites*. *Sephor*, on a very high and delightful Hill. *Nephtalim*, a noted Town. *Naisan* situated in a Valley. *Bethhemesh*, or *Bethemes*, a fortified Town. *Asor*, or *Hasor*, the Royal Seat of the most potent King *Jabin*; and *Kirjathaim* a City of the *Levites*. As also, *Amathlor*, or *Chamothlor*, seated in the middle, between *Pameida* and *Emath*. *Emath* otherwise call'd *Amath* and *Hammath*, a very strong Town, by the Spring-head of the River *Eleutherus*, or *Valania*, and Mount *Libanus*, which was also one of the Boundaries of *Judæa*, on the North, and from whence the adjacent Territory of *Emathæa* or *Amathites* deriv'd its Name: And *Affedim*, a Place of considerable strength.

III. As the Territories of the Tribe of *Naphtali*, *The Tribe of* so those of the Tribe of *Asher*, *Aser*, or *Affer*, *Alher*. extend themselves farthest towards the North of all the Parts of *Judæa*, on the hither side of *Jordan*: These Territories are bounded on the East, by those of *Naphtali*; on the South, by those of *Zabulon*; on the West, by the *Mediterranean Sea*, and the Countries of the *Tyrrians* and *Sidonians*; (which, although they were comprehended within the Lot of *Asher*, could never be brought in subjection to that Tribe) and on the North, by Mount *Antilibanus*, or *Syro-Phœnicia*. Here, in the Northern Tract, was situated the Land of *Maspha*, and that of *Chabul*, or *Cabul*, by the *Tyrian Mountains*, where twenty Cities were given to King *Solomon*, by *Hiram* King of *Tyre*; as also, in the Southern Parts, the Valley of *Alher*, or the *Fat Valley*, abounding in Oil, Wine and excellent Wheat, which is now call'd the Valley of *St. George*, from a Castle of the same Name built therein: Nor was this Valley alone exceeding fruitful, but all the rest of the Territories were so also.

The principal Towns were *Elkath*, otherwise call'd *Helkath* and *Chelkad* belonging to the *Levites*, and situated towards the North. *Cana* the greater, so call'd to distinguish it from the other *Cana* of lesser extent, and seated in the middle of the Country, near the River *Eleutherus*. *Roob*, *Rohob*, or *Rechob*, a Town of good note, granted to the *Levites*. *Gabala*; *Cabul*. And *Abdon* likewise in the possession of the *Levites*. *Bethemeth*, or *Bethemec*, built on a Valley, in the Confines of *Zabulon*; as also were *Bethdagon* and *Labanath*. To these Towns may be added *Sihor*. *Acon* afterwards call'd *Ptolemais*, by the King of *Egypt*; a noted Town, with a capacious Harbour, on the Sea-coasts and in the Borders of the Land of *Israel*, although its ancient Inhabitants could not be expell'd by the Tribe of *Asher*. And *Messal*, or *Missal*, seated likewise on the Sea-shore in the Frontiers of *Zabulon*, and possess'd by the *Levites*.

IV. The Territories of the Tribe of *Zabulon* or *The Tribe of Zabulon*, were bounded on the North, by those of *Asher* and *Naphtali*; on the East, by the Sea of *Galilee*; on the South, by the Possessions of the Tribe of *Issachar*, or the Brook *Kison*, that runs between both; and on the West, by the *Mediterranean Sea*: So that they lay

between two Seas, but their Extent was larger towards the former, than the latter, and the Soil was fruitful.

The most considerable Towns of these Parts, were *Zabulon*, of great strength, not far distant from the *Mediterranean Sea*. *Cana* of *Galilee*, or the lesser, which some Geographers do not place in the Confines of *Asher*, but in the Territories of *Naphtali*, a small Village, according to *Josephus*, where our Lord and Saviour *JESUS CHRIST* began his Miracles, by turning Water into Wine. *Anathon*, or *Hanathon*. *Kethron*. *Bersabe*. *Semeron*, a potent and Royal City. *Damna* under the Jurisdiction of the *Levites*, and *Naisan*. *Dothaim*, or *Dothan*, a Town abounding with Figgs, Vineyards and Olives, where the Patriarch *Joseph* met with his Brothers. *Bethulia*, a Town noted for its Springs, and situated on a high Hill: *Bethlehem* of *Zabulon*, so call'd to distinguish it from *Bethlehem-Judah*, which *M. Sanjon* will have to be *Bethulia* itself, although the most part of Geographers make them different Towns. *Amathar*, a neat Town. *Remmon* possess'd by the *Levites*, and by *Sanjon* made the same Place with *Damna*; mention'd a little before: And *Bethsaida* a famous City of *Galilee*, on the Frontiers of *Naphtali*, where our Saviour perform'd many Miracles. The Village and Desert beyond the said Sea, were under the Jurisdiction of *Bethsaida*, according to *Adrichomius*.

Here were also situated the Land of *Genesar*, *Genesareth* in *Greek*, a very fine fruitful Country, of a most admirable Temperature: The Castle of *Magdalum*, fortified with Towers and Bulwarks, on the same Sea. *Jotapata* a very strong hold, founded on a rock, to which there was a Passage, only on one side; remarkable for the Siege sustain'd by *Josephus*. *Tiberias*, a large noble City, famous for its hot Baths and Academy; seated on the South-West Coasts of the Sea of *Galilee*, which was sometime denominated from this City; it was built by *Herod* the Tetrarch, in honour of *Tiberius Caesar*. *Japhie*. *Cartha* belonging to the *Levites*. *Legio*. *Cheseleth-tabor*, a Town in a Campaign-Country, on the Foot of *Tabor*, or *Thabor*, call'd *Iabyrius*, by *Josephus*, a high round Mountain, beset with Olive-trees, Vines and other Fruit-trees of several sorts, and famous, for the Transfiguration of *JESUS CHRIST*. *Tabor*, a Town granted to the *Levites*. *Saffa*, or *Saffra*. *Sephoris*, a wealthy, large and well fortified Town. *Buria*, seated in a fruitful Soil: *Nazareth*, a neat Town, where our Lord and Saviour was conceiv'd and educated, and thence was call'd a *Nazarene*. *Naalol* granted to the *Levites*. *Sarid*. *Gaba*; a Place of good note. And *Sicaminum*, otherwise call'd *Ephu* and *Elpha* a Sea-port Town, which in some Maps, is comprehended within the Bounds of the next Tribe.

The Territories of the Tribe of *Issachar*, or *Issachar* border on the North, upon those of *The Tribe of Zabulon*, from which they are separated by *Issachar*. the Rivulet *Kison*; on the East, upon the Sea of *Galilee*, and the River *Jordan*, just at its Passage from thence; on the South, upon the Possessions



Possessions of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*; and on the West, upon the great Sea, though according to the opinion of some Geographers, it did not extend quite to the Sea, because Mount *Carmel*, and the Land of *Nail* intervened. It was a very excellent and delightful Country: wherein were the Mountains of *Carmel* and *Gilboa*: The former, that ought to be distinguish'd from the other Mount *Carmel* of *Judah*, took up the Western Parts of this Tribe, (according to the common delineation of the Maps, although some comprehend it within the Bounds of the Tribe of *Zabulon*) and lies out into the *Mediterranean* Sea, in form of a Promontory: It is an high Mountain full of Groves; cover'd with Olive-trees, Vines, several sorts of Fruit-trees, and fragrant Herbs; well inhabited; and famous for the History of the Prophet *Elijah*, as also for the Order of *Carmelite* Monks, who deriv'd their Name and Original from thence. Mount *Gilboa* is a long continued Ridge extending from the Town of *Jezebel* to the River *Jordan*, through the Confines of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*; and upon this Mountain King *Saul* and his Son *Jonathan* were kill'd by the *Philistines*. Within the Boundaries of this Tribe were also the Valley of *Jezebel* remarkable for several Battels: The *Great Field*, or *Champaign*, otherwise nam'd, *The Field of Mageddo*, or of *Eldrelon*, and *The Plain of Galilee*, which reach'd as far as the Territories of *Manasseh*, abounding with Corn, Wine and Oil, and is at present call'd, *The Plain of Saba*, from a Castle of the same Name: And the Land of *Nail*, on the Foot of Mount *Carmel*.

The chief Towns of the Tribe of *Issachar* were *Beth-shean*, on the very edge of Mount *Carmel*, which ought to be distinguish'd from *Beth-shean* of *Naphthali* and *Judah*, and several other Towns of the same Name. *Abraham*; *Nam*, or *Nun*, on the Brook *Kishon*, at the Foot of which our Lord and Saviour *Jesus Christ* rais'd the Widow's Son to Life. *Seon*. *Dothai*, where King *Saul* consulted the Witch: *Abraham*. *Rabbah*, in the Valley of *Jezebel*. *Beirath*, or *Dabrah*, a City of Refuge belonging to the *Levites*, water'd by the Rivulet *Kishon*. *Cesion*, likewise possess'd by the *Levites*. *Issachar*, a Town of the same Name with the Tribe, situated in the middle, between the Sea of *Galilee*, and the River *Jordan*. *Bezek*. *Ramoth*, and *Engannim*, Cities under the Jurisdiction of the *Levites*. *Enhadda*. *Beth-shean*. *Cedes*, a Town of the *Levites*, which *M. Sarton* supposes to be the same with *Cesion* mention'd a little before. *Jezebel*, the Royal Seat of King *Ahab*, seated on the Foot of Mount *Gilboa*, to the West, and in the Frontiers of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*; and reckon'd by *Andrakomus* among the Possessions of that Tribe: *Naboth's* Vineyard was situated near this City of *Jezebel*, which is sometimes us'd by the Prophets for the Term of *Israel*. *Jaramoth* a Town allotted to the *Levites*. *Suna*, *Sula*, or *Shunem*, the Birth-place of *Abijah*, the young Virgin, who administr'd to King *David*, in his old Age; but especially the place where the Prophet *Elisha* was born, and in gratitude for the

kind entertainment he had receiv'd, wrought a Miracle, and restor'd the *Shunemite's* Son to Life. *Aphbek*, a Royal City where the *Philistines* encamp'd, at several times. *Eldrelon*, a Town situated in a spacious Plain, which took its Name from thence; and *Casaloah*.

The Territories of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, VI: on the hither side of *Jordan*, distinguish'd The half Tribe of *Manasseh*; from those of the other half Tribe, beyond that River, had for their Boundaries, on the North, the Possessions of the Tribe of *Issachar*; those of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, on the South; the River *Jordan* on the East: and the *Mediterranean* Sea, on the West. The *Pherezei*, or *Perezites*, a rude sort of People dwelt in the Woods and Mountains, in the Western and maritim Territories of this half Tribe; although their Seat is plac'd by other Geographers in the more Southern Parts. The Country was very pleasant to the sight, by reason of the admirable variety of the Plains, Mountains, Hills, Valleys and Springs, besides the fruitfulness of the Soil, and the great number of Inhabitants, and stately Cities. In the same Western Tract was situated the Northern Part of the Plains of *Saron*, which were extended from *Casarea Palestina* to *Lydda*, or *Joppe*, fenced with Mountains, on the East and West, and abounding with Corn, Orchards and Pastures, that afforded Fodder to the King's Cattel.

The principal Cities and Places of this Tribe were *Nopheth*, a well fortified Royal Seat, on the Sea-coasts. The King of which was kill'd by *Joshua*. The Tower of *Siron* afterwards call'd *Casarea Palestina*, a magnificent, strong, large and rich City; bordering on the East, upon a deep Marsh of fresh Water, and on the West, upon the *Mediterranean* Sea. *Capharnaum* likewise a Sea-port Town. *Mageddo*, a noble City, whose King was put to death by *Joshua*, and near which King *Josiah* was wounded by the Archers; seated in a spacious Plain, which took its Name from thence, as it has been already observ'd in the Tribe of *Issachar*. *Jebla*, a strong hold. *Adadremmon* in the same Plain of *Mageddo*. *Gaber*. *Geth-remmon*, a City of the *Levites*. *Tanac*, *Thanach*, or *Thenach*, a large and potent City, in the Frontiers of *Issachar*, belonging likewise to the *Levites*, where *Deborah* fought valiantly against *Sisara*. *Acrabata*, that communicated its Name to the adjacent Mannour. *Aner*, under the Jurisdiction of the *Levites*. *Bethsan* afterwards call'd *Scythopolis*, a large Town rebuilt and inhabited by the *Scythians*, between the Mountains of *Gilboa* and the River *Jordan*. *Salem*, or *Salim* suppos'd to have been the Royal Seat of *Melchisedec*. *Ennon*, or *Anon*, where St. *John* baptiz'd the People, by reason of the plenty of Waters. *Bezek*, a Royal City. *Bethbera*. *Ephra*, where *Gideon* dwelt and was bury'd, and near which was an Altar and Grove dedicated to *Baal*. The Castle *Alexandrium*. *Abelmaula*, a noted Town: *Thersa*, *Tharsa*, or *Thirja*, a Royal City on a Hill, where the Kings of *Israel* kept their Court, till *Samaria* was built. *Thebes*, a Town of good note, in a very fruitful Country, where King *Abimelech*.



*melech* was knock'd on the Head with a Mill-stone, as he was besieging the Tower. *Nis. Machmata*, otherwise call'd *Machmeth* and *Aser-Machmath*, in the Confines of *Ephraim*. *Narbatba*. The Castle of *Manath*. *Ender*. *Galgai* the Royal Seat of a Prince, who was slain by *Joshua*. And *Capharsalama*, afterwards call'd *Antipatria* by *Herod*, from his Father *Antipater*; a Sea-port Town, lying between two Rivulets on the Frontiers of *Ephraim*, and encompass'd with a very fine Grove, in an admirable Champain-Country.

VII. The Possessions of the Tribe of *Ephraim* The Tribe of were bounded on the North, by those of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, on the hither side of *Jordan*; on the East, by the same River; on the South, by the Territories of the Tribes of *Benjamin* and *Dan*, or as others will have it, only by those of *Benjamin*; although it is otherwise express'd in the Maps; and on the West, by the great Sea, which is its least Extent. This Country was extremely mountainous, but the Soil was very fat, and every where luxuriant: That Part of it which extended it self, from the mountainous Tracts of *Ephraim*, particularly to call'd, comprehended the Southern and most fruitful Part of the Plains of *Saron*, which were describ'd a little before, under *Manasseh*.

By reason of the excellency of this Tribe, the Kingdom of *Israel*, was also call'd that of *Ephraim*, and the Places of chiefest Note therein, were *Saron*, a Royal City heretofore subdued by *Joshua*, and seated on a Hill of the same Name, the Plains about which have been already mention'd, upon several Occasions. *Gophna*, from whence the *Gophnitick* Territory derives its Name. The upper *Bethoron* situated on the top of a Hill, and possess'd by the *Levites*. *Hyrcaium*, or *Hyrkania*, a very strong Castle. *Adarsa*. *Addus*. *Phanuel*. *Pharaton*, upon Mount *Amalek*. *Samaria*, built by *Omri* King of *Israel*, on the top of Mount *Semeron* in the Borders of the Tribe of *Manasseh*, a very stately, pleasant and well fortified City, which from its first Rise, became the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Israel*, and succeeded *Thersa*, before describ'd in the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, that border'd upon this Tribe: Afterwards *Samaria* was call'd *Sebaste*, i. e. the August City by King *Herod*, in honour of the Emperor *Augustus Cæsar*, and *Sebastopolis*, by St. *Jerom*. *Beihel*. *Sichem*, a City of Refuge belonging to the *Levites*, built on a Hill, or (as others will have it) in a pleasant Valley surrounded on all sides, with Hills, call'd *Sichar*, in our Saviour's time; and after its Restauration, *Neapolis*, or the New City; still retaining that of *Naplosa* or *Napolitza*, near which, were *Jacob's Well*, *Joseph's Sepulchre*, Mount *Hebal*, or *Ebal*, and opposite thereto, Mount *Garizim*, or *Gerizim*, both famous for the promulgation of the Moral Law. This City is as yet one of the chief of the whole Continent of the Holy Land, and the Seat of a Turkish *Sangiac*.

Besides these noble Cities, there were *Luca*. *Benith*, or *Banith*. *Ennon*. *Thamarshelo*. *Jechmaan*, under the Jurisdiction of the *Le-*

*vites*. *Bethaven*. *Taphua*, a Royal City taken by *Joshua*, after he had kill'd the King of it. *Ataroth-Aldar*. *Fanoë*. *Ataroth*. *Naratha*. *Ephrem*, or *Ephraim*, in the Confines of the Tribe of *Benjamin*. *Archiataroth*. *Doch* call'd *Dagon* by *Josephus*, a Fortrefs on a steep Hill, with a very delightful Prospect: *Mello*; the Inhabitants of which chose *Abimelech* for their King, with the *Sichemites*. *Geth-remmon*, a City of the *Levites*. *Najoth*, where King *Saul* prophesy'd. *Ephron*. *Machmas*, of a large extent. *Silo* a Town, on a very high Hill of the same Name, bordering on the Tribe of *Benjamin*: Where the Tabernacle of the Covenant was erected, and the Ark of God was kept, for a long time. *Ruma*, or *Arama*, the Seat of *Abimelech*. *Jephleri*. *Thamnathara*, *Thamnata*, or *Thamna*, from whence the *Thamnatick*, or *Thamnitic* Territory took its Name; a very large Town seated in a hilly Country, which *Joshua* possess'd by Right of Inheritance, where he was also bury'd. *Gazer*, or *Gazara*, under the Jurisdiction of the *Levites*. *Lidda*, or *Lydda*, afterwards call'd *Diospolis*, i. e. the City of *Jupiter*, where St. *Peter* cur'd *Aneas* of the Palsy. *Ramatha*, otherwise call'd *Ramathaim*, *Arimathæa*, and *Ramathaim-Sophim*, because it was built on *Sophim* a Mountain of *Ephraim*; a City of the *Levites* in the Confines of the Tribes of *Ephraim*, *Dan*, *Judah* and *Benjamin*; the Birth-place of the Prophet *Samuel*, which together with *Lydda* is attributed by the learned *Spanhemius* to the Tribe of *Benjamin*; although others are of opinion, that *Ramath* belong'd to the three bordering Tribes.

The Territories of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, border'd on the North, upon those of *Ephraim*; on the East, upon the River *Jordan*; on the South, upon the Inheritance of the Tribe of *Judah*; and on the West, upon that of *Dan*: But *Spanhemius* maintains, that it extended it self, as it were in a Corner, as far as the Great Sea; including within its Limits the Sea-port Town of *Joppe*, or *Jaffa*, besides *Ramath* and *Lydda* but now mention'd. The Territories of this Tribe, with respect to the extent of Land and the number of Towns contain'd therein, may be reckon'd among the least. Towards the West, it was very narrow, lying out in a sharp Point, but encreasing broader towards the East; but as to the fruitfulness of the Soil, it was not inferior to any of the Countrys, belonging to the other Tribes. The Plains of *Jericho* were more especially famous for their admirable Fertility, abounding with all sorts of Fruits and Delights, and particularly with that most precious Juice of the Balm-tree.

The chief Cities of this Tribe, were *Nebo*. *Helam*. *Maspha*, otherwise call'd *Masphat* and *Mesphæ*, a Town in the Borders of *Benjamin* and *Judah*, which St. *Jerom* attributes to the latter, the Judgment-Seat of *Samuel*. *Nobe*, or *Nob*, a Town belonging to the Priests, where King *David* took *Goliath's* Sword, and eat the Shew-bread. *Amosa*. The lower *Bethoron*. *Gabon* or *Gibeon*, heretofore a Royal and Large City, the Inhabitants of which circumvented *Joshua*, to save their Lives, afterwards consign'd to

VIII.  
The Tribe of  
Benjamin:



to the *Levites*. *Gabath*, or *Gibeath* of *Saul*, a City of the *Levites*, famous for the Birth of that King. *Rama*. *Anathoth* in the Possession of the Priests, the Birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremiah*. *Gabath*. *Sene* and *Boseth* two Rocks, the tops of which stand opposite one to another. *Berath*. *Bethel*, before call'd *Luz*, a Town on an high Hill, remarkable for the Dream of the Patriarch *Jacob*. *Hai*, or *Al*, heretofore a Royal City, burnt by *Jotham*. *Behtan*, with the adjacent Desert. *Galgala*, or *Gugala*, a noted Place, where the *Israelites* pitch'd their Tents, after having march'd out of the River *Jordan*. *Lot-Haid*. *Samarim*. *Amon*, a Town granted to the Sons of *Aaron*. *Behtan*. *Ferich* a Large, Populous and Royal City, abounding, with Palm-tree Groves; whence it was also call'd the City of Palm-trees, the Walls of which fell down at the sound of the Trumpets that were blown in the Camp of the *Israelites*; situated in a very fruitful Champain Country that took its Name from thence: as it has been already hinted. *Opéra*, *Ophera*, or *Ophra*: *Sela*. *Helegé*, or *Elegé*. *Opéra*. *Jarephel*. *Babrim*, on a Hill. *Kacem*. *Behtan*, a very strong Town. And **JERUSALEM**, otherwise call'd *Salem*, *Hierosolyma*, *Solyma*, or *Jebus*, as it was first call'd by the *Jebusites*, who inhabited the mountainous Countries of *Palestine*, and were Masters of this City before *David* conquer'd it; after which it became the Metropolis of all *Judæa*, and even of the whole Continent of the Levant, seated near the Rivulet *Kedron* almost in the Heart of that Country, nay (as some Authors affirm) in the middle of the terraqueous Globe (which ought to be understood of the Planisphere of the World, as it was known to the Ancients.) It stands on three Mountains, viz. *Sion*, *Akra* and *Moriah*, every one of which had its particular Valley, in the Confines of *Benjamin*; so that one part of the City stood in *Judab* though the more considerable Part of it, where the Temple was afterwards built, was included within the Bounds of that Tribe: This most famous City, being taken by King *David*, *A. M.* 2556, became his Royal Seat, and that of all the succeeding Kings of *Judab*: His Son *Solomon* beautify'd it with many stately Buildings, and more especially with a most magnificent Temple. But *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon* having made himself Master of it, *A. M.* 3446, caus'd it to be burnt, and utterly laid waste, demolish'd the Temple, and carry'd away the Inhabitants into Captivity. About 70 years after, in 3516, the *Jews* obtain'd a Permission from King *Cyrus* to return to their native Country, where they rebuilt the City and Temple; which flourish'd, till *Titus*, General of the *Roman* Forces and afterwards Emperor, besieg'd, took, burnt and destroyed both. In the year of our Lord 132, the Emperor *Adrianus* began to rebuild the City, and impos'd on it the Name of *Elia*, or *Elia Capadina*: The Emperor *Constantine* the Great, having restor'd the Worship of the true God, made farther improvements, and adorn'd it with many noble Edifices, the chief of which

was the Church of the Sepulchre of our Lord *Jesus Christ*, that formerly stood without the City; which was invaded by *Chosroes* II. King of *Persia*, in the time of the Emperor *Heraclius*, *A. C.* 614. In the seventh and eighth Centuries it became a Prey to the *Saracens*, with the rest of the Holy Land; till the Christian Princes, and among others *Richard I.* King of *England* undertook the Conquest of this Country: So that they took the City by storm on Friday the 15th day of *July*, *A. D.* 1099, which gave rise to the Kingdom of *Jerusalem*, of which *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was the first King, and had several Successours, for the space of almost 100 Years. Afterwards *Saladin* King of *Syria* and *Egypt* defeated the Christians in several Engagements, and at last drove them out of *Jerusalem*. About the year 1187, this Country fell into the Possession of the *Ciliffs*, or *Sultans* of *Egypt*, till they were subdu'd by the *Turks* under the Emperor *Selim*, who took this City in 1517. It is commonly call'd the Holy City by the Christians, and *Elkodi* by the *Turks*, which signifies the same Thing, according to *Michael Nas*: It was sometime dignified with the Title of a Metropolitan See, and afterwards erected into a Patriarchal, by the means of the Emperor *Justinian*; five Arch-bishopricks being subject to its Jurisdiction, viz. those of *Tyre*, *Cæsarea*, *Nazareth*, *Bostra* and *Petra*: But it now sinks under the Yoke of the *Turkish* Tyranny, and daily falls to decay; so that its extent is small; scarce containing above ten thousand Inhabitants, among whom are many Monks, who are employ'd in shewing the Holy Places to Travellers; the *Turks* have fenc'd it with a Wall, to serve as a Bulwark against the Incursions of the *Arabians*. The Streets are narrow, and the Houses very plain, without any Ornaments. The Tomb of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* is still to be seen, with that of his Brother *Baldwin* cut out of a Rock. The City of *Jerusalem* is distant 25 Miles from *Joppe*, or *Jaffa*, and the Coasts of the *Syrian* Sea, on the East, and 30 from the Dead Sea; lying almost in the midst between *Damascus*, on the North, and *Grand Cairo*, in *Egypt*, on the South-East.

There were many fine Gardens without the Walls of *Jerusalem*, and among others those that belong'd to the Royal Court, on the East: Mount *Olivet* situated likewise towards the Eastern Part of the City and Temple, from which it was separated by a deep Valley, and the Brook *Kedron*. This Mountain took its Name from the great number of Olive-trees growing upon it, although it also abounded with Myrtles, Pines, Palm and several sorts of Fruit-trees: and is more especially remarkable for our Saviour's Ascension thence into Heaven. To the West of *Jerusalem* stood Mount *Calvary*, or *Golgotha*, the usual Place of Execution of Malefactors, which the Emperor *Adrian* afterwards caus'd to be enclos'd within the City-walls. Also Mount *Gion*, or *Gibon* full of Stones, of a somewhat long Figure, and of a considerable height, parted in like manner from the City, by a deep Valley: upon which Mountain *Solomon* was anointed King.



The spacious Valley of *Raphaim*, or of Giants, that produced great Store of Oil, Wine, Wheat, and all Sorts of Fruits, extended it self likewise on the West of *Jerusalem*; but the Valley of *Jericho*, of course call'd the Valley of *Kebon*, and that of the Mountains, lay out towards the East, between the City and Mount *Olivet*, being water'd and made fruitful by the Rivulet *Ke-ron*: It was heretofore the common Burial-place of the whole City, and is set apart even at this Day, for that of the *Jews*, not without Superstition: The Valley of the Sons of *Hinnon*, call'd also *Zophet*, and the Valley of Slaughter, was situated to the South-East of *Jerusalem*, on the Foot of the Mount of *Offence*, which was water'd as well as the others, by the Brook *Kebon*, and was full of green Plots, Gardens and Groves. Moreover, to the East of *Jerusalem*, were *Gebse-mene*, a Village on the Foot of Mount *Olivet*, affording plenty of Olives: *Bethphage* a Village, or (according to the opinion of others) a Tract of Land situated likewise on the Foot of the same Mountain: And *Behan*, a Village, seated in a Territory of the same Name, on a Hill and in the Road that leads to *Jericho*; where our Saviour rais'd *Lazarus* out of his Grave. Lastly, to the West of *Jerusalem* stood *Emaus* a very pleasant Village on the top of a Hill, which shall be describ'd anon in the Tribe of *Judah*, to which it is refer'd by most Geographers, except *M. Samson*, who places it within the Bounds of this Tribe.

IX. The large Possessions of the Tribe of *Judah* the most Southern, and much the largest of the whole Country were bounded on the North, by *Benjamin*; on the East by the Mouth of the River *Jordan*, which here falls into the Dead Sea, as also by that Sea itself on the South, by the farthest Bay of the same Sea call'd the *Tongue*, and the mountainous Country of *Seir*: and on the West, by the Territories of *Simoon* and *Dan* and the *Mediterranean* Sea; a narrow Tract of it running up between these two Provinces and the Sea, almost as high as *Joppa*. For the five maritime Lordships, or Governments of the *Philistines*, delineated in the Maps, under these Tribes, are appropriated in Holy Writ, and by *Josaphat*, to that of *Judah*, within the Bounds of which *Sachrona* was likewise included. Thus the Territories of the Tribe of *Judah* exceeded all the rest, in the largeness of Extent; in the number of Cities, Towns and Villages; and in the multitude and valour of the Inhabitants: So that 'tis no wonder that the whole Country, took its Name from the principal Tribe, and its Bulwark, on the South and West, against the most potent Enemies. And indeed, these Territories were beautify'd with an admirable variety of Hills, Valleys, Plains, Rivulets, and Seas, and abounded with Pasture and Vineyards; nevertheless towards the mountainous Tracts of *Seir* and the Dead Sea there were many Desarts, but not altogether desolate, or inaccessible, as being beset with Towns at a small distance one from another. The *Canaanites* strictly so call'd dwelt in these Parts, enlarging their Borders, from the Country of the *Philistines*, to that of the *Amorites*.

The most remarkable Cities and Places of the Tribe of *Judah*, were *Sacho*, or *Sochot*, a Town seated in a Champaign Country, and on the Front

tiers of *Benjamin*, between which and *Azech*, the *Philistines* encamp'd against *Saul*; and where *David* overthrew the Giant *Goliath*, with a stone cast out of a Sling. *Emaus*, a Village distant sixty Furlongs, or seven Italian Miles and a half, from *Jerusalem* to the West, afterwards call'd *Nicopolis*. *Bethsur*, or *Bethsura*, a Town with a very strong Castle. *Maroth*. *Bethanath*. *Eglon* a Royal City. *Ethim*, or *Etham*. *Bezek* the Royal Seat of King *Adonibezek*. *Bethlehem*, surnam'd of *Judah*, to distinguish it from *Bethlehem* of *Zabulon*, otherwise call'd *Ephraim*, built by the *Jebusites*; the Birth-place of King *David*, whence it was also term'd, *The City of David*. This Town which was distant 5 Miles from *Jerusalem* to the South, is also more especially famous for the Nativity of our Lord and Saviour *JESUS CHRIST*, and was made an Episcopal See, by Pope *Paschal II.* under the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*; but it is now quite ruin'd. *Thecua* on a Hill, abounding with excellent Pastures, the Native Country of the Prophet *Amos*. *Debera*. *Netophani*. *Segor* otherwise call'd *Zoar* and *Tzohar*, situated 15 Miles South of *Jericho*, near Mount *Engaddi*, not far from the Dead Sea, or on the Northern Coast of it according to *Africanius* and *Sanfon*: This little Town or Village, which still retains the Name of *Seor*, being one of the Cities of *Pentapolis*, or of the Country of five Cities, was preserv'd upon the censure of *Lot*: For the rest, viz. *Adama*, *Schoim*, *Sodom* and *Gomorrhah*, were utterly destroy'd by Fire from Heaven, of which *Strabo*, *Tacitus* and *Solinus* have made mention, and stood in that most delightful Plain, where the Dead Sea is now extended. *Engaddi*, before call'd *Asisophamar*. i. e. the City of Palm-trees, built upon high and steep Rocks, in a Country heretofore noted, for its most fragrant Smell, by reason of the great quantity of sweet-scented Shrubs and more especially the Balm-trees, that grew therein; near this place was the Cave where *Lot* and his Daughters retired. The City of Salt. The Hill of *Achillas*, a strong Hold. The Valley of the Salt-pits: The Desart of *Judah*: *Cabseel*, near the Southern Tongue, or Bay of the Dead Sea. The *Scorpion-ascent*, in Hebrew *Acrabbim*, a Hill so call'd from the abundance of Scorpions, that were bred there, and situated near the same Sea, in the mountainous Parts of *Seir*: The Towns of *Eder*. *Jagur*. *Cina*. *Cedes*. *Charmel* on the fruitful Mount *Carmel*, where *Nabal* dwelt, and which ought to be distinguish'd from a Mountain of the same Name, already describ'd, in the Tribe of *Issachar*. *Maon*, a Town seated in a Champaign Country, and by a Desart of the same Name, full of Groves, Dens and Caves, which afforded a Place of Refuge to *David*, when he fled from King *Saul*. *Ziph*, a Town on an Hill, whose Inhabitants were treacherous to the former, and which gave Name to the spacious Desart of *Ziph*, where *David* in like manner often lay hid.

To the above-mention'd Towns, are to be added, *Jota*, or *Juto*. *Nebzan*. *Gabaa*. *Accain*. *Zanoe*. *Jucadam*. *Hebron* formerly call'd *Arba* and *Kirjath-arba*, the most ancient City of the Land of *Canaan*, on Mount *Hbron*, the Territories of which were given to *Caleb*: This City belong'd to the Priests and was a Place of Refuge; near which was the Oak of *Mamre*, and the



the He- Place call'd *Heb.* The *Hittites*, a fierce sort of  
 tribes. People, being the same with the *Anacims*, inha-  
 bited the Southern Parts of *Pal'stine* of whom *A-*  
*br'ham* bought two Caves. The same City of  
*Hebron* afterwards afforded a Royal Seat to King  
*David*, for seven Years, and is very often men-  
 tion'd in the Holy Scriptures. *Jer'ael*, the Birth-  
 place of *Amajab*, the General of *Ach'zab*'s Forces.  
*Guo*, or *Gelo*, noted for the Nativity of *Ach'zab*.  
*Holon*, or *Olon*, a City of the *Levites*. *Golen*, or *Golhen*,  
 from whence the adjacent Territory took its Name.  
*Anim*. *Hebron*, otherwise call'd *Ebron* and *Ajor*.  
*Adar*. *Almona*. *Aferneba*, or New *Ajor*, to  
 distinguish it from the old. *Samur*. *Fether* be-  
 longing to the *Levites*. *Ferimoth*, or *Farmuch*,  
 a Royal City laid waste by *Jophna*, after he  
 had kill'd the King of it. *Keila*, or *Kehila*, the  
 Siege of which was carry'd on by the *Philistins*,  
 and rais'd by *David*. *Odoliam*, or *Adullam*, a  
 Royal City, whose King was likewise kill'd by  
*Jophna*; near which was a Rock and Cave of  
 the same Name, that sometime serv'd as a Place  
 of Refuge to *David*. *Leonai*. *Naama*. *Beth-*  
*lagon*. *Kirjath-searim*, call'd also *Kirjath-baal*, a  
 Town on a Hill, in the Borders of *Benjamin*,  
 where the Ark of God, continued for a long  
 time. *Aj'ar*. *Azecha*, a well fortify'd Town,  
 where a great Shower of Stones rain'd down up-  
 on the *Amorites*. *Lebna*, or *Libnah*, a Royal Ci-  
 ty, of considerable strength, afterwards granted  
 to the *Levites*. *Maceda*, or *Makkedah*, likewise a  
 Royal City, where five Kings of the *Amorites*  
 lay hid in a Cave. *Ces'ion*, placed in this Tribe,  
 by St. *Jerom*. *Lachish*, a very strong Royal Ci-  
 ty. *Bethbemech*, or *Bethjames*, a Town possess'd  
 by the Priests, to which, the Ark of the Lord  
 return'd from *Accaron*. And *Sachron*, or *Sichron*,  
 a Sea-port Town; although this last, and the  
 three immediately preceding it, are erroneously  
 appropriated in the Maps, to the Tribe of  
*Dan*.

Lastly, the five maritime Provinces or Lord-  
 ships of the *Philistins*, subdu'd by *Judah*, consti-  
 tuted Part of their Possessions, viz. *Gaza*, a large,  
 populous and noted City, near the Torrent *Be-*  
*zer*, at a little distance from the Sea, the Gates  
 of which *Samson* carry'd to a neighbouring Moun-  
 tain. *Ascalon*, a Town most strongly fortify'd,  
 that had thirty of its Inhabitants kill'd and strip'd  
 of their Clothes, by the same *Samson*. *Azotus*,  
 or *Asdod*, a very strong Town, where *Dagon*,  
 the great Idol of the *Philistins* was usually kept.  
*Asdona*, or *Hebron*, a famous City, where the  
 Idol *Ashtoreth* was worshipp'd. And *Gath*, or  
*Gath*, a noble City likewise, the Birth-place of  
 the Giant *Goliath*, with their adjacent Territories.  
 The two first of these five Cities, are unadvisedly  
 express'd in many Maps in the Tribe of *Simeon*,  
 and the three latter in that of *Dan*.

X. The Territories of the Tribe of *Dan* were bound-  
 ed on the North, by those of *Ephraim* and  
 of *Dan*. *Judah*; on the East, by those of *Judah* and *Ben-*  
*jamen*; on the South, by those of *Simeon* separa-  
 ted by the Brook *Sorek*: and on the West by  
 Part of the Inheritance of *Judah* and the Great  
 Sea: These Territories were very narrow, and  
 less than was sufficient for the *Danites*, who af-  
 terwards extended their Borders to the Parts of  
*Naphthali* and *Asher*; as also, on the Frontiers of  
 the *Sidonians*, and took the Town of *Lachish* by

force of Arms, from the Tribe of *Naphthali*, seat-  
 ed on the Foot of Mount *Libanus*, near the Con-  
 fluence of *Jor* and *Dan*; giving their Name to that  
 Town as we have already said in treating of the  
 Tribe of *Naphthali*.

Among the Towns of this Tribe, *Joppa*, *Jaffa*,  
 or *Jassa* is commonly plac'd in the Maps; a ve-  
 ry ancient Sea-port Town, built on a high Rock,  
 with a famous Harbour, to which the Timber  
 and Stones design'd for the building of the Tem-  
 ple, were brought from Mount *Libanus*, and where  
 the Prophet *Jonas* took shipping, when he fled  
 from the presence of the Lord: But *Spanhemius* is  
 of Opinion, That the Boundaries of the Tribe of  
*Dan* extended only to the Suburbs of *Joppa*, and  
 he places the Town it self, within the Limits  
 of *Benjamin*, as it has been already observ'd, in  
 describing the Possessions of that Tribe. However  
 leaving *Joppa*, we meet with, in the Jurisdiction  
 of the *Danites*, *Jamnia*, or *Jabnia*, a Sea-port Town  
 seated in a Champain Country, in the middle  
 between *Joppa* and *Sachrona*. *Cas'bin*, a Town  
 near a Pool fortify'd with Bridges and Walls.  
*Mejajarcum*, or the Waters of *Fercon*, a Town,  
 situated near a collection of Waters. *Arechon*.  
*Geth-remmon*, or *Gath-remmon*, a City of the *Le-*  
*vites*. *Bane*. *Thamna*, otherwise call'd *Tamnata*  
 and *Themna*, where *Judah* shor'd his Sheep, and  
*Samson* kill'd a Lion. *Baalath*. *Helon*, or *Elon*.  
*Ajalon* possess'd by the *Levites*, and seated in the  
 Confines of *Judah* and *Benjamin*. *Jud*. *Aljada*.  
 And *Modin*, on a Hill, the Native Country of  
 the Princes of the *Maccabees*, where their Tombs  
 of white polish'd Marble are still to be seen. *Eltece*,  
 otherwise call'd *Eltheek* and *Eltecon*, under the  
 Jurisdiction of the *Levites*. *Gedor*, or *Gador*, in  
 a fruitful and Champain Country. *Nebel-Eshcol*,  
 i. e. The Torrent and Valley of the Cluster; where  
 the Israelitish Spies cut off a Bunch of Grapes of  
 a prodigious Bigness, and gathered Pomegranates  
 and Figs; in M. *Samson's* Maps, this Place is ex-  
 press'd in the Limits of the Tribe of *Judah*. *Sa-*  
*raa*, or *Zora*, a neat Town in a Plain, remar-  
 kable for the Nativity of *Samson*. *Heisemes*, o-  
 therwise call'd, *The City of the Sun*. *Fethela*; *Gab-*  
*bazhon*, or *Gibbethon*, belonging to the *Levites*:  
 And *Eshcol*, in a Champain Country between  
 which Town and *Zora*, *Samson* was bury'd.

Of all the Parts of *Judæa*, it remains only to  
 give an Account of the Possessions of the Tribe of *The-*  
*Simeon*, that lay encircled by that of *Judah*, whose of  
 Lot having given them a larger Portion than was on-  
 needful, they bestow'd Part upon *Simeon*, which  
 Tribe was the least in Number; and so their Ter-  
 ritories were of smallest extent: They were bound-  
 ed on the North, by the Rivulet *Sorek*, which di-  
 vided it from *Dan*; on the East, upon the Fron-  
 tiers of *Judah*; on the South, upon Part of *Idu-*  
*mea* and the River of *Egypt*; and on the West,  
 upon the *Mediterranean Sea*.

The Capital Towns of this Tribe were *Beth-*  
*lebrath*. *Sesenna*. *Siceleg*, or *Ziklag*, a Town for-  
 merly possess'd by the *Philistins*, which *Achish*  
 gave to *Davil*. *Medemena*. *Selim*. *Aen*, *Ain*, or  
*Han*, a City belonging to the Priests. *Remmon*.  
*Horma*, or *Horma*, a Royal City, subdu'd by *Jo-*  
*shua*. *Bethul*, or *Bathuel*. *Bethberai*. *Afersual*, or  
*Hasersual*. *Aj'emom*. *Afergadda*. *Molada*. *Da-*  
*bir*, or *Debir*, at first call'd *Kirjath-sephir*, i. e. the  
 City of Learning, or the Academy of *Pal'stine*,  
 which



which was taken by *Othniel*, and afterwards granted to the Priests. *Gerara*, a Royal City, heretofore the Boundary of the *Canaanites*, on the South, and the Birth-place of the Patriarch *Isaac*, from whence the adjacent Country was call'd *Geraritis*, or the *Geraritic* Territory, in which was the Brook and Valley of *Gerara*, call'd *The Straights* by *Josephus*, where *Isaac* had his Habitation. *Bersabee*, or *BeerSheba*, a Town very often mention'd in the Sacred Writings, and inhabited for a long time, by *Abraham*, *Isaac* and *Jacob*, being the farthest Boundary of *Judæa* on the South; and bordering upon a vast Desert of the same Name; where *Hagar* wander'd up and down, with her Son *Ishmael*, and where the Prophet *Elijah* retir'd, to provide for his safety. This Desert usually

termed *The Sandy Sea*, by Modern Writers, is altogether barren, torrid; destitute of Water, and cover'd with a light and soft sort of Sand, which the Wind easily rolls about; insomuch that Travellers are suddenly expos'd to imminent Danger: *Majuma*, *Majoma*, or *Majonia*; a Town near *Gaza*, on the Sea-coasts; from whence, Whether the Festivals or Sports of *Majuma*, among the ancient *Romans* took their rise is a Question not yet decided. *Anthedon*, another Sea-port Town. *Raphia*, of a large Extent. And *Rhinocorura*, or *Rhinocolura*, seated in the Confines of *Palestine* and *Egypt*, on the River *Sichor* and the Coasts of the Egyptian Sea; of which mention has been made before, in treating of the Boundaries of *Judæa*.

## CHAP. VI.

### JUDÆA, as divided by the Romans.

I. **T**HUS we have taken a Survey of the several Territories and Districts of the Twelve Tribes, into which the Continent of *Judæa*, was divided, while the *Israelites* had possession of it: But when the *Romans* made themselves Masters of *Palestine*, they reduced it to six Parts, or Provinces, viz. *Judæa*, *Samaria*, *Galilee*, *Trachonitis*, *Perea* and *Idumæa*; the two first of which, and the greatest Part of the third, were situated between the *Mediterranean*, or great Sea, on the West, and the River *Jordan*, on the East; the two next in *Judæa* beyond *Jordan*; and the fifth, or last, on the South of *Judæa* towards *Egypt*.

II. *Judæa* strictly so call'd, was bounded on the East, by the lowest Part of the River *Jordan*, and the Dead Sea; on the South, by *Idumæa*; on the West, by the great Sea; and on the North, by the Land of *Ephraim*, or *Samaria*; comprehending the Tribe of *Benjamin*, *Judah* and *Simeon*, as also, the most Part of that of *Dan*: This Province was subdivided into the maritum Tract, containing many Noble Cities and divers convenient Harbours, already describ'd, in treating of the respective Tribes; into the mountainous Country, in which were the hilly Tracts of *Hebron*, and several Deserts; into the Champain, or Eastern Country, including the most excellent Plains of *Fericho*, as it has been hinted in the Tribe of *Benjamin*; and lastly, into the Northern Tract, of a lofty Situation, in which is *Jerusalem*, the Capital City of the whole Continent of *Palestine*, with several other Towns, above specify'd, in the Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*.

III. *Samaria* the Metropolis and Royal Seat of the Kings of *Israel*, communicated its Name, border'd on the South, upon *Judæa*; being also bounded on the East, by the River *Jordan*; on the North by the Territories of the Tribe of *Issachar*, or *Galilee*; and on the West, by the Great Sea: So that it contain'd that Part of the Land of *Canaan*, which was heretofore the Lot of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and of the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, on the hither side of *Jordan*; very much resembling *Judæa* in the variety and richness of the Soil: But the *Jews* when they divide their Coun-

try into its Provinces, do not reckon *Samaria*, because they hated the Inhabitants, with their Sacred Rites, and our Saviour himself prohibited his Apostles to enter the Samaritan Towns.

The Province of *Galilee* had for its Southern Bounds the half Tribe of *Manasseh*, on the hither side of *Jordan*, or *Samaria*; on the West, Mount *Carmel*, and the City of *Ptolemais*, with the adjacent Territory; on the North, *Tyre*, and the Country of the *Tyrians*; and on the East, it extended itself beyond *Jordan* and the Sea of *Galilee*; comprehending *Gadlonitis*, *Gadara* and *Hippus*; which was the Land of the Tribes of *Issachar*, *Zabulon*, *Asher*, *Naphtali* and partly of *Dan*, in the Northern Tracts of it: The Air of *Galilee* was very temperate, and the Soil most delightful, producing the greatest store imaginable of Corn, Wine, Oil, and several sorts of Fruits. The Cities and Villages were very numerous, and the multitude of People was so great, that according to *Josephus*, the least Village contain'd above fifteen thousand Valiant Husband-men: The Inhabitants of *Galilee* consisted partly, of the remainder of the Ten Tribes, and partly, of foreign Nations intermixt among them, viz. *Tyrians*, *Sidonians*, *Syrians*, *Arabians*, &c. They spoke the *Syriack* Tongue, as well as the *Jews*, but more corruptly; they also admitted several barbarous Words, and used a peculiar Dialect: But it is more especially remarkable, That our Lord and Saviour *Jesus Christ* being conceiv'd and educated in this Country, resid'd in it for the most part, and dispensed the first Seeds of the Gospel; insomuch that he was call'd a *Galilean*; as also; That the greater part of the Apostles were here born and bred.

The whole Province was divided into the Lower and upper; the former being Part of Southern *Galilee*, where were the Tribes of *Issachar*, *Zabulon* and Part of *Naphtali*, that lay near the Sea of *Galilee*: Here also were *Cana* of *Galilee*, or the lesser; (although some doubt, to which of these Divisions it ought to be attributed) being perhaps situated at a lesser distance from the Sea of *Galilee*, than is generally suppos'd; the Towns of *Nazareth* and *Capernaum*, and the Country of *Tiberias*:



The Upper Galilee extended it self farther towards the North, lying next *Phœnicia*; and was the same with the *Gennais*, in Holy Writ; and the same was the uttermost Part of *Judæa*, lying up to the foreign Nations, as in regard, that it was inhabited by the *Iractines*, in common with that Nation; as it has been hinted above. It comprehended almost the whole Tribe of *Naphtali*, &c.

*Decapolis*, i. e. The Country of Ten Cities frequently mentioned in the Evangelical History, took its Denomination from the Ten Capital Cities, which it contain'd, among many others, and is commonly reputed to be that Part of *Galilee*, on the further side of *Jordan*, that lay on the Coasts of the Sea of *Galilee*, though some affirm, That the whole Country of *Decapolis*, excepting perhaps *Scythopolis*, lay out beyond the said River; and again others especially *Adrichomus* place it partly on the further side, and partly beyond *Jordan*: Making *Decapolis* bounded on the North, by the City of *Damascus*, and Mount *Libanus*; on the West, by *Sidon*; and on the South, by *Scythopolis*: extending it self on the East, thirty Miles in length, and somewhat less in breadth, beyond *Jordan* and the Sea of *Galilee*, to *Hippus*, *Gaza* and *Pella*, or (as others will have it) only as far as *Pella*: But the Ten Cities that gave Name to the Country of *Decapolis* according to the same *Adrichomus*, are *Scythopolis*, or *Bethsan*, *Therman*, *Bozra*, *Beitjanda*, *Capernaum*, *Coraizara*, *Thapsa*, *Nephtalis*, *Seppis*, *Acer* and *Cajarea*.

Adrichomus has given an Account of *Judæa* strictly so call'd, *Nabatea* and *Galilee*, Part of *Judæa*, on the further side of *Jordan*; we proceed to the Description of the other Part, situated beyond that River, that is to say, *Trachonitis* and *Peraa*. *Trachonitis*, or *Theman*, the most Northern Country of *Judæa*, on the further side of *Jordan*: was bounded on the North, by Mount *Libanus*, and the Territory of *Lamodan*; on the East, by Part of Mount *Hermen*, and the Hill *Trachon*, so call'd because it separated the Desert of *Arabia*; from the Country which border'd likewise on the South, upon the Village *Arphas* and the Town of *Bozra*; and on the West, upon the River *Jordan* and *Galilee*: So that *Trachonitis* which had its Name from its rugged and uneven Situation, comprised the Northern Part of the half Tribe of *Manasse*, lying on the further side of *Jordan*, being altogether stony, barren and full of Dens, yet not unpleasant to live in, inhabited by the *Itæi* and *Syriani*: but Geographers do not agree in their Opinion, Whether *Idumæa* were Part of *Trachonitis*, or otherwise: For some affirm, That the former reach'd from the River *Jordan*, near the Foot of Mount *Libanus*, Westward, to the hilly Countries of the *Torians* and *Sidonians*, and as far as the Northern Tracts of Mount *Libanus*: Others maintain, That *Idumæa* and *Peraa* strictly taken, are only two different Names of the same Country: Others make *Idumæa* the Northern Part of *Trachonitis*, situated by Mount *Hermen*; supposing it to be the same Country with that which was heretofore call'd *Gessuræa*: Lastly, several Persons will have *Idumæa* and the mountainous Tracts of *Seir*, included within the Bounds of *Trachonitis*: which nevertheless, we judge to be more properly plac'd to the South of *Judæa*; nei-

ther do we admit of a twofold *Idumæa*, viz. one Eastern and the other Southern, or that the hilly Country of *Seir* was extended both towards the Territory of *Damascus*, and to the South of *Judæa*: However we shall hereafter Treat more at large of *Idumæa* and Mount *Seir*: Many Geographers have likewise thought fit to place the Land of *Uz*, the native Country of *Job*, in *Trachonitis*, as also the Seats of his three Friends; but they rely on an Hypothesis, which was never yet prov'd; viz. That the Land of *Uz*, was the same with *Idumæa*, and that it constituted Part of *Trachonitis*.

The other Part of *Judæa*, beyond *Jordan*, was call'd *Peraa*, and lay more towards the South: It respect were had to the meaning of the Term *Peraa*, the whole Country lying on the farther side of the River *Jordan*, may be understood by it: But in a stricter Sense, it is taken for the Southern Part of *Judæa*, beyond *Jordan*, heretofore distributed to the Tribes of *Gal* and *Reuben*; which was bounded on the North, by *Pella*; on the East, by *Philadelpia*, anciently known by the Name of *Rabba*, or *Rabbah*, and belonging to the Children of *Ammon*; on the South, by *Macherus*, a very strong Town with a Castle, on the Coasts of the Dead Sea; and on the West, by the River *Jordan*: But the Extent of this Country was larger between *Pella* and *Macherus*, than between *Philadelpia*, or *Arabia* and *Jordan*; abounding with Hills, Springs, Rivulets, Plains, and several sorts of Trees, more especially, Palm-tree Groves, Olive-yards and Vineyards.

It only remains, to give some Account of *Idumæa* the sixth and last Part of *Judæa* lying out most of all, to the South; otherwise call'd the Land of *Edom*, *Seir*, *Theman* and sometimes *Esa*, who impos'd his Name on this Country, which he himself inhabited and his Posterity, who were nam'd *Edomai*, or *Idumai*, from his Son *Edom*: *Idumæa* was situated to the South of *Judæa* strictly taken, so that it was sometimes express'd by the Term South, and contain'd the mountainous Tracts of *Seir*, in *Hebrew* *Sehir*, which were extended from East to West, from the hilly Country of the *Moabites*, to the Spring-heads of the River *Nile* in *Egypt*, and the Great, or Western Sea; whence *Edom* is taken for the West, among the *Talmudists*. This Mountain *Seir*, i. e. *Rough*, or *Hairy*, was so call'd, ever since *Rough-haired Esau*, after having defeated the *Hrai*, or *Horrai*, and driven them from thence, took possession of it; as also did his Posterity, among whom were the *Amalekites*, who endeavour'd to hinder the Passage of the *Israelites* into the Land of Promise.

Moreover, *Idumæa* border'd likewise upon *Egypt* and *Arabia Petraea*; part of which it also constituted: Nay, the Borders of *Idumæa* were sometimes extended to the upper Coasts of the Red, or *Erythrean* Sea, which seems to derive its Name from *Edom* call'd *Erythrai*, or *Erythrus*, by the ancient *Greeks*, and even as far as the Frontiers of *Arabia Deserta*: Where *Theman*, the most Eastern City of *Idumæa* stood in a Territory of the same Name; the native Country of *Eliphaz* the *Themanite*, who is reckon'd the first in Order among *Job's* Friends, and came first to discourse with him. The Town of *Bozra* was seated near *Theman*, on the Confines of the Land of *Moab*, and therefore they are often join'd together; but they are as distinct from *Theman* and *Bozra* two Towns of the



the half Tribe of *Manasseh* beyond *Jordan*, or of *Trachonitis*; as *Idumæa* it self and the mountainous Tracts of *Stir*, are distant from *Trachonitis*; the Countries of the *Ammonites*, *Amorites* and *Mobabites* lying between each of them: See Sect. 6. of this Chapter.

After the Captivity of the *Jews*, *Idumæa* comprehended a great Part of Southern *Judæa*; enlarging its Borders as far as the Coasts of the *Mediterranean Sea*, by *Gaza*, *Ascalon*, *Azotus*, and even to *Jerusalem*: But the Scales were turn'd, when *Johannes Hyrcanus*, having taken the *Idu-*

*mæan* Towns, brought the whole Country under Subjection to *Judæa*, and commanded the Inhabitants to be circumcis'd and to observe the rest of the Jewish Rites. Many Geographers, as well ancient, as modern, comprehend the Land of *Uz*, where *Job* liv'd, within the Limits of *Idumæa*; which nevertheless, we think fit to place; with greater Reason, in that Part of *Arabia Deserta*, which lies towards the River *Euphrates* and *Mesopotamia*; and therefore shall treat farther of it, hereafter in the Description of Desert *Arabia*.

## CHAP. VII.

### Ancient PHOENICIA and SYRIA properly so call'd, with the principal Lakes and Rivers of Syria.

I. **A**FTER having given a particular Description of ancient *Judæa*, the series of our Method naturally leads us to the two remaining Parts of ancient *Syria*, viz. *Phœnicia* and *Syria* properly so call'd; of which we shall here give a brief Account. *Phœnicia* then, was bound-  
ed on the South, by *Judæa*; on the East by *Syria*, strictly taken; on the North, by the same Country; and on the West, by the Great Sea, that washes its Coasts from the River *Eleutherus*, or *Valania*, to that of *Chorseus*, *Chersesus*, or *Mocata*: This Country was otherwise call'd *Phœnice* and *Phœnix*, and (according to some Authors) *Syro-phœnicia*; at least, the Term *Syro-phœnix* is us'd by *Juvenal*, and *Lucian* for *Phœnix*: But they will have the Inhabitants nam'd *Syro-phœnicians*, to distinguish them from the African *Phœnicians*, or *Pœni*; some take the *Syro-phœnicians*, and *Calosyrians* to be the same Nation: Others make *Syro-phœnicia* Part of *Calosyria*, lying round about *Damascus*; so that according to their Opinion, the *Syro-phœnicians* dwelt in the middle, between the maritim *Phœnicians* and the *Syrians*; and were so call'd from the Situation of their Country; as also in regard, that they were next Neighbours to the *Syrians*, and almost intermixt with them: Neither are the Sentiments of these last, much different from those of some other Writers, who place *Syro-phœnicia* on the North of the Upper *Galilee*, and of the Tribe of *Asber*, along the Banks of the River *Adonis*, or *Adonius*: However *Phœnicia*, although enclos'd within narrow Bounds, was one of the most noble Countries of ancient *Syria*, and is very often mention'd both in Sacred and Profane History. The *Phœnicians* (*says Pliny*) are renowned for the invention of Letters, as also, for their Skill in *Astronomy*, the *Art of War* and *maritim Affairs*. They not only set out Ships to the *Euxine Sea*, or Strait of *Constantinople*, but also navigated the Grecian and Barbarian Seas, with the Ocean, beyond *Hercules's Pillars*, or the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and our Antiquities tells us they traded in Great Britain; sending Colonies, almost throughout the whole World, as is express'd at large by *Bochartus*: The Language of the *Phœnicians* was near of kin to the *Hebrew*, which was every where spread abroad, with their Colonies, where there are perpetual Footsteps of *Hebraism*.

This Country was heretofore divided into *Phœnicia* simply so call'd and *Phœnicia Libani*. *Phœnicia* of *Libanus*, or of *Damascus*, call'd also The Inner *Phœnicia*, and *Aram-Dammeseck*, in the Sacred Writings, was properly situated between the Mountains *Antilibanus* and *Libanus*, which (according to *Strabo's* Description) being almost every where equidistant one from another, take their Rise, a little above the Sea, viz. the former near the Sidonian Sea, and the latter near *Tripolis*; and at the Mountains of *Arabia*, that lie beyond *Damascus*; and leave a hollow Plain in the middle.

The principal Towns of Libanitic *Phœnicia*, were *Damascus* its Metropolis, to which run the Rivers *Amana*, or *Abana* and *Phartbar*, both springing out of *Hermon-Hills*: *Abila*, or *Abela Lysania*, a fine Town, from whence the Territory *Abilene* deriv'd its Name, of which *Lysanias* was Tetrarch, or chief Governor: And *Heliopolis*, or *Balbe*, a City surrounded on all sides with very high Hills; which was sometime a Bishop's See, and was afterwards erected into a Metropolitan, under the Patriarchate of *Antioch*. In process of Time, Libanitic *Phœnicia* not continuing any longer within the Limits here specify'd, extended it self through *Palmyrena*, and had *Arabia Petraea* and *Palesine* for its Southern Boundaries.

The other Part, call'd *Proper*, or *Maritim Phœnicia*, was situated towards the West, on the Coasts of the Syrian Sea; and its chief Towns, on the Sea-shore were *Ptolemais*, or *Acri* sometime an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Tyre*, and the Seat of the Kings of *Jerusalem*, after the loss of that City, with a Harbour in a little Bay, at the Foot of the Mountains; which is still much frequented by the *Europeans*: *Tyrus*, in *Hebrew*, *Tzor*, or *Tzur*, corruptly call'd *Sur*, from whence the Name of *Syria* deriv'd its Original; formerly an Island, and afterwards join'd to the Continent, by vast heaps of Earth; being the Metropolis of this Part of *Phœnicia*, the See of an Archbishop under the Patriarch of *Antioch*; and a very rich Mart-Town. *Sarepta*, call'd *Zarcophath*, or *Sarphath* by the *Hebrews*, seated in the middle between *Tyre* and *Sidon*, on the Road; not far from the Sea-shore; and abounding with excellent Wine, where the Prophet *Elijah* was entertain'd by a certain Widow, whose Son he restor'd



referred to *Isis*. *Saida*, or *Said*, a very ancient and famous Mart-Town situated on the Sea-coast, as *Isis*, or *Berytus*, or *Beyrut*, a Metropolis in *See*, under the Patriarchate of *Antioch*; where *Paulinus III.* King of *Jerusalem* died *A. D.* 1152. *Babias*, formerly seated on an Eminence at the Mouth of the River *Orontes*, but now bury'd in its ruins: *Bamn*, or *Beyron*: *Tripolis*, a large and neat Town containing about two thousand Houses, with a capacious Harbour: And *Orcheia*, or *Tortosa*, an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Tyre*.

IV. The third and last Part of ancient Syria, is *Syria* properly so call'd, comprehending twelve Parts, according to *Ptolemy* and *Sanjon*, viz. *Celestia*, *Ladicea*, *Babiana*, *Palmyrene*, *Chalybion*, *Archiea*, *Chalcidice*, *Apamena*, *Cassotis*, *Sene*, *Puria* and *Comagena*; but *Plinius* only reckons up three, that is to say, *Celestia*, *Antiochene* and *Comagena*.

V. *Celestia*, call'd *Syria Crea* by the *Latines*, is properly that Country, which is bounded by the Mountains *Antilibanus* and *Libanus*, extending itself (according to *Strabo*) two hundred Furlongs in Breadth, and near or two more in Length: Whereas in regard that it is a deep Valley lying between the Mountains, may well be term'd *Celestia*, or *Heavenly Syria*. But it is sometimes taken in a larger Sense, and upon that account, *Strabo* says, *The whole Country lying out beyond Seleucia*, or *Torped* and *Arabia*, is call'd *Celestia*. *Comagena* was the Borders of this Country to reach from *Antiochia* to the River *Euphrates*, and under its Jurisdiction are contain'd the above named Territories of *Ladicea*, *Babiana*, *Palmyrene*, *Chalcidice*, *Archiea* and *Comagena*.

As to the Towns of *Celestia*, some of them have been already describ'd in treating of the half Tribe of *Manasse* beyond *Jordan*, the chief of the rest were, *Ladicea Saida*, or *Ladicea* at *Libanus*, from whence the Tribe *Levites* took its Name: *Palmyra*, the Capital Town of *Palmyrene*, which is seated upon Mount *Libanus*, on the East, and was formerly a very magnificent City, as appears by its ruins lately discover'd, and describ'd in our Philosophical Transactions. *Chalcidice*, or *Calydon*, that gave Name to the Territory of *Chalcidice*. *Zeugma*, on the River *Euphrates*. *Hierapolis*, a neat City, formerly dignified with a Bishops See, but now almost ruin'd, and reduced to a poor Village. *Tortosa*, or *Aleppo*, a neat Mart-Town of which we have already spoken. *Syria*, or *Comagene* on the River *Martus*, which communicated its Name to the Province of *Comagene*, and was erected from an Episcopal to a Metropolitan See, under the Patriarchate of *Antioch*. And *Chalcis*, a Bishops See, the Metropolis of the Territory of *Chalcidice*.

VI. *Antiochene*, otherwise call'd *Selenis* and *Selenicia*, was situated between *Celestia*, *Comagena*, the Syrian Sea, and *Phœnicia*: The particular Provinces of this Country (according to *Strabo*) were *Archiea*, *Cassotis*, *Selenis* and *Puria*; and the most remarkable Towns were *Emisa*, or *Hemz*, on the River *Orontes*. *Apamia* seated somewhat lower, which gave its Name to the *Apamene* Tract. *Antiochia*, or *Tortosa*. *Aradus*, a Town in an *Island* of the same Name. *Ladicea*, or *Ladiki*. *Antiochia*, or *Antioch*, on the River *Orontes*, the Capital City of *Antiochene*, and of the Roman

Towns, in the Levant, already mention'd. *Selenicia* firnam'd *Pieria*. *Rhossus*; and the lesser *Alexandria*, or *Alexandretta*. The Country of *Tetrapolis* likewise constituted Part of *Antiochene*, in which the four abovemention'd Cities were compris'd; viz. *Selenicia*, *Antioch*, *Ladicea* and *Apamia*. Within the Bounds of this Country stood *Cabus*, or *Cassius*, a very high Mountain; from whence the Territory of *Cassotis* had its Denomination; and Mount *Pieria*, or *Pierius*, which reach'd to the *Ifficus Sinus*, or Gulph of *Lajazzo*, and likewise impos'd its Name on the adjacent Province.

*Comagene* was the most Northern Part of Syria, and lay between *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, *Euphrates*, *Comagene*, *Celestia* and *Antiochene*. The chief Towns of this Country were *Samsata*, or *Sampsu* the Metropolis, seated on the River *Euphrates*, and the Frontiers of *Mesopotamia*. *Germanicia* on Mount *Amanus*, sometime an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Hierapolis*: And *Singa*.

Lastly, it is requisite to give an Account of the Lakes and Rivers of Syria. This Country contains three remarkable Lakes, viz. *Samochonitis*, *Gennesareth* and *Asphaltites* situated within the Bounds of *Judea*. The Lake *Samochonitis*, *Samochonitis*, or *Sibbichaus*, otherwise call'd *The Waters of Meron*, or *Merom*, and at present of *Maron*, being the least and most Northern, lies in the middle between the Territories of the Tribe of *Naphthali*, and those of the half Tribe of *Manasse* beyond *Jordan*; and is separated almost at the same Distance from the Town of *Dan*, and the Lake of *Gennesareth*. It is sixty Furlongs long, and thirty broad (according to *Adrichemius*) and the River *Jordan* runs through its whole Length: During the Summer-season, its Waters are shallow, but it abounds, when the great quantities of Snow on Mount *Antilibanus* are dissolv'd, and fall into it: This Lake is famous in Holy Writ, for the signal Victory, obtain'd thereby by *Joshua*, who overthrew *Jabin* King of *Hazor*, and the rest of the Kings, that came to his assistance, with a sudden Slaughter.

The second Lake is situated between the other two, although a great deal nearer to the former, than the latter, and is very often mention'd in the New Testament: It is call'd *Gennesareth* by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo*; otherwise, *Genesareth*, *Geneser*, The Pool or Sea of *Gennesareth*, The Sea of *Galilee*, *Cenerech* and *Tiberias*; being surrounded with the Territories of *Naphthali*, *Zabulon*, *Issachar*, and the half Tribe of *Manasse*, beyond *Jordan*; as also, with a great number of most pleasant and noble Cities. But the Opinions of Authors are different, with respect to its Dimensions: *Josiphus* says the Length, was an hundred Furlongs, and the Breadth forty; others larger, and *Niger* makes its Compass to take up the space of twenty Miles: The River *Jordan* runs through the whole length of it.

The third and last Lake, which lies out most towards the South, and was heretofore a most fruitful Valley, full of all manner of Delights, water'd by the River *Jordan*, is *Asphaltites*, or *Asphaltis*, so nam'd by all the Greek and Latin Writers from the *Bitumen* in Greek *Asphaltos*, a kind of Brimstone or unctuous clammy Substance like Pitch, which bubbling up from the bottom, is harden'd by the Wind, and gather'd on the Shore;



Shore: This Lake is commonly call'd, *The Dead Sea*, by reason of its standing, thick and stinking Waters, that are altogether destitute of Fish; as also, *The Sea of Sodom*, from that famous City, which with three others of this Plain, were destroy'd by Fire from Heaven. *The Sea of Salt*, *The most Salt Sea*, and *The Sea of the Desert and Solitude*. Among the Inhabitants of those Parts it is now known by the Name of *Bahar Melach*, i. e. *The Salt Sea*, and (according to *Michael Nan*) by that of *Bahheret Louth*, or *Lot's Sea*: It was bounded on the West, by the Territories of the Tribe of *Judah*, and on the East, by the Country of the *Moabites*: It is encompass'd, almost on all sides with high Mountains, extending it self (as we are inform'd by *Josephus*) in Length, from North to South, for the space of five hundred and eighty Furlongs, and an hundred and fifty in Breadth, from West to East: Its Figure may well be suppos'd to resemble the shape of a Tongue, so that its most Southern Part is usually call'd by that Name, as is also (according to *Sanson*) that Northern Part, which receives the River *Jordan*: This Lake (says *Pliny*) does not admit of the Bodies of living Creatures; for those of *Oxen* and *Camels* float on the top of it: Whence it is reported, that nothing can sink in it: And indeed, if the extreme Saltiness of its Waters be duly consider'd, this Matter of Fact will not seem miraculous.

XI. The Rivers of Syria partly discharge themselves into the Dead Sea, and partly into the Mediterranean: The chief of the former, are the River *Jordan*, and the Rivulets *Arnon* and *Kedron*. *Jordan*, in Latin *Jordanis*, or *Jordanes*, now call'd *Scheriah* by the Inhabitants, i. e. *The Law*, as also *Jourdain* by the French, and *Il Giordano* by the Italians, the most pleasant, largest and almost only River of *Judea*, so often mention'd, takes its Rise, with a double Stream, in *Galilee*, on the Foot of Mount *Anilibanus*, four Miles above *Cæsarea Philippi*, out of two Springs nam'd *Jor* and *Dan*, at a little Distance one from another, the latter lying towards the West: These two Streams being united at *Cæsarea Philippi* constitute the River *Jordan*, which is at first call'd *The lesser*, and probably impose this Name upon it: Hence flowing down to the South, and dividing the Upper *Galilee* from *Trachonitis*, it passes through the Lake *Samochonites*, or the Waters of *Meron*: Then it runs into the Sea of *Galilee*, by the Towns of *Caper-naum* and *Chorazin*, and at the end of that Lake, on the left side, receives the Rivulet, or Brook *Jabbok*: Afterwards being call'd *The Greater Jordan*, it flows between *Peræa*, on the East, and

*Samaria*, and the Northern Part of *Judea*, on the West: At length this noble River having divided *Judea* into the Parts on the hither, and farther sides of it, enters as it were by constraint (to use *Pliny's* Words) the Lake *Asphaltites*, which is of a deadly nature; where it is soon swallow'd up, and loses its most excellent Waters, by intermixing them with those of that *Pestilential Gulph*: There are no grounds in the least to believe this to have been the River of *Paradise*; since the Circumstances mention'd in the Holy Scriptures relating to that River, do not agree with *Jordan*.

*Arnon*, now call'd *Adramelech* by the Inhabi-  
tants, a River or Brook of *Judea* beyond *Jordan*, springs out of a Hill of the same Name, and having water'd the Territories of the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, empties it self into the *Dead Sea*. *Kedron* is a Rivulet on the East of *Jerusalem*, between that City and Mount *Olivet*, which being encreas'd with Rain-water falling from the Mountains, as also, by some Springs, passes through the middle of the Valley of *Jehoshaphat*, and the Plains of the Desert, and runs towards the West into the *Dead Sea*.

The principal Rivers of Syria that run into the Mediterranean Sea, are *Kison*, *Adonis*, *Eleuthernus* and *Orontes*. *Kison*, a Rivulet, or Brook of *Judea*, on the hither side of *Jordan* (as some Geographers affirm) flows out of the Sea of *Galilee* between the Territories of the Tribes of *Issachar* and *Zabulon*, and falls into the Mediterranean Sea, near the Foot of Mount *Carmel*: But this Brook (according to *Adrichomius*) rises out of Mount *Tabor*, and is soon after divided into two Streams, the lesser of which runs to the Sea of *Galilee*, and the greater to the Mediterranean. *Adonis*, now call'd *Habar Ascalb*, i. e. *The Dog-river*, a River of *Phœnicia*, has its Spring-head in Mount *Libanus*, and falls into the Mediterranean Sea, between *Berytus* and *Byblus*. *Eleuthernus*, or *Valania* issues in like manner out of Mount *Libanus*, and (according to several Authors) rolls into the Mediterranean Sea, between *Tyre* and *Sarepta*; or (as others will have it) near the Town of *Balanea*, or *Valania*, which now imposes its Name on this River, and is situated much more towards the North, than the two former Towns. Lastly, *Orontes*, or *Almeimas* a great River of Syria, taking its Rise from Mount *Libanus*, directs its Course towards the North, and among other Towns waters *Emesa*, *Apamia* and *Antioch*, below which it discharges it self in into the Sea, near *Selencia Pieria*.

XII. The Rivers of Syria running into the Mediterranean Sea.  
Kison  
Adonis  
Eleuthernus  
Orontes

C H A P. VIII.

DIARBECK and ancient ASSYRIA

I. HAVING thus run through the Western Part of *Turkey* in *Asia* which lies between the *Archipelago* and the *Mediterranean Sea*, as also between the River *Euphrates* and that Sea: We pass on next to its Eastern Part, situated between the same River and *Persia*, where *Diarbeck* and *Turcomania* offer themselves to our View. *Diarbeckia*, *Diarbeck*, or *Diar-Bechir*, i. e. *The*

*Duke's Country*, is bounded on the West, by *Syria* properly so call'd, and *Arabia Deserta*; the River *Euphrates*, for the most Part, supplying the place of a Boundary; on the South, by the same *Arabia* and the innermost Recess of the Persian Gulph, or Gulph of *Bassora*; on the East, by the Country of *Persia*; and on the North by *Turcomania*.

This



II. This Country is usually divided into three Parts, or Provinces, viz. *Diarbeck*, *Terack* and *Curdistan*; the first of which extends itself towards the West, the second to the South, and the last to the East. *Diarbeckia*, *Diarbeck*, or *Diar-bechir* strictly so call'd, being the greatest Part of *Diarbeck* taken at large, has the River *Euphrates* for its Western Bounds, by which it is separated from proper *Siria* and *Arabia Deserta*: as also *Terack*, on the South; *Curdistan*, on the East; and *Turcomania*, on the North. It is commonly call'd by the Arabians *Al Gezira*, i. e. *The Island*, or rather *The Peninsula*, as being water'd on the West and South, by the River *Euphrates*, and on the East, by *Tigris*; and is at present subdivided into four particular Districts, viz. proper *Diarbeck*, *Diar-medzar*, *Diar-rabea* and *Diar-algezira*.

The most remarkable Towns of *Diarbeck*, are *Orfa*, or *Oufa*, in a fruitful, well cultivated and pleasant Country, by some reputed the Capital of *Diarbeck*; where the best yellow Leather is made. *Bir*, or *Berygeon*, a large Town, on the Foot of a Mountain, abounding with excellent Corn, Wine, Fish, and several sorts of Fruits; with an old Castle, on the River *Euphrates*, over which there is a Ferry in this Place. *Raga*, or *Rika*, the Capital of the *Beglerbeglick* of *Rika*, in which there are seven lesser Governments, or *Sangiackates*. *Karkise*. *Haran*. *Diar-beckir*. *Kar-Emir*, or *Kar-Emu*, the chief City of the *Beglerbeglick* of *Diar-beckir*, on which depend nineteen *Sangiackates*, and (as some say) of the whole Country; is seated on an Hill, on the right-side Bank of the River *Tigris*, and fortified with a double Wall and 72 Towers: It is a large and populous Town, yielding good store of Corn, Wine, excellent Cattel, and the best sort of red Leather. *Ajarchi*, or *Aianchini*, taken by most Geographers for the Metropolis of *Diarbeck*, with several Suburbs, containing a vast multitude of Inhabitants: The Order of the Maps is different, as to the Situation of this Place, most of them including it in the Frontiers of *Curdistan*, and others within that Province it self; but *M. Sanson*, in his Map of the State of the Turkish Empire, places it on the Western Bank of *Tigris*. *Merdin*, a little Town on an Hill, fenced with Walls and a Castle, out of which an admirable Spring issues forth: Some will have this Town to stand not far from the *Tygris*, a little lower than it is usually set. *Gezire*, another little Town in the Island of *Tigris*. *Nisibin*, otherwise call'd *Nesbin*, or *Nasibin*, which now only deserves the Name of a large Village. *Teckrita*, or *Teckrit*; and *Musilum*, *Mosul*, or *Moussul*, a great Town, of a fair Aspect on the outside, enclos'd with high Stone-walls, but almost quite laid waste within: However it is a considerable Mart-Town (to which a great Number of Merchants resort, more especially *Arabians* and *Curds*) and the Capital of the *Beglerbeglick* of the same Name, under which are five *Sangiackates*: It is seated on the Western Bank of the *Tigris*, and adorn'd with a little Castle.

III. The Second Part of *Diarbeck* taken at large, and situated towards the South, is *Iraca*, or *Terack*, otherwise call'd *Terach* and *Trach*, as also, *Hierak-arabi* by *M. Tavernier*: It is bounded on the West, by *Arabia Deserta*; on the South, by the same *Arabia* and the Persian Gulph; on the

East, by *Persia*; and on the North, by *Curdistan* and *Diarbeck*. This Province, in which the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris* are united, is very well water'd, and has many rich Pastures, affording Fodder to numerous Herds of Cattel, more especially Buffles, or Wild Oxen, with great store of Milk and Butter.

The chief Towns of *Terack* are *Zab*; *Felongia*; *Cusa*; *Balsara*, otherwise call'd *Balsera*, *Balsora*, *Bassora*, *Basra* and *Bosra*, a large Town half a Mile distant from the Confluence of *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, to which it has a deep Ditch; and seated on the Frontiers of *Arabia Deserta*, within the Limits whereof it is included by *M. Thevenot* and others. It is the Head of a Principality of the same Name, govern'd by its own Prince, who is nevertheless an Homager to the Grand Seignior, and a most famous Mart-Town, whither the *English* and *Hollanders* bring Commodities up the Persian Gulph, to sell to the Merchants that resort thither from *Constantinople*, *Smyrna*, *Damascus*, and *Grand Cairo* in *Egypt*: It is also observable, that the modern Name of the Persian Gulph, derives its Original from this Town of *Balsora*, which is defended with a strong Castle and a capacious Harbour. *Gorno* or *Quorna*, a considerable Fortrefs, on the Confluence of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*. *Vaser*, *Waser* or *Wafuh*; as to the Situation of which, the Opinions of Authors are different. And *Bagdad*, or *Bagdet*, the Metropolis of this Province, and of the *Beglerbeglick* of the same Name, which comprehends ten *Sangiackates* under its Jurisdiction. It is seated on the Eastern Bank of the River *Tigris*, over which there is a Bridge of Boats, extending it self about three Italian Miles in Compass; and is well fortified with Ramparts, Towers and Trenches. This Town, which rose out of the Ruins of *Seleucia*, as that did out of the Ruins of *Babylon*, was built by *Almansor Abagjafer* the 22. Califf of the *Saracenes*, and call'd *Bagdad*, i. e. the Garden of *Dad*, from a certain Persian, who had a large Garden therein: It was often taken and regain'd by the Turks and Persians, and has continued in the Possession of the former, ever since *A. D.* 1638. It is fenced with large Suburbs, on the other side of the River, and is at present much frequented, both upon the account of Religion and Merchandise; it stands 110 Miles from *Ninive*, to the South, and scarce 200 from the Mouth of *Tigris* to the North: And about a days Journey from it, are still to be seen the Ruins of *Babylon*, so much celebrated in ancient History, of which more anon.

The third Part of *Diarbeck* largely taken, lies towards the East, and is call'd *Curdistan*, according to *M. Tavernier*, and several other Authors, and by others *Arzerun*, or *Assyria*. The same *Tavernier* extends it from the Lake *Van*, its Northern Boundary (which is situated beyond *Assyria*, in the Eastern Tract of the greater *Armenia*) along the Eastern Banks of the River *Tigris*, as far as the Territory of *Bagdad*; and it is for the most part subject to the Dominion of the *Turks*.

The most remarkable Towns and Places of *Curdistan* are *Ninus*, or *Ninive*, on the East-Bank of the *Tigris*, now a meer heap of Ruins, which are spread abroad by the River side, for the space of a Mile. At the distance of half a Mile from hence is an Hill, with a famous *Mosque*, where the



the Monument of the Prophet *Jonah* is shewn, a Place, for which the *Turks* have a very great Veneration; so that no Christian, can come near it but by Stealth. *Cherazoul*, *Schchresul*, or *Sciabrazur*, a Town built on a cut Rock, with a fine Stone-bridge, in the Confines of *Persia*; the Capital of the *Beglerbeglick* of the same Name, under which are ten *Sangiackates*. *Amadia*. *Bitlis*, or *Beilis*, a Town seated in the middle between two high Mountains, with a Castle on a very steep Rock, under its own potent Prince, who is neither subject to the Grand Seignior, nor to the King of *Persia*. *Salmastra*, or *Salmaestre*. *Van*, or *Wan*, a spacious Town, with a strong Castle on an Hill, the Capital of the *Beglerbeglick* of *Van*, including nine *Sangiackates*; although *M. Tavernier* refers it to *Turcomania*: It is inhabited by a great number of *Armenians*, and stands on a Lake of the same Name, which is reckon'd among the largest of the whole Continent of *Asia*, and extends it self almost fifty Miles in Compass: This Lake contains great store of Fish, but (as it is related by Travellers) only of one and the same sort, with two considerable Islands. And *Taduan* a Village on the same Lake, with a capacious and safe Harbour.

v. *Assyria*. The Country of *Diarbeck*, with its three Provinces just now describ'd in particular, was anciently the Eastern Part of *Syria* or *Assyria* taken also at large, which afterwards was only call'd *Assyria*, and its Parts were *Mesopotamia*, *Babylonia* and proper *Assyria*: See Chap. III. Sect. I.

VI. *Mesopotamia*. i. e. a Country lying between the Rivers, being the same with *Diarbeck* strictly taken, obtain'd its Name from its Situation; for it is water'd on the West and South, by *Euphrates*, and on the East by *Tigris*. On the North, were the *Niphatick* Hills, which separated it from the greater *Armenia*. Upon the same account, it is call'd by the *Hebrews* *Aram-naharaim*, i. e. *Syria of the Rivers*; in the Dual Number, as the Term *Naharaim* denotes; as also, *Padan-aram*, which was the Habitation of *Laban*, where *Jacob* fled for Refuge; by which nevertheless, *Bochart* does not understand (as is commonly done) the whole Country of *Mesopotamia*, but only its Northern Part, from the Mountains of *Armenia*, to the River *Chaboras*, which was cultivated and fruitful, the remaining Part being untill'd, rugged and barren; but he seems to remove the Seat of *Laban* too far towards the North. The particular Provinces of *Mesopotamia*, were *Anthemusia* *Chalcitis*, *Gauzanitis*, *Acabene*, call'd *Acaben*, by *Sanson*, *Ingine*, or *Tingine*, and *Ancobarrites*, or *Ancokaritis*.

The principal Towns of this Country, were *Seleucia*, on the River *Euphrates*, at its Confluence with the *Tigris*, out of whose Ruins *Moussul* afterwards rose up: *Labbana Nisibis* which several Authors take to be the same with *Nisibin* or *Nesibin*: *Edeffa*, call'd *Ediffa* in *Antoninus's* Itinerary, noted for the Death of the Emperor *Antoninus Caracalla*, now generally suppos'd to be *Orpha*, although others are of the contrary Opinion; at least neither *Orpha*, nor *Edeffa* is the same with *Charan* next to be mention'd: *Carrhae*, famous for the overthrow of *Crassus* and the Roman Forces under his Command, taken by several Authors to be *Charan*, or *Charran* cited in the Holy Scriptures, as well as *Nakor* the Seat of *Terah* and *Nahor*,

Part 2

from whence *Abraham* departing by the Divine Appointment, set forward to *Sichem*; and which likewise bore the Name of *Aran*, *Haran*, or *Harran*, and was seated on the River *Chaboras*; or in some Part of *Mesopotamia*; that was water'd by it, not far from the *Euphrates*, towards *Syria*, *Palmyrena* and *Arabia Deserta*, on the Road, which leads from *Chaldea* to the Land of *Canaan*. *Nicephorium*. And *Chabora*, a Town on the River *Chaboras*, near its Confluence with *Euphrates*, which *Isaac Vossius* supposes to be the same with *Ur* of the *Chaldees*.

The second Part of *Assyria*, was *Babylonia*, VII: bounded on the North, by *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*; on the East, by *Susiana*; and on the South, by the Persian Gulph and *Arabia Deserta*; which was also its Boundary, on the West. It was also call'd *Chaldea*, which others will have to be the Southern Part of *Babylonia*, towards the Desert *Arabia*: At present it is known by the Name of *Terack*, nevertheless that Part of it is to be understood, which lies towards the East, beyond the River *Tigris*. The remarkable Provinces of *Babylonia*, were *Anchanitis*, or rather, *Auranitis*; *Mardocea*, or *Amordocea* and *Chaldea*.

The Capital City of those Parts was *Babylon*, into which the *Chaldeans* translated the two Tribes of *Israel*, seated in a Champain Country anciently call'd *Sennahar*, *Sinhar*, or *Sinear*, on the River *Euphrates*, which divided it almost into two equal Parts: It was built by *Nimrod*, or *Belus* the Grandson of *Ham*; or as others say, by *Semiramis*; and became the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Assyria*.

B A B Y L O N, was once a City of that mighty extent and magnificence, that as it then was reckon'd among the Wonders of the World, so it still deserves some remembrance, and therefore we cannot pass by without giving the Reader a short account of it, as we find it set down by *Diod. Siculus*. *Semiramis* the Widow of *Ninus*, the famous Heroine, and the fourth of the Assyrian Monarchs, resolving to outdo her Husband who had built *Nineve*, founded or at least re-edified the City of *Babylon*, wherein, says my Author, she employ'd two Millions of Men, who in a years time built the Walls that were as many Furlongs round as the year had days, viz. 365; the height of them 50 *Orgya's* or Fathom, that is, 100 Yards, and the breadth large enough for six Chariots to go a-breast; or as others say only 50 Cubits high, and breadth for two Chariots: The Wall was adorn'd and guarded with 250 large Turrets, and the City in some parts surrounded with deep and most dangerous Morasses: The River *Euphrates* ran through the middle of the City, and on each side of it was a magnificent Palace, which were made communicable by a Passage under the River; as well as by a most stately Bridge over it: The Walls of the Palace on the West side the River, which was much the finer of the two, was 60 Furlongs, or 7 Miles and half, in Circuit, within which was another Wall 40 Furlongs round, 300 bricks thick, and 100 yards high, upon which were Turrets raised yet much higher; whence she took a View of the whole City: And within that, was a third Wall exceeding the other in height, but proportionably less in Circuit, being 30 Furlongs; this contain'd the Royal Palace, and was adorn'd with *Basso Relievs* and other Decorations; The Palace its self



self was magnificent in its furniture suitably to its Structure, and must needs have exceeded any thing that ever was; unless *Pompeii* must take place of it: She also built a Temple to *Jupiter*, or *Belus*, of mighty height, as may be judg'd by the magnitude of the Statues, placed at top, which weigh'd 1000 Talents each, and were 40 foot high. But the Hanging Garden in *Babylon* was most admired; this was a work of later date, and wonderful structure; being a very curious Garden of 400 foot square, rais'd by Arches one above another to a vast height: But all this Glory is long since pass'd away, and even *Diodorus* speaks of it as a ruin'd place in his Time: The extent of this City was so great, that 'tis reported, That *Babylon* being surpris'd by the Enemies on a certain Time, the News of its surrender did not come to the Ears of those who inhabited the farthest Part of the City till the third Day: And indeed, it was often taken, particularly by *Cyrus*, *Darius*, *Alexander* the Great, who died there, *Seleucus* and others. Lastly the Country of *Babylonia* and the first Monarchy of the World, call'd also the *Chaldean*, took their Denomination from this famous Metropolis, which was distant 100 Miles from *Teredon* to the North, 140 from *Ninive*, to the South, 320 from *Susa*, to the West, about 500 from *Damascus*. It is apparent from the above-mention'd Situation of *Babylon*, that it did not stand on the same Ground with *Bagdad* a Town of *Yerack*, on the Eastern Bank of the *Tigris* already mention'd, although the latter grew up out of its Ruins; or in the place of *Ctesiphon*, a large Village, on the same side of the said River; or in that of *Seleucia*, a Town near *Ctesiphon* and ever against it; much less in the room of *Susa*, a City of *Susiana*, on the River *Euphrates*, situated a great deal farther towards the East: Some Authors averr, That certain Footsteps of it, although very small ones, are left below *Bagdad*, near *Filogia*, where the *Tigris* is divided into two Streams; but this Situation of *Babylon* agrees little with the fore-going: And according to the Opinion of others, that great City stood on the same Territory, with a Place now call'd *Ella*, or *Le*, where many Ruins are to be seen, and a Tower, which at this Day, bears the Name of *Nimrod's Tower*.

The other remarkable Towns of this Country, besides *Babylon*, were *Uolgesia*; *Borsippa*, on the Marhes, call'd *Borsippa* by *Ptolemy*; And *Urchoa*, or *Orchoe*, generally taken for *Ur* of the *Chaldees*, the Birth-place of *Abraham*; although others will have *Ur* to be the *Ura* of *Pliny*, which was situated in *Assyria*, a Province of *Babylonia*, that is to say, in the Place, where the River *Euphrates* turns towards the East; or the *Uria* of *Eusebius*, who wrote of the Jewish Affairs, a Town likewise of *Babylonia*, and perhaps the same with *Pompey's Ura*: *Isaac Vossius* is of Opinion, that *Chaldea* was ancient *Ur*, as we have already hinted in *Mesopotamia*, but *Bochart* is rather inclin'd to place it in the Northern Part of *Mesopotamia*, towards the Confines of *Assyria*, and the Armenian Mountains, between *Nisus* and the River *Tigris*: Upon the whole, we think fit to follow the Sentiments of those who fix *Ur* within the Bounds of *Chaldea*, but it is difficult to determine, to which of the *Uras* it ought to be appropriated. Lastly, between the Mouths of *Tigris* and *Teredon*,

a large Town, now judg'd by most Geographers, to be the same with *Balsara*, but unadvisedly; in regard that the Ruins of the former (according to the Account given by Travellers) are distant two Miles from the latter; nevertheless it cannot be denied, That *Balsara* ow'd its Growth and Improvement to *Teredon*.

Having thus given a particular Description VIII of *Mesopotamia* and *Babylonia*, we cannot pass by *The Situation of Eden, or Ileden*, and Paradise, concerning which there are various Opinions: To omit frivolous and fabulous Relations, there are some learned Men, who maintain, That the Terrestrial Paradise was seated within the Bounds of the Land of *Canaan* in the Valley of *Jericho*, along the Banks of the River *Jordan*, which (as they say) water'd the Garden of *Eden*; or else in the Territories of *Damascus*, not far from Mount *Libanus*; against which Opinion, *Spanheim* raises many Objections, in his *Introduction to Sacred Geography*, p. 5, 6, 7. Others are apt to believe, That Paradise was situated in the greater *Armenia*; because (according to their Judgment) the Rivers mention'd in Holy Writ have their Spring-heads in that Country; that is to say, not only *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, but also *Pijon*, in process of time call'd *Phasis*, its Name being a little chang'd, and *Gihon* afterwards known by that of *Araxes*, of the same signification with the former; for the Term *Gihon* in the Language of the *Chaldeans* denotes a River, as well as that of *Araxes* in the Persian: But neither does this sense sufficiently agree with the Sacred History, which shews, That *Eden* was situated Eastward, either with respect to *Arabia*, where *Moses* liv'd, or to the Land of *Canaan*: For according to the usual manner of Expression, among the *Hebrews*, the Term *East*, denoted all that Region, which extended itself from *Palestine*, towards the East, including *Arabia Deserta*, *Chaldea*, the Southern Part of *Mesopotamia*, *Assyria*, *Susiana* and *Persia*: And indeed, the Country of *Eden* was situated in that Part of the East, where the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris* meet, and are thence parted into several Streams, among which were *Gihon* and *Pijon*, although their Course by the passing of so many Ages, is now rendred somewhat obscure, the former watering the Land of *Cush*, and the latter that of *Harich*; which Countries are plac'd by many Authors in *Arabia Felix*, not far from the Persian Gulph, into which, *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, and the aforesaid Streams discharge themselves: Therefore we have good grounds to believe with *Huetius*, *Bochart*, Bishop *Patrick*, *Spanhemius* and others, That the Seat of the most pleasant Garden or Paradise, which God himself planted in the Country of *Eden*, was in the Southern Tract of *Babylonia*, or *Mesopotamia*, amidst the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and the neighbouring Rivulets. *P. Dan. Huetius*, Bishop of *Auranches*, in his *Tract de seu Paralysi*, as also Bishop *Patrick* in his Commentary on *Genesis*, fix the Situation of *Eden* between the place where the two Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris* unite into one Stream, and the place where these again divide into two Branches, that is, between the 34th. and the 32d. Degrees of North Latitude; and the Garden itself upon the East side of that Stream just above the division; the two Branches (that afterwards



terwards fall into the Persian Gulph) being, the Western the *Phison* of *Moses*, and the Eastern the *Gehon*.

IX. Proper Assyria. The third and last Part of *Assyria*, was simply call'd *Assyria*, and for distinction sake *Proper Assyria*; but at present is known by the Name of *Cordistan* and *Aragum*: It was bounded on the West, by the River *Tigris*, which separated it from *Babylonia* and *Mesopotamia*; on the North, by the greater *Armenia* and *Media*; on the East, by *Media*; and on the South, by *Susiana*: It is otherwise call'd the Land of *Assur*, in *Hebrew*, as well as *Assyria*, in *Greek*, and *Latin*, from *Assur* the Son of *Shem*, from whom the first Monarchy was also styl'd, *The Assyrian*. *Bochart* affirms, that *Noah's Ark* was built in *Assyria*, and driven into *Armenia*, by the force of the Southern Winds, and of the Ocean violently rolling on from that Quarter; which Opinion is confirm'd by the most ancient Chaldean Writers: The ten Tribes of *Israel* were heretofore carry'd captive into this Country by *Salmanassar*, and dwelt partly in *Assyria*, and partly in *Media*: The different People that inhabited *Assyria*, were the *Apollonians*, *Sambata* and *Goramai*, or *Garamai*, and the most remarkable Provinces, were *Arbelitis*, *Arrapachitis*, *Calacine*, *Adiabene*, and *Sutacene*, to which others add *Chalonitis* and *Artatene*. *Calacine*, or *Calachena*, one of the Countries but now mention'd call'd *Chalach*, or *Halab*, by *Bochart*; and *Choatras*, more rightly term'd *Chaboras*, or *Chabor* (according to the same Author) a Mountain between *Assyria* and *Media*, were more especially inhabited by the Captive *Israelites*.

The Towns and Places of chief Note were *Ctesiphon*, a large Village of *Assyria* on the Eastern

side of the River *Tigris*, built by the *Parthians*, over against *Seleucia*, by reason of the great aversion they had to that Town: It was also the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Parthia*, and in process of time became a flourishing City: *Ninus*, call'd *Nineve* in the Sacred Writings, which took its Name (according to almost all profane Authors) from King *Ninus* its Founder, and was a most magnificent Royal City of *Assyria*, built on the Eastern side of the *Tigris*: Its Walls are said to have been an hundred Foot high, and of so great a Breadth, that three Carts might pass together in a row, on the top of them: These Walls were also fortify'd with one thousand and five hundred Towers set in order round about, every one of them being two hundred Foot high; and took up in compass, the space of four hundred and eighty Furlongs, or fifteen German Leagues; as we are inform'd by *Diodorus Siculus*: This famous City is now call'd *Moussul* by many Geographers, and Writers of Travels, but erroneously; since the latter stands on the Western Bank of *Tigris*, and *Nineve* was seated on the opposite side of that River: Among the other Capital Towns of *Assyria*, were *Gangamela*; and *Arbela*, near the former, on the River *Caprus*, from whence the adjacent Territory was call'd *Arbelitis*, where *Alexander* the Great defeated the Army of *Darius Codomannus*, King of *Persia*, with a very great Slaughter; for it is recorded in History, that the *Persians* lost nine hundred thousand Men in that Battel: As also *Gomara*, otherwise call'd *Gamara* and *Garama*, from whence the *Garamai* a particular People deriv'd their Name. And *Mamle*, or *Mardin*, seated on the River *Tigris* in the Frontiers of *Mesopotamia*.

## CHAP. IX.

### TURCOMANIA and the Greater ARMENIA with the Rivers Euphrates, Tigris, &c.

1.  
Turco-  
mania.

AFTER the Description of *Diarbeck*, which as we have said was the ancient *Assyria*, it remains only to give an Account of the other Eastern Part of *Turkey* in *Asia*, commonly call'd *Turcomania*: It has for its Boundary on the West *Nuolia*; on the North, *Georgia*; on the East, *Persia*, to which Kingdom its Eastern part is subject; and on the South *Diarbeck*. *M. Tavernier* complains, That this Countrey is very improperly call'd *Turcomania*, in the Maps, and avouches, there are much better grounds to name it *Armenia*, or *Ermenick*; because it is almost entirely inhabited by the Armenians: *M. Baudrand* distinguishes the *Turcomans* into 32 Tribes, and says, they are dispers'd very far throughout *Asia*, more especially towards the River *Euphrates*, and the confines of *Persia*.

The chief Towns and Places of *Turcomania* are *Manuscut*, *Majafarikin*, *Sumischach*, *Erzerum*, or *Erzerom*, a noted Town, with a Castle and Suburbs, situate near the Head of the River *Euphrates*, the Capital of *Turcomania*, as also of the *Beglerbeglick* of the same Name, which comprehends eleven *Sangiacates*, and the Key of the

Part 2

*Turkish Empire*, situated at the end of a spacious Plain, and surrounded with high Mountains; where the Air is somewhat sharp, but the Soil brings forth good store of Wheat and Barley, that soon come to Maturity. *Nackisvan*; i. e. *The Station of a Ship; or Ark*, a considerable Town, so call'd by the Armenians, who avouch it to be the most ancient of the whole World, and the first Seat of its Founder *Noah*, after the Flood; where he is also suppos'd to be buried: It has been laid waste by the Turks and Persians at several times, and is at present under the Dominion of the latter; as well as *Karabag*; and *Eriuan* or *Iruan*, a Town in a Country reputed one of the most pleasant and rich of *Persia*; call'd *Iran* by the Inhabitants, and frequently *Karabag*: This Town is built on a Rock, near a rapid River, that bears the Name of *Sangui-Cija*; with a fine Stone-bridge; on the Confines of *Turkey* and *Persia*, and has been often subdu'd by the Turks and Persians: And *Kars* on the Confines of *Georgia*, the Capital of a *Beglerbeglick* of the same Name; six *Singiacates* depending on its Jurisdiction; a very large Town, abounding

Part 2

with



with all Things necessary for the support of Humane Life; yet not very populous, and almost destitute of regular Streets: In much that although the Grand Seignior has endeavour'd at several times, to remedy that Defect; nevertheless his Attempts have been always frustrated by the Persians.

II. The same Country now call'd *Turcomania*, was Part of the ancient *Armenia Minor*: For that was bounded on the West, by the River *Euphrates*, which serv'd to distinguish it from the lesser *Armenia*; on the North, by the *Mefchick* Mountains, that parted it from *Colchis* and *Iberia*; as the River *Gyus*, or *Kar*, was the Boundary between it and *Albania*; on the East by the *Caspian* Sea, and a Mountain of the same Name, that separated it from *Media*; and on the South, by the Mountains of *Niphates* and *Taurus*; the former of which divided the greater *Armenia* from *Asia*, and the other parted it from *Mesopotamia*. The different People of the Greater *Armenia*, were the *Mardi*, or *Gordiei*; and the particular Provinces were *Gordene*, otherwise call'd *Gordene* and *Gordena*. *Trospitis*. *Corinea*. *Arzizene*. *Bagrabadzene*, or *Bagrabadene*. *Circea*. *Ariza*. *Adramis*, or *Afframis*. *Adumine*. *Spiene*. *Bainjine*. *Hibodene*. *Becine*. *Coazene*. *Telazene*. *Tzene*. *Colchene*. *Soducene*. *Sarazene*, *Sarajine*, or *Saracene*. And *Syracena*.

The most remarkable Mountains of this Country, were Mount *Parialrus*, otherwise nam'd *Parmarus*, and *Paralodus*, but at present *Shielder*, or *Tender*: From whence several Rivers take their issue, viz. *Araxes*, *Araxus*, or *Arax*, flowing towards the East. *Phas*, now call'd *Riole* by the *Indians*, and *Fas*, by the *Italians*, flowing to the North. And *Euphrates*, or *Eurates*, towards the West. The Mountains *Gordiei*, which (according to *Strabo*) are also call'd *Gordas*, *Gordas*, *Gordis*, *Gordis* and *Gordischi*, where *Ptolemy* places the Spring-head of the River *Tigris*. The common Opinion is, That *Noah's* Ark, upon the Decree of the Waters of the universal Deluge, rested on the Mountains of *Ararat*, that is to say, on the Mountains of the Greater *Armenia*, and in the highest of the *Gordiei*: Others affirm, That the Ark settled indeed in the Greater *Armenia*, but on one of the highest Parts of Mount *Taurus*, or else on the *Caspian* Mountains, near *Media*, between the Lake *Arghisa*, which takes its modern Name from the adjacent Town of *Van*, on the South; and the Towns of *Araxata*, or *Naxxana*, water'd by the River *Araxes*, on the North: However it is related by *M. Tavernier*, That the beginning of Mount *Ararat*, where *Noah's* Ark rested, is distant five Miles from the Town of *Erivan*, to the South-East; as also, about three Miles from *Nach Eran*, which is said to have deriv'd its Name, from the Station of the said Ark, and has been describ'd a little above: The same Author farther adds, That Mount *Ararat* very much surpasses in Height, the rest of the Mountains of *Armenia*, which constitute a vast continued Ridge of Hills; that it is, as it were, separated from them; that in clear and fair Weather, it may be seen, at the distance of five days Journey; that it is often cover'd with Clouds, from the middle to the top, for the space of three or four Months together; and that it is call'd *Aste-*

*fonser*, i. e. *The Mountain of the Ark*, by the *Armenians*, who as soon as it appears in sight, fall down prostrate, and kiss the Earth; then lifting up their Eyes to Heaven, they make the sign of the Cross, and say a few Prayers: The *Armenians* also generally affirm, That the Remains of the Ark are still to be seen, and that it hath acquir'd almost a stony Hardness; but we leave them to justify the Truth of their Assertion.

The Capital Towns of the Greater *Armenia*, were *Trospia*, seated on the Lake *Trospices*. *Tigranocerta*, call'd *Tigranocerta*, by *Appian*, on the River *Nymphæus*. As also on the *Araxes*, were *Armanis*, between the Spring-head of *Euphrates* and the Lake *Lachmes*. *Artaxata*, *Artaxia*, or *Arraxiasata* in the Frontiers of *Media*. And *Naxxana*, near the Foot of Mount *Ararat*.

It remains only to give an Account of the Rivers that Water the Eastern Part of Turkey in *Asia* above specify'd; and they are chiefly two, being the most noble of the whole Levantine Continent, and highly celebrated in Sacred and Profane Histories; that is to say, *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, which have been often mention'd in the preceding Descriptions: They both take their rise in the same Country, and at last are united in a common Channel. The River *Euphrates*, which is greater than *Tigris*, and runs farther towards the West, call'd *Perah* by the *Hebrews*, and at present *Frat* by the *Arabians*, according to *Nicollus*: *Eurates*, by the *Italians* and *Euphrate*, by the *French*, rises in the greater *Armenia*, or *Turcomania*, out of Mount *Parialrus*, or *Paryardes*; or as others will have it, out of the *Mefchick* Mountains: Thence it flows through that Country, towards the West, as far as the Frontiers of the lesser *Armenia*, or *Naxola*; where turning its Course to the South, it separates the greater *Armenia*, or *Turcomania*, from the lesser *Armenia*, or *Naxia*, receiving the River *Melis*, on the right side, not far from the Town of *Melitene*: Then it parts *Affyria*, or *Diarbeck*, from *Syria* and *Arabia Deserta*, and in like manner, receives the River *Singai*, from *Syria*; as also *Chaboras* and *Singas*, from *Mesopotamia*, or proper *Diarbeck*: Afterwards, in the Country of *Babylonia* or *Yerack*, (according to the Arabian Geographer, from whom the *Greek* and *Latin* Writers do not much differ) it is divided into five Streams, one of which, after having water'd *Seleucia* (as we are inform'd by the Ancients) runs into the *Tigris*, over against *Basdad*; but the four others lose themselves in several Lakes: One of these Streams call'd *The Royal River* by *Ptolemy*, and *the Royal Trench* by *Polybius*, is taken by several Authors for *Ezekiel's* *Chobar*, which was cut by the order of the Governor of *Chobar*, and deriv'd its Name from thence: At last, this noble River intermixes its Waters with those of *Tigris*, at the Fortrefs of *Gorno*, a little above *Basfara*, and through the common Channel, call'd *Sereel-areb*, or *Schant el Arab*, i. e. *The River of the Arabians*, discharges it self below the same Town into the *Persian* Gulph, otherwise call'd the Bay of *Balsara*, *Balsora*, or *Bassora*.

The other great River of the Eastern Part of Turkey in *Asia*, is *Tigris*, so call'd from its rapid course; (the Word, in the Language of the *Armenians* and *Medes* signifying an Arrow) as also *Hidd:kel*,



*Hiddekel*, by the *Hebrews* and *Diglat*, by *Josephus*: It springs in the Greater *Armenia* out of the Mountains *Gordysi*, above the Lake *Aretbusa*, which (as *Pliny* says) bears all manner of Weights, without sinking, and does not admit of any River-Fish: The *Tigris* not far from its Source enters this Lake, and having run through it, without mingling its Waters, is said to hide it self for a while in certain subterraneous Passages, which nevertheless are not set down in the modern Maps: Then passing through the Lake *Thospites*, as also some other Caverns under ground, it flows between *Mesopotamia*, on the West, and

*Assyria*, on the East, and receives from *Assyria* the Rivulets *Lycus*, *Caprus* and *Gorgus*: Afterwards, it waters *Mosul* and *Bagdad*, and below the latter (as *M. Tavernier* tells us) it is divided into two Branches, one of which runs towards *Mesopotamia*, and the other to ancient *Chaldea*: The Confluence of these Rivers make a large Island; which is also water'd with a great number of Trenches. Lastly, the *Tigris*, continuing its Course to the Fortrefs of *Gorn*, is united to *Euphrates*; and passing through the common Channel, empties it self likewise into the same Bay of the Persian Gulf: Lycus; and Gorgus fluvi.

## C H A P. X.

## Georgia, Mengrelia, Circassia and Comania.

I. **A**FTER having taken a View of *Turkey* in *Asia*, we proceed in due Order to that part of *Asia*, that lies between the *Euxine*, or black Sea and the *Caspian*; containing the Provinces of *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, *Circassia* and *Comania*; the two first of which are situated more towards the South, and the two latter to the North. And are thus divided.

A Table of the Country of *Asia* situated between the *Euxine* and *Caspian* Seas.

Proper Georgia in which we	<div> <div>The Kingdom of Gagueta, or Gagheti</div> <div>The Kingdom of Carduelia</div> </div>	<div> <div>Zagan.</div> <div>Tephlis the Capital Town of Georgia.</div> </div>
Mengrelia containing	<div> <div>The Kingdom of Imeretia</div> <div>The Kingdom of Guria</div> <div>The Kingdom of Mengrelia</div> </div>	<div> <div>Cotatis.</div> <div>Varchi Azach</div> <div>Bassachiuch</div> <div>Phasis</div> <div>Sebastopolis, or Savatopoli</div> <div>S. Sophia</div> </div>

Circassia, where there are no Towns, but only Villages

Comania Tarku  
Terki

II. *Georgia* is either taken at large, or strictly: In *Georgia* the former Acceptation, it is bounded on the South by *Scirvania*, a Province of *Persia*, the Greater *Armenia*, and the *Beglerbeglick* of *Trebisond*, a Part of *Cappadocia*, or *Amasia*; on the West, by the Black Sea; on the North by *Circassia* and *Comania*; and on the East, by *Daghestan*; comprehending also in this sense the Country of *Mengrelia*: Its extent was sometime larger, and it was subject to the Dominion of a Monarch, who kept his Court at *Cotitis*, which is now the Capital Town of the Kingdom of *Imeretia*.

III. *Georgia* strictly taken, or proper *Georgia* borders upon the *Caspian* Sea, on the East; and on the West, upon the Mountains, that separate it from *Mengrelia*; in which sense it is taken by

*M. Tavernier* and others: This Country otherwise call'd *Gurgien*, as also *Gurgistan* by the Inhabitants and Asiatics, is at present under the Dominion of the King of *Persia*: The Georgians are generally reputed to be robust, valiant; very expert Archers, trusty and loyal; so that upon account of these Qualities, they are highly esteem'd both by the King of *Persia* and the Great *Mogul*: They are also excessive Lovers of Wine; whereof there is great Plenty in these Parts; affable and comely, more especially the Female Sex; inasmuch that the most beautiful *Sultanes* in the Grand Seignior's *Seraglio*, as well as in that of the King of *Persia*, are Georgian Women. The chiefest Part of these People profess the Christian Religion, although they have very little Knowledge of its Principles, and the rest follow *Mahometism*: The King of *Persia* favours the latter, and scarce suffers any Governor of *Georgia*, but a *Mahometan*.

This Country is usually divided into two Provinces, viz. *Gagueta* and *Carduelia*, and the *Sophi* of *Persia* appoints Governors for both, out of the Noble-men of *Georgia*; dignifying them with the Title of Kings. The Kingdom of *Gagueta*, *Gagheti*, or *Kacheti*, call'd *Zacheti* by *M. Senon*, lies in the middle between *Scirvania* a Province of *Persia*, on the East, and *Carduelia*, the other Part of *Georgia*, on the West: It is situated in the Mountainous Tracts, and water'd by the River *Cyrus*, or *Kur*; having *Zagan*, or *Zagain*, on the same River for its chief Town. *Carduelia*, *Carduel*, *Cartuel*, or *Cartele*; according to *M. Tavernier*, the other Kingdom of *Georgia*, is of a larger Extent than the former, and borders upon *Gagueta*, on the West, as we have but now observ'd: The Metropolis of this Province; as also of the whole Country, is *Tephlis*, or *Teflis*; a large, neat Town, seated on the River *Cyrus*, in a pleasant Territory, and driving a great Trade in Silks.

Where proper *Georgia* is now, heretofore was *Iberia*, encompass'd with Mountains, and lying between *Albania*, on the East; Asiatick *Sarmatia*; on the North; *Colchis* on the West, and the greater *Armenia* on the South. The chief Towns of this Province were; *Armaetica*, *Armotica*, or *Hamastis*, and *Artanissa* water'd by the River *Cyrus*.

From hence we pass to *Mengrelia* the last Part of *Georgia* of this



of Georgia taken at large, which is bounded on the East, by proper Georgia; on the South, by the Greater Armenia and the Beglerbeglick of *Tra-lenda*; on the West, by the Black Sea; and on North, by *Caucasia*: This Country produces so great a quantity of Iron and Steel, that it is almost capable of supplying the whole Continent of *Tartary*, with that sort of Mineral: In this Country it is very common for Parents, when reduced to want, to sell their Children, or exchange them for Things of little Value: So that the Priests themselves do not forbear following this Custom, nay they look upon it as their just Right, and therefore often expose to sale their beautiful Boys and Girls to the highest Bidders among the *Turks* and *Persians*: The Female Sex frequently perform the Sacred Functions here, as well as in *Georgia*; being for the most part, more experienced in Sacred Rites, than the Men: The Kings of *Mengrelia* profess the Christian Religion, and the whole Country is at present divided into three Provinces, every one of which is dignified with the Title of a Kingdom, viz. *Imerezia*, *Guria* and *Mengrelia*.

**Imerezia.** *Imerezia*, *Imerezi*, or *Imereze*, otherwise called *Bassianouch*, and *Bassachionouch*, by M. *Tavernier*, is a large Province of *Mengrelia*, lying in the middle, between *Carduelia*, a Province of *Georgia* already mention'd, on the East, and *Guria* on the West. Here the River *Phasis*, nam'd *Rione* by the Inhabitants, and *Fazo* by the Italians, flowing with a very slow Course, and often stagnating, takes its Rise, and waters the whole Province; which is govern'd by its own Monarch, formerly a very potent one, when *Guria* and *Mengrelia* were likewise under his Dominions. The Metropolis of this Kingdom, is *Coxia*, a little Town seated on the *Phasis*, and the Foot of a Mountain, with a Castle built on a Rock.

**Guria.** *Guria*, *Ghuria*, or *Guriel*, the second Province of *Mengrelia* is situated between *Imerezia* and the Black Sea, and subject to its own King, who is oblig'd to be homage to the Grand *Signior*: It has no Cities of any considerable Note: although M. *Scotton* makes mention of *Tarbi*, a Town on the Black Sea and; M. *Kalbe* produces *Azo*, and *Bassachionouch*.

**Mengrelia.** *Mengrelia*, the third Province, which communicates its Name to the whole Country, commonly call'd *Odishi* by the Inhabitants, and *Meghrelli* by the *Georgians*, lies next to *Guria*, on the North, and to the Black Sea on the West: It is fruitful and well water'd; affording Royal Demands to a Prince, who pays Tribute to the Grand *Signior*, and lives under his Protection. The chief Towns of this Kingdom, are *Phasis*, or *Fass* on the Mouth of the River of the same Name. And *Sebastopolis* or *Szestopolis*, a famous Mart on the innermost Bay of the Black Sea: This Part of *Mengrelia* is united by some Geographers to the Province of *Azoga*, which borders upon it, on the North, and is somewhat extended on the Black Sea, towards the West; having *St. Sophia* for its capital Town: Others do not place *Azoga* in these Parts, but the Province of *Abascia*, or *Abasia*, and others make that part, two Provinces bearing these two names.

**VI.** This Part of *Georgia* which now bears the name of *Mengrelia*, was the ancient *Colchis*, which lay between *Iberia*, the Greater *Armenia*, the *Euxine*

Sea, and Asiatick *Sarmatia*: *Jason* sail'd hither in the first Ship *Argo*, together with the Argonauts, the Flower of the Grecian Youth, and having with *Medea's* assistance taken away the Golden Fleece, carried it into *Greece*. The particular People of *Colchis*, were the *Amirali*, *Zule* and *Zani*, and the chief Towns were *Phasis*, heretofore the utmost Boundary of Navigation; and *Dioscoria*, afterwards call'd *Sebastopolis*, already mention'd in treating of *Mengrelia*.

It remains only to give an Account of two other Provinces of this Country of *Asia*, situated between the Black and *Caspian* Seas, that is to say, *Circassia* and *Comania*, which are parted from *Mengrelia* and *Georgia*, by *Caucasus*, the highest of all the great Mountains of *Asia*, being continually cover'd with Snow, and lying in the middle, between the Black Sea, on the West, and the *Caspian*, on the East: The Eastern Part of it is call'd *Cerax*, and different Names are at present attributed to the whole Mountain by several Authors, viz. those of *Cocae*, *Cochiae*, *Aibzor*, *Adazar*, *Saluto* and *Eibours*: M. *Tavernier* places *Circassia*, or *Cirkassie* to the North of *Mengrelia* and to the West of *Comania*; the mountainous Tracts separating it from the latter; and Northwards extending it self as far as the Rivers *Tanaïs* and *Volga*, which divide it from *Moscovy*: This Country (as we are inform'd by the same *Tavernier*) abounds with Hills, Valleys, Plains, Springs, Woods, several sorts of Flowers and Herds of Cattel, among which the Horses, Goats and Weather-Sheep, more especially deserve Commendation: But there are no Towns, or Fortresses, only certain Villages of a circular Figure, with a large space of Ground in the middle of them.

The *Circassians*, or *Cherken*, live by Robberies and Rapine, and not only lay waste the neighbouring Territories, but also those of their own Country-men; who are wont, in like manner, to make Incursions into theirs: The Men and Women are cloath'd alike, without any difference of Habit, and the former do not let their Beards grow, till they have attain'd to the sixtieth year of their Age: They have no Wine, neither do they make use of Coffee, or Tobacco, but drink a kind of Liquor made of Barley, that is very strong, and full of Spirits: Lastly, the Religion of the *Circassians* is different both from the Christian and Mahometan; and their Noblemen, exercise an arbitrary Power over the rest of the People.

All Authors are not agreed, with respect to the Limits of *Comania*, or *Komanie*; for (according to *Sanjon*) it is bounded on the West, by the *Euxine*, or Black Sea, the Strait of *Cassa*, and the *Palus Maeotis* or the Sea of *Zabacha*; on the North, by the River *Tanaïs* and *Moscovy*; on the East, by the *Caspian* Sea, and on the South, by Mount *Caucasus*, or *Georgia*; neither is it distinguish'd from *Circassia*, taken at large: Others will have the lesser *Tartary* to be also a Part of *Comania*, and M. *Tavernier* fixes the Bounds of *Comania*, between *Circassia*, on the West; *Moscovy* on the North; the *Caspian* Sea on the East; and Proper *Georgia*, on the South: Its Eastern Part is a Champaign Country, abounding with a very rich Soil and well water'd: The *Comanians* or *Komouchs*, for the most part, inhabit at the Foot of the Moun-



tains, from whence very plentiful Springs issue forth, and when there is any cause to fear the In-  
trodes of those People whom they have robb'd,  
they retire to the Mountains with their Booty and  
Cattel: They wear the same sort of Cloaths, as  
the Inhabitants of the Lesser *Tartary*, and are fur-  
nished with Linnen and Silk, out of *Persia*; their  
Manners, being very like those of the *Circassians*:  
They live under the Protection of the King of  
*Persia*, and are as it were a Bulwark to his King-  
dom on that side.

*Daghestania*, *Daghestan*, or *Daghestan*, is also  
esteem'd a Part of *Comania*, and borders upon Pro-  
per *Georgia*, *Scirvania* a Province of *Persia* and  
the *Caspian* Sea: This Country is inhabited by the  
*Tartars*, and govern'd by its own Princes, and its  
principal Place is *Tarku*, on the Coasts of the  
same Sea, near which appears *Terki* in *Comania*;  
towards the North.

IX. About the Province now call'd *Daghestan*, and  
the adjacent Territories, *Albania* was situated in  
the middle, between the *Caspian* Sea, the Greater  
*Armenia*, *Iberia* and *Asiatick Sarmatia*: The most  
remarkable Places were two Sea-port Towns; viz.  
*Getara* and *Albana*.

In those Parts, where *Tavernier* places *Circassia* X.  
and *Comania*, was *Asiatick Sarmatia*, bounded on *Asiatick*  
the North (according to *Cluverius*) by the Ri-  
vers *Volga* and *Tanaïs*, although others extend its  
Limits through *Moscovitick Tartary*: But the same  
*Cluverius* will have that Country to be Part of  
*Asiatick Scythia*, whereof we shall speak in the  
next Chapter. Among the People of *Sarmatia*,  
that were very numerous, the most noted, were  
the *Turcae* the Founders of the Turkish Empire,  
who are generally plac'd by Authors, between the  
Sea of *Zabacha*, Mount *Caucasus* and the *Caspian*  
Sea: As also the *Amazons*, a Warlike sort of  
Women, of great Renown, who dwelt at first  
near the River *Tanaïs*, and were wont to burn  
the right Breast of their Infant Children, to the  
end, that they might be ready to take up Arms;  
and to encounter their Enemies, with greater  
Courage: From *Tanaïs*, they march'd into *Cappa-*  
*docia* and settled their Abode, on the Banks of the  
River *Thermodoon*, which flow'd out of the Ama-  
zonian Mountain: During the Siege of *Troy* they  
took part with the *Trojans* against the *Grecians*;  
and *Ephesus*, a noble City of *Ionia* is said to have  
been built by them.

CHAP. XI.

TARTARY.

The first Table of Tartary:

The Parts of Tartary are Two, viz.	The Northern in which are	Defart Tartary,	Rifan Olgaria Nahian Giagian Hian Rudhan Daranda Marfan Dademi Schadrug Daubaha Loghman Charman Charcan.
		Real Tartary,	Giarda Mongul Tartar Chakan, or Kaimach Silian Aftur Carantia.
	The Southern contain- ing	Usbeck,	Acfu Kafghar Baghara Samarcand Keih, or Cash Balch Badafcan Banghir.
		Tur- chestan,	Thibet, or Tobbot Beruan Ug
		Cathay,	Xamo Tanju, or Tangut Serra Muanchu.

The second Table of Tartary.

Tartary, other- wise divi- ded into two Parts, viz.	The Northern com- pre- hending	Buchar Kingdom Karacathay Mongal, or Moal Kaimach.
	The Southern in which are	Kasgar Kingdom Mawaralnahra Thibet, or Tobbot Kingdom Tangut, or Tanjeu Kingd. Niuche Kingdom Jupi.
The prin- cipal Ri- vers of Tatrany, run into	The Ca- spian Sea	Oxus, or Gihon Jaxartus Rudha Jaic.
	The Tar- tarian Sea	Tartarus, or Tartar
	The Sea of the Kaima- chites	Ghammasius, or Ghammas.





The



**I.** The Air of *Tartary* is different, according to the diversity of its Situation: The Weather, for the most part is cold, and sometimes excessive hot, accompanied with Thunder, Lightning, and most violent Storms of Wind, beating down Men and overturning Walls and Trees; it seldom rains in those Parts, but the drifts of Snow are very frequent: The Country abounds with high Mountains, spacious Desarts, great Woods and Lakes; but it produces good store of Rice, Rhubarb, Ginger, Cinnamon, Cloves, Musk, Silk and Wool; neither is it destitute of Gold and Silver-mines, Pearls and Coral: It also affords Pasture to numerous Herds of Cattel, more especially Horses; which are of a small size, but very swift, strong and fit to endure Labour: The *Tartars* are said to be of short Stature; in their Temper cruel, treacherous, covetous, filthy and lustful, beyond all the bounds of Right and Modesty; but they are reputed excellent Horse-men, most expert Archers; able to bear all manner of Penury, Fatigues and Inconveniences, and altogether ignorant of the more refined Delights of Humane Life: They have no mind to be shut up in Houses, but live under Tents in the open Air, eating Milk, especially that of Mares, and Rice; and whenever they happen to wander out of the Way, they observe the Course of the Polar, or North-Star: This vast Empire is govern'd by several Kings or Princes that do Homage, or pay Tribute to the Great *Chan*, who exercises an absolute authority over all his Subjects: When a new Emperor takes possession of the Throne he often changes the former Names of the Country and Towns, which is no small impediment to the study of Geography,

**III.** The whole Continent is commonly divided into five Parts, *viz.* Desart *Tartary*, Real *Tartary*, *Usbeck*, *Turchestan* and *Cathay*; the two first of which are extended towards the North, and the rest to the South.

**IV.** *Tartaria Deserta*, Part of which is Moscovitick *Tartary* already describ'd, borders on the West, upon the same Moscovitick *Tartary*; on the East, upon Real *Tartary*; and on the South, upon *Usbeck* and the *Caspian* Sea. The most remarkable Places of this Country, are *Risan*, or *Rian*, on the Coasts of the *Caspian* Sea and the Mouth of the River *Jac*; *Olgaria*; *Nahian*; *Giugian*; *Hian*; *Rudkan*; *Daranda*; *Marfan*; *Dadema*, or *Dademi*; *Sakabra*; or *Sakabruz*, on the River *Oby* and the Lake *Izejora*; *Dambaha*, or *Dambaha*; *Loghman*; *Charmen*; and *Charcen*.

**V.** Real *Tartary*, otherwise call'd Ancient and Proper *Tartary*, is enclos'd within the following Boundaries, *viz.* Desart *Tartary*, on the West; the *Tartarian* Sea, on the North; that of the *Kaimachites*, on the East; and the Territories of *Cathay* and *Turchestan*, on the South: This is apparently the largest of all the Parts of *Tartary*, and the Places of chief Note, within its Jurisdiction, are *Gurda*; *Mongul*, seated (according to some Geographers) on the Lake *Corus*; through which the River *Tartar* runs, not far from the Fortifications of the ancient Kings of *Tartary*; although others remove it farther towards the East: *Tartar*, or *Tatar*, near the Spring-head of the River of the same Name: *Chakan*, or *Kaimach*, on the Southern Bank of the River *Ghammas*; *Sifan* and *Ajmer*, somewhat higher on the

same River: *Carania*, on the side of a very large Lake, of the same Name, in the Frontiers of *Turchestan*, which is call'd *Kithay* by other Authors, and from whence (as some say) the River *Oby* takes its Rise; but there are many who hold a different Opinion.

Having thus given some Account of the Northern Parts of *Tartary*, we proceed to the three Southern ones, beginning at the West; and here we come first to *Usbeckia*, *Usbeck*, or *Tusbeck*, otherwise nam'd *Zagathay*, *Mawaradnahr* and *Trans-Oxiana*: This Province is bounded on the North, by Desart *Tartary*; on the West, by the *Caspian* Sea; on the South, by *Persia*; and on the East, by the Dominions of the Great *Mogul* and *Turchestan*: This is generally reputed the principal and best cultivated Part of the whole Continent of *Tartary*, and the Inhabitants maintain a very considerable Traffick with those of the neighbouring Kingdom of *Persia*. The chief Places and Towns of *Usbeck*, are *Acsu*; *Kashghar*, the Capital Town of a Country of the same Name; *Baghara*, *Bachara*, *Bochara*, or *Bockora*, noted for giving Birth to *Avicenna* the Physician and Philosopher; *Maracanda*, or *Samaracanda*, *Samarcand*, the Metropolis of these Parts, situated in a most pleasant Valley, with a Cattle; heretofore the Royal Court of *Tamerlan*, the most renowned Emperor of the *Tartars*; famous for an University that he founded there, and which is still in Repute, among the Mahometans: *Keib*, or *Cash* a Town in the Neighbourhood of *Samarcand*, which *Baundrand* supposes to be the Birth-place of *Tamerlan*, although many Authors make him a Native of *Samarcand* it self: *Balch*, or *Belch*: *Baldajan*; and *Barighir*.

*Turchestan*, or *Turchestan*, borders on the West, upon *Usbeck*; on the North, upon Real *Tartary*; on the East, upon *Cathay*; and on the South, upon the Empire of the great *Mogul*. The chief Towns of this Province, are *Thibet* otherwise call'd *Tobbot*, or *Tobat*, the Capital of a Country of the same Name, plac'd by several Authors in the room of *Turchestan*, which they take to be altogether fictitious: *Beruan* on a Lake that bears the same Name: And *Ug*, near the Frontiers of *Cathay*.

The fifth and last Province of *Tartary*, is *Cathay*, or *Cathay*; bounded on the West, by *Turchestan*; on the North by Real *Tartary*; on the East, by the Sea of the *Kaimachites* and the Strait of *Jesso*; and on the South, by *China*: Some modern Writers make this Province, the Northern Part of the Dominions of the Chinese; so that according to their Account, there are only four Parts, or Divisions of *Tartary*. The most considerable Places and Towns of *Cathay*, are *Xamo*, or *Camul*, near the Desart of *Xamo*, which is extended very far through this Country, as also through Part of *Turchestan*: *Tanju*, or *Tangut*, the Capital Town of a Territory of the same Name: *Serra*; *Muonchu*, formerly call'd *Cambalu*, (as some say, although others take *Cambalu* for *Peking*, or *Xuntien*, the Metropolis of *China*) the Capital Town of *Cathay*, and even of the whole Continent of *Tartary* (according to *M. Robbe*) seated on the River *Caranora*, and extending it self eight Miles in Compass, over against the Town of *Chikan* or *Kaimach*, on the River *Ghammas*, mention'd before in the Description of



Real *Tartary*: However, M. Smein, in his Map of *Asia* does not set down *Cambian*, or *Muonchen*, among the Towers of *Tartary*.

IX. The *Asiatics* depart very far from the above-specified Division of *Tartary*, dividing it (according to their Method) into many Parts, of which we shall here give a short Account, although their Names are scarce known to the Europeans.

These Parts are chiefly, nine, ten, or eleven in Number, according to the diversity of their Conjunction, or Separation, and they shall be recited in the same Order that was before observ'd in treating of the Parts of the former Division; that is to say, The Kingdom of *Buchar*; The Countries of *Karakahay*; *Mongal*; and *Kumach*: The Kingdom of *Kalgai*; The Province of *Masaxanatra*; The Kingdoms of *Tiber*, *Tangu*, and *Nuche*, and the Country of *Faps*: Others make the Kingdom of *Nuche*, with the Territories of *Faps* and *Nishan* Part of the Country of *Kim*: Again, some leave out *Kim* and add *Nulhan* to the Countries but now mention'd: The two first of these Parts, viz. the Kingdom of *Buchar*, in which were the *Calmuski*, or *Kalmouks*, a particular People and the Country of *Karakahay*, or *Chaulach*, where the *Chaulachites* inhabited, take up that Part of *Tartary* which has been already describ'd under the Name of *Tartaria Deserta*. The Country of *Mongal*, *Meal*, or *Magog*, possesses the Northern Part of Real *Tartary*, and is subdivided into four Parts, of which the Western is nam'd *Metriu*; the Northern, *Sa-Meal*, or *Tartar*; the Eastern, *Merca*; and the Southern, *Feka-Meal*, *alias Fag* and *Gog*. The Country of *Kaimach* or *Namania*, the People of which are call'd *Kaimachites*, or *Namans*, is situated in the Southern Part of Real *Tartary*, on the hither side, beyond and above the River *Ghammas*. The Kingdom of *Kalgai*, *alias Chalzag*, and the Country of *Masaxanatra*, are set out within the Bounds of *Usbeck* above specify'd. The Kingdom of *Tiber*, or *Thobhai* is put in the room of *Turcheitan*. Lastly, the Kingdom of *Tangu*, otherwise call'd *Tanju* and *Thobhai*; the Kingdom of *Nuche* and the Country of *Faps* are plac'd within the Limits of *Cathay*.

X. The whole Continent, which now bears the Name of *Tartary*, in ancient times was partly call'd *Serica*, and partly *Scythia*: The former, inhabited by the *Seres*, a renowned Nation, was situated in that Part of *Tartary* which is term'd *Cathay*, or the Kingdoms of *Tangu* and *Nuche*.

XI. The rest of *Tartary* was taken up by *Scythia*, which Mount *Imaus* divided into the hither and farther: The Northern Part of this Mountain is at present call'd *Altkai*; the Southern, *Bengiar*; and that which borders on the Dominions of the Great *Mogul*, *Dalanguer*. The hither *Scythia* extending it self towards the West, was usually styl'd *Scythia* within *Imaus*, and its most noted People were the *Jaxartes*, *Massageta* and *Sace*: The further *Scythia* lay out towards the East,

and was nam'd *Scythia* beyond *Imaus*. Several Authors are of Opinion, That the Land of *Gog*, or *Magog*, was situated in the Northern Part of Real *Tartary*; others place it between the Empire of the Great *Mogul* and *China*; but many will have it to be that Part of *Scythia*, which lies about Mount *Caucasus* and the *Caspian* Sea.

The Rivers that water *Tartary* are discharg'd into the *Caspian*, or *Tartarian* Seas, or into that of the *Kaimachites*, viz. *Oxus*, whose modern Name is *Gizon*, *Gehun*, or *Jihun*: *Jaxartes*, *five Jaxartes*, now call'd *Seiban*, *Abshah* and *Ardok*, which runs through *Usbeck* as well as the former: *Rudha* and *Jaic*, which pass through *Tartaria Deserta*: *Tartar*, or *Tatar*, a River of Real *Tartary*, that empties it self into the *Tartarian* Sea: And *Ghammas*, or *Ghammas*, the principal River of *Tartary*, which takes its Rise in the mountainous Tracts of *Bengiar*, and having water'd the middle of *Kaimach* or the Southern Part of Real *Tartary* from West to East, for the space of about six hundred Miles, at last rolls into the Sea of the *Kaimachites*.

Thus I have given a short Account of the vast Continent of *Tartary*, as it is express'd in the Maps that have been hitherto publish'd; and perhaps, a larger than is requisite, in regard, that the Relations which are deliver'd concerning it, must needs be uncertain and doubtful: For this Country is not only situated at the farthest Distance from *Europe*, but the Passages are also very much obstructed both by Sea and Land, and it is inhabited altogether by a barbarous Nation: So that it is scarce possible for the Europeans to maintain Traffick, or correspondence with the *Tartars*, and consequently very difficult to get any faithful Narratives, or authentick Records relating to the Nature and Constitution of those Parts: And indeed, my Opinion was very much confirm'd, when the Honourable *Paul Voet van Winssen* Secretary to the States of the Province of *Utrecht*, (according to his singular Courtesie, and earnest Desire to promote Learning) did lately vouchsafe to bestow on me, the Copy of a large Map, wherein the Eastern Part of *Europe*, and the Northern of *Asia*, lying between *Nova Zembla* and the Empire of *China*, are most elegantly and accurately describ'd: This Map was compos'd by M. *Nicholas Wilsen*, (who was sometime Burgher-master of *Amsterdam*, and at several times perform'd the Office of an Ambassadour from the States of *Holland*) out of most faithful Relations that he had collected with admirable Diligence during the space of above twenty Years, and having digested them into Order, caus'd them to be engrav'd for his own Use about five Years agoe. For all the Maps of *Tartary* that have been hitherto publish'd, do not agree with it, almost in any one Particular, and scarce retain any Thing, but the meer Names of Places.



## CHAP. XII.

*The Empire of CHINA, and the Land of Jesso.*

i. **B**EFORE we proceed to the Description of China, it will not be improper to premise somewhat concerning the Land of Jesso and some others that lye near it. The Land of Jesso, Jese, Eja, or Yedso, is situated over against the Eastern Part of Tartary, and separated from it, by a considerable Strait of the same Name: The Sea-coasts of this Country were discover'd on the West, East, and more especially on the South, by the Hollanders and Portugueses; but it does not sufficiently appear, Whether it be an Island, or a Continent: Some Authors are inclin'd to believe, That it extends it self almost to America, and that it is only divided from that Continent by the Strait of Anian: But this Opinion is not follow'd in the Dutch Maps;

Part 2

since a vast space is left therein, between the Land of Jesso and America: Others suppose this Land to be joyn'd by a small Isthmus, to Japan, on the North; or else to be parted from that Island, by the Strait of Sangaar, or Zungaar, about ten Miles wide: But it is otherwise express'd in the Dutch Maps, according to which, a Strait of almost two Degrees lies between the Northern Part of Japan, and the Southern of the Land of Jesso: However, M. Tavernier assures us, That it is subject to the Jurisdiction of the Japoneses, who are supply'd from thence with Furs of a great Value: And inhabited by a Rude and Savage People who are cloathed with Skins of Wild-Beasts, and can give no account of the Country.

G 2

Not



*State-  
Land-  
and the  
Compa-  
rison  
Land.* North from the Land of *Japō*, on the East, appears the *Island*, or the *Great-Island*, and a little more to the East, more Eastward, the *Island*. These the *Strait* of *Formosa*, lying between both: These *Islands* were discovered by the *Hollanders*, but it is not as yet known how far the latter reaches towards the East.

II. Having pass'd through *Tartary*, we enter *China*, the most Eastern Region of *Asia*: A Country that was little known to us Europeans before the last Age; for *Tartary* on the one side, *India* and the *Mogul's* Empire on the other, shut it up, that no Trade invited the *Portugals* and others to navigate the Eastern Ocean, and returning gave account of a most flourishing and Polite Nation, we knew little of it. But the first Travellers thither were either very unskilful in making Observations, or else so affected to tell strange Stories, that their Relations were more like Romances than real Histories: So that till the Zeal of the Roman Church stir'd up its Missionaries to Preach the Christian Faith there; we were ignorant of the true State of that Empire.

Among the great Number of Jesuits and other Priests that since the Year 1580 have travell'd thither, some have publish'd their Observations; whereof Father *Martinus Aflis Sinceri*, is the most compleat, and Father *Magallani*'s and *le Comptes* the Latest. These therefore we have chosen to follow in the following Description: And from *Magallani* especially (who corrects *Martinus* in the particulars) we shall give a summary Account of the State of *China*, and the Customs and Manners of the People: In which *Magallani* has resided in *China* above 27 years, and from reason, sense, and being a Master Judgment and Curiosity, in the annual publications were to be expected, would be put in writing, and now actually recorded, as if it had pleased God to permit his Relations out of the *China* there, his Papers were brought to *Amo* by Father *Compte*, and by command of Cardinal *D. Ebrez*, Translated from Portuguese into French, by a very ingenious Gentleman, who has added many pertinent Annotations, and render'd the whole a very accurate and judicious Account of that Country: As for *le Comptes* Observations, they serve to corroborate the former Relations, and inform us of many minute Matters not mention'd by others.

*Notes.* CHINA has at several times born several Names, for when a Prince of a New Family ascends the Throne, he alters the Name of the Country; and there having been 22 Families of these Princes, no wonder if often it has chang'd its Name: These Names were all Characteristick, being the word *Kingdom* with some pompous adjectives; as for Example, under the late Family it was call'd *Tsin-min-que*, i. e. 2 Kingdom of Great Brightness; and under this Family *Tsin-min-que*, a Kingdom of Parity, or otherwise *Xin-que*, High and Sovereign Kingdom: and again *Chun-que*, Kingdom of the Centre, for they believe it to be in the middle of the Earth. The Indians call it *Chin* from a Family that once Govern'd; from whence the Portuguese receiv'd that Name, and adding an *a* convey'd it to the rest of *Europe*.

This Empire is seated in the Eastern Part of *Siberia*, having *Tartary* on the North and N. West; to the West the *Mogul's* Empire and *India extra Gangem* on the West: *Tanquin* and the Indian Sea which flows between the Chinese Coast and the *Philippine* Islands on the South: And the Chinese Sea that runs between it and *Japō* on the East: It is a very large Country extending from the 21<sup>st</sup> Deg. of Northern Latitude to the 41<sup>st</sup> Degree: But if the Island *Hainan*, which lies on the South of the Province of *Quamum* be included, 3 Degrees more must be added, and according to *Magallani* it must be reckon'd from the 15<sup>th</sup> to the 41<sup>st</sup> Deg. and as he tells us from the Chinese Books the length is 5752 Chinese Furlongs, which makes 1382 Miles. *Le Compte* reckons it but 450 French Leagues, excluding *Hainan*: But agrees with the Maps in the Situation of *Quamum* and *Pekin*, from which he takes his calculation, and so the difference is not much: But in its Breadth he is mistaken, for he supposes the Kingdom to be of a circular Form, and gives it near the same extent that way; whereas it is rather oval, and according to *Magallani* but 1122 Miles Broad, from *Nimpo* in the East to the utmost Frontier of *Sichen* in the West.

The old Maps were guilty of a gross mistake in the Situation of *China*: for Father *le Compte* assures us, that by exact Observation 'tis found to be 500 Leagues nearer to *Europe* than they plac'd it: Another Correction he gives which is considerable, viz. that the Province of *Leantum* is without the Wall, and not included, as the former Maps us'd to make it.

The Climate of *China* by reason of its extent *Climate* must needs be different in several Parts, but in general it is Temperate; for though the Southern Part lye under the Tropick, yet the cold Winds that blow over the large Continent of *Tartary* render the Winters very cold; and *le Compte* tells us in the Account of his Journey from *Nimpo* to *Tsin*, that the Frost was very severe in *January* and *February*, so as to oblige him to lie by till the Ice could be broken for his Passage: And *Martinus* says, the Winters are severely cold for three or four Months.

The SOIL produces plenty of Rice, Wheat, *Sal.* Oats, and other Grain, Pasture, Cotton, Wax of a peculiar sort proceeding from a Tree, whereof Father *Magallani* gives a particular account, p. 147. and Tallow of the same kind, which *le Compte* describes p. 99. and says the kernel of a Fruit has all the properties of Tallow: Here are also Mines of Gold and Silver, but never wrought: Plenty of Cattle, Fish, Fowl, Fruit; of most of the kinds seen in *Europe*, besides many others not found here: For Game they have Bears, Wild-Boars, Deer, and many others, whose Furr is a good Commodity: They have Silk also in vast quantity, so as to afford a great exportation, besides Cloathing of all kinds, to the Natives: And the Earth whereof Porcelane or China-Ware is made, affords them a notable Manufacture.

The Land is so admirably cultivated that not only the Valleys are made as Level as a Bowling-Green, but even the Mountains are cut into large Steps, and artificial Plains cut out of the sides of Hills; which are like Terrasses one above another, and made as Fertile as the Valleys: In other



ther Parts as *Xen*, *Honan*, *Quantung* and *Fokien*, where the Mould is not so deep, the Mountains bear large Forests of tall straight Trees, which by means of the Rivers they convey in vast Floats all over the Empire: Some of their Mountains appear in odd shapes, as one represents they say their Idol *Foe*, another a Dragon, another a Cock, &c. and to some of these Mountains they make Religious Pilgrimages.

The RIVERS and artificial Canals of *China* are very many, and very commodious, both for watering the Land and carriage of Goods: the most considerable whereof are the *Kiam* or the Blue-River, and the *Huangho* or Yellow-River; the *Kiam* rises in the Province of *Yunnan* near the Frontiers of the *Mogul*, and runs quite cross the Empire from West to East, passing through *Szechuen*, *Huquang* and *Nankin*, and falls into the Sea 30 Leagues below *Kiamun*, and over against the Island *Cummin*, having made a Course of above 1200 Miles: This River is very deep, even so as not to be fathomed, and very broad: but its passage somewhat dangerous, and its Course very Rapid. The *Huangho* or Yellow River hath its Rise in the Mountains on the West side of the Province of *Szechuen*, runs along the Frontiers of *Tartary* Northward, flows along by the great Wall, and then enters *China*, and runs Southward between the Provinces of *Xen* and *Xanji*; then turns Eastward, and passes through *Honan*, part of *Xinum*, and through *Nankin*; and after a Course of 600 Leagues falls into the Sea about 30 Leagues North from the Mouth of *Kiam*: The *Grand Canal* may deserve the Name of a considerable River, for *le Compe* tells us it runs quite the length of the Empire, from *Pekin* to *Canton*: And *Magaillans* says 'tis 3500 Chinese Furlongs (which answers to 840 Miles of 60 to a Degree) in length, and furnished with 72 Locks or Sluces to retain the Water: This was a Work of vast Expence, Art and Labour, and perform'd by one of the Emperors about 400 Years ago. A multitude of other Rivers and Canals are found here, with Causeys and Bridges suited to the utmost convenience and facility of Travelling. Also a number of Lakes and Hot Fountains, whose Waters have many peculiar Virtues, set down by *le Compe*, but too long for us to repeat.

The INHABITANTS are wonderfully Ingenious and Industrious, as appears by the curious wrought Silks, Cabinets, Porcelain, and other Manufactures, daily brought to *Europe*; by the admirable cultivation of their Land; and by the many publick Works of vast Labour; as the the *Grand Canal* above mention'd, the Great Wall (whereof more hereafter) the stately Bridges, vast Sluces in the Canal, the convenient Causeys on its Banks, the many publick Inns, &c. And although they had no Converse with *Europe* or other parts of the World, yet they have for many Ages had the use of the Mariner's Compass, Gunpowder and Printing; are Masters of all Sciences (though not to the Perfection that we are) and profess the most exact Morality; which was taught by the Philosopher *Confucius* above 300 Years before Christ, and his Precepts are still in the highest Esteem: But on the other hand it must be said, that they are exceeding Proud, esteeming themselves the peculiar People of the World for Wisdom and Vertue; they are withal (notwith-

standing their Professions of Morality) very much addicted to Cheating; and exceeding Covetous.

The LANGUAGE of *China* is peculiar to that Nation, as being different from all others in every respect: The Radical Words are but 333 in number, every one of which is diversified in its Signification five several Ways by Accent, and as these are all Monosyllables, they are not only variously joined and made Compounds innumerable, but by the Pronunciation also varied so largely, that this is reputed the most copious Language in the World: In their Writing they begin at the top of the Paper and go to the bottom in Columns, and make not use of an Alphabet of 24 Letters as we do, but use a vast number of Hieroglyphical Characters, even 54400, says *Magaillans*, which makes the writing their Language extream difficult to learn; and the nicety of Pronunciation makes it as difficult to Strangers to speak, for with a wrong Accent a Word signifies directly contrary to what you intend: But though Reading and Writing be difficult, it is universally learnt, and the meanest People among them teach it to their Children.

The RELIGION of *China* is Gross Idolatry; their God *Foe*, and a multitude of other Idols, are daily Sacrificed and Prayed to, and abundance of foolish Legends are part of their Religion: Christianity begins of late to have some Footing, but the Jesuits have been so complaisant to the Chinese that it is made too much like their own Religion.

The GOVERNMENT is the most regular in the World; for though the Emperor be absolute; Tribunals and Magistrates are established in most exact and regular manner for performance of all the Offices of Government. At *Pekin* the King with his Grand Council of State, compose the Supream Tribunal of the Empire: Under that are six other Superior Tribunals for Civil, and five for Military Affairs held in the same City: The particular Business of each Tribunal is thus; The first have the Care of furnishing the Empire with Persons of Merit and Capacity fit for Government, to which purpose they examine those that are to be made Mandarins, inform the King of the Vertues and Defects of every one before he be prefer'd to any Post in the Government; take Cognizance of the Conduct and Behaviour of the Mandarins that are employ'd; enquire into the Merits of the Petty-Kings, Dukes, Princes of the Blood and other Great Lords: This Tribunal also Seals all judicial Acts. The second Superior Tribunal has the Care of the Finance, supervising the Treasure, Receipts, Expences, Revenues and Tributes of the King, and pay the Annual Pensions to the Petty-Kings, &c. This Tribunal also keeps the Roll which is made every Year, of all the Families, Men, Measure of Land, and Duties payable to the King. The third Superior Tribunal has the oversight of Rites and Ceremonies, Arts and Sciences. The fourth has the ordering of War and Military Affairs, give out Commissions in the Army and Fleet, order the Levys, replenish the Magazines, and keep the Garisons in repair. The fifth Superior Tribunal is the Court for trying all Criminal Causes brought hither by Appeals



Appeals from subordinate Courts. And the fifth has the Care of the publick Works, such as building and repairing the Kings Palaces, the Temples, Sepulchres, the Palaces of the Inferior Tribunals all over the Empire, the Towers, Bridges, Stues, Dams, High-ways, &c. Every one of these Tribunals is compos'd of a large Number of Mandarins, and divided into several Chambers or Committees for the better dispatch of Buſineſs. The five Military Tribunals govern the Army: The first the Rear-Guard, the second the Left Wing, the third the Right Wing, the fourth the main Battle, and the fifth the Vanguard.

Subordinate to these Tribunals, there are Viceroy's in Provinces, Governors and Judges in Cities, and smaller Officers in Towns: for dispensing Justice to the People, and maintaining the publick Peace: And it very well contriv'd in the Government of China, that if the Mandarins and Courtiers were not the most Covetous in the World, whereby Offices and Justice are constantly bought and sold; the People of this Country would be the happiest on the Earth.

The Emperor appears in the greatest magnificence that can be imagin'd, his Palace at *Pekin* is six Miles in circumference: as true it comprehends the Courts for the Tribunals, but the Royal Apartment alone is not less than a Mile and half long, and three quarters of a Mile broad; wherein are many noble Halls and Chambers magnificently adorned and Gardens, Canals, Parks, &c. And at the times that the King makes his appearance, which is four or five a Month, he is attended by four or five thousand Petty-Kings, Noblemen and Mandarins to make their Court: And when he goes abroad, his Attendants are so numerous that they would compose a good Army: *Magallan* tells down the Order of the Emperor's Procession when he goes out of the Palace to offer Sacrifice, or perform any publick Duty, wherein the Attendants amount to at least 5000 Men, 4 Elephants and several Hundreds of Horses when he goes abroad, which is usually to the Province of *Leamum* or *Tartary*, a Hunting, a vast Army always attends him.

The HISTORY of *China* is very Ancient, the Fabulous Legends make it many thousand Years before the Creation; but those Histories that may be credited, begin within two or three hundred Years after the Flood, and shew a Succession of Monarchs to this time; but the Family of the Kings have been often chang'd, viz. 22 times; and when a Prince of a New Family ascends the Throne (which has hap, en'd either through Conquest, Misgovernment, or the like) he cuts off all the Nobility and Creatures of his Predecessor, by which means there is no very ancient Family in *China*, except that of *Confucius*, whose Merits have made his Posterity be Reverend'd for many 2000 Years. In our Age has happen'd such a Change, for in the Year 1645, the Eastern Tartars by the help of some rebellious Chinese, invaded *China* with such expedition and Success that they surpriz'd the Emperor *Zunchin* in his very Palace: who, poor Prince, being deter'd by all, retired into his Garden, and made away with himself and Children, which gave way to *Mandchue Tartars* to mount the Throne: This must necessarily have caus'd some alteration in the Gov-

ernment; but the methods of it were so regular and well establish'd, that the *Tartars* permitted it to remain, and made so little change, that except that *Pekin* is possess'd by *Tartars*, and that Nation guards the Fortresses, *China* is just as it was under the former Princes.

For the better shewing the Strength and Populosity of this Kingdom, we will set down the number of Cities, Fortresses, &c. as we find them in Father *Magallan's* History of *China*, which he took out of a Book compos'd by a Learned Mandarin for the use of the Government. But first of the Great Wall, which is indeed a most stupendous Work. It is many Yards thick, and exceeding high; built of Brick cemented by a good Mortar, that though it be 1800 Years old it is not at all decay'd: It was built by the Emperor *Conbaham* against the Incursions of the *Tartars*; and begins at *Canchen* in *Xoſi* in the West, and is carry'd on over Mountains as well as Valleys, to the *Cang-Si*, between the two Provinces *Pekin* and *Leamum* in the East; 45 Portuguese Leagues in length, without accounting for Turnings, says *Magallan*; or 500 Leagues, allowing for the Windings, says *le Comptre*: it is all along fortified with strong Towers at reasonable distance, to the number of 3000, and in the time of the Chinese Monarchs, a Million of Soldiers were maintained for its Guard. The number of Wall'd Towns in *China* are 4402, divided into the Orders of Civil and Military: The Civil are 2045, whereof of the first Rank 175, of the second Rank 270, of the third Rank 1000. The Military Cities are 2350, whereof Fortresses of the first Rank 629, of the second 500, of the third 311, of the fourth 300, of the fifth 150, of the sixth 100, and of the seventh Degree 300; these last are small Forts in the Fields near the Frontiers of *Tartary*, and on the Mountains, against Thieves and Robbers, in *Xoſi* and *Xenſi* especially, where the very Soldiers are apt to Pillage: *Le Comptre* says there are 1000 Fortresses of the first Rank, but that the rest are not considerable; the fortified Towns (except on the Frontiers of *Tartary*) being stronger than others only in Situation and Garison. Note, in this Account many Cities are included that pay no Tribute to the Emperor, but are Governed by their own Lords, or Petty-Kings, whereof here are 32 that are independent of the Court, except in Homage, &c. The number of Families in the Kingdom (excluding Soldiers, Women, Children, and all that don't pay Taxes) is reckon'd 11502872, and including the Army and others the Number of Males is 59788304. The Army consists of 902054 to guard the Frontiers, with 989107 Horses always ready for auxiliary Forces; and 707970 Men in Garisons, but the greater part of these have other Occupations, and though listed as Soldiers, exercise their respective Trades: Other Horses maintain'd by the King for his Troops, or for Posts and Messengers on publick Occasions, 504907; publick Inns or Places of Entertainment for the Mandarins and others that Travel on the King's account, conveniently seated all over the Empire 1145; large Barks constantly employ'd in bringing Provisions, Silks and Necessaries from the Southern Provinces to the Court at *Pekin* 9222; they will not add another because this makes a greater fund than ten thousand would.

There



There are 331 famous Bridges over the Rivers; not much inferior to that I have spoken of, says my Author, and that he tells us is built of White Marble 320 Geometrical Paces long and 8 broad, supported by 13 Arches, exceeding well wrought with 140 Marble Pillars upon it, whose interstices are fill'd with Tables of Marble and serve as a Rail; several other Ornaments to it of Marble Carvings he describes, too long here to mention; not far from this Bridge there is another of 25 Arches, of admirable Structure also: Both these are in the Province of *Pekin*, and the former of them which had stood 2000 Years, was broke down in the Year 1668 by an Inundation. The same Author tells us there are 272 publick Librarys; a vast number of Doctors and Men of Learning; 350000 Bonzi's or Priests; and 3030 Men and 208 Women remember'd in their Calendar as Heres or Saints.

*Descript. of Pekim.* And lastly, to give our Reader a full Idea of the Opulency of *China*, we will set down a short Description of its Metropolis, the City of *PEKIM*; a Place of that Extent and Populoufness that the French Missionaries acknowledge it much exceeds *Paris*: It is the most regular built that can be imagined, being an exact Square; and the Streets in exact Parallel Lines from South to North, and so cross ways; the Emperor's Court stands in the middle, and is an oblong Square of two Miles Long and above a Mile Broad: The whole City besides the Suburbs and the Chinese City, is a League Square or twelve Miles about, surrounded with very thick and high Walls, beset with Towers at small distances, and entrench'd with a very broad and deep dry Ditch: The Gates are nine in number, three on the South, and two on each of the other sides; and are very large, high and magnificent Structures, appearing like Castles: At each Gate there is a Suburb, and on the South side another large City of a Mile and half Square: This last is the Chinese Town, and the other the Tartar: For since those Monarchs have possess'd the Throne, the Chinese have been forced to quit the City to the Tartars: The Chinese City joins in a manner, on the North side to the Tartar City; and on the other sides, especially on the West, it has large Suburbs: It is surrounded with Walls and has seven Gates: The Streets here also lie in Parallel Lines quite cross the City both ways: So that upon the whole, comprehending the two Cities and many Suburbs, *Pekin* may be reckon'd at least 25 Miles in Compass: The Houses in both Cities are low, but well built of Brick, and cover'd with glaz'd Tiles, which glitter with the Sun: and though the furniture be ordinary, they are generally neat enough: The Streets are fill'd with Shops, and all Necessaries are every where to be bought; the only Inconvenience is, that they are not pav'd, which makes them very dirty in the Winter, and dusty in the Summer: The Croud of People continually passing to and fro is so great that the Mandarins and Great Men have ordinarily a Servant riding before to make way: Father *le Compte* judges the number of Inhabitants are two Millions. This is not at all incredible if we consider that this being the Seat of the Court and Supream Tribunals which Govern this vast Empire, it must needs be continually fill'd with Officers and other Attendants

on the Courts, Affairs of State, Law or other Business. But that which is more surprizing is that *Nimkin*, *Himchen* and many other Cities are very near as large and populous as this: And that, as Father *le Compte* expresses it, one is hardly out of a City which one would think the largest in the Kingdom, but you are immediately in another as large; so numerous and populous are the Cities of *China*.

But enough in general, let us proceed to the particular Description of *China*, which is divided into fifteen Provinces, viz. *Xanfi*, *Honan*, *Xenfi*, *Suchuen*, *Junnan* or *Yunnan*, *Queicheu*, *Quangsi* or *Quangsi*, *Huguang* or *Hupham*, *Kiangsi* or *Kiamfi*, *Quangtung* or *Quangtung*, *Fukien*, *Chekiang*, *Nanking* or *Namkim*, *Xamung* or *Xatum* and *Peking*; to which are added *Leotung* and the Peninsula or *Corea*, which are indeed compris'd within the Dominions of *China*; but not reckon'd among its Provinces: These fifteen large Provinces are usually divided into the Northern and Southern; but we shall distinguish them, together with *Leotung* and *Corea* into the Inland and Maritim, of which the first nine shall be immediately describ'd, and afterwards the other eight, in their Order.

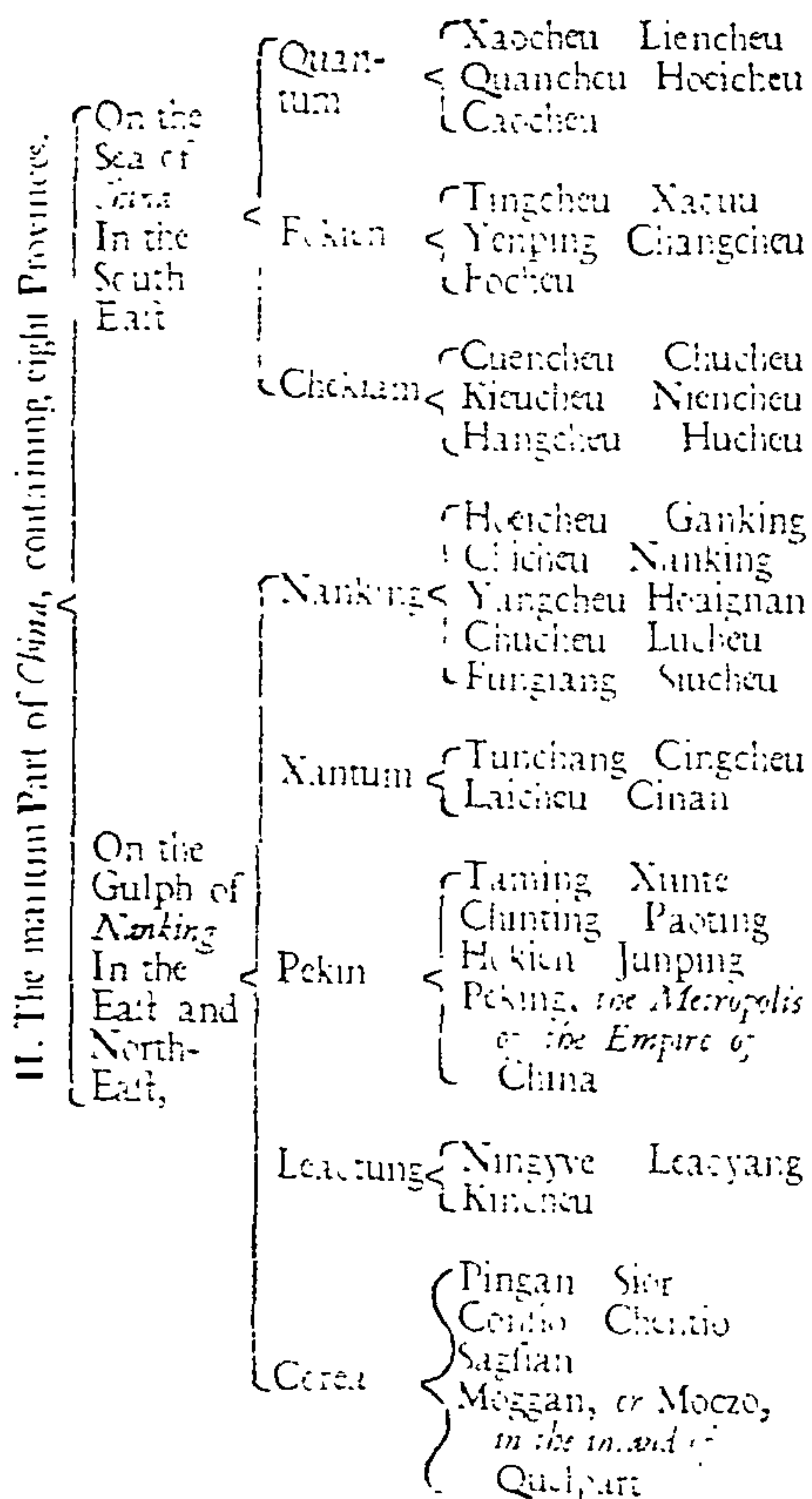
IV.

The Provinces and chiefest Cities.

I. The Inland Part of China, in which are nine Provinces.	On Ho-an's fluv. or the Yellow River, and in the North West	Xanfi	{ Taitung Taiyeven Fuencheu Pingyang Lugan
		Honan	{ Hoaiking Honan Caifung Queite Juning Nanyang
		Xenfi	{ Sigan Fungchien Cunchang Linyano Hanchung
	In the West	Suchuen	{ Paoning Xunking Queicheu Chunking Chingtu Kiunchoa Mahu Siucheu
		Yunnan	{ Tali Yunnan Lingan Quangnan Chinchian
	Or or near the Kiam fluv. or the Blew River.	Queicheu	{ Queiyang Sunan Liping Tucho
		Quamfi	{ Tienchieu Nanning Cincheu Queilin
	In the South West and Midland	Huquam	{ Jungcheu Paoching Chanxa Changte Chingtien Siangyang Tegan Hoangcheu Vuchang
		Kiamfi	{ Jaocheu Nanchang Juencheu Kiegan Kienchan Cancheu Nangan

II. The





The principal Rivers of China, that run into the Gulph of Nanking

The principal Rivers of China, that run into the Gulph of Nanking	Hwang, or the Superior River.
	Kiang, or the Blue River.

v. The three first of the Inland Provinces, viz. Xanfi, Honan, and Xensi, lie out towards the North, near the River Hwang, or the Yellow River; and the other six, towards the South, near, or about the River Kiang, or the Blue River.

Xanfi. The Province of Xanfi is situated near the Wall of China, in the middle, between Xensi, on the West; and Peking, on the East; was the first inhabited by the Chinese, and is mountainous and of a small Extent: But the Air is healthful, and the Soil very rich, bringing forth abundance of the best sort of Grapes. The chief Towns of this Province are Tatum; Taiyuen, the Metropolis; Fuencheu; Pingyang; and Lugan: which five Cities are the Capitals of so many Parts this Province is divided into, besides which there are 80 other principal Cities in its Limits.

Honan. The Province of Honan lies on both sides the River Hwang, and (according to the Opinion of the Inhabitants) in the Centre of the Terrestrial Globe: abounding with Rivulets and all manner of Delights, the Air being very Temperate, and the Soil exceeding fruitful: Inasmuch that it is reputed a kind of Paradise by the Chinese, and upon that Account it was heretofore chosen at several times, for the Seat of the Imperial Court: It is divided into nine Parts, whose chief

Towns are Houking; Honan; Casing, the Capital City; Changro; Quetic; Guibei; Juning; and Nanyang; a hundred more principal Cities stand in this Province.

The Frontiers of Honan reach on the West, Xensi to the Province of Xensi, which is separated from Xanfi by the River Hwang, and contain the most Western and Southern Parts of the Wall of China; bordering on the West, upon the Tartarian Kingdom of Thibet, and abounding with Rivers, among which some are impregnated with Gold: Nevertheless it is often destitute of Rain, and much infested with Locusts: but otherwise the Country is very fruitful. The Metropolis of this Province is Sigan, a City of three Leagues Circumference, surrounded with Walls, Ditches and Bulwarks; and guarded by a large Garrison whereof the greater Part are Tartars: The other noted Towns are Fungien; Cunchang; Linyan; and Hanchung: Pingyang; Kingyang: And Sengan: These are Capitals of particular Divisions of the Province; which contains 170 other Cities.

Among the other six Inland Provinces, situated near or about the River Kiang, the first in Order, is Suchuen, near the Spring-head of the same River; Suchuen where nothing is wanting that is requisite either for the support of Human Life, or for extraordinary Delights. The Country is partly Mountainous and partly Champain, producing good store of Silk, China roots and Rhubarb: It is divided into eight Parts denominated from these Cities Peking; Quetic; Xanking; Chanking; Chingtu the Metropolis; Kianchoa; Alaba; and Siachen: 140 other Cities are in this Province. On the South of this Province appears that of Yunnan or Yunnan, divided into Yunnan twelve Parts, whose chief Cities are, Yunnan the Capital of the whole Province; Lingan; Chinchin; an; Cuzag; Quansi; Fuenkian; Chinyuen; Xantum; Mumchoa; Tali; Chintien; Juminim: This Province is one of the richest, being stored with the best Metals, precious Stones, Musk and Silk; and hath seventy five other Cities.

On the East of Yunnan, lies Quiechen, at a little distance Eastward from the River Kiang; a hilly Country, with verdant Valleys, abounding with Quick-Silver, and affording Pasture to numerous Herds of Cattel, more especially Horses: It is divided into eight Parts, whose chief Cities are Quieyang, the Capital of the Province; Tuche; Sincien; Chinyuen; Xecien; Suanan; Tunging and Liping: And has 70 other Cities.

On the South of Quiechen, lies Quangsi, or Quang Quansi; one of the least Provinces, and most remote from the River Kiang, containing eleven Parts denominated from these Cities, viz. Tiencheu; Chingan; Taiyin; Nanning; Cincheu; Gacheu; Pimlo; Liencheu; Quelin, the Capital Town of the whole Province; Kimyuen. And Sumim: Eighty seven other Cities of Note are in this Province: whose Southern Part borders upon Tonquin and is subject to that King.

Huynan, or Huynan far exceeds the two last Provinces in largeness, and is situated between Quang Quansi, on the South, and Honan, on the North: The River Kiang runs from West to East, through this Province, which is also water'd by several other Rivulets that are here receiv'd into that Channel: So that the whole Country every where abounds with Fish, and brings forth such great quantities



quantities of Rice, and other sorts of Grain; as might be sufficient to supply the whole Empire of China: It is divided into fifteen Parts, the Capital Cities whereof are *Yenchin*: *Hemchen*: *Pakim*: *Chimien*: *Munchen*: *Camche* on the Lake *Tuning*: *Nichen*: *Yeh*: on the River *Kiam* the Metropolis of the Province: *Hanyou* on the same River: as is also *Kuchan*: *Chimien*: *Hanchen*: *Tegam*: *Shanyam* and *Chiam*: Besides which there are 85 other considerable Cities in this Province.

*Kiangsi*. On the South East of *Hepang* lies the Province of *Kiam*, or *Lia*, the fifth or last of the Inland Provinces, which take place, on or near the River *Tung*: This Country is mountainous, toward the South, and the Inhabitants of the Valleys are very much inclined to Robberies and Rapines: In the Mountains, are many rich Mines of the best sort of Metals, viz. Gold, Silver, Lead, Iron and Tin: The other Parts of the Province are well cultivated, fertile and pleasant, and the Women are more especially famous for their Fidelity: Moreover the finest Porcelain in the whole Empire of China, is made in a Village of this Province, call'd *Shackema*, which is attributed to a peculiar Quality of the Waters there: The Cities which give name to its thirteen Parts are *Nanchan* the Capital of the whole Province, situate on the West side the Lake *Pam*, and near the *Grand Canal*: *Jachen* over against it on the East side the same Lake, famous for the manufacture of Porcelain made there: *Nankin*: And *Lanchan* North of the same Lake, situate on the River *Kiam*: *Nanchan*: *Lanchan*: *Quanchan*: *Yanchan*: *Kinchuan*: *Janchan*: *Kinchuan*: *Yanchan*: And *Nanchan*: Fifty two principal Cities stand in this Province.

VII. Having thus pass'd through the nine Inland-Provinces of this famous Empire, we come to View the other six, together with *Leamung* and *Corea*, all situated on the Sea-coasts: Three of these Provinces, viz. *Quamung*, *Fokien* and *Chekiang*, appear on the South, and their Coasts are wash'd by the Sea of China.

*Quamung*. *Quamung*, or *Quamung* extends itself more towards the South and West, below the Kingdom of *Tien* on the West, the Province of *Quamung* on the North-West, and the Province of *Fokien* on the East, being on the Land side almost surrounded by high Mountains, which part it from *Kiangsi*, *Hepang* and *Quamung*: The Situation of this Province on the Sea-coasts renders it convenient for Navigation; so that it is enrich'd by Traffick: The Air even in the midst of Winter, is very temperate and mild: The Country, which is partly Champaign and partly hilly, brings forth plentiful Crops of Corn, with several sorts of Fruits, more especially, Grapes, Pears, Nuts, Chestnuts, Pomegranates and Oranges; neither is there any want of precious Stones, Metals, Saltpeter and Silk. The Cities that give name to its ten Parts are *Xiochen*: *Chankim*: *Lienchen*: *Canton*, or *Quanchen* the Metropolis, on the Mouth of the River *Lamung*, which makes a very good Haven, and renders the City a place of considerable Trade: *Hoeichen* and *Caochen*: *Nankim*: *Chaokim*: *Lienchen*: and *Lienchen*: Seventy other eminent Cities are in this Province, and on the Southern Coast, in the Bay of *Quamung* lies the small

Island on which stands *Macao* formerly a notable Portuguese Factory, before the Dutch disturb'd their Trade; they have still a Fortrefs, in it with a small Garrison; but the Place is not strong, and only considerable for being a good Road for Ships.

*Fokien*, is surrounded with the Provinces of *Fokien*, *Quamung*, *Kiangsi* and *Chekiang*, except on the South-East, where it opens to the Sea: This Province abounds with Mountains, Hills beset with Trees, Springs, most clear Rivulets and Rice: It is also very fit for Navigation, and the chief Towns of the eight Parts it consists of are *Tingchen*; *Xaoru*; *Yenping*; *Ciunchen*; *Temchen*; *Himbo*; *Kienum*; *Chanchen* and *Fuchen* the Capital: and 50 others. On the South-East Coast, off of the Bay of *Camcheu*, lies the Island *Quemoy*, or as *le Comptre* names it *Emori*, which makes a very good Haven for Shipping.

*Chekiang*, or *Chekiam*, lies next to *Fokien* on the Cheki-North, and enjoys a temperate Air; being chiefly eminent for its most delightful Plains, Hills, Valleys, Springs, Brooks, Woods and so many Mulberry-trees, that there is the greatest Plenty imaginable of Silk-worms, and the best sort of Silk. The Province consists of eleven Parts, whose chief Cities are *Ciunchen*, or *Yenchin*; *Chuchen*; *Kiunchen*; *Nienchen*; *Kiuchin*; *Hanchen*, the Capital, a City of four Leagues Circumference, one of the richest, largest and most populous in the Empire; it stands upon a River, which 20 Leagues below falls into the Sea, and has many commodious Canals in the Streets: This Place enjoys a great Trade, and is as full of People as the best of our European Cities: *Huchen*; *Fanchen*; *Kiuchin*; *Kiuchin*; and *Nimpo*, a Port Town with a very good Trade.

The Northern maritim Provinces of China offer themselves next to our View; viz. *Nanking*, *Xantung* and *Peking*, with *Leamung* and *Corea*; the spacious Gulph of *Nanking*, otherwise call'd *The Gulph of Gang*, lying between them. At the Mouth, and on the Western Coasts of this Gulph, appears *Nanking*, or *Nankim*, or as it is otherwise Nancall'd by the Tartars *Kiamnin*, one of the principal Provinces of these Dominions; the Southern Borders of which is mountainous, but the other Parts contain a most fruitful Champaign Country, abounding with Silk, and flourishing by the means of Traffick and Navigation: It is water'd with the two chief Rivers of China, viz. those of *Kiang* and *Hoang*, and its most remarkable Towns are, *Hoeichen* having under its Jurisdiction the mountainous Tracts, where that kind of chalky Clay which is proper for the Porcellane, or China-ware, is digg'd in vast quantities, and transported into the neighbouring Province of *Kiangsi*, for the fine Dishes, Cups and other Vessels there made as already mention'd. *Gankung*, on the River *Kiang*, *Chichen*, or *Tichen*; on the same River: *Nankin*: *Taipim*: *Nankung*, otherwise call'd *Nankim* and *Kiamnim*, the Metropolis of this Province, where the Emperors heretofore kept their Court; is seated in a fruitful Plain on the South Bank of the River *Kiam* in the Latitude of 33 D. it was in its ancient State the largest City in China, being 16 Leagues in Circumference: And though it was laid waste by the Tartars, is a most flourishing populous and wealthy City, near as large as *Pekin*; adorn'd



with many public Buildings, as the Temple of Gratitude, The China Tower, The Royal Observatory, &c. The Haven which is the Mouth of the River *Kiam* is not now frequented: but the City however enjoys a great Trade, the Shops being abundantly furnished with valuable Commodities. The other Cities that give name to its fourteen Parts are *Yanchen*: *Laochen*: *Fumian*: *Huang*: *Tachou*: *Cheusan*: *Chanchen*: and *Sachou*: a hundred other Cities and considerable large Towns are found in this Province.

Xan-tung.

The Province of *Xanung*, or *Xanum*, lies next to that of *Nankin*: and its Sea-coasts are wash'd on the East and North, by the Gulph of *Nanking*: The Air here is somewhat sharp, and the Country is sometimes infected with Locusts; Rain is also often wanting: nevertheless it affords good store of Pulse, Cattel, Fish, Silk, and all sorts of Fruit. In this Province it finds 112 Cities, the chief whereof, as giving Name to its six Parts, are *Tungang*: *Canan*, the Capital of the whole Province: *Yenchu*: *Chichu*: *Laochen*: and *Tenchu*.

Peking.

*Peking*, *Peikie*, or *Peichih*, the chief Province of the Empire at present, in regard of its being the Seat of the Monarch: It is the most North Part of *China* within the Wall, lying at the Bottom of the Gulph or Bay of *Nanking*, otherwise call'd the *Cang-Sea*: Bounded on the West with *Xan*, on the South-East with *Xanung*, and on the South with *Hnan*; the Country is Campaign, but somewhat barren, by reason of the great number of Gravel-Pits, and Sandy Plains: The Air is very healthful, and excessive cold, in Winter: This Province is divided into eight Parts, with 10 chief Cities are *Tunging*: *Quangung*: *Xan*: *Canan*: *Peking*: *Hkien*: *Funging*: and *PEKIM* i. e. *The Northern Royal Palace*, or otherwise call'd *Yonien*, i. e. *A Town Obscure to History*, the most famous Metropolis not only of this Province, but also of the whole Empire of *China*: the Imperial Seat being translated thither from *Nanking*, by the Emperor *Tayungus* A. D. 1404. It is seated in a Plain, near the Foot of the Mountains, in the Latitude 40 Degr. at the distance of 100 Miles to the South from the so much celebrated Wall of *China*, and only 70 from the Gulph of *Nanking*: It is encompass'd with two high and strong Walls, of so great a Breadth, that twelve Horses may run a-breast, on the top of them: These Walls are built of Brick, upon a Foundation of huge Stones, and they are said to exceed in height those of the most considerable Places in *Europe*; a vast Garrison is constantly maintain'd for their Defence; and the Guards as strictly kept in time of Peace as War. There are nine Gates, through which the Chineses continually pass from all Parts. All the Magistrates, Governors, learned Men, and such as are desirous to be advanced to Dignities, or Offices in the State, daily resort to *Peking* in Crouds, and all manner of Rarities, Merchandises, and Treasures of the *Indies* are

transported thither; so that every Thing is cheap, notwithstanding the vast multitude of the Inhabitants. Several the Islands of Royal Ships besides trade of private Persons are continually employ'd in furnishing this Court with all sorts of Provisions necessary for the support of Human Life, or for Pleasure: And the whole Work is perform'd with a great deal of ease, by the means of certain Rivers and Channels, which the Chineses have every where made navigable; but not without vast expences and incredible Toils: Inasmuch, that although this City stands in a barren and desert Country: yet it may well be styl'd *The Cornucopia of China*; which undoubtedly gave rise to an usual Proverb among them, *That as nothing grows in Pekim, so neither is any thing wanting*. We have already in our general Account of *China*, spoken of *Peking* particularly; to which we refer the Reader: There are 120 more Cities of Note in this Province.

Having thus describ'd the fifteen Provinces of *China*, both Inland and Maritim, it is requisite to give an Account of *Leontum* and *Corea*, which likewise depend on the same Empire. *Leontum* is a very large, populous, and fruitful Province, situated on the North side of the innermost recess of the Gulph of *Nanking*, beyond the Wall of *China*, and in the middle between the Province of *Peking*, on the West: and *Corea*, on the East; with Mountains on the North which divide it from *Tartary*. The chief Places and Towns are *Ninguen*; and *Leontung* the Capital; and *Kinchu*, on the Sea-coast.

The Kingdom of *Corea* call'd *Ticentouk* by the Inhabitants, is a Peninsula, or as the new Maps shew us an Island, bounded on the West, by the Province of *Leontung* and the Gulph of *Nanking*; on the East and South, by the Sea of *China*; and on the North, by *Ninke*, a Kingdom of *Tartary*: It is a very fruitful Country, where the Mountains produce Gold and Silver, the Marshes Rice, and the Sea Pearls: The Inhabitants are govern'd by their own Prince, under the Protection of the Empire, and trade only with the Chineses and Japonese. The most remarkable Towns of *Corea*, are *Pingan*; *Kimki*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom; *Hienking*; *Kingzan*, on the Eastern Coast; and *Civesulo* in the South. The Island of *Fumma*, call'd *Schufere* by the Natives is likewise subject to the Dominion of the King of *Corea*, being distant twelve Leagues from thence to the South; its Capital Town is *Moggan*, or *Mozzo*, the Seat of the Governor.

Lastly, it ought to be observ'd, That the Islands of *Formosa*, *Macao* and *Hainan*, describ'd in the next Chapter, are likewise under the Jurisdiction of the Chineses, and that the Kingdoms of *Tonquin* and *Cochinchina*, Parts of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*, are Tributary to them; nay, it is affirm'd by some Authors, That the whole Continent of *India* was sometime subject to that Dominion.

XI.



C H A P. XIII.

The Islands of the Eastern Ocean over against China.

1. WE are now come to the fifth Part of Asia, that is to say, the Islands of the Eastern and Indian Ocean, situated over against China and India, which are innumerable; so that it is only requisite to describe the chief of them. The Islands that lie over against China, are either near that Continent, or very remote from it: Among the former sort, are the Islands of Japan, and those of Formosa, Macao and Haynan, under the Protection of the Chinese; and the Philippine under the Spaniard; but the Isles of Thieves and those of Molucca are seated at a great Distance. The Names of the principal Islands with their chief Towns are seen in this Table.

I. The Islands of the Indian Ocean, near China, are	The Islands of Japan	Niphon, or Japon	Jedo, the Seat of the Emperor of Japon Surunga Meaco Bingo Amanguchi.
		Xicoco	Samichi Ava Tosa Ivo.
		Ximo	Bungo Bugen Nangafachi Satsuma.
	The Islands belonging to China	Formosa	Kilang Tayovan.
		Macao	Macao
		Haynan	Kuncheu Cheu Cangan Yai
	The Philippine Islands, Subject to Spain	Lusonia	Nueva Segovia Lusonia Manilha Caceres.
		Banton	
		Masbat	
		Philippina	Achan
		St. Juan, or St. John's Island	
		Abuyo	
		Matan	
		Cebu	Nombre de Jesu
		Negros-Isle	
		Panayotton	
		Mindora	Mindora
		Capul	
		Paragoya	
		Mindanao	Caldero Dapyto Lameastan Canola Mindanao

II. The Islands of the Indian Ocean, at a great distance from China, are

The Isles of Thieves	Northern	Defart Isle Malabrigo La Inglesa Mano Cheroiha Guana Pagan Artomagan Guiga
	Southern	Cherega Sapan Guaban Matan Volia Bataba Bacim Pulo-Vilan Mariners-Islands Isles of Rocks
The Molucca Isles		Tierra dos Papous Aru
	Banda-Islands	Banda Guligien Gumanapi Nera Pulorin Puloway
		Amboyna. Amboyna Fort Victory Ceram Cumbello
	Gilolo	Cuma Gilolo
	Moratay	
		Ternata Gamma-lamma Malayo
	The Real Molucca's	Tidor Marieco Motir Nassaw-Fort
		Machian Taffaso Tabillota
		Bachian Bachian
		Ouby Xulla Bilato Bouro Terra Alta Ombo Timor Solor Adonara
		Flores Lufatia Batuliar
		Bouton Solayo
		Celebes Macasser Bantachaia Tello Cion Celebes.

The Islands of Japan lie between the 31st and 40th Degrees of Northern Latitude, about 100 Leagues East from China; are bounded on the West, by the Sea of China, separating them from China and Corea; on the North, by the Eastern Ocean, and the Strait of Sangaar, by which they are cut off from the Land of Fesso; and on the East and South, in like manner, by the Levantine Ocean: They are beset every where



with Mountains; nevertheless produce all Things that are necessary for the support of Human Life, and more particularly the whitest sort of Rice: There is also good store of Gold, Silver, and other kinds of Metals, besides precious Stones, Pearls of the largest Size, and Coral. The Towns of these Islands are destitute of Walls, and the Buildings are generally made of Timber: so that great Fires frequently happen among them. The Japonese are reckon'd ingenious in Handicraft, skill in Dealing, temperate, valiant and trusty, but at the same time addicted to Dissimulation and Cruelty, and are apt to lay violent Hands upon themselves: they are gross Idolaters, worshipping especially the Sun: In Writing they make use of the Chinese Characters, and are thought to be originally transplanted from that Nation: These Islands are subject to one Emperor, whose Power is most absolute, and among all the Nations of Circumdoon, the Hollanders only have Liberty to trade in his Dominions; the Portugueses that resided there having been utterly destroy'd by the Inhabitants, about fourscore Years ago, when they attempted to introduce Christianity: But the Dutch by despising the Pictures and Images of the Virgin Mary, and other Figures of the Portugueses; and as some say, delivering up their very Bibles to the Flames, persuaded the Inhabitants, they were not Christians, and prevail'd upon them to permit them to Trade with us.

III. Amongst the Islands of Japan, which are very numerous, there are more especially remarkable for their largeness, *viz.* *Nippon*, *Xicoco* and *Ximo*. *Nippon*, otherwise call'd *Proper Japan*; is by much the largest, being four times as big as *Xicoco* and *Ximo* taken together, and extends it self above two hundred Miles from South-West to North-East: its greatest Breadth contains above seventy Miles, its least Breadth about thirty, and its Compass takes up almost six hundred: The Coasts are full of Bays and Harbours all round. And in the Island is to be seen a Volcano like Mount *Etna*, and three Rivulets of Sulphur. The Island of Japan is at present divided into five Parts, which in passing from West to East, appear in the following Order, and bear these Names, (according to M. Tavernier) *viz.* *Famasio* or *Famafio*, *Fakon* or *Fakongo*, *Feisegen*, *Quano* and *Omo*: These Parts are again subdivided into 34 or 35 distinct Kingdoms, or Provinces. The Metropolis of *Nippon* is *Fedo*, a very populous City, three Miles long, and two broad, having been for 1000 Years, the Royal Seat of the Emperor of Japan. It is most especially famous for the most richly imperial Palace cover'd on all sides with Gold, and for the magnificent Apartments of the Nobility, and the sumptuous Houses of the Citizens are not at all comparable: This City was burnt down in the Year 1657. The other Towns of *Nippon* are *Somaga* affording a Place of Residence to the Emperor's Son, from the nineteenth Year of his Age, till he takes Possession of the Throne. *Mura*, formerly the Capital of *Nippon*, and of the whole Empire, but at present the Seat of the High-Preist of the Japonese call'd *Dajon*, or *Dam*, to whom the People, and even the Emperor himself, shew an extreme Veneration: It is a very large and well frequented Mart-Town, adorn'd with a fine Imperial Pa-

lace, a most strong Castle and a most beautiful Imperial Garden: this City is so large that 'tis reported to contain 92000 Houses, but 'tis not to be suppos'd they are like ours, being here and all over the Indies low Hurts of one Story only. *Saccai*, on the South Coast, a stately City with a strong Castle. *Osacca*, the Imperial City not far from it. *Sajoja*, extoll'd in the Dutch Embassy, as a most delightful Place. *Piongo*: *Amanguchi*: *Omuuri*: And *Quano* are other Cities of Note in this Island.

The second Island of Japan of good Note, but the least in Extent is *Xicoco*, otherwise call'd *Xikok*, *Tonta* and *Tukoefy*, situated to the South of the Western Part of *Nippon*, and to the East of *Ximo*, at no great Distance from both; its Length taking up 45 Miles, its Breadth 15, and its Compass 120: It comprehends four Kingdoms, or Provinces, and its chief Towns are *Samichi* or *Samu-pu*; *Aza* or *Ana*; *Tja* or *Tonja*; and *Izo* or *Iho*.

The third principal Island of Japan, but the second in Largeness, is *Ximo*, call'd also *Bungo*, *Isle*. *Sayok* and *Litoko*; lying out farther towards the West and South for the space of 60 Miles in Length, almost thirty in Breadth, and 100 in Compass. Nine Kingdoms are attributed to this Island, and its most remarkable Towns are *Bungo*, *Bugen*, *Nangajasi* built by the Portugueses, but now possess'd by the Dutch, and is their chief Factory for the Japan Trade. *Congoxuma* the place where the Portugueses first Landed.

After the Islands of Japan, follow those of *Formosa*, *Macao* and *Hainan*, which lie nearer China, and are subject to that Empire. The Island of *Formosa* is divided by the Tropick of Cancer, and situated over against the Province of China nam'd *Fokien*; part of which it sometime constituted, at the distance of about 34 Leagues from the Continent: It is suppos'd in its largest Extent to take up 200 Miles in Length from North to South, but in Breadth not proportionate: The Air of this Island is healthful, and the Country is partly hilly and partly Champain, abounding with all sorts of Necessaries for Life, choice Fruits, Rice, Venison and Fish; as also Sugar, Cinamon, Ginger and Coco-Nuts. And from its delightful State, the Name of *Formosa*, or *Beautiful*, was impos'd on it by the Spaniards, who were the first of the Europeans that discover'd it: The Spaniards were expell'd by the *English*, who gave Place to the Hollanders, and these last were dispossest, not without a great Slaughter, by *Koxenga* a Chinese Pirate: It is now inhabited by a great number of Chinese, and its most considerable Places are, *Kilang*, or *Kelang*, a Fort erected by the Spaniards, on a Hill near the Northern Coasts: And *Tayozan* a well fortified Town, built by the *English*, on the Western Coasts, over against a little Island, lying very near it, of the same Name, in which the Hollanders founded the Castle of *Zeland*.

*Macao* is a small Island in the Bay of *Quamung*, a Province of China, at a little distance from it; in which is a Town bearing the same Name, heretofore the most famous and wealthy Mart of the Portugueses, and granted to them by the Chinese; but its Reputation is now a great deal less: The Emperor of China (as we are inform'd by M. *Baudrand*) took this Town by Storm, A. D. 1688, and



and still retains it in his Possession: It is observable. That the Sunday with the Portuguese of this Town is the Saturday with the Spaniards living in the *Philippine* Islands, and the Sunday of the latter, is the Monday of the former, and so forward throughout all the Days of the Week; although there is scarce any difference in the Longitude of those Places: But these Portuguese coming from *Europe*, and passing on Eastward; and the other passing from *America* Westward; between them both they had encompass'd the Globe, in doing which, as we have said in our Introduction; a Day will be lost in Computation.

Haynan Isle. *Haynan*, otherwise call'd *Aynan* and *Ainam*, is a large Island, lying in like manner over against *Quantung*, and farther towards the South-West than *Macao*: Its Capital Towns are, *Kunchen*, *Chen*, *Cangan* and *Tai*.

v. The *Philippine* Islands took their Name from Philip II. King of *Spain*, under whose Reign they were taken Possession of by the Spaniards A. D. 1541, and 1546; although they were discover'd before in 1520, by the famous *Ferdinand Magallans*, who was kill'd in one of them nam'd *Cebu*: They are otherwise call'd, The *Manilla's* and the Islands of *Lucon*, from the largest and principal Island; being seated in the *Archipelago* of *St. Lazarus*, in the middle between *China* on the North, and the *Molucca* Isles on the South, between the fifth and nineteenth Degrees of Northern Latitude: The heat of the Air is here moderated by the length of the Nights, and the frequent Breezes of Wind: The Soil is very rich, producing good store of Corn, Rice, excellent Grapes, Saffron, Sugar, Honey, Wax, Ginger, Pepper, Cinnamon, and other sorts of Spice, besides Gold, Iron and Steel; and affording Pasture to numerous Herds of wild Beasts and tame Cattel: The Sea likewise yields abundance of Fish and Pearls: The Inhabitants drive a great Trade with those of *China* and *New Spain*, and were all formerly subject to the Spaniards, from whom *Paragoia*, *Mindanao*, and other adjacent lesser Isles revolted a few Years agoe: However they still retain under their Dominion, *Luconia*, *Tandaya*, *Cebu*, *Mindora*, and many others of lesser Note, to the number of about forty.

VI. The *Philippine* Islands are almost innumerable, and of so vast a number, that 1000 may be reckon'd up of some Note; But it is sufficient only to give a particular Description of such as are chiefly remarkable: Among these, the first that presents it self to our View, is *Lusonia*, or *Luconia*, call'd *Lucon*, or *Manille* by the French; the largest, most Northern, and principal Island of the *Philippines*; the noted Towns of which are, *La Nueva Segovia* or *Cagajon*, in the Northern Tract: *Lusonia* or *Lucon*, generally plac'd in the Maps on the Western Shore; which some Geographers take to be the same with *Manilka*, and others suspend their Judgments as to that matter, because no mention is made of it, in the modern Relations of Voyages: *Manila*, *Manilla* or *Manilba*, the Metropolis of *Manilla*, or *Lusonia*, and of all the other *Philippine* Islands, that are subject to the Dominion of the Spaniards, seated in the middle of the Island, on the innermost recess of the Bay of the same Name, or *La Bahia de cavita*, and on the Mouth of the River *Arand*,

a considerable Mart Town built by the Spaniards, affording a Seat to the Governor and Council of State, as also to an Arch-bishop; and fenced with a Castle, and a commodious Haven at *Cavite*, two Leagues distant from the City: The Bay on which *Manilba* stands is 40 Leagues in Compass, has a convenience for building Gallions, and is of difficult Entrance; all which has made this City a famous Mart and Magazine for the richest Commodities, but it is at present somewhat declin'd. And *Caceres*, or *Caceres de Camarinba* situated more towards the South-West, than any of the Towns but now mention'd.

The lesser *Philippine* Islands are, *Banton*; *Masbat* Banton. Masbat. or *Masbate*; *Philippina*, discover'd first of all the rest, Philippina. by the Spaniards, and otherwise call'd *Tandaya*, being separated from the Southern Coasts of *Manilba*, by the Straight of the same Name, and reputed one of the most fruitful Islands of these Parts; in which are, the Town of *Achan*, or *Acham*, and *Il Cabo del Spirito Santo*, i. e. *The Promontory of the Holy Ghost*, on the Northern Shore: The Island *St. Juan* or of *St. John*, between which and *Tandaya*, is *The Passage of St. Clara*: *Abuyo*: St. John's Isle. *Matan*: *Cebu*, otherwise call'd *Sebu* and *Los Pintados*, where that noble Portuguese and most famous Navigator *Ferdinand Magellanus* dy'd a violent Death, after having discover'd and pass'd through the Straights in the Southern Sea, which bear his Name; and where the Town of *Nombre de Jesu*, i. e. *The Name of Jesus*, or *Cebu*, is situated on the Eastern Coast, with a fine Harbour. The Isle of *Negros*, *Negoas*, or *Negoa*; *Panayoton*; *Mindora*, on the South of *Manilba*, from Negros Isle. which it is separated by a Straight of the same Name, *Il Srecho de Mindora*, 30 Italian Miles broad; with a Town likewise nam'd *Mindora*; Panayoton. Mindora. on the Northern Coast, over against *Manilba*, having the Advantage of a spacious Harbour. *Capul*: *Paragoia*, otherwise call'd *Paragoa*, *Pu-loam*, and *Calamianes*, the most Western of the Capul. Paragoia. *Philippine* Islands, extending it self in the middle between *Capul* and *Borneo*, for a considerable Length, but its Breadth is a great deal less; It is somewhat barren, and not well supply'd with Inhabitants. *Mindanao*, the most Southern of these Islands, the Towns of which are, *Canola*, Mindanao. *Caldero*, *Dapito*, *Lomeatan* and *Mindando*, or *Tabouc* (according to some Authors) the Capital; a large and well fortify'd Place. Among these *Philippine* Islands, the first and the two last exceed the rest in largeness, and encompass the rest of that great number of smaller Islands.

Having thus taken a View of the Islands of VII. the Indian Ocean near *China*, we proceed to *The Isles of Thieves*, and the *Molucca's*, situated at a great Distance from that Continent. The former Thieves. are call'd by the Spaniards *Las Islas de los Ladrones*, i. e. *The Isles of Robbers*, from the disposition of the Inhabitants; as also frequently *Las Islas de las Velas*, which Name was impos'd on it by *Magellanus*, and was taken from the Veils that were in use among them; sometimes *Las Islas de la Sapan*; and of late *Las Islas de Maria Anna*; in honour of *Mary Ann* of *Austria* Queen of *Spain*. These Islands lying in the *Archipelago* of *St. Lazarus*, where the Indian Sea is intermix'd with the *Pacifick*, extend themselves from North to South, between the 7th and 22d Degrees of Northern



Northern Latitude, and about 20 Degr. Westward from the *Philippines*: they were discover'd in the last Age by the Spaniards, as they sail'd to the *Philippine* Isles, who immediately began to inhabit them under the Protection of the said Queen, and united some of them to their Dominions.

The largest and most considerable of these Islands, are *Dieria*, *Malabris*, or *Malabris*, *La Inglesa*, *Mano*, *Cherofka*, *Guana*, *Pagan*, *Arimagan* and *Guiga*: all situated towards the North, as the following Iye on the South, viz. *Chergoa*, *Serom*, *Gulan*, *Musan*, *Volia*, or *Volit*, *Baaba* and *Bazim*; to which some add *Pulo Vilon*, *Las Ilas des Molucces*, i. e. *The Mariners Islands*, and *Las Ilas des Arcetes*, i. e. *The Islands of Rocks*; which being nearer the *Philippine*, are distinguish'd by others from the Isles of Thieves.

VIII. From the Islands of Robbers, or Thieves, we pass to those of *Molucca*, or *Molucca*, call'd *Molucces* by the Natives, i. e. *The Head of a Master of great Importance*; which if taken at large, have their Situation in the *Archipelago* that bears their Name, between the *Philippine* Islands, on the North; those of *Sunda*, on the West; the vast Continent of *New Holland*, on the South, the Sea-coasts of which were only view'd by the Hollanders, who were ignorant how far it might extend; and *New Guinea*, on the East, according to *M. Sanson*, between the third Degree of Northern Latitude, and the eleventh of Southern. These Islands are said to be less fruitful than the *Philippine*, and the Air is more intensely hot: They are very numerous, but for the most Part of a small Extent and Compass. *Gilolo* is one of the largest. And *Ambona* has been most known to us, on account of the Cruelty the Dutch practis'd there upon the English, when they dispos'd of them of it.

IX. Among those that lie out furthest towards the East, a very large Country first appears, commonly call'd by the Spaniards *Tierra de Papous*, i. e. *The Land of Negroes*, on the South of the Equinoctial Line, from which its most Northern Part is not far distant: *M. Sanson* takes it for an Island, separated by a Strait from the Eastern Part of *New Guinea*; but in the Dutch Maps, the Land of *Papous* and *New Guinea* is the same Country, on which the latter Name was impos'd by *Jam. Le Maire*; bordering on the South, upon *Cornelia*, or *Cornier-Land*, which lies between it and *New Holland*: The Sea-coasts of this Country were discover'd by the Hollanders, but the Inland Parts are as yet unknown.

X. Over against the Southern Coasts of *New Guinea*, we meet with the Island of *Amboyna*, and further towards the West, those of *Banda*, of a small Compass, but abounding with Nutmegs and Mace: all under the Jurisdiction of the Hollanders. The largest and most fruitful of these Islands is *Banda*, which is fenc'd with several Forts built by the Hollanders, and surrounded with the lesser Islands, viz. those of *Gulien*, *Gaman*, *Nra*, *Pulorin*, *Pulorin*, &c. somewhat farther towards the West, lies the little Island of

*Ambon*, or *Ambon*, which is likewise subject to the Hollanders, and brings forth good store of Cloves, Oranges, Lemmons, and other sorts of Fruits peculiar to the Climate of *India*, with a Town of the same Name; and the Castle of

*Victory*, where the English were most inhumanly treated, which Fort has lately suffer'd much damage by the Inundation of the Sea. Not far from *Ambona*, is *Ceram*, a large and somewhat long Island, abounding with Spice, and govern'd by a King, who is an Ally to the Hollanders; in which is the Town of *Cumbello*. The Island of *Gilolo* is situated under the Equinoctial Line; the Lesser Part of it extending it self from thence towards the South, and the greater towards the North: This Island is full of Bays, and destitute of Spice; but there is good store of Rice, and the Air is excessive hot; The chief Places are *Cama* and *Gilolo* the Capital Town, seated on the Western Shore. Over against the Northern Coasts of *Gilolo*, towards the East, lies the Island of *Morotay*, or *Morotay*, and over against the Western, appear the real or small *Molucca* Isles, under the Dominion of the Hollanders, renowned for the Product of Spice, more especially Cloves, whose Woods of which have been cut down by the Dutch to prevent an over-growth. Here are to be seen the *Manucodians*, or *Manucodians*, i. e. *Gods Birds*, commonly call'd Birds of Paradise, and falsely suppos'd to want Feet; in regard that the Natives take them away, with the Entrails, to keep their Wings and Feathers from stinking, with which they make themselves very fine. These Islands being five in number, are all near the Equinoctial Line, and in passing from North to South, they present themselves to our View, in the following Order, viz. *Ternata*, in which are the Towns of *Gammalam* and *Malayo*, the Royal Seat of the King of *Ternata*, to whom a considerable Part of *Gilolo* is likewise subject, with *Motir* and *Machian*, and whose Dominions were sometime of a much larger Extent. *Tidor*, noted for the Fort of *Maricco*. *Motir*, or *Montir*, which others call *Timor*, with the Citadel of *Nassau*. *Machian*, fenc'd with the Castles of *Taffas* and *Tabillota*. And *Bachian*, with a Town of the same Name.

After having view'd the *Molucca* Islands that are situated towards the East, we come to the more Western, the chief of which are, *Ouby*, *Xulla*, *Bilato*, *Bouro*, *Terra-alta*, or *Tiralia*, *Ombo*, *Timor*, of a larger extent than the former, *Solor*, or *Salar*, with the Town of *Alonare*. *Flores*, in which are those of *Lafania*, or *La Sataia* (according to the French Dialect) and *Bacalar*; *Buron*, or *Bacen*. *Slayo*, or *Solayer*, separated from the Island of *Celebes* by the Strait of *Macassar*. *Celebes* often call'd *Macassar*, by the Europeans, the largest of the *Molucca* Isles, next to *Tierra de Papous*, and the most Western, lying in the middle, between the lesser *Moluccas*, or *Gilolo* and *Ceram*, on the East, and *Borneo*, on the West, in the *Archipelago* of *Celebes*; the Equinoctial Line passing through its Northern Part: The Soil is extremely fruitful, and affording great plenty of Spice, and much Rice: The Inhabitants, who are not of so tawny a Complexion as the rest of the Islanders, were heretofore Cannibals, or Man-eaters, and go naked, only covering their privy Parts: Six Kingdoms are contain'd (according to several Authors) in this Island, although others only take notice of the two principal, viz. *Celebes* and *Macassar*: The most remarkable Towns are, *Macassar*, the Capital, seated in the Southern Part of the Island,



to which, as also to the neighbouring Strait, it gives Name, and is a famous Mart, with a fine Harbour, much frequented by the English and Hollanders: Other Towns are *Bantachaia*;

*Tello*; *Cion*, *Ciom*, or *Ciam*; and *Celebes*, or *Celebus*, by others, taken for the Metropolis of this Island, and situated on the Western Coast just under the Line.

## CHAP. XIV.

### The Islands of the Indian Ocean over against Siam, and the Indian Coasts.



**A**FTER having describ'd the principal Islands of the Indian Ocean, over against China, both the nearer and those that are more remote; we proceed to give an Account of the rest of the Isles of the same Ocean, situated over against the Continent of India, and may be

conveniently divided into two Ranks; in regard that they lye, either over against the Peninsula of India, beyond Ganges, or opposite to the other Peninsula, on the higher side of that River: The Names and chief Towns whereof are seen in this Table.

The



# The Islands of the Indian Ocean.

The Islands of the Indian Ocean, over against India, beyond the River Ganges, are

Under the Equinoctial Line	Borneo	Borneo Malano Puchavaraon Sambas Hormata Landa Succadano Lave Bendarmassin.
		Achem Pelir Ticon Pacem G to Ari Bancalis Camper Souton Baras Priaman Menancabo Judapera Sallebor Dampin Lumbe Baros Palimban
	Sumatra	
To the South of the Equator	Banca	Banca
	Madura	Arisbay Madura
	Cumbava Lomboc Baly	Genapi Cumbava
	Java	Balambuan Materan Jortan Sidayo Tuban Japara Saraboy Charabon Batavia, the Seat of the Dutch Governor Bantam Sura Palimban
On the North of the Equator	Isle of Nallaw Isle of good Fortune Isle of Hogs Isle of Coco's	
Ceylon	Maritum	Batical Trinquemale Infanapatan Chilao Negombo Colombo Galo Town and Promontory
	Inland	Cande Nellemby-neur Allout-neur Badoula Digligy-neur
Manar Calpatin	On the South of the Equator	Addou And Pove Molucque Souadou
	Under the Equator	Adoumatis
The Maldives	On the North of the Equator	Colloumadoux Nillandoux Moulucque Poulifdou Male-Atollon with the Isle of Male Ariatollon Malos Madou Padypala Milladou Madoue Tillad, or Matis.

The Islands of the Peninsula of India, beyond the Ganges, are more Eastern, and commonly call'd *The Isles of Sunda*, or *Sunda*; deriving their Name from the Strait of Sunda, or from the Harbour of Bantam, so term'd. The most eminent of these Islands, are Borneo, Java and Sumatra, to which several others are added of lesser Note: They are situated partly under the Equinoctial Line, and partly extend themselves beyond it, either towards the North or South.

The Island of Borneo lies in the middle; between that of Celebes, on the East; Java, on the South; Sumatra and Malacca, on the West; and Paragoia, one of the Philippines, on the North; reaching from 7 and half Degree of Northern Latitude, to the fourth of Southern: Its Figure is almost round, and its Compass very wide; although the Opinions of Authors are different as to the latter: However the least Compass that is attributed to it consists of 250 Leagues, and it is generally reputed the largest of all the Islands of Asia: It produces most admirable Diamonds, Bezoar-Stones, the best Camphire of all that is found throughout the whole Continent of India, Rice, and Pepper with other sorts of Spice, Cotton, Honey and Wax; and is beset with Woods and fine Rivers; more especially, towards the West and South, the chief of which is Succadano, abounding with Diamonds: So that it may well be reckon'd, among the most fruitful Islands of the Indian Ocean; but the Air is not very healthful, by reason of the marshy Grounds. The Sea-coasts are possess'd by the Hollanders, and the Metropolis bears the same Name of Borneo, seated in the Fens and on the shore of a little Bay, towards the Northern Part of the Island; being a large, neat and famous Mart-Town and a Royal Seat, with an excellent Harbour: The other considerable Towns which stand on the Western and Southern Coasts (for the Eastern, and more especially the Inland Tracts of this Island are almost unknown to the Europeans) are Malano, Puchavaraon, Sambas, Hormata, Landa, near which are Diamonds of the highest value; Succadano, Lave, and Bendarmassin, not far from the Mouth of the River Succadano.

From Borneo, we pass to Sumatra, the Situation of which is more Western, likewise under the equinoctial Line, in the middle, between Malacca, on the East, and Java, on the South; being separated from the former, by the Strait of Malacca, and from the latter, by that of Sunda: It lies very near, within the sixth Degree, both of Northern and Southern Latitude; but its Extent from West to East is a great deal less: It yields great store of Spice, as also, the best sort of Pepper, Rice, Honey, Wax, Silk, Cotton, Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranates and Figs; and abounds with Mountains, excellent Metals, Springs, Rivers and Woods; affording Pasture to numerous Herds of Stags, Elephants, Rhinoceros, Tigers, Leopards and Lions. In the middle of the Island is a Burning Mountain, which sometimes throws out Stones; the Air is also extremely hot and does not prove healthful to the Europeans: However, the Hollanders possess the Sea-coasts and some Mines of good Metal. Sumatra, was heretofore divided into many Kingdoms; so that some Authors reckon seven of the principal, and others only



only five, viz. those of *Achem*, or *Achin*, *Menancabo*, *Camper*, *Jambe* and *Palimban*. The most remarkable Towns of this Island, are *Achem*, the Metropolis of a Kingdom of the same Name, and of the whole Island, a large and renowned Mart-Town with a very convenient Harbour, where the English have a Factory: It is seated on the Northern Coasts, as also are *Pedir* and *Pacem*, the Capital Towns of two Kingdoms that bear the same Name, and which (according to M. *Sanfon*) are now under the Dominion of the King of *Achem*. On the Straight of *Malacca* appear *Goro*, or *Gore*; *Aru*; *Bancalis*; and *Camper*, or *Camfer*. On the Western Coasts, are *Soufon*; *Baras*, or *Baros*; *Priaman*; *Menancabo*; *Judapera*, or *Inda-poura*; *Sallebor*, or *Sillebar*. On the Straight of *Sonda*, *Dampin*. And on the North-East Coasts, *Jambe*, affording great plenty of Pepper. *Baros* and *Palimban*, or *Palimbam*.

V. After having taken a View of *Borneo* and *Sumatra*, the Islands of *Sunda* under the Equinoctial Line, we proceed to the rest that lye at a distance from it, towards the South. Among these are

**Banca Isle.** *Banca*, with a Town of the same Name, over against *Palimban* in *Sumatra*. **Madura.** *Madura*, on the North of the Eastern Part of *Java*, in which are the Towns of *Arasbay* and *Madura*. On the East of the same *Java*, we meet with *Cumbava*, otherwise call'd *The lesser Java* by *Buno*, containing the Towns of *Genapi*, or *Gunapa*; and *Cumbava*. **Lomboc.** *Lomboc*. And **Baly.** *Baly*.

**Java.** The Island of *Java*, or the greater *Java*, far surpasses these in every respect, and is situated between the sixth and ninth Degrees of Southern Latitude, in the middle, between the Straight of *Balambuan*, on the East, and that of *Sunda*, on the West; so that the latter separates it from *Sumatra*, and the other from *Baly*: its Longitude between these two Straights, amounting almost to eleven Degrees. The Air of this Island is prejudicial to Strangers upon their first Arrival, and it is infested with venomous Gnats, that are very troublesome, as also with huge and most pestilent Snakes: But there are Oysters of an incredible size, even sometimes to the Weight of three hundred Pounds, Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds of the highest value, and Mountains enrich'd with Gold, Silver and Copper: Besides an admirable variety of Springs, Rivers, Woods, Valleys, Champain Fields, and most verdant Pastures for Cattel, with all sorts of Fruits, Sugar, excellent Pepper, and Rice, which the Natives generally eat instead of Bread. *Java*, part of which is under the Dominion of the States of *Holland*, is divided by M. *Sanfon*, into nine Kingdoms, although others only make mention of the two principal, viz. *Materan* and *Bantam*.

The chief Towns of *Java*, are *Balambuan*, *Balambuan*, or *Palambuan*, on the Eastern shore, which communicates its Name to the adjacent Straight: On the Southern Coasts, *Materan*, or *Mataran*, a large Town, which some will have to be the Capital, not only of the Kingdom of *Mataran*, but also of the whole Island, which was heretofore subject to its King, who is even at this Day, styl'd *The Emperor of Java*. On the Northern Coasts, *Jortan*; *Sidayo*; *Tuban*; *Japara*; *Saraboy*; *Charabon*; and *Jacatra*; where the Hollanders after having seiz'd and demolish'd it, built *Batavia*, on the same spot of Ground: but it is still frequently call'd *Jacatra*, by the *Javans*

Part 2

and Foreigners; and is a most flourishing Colony of the States of the United Provinces, founded A. D. 1619. It is a large, neat, populous and well fortify'd City, more especially famous for its admirable Castle, nam'd *Jacatra*, and flank'd with several Bulwarks that take their Names from precious Stones: This renowned Mart-Town, is the Seat of the Governor of the Dutch East India Company, who keeps a most magnificent and almost Royal Court, as also of the Indian Senate: It was twice in vain besieg'd by the King of *Mataran*, and afterwards by the King of *Bantam* in 1659: and is distant 18 Leagues from *Bantam* to the East, and about 60 from *Materan* to the North-West.

The other remarkable Places of this Island, **Bantam.** are *Bantam*, the Metropolis of a Kingdom of the same Name (seated on the Foot of a Hill, and on the Straight of *Sunda*) where the King keeps his Court; being a most noble Mart-Town with a fine Harbour call'd *Sunda*, to which Merchants resort from all the Parts of *India*, as also from *England*, *Portugal* and *Holland*; *Sura*, on the same Straight of *Sunda*: And *Palimban*, or *Palimbam*, on the Western Coasts. Besides the above mention'd Islands, some others of a much lesser Compass are likewise reckon'd among those of *Sunda*, particularly, *The Isle of Nassaw*; *Goed Fortuyns Eylandt*, i. e. *The Isle of good Fortune*; *La Ilha dos Ille.* *Porcos*, i. e. *The Isle of Hoggs*, in *Dutch Verkens-The Isle Eyland*, and *Cocos Eylanden*, i. e. *The Isle of Coco's*, of good situated to the North of the Equinoctial Line; *Fortune.* with some others of less Note. *The Isles of Hoggs, and of Coco's.*

From the Islands in the Indian Ocean, over against the Peninsula of *India* beyond *Ganges*, we pass over to those that are opposite to the other Peninsula of *India* on the hither side of the same River; being the most Western of all. Among these, the most remarkable are *Ceylon* and the *Maldives*, the former lying out towards the East, from *Cape Comori*, the most Southern Promontory of this Peninsula, and the others towards the West. *VI. The Islands of India within Ganges.*

The Island of *Ceylon*, so call'd by the English and Hollanders, as also *Ceylan* by the French, and *Tenarisin*, by the Indians, i. e. *The Land of Delights*, suppos'd to be the *Taprobana* of the Ancients, is separated from the Coasts of *Pesqueria* and *Coromandel*, by the Straight of *Chilao*, or *Manar*, lying between the sixth and tenth Degree of Northern Latitude: Its Extent from West to East is less, and its Figure resembles that of a Pearl or Pear, being sharp-pointed in the Northern Part. This Island abounds with Rice and the best Cinnamon, the most fragrant smell of which is perceiv'd at Sea, by those that come near the Coasts; neither is there any want of Pepper, Ginger, Cardamum, Sugar and Tobacco: The Soil likewise brings forth all sorts of Fruits, particularly, Figgs, Grapes, Pomegranates, Oranges, Lemmons and Citrons; and there are good store of Birds, with numerous Herds of Cattel and wild Beasts; among which the Elephants are more especially remarkable, as being the most generous and docible of all throughout the whole Continent of *Asia*; insomuch that (if credit may be given to the Report) they are wont to do obedience, at first sight, to the Inhabitants of *Cochin*, *Pegu*, *China*, and others, by bowing down their Trunks. The Straight of *Manar* and the Rivers yield abundance of Pearls and precious Stones, and it is said to be the only Place, besides the King-



Kindred of Rags, among the Levantine Countries, that produce several kinds of Serpents of a prodigious Size, are all bred up in the Sea and on the Land.

VIII. Almost all the Maritime Tracts are in the possession of the Hollanders, and the most considerable Places and Towns, On the East, are *Batticaloa* or *Battala*, and *Trinquema*, otherwise call'd *Trinquema* and *Trinquema*: On the North, *Jarapana* or *Jarapana*: On the West *Galle*, which imposes its Name on the neighbouring Straights, and stands on a River likewise of the same Name: *Negombo* or *Colombo*, the chief Town of all the Sea-coasts, and the Seat of the Supreme Governor: Little, on the South, *Galle*, *Galle* or *Punto Galle*, a noted Town, with an excellent Harbour, near which is the Promontory, or Cape of *Punto Galle*.

IX. The Inland Parts of *Ceylon* are almost unknown to the Europeans, nay, even to the Hollanders themselves, who inhabit the Coasts: Neither is it any Wonder, in regard that the whole Island is every where beset with very steep, barren and dreadful Mountains, that can not be pass'd but where the Paths are beaten, which indeed are many in number, but so narrow, that only one Person at a time can go on them; and certain Officers, appointed by publick Authority, always keep Watch on the Borders of these Passages, will suffer none to enter, or go forth, without leave: However, there is extant a large Historical Description of this Country, written by *Robert Knox*, an English Captain sometime in the Service of the East-India Company, who lived there a Captive for twenty one Years, and a half, yet so as during the last Years, he had an Opportunity of viewing all the Provinces, and taking a particular Account of every Thing remarkable in those Parts; till at last, he found means to make his Escape, after a wonderful manner, on the 15th. of October 1679. According to his Information, the Inland Country abounds with Hills, Springs and Rivers full of Fish: but such as are rocky and unfit for Navigation: The most eminent of these is *Mavelagonga*, which taking its Rise from *Adam's Mountain*, flows towards the North, and having water'd a very large Tract of *Ceylon*, discharges it self into the Ocean, near the Town of *Trinquema*: There are also vast Woods, which serve both for the Boundaries and Ramparts of the several Provinces: The Valleys are for the most part fertile, and enrich'd with abundance of Springs of an admirable Clearness.

The innermost Tracts of this Island are very populous, and these that lie near the Sea-coasts are much less inhabited: In the former, to the East of the Town of *Colombo*, stands the highest Mountain of *Ceylon*, and even (as some affirm) of the whole Continent of *India*, call'd *Humallel*, by the Inhabitants, and *Pico de Adam*, or *Adam's Mountain*, by the Portugueses and the rest of the Europeans: It is extremely steep and of a Conick Figure, having on the top, a plain smooth Stone, on which is imprinted a large Mark of an Humane Foot; The Natives believe this to be the Footstep of the first Parent, who was taken up from thence into Heaven, and upon that account they adore it, with a wonderful Superstition: and to that purpose, in the beginning of the

Year, the Men, Women, Boys and Girls, notwithstanding so difficult a passage, climb up to the top of it, out of a Principle of Religion. The Air of the inner Tracts is different, so that the Northern Part, by reason of the Corruption and Scarcity of the Waters, is less healthful and fertile: but the rest are otherwise dispos'd by their natural Temperature: When the West-winds blow, it rains in the Western Part of the Island, and the Seeds are committed to the Ground; whilst at the same time, the middle Part, towards the East, enjoys most serene and hot Weather, and the Inhabitants are employ'd in looking after their Harvest: It happens contrariwise in both Quarters, when the East-winds blow in the Eastern Part: This Island was sometime divided into four Kingdoms, but the best Part of it is now under the Dominion of *Conde Uda*, a Prince whose Government is arbitrary, and to whom his Subjects generally give Divine Honours.

X. The inner Country of *Ceylon* is divided into the greater and lesser Parts, the former of which Captain *Knox* calls Provinces, and the others Counties; because they resemble the Counties, or Shires of *England*, but are not like them with respect to the Largeness of their Extent: He informs us, That the Province of *Noure Calava* is situated towards the North, and includes five Counties; as also the Province of *Hotcourly*, comprehending seven Counties: On the East, he places the Province of *Mantaly*, subdivided into three Counties: Towards the same Quarter, appear *Tammamquod*, *Bimana*, *Vellat*, and *Pannoa*, all distinct Counties, with the Province of *Ourtab*, to which he attributes three Counties: In the middle, are the Counties of *Wallaponahoy*, *Ponziro*, *Goddaponahoy*, *Hevsihattay*, *Cotenul*, *Horsejer*, and *Tanponahoy*; as also, *Oulanour* and *Tattaron* the chief of all the Counties of the Inland Country of *Ceylon*: On the West lye *Oudipellat*, *Dolusbang* and *Hotteracourly*, in which four Counties are compris'd; with *Portaloan* and *Tamcourly*, that comprehends three Counties, and Part of which is subject to the Jurisdiction of the Hollanders: All these Provinces and Counties, (except these six, viz. *Noure Calava*, *Hotcourly*, *Tammamquod*, *Vellat*, *Pannoa* and *Hotteracourly*) lye upon fruitful and well water'd Hills, and are express'd by the common Name of *Conde Uda*, i. e. *On the tops of the Mountains*; which is also the Royal Title.

XI. The same Author reckons up five Capital Towns, besides a great number that are ruin'd, and several Villages, within the Boundaries of the inner *Ceylon*, viz. *Cande* or *Candy*, the Metropolis of the whole Island, built in the Heart of it, on the River *Mavelagonga*; formerly the Royal Seat of the King of *Candea*, after whose departure it fell much to decay: *Nellembyneur*, a Town situated more towards the South, to which that Prince translated the Royal Court from *Cande*: *Alloutneur*, seated a great way below *Cande* and divided into two Parts, by the River *Mavelagonga*: *Badoula*, seated at the farthest distance from *Cande*, to the East, and at a much less from *Digligyneur*, a Town not very remote from the said River, which was chosen for the Royal Seat after *Nellembyneur*.

XII. Over against the Western Coasts of *Ceylon*, appears the little Island of *Manar* or *Manaar*, ten Miles off.



Miles long, and four broad; being in the Possession of the Hollanders: It has impos'd its Name on the Strait, and is famous for the rich Pearl-fishing on its Southern Shore. The Island of *Calpatin* lies more towards the South, and is of a larger Extent:

XIII. The *Maldiv* Islands are situated on the West of the Peninsula of *India* within *Ganges*, in the *Archipelago*, that takes its Name from thence; almost in a straight Line, within the eighth Degree of Northern Latitude, and the third of Southern, but they do not extend themselves from East to West so much as for the space of one Degree; they are all of a small Compass, but very numerous, amounting to about 1000 or 1100, and abound with Indian Nuts call'd *Coco's*: Neither are the best sorts of Fruits wanting, particularly, Oranges, Lemmons, and Pomegranates, besides, the finest Tortoise-shell and black Coral. These Islands are divided into thirteen or fourteen Parts call'd *Atollons*, and are all subject to the Dominion of one King: E-

very one of them is surrounded with a Bed of Sand, and separated from the next by a narrow Strait.

The particular Names of the *Maldives*, beginning to reckon them from the South, are *Addon* and *Poue Molucque*; both which are commonly taken for one Part; otherwise, if they are distinguish'd, the whole Number of Parts must be fourteen instead of thirteen: *Sonadou*; *Adoumat*; *Collomadoux*; *Nillandoux*; *Molucque*; *Poulifdou*; *Male-Atollon*; comprehending the Island of *Male*, the chief of all, and famous for the Royal Court; from which also, the general Name of *Maldives*, i. e. *The Isles of Male* deriv'd its Original: *Ariarollon*; *Malos Madon*; *Padypola*, *Mil-ladoue Madoue*; and *Tillad*, *Mat* or *Matos*, call'd by the Portugueses, *Cabexa das Ilhas*, i. e. *The Head of the Islands*: Of the above-specify'd Parts, the two first lye to the South of the *Equator*; the third under the same Line; and the other ten at a greater or lesser Distance from it, towards the North.

## CHAP. XV.

### Of the EAST-INDIES in General.

I. Extent. SOME Geographers have extended the *East-Indies* as far as the Eastern Ocean, comprehending *China* and *Japon* under that General Name: But according to the Opinion of the best Writers, and according to the common Acceptation, by the word *East-Indies*, is understood only, I. The Empire of the Great Mogul. II. The Peninsula of *India* within the River *Ganges*. III. The Peninsula of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*. And IV. The Islands in the Indian Ocean. Of the Islands we have given an Account in the last Chapter: And now proceed to the Continent.

The vast Tract of Land generally known by the Name of the *East-Indies*, is situate between *China*, on the East; *Persia*, on the West; *Tartary*, on the North, and the Indian Sea on the South. The most Southern Part (being the Peninsula of *Malacca*) shoots out to the first Degree of North Latitude, but the Bay of *Bengall* which flows between the two Peninsulæ of *India*; ascends to the height of 22 Degrees, so that only those Countries lye within the Torrid Zone. The Mogul's Empire lying almost all of it within the Tropick of *Cancer*, and extends Northward to the 41 Degree of Latitude. As for the Longitude there have been great Mistakes, the Dutch Maps make *Surat* lye in the 106 Degree, and *Sanfon* places it in the 109: Whereas our Mariners by their Observations make it about 78 Degrees from the *Lizard*, that is, 87 from *Teneriff*, and about 90 from the Island *Faro*, which does not much disagree from the Observations of the best Astronomers in the World, viz. M. *Hévelius*, M. *Halley*, and M. *Gallet*; as we find by the Account (publish'd in the *Philos. Transact. Feb. 1682*) of the Meridional Distance between *London* and *Ballasore*, a place in the Bay of *Bengall* in the Latit. of 22, which was found to be 86 Degr. 24 min. to which adding 17 D. 10 Min.

Part 2.

the distance from *Teneriff* to *London*, it amounts to 103 D. 54 Min. but *Ballasore* stands 12 Degrees Eastward from *Surat*, so, that being deducted, there rests 91 Degrees or thereabouts for the Longitude of *Surat* from *Il Pico* in *Teneriff*. Having fix'd this we may venture to say with our Map; that *India* extends in Longitude from the eighty second to the 130th. Degree.

Whether the Name *India* was deriv'd from the River *Indus*, or from the *Hindows* who were the ancient Inhabitants, and from whom came the word *Indostan*, that signifies the Country of the *Hindows*, and is now the Indian Name of the Mogul's Empire, is not easy to determine: But it is called *East* to distinguish it from *America*, which bears the Name of the *West-Indies*.

III. The Air is exceeding hot; especially in the Southern Parts, which would be utterly uninhabitable if it were not for the set Seasons of Rain and Wind, wherewith the Countrys lying in the Torrid Zone are cool'd and refresh'd. These Regular-Winds, which are call'd *Monsoons*, are observ'd to blow constantly from one Corner for four or five Months every Year; namely, from the North or rather North-East (according to *Dampier*) from *October* to *March*; and the contrary from *April* to *September*: both which refresh the Land, one with Coolness and the other with Rain.

IV. The Soil of these Countries is generally good, producing not only plenty of Corn, Fruits; Fish, Fowl, Pasture and Cattel, but yields also the most valuable Spices and Druggs; Silk, Indico and Cotton; Mines of Diamonds, Gold, Silver, Iron, Copper, and other Metals: The Seas yield Pearl and Coral; and the Forests are full of Lyons, Tygers, Elephants, Rhinoceros, and many other Wild-Beasts; But the Country is much infested with hideous Serpents and most noxious Vermin.



V. The chief Rivers of *India* in General are 1. the *Indus*, which washes its Western Bounds. 2. The *Ganges*, which rises in the Mountains that divide *Tartary*, and *India*, runs through the middle of the Country, and falls into the Bay of *Bengall*. 3. The *Caru*. 4. *Cosmin*. and 5. *Pegu*, issue from the Lake *Chienan* on the Frontier of *Tartary* and *China*, and fall into the Gulph of *Bengall*. 6. The *Menon* issuing from the same Lake, falls into the Gulph of *Siam*. The *Padder* and *Gemeni* in *Guzarat* and *Cambaja*; the *Guenga* in *Golconda*; the *Nagundi* in *Bisnagar*, and other smaller Rivers will be spoken of in their proper places. Suffice it at present to say that *India* is in general very plentifully water'd with large and commodious Rivers.

Moun- The Mountains of *India* are many. A great  
tains. Ridge call'd by the Ancients *Caucasus*, *Taurus* and *Imaus*, runs along on the West side between *Persia* and *Indostan*; as doth another Ridge, on the North between the same Country and *Tartary*: In the Peninsula of *India* within *Ganges* the Mountains de *Gate* or *Ballagare* continue all the length of the Country from *Narsinga* to *Cape Comorin*.

VI. The Religion of *India*, except where Christian-  
Religion. anity has prevail'd, is either Paganism or Mahometism; the latter having been brought hither out of *Persia*, and the former was the Religion of the *Hindus* or *Aborigine* Inhabitants of this Country, and taught by the ancient Brachmans: They acknowledge one Supreme Eternal Omnipotent Being, Creator of all things; from whom they say proceeded three Cares, viz. *Burma* or *Brama*, the Care of making all things: *Vishnum* or *Bisna*, the Care of preserving all things: And *Mahadeeb* or *Icora*, the Care of destroying all things: Of these three Gods they tell a World of ridiculous Fables, too long for us to insert. They have other smaller Deities and Saints to whom they pay Religious Worship, in their Pagods or Temples, whereof they had one in every Town and Village; and those in Cities or large Towns were built of Stone with great Magnificence and rich Adornments: But Mahometism has prevail'd so much as to destroy a great many of them. The *Bramines* or Priests pretend to be the Offspring of the Brains of their God *Brama*, and are exceedingly reverenc'd: They wear no Garments except a Cloath about their middles, and now and then a loose Gown over their Shoulders; they feed on Herbs, Fruit, and the like, religiously abstaining from all things that have Life, and will on no Account kill, though it be a Vermin: They have some Learning, and are generally esteem'd the wisest Men of the Nation: They use a peculiar Character and Language, which like our Latin, is the Learned Language; and must first be studied by the Pupils that come to them for Instruction. *Tavernier* gives us an account of many severe Penances perform'd by these *Bramines*, and ridiculous Ceremonies in the Gentile Religion; but the most barbarous is that of burying the Wife with her Husband, which is universally practis'd in the *Indies*; begun either on a Religious Account, (great Rewards of Blessing being promis'd to the Wife that does it) or on a Political Account as some imagine, to prevent the Women's poisoning their Husbands, as they say, they us'd to do; however it began, it is re-

ligiously Perform'd, and the Wife that Survives her Husband is detested by every body, even her nearest Relations.

The Christian Religion was undoubtedly plant-  
ed very early in *India*. *St. Thomas* is generally believ'd to have preach'd the Gospel and suffer'd Martyrdom there, in the City *Maliapur*, now *St. Thomas*, on the Coast of *Cromandel*. That Apostle had Converted many, and Baptiz'd the King and most of his Nobles, before the *Bramines* murder'd him: And Christianity flourish'd considerably, till some Pagan Princes making Incursions, sack'd *Meliapur*, and forced the Christians to fly to the Mountains, whence they descended into *Malabar*, and in process of time had Bishops and Priests sent to them by the Patriarch of *Muzal* in *Syria*; a Succession whereof continued to the time that the Portuguese came into these Parts: But these Teachers brought with them the Heresy of *Nestorius*, with which the Portuguese found them much infected; but otherwise very good Christians, having the Bible or at least the New Testament among them in the Syriack Language, receiving the Sacrament, using Prayers to, and professing Faith in God and the Blessed Trinity; and observing the same Calendar, Feasts and Fasts with us: And though Christianity was in as low estate as ever it had been, when the Portuguese arriv'd they found fifteen or sixteen thousand Families in and about *Cranganor*, who sent to *Vasco de Gama* in the Year 1502, desiring to be receiv'd under the Protection of the King of *Portugal*. *Emanuel* that then reign'd, having receiv'd Encouragement from the Pope, sent over several Priests and Fryars, who preach'd the Gospel (but with the Corruptions of the Romish Church) very Zealously, and with good Success: *John III.* who succeeded him, spared no Cost or Pains to propagate Christianity in *India*, and to that purpose sent over Father *Francis Xavier*, who with great Pains and Piety instructed the People, and by Strictness of Life and Virtuous Disposition, so wrought upon them, that as the Portuguese brag vast Numbers were converted. The English and Dutch Nations also have contributed their Parts to the propagating Christianity in *India*, so that though the Inland Country be still Heathens and Mahometans, the more civiliz'd People on the Coasts are pretty well reconcil'd to our Faith.

The People of *India* may be reduc'd under four  
Degrees or Classes according to their own Dis-  
tinctions in conformity to their Religious Le-  
gends, that is to say, I. The *Bramines* or Priests already mention'd. II. The *Cutterys*, or as they call themselves *Rasbootes*, i. e. *Sons of Kings*; of which Race the *Rajas* and Kings, as also the Men of Arms, are reckon'd. III. The *Banians* or Merchants. And IV. The *Scods* or *Wyfes*, which are the Mechanics. Of these, the Merchants and Mechanics must be allowed to be excellent in their way; but the Soldiers cannot claim any great Character: For indeed, the Nature of the Climate, doth much more encline the People to Cunning and Ingenuity, than to Courage and Heroick Vertue.

The remote Distance of *India* from *Europe*, may make it worth our Enquiry by what steps we obtain'd so intimate a Knowledge of it; for considering how vast a Tract of Land lies be-

tween



tween it and the *Mediterranean* Sea on one side, and how large an Ocean floweth between it and us on the other side; it would be extremely wonderful that we should ever have procured the Commodities of those Countrys in so plentiful a manner, if we were not acquainted with the Wit and Industry of these latter Ages wherein Men adventure to pry into every Corner of the habitable World. The first Knowledge of *India* seems to be owing to *Alexander's* Expedition; for after he had conquer'd *Persia*, we are told by *Curtius* and others, his Ambition led him into *India*, where many Nations submitted without bloodshed; and *Porus* who is thought to have possess'd the best part of what is now the *Mogul's* Empire, resisting him, was vanquish'd and made Captive. Some Authors are apt to believe he penetrated as far as the River *Ganges*, but 'tis more probable he went but a little way beyond the *Indus*, and returning, follow'd the Course of that River down to the Ocean; and that it was near where *Diu* now stands that he erected the mighty Altars in imitation of *Hercules's* Pillars, and left those vast Beds, Armour, Bitts, &c. to amuse future Ages. *Ptolemy* and the ancient Geographers speak of 5000 considerable Cities, and as many Nations in *India*: Whereof the *Brachmans* or Indian Philosophers were most celebrated, and honoured with the Title of Gymnosophists by the Greeks. But the Knowledge of *India* proceeding chiefly from the Trade thither, we were to be sure very little acquainted with it before the Europeans found the way by Sea: For before that time all the Traffick into *India* was carried on by the *Persians*, *Arabians* and *Sarazens*, who brought the Jewels, Spices, Silks, and other valuable commodities of these Countries, partly over Land, and partly by the Red Sea, to *Alexandria* and other Ports in the *Mediterranean*; whence the *Venetians*, *Genoueses* and *Florentines* brought them to *Europe*: and thereby the Princes of *Syria*, *Arabia*, and *Aegypt*, as well as the Merchants of those Countries and *Italy* were exceedingly enrich'd: Till by the Assistance of the Mariner's Compass, the Astrolabe, and other useful assistances to Navigation then newly invented, the Portuguese were enabled to launch out into the Atlantick Ocean, coast the whole Continent of *Africa*, double the Cape of *Good Hope*, and find the way by Sea to the *East-Indies*, much about the same time that the Spaniards discover'd the *West-Indies* or *America*. Of which Navigation and the Settlements of Europeans in *India*, we shall set down as particular an Account as the brevity of our Work will admit; imagining it may be an agreeable Entertainment to our Reader.

### Of the first Voyages from EUROPE to the EAST-INDIES.

IX.  
Portu-  
guese in  
India.

THE Discovery of the Coasts of *Africa* in order to a Voyage to the *East-Indies*, was first attempted in the Year 1410, by *Don Henry* Son to *John I.* King of *Portugal*; who gave all possible Encouragement thereto: But in 53 Years time that he lived, they had got no farther than the Coasts of *Guinea*; and after his Death there was little Progress made in it, till the time of *K. John II.*

who resuming this Matter with great Zeal and Courage, first sent out *Bartholomew Diaz*; who doubled the Cape of *Africa*, to which *K. John* gave the Name of *Good Hope*: and afterwards sent *Pedro Covillian* by Land, who travell'd as far as *Cananor*, *Calecut*, and the neighbouring Places; whence crossing the Indian Sea, he pass'd over to the Coasts of *Zanguabar* in *Africa*, and by the information he receiv'd there concluded that the same Coast continued from the Cape of *Good Hope*; so returning through *Ethiopia*, came back safe to *Lisbon*, and gave the King so much Encouragement that he made all necessary preparations to set out a large Fleet for that Expedition; but dyed in the Year 1495 before it set out: *Emanuel* his Successor prosecuted the design; and in the Year 1497 *Vasco de Gama* with four Ships and 160 Men, set sail from *Lisbon*; and sailing along the Coast of *Africa* he doubled the Cape, and came to *Mozambique* on the East Coast of *Africa*, in the 15th. Degr. of South Latitude, where being kindly entertain'd he staid some time, receiving instructions for the prosecuting his Voyage, and as some relate, he found there that most useful Instrument the Mariner's Compass. but with more probability it may be said, that it was not then unknown; to the Spaniards at least, for 'twas 5 Years before this that *Columbus* set out on his discovery of *America*, wherein we may reasonably conclude he had the use of the Compass; and if the Spaniards had it, undoubtedly the Portuguese, who were the chief Navigators at that time, would not be without it. But to proceed, *de Gama* parting from hence prosecuted his Voyage, and in two Months more discover'd the Coast of *Malabar*; where Anchoring near *Calecut* on the 20th of *May* 1498 He sent some Men ashore for discovery; who by good Fortune met with a Moor that understood Portuguese, and acquainted them with the State of the Country; and by his means the *Zamorin* or Emperor of *Calecut* was inform'd of their Arrival: This Prince receiv'd them very kindly, and was ready to have entred into a League with the King of *Portugal*, when the *Arabians* and *Sarazens*, who were the Men that carried on the Indian Trade to *Europe* hitherto; being alarm'd at the Arrival of the Portuguese, and foreseeing the loss of their Trade, if these Men were admitted; applyed themselves to the King, and laying before him the Advantages he and his Country had receiv'd by their Traffick, which the Portuguese would ruine, and oblige them to depart to his great loss, &c. They so wrought upon the *Zamorin*, that the Portuguese were no more favour'd but insulted; so that finding himself not safe, and having in a great measure perform'd what he came for, viz. discover'd the *East-Indies*; *de Gama* returned home, and arrived safe at *Lisbon* in September 1499. And now the discovery being made, the next business was to establish a Trade there; to which purpose the next Year, *Pedro Alvarez de Cabrale* was sent out with a Fleet of 13 Ships and 1500 Men, to oblige by fair or foul means the King of *Calecut* to permit them to settle there: Of these Ships but six perform'd the Voyage, the rest either foundring at Sea, and so sent back, or were cast away: Arriving at *Calecut* he was entertain'd with unexpected kindness by the *Zamorin*, a House given the

King



King of Portugal, and liberty granted to lade their Ships before any others; but their old Enemys the Moors soon made a difference, for the Goods were so bought up by them, that notwithstanding the Zamorin's Order, the Portuguese could have none; which made them sit upon the Moors Ships and take the Goods thence; to revenge which the Sarazens assaulted the Portuguese Houſe, and kill'd many of the Men: for which Alvarez receiving no redress, he set upon ten Arabian Ships in the Port, killed the Men, unladed the Ships, and batter'd the Town with his Cannon; and then leaving Calcut he sail'd to Cochin, where he was very kindly receiv'd, furnish'd with the Commodities he wanted, courted by that King and those of Coulam and Canonor, and thence return'd home with a very rich Cargo, and arriv'd at Lisbon in August 1502. In the mean time John de Novo was sent out with another Fleet to recruit de Gama, but missing him he laded his Ships at Cochin and Canonor, and came safe to Lisbon.

And now the King of Portugal assum'd to himself the pompous Titles of Lord of the Navigation, Conqueror and Commerce of Ethiopia, Arabia, Persia and India; and to maintain that Title sent out Vasco de Gama a second time with the Title of Admiral, and a larger Fleet than ever; with which he sail'd directly to Cochin, whose King Trimumpara was a sincere Friend and generous Assistant to the Portuguese against their Enemy the Zamorin of Calcut: Having laded his Ships and dispatcht his Affairs at Cochin he sail'd towards Canonor, but was met by 20 stout Ships from Calcut, which he quickly defeated, took two of them and returned back to Portugal, leaving Vincent de Scodra with six Ships to cruise on the Coast, and hinder the Commerce of the Arabians and Sarazens. As soon as de Gama was gone, the Zamorin fell upon Trimumpara and drove him out of his Kingdom, because he would not quit the Interest of the Portuguese. But Francis and Alphonso d'Albuquerque arriving the next Year at Cochin, they soon drove out the Zamorin, and reinstated Trimumpara; and by his permission built a Castle for the Security of the Portuguese, which after was encreas'd to a Town and may be call'd New-Cochin: having done this, laded their Ships and settled a Factory at Coulam, they return'd to Portugal, leaving Pacico a valiant Commander with 300 Men and three Ships to oppose the Zamorin: With this small force the Portuguese did Wonders, repulsing the Calcutians in all their Attacks upon Cochin, and supported Trimumpara in his Kingdom; the next Year they were reinforced by a considerable Armada from Portugal under Lopez Suarez, and acquir'd a mighty Reputation in India.

The Portuguese having thus in some measure establish'd themselves in India, King Emanuel sent Don Francisco d'Almeida in the Year 1505, to reside there with the Title of Vice-Roy: This Prince maintain'd the War with great Courage and Hazard, during the five Years that he govern'd. And Alphonso d'Albuquerque that succeeded him took the Island and City of Goa, which was then made, and has ever since continued, the Seat of the Government of the Portuguese Asia: from hence they sent out Armies and Fleets, and extended their Conquests far and near, establishing Facto-

rys, not only all along that Coast of Malabar and the other of Coromandel, but also all along the Bay, and the Coasts of Pegu, Syam, Malacca, and on most of the Islands, possessing for a long time the whole Trade of the Indies; till the English and Dutch Nations put in for a share with them. Since that time the Portuguese Trade daily declin'd; and in the War with the Dutch in 1662, &c. they were almost expell'd these Parts, having at present besides Goa few Places of any Importance there. So much for the Portuguese.

The Discovery of the East-Indies happen'd in the Reign of our King Henry VII. who was a Prince that lov'd his Money too much to send it abroad in such hazardous Adventures; and as he refus'd Columbus Assistance in the Discovery of America, so he neglected the Trade of the East-Indies. His Son Henry VIII. was otherwise employ'd all his Reign, as were his two Successors. But Queen Elizabeth having prosperously settled Affairs at home, applied her Thoughts to Foreign Trade: and first setting out Sir Francis Drake, Tho. Candish (both famous for encompassing the whole Globe of the Earth) and others with Commissions, to infect the Spaniards on the Indian Coasts, and make free prize of their Ships. At length in the Year 1600, the East India Company was erected and endowed with many Privileges; and a Pond was soon rais'd for carrying on the Trade. Their first Fleet was commanded by Sir James Lancaster, with the Queen's Commission of Martial-Law, and arriv'd at Sumatra, a large Island on the South of the Coast of Syam, on the 5th. of June 1602; where having been kindly receiv'd by the King, and laded two of his Ships, which he sent home; he proceeded to Bantam on the Island of Java, where he laded his other two Ships, and settled Factorys. In the Year 1608, a Factory was settled at Surat in the Dominions of the Great Mogul, and great Privileges granted to it by the Negotiation of Capt. Hawkins, who resid'd many Years in that Court as Ambassador from the King of Great Britain, and was succeeded in that Employment by Sir Thomas Roe. Soon after Madraspatan on the Coast of Coromandel was obtained of the King of Golconda, with liberty to build a Noble Fort call'd St. George, which is the Seat of our English Sovereignty on that side, and general Factory for all the Company's Affairs beyond Cape Comorin, as Surat is the chief resort for all Affairs on this side that Cape. Our Nation hath also the Sovereignty of the Island Bombay on the Coast of Cambaia. The Island Angediva, near Goa. Fort St. David's near Negapatan on the Coast of Coromandel. And Factorys at Ouegly or Hugley, Cassumbezar, Patana, Dacca and Ballasore in Bengal; at Agra the chief City of Mogul, at Amadabat, Cambaya, Brodra, Baroche, Dabul, Pettapoli and Masulipatan, in the Dominions of that Prince; as also in Syam, Cambodia, Tonquin and the Island Formosa. At Achin, Prianim, Ticon and Janbe on the Island Sumatra. Likewise in the Islands, Borneo, at Succadano and Bandermaffin; and Celebes at Macasser.

The English might easily have made themselves Masters of many other Places as the Portuguese and Dutch have done, but that they always chose rather to carry on a peaceable and quiet



quiet Commerce with the Inhabitants than by violating the Laws of Nations, to Enslave and Rob them at the same time both of their Wealth and Liberty, on which account they have been every where kindly entertain'd, and preserv'd an unspotted Reputation.

Dutch in  
India.

The States of *Holland*, as soon as that Republick was in a condition to spare her Men and Ships from the defence of the little Country they had got possession of, had their Eye on the *East-India* Trade, which they wisely foresaw would exceedingly enrich themselves, and weaken their Enemy the Spaniard; to which purpose they at first endeavour'd to find out a new and nearer Passage thither by the North, along the Coasts of *Norway*, *Lapland*, *Nova Zembla* and *Tartary*; but their Attempts at several times proving unsuccessful; in the Year 1595. they fitted out Four Ships, under the Command of *Cornelius Houman*, who having been before employ'd in the Service of the *Portugueses*, not only learnt the Method of Sailing to those Coasts, but was also well vers'd in the manner of Trafficking. Thus he set Sail the common way to the Cape of *Good Hope*, continuing his Course to *Madagascar*, *Santa Maria*, and *Antongil*, and came to *Sumatra* on the 12th of *June* 1595. Afterward he pass'd to *Bantam* and *Tuba* in *Java Major*; as also to the Islands of *Malura* and *Bally*; and loosing from thence, after a tedious and difficult Voyage, arriv'd in *Holland* in the Month of *August* 1597. without making a Return of Profit answerable to the Expectation of the Merchants. However, they were not at all discourag'd from the like Adventures, but rather animated by a Prospect of Gain; insomuch that the next Year, 1598. no less than 80 Ships sail'd out of the Ports of *Holland* and *Zealand*, either for the *East* or *West-Indies*, of which Five were sent out by the Authority of the States General, under the Conduct of *Balthasar Ansjeron*. Divers considerable Voyages were likewise made by *Oliver Nordt*, *George Spilberg*, and *James Van Nee*, besides other of lesser note, undertaken at the Expences of private Persons, or petty Companies of Merchants of *Amsterdam*, *Rotterdam*, *Zealand*, *Brabant*, &c. until the States thought fit to unite all the Adventurers into one Society, to Trade upon a common Stock; freely permitting any Persons to come in at first, but prohibiting all others to Traffick, or repair to any Harbour from the Cape of *Good-Hope* to the Coast of *China* for 21 Years, to commence from the 20th of *March*, 1602. Whereupon, within a little while was rais'd a Fond of 700000 Pounds Sterling, which in Six Years time was augmented to near five times as much, i. e. 3500000, besides a yearly Dividend of 30 or 40, and seldom so low as 20 per Cent. Thus the *Hollanders*, having in process of time settled themselves in the most remarkable Places of the *East-Indies*, and engross'd almost the whole Spice-Trade, began to found a Commonwealth in those parts, govern'd by a *Stadt-Holder*, as potent as the other in the *Netherlands*; although his Office, which was formerly for Life, now continues only during three Years; nevertheless in State and Grandeur he exceeds not only the *Stadt Holder* of the *United Provinces*, but even most Princes in *Europe*. Indeed; the Strength and Greatness of the *Hollanders* are at

present come to so high a pitch, as to dare to contend with the most powerful Monarchs of the *Levant*, being able to put to Sea a Fleet of 40 or 50 Men of War, and at the same time to maintain an Army of 30000 Men on Land. For in the Province of *Malabar* they possess *Onor*; *Barcelor*, *Mangalor*, *Cananor*, *Cranganor*, *Cochin*; *Coslam*: In that about *Coromandel*, *Tuticoria*; *Negapatam*, *Karkalle* and *Palleacate*, which they commonly call *Guedria*. In the Peninsula, *Malacca*. In the Island of *Ceylon*, *Negumbo*, *Columbo*, *Galla*, *Baticala* *Trinquimala*, and *Jaffriapatam*. A Fortress in the Isle of *Manar*. In *Java*, *Batavia*, anciently known by the Name of *Jaccatra*. In *Borneo*, *Celebes*, and divers other places, besides the entire Islands of *Bima*, *Amboyna* and *Banda*, several Forts of the *Moluccas*, &c. They likewise keep Factories in almost all the Trading Towns throughout the whole Continent of *India*, endeavouring, if it were possible to get into their Hands the Monopoly of all manner of Commodities.

The *Danes* and *French*, in emulation to other *European* Kingdoms, have likewise sought for a Share in the Traffick in the *East-Indies*. The former indeed have establish'd a considerable Trade in the Bay of *Bengala*, and on the Coasts of *Pegu*; as also in some little Islands toward the South, being Masters only of two Places where-to they repair, both lying on the Coast of *Coromandel*, viz. *Krankebar* and *Dansburg*. The *French* in the Year 1604. erected a Company for the Commerce of the *East-Indies*, which having fixt their chief Residence and Factory in the Isle of *Madagascar*, on the Coast of *Africa*, should from thence Traffick into *Persia*, *India*, *China*, *Japan*, &c. But they have not been as yet able to carry on their Design with Success, according to their Expectations, although they still continue earnestly to prosecute it, and have lately got some Interest in the Court of the King of *Siam*.

*P*tolomy, *Strabo*, and the other antient Geographers, divided *India* into Two Parts only, that Division is, with respect to the River *Ganges*; the West-of *India* being stiled *Intra* and the Eastern *Extra Gangem*. But in regard that *Indostan* or the Empire of the great *Mogul*, lyes on both sides that River, and is all Subject to one Prince, that must now be allowed to be one Part. And the Two Peninsulæ or large Promontorys that launch out into the Indian Ocean on each side of the Bay of *Bengall*, are reckon'd Two other Parts: So that at present, *India* at large is divided into Three Parts, viz.

- I. INDOSTAN or the Empire of the Great *Mogul*.
- II. The PENINSULA of INDIA within; or on the West side the River GANGES.
- III. The PENINSULA of INDIA beyond; or on the East side the GANGES.

Each of these contains many Kingdoms, viz:



In *India* are comprehended forty Kingdoms, namely

Kandiana	Udeia	Patna	Jesual
Mavat	Beral	Orixia	Berar
Candis	Guzarat	Chitor	Malva
Ranas	Bando	Hendows	Pof.
Jenupar	Delly	Agra	Gualcor
Narwar	Maroucha	Sambal	
Bacar	Jamba	Pengal	Naugracut
Siba	Pitan	Gor	Kakares
Bankish	Cassimere	Artock	
Cabul	Multan	Haiacan	Buckar
Jerfelmere	Seret	Tatta	

In the Peninsula of *India* within *Ganges*, are the Countries of

Malabar
Decan
Golconda
Bisnagar & Coromandel
The Fishing Coast and three Principalities

In the Peninsula beyond *Ganges* are these three Empires, which comprehend many small Kingdoms

The Empire of Syani
The Kingdom of Anna
The Empire of Ava

The Subdivisions and chief Towns of these Parts of *India*, will be seen in the Tables before the particular Descriptions of each; to which we now proceed, beginning with the Peninsula within *Ganges*; that lying next to the Island *Ceylon* from whence we last came.

## CHAP. XVI.

### Of the Peninsula of India within the Ganges.

For a Map consult that of the *Mogul's* Empire, to which this is annexed.

I. THE Peninsula of *India* within, on the higher side of the River *Ganges*, is situate between the 80th and the 100 Degree of Longitude; and between the 5th and the 18th Degree of North Latitude, being contiguous on the North with *Isle de Java*, but otherwise surrounded by the Sea; that is, the Indian Sea on the West and South, and the Bay of *Bengal* on the East: It is divided from *Ceylon* by the Straights of *Monar*, on the South-East, and is distanced from *Malacca* and the Peninsula beyond *Ganges*, near 200 Leagues, by the Intervention of that Great Bay or Sea, to which, in general, is given the Name of *Bengal*, though the inner Part of it only, may properly bear that Appellation. The Breadth of this Land in the North Part is near 500 Miles, but decreases Southward, growing narrower by Degrees till it end in a Point at Cape *Comorin*.

II. The Air is excessive Hot, being seated under the first, second, and part of the third Climates of the Torrid Zone: So that the Inhabitants for the most part go naked: Nevertheless the Soil produces plenty of all Necessaries, as Rice, divers sorts of Fruits, Cattle, Pepper, and some other Spices, Cotton and Silk; but especially this Land yields Diamonds, and other precious Stones, and its Sea affords Pearls. A great Ridge of Mountains runs along the middle of this Country, from *Bisnagar* to Cape *Comorin*; they are call'd the Mountains *de Gate* or *Baliagate*; and it is very remarkable that at the same Time that the Weather is sultry Hot on one side of these Mountains, it is severely Cold on the other side, though in the same Degree of Latitude. A great Number of the Towns and Castles on the Coasts of this Peninsula are in the Possession of the Portuguese, English and Hollanders.

III. The Country contains a great Number of Kingdoms, but these for the most Part are very small, and the *Rajas* or Kings Tributarys, or Homagers at least, to a more powerful Monarch; wherefore it will not be necessary to divide it accord-

ing to its Kingdoms, but we shall rather consider it in five large Parts, viz.

The Coasts and Country of *Malabar*.  
*Decan*, with *Cuncan*, *Balaguata* and *Canara*.  
 The Kingdom of *Golconda* or *Orixia*.  
 The Kingdom of *Bisnagar* with the Coasts of *Coromandel*.  
 The Principalities of *Gingi*, *Tanjour* and *Madras*, with the Fishing Coast.

The Subdivisions and chief Cities whereof are seen in this Table.

	chief Towns.	
Calecut	Calecut	Panane Pabur
	Chale	Parongale
	Tanor	Curiga Panur
	Corigan	Bipur Cucuram
	Chombays	Badara Moustingue
Cononor	Cononor	Idem
	Cranganor	Idem
	Cochin	Idem Viapin or New Orange
	Coulam	Idem
	Travancour	Idem Matulavalur Corate
Porcali	Porcali	Idem
	Calecoulam	Idem
	Muterta	Idem
	Marta	Podiagabo
	Angamala K.	Changanor K.
Mangata K.	Mangata K.	Paru K.
	Turnbale K.	Kingd. of Pepper
	Changanate K.	Trivilor K.
	Panapely K.	Tecantutes K.
	Mallians People.	

Decan



Decan in general comprehends	Decan K.	{ Andanagar Chaul prater's jo Kerky Danda caul Bider Seardon
	Ballagate K.	Dohabad Bider
	Cuncan K.	{ Vishaper Solapur Paranda Wingerla Carapatan Centapur Dabal Agnada Bardas
	Canara Country com- prehending the Kingd. of	{ Onor Onor Barcelor Baticala Baticala Garzopa { Gavazala-Naghar Iskari Akinefi Sijhor
	The City of The Country of	Goa and the Island Anchediva Salsette
The Kingd. of Golconda		
{ Baynagar Golconda Comdapaty Cindavera Bellurconda Gani or Coulour Gualavari		
The Kingd. of Bitnagar		
{ Bisnagar or Chandegry Velour Gautier Narsinga Cirangapatan Pelazonga Triply		
Ant:he Coa:is of Coro- mandel		
{ Masulipatan Pettipole Cacciro Calecor Penna Fort Geldria Pali cate Meliapur or St. Thomas Fort St. George and Madraspatam Tirepolier Carcal Negapatam Tranguebar Fort St. David		
The three Princi- palities or Naigues of		
{ Gingi Gingi Cidambaran Tanjouwar Tanjowar Negapatan, &c. Madura { Madura Tutecay and the { Trichandur Calipatam Fishing- { Manancor Manapur Coast Jacancurg		

IV. MALABAR, lyes on the West-side of the Malabar Mountains *Ballagate*; but Geographers are not agreed of it's extent with respect to the Northern Boundary; some carrying it as high as Cape *Darame*, or *Cabo des Rames*, and the River *Aliga* near *Goa*; and so include *Canara* in that general Name; but *Sanfon* and others cut off that Country, and so *Malabar* is to be reckon'd no farther Northward than the River *Cangerecora*, a little beyond *Conanor*; between which and Cape *Comorin* in the South may be reckon'd about 350 Miles, but its breadth is at most 100 Miles, and in the Southern Part not half so much. It is divided from *Coromandel* on the East by the Ridge of Mountains, and on the West and South it is washed by the Indian Sea. The Coasts have many commodious Bays and Harbours, which invite Merchants from all Parts: but it is mostly frequented by Mahometan Pirates, except where the European Establishments hinder them. The Contry is water'd with many Rivulets, and the Soil is fruitful in Pepper, Ginger, and other Spices, Rhubarb, Sugar, Cotton, Coco-nuts, &c. and was formerly all subject to one Monarch, but at present many Kings Reign there, ever whom he of *Calicut* pretends a Superiority, and call'd himself *Zamorin* or Emperor, but his Glory is pals'd away, and his Country is at present a kind of Aristocracy; however, we

Part 2

shall consider the Country as it was formerly govern'd; for the Revolutions are so various and frequent that it is impossible to trace 'em.

The chief Kingdoms of *Malabar* are those of v. *Calecut*, *Canonor*, *Cranganor*, *Cochin*, and *Conlam*, *Malabar* besides which there are many others. As *Travancour*, adjoining to *Conlam*, *Porcha*, and *Calecouculam*, the former adjoining to *Cochin*, and the latter to it; the English trade to *Porcha*, and the Dutch have a Factory there. *Mutera*, *Marta*, and *Batymena*, three other small Kingdoms, adjoining also to *Cochin*; and divers small Principalities subject to the *Zamorin*. There are also eleven small Kingdoms in the Mountains, viz. *Mangate*, and *Paru*; the Kingdom of Pepper; *Turnbide*; *Changanate*; *Changanor*; *Trivilar*; *Panapely*; *Angamale*; the Kingdom of the *Tecantutes*; and the People of the Mountains of *Panda*; and lastly, at the top of the Mountains live the People call'd *Mallians*, whose chief Town is *Prine*. The Cities of chiefest Note in all these Kingdoms, are these.

Entring this Continent from the *Islands*, we first meet Cape *Comorin*, heretofore call'd *Cory Comaria*, and *Comaria Extrema*: Situate in the 7th Degree, 30. Minutes of Northern Latitude, 60 Leagues West from the Coast of *Ceylon*; in passing thence Northward, is seen *Cotate*, the Capital of the Kingdom of *Travancor*, a place of great Traffick, and adorn'd with a Christian Church built in the Year 1600. *Travancor*, which gives name to the Kingdom, suppos'd to be the *Cotiana* of *Ptolemy*: and *Matalavalur*, a large City in the same Kingdom. *Conlam*, the Capital of *Conlam*, the Kingdom thence denominated, is a large City seated in a most fertile Soil and healthy Air, in the 9th Degree of North Latitude: it has the advantage of a very commodious Haven at the Mouth of a River, and was taken by the Portuguese in 1505, who built a new Town, and strengthened it with good Walls, and a Fortress, but were however beaten out by the Dutch in 1661. *Calecoulam*, the Capital of another Kingdom, was formerly a good City, but being destroyed by the Portuguese in 1523, it hath ever since continued in low Estate; however, for the sake of the Spice Trade the Dutch have a Factory there. *Porcha* the Capital of a small Kingdom of about 50 Miles extent, where the English have a Factory for Pepper, which grows plentifully there. *Catiapely* is the name of the chief Town of *Batymena* Kingdom, as *Podiagabo*, otherwise *Mavelycare*, is of *Marta*; and *Mutera* of the small Principality of the same Name.

*Cochin*, the Capital of a powerful Kingdom, *Cochin*, whose Prince is the only one in *Malabar* that dares dispute with the *Zamorin* of *Calecut*; is a large City, or rather two Cities a Mile and half asunder, but however almost united by Suburbs: The upper or ancient *Cochin* stands about 4 Miles up the River from the Sea; and is the Seat of the King, whose Palace is a fine Building after the European manner; the Streets are large and the Town populous: The lower or new Town stands two Miles lower on the same River, which makes a commodious Haven; it was built by the Portuguese, and hath many Christian Churches, whereof that of the Jesuits is the finest, having a stately Tower and a Ring of Bells. 'Tis a place of great Traffick, and was possess'd by the Portuguese







Country of *Bardes* (mention'd below) and are reckon'd to have 100000 Subjects in *Goa*, *Salfette* and *Bardes*.

Cuncan. From hence Northward lies the Kingdom of *Cuncan*, 120 Miles from North to South, and 200 Miles from East to West, having *Decan*, on the North; *Canara* and *Goa*, on the South; the Ocean, on the West, and *Ballagate*, on the East. *Linschoten* calls it *Idalcan*, from the Title of its King; it is also by some named the Kingdom of *Visapor*, from its chief City of that Name. *Tavernier* tells us of a notable Revolt in his time, of one *Sevaji a Raja* and Captain of this King's Guards, whose Son seized and plunder'd many of the chief Cities of this Kingdom; and afterwards plunder'd *Surratt*, attack'd our English Ships, and very much disturbed the Portuguese: The great *Mogul* sent an Army against him, but he skulk'd in the Mountains and never could be reduced; so that he or his Successors do still continue to infest this Country. The King *Idalcan* was a most formidable Enemy to the Portuguese, and attack'd *Goa* with 70000 Men. *Visapor*, the chief City of this Kingdom, stands a great way within Land, upon the River *Mondova* or *Dogazim*, and is of very large Extent, even 20 Miles in Circumference, but then the Houses are scatter'd wide; 'tis however surrounded with Walls and 1000 pieces of Cannon, besides five strong Forts; a mighty piece of Ordinance in this Place is much talk'd of, being able to carry a Bullet of 800 weight: In the middle of the City stands the King's Palace, which is a Castle strongly fortified, and guarded by 2000 Men. On the same River somewhat lower, stand *Solapour* and *Parmada*. On the Coasts stand *Wingerla* or *Mingrela*, a Dutch Factory near *Goa*. *Bardes*, the capital of a small Country thence denominated; and Fort de *Almada* nearer *Goa*, belonging to the Portuguese. *Carapatan* more Northward; *Centapour*; and *Dabul* in the Latitude of 17. 45. a Place of good Trade for Pepper and Salt, but somewhat diminish'd by the neighbourhood of *Goa* and *Surratt*, in the middle between which it stands.

Decan. Northward from hence between *Cuncan* and the *Mogul's* Frontiers, lies the Kingdom of *Decan* strictly so call'd, small of its self, though it gives the general Name to all these Countrys, for its Breadth is not above 60 Miles, and its Length from East to West about twice as much. *Golconda* is its Eastern Boundary, and on the West a narrow Tract of it extends to the Sea; the chief Towns are, *Chaul* on the Sea-coasts in the 19 Degr. Lat. at the Mouth of a River which makes a large Haven, taken by the Portuguese and very well fortified, having a Castle that is esteemed impregnable: the Trade of this Place is diminished through the neighbourhood of the English and Dutch; but the Portuguese retain it, and are at great expence in maintaining a Garison in it. *Danda* and *Sefardon* are two other Ports in this Kingdom: and within Land are, *Andanagar* seated on the River *Guenga* towards the Confines of *Golconda*, sometime the residence of the King: and *Bider*, by some reckon'd the Metropolis of the Kingdom; but *Sanfon* names *Kerky* so: and the ancient Travellers speak of the City *Decan* as the chief, and make it a strong and well built City with a noble Palace; though 'tis probable they mean *Andanagar*, which is sometimes call'd *Da-*

Part 2

*nagar*, and by Strangers might be corrupted into *Decan*, with the Name of the Kingdom.

*Ballagate* is a small Kingdom seated among the *Balla-* Mountains of *Gate*, whence it is denominated; *gate* between *Decan*, on the North; *Cuncan*, on the West; *Golconda*, on the East; and *Bisnagar*, on South. The chief City is *Daltabod* a Place of Traffick; and according to *Sanfon*, *Bider* above mention'd belongs to this Kingdom. *Ballagate* is Tributary if not subject to the King of *Cuncan*.

Having given an Account of the Western Part of this Peninsula, we proceed now to the Eastern; from the Frontiers of the *Mogul's* Empire to Cape *Comorin*, on the East side the Mountains of *Gate*, where we meet with many Names of Countrys, as *Narsinga*, *Golconda*, *Delli*, *Bisnagar*, *Coromandel*; &c. but the whole seems properly to be divided but into two Kingdoms, viz. *Golconda* and *Bisnagar*, and three Principalities, viz. of *Tanjowwar*, *Ginggi*, and *Madura*; *Coromandel* and the *Fishing-Coast*, being general Names of parts of these particular Countrys.

*Golconda* is the North-East Part of this Penin- *Golcon-* sula; and situate between the *Mogul's* Coun- *da* trys, on the North and North-East; the Bay of *Bengall*, on the East; *Decan* and *Ballagate*, on the West; and *Bisnagar* and *Coromandel*, on the South. The famous River *Guenga* divides it from the *Mogul's* Dominions on the North, and the Mountains of *Gate* are its Boundary on the West. This Kingdom was formerly call'd *Orixa*, from a Province on the East towards *Bengall*, which was sometime part of it; but has been conquer'd by the *Mogul* and intirely cut off; and by that means the Extent of the Kingdom is much restrain'd, being, instead of 330 Miles in Length, as *J. du Barros* represents it, now not above 200 Miles. The Name of *Golconda* is taken from a strong Fortress to which the King retired when in danger from the *Mogul*; and has ever since made it his Residence. The Country is very fruitful, yielding Rice, Fruits, Indigo, Cassia the best in *India*; says *Tavernier*, Pasture and Cattle in great plenty: But that which chiefly recommends this Country is the Mines of Diamonds, the richest in the World. These were discover'd about a hundred Years ago by accident (a Country fellow finding one at Plough) and were immediately seized on by the King, who farms them out for a vast yearly Rent, even 300 thousand pound Sterling, says my Author, and yet retains to himself all the large ones that are above ten Carats in weight. This renders the King very powerful, but he is often attack'd by the Great *Mogul*, who envies him this Possession. He is call'd *Cotub-sha*, which is a Pompous Epithet, and is an absolute Prince; Heir to all his Subjects, and Master of their Lives; but all this has not been able to protect him, for the Great *Mogul* by continual Warring upon him, has at length got the Victory; and for some Years last past he has been confin'd in an honourable Imprisonment, the *Mogul* possessing his Country. The People are of an Ingenious and Vertuous Disposition; except where Trade debauches them, and therein they sometimes recede from the Morality they are generally noted for: They are reckon'd exquisite in the Painting of *Calicoes*. The Air is extreme Hot, but the Land is well

K 2

well



well water'd with Rivers and Lakes, and besides they contrive large Receptacles for Water in the rainy Month, which they let out at pleasure to water the Fields in the most sultry Season. The chief Cities and Places, are *Bagnagar* the Metropolis, seated in the 10 Deg. 55 Min. of North Latitude, and in the 97 Deg. of Longitude. The City is fair and well built, and the King's Palace very magnificent, cover'd with Terraces whereon are beautiful Gardens, and Trees of that Magnitude that it is to be admir'd the Arches can support them: This may seem incredible, but my Author quotes a very worthy Gentleman (Mr. *Daniel Seiden*) who resided long in that Country. The City is inhabited by none but Nobility and Gentry, the Tradesmen and Merchants living in the Suburbs call'd *Ebragah*, which is said to be near three Miles long. Five or six Miles from hence stands *Golconda*, a Fortress of mighty Strength, and always defended by a large Garrison: This is the Seat of the Royal Treasure, and of late Years the Place of the King's usual Residence, whose Palace is the most Magnificent and Sumptuous of any in the *India*, the very Bars of the Windows being of massy Gold: it is 12 Miles in Circumference, and all built of Stone; the Situation of this Place, with respect to the Water, Soil and Climate, as well as the Strength of it has particularly recommended it to the King's approbation, and caus'd the whole Kingdom to be denominat'd from it. *Condahy* an impregnable Fortress of large Extent, comprehending great Fields of Rice, and Orchards of Fruit Trees, but so surrounded with Rocks as to be inaccessible. *Condavera* another strong Fortress: as is also *Bellumconda*, and sixty three others conveniently seated on the Frontiers all round the Kingdom, and mostly built on Rocks; but the most noted Place of all is *Gani* or *Conloor*, for the sake of the Diamond Mines in its neighbourhood: the Country about is craggy and mountainous, and formerly so thickly inhabited that this was but a very poor Village, though now a very large Trading Town, which it must needs be: for there are (says *Tavernier*) 60000 People employ'd in the Mines: This Town is 100 Miles distant from *Golconda* to the East, and 105 North from *Machilipatan*, a Port on the Bay of *Bengall*, at the Mouth of the River *Nagundi* the Southern Limit of the Kingdom; which is the chief Place for Foreign Traffick in all this Kingdom. *Guadalupe* gives Name to the Cape, on the East of *Machilipatan*. *Buchipatan* a small Port with a Dutch Factory, and *Manchepatan* more Northward on the same Bay.

VIII. *Bisnagar* lies on the South of *Golconda*, beginning at *Machilipatan* and the River *Nagundi*, and runs Southward as far as Cape *Comerin* six hundred Miles in Length: but it is now contracted; for *Gujarat*, *Madura* and *Tanjour*, that were formerly Provinces govern'd by this King's Officers, are at present separate Principalities under Homage only to him: Westward 'tis stretch'd out over the Mountains, as far as the Indian Sea, and comprehends *Canara* already describ'd next to *Malabar*: So that at present we shall confine our selves to the Kingdom of *Bisnagar* on the East side the Mountains, which (excluding the Principalities) is about 250 Miles from North to South, bounded by the Mountains on the West, and the

Bay of *Bengall* on the East. The Soil is fruitful, being well water'd with Rivers, the Pastures cover'd with Cattle, and the Forests fill'd with Lions, Tygers, Elephants, Boars and Staggs. The Air is extreme Hot at all times, but in the Winter (which is distinguish'd only by great Rains for three Months together) the Nights are severely Cold; and as we observ'd before, the Seasons here are directly contrary to what they are in *Malabar*, though that be in the same Latitude. The Inhabitants are well shaped, Tawny Complexion'd, of Effeminate Lazy Tempers, but the Manufacturers are ingenious in making and painting Calicoes, which is the chief Trade of the Country. The King assumed mighty Titles, and was in effect a powerful Prince. *J. de Barros* and other Authors tell us he brought an Army of near eight hundred thousand (whereof 34000 Horse) besides 600 Elephants, against *Idalcan*: And *Barbosa* says there are 900 Elephants and 100 thousand Men constantly maintained for the Guard of the Kingdom; to furnish which Expence he has the fortune to have some Diamond Mines in his Dominions, but his grandeur is diminished.

The whole Kingdom (excluding *Canara*) may be divided into two Parts, viz. *Bisnagar* properly so called, and *Coromandel*. The former being the Inland Country, and the latter the Sea-Coasts. The chief Cities of *Bisnagar* are the Capital of the same Name, or otherwise call'd *Chandegry*, thought to be the *Madura* of *Ptolemy*: it is a very large City, seated on a Hill near the Banks of the River *Nagundi*, in the Heart of his Dominions, and therefore the usual Seat of the King; it is guarded by a strong Citadel and three Walls. *Naringa* seated also on the *Nagundi*, below *Chandegry*, is also a large City, and so considerable that the whole Kingdom is frequently denominat'd from it, and was sometime the Regal Seat. *Vellour* another large City whence the Kingdom is sometimes named. *Chazivero* is the Seat of a Prince of this Country. *Cirangapattam* Southward from *Chandegry*. *Pelagonga* a very large City near *Bisnagar*, and *Tripi* on account of its famous Indian Temple ought not to be omitted; it stands on a high Mountain, and is resorted to from all parts of the Kingdom: Great droves of Monkeys are kept in it as sacred and highly revered; and even the King preserves a Tooth of one of these Animals as a precious Relick.

*Coromandel* is extended along the Coasts of the Bay of *Bengall*, from the Limits of *Golconda* to those mandr of *Madura*, that is from the 10th to the 15th Deg. of Northern Latitude; some extend it much further both North and South, but this seems to be its truest Bounds. 'Tis so fruitful in Rice that *Texeira* says it took its Name from that; yet at sometimes for want of usual Rains the People perish through Famine, and sell themselves into Slavery for Food. The Inhabitants make fine Calicoes and Muslings, with which they purchase the Commodities of other Nations, or rather by selling them to the English and other Europeans are enrich'd so as to be able to purchase all Foreign Necessaries. The Coast has many commodious Havens, which makes it a Place of great Traffick; but the Ports are mostly in the Hands of Europeans, the English especially have *Machilipatan* and the Fort of *St. George*, whereof more



more in its place. The chief Towns proceeding from North to South are these. *Masulipatan* or *Maffilapatan*, although already mention'd in our accounts of *Bisnagar*, because seated on the North side of the River *Nagundi*, which parts that Kingdom from this, is yet by Geographers reckon'd in the Limits of *Coromandel*: But it is however in the Hands of the King of *Golconda*, and is his Mart for Diamonds, being indeed the chiefest for that Commodity in all the *Indies*; and therefore the place is much resorted to, and the English and Dutch have constant Factories in it. 'Tis a large well built and beautiful City, but the Houses stand stragling at distance from each other: here is a Governor annually deputed by the King of *Golconda*, who lives in great State and Splendor; the Customs of this Port are reckon'd to amount to 160000 *l.* sterling *per ann.* And the Town is seated, as we have said, at the mouth of the River *Nagundi*, on the Bay of *Bengall*, in the Latitude of 16 D. 30 M. *Pentapouli* or *Petty-Pole*, about 20 Miles more Southward, stands on a Promontory washed by a large River, which winding about makes it a *Peninsula*, and falls into the Bay of *Bengall*; it is a Port of somewhat difficult access, and a Place of Trade for Cloths, *Pindat's*, *Bettieas's*, &c. The Inhabitants are of different Nations, and the Town is Tributary to the King of *Golconda*: The English have a Factory here, as have also the Dutch. *Carceiro*, *Calcutour* and *Penna*, smaller Towns, are noted for a Plant used in Dying. *Fort Gueldria*, a Fort and Factory of the Dutch, stands about 20 Miles up the Country; 'tis strongly Fortified, secur'd by a good Garrison, and is the Seat of their Governor, and chief Factory for these Parts. *Palicate* stands on the Coast at the mouth of a River or Channel which surrounds it: this place is not above 20 Miles from *Gueldria*, and also possess'd by the Dutch, but the Haven is not a very good one. *Melapour* famous in Ecclesiastical History for the Martyrdom of St. *Thomas* the Apostlic, who Planted Christianity in these Parts; was formerly the chief City of *Coromandel*: but being ruined, the Portuguese, in the Year 1523. began to Rebuild it, and in the Ruins of an ancient Church, they found (at least they affirm so) the Bones of the Apostle, which were immediately enshrined, and the new City named St. *Thomas*, which is a place of considerable Trade for Callicoes and such Linnens of a finer Colour than any other. The French seized this place about 30 Years ago, and held it for some time, but were at last beaten out by the Moors.

*Madraspatam*, seated on the same Coast a few Miles Northward from St. *Thomas*, in the 14th. Deg. of Lat. is a Town possess'd by the English, and more known by the name of the Fort denominated from our Champion St. *George*, in which resides the Governor, and General Factory for all the concerns of the East-India Company, beyond Cape *Comorin*, upon the Continent of *Golconda*, *Bengal* and *Pegu*. The English Town is surrounded with a strong Wall, the Sea washes the East side of it, a broad Ditch the South and West, and on the North side lies the Indian Town; in the middle stands the Fort, which as well as the Town, is of Quadrangular form, with four Bastions raised very high: and in the middle of it, stands the Governor's House, a noble Structure of Stone and well adorn'd: the Bastions of both the

Town and Fort are well mounted with Cannon, and the Place is very strong: The Governor lives in very great State, and in compliance with the Custom of those Countries, never goes abroad without a great attendance of Factors and Merchants, Servants and Guard, Drums and Trumpets, and several Palankeens or Sedans of Ladies; he has a constant Guard of 300 or 400 Moors, and raises 1500 Men at Summons; besides the Garrison, which consists of 700 Soldiers in constant pay. This Place has been possess'd by the English near 100 Years, under an annual Tribute to the King of *Golconda*: The Indian Town as we have said, lies on the North side of the Fort, and is sometimes call'd *Maderassy*; it consists of divers Streets of neat but low Houses inhabited by the Moors. Since the Portuguese have been beaten out of St. *Thomas*, they have been entertain'd at Fort St. *George*, and a Chapel appointed for their Worship. *Tirepoulier* in the Latit. 11. 45. is a Fort and Factory of the Dutch, being near *Carcal*, where they have a House. *Negapatam*, which in the Indian Language signifies the Town of Snakes, because of the number of those Reptiles found here: is the most Southern Port of *Coromandel*, seated upon the Sea Coast in the 10. D. 45. M. of Lat. and washed by a large River, but however no good Harbour; the Portuguese did possess it till 1658, that the Dutch took it from them, and notwithstanding the Attacks of the Naique of *Tanjouwar* still retain it. Not far from them the Danes have a Fort named *Tranguebar*; and the English have a Fort named St. *David*, seated on the Coast not far South from *Negapatam*. *Tavernier* in his Journey through this Country, gives us the names of many Inland Towns of *Coromandel*, but those being not frequented by Europeans nor in themselves considerable we shall omit, and only say that at every 20 or 30 Miles distance there are Towns, Villages, or Pagods *i. e.* Heathenish Temples, all over the Country.

The three Principalities or Naiques of *Gingi*, *Tanjouwar* and *Madura*, take up the rest of this *Peninsula*, extending from the Frontiers of *Bisnagar* and *Coromandel* to Cape *Comorin*. They were heretofore, as we have said, part of the Kingdom of *Bisnagar*, but the Governors have now thrown off the Obedience and are absolute Princes. The most Northern of 'em is *Gingi*, a small Country on the West of *Coromandel* towards the Mountains of *Gate*, and adjoining to *Bisnagar*. The chief City of the same name, stands in the Latitude of 11. 30. and about 80 Miles from the Sea: a large and populous City, the Seat of the Naique, who is a rich Prince, and his Country a fruitful Land; the Inhabitants make fine Calicoes, and receive in exchange for 'em all the foreign Commodities they want. *Cidambaran* is another principal City of this Country, and notable for the many magnificent Pagods and Gentile Devotions paid there. *Tanjouwar* lies on the South and East of *Gingi*, taking it's name from the City where the Naique resides, situate near *Negapatam*, in the middle of his Dominions, which are not much larger than those of *Gingi*. *Negapatam*, possess'd by the Dutch; and *Tranguebar* by the Danes, and Fort St. *David*, already mention'd, are by some reckon'd to stand in the Limits of this Prince's Dominions. The Naique or Principality of *Madura* lies more to the South, extending from the Confines of *Fisling* to the Coast.

Fort St.  
George.

IX.  
The three  
lesser  
Principalities.

Tanjouwar.

Madura  
or the  
Fisling  
of Coast.



of *Taxi* to Cape *Comarin*, and comprehending the Coast commonly call'd the *Fishing-Coast* from the Fishing for Pearl, which is the chief employment of the Inhabitants; who dive into the Water and bring up the Oysters, which being open'd yield many Pearls: but these are a small sort, and the Employment is not very profitable, only the Country is Barren, and they have no better Livelihood. The chief Cities are *Madura*, thought to be the *Madura* of *Ptolemy*, a large Place and the usual Residence of the Naigue, seated at the foot of the Mountains, in the Latitude of 9. 45. *Taxi* seated in the middle of this Coast, a handsome well built Town, subject to the Dutch since the Year 1658. *Calipatan*, a famous Market for Pearls. *Manencor*: *Trichandur*; *Manapar*; and *Jacancory*, are all Port Towns on the Strait of *Manir*.

Thus have we travell'd round this Peninsula, and view'd all its Countries and chief Cities, wherein we have made use of the best Lights that

are given us by Travellers and Geographers. But must own, The Revolutions that have happen'd here by the Wars of one Prince upon another, but chiefly the Conquests of the *Mogul*; have made great alterations in the limits of Kingdoms, Power of the Princes, and condition of Cities and Towns; thus *Caleen* which was formerly so eminent a City, is now an inconsiderable Town; and the Kings of *Golconda* and *Bisnagar*, that were lately such Potent Monarchs, are now reduc'd to a low Estate, and the former is even a Prisoner to the *Mogul*. But these Revolutions having not been particularly related by Travellers, and our Merchants frequenting only the Coasts, we have not been able to obtain a better account than is here given, which we hope is not very much different from the present State of the Country.

We shall next proceed to the other Peninsula, seated on the East of the Bay of *Bengal*, and stiled the Peninsula of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*.

## C H A P. XVII.

### India beyond the River Ganges.

For a Map, consult that of the *Mogul's* Empire.

I.  
Borneo.

THE Peninsula without or beyond the River *Ganges*, is Bounded on the West by the Bay of *Bengal*, and the Dominions of the Great *Mogul*; on the East by the Indian Ocean and *China*; on the North by *Tartary*; and on the South by the Indian Sea, the Bays of *Cochinchina* and *Siam*, and the Strait of *Malacca*. It is extended far from South to North, viz. from the second to the thirty fourth Degree of North Latitude, but is not proportionably Broad.

Though this Country be vulgarly call'd a Peninsula, it is only *Malacca*, the Southern part, that deserves that name; for though *Cochinchina* and *Cambodia*, be three parts surrounded by the Sea, *Pegu*, *Aracan*, *Ava*, *Tonquin*, and the other Countries comprehended in the extent above mention'd are seated on the main Land of *India*; and therefore the French very wisely divide it into, I. The Peninsula, and II. *India* beyond *Ganges*. Which are both divided in three large Parts, viz.

II.  
Draff.

- I. The Empire of *Siam*.
- II. The Kingdom of *Anna*.
- III. The Empire of *Ava*.

Which are again subdivided thus.

The Empire of <i>Siam</i> comprehends	Chief Towns.
	<i>Queda Torano Sambilacn</i>
Malacca	<i>Solenger Malacca</i>
	<i>Sincapora Ibor Pahang</i>
	<i>Poringaran Redaer</i>
	<i>Paxana Singora</i>
Syam K.	<i>Bordalong Ligor Paxanor</i>
	<i>Berdio Juncalan</i>
	<i>Tanasserim Moro Lion</i>
	<i>Banhook Odia Saccan</i>

The Kingdom of <i>Anna</i> contains	Marta-	<i>Martaban</i>	<i>Tuquala</i>
	ban K.	<i>Maranco</i>	<i>Macaon</i> .
Cambo-	dia K.	<i>Tarvana</i>	<i>Langor Carol</i>
		<i>Lauweck</i>	<i>Camboia</i> .
The Kingdom of <i>Anna</i> contains	Cochin-	<i>Bonten</i>	<i>Dinphaon Tachan</i>
		<i>Camelea</i>	<i>Haifo Caccian</i>
		<i>Chiampa</i>	<i>Sanfao Pulocacem</i> .
The Empire of <i>Ava</i> includes	Tonquin K.	<i>Cuassay</i>	<i>Cuadag Keccio</i>
		<i>Bodego</i> .	
The Empire of <i>Ava</i> includes	Pegu K.	<i>Jangoma</i>	<i>Manar Tangu</i>
		<i>Marsin</i>	<i>Pegu Siriaon</i>
		<i>Cosmi</i>	<i>Ledoa</i>
The Empire of <i>Ava</i> includes	Arracan K.	<i>Arracan</i>	<i>Sora</i>
		<i>Cadonascen</i>	
The Empire of <i>Ava</i> includes	Ava K.	<i>Chacimas</i>	<i>Tipoura Cassubi</i>
		<i>Boldia</i>	<i>Mandranella</i>
		<i>Canarana</i>	<i>Brama</i>
		<i>Transiana</i>	<i>Ava Prom</i>
		<i>Totay</i>	<i>Largaray Tolema</i>

Many other Kingdoms, almost as many as Towns, are nam'd by Travellers; but these Countries (except the Coasts) are so little known to us Europeans, that we cannot pretend to mention them all: what we have nam'd will serve to lead us through the whole Country; and according to the best Informations to be had, we shall set down what is most remarkable.

*Malacca*, formerly esteem'd so wealthy as to have had the Name of *Aurea Chersonesus*, is the most Southern Part of *India*, beginning from the first Degree of Latitude, and extending in a narrow Tract



Tract (surrounded by the Sea, except on the North) to the 11th. Degree of Latitude; or, according to others, but to the 9th. Deg. It is divided into many small Kingdoms denominated from the chief Towns, but the Kings are Vassals to the King of *Siam*, who is supreme Lord of the whole, except the Southern Coast, where the Dutch have got Possession. [*Malacca* is seen in the Map of the Islands] the chief Cities of it are on the Western Coast. *Quela*, *Torano*, *Simbilam*, *Solongor* and *Malacca* or *Malay*, the Metropolis, whence the whole Country and the neighbouring Strait take their Name; a rich and populous City and famous Mart, having a capacious Harbour, which is frequented by Ships from all parts of *India*. The Language of its Inhabitants, commonly call'd the *Malick*, is the finest and most pure of any in the East-Indies, and is generally understood by Merchants and Learned Men all over *India*. The City is guarded by a strong Castle, but was however taken by the Portuguese in the Year 1511. from the King of *Jer* who was then Master of it, and kept by them till 1641, when the Dutch turn'd 'em out, and have ever since possessed it. South from *Malacca* stands *Singapura*, seated (the *B. 20*) on a Promontory, and gives Name to the neighbouring Strait, and *Jer* a considerable Town with a good Haven. On the Eastern Coast are *Pelapa*, *Palingam* or *Palingaraon*, *Rahar*, *Panam* a noted Mart Town, in a fruitful Soil; and *Serama*.

IV. The Kingdom of *Siam*, or *Siam*, borders on the South upon *Malacca*, and is bounded on the North, by the Kingdom of *Bengal* as ally, on the South, by the Bay of *Siam*; on the East, by the Parts of *Cambodia*, and the Kingdoms of *Tanuma* and *Tanoo*; and on the West, by the Kingdom of *Marabon* and the Part of *Perak*: extending from the 9th. to the 15th. Degree of North Latitude, the Southern part, being the Isthmus of the Peninsula of *Malacca*, is narrow: but Northward it is of much larger extent. This Country yields for exportation, Cotton-Linens, Niper-Wine, Lacca, Palo d'aquila, Calamba, Sapan-wood, Camphora, Nutmegs and other Spices, Gold, Diamonds, Bezoar Stones, Silk, Musk, Sandal-wood and Ivory. In the mountainous Parts, a great number of Elephants are bred, and among others, some of a pure white Colour, which are particularly esteemed by the King, even so much as to take a Title from it, and calls himself King of the white Elephant.

This Kingdom, or Empire, comprehends several petty Kingdoms, deriving their Names from the Towns, which it will be sufficient only to recite in their Order: Near the Eastern Limits, are *Bordelong*, *Liger*, *Pasaur*, and *Berdio*, and on the other side are *Juncalan*, or *Juncalaon*, *Tanasserim*, a Sea-port Town and eminent Mart, affording good store of Wine, that is not unlike our Burnt Wine; *Lagor*, and *Moro*, *Liam* is seated on the innermost recess of the Bay of *Siam*, and near the Frontiers of *Cambodia*. In passing somewhat farther towards the North, we come to *Bankock*, near the Mouth of the River *Menam*, or *Manan*, and *Odu*, or *Odia*, otherwise call'd *India*, and *Siam*, a large, well fortify'd and magnificent City, seated in a spacious Plain, and on an Island made by the *Menam*: It is the Metropolis of the whole Empire of *Siam*, the Royal Seat,

and a noble Mart, where is found abundance of Gold, Silk, and other precious Merchandizes; seated on the mouth of the River *Menam*, being distant about 30 Leagues from the Sea-coasts, to the North, and 130 from the Town of *Pegu*, to the East, in the Latitude 12. 30. and Longit. 119. Lastly, above *Odia*, *Sacottay* has an advantageous situation on the same River.

V. The Kingdom of *Marabon* borders upon those of *Siam* and *Pegu*. It is a narrow Tract of Land lying along the Sea-Coast or Bay of *Pegu*, and abounds with Metals, medicinal Herbs, Corn, Oil and Fruits, Sealing Wax, and earthen Vessels. The Capital Town is likewise call'd *Marabon*, and stands on a Bay of the same Name; where great quantities of Porcellane, or *China*-ware, are frequently made and transported to other Parts. Farther towards the North, are *Marareo*; *Tuqualla*, otherwise call'd *Togualla* or *Tugalla*; and *Mucaon*, or *Macham*.

VI. The Kingdom of *Camboja*, *Camboia*, or *Cambodia* lies on the East of *Siam*, having *Cochinchina* on the North-East; and otherwise surrounded with the Sea, whereof that on the West is called the Bay of *Siam*, and the Eastern, of *Cochinchina* and *Chiampa*. It is water'd by the River *Mecon*, and its Towns on the Bay of *Siam*, are *Tarvana*, *Langor*, and *Carol*. The other Towns more remote from the Bay, are *Lauweck*, or *Lenweck*, otherwise call'd *Rebecca* on the River *Macon*, taken for the Capital, by *M. Baudrand*, but that honour is by others given to *Camboia*, or *Cambodia*, a noted Mart Town, seated also on the River *Mecon* 120 Miles more Southward, and not above 20 Leagues from the Sea.

VII. After having given a Description of the principal parts of the Empire of *Siam*, the order of the matter leads us to the Kingdom of *Anna*, (in *Latin*, *Regnum Annamiticum*, *sive Annanum*) i. e. *The Western*, so call'd, because it was sometime the Western Part of *China*: Its situation is between the Kingdom of *Siam*, the Empire of *Ava*, *China* and the Bay of *Tonquin*, and *M. Baudrand* divides it into the Kingdoms of *Cochinchina* and *Tonquin*.

VIII. *Cochinchina* is the Southern part of the Annamitic Kingdom, so call'd (as some will have it) by the *Portuguses*, as it were, *The Chinese Cochinchina*; by reason of the resemblance it bears with the Kingdom of *Cochin* in *Malabar*, and because of its neighbourhood to *China*. It is bounded on the West, by *Cambodia*; on the North, by the Kingdom of *Tonquin*; and on the East and South, by the Gulph of *Cochinchina*. The Soil is extremely rich, and brings forth abundance of Rice, with several sorts of Fruits; neither is there any want of Cinnamon, Pepper, Silk, the best kind of Metal, Rhinoceros's, Elephants of a large size: and convenient Harbours. This Country is govern'd by its own King, who is Tributary to the Emperor of *China*, and divided into Proper *Cochinchina* and *Chiampa*. *Chiampaa*, otherwise termed, *Chiampa*, *Chiapa* and *Tjompaa*, which some Authors unite to *Cambodia*, takes up the Southern Part of *Cochinchina*, and is dignify'd with the Title of a Kingdom, under the Dominion of the King of that Country; its Capital Town being *Pulocacem*, or *Pulocacem*. *Cochinchina*, strictly taken, is of a much larger Extent than *Chiampa*, and the Western Part of it is inhabited by the *Kemi*, a particu-



are at this day situated in the Northern Part of the People. The most remarkable Towers (according to *M. Tavernier*) are *Baton*, with an excellent Harbour: *Duphoni*, *Tachon*, *Camleca*, *Hidra*, a well fortified Place, *Arakon*, or *Tartam*, which is supposed a Royal Seat, where the *Cambodians* and *Portuguese* carry on a great Traffick, although *M. Tavernier* takes no notice of this Town: And *Sao*, formerly a large and eminent Mart-Town, which has fallen much to decay, even since its Harbour was choked up with Sand.

The other Part of the Annamitic Kingdom, is the Kingdom of *Tongson*, bounded on the South by *Cambodia*, on the East and North, by *Siam*; and on the West, by the Kingdom of *Burma*, and a certain People named *Lan*. The Air is temperate, and the Country which is for the most part *Champagne*, is sown with Corn and Wine; but abounds with Rice, Silk, Sugar, Oranges, Rhinoceroses, Peacocks, Hens and Turkeys. In this Kingdom are several Provinces, and many Cities, Towns and Villages; but the Europeans have little knowledge of them. Those of chief note (as *M. Tavernier* informs us) are *Cassan*, *Satan*, *Kan*, *San*, *San*, near the Mouth of a River, which divides the Town into two Parts, being the Capital of the Kingdom, where the King usually keeps his Court: and *Senge*, seated a little higher. The King of *Tongson* is very powerful, both by Sea and Land, and several Princes do him Homage for their respective Territories: nevertheless, he himself is obliged to pay Tribute to the Emperor of *China*.

X. It remains only to account for the third and last Part of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*; that is to say, the Empire of *Ava*, the Bounds of which on the South are the Empire of *Siam*; on the West, the Bay of *Bengall*, and the Empire of the Great *Mogul*; on the North, *Tartary*; and on the East, *China*, and the Kingdom of *Tonquin*: A great number of Territories are comprised within the Limits of this Empire, and in its Eastern Tract, towards the confines of *China*, several sorts of People are to be met with: particularly, the *Gacars*, or *Leis* of *Tonquin* and the *Laoes*, who are Vassals, or Tributary to the King of *Ava*. This Empire is likewise divided into many Kingdoms, the chief of which are those of *Pegu*, *Arracan*, and *Ava*.

XI. The Kingdom of *Pegu*, heretofore the largest and most potent, is now almost ruined by the neighbouring Kings of *Ava* and *Siam*, and takes up the most Southern Part of the *Asian* Empire; It borders up on the Kingdoms of *Siam*, and *Morichon*, and upon the Bay of the same Name, and is also washed by that of *Bengall*: Its Figure resembles that of a half-moon, and it is enriched with gold and Gems, which are said to be found in several Places, throughout the whole Eastern Continent, but here and in the Island of *Ceylon*, viz. Rubies, Topazes, Amethysts, Jacinths, Sapphires, &c. The Country likewise abounds with several sorts of Metal, Musk, Fruits, and Elephants, and (as they say) depends on the Jurisdiction of the Kingdom of *Ava*. The most eminent Towns of these Parts are *Fancoma*, or *Fangoma*, *Melan*, *Tongu*, *Marin* and *Pegu*, a famous Mart on a River of the same Name, generally reputed the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom,

and the Royal Seat, with a most stately Palace, which nevertheless is call'd *Siren*, by *M. Tavernier*. Over against the Mouth of the River *Pegu*, in the Bay of *Pegu*, appears the Island of *Siriun*, with a Town that takes its Name from it, and which other term *Siriun*: besides those of *Cosmi* and *Ledon*.

The Kingdom of *Arracan*, or *Aracam*, is situated in the middle between that of *Pegu* on the South, and the Territories of *Bengall* on the West, and is washed on the South by the Bay of *Bengall*. The chief Towns are, *Aracam*, near the Mouth of the River *Cosmin*, not far from the said Bay, the Capital of this Kingdom; being distant six Miles from the Sea-coasts, and 140 from the City of *Pegu*: *Sra*, and *Caloniscan*.

The remaining Part of the *Avan* Empire is known by the Name of the Kingdom of *Ava*, although it contains several Kingdoms, deriving their Denominations from particular Towns, of which the most remarkable, are *Chacomis*, *Tipora*, or *Tipra*, *Cassubi*, *Bellia*, *Mandranella*, *Canarana*, *Brama*, or *Brema*, *Tranliana*, *Ava*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, and of the whole Empire, seated on the River *Caypamo* or *Pegu*, where the King keeps his Court, and a great Trade is managed with Jewels and Musk: *Prom*, *Toray*, *Largway*, and *Tolema*.

The whole Country of *India* beyond the *Ganges* is water'd with several great Rivers, and the most Eastern of them is *Mecon*, or *Meton*: which flowing through the Territories of the *Laoes*, as also along the Confines of the Kingdoms of *Tonquin* and *Cambodia* falls into the Indian Sea, near the Bay of *Siam*. Four other Rivers, which surpass the rest, in many respects, take their Rise out of the Lake of *Chiamay*, in the most Northern Tract of this part of *India*, extending itself 180 Leagues in Compass, and are call'd *Menan*, *Caypamo*, *Cosmin* and *Caor*; the first of which runs into the Bay of *Siam*, and the three others into that of *Bengall*. The River *Menan*, being the largest and most Eastern, directs its course through the Kingdoms of *Ava*, *Pegu* and *Siam*, and discharges itself (as we have said) into the Bay of *Siam*. The *Caypamo*, otherwise call'd *Pegu*, flows through the Kingdoms of *Ava* and *Pegu*, after having water'd both the Cities that bear these Names, falls below the latter, into the Bay of *Pegu*, which is part of the Gulph of *Bengall*. The *Cosmin* waters the Kingdom of *Ava* and *Aracam*, and discharges itself into the Gulph of the same Name. Lastly, the *Caor*, after having likewise pass'd through the Kingdom of *Ava* and *Bengall*, falls into the Eastern Mouth of the *Ganges*, and through that into the Gulph of *Bengall*. These five Rivers, after the same manner as the *Nile* in *Egypt*, overflow the Lands lying round about, and render them extremely fruitful.

Before we proceed to the Empire of the Great *Mogul*, we cannot but take some notice of King *Opinions* *Solomon's Ophir*; concerning the situation of which there are different Opinions among the Learned; some take it to be *Hispaniola*, an American Island in the Northern Ocean; and others will have it to be *Peru*, the Western part of Southern *America*, on the *Pacifick* Sea. Again, some look for *Ophir* in the Eastern and Maritime part of *Africa*, where the Kingdom and City of *Zigala*, or *Zofala*, *Cassaria*:



*Cassaria*; or where *Mosambic*, a Sea-port Town stands, in the Southern Tract of *Zanguebar*. Several Authors place it in divers Territories of the *East-Indies*; many supposing it to be the *Taprobana* of the Ancients, and some make it the same with the Kingdom of *Pegu*. According to the Sentiments of *Mercator*, *Julius Scaliger*, *Rhamusius*, *Orosius*, *Sinkius* and *Linschoten*, it is the Island of *Sumatra*; but *Bochart*, (who also makes mention of another *Ophir* in *Arabia*, near the Country of the *Sabeans*) and others, fix it in the Isle of *Ceylon*: Neither are there wanting some Persons who avouch it to be the *Aurea Chersonesus*, now call'd *Malacca*; unless that former Term (as some maintain) be not a Proper Name, but common to the Gold-bearing Countries; by which consequently may be understood *Ceylon*, *Pegu*, *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, and all the Coasts of *India*, that afforded those Things, which are mention'd in the Sacred History. *Athanasius Kircher* is of opinion, That *Ophir* is an Egyptian Word, and signify'd among those People, a great part of *India*, viz. *Malabar*, *Ceylon*, *Malacca*, *Sumatra*, *Java*, the *Malacca-Isles*, and other Provinces, that yield good store of Gold. To conclude, I am apt to believe that the Sacred Text with all the Difficulties, may be very well explain'd, if *Ophir* were fix'd in the *East-Indies*, not in any one particular Place, but in all the Sea-coast, from the Gulph of *Bengall* Eastward, where those Merchandizes were produc'd, which King *Solomon's* Fleet convey'd from thence, after a Voyage of

three Years; not excluding *China* and the Islands of *Japan*.

As the Opinion of several Writers relating to the situation of *Ophir*, are very different, so their Sentiments are no less various with respect to King *Solomon's Tarsis* or *Tharsis*; which some will have to be the Mediterranean Sea, others the Indian Sea, and others, the Ocean. Some take *Tarsis* for *Tarsus*, a City of *Cilicia*, or the Country of *Cilicia* itself; and others suppose it to be *Tunis*, *Carthage*, or *Africa*. *Bochart* produces two distinct Places under the Term of *Tharsis*, viz. one in *Spain*, about the Mouth of the River *Batis*, or *Guadelquiver*, near *Cadiz*, or *Gibraltar* at the beginning of the Strait of the same Name; and the other, to which the Ships sail'd from *Eziongeber*, in the Indian Ocean; lying next to *Ophir*; and perhaps on the Promontory of *Cory*, which somewhat resembles the Spanish *Gibraltar*, and is now call'd *Cape Comorin*. There are also some Persons, who having compar'd the several Places of Scripture, concerning *Tarsis* and *Ophir*, are induc'd to believe, not without good ground, (in my Opinion) that they were the same, or at least neighbouring Countries, or that *Tarsis*, was a Town of the Country of *Ophir*, from which the Ships, because they were us'd to resort thither; took their Name, as at this Day the *Smyrna* Fleet derives theirs, from that noted Port: But it is difficult to determine where *Tarsis* was really situated.



## INDOSTAN or the Empire of the GREAT MOGUL.



1. **H**AVING pass'd through the Islands and the two Peninsulæ, we come now to the main Land of *India*, being the Empire of this great Monarch; formerly named *Indo-tan* or *Hindow's-Sea*, i. e. the Country of the *Hindows*, who (as we have elsewhere said) were the People that originally inhabited this Land. But the

Tartars about 300 Years ago having settled themselves here, and the latter Monarchs being of that Race, the Indians have given them the Name of *Moguls*, which in their Language signifies *White*, because these are not Yellow and Tawny like the ancient *Hindows*, but White and Red.



*Bounds.* The Bounds of *Indostan* are Great *Tartary*, on the North; the Peninsula within *Ganges*, or the Kingdoms of *Decan* and *Golconda*, and the Bay of *Bengall*, on the South; *India extra Gangem* and the Kingdom of *Thiber*, which is part of *Tartary*, on the East; and *Persia*, on the West. The form of the Country being almost square, and extending 1500 Miles from East to West; and 1200 Miles from North to South: That is to say, from the twentieth to the fortieth Degree of North Latitude, and from the eighty second to the hundred and twelfth (or if you reckon to the Eastern Bounds of *Candiana*, it will be found to extend to the 115th.) Degree of Longitude.

*Climate.* The Air and Soil of so large a Country must needs be very different: For the South Part lying within the Tropick, and from the middle of the third Climate, is excessive Hot; but as the Northern Part lies under the middle of the sixth Climate, it is there much more Temperate, and Mr. *Berneir* tells us that in the Kingdom of *Cassimeer* the Air is as Temperate as in *Europe*.

*Soil.* The Land in general is very well water'd by Rivers, and during the hottest Months, the rainy *Monsoons* (which we spoke of in the Account of *India* in general) cool the Air, and water the parched Earth, so as to render it in the main very Fertile; producing Rice, and other Corn in great Plenty, most delicious Fruits of divers kinds, as Oranges, Lemmons, and most of the other sorts found in *Europe*, besides divers proper to themselves, as Mangos, Cayans, Jambos, Ananas, Brindoins, Tamarinds or Indian-Dates, Ficus-Indica, Myrobalans, &c. with many Plants that are very beneficial, and afford considerable Traffick to the Inhabitants, viz. Cotton, Indigo, Opium, Bettelee, Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, &c. The Earth also yields them divers sorts of precious Stones, as Hyacinths, Granates, Jasper, Chrysolites, Amethysts, &c. also Diamonds and Rubies, but not so fine as those of *Golconda* and *Pegu*: and Minerals, as Salt-Petre, Sal-Armoniac, Borax, &c. also the Bezoar Stone found in the Stomach of a Wild Goat; and the Serpentine Stone, found in the Head of a Serpent, and esteem'd of great Virtue against Poison; with Rhubarb, Musk, Civet, Lacca, Camphor, Sandal-Wood, and other Druggs, Sugar, Ginger and Long-Pepper. All which together with the Manufactures, as Calicoes and Muslings of all the finest sorts, raw and wrought Silks of many kinds; Skreens, Cabinets, Scritores, and other very curious Wood-Works, and many pretty Toys; are Commodities that please the World so well, *Europe* especially of late Years, that they fetch vast sums of Money as well as all the Commodities of other Countrys, and exceedingly enrich this Emperor and his Subjects.

*II. Of the Inhabitants.* The Country therefore is exceeding Populous, and the King wonderfully rich and powerful, being absolute Lord and arbitrary Disposer of all his Subjects Persons and Estates; which makes that a great Part of the Land lies uncultivated: for Estates not descending to Children, and the Lands always at the Emperor's Command, the People have no inclination to grow rich in a visible manner, because that would cause their Destruction; and therefore their Wealth is commonly buried in the Earth, partly to conceal it, and chiefly to serve them in the other World,

according to their foolish Superstition. For the same reason their Buildings are generally poor and mean; none but the Emperor's Favorites daring to build a fine House lest he be turn'd out of it immediately.

But this mighty Monarchy is not of very ancient Date, for besides the *Hindons* already mention'd, we read in all Accounts of the ancient State of this Country, of the *Potans* a numerous People that possess'd *Bengall* and all the Provinces of this Empire, Eastward of the *Ganges*: and most of the other Provinces had particular Kings till the time of *Eckbar*, who was the Son of *Homayon*, whose Father *Mirzah Babor* descended from one of the Sons of the Great *Tamerlane*, was the first of the Tartar-Race which at present sits on this Throne.

The Story in short is thus. At the Death of *Tamerlan* which happen'd soon after the Year 1400, *Tartary* was divided among his Sons, in which Division *Mawarahnahara* otherwise call'd *Zagatha*, the Province that lies on the North of *Cabul* and *Cassimeer* (two Provinces of *India*) fell to the Lot of *Pir Mahomed*, Son to the eldest Son of *Tamerlan*, from whom descended, as we have said, *Mirzah Babor*; who being expell'd his own Country by the *Usbegs* his Neighbours, made himself Master of a great part of *Indostan*, and dying in the Year 1532, left it to his Son *Homayon*. He had Wars with his younger Brother that conspired against him, but was assisted by the Emperor of *Persia*, whose Daughter he married, and reigned till 1552, when dying he left his Kingdom to his Son

*Eckbar*, a Prince of great Valour, Wisdom and Fortune, to whom may more properly be imputed the Foundation of the present Monarchy; for it was he that extended it to the Grandeur we now see it, by the Conquest of *Tatta*, *Cambaya*, *Bengall*, *Chitor*, *Cassimeer*, and many other considerable Kingdoms. He died of a Poyson prepar'd for an Enemy, and by mistake taken by himself A. D. 1604, in the 53d. Year of his Reign: and left one Son named *Sha Selim*, who for rebelling against his Father had been imprison'd for some Years; and now at his Death some of the great ones endeavour'd to put him by, and advance his Son *Cusseroo* to the Throne; however, *Sha Selim* obtain'd the Crown, and took upon himself the Name of *Jehan-Guire*, or as it is corruptly writ-ten *Jangheer*: But as he had been an unnatural and ungrateful Rebel to his Father, he was now paid in his kind, and his Reign was full of Disturbances. His eldest Son *Cusseroo* began his Conspiracies with his Father's Reign, and in a little time appear'd at the Head of an Army against him, but was defeated and imprison'd the rest of his Life. After that his third Son *Curroone*, having had Success in the Conquest of *Decan*, and by that means obtain'd an Esteem in the Army, his Ambition prompted him to set up for himself; accordingly he declar'd War, and fought a long and hazardous Battle with the Emperor's Army, but was at last defeated and forc'd to fly. Soon after a Civil Dissention happen'd on Account of *Nourmahel*, one of the Emperor's Wives, whom he was exceeding fond of, and permitted to govern him and the Empire just as she pleas'd; which gave great Disgust to the Ministers of State, and made them raise an Army to separate the



King from this arbitrary Woman. And in Effect they loved both him and her, but at the Emperor's Promise of Amendment released her, and soon after he made escape; so that the Lords for their safety joined themselves with *Gurane*, by whom *Shah-Jehan* had been killed, and *Perias* the second Brother was dead, so that *Gurane* was now the eldest of *Jehan-Guire's* Sons. These Misfortunes broke his Heart, and *Jehan-Guire* died in the Year 1607, naming Sultan *Buluchi* the Son of *Gurane* for his Successor. But he was opposed, first by the ambitious *Normah*, who resolved to set up the fourth Brother Sultan *Sheriar*, to whom she had married her Daughter; but she was soon defeated by *Buluchi*, and *Sheriar* committed to close Imprisonment, and his Eyes put out; and next by *Gurane*, who during the absence of *Buluchi* in his Expedition against *Sheriar* got Possession of *Agra*, and caused himself to be proclaimed Emperor by the Name of *Shah-Jehan*; and soon after confirmed himself on the Throne by the Deaths of *Buluchi*, *Sheriar*, the Sons of *Perias*, and all the other Princes of the Blood, whom by the Assistance and Contrivance of *Asaph-Jan*, the Instrument of all the Male administration in the late Reign, he caused to be murdered by Villains in the Castle of *Lahor*. But as he ascended the Throne by these bloody Steps, he was fain to be very cautious in his Government, and endeavour by mild and gentle treatment to sweeten the Minds of his Subjects and keep them firm to him. He was kept the more in awe by a counterfeit *Buluchi*, who was cherished and entertained by the Emperor of *Peria* as the true one, and ready to be made use of if Occasion offer'd. So that up in the whole, the Reign of *Shah-Jehan* was very peaceable and happy to the People, till the latter end of it, when through the Ambition of his Sons there were bloody Wars for four or five Years. *Shah-Jehan* had four Sons, *Dara-Shah*, Sultan *Seraj*, *Aureng-Zebe*, and *Mirad-Bachke*. Who when they grew up manifested the same Ambition their Father had been guilty of: wherefore to prevent Muchier he separated them, by appointing them Governors of Provinces at distant Parts of the Empire, the eldest only being allow'd to stay at Court. But in the Year 1655, the Emperor falling into a Sickness that oblig'd him to deny access to his Person, occasion'd a Suspicion that he was dead: which coming to the Princes Ears, they immediately each set forward to oppose their Elder Brother, and push for the Crown: Sultan *Seraj* arriv'd first, and was first defeated, but escap'd with Life and Liberty. *Aureng-Zebe* pretended no Ambition, but contenting himself with a private Life, joined with his younger Brother *Mirad-Bachke*, who both together marched against *Dara* the eldest, defeated his Army, and seized the Castle of *Agra*, and the Person of the Emperor. But as soon as he had done his Business, *Aureng-Zebe* threw off the Mask and seiz'd *Mirad-Bachke*, whom he had only made a property of, that he might the easier defeat *Dara*, who fled to *Guzerat*, and endeavour'd to make Head again, but by the Subtily of *Aureng-Zebe* he was defeated in all his Designs, and hunted about from place to place, till at last he fell into the Trap, and was delivered to him; who having expos'd him in view all over *Agra*, sent him Prisoner to *Guzerat*, where *Mirad-Bachke* was

also confin'd; and soon after, even *Mumood* the eldest Son of *Aureng-Zebe* was committed to the same place by his Father, though he had defeated his Uncle Sultan *Seraj*, the only remaining Brother; who escaping with Life, and flying to *Aram*, was there killed: But this and the seizing the Castle of *Agra*, were Services too great to be given to a jealous Prince; for instead of creating a Love for his Son, it caused him to suspect that he might possibly make use of the Reputation and Interest he had obtain'd in the Army to an ill purpose, as he express'd in a Letter that fell into the Hands of *Mumood*; which so startled him that he fled to his Uncle *Seraj* and offer'd him Assistance, but was afterwards prevail'd upon to return to his Father upon Promise of Pardon; which notwithstanding he was committed close Prisoner. The Son of *Dara* had also been secur'd, and finally, as we have said, Sultan *Seraj* kill'd in *Aram*; which left *Aureng-Zebe* the sole Possession of the Empire: accordingly in the Year 1660 he caused himself to be crowned, though his Father was then living, and continued living till the Year 1666. Thus *Aureng-Zebe* ascended the Throne, which he still enjoys this present Year 1700, if not dead very lately.

The Wealth and Extent of this Prince's Dominions, together with the absolute Power he exercises, must necessarily render him one of the greatest and most puissant Emperors of the East; and according to the Vanity of the Princes of that part of the World, he assumes most pompous Titles, expressing himself the greatest Monarch of the World. His Revenues arise, 1. By Tributes of the Provinces, which we are told has amounted to 30 Millions Sterling per Annum. 2. The Emperor is general Heir to all his Subjects. 3. Presents are made to him upon every Access to his Person, besides many annual Presents. 4. By Duties on Goods exported and imported. And 5. By Merchandizing himself. And his mighty Wealth appears by the Magnificence of his Court, wherein he has seven Thrones, one whereof is of Massy Gold, and so beset with Diamonds and other precious Stones, as to have cost, they say, above twelve Millions of Pounds Sterling; this is call'd *Tamerlan's* Throne, and was finished by *Shah-Jehan*; the rest also are exceeding rich. His Armies are vastly large, 40000 Elephants, and 250000 Horses are constantly maintain'd, and an infinite number of Men in constant pay.

These Princes of the Tartar Race were all of the Mahometan Religion, wherein *Shah-Jehan* especially was very zealous; and *Aureng-Zebe* made his Sanctity a great Pretence for opposing his Brothers, the one having no Religion and the other that of *Hily*; and in prosecution of that Zeal, after he came to the Crown he persecuted the *Indians*, and hath in a manner expell'd their Religion; so that *Mahometanism* is at present the ruling Religion in *Indo-Jan*.

What ought more to be said of *Indo-Jan*, such as the wild Beasts, Mountains, ancient Religion, and Inhabitants, Discovery and first European Voyages thither: We have already spoken of in our account of *India* in general. As also of the Rivers, but of these however the Reader will find a more particular account at the end of the description of the Country; the division whereof is the next thing to be mentioned.



III. *Indofan* is by the Inhabitants divided into twenty general Governments called *Soubahs*, which are subdivided into many lesser Governments under the name of *Serkars*, i. e. Questorships. But Foreigners usually consider this Empire as Compounded of several Kingdoms, or large Provinces; which according to the different Computation of Authors are reckon'd 35, 38, 39, or 40 in Number. We shall choose to follow this manner of Division, as being the only one express'd in our Maps. And then we find seven Kingdoms or Provinces on the East, Five on the South, Thirteen in the middle, Seven on the North, And Seven on the West. The names whereof with the chief Cities in each are shewn in this Table.

On the East lye these Seven Kingdoms.

	Chief Cities.
Kanduana	<i>Karakantaka.</i>
Udessa	<i>Jekanet Nechal</i>
Iessual	{ <i>Rajapore Suigee Brinkalatte</i> <i>Masse.</i>
Mevat	<i>Narval Higipore Navagur</i>
Gor	<i>Gor</i>
Pitan	<i>Pitan Camoro</i>
Patna	<i>Patna</i>

On the South are these five Kingdoms.

BENGAL	{ <i>Heliobass Bannares Nudda</i> <i>Cannouwe Sasron Rotas</i> <i>Soumelpore Pattana Gowra</i> <i>Malda Cassimbazar Rojomahol</i> <i>Dacca Satigan Chaigam</i> <i>Bengal Oueguely or Huguely</i> <i>Ballasore Arsepore Piepely</i> <i>Bangia Angelim</i>
Orixa	{ <i>Orixa Ramana Carapara Palhor</i> <i>Manicapatan</i>
Berar	<i>Schapor.</i>
Chandis or Kandis	{ <i>Bramppore Hassera Taulnere</i> <i>Mandose Canom Sadiassa Caddor</i> <i>Sawbon Daytatote Netherby</i> <i>Salote</i>
The Salfette Islands	{ <i>Bombay Island.</i> <i>Conorein Island.</i> <i>Carania Island.</i> <i>Elephantino Island.</i>

GUZERAT or Cambaya	{ <i>Suratt Damaon Basaim Baroche</i> <i>Goga Antote Cambaya Dio Island</i> <i>Pate Mangerol</i> <i>Amadabat Faquette</i>
--------------------	--

In the Midland are these Thirteen Kingdoms or Provinces.

Chitor	{ <i>Chitor Chetipore Billmal Mudre</i> <i>Rudrepore</i>
Malvay	{ <i>Ugen or Ougel Nader</i> <i>Rantipore Calleada Serampora</i> <i>Syranga or Seronga</i>

Raja Ranus	<i>Gurchito Candra</i>
Bando	<i>Bando Adsmere Goday Jeloure</i>
Gualeor	<i>Gualeor or Gualera</i>
Narvar	<i>Gebud Ouden</i>
Sambal	<i>Sambal Sanfaran</i>
Bacar	<i>Ricanor</i>
Jamba	<i>Calfery Serenagar Jamba</i>

AGRA	{ <i>Agra Secandra Fettipore</i> <i>Samonger Doulpore Bayna</i> <i>Itay.</i>
------	--

DELLY	<i>Fehan-abad Delly Vetus</i>
Jenupar	<i>Jenupar Syrina Tanassery</i>

Pengab or Lahor	{ <i>Lahor Fettypore Temmery</i> <i>Emenbade</i>
-----------------	---

On the North lye these Seven Kingdoms.

Naugracut	<i>Naugracut Callamacha</i>
Siba	<i>Hardware Serengar</i>
Kakares	<i>Dankalen Purbola</i>
Bankish	<i>Beishur.</i>
Cassimeer	{ <i>Cassimeer Syrenaker Achiavel</i> <i>Sand-Brary</i>
Attock	{ <i>Attock Candabara Puckow</i> <i>Daddos Duchu Langora Vageston</i> <i>Hassanabdal</i>
Cabul	{ <i>Cabul Ghidel Parna Cheree-cullow</i> <i>Gorehand.</i>

The West part contains these Kingdoms or Provinces.

Multan	<i>Multan Alican Seerpore</i>
Haican	<i>Chatzan Uche</i>
Buckor	<i>Buckor Suckor Rawree</i>
Country of Hendowns	{ <i>Hendown</i> <i>Mearta</i>
Jesselmeer.	<i>Jesselmeer Ammer Radimpore</i>
Soret	<i>Fanagar Pacho</i>
Tatta, or Sindi	{ <i>Tatta Sindi Lourebander</i> <i>Diul</i>

Two Provinces sometimes attributed to *Persia*, and sometimes to *Indofan*, viz.

Cabul	<i>Cabul</i>
Candahara	<i>Candahar</i>

The chief Rivers of the Great Mogul's Empire, falling into	{ The Bay of Bengall { <i>Ganges, receiving</i> { <i>Canda,</i> <i>Guenga</i> { <i>Persely,</i> <i>Guenga</i> { <i>Gemene or</i> <i>Guenga</i> { <i>Semena.</i>
	{ The Bay of Indus { <i>Padder</i> <i>Indus receiving</i> { <i>Chanab</i> <i>Indus receiving</i> { <i>Behar</i> <i>Indus receiving</i> { <i>Nilab</i> <i>Indus receiving</i> { <i>Ravee</i> <i>Indus receiving</i> { <i>Caul.</i>



IV. The particular description of each Province and City is as follows.

Entering the *Mogul's* Empire from *India* beyond *Ganges*, last described, we meet with these four Kingdoms, *viz.* *Kaniana*, *Udja*, *Jesul*, and *Mevat*; which make the Eastern Frontier of the Empire: and lie from North to South in the same order, between the River *Perish* and the *Bay of Bengal*. *Kaniana* the most Northern is situate between the 34th and the 35th Degr. of Latitude in the Northwest of the Lake *Samana*, and near the Head of the River *Perish*. It is a Country situate so far out of the way of Trade that we know little of it, only that the chief City is *Kaniana*, situate on a small River that falls into the *Perish*. The Kingdom of *Udja* lies next to it in the South, and is a large Province whose chief City *Jesul* stands in its Southern Limits. Besides which *Nichal* is represented by Travellers as a very considerable City, consisting of stately Buildings of Brick and Stone like ours. The Country enjoys a temperate Air and good Soil; inhabited by Hindoos of civil Nature; and governed by a *Rajah* or Prince, who owes no Subjection to the *Mogul*. *Jesul*, a Province of smaller extent but more frequented, lies Southward from *Udja*, on both sides the River *Gumtrun* which falls into the *Perish*: the chief City is *Rajapore*, seated on the River *Gumtrun*, in the Lat. 31. 12. Longitude 117. *Saree* or *Jamabad*, seated also on the same River, is sometimes visited by our English Merchants; and in the Northward stand *Brinkatara* and *Mafra*, other Cities of this Kingdom. *Mevat* lies to the South of *Jesul*, and the North of *Bengal*: a small Province, whose Capital City is *Nawal*, seated in the Latitude of 39 D. Several other Towns of note are in this Province, whereof *Herrera* and *Nagpur* have the advantage of English Factories established in them.

Adding to these Kingdoms, on the West, between the Rivers *Perish* and *Ganges*, lie the three Kingdoms or Provinces of *Parna*, *Pura*, and *Gor*. *Gor* the most Northward lies on the Borders of *Tartary* and *China*, having *Kalana* on the South: the chief City of the same Name is seated on the River *Perish* near its Fountain, in the Latitude 35. 30. *Pura* adjoins to it on the South: West a large Country govern'd by two *Raja's* tributary to the *Mogul*: the Northern part is subject to *Raja-Padma* whose chief Seat is *Canon*; and the South part is commanded by *Raja-Mugger*. The Capital City of the whole is *Puran*, seated on the East side of the River *Gunda*, which rising in the neighbouring Mountains falls into the *Ganges* in the Latitude of 35. *Pura* another very large Province lies on the South of *Puran*, between the two Rivers *Perish* and *Ganges*, whose confluence is its Southern boundary: the chief City of the same Name stands on the *Perish*, in the Latitude of 35. and is said to have received its name from the *Port*, a Trade here very considerable.

V. *BENGALL* the largest and most famous Kingdom of the *Mogul's* Empire, lies on the South and West of the Countries we have mention'd, along the Coast in the inner recess of the *Sinus Gangeticus*, otherwise call'd the Bay of *Bengal*, and the Banks of the River *Ganges* which here falls into the same Bay: extending from the frontiers of the Kingdom of *Tartary*, and the River *Canon* on the East; to

the boundaries of *Orissa* and the mouth of the River *Ganges* on the West; which is reckon'd 220 Leagues: and from the Sea Coast in the South, it extends Northward, to the borders of *Sambal* a little beyond the River *Gemini*; in the Latitude of 37. D. which makes about 127. Leagues. The Air of this Country is temperate and healthy as any in *Indu* except *Cassimere*: and the Soil is rich and fruitful, being water'd with the River *Ganges*, that runs through the middle of it from North to South, and divides itself into two large branches, which are again subdivided into many smaller, before they fall into the Bay; the same River receives also divers smaller ones: and Rice, other Grains and Fruits are so plentifully produc'd here, that *Bengall* is sometimes call'd the Storehouse of *Asia*; abounding also with Oxen, Sheep, Hogs, Venison, Fowl and Fish: abundance of Elephants are found in the Woods, and made tame and very useful to the Inhabitants; here are also Rhinoceroses, Tygers and many other wild Beasts. For exportation they have these useful Commodities, *viz.* Ginger, Long-Pepper, Cotton, Silk, Sugar, Aloes, Civit, Walking-Canes, &c. but especially Manufactur'd Cotten-Linnen, as Muzlings, Calicoes, &c. of the finest sorts; Silks and Herba Stuffs, as Bengals, Elache's, &c. and Raw Silk of the finest sort next the *Persian*. The Inhabitants are employ'd either in manufacturing their Silk, Cotten and Herba, (which by the way, is the Rind of a Plant that being pill'd off yields a fine thread, which is woven into those pretty Stuffs, known to us by the name of this Country) or in Merchandizing, whereby they are enrich'd, and Civiliz'd so far as from vicious Pirates to become of a very courteous and affable disposition. This Kingdom had formerly a Prince of its own, who was a Potent Monarch, but overcome by the great *Mogul* in 1582, and the Country made a Province of his Empire. Afterwards the Governors he had appointed in it, set up for themselves; so that *Shah-Jehan*, the Father of *Aurang-Zeb*, was put to the trouble of conquering it a second time; since when it has been undisputedly subject to that Emperor: and is divided into four Parts, *viz.* 1. *Bengall* proper, otherwise nam'd the Government of *Jagannet*, being the Maritime part. 2. *Patana* the Eastern Part. 3. *Elaba*, or *Heliobass*, the most Northern; and 4. *Pratap*, Midland. Before we proceed to the account of the Cities 'tis necessary to Correct an Error very common in the Maps, which set down *Bengall* as the chief City, whereas indeed there is either no such Town, or at most but a very obscure one; our Merchants and Sea-men that have been there so often, know no such place, and according to the accounts of the situation of the City *Bengall*, it should seem they mean *Charigan*, a place of considerable Traffick, call'd *Porto Maiore* by the *Portuguese*, seated at the mouth of the Eastern Branch of the *Ganges*, over against the supposed *Bengall*. The chief Cities of this Kingdom being *Heliobass* or *Praya*, suppos'd to be the *Palibothra* of *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*, which was the Metropolis of the *Gangarides*; it stands in the Northern Confines, at the Confluence of the *Gemene* with the *Ganges*, and is a very strong Fortification, built about a hundred Years ago, being a Stone Castle with a stately Palace, the Seat of the Governor of this part of the Kingdom; surrounded with three Walls



Walls and a deep Moat. The Indians pretend to shew here the Sepulchre of *Adam* and *Eve*, in an ancient Subterranean Cave. *Bannares*, on the East side the *Ganges*, is noted for an Indian University, as is also *Nadwa*. *Cannowre* on the West side the *Ganges*. *Saferon* near the great Pool *Ban-rea*, a spacious City of high Houses, built of a Fossil dug in the neighbouring Quarries and built to the hardness of Stone. *Roras*, somewhat distant from the River to the South-West, is a Fortress seated on an inaccessible Hill, and surrounded with three Moats full of Fish, and the Walls of that extent, as to inclose large Fields; all which render the place impregnable. *Soumelpore*, notable for the fine Diamonds found in its River, supposed to be wash'd down from the neighbouring Mountains. *Pattana*, seated on the West side of the *Ganges*, and not on the East as some Maps place it, is for Largeness and Richness not exceeded by any in the Kingdom; but its buildings are not answerable, being but low and mean; 'tis two Miles in length and very populous. This is the Residence of a Governor of the neighbouring Country, and the Seat of an English and a Dutch Factory, and especially notable for Salt Petre. A little below *Patana* lie the Ruins of *Gorā*, once the largest City in the World, being a hundred Miles in compass: It was the Seat of twenty six Kings of *Bengall*, every one whereof dildaining to live in the House of his Predecessor, built a Sumptuous Palace, which chiefly contributed to the mighty extent of the Place: thus far Mr. *Marschal*, an English Traveller in those parts. But Father *Tosi* with more probability tells us, the Walls are nine Miles in compass, and enclose the Ruins of many noble Palaces; at present the place is almost depopulated. *Malda*, a little distant from the River, is a large Town with a good Trade, and the Seat of an English Factory. *Cassimbazar*, seated at the Efflux of the Eastern Arm of the *Ganges*, in the Latitude of 26° D. is a City of very great Traffick, especially for Silk, whereof 'tis computed 20 thousand Balés are annually exported. *Rojomahal*, on the East side of the *Ganges* at a little distance from it, and on a small River that falls into it, and made a commodious Haven, which brought a considerable Traffick to the Town; which is wellbuilt, and was sometime the Seat of the Governor of *Bengall*. But *Tavernier* says the Haven is choak'd up, and the Trade remov'd to *Dacca*, somewhat more to the East, and seated on the little branch that runs cross the Island, made by the two Arms of the *Ganges* in Lat. 24. 30. and extends in Length, along the Banks of the River, 5 or 6 Miles. It is the Seat of the Viceroy or Governor of *Bengall* proper, and a place of very great Trade; resorted to by Merchants from *China* and divers parts of *India*; and is adorn'd with many good Buildings, especially the Houses wherein the English and Dutch Factories reside. 'Tis exceeding populous, very rich, and abounds with all Necessaries. *Satigan* stands near the same Latitude as *Dacca*, on the Eastern branch of the *Ganges*, a little below where the River *Coor* falls into this Stream; and was a place of considerable Trade, but declin'd since *Huguely* is grown up. *Chatigan* stands on the same branch of the *Ganges* near it's mouth; and is a place of considerable Traffick, and by way of Eminence call'd *Porto majore* by the Portuguese. Over a-

gainst it on the same River, the common Maps place *Bengall*; whereof we have already spoken. *Huguely* or *Oneguely* stands on the Western or main Stream of the *Ganges*, on a small Island in the middle of the River, about 30 Leagues from its mouth; in the Latitude 24. 10. Longitude 106. 30. of whose Original we are told, that the Portuguese about 100 Years ago came hither, and built little Huts to vend the Commodities they had brought from divers neighbouring Parts, and were so far encourag'd by *Eckbar*, the Mogul then Reigning, that they built a City, and had the entire possession of it; till turning Pirates the Mogul expel'd them; but the City however increas'd, and is become a large, populous and wealthy place; the chief in all these Parts for European Trade, at least for the English; who have a very considerable Factory here: as have also the Dutch. Farther to the South-West on the Bay of *Bengall*, and at the Mouth of the River *Guenga*, in the Lat. 22. Longit. 103. stands *Ballasore*, formerly nam'd *Ballapur*; a reasonable good Haven and a Town of great Trade; where also the English have a Factory. But this and *Huguely* have both the misfortune to stand in a bad Air, which makes them at sometimes of the Year subject to unhealthiness: *Arsapore* stands on the same Coast, somewhat more to the South: which, as also *Piepely*, *Bangia* and *Angelim*, are Towns of Trade. Many other considerable Towns are in this Kingdom; but these are the chief that are known to us Europeans, and as many as the brevity of this work will let us enumerate: and therefore shall pass on to

*Orixa*, a Province formerly part of the Kingdom of *Golconda*, but now entirely cut off, and made part of the Mogul's Empire; it lies between the River *Guenga*, on the North, and *Golconda*, on the South; that is from the 20th. to the 23d. Degree of Latitude. The chief Town which gives Name to the Province, stands in the middle of it on a Hill, 100 Miles from the Sea. Besides which *Ramana*, seated on the River *Guenga*; *Carapara*; *Manicapatam* and *Palhor* on the Coast, are reckon'd principal Towns of this Province: whose South part bears the Title of *Talengand*, and is the ninth of the twenty general Governments of the upper *India*. From hence crossing the River *Guenga*, we enter the Kingdom of *Bera*, a small Province seated on the West of *Bengall*, on the North of *Orixa*; and between them two *Malway* and *Chandis*. The chief City is *Schapor*, not very considerable, nor are there other Towns of any great note mention'd by Travellers in this Country. *Chandis* or *Kandish* that lies next to it is a Kingdom of larger Extent; bounded on the South, by *Orixa* and *Dacca*; on the North, by *Malway* and *Chitor*; on the East, by *Bengall*, and on the West, by *Guzarat*. It has the advantage of a good Soil, being water'd with the *Guenga*, and the River *Tapte* which rises in its Mountains and passing Westward falls into the Bay of *Cambaya* at *Surat*. Upon this River stands the Capital City *Bramapore*, whence sometimes the whole Kingdom is denominated, a large place, but the Buildings low, and the Air unhealthy; it is fortified with a strong Castle and reckon'd a good Frontier, where the Governor resides, who is commonly a Son or some near Relation to the Emperor. The Town is noted for the manufacture of fine Calicoes interwoven with Gold, which they vend abroad to di-



vers Countess: A few Miles North from *Bram-pore* stands *Hajera*, a Fortrefs of impregnable Strength, being seated on a craggy Mountain, and furnished with 600 peices of Ordinance. *Taul-neere*, seated on the River *Tape* or *Sralley*, is a considerable City, as is also *Mondow*, on the Frontiers of *Canor*. *Canor*, a City from which the Country is by some named the Government of *Canor*; in whose neighbourhood stand *Sattisee*, *Cattor*, and *Sarbor*. The South part of this Kingdom is inhabited by *Barears*, who were for some time govern'd by a King of their own: Their chief Towns are *Donaire* (whereof the King was allow'd to keep his Title after the *Mogul* had conquer'd him) *Neikerbery* and *Syloze*: And on the Mountains in the South-West is the Country formerly possess'd by a certain *Raja* nam'd *Par-aspha*.

The Kingdom of GUZARAT, or as the Portuguese term it CAMBATA, lies next to *Chandis*, on the West: being bounded by *Chandis* and *Canor*, on the East: the Indian Ocean, on the West and part of the South; the Kingdom of *Decan* bounding the other part on the South; and *Jesselmere*, on the North. It extends from the 19th. to the 25th. Degr. of North Latitude, that is, about 360 Miles from North to South; and from the 53d. to the 92d. Degr. of Longitude, which makes about 150 Miles from East to West: The two Parts of *Tombura*, on the West, and *Indur*, on the East, make the greatest part of it a kind of Peninsula: and the whole Country lying either in the Sea or on the navigable Rivers of *Tapea*, the *Gemon*, and the *Padder*: all which run through it, and fall into the two Bays above mention'd: render this a Land of great Traffick; the Soil also producing not only all Necessaries for Life, but likewise great plenty of Cotton, Indigo, Opium, Alkes, and many other Drugs; Crystal, Cornelians, Rubies, Sapphires, Agates, Topazes, Jasper, and other precious Stones. The Inhabitants also make fine Cotton-Linners, Silks, Cabinets, &c. The exportation of these Commodities enrich the Inhabitants, and the Customs yield the *Mogul* a vast Revenue, insomuch, that *Guzarat* is look'd upon as one of the best Jewels in his Crown. The Tropick of *Cancer* passes through the vertical Point of *Amalabar*, so that the greatest part of this Kingdom lies in the Terrid Zone, and renders the Air so scorching, that if the rainy Season should fail (as it did in the Year 1630) a Famine would ensue. This Kingdom was formerly govern'd by its own Prince; but is now a Province of the *Mogul's* Empire, and govern'd by his Deputy, stiled Sultan, who resides in *Amalabar*. But the Western Part is inhabited by *Rasbaras*, who are notorious Rebbers and Outlaws.

Before we proceed to the Cities of this Kingdom, we will speak of the Jurisdiction of *Basaim*, which is the Coast on the South of it towards *Decan*, and comprehends the Island of *Bombay*, with two or three other small Islands, and the City of *Basaim*, formerly subject to the King of *Guzarat*, but conquer'd by the Portuguese. The City *Basaim* stands on the Continent, in the Latitude of 10. 30. of magnificent Structure and good Strength, being surrounded with high Walls, wherein are eleven Bastions, and the Town inhabited by about 300 Families of Portuguese Gentry and Nobility;

govern'd by a Captain with twelve Assistants, whose Power extends over a great many neighbouring Villages and Islands. *Bombay* that *Bombay* was formerly one of them, was surrender'd to the English in the Year 1663, according to the Articles of Marriage between King *Charles II.* and *Denna Catherina*. This Island is therefore possess'd by the English Nation, and though a small one, being but 20 Miles round, is considerable on Account of its commodious Haven (whence they say the Island was named *Bon-bay*) and Situation for suppressing the Malabar Pirates who used to infest these Coasts: It is situate over against *Chaul* in *Decan*, in the Latitude of 18 D. The chief Town is about a Mile long, and pretty well fortified, having been considerably improv'd since the English have had it. The Island was for a few Years govern'd by the King's Deputy, but at the Request of the East-India Company, it was granted to them under Homage, and has been ever since under the Jurisdiction of the President of *Surat*, who appoints a Deputy Governor here. The Land has Woods of Coco-Trees, which with Salt is the chief Product of the Island.

On the North of *Bombay* lies the Island *Canorein*, denominat'd from the City, once famous, but now ruin'd: the chief Place now being *Tanaw*. This Island is a fertile Land of about 70 Miles Circumference, and possess'd by the Portuguese. The Islands *Carania* and *Elephantino*, possess'd also by the Portuguese, lye near *Bombay*, and are comprehended among those called the *Salsette* Islands. From whence we shall now pass to the Continent.

The chief Cities of *Guzarat* are, *Surat* seated at the Mouth of the River *Tape* or *Sralley*, in the Lat. 21. D. Longit. 91. D. a place formerly inconsiderable, but in these last hundred Years, by means of the English and Dutch Trade, it is increased to a large, populous, and rich City, surrounded with a good Wall, and guarded by an old Castle said to be founded by *Tamerlain*; the Houses in general are low and mean, but the English Company's House is a noble Building of squared Stone; as is also those of the Dutch and French; and some of the Banians and Moorish Merchants have fine high Houses with Terraces at top. The City is guarded by 1500 Soldiers, besides the Garison and Governor in the Castle, and 30 or 40 peices of Ordinance: The Haven has a Barr of Sand cross it, so that the Ships of greater Burthen are fain to lye without, at Swally-hole about 4 Leagues from the Town. But notwithstanding this Strength the famous *Raja Sevagy* (of whom we have spoken in our Account of *Decan*) entred the City in the Year 1663, burnt and pillaged it, carrying away a mighty Booty; at which time the English President Sir *George Oxendine* so well defended himself and the Merchants, that not only the Company gave him a Medal, but the Emperor presented him with a Robe of Honour, and gave our Nation an abatement of 2 and half *per Cent.* in the Customs; but this has been since revok'd. *Surat* is seated in a fertile, pleasant Country, and is a place of vast Traffick for all sorts of Indian Commodities, which being begun and carried on chiefly by the English, our Nation hath peculiar Privileges above others. The Company's Affairs are manag'd here by a President and Council, who direct and govern the Factories at *Amalabar*, *Agria*, and



and other inland Places; also the Trade to *Persia*: and in general, all the Factories Westward of *Cape Comorin*. The President lives in great State, being always honourably attended, and hath a Salary of 500 *lib. per Annum*. *Damaon*, possess'd by the Portuguese, stands about 50 Miles South from *Surat*, and is a Place of good Strength and Trade. *Baroche*, about as far North from *Surat*, stands on the River *Gemene*, which 20 Miles below falls into the Bay of *Cambaya*: It is pleasantly seated on a Hill, adorn'd with handsome Buildings, and enrich'd by a very good Trade in Cotton-Linens, which are made here, and better whiten'd than elsewhere, and for that reason the English have a House there. *Cambaya*, whence, as we have said, the Kingdom is sometime denominated, is seated on the inmost recess of the Bay to which it gives name, in the Latitude of 22 D. Longitude 90 D. It is describ'd by Authors as a place of much better Structure than the Cities of *Indostan* commonly are, and was a Place of very great Traffick, so as to be call'd the *Cairo of India*: But the Sea is fallen away, so as to leave the Haven quite dry at low water; and that perhaps may be the reason that the Trade also has left it. The ebbing and flowing of the Tide here is very remarkable, for it rolls in with such impetuosity, that an Arrow out of a Bow cannot keep pace with it, and falls away as fast. *Goga*, a City of good Trade with a safe Harbour, stands on the West-side of the same Bay, about 20 Leagues from *Cambaya*; it was burnt by the Portuguese at the time of the Siege of *Dio*. As was also *Antote*, once a considerable City on the same Bay. In the middle of the South Coast of the Peninsula of *Cambaya*, lies the Island and City of *Dio*, in the 20 D. 4. M. of North Latitude, and the 87 D. of Longit. It is a small peice of Land, of about a League in Length, and half so much in Breadth, which is cut off from the main Land by a small Branch of the Sea that flows between. The Portuguese got footing there in the Year 1535, and built a Fort; which was soon after attacked by *Batur Khan* of *Guzerat*, but so well defended, that he was forc'd to raise his Siege; afterwards in the Year 1546, his Son *Mamood* besieged it again with an Army of 10000 Men, who for several Months attack'd it with great Vigor, but were so valiantly oppos'd by the Portuguese, that in the end they were beaten off, and have never since return'd. The City was formerly very considerable, on Account of the Trade maintain'd by its Inhabitants to *Persia* and *India*: But it is now declin'd, and neither the City nor Fort much noted at present. *Pate*, seated on the same Bay, a few Leagues West from *Dio*, is a large City, and was formerly considerable for its fair Buildings and great Trade; but the *Rasbootes* have often plunder'd it and spoil'd both. *Mangerol*, still more Westward, is a Place of good Trade for Cotton-Linnen, &c. and has an English Factory. *Faquette*, on the Western point of this Peninsula is a fair Town with a famous Pagod or Indian Temple, which sometimes gives Name to the Country. Lastly, *Amadabat*, a very large City, seated within Land, about 18 Leagues North from *Cambaya*, being the Seat of the Vice-Roy, may properly be reckon'd the Metropolis of the Kingdom: It is a Place of great Trade for Calicoes and other Cotton-Linens, Indigo, O-

Part 2

pium, precious Stones, and other valuable Goods; and therefore an English Factory resides in it.

Thus have we travell'd through the Eastern and Southern Provinces of this Empire of *Indostan*; proceed we now to the inland Parts, and view the Kingdoms of *Chitor*, *Malvay*, *Ranas*, *Narwar*, *Agria*, *Gualcor*, *Bando*, *Delly*, *Jenupar*, *Sambal*, *Bacar*, *Jamba*, and *Pengab*, or *Lakor*.

*Chitor*, lies next to *Guzerat*, being bounded by that Kingdom; on the West; *Malvay*, on the East; *Chandis*, on the South, and *Raja Ranas*, on the North: Its Extent is about 120 Miles from North to South; and about half as much from East to West. The chief City *Chitor* for Magnificence and Antiquity did formerly outvie all the Cities in *India*; its Name signifying *Mirror of the World*, and its ancient Name was *Taxilla*, suppos'd to be the Place whence *Porus* issued against *Alexander*: The Castle of this Place was so strong that *Eckbar* esteem'd the taking of it, one of his most important Conquests: but its Glory is pass'd away, and 'tis now but an ordinary Place. *Chetipore*, or *Chitipur*, being more noted at present on Account of its considerable Trade in Calicoes call'd *Chites*, whence they say the Town had its Name. *Billmal*; *Mulre*; and *Rudrepore*; have been Places of Grandeur and Note anciently, but now obscure. The Kingdom of *Malvay* adjoins to *Chitor*, having that on the West; *Bengall*, on the East; and *Bezar*, on the South. The chief Towns are *Ugen* by some call'd *Ougel*, seated on the West-side of the River *Gemini*, by some reckon'd the Capital of the Province; but by others, that Honour is given to *Rantipore*, seated on the East-side of the same River more Northward, and famous for a strong Castle, which serves for a Prison to Noblemen that fall under the *Mogul's* Displeasure. *Calleada*, the ancient Regal Seat of the King of *Mandoa*, whose Dominions extended far. *Sarampora*. *Syranga* or *Seronga*, a large Town where fine painted Calicoes are made. And *Nader*, another Town of large Extent, seated on the top of a steep Hill. On the North of *Chitor* and the West of *Malvay* lye the Territories of *Raja Ranas*, a Prince of ancient Extract, even descended from *Porus*, they say; and was the last of the *Rasbootes* Race that became Tributary to the Great *Mogul*. The Castle of *Gurchitto*, seated on a Rocky Mountain, and famous for its unpregnable Strength, is his Place of Residence; as is also sometimes *Candera*, the other chief Town in this Jurisdiction. Northward from *Raja Ranas* lies the Kingdom of *Bando*, a pretty large Country but Mountainous and Barren. The City which gives Name to the Kingdom, stands in the 29 Degree of Latitude; about 150 Miles West from *Agra*; it is an ancient Place, but not very considerable. *Admire* or *Asmiere*, the Capital of a Government of the same Name, stands more Southward near the River *Padder*; the Tomb of a Mahumetan Saint buried here, is richly adorn'd, and visited from all Parts with great Devotion. The City is large; but of ordinary Structure; wall'd and moated round, and defended by a very strong Castle at the top of a Hill. *Godaj*, formerly a considerable City, seated in the most fertile Part of the Kingdom. *Jeloure*, a Castle of good Strength. On the East of *Bando* lies the Province of *Gualcor*, a narrow Tract of Land between *Agra* on the North, and *Malvay* on the South; whose chief

M

Town



Town *Gualcor* or *Gualera*, is seated on a craggy Mountain, in the Latit. 27 D. and very well fortified, having a most advantageous Situation among inaccessible Rocks, and improv'd by many artificial Fortifications: Inſomuch that the Caſtle is made the repository of a great part of the *Mogul's* Treasure; and a Priſon for many Princes whoſe Birth gives Jealouſy, or Miſdemeanors Offence, to the Emperor: and 'tis here the preſent Emperor *Aureng-Zebe* confined his Brothers, Nephews, and his two eldeſt Sons. More

*Navar.* Eaſtward is the Province of *Navar*, bounded on the North, by the River *Semena* which parts it from *Sambal*; on the South, by Mountains that divide it from *Bengall*; on the Eaſt, with the Province of *Elabaſſi*; and on the Weſt, with the Kingdom of *Agra*. The chief Cities of this Country are *Gebud* and *Ouden*; the former ſeated on the River *Eugenes*, which flowing through *Navar* and part of *Elabaſſi*, falls into the *Ganges*; whereof nothing conſiderable is mention'd by Authors. The latter ſtands more Northward, and is a very ancient and formerly notable Place, as the ruins of its Caſtle declare; 'tis a Place of ſome Trade, eſpecially for Rhinocerot's Horns, which are much uſed and valued in *India*: Not far from this Town is ſeen the Veſtigia of an old Caſtle nam'd *Ratuckand*, a Place of Devotion mention'd by *Purchas*. On the North of this Province and on the other ſide of the River *Semena*, *M. de la Robbe* places a Country which he calls *Maroucha*; omitted in other Maps, who make the Kingdom of *Sambal* extend quite to the River. However, he mentions theſe Towns as ſeated in its Bounds; viz. *Guanabad*, *Aurengabad* and *Menepora*. The Kingdom of *Sambal* lies on the North of the *Semena* and the Weſt of the *Ganges*; having *Agra* for its Weſtern Bounds, and *Bacar* for the Northern. The chief City from which the Country is denominated, ſtands on the River *Ganges*, in the 31 Deg. of Latitude, and has the advantage of a pretty good Trade. A day or two's Journey from thence to the Weſt ſtands *Sanſaran* a populous and trading City; where is ſeen a moſt magnificent Sepulchre of an ancient Heathen King.

*Bacar.* Northward from hence lies the Kingdom or Province of *Bacar*, between the River *Ganges* and the Province of *Delly*; whoſe chief City *Bicmor* ſtands on a ſmall River that falls into the *Ganges*. And farther Northward is the Province of *Jamba*, a mountainous Country poſſeſſ'd by certain *Rajas* who are Tributary to the *Mogul*; of theſe *Raja-Decampergas* hath a large Tract of Land in the North-Weſt part, whereof the chief Town is *Caſſery*; and *Raja-Manſa*, who is reported a Prince of vaſt Wealth, poſſeſſes the North-Eaſt part towards the *Ganges*, whereof *Serenager* is the chief Town. But *Jamba* which is reckon'd the Capital is ſubject to the *Mogul*, and ſeated more Southward on a ſmall River that falls into the *Ganges*.

*Agra.* A G R A, which ſome call *Induſtan* by way of Excellence, as being the principal Kingdom of the Empire, is ſeated between the 27th. and the 30th. Deg. of Latitude, and between the 97th. and the 101 Deg. of Longitude; bounded on the North, by *Delly*; on the South, by *Gualcor* and *Malwa*; on the Eaſt, by *Sambal* and *Navar*; and on the Weſt, by *Bando*: It is water'd by the large River

*Semena*, which runs croſs the Kingdom, receiving in its way the *Tchembel*, a River (though much ſmaller than that) reckon'd as large as the *Thames* at *London*. Theſe two Streams water the Land, and make the Soil Fertile in Oranges, Lemmons, and many other Fruits excellent in their kind; great plenty of Rice, and eſpecially Cotton and Indigo, which are the chief Commodities they ſend abroad. *Agra*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom and of the whole Empire, ſeated on the River *Semena*, about 60 Miles above its Confluence with the *Tchembel*, in the 29th. Deg. Latit. is now reckon'd the largeſt and moſt populous City in *India*, being nine Miles in Length, built in form of a Half-Moon, along the Banks of the River: Authors ſpeak of its Antiquity, and make it founded by *Bacchus*, and call'd *Dyonifia*, afterwards *Negara*; or, as others, *Cyrus* built it, and gave it the Name of *Agradarius*; but according to *Hacklun*, the Name of *Agra* was given it by the Tartars, and ſo the Structure is much more modern: at leaſt thus much is certain, that it was but a ſmall inconfiderable Place before the Year 1566, when the Emperor *Eckbar* choſe it for his place of Reſidence, and built a Palace of Stone ſo very noble, that Father *Toſi* thinks it deſerves to be rank'd with the Wonders of the World; it is four Miles in Compaſs, and contains the Courts of Judicature, &c. We have no room to deſcribe the Magnificence of this Palace, but muſt refer the Reader to *Herbert*, *Tavernier* and *Bernier*, for more particular Accounts of it. The Nobility alſo have ſtately Houſes of Brick or Stone (whereof there are large Quarries of a very beautiful ſort, not far from *Agra*) but the common Buildings are mean, and the Streets narrow and dirty: The City is not wall'd, and only moated round, but has a ſtrong Caſtle ſeated on a Hill for its defence. This is a Place of great Traffick, being reſorted to by Merchants from *China*, *Persia*, all parts of *India*, and by the Engliſh and Dutch: Our Nation were uſed to maintain a Factory there, but the long diſtance from *Surat* (being above 600 Miles) and the Hazards and Difficulties they underwent in paſſing through the Countrys of many *Rajas* and *Rasbootes* has made them withdraw that, though they ſtill maintain a Trade thither. Over againſt *Agra* on the other ſide the River ſtands *Secandra*, a ſtately Town, or rather Suburbs to the City, adorn'd with many fine Buildings, curious Gardens, and eſpecially the magnificent Tombs of *Eckbar*, and the Queen of a ſucceeding Emperor. Not far from *Agra* ſtands *Ferripor*, which the ſame *Eckbar* founded, and built many ſtately Structures, intending to have made it outvie all others, but the Water proved unwholſom, and forced him to leave it. *Samonger*, a Village on the South of *Agra*, is famous for the Battle between *Dara* and *Aureng-Zebe*. *Dunipere*, on the *Tchembel*, is a Place of incredible Strength. *Byana*, formerly a large and fair City, now ruin'd, but ſtill gives Name to a Country of 50 Miles Circumference. *Scanderbad*, not far from it, is ſuppos'd to have been founded by *Alexander*. *Jay*, ſeated on the *Semena*, 100 Miles Eaſt from *Agra*, was formerly the Seat of the *Poran* Kings, but now in a ruin'd ſtate, except the Caſtle which ſtands on a high precipitous Mountain, and is fortified with a double Wall.



Delly.

On the North-West of *Agra* lies the Province of DELLY, denominated from its chief City, which standing in a purer Air, tempted the Emperor *Shah-Jehan* Father to the present *Mogul*, about 50 Years ago to build a stately Palace and new City there, which from him is denominated *Jehan-abad*, i. e. the City of *Jehan*, seated on the River *Semena*, about 120 Miles above *Agra*; and is one of the Places where the Great *Mogul* resides. The Palace is about two Miles in Compass, being a Semicircle deriv'd from the River, divided into two very large Courts of Magnificent Buildings, at the end whereof stands the great Hall of Audience (whose Roof is supported by thirty two stately Pillars of Stone four foot square, whereof some are inlaid with precious Stones) and therein the rich Throne of the Great *Mogul*, which as *M. Tavernier*, who saw it, assures us, is of massy Gold set with Diamonds, Rubies, Emeralds, &c. and judg'd to be worth near five Millions of Pounds Sterling; but it is said to have cost above 12 Millions. The Seraglio, the Fortrefs and the Mosque are proportionably Grand, but we have not room to particularize; the Reader may consult *Tavernier* and *Bernier*. The new City is about eight Miles in Compass, and surrounded with Brick-Walls; to which may be added a large Suburb, and the old *Delly* on the other side the River, but join'd by a Bridge; and then the Place will be found four Miles long. The Country about it is pleasant and fruitful, and the Air more cool and wholesome than that of *Agra*, which being seated in a sandy Soil is feverish. The old City was formerly a very Magnificent one, where the *Potan* Kings used to be inaugurated: it had 50 Gates and nine Castles, but is now ruined. There is another *Delly*, where lies a terr'd in a most magnificent Monument the Father of *Eckbar*. The Government of this Province is reckon'd the first in the Empire. From *Delly* passing on Northward you enter the Province of *Jenapur* or *Jenapur*, where are the Pits of *Sal Armoniac*. The chief City *Jenapur* stands in the 33 Deg. of Latitude, at the Confluence of two small Rivers which compose the *Damiallee*, that flows through this Country and that of the *Hindowns*, and falls into the *Indus*; 'tis a handsom Town, but not very eminent. *Syrina*, on the same River, more to the West, famous for the fine Garden, Summer-House, and Seraglio of the *Moguls*. *Tanassery*, in the South-part, is noted for the Baths esteem'd Holy and much resorted to. In the Mountains which part this Province from *Delly*, the River *Semena*, otherwise call'd *Gemene* hath its Source, which after a Course of 400 Miles falls into the *Ganges* at *Holobaj*. Lastly, the Kingdom of *Pengab*, otherwise call'd *Labor*, is seated more Northward, between *Jenapur*, on the South; *Cassimere* and *Bankish*, on the North; *Jamba*, on the East; and *Multan* and *Attock*, on the West. This is the third Government of the Empire, being often honour'd with the Emperor's Presence in his Palace at *Labor*, once the Metropolis of the Empire, and the Staple of Trade for Indigo, and in those days a magnificent and wealthy City; but since these Emperors have extended their Dominions so far Southward, *Agra* and *Delly* are more conveniently seated for their Residence, so that this City is declin'd: The Streets

Part 2

are regular and well pay'd, the Houses all of Wood, but more high than is usual in these Parts: The Castle or Palace is magnificent and stately; the Courts large, the Buildings high and uniform, mostly of Brick, adorn'd with fine carv'd Works; and the Gardens large, pleasant and fill'd with excellent Fruit. The Extent of this City I dare not name, for when an Author tells me the Streets are 15 Miles long, and the City threescore Miles in Circumference, I cannot expect to be believ'd in transcribing him. *Fettipore* or *Fettyab*, a pleasant Town, with a Castle, seated on the South of *Labor*. *Temmer*, to the East of *Labor*, is the Seat of the *Raja* of *Bosson*, who pays Tribute to the Emperor. And *Emenbade*, on the North of *Labor*: These are the Cities most noted; many others are in this Province that were formerly famous, but they with the whole Province are now declin'd. And thus having pass'd through the third Division of this Empire, viz. the Eastern, the Southern and the Midland Provinces; we shall now proceed to

The Northern Kingdoms, viz. *Naugraut*, *Siba*, *Kakares*, *Bankish*, *Cassimere*, *Attock*, and *Cabal*.

*Naugraut* is a very large Country, extending VII. from the Borders of *Labor* in 32 Deg. to the Naugraut: 40 Degree of North Latitude, where it is bounded by *Kakares*, having *Jamba* and *Siba* on the East; and *Labor* and *Bankish* on the West. The Land is very Barren and Mountainous, and a great part of it subject to the *Raja Talluck-chan*. The chief City *Naugraut* stands near the head of the River *Rave* in the Lat. of 34. and Long. 99. and is a place of good Trade for Druggs and other Commodities brought from *Tartary*. *Callamacha* or *Jallamaka*, more Eastward, is seated among craggy Rocks, out of which issue Fountains that seem to cast out Flames, and on that account worshipped by the Idolatrous People. The Province of *Siba* lies on the North-East of *Naugraut*, divided into two parts by the River *Ganges*, and surrounded by Mountains: Its chief City *Hulware* stands in the 40th. Deg. of Latitude, on a Lake through which the River *Ganges* passes, and near a Rock which the People fancy to be like a Cow's Head; and that Animal being sacred among them, the Rock and the River *Ganges* that falls upon it in a kind of Cataract, is worshipped as Holy. The City enjoys a pretty good Trade, and the Country is reasonably fertile. Next to *Siba* lies the Kingdom of *Kakares*, the most Northern of all the *Mogul's* Dominions, as bordering upon *Tartary*, whereof it was part till the Year 1609. 'Tis a Country of very large extent, being 600 Miles in length, but not proportionably broad. It is a very Mountainous and Barren Land, but enjoys the Benefit of a good Trade from *Tartary* and *China*. The chief Cities are *Dankalen* in the Western part; and *Purbola* more East, and near the *Ganges*; which River hath its Source in the Mountains *Caucasus*, which part this Country from *Tartary*. *Gor*, which lies on the East of this Country, we have spoken of among the Eastern Provinces of the Empire; and therefore now return South-West over the *Dalangner* Mountains into *Bankish*, which is seated between *Siba* on the East, *Cassimere* on the West; *Kakares* on the North, and *Labor* on the South. 'Tis a Country not large nor remarkable: The chief City is nam'd *Beishar*, but not considerable or known to us.

M 2

The

Semena Fluv.

Pengab or Labor.

Bankish.



**Cassimere.** The Kingdom of *Cassimere* lies next to it on the West, between the Mountain *Caucasus* which divides it from *Tartary* on the North, the Kingdom of *Pengab* on the South, and *Attock* on the West. It lies between the 36 and the 40 Degrees of Latitude, and enjoys a clear and healthy Air, as temperate as in *Europe*; and a fruitful well cultivated Soil, abounding with all the necessaries of Life; and so far exceeding all the neighbouring Provinces (where a scorching Heat parches the Ground) that *Cassimere* is stiled the Paradise of *India*. The Northern parts are Mountainous, rising by Degrees one above another; the lower covered with Cattel, and all kinds of innocent Game, without Lyons, Tigers, Bears, Serpents or any sort of noxious Creatures; and the higher covered with Snow; which melting, makes those many Rivulets that water the Country, and make it so fruitful, that it looks like a large Garden of Rice, Corn, Saffron, Hemp, Apricocks, Peaches, Apples, Pears, Plums, Vines, &c. which as Mr *Bernier* tells us, astonished him to see himself of a sudden, out of the stifling Heat of the Torrid Zone, into the temperate Freshness and Fertility of *Europe*. The People also are of fair Complexion and *European* Beauty, Ingenious, Witty and Industrious. The City, which gives name to the Country, is about two Miles long, and a Mile and half broad, seated on a Lake of fresh Water, and a little River issuing from it; over which are two Bridges: The Houses are built of Wood, two or three Stories high, and many of them adorn'd with pretty Gardens: The City is not walled; but is surrounded with Houses of Pleasure and Gardens; among which the King's is especially delightful, being furnished with curious Fountains, Chanals, Bowers, &c. *Srenakar* is the next considerable City, being three Miles in circumference, and by some reckon'd the Capital of the Kingdom; 'tis seated in the Southern Confines towards *Pengab*. *Achiavel*, notable for an admirable House of Pleasure of the *Mogul's*; and *Sand-Berry* for an Heathenish Temple, and wonderful Spring, which draws Votaries to it, are the other places of chiefest note in this Kingdom. *Sanson* places the Country of a certain *Raja* nam'd *Tibbon* in its Northern part.

**Attock.** On the South-West of *Cassimere* lies the large Province of *Attock*, between *Cabul* on the North, and *Multan* on the South, inhabited by a peculiar People call'd *Puzzans*, of low Stature, but courageous Temper, not subjected to the *Mogul* before the Year 1590. The City whence the Province is denominat'd stands at the Confluence of the two Rivers *Chanab* and *Sind*, and is one of the best and strongest Garisons in all the Empire, which no Foreigner is permitted to enter without a Pass from the King. The other chief Towns are *Candabara*, said to be a handsome City, and a place of great Trade. *Puckox*, *Daddos*, *Ducha*, *Langora*, *Vageston*, and *Hassanabad*. On the North of *Attock* lies the Province of *Cabul*, the Boundary of the *Mogul's* Empire on the North-West, having *Tartary* for its Northern, and *Persia* for its Eastern Bounds. It is a Barren unpleasant Country, but by means of its convenient situation enjoys a good Trade: its chief City *Cabul*, being reported as large as *Grand Cairo*, and resorted to by Merchants from *Persia*, *China* and *Tartary*, for buying of Cattel, especially Horses, whereof vast numbers are

hence exported: The City is fortified by two strong Castles, and accommodated with many large Inns for the reception of Strangers. The other chief Towns are *Ghidal*, *Parna*, *Cheree-culor*, and *Gorehand*, with which we finish our account of the Northern Provinces.

The Provinces of the Western Part, or last Division of this Empire, on or near the Frontiers of *Persia*, are *Multan*, *Haican*, *Buckor*, The Country of the *Hendowns*, *Jesselmee*, *Sorett*, and *Tatta*. VIII.

The Province of *Multan* is seated between *Attock* on the North, the River *Ravee* on the South, *Pengab* on the East, and *Haican* on the West, extending about 100 Miles either way. The River *Indus* runs through from North to South, and other smaller Streams contribute to water the Land, which is very fertile, in Sugar and Opium, and affords a mighty Traffick to the Inhabitants; who besides make great Quantities of Callico's, &c. which they vend to *Agra*, *Tatta* and elsewhere: So that this Country, especially its chief City, is inhabited by wealthy Banians. The chief City *Multan* is seated on the River *Indus*, in the Latitude of 34 D. and is a considerable place on account of the Manufactures of Calicoes and other Linens, and the number of rich Trading Banians that live in it: but was formerly more populous, being heretofore the Thoroughfare between *Persia* and *Labor*; but the Road lies now through *Cabul*. The People of this Town are notable Dancers, if it be worth while to mention such a Qualification; but since that recommends 'em to the Courts of *Indostan* and *Persia*, we should do 'em wrong to omit it. Over against *Multan*, on the West side the *Indus*, stands *Alican*, and more Southward *Serpore*. *Haikan*, otherwise call'd *Haican* *Hangikan*, a Province seated beyond the *Indus*, among the Mountains on the Frontiers of *Persia*, is a sort of rude Country inhabited by the *Bullockes*, a stout and warlike People, who are Idolaters, and by some Authors represented as wild Robbers; but others say they are of a Conversible Temper. Two Towns in this Country are mention'd in the Maps, viz. *Chatzan* on the East side the Mountains, and *Uche* on the Frontiers of *Persia*. The Province of *Buckor* lies next to *Haican* on the South, between *Persia* on the West, and the *Hendowns* Country on the East. The River *Indus* runs through and divides it into two Parts, waters the Land, and renders the Soil Rich and Fertile. The Inhabitants are a strong, robust People, like their Neighbours the *Bullockes*, uneasy under the *Mogul's* Yoke, and not kept under but by a strong Guard, perpetually kept upon 'em in the chief City nam'd *Buckor*; seated on an Island in the River *Indus*, Lat. 30. D. 20. M. Other Towns of Note here, are *Suckor*, somewhat higher on the East side the River, a place considerable for Trade, as also for Agriculture, much practis'd by its Inhabitants; and *Rawree* on the same River, more Southward, and near the Mouth of the *Damiadee*, a place also of good Trade, sending Barks down the River, which Trade even as far as *Mozambique*, and other parts of *Africa*. The Country of the *Hindowns* lies between *Haican* and *Multan* on the West, *Pengab* on the North, *Jesselmee* on the East, *Jesselmee* and *Bando* on the South, enjoying a fertile Soil in Corn, Cattel and Cotton; which last is made up into Cloths, and exported



Jeffer-  
meer.

Sorett.

Tatta.

exported to other Parts. The Inhabitants are a distinct People, and according to their Name should be the Descendants of the *Aborigine* Inhabitants of all *India*. The chief City *Hendown* stands upon the River *Damiadee* (which runs through the Province from East to West) in the 31. D. 20. M. Lat. a large and rich Town enjoying a good Trade in Cotton and Calico. *Mear-ta* seated more to the South, is a great City, and considerable Mart for the same Commodities. The Province of *Jeffermeer* lies on the South of the *Hindowns*; having *Guzaratte* for its Southern Bounds, *Bando* on the East, and *Buckor* on the West. The North and East parts are Mountainous, but the South is water'd by the River *Palder*; and the greatest part of the Country is very fertile in Corn and Cattel, especially Sheep. Its extent is from the 25th. to the 28th. Deg. of Latitude. *Jeffermeer* otherwise call'd *Gisfmeer*, the chief Town, is seated in the North part within Land, but is however a place of very good Trade for Indigo, Cotton, and wollen Clothes, and remarkable for its pleasant situation: 'Tis also Fortified with a very good Castle, and thirty pieces of Ordinance. *Ammer*, a Castle in this Country, is notable for being the Birth-place of the great *Eckbar*. *Radimpore*, seated on the River *Palder*, is the next considerable Town in this Province, near its Southern Limits, and all that I find mention'd by Authors. The small Kingdom of *Sorett* lies next to *Jeffermeer*, having that for its Eastern Bounds, the Mouth of the River *Palder* for its Southern, the River *Indus* on the East, and *Tatta* on the North. 'Tis a rich Fertile Land, furnished with all things necessary for Life; and the chief City *Janagar* is populous and rich, being commodiously seated near the River *Palder*, which a little below falls into the Gulph of *Indus*, and renders the Town a place of good Trade. *Pacho*, seated on an Island made by the Branches of the River *Palder*, in falling into the Sea is reckon'd in the Limits of this Kingdom.

Lastly, the Kingdom of *Tatta*, otherwise nam'd *Sindi*, and by the Inhabitants *Abind*, also sometimes by *Europeans* call'd the Kingdom of *Diul*, from the Port Town of that name. This Province is the South-West Limits of the *Mogul's* Empire, having *Persia* on the East, *Buckor* on the North, *Jeffermeer* and *Sorett* on the West, and the Gulf of *Indus*, which parts it from *Guzaratte*, on the South. The Kingdom is about 200 Miles in length from North to South, and is divided in the middle by the River *Indus*; which waters the Land, and renders the Soil very prolifick in Wheat, Rice, Pasture, &c. The Country also being so conveniently seated, is much enrich'd by Trade, but not so much as it us'd to be, before *Suratte* had drawn it away. The chief Cities are, *Tatta* the Metropolis, seated on the East side the River *Indus*, in the 27th. D. Latitude, a large City, and celebrated for Trade. *Sindi* in the Heart of the Country, the place of the Governor's Residence. *Lourebander* on the West side the *Indus*, 40 Leagues below *Tatta*, and near the Mouth of the River, a noted Port: but *Diul* or *Diu* (not *Dio*) is the most commodious and most celebrated Haven of this Kingdom, seated on the Mouth of the Bay of *Indus*, and a small River which takes its name from the Town: This place is usually touch'd at by the Ships sailing from *India* to *Ormuz*.

Thus have we Travell'd all over this mighty Empire, and taken as exact a survey of it as we were able to obtain out of Authors of Reputation; and mention'd as many particulars as the Brevity of our Work will admit. We should now proceed to *Persia*, but that it is requisite first to take notice that the Provinces of *Balch* and *Candahara*, seated on the Frontiers of *Persia*, Northward from *Haican*, and on the West of *Multan* and *Attock*, are by some Geographers made part of the *Mogul's* Empire, and by others attributed to *Persia*; the Reason whereof seems to be, that it is a disputed Country; and on that account has more than once changed its Master. As far as I can learn, *Balch* is subject to the *Persian*, and so describ'd there: But *Candahara* is a Province of the *Mogul's* Empire, except the chief City *Candahar*, suppos'd to be the *Catra* of *Ptolomy*, seated in the 23. D. Lat. which is subject to the *Persian*; a place of great strength, and being on the Road out of *India* into *Persia*, it's much resorted to. The Country is Mountainous, and so not over fruitful; but here are Rocks of Salt, which yield a Traffick to the Inhabitants, as also Mines found in the Bowels of the Earth.

It remains only to give an Account of the principal Rivers, with which this vast continent is water'd, being four in number, viz. the *Ganges*, the *Guenga*, the *Palder*, and the *Indus*: Of these the two former discharge themselves into the Bay of *Bengall*, and the two latter, into that of *Indus*. The *Ganges*, call'd *Ganga* by the Natives, and erroneously taken by some Authors for the *Pison* mention'd in Holy Writ, is the most famous River of *India*: By which the whole Country was anciently divided (as it has been already hinted) into the farther, or *India* beyond the *Ganges*, and the hither, or *India* within the same River. The *Ganges* takes its Rise not from Paradise, but in Mount *Imaus*, or *Emodus*, now call'd *Moghali* (according to some Authors) and *Dalanguer* by others, on the Confines of Great *Tartary*, and in the Kingdom of *Kakares*: After having water'd those Parts, it directs its Course Southward through the Province of *Siba*, and there receives the *Kandah*, or *Canda*, on the East: Then passing through the Confines of *Jamba*, *Bacar*, *Sambal* and *Patna*, it joyns the *Perfely*, likewise on the East, and a little lower near the Town of *Holobass*, on the West, is increas'd with the *Gemena*, otherwise nam'd *Gemna* and *Semena*: Lastly, having parted the Kingdom of *Bengall*, by its winding Course it is there divided into divers streams, and empites itself through several Mouths (anciently five or six in number) into the Gangetick Gulph, which takes its Name from thence, and is now commonly call'd *The Bay of Bengall*. This River was heretofore esteem'd as Sacred, and the Indians have still the same Veneration for it, inso-much that a great many are us'd to go thither in Pilgrimage, on purpose to wash away their Sins. It's Breadth and Depth is much celebrated among the Ancients, and even by several Modern Writers, but *M. Tavernier* is of a different Opinion: For he denies, that the lower Part of the *Ganges* is wider than the Channel of the River *Seine*, at *Paris*; and affirms, That from the Month of *March*, to *June* or *July*, before the rainy Season begins, it is so shallow that the Vessels cannot set out to Sea. The Waters of the *Ganges* afford a most

IX.  
The Ri-  
vers that  
run into  
the Bay  
of Ben-  
gall.  
Ganges  
Fluvi

Canda  
Fluvi.  
Perfely  
Fluvi.  
Gemena  
Fluvi.



most pleasant Drink to the Natives: but Strangers do not find them so healthful, with respect to their Constitutions, unless they are boiled.

**Ganges** The other River that runs into the Bay of Bengal, is *Ganga*, call'd *Ganga* by the Portugueses, which rising from the Mountains of *Gana* in the Kingdom of *Deccan*, passes through the whole Country, as all through *Gaudia*, and along the Confines of the Kingdoms of *Orissa* and *Bengal*, and at last falls into the said Bay.

**X.** We come now to the two principal Rivers that flow into the Gulph of *India*, that is to say the *Padma* and the *Indus*. The *Padma*, which is of a great deal less Note than the latter, springs in the Kingdom of *Benzal*, and traverses *Segismen*, or (as others will have it) only the Confines of that Province, and the Kingdom of *Sren*, where it runs through two Mouths into the Indian Gulph.

**Indus** The *Indus*, now call'd *Sind*, or *Sinde* by the Inhabitants, being the most noble River of *India*, has its Source in the Kingdom of *Cashmere*, or near its Frontiers, springing from the highest Part of Mount *Cassius*, or Mount *Paripamagus*, on the

Borders of *Tartary*, and flows down thence Southward through the Kingdom of *Auck*: where, by a Town of the same Name. (according to several Maps) it receives the *Chanab* or *Chanah*, on its Channel Eastern side: Then it passes through the Province *Fluv.* of *Multan*, where the Rivers *Bekah* and *Nilab* fall into its Channel on the Western side; as also *Fluv.* through the Kingdom of *Buckoor*; where, on the Nilab East, it is united to the *Ravey*, or *Rovey*, taken by many ancient Authors for *Hyaspes*, or *Hulaf-Ravey* *Fluv.* *Fluv.* which put a stop to the March of *Alexander* the Great, and takes in the *Hypasis*, before it intermixes its Waters with the *Indus*. A little below the *Ravey*, in the same Kingdom, and on the same side, the *Caul*, or *Coul* runs into the latter; although (according to *M. la Robbe*) the Rivers *Caul* and *Ravey*, are not joyn'd with the *Indus*, in the Kingdom of *Buckor*, but higher, where he places the Territories of the *Hindowns*. Afterwards the River *Indus*, continues its Course through the Kingdom of *Tatta*, and from thence through four, five, or six Mouths, that heretofore were seven in Number, into the Gulph, or Bay, on which it has impos'd its Name.



CHAP. XIX.

PERSIA Modern and Ancient.



1. **P**ERSIA so call'd, say the Claffick Authors, from *Perseus* the Son of *Andromeda*, is named *Farsistan*, or *Pharistan* by the Natives: and was call'd *Elam* by the Hebrews. Formerly the Mitris of almost all *Asia*, its Empire extending as far as the *Hellespont*. But though it be still a large Kingdom, its Bounds are at present much narrower; *Affyria*, *Mesopotamia* *Babylonia*, &c. being cut off and subject to the Turks: So that at present its Boundaries are

On the East the Empire of the Great *Mogul*, whence the River *Indus* divides it, on the West *Turkey*; from which the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris* part it; on the North, the *Hyrcanian*, or *Caspian Sea*; on the North-East, the River *Oxus*, or *Jihun* separates it from *Zagathay*, in *Tartary*; and on the South, the Gulph of *Persia*, otherwise nam'd the Gulph of *Bassora*; and the Arabian Sea divides it from *Arabia*: And in its present Extent the Empire of *Persia* comprehends about 24 Degrees



Degrees of Longitude, which makes about 1180 Miles from East to West; and about 15 Degrees of Latitude, which make 900 Miles from North to South.

*Situa-  
tion.* It is seated under the fourth, fifth, sixth and seventh Climates, and enjoys a more healthy, temperate Air than the other Parts of *Asia*; except on the Southern Borders, which lying under the 25th Degree of Latitude, is in the Summer Season excessive Hot.

*Soil.* The Soil cannot be much praised for Fertility; a great part of the Land consisting of Mountains, and other Parts of sandy Deserts: And withal here are but very few Rivers: So that they have only Rain (and of that but little) and the dissolv'd Snow, which falling in small Rivulets from the Mountains, water the Land, and make the Valleys fruitful; bringing forth Corn in such plenty that Dr. *Fryer* tells us they have frequently a threefold Crop. Cotton also; and Mulberry Trees for the Silk Worm in great plenty, Wine of a delicious kind, and Fruits of the most pleasing Tastes, together with delightful Flowers. Most of the Species of both seen in *Europe* being produc'd here, besides many other kinds; as also *Assa Fetida*, and divers estimable Drugs. For Cattle they have excellent Horses; Kine though small well fed; Sheep so exceeding fat that the Flesh is hardly to be found, and have Tails of 30 Pound Weight; Camels and Arabian Asles very serviceable Goats, whose Skins yield a Manufactory and Mercandise very beneficial to the Kingdom; and Kids that are a delicate Food: The Wild-Goats yielding all the *Bezoar* Stone: Stags, Antilopes; Fowl of all sorts are also plentifully found in the Woods: and in some Parts are seen Wolves, Tygers, Foxes and other Wild-Beasts, but of these not many are dangerous.

The Mountains are high, craggy and barren, but however, contain in their Bowels Mines of Copper, Lead, Iron, Steel, and other Metals, Brimstone, and Rock-Salt: and the Sea yields Pearls, Lapis Oriental, and the most valuable of any in the World. The Earth in some parts is fit for Porcelance, whereof exceeding fine is made here. Here are also large Quarries of Marble; and several precious Stones, as the *Lapis Lazuli*, *Turquoise*, &c. are found in the Earth. Many Baths, Mineral-Waters, but especially a Spring of *Naptcha*, are likewise seen in *Persia*. Silk is exceeding plenty, and yields a vast Manufacture and Traffick to the People; which with fine Carpets, Pearls, Bezoar Stones, *Lapis Lazuli*, and some other Commodities they transport to other Countries: but have not enough of these to balance Trade; being forc'd to give Money to the Dutch and English for a great part of the Goods they want from *India* and *Europe*.

*II. People.* The Persians are a People of good Address and sufficient Understanding; but addicted to Dissimulation, and exceedingly Luxurious in their Diet and Cloaths; very guilty of Venery; and though Wine be forbid, they will secretly be Drunk, and take Opium, Tobacco and Coffee in excess. They are very fond of Astrological Predictions; and too Lazy and Luxurious to be very Learned. They were originally of a tawny Complexion, but by their Marriages with the fair Georgian Women, or chiefly by the many Tartars settled there in these latter Ages, they are be-

come of a fairer Skin. The Houses of the common People are mean, being built of Mud, whereof they not only make the Walls, but even arch them over very artificially. The Nobility and Courtiers have however stately Palaces built of Stone, adorn'd with Marble Pillars, and in the middle a Circle of Columns supporting a Cupola of great height and breadth, which is the room of Entertainment, and has round it a foot pace cover'd with fine Carpets, to sit on cross leg'd like Taylors; and in the middle fine Fountains, Flower-Pots, and the like. This is their general Manner of Building, and is indeed exceeding Noble and Magnificent.

The ruling Religion of *Persia* is the Mahometan, of the Sect of *Haly*. Besides which here are many of the ancient *Gurians*, also *Armenians*; and some *Jews* remaining of the Babylonian Captivity.

The Emperor or SOPHI of *Persia* is a most absolute and arbitrary Monarch, exceeding Wealthy, and maintains an Army of 60000 Horse and 120000 Foot in constant Pay. The eldest Son succeeds the Father in the Throne, and according to the Cruelty and Jealousy of those Parts of the World, commonly puts out the Eyes of his younger Brethren.

The ancient State and Grandeur of *Persia*, when it constituted the Monarchy that succeeded the Assyrian, and was the second of the four that by way of Excellence are stiled the Empires of the World, and the downfall of that Monarchy by the Conquest of *Alexander* the Macedonian; its division among his Captains after his Death, and the Conquests of it afterwards by the Parthians, are sufficiently known to all that converse with History. And the Story being too large to set down here; we shall pass on and say only, That the Parthians having had the Possession of it for near 500 Years, *Artaxerxes* restor'd the Persian Government about 230 Years after the Birth of Christ, and was succeeded by 28 Kings of the same Race: But the Sarazens growing powerful in the Year 605, the Caliph of *Bagdat* beat out the Persian; and his Successors possess'd the Throne for 650 Years. About the Year 1257, the Tartars expell'd the Sarazens, and a Race of Princes of that Nation govern'd *Persia* till the Year 1472; when the *Turcomanni* enter'd and supplanted them: These govern'd but till 1500, at which time *Shah Ismael* Sophy, by the Death of *Alamat*, and Accession to the Throne put an end to that Race, and is reckon'd to have restor'd the ancient Persian Line, whose Posterity still enjoy the Empire.

Proceed we next to the Geographical Account of *Persia*, which, as we have said, was anciently of far greater Extent than at present; for besides *Babylonia*, *Assyria*, and the other Countries Westward; *Cluverius* includes *Casmeer* and *Guzerat* Eastward; and makes those two Provinces to be comprehended in the ancient *Gedrosia*: But our Author *J. Luyt* contradicts him in it, and says that *Sinda* only, and *Makeran* were included in *Gedrosia*; and if so, the River *Indus* was always, as it still is, the Western Boundary.

But in setting out the Provinces, I find great Differences among Geographers, some dividing the whole Empire into fifteen, others fourteen, others thirteen, and others will allow but twelve Provinces.



Provinces. Again, M. Tavernier reckons up seventeen, but then *Usbeck*, *Turcomania*, *Diarbeck*, *Curdistan* and *Iran* are five of them. But these do not properly deserve place here, for *Usbeck* is part of *Tartary*; and the other four do for the most part belong to the Turks, and are describ'd in our Accounts of those Countrys. *Baudrand* names these Provinces. viz.

<i>Mackeran</i>	<i>Antiqua Gedrosia</i>
<i>Candabar</i>	<i>Arachosia</i>
<i>Sablestan</i>	<i>Drangiana</i>
<i>Sigistan</i>	<i>Carmania</i>
<i>Kherman</i>	
<i>Chorassan</i>	<i>Pars Parthia</i>
<i>Khoemus</i>	<i>Margiana &amp; pars Parthia</i>
<i>Gorgian</i>	<i>Hyrcania</i>
<i>Farsi</i>	<i>Persia</i>
<i>Chusistan</i>	<i>Susiana</i>
<i>Erack-Agemi</i>	<i>Media</i>
<i>Churdistan</i>	<i>Pars Assyria</i>
<i>Yerack</i>	<i>Babylonia</i>
<i>Dilemon</i>	
<i>Gilan</i>	
<i>Scirwan</i>	

*Cluverius* divides *Persia* Ancient and Modern thus, viz.

Ancient	Modern
<i>Gedrosia</i>	<i>Cassimier and Guzerat</i>
<i>Carmania</i>	<i>Kherman, Guadel and Ormuz</i>
<i>Drangiana</i>	<i>Sigistan</i>
<i>Arachosia</i>	<i>Candahor</i>
<i>Paropamisus</i>	<i>Sablestan</i>
<i>Bactriana</i>	<i>Corassan</i>
<i>Margiana</i>	<i>Elfabar or Estarabad</i>
<i>Hyrcania</i>	<i>Tabaristan</i>
<i>Aria</i>	<i>Diargumen</i>
<i>Parthia</i>	<i>Erack</i>
<i>Persis</i>	<i>Farsi</i>
<i>Susiana</i>	<i>Elaran</i>
<i>Assyria</i>	<i>Chusistan</i>
<i>Media</i>	<i>Schirwan</i>

This is set down to shew the Difference between Authors, and the difficulty of ascertaining the true Division of this Empire, which being done, we shall follow our Author *Joan. Luyts*, who by comparing all these with the Accounts of M. Tavernier, thinks the most proper Division of *Persia* to be into thirteen Parts, viz.

<i>Sinda or Send</i>	} On the East	
<i>Mackeran</i>		
<i>Sigistan</i>		
<i>Sablustan</i>		
<i>Chorassan</i>		
<i>Estarabad</i>		
<i>Mazanderan or Tabaristan</i>	} On the North	
<i>with Kylan</i>		
<i>Scirwan</i>		
<i>Edzerbayan</i>		
<i>Hierack Agemi</i>		
<i>Chusistan</i>	} On the South	
<i>Fars or Farsistan</i>		
<i>Kherman</i>		

The particular Towns whercof are seen in this Table.

<i>Sinda or Send</i>	{ <i>Sarusan</i> <i>Candayl</i> <i>Debil</i>
<i>Mackeran</i>	{ <i>Guadel Titz</i> <i>Makran Firhk</i> <i>Chalak</i>
<i>Sigistan</i>	{ <i>Fardan Kets</i> <i>Camultan Sirzistan</i> <i>Masurgian</i> <i>Masniith Araba</i>
<i>Sablestan</i>	{ <i>Bekfabet Bust</i> <i>Sarentz Sarvan</i> <i>Asba Memend</i> <i>Rabel-Emir Kandahar</i> <i>Cuschecanna Greefa</i> <i>Curvan Duka</i> <i>Alunkan</i>
<i>Chorassan</i>	{ <i>Balbachi Herat</i> <i>Thun Meched</i> <i>Nisabur</i>
<i>Estarabad</i>	{ <i>Estarabad</i> <i>Damkam</i> <i>Amul</i>
<i>Mazanderan</i>	{ <i>Firuz-kuh Sukarabad</i> <i>Mionikiella Giru</i> <i>Talarapejkt Saru</i> <i>Ferbabad Ciarmen</i> <i>Eskiref</i>
<i>Schirvan</i>	{ <i>Derbent</i> <i>Baku</i> <i>Chamaki</i>
<i>Edzerbayan</i>	{ <i>Ardebil</i> <i>Tebris or Tauris</i> <i>Sultania</i>
<i>Hierak-Agemi</i>	{ <i>Kasbin Sava</i> <i>Kom, Kachan</i> <i>Hamadan</i> <i>Ispahan the Metropolis of Persia</i> <i>Zulpha Tezd</i>
<i>Chusistan</i>	{ <i>Susa or Susfer Ardgan</i> <i>Ramhormous Ahawas</i> <i>Skabar Bander-Rik</i> <i>Bander-Rakel</i>
<i>Farsistan</i>	{ <i>Kazeron Astakar</i> <i>Schiras Benaron</i> <i>Firusabad Darab-Gier</i> <i>Lar-Bander Kongo</i> <i>Bander-Abassi, or Gomroni</i> <i>The Isle of Ormus</i>
<i>Kherman</i>	{ <i>Bermazir or Barmafier</i> <i>Kerman</i> <i>Fakes or Fafques</i> <i>Kuhestek</i>



IV. The first Province that offers itself to our View, according to the Persian Order, is *Sinda*, or *Sind*, plac'd in M. Sanson's large Map of Asia, and others, on the Coast of the Indian Sea; and on the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Tana*, or *Sinda*, which was last describ'd in the Great Mogul's Empire. That Geographer attributes several Places to this Province, particularly *Sarusan* and *Candayl*, in the Inland Tracts. And *Debil*, on the Sea-Coasts. Others take no notice at all of this Province, neither do they acknowledge any other *Sind* besides the Kingdom of *Tana*. M. Tavernier, makes mention of a Part of *Persia*, that Borders upon the said Kingdom, but does not express its Name, nor those of its Towns, of which he declares himself ignorant: We have a just Deference for this ingenious Author's account of *Persia*: in regard that in the Forty years time he spent in Travelling, he pass'd six times through this Empire, taking different Roads, and diligently observing all things remarkable, especially the Names, Situation and Number of the Provinces, with the capital Towns, which (as he complains) are for the most part, either forgot, or corrupted by Modern Geographers: and have accordingly very much follow'd his Foot-steps in the following Description.

V. The maritime Province of *Makran*, *Mackran*, or *Makran*, borders upon the Gulf, on the West, and is plac'd in the same manner by those that copy the latter, than the Kingdom of *Tana*, or the Empire of the Great Mogul. The Towns bordering on the Gulf, are *Geat*, a Sea-port: [this place Geat is in *Kandahar*?] The Capital, in which the whole Province derives its Name, is *Farah*, and *Geat*.

VI. The Province of *Sistan*, sometimes call'd *Syrtan* and *Sistan*, is extend'd on the North of the former, and contains these Places, viz. *Farah*, *Kandahar*, *Sistan*, or *Sistan*, the chief Towns *Makran*, *Makran*, and *Hala*.

VII. The Province of *Saristan*, or *Saristan*, lies next to *Sistan*, on the North, and includes the following Towns, viz. *Farah*, *But*, *Saristan*, *Saristan*, *Alia*, *Makran*, and *Rabil-Emar*. M. Tavernier places *Kandahar* within its Bounds, which is taken by others for a distinct Province, and was sometime govern'd by its own Prince, who, when the King of *Persia* and the great Mogul continually strove to make themselves Masters of it, at last chose rather to submit to the former, upon condition, that as long as any Prince of his Race was left, he should be entrusted with the Administration of the Government.

The Metropolis of the whole Country, is *Candahar*, the principal Bulwark of *Persia*, in the middle of which stands a Rock with a Castle on the top: It is a famous Mart beset with large Suburbs, and abounding with all manner of Provisions, through which the Companies of Merchants that travel from *Persia* to *India*, and those that return from thence, are wont to pass. *Alimerdankan*, Governor of *Kandahar*, deliver'd up this Town to the Great Mogul: but it was recover'd by Chah-Bah II. King of *Persia*. Afterwards the Mogul made three several attempts to retake it with a numerous Army, but was as often repuls'd: However *Kandahar* is reputed the fifth in order among the general Governments of the Indian Empire, as being that several of its Towns and

Villages are at this Day subject to the Mogul and pay him Tribute. *Casheccanna*, *Geeja* and *Corzan*, are also reckon'd among the Towns of *Kandahar*: M. Tavernier also attributes to *Saristan*, the Towns of *Daka* and *Aluncan*, seated within the Borders of the Great Mogul's Empire.

The Province of *Korassan*, or *Chorassan*, lies out VIII. farther towards the North, and is usually extend- ed in the Maps to the River *Oxus* or *Jibin*, call'd *Rabkane-kurkhan*, by M. Tavernier, who does not follow those Draughts, some of which make it to reach as far as the *Caspian* Sea. The most remarkable Towns of this Province, are *Baluch*: The City of *Ras*, otherwise call'd *Herat*, or *Erat*; and *Serheri* the Capital; *Thun*; *Meched*, nam'd also *Mesched*, *Mejhech*, *Mexar*, and *Mesur*, where is to be seen the Sepulchre of the Prophet *Iman-Riza* plac'd under a golden Arch, for which the Persians have a great Veneration; And *Nisaber*, or *Nichabour*.

The Province of *Estarabad*, or *Estarabad*, gene- IX. rally omitted in the Maps, is plac'd by M. Taver- Esterabad. nier, between *Chorassan* on the South, and the Ri- ver *Jibin* on the North, where *Margiana* was anciently situated; but others set out its Bounds farther towards the West. The chief Towns are *Estarabad*, the Capital of the Province, *Damkam*, and *Amul*. This Province is the *Khoemus* of the common Maps.

Having taken a View of the first six Provinces X. of *Persia*, lying out towards the East, we come to Mazanderan. the four next, viz. *Mazanderan*, *Chirvan*, *Edzer- bajan* and *Herak-Ageni*, that appear on the North. M. Tavernier describes a Province in which *Mazanderan* and *Kylan* are both comprehended, for the latter is a Part of the former; but others make them distinct Territories. The Province of *Mazanderan*, or *Mazanderan*, call'd *Tabaristan*, or *Tabaristan*, by M. Sanson, being strictly taken, is a Part of Eastern *Mazanderan*, according to the Maps, and its Northern Tract is wash'd by the *Caspian* Sea. The Country is marshy and annoy'd with innumerable swarms of Insects, which extremely infect the Air, as well as the Vapours that rise up out of the Fens; but they dye as soon as the Pools are dryed up by the heat of the Summer, and there are many very fruitful Tracts of Land. The chief City nam'd *Tabaristan* is mention'd by Dr. Frow as a considerable place for weaving and transporting Silks and Velvets. The Province of *Kylan* or *Gilan* likewise borders Kylan. upon the *Caspian* Sea, and abounds with Silk; but the Air is not more healthful than in the former. The Towns and Villages of *Mazanderan* taken at large are (according to M. Tavernier) *Firuzkub*; *Sakarabad*; *Afionkiella*, seated near the Mountains; *Gira*, *Talarapack*, and *Saru*, in the Champaign Count; and *Ferbabad*; *Cirman*; and *Eckire*, on the Coast of the *Caspian* Sea, a Town of modern Structure.

From *Mazanderan* we pass to *Schirvan* and XI. *Edzerbajan*, which are commonly taken for se- Schirvan. parate Provinces, but they are united by M. Tavernier. *Chirvan*, *Sirvan*, *Schirvan*, or *Servan*, is the most Northern Part of *Persia*, and extends itself on the Western Coasts of the *Caspian* Sea. The most eminent Town of these Parts is *Derbent*, i. e. *A straight Gate*, in the Persian Language, or *Demir-capi*, i. e. *An Iron Gate*, according to the Turkish



Turkish Dialect; and hereabouts were the *Caspia Pylæ* of the Ancients, call'd *Caspia Clausura* by *Tacitus*. This Town stands in the Frontiers of *Dagestan*, on the Foot of a Mountain, between its Straights and the *Caspian Sea*, and is so well fortify'd (as we are inform'd by *M. Baudrand*) that it may easily hold out against any hostile Attack whatsoever; inasmuch that 'tis no wonder, the *Turks* have impos'd on it the Name of the *Iron-gate*. It is also remarkable for its fine Castle, capacious Harbour, and the usual Passage from *Persia* into *Muscovy*; nevertheless its Inhabitants are not numerous, and it daily falls to decay. The other noted Towns of *Chirvan*, are *Baku*, or *Bakuye*, on the same Sea-coast, and *Chamaki*, or *Schamachin* in the inland Country.

XII.  
Edzer-  
bayan.

The Province of *Edzerbayan*, otherwise nam'd *Aderbejan*, *Adherbeizan* and *Adirbeizan*, is situated more Southward, and enjoys a healthful, though somewhat cold Air. Its most considerable Places and Towns are *Ardebil*, or *Ardevil*, one of the principal Cities of the whole Persian Empire, and a renowned Mart especially for Silk; of large Extent, and pleasant Situation; where is to be seen the Monument of *Cha-Sefi* the first of that Name, King of *Persia*, to which the Persians resort, from all the Provinces, out of a Principle of Devotion; as also, the Tombs of some other Princes of the same Race: *Tebri*, or *Taberez*, so call'd by the Inhabitants, but known among Foreigners by the Name of *Tauris*, and generally suppos'd to be the *Eckbatana* of the Ancients, a large, populous and noted Mart-Town, where the King formerly kept his Court, and is at present the Seat of the chief Patriarch, abounding more especially with Silk, for which it is a great Empory; seated in a Champain Country that brings forth great store of Corn and Pulse, and surrounded with Hills almost on all sides; the Houses being built with Stricks dried in the Sun: And *Saltania*, or *Soltania*, a Town which in many Maps is plac'd in the neighbouring Provinces of *Hierak-Agemi*, remarkable for its Situation in a fruitful Territory, and the various temperature of the Air, which is excessive Hot in the Day, and no less cold in the Morning, Evening and at Night. This Town was often taken and recover'd by the *Turks* and *Persians*, and at present continues in the Possession of the latter.

XIII.  
Herak-  
Agemi.

The Province of *Hierak-Agemi*, *Icrak-Agemi*, *Erack-Atzem*, or *Eirak*, borders upon *Edzerbayan*, *Gilan* and *Tabaristan*, on the South, and contains the following Towns of chief Note, viz. *Kasbin*, or *Caswin*, sometime the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Persia*, after the taking of *Tebri*, but now destitute of Walls; and inhabited for the most part by *Mahometans*: The Houses of this Town are very mean, and above one half of it is taken up with Gardens, among which are those that belong to the King's Court: 'Tis sicker than *Ispahan*, though it exceed it in plenty of all things, says *Dr. Fryar*. *Sava*, a neat Town in a fruitful Plain: *Kom*, one of the largest Towns of *Persia*, in a Champain Country that brings forth good store of Rice, with several sorts of Fruit, and particularly most excellent Pomegranates; here are also certain stately Monuments that are highly esteem'd by the Natives: *Kachan*, or *Kaschan*, a large and populous Town, affording plenty of

Fruit and Wine; where a great number of *Jews* have their Habitations, and where the richest sorts of Silk-Manufactures are usually made. *Hamadani*, a Place that abounds with Cattel, Butter, Cheese, Hides and Tobacco, and through which the *Persians* are us'd to pass in their Journey to *Mecca*. *Ispahan*, or *Hispahan*, otherwise call'd *Aspahan* and *Haspachan*, as also *Sfahan*, *Spahann* and *Sfaon*, according to the Persian Dialect, the present Metropolis of the whole Kingdom and the Royal Seat, built in a very fruitful and spacious Plain, with three large Suburbs: So that it takes up sixteen Miles in Compass, and is almost equal in Largeness to the City of *Paris* in *France*; but a great deal less populous; by reason of the great number of Gardens and void Places. The private Buildings here are mean, but the *Sophy's* Palace, together with some Noblemen's Houses; the Buzzars or Exchanges, the Carawanfara's or publick Inns, the Huminums or Baths, and the Temples, are magnificent Structures. This City was anciently call'd *Hecatompylos* from its hundred Gates; and was the greatest Mart in *Asia*, before the Europeans found the way to *India* by Sea, having been the Staple for the Commodities of those Countries.

The other noted Places of this Province, are *Zulfa*, *Julfa*, or *Golsa*, formerly a Colony of the *Armenians*, and a considerable Town, nearer than *Ispahan*, and situated farther towards the South: It is also taken by several Authors for a Suburb to that City; the most pleasant Walk of the whole Kingdom, lying between both, which may be pass'd over, within the space of half an Hour: And *Tezd*, a large but ruinous Town in the sandy Defart, where great quantities of Silk-clothes are work'd. There are also Women of an admirable Beauty, and a sort of Wine that is very grateful to the Palate.

It remains only to give a Description of the XIV. three last Provinces of *Persia*, viz. those of *Chusistan*, *Chusi-Farsistan* and *Kerman*, which are extended farther than towards the South, and are wash'd by the Persian Gulph. The most Western of these is *Kasistan*, or *Chusistan*, situated on the innermost Bay of the Gulph of *Bassora*, and on the lowest Part of that common Receptacle of the Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. However, Authors are not agreed; as to the Extent of this Province, the best Towns of which (according to *M. Tavernier*) are *Suster*, *Schouster*, or *Sus* anciently *Susa*, the Capital; *Ardgan*; *Ram-hormous*; *Ahawas*; and *Skabar*; as also, two little Sea-port Towns, on the Gulph of *Bassora*, nam'd *Bander-Rik* and *Bander-Rakel*.

The Province of *Farsistan*, or *Fars*, lyes next to XV. *Chusistan*, on the East; and its most eminent Towns are *Kazeron*, the Territory about which yields a abundance of Citrons and Lemmons; neither is there any want of fine Cypress-Trees. *Astakar*, where stood the ancient *Persepolis*, so celebrated for its magnificent Structure and immense Wealth: It had been for many Ages the Metropolis of this Empire, and the Seat of its Monarch before *Alexander* the Great destroyed it. That Prince having seized the publick Treasure, which *Diod. Siculus* tells us amounted to 120000 Talents, gave the Pillage of the City to his Soldiers, and afterwards in a drunken Frolick (being excited by *Thais* the Curtezian) set fire to the Palace, and ut-



tem destroyed the most glorious Structure in the World. Mr *Herbert* has given us a very good Account of its Ruins, to which we must refer our Reader, not having room to transcribe him; and can only say that the Height, Beauty and Solidity of its Columns appear by what remains, the Sight wherof ravishes the beholder, and demonstrates that nothing in Antiquity could exceed the Magnificence of this Place. It must be mention'd that some Authors make *Schiras* the ancient *Persepolis*; as others, *Cabalmanare*, q. d. forty Towers; but modern Travellers assure us that though *Schiras* grew up out of its Ruins, yet it is two days distant from it. *Schiras*, or *Chiras*, the Metropolis of the Province, seated in a Plain, encompass'd with rocky Mountains; by tradition said to have arisen out of the Ruins of *Persepolis*, but by others affirm'd to have been built by *Cyrus*. This City may be reckon'd the second best in all the Empire: being the Seat of a very considerable Traffick, and adorn'd with many stately Bazzars, magnificent Palaces, and pleasant Gardens, Walks, Colleges and Temples. This being esteem'd a Holy-Place is also adorn'd with publick Schools and Convents well endow'd, and may be call'd the University of *Peria*. But the common Houses are made of Earth daub'd over with Mud, and may easily be wash'd away by the Rain, which very seldom fails in these Parts. The adjacent Country affords the purest Wine of all *Peria*. *Benavon*, *Firuz-shad*, a little Town in a Territory that abounds with Dates and Damasci's, so that the Inhabitants extract from the latter an Oil of a pleasant smell. *Darab-Ger*, or *Daragard*, where is Salt of all manner of Colours, and great store of Apples, with which a kind of Cyder is made, as also Oranges and Lemmons. Moreover the Kingdom of *Lor* which now constitutes a part of *Fars*, was heretofore govern'd by its own Princes: But it is at present subject to the King of *Peria*, and reaches as far as the Persian Gulph. The Air hereabouts is excessive Hot, and the Metropolis of this Kingdom is likewise nam'd *Lor* or *Lhor*, a Town of no small Extent, built on a Rock, amidst high Mountains, and fenced with a Cattle: It is call'd by Dr. *Fox* the Granary of these Parts, being a Place of considerable Trade, adorn'd with an Exchange and many good Buildings, especially the *Casns* or Governor's Palace, which is very stately and magnificent. The neighbouring Territory is fruitful, and affords great plenty of Oranges. On the Gulph, we may observe *Bander-Kongo*, a very considerable Sea-port Town, where the Air is healthful and the Water excellent. As also *Gombroon*, or *Bander-Abassin* as 'tis nam'd by the Natives; a Town of great Trade, extended a Mile in Length along the Banks of the Gulph: and especially notable to us on Account of the English Factory there, to whom the Monarch of the Customs of Right belong: being granted to them for the Service the English perform'd at the taking of *Ormuz* from the Portuguese. The Air here is exceeding Hot, and the Water not very good. This is the chief Port of *Peria* for European and Indian Trade, and is much frequented by the English and Dutch. 'Tis seated at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Bassra* in the 27th. Deg. of Latitude, and 74th. of Longitude.

Over against *Gombroon* in the narrow Straight

of *Mossandan* lies the small Island *Ormuz*, or *Or-Ormuz* now, a Place of Barren Soil and very scorching Island. Air; but being seated in the middle of this Straight, it is the Key to the Persian Gulph; and its chief Town of the same Name was once the Capital of a Kingdom which extended its self far, on both the Persian and Arabian Shores. In the Year 1517 the Town and Island were taken by the Portuguese, under whom it was a most flourishing and wealthy Place. But in 1622 the English assisting the Persian (who had long attack'd it in vain) took the Town by Stratagem, and the Portuguese were immediately expell'd; since when the Town being slighted, the magnificent Portuguese Buildings are fallen to ruine; and except in the Cattle (which is well garison'd) there are few Inhabitants on the Island: The rise of *Gombroon* proceeded from the decay of this Place, and all the Trade of it is remov'd thither.

We are now come to the Province of *Kerman*, *XVI.* *Kherman*, *Kherman*, or *Kirman*, which is the last *Kherman* of all, and extends it self on the Coasts of the Gulph of *Ormuz*. The most remarkable Places and Towns, are *Bermazir*, or *Bermazir*, *Kerman*, or *Cherman*, the Capital City of a large Compass, but now ruinous, where a sort of earthen Ware is made, scarce inferior to the China Porcellane: *Moskhan*: *Fakes*, or *Falques*, a Sea-port Town on the Gulph of *Ormuz*, with an adjacent Promontory of the same Name: And *Kubejek*, another Port on the same Gulph.

Hitherto we have been treating of Modern *Per-* *XVII.* *ia*, but the ancient Persian Monarchy far exceed'd these Bounds: For it extended it self East and West, from *India* within the River *Ganges*, *The Bounds of the ancient Kingdom of Persia.* part of which was also comprehended therein; as far as the *Hellepont*, or Straight of *Gallipoli*; in passing of which *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspes*, and more especially his Son *Xerxes*, receiv'd a great Overthrow, notwithstanding their numerous Armies: And from North to South, it extended from *Scythia*, against which the same *Darius* undertook a fruitless Expedition: as also, from the *Caspian* Sea, Mount *Caucasus*, and the River *Tanais*, beyond which *Darius* was not able to extend his Dominions; to the Mouth of the Arabian Gulph, and the Confines of *Ethiopia*: For *Cambyses*, who united *Egypt* to the Persian Empire, had an ill Success, in leading an Army against the *Ethiopians*.

But to omit the ancient Limits, we shall set *XVIII.* down what Provinces were anciently contain'd in the Kingdom of *Peria* in its present Extent. Some Authors reckon up seventeen of these Provinces; and others sixteen, or fourteen: Others again (whose Opinion we shall here follow) reduce all to five Articles, and they are *Aria*, *Bactriana*, *Parthia*, *Media*, and *Peria*; which were subdivided into divers Parts, viz. The Parts of *Aria* were five in number, viz. *Gedrosia*, *Arachosia*, *Drangiana*, *Aria* proper, and *Paropanissus*. Those of *Bactriana* were two, viz. *Sordiana* and Proper *Bactriana*. Those of *Parthia* were three, viz. *Margiana*, *Hircania* and *Parthia*. Those of *Media* were as many, viz. *Chorasmiana*, *Tropazena* and *Anroparia*. Lastly, the Parts of *Peria* were likewise three, viz. *Susiana*, Proper *Peria* and *Carmania*.

These



XIX. These ancient Provinces agree thus with the modern. *Gedrosia* seems not to have been, where *Guzarat* now takes place; but in the room of *Sindia*, or (as others will have it) of *Makran*; for it was situated on the West of the River *Indus*. *Arachosia* comprehended the Kingdom of *Haiacan*, now part of the Great *Mogul's* Empire, and the Province of *Candahar* in modern *Persia*. *Dran-giana*, at present bears the Name of *Sigistan*; and *Sabletan* supplies the place of the Eastern Parts of *Aria* and *Paropamisus*, otherwise call'd *Paropamisus* and *Paropamisus*. *Sogdiana* and *Bactriana* were extended on the Territories of *Usbeck*, or the Country beyond the River *Oxus*, or *Jihun*, being part of Great *Tartary*. *Margiana* was in the room of *Chorassan*, Part of which Province (according to some Authors) was taken up by *Bactriana*, *Aria*, and *Parthia*; but M. *Tavernier* places *Margiana* in those Parts, where he has set out the Bounds of *Estarabul*. *Hircania*, which impos'd its Name on the *Hircanian* or *Caspian* Sea, was included within the Limits of *Alexandervan*, or *Tabarestan*. *Parthia* took up the Western Part of *Chorassan*, with the Eastern Tracts of *Hirak-Agemi*, and its Capital City sometime the largest of the whole Continent of *Persia*, and the Metropolis of the Kingdom was *Hecatompylos*, or *Hecatompylon*, which took its Name from its hundred Gates, and is now suppos'd to be either *Ispahan*, or *Tezde*. The *Parthians* who were before a slothful People, and of no repute; after the Death of *Alexander* the Great, extended their Conquests far and near; and in the time of the Roman Grandeur, they not only possess'd the whole *Perlian* Empire, but also *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia* and *Babylonia*.

*Media*. The Country of *Media* took up the Provinces now named, *Kylan*, *Schirvan*, *Edzerbayan* and the Western Part of *Hirak-Agemi*; but *Media*, *Choromithrenia*, or *Choromithrene* took up the Part of *Media*, towards the South-East, and next to that (according to *Ptolemy's* Map) lay *Media Tropatena*, bordering on the *Hircanian* Sea: Lastly, *Media Antropatia*, otherwise call'd *Atropatia* and *Atropatene*, extended it self farthest towards the North-West, and was inhabited by the *Caspian*, a particular People, from whom the neighbouring Sea deriv'd its Name. This noted Province heretofore constituted Part of the second Universal Monarchy, which at first comprehended two distinct Governments, and its Metropolis was *Ecbarana*, which many Authors take to be the same with the present *Tauris*; where the Kings of *Persia* (as it is observ'd by *Athenæus*) usually kept their Court, during the Summer-Season.

Part of the ten Tribes of Israel. Part of the ten Tribes of *Israel*, that were carried away captive into *Assyria*, by *Salmanasser*, dwell in *Media*, and even according to *Bochart's*

Opinion, which is follow'd by several learned Men) in *Media Antropatena*; where between the two Streams of the River *Cyrus*, almost in the middle, between Mount *Choatras*, or *Chaboras* (as the same *Bochart* terms it) and the *Caspian* Sea; the Town of *Gauzania* was seated, which (says he) might probably communicate its Name to the neighbouring Country and River: but when the *Perlians* obtain'd the Sovereignty of those Parts, the Name of the said River was chang'd in honour of King *Cyrus*; as another River of *Media* near the *Cyrus*, was dignify'd with that of *Cambyses*. Others are apt to believe, that the Town of *Gauzania* had its Denomination from the River *Gozan*. But the Posterity of the *Israelites* did not always abide in *Media*; being in process of time convey'd to *Hircania*, *Parthia*, *Persis*, *Carmania*, and the most remote Parts of the East, even to *India* and *China*; as also, (as the learned *Spanhemius* observes out of *Herodotus* and *Diodorus Siculus*) to *Armenia*, *Iberia* and *Colchis*. The same Author adds, That a great number of the *Israelites* afterwards return'd to *Palestine*, and had Places of Habitation in common with the other two Tribes: Moreover that they grew so numerous as to fill *Egypt* and the adjacent Countries: And upon the Dispersion of the *Greeks*, they settled themselves in *Asia Minor*, *Greece* and *Macedonia*; and at last came to possess some Countries of *Persis*, the remaining part of *Persia*.

The Country of *Susiana* was situated within the *Susian* Bounds of *Chusistan*, and its Metropolis was *Susa*; now call'd *Suster*, or *Schouster*, enjoying a very gentle and pleasant Air, where (according to *Athenæus*) the *Perlian* Monarchs resid'd during the Winter-quarter. The Province of *Persis* took place in *Farsistan*, and its capital City was *Persepolis*, which some Authors suppose to be *Schiras*, but others place it in the Neighbourhood of that Town on the North, where, or near which are to be seen the Ruins of *Chilminar*, or *Tcheelminar* (as M. *Tavernier* expresses it) that is to say, several ancient Columns, and Statues of no Repute, with certain square and obscure Arches; all which relicks, the same M. *Tavernier*, who actually view'd them, affirms to be undeservedly so much cry'd up by other Writers. *Persepolis* (as we are inform'd by *Athenæus*) formerly afford'd a Place of Residence to the Kings of *Persia*, during the Autumnal Season, before it was burnt and laid wast by *Alexander* the Great, in a drunken Fit, at the instigation of the Harlot *Thais*. Lastly, the Country of *Carmania*, which was divided into two Parts, viz. the Desert bordering upon *Parthia*, and *Carmania* properly so call'd, that lay next to *Persis*, on the South, and along the Sea-coasts in the room of Modern *Carmania*; or *Kherman*:



## CHAP. XX.

## Modern and ancient Arabia.

For a Map, consult that of *Turkey* in *Asia*.

I.  
Arabia

**T**HE eighth and last Part of *Asia*, commonly call'd *Arabia*, or *Arabian*, according to the Dialect of the Asiaticks, is bounded on the East, by the Gulph of *Ormus*, the Strait of *Mosendan* and the Gulph of *Bahira*, which separate it from *Persia*: On the North, by *Turkey* and the River *Euphrates*, that part its Frontiers, from those of *Diarbeck* strictly taken; as also, by *Syria*: On the West, by the *Isthmus* of *Arabia*, otherwise termed the *Isthmus* of *Egypt*, or of *Suez*; the Red-Sea, and the Strait of *Babelmandel*, by which it is divided from *Africa*: And on the South, by the Arabian Sea. It is situated under the Tropick of *Cancer*, between the 14 and 33 Degree of Northern Latitude, and extends itself in Longitude from West to East, that is to say, from the *Isthmus* of *Suez* to Cape *Rez Algaz* for the space of 30 Degrees.

II.

The Air of this Country is often excessive hot, and the Soil in many Places is so very rough, sandy, dry and barren, that though a little matter satisfies Nature, yet the Earth produces not sufficient for its support: The Rivers are but few in number, and these but shallow and small; and Rain is seldom seen there, so that they have nothing but the Dew, which falls in abundance, to water the Land, and mitigate the extreme heat of the Weather. However, the Sea-Coasts, and the Tracts that lie near Rivers are more fruitful, producing good store of Frankincense, Myrrh, Albes, Cassia, Spikenard, Cardamum, Cinnamon, Pepper, Dates, Oranges, Lemmons, several sorts of Apples, Honey and Wax: The Inland parts yield Pastures for Horses, Camels and Sheep that deserve much commendation; and the Sea is no less remarkable for affording plenty of Fish, as also Pearls and Coral.

Some of the Arabians living in Towns, exercise Mechanical Trades, follow Merchandizing, and apply themselves to the study of the liberal Arts and Sciences, being well vers'd in Physick, Philosophy, and more especially the Mathematics; inasmuch that they are said to have invented the Arithmetical Characters, which are now generally in Use. Others live in the Woods and Mountains, under Tents made of Hair-cloth, after the manner of the Tartars: Upon which account, they were heretofore call'd *Scenice*, as also *Nomades* and *Vagis*, or Wanderers; because they often remove their Tents to better Pastures, and drive their Cattel along with them for Forage. These wild *Arabs*, who are excellent Horse-men and most expert Archers, rove up and down in Troops, to rob Strangers, and frequently lye in wait for the Caravans that travel to *Mecca*.

*Arabia* is partly subject to the *Turks* and partly to the *Persians*, but the most considerable Part is govern'd by its own Princes and States, who being secur'd by the Mountains valiantly maintain their Liberty against the Assaults of their Enemies: They are generally addicted to the Mahometan Religion, and speak a Language, which in former

times did not exceed the Bounds of their Country: but when the *Saracens* began to enlarge their Dominions it was spread abroad far and wide, and is known at this Day, in *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, the Coasts of *Africa* on the Red Sea, *Egypt*, and along all the Coasts of the Mediterranean, even to the Strait of *Gibraltar*, although its Dialects are different in several Places: Moreover it is the Language of the Learned, wheresoever the Mahometan Superstition prevails; for it is forbidden to read the *Alchoran* in any other Tongue but the Arabick.

The whole Continent is usually divided in *Arabia Felix*, *Deserta* and *Petrea*, which are again subdivided into several parts, as is seen in the following Table.

III.

Chief Towns.	
ARABIA divided into three Parts, viz.	On the South,
	Calajata Mascata
	Sohar Orsacan
	Corscan Iqtir
	Nablan Tabla
	Jemena Mascalat
	Sochar Masfa
	Mirabat Syr
	Calhat, or Quelhat
	Aman-ziridin
	Siger.
	Alibinali
	Guebelhaman Pechar
	Hadr.
	Dofar Fartach
	Almacharan Laghi
	Aden Mocha
	Zibit Mareb
	Tehama.
	Dhafar Sanaa
	Saada Hans Jacseb
	Hagiaz.
	Ziden Mecca, the Metropolis of Arabia.
	Baisat Tajef
	Giadila Chaibar
	Medina Taref
	Bain Nackel
	Larama.
	Salamia Iamama
	Tima Hadrana, or Hadruma
	Bahrain.
	Chetta Laffach
	Biscia Ei-Caif
	Bahreim, or Bahr
	Alhsa Halanija
	On the North,
	Anna
	Tangia
	Tjamma Sukana
	Anna Anah Dalia
	Rahabat Samiscabac

Arabia



Arabia Petraea, in which are,	In the in- land Coun- try	{ Busscret Herae, or Herat
	On, or near the Red Sea	{ Madian El-Tor Elian Faran

*ARABIA FELIX*, i. e. the happy or fruitful *Arabia*, call'd *Iemen* by the Inhabitants and *Turks*, as also *Hyaman* or *Hiemen*, and sometimes proper *Arabia*, is extended farthest towards the South and West; being three or four times larger than *Arabia Deserta* and *Petrea*. It is surrounded by Water except on the North, for the Gulfs of *Bassora* and *Ormuz*, are on the East, the Red Sea on the West, and the Arabian Sea on the South; so that it is a kind of Peninsula, whose Isthmus, being a continued Ridge of Mountains is above 500 Miles ever. This Country is the most populous, best cultivated and most fruitful of all *Arabia*, and its Productions are such as have been particularly mention'd in the beginning of this Chapter: so that it is deservedly dignify'd with the Title of the *Happy* or *Fortunate*.

IV. Many Kingdoms and Provinces are comprehended within the Bounds of *Arabia Felix*; and *Golius* tells us, that the *Arabians* themselves divide it into six Countries, to which they reduce all the rest. In *M. Samson's* Map of *Asia*, it is distinguished into seven principal Parts, the Names of which are these, viz. *Oman*, *Segar*, *Hadramut*, *Tekema*, *Hegiaz*, *Jawama*, and *Babrain*. Others leave out *Segar*, and add *Ormuz* to the six other Provinces, which (according to *M. Samson*) constitutes a part of *Oman*.

V. *Oman*, being the most Eastern Province of this Part of *Arabia* is wash'd by the Arabian Sea, as also by the Gulphs of *Ormuz* and *Bassora*: Its most remarkable Towns on the Gulph of *Ormuz* are *Calaita*; *Mascara* a noted Mart, (which in some Maps is plac'd under the Tropick of *Cancer*, and in others farther towards the North) having a convenient Harbour and a strong Castle. This Town was formerly possess'd by the Portuguese, but is now subject to its own Prince, who took it from them not long ago. *Sohar*, *Orfacan*, or *Orfacan*, and *Corfacan* on the Promontory of *Mofaidan*, which lies out over against the Island of *Ormuz*, and communicates its Name to the adjacent Strait. On the Gulph of *Bassora*, appear *Iquir*, or *Iguir*, *Naban* and *Tabla*. In the Inland Country, are *Femena*, the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name; *Mascat*; *Sochar*; *Masfa*; *Mirabat*; *Syr*, otherwise call'd *Sur* and *Tsar*; *Calhat* or *Quelhat*; and *Amanzirifdin*, or *Aman-Zirifdin*, the Metropolis of a Kingdom so nam'd, which is otherwise termed *Oman* by *M. Baudrand*.

VI. The Province of *Segar* lies next to *Oman*, on the South-West, and Part of it on the Coasts of the Arabian Sea. The chief Towns hereabouts, are *Alibinali*, the Capital of a Kingdom that bears the same Name, which is also call'd, The Kingdom of *Segar*; *Guebelhaman*, and *Pecker*, on the Sea-Coasts.

VII. The Country of *Hadramut* borders upon *Segar*, on the West, and extends itself on the Arabian Sea, Strait and Gulph. Its noted Places and Towns,

are *Dofar*, *Fartach*, which others call *Hadramut*, the chief City of the Kingdom; *Almacharan*; *Laghi*; *Aden*, a very strong Town in the Arabian Sea, and the Capital of the Kingdom of *Aden*, with a capacious Harbour; formerly subject to the *Turks*, and at present to the King of *Mocha*; *Mocha*, a large well-built Town and a considerable Mart, with a convenient Harbour, on the same Arabian Sea, continuing under the Government of its own Prince, and abounding with Coffee, red Coral, &c. *Zibir*, a Town likewise of a large Extent, seated on a River of the same Name, the Capital of the Kingdom of *Zibir*, which is also termed that of *Saba*, sometime belonging to the Dominions of the *Turks*, but now govern'd by its own King, who subdu'd it by force of Arms.

On the North of *Hadramut* appears *Tekema*, in VIII. like manner on the Arabian Gulph, and its Towns *Tekema*; of note are *Dhafar*; *Sanau*, which in some Maps is set down within the Territories of *Segar*; *Saada*, on the Frontiers; *Hans*; and *Jacfab*.

The Province of *Hegiaz*, *Hegiaz*, or *Higiaz*, IX. extends itself between *Tekema* and *Arabia Petraea*, *Hegiaz*; on the Coasts of the Red Sea, or Arabian Gulph: Some make this Country part of *Arabia Petraea*, others include it in *Arabia Felix*; and others again separate it from both. 'Tis a large Country and divided into two Parts, viz. those of *Mecca* and *Medina*. The most eminent Places and Towns are *Ziden*, otherwise nam'd *Giodda*, on the Coasts of the Red Sea; *Mecca* the Metropolis of this Part of *Arabia*, seated at a little distance from the River *Chaibar*, in a dry and barren Valley, surrounded on all sides with Mountains; being more especially renowned for the Birth of the false Prophet *Mahomet*, and frequented by the *Turks* from all the Corners of the *Ottoman* Empire, as also by the *Mahometans* of the other Parts of the World, who go thither in Pilgrimage, to perform their Devotions. This City has impos'd its Name on the neighbouring Gulph, and is the chief of the Principality of *Mecca*, govern'd by its own Prince, commonly call'd the *Cherif*, *Scheck*, or *Sultan*, one of the most Potent of *Arabia*, who deriving his Original from *Mahomet* is highly reverenc'd, and loaded with Presents, by the *Turks*, *Persians*, and all the other Tribes of superstitious Votaries; to the end that he may drive the *Beduins* (a very powerful People of *Arabia Felix*, who are us'd to rest upon the *Caravans* in their Journey to *Mecca*) out of his Dominions, or at least hinder them from committing Robberies and Devastations, after their usual manner. *M. Bernier*, who had an opportunity to view this Country, places *Mecca* in *Arabia Petraea*, although in the greatest part of the Maps it is appropriated to *Arabia Felix*.

The other remarkable Towns of this Province, are *Baisat*, *Tajef*, *Giadila*, *Chaibar*, on a River of the same Name; and *Medina*, *Medina-Talnabi*, or *Medina-Tholnabi*, i. e. The Prophet's City, which *M. Baudrand* sets within the Bounds of *Arabia Petraea*, situated in a Plain near the River *Laakic*, and being of a narrower compass than *Mecca*, but no less famous for the Pilgrimages of the *Mahometans*, who go thither to visit the celebrated Tomb of their great Prophet, which is raised on high and supported with slender Pillars, but not at all Pendulous, nor is there any Iron, Steel, or Load-stone to be seen about it. Moreover, some Writers



Writers affirm against the common Opinion, that *Mahomet* was born there; but it is certain, that when he was forc'd to leave *Mecca*, by reason that the Inhabitants disapproved his Doctrine, he fled to *Medina*: where being honourably entertain'd, he not only had free liberty to propagate his Religion, but also took up Arms with his Followers, and established the Seat of his Empire; so that it is no wonder that it obtain'd the Name of the Prophet's City. From this Flight of *Mahomet* the *Hegira*, or Arabian Account of Time took its Rise, which is refer'd to the 15th. Day of *July*, A. C. 622. and is still in use among the *Mahometans*. Between *Mecca* and *Medina* lies the Desert, commonly call'd the *Sand-Sea*, through which it is not safe to pass without a Mariners-company and a Guide, by reason of the light Sands that are easily blown up by the Winds, and threaten sudden Destruction to Travellers. Lastly, the Towns of *Tera* and *Bera-Nebel* are situated farther in the Inland Country towards the East and North.

X. On the East of *Hagiaz* lies the Country of *Farama*, whose chief Towns are *Senna*, *Farama*, the Capital on the River *Ahm*: *Tera*, and *Hadrana*, or *Hadrana*. In this Province (as it is express'd in the Maps), are the Territories of the *Bengalis*, a very powerful People, who wander up and down, and infect the Roads with Robberies.

XI. The seventh and last Part of *Arabia Felix* is *Bazama*, or *Bazama*, lying in the middle, between *Lomama* on the West, and the innermost Bay of the Persian Gulph, on the East: It is (as they say) almost entirely subject to the Dominion of the *Turks*, and contains the following considerable Towns, *Terak*, *Terak*, and *Terak*, otherwise call'd *Terak* and *Terak*, placed in the Geographical Latitude of *Omama*: *Terak* the Capital of the Turkish Government call'd *Terak* *Bagierbeg*, *Terak*, which is pretended *Bazama*. On the Gulph appear *Terak*, *Terak*, a fine us Sea-port Town, plac'd by the *Turks*, from which the adjacent Land, at this Day, derives its Name: *Terak*, *Terak*, or *Terak*, over against which lies an Island of the same Name, not far from the Shore, very much noted for the Pearl-fishing that is manag'd thereabouts: *Terak*, or *Terak*, and *Terak*, which stands farther towards the North.

XII. It is determin'd among the Learned, that the *Tera* Lands of *Tera* and *Hadrana*, watered by the Rivers of *Cush* and *Pala*, were situated in a Tract of *Arabia Felix*, abounding with Gold, precious Stones and Spice, and bordering upon the Persian Gulph, into which these Rivers discharge themselves, with the *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. This Country was anciently inhabited by the *Sabeans*, and their Name is sometimes communicated to the whole continent of Spice-bearing *Arabia*; so that it is not at all to be admir'd, that *Arabia Felix* was otherwise call'd *Sabea*: But the *Sabeans* properly so nam'd, whose Progenitor was *Saba*, or *Saba*, the Son of *Falia*, were settled on the Coasts of the Arabian Gulph, near the *Mina*: and their Country produc'd great store of Gold, Gems and Spice: the Metropolis of which was *Saba*, or *Saba*, term'd *Saba* by *Ptolemy*, where (according to the determination of many Authors, and particularly *Bochart*) the Queen of the South Reign'd,

who took a Journey to *Jerusalem* to visit King *Solomon*. *Josephus* is induc'd to believe, that the Queen of *Sabea* was the same with *Herodotus's* *Nicaula*, who Reign'd both in *Egypt* and *Ethiopia*, and receiv'd her Title from the Metropolis of the latter, which was *Saba*, before *Cambyses* gave it the Name of *Maroe*, from that of his Sister: But this Opinion of *Josephus* is extremely confuted by *Bochart*. The same *Bochart* besides *Solomon's* *Ophir* *Ophir* above-specify'd, Chap. 17. Sect. 15. admits of another *Ophir*, (as also does *M. Sams*) in *Arabia Felix*, near the Territories of the *Sabeans*, and in those of the *Cassaniri*, mention'd by *Ptolemy* and *Stephanus*, which yielded great plenty of the finest Gold.

The *Saracenes*, a People so nam'd from their inclination to Robbery and Rapine, likewise dwelt in *Arabia Felix*, and (according to *Ptolemy*) on the Confines of *Arabia Petraea*, whose Capital City was *Fatrippa*, or *Fatriban*, now call'd *Medina* and *Fatrib* by the Arabians. These People began first to be in good Repute, when the false Prophet *Mahomet* having escap'd by flight from *Mecca* to *Fatrippa*, was kindly entertain'd, and with the help of the Inhabitants subdu'd the neighbouring Nations: Then the *Saracenes* in a short time, made themselves Masters of *Arabia*, *Egypt*, the greatest Part of *Africa*, *Spain*, *Corfica*, *Sardinia*, *Candia*, and a very large Part of *Asia*, in so much that afterwards the *Ottoman* or Turkish Empire, the Kingdom of *Persia* and many others, took their Rise from that Stock; but now the Name of the *Saracenes*, through long Disuse, is become obsolete and quite laid aside.

XIII. Having thus taken a view of the largest Part of *Arabia*, situated towards the South, we come next to the Northren, comprehending the Countries of *Arabia Deserta* and *Petraea*. *ARABIA DESERTA* call'd *Beri-Arabia* by the Asiatics, as also *Arden* and *Beriva*, is bounded on the East, by *Terak*; on the North, by *Diarbeck*, or the River *Euphrates*, which likewise serves for a Boundary; on the West, by *Soria* and *Arabia Petraea*; and on the South, by the Mountains, which separate it from *Arabia Felix*. This Country is less Mountainous than the two other Parts of *Arabia*, abounding rather with Sands and vast Deserts; but that Part which lies near the *Euphrates* is more fruitful and better cultivated. It was partly under the Jurisdiction of the *Turks*, and is now govern'd by several Princes, one of whom is dignify'd with the Title of a King; and that part of the Holy Land which lies on the East side the River *Fordan*, is also comprehended within his Dominions: The Barrenness of the Country is a protection to the Princes of it; for the Grand Signior, sets no great value upon these Deserts, and the Towns are few in number; The most considerable, are *Anna*, on the River *Ahm*, and *Tangia* seated farther towards the West. *M. Thevenot* and others reckon *Balsora* among the Towns of *Arabia Deserta*, but we have already given a Description of it, in the Province of *Terak*. The other Places of note on the North, are *Tsamma*, *Sakana*, *Anna* or *Anah*, an ancient Town, and the Capital of this Part of *Arabia*; formerly a famous Mart, but now not much frequented; yet remarkable for its situation on the *Euphrates*, and on the Frontiers of *Diarbeck*, upon which account it is erroneously attributed to that Country, by some



some Authors *Dalia*; *Rahab*, on the same River; and *Sumiscabac*, nearer the Borders of *Arabia Petraea*.

XIV. The Land of *Uz*, the Seat of the Patriarch *Job*, *The Land* is plac'd by *Spanhemius* in *Desart Arabia*; yet not of *Uz*. towards the Persian Gulph, nor on the Confines of *Arabia Felix*, nor in the Southern, or Inland Parts of the former; but in its Northern Tract, near the River *Euphrates* and *Mesopotamia*. To prove this, he confutes many different Opinions, in the third Chapter of his Treatise call'd *The History of Job*; and at last in Chap. 4. confirms his own, with a great deal of Learning and Perspicuity: Among other Allegations he asserts, That that part of *Arabia Deserta* lay nearest of all to the Territories of the *Chaldeans*, whose Invasion is mention'd in the very beginning of the Book of *Job*: That the *Sabeans* a neighbouring People, who fell upon his Cattel and Servants, were not the *Sabeans* of *Arabia Felix*, but deriv'd their Original from *Seba*, the Grand-Son of *Abraham*, by *Keturah*, who settled his Abode towards the East, or in *Arabia Deserta*: That by this means the Sacred Text may be very easily explain'd, wherein it is express'd, that *Job was the greatest of all the Men of the East*: And that the Habitations of his Friends, and their Design in visiting him agree admirably well with the above-mention'd Seat of this Patriarch. It were needless to produce his other Arguments, but refer the Reader to the Book it self.

*Madianites* The same Author asserts, That the *Madianites*, *Medaneans*, *Dedaneans*, &c. descended of *Keturah*, inhabited a Tract of Land, either bordering upon that of *Job*, or at least, not very far distant from it. Thus he at first assigns to the *Madianites*, the Eastern Part of *Arabia Deserta*, who afterwards settled themselves farther towards the South and West, as far as the Coasts of the Arabian Gulph, where it washes *Arabia Petraea*. He makes the *Medaneans* next neighbours to the *Madianites*, who are also confounded with them; and in like manner places the *Dedaneans* in *Arabia Deserta*, on the Confines of *Syria Palmyrena*, at a little distance from the most remote Habitations of the *Itumeans*: See the sixth Chapter of his above-cited History. Some Authors are also of Opinion, That the *Magi*, or Wise-Men, who took a Journey from the East to *Jerusalem* upon our Saviour's Nativity, came from *Arabia Deserta*; with greater probability, I think, than those who believe that the Country was *Arabia Felix*: Again, others affirm, that they came from *Persia*, *Media*, or *Mesopotamia*.

XV. ARABIA PETRÆA, commonly call'd *Arabistan* by the Natives, and *Dajc-lik Arabistan* by the Turks, otherwise *Barraab* and *Baraba*, has for its Bounds on the East, *Arabia Deserta*; on the South, *Arabia Felix*; on the West, the Arabian Gulph and *Isthmus*; and on the North, the Territories of *Syria*. *Golius* and *Bernier*, as also, *M. Baudrand*, who follows their Steps, extend its Borders a great deal farther towards the South, than

is usually express'd in the Maps, so that they reckon *Medina* and *Mecca* among the Towns of *Arabia Petraea*; as has been already mention'd. This Country is mountainous, rocky and ill cultivated; subject to the Dominion of the Turks; and its most remarkable inland Towns, are *Busferet*; and *Herac*, or *Herat* the Capital, formerly call'd *Petra* and *Petra Deserti*, which communicated its Name to this Part of *Arabia*, and was sometime the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Moab*. On or near the Arabian Gulph, appear, *Madian*; *El-Tor*; *Eilan*, or *Hilan*; and *Faran*.

A considerable Part of the *Ishmaelites*, who were divided into twelve Tribes, inhabited *Arabia Petraea*; for their Territories reach'd from the Deserts of *Paran* and *Zur*, or from the Red-Sea to the Land of *Havilah*; that is to say, through *Arabia Petraea*, *Deserta* and *Felix*, as far as the River *Euphrates* and the Persian Gulph; insomuch that they were intermix'd with the *Madianites*, as the *Chusai*, or *Cushites*, were with both, who all in process of time became one Nation of the *Saracens*.

Moreover the *Israelites* in their passage from *Egypt* under the Conduct of *Moses*, arriv'd in this Part of *Arabia*, after having pass'd through the innermost Bay of the Red-Sea, and (as some Authors say) near the above-mention'd Town of *El-Tor*: Afterwards they wander'd through its Deserts nam'd *Zin*, *Sinai*, *Zur* and *Paran*, for the space of forty Years; making many Stations therein, as is shewn by the common Bible-Maps. Some Foot-steps of their Travels (they say) are still extant in the Desert of *Zin*, where are to be seen several Inscriptions cut in the Rocks, and reputed to be of the most ancient Assyrian Characters. In the Confines of *Arabia Petraea* and *Egypt*, near the Lake *Serbonis*, or *Sirbonis*, now call'd *Baranguerlis* by the Inhabitants; and the *Mediterranean Sea* (as we are inform'd by *Ptolemy*, *Strabo*, *Mela* and *Stephanus*) stood *Mount Casius*, which ought to be distinguish'd from another *Mount Casius* of *Antioch*, or *Proper Syria*: This Mountain was heretofore famous for the Temple of *Jupiter Casius*, and the Tomb of *Pompey* the Great was erected in its Neighbourhood. The Mountains of *Horeb* and *Sinai* often mention'd in the Sacred Writings, lye very near one another, and are situated farther towards the South-East: The latter is call'd *Gibel Mousa*, i. e. *Moses's Mount*, by the Turks; and the Europeans often term it the Mountain of *St. Catharine*, whose Body it suppos'd to have been buried there: Both these Mountains are said to be inhabited at this day, by certain Monks depending on the *Greek Church*, who courteously shew Travellers the Sacred Relicks, and Foot-steps of those things that were heretofore transacted in these Parts. Lastly, *Azion-gaber*, or *Ezion-geber*, was also seated on the Coast of *Arabia Petraea*, being at first one of the Mansions of the *Israelites*, and afterwards a Seaport Town, belonging to their Jurisdiction, from which King *Solomon's* Fleet set sail for *Ophir*.



A  
General and Particular  
DESCRIPTION  
OF  
AFRICA.

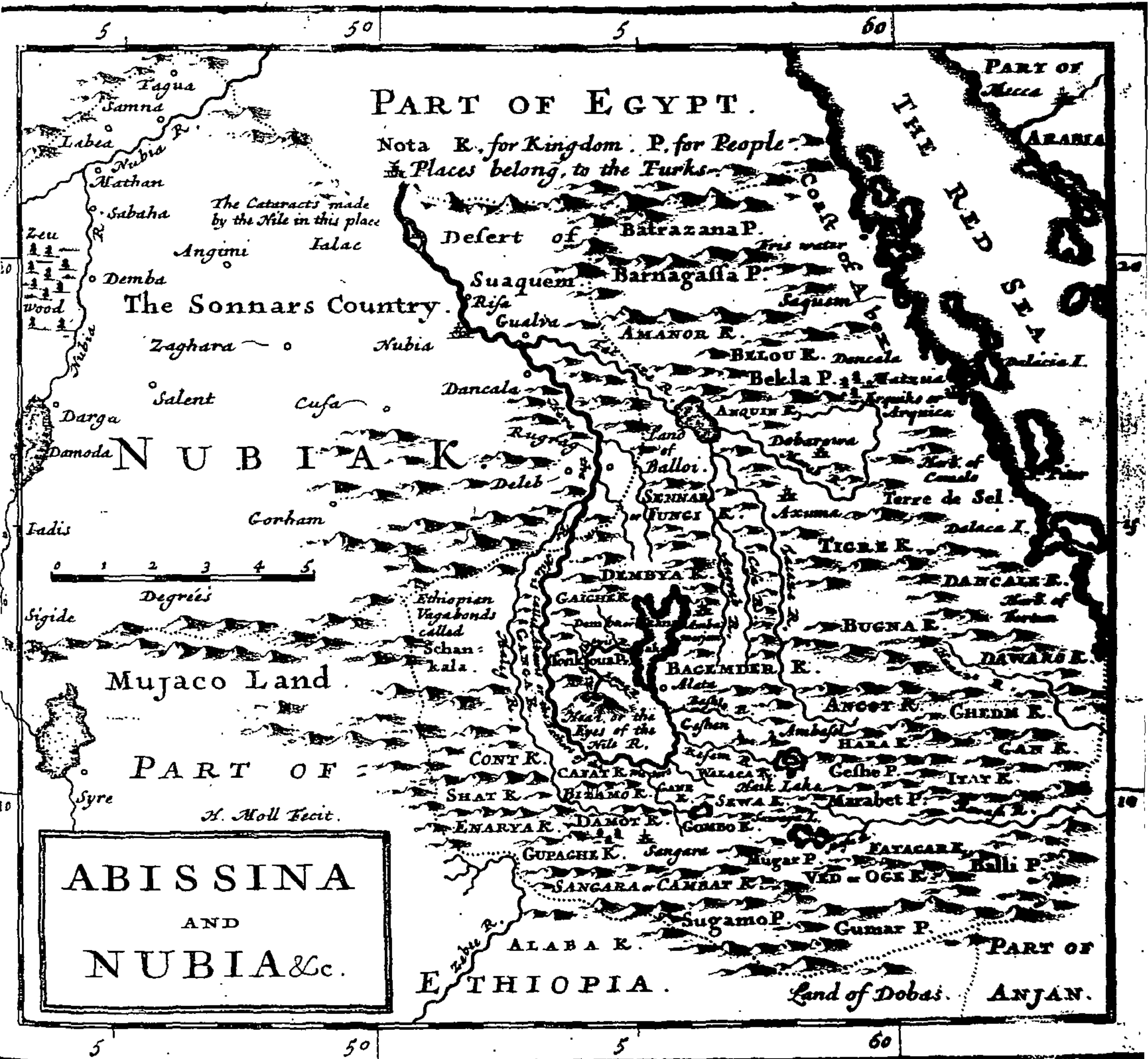
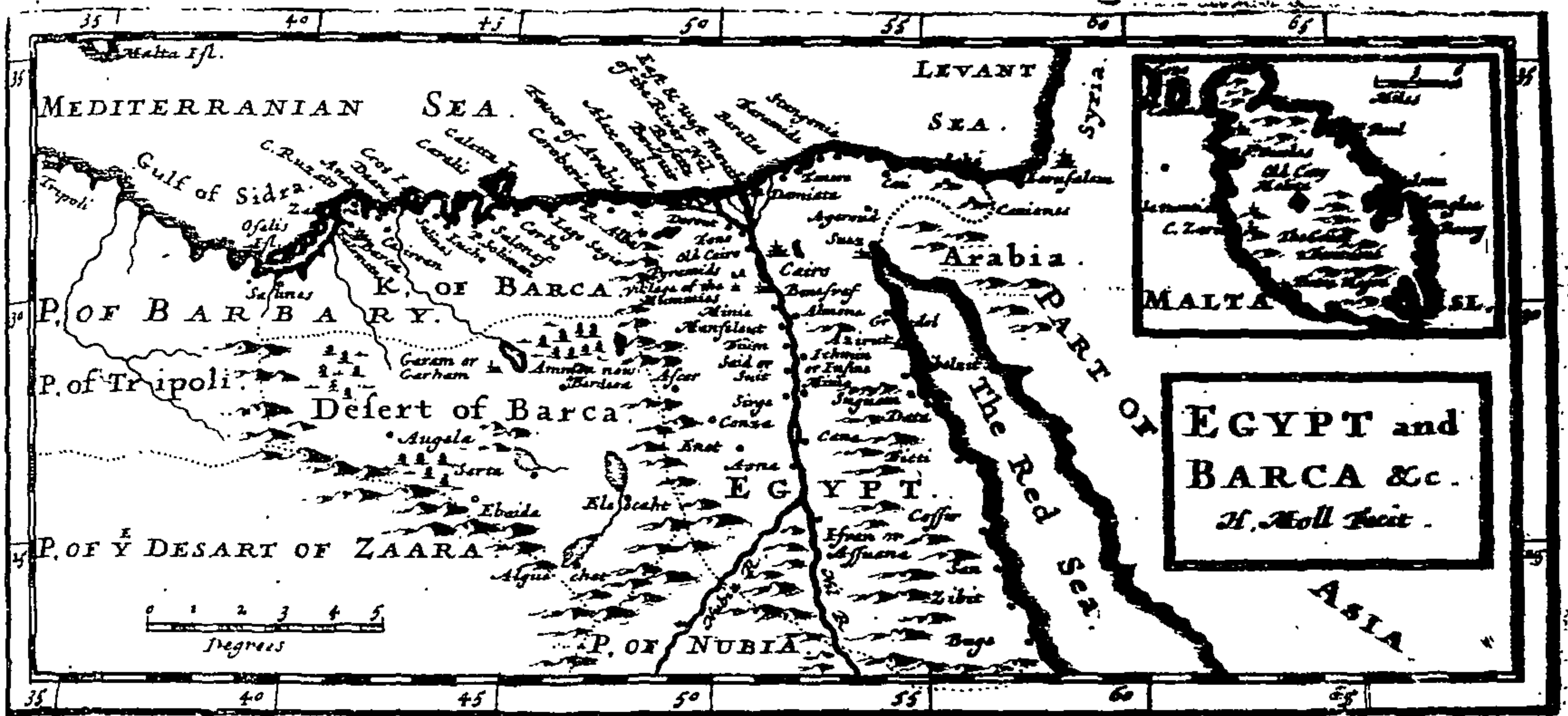
Written in Latin by  
JOAN LUYTS, Philos. Profess. in Acad. UTRAJECT:



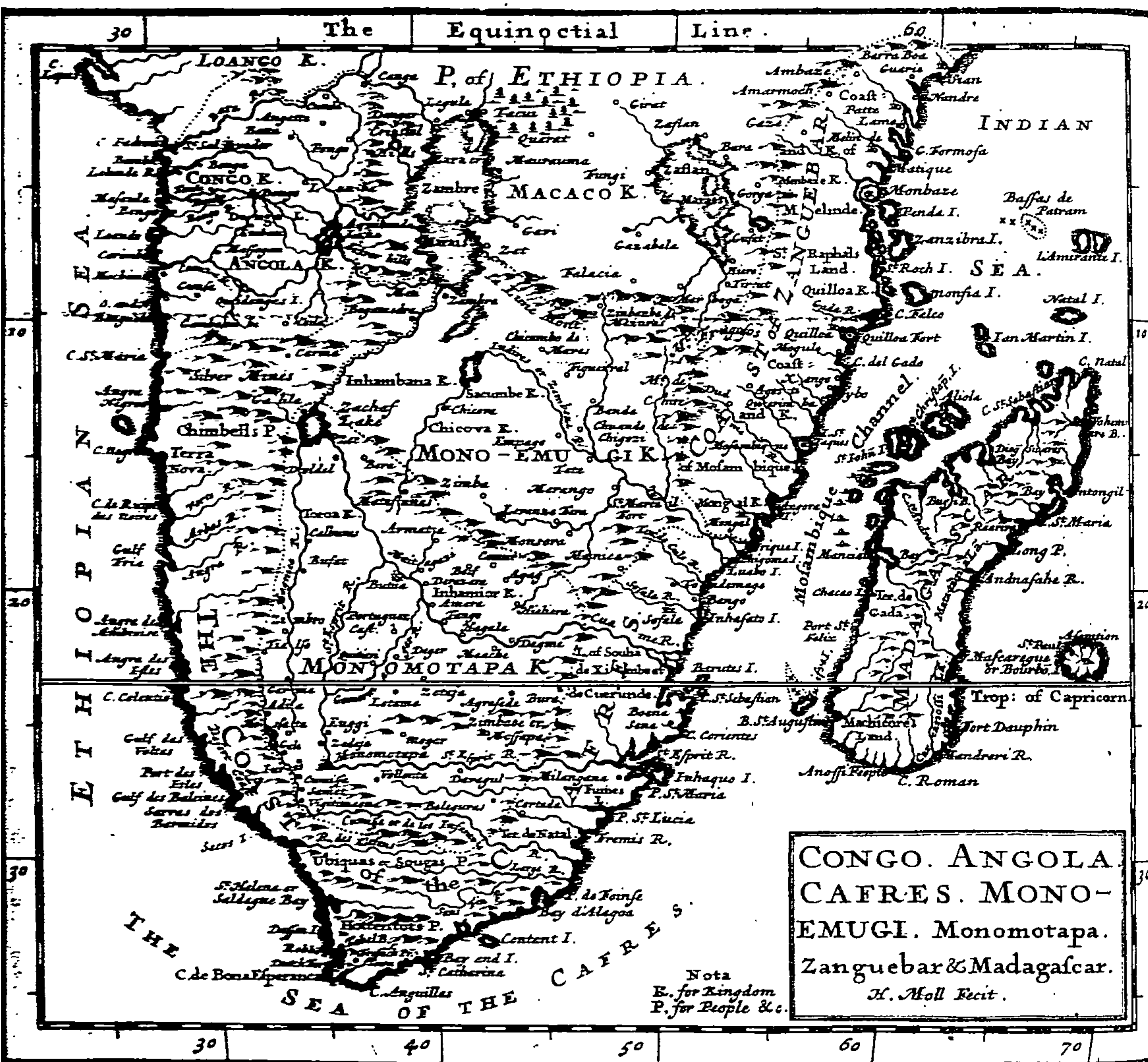














## C H A P. I.

## AFRICA in general.

I.  
Africa.

**W**E are now come to the third and last Part of the Continent of the ancient World, which extends itself farthest towards the South, and is commonly call'd *Africa*, as also *Iphricia* by the Inhabitants, as we are inform'd by *Leo Africanus*; taking its Name (as it is suppos'd) from *Afer*, the Son, or Companion of the Libyan *Hercules*, or according to *Josephus*, from *Opher*, the Grand-Son of *Abraham*: Some derive this Name from *Ifricus*, a certain King of the Country; others from the *Arabick* Verb *Farek*, i. e. *he divided*, because it is separated from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean* Sea; and from *Asia*, by the *Red-Sea*; and others from the *Hebrew* Word *Aphar*, which signifies *Dust*; but it were needless to insist any longer on the Opinions of the Etymologists, which are very different and altogether uncertain. This Country is also call'd *Libya*, by the *Grecians*, from the Daughter of *Epaphus* and *Cassiopeia*, of the same Name, or from the Term *Libs* denoting the South-West Wind. *Africa* is bounded on the East, by the Arabian *Isthmus*, Gulph, Straight and Sea; these separate it from *Arabia Petraea* and *Felix*; as also by the Ethiopick Ocean: On the South, by the same Ocean; which likewise washes it on the West, together with the Seas of *Guinea*, *Cape Verd* and the *Canaries*, Parts of the Northern Ocean: And on the North, by the Straight of *Gibraltar*, that divides it from *Spain*; and the entire Southern Part of the *Mediterranean* Sea, by which it is cut off from the Southern Tracts of *Europe* and *Anatolia*.

II. This vast Continent, with respect to the manner of its Situation is a Peninsula, and indeed the largest of all that are comprehended within the Compass of the old and new Worlds; reaching from North to South, from about the 35th Degree of Northern Latitude, to the same Degree of Southern Latitude: So that the middle of *Africa* is under the *Equator*; a very great Part of it in the Torrid Zone; a considerable Part in the Northern Temperate Zone; and the least in the Southern Temperate Zone. It is also extended from West to East, from the 4th. to the 84th. Degree of Longitude: It is very much sharp-pointed, on the South, as also partly on the North, and the middle is most spacious. Lastly, its Figure is compar'd by several Authors to that of a Triangle, and others will have it to resemble an Helmet, an Heart, or a Pyramid.

III. The Air of *Africa* is excessive Hot, even in those Parts that lye under the Tropicks; and the Heat is very much augmented by the Sands, which reflecting the Rays of the Sun, render these Parts inhabitable, barren and destitute of Water. The Country abounds with huge Mountains of a prodigious Height, with sandy, dry, and most spacious Deserts; with all sorts of noxious Wild-Beasts, particularly Lions, Leopards, Tigers, Panthers, Elephants, Rhinoceroses, Unicorns, Camels, Dromedaries, Horses, Wild-Asses, Buffalo's, Sea-Horses, Mermaids, Crocodiles, Apes,

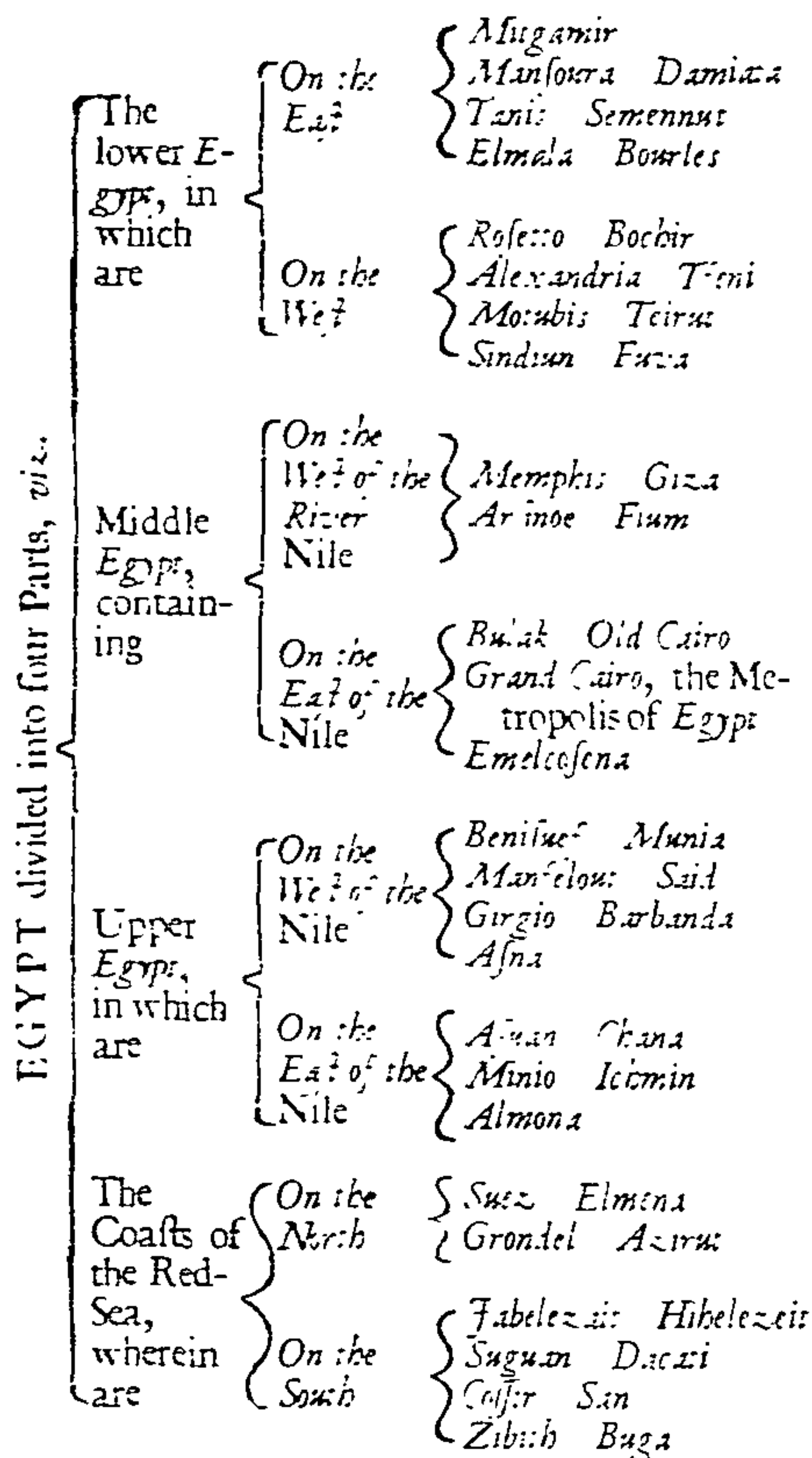
Serpents of an extraordinary size, &c. and with dreadful Monsters; nevertheless it affords several Mines of Gold, Silver and Salt: In other Places it is sufficiently fertile, more especially towards the Sea-coasts, producing good store of medicinal Herbs, and some that are noxious, such as *Adad*, one Drachm of the Juice of which Plant is sufficient to kill a Man in an Hour's time; besides Corn, Spice, Silk, Wine and Oil, with several sorts of Fruit and Cattel, that are extremely Fat and their Flesh very delicate, more especially Mutton, Pork and Beef: There is also great variety of Birds and Fish. The Inhabitants being a mixture of natural Africans and Arabians are numerous, and for the most part Negroes; insomuch that some are of Opinion, That the natural Colour of the Africans is only Black, and that those among them, whose Complexion is White, are originally Asiatics, or Europeans. These People are generally robust, of a perverse, subtil and altogether servile Disposition; neither were they ever able either to found, or maintain any considerable Empires. Many of them, who live in Tents, are most expert Archers, and wander up and down from one place to another; being barbarous, cruel, and addicted to Idolatry. A great number of others, who reside in Towns, and are more civiliz'd, profess the Mahometan Religion, as also Christianity and Judaism.

IV. *M. Sanfon* in his French Map, divides modern *Africa* into twelve Parts, which are, *Egypt*, *Nubia*, *Abyssinia*, *Zanguebar*, *Monomotapa*, *Cassaria*, *Congo*, *Guinea*, *Nigritia*, *Sarra*, *Biledulgerid*, and *Barbary*; to which he adds the Islands that are situated over against *Africa*, more especially, in the Ethiopick and Atlantick Oceans. However, we shall content our selves only with seven principal Parts, viz. *Egypt*, *Ethiopia*, *Guinea*, *Nigritia*, *Zarra*, *Biledulgerid* and *Barbary*. The first and second of the above-mention'd Parts, which take up above one half of *Africa*, extend themselves on the East, and the five others towards the West: Therefore, we shall first describe the former, and then the latter, in the same Order as they have been but now recited; taking a more accurate View of, and insisting longer on the Maritim Countries than the Inland, which are partly unknown to the Europeans; although they are more fortunate than many of the Ancients, who never sail'd round about the Coasts of *Africa*, as the Portugueses first have done, whom the English and Hollanders afterwards follow'd; the like Navigation being very often perform'd even at this day: Neither did they take any cognizance of that Part which lyes beyond the Mountains of the Moon, and the Spring-head of the River *Nile*: Neither had they an exact Account of the rest of the Parts of the inner *Ethiopia*, or of the Provinces of *Ethiopia* below *Egypt*, or of the farther *Libya*: So that they only had a certain Knowledge of the hither *Libya*, or that Part of *Africa* which borders upon the *Mediterranean* Sea.



## CHAP. II.

## Modern and ancient EGYPT.

I.  
Egypt

THE Country of Egypt first presents itself to our View, which was anciently call'd *Aethia*, by the Phenicians, and *Misraim*, or *Misraim* in the Sacred Writings; as also *Chama*, or *Chama*, i.e. the Land of *Cham*: It is likewise named even at this day, *Misra* by the Turks, and *Misra* or *Chama* by the *Coptes*, who are its native Inhabitants, and most constantly retain the ancient Names of Places. Its Bounds on the East, are the Red-Sea, *Arabia Petraea*, and the holy Land; on the North, the Mouths of the River Nile, and the Egyptian Sea; on the West, the Kingdom of *Barba*, being the most Eastern Part of *Barbary*, and the sandy Desert of the same Name; and on the South, *Nubia*, and the Coast of *Abex*. It is situated within the 22d. and 32d. Degrees of Northern Latitude, and extends it self from West to East, in the Southern Part, where it is broadest, for the space of seven Degrees: so that its shape may be said to resemble the Figure of a long Square.

II. Some of the Ancients look'd upon Egypt as the fourth Part of the old World, distinguish'd from *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*: Others enclsd that Part of it which lies out from the Nile towards the East, within the Bounds of *Asia*, and the o-

ther Part on the West, within those of *Africa*: Afterwards the whole Country was attributed to *Africa*, and is still reputed to belong to the same Continent. The Soil of Egypt is different, according to the Situation of its several Parts: In those Tracts that are next to the River Nile, it is so over-rich and luxuriant, that the Inhabitants are oblig'd to temper it with Sand. Thus it produces Wheat, Rice, Sugar, *Cassia*, Dates, and other sorts of Grain and Fruit in such abundance, that great quantities of them are transported into foreign Countries: Insomuch that Egypt, with very good reason, was heretofore styl'd, *The publick Granary of the World*. The Sheep bring forth Young twice a Year, and the Women are commonly deliver'd of two Children at a Birth; which extraordinary Fruitfulness is occasion'd (as many are of Opinion) by drinking the Nile-Waters: Moreover, the Fruits are almost continually hanging on the Trees. The inland Country lies waste for the most part, and abounds with Sand, which is so Hot during the Summer and moveable by reason of its dryness, that it resembles as it were burning Water, and shines like Glass melted in a Furnace; upon which Account, it is sometimes call'd *The fiery Sea*. There are very few Springs in Egypt, and no Rivers besides the Nile. It scarce rains but in the Months of *December*, *January* and *February*, yet some Rain has been observ'd to fall beyond that Season, at *Alexandria* and *Rosetta*, occasion'd by the nearness of the Sea. Mists are frequent in those Parts, and more especially Dew; without which the Plants and Animals could no longer subsist; but Thunder and Lightning seldom happen. There are also to be seen Mummies and Pyramids, which were devis'd by the Kings, to keep the common People employ'd, or to hinder them from leaving any considerable Estates to their Posterity: These Pyramids (to use *Solinus's* Expression) were rais'd with a sharp Point at top, beyond all Height that can possibly be carry'd on with Hands; and serv'd as Monuments for the Kings, who were usually bury'd under them. *Meltonius* assures us, that he saw one that was six hundred Foot high.

III. The Egyptians are said to be timorous, faint-hearted, slothful, stupid, ignorant of all manner of good Literature, and of a haughty, yet servile Disposition: The common People are much addicted to Lying, Robbery and Rapine, extremely covetous of Money, and treacherous: They take great delight in drinking Coffee and smoking Tobacco; and during the Months of *December*, *January*, *February* and *March*, are employ'd in the hatching of Chickens in Ovens, after the Eggs have been first made warm with Straw. The *Coptes*, *Coptes*, or *Koptes* likewise live in Egypt, a particular Sect, whose Number is now a great deal less than in ancient times: They begin the Year from the eighth day of *September*, which consists of twelve Months, allowing thirty days to every Month; and when that Term is expir'd, they add five days, before the beginning of a new Year. Their



The *Scandar* is in use among the Turks; besides which, there are also in *Egypt*, Arabians, whose Language is there very common, with *Moors*, *Greeks* and *Jews*.

- IV. The whole Country is at present subject to the Dominion of the Turks, who among their 25 General Governments, reckon the *Beglerbeglick* of *Cairo*, or *Misfir*, under which are four *Sangiacates*; allotting at the same time twelve *Cassilifs*, or lesser Governments, in the Kingdom of *Barca* and *Egypt*: But we shall divide the latter into four principal Parts, viz. the lower, middle and upper *Egypt*, and the Coast of the Red-Sea.

V. The lower *Egypt*, now call'd *Errif* by the Inhabitants, and *Babni* by *Meltonius*, takes up the Northern Tracts that are situated towards the Arms and Mouths of the River *Nile*. *M. Sanfon* and others reckon up four *Cassilifs*, or Provinces, within its Jurisdiction, viz. *Mansoura*, *Garbia*, *Menoufia* and *Calioabech*, with the Territory of *Alexandria*: The first of these extends it self on the East, beyond the Arms of the *Nile*; and the rest lye between them, taking place among the principal *Cassilifs*, more especially *Garbia*, which produces great store of Sugar, Rice, Oil, Flax, Grasse, and Fruits.

The Towns of this Part of *Egypt*, as well as of the others were formerly very numerous; but Time that consumes all things, has now almost bury'd them in their own Ruins. The most considerable of these seated on the East, being generally destitute of Walls, Trenches and Ramparts, and only fenced with a Castle on a Hill, are *Mitgamir*, a large and neat Town, on the Eastern Bank of the *Nile*, in the middle, between *Cairo* and *Damiata*: *Mansoura*, a very fair and spacious Town, on the same side of the River: *Damiata*, in Arabick *Damiat*, or *Dimjat*, stands likewise on the Eastern Bank of the *Nile*, in the form of an Half-Moon, at the distance of eight Italian Miles from its Mouth; being after *Cairo* the largest, neatest, richest, and most populous City of the whole Country of *Egypt*, and a renowned Mart, to which the Merchants resort in great numbers, from all the Parts of *Turkey*: This Town is taken by several Authors for ancient *Pelusium*, but others affirm, that it only grew up out of the Ruins of that City, and was built on the other side of the River. *Tanis* call'd *Tzoban* by the Hebrews, not far from the Tanatick Mouth of the *Nile*, where King *Pharaoh* heretofore kept his Court, and *Moses* perform'd many Miracles: It is now quite ruin'd, but the Place still retains the Name of *Tanesis*. *Semennut*, a large Town, in form of a Triangle, plac'd by *Meltonius*, on the West of the *Nile*. *Elmalas*; and *Bowles*, on the Sea-coasts.

The most remarkable Places of this Part situated towards the West, are *Rosetto*, a little but populous Town, where the heat of the Air is more moderate, distant about an hour's Journey from the Mouth of the *Nile*, and fortify'd with two Castles. *Bochir*: And *Alexandria*, or *Alessandria*, according to the Italian Dialect; founded by *Alexander* the Great, in the 112th. Olympiad, and now call'd *Scanderik*, by the Turks; anciently the Metropolis of *Egypt*, most renowned for the study of Philosophy, a famous Library, and Men of extraordinary Learning; and of so great Eminency, that it far surpass'd all the Cities of the Roman Empire, except *Rome*, in Dignity,

Largeness, Wealth, the number of Inhabitants, Stateliness of Building, Store of Corn, and Plenty of all manner of Provisions: This City is now much fallen from its ancient Grandeur; nevertheless it is a noble Mart; and its Harbour is very convenient, where the Indian Spices were formerly brought to be transported thence throughout the whole Continent of *Europe*. We are inform'd by *Meltonius*, that the House where the seventy Interpreters translated the Bible into Greek, that is to say, the Version commonly call'd the *Septuagint*, is still to be seen at *Alexandria*, and the same Author makes mention of the following Towns of good Note, seated on the *Nile*, between *Rosetto* and *Cairo*, viz. *Tfeni*; *Motubis*; *Teirut*; *Sindinn*; and *Furva*, a very ancient, large and fair Town, in a most pleasant Champaign Country, the Fruits of which are highly esteem'd throughout all the Territories of *Egypt*.

Between the lower *Egypt*, on the North, and the upper, on the South, lyes middle *Egypt*, now VI. call'd *Bechria*, as also *Demesor* by some Writers, *Egypt*. and *Vostani* by *Meltonius*; to which *M. Sanfon* and others attribute three *Cassilifs*, viz. those of *Giza* and *Fium*, on the left side of the *Nile*; and *Cairo*, on the right. The capital Towns of this Country on the West of the *Nile*, are, or were *Memphis*, nam'd *Moph*, or *Noph* in Sacred Writ, seated on the Western Bank, of the *Nile*, a little above the place where that divides it self into several Branches, or Arms; heretofore the Royal Seat of the Egyptian Kings, consecrated to the God *Apis*, who was worshipp'd under the shape of an Ox: And (as the Arabians give it out) the Habitation of *Joseph*; near which the Pyramids were built, and *Joseph's* Pillars, that serve to measure the increase and decrease of the *Nile*; being (according to *Meltonius*) the first of all that were erected on that River: But the City of *Memphis* now lies waste, altogether destitute of Inhabitants, and its Ruins are call'd *Menchis*, by *M. Baudrand*. *Giza* anciently *Arfinoe*, noted for its Labyrinth; formerly an eminent Town, but now reduc'd to a meer heap of Rubbish, rais'd up as it were to a Mountain, and nam'd *Medinet Fares*, by the Inhabitants: And *Fium*, a large and most populous Town, which rose up out of the Ruins of *Arfinoe*, and is water'd by the River *Nile*, in a very fruitful and most pleasant Country, abounding with Vines, which are to be found no where else in *Egypt*, as also with Figgs, Pears, Oranges, Lemmons and Peaches.

On the East of the *Nile* appear the following Places and Towns of good Note, viz. *Bulak*, a large Village or Town (as others will have it) on the River-side, which is the Harbour of *Cairo*: Old *Cairo* termed *Massir* by the Arabians, lying in the middle, between the *Nile* and new *Cairo*, over against the place where *Memphis* was heretofore situated; formerly a spacious and magnificent City, but now almost reduc'd to Ruins; being the same (according to *Peter della Valle*) with old *Babylon*, so call'd by the *Chaldeans*; but *Meltonius* is of Opinion, that the latter stood a little farther, towards the South, and says that besides the vast heaps of Rubbish, there are only left three Churches belonging to the *Cophites*: And new *Cairo*, otherwise call'd *Grand Cairo* and *Al-cairo*, seated in a most pleasant Champaign Country, on the foot of a sandy Hill, having a Castle



on its top, which is the chief Bulwark of the Town, and the Seat of the Turkish Governour: It is a most wealthy, populous and spacious City; and not only the Metropolis of Egypt, but also of all Africa; the largeness of which is every where highly celebrated; but several modern Authors assure us, That retrenching old *Cairo* and *Bula*, which others include under the same Denomination, it does not exceed in Compass the City of *Paris* in *France*: However, it is the only City among those of the whole Levantine Continent, that is dignify'd with the Title of *The Great*, and was formerly the Royal Seat of the *Califs*. Some part of its Suburbs was first built by one *Gienbar*, and call'd *Alachira*, i. e. *The Interior*, whence the whole Extent of the old and new Town was afterwards known among the Italians, and the rest of the European Nations, by the Name of *Alachira*. It was taken by the Turks, with the whole Country, *A. D.* 1517, and ever since that time has abounded with Turkish *Mosques*: There are also six old Churches of the *Greeks*, and several others belonging to the *Coptes*. This famous City is only distant two Miles from the right-side Bank of the Nile, a Rivulet proceeding from which runs through the middle of it, at high Tide; as also 80 Miles from the Coasts of the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the South, and 120 from *Alexandria*, to the South-East. About three Furlongs below *Grand-Cairo*, the Nile is divided into its two largest Arms, and forms the Country of *Delta*. At the distance of 60 Miles from *Cairo*, on the South, *Emelsenza*, a considerable Town stands likewise near the Eastern side of the same River.

VII.  
Cairo  
Egypt.

The upper Egypt, or *Said*, borders on the North, upon middle Egypt, and on the South upon *Nubia* and the Coast of *Abex*. *M. Sanson* and others place five *Cassins* within its Bounds, viz. *Ebenfeief*, *Manfeloue* and *Girgo*, on the Western Bank of the Nile; and *Afina* and *Cherkess*, on the Eastern. These Parts of this large Province which lie cut farthest on both sides of the Nile, are beset with a continued Ridge of prodigious Mountains of Sand, that are altogether barren and untill'd.

The chief Towns of the upper Egypt, on the West of the Nile, are *Bemissar*, otherwise call'd *Femissar* and *Ebensue*; *Mina*; *Manfeloue*; *Said*; *Girgo*; *Barbanta*; and *Asna*, anciently *Syene*, seated next to the Tropick of *Cancer*, not far from the Confines of *Ethiopia*; heretofore the utmost Boundary of the Roman Empire, and now of the Turkish. On the East of the Nile, appear *Asuan*; *Chana*; and *Minio*, taken (by some Authors) for the ancient Egyptian *Thebes*, through the middle whereof the Nile runs, and on which *Homer* conferr'd the Epithet of *εκατόμυον*, i. e. *having an hundred Gates*: Others will have these Gates to be so many Courts of Princes, or Porches of Temples, or Stables built near the River: The whole Country of Egypt was sometime call'd *Thebe* from this City, which was of a vast Extent, even beyond all belief; most populous, and transcendently magnificent for its Temples, Offerings, Colossus's, Obelisks, numerous Sepulchres of Kings, and hanging Garden, but was afterward razed to the very Ground. However, *M. Baviand* takes the Town of *Girge*, or *Georga*, and *Bano Thebe*, for that of *Thebe*, from which the adjacent Territory

deriv'd the Name of *Thebais*. In passing farther towards the North we meet with *Ichmin* and *Almona*, two Towns of good Note.

The fourth and last part of Egypt, or the Coast VIII. of the Red-Sea, lyes in the middle, between the upper and middle Egypt, on the West, and the Red-Sea, or Arabian Gulph, on the East. The capital Towns of this Part, is *Suez*, or *Sues*, seated on the innermost Bay of the said Sea, and communicating its Name to the Arabian *Isthmus*, which is scarce two Degrees broad; although some will have it extended for the space of forty German Miles. The Sultans of Egypt endeavour'd at several times to cut a Channel through this *Isthmus*, and by that means to make a communication between the Red-Sea and the *Mediterranean*, so as Ships might sail directly out of one into the other; but the Work could never as yet be brought to Perfection. The other Northern Towns of this Coast are *Elmena*; *Grondol*, or *Grodol*; and *Aziru*: The rest are situated towards the South, viz. *Jabelezait*; *Hihelzeit*; *Suguan*; *Dacut*; *Ciffir*; *San*; *Zibich*; and *Buga*.

Hitherto we have been treating of the modern IX. Division of Egypt, which was anciently at first divided into *Aegyptus superior & inferior*, i. e. Ancient Egypt. the upper and lower: The latter extended it self on the North, and its Royal Seat was *Tanis*, above-specified: But the former situated on the South, had *Memphis* for its Metropolis, of which likewise a particular Account has been already given: Afterwards the whole Country of Egypt was divided into three Parts, viz. the lower, middle and upper.

*Aegyptus inferior*, or lower Egypt was otherwise X. simply call'd Egypt, and *Delta* by the Grecians, by reason of its triangular Figure, and the Resemblance it bears with that Letter of the Greek Alphabet. According to *Pliny* and other Authors, it is properly but a Part of the lower Egypt, comprehended within the most remote Arms of the River Nile; that is to say, the *Canopick*, on the West; and the *Pelusiack*, on the East; bordering also on the North, upon the *Mediterranean* Sea; and on the South, upon the Nile, in that Place where it spreads out its several Branches, or Arms. In the lower Egypt, sometimes two Provinces were reckon'd and sometimes four, viz. *Aegyptus prima*, *Aegyptus secunda*, *Augustamnica prima*, and *Augustamnica secunda*. The Land of *Goshen*, which the Israelites inhabited, was in- The Land clos'd within the Bounds of the lower Egypt, on of Goshen. the East of the Nile, towards *Arabia Petrea* and *Palestine*, being a Champain Country, abounding with Grass, and affording admirable Pasturage. The Land of *Rameses* constituted a Part of *Rameses* it, in which (as some say) was a Town of the same Name. The Israelites set forward from *Rameses* in their March to *Succoth*, a Town so call'd from the Tents of the Arabians; and the most ancient Kings of Egypt took their Name from that Province.

*Aegyptus media*, or middle Egypt, so term'd XII. from its Situation, which it obtain'd between the lower, on the North, and the upper, on the South, Egypt. was also call'd *Heptanomos*; because it comprehended seven *Nomi*, or particular Governments. *M. Sanson* attributes but one Province to this Part under the Denomination of *Arcadia*, whence middle Egypt was also sometimes express'd by that Name.

*Aegyptus*



XII.  
Egyptus  
Superior.

*Egyptus superior*, or the upper *Egypt*, otherwise nam'd *Thebais*, took up the most Southern Tracts, more especially the Eastern Part of the Province of *Said*; lying between the Red-Sea; or Arabian Gulph, on the East; and the River *Nile* on the West. It was likewise sometimes divided into two Provinces, viz. *Thebais prima* and *Thebais secunda*.

XIII.  
Nomi.

Lastly, it ought to be observ'd, That these three Divisions of *Egypt* contain'd several *Nomi*, which is a Term deriv'd either from the Greek, or Egyptian Language, and signifies (according to *Pliny's* Interpretation) certain particular Governments: For *Nomus* (as *Beckman* explains the

Word) is a Place proper for pleading, or determining Law-Suits: Some Authors assure us, that these peculiar Governments were sometimes thirty in number: *Sesostris* makes thirty six, attributing ten of them to the Province of *Delta*, as many to *Thebais*, and the other sixteen to the Countries that lye between those Parts: Others reckon up forty two, and others again, a great many more. It is also observable, That the Government of every one of these *Nomi* was committed to certain Magistrates styl'd *Nomarchæ*, who rul'd in their respective Territories, as so many petty Kings, and had the management of the Royal Treasury and Publick Revenues.

## C H A P. III.

## ETHIOPIA in general, NUBIA and ABISSINIA.

A general Table of *Ethiopia*.

A general Table of <i>Ethiopia</i> .			
The proper <i>Ethiopia</i> containing	<i>Nubia</i>	Meroe Isle Ximencha Ambiancantiva Dambea Vangua Damut Narea Zet Cafates Goyama Agag Bagamidri	
	<i>Abissinia</i> containing	Beleguanza Amara Ambiam Nova Quara Fungi Gavi Gazabela Tirut Gorga Zafan Gemen Gora Oxia Xoa Fatigar Dobas Angota Tigre-mahon Barnagasso	
	<i>Zanguebar</i> in which are	Abex Coast Ajan Coast Zanguebar Proper	
	The Islands over against <i>Zanguebar</i> strictly taken	Penda Zanzibar St. Roch Monfia Comeres Isles Madagascar Santa Maria Nazara St. Maurice Bourbon	
	The Empire of Monocemugi	Monoemugi Emp. strictly taken Malemba Kingdom	
	The Empire of Monomotapa	Monomotapa Kingd. Butua Kingdom	
	The lower <i>Ethiopia</i> in which are	<i>Cassaria</i>	Quiteva Kingdom Sofala K. Sedanda K. Chicanda K. Fumes Land, or Terra dos Fumos

Part 2

Terra do Natal  
Terra Deserta  
Cimbebas K.  
Cape of good Hope

The Kingdom of Congo { Angola Kingdom  
Galæ, or Gallæ People  
Ansicans People  
Congo Proper Kingd.  
Loango Kingd.

The Kingdom of Biafar { Macoco Kingd.  
Giringbomba Kingd.  
Medra Kingd.  
Biafar Proper Kingd.  
Gabon Kingd.

The Islands over against Biafar { Annobon  
St. Thomas  
Prince's Island  
Fernando Po's Isle

Four particular Tables of the upper *Ethiopia*.

I. Nubia containing { On, or near the River Nile { Falac Risa Gula Angimi  
Nubia Dangala Gualua  
Cusa Gorham

On, or near the River Nubia { Sabaha Mathan Omot  
Coala Tagua Samna  
Tamalma

Between the Nubia and the Nile { Salom Zagbara Demba  
Dargan Dagra Domocla  
Fadia Zigida

Meroe Island { Efera  
Saraboes

Ximencha { Amasen  
Syr

Ambiancantiva: Ambiancantiva: Dambea. Dambea Chedaflan

Vangua { Maitagazi  
Vangua

Damut { Guga Cotla  
Damut

II. Abissinia

comprehending in the common Maps

On the West

P 2

111







III. Caffaria, containing	Monomotapa K.	On the West	<i>Garma Adia</i> <i>Mofata</i> <i>Cumiffa</i>	V. The K. of Biafar, containing	In the inland Country	<i>Karra</i> <i>Boecemeala</i> <i>Setta, or Zetta</i>
		On the East	<i>Vallonta</i> <i>Belegura</i> <i>Joares Zedaia</i> <i>Monomotapa</i> <i>Fuggi Moggir</i> <i>Agrafeda</i>		On the East	<i>Macoco K. Macoco</i> <i>Giring-bomba K. Giringbomba</i> <i>Medra K. Guidan Medra Tebeldera</i>
	On the East	<i>Quiteva K. Quiteva</i> <i>Sofala K. Sofala</i> <i>Sedanda K.</i> <i>Chicanga K.</i> <i>Terra dos Fumos</i> <i>Terra do Natal</i>	On the West		<i>Biafar K. Biafar Borca</i> <i>Gabon K. Gabon Corisco Maceira</i>	
		Terra Deferta	Remote		<i>Annobon Isle</i> <i>St. Thomas Isle St. Thomas Town</i>	
		On the South			<i>Cape of Good Hope</i> <i>Dutch Fort Table Bay and Mount Negro Cape</i>	Near
	On the West	<i>Cimbebas K.</i> <i>Malemba K.</i>	Near	Mediterranean	<i>Gema Kelti</i> <i>Branti</i> <i>Gamala Abea</i> <i>Baxila</i> <i>Ruecam</i> <i>Maleg Tacaza</i> <i>Nubia</i>	
		Islands over against Caffaria			<i>St. Helena</i> <i>Old and New</i>	
	Angola K.	On or near the Sea	<i>Benguela</i> <i>Quiconga</i> <i>Benguela</i> <i>Vielha, or Old Benguela</i>	The principal Rivers of Ethiopia running into the Sea	Of the Caffars	<i>The Zambra divided into Rio de el Espiritu Santo Zambra</i>
		In the inland Country	<i>Mochima</i> <i>Massargan</i> <i>Engaza</i>		Of Congo	<i>The Sunga</i> <i>The Coanza</i> <i>The Lelunda</i> <i>The Zara</i>
	IV. The Kingdom of Congo in which are	People	Galæ		<i>Zara Dangar</i> <i>Vamba</i>	
Anficans						
Congo K.		Pango Marquisate	<i>Cundi</i> <i>Pango</i> <i>Angota</i>			
		Sundi Dutchy	<i>Sundi Betequa</i> <i>Iri.</i>			
		Batta Dukedom	<i>Cangou Batta</i> <i>Agisymba</i>			
	Pemba Marquisate	<i>Lelunda</i> <i>St. Salvador</i> <i>Pemba</i>				
Loango K.	Bamba Dutchy	<i>St. Paulo de Loanda</i> <i>Motolo Bamba</i>				
	Songo Earldom	<i>Sonho B</i> <i>Matinga</i> <i>Malemba</i>				
	On the Sea-coast	<i>Loango</i> <i>Sellaga</i> <i>Quanni</i> <i>Majumba</i>				

AFTER having pass'd through Egypt; we come next to Ethiopia, which is bounded on the North, by the same Egypt and Biledulgerid; on the West, by the Desert of Zaara, the Kingdom of Guinea, and the Seas of Congo and Caffaria; on the South, by the Caffarian Sea; as also on the East, by the same Sea, and that of Zanguebar, with the Arabian Sea, Straight and Gulph. So that this Country is, beyond compare, the largest of all the other Parts of Africa: For it extends itself from the Tropick of Cancer, or from the 23d Degree of Northern Latitude, to the 35th of Southern; and from West to East, from the 34th to the 84th Degree of Longitude.

Ethiopia is usually divided into the upper and lower, but all Authors are not agreed with respect to the extent of the former, which is otherwise call'd, the inner Ethiopia. For some will only have Abissinia comprehended under that Denomination, and others Abissinia and Nubia, which others add the whole Country of Zanguebar. According to the last Account, the upper Ethiopia has for its Bounds on the North, Egypt and the Desert of Barca; on the West, the Desert of Zaara, with the Kingdoms of Biafara and Congo.

## IV. The Kingdom of Congo in which are

Congo K.	Pango Marquifate	<i>Cundi</i> <i>Pango</i> <i>Angota</i>
	Sundi Dutchy	<i>Sundi Betequa</i> <i>Iri.</i>
	Batta Dukedom	<i>Cangou Batta</i> <i>Agifymba</i>
	Pemba Marquifate	<i>Lelunda</i> <i>St. Salvador</i> <i>Pemba</i>
	Bamba Dutchy	<i>St. Paulo de Loanda</i> <i>Motolo Bamba</i>
	Songo Earldom	<i>Sonho B</i> <i>Matinga</i> <i>Malemba</i>

Loango K.

On the Sea-coast	<i>Loango</i> <i>Sellaga</i> <i>Quanni</i> <i>Majumba</i>
------------------	--

AFTER having pass'd through Egypt; we come next to Ethiopia, which is bounded on the North, by the same Egypt and Biledulgerid; on the West, by the Desert of Zaara, Negroe-Land, the Kingdom of Guinea, and the Seas of Congo and Caffaria; on the South, by the Caffarian Sea; as also on the East, by the same Sea, and that of Zanguebar, with the Arabian Sea, Straight and Gulph. So that this Country is, beyond compare, the largest of all the other Parts of Africa: For it extends itself from the Tropick of Cancer, or from the 23d Degree of Northern Latitude, to the 35th of Southern; and from West to East, from the 34th to the 84th Degree of Longitude.

Ethiopia is usually divided into the upper and lower, but all Authors are not agreed with respect to the extent of the former, which is otherwise call'd, the inner Ethiopia. For some will only have Abissinia comprehended under that Denomination, and others Abissinia and Nubia, to which others add the whole Country of Zanguebar. According to the last Account, the upper Ethiopia has for its Bounds on the North, Egypt and the Desert of Barca; on the West, the Desert of Zaara, with the Kingdoms of Biafara and Congo;



on the South the Kingdom of *Monemugi* and the Territories of the *Caffres*; and on the East, the Sea of *Zanguebar*, that of *Arabia*, the Strait of *Bab el Mandeb*, and the Red Sea. Among the Parts of the upper *Ethiopia*, *Nubia* and *Abissinia* are situated on the West, and water'd by the River *Nile*; but the Country of *Zanguebar* being altogether maritime, lies out, on the Eastern Sea-coasts.

III. We shall first take a View of the Western Part and particularly of *Nubia*, call'd *Nouba*, by the Africans, which is dignify'd with the Title of a Kingdom, and is of a much lesser extent than *Abissinia*. It borders on the North, upon *Egypt* and the Desert of *Berea*; on the West, upon the Desert of *Zazra* and the Kingdom of *Barbara*; on the South, upon part of *Abissinia* and *Amanus* Land; and on the East, upon the same *Abissinia* and the Coast of *Abex*. The whole Country is surrounded with Mountains, almost on all sides except the Eastern, and its shape resembles the Figure of a Line Square. It is water'd by the Rivers *Nubia* and *Nile*, and was anciently inhabited by a certain People, whom *Strabo* calls *Nubi*, *Ptolemy* *Nubi*, and *Pompilius* *Nubi*; and who were the most eminent of all *Ethiopia*. The Air is excessive hot, and the Soil is of a different Nature in several Parts; for those which lie next to the *Nile* are render'd very fruitful by the overflowing of that River: But several other Parts are barren, and so extremely dry, that Men often perish for Thirst, in regard that there are some vast Tracts of Land, in which not so much as one Spring or River is to be seen throughout their whole extent. The Wood and Desert of *Zen* are generally express'd in the Maps, on the South of the River *Nubia*. The Country of *Nubia* abounds with Elephants, Civet-cats, Gold, Sanders and Ivory: The Natives are said to be courageous subtil, of a strong Constitution, and of a very black Colour. They profess the Religion of the *Abyssinians*, are for the most part addicted to Trafficking, or to the art of Husbandry, and build their Houses with Chalk. Many are of Opinion, that the strange Crew of Fortune-tellers commonly call'd *Gypsies*, derive their Original from this Country.

IV. The King of *Nubia* is a very potent Prince, the chief Towns of whose Dominions are seated near or upon the *Nile* and the *Nubia*, or between these Rivers: and there are also (according to *M. Simon*) several Territories which bear the same Names. The Towns, on or near the *Nile*, are *Falac* in an Island made by that River; *Rifa*; *Satza*, or *Sela*; *Angima* and *Zaghaira*, at a greater distance; *Nubia*, the Metropolis of *Nubia*, according to the opinion of modern Authors, seated on the Western side of the *Nile*, *Dancala*, or *Dangala*, taken for the Capital Town of the whole Kingdom, by *Leo Africanus*, *Sanutus*, *Bartrand* and others; *Cusa*, and *Gorkam*. On the Eastern side of the *Nubia*, at a greater or lesser distance from it are *Sabaha*, *Mathan*, *Omot*, and *Coala*: *Tagua* is remarkable for its situation in the Confines of the Desert of *Berea*, not far from the Western side of the *Nubia*; but *Sanna* and *Tamalma* stand on the Bank of the same River: The other Towns between the *Nubia* and the *Nile*, are *Salom*, or *Salent*, *Zaghara*, *Demba*, *Dargan*, *Dagra*, *Damocla*, *Jadia*, and *Zigida*, or *Sigida*.

V. The second Part of the upper *Ethiopia* is ex-

tended in like manner on the West, and known by the Names of *Abissinia*, *Abissia*, *Habassia*, *Hi-* Abissi-  
*byssia*, proper *Ethiopia*, and the Kingdom or Em- na.  
pire of the *Abissines*. In the sacred Writings, this Country is call'd *Lad*, and the Inhabitants *Ladeans*; as also *El-Haragi*, *Elhabaschi*, or *Abassi*, and the Dominions of the great *Negus*, by the *Arabians*: Moreover it is fully termed the Empire of *Prester John*, or *Precious John*, so that it will not be improper here to give a short account of the original of that Errour. About five hundred Years ago, (others reduce the Term to a later Date) a certain Christian Prince establish'd his Kingdom, far and wide in the most remote Borders of *Asia*, who was unbu'd with *Nicatorius's* Principles, and nam'd *Jubenna*; as also *Ung-Cian*, *Ung-Can*, and in the Persian Language, *Padecha* *Prestanti* or *Pretegan*, i. e. an *Apostolical*, *Orthodox*, or *Catholic King*; which Title was conferr'd on him by the *Armenians*, or his own *Nestorian* Subjects. He was not an *Ethiopian*, or an *Abissine* by Nation, neither did he ever fly for refuge into *Ethiopia*; yet many are of Opinion, That the Name of *Prester John*, which afterwards became most famous throughout *Europe*, deriv'd its Original from the aforesaid Royal Title of *Pretegan*, peculiar to that Monarch. For a Report was spread abroad, that this Emperor *Prester* was very potent, and a Christian by Profession, but it was not known where he reign'd: In the meanwhile, *Peter Covillanus*, Ambassador from *John II.* King of *Portugal* to *Prester John*, having receiv'd information in *Asiatick India*, that there was a very powerful Christian Prince in *Ethiopia*, below *Egypt*, he went to him and resided for some time in his Court; inso much that perceiving that many Things, which were reported concerning *Prester* were suitable to his Character, and that the same Prince was styl'd in the Persian Tongue by the Levantine Merchants, *Prester-Chan*, i. e. a King or Prince of the *Slaves*; as also, among his own Subjects *Gian*, or *Belul-Gian*, i. e. *A precious Jew*, and *Gyam*, or *a potent King*, he was fully persuad'd, that this Prince was certainly the *Prester John* so much talk'd of, to find out whom he had undertaken that Journey, by the special command of his own King. Thus this Ambassador first impos'd the Name of *Prester John* on the Emperor of the *Abissines*, and the Portuguese call'd him by the same Name, particularly *Dominus à Goes*, *Francis Alvares*, and several other Authors; by which means the erroneous Notion was convey'd throughout the whole European Continent, and is not as yet quite rooted out.

VI. *Abissinia* is usually bounded, in the Maps, by *Nubia*, on the North, and a small Part of the Coast of *Abex* on the East, on the same Coast of *Abex*; *Ajan* and *Zanguebar*; by the South by the Empire of *Monemugi*; and on the West, by part of the Kingdom of *Nubia*, with those of *Congo* and *Biafra*. This Empire was heretofore extended to the Arabian Gulph, but is now altogether destitute of Harbours, neither is there any Passage into it from the Sea-coasts, but through the Territories of other Princes: The Kingdom of *Congo* was also Tributary to it, nevertheless the *Gale*, a certain People hereafter more particularly mention'd, found means to subdue a great Part of *Abissinia*, and still retain it



it in their possession. The Air of this Country, although situated entirely under the Torrid Zone, is said to be moderately hot, where it is Hilly or Plain, but the Valleys are scorched with the Sun-beams. In some Tracts it is rocky, full of Caverns, rough and altogether barren; but the Champaign Parts and those that lye near the Rivers, are otherwise dispos'd, abounding with Fruits, Pulse and several sorts of Plants, which are often miserably devour'd by innumerable Swarms of Locusts: They also produce Sugar, Honey, Wax, Ginger, Vines, Flax, Cotton, all kinds of Metal and Sulphur, and afford Pasture to many Herds of wild and tame Beasts.

VII. The Abissines are very numerous, of a black Complexion, more especially those that live nearest to the Equinoctial Line, of a towardly disposition, and capable of attaining to the knowledge of Arts and Sciences; yet somewhat lazy, imprudent and unskillful in the Art of Physick. The most wealthy among them usually wear silken Garments, and the meaner sort, those that are made of Cotton. They build their Houses with Straw and Lime, or Chalk, and take delight in eating raw, or parboil'd Meat; causing three particular Dishes to be serv'd up to Table, at the same time, viz. one of Pears cut in form of a Cross, another of Fire, and a third of Ashes: So that the first of these Dishes represents a Symbol of the Redemption of Mankind, the second of Hell and the last of Death. Besides their common Language, they also use another, which comes near the Chaldaick, and is appropriated to Divine Service, and the writing of Histories. These People at first embrac'd the Jewish Religion, which (as it is said to be recorded in their Publick Annals) King *Melech*, the Son of *Solomon*, by *Maquea* Queen of *Sheba* introduc'd into their Country: Afterwards they inbibed the Principles of Christianity, nay they reckon themselves among the first Professors of it; in regard that the Gospel was first preach'd in *Abissinia*, either by the Apostle *St. Philip*, or the Eunuch of Queen *Candace*, which (as *Pliny* says) was a common Name to their Queens. They also encounter'd the Mahometans several times in defence of the Christian Religion, with a great deal of Valour and good Success: They have a Patriarch at this Day, termed *Abuna*, who is usually confirm'd by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, and constantly adhere to their ancient Rites and Ceremonies; rejecting those of the Roman Catholics, which the Jesuits have endeavour'd with indefatigable labour to propagate in those Parts, but were not able to compals their Design.

VIII. The King of *Abissinia* is commonly styl'd *Negus*, or *Neguz*, by his Subjects, which Term denotes an Emperor, or King; but the Arabians call him *Aticlabassi*, or *Elkabaschi* from whence the *Abissines*, or *Abassians* take their Name. He is also call'd the Great *Negus* by several Authors, and by some *Paep*, or *Preter John*, but falsely or at least improperly, as it has been already observ'd: He is a very rich and potent Prince, deriving his Original (according to the receiv'd Traditions of his Family) from King *Solomon*, of whose Son *Melech*, or *David*, he supposes himself to be descended in a right Line. He has no settled Court, but removes it from one Place to another, within the space of a few Days; being attended

by numerous Guards, and furnished with a vast number of Tents, Camels, Mules, Horses, Asses, Oxen, and all sorts of Household-stuff, Provisions and Treasures.

*Abissinia* is divided into many Kingdoms or Provinces, according to the modern Maps, in the following of which it may not be improper to reduce them to three Articles: For they either extend themselves on the West, or through the middle of the Country, or towards the East. The first of these, is the Island of *Meroe*, with the Mercé Provinces of *Ximencha*, *Ambiancantiva*, *Dambee*, *Iste*, *Vangua* and *Damut*. *Meroe* a very large Island which the *Nile* heretofore made on the West, and the *Astaboras*, on the East, is mention'd by *Josephus* under the Name of *Saba*; but it is now commonly call'd *Gueguere*, and *Neube* by the Inhabitants (according to *M. Marmol*) being separated in the Maps from *Nubia* only by the River *Nile*. The Ancient Authors assure us, That it abounded with the best sort of Metals, Gems Ebony, Palm-trees, most delicious Wine, Elephants and Inhabitants, whose Number is extremely multiply'd by *Pliny*. Some are of opinion, that the Queen of *Sheba* came out of *Meroe* to visit King *Solomon*; but we are rather induc'd to place her Dominions in *Arabia Felix*. The chief Towns of this Island are said to be *Esera*; in the Eastern Part, and *Sarahoes*, in the Western. However *Hieronymus Lobus*, a Portuguese, affirms in his Ethiopick History, that the *Nile* does not form any Island in that Country, and therefore he takes no notice of *Meroe*, which is also omitted by many other Writers of good Note.

The Province of *Ximencha* is plac'd in the Maps, *Ximencha* on the South of *Nubia*, and on the West of the *cha*. *Nile*, and its Towns are *Amasen*, on the Northern side of the Lake; and *Syra*, on the Southern. The Province of *Ambiancantiva* borders upon *Xi-Ambiancantiva*, on the South, and has a Town of the cantiva same Name. *Dambee*, is extended on the West *Dambee* and East of the *Nile*, containing the Town of *Dambee*, which some take for the Capital of *Abissinia*, and *Chedastan*, on the Western Bank of the River. *Vangua*, lies in the middle, between *Vangua*, *Dambee*, on the East, and the Lake *Niger*, on the West, and its Towns are said to be *Maitagazi* and *Vangua*. *Damut*, is situated under the *Dam ut*. *Equator*, and comprehends the Towns of *Guga*, *Colla* and *Damut*. Some Authors likewise reckon *Malemba*, a Territory lying between the Kingdom of *Angola*, on the West, and the Lake of *Zambre*, on the East, among the Western Provinces of *Abissinia*; but others make it a Part of *Cassaria*, or a particular Province belonging to the Kingdom of *Monoemugi*.

The Kingdoms, or Provinces that take up the IX. middle of *Abissinia*, are many in number, and *Narea*. the chief of them follow in their order, viz. *Narea*, on the Frontiers of *Monoemugi* and the Lake *Zambra*: *Zet*, with a Town of the same Name, *Zet*. on the said Lake: *Cafates*, with a Town so *na-Cafates*. med on the Lake of *Zara*: *Goyama*: *Agag*, a *Goyama*. Province and Town; *Bazamidri*, or *Begamedri*, a *Agag*. Kingdom of a very large Extent, beset with Moun- *Bazami*-dri. tains; the Towns of which, are *Azuga*; *Therua*; *Ambadara*; *Sova*, or *Soua*; *Baza*; *Ermita*; and *Machada*: The Province of *Beleguanza*, has a *Beleguanza*. Town of the same Name, and that of *Amara*, *Amara*. or *Amahara* is usually plac'd next to the Equinoctial



nodal Line on the North, where is to be seen *Amara* a prodigious high and steep Mountain, of a very difficult Passage, having a spacious Plain on the top of it, on which is built a Town, or Castle, where the Royal Progeny are educated, who never appear among the retinue of the Great *Nigus*, lest they should be burthen some to the Subjects, or give any occasion of raising Seditions. The other Provinces on the South of the Equator, are *Ambum*; *Nera*; *Quara*; *Fungi*, on the Lake *Zofia*; *Gara*; *Gazabila*; *Tiru*; on the Confines of *Monemugi* and *Zanguebar*; *Grea*, more towards the North; *Zofia*; and *Gemen*. Moreover, every one of these Provinces are said to have a Town of the same Name.

The Provinces of *Abissinia*, that lye farthest towards the East, are *Giza*, on the North of *Zanguebar*, next to the Equinoctial Line; *Oxia*; *Xea*; *Fangar*, or *Fangar*; and the Land of *Doba*, with a Town of the same Name: *Angota*, is of a larger Extent than the former, and its Situation is more Western: The most remarkable Places of this Province, are *Anguna*; *Olai*; *Fagabella*; *Bagana*; *Angua*; and *Beimaria*. *Tigre-mahon*, or *Tigrea*, borders upon *Angota*, on the North, and contains the following named Towns, viz. *Manatila*; *Contra*; *Bahia*; *Agro*; *Sabana*; and *Chicuma*, the Capital of the Province, heretofore (according to the Opinion of several Authors) the Royal Seat of the Queen of *Soba*, who visited King *Sionon*, and of whom we have already made mention, in treating of *Ardua Felix*. Others are induc'd to believe, that some marks of the Name of *Soba*, or *Saba*, are still left in the Town of *Sabana*, but left unspecified. Lastly, the Kingdom of *Barnagasso* presents it self to our View, being the most Northern of all the Provinces of *Abissinia*. It is taken by some Authors for a Part of *Tigre-mahon*, and its Towns are *Zuma*; *Barna*, or *Debarra* the Capital; and *Emaren*.

XI. Thus we have given a particular Account of *Abissinia*, as it is commonly set down in the modern Maps: but the Relations of several Travelers, who have had an Opportunity to view this Kingdom, do not at all agree with these Descriptions. They do not make *Abissinia* to reach beyond the Equator, nor even so far as that Line: For (according to their Computation) it is only situated between the 8th. and the 17th. Degree of Northern Latitude; so that it does not extend it self on the East, as far as the Kingdom of *Congo*, nor even beyond the River *Nile*: Therefore they determine the Extent of *Abissinia* not to be equal to that of *Spain*; and that those Parts of the Kingdom, which are at present under the Dominion of the Emperor of the Abissines, are so inconsiderable, that he scarce seems to deserve the Character of a potent Monarch: Besides, that there is no small Difference, with respect to the Names, Situation, and Number of the Provinces: Those that are left in the Possession of this Prince, take up the Northern Part of the Country, and are divided into the greater and lesser.

The largest of these Provinces may be reckon'd up according to the following Order, viz. *Tigrea*, *Bagamara*, *Dambea*, *Gozama*, *Narea*, *Xoa*, part of which is only included by others within the Dominions of the Great *Nigus*, and *Amara*: The most remarkable among them is the Kingdom of *Tigrea*, the Vice-Roy of which is known by the

Name of *Tigre-Mahon*; whence the Province is also call'd *Tigrea* and *Tigre-mahon*: The Kingdom of *Barnagasso*, or *Bahar-nagass*, (according to the common Dialect) i. e. *The Governour of the Sea*, is a Part of *Tigrea*, that lies next to the Arabian Gulph. The lesser Provinces now subject to the Emperor of the Abissines, are *Maraza*, *Seguede*, or *Sagued*, *Olcair*, or *Holcair*, *Sacabai*, *Semen*, *Salai*, *Salao*, *Dabas* and *Oleca*. The Southern Part of *Abissinia* was invaded A. D. 1537, by the *Galla*, or *Galla*, a warlike People, who came out of *Guinea*, and in process of time settled themselves in *Ethiopia*; being induc'd to undertake that Expedition, upon account of the Richness of the Soil, and the natural Disposition of the Abissines, who are inclin'd to perform Acts of Devotion, rather than military Exploits: And indeed, those People would have long ago depriv'd the Emperor of all his Dominions, had they not been divided into opposite Parties, destroying one another, with mutual Slaughters. *Hicronymus Lobus*, a Portuguese Author above-cited, makes mention of ten Provinces that were subdu'd, and are at present possess'd by the *Galla*, viz. *Angotina*, or *Angota*, *Oifar*, *Dar*, *Ballia*, or *Balia*, *Fangar*, or *Faccar*, *Ogga*, or *Oga*, *Manza*, *Cambacca*, *Damut*, and *Bizam*, of which the six first are situated on the East, and the four last towards the West. Others increase the number of these Provinces.

XII. Having thus taken two several Views of *Abissinia*, it remains only to give a short Account of the principal Lakes, with which it is water'd; but neither are all Authors agreed with respect to their Number. The most remarkable of those commonly express'd in the modern Maps, in the Western and Southern Parts of this Country, are *Niger*, *Zambre* and *Zaflan*. The Lake *Niger* being the least and the most Northern lyes between *Lake Congo* and *Abissinia*, and extends it self in Length (according to M. *Robbe*) from North to South, for the space of 70 Leagues; as also 30 in Breadth, where it is widest, and about 160 in Compass. The Lake *Zambra*, *Zambre*, *Zambra*, or *Zambeza*, *Zambre* is situated on the South of the Equinoctial Line, and reaches to the Kingdom of *Monemugi*, taking up (as we are inform'd by the same M. *Robbe*) 100 Leagues in Length from North to South, 80 in its utmost Breadth, and above 350 in Compass; and having a very large Island in the middle. Many are of Opinion, that the Lake of *Zaire*, or *Zara*, is the same with *Zambra*; yet those Authors who have given us an accurate Description of this part of *Abissinia*, take no notice of the former: In the Maps, the Northern Part of the same Lake is commonly call'd *Zara*, and the Southern *Zambra*, taking both Names from two Towns of the same Denomination; the former seated on the West of it, and the other on the South. The Lake *Zaflan* lying out farther towards the East, is 140 Leagues long from South to North, and 60 broad, and takes up above 300 in Compass.

XII. They that place *Abissinia* on the North of the Equinoctial Line without enlarging its Bounds so far on the West, do not reckon the above-specified Lakes within those Territories; but only make mention of one considerable Lake, which is generally omitted in the modern Maps: It is call'd, The Lake of *Dambea*, and *Bar-Dambea*, i. e. The Sea of *Dambea*, by the Inhabitants, from the



the Kingdom of *Dambee*, where it is situated in the North-Western Part of *Abissinia*: It is surrounded on all sides with Mountains, from which a great number of Rivers and Brooks issue forth, and contains many Islands; the chief of which, are *Galila*, *Mecarat*, *Deca* and *Debra-Mariam*.

This Lake is broader in its Northern Part, than in the Southern, and extends it self farthest from North to South; the Length of 25 French Leagues being usually attributed to it, and the Breadth of 15 of the same Leagues.

## CHAP. IV. ZANGUEBAR.

I.  
Zangue-  
bar.

FROM the Western Part of the upper *Ethiopia*, we pass to the other, which is situated towards the East, and commonly call'd *Zanguebar*, or *Zanzibar*, by the Arabians, as it were the Country of Negroes. Indeed, all the Sea-coasts of the upper *Ethiopia* are comprehend'd under this Name, by M. *Sanfon*; in whose Maps they are bounded on the North, by the upper *Egypt*; on the West, by *Nubia*, *Abissinia* and the Kingdom of *Alonoemugi*; on the South, by *Cassaria*, or the Territories of the *Cassars*; and on the East, by the Sea of *Zanguebar*, with the Arabian Sea, Straight and Gulph. Others will have this Country only to consist of the Southern Part of *Zanguebar*, as we have but now set out its Bounds, lying between the Coast of *Ajan* and *Cassaria*. But M. *Sanfon* divides these Coasts taken at large, into three Parts, viz. those of *Abex*, *Ajan* and Proper *Zanguebar*.

II.  
Abex  
Coast.

The Coast of *Abex* has for its Boundaries on the North, the upper *Egypt*, from which it is separated by the Mountains; on the West, *Nubia* and *Abissinia*; on the South, part of *Abissinia* and the Coast of *Ajan*; and on the East, the Arabian Straight and Gulph: It extends itself for a great space from South to North; but very little, in many Places, from East to West. The Air is excessive hot and unhealthful; the Country is destitute of Water, sandy, barren and desert for the most part, more especially towards the North, and the Inhabitants are generally addicted to the Mahometan Religion.

III.

This Coast is divided by some Authors into the Northern and Southern Parts; the former being subject to the Turkish Dominion, and call'd The *Beglerbeglick* of *Habeleth*, or *Hustrebit*. The capital Town of this Country, is *Suaquem*, or *Suaquem*, seated on the Arabian Gulph, in the middle, between its innermost Bay, and the Straight of *Babelmandel*; where the Turkish Governour keeps his Court, and from whence Ships often Sail to *Sida*, the Port of *Mecca*, in *Arabia Felix*. Over against this Town, somewhat Westward, appears an Island of the same Name, in the Gulph not far from the Shore, where Coral-fishing is manag'd with good Success. Farther towards the South, the Town of *Ercoc*, *Erquico*, or *Arquico*, is situated on the same Gulph, and over against it, the Island of *Mazua*, or *Maczua*, abounding with Pastures and several sorts of Cattel: A spacious Wood is also said to be extended between *Suaquem* and *Erquico*. The Southern Part of the Coast of *Abex* comprehends the Kingdom of *Dangali*, or *Dancala*, which some attribute to the Coast of *Ajan*: The Country hereabouts being more pleasant and fruitful than that

Dancala  
Kingd.

Part 2

of the Northern Tract, is under the Jurisdiction of the *Moors*: Its chief Towns on the Western Shore of the Arabian Gulph, are *Degibeldara*, *Degibelcora* and *Vella*.

The second or middle Part of *Zanguebar* taken at large, is the Coast of *Ajan*, so call'd by the Arabians, as also *Habaza*, or *Habex*; which borders on the North, upon the Kingdom of *Dancala*, the Straight of *Babelmandel* and the Red-Sea; on the East, upon the Sea of *Zanguebar*, or the most Eastern Part of the Ethiopick Ocean; on the South, upon Proper *Zanguebar*; and on the West, upon *Abissinia*: Its greatest Extent appears on the Northern Tract, but in the Southern, next to the Equinoctial Line, it is very much contracted. The Country abounds with Corn, Fruit, Pastures, Cattel, Honey, Wax and Ivory, by reason of the great number of Elephants that are there bred: It also affords Gold, and is water'd with several Rivers, the chiefest of which run through its Southern Tract. The Inhabitants are partly of a white and partly of a black Complexion. There is also to be found the Sect of *Beduins*, who are originally Arabians, and have no living but by Robberies and Rapine. Some Authors divide the Coast of *Ajan* into four Parts, viz. the Kingdoms of *Adel*, *Adea*, and *Magadoxo*, and the Commonwealth of *Brava*; but others will have *Magadoxo* and *Brava* comprehended under the Kingdom of *Adea*.

The Kingdom of *Adel* takes up the Northern Part of *Ajan*, and is govern'd by its own Prince, who is a great stickler for the Mahometan Superstitions, and a most inveterate Enemy to the Christians; so that his Subjects readily follow his Example. He often makes War with the Emperor of the *Abissines*, who is said to have subdu'd a considerable part of the Kingdom. The most eminent Towns of *Adel*, are *Zeila*; *Barbora*; and *Meta*; the two last being Ports, near or on the Arabian Sea, which (as they say) are subject to the Turks, and under the Tuition of a Governour; who likewise presides over the Northern Part of the Coast of *Abex*. Farther towards the East, appear the Towns of *Salira* and *Dardura*, and the Promontory of *Aromata*, now known by the Name of *Il Cabo di Guardafuni*, or *Cape de Guardafuy*, according to the French Dialect; over against which on the East, lyes the Island of *Dioscorides*, at present call'd *Zocorora* by the Portugueses, extending it self about 80 Miles in Length and 26 in Breadth: This Island is under the Government of its own Prince, and produces great store of the best sort of Aloes. The following Towns are seated on or near the Coasts of the Sea of *Zanguebar*, viz. *Tallara*; *Azuma*; *Carfur*; *Asum*; *Camara*, or *Camara*;

Q



South, and *Aden*. Lastly, the most remarkable Places in the inland Country, are *Nebab*; a Town situate on a Rivulet of the same Name; the Metropolis of the Kingdom, and the Royal Seat; *Aden*, and *Mocha*.

VI. The Kingdom of *Aden* borders on the South, upon *Aden*, and is govern'd by its own Prince, who is tributary to the Emperor of the Abyssines, and professes the Mahometan Religion, as well as his Subjects. The chief Towns of this Kingdom are *Aden*; *Ogaba*; *Banah*, where (according to the Opinion of several Authors) the King usually keeps his Court; *Qobman*, on the Mouth of a River of the same Denomination; *Haya*; and *Bania*, a Sea-port Town: but the *Moos Lake* and *Ilala* are situated farther towards the North, and at a greater Distance from the Sea. Next follows *Mocha*, a large Town, formerly storm'd and ruin'd by the Portuguese: the Capital of the Kingdom of the same Name; and (as time will have it) of the whole Kingdom of *Aden*, although they make them distinct Dominions: It affords a Royal Seat to its King, and has the advantage of a capacious Harbour, with a Castle, on the Mouth of the River *Magadac*: It is also a considerable Mart, to which Clothes and Spice are imported out of *India*, and usually exchanged for Gold and Ivory: The Inhabitants are Mahometans, and derive their Original from the Arabians: And *Brasa*, a famous Mart and Sea-port Town, between *Magadac* and *Banah*, the Capital of a Commonwealth that bears the same Name, and pays Tribute to the Portuguese, as we are inform'd by M. *Santon* in his *Itinéraire*.

VII. The third and last part of *Zanguebar* taken at *Aden*, is the Coast of *Zanguebar* properly so call'd, which is situate on the North, by that of *Aden*; on the West, the East it is commonly express'd in the Maps, and according to several Authors) by *Aden*; which Country, as we have before observ'd, does not extend on the South of the *Equinoctial* Line, but by the Kingdom of *Mozambique*: On the South, by *Caffaria*; and on the West, by the Sea of *Zanguebar*. The last Part of this Country is situated on the North of the Equinoctial Line, the Part under it, and the greatest Part beyond it, on the South: Its shape comes near the Figure of a Square, the sides of which are above four times longer from North to South, than from West to East: and its Sea-coasts are very full of Bays and winding Shores. The Air of these Parts is not commendable; neither is the Soil over-rich, as being low and marshy, so that it scarce brings forth such things as are necessary for the support of humane Life: However, it is water'd with several Rivers, and affords Pasture to Sheep which are extremely fat, and have Tails of a prodigious Weight, almost beyond all belief. There are also most numerous Herds of Elephants, and consequently good store of Ivory, with some Gold and Silver. The Natives, the Colour of whose Skin is black, are either Idolaters, or Mahometans: nevertheless, by the means of their Commerce with the Europeans, they are render'd more tractable than the *Caffers*: Their Food and chief Sustenance consists of Venison. Mice, wild

Fruits and Pulse. The Government of this Kingdom consists of several Castles and Towns along the Coast of *Zanguebar*, as well as in the neighbouring Territories of *Caffaria*, upon which account the King of *Portugals*, among the rest of his Titles, is stild a King of the further side of the African Ocean.

The Kingdoms of *Zanguebar* are different: among which several of lesser Note take their Names from particular Towns. In passing from North to South, we come to the Kingdom of *Aden*, on or near the Sea-coast, and not far from the Equinoctial Line, on the South, with those of *Pata K.* *Aden* and *Lam n.* *Oya*, a Sea-port, and *Gazza* in the inland Country, are reckon'd among the Towns of the Kingdom of *Melinda*, the Metropolis of which is likewise call'd *Melinda*, a large, magnificent and well renowned Sea-port Town, adorn'd with the Royal Court: where the Portuguese have built a fine Castle with several Churches: and are us'd to traffick with the Subjects of that Prince. Under the Kingdom of *Aden* are *Banah*; *Ogaba*; and *Aden*, or *Montaza* *Aden* the chief City of the Kingdom, built on a Hill in a little Island, at a small Distance from the Continent, where the Portuguese have likewise erected a Fort, but the Air is unhealthful. From thence, a Passage lies open to the Kingdom of *Quiloa*, or *Quilloa*, the inland Towns of which are *Simas*; *Camu*; and *Sabia*: *Quiloa*, the Capital stands on the Sea-coast, and is divided by M. *Bauirand* into two distinct Parts, viz. the old Town, now in the Possession of the Portuguese, with a strong Castle; and the other seated in a little Island of the same Name, which is pleasant and fruitful, although the Air is very unwholesome: However, it is a famous Mart, and the Royal Seat of a King, who is oblig'd to pay Tribute to the Portuguese. The Town of *Xingo* appears next on the same Coast, but farther towards the South.

The Kingdom of *Mosambicka*, or *Mosambique*, contains the following noted Towns, near the Sea-shore, viz. *Querimba*; *Serincapa*; *Pinda*; and *Mosambique*, the Metropolis, built in a little Island that is barren and destitute of fresh Water; the Air being also unpleasant and very hot: However, it is well inhabited by reason of its conveniency for Traffick, and the Town stands on the Mouth of a River of the same Name, and enjoys the benefit of an excellent Harbour, on which the Portuguese (who are Masters both of the Island and Town) have erected a Castle, wherein is the Governour's Apartment, who depends on the Vice-Roy of *Goa*, and presides over this Kingdom and *Zefala*; but his Authority continues only for the space of three Years: It is also observable, That the Portuguese Ships bound for the *Indies* are usually refitted here, and that some Authors take *Mosambique* for King *Solomon's* *Ophir*. Lastly, the Kingdom of *Mongal* presents itself to our View, comprehending these Towns under its Jurisdiction, viz. *Angos*, or *Agazi*; and *Dad* in the inland Tracts, as also on the Sea-coasts, *Monia*; *Quiloma* and *Mongal*, the chief City, on the Frontiers of *Caffaria*, which nevertheless is omitted in some Maps.



## CHAP. V.

*The Islands over against Zanguebar.*

i. **A** Great number of Islands appear over against *Zanguebar*, some of them lying very near the Continent, and others at a greater Distance. Among the former are the Isles of *Penda*; *Zanzibar*, that communicates its Name to the Coast of *Zanguebar*; *St. Roch*; and *Monfia*; which bring forth several sorts of Grain and Fruit, and are situated over against the Kingdoms of *Monbaza* and *Quiloa*. The Islands call'd *Comeres*, or *Comorres*, are more remote from the Coast of *Zanguebar*, or the Kingdom of *Mosambique*, and comprehended within the 11th. and 13th. Degree of Southern Latitude: They produce good store of Rice, and variety of Fruits; neither are they destitute of Cattel: Their particular Names, are *Gafidfa*; *Aliola*; *Angowan*, otherwise term'd *Answanni* and *Loura*; *Mayotta*, or *St. Christopher's*; *St. John's*; and *Spirito Santo*, or *Cenbracus*.

ii. **None** of the above specify'd Islands is so far distant from the Continent of *Zanguebar*, as *Madagascar*, i. e. *The Island of the Moon*, otherwise call'd *St. Laurence*, or *La Ilha de San Lorenzo* by the Portuguese; because they first discover'd it under the Conduct of one Captain *Lorenzo*, on *St. Laurence's Festival A. D. 1506*. It is likewise termed the *Dauphin's Isle*, by the French, and was known to *Pliny*, under the Name of *Cerne*, as also to *Ptolemy*, under that of *Menuthias*, according to the Sentiments of many Learned Men: But *Vossius*, who takes *Zanzibar* mention'd a little above, for *Manuthias*, opposes that opinion; and affirms, that the Island of *Madagascar* was altogether unknown to the ancient Grecians and Romans. It is situated between the 11th and 26th Degrees of Southern Latitude; as, also, between the 72 and the 81 Degree of Longitude; being somewhat sharp-pointed towards the North. Its extent (as they say) surpasses that of *Italy*, or *Great Britain*, and it is reputed the largest of all the Islands not only of *Africa*, but also of *Asia*, *Europe* and *America*.

iii. **The** Europeans find the Air very prejudicial to their Health, but the Country affords every Thing that is requisite for Suster'ance; more especially producing Rice, Sugar, Ginger, Cloves, Oranges, Pomecitrons, Lemmons, Melons, Saffron, several sorts of Pulse, Honey, Wax and Cotton. The middle Part is beset with Woods and Mountains, the former yielding *Brasil-wood*, *Ebony*, and *Sanders*, of a white, yellow and red Colour; and the latter being well stor'd with the best kind of Metals, Springs and Rivers that run through the whole Island in great abundance. There are also numerous Herds of Elephants, Camels, Stags, fallow Deer, Oxen, Buffalo's with huge bunches of Fat on their Backs, and Sheep with the largest Tails; besides Lions and Leopards. The Inhabitants of the inland Parts are savage and ungovernable, much like the *Cassers*, and live under very low Tents; but they that dwell at a little distance from the Sea-coasts are civiliz'd by the means of their Conversation with the Europeans. The Colour of the Natives is generally black, although there are some of a tawny and white Complexion; and their shape is neater than that

of the Ethiopians: They often make a kind of Drink with Honey and Rice, and are easily intoxicated with it: To conclude, these People are partly Mahometans and partly Idolaters, and have been frequently induc'd to exchange Sheep, Oxen, and other Commodities, for Toys of little or no Value.

iv. **Five or six Kingdoms** are said to be comprehend'd within the Island of *Madagascar*; and in the modern Maps, it is divided into several Provinces and Territories of particular People, that are for the most part plac'd on the Sea-coasts, and of which as yet we have no certain Knowledge. Those that appear on the East, as we pass from South to North, are *Amboula*; *Mananboula*; *Matatana*; *Antavares*, or *Antanares*; *Zaffa*, or *Zefa*; *Hibrahim*; *Manghabey*, or *Mananghabey*; and *Vohemaro*. On the West, in returning from North to South, we meet with those of *Andonvoucha*, or *Andouwoucha*; *Ancianactes*, or *Antsianach*; *Hazonringhets*, or *Hazonziringhets*; *Vohitz*; *Angombes*; *Eringdranes*; and *Labefont*, or *Labefonti*. On the South, are *Machicores*, *Mahafalles*, or *Manhafales*; *Caremboula*; *Ampaires*; and *Carcainossi*.

v. **This Island** is very full of Harbours, the chief of which on the South, are *Fanshera*; *Fort Dauphin*, a Colony of the French, who establish'd others in several parts of the Sea-coasts, in hopes of obtaining a more wholesome Air; but have of late almost entirely deserted them; and the Port of *Tonobaja*. On the West, appear the Bay and Port of *St. Augustine*; *St. James's Port*; the Port and Bay of *St. Vincent*; *St. Andrew's Port*; and the Round Port, or *Vingagora*: The principal Bays and Havens on the East, are the Bays of *Vohemaro*; and *Antongil*, with the Harbours of *Cacambow*; *Mannajara* and *Manapatan*.

vi. **Several Islands** are to be seen over against the Eastern Coast of *Madagascar*, the nearest of which is *Santa Maria*, or *Nossi Hibrahim*, of an oblong Figure. Those that lye at a greater distance, are *Nazara*, *St. Maurice's Isle*, and that of *Bourbon*: The last, call'd *Mascaregna* by the Portuguese, is fruitful, well water'd, and in the middle beset on all sides with Mountains, among which one casts forth Flames, as well as some part of the Land. This Island was cultivated and fortify'd by the *Hollanders*, within these few years, but the *French* made themselves Masters of it not long ago, and still retain it in their possession: Its most considerable Harbours bear the Names of *St. Paul*, *St. Denis*, and the *Assumption*.

vii. **Between Madagascar**, on the East, and the Coast of *Zanguebar*, on the West, *Syrtes Judaica*, or *Syrtes the Jewish Shelves*, appear, which are commonly call'd *Baixos*, *Baxios*; or *Baxos de Judea*, by the Portuguese: They lye out very far from South to North, and are infamous for Shipwracks; consisting partly of coralline Rocks, that are clear, sharp, and of divers colours; insomuch that it is no wonder, that Coral is frequently thrown up on the Coasts of *Madagascar*: About the same Shelves are Crab-fish of a prodigious size, and of so great Strength, that in struggling with Men, they often lay hold of them with their Claws; and drag them into the Gulph.



## C H A P. VI.

*The Empires of Monoemugi and Monomotapa, with Caffaria.*

I.  
Ethi-  
opia

IT is now requisite to return to the Continent of *Africa*, where having already observ'd all the Parts of the upper *Ethiopia*, we may in like manner, take a View of the lower, otherwise call'd the outward *Ethiopia*, to which all Authors do not assign the same Bounds: For some make *Zanguebar* taken at large a Part of it, which (as others will have it) is comprehended within the Limits of the upper *Ethiopia*; but we have thought fit to follow the latter Opinion. The lower *Ethiopia* then, (according to this sense) is bounded on the East, by the Sea of the *Caffers*; *Zanguebar*, *Abissinia*, and *Nubia*; on the North, by the Desert of *Zaira*, and Negroe-land; on the West, by *Guinea*, the Sea of *Congo*, and part of the *Cassarian*; and on the South, by the same Sea of the *Caffers*.

II. M. *Sanfon* only takes notice of three spacious Provinces, viz. *Monomotapa*, *Cassaria*, and the Kingdom of *Congo*; but we shall divide the whole Continent into five principal Parts, that is to say, the Empires of *Monoemugi* and *Monomotapa*, the Coasts of the *Caffers*, and the Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Biafara*. The two first of these Parts are situated in the inland Country, and the others on the Coasts, which are wash'd by the Ethiopian Sea.

III.  
Moro-  
mugi  
Emp.

The Empire of *Monoemugi*, or *Mono-Emugi*, otherwise call'd the Kingdom of *Mensemugi* and *Nimeama*, is compris'd by M. *Sanfon*, under the Jurisdiction of *Monomotapa*. It has for its Bounds (as they are commonly set out in the Maps,) on the North, the Empire of the *Abissines* and the Lake *Zambra*; on the West the Kingdom of *Malemba* and part of *Monomotapa*; on the South, *Monomotapa* and the North-Eastern Part of *Cassaria*; and on the East, the Kingdom of *Mongal*, which is the Southern Part of proper *Zanguebar*. Others removing this Empire farther towards the North, affirm that it borders on the East, upon the Kingdoms of *Mosambique*, *Quiloa* and *Monbaza*, and that it does not extend itself very far Southward from the Equinoctial Line.

IV.

The Country is extremely beset with Mountains, and comprehends part of those of the Moon, abounding with the purest sort of Gold-metal, with which nevertheless the Inhabitants do not coin Money, but instead of it (as some say) they use certain round Pieces somewhat like Glass, and of a red Colour: There are also considerable quantities of Silver and Ivory: This Empire is water'd by the River *Cuama*, and by that means has a communication with the Kingdom of *Zefala*, or *Sefala*. The Natives being Negroes, are said to be of a savage Disposition, Idolaters, and the Subjects of a Monarch to whom several petty Kings are oblig'd to do Homage. It is express'd in the last Relations of Travels into these Parts, that the Province or Kingdom of *Malemba*, lying between the Lake *Zambra* and the Kingdom of *Angola*, of which we have before made mention, Chap. 3. Sect. 5. is likewise included within the Dominions of *Monoemugi*; as also part of the Peo-

ple, known by the name of *Gala*, or *Galla*, that are commonly plac'd next to the Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Congo* call'd *Giagua's*, or *Giaguas*, and on the North of *Malemba*; and of whom we shall take special notice hereafter, in treating of the Kingdom of *Congo*. Indeed the Province and Towns of this Empire are but little known to the Europeans, and those Particulars that are related by the Writers of Travels, do not at all agree with the Maps, which are likewise very different one from another.

Some Authors make a Distinction, between the Empire of *Monoemugi* strictly taken, and the Kingdom of *Malemba*. The Towns of this Empire (to say nothing of the Provinces, or Kingdoms into which it is divided by others) as we find 'em set down in several Maps, are *Gamba* on the River *Cuama*; *Afagoa*; *Agag*; *Camut*; and *Beita*, all situated towards the East. In the Western Tract, are *Bagamedro*, and *Zambra*, or *Zambeza*, on or near the Southern Bank of the Lake of the same Name. In the Kingdom of *Malemba*, *Debsan* and *Meri*, stand on the Western side of the same Lake. Malemba K.

The other inland Part of the lower *Ethiopia*, is the Empire of *Monomotapa*, or *Mono-Motapa* otherwise termed *Beno-Motapa*, and *Beno-Motapaxa*; the Bounds of which on the North, are the Kingdom of *Malemba*, and the Empire of *Monoemugi*, from which it is separated by the Mountains of the Moon: It is also bounded on the East, South and West, by the Coasts of the *Caffers*. Emp.

The whole Empire is divided into two Parts by the Tropick of *Cancer*: The Air is temperate, and the Country is fruitful and pleasant; affording admirable Pasturage, with great store of Rice, Sugar, Ivory and Gold, which is taken not only from Mines in the Mountains and Rocks, but also out of the Rivulets. However it is destitute of Horses, and Wood is likewise very scarce; insomuch that Fires are usually made of Rice-twigs and the Dung of Beasts. The Natives are of a black Complexion, having bristly Hair, and go almost stark naked: They are a warlike, nimble People, but at the same time, restless, seditious and given to change. A considerable Part of them were heretofore converted to the Christian Religion and baptiz'd, more especially the Emperour himself; nevertheless not long after, they return'd to their natural Disposition, and put the Christians to Death, with the Jesuits, who had endeavour'd to propagate the Principles of Christianity in those Parts. The Government is Monarchical, and its Dominions are call'd by Foreigners, *Bene-matapa*, or *Monomotapa*, i. e. an Emperour; so that this Empire here takes its Name from the Emperour, contrary to the usual Custom, practis'd in other Countries. This Monarch is said to be saluted with the Title of *The Great Tabach* or *Tabaque*, and is very potent, in regard that a very considerable number of petty Kings are Tributary to him: He is well attended by a Life-guard of armed *Amazons*, which kind of Effeminacy has been already



already observ'd in treating of *Asia*: He is also extremely rever'd and belov'd by his Subjects, and causes Justice to be executed with so great severity, that there is no need of any Prisons throughout his Dominions.

VIII. *Burua* K. M. *Sanson* divides this Empire into the Kingdoms of *Monomotapa* and *Burua*; the former lying on the North, and the other on the South. The Kingdom of *Burua* is noted for its admirable Gold-Mines, and its Northern Towns, are *Carma*, *Galila*, on the Northern side of the Lake *Zachaf*; *Zee* on its Eastern Bank, *Dobdal*, or *Dobdel*, near the left side of the River *Cuamo*, just at its passage out of that Lake; *Armeta*; *Maitagast*; *Bera*, or *Boro*; *Gebagha*, or *Gebaghel*; *Burua*, the capital City of the Kingdom, adorn'd with a stately, spacious and ancient Palace call'd *Zimbaoe*, of a square figure, built with huge Stones; which others do not place in the Town of *Burua*, but elsewhere in the Kingdom: And *Amaru*. The following Towns appear on the South, *viz.* *Hagala*, *Quiticui*, or *Quieteui*; *Bafat*; *Tialfo*, *Tango* and *Zimbura*, next to the Topick of *Capricorn*.

XI. *Monomotapa* K. The most considerable Places and Towns of the Kingdom of *Monomotapa*, on the West, are *Garma* or *Gorma*; *Adia*, *Mosata*, or *Mossata Mesata* and *Cumissa*. On the East appear *Valonta*; *Belegura*; *Joares*, or *Jouros*; *Zedaya*, or *Zedata*, on the River of *Espritu Santo*; and somewhat lower on the same River *Monomotapa*, or *Benomotapa*, the Metropolis of the whole Empire, and famous for the Imperial Court; *Faggi*, or *Qugge*, somewhat higher, on the opposite side; *Moggir*; and *Agra-Seda*.

X. *Caffaria* Having thus given an account of the inland Part of the lower *Ethiopia*, we proceed to the Maritime; where we first enter the Territories of *Caffaria*, otherwise call'd *Cafraria*, *Cafreria* and the Coasts of the *Caffers*, or *Cafres*: Its outward Boundary is the Sea of the *Caffers*, being Part of the Ethiopian, which washes it, on the East, South and West. But it has for its inner Limits the Kingdoms of *Angola* and *Malemba*, by which it is partly bounded on the North-West, and chiefly the Empire of *Monomotapa*, that serves in like manner for its Boundary on the East, North and West; a very high continued Ridge of Mountains ranging along in the middle, between *Caffaria* and *Monomotapa*, more especially on the East and West; part of which lying nearest to the Cape of *Good Hope* is called *Picos fragosos*, i. e. *Sharp Rocks*, by the Portuguese: Lastly the Coasts of the *Caffers* are also bounded on the North-West by the Empire of *Monomugi*, and the Coast of *Zanguebar*.

XI. The Western Coast of *Caffaria*, reaches from the 14th to the 35th Degree of Southern Latitude; but that Part of the Eastern Coast, which lies nearest to the Equinoctial Line, takes up about 18 Degrees in Latitude: So that the whole Continent extends itself farthest on the Sea-coasts, and a great deal less, between the Sea and the Empires of *Monomugi* and *Monomotapa*; neither is the intervenient Space every where alike, its shape almost resembling that of an Horse-Shoe. The Air is said to be temperate, and sometimes very cold in those Tracts that lye near the high Mountains, more especially towards the Cape of *Good Hope*, by reason of the Snow that covers their Tops, and the Winds that rush out of them, with great Impetuosity. The Soil is for the most part, bar-

ren; yet the Valleys abound with Grass and Flowers, and the Hills afford the finest Gold: Neither is there any want of Cattel of several sorts, besides wild Beasts, particularly, Elephants Staggs, Bears and Lions.

The *Caffers* are of a black Colour, Savage, cruel, and partly Man-eaters, living like Brutes in Woods, Caves and Mountains: The meaner sort of them go almost naked, and the more wealthy are cloath'd with the Skins of wild Beasts: They feed upon Fish, Rice, raw Flesh, and the loathsome Entrails of Animals; from the eating of which (according to *Becmannus*) they have obtain'd the Name of *Hottentots*, among Foreigners: But M. *Baudrand* says, that the Natives of *Caffaria* call themselves *Hottentots*, and that they are termed *Caffers*, as it were *Out-Laws*; by the Europeans, according to the peculiar Idiom of their Language; which Opinion is confirm'd by *Bertius*. However, some of the *Caffers* who inhabit the Eastern Tracts near the Frontiers of *Zanguebar*, are much more civiliz'd; neither are they altogether Canibals, without Law, King, or Fidelity: for several Kingdoms are comprehended within the Bounds of this Country, and even those Savages, who wander up and down in the Woods and Mountains, are obedient to their Commanders. In the Eastern Parts of *Caffaria*, the Inhabitants are Mahometans, and some of those that converse with the Hollanders and Portugueses, follow the sacred Rites and Customs of both these Nations; neither is it to be imagin'd, that the rest are void of all manner of sense of the supreme Deity.

XII. Thus the Coasts of the *Caffers* may not improperly be divided into three Parts, *viz.* the Eastern, Southern and Western. The first of these, which borders upon *Zanguebar*, is the most eminent, as being well cultivated and fruitful. In traversing this Part from North to South, we come first to the Kingdom of *Quiteva*, call'd *Quitava* by M. *Baudrand*, with the Capital Town of the same K. Name, now almost ruin'd; and from thence to the Kingdom of *Zephala*, *Zofala*, *Sofala*, or *Siffala*, *Sofala* K. where the chief Town, likewise named *Sofala*, is seated near the Mouth of a River of the same Denomination and well fortify'd: It is a noted Mart, at present in the possession of the Portugueses, and communicates its Name to the most famous Gold-mines of *Sofala*, which are distant 50 Miles from thence to the West, and call'd the Mines of *Manica*, by the Natives: Neither does the Land of *Sofala* only produce Gold, but the Rivers are also impregnated with it. There is also good store of Apes, Elephants and Ivory; so that *Raphael Volaterranus*, *Ludovicus Venetus*, and some other Authors, are induc'd to believe that *Sofala* is the same with King *Solomon's Ophir*; following the footsteps of the *Chaldee* Interpreter, who in several Passages, calls the Ships that were fitted out for *Ophir*, the African Navy, or Fleet: They also add, that certain remainders of ancient Buildings, Inscriptions and other Monuments, are still to be seen in *Sofala*, which serve to confirm their Opinion. But we have already deliver'd our Sentiments concerning this matter under the Article of *India beyond the Ganges*, Chap. 16. Sect. 15. The other remarkable Places of this Part of *Caffaria*, situated farther towards the South, are the Kingdoms of *Sedanda* and *Chicanga*: *Fumes*, or *Terra dos Fumos*, K. according to the Portuguese Dialect, i. e. *The Chitani-Land* da K.



Fumes *Land of Smoak*; And *Terra Natalis*, or *Terra do Natal*, so nam'd by *Vasco de Gama*, because he first discover'd it on the Festival of our Lord and Saviour's Nativity.

XIII. The Southern Part of *Caffaria* lies between the Eastern and Western; where the Desert Land, or Coast call'd *Costa Deserta* by the Portuguese, is express'd in the Maps, bordering upon the Empire of *Aionomoraga*: and *M. Baudrand* reckons up thirteen particular People or Nations, inhabiting about the Cape of Good Hope and the Sea-coasts, into which (as he says) the *Hottentots* of these Parts are divided. But nothing is more remarkable throughout the whole Southern Tract than the Promontory, or Cape of Good Hope, which is the most renowned of all that are as yet known in the habitable World, being the most Southern Part of *Africa*, and lying almost in the middle between *England* and the *East Indies*. The Portuguese at first nam'd it *The Cape of Storms*, because they were made sensible by experience, that 'twas very dangerous sailing thereabouts; the Waves continually rolling up and down, and violently beating upon their Ships on all sides: But this Name was not approved of by *John II.* King of *Portugal*, who order'd it to be call'd for the future *El Cabo de bona Esperanza*, i. e. *The Cape of Good Hope*; for he judg'd, that the weathering of it, and the good success of the Indian Voyage, were not at all to be despair'd of; neither indeed was he mistaken, as it appear'd a little while after, from the prosperous Expedition of *Vasco de Gama*.

The *Hollanders*, *A. D.* 1650. erected a Fort on *Tafel Bay* or *Table-Bay*, at the foot of a very high Mountain of the same Name, famous for its little Cloud, the Fore-runner of an unavoidable Tempest; and not far from thence they likewise built a very neat Village. The Air is very wholesome, and the Vallies no less fruitful, bringing forth abundance of the Asiatick and European kinds of Grain: Neither is there any want of Cattle, besides excellent Spring-water, Fish and Fowl; so that Vessels bound for the *East Indies* which arrive at this Bay may be very conveniently refitted, and supply'd with all sorts of necessary Provisions. The *Hottentots* of these Parts, whose Speech is scarce articulate, are most sordid Brutes, altogether ignorant of the use of Money, of a low Stature, Lean, of an artificial black Colour, and very swift in running; to which purpose, they usually cut off one of the Testicles of their male Children, that are newly born: They are also most expert Archers, and extremely skilful in the application of Medicinal Herbs. Some

understand by the Name of the Cape of Good Hope, all that Part of *Africa*, or *Caffaria*, that extends itself farthest towards the South, and make its Parts to consist of *Saldanha-Bay*; termed *Saldaigne*, by the French; *Table-Bay*; *El Cabo Falso*, or *False Cape*, *El Cabo de las Aguas*; or *Needle Cape*; *El Cabo do Infante*, or *Infant's-Cape*, *Formoso-Bay*, &c. but we have taken it in a more strict Sense.

Lastly, the Western Part of *Caffaria* reaches from the Southern, to the Kingdom of *Angola*; being a vast Country, but very mountainous, barren, desert and quite destitute of Towns: On its Northern Tract, situated between the Tropick of *Capricorn* and the same Province of *Angola*, the Kingdom of *Cimbebas* is plac'd in some Maps; in *Cimbebas* the Northern Part of which is a famous Promontory call'd *El Cabo Negro*, i. e. the *Black Cape*. Other Maps likewise contain the Kingdom of *Mataman*, which lies at a greater distance from the Sea, and is bounded on the North by *Angola*, although some do not distinguish this Kingdom from that of *Cimbebas*.

The new Island of *St. Helena* appears in the *Ethiopian Sea*, at a considerable distance from the *St. Helena* Continent, as also the old Island of *St. Helena*, which is much more Western than the former, and lies at a very great distance from all other Islands: It is situated (according to *M. Baudrand*) in the 16th Degree of Southern Latitude, and takes up about 13 Leagues in compass. It is almost every where beset with Mountains, yet there are several fruitful Vallies, water'd with Rivers, more especially in the Northern Part; and the Soil is extremely rich, being apt to bring forth any sort of Grain whatever; and abounding with Lemmons, Oranges, and most excellent Sorrel: There is also good store of wild Bears, and no want of fresh Water: Lastly, the Harbour is very convenient, and the Sea round about full of Fish: Insomuch that it is deservedly call'd, *The Store-house of the Sea*; in regard that most Ships in passing to the *East Indies* touch upon the Coast, and all that are homeward bound continue there several Days, to be refitted and supply'd with necessary Provisions. This Island was first discover'd by the Portuguese, under the conduct of *John de Nova*, on the Festival of *St. Helena*, *A. D.* 1502, but the *English* made themselves Masters of it some years ago, and secur'd it with a Fort. It is distant 1550 Spanish Leagues Westward from *Goa*, 520 from the Cape of Good Hope, 370 from *Angola*, 1000 from *Lisbon*, and 540 Eastward from the Coasts of *Brasil* in *America*.

## CHAP. VII.

### *The Kingdoms of Congo and Biafar, with the Islands over against Biafar.*

I. **T**HE next Territory that presents itself to our View on the Continent of *Africa*, is the Kingdom of *Congo*; by which Name some understand all that Country, which reaches from the Northern Tract of the Western Part of

*Caffaria*, as far as *Negroe-land*, and consequently make it comprehend the remaining Part of the lower *Ethiopia*: Others enclose it within much narrower Bounds, that is to say, between the same Tract of *Caffaria*, and *St. Catharine's Cape*, which



which is distant two Degrees Southward from the Equator; or else they place it between this Promontory and Cape *Lebo*, situated in the Tenth Degree of Southern Latitude. Again others will have these Dominions extended no farther than the Kingdom of *Congo* strictly taken: but according to our determination, this Kingdom is bounded on the South, by those of *Mataman* and *Malemba*; on the East, by the Lake *Zaire* and *Abissinia*; on the North, by the Kingdoms of *Macoco* and *Gubona*; and on the West, by the Sea of *Congo*, which lies from North to South, from *St. Catherine's Cape*, as far as the Coast of the *Coffers*.

II. The Air would be extremely hot, were it not cooled by the Winds and the Rain, which falls every Day from *April* to *September*, the rest of the Months passing away without any Rain. The Country is fertile, and abounds with large and small Cattel, all sorts of Fowl, Corn, Fruits and Medicinal Herbs. The Inhabitants are of a black Complexion, well set, with vast Muscles, and very robust: They are generally cloth'd with Cotton-shrowds, and live in mean Cottages, making use of Fish-shells and Potsherds instead of Money. They are almost altogether ignorant of Architecture and other Arts and Sciences, yet they have no small skill in Botanicks and the use of Medicinal Plants, every Man being his own Doctor. Part of those that have their Habitations about the Sea-coasts are said to profess the Christian Religion; but there are many Idolaters, more especially in the Eastern Tract, who among other Deities, worship the Earth, Sun and Moon. They are much addicted to the stealing of Foreigners Goods; the Women likewise give themselves to Incontinency, and are great lovers of white Men.

III. Several Kingdoms and States are comprehended within the Extent of this Country; the chief of which are the Kingdoms of *Angola*, *Congo* and *Loango*; and the Territories of the *Galla* and *Anficans*. These Kingdoms are subject to their own Princes, who are usually styl'd *Muni*, i. e. Lords, with which Title the Governors of Provinces are also dignify'd; only adding, for distinction sake, the Surnames of their respective Provinces: Neither is it to be admir'd that the Kingdom of *Congo* contains so many distinct Kingdoms and Nations, in regard that they either sometime constituted the several Parts of it, or partly depended on its Jurisdiction; which they continue to do even at this day, under the Form of separate Governments.

IV. The Kingdom of *Angola*, being the most Southern Part of that of *Congo*, is situated between *Mataman*, on the South; *Malemba*, on the East; the Province of *Congo* strictly taken, on the North; and the Sea of *Congo*, on the West. This Kingdom formerly was compris'd within the Dominions of the King of *Congo*, and (as we are inform'd by *M. Robbe*) is still Tributary to that Monarch: It abounds with Elephants, Fish, Fowl, Crystal, Marble, Precious Stones, Gold, Silver, Copper, and other sorts of Metal: It is also very potent, and extremely populous, supplying the Spanish Work-houses (as they say) with above fifteen thousand Natives every Year. The Angolans generally prefer Dogs-flesh before Beef, and their chief Towns are *Benguela*, *Nova*, or *New Benguela*; *Quicon*; and *Benguela Velha*, or *Old Ben-*

*guela*; on the Sea of *Congo*. In the inland Country, on the East, appears *Mochima*, or *Macbiana*, near, or on the Banks of the *Cunza*; as also, higher on the same River, *Maffagan*, *Maffigan* or *Maffagan*; and *Engaza*, otherwise call'd *Dongge*, which several Authors take for the Capital of *Angola*, seated in its Northern Tract, and on the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Congo*.

Between the Lake of *Aguilunda* on the West, and that of *Zara*, on the East, on the Mountains Gale of the Sun, the Seat of the *Galla*, or *Galla*, is plac'd in some Maps, a People who often style themselves *Lamba Galla's*, and are commonly call'd *Gigalla's*, *Gilaqua's* and *Gilaquet*, by the Inhabitants of *Congo*. They are most notorious Robbers and Camibals, deriving their Original from the inland Country of *Guinea*; some of whom (as it has been already observ'd) subdu'd a considerable Part of *Abissinia*. Their Towns (according to *Sanson* and *la Robbe*) are *Zaire*, or *Zara*, on the Lake of the same Name; *Dangar*, or *Dangar*, or the said Lake, where the Rivulet *Zara* takes its Rise; and *Pamba*, situated a great deal farther towards the North, and scarce one Degree from the Equinoctial Line. Between the Territories of these *Galla's* on the East, and the Kingdom of *Loango*, on the West, the *Anficans*, or *Anficans*, otherwise termed *Anzighi* and *Antiquainers*, take up their Abode, and are much of the same Disposition with the former.

From thence we set forward to the Kingdom VI. of *Congo* properly so call'd or strictly taken; which *Congo* is bounded on the East, by the Territories of the *proper K. Gale*; on the North, by those of the *Anficans*, and the Kingdom of *Loango*; on the West, by the Sea of *Congo*; and on the South, by the Kingdom of *Angola*. The Country is fruitful, well cultivated, and water'd with several Rivers. This wealthy Kingdom was heretofore of a much larger Extent, and is still divided into six considerable Provinces, viz. *Pango*, *Sundi*, *Batta*, *Pemba*, *Bamba*, and *Sango*: The four first of these Provinces are situated in the inland Country, and the two last on the Sea-coasts. The Marquisate of *Pango* lyes on the Pango South of *Anficana*, and is water'd by the River *Marquira*; containing the Towns of *Canti* on the *Za-fate*, *Pango* the Capital; and *Anzota*. The Dutchy of *Sunde*, *Sundi* or *Sundo*, borders upon *Pango*, on Sundi the West, and is likewise water'd by the *Zara*; Dutchy: producing good store of Metal, more particularly Iron, on which the Inhabitants set a greater value than on the other sorts. *Sunde* the chief Town has impos'd its name on this Province: beyond which farther towards the South; are *Betequa*, and *Iri*. The Dutchy of *Batta* *Batta* extends itself between that of *Sundi*, and the Dutchy Lake of *Aguilunda*, and contains the Towns of *Cangou*, or *Gangou*, *Batta*, the principal, and *Anisymba*. The Marquisate of *Pemba* appears next to *Batta*, on the West; in which is the *Pemba* Town of *Lelunda*, on a River of the same *Marquifate* Name: *S. Salvador*, call'd *Banza* by the Inhabitants, seated on an Hill, near the same River, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, affording a Seat both to a Christian King and Bishop; and *Pemba*.

From the inland Provinces of *Congo*, we pass to the two Maritime, of which the most Southern is the Dutchy of *Bamba*, abounding with Elephants, *Bamba* Buffles, Staggs, Tigers, Dragons, Vipers, Civet-Dutchy: Cats;



Cats, Eagles, Falcons and Parrots: The most remarkable Place of this Province is *St. Paul* or *Lond*, a Sea-port Town with a large and capacious Harbour, built in a little Island nam'd *Lond*, that has neither Mountains nor Hill, where the Fishery is established for Sticks that pass for Money throughout the Kingdom, and where a kind of Tree grows, the Branches of which bend forth soft, small Twigs, which as soon as they touch the Ground, spring up into new Trees, with a wonderful Faculty of Propagation. This Town was taken by the Hollanders, but recovered by the Portuguese: so that it still continues in the Possession of the latter, and is the usual Place of Residence of the Bishop of *Angola*. The other noted Towns are *Mumbo* and *Pombal*. The Country or Barrenness of *Sigao*, or *Sigao*, is situated on the North of *Bamba*, and its Southern Tract is water'd by the lower Part of the River *Zaire*. Among other sorts of Animals there is great store of Parrots, both green and gray, Monkeys and Apes. The chief Towns of this Province are *Silva*, on the Mouth of the *Zaire*; *Bamba*; *Mungo*; and *Malembo*, a Sea-port.

Lastly, the Kingdom of *Loango*, is situated between that of *Congo* strictly taken, on the South; the Territories of the *Angolans*, on the East; the Kingdom of *Biafar*, on the North; and the Sea or *Ocean*, on the West. It produces abundance of Ivory and Fruit-trees, more especially Palms, of which the Natives make Bread, Wine and Oil: and affords plenty of all sorts of necessary Provisions. The Sea-port Towns are *Loango* the Capital, which has communicated its Name to the whole Kingdom: *Silaga*, or *Silaga*; *Quana*; and *Mamumba*. The Inland Towns are *Kana*, *Bocemala*, and *Sera*, or *Zera*.

It remains only to give an Account of the third and last maritime Part of the lower *Ethiopia*, that is to say, the Kingdom of *Biafar*: under which Name some Geographers comprehend all that Country, which is bounded on the East, by the Lake and River of *Niger*; on the North, by the Kingdoms of *Borno* and *Zaria*; and on the West, by that of *Benin* and *St. Thomas's Bay*. The Air in these Parts is excessive Hot, and the Rain falls from the Month of *April* to that of *August*: The Soil brings forth a great number of Palm-trees, with which a pleasant kind of Wine is usually made, and the Champain Country breeds Elephants, Buffies and terrible Serpents. The Natives are savage, subtil, incestuous, and infamous for Robberies, Rapine and Sorcery. They dye their Bodies with several Colours, to render themselves more beautiful, and the Kings make use of Chalk for that purpose; performing Divine Wor-

ship to the Sun, Moon, Trees, and even to the Devil himself.

Many Kingdoms are contained in this Part, every one of which derives its Name from the capital Town, and is govern'd by its own Prince, who is styl'd *Muz* in the Dialect of the Country. The Kingdoms of *Maze* and *Gwingbomba*, with *Macra*, the Towns of the same Name, are situated on the East; as also the Kingdom of *Mebra*, the Towns of which are *Gadon*, on the West of the Lake *Niger*; *Maba*, on the left-side Bank of the River *Niger*; and *Tebalaba*, on the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Zaria*. The Kingdom of *Biafar* properly so call'd, lyes farther towards the West, and contains the Towns of *Biafar* and *Bera*, which last some make the Capital of a distinct Kingdom. Lastly, the Kingdom of *Gaba* extends itself on the South, in which are the Towns of *Gaba*, *Gombo* and *Mazira*, next to the Equinoctial Line.

Several Islands are remarkable for their Situation in *St. Thomas's Bay*, over against the Kingdom of *Biafar*, but the chief of them are four in number, and depend on the Jurisdiction of the Portuguese; the two first that shall be immediately specify'd being farther distant from the Continent than the latter. The most remote of all is *Annohon*, i. e. *The Island of a good Year*, so call'd by the Portuguese, from the first day of the Year, on which they discover'd it. The Island of *St. Thomas*, lyes farther towards the North-East, under the *Equator*, and was descri'd by the Portuguese on the Festival of that Saint; being of a large Compass, and almost of a round Figure. The Air is prejudicial to Foreigners; but its Heat is much allay'd by frequent Showers of Rain and a plentiful Dew: The Soil brings forth Sugar, Ginger, Oranges of an extraordinary largeness, Cucumbers, Melons and Figs. The capital Town bears the same Name with the Island, and is otherwise termed *Pavofan*; affording a Place of Residence to the Governour: It is seated on a River and well fortify'd. The Prince's Island, (on which the Portuguese impos'd that Name, because its Revenues were assign'd for the use of the Prince of *Portugal*) extends itself on the North of the Equinoctial Line, and is lesser than that of *St. Thomas*: It is somewhat long, and well cultivated, producing great store of Sugar: It also enjoys a healthful Air, and the advantage of a considerable Town, with some Villages. The Island of *Fernando Po*, so nam'd by the Discoverer, lyes nearest to the Continent; and is larger than the Prince's Isle, but much of the same nature; in which several Villages are built, with a Castle. Upon account of these Islands and some other Places in the Kingdom of *Congo* that are in the Possession of the Portuguese, the King of *Portugal* makes no scruple to style himself King of the hither side of the African Ocean.



## C H A P. VIII.

*Ancient Ethiopia, with the principal Rivers of that Country.*

I. **E**THIOPIA having taken a Survey of Modern Ethiopia, it is requisite to make a short Description of it according to its ancient State. This Country was heretofore divided into *Ethiopia* under *Egypt*, and *Ethiopia interior*. The former took up almost the same space with the modern upper, or inner *Ethiopia*; and its Parts were the Territories of the *Nubi*, Proper *Ethiopia*, *Troglodytica*, *Azania* and *Barbaria*: The *Nubi* were settled along the Western-side of the River *Nile*, where the greatest Part of *Nubia* is now situated; although M. *Sanson* is of a different Opinion, and thinks fit to place the *Nubi* in the inner *Libya*. *Ethiopia* properly so call'd, is now known by the Name of *Abissinia*, and anciently comprehended the Island of *Meroe*, made by the *Nile*, the Cinnamon-bearing Country, near the Marshes of that River; and the Myrrh-bearing Land lying out farther on the North-East, towards *Azania* and *Troglodytica*, with the Territories of many other particular People. *Troglodytica* extended itself in Length, along the Coasts of the Arabian Gulph, from *Egypt* to the Promontory of *Aromata*, and was inhabited by several sorts of People; but at present, is termed, the Coast of *Abex*. *Azania* was situated on the South of *Troglodytica*, where the Coast of *Ajan* appears at this day. Lastly, *Barbaria* supply'd the room of *Zanguebar*, and that Part of the Ethiopian Sea which wash'd it, was nam'd *Sinus Barbaricus*, aut *Pelagus Barbaricum*, i. e. the Barbarian Gulph, or Sea; as also *Asperum Mare*, or the rough Sea, by reason of the great number of its Shelves and Quick-sands.

II. The other Part of ancient *Ethiopia*, was *interior*, or the inner, which we now call the lower, or the *Ethiopia interior*; wherein were contain'd the Territories of the Men-eaters, the Country of *Agisymba*, and the *Hesperian* Ethiopians: The Canibal Ethiopians had their Abode on the South of *Barbaria*, where *Cassaria* is now extended: *Agisymba* took up Part of the lower *Ethiopia*, that is to say, that space which is possess'd by the modern Empires of *Monomotapa* and *Monomotapa*: Lastly, the *Hesperian* Ethiopians inhabited the present Kingdom of *Congo* taken at large, and Part of that of *Biafar*, near the Equinoctial Line.

III. We shall now proceed to give an Account of the principal Rivers of *Ethiopia*, that run into the *Mediterranean* Sea, or into those of the *Cassars*, and of *Congo*. The *Nile*, call'd *Nil* by the Africans, and *Abanbi* by the Abissines, discharges itself into the first, being the most eminent River not only of *Ethiopia*, but also of the whole Continent of *Africa*. Its source was unknown if not to all the Ancients, at least to the most part of them, nay they imagin'd, that 'twas impossible to find it out; which supposition gave occasion to the Proverb, *To seek for the Spring-head of the Nile*. *Ptolemy* (to pass by the Sentiments of other Authors) determines, That this famous River issues forth beyond the *Equator*, out of two Pools or Lakes, one lying Westward and the other East-

ward, that receive the Snow from the Mountains of the Moon, which in the Maps are usually express'd on the Confines of the Empire of *Monomotapa*, *Abissinia*, and the Lake of *Zambra*: Neither indeed is this Opinion very different from that which has almost obtain'd an universal Approbation, intimating that the *Nile* taking its rise, either from the Mountains of the Moon, or out of the Lake *Zara*, which is plac'd within the 5th. and 13th. Degrees of Southern Latitude, at first flows through the Western Part of *Abissinia*; afterwards having made the Island of *Meroe*, or *Gueguere* on the Frontiers of *Nubia*, divides the same Country of *Nubia* with its winding Course, and at last, passes in like manner through *Egypt*.

IV. They that place the Empire of *Abissinia* only in our Hemisphere, admit of a quite different Origin of the *Nile*; relying upon the Relations and Journals of the Portuguese and other Travellers, who fix the Spring-head of this noble River in the Land of *Sacabala*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Goyama*, being the Western Part of *Abissinia*, in a Plain surrounded with high Mountains: Where is to be seen a little Lake, out of which two clear and deep Springs issue forth, at the distance of about 12 Degrees from the Equinoctial Line on the North: These Springs having united their Streams, and being enlarg'd with several Brooks on both sides, constitute a moderate River, that at first runs Eastward, and soon after Northward; where on the right side, it receives the *Gema*, or *Fema*, directing its course towards the East; then the *Kelti* on the left side, *Fluv.* and a little lower, the *Branti*: Afterwards it Kelti rolls through the lesser Cataract, and the South-*Fluv.* ern Tract of the Lake *Dambea*, without intermix-*Branti* ing its Waters: Having pass'd the Lake, it takes *Fluv.* in the *Gamala* and *Abea*, on the right side, out of *Gamala* the Kingdom of *Goyama*, and rushes through the *Fluv.* greater Cataract; below which, the *Baxila* falls *Abca* into it on the left side, from the Confines of the *Fluv.* Provinces of *Bagamidri* and *Amara*, as likewise *Baxila* does the *Ruccam* from those of *Amara* and *Oleca*: *Fluv.* Then it flows towards the South through the Pro-*Ruccam* vinces of *Oleca* and the upper and lower *Xao*; *Fluv.* from whence conveying its Stream Westward, as also by degrees towards the North, it traverses the Provinces of *Gafates*, *Bizam* and *Gongus*; turns nearer to its Spring-head, and having water'd the Kingdom of *Goyama*, almost on all sides, sets forward to the Province of *Fasculon*; below which, on the left side, it receives the *Maleg*, the largest *Maleg* of all the Rivers, that have hitherto run into its *Fluv.* Channel. Not long after, it passes through *Nubia*, along the Territories of certain People call'd *Bugibi*, or *Funchi*, as also those of the *Baloi*, and there on the right side, joins with the *Tacaza* a *Tacaza* large River, increas'd with the *Mareb* and some *Fluv.* other Rivulets. At last, the *Nile* enters *Egypt*, and waters the whole Country, with a slow and winding Course, receiving the River *Nubia* in *Nubia* the upper Part, on the left side, near the Town *Fluv.*



of *Ajza*. Below the ancient City of *Memphis*; now the Village, or Town of *Bulac*, it divides itself into two great Arms, or Branches, which with the Egyptian Sea, make a Triangular Figure, resembling the Greek Letter  $\Delta$  *Delta*; the top of this Triangle being below *Bulac*, and its *Base* on the Sea. The Western Arm ends in the Egyptian Sea, at the Town of *Rosetta*, and the Eastern at *Damiata*; the latter of which in its Course between *Bulac* and *Damiata*, is divided into another Branch, which empties itself into the Sea, at *Brulli*, or *Bourles*: An artificial Channel thirty Miles long is likewise cut down from the Western Arm to *Alexandria*, where it falls into the Sea, but is full of Water, only during one Month throughout the whole Year.

V. The seven Mouths of the River *Nile* are celebrated by *Mela*, *Strabo*, *Diodorus*, *Herodotus*, and other ancient Authors; and their Names (in beginning to count them from the West) were the *Canopick*, otherwise call'd the *Nasratick* and *Heracleotick*; the *Bolbitick*; the *Sebennitick*; the *Pachmetick*, or *Phasbitick*; the *Mendefian*; the *Tanitic*; and the *Pelufian*. *Ptolemy* places two other false Mouths between the *Sebennitick* and the *Pachmetick*; and *Pliny* reckons up four Mouths of the like nature; so that the former Author admits of nine, and the latter eleven Mouths of this great River. But the Constitution of *Egypt* is now so far chang'd, that scarce any of these Mouths are to be found at this day, in regard that either they were obstructed and quite stop't up in process of time, or else they are so small, as to be of no repute.

VI. The River *Nile* is more especially remarkable for over-flowing the Country of *Egypt*, every Year; of which famous Inundation happens (as we are inform'd by *Africanus*) on the twelfth day of *June*, as it is express'd in the Calendar of the *Coptites*, or on the seventeenth day of the same Month, according to the Julian Account. In the beginning its increase is very small, but it is afterwards extremely augmented, and rises to the height of many Cubits; by which means the Lands that lye near the River are first cover'd, then the more remote, and at last the whole flat Country of *Egypt*, which of dry ground, becomes a navigable Pool; and the Course of the *Nile*, the Breadth of which at other times scarce exceeds one Furlong, extends itself for the space of three hundred, and would run out farther, were it not restrain'd on both sides by the Mountains. When this Flood has attain'd to its greatest height, it does not immediately decrease, but continues for several days in the same Station. The Egyptians give it out (as the same *Africanus* assures us) that the over-flowing of the *Nile* begins to decrease on the seventeenth day of their *September*, or the twenty fourth of ours, and sinks again into its proper Channel; the Mud that is left, rendring the Soil extremely fruitful. This great River usually over-flows sooner in *Abissinia* than in *Egypt*, where its Course is at first slow, but when contracted within its own Bed, it becomes very

swift. They add that the Water in the beginning of its increase is of a green Colour, and afterwards turns red.

The River *Zambra*, or *Zambeza* discharges itself into the Sea of the *Cassers*, and its Spring-head is plac'd in several Maps, in that Part of the Empire of *Monomotapa*, which bears on the South of the Tropick of *Capricorn*, near the Frontiers of Southern *Cassaria* and the Town of *Mosat*. From thence directing its Course Northward, it waters the Kingdoms of *Monomotapa* and *Butua*, and falls into the Lake *Zachaf*: After having pass'd the said Lake, it runs swiftly through the Southern Tract of *Butua*, and a little above the Town of *Gebagha*, is divided into two Arms: One of these Arms, turns on the right hand, and is call'd by the Portuguese *El Rio de el Espiritu Santo*, i. e. *The River of the Holy Ghost*; which flowing through the Kingdoms of *Butua* and *Monomotapa*, waters the Metropolitan City of the Empire, and at last glides along the Eastern Part of *Cassaria*; where it is likewise distributed into several Branches, and empties itself through divers Mouths into the same Sea of the *Cassers*. The other Arm of the *Zambra*, on the left hand, which does not pass beyond the Tropick of *Capricorn*, is a great deal larger than the former, and retains its proper Name, within the Bounds of *Monomotapa*; but upon its Entrance into the Eastern Tract of *Cassaria* it assumes that of *Cuamo*. *M. La Robbe* gives us this Account, which is not approv'd of by other Authors, who are of Opinion, That the *Zambra* changes its Name no otherwise in *Cassaria*, than it does in *Monomotapa*, and that the said *Zambra* and the *Cuamo*, are altogether distinct Rivers.

Several Rivers, after having water'd the Kingdom of *Congo*, fall into the Sea that bears the same Name; among which the *Sunga*, the *Coanza*, and the *Lelunda* hold the first rank: But the *Zaire*, or *Zara*, is most eminent of all; which taking its rise out of the Lake of *Zara*, waters the Territories of the *Gala* and *Anjim*: from whence it passes through the Kingdom of *Congo* strictly taken, and rolls into the Sea at the Promontory of *Palmarinbo*. This River, which is said to be five Miles broad in some places, contains several large and well cultivated Islands, and breeds Crocodiles and River-horses: It is navigable for some Miles, from its Mouth upwards, or against the Stream; but afterwards the Waves that come rushing down from the Cataracts, with great Impetuosity, meeting with the Tide, hinder all manner of Passage: But it disgorges so vast a quantity of Water into the Sea, that the freshness of them (as they say) continues untainted, for the space of ten and sometimes sixteen Miles. It is also reported, That the *Zara*, and even the lesser Rivers of the Kingdom of *Congo*, at a certain season of the Year, overflow the adjacent Lands, after the same manner as the *Nile* does, and render them extremely fruitful.



CHAP. IX.

GUINEA.

A Table of Guinea.

GUINEA, divided into three Parts, viz.	Benin Kingdom, containing	On the East	<i>Badis Coffo Benin</i> <i>Agotton Aroba</i> <i>Owerra Belli</i> <i>Calabari Old Calabar</i> <i>Boni Hodi Focko</i> <i>Formosa Cape Loebo</i>
		On the West	<i>Ody Curamo</i> <i>Daroera Ardra</i> <i>Foulaen Popou</i>
	Proper Guinea, in which are	On the East	<i>Laya Pompeno</i> <i>Christianburg Cinko</i> <i>Akra Berku</i> <i>Annamboa Cormantin</i> <i>Anishan Nassaw Fort</i> <i>Corso Castle S. George</i> <i>del Mina Fort</i> <i>Commendo Anta</i> <i>Axym Bumas Fetu</i> <i>Fantin Sabou Adws</i> <i>Aboraas Dauma</i> <i>Acanes Pequenos</i> <i>Acanes Grandes Ocanu</i> <i>Catamanu S. Lowrenzo</i>
		On the West	<i>Corisseno Xabanda</i> <i>Caccres Uxoo</i> <i>Labora Parigom</i> <i>Brum Alderrada</i> <i>Bacorees Famo Bogia</i> <i>Tabbo Assina Corby</i> <i>Petoy Gromaly</i> <i>Adaows People</i>
	Mala-guetta, comprehending	On the North	<i>Settera Great Crow</i> <i>Settera Little Sulyma</i> <i>Deppa Little Faly</i> <i>Hamaya Maffagh</i> <i>Jegwonga</i>
		On the South	<i>Bagga Sherbro</i> <i>Timaa Bugos</i>

commonly call'd *Travados* by the Portuguese: So that it is not at all to be admir'd; that the Mariners use so great precautions, to avoid those Coasts in sailing from *Europe* to the East Indies, and during their Return homeward: for they are often forc'd to continue there a whole Month before they can get off from the Shore. *Guinea* is situated between the 4th and 12th Degrees of Northern Latitude, as also between the 9th and 37th Deg. of Longitude; its Extent being most of all contracted in the Western Parts of *Benin* and *Mala-guetta*.

The Air of these Parts (as it sufficiently appears from the above-specified Latitude) is excessive hot, and prejudicial to the Health of the Europeans, by reason of the sultry Weather, and the frequent Showers of Rain, that cause Putrifaction, and abundance of Worms; insomuch that very long ones often breed even in Humane Bodies, and are usually drawn by degrees out of the Skin. The Soil is fruitful and brings forth plentiful Crops of Rice and Barley with Cotton, a kind of Spice like Pepper, Dates and Palm-trees, the Trunk of which being cut yields a Liquor of an Ash-colour, that is more spirituous than the richest Wine, and somewhat resembles Whey. There are also numerous Herds of Elephants and consequently a great stock of Ivory, with which the Inhabitants drive a vast Trade; besides good store of Bees-Wax, Apes and Monkeys that are very subtil and mischievous, Peacocks, Ash-colour'd Parrets, and Fish; the Plains likewise affording Pasture for Leopards, Tigers and several sorts of tame Cattel. Lastly, the Mines do not only produce Gold, but it is also taken out of the Sea-shores and Rivers.

The Natives are of a Coal-black Colour, and go stark naked, without any sense of shame. They are of a strong Constitution, long-liv'd, ingenious and much addicted to Merchandizing; but fraudulent in their dealings, covetous, arrogant and slothful: They greedily devour raw Flesh, and even the Entrails of Birds, extremely indulging their sensual Appetites, and the female Sex are apt to fall desperately in love with the Europeans: Many of them live in the open Air, or else dispers'd up and down in Huts; adorning their Noses and Lips with Ivory. The wealthier sort of Women, in like manner set off their Leggs, with Rings made of Iron, Tin or Brass, and the Gold-coyn that is current among them has no Inscription. A great number of these People follow the Heathenish Superstitions, and some have embrac'd the Christian Religion. The Country is subject to divers Kings, and several European Nations have settled Colonies therein, more especially the Hollanders. The King of *Portugal* assumes the Title of Lord of *Guinea*; but at present he has no Possessions there of any considerable Note. A vast number of Slaves of both Sexes are frequently transported from these Parts to *America*, and put to hard labour; to avoid which many

I. **A**FTER having pass'd through *Egypt* and *Ethiopia*, that constitute its Eastern and Southern Parts, we set forward to its Western Tracts; where *Guinea* first offers it self to our View, which some Geographers reckon among the Parts of *Negroe-Land*. The Portuguese will have the Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Angola* likewise comprehended under the name of the lower *Guinea*, and call that the upper, which is simply nam'd *Guinea* by other Nations. This Country has for its Bounds, on the East, the Kingdom of *Biafar*, from which it is partly separated by the River *Camarones*; on the North, *Negroe-Land*; and on the West and South, the Sea of *Guinea*; where a continual calm is almost altogether predominant, which nevertheless is sometimes disturb'd by sudden and most impetuous storms of Wind,



throw themselves over-board into the Sea, during their Passage.

III. The whole Country of *Guinea* is usually divided into three Parts, viz. the Kingdom of *Benin*, Proper *Guinea* and *Malagueta*. The Kingdom of *Benin*, being the most Eastern Part is bounded on the East, by the River *Cameroons*; and the Kingdom of *Benin*; on the North, by the Land of the *Negros*; on the West, by Proper *Guinea*; and on the South, by the Gulph of *Benin*, and *St. Thomas*. The Monarch of this Kingdom is very potent, and several Kingdoms are tributary to him: but all these Dominions may be conveniently divided into the Eastern and Western Parts. The former lies between the Kingdom of *Benin*, or the River *Cameroons* and the River *Benue*, and is said to enjoy a healthy Air. The most remarkable Places and Towns of this Part, are *Bahia*, or *Bahia*; *Cabo*, or *Cabo*, on the River *Benue*; *Benin* seated somewhat lower, a noted Town, being the largest and neatest of the whole Continent of *Guinea*, which (according to several Maps) is divided into two Parts, by the said River, and reputed the Metropolis of a Kingdom of the same Name: And *Agona*, *Agona*, or *Gaza*, situated lower on the opposite side of the River, as well as *Archa*, or *Archa*. *Oxarra*, the Capital Town of a Kingdom so call'd, stands further towards the East, and is said to be inhabited by a great number of Christians. The following Towns are built nearer to the Sea-coasts, viz. *Bellu*; *Calabari*, *Calabari*, or *Calabar*, on the right-side Bank of the River nam'd *El Rio Real de Calabari*, or the Royal River; old *Calabar*; *Beni*; *Hodi*, or *Podi*; *Festa*; *Cape Formosa*, in the middle, between *St. Thomas's* Gulph and that of *Benin*; and *Lebo* on the Mouth of the River *Benin*.

In the Western Part of the Kingdom of *Benin*, lying in the middle, between the River of the same Name, and Proper *Guinea*; are *Obo* and *Carraro*; both on the Lake of *Carraro*: the Compass of which is reputed to exceed fifty Leagues; *Darara*; *Arara*, or *Arara*, call'd also *Arara*, by the Inhabitants, the chief Town of a Kingdom to which it has communicated its Name: *Foulon*; and *Pona*.

IV. The second Part of this Continent, being the largest and most eminent, is *Guinea* properly, or simply so termed, dignify'd with the Title of a Kingdom; the Emperor of which is most powerful, to whom many Kings and Princes are oblig'd to do Homage and pay Tribute. Proper *Guinea* borders on the East, upon the Kingdom of *Benin*; on the North, upon *Negroe-Land*; on the West, upon *Malagueta*; and on the South, upon the Sea of *Guinea*. We shall likewise divide the whole Country into its Eastern and Western Parts: the former being situated between the Kingdom of *Benin*, on the East; and the River *Mansa*, or *Masum*, call'd *Mansa* by M. Sanson, on the West; which River falls into the Sea, at the Town of *Ayam*, and on the West of the Promontory nam'd *El Cabo de tres Puntas*, or *The Cape of three Points*. The maritim Tract of this Part is commonly termed the Gold-coast, *de Goud Cust* in Dutch, deriving its Name from the abundance of Gold there produc'd, and contains the following Places and Towns of Note, viz. *Lara*; *Pompelo*; *Christiansburg*, in the Possession of the *Daners*; *Ombo*; *Atra*, a Kingdom and Town; *Berta*, or

*Barka*; *Annamboa*; *Cormantin*, or *Cormentya* under the Jurisdiction of the *Hollanders*; *Anilban*; *Morree*, or *Fort Nassau*, a strong Hold built and still possess'd by the *Hollanders*, with a very convenient Harbour; *Cape Corso*, a Castle belonging to the English; the Fort of *St. George del Mina*, built by the Portuguese, and afterwards taken by the *Hollanders*; The Kingdom and Town of *Comendo*; *Ania*; *Achim*, *Ajinn*, *Axem*, or *Ayam* the capital Town of a Kingdom of the same Name, seated on the Mouth of the River *Mansa*, and possess'd by the *Hollanders*; *Bumas*; *Fetu*, or *Futu*, a Kingdom and Town so call'd; as also, are *Fantin*, or *Fanti*; and *Sabou*. In passing through the inland Country we meet with the Towns of *Atas*; *Abrau*, on the River *Volta*; *Danma*; *Acane*; *Pequeno*, or the lesser *Acane*; Great *Acane*, and *Ocum*, or *Ocum*, on the River *Mansa*. *Caramanu*, or *Caramany*; and *St. Lawrence*, are situated lower, near the Eastern side of the same River.

The Western Part of Proper *Guinea* extends itself between the River *Mansa*, or *Masum*, on the East; and the Province of *Malagueta*, on the West. In the Northern or Inland Tract, the following Towns present themselves to our View, viz. *Coriseno*; *Xabanda*; *Caceres*; *Uxoo*, or *Uxee*; *Labra*; *Parigom*; *Brum*; *Alderrada*; *Bacorees*, or *Bacrets*; and *Juno*. The Southern or maritim Tract of this Part of *Guinea* taking its Name from the great store of Ivory that it affords, is commonly call'd the *Ivory-coast*, and *Tanti-Cut*, i. e. *Tooth-Coast* by the *Hollanders*, as also *Quaquar-Cut*, (according to M. *Raibrand*) and *Quaquas*, as it is express'd in the *Sea-Atlas*. Moreover some call the Eastern Part of this Coast, *Costa de Bonegens*, i. e. *The Coast of good Inhabitants*, and the Western *Costa de Malegens*, or *The Coast of ill People*. A particular People nam'd *Adaoms* inhabit the *Ivory-Coast*, the chief Towns of which are *Bogia*; *Tabbo*, or *Tobbo*; *Affina*; *Corby*; *Petoy*, or *Berby*; and *Gromah*, or *Gruvally*, which is attributed by others to the Province of *Malagueta*, and is remarkable for its Situation near the Promontory call'd *El Cabo das Palmas*, or *Cape Palmas*.

The third and last Part of *Guinea*, being the least and most Western is *Malagueta*, so Malagueta termed by the Portuguese, from a certain kind of Spice brought forth there in great abundance, which tastes like Pepper, and is often stronger than that of *Calicut*. This Province borders, on the East upon Proper *Guinea*; on the North, upon *Negroe-Land*, from which it is separated by the *Lions-Mountain*, *Sierra Leona* in Portuguese; and on the West and South, upon the Sea of *Guinea*. The shape of it resembles that of a Triangle, and its Eastern Part is call'd *The Grain-Coast*, or *De Greyn Cust*, according to the Dutch Dialect: The Country is inhabited by different sorts of People, and subject to the Dominion of several Princes. On the Southern Shore, stand the Towns of Great *Settera*, or *Settra*; *Cross*; the lesser *Settera*; *Sulyma*; little *Deppa*; *Faly-Hamaya*; *Maffagh*; and *Jerronga*. In coasting along the Western Shore, we may observe the Towns of *Bagga*; *Sherbro*; *Timaa*; and *Bugos*, seated on the Mouth of the River of the *Lions Mount*, near the Promontory of the *Lionesses Mount*, styl'd by the Portuguese



Portugueses, and Spaniards *El Rio et Cabo di Sierra Lione*. Horrible Noises are often heard about this Mountain, which is of a very great height, and always covered with Clouds. The

neighbouring Town of *Bugos* is well built, and taken by some Authors for the Capital of the Kingdom of *Sierra Lione*.

CHAP. X.

NIGRITIA or NEGROE-LAND.

A Table of Negroc-Land.

On the hither side of Niger	Biafar Kingd.	{ Besegua Kingdom Bugub. K. Gumola K.
	Melli Kingd.	{ Cantory Beria Melli
	Soufi K.	
	Mandin- ga K.	{ Mandinga Tocrur
	Gago K.	{ Cacres Bonas Gago Tombi Bunci Dau
	Guber K.	{ Malel Guber Tulpa
	Zegzeg K.	{ Zegzeg Chanara
	Zanfara K.	{ Zanfara Rheghebil
	Ganga- ra K.	{ Semegonda Secmara Tirqua Gangara
	Cassena K.	{ Nebrina Cassena Maraja Tinea
Beyond the Niger	Cano K.	{ Tassava Germa Cano
	Agades K.	{ Agades Deghir Mayma Mura Curnbo
	Tombut K.	{ Berissa Gueguena Salla Tombut Canzia Tocror Caragoli Cassali
	Gualata K.	{ Fulli Hebedex Gandia Gualata Angra Arguyn Hoden
	Genheca K.	{ Joulejaba Simbalamech Paesau Kellen Ganar Brack Cockio Formalick Genheca

Between the Arms or Bran- ches of Niger	Jaloffes People	{ Julietq Gambia Budomel Sollub Emboul Ivala Barfola Nabara Charles-Fort
	Casan- ga's P.	{ Bintha Codan Serra Casama Jura
	Bijago's P.	{ Catches Amatado Times Porvacao Boyla, or Bogla
Niger fluv. is divi- ded into six Arms, or Mouths, viz.		{ Rio Grande St. Domingo Casamanza Rio dos Ojros Gambia Senega

FROM Guinea, a Passage lies open to Ni- I.  
gritia, otherwise call'd the Land or Coun- Negroe-  
try of the Negroes, as also, Swarten and Land:  
*Mooren* in Dutch, which derives its Name (as  
some say) from the River *Niger*; but others af-  
firm that both the River and Country are so ter-  
med from the black Colour of the Inhabitants,  
who are commonly styl'd Negroes. This Coun-  
try is bounded on the South, by *Guinea* and *Bi-  
far*; on the East and North, by the Desert of  
*Zaara*; and on the West, by *Cape Verd*, or the  
Atlantick Ocean; reaching from the third to the  
45th. or 46th. Degree of Longitude; but its Ex-  
tent from South to North is a great deal less. On  
the Coasts of the Atlantick Sea, where its Breadth  
is largest, it lyes out from the eighth Degree of  
Northern Latitude, almost as far as the Tropick  
of *Cancer*.

The Air is healthful, notwithstanding its great II.  
Heat, and the nature of the Soil is different in se-  
veral Places; that Part which lies next to the *Ni-  
ger* being made rich and fruitful, by the over-  
flowing of the said River: So that the Country  
affords Pastures for Cattel, Corn, Rice, Flax,  
Cotton, Honey, Spices, and several sorts of Fruit-  
Trees; more especially Palms, with which the  
Natives make a kind of Wine: But the other  
Parts situated at a greater distance from the *Ni-  
ger*, are not well cultivated, in regard that they  
are parch'd with continual Heat, and generally  
destitute of Water: However they produce Mines  
of Gold and Brass, with a considerable stock of  
Ivory. The Negroes are said to be robust, but  
slothful, timorous, unchaste, and altogether igno-  
rant of Arts and Sciences. They not only ex-  
pose to publick Sale Captives taken from the  
neigh-



neighbouring People and Malefactors, but Parents and Husbands are also us'd to sell their Children and Wives to the Spaniards, Portugueses and other European Nations, who transport them to the *Canary* Islands, *America*, or the Islands of that Continent, there to be worn out with the hardest labour. They are partly Mahometans, partly Idolaters, and most implacable Enemies to the *Fern*.

- III. Negroe-Land may be conveniently divided into three Parts: that is to say, the first lying on the hither side of the *Niger*, the second beyond the same River, and the third within its different Arms, or Branches. Every one of these Tracts comprehends several Kingdoms, which take their Names for the most part, from the Capital Towns: and the Kings exercise an absolute Power over their Subjects, in their respective Dominions.
- IV. In that Part of Negroe-Land which lyes on the hither side of the *Niger*, or extends it self from that River towards the South, some Geographers reckon up eight Kingdoms, viz. those of *Biafar*, *Melle*, *Souss*, *Mandinga*, *Gago*, *Guber*, *Zegzeg* and *Zanfara*: Others place *Biafar* among those Kingdoms that are enclsd within the Arms of the *Niger*, and others again leave out *Souss*; so that the former make seven Kingdoms, and the latter only six. We shall follow the first Opinion, beginning on the West, with the Kingdom of *Biafar*, the People of which are nam'd *Biafars*; and where M. *Sanson* places *Befegua*, dignified likewise with the Title of a Kingdom; as also are, *Buzubu*, an Island on the Mouth of the most Southern Arm of the *Niger*, call'd *Rio Grande*, or *The Great River*; and *Guinala*; seated higher on the same River, at its Confluence with the *Gninola*, or *Gunsila*. The Kingdom of *Melli* extends it self farther towards the East, abounding with Cotton, Raisins of the Sun and Dates; in its Southern Tract, appears *Sierra Liona*, i. e. the Lions-Mountain, of an extraordinary Height, and the Natives are said to make use of Cockle-shells instead of Money. Among the noted Towns of this Province, several Authors reckon *Canary* the Capital of a Kingdom of the same Name, situated in that Part where the *Niger* first divides it self into two Arms. But some will have it to be a distinct Kingdom from that of *Melli*, and others attribute it to the Kingdom of *Mandinga*. Farther towards the South, are *Beria*; and *Melli*, a large and populous City, the Metropolis of the Kingdom of the same Name. The Province of *Souss*, inhabited by a certain People nam'd *Soussos*, or *Sousses*, lyes between *Malaguerra* and *Mandinga*, and is beset with Woods and Mountains: But this Kingdom is not so large as that of *Mandinga*, which is noted for its great store of Gold, and contains the Towns of *Mandinga* the Capital, and *Torra* on the Southern side of the *Niger*.
- Gago* K. The Kingdom of *Gago* borders on the East upon *Mandinga*, and affords plenty of Cattel, several sorts of Grain, Fruit, Rice, and the richest Metals: nevertheless, it is not stor'd with Salt, but what is imported. Its chief Towns are *Caccres Bonaes*, *Gago* the Metropolis, *Tombi* on the *Niger*; *Bunci* and *Dau*, somewhat higher on the same River. The Kingdom of *Guber* situated farther Eastward, is of a lesser compass than *Gago*, and abounds with Woods; including several

Towns within its Bounds, viz. *Malel* or *Male*, seated near the Frontiers of *Gago* on the River *Niger*, and on the Southern side of the Lake *Guarda*; *Guber*, a Place of greater Note; and *Tusfa*. The Kingdom of *Zegzeg* is remarkable for its Situation between the River *Niger* and the Kingdom of *Benin*, and for numerous Herds of Horses: The most considerable Towns hereabouts, are *Zegzeg* in the middle of the Province, and *Chanara* on the *Niger*. The Kingdom of *Zanfara* is more Eastern, and larger than the others above-specified, producing likewise abundance of Horses. The chief Town bears the same Name, as also does a Neighbouring Desert, which is otherwise call'd, The Desert of *Zeth* and *Reghebil* is not far distant from the River *Niger*.

Having thus taken a View of Part of Negroe-Land, situated on the hither side of the *Niger*, we pass over to that which extends it self on the farther side, or Northwards from the River. Here (in returning from East to West) we pass thro' seven Kingdoms; the Names of which are, *Gangara*, *Cassena*, *Cano*, *Agades*, *Tombut*, *Gualata* and *Genekoa*: The two last of these Kingdoms, are not only water'd by the River *Niger*, but their Coasts are also wash'd by the Atlantick Ocean: The Kingdom of *Gangara* or *Guangara*, lyes over against that of *Zanfara*; and its Eastern Tract near the Lake *Borno* is a great deal narrower than the Western: It is a very potent and populous Kingdom, so that the Horse and Foot Soldiers have obtain'd great Repute among the *Negroes*; and here the River *Niger* encircles an Island that is 100 Miles long and 50 broad: The most remarkable Towns are, *Semegonda*, or *Semegda*, near the Place where the *Niger* divides it self into two Arms to make the said Island; *Secmara*, somewhat lower; *Tirqua* on the Confines of the Desert of *Zafra*; and *Gangara* the Metropolis, where are several Gold-mines. The Kingdom of *Cassena* bordering Westward upon *Gangara*, is Rocky and Barren: In its Northern Tract, the Town of *Nebrina* presents it self to our View, and *Cassena* the Capital, on the South: *Marasa* is seated on the *Niger*, near the Confines of this Kingdom and that of *Gangara*, to which it is attributed by some Authors; and *Tirea*, or *Tirca*, appears a great deal farther towards the West.

The Kingdom of *Cano* is of a larger extent than *Cassena*, and its Southern Part is water'd by several Lakes and Rivers. The Soil brings forth Corn, Rice, Cotton, several sorts of Fruit, and affords good Pasturage for Cattel. The most eminent Towns are, *Tassava*; *Germa*; *Cano*, a large, populous and noted Mart, the Metropolis of this Kingdom, and one of the chief Cities of the whole Continent of Negroe-Land. The Kingdom of *Agades* extends it self on the West of *Cano*; the famous Lake of *Guarda* lying between both, near the River *Niger*, with a great Island in the middle. The Country abounds with Manna and Cattel, and the Capital Town seated in its Northern Tract, is likewise nam'd *Agades*: The others are, *Deghir*; *Mayma*, on a Hill; *Mura*, on the Western-side of the Lake *Guarda*; and *Ciumbo* on the *Niger*. The Kingdom of *Tombut* appears next, surpassing all the other Provinces of Negroe-Land in the largeness of its Extent, and abounding with Gold-mines. The King of this Country



Country is also very powerful, and several other Princes are said to be his Homagers or Vassals; nevertheless M. *Baudrand* assures us, That he himself is Tributary to the King of *Gago*: The Towns of this Kingdom are, *Berissa* on the *Niger*; *Gueguena*, otherwise call'd *Gueguera* and *Gueguera*; *Salla* on the *Niger*, below which it is divided into several Branches; *Tombut*, termed *Tung-batu* by the Portuguese, and *Tamboules* by some modern Authors, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, seated on the River *Senega*, and on the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Gambia*: *Canzia*; *Tocor*; *Caragali*; and *Cassali*.

It remains only to give an account of the two Maritime Kingdoms of *Negroe-Land* beyond the River *Niger*, the most Northern of which is *Gualata*, or *Galata*, containing several Gold-Mines and the following Towns, viz. *Falti*; *Hibdesax*; *Gambia*; *Gualata*; *Angra* near *Cape Blanco*; *Argyn*, a Sea-Port Town and the Capital of a Country of the same Name; and *Ibba*. The other Maritime Kingdom is *Geneboa*, situated in the middle, between *Gualata* on the North, and the River *Senega* on the South. It produces an abundance of Cattel, Corn and Cotton; and its chief Towns are, *Julejaba*; *Sambalamech*, or *Sambalana*; *Panjan*; *Kelen*; *Gamar*; *Brack*; *Koekio*; *Formalick*; and *Genboa*, the most eminent of all, water'd by the River *Senega*.

VI. The third and last Part of *Negroe-Land* being the least, is more especially noted for its Situation between the Arms of the River *Niger*, and is inhabited by different sorts of People, particularly, the *Faloffes*, *Cisanga's*, and *Bijago's*, to which some add the *Biafres*; but a Description has been already made of these last, and of their Kingdom, in treating of that Part of *Negroe-Land* that lies beyond the *Niger*. The *Faloffes* are the most Northern, and live between the River *Senega* and *Gambia*, which likewise comprehend two Kingdoms of the same Name. On the Mouth of the *Senega*, the *French* have establish'd a Colony under the Government of a Society, which they term *La Compagnie du Senegail*; where they carry on a great Traffick for Negroes and Ivory. The Towns of this Tract are, *Juleto*; *Gambia*, the Capital of a Kingdom so nam'd; *Budomel*; *Sellul*; *Embol*; and *Ivula*, a Sea-Port on the East of *Cape Verde*, call'd *Green-head* by the English, which was heretofore known by the Name of *Promontorium aut Cornu Hesperium*, (according to *Orclius* and *Cluverius*;) altho' others will have it to be the *Arsmarium* of the Ancients; it is the most Famous and most Western Promontory of all those that are enclos'd within the Arms of the *Niger*, and was first discover'd by *Denis Ferdinando* a Portuguese, A. D. 1446; but the *Hollanders* are now Masters of it, as we are inform'd by *Leacholfius*. *Cape Verde* is very much frequented by the Europeans upon the account

of Trade, and lies at the distance of about 20 Leagues from the Mouth of the River *Senega*, as also 240 Miles from the Town of *Geneboa*. The other considerable Towns of the Territories of the *Faloffes*, are *Barbola*, *Nabara*; and *Charles-Fort*. The People nam'd *Cisanga's* are settled between the *Gambia* and the River of *St. Domingo*; P. and their chief Towns are, *Bintba*; *Codan*; *Serran*; *Casama*; and *Jara*. The *Bijago's* have their Abode farther towards the South, between the the River *St. Domingo* and *Rio Grande*; where are the Towns of *Cueneo*, or *Cuueo Amatado*; *Times*; *Porvacao*; and *Boyla*, or *Fogla*.

After having describ'd the whole Country of VII. *Nigritia*, or *Negroe-Land*, it is requisite to take a particular View of its principal River; upon account of which we have divided it into three Parts. The *Niger* then, call'd *Nigir* by *Ptolemy*, *Niger* and at present, *Haut Niger* by the Inhabitants, (according to *Marmol*;) rises in *Ethiopia* out of the Lake *Niger*, and flows Northward thro' the Kingdom of *Medra*, Part of that of *Biafar*, taken at large: From thence it conveys its Stream thro' the Southern Part of the Kingdom of *Borno*, and is there swallow'd up in a subterraneous Cave, as it is express'd in the most part of the Maps, except that of *M. la Robbe*. As soon as it has recover'd it self, it runs thro' the Lake *Borno*; turns its Course directly Westwards, thro' the middle of *Negroe-Land*; and is encreas'd with several Rivers, the Names of which are scarce known to the Europeans. In the Kingdom of *Gangara* it makes a large Island, and in that of *Guber*, it passes thro' the Lake *Guarda*: Thus after a very long Course, it divides it self into two great Arms in the Kingdoms of *Cantor* and *Tombut*, and lower, into several others, which losing the Name of *Niger*, assume new ones, and at last discharge themselves thro' six very wide Mouths into the Atlantick Ocean. These Arms or Mouths of the *Niger* (beginning to reckon them from South to North,) are nam'd *Rio Grande*, i. e. the *Great River*; *Rio S. Domingo*, or *St. Dominick's River*, otherwise call'd *Rio Farim*; *Rio Casimanza*; *Rio dos Oitros*; *R. Gambia*, and *R. Senega*. The Rivers *Senega* and *Rio Grande*, surpass in largeness the others that lye in the middle.

The River *Niger* overflows the adjacent Territories, at a certain time; and upon that account *M. Sanjon* deservedly calls it, The *Nile* of the *Negroes*. This Inundation (as we are inform'd by *Leo Africanus*;) begins every Year on the 15th Day of *June*, encreases for the space of 40 Days, and takes up as much time in its Decrease. But it rises so high, that Ships may sail thro' the Countries of *Negroe-Land*, that lye near this River, nevertheless not without great Danger.



## The Islands of CAPE VERD.

A Table of the Islands of Cape VERD.

The Islands of Cape Verd, are Ten in number, viz.	Five on the South,	<i>Praya</i>	<i>S. Domingo</i>
		<i>Ilha do Fuego</i>	<i>Ribera Gran.</i>
		<i>I. do S. Jago</i>	<i>S. Jago, Metropolis</i>
		<i>I. do Mayo</i>	<i>Praya Santa Maria</i>
		<i>I. da Bona Vista</i>	
	Five on the North,	<i>Ilha do Sal</i>	
		<i>I. do S. Nicolao</i>	
		<i>I. da Santa Luzia</i>	
		<i>I. do S. Vicente</i>	
		<i>I. do Sant Antonio</i>	

I.  
Cape  
Verd  
Isles.

THE Islands of Cape Verd, in Spanish *Las Ilas de Cabo Verde*, are situated in the middle of the Atlantick Ocean, over against Negroe-Land, at the distance of 360 Miles (according to M. *Baudrand*,) from that Continent, on the West. Many are of Opinion, that they take their Name from the said opposite Cape; but others will have them to derive it from the Sea of *Sargasso*: For so the Portuguese call that Part of the Atlantick Ocean, that lyes between these Islands of Negroe-Land, and extends itself far and wide; from a certain Herb that bears the same Denomination in their Language, and in Dutch that of *Klein Peterjely*. These Herbs, which are somewhat like Water-cresses, bring forth narrow Leaves, with little Berries, that are empty on the inside and insipid, and cover the whole surface of the Sea; insomuch that afar off, it seems to be a green Island, and Ships are often so entangled with their Fibres, that they cannot get loose, without the help of a gentle Gale of Wind; upon which account, the Sea of *Sargasso* is so formidable to Sailers, that they use their utmost Endeavours to avoid it, as it were a foul Fiend, or Fury. But by what means this Herb happens to grow in so great a depth of Water, and at so vast a distance from the Land, is a Question that has put many a clear-sighted Philosopher to a *Non-plus*. Moreover, the Isles of Cape Verd are also termed by the Hollanders *De Sout Eylanden*, i. e. The Salt-Islands, and not without good grounds, in regard that they abound with that necessary Commodity.

II. These Islands (according to the Opinion of several Authors) were call'd *Gorgades*, or *Gorgones*, by the Ancients, from the three Sisters nam'd *Gorgons*, that are said to have inhabited them; as also *Hesperides*; which nevertheless others distinguish from the *Gorgades*, because it is recorded in History, that the former were distant above forty Days Voyage from the Continent of *Africa*: So that they suppose, those *Hesperides* to have been certain Islands situated in *St. Thomas's Bay*, or where the *Azores* now appear; or rather, they may be taken for the same with the *Cambyses*, or *Anzilles*, in the Gulph of *Mexico*.

III. The Islands of Cape Verd were first discover'd

(according to *Bertius*) by *Leao Calmuso*, a Genoese, A. D. 1445, and were found altogether untill'd, and destitute of Inhabitants, no manner of Human Foot-step appearing any where: But there were Flocks of Doves so tame, that they might have been taken with one's Hand, or kill'd with Sticks. Afterwards the Portuguese settled themselves in these Isles, who still retain them in their Possession. They are situated between the 14th and 20th Degree of Northern Latitude, and between the 154th and 158th Degree of Longitude. The Air is excessive hot and unwholesome, and the Soil is of a different nature: For in some of them it is Rocky and Barren, but in others sufficiently Fruitful, bringing forth most excellent Fruits; and affording likewise good store of Wine and Sugar. There is also abundance of Fowl and Cattel, more especially Kids.

Some reckon up twenty Isles of Cape Verd, but the chief of them are only Ten in number; the rest being Rocks, or Shelves, rather than Islands. Their Names (according to the order of their Situation from South to North) are *Brava*, *Ilha do Fuego*, *San Jago*, *I. do Mayo*, *Bona Vista*, *I. do Sal*, *San Nicolao*, *Santa Luzia*, *San Vicente*, and *Sant Antonio*.

The five first lye out a great deal farther towards the South than the rest, and are of a small compass except *San Jago*. The Island of *Brava* is the most Western, and produces the best sort of Wine; as also does *Ilha do Fuego*, i. e. The Isle of Fire, which is not far distant from *Brava* on the East. The Island of *San Jago*, or *St. James*, extending it self farther towards the North-East, is the largest and most populous of all those of Cape Verd: It is beset with Mountains, but the Valleys bring forth good store of Grapes, Sugar, Rice, Melons, Pomegranates, Oranges, Lemmons and Figs. Among the Cattel here bred, there are numerous Herds of Goats and Kids, the Flesh and Skins of which are much esteem'd. There is also a vast number of Tortoises, whose Shells are as large as Bucklers, and the greatest plenty imaginable of Salt. The Sea-Port Towns of this Island are, *San Domingo*, or *S. Dominick's*; *Ribera Grande*, which M. *Baudrand* makes an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Lisbon*; situated on the Mouth of a River, that is capable of containing Ships of the largest size: *S. Jago*, or Saint James's Town, which (as we are inform'd by M. *La Robbe*,) is the Seat of a Bishop and of a Portuguese Governour, to whose Jurisdiction the Islands of Cape Verd are not only subiect, but also the Governours of those Places which are under the Dominion of the King of Portugal, on the Sea-Coasts of the Upper Guinea: *Praya*; and *Santa Maria*. The Island of *Mayo* is of a round Figure, and affords abundance of Salt, as well as that of *Bona Vista*, Mayo i. e. The Isle of Good Sight, so call'd by the Discoverers when they first arriv'd there, over-joy'd na Vile at their prosperous Success.

Among the five latter Islands of Cape Verd, *Ilha*



I. do fal. *Ilha do Sal*, i. e. the *Salt-Isle* follows in order, being the most Eastern, and abounding with wild  
I. do S. Horfes. *Ilha do S. Nicolao*, or St. *Nicholas's* Island, lies a great deal farther Westward, and is the  
S. *Luzia* largest after *S. Fago*. *Santa Luzia*, or St. *Lucia's*

Isle is much lesser than the last, and said to be well inhabited. The Islands of *Sant Antonio*, or S. *Anto*.  
St. *Anthony*, and *San Vincente*, or St. *Vincent* aretonio.  
larger than *Santa Luzia*, and the latter extends S. *Vin*-  
itself farthest towards the North-East. cente F.

C H A P. XII.

Z A A R A.

A Table of the Defart of Zaara.

ZAARA divided into VII Provinces, viz.	Zanhaga Defart containing	On the West { Tegunt Almahara	
		On the East { Zanhaga Tegassa	Puis
	Zuenziga D.	Zuenziga Proper { Zuenziga Ziz	
		Gogden Defart Ghir D. { Ghir	
	Targa D.	Hair D. { Hair Targa Proper Ignid D.	
	Lempta D.	On the North { Lempta Catif Elchebir	Suma
		On the South { Agades Degir	
	Berdoa, Defart and Kingdom		Berdoa
	Borno Defart and Kingdom	On the West { Borno Kaugh Amasen	
		On the East { Albayad	
	Gaoga Kingdom and Defart		Gaoga

termed *The sandy Sea*, by the Arabians and other Nations: It is also dry, barren, very little cultivated, and often miserably infested with Locusts. However, numerous Herds of Camels are here bred, in which the Riches of these Parts chiefly consist. The Rivers are very few in number, so that its Eastern Tract is only water'd by the *Giras* and the Lake *Borno*; the middle by the *Ghir*; and the Eastern Part by the *Horse-River*, which being divided into two Arms, runs into the Atlantick Ocean. Therefore large Wells, or Pits are usually digg'd in the High-Ways, but so inconvenient, and in Places so far distant one from another, that Travellers often dye for Thirst. The Natives are reputed robust, and able to endure hard Labour, the scorching Heat of the Sun and the suffocating Storms of Dust and Sand: Some of them live in Towns, and others wander up and down like brute Beasts; the former being somewhat civiliz'd: But the latter are altogether Savage, Untameable, and extremely addicted to Robbery and Rapine. Part of these People are subject to their own Kings, whom they style *Xeques*, or *Cheques*, i. e. *Lords*, and profess the Mahometan Religion.

The whole Continent of *Zaara* is divided into seven particular Provinces, or Defarts; which take their Names, for the most part, from Towns, and are (beginning to count them from the East) *Zanhaga*, *Zuenziga*, *Targa*, *Lemta*, *Berdoa*, *Borno* and *Gaoga*.

Among these Provinces, *Zanhaga*, or *Sanhaga* is only maritim, and of a quadrangular Figure, extending itself for a considerable space from West to East, but not far from South to North. The *Horse-River*, of which we have already made mention, takes its Rise in this Province, flows through it, and at last runs from thence into the Sea: The Cities and Towns hereabouts are not only very few in number, but also throughout the whole Country of *Zaara*. In passing Westward, *Tegunt* and *Almahara* present themselves to our View; and the Town of *Zanhaga*, with the Defart of the same Name, appears farther on the East; as also *Puis*; and *Tegassa*, or *Tegazza*, abounding with Salt, that is digg'd out of a Rock. This last Town is plac'd in several Maps on the South of the Tropick of *Cancer*, not far from the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Tombut*; and in others under the Tropick itself.

*Zuenziga*, which some take for a Kingdom and others for a Defart, borders on the East, upon *Zanhaga*, and is water'd by the Rivers *Ghir* and *D. Ziz*. It is inhabited by Arabians, who are Man-stealers, and usually divided into Proper *Zuenziga*, the Defart of *Gogden*, and that of *Ghir*: The Defart

I. Zaara.

FROM the Islands of Cape *Verd*, we return to the Continent, and there (according to our proposed Method) take a View of *Zaara*, or *Zahara*, otherwise call'd *Sarra* and *Saara*, an Arabian Term which signifies a *Defart*. This Country is bounded on the South, by *Negroeland*, and Part of the Kingdom of *Biafar*; taken at large; on the East, by *Nubia*; on the North, by *Biledulgerid*; and on the West, by the Atlantick Ocean: It reaches from the 4th. to the 41st. Degree of Longitude, as also from the 20th. to the 28th. Degr. of Northern Latitude, and consequently lies under the Tropick of *Cancer*: Its Extent is narrowest on the West, more especially on the Coasts of the Atlantick Sea, and broadest where it borders upon *Biafar*, and the opposite Part of *Biledulgerid*.

ii. The Air of *Zaara* is very hot, nevertheless so wholesome, that it is said to restore sick Persons to their Health, who are conveyed thither out of the neighbouring Provinces. The Soil is so full of Sand, that the whole Country is frequently



Defart of Kingdom of Zama is strictly taken as is Northern Part, and most Fertile, where the Town of Zama is situated on the left-side Bank of the Zia, and that of Zia further Eastward. The Defart of Gama is extended about the Tropick of Cancer, and that of Gama lies out from thence towards the South in which the Town of Gama stands on a River of the same Name.

VI. Targa, the most Northern of all the Provinces of Zama, is likewise reputed a Defart and Kingdom: It affords Pastures for Cattel, and Wells of good Water, with excellent Maize, which is said to fall every Morning. This Province is watered by the River Gama, and divided into three Parts, viz. *Hama*, *Paper*, *Targa*, and *Igma*. The Defart of *Hama* takes up the Northern Tract, and its Town bearing the same Name, is otherwise call'd *Bona*. The Defart of Kingdom of *Targa* properly so termed, extends still further towards the East, where the Town of *Targa*, nam'd also *Saga* and *Zagha*, is sit'd on the Western side of a large Lake. The Defart of *Igma* is plac'd by Mr. S. in the South of the Tropick of Cancer, and on the Borders of Negro-Land, although others situate its Bounds towards *Bardia* and *Barba*.

VII. *Lemba*, or *Lempa* lies next to *Targa*, as also *Sama*, and is one of the largest Provinces of Zama. Some think fit to dignify it with the Title of a Kingdom, and others only reckon it among the Defarts. The Towns of this Province are *Lemba*, *Sama*, and *San*. *Elcane*, on the North of the Tropick, with *Adama* and *Paga*, or *Pema*, on the South of the same Circle.

VIII. It remains to give a short Account of the three last Provinces, nam'd *Bardia*, *Bona*, and *Gama*, which among all the rest according to the O-

pinion of some Authors) are only erected into distinct Kingdoms. The Kingdom and Defart of *Bardia*, bordering on the West upon *Lempa*, and *Dand*, on the North upon *Bardia*, is divided (according to its Length) almost into two equal Parts by the Tropick; and is not altogether so dry and barren as the other Provinces. It brings forth abundance of Palm-trees, and its chief Town is likewise nam'd *Bardia*.

The Kingdom and Defart of *Bona*, or *Borna*, (as others term it) is the only Province of Zama that does not lie under the Tropick of Cancer; and is the largest, most Southern and best cultivated, and affords plenty of Water. The Inhabitants being partly of a black and partly of a tawny Complexion are of a good Temper, and more civiliz'd than those of the other Provinces. The most remarkable Towns of this Tract, are *Bona* the Capital of the Kingdom, a Place of some Repute; *Kimba*, on the Northern side of the famous Lake *Bona*, which lies between this Kingdom and Negro-Land; and *Amasen*, not far from the Eastern side of the same Lake. Besides these Towns, *Adama*, otherwise call'd *Al-hamad* and *Talama*, is sit'd farther Eastward, near the River *Nibia*, and the Frontiers of the Kingdom of the same Name.

The Kingdom and Defart of *Gama*, the most Eastern of all the Provinces of Zama, is situated between *Bona* and *Bardia*, on the West, and *Agad* on the East. It abounds with Cattel, and by that means provides Employment for the Natives; part of whom have embrac'd the Christian Religion, after the same manner as some of the Egyptians. The capital Town of this Kingdom is likewise nam'd *Gama*, or *Kimba*, and stands on the Western side of a great Lake.

## CHAP. XIII. BILEDULGERID.

A Table of Biledulgerid.

BILEDULGERID divided into eight Provinces, viz.	Barca Defart containing	On the East	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Saba Algeria</li> <li>Gazza Africa</li> <li>Elewah Sen</li> <li>Ammon Eburia</li> </ul>	Tegera-rin	On the North	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tegerarin</li> <li>Tefebi Tux</li> </ul>
		On the West	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Angela Garham</li> <li>Sym Agelaia</li> </ul>		On the South	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tegza Tigris</li> <li>Benigorai</li> </ul>
	Biledul-gend	On the South	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Teregu Fezzan</li> <li>Gadimes Guergula</li> </ul>	Segel-messa	On or near Ghr Fuz	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Feghig Benigami</li> <li>Chalaira Mazalig</li> <li>Abuhinan</li> </ul>
		On the North	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tuler Galbiz</li> <li>Temena Tugra</li> <li>Chaher</li> </ul>		On or near Zir Fuz	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Gatrir Tamaraco</li> <li>Melel Mamunna</li> <li>Segelmessa Tenegent</li> <li>Tebebabant</li> <li>Hameledog</li> <li>Ummelheben</li> <li>Sugaibil</li> </ul>
	Zeb	On the South	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tether</li> <li>Mazzab</li> </ul>	Tafiler	On the South	Nara Province
		On the North	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nib Brgia Pajar</li> <li>Dealin Dender</li> <li>Telaha Maura</li> </ul>		On the North	Tafiler Town



Darha	On the East of Darha Fluv.	<div> <div>Mucubah Swzerin</div> <div>Tinzed Darba</div> <div>Taragalel</div> <div>Tameguerat</div> </div>
	On the West of Darha Fluv.	<div> <div>Tinzalin</div> <div>Tagumaderi Afra</div> </div>
Teffet	In the inland Country	<div> <div>Archa Tefse</div> <div>Eren Guaten</div> </div>
	On or near the Sea-coasts	<div> <div>Buzador Nam</div> <div>Albena Anzlima</div> <div>Mmter Targuez</div> <div>Bulez Suana</div> </div>

All Geographers do not observe the same Method in the dividing of *Biledulgerid*, some making it to contain twelve Provinces, and others only seven or eight. The last Division comprehends all its most remarkable Provinces, which are the Desert of *Barca*, Proper *Biledulgerid*, *Zeb*, *Tegerarin*, *Segelmessa*, *Tafilet*, *Darha* and *Teffet*. The two first take up almost one half of the Country, situated on the East, and the six last the other half that lyes on the West.

In travelling these Provinces in their Order, from the East, the Desert of *Barca* first presents itself to our View; being a very large Province, bounded on the South, by the Kingdoms of *Nubia* and *Garga*; on the West, by the Kingdom of *Berdoa* and Proper *Biledulgerid*; on the North, by the Kingdom of *Barca*; and on the East, by *Egypt*. It is full of most desert Wildernesses, some of which are nevertheless well inhabited, containing the following Towns or Villages, on the East, viz. *Sabia*; *Alguchet* on a Lake; *Cezza*; *Ascor*; *Eleocah*, on the side of a Lake; *Srt*; *Ammon*; and *Ebaila*. The Western Towns are *Zegela*; *Gorham*; *Sym*, on the Confines of the Kingdom of *Barca*; *Agcladia*, or *Ajedalia*, on the River *Melel*.

*Biledulgerid* properly so call'd, has for its Bounds on the North, the Kingdoms of *Tripoli* and *Tanis*; Proper on the West, the Province of *Zeb*; on the South, *Biledulgerid*; and on the East the Desert of *Barca*: It reaches for a considerable space, from East to West; but its Extent from South to North is a great deal less. The Soil, more especially in the North-Western Tract, brings forth to great abundance of Dates, that it has impos'd the Name of *Biledulgerid*, not only on this Province, but also on the whole Country. However there are several Deserts, but in the Southern Part, we may observe the Towns of *Teorega*; *Fezzen*; *Gademes*; and *Guerguela*, refer'd by some to the Province of *Zeb*, which are the Capital of certain Territories of the same Name. In the Northern Part, appear *Tufer*, on the left side of the River *Caps*; *Chalbiz*; *Clemena*; *Texsar*; and *Caphes*.

The Province or Kingdom of *Zeb* borders upon Proper *Biledulgerid*, and its Southern Towns are *Zeb* *Techort* seated on a Hill on the South of a River *Frru* of the same Name; being the chief of the *Techortine* Territory, which is very plentiful of Dates, and taken by some, for a distinct Province of *Biledulgerid*: And *Mezzab*, the most eminent Town of a Territory whereto it has communicated its Name, and (as others will have it) a separate Province, through which Travellers frequently pass into *Negroce-Land* and *Barbary*, and keep the same Road in returning from these Countries. Farther Northwards are *Nessa*, otherwise nam'd *Nessa*, or *Nesta*; and *Bergia*, on or near the River *Guadalbarbar*. In passing lower we come to *Pescar*; and *Daxsen*, on the Confines of the Kingdom of *Algiers*; as also *Drajer*; *Tolacha*; and *Macara*.

The Province of *Tegerarin* lying next to *Zeb*, on the West is well water'd, and brings forth great store of Dates, and several sorts of Grain, but is not sufficiently stock'd with Cattel. The Inhabitants are much addicted to merchandising, and the Northern Towns are *Tegerarin* the Capital; *Tesebit* likewise the chief of a Country of the same Name; and *Tuat*. The other Towns on the

I. *Biledulgerid*.

AFTER having pass'd through the Deserts of *Zara*, we enter *Biledulgerid*, which is call'd by the Arabians, *Beled el Gerid*, i. e. *The Country of Dates*, and derives its Name from the great plenty it affords of that sort of Fruit. It is bounded on the South, by *Zara* and *Nubia*; on the East, by *Egypt*; on the North, by *Barbary*; and on the West, by the Sea of the *Canaries*, Part of the *Atlantick Ocean*. This whole Country is situated between the 5th and 61st Degree of Longitude, and between the 22d and 32d Degr. of Northern Latitude; so that its greatest Extent reaches from West to East, but it does not extend itself uniformly from South to North: For its least Breadth takes up one Degr. and half, its greatest almost 7 Degr. and the Parts lying in the middle, indifferently come near to the Dimensions of both Extremes.

The Air of *Biledulgerid* is much of the same nature with that of *Zara*, that is to say, excessive hot, yet very healthful, and the Inhabitants are said to be long liv'd. The Soil is generally sandy, dry, rough, untill'd and barren, and the Country is very little inhabited in many Places; nevertheless, in others it is more pleasant and fruitful; but it abounds with nothing more than Camels and Dates, which are usually exchang'd for Corn and other Grain, that are here extremely scarce. This Country is inhabited both by the Natives and by several Arabian Colonies. The former are savage, rustical, intemperate, stupid, and addicted to Robbery and Rapine: The latter are of a more civil and obliging Temper, and very industrious in the management of their Affairs. They live in Tents, and remove them from one Place to another, seeking for new Pastures, as often as the Cattel have made those bare, where they first settled their Abode; but it is unsafe to trust either of these sort of People. They are partly govern'd by their own Kings or Princes, who are almost altogether tributary to the Turks, Algerines, Tuncetans and Tripolitans: Again, Part of them are subject to a multiplicity of Governments; whilst others are quite destitute of Rule, and free from all manner of Laws and political Obligations. The Princes of these Parts and a great number of the People adhere to the Mahometan Superstitions, and many *Jews* are also intermix'd among them, who have built Synagogues in the chief Towns, where they drive a considerable Trade.

Part 2.

S 2

South,



South, are *Tegza*; *Tegra*; and *Benigorai* or *Benigorai*, on the River *Gbir*.

VIII.  
Segel-  
meffa  
P.

The Province of *Segelomeffa*, or *Segelmeffa*, extending it self on the West of *Tegorwin*, is one of the most considerable Parts of *Biledulgerid*, and is water'd by several Rivers: The chief of these are, the *Gbir* and the *Ziz*, which like the Nile, are us'd to over-flow this Country, and the Towns of Note are seated on or near those Rivers; particularly, *Fegbig* on the East of *Gbir*; *Benigum* on its Eastern Bank; and *Chasura* higher, near the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Fez*: On the Western side of the *Gbir*, are *Mazalix* and *Abuhinan*, somewhat lower: On or near the Eastern side of the *Ziz*, in descending from North to South, we may take notice of *Gatrir*; *Tamaracc*?; *Melel*; *Marranna*: *Segelmeffa*, the Metropolis; *Tenegen*; and *Tebubasan*: At some distance from the *Ziz*, Westwards, appear *Humeledeg*; *Unmelhefen*; and *Sugahil*, not far from the River *Togda*.

IX.  
Taflet  
P.

The Province of *Taflet*, which others dignifie with the Title of a Kingdom, is of a great deal lesser extent than *Segelmeffa*; lying between it on the East; the Kingdom of *Morocco* on the North; *Darba* on the West; and *Zuenziga*, a Province of *Zaara*, on the South. The River *Farcala* runs thro' this Province, and the Territories of *Yata*, commonly reputed its Southern Part, is subject to its Jurisdiction. Both these Countries are very Mountainous, and the chief Town of *Taflet* bears the same Name with the Province.

X.  
Darba  
P.

The Province of *Darba*, which some likewise

erect into a Kingdom, is situated between *Taflet* on the East, and *Teffet* on the South and West. Others will have the Bounds of this Province so far enlarg'd, as to include those of *Taflet* and *Yata*, just now specified, within its Jurisdiction; but we take it in a stricter sense. *Darba* (according to *Marmol*) is subject to the Dominion of the King of *Taflet*, and a River of the same Name flows thro' the whole Country from North to South. The Towns on the East of this River are, *Mucabah*, otherwise call'd *Penibib*; *Sazerin*; *Tinzed*; *Darba* alias *Tesuf*, the Capital; *Targalel*; and *Jameguerat*: On the West of the *Darba*, appear *Tinzulin*; *Tagumadert*; and *Afra*, on the Borders of *Teffet*.

*Teffet* is a very large Maritim Province, and XI. the most Western of all the Parts of *Biledulgerid*; *Teffet* its Western Tract being water'd by many Rivers. P. The inland Country contains the following Towns, viz. *Archa*, on the Confines of *Zaara*; as also *Teffet*, the Capital; *Iren*, on the River *Arid*; and *Gaden*, on the River *Buzador*. On or near the Coasts of the *Canarian Sea*, are the Towns of *Buzador*, on the East of Cape *Baiador*; *Nun*, *Albena*, *Anfulima*; *Munster*; *Targuez*, or *Tarquez*, a Town of the Province of *Su*, the greater Part of which is comprehended within the Kingdom of *Morocco*, and shall be more particularly describ'd hereafter in treating of that Kingdom; *Bulez* on Cape *Nun*, heretofore reputed the utmost Boundary of Navigation; and *Suana*, seated very near the Kingdom of *Morocco*.

## C H A P. XIV.

### The CANARY-ISLANDS.

A Table of the CANARY-ISLANDS.

The Canary-Islands are 14, viz.	Fer, Island	{	<i>Hierro</i> , or <i>Ferro</i>
	Palma I.	{	<i>S. Cruz de la Palma</i> <i>Tassacorda S. Andre Brenia</i>
	Gomer		<i>Gomera</i>
	Teneriff Isl.	{	<i>Pike, Mountain</i> <i>S. Christoval de Laguna</i> <i>La Ramela Gerachico</i> <i>Adeca</i> <i>Gratiosa S. Cruz La Rotana</i>
	Seven Greater,	{	<i>Tedla Argorez Galder</i> <i>Guia</i> <i>Arginogi Canary</i>
	Forteventura I.	{	<i>Forteventura Chaliros</i> <i>Baltarhay Langala</i> <i>Poso Negro Tarafalo</i> <i>Riequerocqua</i>
	Lancero-ta I.	{	<i>Rubicon Porto de Cavalos</i> <i>Porto de Nao Lancerosa</i>

Seven Lesser,	{	<i>Illa de los Lobos</i> <i>Rocco I.</i> <i>Gratiosa I.</i> <i>S. Clara I.</i> <i>Alagranza I.</i> <i>The two Salvages</i>

THE Canary-Islands are situated in the I. Canarian Sea, over against *Teffet*, the Canary most Western Province of *Biledulgerid*, Islands and were so termed by the Spaniards (according to *Linschoten*,) upon their first Discovery, from the abundance of Dogs that were seen on the Coasts: But one of these Islands was long before call'd *Canaria*, even in *Pliny's* time (as that Author assures us,) from the great number of Dogs [*Canes* in *Latin*] of a prodigious Size found therein, and still retains the same Name; which this Island, being as it were the Principal, communicated to the rest of the *Canaries*. They are generally suppos'd to be the same with the *Insula Fortunata* of the Ancients, in regard that the moderate temperature of the Air and fruitfulness of the Soil, which were more especially remarkable in the latter, as also their little distance from *Mauritania*, with the particular Name and Condition of every one of them, cannot be more fitly apply'd to any other Islands of the Atlantic

tick



tick Ocean. Indeed, it must be acknowledg'd, That the Latitude which *Ptolemy* assigns to the Fortunate Isles, is more agreeable to that of the Islands of *Cape Verd* than of the *Canaries*; but it is not to be imagin'd, that that famous Geographer always set down the Longitude and Latitude of Places, with the utmost Exactness and Accuracy.

II. The chief of the Canary-Islands are situated between the 26th and 29th Degree of Northern Latitude, and the rest that are of a great deal less Note, lye out a little farther towards the North: They also extend themselves (according to several Maps) from West to East, from the first Meridian to the seventh Degree of Longitude. The Air is somewhat hot, but very healthful, and the Soil is extremely rich, abundantly bringing forth the best sorts of Grain, with most admirable Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranates, Figs and Dates; besides, the finest Sugar and Wine of a most exquisite Taste, which is transported to all the Countries of *Europe*, and chiefly to *England*. There is also plenty of Gum and Wood; *Oricelum*, a kind of Herb that is much us'd in the Dying of Clothes with a Purple Colour: Lastly, These Islands abound with variety of Birds and Cattel, more especially wild Asses and Kids, the Milk and Skins of which are much esteem'd. The Canary-Isles were first discover'd (according to *M. Bandrand*) by *John de Betancourt*, a Noble French Man, who made himself Master of two of them, viz. *Forteventura* and *Lancerota*, A. D. 1417. Afterwards *Ferdinand Peraza* took Possession of *Gomera* and *Ferro*, in 1445, and Proper *Canary* was brought into subjection to the Spaniards, by *Peter de Vera* in 1483; as also *Palma* in 1493, by *Alfonso Ferdinando de Lugo*, who likewise subdu'd *Teneriffe* in 1496. So that all these Islands still continue under the Jurisdiction of the Spaniards, and are reputed an Appendage of the Kingdom of *Castille*.

III. *Pliny*, who is follow'd by *Solinus* and *Capella*, reckons up six fortunate Islands, as well as *Ptolemy*, who places all under the same *Meridian*; but there is a great deal of difference between the Names that are attributed to them by these Authors. At present the larger and principal *Canaries* are seven in Number; and beginning to view them from the West, they appear in the following Order, viz. *Fer*, or *Ferro*, *Palma*, *Gomera*, *Teneriff*, *Canary*, *Forteventura* and *Lancerota*.

IV. The Island of *Fer*, in Spanish *La Isla del Hierro*, or *Ferro*, is the most Western of all, and farthest distant from the Continent, being altogether Untilled, Rough and Barren, altho' some commend its Fruitfulness: It is also extremely drie, and (as they say) quite destitute of Wells, Springs and Rivers; neither is it ever refresh'd with any Showers of Rain: However, the Divine Providence has afforded a singular expedient to supply this want of fresh Water, and such as is no where else to be observ'd; by the means of a certain Tree of an unknown Kind, bearing somewhat long and narrow Leaves that are always green: The Tree is also said to be extremely ancient, and never to decay, or die; but some deny that it has any such Property, and to retrench its everlasting Continuance, are willing to admit of several others of the same Kind.

This wonderful Tree (as some give it out) is cover'd every Morning with a little Cloud, by which all the Branches, Trunk and Leaves, are so thoroughly soak'd, that a most clear and pleasant Liquor continually drops down from them, which is receiv'd in Vessels set round about for that purpose, and in so great a quantity, as is abundantly sufficient for the use of the Inhabitants and Cattel throughout the whole Island. It is reported, That when the Spaniards first made a descent upon this Island, a certain Harlot discover'd the said Tree to them, which the Natives earnestly endeavour'd to keep from their Knowledge; nevertheless, she only procur'd her own Ruin by the Discovery. The French have made the first Meridian to pass thro' the Western Part of the Isle of *Fer* ever since the Year 1634, by the special Command of King *Lewis XIII.* after he had consulted the most skilful Astronomers and Geographers about the matter. This Island (according to the relation of *John Nun de Pena*,) takes up 6 Leagues in breadth, 7 in length, and 22 in compass, and has a Town likewise nam'd *Hierro*, with a convenient Harbour.

V. The Island of *Palma* is more Northern than *Fer*, and well cultivated, abounding with all sorts of Fruit: It also produces good store of Sugar, and a kind of Wine like *Malmsey*, which is transported even as far as *America*. Its Capital Town bears the Name of *Santa Cruz de la Palma*, and enjoys the advantage of a safe Harbour. There is also a great number of Villages, particularly *Tafacorda*, *St. Andrew* and *Brenia*, and a burning Mountain, that casts forth Flames, as we are inform'd by the above-cited *J. Nun de Pena*, who was a Native of this Place. *Palma Isle* is said to extend it self for the space of 26 Leagues in compass, 10 in length, and 7 in breadth, and was first possess'd by the Spaniards, A. D. 1493.

VI. The Island of *Gomera*, situated on the South of *Palma*, is very fruitful, affording plenty of Grain, Apples, Sugar and Wine, with Pastures for numerous Herds of Cattel. It takes up 22 Leagues in compass, and has a considerable Town of the same Name, with a very capacious Harbour.

VII. The Island of *Teneriff*, call'd *Thenerife* by the Inhabitants and Spaniards, lyes next to *Gomera* on the East, and almost in the middle of the seven *Canaries*; taking up 48 Spanish Leagues in compass, 8 in breadth, and above 15 in length. *Niger* takes it for *Pliny's Nivaria*, that deriv'd its Name from the Snow, with which it was continually cover'd: However, it is at present well cultivated, very pleasant and extremely fruitful, more especially of Grain and Laurel. This Island was heretofore govern'd by several Princes who were its Natives, but after a War of two Years the Spaniards made themselves Masters of it, under the Conduct of *Alfonso Ferdinando de Lugo*, Septemb. 29. A. D. 1496, and it is still subject to the Dominion of the King of Spain. Here is to be seen a most famous Mountain, one of the highest of the whole World, which is commonly call'd *The Pike*, as also *El Pico de Teyda*, or *Pico de Terraira* by the Inhabitants, and *Il Pico di Tenerifa* by the Italians. It rises up (says *Snel-lius*) after the manner of a vast Pillar of a Conical Figure, the lowest Parts of which are most spacious, the higher contracted by degrees into a narrower compass, and the Top ends in a sharp Point.



Point. The Beginning of Longitude is reckon'd from this Mountain in many of the Dutch Maps, as it has been elsewhere hinted. The Capital Town of *Teneriff* is *Laguna*, or *S. Christoval de Laguna*, i. e. *S. Christoval* of the Lake, deriving its Name from a neighbouring Lake, being the Seat (according to *M. Baudrand*) of the General Government of the *Canaries*. There are also several other Towns in this Island, particularly, *La Rambla*; *Granada*; or *Garrucha*; *Adena*; *Gratiosa*; *Santa Cruz*, a noted Sea-Port; and *La Romana*; with 30 Villages or Parishes, and three principal Harbours. The Island of *Teneriff* is distant 36 Spanish Leagues from that of *Forteventura* on the East, 10 from *Canary*, and 55 from the nearest Coast of *Africa*: as also eight from *Gomera* Isle, and about 18 from *Ferro*.

VIII. The Island of *Canary*, or *Canary*, sometimes call'd *La Gran Canary*, or the Great *Canary* by the Inhabitants, still retains its ancient Name, imposing it also (as it has been already intimated) on the other adjacent Islands. It is the most Southern of all, lying between *Forteventura* on the East, and *Teneriff* on the West: neither is it inferior to any, in the fruitfulness of the Soil and abundance of Delights. The Towns and Villages of this Island are, *Tedla*; *Argorez*; *Gadder*; *Gala*; *Argingol*; and *Canary* the Capital, so nam'd by Foreigners, but the City of Palm-Trees by the Natives; the See of a Bishop, subject to the Metropolitan of *Sevil*: It is a neat, well-built and populous Town, with a very convenient Harbour and a fine Castle, affording a place of Residence (as we are inform'd by *M. la Robbe*) to the Spanish Governour. The Royal Tribunal, or Court of Judicature for all the *Canaries*, is also establish'd here, with that of the Inquisition. The proper Island of *Canary* is extended for the space of 11 Spanish Leagues in breadth, 12 in length, and 26 in compass: being distant 30 of the like Leagues from the Promontory

of *Bojador* in *Africa*, on the West, and about 100 from *Madera* on the South.

IX. From *Canary* we pass to *Forteventura*, in Spanish *La Isla de Forteventura*, i. e. *The Island of good Forteventure*, which lies nearest to the Province of *Bile-tura* *Luce*, at the distance of 18 Leagues from the Continent, taking up 56 Leagues in compass; as also, 25 in length, and 5 in breadth. The Island Country is partly Mountainous and partly Champaign, abounding with Palm-Trees, Olive-Trees, Mulberry-Trees, Wood for Dyers, Goats and Kids. The whole Island is well cultivated, and has a Town likewise nam'd *Forteventura*, besides several Villages, particularly, *Chalinos*; *Balcanon*; *Langala*; *Poso Negro*; *Tarafato*; *Rique-roque*, &c.

X. *Lancerosa*, or *Langarota*, so call'd from the Name of a certain Portuguese, as also, *L'Isle de Lancero*, *Lancelotte* by *M. Sanson*, is the seventh and last of the principal *Canary* Islands, and lies over against *Forteventura*, partaking also of the same Nature and Constitution. It is said to take up 24 Leagues in compass, and 10 in length, but scarce 4 in breadth. The Harbours and Fortify'd Places of this Island, are *Rabison*; *Porto de Carallos*; *Porto de Alos*; and *Lancerosa*, otherwise nam'd *Cay-as*, the Capital Town.

XI. After having given a particular Account of the seven chief *Canary* Islands, it is requisite to add a few Words concerning some others, that are of a great deal less Note. Their compass is but small, and *M. Baudrand* assures us, that they are altogether Desert and Untill'd, viz. *La Isla de los Lobos*, i. e. the Island of Sea-Wolves, situated between *Forteventura* and *Lancerosa*: *Rocco*, *Graviosa*, *S. Clara*, and *Alagranza*, on the North of *Lancerosa*. Two other Islands nam'd *Salvatica*, or *The Salvages*, lie out farther towards the North-West, which some reckon among the *Canaries*, but they are omitted by others.

## CHAP. XV.

### The Islands of MADERA, AZORES, &c.

A Table of the Islands situated on the North of the CANARIES.

Twelve Islands on the North of the Canaries, viz.	Three at a little distance, viz.	The Desa. Isl.	Monzerico
		Madera I.	S. Croce Funchal
		Santo Porto	
Nine more remote, call'd, Azores, viz.	The most Western	Corvo Isle.	
		Flores I.	
Situated in the middle	Fayal I.	Pico I.	
		St. George I.	
		Gratiosa I.	
		Tercera I.	
		with the City of Angra.	

The most Eastern { St. Michael Isle, with the Town of Ponta del Gorda  
Santa Maria I.

THE RE are several Islands situated on the North of the *Canaries*, of which it will not be improper here to make a particular Description; those that lie nearest to them, are the Desert Isle, *Madera* and *Santo Porto*. The Desert Island, in Spanish *La Isla Desierta*, so nam'd from its desolate Barrenness, appears on the North of the *Salvages*, and is but of a small compass, being distant only seven Miles from the Eastern Coast of *Madera*. The Island of *Madera*, or *Madeira*, (according to the Spanish Dialect) is a great deal larger and more eminent than the former, taking up 25 Leagues in length, and about 60 in compass. It was heretofore call'd



led *Cerne Atlantica*, and derives its modern Name from the great store of Wood with which it was stock'd: For when the Portuguese first enter'd this Island, it was nothing but a thick Forest; inso much that to clear the Ground for Tillage, they set it all on Fire, and by that means caus'd a Conflagration, (which as they say) continu'd for the space of seven Years: However, now it is very fertile, affording plenty of the richest Wine, Sugar, most delicious Fruits, especially Oranges, Lemmons and Pomegranates, with Corn, Honey and Wax: It also abounds with Bears and other wild Beasts, and all sorts of Fowl; besides numerous Groves of Cedar-Trees. The Air at *Madera* is more temperate than about the *Canaries*, and consequently its Condition cannot be inferior to that of any of these Islands: altho' it is not at present altogether so fruitful, as when the above-mentioned Fire happen'd. The Towns (to take no notice of the Villages which amount to above 30 in number) are, *Munckerico*, or *Monschico*, *Santa Crux* and *Funchal*, *Fanzal*, or *Fonzal*, the chief City, so nam'd from the abundance of Fennel that was at first found growing thereabouts. It is the See of a Prelate, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lisbon*, and affords a splendid Court to the Portuguese Governour. This Island is said to have been first discover'd by *Robert Machein*, an English Man; but afterwards *John Gonsalves Zarco* and *Trilane Piz* took possession of it for the King of Portugal, *A. D.* 1419, and it is still almost entirely inhabited by that Nation. It was also remarkable for the Residence of that famous Navigator *Christopher Columbus*, and is distant only three Leagues from the Island of *Santo Porto*; as also, seven from *Illa Deserta*.

*S. Porto Ile.* The Island of *Santo Porto*, call'd *Port Saint* by the French, and *Holy Haven* by the English, is a great deal less than *Madera*; taking up (as some say) only eight Miles in compass: It is likewise possess'd by the Portuguese, and subject to the Jurisdiction of the same Governour and Bishop. The Soil is very fruitful, and as for Honey and Wax, no better sort is to be found in any other Part of the World. But this Island is destitute of Fortifications, and consequently much expos'd to the Incursions of Pirates, by whom it was more especially infested in the beginning of the last Century.

*II. Azores* The Islands of *Afores*, or *Azores*, lye at a greater distance from the *Canaries*, on the North-West, and were so nam'd (as it is generally believ'd) by the Spaniards, from a kind of Hawk, call'd *Azor* in their Language, and in the plural Number *Azores*; because they abounded with such Birds of Prey. These Islands are also styl'd *Terceres* from the name of the chief of them, and *The Upper*, by reason of their Northern Situation, with respect to the *Canaries*. Moreover, they are usually termed by the Hollanders, *De Vlaemsche Eylanden*, i. e. The Flandrian Islands, in regard that (as it is reported) they were first discover'd, by certain Merchants of *Bruges* in Flanders, who sent Colonies thither to improve them by Tillage; for nothing was then to be found there but Trees, more especially Cedars, and several sorts of Fowl. Afterwards they were made over to the King of Portugal, and are still subject to his Dominion.

*III.* The *Azores* Isles are situated between the 37th

and 41st Deg. of Northern Lat. in the middle of the Atlantick Ocean, almost at an equal Distance from Northern *America* and *Africa*; upon which account, *M. Sanfon* in his Map of the Terrestrial Globe, does not place them next to either of these Continents, but between both. However, many refer them to *Africa*; and we have also follow'd their Opinion; altho' they are somewhat nearer to *Spain* than to *America*, or *Africa*; and are the most remote of all the Islands that belong to the latter. The Air is wholesome, and the inland Territories abound with Corn, Wine, Fruit, Fowl and Cattel. There are several hot Baths and Springs, which turn Wood that is thrown therein into Stone. It is related by *Ortelius*, That Passengers who set out from our Hemisphere to *America*, as soon as they have sail'd by the *Azores*, are immediately freed from Buggs, Fleas, Lice, and all sorts of Vermin of the like nature, which die at that very instant.

These Islands are commonly reputed to be nine in Number, viz. *Corvo*, *Flores*, *Fayal*, *Pico*, *St. Corvo*, *George*, *Gratiosa*, *Tercera*, *St. Michael* and *Santa Isle*.

*Maria.* The Isles of *Corvo* and *Flores* are the most Western, so that some Geographers make the first Meridian to pass thro' them; but *Bertius* admits of neither into the Rank of the *Azores*: The former being the lesser and more Northern, is so nam'd from its numerous Flocks of Crows, and the latter from the abundance of Flowers.

The Island of *Fayal* extends it self farther towards the East, and takes its name from the great number of Beech-trees, where (as we are inform'd by *Ortelius*,) some of the Posterity of the Flandrians who inhabited the *Azores*, still have a place of Abode. The Island of *Pico* lying next to *Fayal*, is larger, and of a somewhat long Figure, deriving its Denomination from a very high Mountain of a Conick Form, which is termed *El Pico* by the Portuguese, and sometimes casts forth Flames.

*St. George's* Island is likewise extended more in length than breadth, and a little further Northward, being so call'd conformably to the usual manner of the Portuguese, who often impose on a Place, the Name of that Saint on whose Festival they first arriv'd there; which singular Custom is observable as well in the Isles of *Azores*, as in other Parts discover'd by that Nation. The Island *Gratiosa*, which is more Northern and of a lesser Extent, owes its Name to its extraordinary Pleasantness, as that of *Tercera* or *The Third*, is so styl'd from its Situation; for it is the third Island of the *Azores*, in passing over from the Continent of Spain: It is also the most eminent of all, and often communicates its Name to the rest: Its Metropolis is *Angra*, i. e. a Station for Ships, dignified with the Title of an Episcopal See, well built and seated on the Southern Coast of the Island, with a capacious Harbour, and the Castle of *St. Philip*, most strongly fortify'd. *Alfonso* King of Portugal, was banish'd by his Brother to this City, *A. D.* 1668. The Islands of *St. Michael* and *Santa Maria*, are situated farthest towards the East and South, and several Geographers make them the Standard for the beginning of Longitude. The former takes up 32 Leagues in compass, and is distant 28 from *Tercera*. Its Towns are, *La Punta del Gada*, the Capital; *Villa Franca*, and *Sant Antonio*, or *St. Anthony*.

*S. George's* I. *Tercera* I. *S. Michael* I. *S. Maria* I.



## CHAP. XVI.

## BARBARY in General; and the Kingdom of MOROCCO in particular.

## A General Table of BARBARY.

Barbary divided into Six Kingdoms, viz.	Two on the Atlantic Sea,	Morocco Kingdom	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sus Hea Duccala</li> <li>Guzula Morocco Prop.</li> <li>Hascora Tedles</li> </ul>
		Fez K.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Temefna Fez</li> <li>Azgar Habat</li> <li>Errif Chaus Gare</li> </ul>
	Four on the Mediterranean Sea,	Algier K.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Telenfin Temeza</li> <li>Gezaira Bugia</li> <li>Constantina</li> </ul>
		Tunis K.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tunis Kingdom</li> <li>The Islands over-against it.</li> </ul>
		Tripoli K.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On the hither side of the River of Tripoli</li> <li>Beyond the same River</li> </ul>
		Barca K.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>On the hither side of Nachel, Firz.</li> <li>Beyond the same River</li> </ul>

## Six particular Tables of BARBARY.

I. Morocco Kingdom containing 7 Provinces, viz.	Three Maritime,	Sus Province,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tagarout Tedfa</li> <li>Tarolene Tejeur</li> <li>Melja Guargessen</li> <li>Alberfus</li> </ul>
		Hea P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tafalla Tefehna</li> <li>Culeas Teimuh</li> <li>Menana Amama</li> <li>Tednet Savenh</li> <li>Hatechus Teculeth</li> <li>S. Clara Goza</li> </ul>
		Duccala P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Conta Meramer</li> <li>Azofi Emander</li> <li>Tecuria Tita Magazan</li> <li>El Medina Azamor</li> <li>Subeit Temeracot</li> <li>Tergum Buklabuan</li> </ul>

## II. Fez Kingdom, in which are 7 Provinces, viz.

Four Inland,	Guzula P.	No Towns of Note
	Morocco P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Delgumuha Temella</li> <li>Imegiagen Elgiumba</li> <li>Tumeglafta Tefrafta</li> <li>Morocco, the Capital of the Kingdom</li> <li>Agmet</li> </ul>
	Hascora P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bezo, or Bzo</li> <li>Elgiumba Tagodast</li> <li>Elmadin</li> </ul>
	Tedles P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Eithiad Cihiteb</li> <li>Efza Tefza Tedza</li> </ul>
Four on the West,	Temefna Province	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tegagit Thagit</li> <li>Adendum Hainelchalla</li> <li>Beniz Elcoffar Anfa</li> <li>Fedolla Soncia</li> <li>Almanfor Rotim Rabat</li> </ul>
	Fez P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mahmora Tefelfelta</li> <li>Salle Fanzar Gualil</li> <li>Mechnes Zavvia</li> <li>Magbill Fez, the Metropolis of the Kingdom</li> </ul>
	Azgar P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Elgiumba Cebir</li> <li>Lixa, or Larache</li> </ul>
	Habat P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Arzilla Tingis or Tanger</li> <li>Cazar-Ezzagir</li> <li>Teteguim, or Tetuan</li> <li>Septa, or Cema</li> </ul>
Three on the East,	Errif P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Gomer Tartonella</li> <li>Netogalla Terga</li> <li>Sulquiz Fettis Bedis</li> <li>Velez Pennon de Velez</li> <li>Tegassa Mezemma</li> <li>Guafevala</li> </ul>
	Chaus P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tezza the Capital</li> <li>Sofroa Benibachlul</li> <li>Hamlifnan Mabdia</li> <li>Dubdu Haddaggia</li> <li>Teurent Zhas Garfis</li> </ul>
	Garet P.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tarforagel Fetis</li> <li>Alcudia Metilla the Capital</li> <li>Chafasa Jaffarin</li> </ul>

## III. Algier



III. <i>Algier Kingdom</i> comprehending 5 Provinces, viz.	Three On the hither side of <i>Major Fluv.</i>	Telenfin P.	<i>Hunain Telenfin, or Tremisen Marsalquibir Oran Mazagran, or Mejj- gran</i>
		Teneza P.	<i>Mutagan Tatra Tenez Rochar Brischa Marsolach Serfel Meliana</i>
		Gezaira P.	<i>Mazura Miroma Caxima Algier the Metropolis of the Kingdom Temendust Merolla Teddeles Berengiret Garbello Zaffona Carbona Conco</i>
	Two Be- yond the same Ri- ver	Bugia P.	<i>Labez Necaus Mesila Siifis, or Sieffa Sade, or Bugia Cap. Gema Ballafia Gergel, or Gigeri Gibramel Sacciocad Cille</i>
Constan- tina P.		<i>Ruscada, or Stora Mabra Hippon, or Bona Marzacaris Tabraca, or Tabarca Vill. and Isl. Milevum, or Mela Constantina the Capital Tifasa Tebessa</i>	
IV. <i>Tunis Kingdom</i> in which are	Tunis Kingdom	In the in- land Country	<i>Beija Hamsammita Musti Urbs Camuda Marmagen Bahani Hama Techios Nicfa Nafta Capsa, or Casfa Meschianbia Cayroan Gueflet Zaghuan</i>
		Near the Sea-coasts	<i>Asfacusa Africa Lentis Parva, or Monastero Ruspina or Susa Eraclia Adrumetum Hammamet, or Ma- hometta Tunis the Metropolis of the Kingdom Goletta Carthago, or Bersack Utica, or Bensert Rasamilar</i>
	Islands over a- gainst Tu- nis	On the Northern Coast	<i>Calathe, or Galata Zimbala</i>
		On the Eastern Coast	<i>Cossyra, or Panthalarea Isl. and Town Limosa Lopedusa, or Lampedusa Cherchara Gamelara</i>

V. <i>Tripoli Kingd.</i> in which are	On the hither side of the River of Tripoli	Near the Sea-coasts.	<i>Tacape, or Capes</i> <i>Machres Girba, or Girbi Isl. and Town</i> <i>Chattab Portata Gara</i> <i>Palmera Zoara</i> <i>Casarni Tripoli Vicchio</i> <i>Tripoli the Metropolis</i>
		In the inland Country	<i>El-Hamma</i> <i>Garalgara Sarmaha</i> <i>Zanzora Hamroz</i>
		On the Mediterranean Sea	<i>Rasaxara Tefsur</i> <i>Ragamilar Lebeda</i> <i>Brata Merato</i>
	Beyond the same River	On the Gulph of Sidra	<i>Casracmed Colbenia</i> <i>Salinas Zedico</i> <i>Sebeico Naima</i> <i>Larcudia Sidra Island</i>
VI. <i>Barca Kingdom</i> containing	On the hither side of <i>Nachel Fluv.</i>	In the inland Tracts	<i>Barca the Capital Town</i> <i>Cyrene, or Cairoan</i>
		Near the Sea-coasts	<i>Berenice, or Bernick</i> <i>Arsinoe, or Taachara</i> <i>Ptolemais, or Tolometia</i> <i>Apollonia, or Bon-Andrea</i>
		Western Sea-Ports	<i>Salinas Patriarch-Port</i> <i>Trabocchio</i> <i>Mesulomara Salamon</i> <i>Casale Saloneffa</i>
	Beyond the same River	Eastern Ports	<i>Paratonium, or Alberton</i> <i>Roxa Raibba</i> <i>Ripa Alba, or Ripalta</i>
	In the inland Country	In the inland Country	<i>Pute-Almidan</i> <i>Affaghir Abdallah</i> <i>Charebat Sechet-Albanaim Altahun</i>

HAVING thus pass'd through the Canary Islands, and those that lye on the North of them, we return to the Continent of Africa, to take a View of its seventh and last Part, which is the most Northern of all, nearest to Europe, and well known by the Name of *Barbary*. Its Boundaries, on the West, are the Atlantick Sea; on the North, the Strait of Gibraltar, and the Mediterranean Sea; on the East, Egypt; and on the South, *Biledulgerid*, from which it is separated by Mount Atlas.

This Country is situated between the 9th. and 48th. Degree of Longitude, and between the 30th. and the 38th. Degr. of Northern Latitude; so that it reaches farthest from West to East, and its Extent from South to North is a great deal less; neither is its Breadth every where uniform: It is broadest in the Western Part, but so narrow in the Eastern Tracts, in many Places it scarce takes up the space of one Degree: Its Coasts both on the Atlantick and Mediterranean Seas, are very full of Bays, in which the Natives often find good store of Coral: And indeed it far excels all the others Parts of Africa, although it is one of the



the least, as being the most populous, best cultivated, and chiefly abounding with Cities, Towns and Villages. The Air is temperate, and the Soil fruitful, bringing forth Corn, and the most delicious Fruits: The Horses of these Parts are much esteem'd, as also the Skins of several sorts of Animals, and the Inhabitants profess the Mahometan Religion.

III. The whole Country of *Barbary* comprehends six Kingdoms, viz. those of *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Algier*, *Tunis*, *Tripoli* and *Barca*. All these particular Territories are maritim, the first of them lying on the Atlantick Ocean: the second on the same Atlantick Sea, the Strait of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean* Sea; and the four last only on the *Mediterranean* Sea.

IV. The Kingdom of *Morocco*, situated farthest East Morocco on the South and West, is bounded on the South, by *Tesjer*; on the East, by *Darha*, *Tafila* and *Sagelmessa*. Provinces of *Biledulgerid*; on the North, by the Kingdom of *Fez*; and on the West, by the Atlantick Sea. It produces abundance of Grain, Pulse, Oil, Honey, Sugar, and all sorts of Fruit, particularly Grapes of an extraordinary largeness; besides numerous Herds of Cattel, more especially Goats, the Skins of which are call'd *Moraguns*, and the Shag is of singular use in the making of Hair-Camel Stuff. There are also several Mines of Gold, Silver and Copper, and variety of Rivers. The Monarch of this Kingdom (as we are inform'd by M. *Rebbe*) assumes the Title of Emperor of *Africa*, King of *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Sus* and *Tafila*; Lord of *Gago*, *Darha* and *Gumta*; great *Sheikh* of *Morocco*, &c.

V. It is divided into seven principal Provinces, which are *Sus*, *Hea*, *Duccala*, *Guzula*, *Upper Morocco*, *Hascora* and *Tedles*: The three first are situated on the Sea-coasts, and the four last, in the inland Country. The Province of *Sus* is the most Southern of the maritim ones, and borders on the North, upon *Tesjer*, deriving its Name from the River *Sus* with which it is water'd: It is omitted by M. *Baudrand*, in reckoning up the Provinces of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, and attributed to *Biledulgerid*: But others are of a different Opinion, conformably to the Maps, in which the Southern Part of *Sus*, lying on the South of the River of the same Name, and containing the lesser Provinces or Territories of *Enzeca* and *Tadassquari*, is plac'd in *Tesjer*, or *Biledulgerid*. *Sus* abounds with Corn, Flax, Sugar, Figs, Dates and Gold, and its Sea-coasts afford plenty of fine Amber. Its most remarkable Towns are *Tagarot*, near the Frontiers of *Tesjer*; *Tedla*; *Tarodant*, or *Taradant*, the Capital: *Tesjer*, on the left side of the River *Sus*, in the Territories about which no other Coin is current, but such as is made of Gold and Iron digg'd out of the adjacent Mines; *Aleja*, a Sea-port Town, on the River *Sus*, not far from its Mouth; *Guergeffen*, on the Sea-coasts of the Atlantick Sea; and *Alberius* somewhat higher, on the same Coasts.

VI. The Province of *Hea* lies next to *Sus*, on the North, between the River *Asinnual*, on the East; and the Atlantick Sea, on the West: extending itself on the Coasts of it, from Cape *Ger*, or *Gerr*, to the Mouth of the River *Teniffi*. The inland Country is rough, mountainous and woody, but yields abundance of Barley. The Natives are ignorant of the Arts of Physick and Surgery; nor,

few of them know how to write or read: They sit down upon Mats at their Meals, after the usual manner of the Turks, and profess the following Towns, viz. *Tailla*, on the Coasts of the Atlantick Sea; *Tetana*, on the Mouth of a River of the same Name, a Mart-Town with a convenient Harbour; *Caleu*; and *Teijuch* in the inland Tract; *Montana*, on the Sea-shore; as also, *Amama*; *Tednet*, the chief Town, on the River *Saveni*; *Halechis*; *Teculich*; *Santa Clara*; and *Gozu*, on the Coasts.

The third and most Northern Province of the Kingdom of *Morocco* is *Duccala*, situated between the Rivers *Teniffi* and *Ommiraby*, and abounding with Corn. Its inland Towns of Note, are *Conia* and *Meramer*; and the principal Sea-port Towns, are *Azafi*, which some take for the most eminent, seated at a little distance from the Mouth of the River *Teniffi*; *Emander*, on the East of Cape *Canin*; *Tauria*; *Tina*, sometime in the Possession of the Portuguese (according to M. *Sanson*) but now demolish'd; *Magazan*, *Magrazan*, or *Mazagan*, a famous and well fortify'd Sea-port, subject to the same Nation; *El Medina* seated on a plain, at the Mouth of the River *Ommiraby*; *Azamor*, with a fine Harbour, formerly under the Dominion of the Portuguese, but afterwards recover'd by the Moors, and now almost reduc'd to a Village. The Towns of *Subeit*; *Tenerrace*; *Torpum*; and *Bahlabin* follow in Order, on the left side of the *Ommiraby*.

After having describ'd the Maritim Provinces, we proceed to those of the inland Country, and first to that of *Guzula*, which is the most Southern of all; bordering on the West, upon *Sus*; on the South, upon *Tesjer*; and on the East, upon *Darha*. This Province is water'd by the upper Part of the River *Sus*, and its Towns are destitute of Walls and Ramparts: But there are many large, rich and populous Villages, wherein Fairs are kept every Year, to which the Africans resort in great numbers. The Inhabitants are said to be slow and stupid, but they are very dextrous in making Iron tools.

The Province of *Morocco* properly so call'd, is situated on the North of *Guzula*, and separated from *Hea*, by the River *Asinnual*; as also from *Duccala* and *Hascora*, by that of *Teniffi*: It is justly reputed the principal Part of the Kingdom, being very well cultivated, and abounding with all sorts of Cattel. The most eminent Towns are *Delgumha*; *Tenmella*, on a Mountain of the same Name; *Imegiagen*, or *Imogiagen* likewise on a steep Mountain; *Elgiemha*, a strong Town on the River *Seisava*; *Tumeglafa*; *Sefrata*; and *Morocco*, seated in the middle, between the Rivulet *Niffi*, or *Nefri*, and the Town of *Azmet*, in a very inclosed and verdant Plain; the Royal Seat and Metropolis not only of this Province, but also of the whole Kingdom, on which it has impos'd its Name. This City (as *Leo Africanus* expresses it) was heretofore of an incredible largeness, containing above 100000 Houses, and 24 or 25 Gates: it is encompass'd with a very thick and high Wall full of Towers, and adorn'd with most artificial and magnificent Temples, or Mosques, besides a large and most strongly fortify'd Castle; so that if its Walls, Marble Gates and Compass be duly consider'd, it may well be taken for a distinct Town. However, a great part



part of the City at present lies wast, and among the Ruins of the Houses are to be seen Palm-tree Groves, spacious Gardens, and very fruitful Corn-fields; in regard that it is unsafe to till the Ground, without the Walls, by reason of the frequent incursions of the Arabians. *Morocco* is also inhabited by *Jews*, and several Authors suppose it to be the same with *Ptolemy's Bocanum Hemerum*. *Bunno* assures us, That the Arts of Grammar, Poetry, Astronomy, and the Knowledge of the Laws of this Nation flourish there, and that the Youth frequently repair thither, from all the Parts of *Barbary*, to follow their Studies. The City of *Morocco* is distant 165 Miles Eastward from the Coasts of the Atlantick Sea, 15 Leagues Southward from *Fez*, as many from *Toradant*, and 107 Spanish Leagues from the Strait of *Gibraltar*. The Town of *Agmet*, appears farther on the South-East, and was formerly much more noted than it is at this day.

The Province of *Hascora* lyes next to *Morocco*, between the Rivers *Tensift* and *Quad-el-habid*. The Women hereabouts are beautiful, and apt to fall in Love with Strangers. The most considerable Places are *Beza*, or *Bzo*, a Mart-Town; *Elginubha*, on a Mountain; *Tagodast*, or *Tegodast*, a Mart, built likewise on an high Hill; and *Elmadin*, the Capital, a noted and most populous Mart-Town, situated farthest towards the North, and on the Frontiers of *Duccala*.

The Province of *Tedles* is the most Eastern of all, and remarkable for its Situation between the River *Quad-el-habid*, on the West; and *Segelomeffa*, a Province of *Biledulgerid*, on the East. Its Towns are *Eihial*; *Cirhiteb*; and *Efza*, seated on Hills; *Tezza*, a very wealthy Town, and the chief of the Province, on the River *Derna*; and *Tedza*, in a mountainous Tract, near the Confines of *Segelmeffa*.

## CHAP. XVII.

### The Kingdom of FEZ.

I.  
Fez K.

THE other Kingdom of *Barbary*, wash'd by the Atlantick Sea, is *Fez*, being the most Northern of all, and the nearest to *Europe*. Its Bounds on the West, are the same Atlantick Ocean; on the North, the Strait of *Gibraltar*, and the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the East, the Kingdom of *Alger*, from which it is separated by the Rivers *Malzia* and *Zhu*; and on the South *Segelmeffa*, Part of *Biledulgerid*, and the Kingdom of *Morocco*; being dis sever'd from the former by Mount *Atlas*, and from the other by the River *Ommiraby*. The Kingdom of *Fez* is the best cultivated and most populous of all those of *Barbary*; abounding with Hills and Valleys; neither is there any want of Champain Grounds. The Soil brings forth great store of Corn, with several sorts of Fruit, particularly, Apples, Pears, Plums, Grapes and Figs. The Weather during the Summer-season is hot, calm and serene.

II.

The Provinces of this Kingdom, which is likewise subject to the King of *Morocco*, are seven in number, viz. *Temefna*, *Fez*, *Azgar*, *Hibat*, *Erfif*, *Chaus* and *Garet*; the four first constituting its Western Part, and the rest the Southern. All the Provinces of the Western Part are maritim, and wash'd by the Atlantick Sea, and the fourth also by the Strait of *Gibraltar* and the *Mediterranean* Sea.

III.  
Temef-  
na P.

The Province of *Temefna* extends itself from the River *Ommiraby* its Southern Boundary, to the River *Buragrag*, on the North, and from the Atlantick Sea to Mount *Atlas*: The Country is champain and fruitful, nevertheless there are several Desarts that afford Lurking-places to most fierce Lions and Leopards; insomuch, that Travellers cannot pass but in Companies, and some are oblig'd to keep watch in the night, lest the wild Beasts should set upon them as they lye asleep and tear them into Peices: Tortoise are also to be found throughout this Province, the inland Towns of which are *Tegagit*, on the River

*Ommiraby*; *Thagit*: *Adendum*, with a Territorie noted for its Iron-mines; and *Hainelchalla*. On or near the Sea-coasts appear *Beniz*; *Elcoffar*; *Anta*; *Fedolla*; *Soncia*; *Almansor*; *Rotim*; and *Rabat*, built on a Hill, between the River *Buragrag* and the Sea-shore: This Town was formerly in a more flourishing Condition than it is at present, and is still taken by some for the Capital of the Province.

From *Temefna*, a direct Passage lyes open to the Province of *Fez*, situated between the Rivers *Buragrag* and *Suba*: its Extent being narrow on the Sea-coasts, but a great deal wider in the inland Territories. The Air is very temperate, and the Country abounds with Horses, Sheep, Goats, Kids and Hares. The most remarkable Sea-port Towns are *Mahmora*, with a capacious Harbour on the Mouth of the *Suba*; *Tefelfelta*; and *Sala*, or *Salle*, at the influx of the *Buragrag*, with a Castle, on an Hill, a Mart-Town formerly of greater Repute than it now is: The Harbour is choak'd up with Sand by little and little, and the Inhabitants are infamous for their living altogether by Piracy and Rapine. The inland Towns are *Fanzar*; *Gualil*; *Mechnes*; *Zavia*; *Magbill*; and *Fez*, suppos'd to be the *Volubilis*, or *Volubile* of the Ancients; not only the Metropolis of this Province, but also of the Kingdom, and even of the whole Continent of *Barbary*. The River *Fez* runs through the middle of it (according to several Relations) but *M. Baudrand* and *La Robbe* will have it seated on the Pearl-Rivulet, at the distance of 100 Miles Westward from the Coasts of the Ocean, as many Southward from the *Mediterranean* Sea, and 150 from *Tanger*; as also 100 Leagues Northward from the City of *Morocco*; about 40 from *Tetuan*. This City is of a prodigious Extent, in form of a long Square; and its high Walls are flank'd on all sides with numerous Towers; it is said to contain 86 Gates, 200 large Streets, 700 Temples, or *Mosques*; of which, 60

IV.  
Fez P.



are elegant Structures, 42 Market-places, and 650 Springs and Wells: besides many Hospitals and Colleges, in which Arts and Sciences are taught in the Arabick Language: a vast number of Houses and Shops belonging to Merchants and Tradersmen: and other stately Buildings both publick and private: Insomuch that it may well be reputed the chiefest Ornament of *Africa*, and one of the most magnificent Cities of the whole World: although others give it out, that its Grandeur has been much diminished for many Years, and that it is still falling to decay.

V. After having pass'd through *Fez*, we come to the Province of *Ajgar*, or *Azgar*, which enjoys a wholesome Air, abounds with Woods and most verdant Pastures, and affords great store of Cotton. In the maritim Tract are several Pools and Marines, that breed numerous Schools of Fish. The chief Towns of this Province are *Elgimma*, the Granary of the Arabians: *Chen*, or *Chen-Elschir*; and *Polemeys Lixa*, or *Poleys Lixa*, now call'd *Lorache*, or *Arache* by the Europeans, and *Arach* by the Africans. Heretofore a very large City, where (as they say) was the Royal Court of *Amazus* that Libyan Giant, whom *Hercules* put to death, and the Gardens of *Hesperides* so much celebrated for their golden Groves, which others place in the Province *Grenata*, not far from the Town of *Borcia*. *Lorache* is at present reputed the Capital Town of *Azgar*, and fenced with a Castle, as also a convenient Harbour on the Mouth of the River *Lixus*, or *Lix*, and the Coast of the Atlantick Sea. The Spaniards made themselves Masters of this Place A. D. 1617, but it was lately retaken by the Emperor of *Morocco*.

VI. *Habz*, call'd *Elcham* by *Herodotus*, and *Hubar* by M. *Baudrand*, is of a great deal larger Compass than *Azgar*; being the most Northern of all the Provinces of the Kingdom of *Fez*, and only separated from *Spain* by the Strait of *Gibraltar*: It extends itself farthest between the Province of *Fez* and the said Strait, takes up a much less space from East to West, and is narrowest in the Southern Part, and in that which lyes next to the Strait: So that it is wash'd on the West, by the Atlantick Ocean; on the North, by the Strait; and on the East, by the *Mediterranean* Sea. It has the advantage of a fruitful Soil, and of several considerable Towns, viz. *Zaza*, or *Zama*, now call'd *Abilla* by *Marmel* and other Authors, a strong hold, seated on a Bay of the Atlantick Sea, and (as M. *Baudrand* says) subject to the King of *Fez*: And *Tingi*, or *Tingis*, supposed to have been first founded by the Giant *Amazus*, from which *Mawiantia Tingiana*, and *Frem Tingianum* deriv'd their ancient Denominations: It is now known by the Name of *Tanger*, and situated on a Bay of the Strait of *Gibraltar*, in a sandy and barren Territory. The Portuguese took this Town from the Moors, under the Conduct of their King *Alonso V.* A. D. 1471, but it was granted in 1662 as a Dowry to *Isabelle Infanta of Portugal*, upon her Marriage with *Charles II.* King of *England*, who caus'd it to be well furnished with two Castles, and a new Mold of free Stone, built in the Harbour: But all these Works were afterwards demolished with the Town, by the Order of the same Prince.

The other noted Places, are *Casr*, *Ezzagar*, on the Eastern Bay of the Strait, at present in

the Possession of the Spaniards. *Teteguin*, *Teguan*, or *Tetuan*, a neat and strong Town, in the inland Country: And *Cema*, anciently *Septa*, seated on an Hill, that was heretofore call'd *Septem Fratres*, i. e. *The seven Brothers* (according to *Pliny* and *Mela*) from the number and likeness of its Hills: It is a little Town, but very remarkable for its Fortifications, and the vigorous Defence it has made for several Years against the continual Attacks of the Moors: It stands on the Eastern Coast of the Strait, where it is narrowest, near Mount *Abila*, or *Aisbe*, which is now call'd *La Sierra de Las Monas* by the Spaniards, as also *Il monte delle Simie*, i. e. *The Apes Mountain*, by the Italians, and was suppos'd by the Ancients to be one of *Hercules's* Pillars. The Town of *Cema* was taken from the Moors, by *John* King of *Portugal* A. D. 1479, but has been united to the Kingdom of *Castile* in *Spain*, ever since the Portuguese shook off the Spanish Yoke, and chose a new King of their own Nation: It has a large Harbour on the Strait, and is distant 36 Miles from *Tanger*, as also 37 Leagues from *Velez*, a Town of the next Province.

VII. From the Western Part of the Kingdom of *Fez*, we pass to the Eastern, and there enter the Province of *Errif*, which borders upon *Habat*, and extends itself along the Coasts of the *Mediterranean* Sea, between the Rivers *Gomer* and *Nocor*. It is beset with Woods, high Mountains and Desarts, and produces good store of Fruit, particularly Grapes, Figs, Olives and Almonds, with Pastures for numerous Herds of Goats, Kids, Asses and Apes. Its Towns, for the most part, are either maritim or near the Sea-coasts, and the most eminent of them are *Gomer*, which some take for the Capital; *Tetomella*; *Nevayalla*; *Terga*, on the Mouth of the *Chor*; *Silguiz*, on the opposite side of the same River; *Jeris*; *Beli*, or *Belis*; *Velez*; *Pennon de Velez*, i. e. *The Rock of Velez*, a Fort built by the Spaniards on an Island, near that Town, with a good Harbour; *Tegassa*; *Mezemma*, on the Mouth of the *Nocor*, sometime a large and populous City; and *Gusevala*, in the inland Country at a great distance from the Sea.

VIII. Next to *Errif*, on the South and West, lyes *Cham*, otherwise call'd *Elcham*, the largest of all the Provinces of *Fez*; taking up above a third Part of the Kingdom, and abounding with Mountains, Hills and Desarts. The Rivers *Nocor* and *Mulvia* have their Rise in this Province, in which the following Places of Note are comprehended, viz. *Tezza* the Metropolis, a large and magnificent City, one of the most eminent of the whole Kingdom; *Siroa*; *Aenibachlul*; and *Hamilifnan*, on the Confines of *Fez*: *Mabdia*; *Dubdu*; and *Haddaggia*, on the River *Mulvia*: *Teurent*, in an hilly Country, on the Rivulet *Zhus*; and *Garfis* on the *Mulvia*.

IX. It remains only to give an Account of *Garet*, the seventh and last Province of the Kingdom of *Fez*, which is one of the least, and remarkable for its Situation, in the middle between *Cham* the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the Rivers *Nocor* and *Mulvia*. It is altogether dry, sandy, mountainous, barren, and full of Desarts, where Passengers are much infested by wild Beasts, but it affords most excellent Iron-Mines. The Sea-port Towns are *Tarjmagel*; *Feris*; *Alondia*, near which lyes



lyes the most Northern Promontory, call'd *El Cabo de tres Forcas*, i. e. *The Cape of three Forks*: *Melilla*, or *Melela*, the Capital, with a fine Harbour, in the Possession of the Spaniards, *Chafaja*,

which (according to M. *Sanfon*) is likewise annex'd to the Spanish Dominions; and *Jaffarin*, near the Mouth of the *Mulvia*, on the borders of the Kingdom of *Algier*.

C H A P. XVIII.

*The Kingdom of ALGIER.*

I.  
Algier  
Kingd.

**A**MONG the Kingdoms of *Barbary* that are seated on the *Mediterranean Sea*, that of *Algier* presents itself first to our View; its utmost Boundary on the North, being the *Mediterranean Sea*, from the Mouth of the River *Mulvia*, to that of the *Guad. barbar*: on the East, the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the South, Proper *Biledulgerid*, with the Provinces of *Zeb*, *Tegorarin* and *Segelmessa*; separated by Mount *Atlas*; and on the West the Kingdom of *Fez*, from which it is dis- sever'd by the Rivers *Zbas* and *Mulvia*.

II. It is extended very far from West to East, that is to say, from the 15th. to the 28th. Degree of Longitude; but its greatest Breadth does not amount to four Degrees. This Country is beset with high Mountains, more especially on the South, in which are contain'd the richest Metals, particularly Gold, Silver, and Iron, with Caves and Lurking-Places for a vast number of wild Beasts; neither is there any want of Desarts. In other Parts, the Soil is very fertile, and water'd by many Rivers; producing the best sorts of Fruit, with Corn, Honey and Wax: The Sea-coasts likewise afford plenty of Coral.

III.  
Telenfin  
Prov.

The Kingdom of *Algier*, being very potent, and most infamous for Piracy, is usually divided into five Provinces, viz. *Telenfin*, *Teneza*, *Gezaira*, *Bugia*, and *Constantine*. The Province of *Telenfin*, or *Teleffin*, the most Western of all; dignify'd with the Title of a Kingdom, is bounded on the West by the Territories of *Fez*, and on the East, by those of *Teneza*: Its chief Towns seated on or near the Sea-coasts are, *Humain*, with a convenient Harbour, where the adjacent Country brings forth abundance of Cotton, Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranates, and Figgs; *Telenfin*, otherwise call'd *Tremisen*, or *Tremecen*, and heretofore *Tenisa*, the Metropolis of a Kingdom of the same Name, built on the left side of the River *Sefis*, or *Teffis*, not far from its Mouth; formerly a very large and magnificent City, but its Grandeur has been lately much impair'd by most violent Wars: *Mantlquibir*, or *Marfa-el-quibir*, under the Jurisdiction of the Spaniards: *Oran*, or *Orano*, nam'd *Gubaran* by the Africans, a little Town on a rugged Hill or Rock, fenc'd with a strong Castle, and a capacious and safe Harbour: It was taken by the Spaniards under the conduct of Cardinal *Ximenes*, A. D. 1579, and still continues in their Possession: And *Mazagran*, or *Mesgran*, defended likewise with a Fort, on the Sea-shore.

IV.  
Teneza  
P.

The Province of *Teneza* being of a lesser Compass, lyes between the Rivers *Sites* and *Mirom*, the former separating it from *Telenfin*, and the other from *Gezaira*: The Towns of Note near the Sea-coasts are *Mustugan*, a Town situated at

a little distance from the Mouth of the *Setes*, which some suppose to be the same with the *Cartenna* of *Mela* and *Antonius*: *Tadra*; *Tenez*, or *Tenes*, a well fortify'd Town with a good Harbour, that has impos'd its Name on the whole Province, and on the neighbouring Promontory: It is taken by M. *Sanfon* for *Julia Casarea*, the Capital of *Mauritania Caesarionis*, built by King *Juba*, which was at first call'd *Jol*, and afterwards had its Name chang'd in Honour of *Julius Caesar*: *Aochar*; *Brischa*; *Marfolach*; *Sersel*, or *Sercilly*; and *Meliana*, seated on an Hill, and on the left side of the River *Mirom*, in the inland Country, abounding with Springs and Nur-tices.

*Gezaira*, or Proper *Algier*, remarkable for its Situation in the middle of the five Provinces of *Gezaira* this Kingdom, is enclos'd within the Rivers *Mirom*, on the West; and *Major*, on the East. The most considerable inland Town of this Province is *Mazura*, seated on the right side of the *Mirom*: Near the Sea-coasts appear *Miroma*, or *Maroma*; *Caxima*; and *Algier*, commonly call'd *Gezaira* by the Arabians, *Alger* by the French, *Algiori* by the Italians, and *Argel* by the Spaniards. Several Authors suppose it to be the same with *Julia Casarea*, but M. *Sanfon* is of a different Opinion, attributing that ancient Name to *Tenez* (as it has been hinted a little before) and taking *Ruscurnum*, or *Pliny's Ruscurnum* for *Algier*. However this City is very wealthy and potent, and reputed the Metropolis not only of the Province of *Gezaira*, but also of the whole Kingdom. It began to decay at first under King *Telenfinus*, and became tributary to the King of *Bugie*; afterwards it fell into the Possession of *Ferdinand* surnam'd the Catholick, King of *Spain*: At last it was taken by *Barbarossa* the Arch-pirate, and united to the Ottoman Empire. It is situated at the Mouth of the River *Sefia*, on the foot of a Mountain, and rises up by degrees, from the Sea-coast, along its steep side, in form of a Theater; the more remote Edifices far surpassing in Grandeur, those that are built near the Shore. It extends itself on all sides almost in a square Figure, and is most strongly fortify'd with a broad, thick and high Wall; deep Ditches, but for the most part, destitute of Water, Ramparts, Castles, Towers, several Peices of Ordinance, and a considerable Garison. It has also the advantage of an excellent Harbour, and contains about fifteen thousand Houses, some of which are more especially remarkable for their Stateliness; besides above 100 Temples, or *Mosques*, with a great number of hot Baths and Springs; but the Streets are very narrow. The Inhabitants are extremely numerous, among whom are many *Fanizaries*, and their Government comes near that of a Commonwealth,



Wealth, under the Protection of the Grand Signior, whose arbitrary Injunctions nevertheless, they are oblig'd to observe. This Place is well known to be a nest of the most notorious Pirates of *Barbary*, where many thousands of Christians are always imprison'd, and undergo the severest Slavery. The Emperor *Charles V.* endeavour'd to make himself Master of it, *A. D.* 1541, but lost a great Fleet in the Attempt, by a violent and continual Storm at Sea. *Algier* is distant 30 Leagues Westward from *Bugia*, and about 30 from *Tenez*.

The Territory without the Walls of *Algier*, is diversify'd with numerous Hills and Valleys that are extremely delightful and verdant, abounding with all sorts of Fruit-Trees, particularly most admirable Vines. The other Towns of the Province of *Gezara* on the West of *Algier*, are, *Temenis*, or *Temenis*, with a good Harbour; *Merrina*; *Tedile*; *Beregnia*; *Gard*; *Zagho*; *Carbena*; and *Gema*, on the left side of the River *Marr*, at a great distance from the Sea-coasts.

VI. The Province of *Bugia*, lies next to *Gezara* in the middle, between the River *Marr* on the West, and *Constantina* on the East. Its Inland Towns on the River *Marr*, are *Lebez*, in a mountainous Tract of difficult Access; *Naz*, and *Mell*. As also, *Sessa*, a pretty City, the Mountain City of *Marmara* *Suena*, on the River *Marmara*. On, or near the Sea-coasts, the following Towns present themselves to our View, viz. *Bona*, the Capital of this Province, which is commonly taken for ancient *Sidra*; seated on the Mouth of the River *Marr*, and the innermost recess of the Bay of *Bugia*, with a capacious Harbour; *Gema*; *Ballana*; *Gergel*, otherwise call'd *Gigen* and *Gigani*; as also heretofore *Iugum*, or *Iulghum*, with a little Haven, which the French seiz'd on, *A. D.* 1602, but were expell'd by the *Mor* the same Year; *Giberamel*; *Sucabrad*; and *Cele*, formerly known

by the Names of *Cally*, *Callus* and *Collops Magnus*.

The Fifth, or last Province of the Kingdom of *Algier*, and the most Eastern of all is *Constantina*, *Constantina P.* which others term the Kingdom of *Constantina*, as having been sometime govern'd by its own Prince: Its most eminent Sea-Port Towns are, *Sora*, the *Ruscada*, or *Ruscada*, of *Pliny* and *Mela*; situated on a Bay of the same Name, with a spacious Harbour; *Mabra*; *Hippon*, or *Hippo*, nam'd *Regius*, or the Royal, heretofore a large City, and an Episcopal See, which was a long time possess'd by St. *Augustine*: It is at present call'd *Bona*, and stand on a Bay to which it has communicated its Name, being reduc'd to a little ill-built Town; but it is Fortify'd, and has the Advantage of a convenient Harbour, with a Fort built on an Hill: *Morzacaris*; *Tabraca*, *Tabracha*, *Thabraca*, or *Tabakra*, now commonly styl'd *Tabarca*, a Village with a Cattle and Haven, on the Mouth of the River *Gualilbarbar*, near the Borders of the Kingdom of *Tunis*, over against which appears the Island of *Tabarca*, at a little distance from the Continent; where is to be found Coral of divers Colours.

In passing thro' the inland Part of *Constantina*, we meet with *Milezum*, or *Milevis*, where a Council was held, in which St. *Augustine* presided: It is now reputed by several Authors, the same with *Mela*, on the River *Sufegmar*, not far from the Frontiers of *Bugia*. A little higher, on the opposite side of the same River, *Constantina* appears a large Town, the Capital of the Kingdom, and remarkable for its Situation on a Mountain: Some take it for the *Cirta*, or *Cirta* *Falsa* of the Antients; but others are of Opinion, that the latter was nearer to the Sea-coasts, than Modern *Constantina*: The other Places of Note, are *Tifaja*, or *Tifaja*, likewise built on a Mountain; and *Tebeja* on the River *Magrad*, in the Confines of the Kingdom of *Tunis*; the Walls, Springs and Nut-Trees, of which are much commended.

## C H A P. XIX.

### The Kingdoms of TUNIS and TRIPOLI.

I. FROM the Kingdom of *Algier*, we pass over to that of *Tunis*, which is bounded on the West by the Province of *Constantina*, on the North by the Mediterranean Sea, on the East by a Gulph of it, heretofore nam'd *Syris parva*, *sen Minor*, and now *Sinus Capus*, in French *Le Golfe de Capus*, and the River *Capus*, or *Capes*, which separates it from the Kingdom of *Tripoli*; and on the South, by Proper *Biledulgerid*.

II. The Kingdom of *Tunis* reaches from West to East, for the space of about three Degrees, and more than four from South to North; so that its Extent is a great deal less than that of the Kingdom of *Algier*. The Shores are very full of Bays, and the principal Rivers are, the *Gualilbarbar*, the winding Course of which is very wonderful, the *Magrad* and the *Capes*; this Kingdom formerly extended it self farther than it now

does, and was subject to its own Princes. Moreover, several Islands that lye over against its Northern and Eastern Coasts, depend on its Jurisdiction, but it is requisite at first to take a particular View of the Continent.

The Inland Towns of these Parts are, *Beija*, seated in a most pleasant Plain that is very fruitful of Corn; *Hamsami*; *Musfi*, on the River *Gualilbarbar*; *Urbs*, or *Arches*, in a fertile Country; *Camuda*, on the Borders of the Province of *Constantina*; *Marmagen*, on the River *Magrad*; *Baghani*; *Hama*; *Techios*; *Niofa*, *Nafsa*; *Capsa*, or *Cassa*, formerly a Bishop's See; *Meschianha*; *Cayroan*, in a barren Tract lying near the Mountains, and destitute of Water; *Guselet*; and *Zaghoan*.

The most eminent Sea-Port Towns of the Kingdom of *Tunis*, are *Asacusa*; *Africa*, or *El Media*, with a large Harbour, the Entrance into which



is but narrow; *Monaiera*, or *Lempta* (according to *Arabs Nubiensis*) heretofore call'd *Leptis Parva*, or *Lepie Minus*, and now not well inhabited; *Susa*, antiently *Ruspina*, a neat Mart-Town built partly on a Rock, with a convenient Harbour; where the adjacent Territory abounds with Pastures, and brings forth great Store of Barley, Figs, Olives and Quinces: *Eractia*; *Hammamet*, or *Mahimetta*, a considerable Mart, formerly known by the name of *Adrumetum*; and *Tunis*, call'd *Tunes*, *Tunis* and *Tunicense Oppidum*, by the Antients, which several Authors take for the *Thinissa*, or *Thamisa* of *Ptolemy*; sometime a Royal Seat, and still the Metropolis of a Kingdom of the same Name, which upon failure of the Royal Progeny, became a kind of Commonwealth, under the Protection of the *Turks*, ever since the Year 1570: So that their Power being almost absolute, they chose a General, or Governour, commonly call'd the *Dey*; who constitutes all the *Cadis*, or Judges, and has the management of all Civil and Criminal Affairs. The Town of *Tunis* is seated on the innermost Creek of the Bay of *Goletta*, otherwise call'd *Barbasucco*, at the distance of nine Miles from the Coasts of the Mediterranean Sea, and 18 from *Goletta*: It was at first of a small Extent, and owes its Rise to the Ruins of *Carthage*; but it now takes up (as some say) a little Mile in compass, and its Figure, excluding the Castle, resembles that of a long Square: The Streets are narrow, but there are many fine Mosques, Hospitals, Colleges for the use of Students, maintain'd out of the Publick Revenues, and Market-Places; altho' their Number is now a great deal less than it was in former times. To these Buildings is added, a strong Castle on an Hill, and two Suburbs, besides several stately Tombs adorn'd with Marble, and pleasant Gardens round about the Town; which nevertheless, has not the advantage of any River, Spring, or Pit of sweet Water, and is only furnish'd with Cisterns. The Inhabitants, who frequently exercise Piracy, are *Moors*, *Turks*, *Jews* and *Slaves* of divers Nations. This Place is famous for the defeat of the Antient *Romans* by the *Carthaginians*, with the Auxiliary Forces of *Xanthippus* the *Lacedæmonian*, when *Marcus Atilius Regulus* was taken Prisoner; as also for the Death of *St. Lewis* King of *France*, which happen'd whilst he was besieging it, *A. D.* 1270.

On the North of *Tunis*, and on the Straight of the Gulph which lyes before that Town, appears the strong Fort of *Goletta*, the Key of *Tunis*, noted for the Expedition of the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, who made himself Master of both, *A. D.* 1535; not far from thence stood *Carthage*, heretofore a most renowned City, founded by the *Phenicians*, and more antient than *Rome*, with the Citadel of *Byrsa*, built in the middle by Queen *Dido*, which is reported to have taken up the space of two Miles, that is to say, as much ground as could be encompass'd with an Oxhide cut into Thongs. This City, in process of time, became so extremely opulent and powerful, that it strove for the Mastery, even with *Rome* it self, subdu'd a considerable Part of *Africa*, extended its Dominion thro' *Spain*, and maintain'd a continual War with *Italy*, *Sardinia* and *Sicily*: But these over-eager Attempts

to enlarge its Territories, at last procur'd its Destruction; for after the third *Punic* War, *Scipio Æmilianus*, raz'd it even with the Ground: It was rebuilt by *Julius Cæsar*, and afterwards at several times miserably laid waste, by the *Goths*, *Vandals* and *Saracens*: So that now it lyes altogether bury'd in its Ruins, which are scatter'd far and near, and call'd *Barsack* by the Inhabitants of those Parts. The other noted Places are, *Bensert*, so nam'd by the Inhabitants and *Arabians*; as also *Biserta* by the *Italians*, and *Biserte* by the *French*, which several Authors suppose to be the same with *Utica* of the Antients, that was reputed the most eminent City of *Africa* after *Carthage*, where *Cato* died, who was thence surnam'd *Uticensis*, altho' a Roman by Extraction; being still a large and well-built Town, seated on the Bay, on which it has impos'd its Name: And *Rasamilar*, a considerable Town, farther towards the West.

There are certain little Islands situated at a greater or lesser distance from the Coast, which now belong to the Kingdom of *Tunis*, or at least sometime depended on its Jurisdiction. The chief of these on the North, are *Galata*, or *La Galata*, nam'd *Calathe* by *Ptolemy*, the most Western Isle of all, taking up 10 Miles in compass; and *Zimbala*, on the West of Cape *Bona*. On the East are, *Panthalarea*, or *Pantalarea*, antiently *Cossyra*, or *Cossura*, about 30 Miles in compass, which formerly belong'd to the Kingdom of *Tunis*, but was united to that of *Spain*, *A. D.* 1620, under the Government of the Family of *Requesens*, and dignify'd with the Title of a Principality; an Island destitute of Corn and sweet Water, being almost altogether Mountainous, and abounding with a kind of rough black Stone; in which is a little Town of the same Name, with a Castle; containing about 600 Inhabitants, who generally speak the *Arabick* Language: And *Melita*, or *Malta*, which was likewise subject to the Kingdom of *Tunis*; but it has been already describ'd in treating of *Europe*; altho' many antient Authors and several modern ones, have attributed it to *Africa*: And the rather, for that this Island lying nearer to *Sicily*, which is refer'd to *Europē*, than to *Africa*; it was for a long time annex'd to the Dominions of the former Continent, and is still possess'd by the Knights of *St. John* of *Jerusalem*, who own themselves to be Subjects to the King of *Spain*. The other Isles are situated nearer to the Territories of *Tunis*, viz. *Limosa*, or *Limoza*, which some take for antient *Æthusa*; *Lopedusa*, or *Lampedusa*, extending it self 15 Miles in compass; famous for the Devotions usually paid by Roman Catholick Sea-men to the Virgin *Mary*; and for the Shipwreck which the Spanish Fleet under the Emperour *Charles* V. suffer'd there, *A. D.* 1551: And more especially, *Cherchara* and *Gamelera*, at the Entrance of the Gulph of *Capes*.

In returning to the Continent, the Kingdom of *Tripoli* presents it self next to our View, which (according to the common Estimation) is bounded on the North by the Mediterranean Sea, and *Syrtis Major*, or the Gulph of *Sidra*, a spacious Gulph and very formidable to Mariners; on the East, by the Kingdom and Desert of *Barca*; on the South, by Proper *Biledulgerid*; and on the West, by the River *Gaps*, and *Syrtis Minor*,



*Misra*, or the Gulph of *Capes*, which separates it from the Kingdom of *Tunis*. Some Geographers extend the Borders of this Kingdom, which sometime constituted a Part of that of *Tunis*, as far as *Egypt*, so as to comprehend the Kingdom of *Barca*, of which we shall hereafter make a particular Description.

VII. The Kingdom of *Tripoli* is situated between the 30 and 39th Degree of Longitude: but its breadth even where it is widest, scarce exceeds two Degrees, and in some Places is a great deal lesser, more especially in the Eastern and Western Parts. The Maritime Tracts are best cultivated, and those that are remote from the Sea, are more barren and desert. The Towns being few in number, are partly seated on the higher side of the River of *Tripoli*, and partly beyond it: so that this River divides the whole Kingdom into its Western and Eastern Parts; the former being the lesser, and the other of a larger Extent.

VIII. In passing thro' the Western Part, on the higher side of the River *Tripoli*, along the Sea-coasts, we meet with *Capes*, or *Cari*, antiently call'd *Targre*, and afterwards *Caria* by modern Latin Writers: a well fortified Town, built on the Mouth of the River *Capes*, and the innermost Bay of the Gulph, on which it has impos'd its Name, with a little Harbour that is dangerous, and incapable of holding Ships of a large size: *Mazra*: *Girba*, in Italian *Gerbi*, call'd *Lecopagus* by *Polemon*, *Mirmex* by *Polibius*, and *Meninx* by *Pliny* and *Strabo*; a little Island situated on the Mouth of the Gulph of *Capes*, so near to the Kingdom of *Tripoli*, that one may pass into it on foot, and at high Tide, over a wooden Bridge. The Spaniards took possession of it in the Sixteenth Century, but were afterwards expell'd by the *Turks*, with a very great Slaughter: It is well built, and has a Town with a Castle of the same Name.

The other Towns on the Continent, are *Charrah*: *Priaca*: *Gara*: *Palmona*: *Zorra*, in a very barren Territory: *Calorula*: *Tripoli Vecchia*, or *Old Tripoli*, heretofore known by the Names of

*Sabrana* and *Sababna*, but now reduc'd to a Village, not much frequented by reason of the unwholesomeness of the Air: *Zaviaz*; and *Tripolis*, or *Tripoli*, so nam'd (according to *Solinus*) from the three Towns of *Taphra*, *Abatonum*, and *Lepis Magna*, the Inhabitants of which agreed together to lay its Foundation: It is also call'd *Nax Tripoli*, and *Tripoli of Barbary*, to distinguish it from another Town of the same Name in *Syria*, and stands on the Mouth of the River of *Tripoli*: It is surrounded with a high Wall, and fortified with Towers and Ramparts. Its compass is not very large; nevertheless it is a populous, well-built and noted Mart-Town, and the Capital of the whole Kingdom. Its Inhabitants are no less famous, or rather infamous for Piracy, than those of *Tunis*, *Algiers*, *Salle*, and other Ports of *Barbary*. The Town of *Tripoli* was taken by the Spaniards, *A. D.* 1510, and granted in 1525 to the Knights of *Rhodes*, of the Order of *St. John of Jerusalem*; afterwards it was subdu'd by the *Turks*, and continu'd for a long time in their Possession: At this day it is almost a free State, retaining the form of a Commonwealth, and only owns the Grand Signior for its Protector. The following Towns of note are situated at a greater distance from the Sea-Coasts, viz. *El-hamma*, on the right side of the River *Capes*, not far from its Mouth; *Gargara*; *Sarmana Zanzora*; and *Himroz* above *Tripoli*, at a little distance from the Mouth of the River of the same Name.

In the Eastern Part, or beyond the River *Tripoli*, near the Coasts of the Mediterranean Sea, are *Rasaxarra*: *Teffut*; *Ragamilar*; *Lcbeda*, otherwise call'd *Lebida*, *Lepeda*, and sometimes *Neapolis*, which *Mercator* and others suppose to be the same with *Lepis Magna*; *Brata*, and *Merrazo*: On the Gulph of *Sidra* appear *Casracmed*; *Colbena*; *Silinas*; *Zelico*: *Sabeico* alias *Sabeico* and *Sabeico*; *Naima*, or *Taini*; and *L'Arcutia*, over-against which, at a little distance from the Continent, lyes the Island of *Sydra*, or *Sitra*, from whence this Gulph derives its modern Name.

## CHAP. XX.

### The Kingdom of BARCA.

I. **O**F the six Kingdoms into which we have divided the whole Continent of *Barbary*, that of *Barca* only remains to be accounted for: being the most Eastern of all, and enlarged so far by some Geographers, as to include the Desert of *Barca*: which we have thought fit to place within the Limits of *Biledulgerid*: So that this Kingdom (according to our Determination) is bounded on the West, by that of *Tripoli* and the Gulph of *Sidra*; on the North, by the Mediterranean Sea; on the East, by *Egypt*; and on the South, by the Desert of *Barca*.

II. The Soil is rocky, sandy, dry, extremely barren and untill'd, and the whole Country is subject to the Dominion of the *Turks*; constituting a part of the general Government of *Cairo*; as it

has been already observ'd in treating of that of *Egypt*. The Inhabitants profess the Mahometan Religion.

The Kingdom of *Barca* may be conveniently divided into the Western and Eastern Parts: The former being more eminent and less barren than the other, lyes between the Kingdom of *Tripoli* and the River *Nachel*, and is also water'd by the Rivers *Doer*, *Alelel*, and *Salinas*, which take their Rise in the Desert of *Barca*. The most remarkable inland Towns, are *Barca* the Capital, which has impos'd its Name on the whole Kingdom; where a Turkish *Sangiack* usually keeps his Court: And *Grene*, heretofore a magnificent City that ryed with *Carchage*, and was founded (as some say) by King *Battus*, *A. M.* 3563, *A. U.*



A. U. 143; taking its Name from *Cyrene*, the Daughter of *Peneus*, which it communicated to the Country of *Cyrenaica*: It is now commonly call'd *Cairoan* and *Corene*, and stands on the left side of the River *Doer*, not very far from its Mouth; at the distance of 32 Miles from the Coast of the Mediterranean Sea, and 25 French Leagues Northward from *Barca*.

The chief Towns near the Sea-coasts, are *Ber-nick* on the Gulph of *Sidra*, antiently *Berenice*, so nam'd from Queen *Berenice*, the Wife of *Ptolemy III.* King of *Egypt*; where *Ptolemy* the Geographer, and *Pliny*, place the Gardens of *Hesperides*: *Arsinoe*, otherwise call'd *Tenchira*, and at this day, *Taochara*, or *Trochara*: *Ptolemais*, or *Tolometa*, deriving its Name from its Founder King *Ptolemy*; at present only a Village with an Harbour: And *Apollonia*, now call'd *Bon Andrea*, seated a great deal farther Eastward in the middle between the Rivers *Doer* and *Nachel*, and enjoying the advantage of a capacious Harbour; from whence the adjacent Promontory has its Denomination. Upon account

of the five Towns last mention'd, the Northern Part of *Cyrenaica* bordering on the Sea-Coasts, was termed *Pentapolis*, or *Pentapolitana Regio*, i. e. *The Country of five Cities*.

The Eastern Part of the Kingdom of *Barca*, IV. which extends it self between the River *Nachel* and *Egypt*, and is destitute of Rivers, contains several Sea-Port Towns; of these the most Western are, *Salinas* Patriarch-Port; *Traboccho*; *Mesulomara*, or *Mesulamara*; *Salamon*; *Casale*; and *Salonoffa*. Farther on the East, appear *Alberton*, heretofore call'd *Paratonium*; as also, *Ammonia*, or *Hammonia*; because a Road leads from thence to the most renowned Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*; now a little Town, with a convenient Harbour, the Mouth of which is very narrow: *Roxa*, or *Raxa*, which communicates its Name to the adjacent Promontory: *Rabba*; and *Ripa Alba*, or *Ripalta*. In the Inland Country, are *Pute Almidan*; *Affaghir*; *Abdallach*; *Charebat*; *Sechet-Alhaniam*, and *Altahun*; and some other Places of no great Repute.

## C H A P. XXI.

## Ancient LIBYA, with the greater and lesser Mount ATLAS.

1. Antient Libya.

AFTER having made Description of five large Provinces of *Africa*, that is to say, *Guinea*, *Negro-Land*, *Zaara*, *Biledulgerid*, and *Barbary*, which constitute its Western and Northern Parts; it is requisite to shew in a few Words, what Countries and eminent Nations the Antients plac'd therein, as also by what Names they were usually call'd. The whole Continent of *Africa* was heretofore divided into *Ethiopia* and *Libya*; but we have already set out the Bounds of the former, in Chap. VIII. §. 1, 2. of this Volume; where we have also explain'd the manner of its Division into greater and lesser Parts, and how they agree with the respective Countries of modern *Ethiopia*. The other Part of *Africa* was nam'd *Libya*, or *Lybia*, (as it is express'd in several antient Inscriptions) and Proper *Africa*; and comprehended the entire Western and Northern Parts of the Continent, or the five Countries but now mention'd, with that of *Egypt*. The term *Libya* is here to be understood in a more limited sense; in regard that among the *Grecians*, (according to *Pliny* and *Strabo*) it denoted the whole Continent of *Africa*.

II. This *Libya*, or *Africa*, strictly taken, was two-fold, viz. *Ulterior* and *Citerior*. *Libya Ulterior*, otherwise termed *Interior*, i. e. *The Upper, or Inner Libya*, being the largest and most Southern Part of *Africa*, was bounded on the South by the Ethiopick Ocean; on the West, by the Atlantick Sea; on the North, by *Libya Citerior*; and on the East, by *Ethiopia*: So that it contain'd *Nigritia*, the Lands of the *Getuli* and *Garamantes*, *Libya Deserta*, and some other Countries, the Southern Parts of which were very little known to the Antients. The Territories of

Part 2.

*Guinea*, *Negro-Land* and *Zaara*, now take up the Place of *Libya Ulterior*.

*Libya Citerior*, sive *Exterior*, i. e. *The Hither, or Outward Libya*, was more Northern, and of a *Libya* great deal less Extent than the former; lying in the middle between *Libya Ulterior* and *Ethiopia*, as also between *Egypt*, on the South and the Mediterranean Sea, on the North: Its Parts (according to *M. Sanson*) are four in number, viz. *Egypt*, Proper *Libya*, *Africa* strictly taken, and *Mauritania*; altho' others do not reckon the first, amongst the Provinces of *Libya Citerior*; and as for antient *Egypt*, we have already given a particular Account of it in Chap. II. §. 9. & seq.

*Libya*, otherwise (for distinction sake) termed *Libya Propria*, was situated between *Egypt*, on the East; the Mediterranean Sea, on the North; *Syrtis Major*, or the Gulf of *Sidra*, the Kingdom of *Tripoli*, and Proper *Biledulgerid*, on the West; and the Country of the *Garamantes* with *Ethiopia* under *Egypt*, on the South: So that its Place is at this Day, possess'd by the Kingdom and Defart of *Barca*. This Proper *Libya* was divided into *Libya* strictly taken, *Marmarica* and *Cyrenaica*: *Lybia* strictly taken, or *Libya Exterior*, was the most Eastern Part of *Lybia Propria*, which contain'd the Territory nam'd *Regio Hammoniaca*, bordering upon *Marmarica*, and therein the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*, or *Hammon*, famous for its Oracle. This is the Opinion of several Authors; nevertheless, *Cluverius* places the Temple of *Ammon* in *Cyrenaica*, and others translate it to *Marmarica*. That Oracle was first consulted by *Bacchus*, afterwards by *Perseus*, *Hercules*, and *Alexander* the Great; and *Cambyses* King of *Persia*, was severely punish'd



punish'd for attempting to pilage it. Near the Temple was the Grove of *Hammon*, and in it among other Springs, that of the Sun, the Water of which (as it is related by *Quintus Curtius*,) was luke-warm about the break of Day, and cold at Noon, altho' the Weather was excessive hot: The same Water grew hot towards the Evening, and became boiling hot at Midnight; but when the Night was far spent, and the Morning drew near, a great deal of its nocturnal Heat abated, till at the very dawning of the Day, it return'd to its usual lukewarm Temperature. These Parts of *Libya* were heretofore inhabited by many different Nations, particularly the *Libyæpti*, *Niribiæ*, *Cætanæ*, and *Zygræ*. *Mauritania* extended itself on the West of Proper *Libya*, and its most eminent People, were the *Nasamæ*, *Ananiæ* and *Libyarchæ*. Lastly, *Marmarica* lay next to *Grenatica*: where among several other Nations, the *Phylli* had their Abode, whose Bodies are said to have bred a kind of Counter-poison, proper for the destroying of Serpents; as also, the *Bærcæ*, and therein was included the Territory of *Pentapolis*, specified in the last Paragraph but one, of the preceding Chapter.

V. After *Libya Propria*, follows *Africa* likewise Africa termed *Propria*, to avoid Confusion, and by Propria. Some Authors *Africa Minor*, or the lesser *Africa*, from which the whole Continent derives its Name. Its Bounds were, *Grenatica*, on the East; *Sinus Mauri*, or the Gulph of *Sidra*, and the Mediterranean, or *African* Sea, on the North; *Mauritania*, on the West; and *Libya Deserta*, on the South. Where *Africa Propria* was heretofore situated, we may now observe the Kingdoms of *Tripoli* and *Tunis*, with the Eastern Part of that of *Algier*, including the Province of *Constantina*, and part of adjacent *Bugia*. The Parts of Proper *Africa* were four in Number, viz. *Tripolitana*, *Byzacena*, *Africa* strictly taken, and *Numidia*. *Regio Tripolitana* took up the Place of the modern Kingdom of *Tripoli*, and its particular People were the *Macci*, *Sirine*, *Nigbeni*, and *Louphagi*: The Situation of *Byzacena* was the same with that of the Southern Part of the Kingdom of *Tunis*; for it extended itself from *Aidrumetum*, or *Hammanet*, on the North, to *Tacæ*, or *Capes*, and the innermost Bay of the Gulph that bears the same Name, on the South. *Africa* strictly taken, commonly call'd *Carthagenensis* and *Proconsularis*, lay in the middle between *Byzacena*, on the East and South, and *Numidia*, on the West, that is to say, in the remaining Part of the Kingdom of *Tunis*: In this Province liv'd the *Carthaginæi* and *Libyphænicæ*, or *Libophænicæ*, otherwise nam'd *Pæni*, and *Carthage* was its Metropolis: Lastly, *Numidia* styl'd *Numidia Nova*, by *Ptolemy* was extended on the same Level, with *Constantina* and Part of *Bugia* in the Kingdom of *Algier*; and its most noted People were the *Cæcæ* and *Nabucæ*.

VI. It remains only to give an account of *Mauritania*, the fourth and last Part of *Libya Cæcæ*, which lies out farthest of all Westward: It was bounded on the East by Proper *Africa*; on the North, by the Mediterranean Sea, and *Fretum Herculeum*, or the Strait of *Gibraltar*; on the West, by the Atlantick Sea;

and on the South, by *Libya Interior*. The Natives were call'd *Mauri*, as also *Maurusii* by *Varronius* and *Maurisii*, by the *Grecians*, as it were the Inhabitants of Mount *Maurisius*, and still retain the Name of the *Moors*. *Ptolemy* divided *Mauritania* into *Tingitana* and *Cæsariensis*, to which others have added *Sitiensis*: *Mauritania Sitiensis*, so termed from *Sitifi*, or *Stiffi*, its Capital Town, was the most Eastern and least Part of *Mauritania* taken at large, lying in the middle, between *Numidia* on the East, and *Mauritania Cæsariensis* on the West, which *Ptolemy* comprehends under *Cæsariensis*: It was also call'd (according to *Procopius*) *Mauritania Prima*, and *Zaba*; and took up the Western Part of the Province of *Bugia*; being inhabited by the *Toducæ*, or *Taducæ*, and *Cidamusi*. *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, on which the Town of *Julia Cæsarea* impos'd its Name, was situated between *Mauritania Sitiensis* on the East, and *Tingitana* on the West, and had several sorts of People for its Inhabitants, among whom, the *Maccuræ*, *Mazyces*, *Masæuli*, and *Dryitæ* held the first Rank: Its Place is at this Day possess'd by the Western Part of the Kingdom of *Algier*. To conclude, *Mauritania Tingitana*, the chief Town of which was *Tingis*, or *Tanger*, border'd on the East upon *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, and on the West upon the Atlantick Sea: It was also call'd *Bogudiana*, from King *Bogud*, and *Hispania Transjætanæ*, in the time of the Emperour *Constantine* the Great: The most eminent People of this Part, were the *Maurusii*, *Herpeditani*, or *Herpiditani*, *Polubiliæi*, *Succosi* and *Atetagonitæ*, and the Kingdoms of *Fez* and *Morocco* are now contain'd within its antient Boundaries.

Throughout the Territories of the hither *Libya*, Mount *Atlas* extends it self with an uninterrupted Course; being the greatest, highest, greatest most renowned, and most fabulous Mountain of the whole Continent of *Africa*; of which *Plin* in *His. Nat. lib. 5. cap. 1.* gives us the following Account: 'It is related (says he) That this Mountain raises it self up to Heaven, out of the middle of the sandy Deserts; so as one side of it that lyes next to the Coasts of the Ocean, on which it has impos'd its Name, is altogether rough, foul and barren: But the other Parts, which range along the inland Countries of *Africa*, are beset with Groves and shady Thickets, and water'd with purling Springs; insomuch that all sorts of Fruit naturally grow at the Foot of it without any Tillage, and there is no end of its Delights: That none of the Inhabitants is to be seen in the Day-time, there being profound Silence every where, by reason of the dismal Solitudes, and that the Minds of those who come near, are struck with a secret Terrour; more especially in beholding its dreadful Height, advanc'd above the Clouds, and even near the Orb of the Moon: It is also added, That Fires are often seen in the Night, on the same Mountain, and that it resounds with the Noise of Pipes, Flutes and Cymbals, whilst the Fairies and Satyrs are celebrating their nocturnal Sports. This Mountain is suppos'd to have deriv'd its Name from *Atlas*, King of *Mauritania*, who being very much addicted to the Study of Astronomy, usually took Observations of the Stars



Stars from thence; more clearly and distinctly (according to the Opinion of the Antients) than if he had view'd them from a lower Ground: Upon that account, the same Monarch is reported to have carry'd Heaven on his Shoulders, in regard he was the first Invention and Maintainer of the Astronomical Science, and is feign'd by the Poets, to have been transform'd into this prodigious Hill, by *Perseus*, at the sight of the *Gorgon's* Head. Mount *Atlas* is also said to touch Heaven with its Top, and even to support it, because it rises up to the Clouds, higher than can be discern'd with the Eye.

This famous Mountain takes its Rise in *Mauritania Tingitana*, on the Coast of the Atlantick Sea, and the Promontory *Gerum*, or Cape *Guer*: From thence, with a continued ridge of Hills of a vast Height, it runs Eastward thro' the Kingdom of *Morocco*, and the Frontiers of *Barbary* and *Biledulgerid*, as far as the Desert of *Barca*; but its Name is often chang'd, according to the diversity of Countries, thro' which it

is extended. For at the said Cape (according to *Marmol*) it is call'd *Idevacal*, or *Aiducal*, and *Tensif*, or *Tensit*, (as *M. Sanfon* expresses it) in *Hajcora*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, where it borders upon *Darha* in *Biledulgerid*: On the Confines of *Tedles*, a Province of the same Kingdom, and of *Segelmessa*, Part of *Biledulgerid*; it bears the Name of *Dedes*; as also that of *Zizi* in the Western Part of *Chaus*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Fez*, &c.

The lesser Mount *Atlas* is the Off-spring of VIII. the Greater, and is also plac'd by *Ptolemy* in *The less Mauritania Tingitana*, but farther towards the *ser Atlas*: North, and the *Fretum Herculeum*, or Strait of *Gibraltar*. It is now nam'd *Errif* (as we are inform'd by *M. Marmol*,) and extends it self between the Kingdom of *Morocco* on the South, and that of *Fez* on the North, at the distance of about 130 Miles from *Larache*, to the South-East, and almost 200 from the Strait of *Gibraltar*.



A  
General and Particular DESCRIPTION  
OF  
**A M E R I C A.**

First written in Latin by *JOAN. LUYTS*, and now improv'd with very particular Accounts of the English PLANTATIONS; and Maps laid down according to the latest Observations and Discoveries.

**A M E R I C A**





CHAP. I.

AMERICA in general.

I. **T**HE upper Part, as we may call it, of the Terrestrial Globe which was all that was known to the Ancients, having been hitherto the Subject of our Discourse. We proceed now to take a View of the other Part, which with respect to our Hemisphere, is the lower; and in regard that it first began to be discover'd about two hundred Years agoe, it is often call'd *The new World*, but more commonly *America*; which Denomination is from *Americus Vesputius* a Florentine, who setting out from *Cadiz*, by the Order of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, on the 20th. day of *May* 1497, discover'd the Eastern Part of the Continent, which lyes to the South of the Equinoctial Line, and was the first European that made a descent upon that Part.

II. But though *Americus* had the Honour to give Name to this new World, the Discovery of it is owing to *Christopher Columbus*, or rather *Colonus* a Genoese, but Inhabitant on the *Madera* Islands; a Man of sound Judgment, and accurate Parts, skilful in Navigation, and well acquainted with Astronomy; who by his own Reason and Study, was possess'd with an Opinion, that there must necessarily be Land Westward, beyond the Atlantick Ocean. And having a strong Inclination to find out those unknown Countries he apply'd himself first to the Republick of *Genoa*; where being refused assistance, he sent his Brother *Bartholomew*, to *Henry VII.* King of *England*: Afterwards, he delivered his Mind, in Person to *Alfonso V.* King of *Portugal*; but neither the States of *Genoa*, nor either of those Princes could be induc'd to countenance so hazardous and expensive an Enterprize, that seem'd to tend but little to their Advantage. Lastly, he communicated his design to *Ferdinand V.* surnam'd the Catholick King of *Castille*, and Queen *Isabel* his Consort, but his Solicitations there too prov'd as ineffectual for several Years: Till at length the Queen thought fit to hearken to *Columbus's* Proposal, and by her Persuasion, he obtain'd of the King three Ships, furnish'd with all sorts of necessary Provisions, and enter'd upon his so long wish'd for Voyage, *A. D.* 1492: Thus setting out from *Cadiz* in the beginning of the Month of *August* (or as others say) of *June*, or *September*, he sail'd first to *Gomera*, one of the *Canaries*, and from thence made the best of his way Westward. After a course of nine Weeks, he happily arriv'd at the *Lucayas-Islands*, having first touch'd upon *Guanahani*, now call'd *Salvador*, which he took Possession of in the King of *Spain's* Name, and pass'd from thence to *Cuba*; then he came to *Hispaniola*, where having planted Crosses and set up the King's Standard, he returned to *Spain* to give an Account of his Expedition to the King. This Navigation being thus prosperously compleated, he undertook a second to *Hispaniola*, by the Command of the same King *Ferdinand*, *September* the 11th. 1493. He also visited *Cuba* again, and discover'd *Jamaica*, with several other Parts. During his third and last Navigation, which he be-

gan from *Spain*, *May* 28, *A. D.* 1498, he made the *Caribbee* Islands, off *Sottovento*, among which *Margarita* was more especially remarkable, and discover'd the Coast of *Terra Firma*.

Some affirm, That a certain Sea-Captain, whom they differently name *Aldrete*, *Garcilasso Vega*, and *Alfonso Sanchez de Huelva*, was driven by a Storm from the Coasts of *Africa*, which he frequented upon the Account of Traffick, Westward to certain unknown Lands: This Captain (according to their Report) lodg'd in the same House with *Columbus*, in the Island of *Madera*, and dying a little while after his Arrival, left him the Journal of his late Voyage. Whereupon *Columbus* having receiv'd such notable helps, and being admirably well vers'd in the Sciences of Astronomy and Geography, apply'd his Mind altogether to the discovering of these Countries. But others suspect, not without good Grounds, that this whole Relation was feign'd by the Spaniards, who could not endure that the Glory of so great a Discovery should redound to a Genoese.

There are also some English-men, who assert, That *America* was discover'd *A. D.* 1190, or (as others say) in 1170, by *Madoc*, the Son of *Owen Gwyneth*, or *Guisfnech*, Prince of *Wales*. Others will have *Madoc* to be the Prince of *Wales's* Brother, who (as it is reported) made two Voyages to *America*, and dy'd there, after having planted several Colonies, in *Virginia*, or in *Florida* and *Canada*, or in the Kingdom of *Mexico*; the Language of which Country, is said to be intermix'd, even at this day, with many British Words.

This vast Continent is call'd *The new World*, because it was but lately made known to the European Nations, and is the largest Part of the Terrestrial Globe. It is also suppos'd to have receiv'd the Name of *Western India*, or the *West-Indies*, from *Columbus*, who when he first touch'd upon the American Islands, imagin'd that he arriv'd at the Real or Eastern *India*. And indeed it may be said that there is a notable Similitude between the West and East *Indies* in several Particulars; viz. that they were found out about the same time; that the Natives of both (as it is reported) derive their Original from the same Stock; and that their Manners and Customs are much alike; and especially that *America* supplies *Europe* with a vast Wealth of Gold and Silver.

*America* has for its Bounds on the East, the Northern and Ethiopick Oceans, which separate it, at a great distance, from *Europe* and *Africa*; on the South *Magellanick* Strait, parting it from the Island of the same Name, otherwise call'd *Tierra del Fuego*; and on the West, the Pacifick Ocean, by which it is cut off, at least for the most part, at a very great Distance from *Asia*: Its utmost Extent Northward is not as yet sufficiently known; in regard, that certain Straights,

III.

IV.

V.

VI.



Straights, Bays and Coasts are only discover'd, and it is scarce possible to make any farther Progress, by reason of the huge Shoals of Ice that float in these Seas, and the frequent Westerly Winds. The whole Continent (according to its present Dimensions) extends itself in Length from the 24th. to the 349th. Degree of Longitude, and takes up no less space in Breadth; for in beginning to reckon only from *Hudson's* Strait, it reaches from the 63d. Degree of Northern Latitude, to the 54th. of Southern; nevertheless its middle Part towards the South is very narrow, so that its Figure may well be compar'd to that of an Hour-Glass. The lesser Part of *America* is situated under the Southern Temperate Zone; the greatest under the Northern Torrid and Temperate Zones; and an unknown Part lies out far beyond the Arctick Circle; insomuch that the Degrees of Heat and Cold, must needs be very different, in the several Tracts of this most spacious Country.

VII. When the Spaniards first made a descent upon the Land, they found no Gold, or Silver Coyn, the use of which was altogether unknown to the Americans; but a prodigious Quantity of Bullion of these Metals, with which it still abounds, and great store of precious Stones. The Country was also destitute of Wine and Corn, instead whereof it brought forth *Mazze*, a kind of Pulse, and certain Roots, of which Bread was usually made. Neither were there any Dogs, Sheep, Goats, Horses, Asies, Mules, or Oxen, which the Natives extremely admir'd at the first sight: However, there was and still continues to be plenty of Herbs, medicinal Plants, very different sorts of wild and tame Beasts, Fowl, Fish, Sugar and excellent Fruit, and such as are transported thither from *Europe*, thrive beyond what can be imagined. How much the Herds of Oxen have encreas'd appears from the vast quantities of Hides that are brought over into *Europe*. But the Rivers which formerly had their Sands impregnated with Gold, now scarce retain any; neither does the Sea any longer afford its usual Store of Pearls; which Defect is to be imputed to the Covetousness of the Spaniards. The Natives are ingenious, robust, nimble, revengeful and timorous; being very expert in shooting with Arrows, running and swimming. They that have no intercourse with the Europeans, are partly Savages, and some of them are Canibals, or Man-eaters: Some go naked, and others are cloth'd with the Skins of Animals; adorning themselves with the Feathers of Birds, and dyeing their Bodies with divers Colours: They that enjoy their own Liberty, adore the Sun, Moon, Water, Fire, nay even the Devil himself, and whatsoever their natural Inclination leads them to: But there are some (as they say) who worship only one God, the Creator of Heaven and Earth; and others that are subject to the Europeans, generally follow their Sacred Rites: Neither is one Language common to all, but they speak many that are very different.

Before the Arrival of the Spaniards, there was a great number of Kings in *America*, especially the two mighty Empires of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Monarchs whereof, as well as the Petty Kings being entirely subdu'd, and the greatest part of their Subjects destroyed, the middle and best part of the whole Continent, (including the rich Gold

and Silver Mines of *Peru* and *Potosi*) became subject to the Spaniards, and is still under their Dominion; being one of the most eminent Dependances of the Kingdom of *Castille*. The Spaniards in bringing this Country into Subjection, exercised a most barbarous and unheard of Cruelty, cutting off the poor unarm'd Indians in vast numbers, so that the Country which was formerly populous, is now in a manner desolate, except of Spaniards, who are not very numerous, but have the sole Administration of publick Affairs; the other Inhabitants are either Criolians, which are those that are descended of the Spaniards, but born in *America*; the *Mesticio's* born of a Spanish Father and an American Mother, which are reckon'd the very dregs of the People; the Negroes, or Ethiopians, a brawny and treacherous Crew, who being bought for Slaves in *Africa*, are transported thither, and put to the hardest Labour; and some other Europeans, and a very few Indians. The Governours are chang'd every three Years, and the Inhabitants are forbidden to follow the Smith's, or Armourer's Trade, so that all kinds of Arms and Iron-tools are brought from *Spain*. Moreover, part of *America* is possess'd by the English, French, Portugueses and Hollanders, whose Dominions shall be hereafter describ'd in their proper Places. Part of it is still govern'd by its own Kings; and Part (as they say) is inhabited by a People that live without Law, and wander up and down from one Territory to another.

VIII. Before we proceed to the Division of *America*, it is requisite to discuss two notable Questions, that are usually started. The first is, From whence when, and by what means, Men (to say nothing of brute Beasts, of a vast bulk) came to this new World, which is separated from *Europe*, *Africa* and *Asia*, by a most spacious Sea? The other is, Whether it was known to the Ancients, and frequented by them? Several Authors make different Answers to the former Question: Some are of Opinion, That *America* began to be inhabited soon after the time of the Patriarch *Noah*, and the Confusion of Tongues at *Babylon*, and consequently ever since the most ancient Dispersion of the Nations: Because, say they, the great Continent of *America* could not possibly in a few Ages be supply'd with so great a number, variety and order of People, as the European Discoverers found every part of it to be at their first Arrival: These Authors add, That the Americans were not ignorant of the universal Deluge, and that they retain'd among them a Tradition of the ancient Giants. *L'erius* is inclin'd to believe, That these People are the Offspring of the Canaanites, who being driven out of their Proper Seats by *Joshua*, at last settled themselves there, or else (according to the Sentiments of others) the Progeny of the ten Tribes of *Israel*, that were at first carry'd away captive into *Assyria*, afterwards scatter'd abroad far and wide throughout several Countries, and at length pass'd over into *America*. *Robert Compié* a Norman asserts, That the Phenicians (or Carthaginians, a Colony of that Nation) being a People of undaunted Courage and very skillful in maritim Affairs, who apparently navigated the Ocean, beyond *Hercules's* Pillars; first of all arriv'd at these Coasts, and were also the first Inha-



Inhabitants of the inland Country, from whom he says the Americans were descended. Others think fit rather to derive the Original of them from the Tartars, at least from those People who pass'd from the Coasts of *Tartary* to *America*; because they suppose, that *Tartary*, among all the Parts of the old World, lyes nearest to that Continent.

IX. As for my Opinion, I cannot be persuaded by any means, That so vast a Country, the Inhabitants of which are so different in their Customs, Constitutions and Languages, receiv'd them all together at once, from one particular Quarter, or after the same manner; and I take it for a great piece of Rashness to attempt to determine the Time, or Circumstances of their Arrival, or the respective Provinces of *America* that were possess'd by any of those People. However there are sufficient Grounds to conjecture, That the Posterity of *Noah*, who travers'd the old World, came also to that which we have but lately discover'd, either through some Northern Tract, or a long and more direct Road; the new World being then perhaps less remote from the old, than it is at this day: For Experience plainly shews, that the Surface and Situation of the Islands and Continents are not always the same: And if there was only a Passage to *America* by Sea, why might not the Art of building and steering Ships be transmitted to After-ages, from *Noah* the Founder of the Ark? Neither does it seem improbable to me, That the Scythians, Tartars, Chineses and other People of *India*, pass'd over into *America*; for it appears from the Relations of Voyages, that that Part of it, which is situated towards *Asia*, was no less populous, when the Europeans first arriv'd on the Coasts, than the opposite Part, which lyes over against *Africa* and *Europe*. And indeed, it is no less probable, That the Phenicians and Carthaginians, whose Course might perhaps be promoted by a general Wind, continually blowing from East to West; as also the Norwegians, Greenlanders, and other Nations were convey'd to the same Continent of *America*, at several times, either by Sea or Land, either accidentally, or of set purpose; for that which might possibly befall any one of those particular People, might also happen, with respect to all in general.

X. These Sentiments will be farther confirm'd, if we consider the common Opinion, That *America* was known in the most ancient Times, and frequented by the Inhabitants of the old World. It is related in *Plato's* Dialogues, 'That *Solon* was inform'd by the Egyptian Priests, (in whose Archives this Account was extant) That the Egyptian *Hercules*, otherwise call'd *Osiris*, after having subdu'd many Countries, beyond and on the hither side of the Herculean Straight, at last undertook an Expedition to *Atlantis*, an Island situated beyond *Hercules's* Pillars; in the vast Ocean, and of a great deal larger Extent than *Asia* and *Africa* taken together: Which Island he likewise conquer'd, and having made Peace with the Inhabitants, constituted his Grand-son *Neptune* Governour of it. Moreover, *Plato* gives us an accurate Description of the nature of the Country, the Manner, Disposition and political Government of the People, with the Situation of the Towns and Castles, and more es-

pecially takes notice of the great store of Gold and precious Stones. This Author is follow'd by *Pliny* and *Strabo*; and *Diodorus Siculus* produces a Relation to the same effect, viz. 'That the Phenicians, in the most ancient times, as they were coasting along the Shores of *Africa*, beyond the Strait of *Hercules*, or *Gibraltar*, were overtaken with a furious and continual Storm: Informing much that being driven to and fro, in the wide Sea, they at last arriv'd at a great Island, situated over against *Africa*, in the middle of the Atlantick Ocean; where the Country was well water'd, very pleasant and extremely fruitful. *Theopompus* (according to *Ælian*) likewise made mention of another Continent, as well as *Aristotle*, who in *Lib. de Mirabil. Auscult.* informs us, 'That the Carthaginians found out a certain Island, beyond *Hercules's* Pillars, distant many days Voyage, from the Continent; where when by reason of the fruitfulness of the Soil, some began to contract Marriages, and to inhabit the Country, the Governours set forth a Prohibition, under pain of Death, importing that for the future, none should enter the Island, and at the same time expell'd those that were settled therein, lest encreasing in number, they should at last aspire to the Sovereign Power, and deprive the Carthaginians of part of their Felicity. It were needless to alledge several other Testimonies out of *Homer*, *Horace*, *Seneca* the Philosopher, and *Seneca* the Poet, the last of whom being transported with inspir'd Fury, is said to have foretold the Discovery of *America*, in his Tragedy of *Medea*; more especially since those Records that have been already produc'd, seem appositely to agree with the Nature and Constitution of that most spacious Continent.

*Kircher* indeed, distinguishes the Island *Atlantis*, from the old and new World; neither does he take it for a Part of the latter, but supposes it to have been situated in the middle of the Atlantick Ocean, and that when it was shook with a terrible Earth-quake, and suddenly swallow'd up by a great overflowing of the Sea, some few Foot-steps of it were left in the Flandrian and Canary Isles: But this Explication is little consonant to the largeness either of the Island, or of the Ocean, as it is describ'd in the above-cited Testimonies. *Barleus* is of Opinion, That whatsoever *Plato* has deliver'd concerning the Island *Atlantis* is not a real History, but only a Mythological Relation, and that what *Diodorus* indeterminately proposes, ought not to be understood of *America*, in particular. But that the Account which *Plato* gives of this Island is not fabulous, it seems to be sufficiently evident from the Circumstances that are added; as also from the Testimony of *Strabo*, who says, that *Solon* wrote a Book on the same Subject: And if what *Diodorus* lays down must not be interpreted, with respect to *America*; let *Barleus* or his Followers assign another Part of the World, to which it may be more properly apply'd.

Lastly, it is observable, That others will have *America* to be the same with King *Solomon's* *Ophir*, to which, in those ancient times, a Fleet of Ships set sail every three Years: But it is objected by those of a different Opinion, That Ivory, which the Royal Fleet usually transported among other Commodities, was altogether unknown

XI.

XII.



unknown in *America*, at least in *Peru*, to which some restrain the Bounds of *Ophir*; as also, that it was impossible to perform such a Voyage before the Invention and Use of the Magnetical Needle. However, we shall shew at least, in

treating hereafter of the Country of *Peru*, That no Argument can be infer'd from the likeness of the Terms *Ophir* and *Peru*, by the transposition of Letters.

## CHAP. II.

### Northern AMERICA and the Arctick Countries.



HAVING thus dispatch'd the Preliminaries, we proceed to the Division of *America*, which is commonly distinguish'd, as it were by the direction of Nature it self, into the Northern and Southern. The former is sometimes call'd *Mexicana*, from the Kingdom of

Part 2

*Mexico*, its principal Part, or from the Metropolis City of the same Name; but it is as yet unknown, how far this Continent extends it self to the North, and by what it is bounded on that Quarter: Its Boundaries on the East, are *Davis's Strait*, which separates it from *Greenland*; *St. Lau-*



St. Laurence's Bay; the Sea of Canada, or New France; that of Virginia; the Gulph of Mexico; and the little Isthmus of Panama, by which it is cut off from Southern America: It is also bounded on the South, by the Southern Ocean strictly taken, or the Sea of New Spain; and on the West, by the Red or Purple Sea, which the Spaniards term *El mar Vermelho*, and (according to several Geographers) by the Strait of Anian. The least, but most eminent Part of this spacious Country, lyes under the Northern Torrid Zone, and the greatest Part under the Northern Temperate Zone.

II. *M. Sanfon* divides Northern America into Canadian and Mexican; making the former to consist of two Parts, that is to say, the Arctick Countries, whereto he also adds Greenland and Island, (which shall be hereafter accounted for in the Description of the Countries about the Poles,) and Canada, or New France. Under the Mexican Part, he includes the New Kingdom of Mexico and New Spain. However, we shall admit of six principal Parts of Northern America, viz. The Arctick Countries, Canada, Florida, the New Kingdom of Mexico, New Spain, and the Isles of the Mexican Archipelago: An Account shall likewise be given of the rest of the Islands of Northern America, that are of any Repute, after having describ'd the several Parts of the Continent, over against which they are situated; first shewing the whole at a View in these Tables.

## A General Table of Northern AMERICA.

Northern America, divided into Six Parts, viz.	I. The Arctick Countries in which are,	On the West,	{ New Denmark New Wales.
		On the East,	{ James's-Island Cumberland-Isles Good Fortune I. Mansfield I. Terra de Laborador
	II. Canada containing,	Beyond the Canada River,	{ Saguenay Prov. The Country of the Algonquins That of the Hurons Louisiana
		On this side the same River,	{ Virginia Maryland Pennsylvania New York New Jersey New England Irocoisia, or the Iroquois Country Etechemins Territory Arcadia Proper Canada
		Islands over against the Continent,	{ Anticosti S. Jean Cape Breton New-found-land Isle de Sable Nantuket Sturgeon-Isles Martins-Vinyard Ulieland Texel Elizabeth I. Block I. Rode I. Isle of Wight Plum I. Fishers I. Manahattens Staten I. Long-Island Bermudas-Isles

III. Florida,	} Divided into	{ English Spanish
IV. The New Kingdom of Mexico, comprehending	Apaches People	{ Apaches de Perillo Apaches Vaqueros Apaches de Navajo Apaches de Xila
	Places	{ Near the North-River More remote from that River
	Islands over against the Continent,	{ Santa Cruz Isla de Gigante California S. Clement Isla de Pararos I. de Ceintas Ulloa Lanublade St. Thomas Las tres Maries
V. New Spain, containing three Audiences,	Guadalupe,	{ Cinaloa Culiacan Chamellan Xalisco Proper Guadalupe Los Zacatecas New Biscay
	Mexico Prov.	{ Mechoacan Proper Mexico Panuco Tlascala Guaxaca Tabasco Jucatan, or Yucatan
	Guatemala,	{ Chiapa Soconusco Proper Guatemala Vera Paz Honduras Nicaragua Costa Rica Veragua
	The Lucayos Islands,	{ Bahama Lucayonequa Bimini Abacoa Ciguatoo Guarao Curateo Juma Cotoniera Guanabani, or S. Salvador Guanima Triangulo Samana Yumeta Majaguana Caicos Aumana Linaga Hinagua Toringa
	The Great Antilles,	{ Cuba Jamaica Hispaniola Porto Rico
		{ Anguilla S. Christophers Nevis Montserrat Dominica Barbada, or Barbuda Antego Barbadoes S. Vincents Tobago Isle de S. Croix S. Barthomew S. Estache Guadalupe La Desiderade La Marigalante Martinica S. Lucia Granada S. Martin Saba La Trinidad
VI. The Antilles Islands, comprehending	The Caribbee Isles,	



The Soci-  
etates Ill. { *Margarita Blanco*  
*Torunga Urchila;*  
*Rocca La Isla de Aves*  
*Bon Ayre*  
*Caracao, or Caraffon*  
*Oruba*

## Six particular Tables of Northern AMERICA.

## I. The Atack Countries, cont.

On the West, { *New Den-* } *Port-Munck*  
mark, { *mark,* }  
  
On the East, { *New* } { *Southern*  
Wales, { *Northern*

On the West-side of *Hud-* { *James-Island*  
*son's* { *Cumberland Isle*  
*Straight,* { *Good Fortune Isle*

On the East-side the same Straight, { *Mansfield Isle*  
{ *Terra de Laborador,*  
{ otherwise named  
{ *Esotiland*

## II. Canada, or New France, containing

On the West-side the River *Canada,* or *St. Lawrence,* { *Port Quotier*  
{ *Port S. Nicholas*  
{ *Chichekedec Port Neuf*  
{ *Tadoussac*  
{ *Quebec, the Capital*  
{ *Town of New*  
{ *France.*  
{ *For: Sillery*  
{ *Les trois Rivieres*  
{ *For: Frontenac*

Territories of the { *Algonquins*  
{ *Huron:*

*Louis-* { *Fort des Miamis*  
*iana,* { *For: Crevecoeur*

*Acadia,* { *Fort Conty*

The *Erichemins* Country

*Acadia,* { *Port Royal Touchequet*  
{ *Port Rossignol*  
{ *La Heve Paspy*  
{ *Macomode Martengo*  
{ *Souricois, People*

*Canada* { *Richilieu, or Sorel*  
*Proper.* { *Mont Real.*

The Eng-  
lish Em-  
pire on  
the Con-  
tinent of  
*Canada,*

*New Eng-* { *Boston, the chief City*  
*land,* { *Charles Town Dorchester*  
{ *Cambridge New Plimouth*  
{ *Reading Salem Providence*  
{ *York London Norwich*  
{ *Worcester Chichester*  
{ *Guilford Gloucester Exeter*  
{ *Norhampton Lancaster*  
{ *Chelmsford Kenebeck, &c.*

Islands  
over a-  
gainst the  
Conti-  
nent of  
*Canada,*

*Canada* the chief River,  
runs into the Gulph  
of the same Name,  
and receives

*New Jer-* { *Bergen Newark*  
*se,* { *New Barbadoes*  
{ *Proprietors-Farm*  
{ *Elizabeth-Town Woodbridge*  
{ *Pascataway Perth, the Cap.*  
{ *Middle-Town Shrewsbury*  
{ *York Manalapan*  
{ *Cape-May Town*  
{ *Doncaster*  
{ *Bridlington, or Burlington*

*New York,* { *New Albany*  
{ *Fort of Good Hope*  
{ *Arasapha*  
{ *New York, the Capital*  
{ *Town*

*Pensylva-* { *Philadelphia, the Capital*  
*nia,* { *Newcastle Chichester*  
{ *Chester*

*Mary-* { *Harrington, or Harvey-*  
*land,* { *Town*  
{ *Calverton Harrington*  
{ *Warrington Arundelton*  
{ *Darrington Baltimore-Town*  
{ *Caxilton Newark*  
{ *Somerset-Town*  
{ *St. Mary's the Capital*

*Virginia,* { *Cunawoc Secotan Pomejoc*  
{ *Demamotiqua Pasenon*  
{ *Catoking Powhatan*  
{ *James-Town, Capital*  
{ *Green-Spring*  
{ *Elizabeth-City*  
{ *Henry's Town Dales-Gift*  
{ *Bermuda Wicocomoco*  
{ *Keoughan*

In *S. Lau-* { *Anticosti, or L'Assomption I.*  
*rence's* { *S. Jean I. Cap. Breton I.*  
*Gulph,* { *New-found-land I.*

Over a-  
gainst  
*Acadia,* { *Isle de Sable, or the Sand-*  
{ *Island*

Over a-  
gainst  
*New Eng-* { *Nantuket I. Surgeon-Isles*  
*land,* { *Martin's Vinyard I.*  
{ *Ulieland Elizabeth-Isle*  
{ *Block-Isle Rode I.*  
{ *Isle of Wight Plum I.*  
{ *Fishers I.*

Over a-  
gainst  
*New York,* { *Manahattens I. Staten I.*  
{ *Long-Island*

Over a-  
gainst  
*Virginia,* { *Bermudas* { *St. George*  
{ *Isles,* { *S. David*  
{ *Somerset*  
{ *Warwick*

{ *La Riviere des Prairies*  
{ *La Riviere de Mons*  
{ *Les trois Rivieres*



The most eminent Rivers of the English Plantations.

James-River	York-River
Rappahanock	Pasommack
Chesapeak	Patuxent
Ann	Arundel alias Severn
Sasqueshannah	Wighco
Delaware	Skunkill
Brandy	Raritan
Prince Maurice Riv.	Hackensack
Wine	Connecticut
Thames	Patuxet
Providence Riv.	Quinebequin
Marimake	Sigadehock
Kenebeck	

III. Florida, in which are

English Plantations,	Carolina,	Charles-Town, the Capital
		Old Charles-Town
		New London
		Cambake
Apalachites Country,		Melilot
	On the East,	S. Matheo
		S. Augustino
		Achalague
Offachile		
Spanish Colonies,	On the West,	Hirrikigua, or Hirritiqua
		Colima
		Capaba
		Coza, or Coca
		Tascaluzza
		Quigata
		Xualatino
		Chagus
		Naguater

The principal Rivers of Spanish Florida,

S. Matheo	Rio Grande
R. de Canaveral	R. del Espiritu Sancto
R. de Montanhas	R. Bravo
R. de la Madelena	R. Escondido
R. de Pabnas	

The most considerable Rivers of English Florida, or Carolina,

Albemarle Riv.	Pantegoe
Neuse	Clarendon Riv.
Wingou	Watere
Sartee, or Craven Riv.	Sewee
Bowat	Cooper Riv.
Wando	Abley Riv.
Stono	North and South
Edistow	Colleton Riv.
Cambake	Sapola
Wallca	May Riv.
St. Matheo	

IV. The New Kingdom of Mexico, comprehending,

Apaches, People,	On the South,	Apaches de Perillo
		Apaches Vaqueros
	On the North,	Apaches de Navaio
		Apaches de Xila
Places and Towns,	Near the North River,	Santa Fe, or S. Fe de Granada, the Metropolis of the Kingdom
		Sevilleta
		Pilabo
		Senecu
	Farther distant from that River,	Acoma
		Zaguato
		Rey-Coromede
		S. Miguel, or S. Michael
	Adjacent	La Isla de Santa Cruz
		La Isla de Gigante
		California
		S. Clement
	More remote	I. de Pararos
		I. de Ceintas
		Ulloa
		Lanublada
		S. Thomas
		Las tres Maries
		Cinaloa,
		S. Juan, or S. John
	Culiacan,	Petatlan
		Culiacan
		S. Michael
		Quinold
	Chametlan,	Aquacara
		Xalisco,
		Compostella
		Xalisco
	Guadalajara, containing seven Provinces	Chariquipagua, or Centiquipagua
		Quaxacatlan, or Guaxacatlan
		Zaporaco
		Guadalajara, the Capital
	Los Zacatecas;	Xerez de la Frontera
		San Luis de los Zacatecas
		Ellerena
		Durango
	New Biscay,	Endeba
		Meschito
		S. Juan
		Santa Barbara
	Mechoacan,	S. Filippe, or S. Philip
		S. Miguel, or S. Michael
		La Concepcion de Salaya
		Villa de los Lagos
	Mexico, including seven Provinces	Cusco
		Mechoacan, the Capital
		Tuspa
		Colima
		Sacatula

V. New Spain divided into three Audiences, viz.



Gacim�- la, in which are eight Provin- ces,	Proper Mexico,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Petalan</li> <li>Cazalula</li> <li>Acapulco</li> <li>Chianula</li> <li>Oituma</li> <li>Tasco</li> <li>Cuernabaca</li> <li>Atlisco</li> <li>Suchimaleo</li> <li>Xilaxaco</li> <li>Tlalasco</li> <li>Mexico, the Metropo- lis of New Spain, and of North. America</li> <li>Chaco</li> <li>Cacailan</li> </ul>	The great Antilles,	On the North of the Tro- pick of Cancer,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bahama</li> <li>Lucayonequa</li> <li>Bimini</li> <li>Abacoa</li> <li>Ciguaco</li> <li>Guareo</li> <li>Curacao</li> <li>Juma</li> <li>Coroniera</li> <li>Guanahani</li> <li>Guanima</li> <li>Triangulo</li> <li>Sanana</li> </ul>
	Panuco,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S. Jago de los Valles</li> <li>Panuco</li> <li>San Lays, or S. Lemes</li> <li>Tampica</li> <li>Aquacatlan</li> <li>Tilicipozapen</li> </ul>		Under the Tro- pick,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Yumeta</li> </ul>
	Tlascala,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tlascala</li> <li>Los Angeles, the Cap.</li> <li>Xalipa</li> <li>Segura</li> <li>Matatlan</li> <li>Almeria, or Villa Ricca</li> <li>La Vera Cruz</li> <li>Viera</li> <li>S. Juan de Ulua, or Vera Cruz nueva</li> <li>Pacla</li> <li>Cafla</li> </ul>		On the South of the same Tropick,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Majaguana</li> <li>Caicos</li> <li>Aumana</li> <li>Linaga</li> <li>Hinagua</li> <li>Tortuga</li> </ul>
	Guaxaca,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tuculula</li> <li>Aguanulca</li> <li>Ansequera, the Capit.</li> <li>S. Jago, or S. James</li> <li>S. Alonso</li> <li>Espiritu Santo</li> </ul>		Cuba,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Havana, or S. Christo- val de Havana</li> <li>Santa Cruz</li> <li>Porto del Principe</li> <li>Espiritu Santo</li> <li>Mancanilla</li> <li>S. Jago de Cuba</li> </ul>
	Tabasco,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tabasco, or N. S. de la Victoria</li> </ul>		Jamaica,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S. Jago de la Vega, the Capital Town</li> <li>Port-Royal</li> <li>Passage</li> <li>Sevilla del Oro</li> <li>Melilla</li> <li>Orijtan</li> </ul>
	Jucatan,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Campeche</li> <li>Merida</li> <li>Valladolid</li> <li>Salamanca</li> </ul>		Hispanio- la,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>La Petite Anse</li> <li>Le Cap.</li> <li>Les trois Rivieres</li> <li>Leogane</li> <li>Le Grand Gouave</li> <li>Le Petit Gouave</li> <li>Nipe</li> <li>La Grande Anse</li> <li>S. Jago</li> <li>La Concepcion de la Vega</li> <li>S. Domingo, the Ca- pital</li> </ul>
	Chiapa,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Chiapa de los Indos</li> <li>El Real Chiapa</li> </ul>		Puerto Ricco,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S. German</li> <li>Puerto Ricco, or S. Juan de Puerto Ricco</li> </ul>
	Soconusco,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Gucuelan</li> </ul>		Anguilla,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Basse Ter- re, French</li> <li>Three Towns &amp; two Forts, English</li> </ul>
	Guaxima- la,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>La Trinidad</li> <li>S. Miguel</li> <li>Xerez</li> <li>S. Salvador</li> <li>S. Jago de Guaximala, the Capital.</li> </ul>		S. Christo- phers,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bath-Bay Fort</li> </ul>
	Vera Paz,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Vera Paz</li> </ul>		Nevis,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A fair Church</li> </ul>
VI. The Antilles Islands, containing,	Honduras,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Truxillo, or Trugilbo</li> <li>Villa de Naco</li> <li>S. Pedro, or S. Peter</li> <li>Gracias a Dios</li> <li>S. Forge de Olancho</li> <li>Valladolid</li> </ul>	The En- glish Planta- tions,	Montser- ra,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dominica</li> <li>Barbada, or Barbuda</li> <li>Antego</li> </ul>
	Nicar- agua,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Segovia la Nueva</li> <li>Realejo</li> <li>La Posseccion</li> <li>Leon, the Capital</li> <li>Granada</li> <li>Maffaya, Mount Jaen</li> </ul>		Barba- does,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S. Mi- chael's</li> <li>Lit. Bristol</li> <li>S. James</li> <li>Charles- Town</li> </ul>
	Costa Ric- ca,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Nicoya</li> <li>Aranjuez</li> <li>Castro d' Austria</li> <li>Cartago</li> </ul>		S. Vincents	
	Veraagua,	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Parica</li> <li>Santa F</li> <li>La Trinidad</li> <li>La Concepcion</li> </ul>		The Ca- ribbe Isles,	



					St. Vincent's
					Tobago
					New Miffen- ghen
French Colonies					Isle de S. Croix
					S. Barthomew
					S. Eustache
					Guadalupe
					La Desiderade
					La Marigalante
					Martinica
					Bas-Ville
					S. Lucia
					Granada
					S. Martin, to France and Holland
					To the Hollanders
					Saba
					To the Spaniards,
					La Trinidad
The Sotto- vento Isles					S. Joseph
					Eastern
					Margarita
					S. Jago
					Blanco
					Tortuga
					Urchila
					Rocca
					La Isla de Aves
					Western
					Bon Ayre
					Curassow
					Oruba

III. The Arctick or Northern Countries, so nam'd from their Situation towards the Arctick Pole, are very cold, and almost altogether unknown to the Europeans. in regard that some of their Sea-coasts only were discover'd about 100 Years agoe, chiefly by the English; as also by the Danes and Hollanders; hoping to find out a Passage from thence into the Pacifick Sea: But their Attempts were always frustrated, and they had only an Opportunity to discover certain Straights and Bays.

IV. These Countries may be conveniently divided into the Western and Eastern: Among the former are New Denmark, New South-Wales, and New North-Wales. New Denmark owes its Discovery to John Munck a Dane, by Virtue of a Commission from Christian IV. King of Denmark, A.D. 1619, or (according to M. Sanfon) in 1629: The Arctick Circle passes through this Country, and it is wash'd on the East by the Christian Sea, which was so call'd in Honour of the same Danish Monarch. Munck was forc'd to take up his Winter-Quarters in a little Cottage, or Hut, on the Harbour which bears his Name, and found the Weather so excessive cold, that his Spanish Wines, and even those that were burnt, were quite froze: The whole Company that undertook this Voyage dy'd there, except the Captain and two other Persons, who at last return'd safe to Norway and Denmark. The Names of New Denmark and the Christian Sea, are now almost become obsolete, and are omitted in most Maps:

New South-Wales is situated on the East of New Denmark, and wash'd by the Bays of But-ton, Hudson and James; as also New North-Wales, which is separated from the former, by the Christian Sea: Both these Countries were discover'd and nam'd by the English in the beginning of the last Age.

The remaining Arctick Countries of chief Note, extend themselves farther Eastward, either on the hither side, or beyond Hudson's Strait: On the hither side, or on the North of that Strait, appear the Islands of James, Cumberland and Good Fortune. James Island, so call'd by the English, James in honour of King James I. and Cumberland-Isle, is of a vast Extent; and lyes in the middle, between Hudson's Strait, and the Bays of Davis and Bassin: On its Southern side it has a large Gulph nam'd Cumberland-Bay, in the innermost Part of which the Cumberland-Isles are situated, taking up but a small space in Compass. In land- other Maps, instead of one great Island, the Bounds of three are set out, separated from one another by several Straights, that flow between them; in the most Northern of which, the Cumberland-Isles are usually plac'd. These Parts are delineated in the Dutch Sea Atlas according to the former Draught, which is also approv'd by Bandrand, La Robbe, and other modern Geographers, whose Foot-steps we have follow'd.

The Isle of good Fortune, appears almost in the form of a Triangle, not far from the Entrance of Hudson's Strait: It is a great deal less than James-Island, and was discover'd by the English when they found out the Arctick Countries.

The other Parts of these Countries, situated farther Eastward, and beyond, or on the South of Hudson's Strait, are Mansfield-Isle and Terra de Labrador. Mansfield-Island lyes in the middle, between New Wales and Terra de Labrador, at the Confluence of Hudson's Strait and Bay; extending itself a great deal farther from North to South, than from West to East: It was lately found out by the English, and receiv'd its Name from them.

Terra de Labrador, or Labrador, otherwise call'd Estotiland and New Britain, is wash'd on the North, by Hudson's Strait; as also, on the West, by the Bay of the same Name; and is bounded on the South, by Canada. This Country is very full of Bays, and its Figure is almost Triangular; abounding (as they say) with Mountains, Woods and wild Beasts. Estotiland, in M. Sanfon's French and Latin Maps is set down among the Parts of Canada, but in regard that no European Colony is settled therein, and nothing is as yet known but the Sea-coast, we are rather induc'd to refer it, with other Geographers, to the Arctick Countries.



## C H A P. III.

## Canada, and the adjacent Islands.

I. FROM the Arctick Countries we pass to *Canada*, or *New France*. So nam'd by *John Verazzani*, a Florentine, who first took Possession of it in the behalf of *Francis I.* King of *France*, A. D. 1525; although it was discover'd several Years before by the English. It borders on the North, upon the Arctick Countries, but its utmost Boundaries on the West, are not as yet sufficiently known; nevertheless 'tis certain that it extends itself very far on that Quarter towards the New Kingdom of *Mexico*: It is also bounded on the South, by *Florida*; and on the East, by the Sea of *Virginia*, that of *New France*, and *St. Lawrence's Gulph*. But the Limits of *Canada* must be restrain'd within a narrower Compass, if we cut off the Countries of *Virginia*, *New York*, and *New England*, with the rest of the English Plantations. According to the former Dimensions of *Canada* taken at large, it is situated between the 34th. and the 55th. Degree of Northern Latitude.

II. The inland Western Part is possess'd by the Natives, but the Coasts both of Sea and Rivers is in the hands of the French and English. The Degrees of Heat and Cold in so spacious a Country must needs be very different: In that Part which is under the French, the Snows that fall in the Autumnal and Winter Seasons are very great, which by reason that the Land is cover'd with Woods, the oblique Rays of the Sun, cannot sufficiently melt; insomuch that in process of time, they become a vast heap, and cause the Cold to be extremely intense: The Weather in the Summer-Season is excessive Hot, clear and open, but its serenity is sometimes disturb'd, with sudden Storms, and the Lightning is apt to set the Woods on Fire, which often continues for a long time. However, some are of Opinion, That *New France*, if it were industriously and duly manur'd, would soon become as fruitful as *Old France*: because they are both situated, almost in the same Latitude, and Experience shews, that the Soil is very proper for such Tillage.

Moreover, the Country abounds with Mountains, Rocks, Marshes, Lakes, Rivers, Pastures, Meadows and very rich Arable Lands, and affords a good store of Mayz, Tobacco, Fruits, Herbs, Heart, Pit-coal, Silver and several other sorts of Metal. In the Woods are bred Stags, Elks, Bears, Ounces, Porcupines, Foxes, Martins, wild Cats, Weasels, Snakes and Rabbits: There are also several sorts of Birds, more especially Eagles, Vulturs and Falcons: and the Rivers, Lakes, and Seas, are very full of Fish: The former are frequented by Beavers and Otters; with Pikes, Carps, Eels, Lampreys, &c. In the latter are Whales, Sea-Weaves, Seals, Porpoises, Urchins, and Dog-fish; besides Dolphins, Salmon-, Tortoises, Crabs, Cockles, Oysters, and chiefly abundance of Cod-fish; even sufficient to supply the whole Continent of *Europe*. The Canadians, who are said to be of a quick Apprehension, ingeni-

ous and long-liv'd, usually dwell in Huts, which they sometimes change: In the Winter, they cloath themselves with the painted Skins of Animals, and adorn their Faces with divers colours: They are much addicted to Poligamy, and take great Delight in dancing, smoaking Tobacco, and drinking burnt Wine; as also in hunting, fishing and fowling: They generally live in great Peace one with another, without Ambition, Envy, or Contentions; and do not trouble themselves in the least with any Care for the future. But the *Iroquois*, *Armouchiquois*, and some other particular Nations are naturally deceitful, treacherous, and very cruel to their Enemies. Their Bodies are well proportion'd, and their Complexion naturally white; yet they make it of an Olive-colour, by anointing themselves with Oils mingled with Bears-grease, &c. 'Tis also reported, That their ordinary Remedy when they are sick, is to let themselves blood in the Belly, and that they use certain Herbs, the Virtues of which are known to them by Experience. These savage People are altogether Idolaters, but seem to have some general Notions of a God, whom they call *Atahocan*, i. e. *The Author of all things*. They are govern'd by *Sagamois*, or Captains chosen with great Solemnity out of the eldest Sons of their most eminent Families; to whom they usually give the Names of their immediate Predecessors, to revive them as it were in their Persons. In their general Assemblies, the *Sagamo*, and some old *Aumains*, or Priests, have the decisive Voice. These last likewise perform the Office of Physicians; but are indeed no better than ridiculous Sorcerers.

To render our Descriptions more clear, we shall divide the whole Country of *Canada* into three Parts; so as the first may contain that Tract which lyes beyond the River *Canada*; the second, that which appears on this side the said River; and the third, the principal Islands situated over against the Continent. That Division of *Canada* which is set out on the farther side of the River of the same Name, extends itself farthest on the North and West; and its chief Parts are the Provinces of *Saguenay*, the Territories of several sorts of People, and *Louisiana*.

IV. The Province of *Saguenay*, so call'd from a River of that Name, which runs through it and *Saguenay* falls into the *Canada*, is the best cultivated of all those that are in the Possession of the French. The most remarkable Places and Towns of this Province (according to M. *La Robbe*) are *Port de Quarrter*; *Port St. Nicholas*; and *Chichekedec*; all situated on *St. Lawrence's Gulph*: *Port Neuf*, on the Mouth of the River *Canada*; *Tadoussac*, higher on that of the *Saguenay*: And *Quebec*, the Metropolis of *New France*, divided into the upper and lower Towns, the former being built on an Hill, with a well fortify'd Castle, of a square Figure; and the other, on the foot of the Hill, with a little Harbour: It was erected into an Episcopal See by Pope *Clement X.* *Octob.* 1. 1674, and is the Seat of the chief Governour of *New France*.



France, as also of the highest Court of Judicature. This Town is distant 300 Miles Westward from the Coast of the North Sea, and 60 Leagues Eastward from the Island of *Mont Real*. The other Places of Note, are *Sillery*, a Fort about a League higher: *Les trois Rivières*, a little Town at the Mouth of the three Rivers: And *Fort Frontenac*, with a large Harbour, built A. D. 1673, on the Eastern side of the Lake of the same Name, otherwise termed *Ontario*. The Place was formerly call'd *Katarakovi*, and derives its modern Denomination from Count *Frontenac*, Governour of the whole Country, who caus'd it to be well fortify'd, to keep the *Iroquois* in Subjection. Monsieur *de la Salle* the late Governour added much to its Beauty and Strength, having enlarg'd it to the Extent of 360 Fathoms, and surrounded it with Bastions and Out-works of Freestone.

V. Besides the Province of *Saguenay*, and the above-specified Colonies, we may take notice of the Territory of the *Algonquins*, and that of the *Hurons*, which the *Iroquois* have almost entirely laid waste, situated on the Fresh-water Sea of the *Hurons*, hereafter describ'd. It is needless to make any mention of several other sorts of People, who are very numerous, and live on the hither side of the *Canada*, in regard that they are of less Note, and their Names are scarce known.

VI. Farther, on the West and South, appears a large Country, lately discover'd by M. *de la Salle* Governour of *Fort Frontenac*, Father *Lewis Hennepin*, and others, by the Order of the present French King, and nam'd *Louisiana*, or *Louisiane*, in his Honour. They found therein most spacious Meadows; a great number of Lakes and navigable Rivers, very full of Fish, notable Mountains, Forests, Woods, Trees of a vast thickness and height, more especially Oaks, wild Vines, and several other sorts of Fruit-trees, excellent Hemp, and a Soil fit to bring forth all things that are produc'd in the most fruitful Countries of *Europe*. There was also abundance of Buffles, Staggs, Hedgehogs, Beavers, Otters, wild Cats, Parrets, Swans, Partridges, Tortoises, &c. Besides Bears of a prodigious size, Wolves, Vipers, Physical Herbs, Iron and Brass. The Air is temperate and healthy, and the Natives are of a very robust and strong Constitution; the Men exercise themselves in hunting Wild-Bulls, whereof vast Herds are found here; and the Women perform all the laborious Works at home, carry vast Burthens, Till the Ground, &c. Their common Food is the Flesh of Wild-Bulls, and their Skins afford them Cloathing. They are of an affable Disposition, lively and active, excellent Marksmen, indefatigable Huntsmen, and very swift of Foot: They have no Fire Arms, or even Weapons of Iron and Steel, but make their Knives and Axes of Flints or other Stones. There are several Nations whose Languages are perfectly different, and are each under the Government of certain Chiefs or Kings, who are honour'd and obey'd by the Subjects. They seem to have but little Sense of Religion, the chief Marks of Devotion appear in the Reverence they pay to the Sun, to whom they offer the best Parts of the Beasts they kill.

The French have built two Forts in *Louisiana*, viz. One on the South Coast of the Lake of the *Illinois*, where the River *Miamis* empties itself into that Lake; that River hath its Name from the

neighbouring People, and the Castle is dominated from the River, being call'd *Fort de Miamis*. The other is nam'd *Fort Crevecoeur*, and stands about 100 Leagues more to the West, upon the River *Illinois*, or as the French call it *Saignelay*.

The River *Meschasipi*, that hath been so much talk'd of since Father *Hennepin* publish'd his Memoirs of these Parts, is a very large and deep Stream, issuing from divers Lakes in about the 55th. Degr. of North Latitude; from whence running Southward with many windings and turnings, falls at last into the Gulph of *Mexico*, in the 27th. Degree of Latitude, having perform'd a Course of above 800 Leagues. The River is deep enough to afford Passage to the biggest Ships, but the Navigation is interrupted by some Cataracts or great falls, whereof that nam'd by *Hennepin* St. *Anthony*, he tells us, is 50 or 60 Foot deep. Several considerable Rivers fall into the *Meschasipi*, and the Country on its Banks is good Soil, and capable of much Improvement.

And now having survey'd the Countries of *Canada* beyond the River, we shall return and take a View of those lying on this side of it; whereof the English Plantations take up much the greatest Part, and therefore deserve our first Notice; but because we are now upon the French Territories, we will pass through *Iroquois*, the *Etecheminis* Country, to their Provinces of *Acadia* and Proper *Canada*; and also give an Account of the Lakes and Rivers of *Canada*, before we enter our English Empire in *America*.

*Irocoisia*, or *Iroquois*, a Country, whose Situation is differently express'd in several Maps: For *Vischer* places it between New England, on the East, and New Netherland, or New York, on the West, from which it is separated by a mountainous Tract: He also delineates the vast Lake of the *Iroquois*, which contains several Islands, and receives the great River of the *Iroquois*, with that of *Canada*, or St. *Lawrence*: But the Author of the Description of *Louisiana*, sets out the Bounds of the *Iroquois*, or People of *Irocoisia*, on the West of New York, and for the most part, on the Southern and Eastern Coasts of the Lake *Frontenac*, or *Ontario*, on the North of which, some are likewise settled: The French have built *Fort Conty*, on the Southern Coast of the same Lake. The *Iroquois* are divided into five distinct Nations, and are generally of a tall Stature: They cloath themselves with the Skins of Beavers, Wolves, and other Animals, and are of a savage and cruel Disposition; but they are said to have been much civiliz'd of late Years, since their Conversation with the French.

The Country of the *Etecheminis*, a particular People, borders on the North, upon Proper *Canada*; on the East, upon *Acadia*; on the South, upon New England; and on the West, upon the River *Canada*: It is water'd by several Rivers, and among the rest, one of the same Name, but it does not contain any remarkable Places.

There only remain two Provinces of that Part of *Canada*, which lyes beyond the River *Canada*, *Acadia*, or St. *Lawrence*, viz. *Acadia* and Proper *Canada*, both annexed to the Crown of *France*. The former is bounded on all sides, by the Sea, except its Western, which borders upon the Territories

VII. *Irocoisia*.

VIII. *Etecheminis* People.

XI.



of the *Eteocemba*. This Country was sometime a Part of the English Plantations, and call'd *New-Sumland*, but being made over to the French, by the Treaty at *Breda*, it retained the Name of *Atatia*. It is very full of Harbours, and its chief Towns are built on the Sea-coasts, particularly *Pier-Road* the Capital, with a very capacious Harbour in the innermost Part of the Western Bay, and *Tadoussac* farther on the South. The following Towns appear farther on the Eastern and Northern Quarters, viz. *Port-Royal*, *La Hève*, *Palmyre*, *Marmouze*, and *Moringy*. The People nam'd *Semino* inhabit the inland Country.

X. In passing on the North of *Atatia*, beyond the Bay *Des Chances*, we come to the Province of *Canada*, where the first Distinction take term'd *Proper Canada*, which the spacious Gulph of *St. Lawrence* bounds, on the East, the Estuary of the River *Canada*, on the North and West, and the Country of the *Eteocemba*, with the Bay *Des Indes*, on the South. Its Towns are not very considerable, but *M. Sorel* and *La Rivière*, among others, make mention of *Rousselle*, or *Sorel*, seated on the Eastern side of the River *Canada*; and *Mont-Real*, in an Island of the same Name: a neat Town, which has been well inhabited within these few Years.

XI. The Lakes of *Canada*, are very numerous, and the most spacious are those that lie in the Western Part, and on the Frontiers of *Loisiana*, being five in number: They contain fresh Water, are full of Fish, and navigable; so that Ships of a large size may sail in them, but not without great Difficulty in the Winter, by reason of most boisterous Winds which blow during that Season. The most Northern of these is the *Upper Lake*, otherwise nam'd the Lake of *Tray* and *Conat*, scarce distant twelve days Journey Southward from *Hudson's Bay*. Its Extent (as they say) from West to East, takes up 150 Miles, and from North to South, and 500 in Compass: Besides several Islands, it receives ten navigable Rivers, and discharges itself into the Lake of the *Hurons*, through the Strait, or Cataract of *Maria*, the Course of which is rapid, and obstructed by a great number of Rocks. The *great Lake*, or *The Fré-Huon*, or *Sea of the Hurons*, is so call'd from the *Hurons*, certain People who have settled themselves in the adjacent Parts, and otherwise *The Lake of Orleans*: Some take it for the greatest Lake of the whole Continent of Northern *America*, and it is suppos'd to reach in Compass, for the space of above 700 Leagues, as also 200 in Length from North to South; but its Breadth is of a different Extent, and largest in the middle. Many Islands are contain'd in this Lake, which by means of

the Strait of *Mishimamack*, has a Communication with that of the *Louis*, i. e. *The Lake of Fine-Mon*. The latter is so term'd from the People, *Laké*, who inhabit its Western and Southern Coasts, as also the *Daggon-Lake*, by modern Writers, and takes up 200 Leagues in Compass: It is distant about 15 Leagues Southward from the *Upper Lake*, and its Northern Part lying next to that of the *Hurons*, is known by the Name of *Sink-Bay*. The Lake of *Erie*, or *Ontario*, being more Southern than *Fré-Huon*, and nearest to Northern *Florida*, is said to extend itself from West to East, for the space of 120 Leagues: It receives four Rivers into its Channel, besides the Lake of the *Hurons*, on the North, through a most eminent Strait; and at last runs into *Frontenac-Lake* likewise on the Northern Quarter. The last of these Lakes, which owes its Name to Count *Frontenac* Governor of *New France*, was formerly call'd *Ontario*, i. e. *The Fair* of the *Indians*, who inhabit the adjacent Territories. It is almost of an Oval figure, and lies out from West to East, for the space of 80 Leagues; abounding with Islands. In the Description of these Lakes, we have not follow'd the common Maps, which are very faulty, but that which *M. Hennepin* has annex'd to his Relation of *Loisiana*.

The River *Canada* is the largest of all those of *Canada* this Part, and even of the whole Continent of Northern *America*, and is so call'd from the Country it waters: although others will have the Country rather to derive its Name from the River, which is also term'd *St. Lawrence's River*. Several modern Authors are of Opinion, that it takes its Rise in the Lake of the *Hurons*, and on the Confines of *Florida*; from whence it runs into the Lake *Erie*, and afterwards passes through that of *Frontenac*: But Father *Hennepin* in his History of *Loisiana*, affirms, That the River of *St. Lawrence* springs out of divers Lakes, the largest of which are the five but now specify'd, and that as soon as it has issu'd forth from that of *Frontenac*, it directs its Course towards the North-East: Afterwards having receiv'd on the left side, the Rivers *Des Prairies*, i. e. *The Meadow-River*, *De Mont*, and *Les trois Rivières*, or the *Triple River*, it waters *Quebec*, and *Tadoussac* lower; where it is augmented, on the same side, by the *Saguenay*: At last, having divided *Canada* in two Parts, and made many Islands; it rolls with a wide Mouth by the Island *Anticosti*, into *St. Lawrence's Gulph*, after a Course of 800 Leagues. Men of War may conveniently sail up this River, to the Town of *Tadoussac*, and Merchant-Ships of a considerable Burthen, as far as *Quebec*, but above *Mont-Real* it does not admit of Boats by reason of the Cataracts.

Riv. des  
Prairies.  
Riv. de  
Mons.  
Les trois  
Rivières

Saguenay



## CHAPTER IV.

*The English Plantations on the Continent of Canada, viz. NEW-ENGLAND, NEW-JERSEY, NEW-YORK, PENNSYLVANIA, MARY-LAND, and VIRGINIA. Together with the Islands of Newfound-Land, the other Islands on the Coasts, and Bermudas.*





of the *Eschimbies*. This Country was sometime a Part of the English Plantations, and call'd New *Scotland*: but being made over to the French, by the Treaty at *Breda*, it obtain'd the Name of *Acadia*. It is very full of Harbours, and its chief Towns are built on the Sea-coasts, particularly *Port-Royal* the Capital, with a very capacious Harbour, in the innermost Part of the Western Bay, and *Torbequet*, farther on the South: The following Towns appear farther in the Eastern and Northern Quarters, viz. *Port-Réjouis*, *La Hève*, *Petit-Marmou*, and *Martingo*. The People nam'd *Sauvages* inhabit the inland Country.

X. In passing on the North of *Acadia*, beyond the Bay *Des Chaleurs*, we come to the Province of *Canada*, otherwise for Distinction sake termed Proper *Canada*, which the spacious Gulph of St. *Laurence* bounds, on the East, the Estuary of the River *Canada*, on the North and West: and the Country of the *Eschimbies*, with the Bay *Des Chaleurs*, on the South. Its Towns are not very considerable, but *M. Sault* and *La Rivière*, among others, make mention of *Richelieu*, or *Sauvel*, seated on the Eastern side of the River *Canada*; and *Mont-Real*, in an Island of the same Name: a neat Town, which has been well inhabited within these few Years.

XI. The Lakes of *Canada*, are very numerous, and the most spacious are those that lye in the Western Part, and on the Frontiers of *Louisiana*, being five in number: They contain fresh Water, are full of Fish and navigable; so that Ships of a large size may sail in them, but not without great Difficulty in the Winter, by reason of most boisterous Winds which blow during that Season. The most Northern of these is the *Upper Lake*, otherwise nam'd the Lake of *Tracy* and *Condi*, scarce distant twelve days Journey Southward from *Hudson's Bay*. Its Extent (as they say) from West to East, takes up 150 Miles, 40 from North to South, and 500 in Compass: Besides several Islands, it receives ten navigable Rivers, and discharges itself into the Lake of the *Hurons*, through the Straight, or Cataract of *Maria*, the Course of which is rapid, and obstructed by a great number of Rocks. The *great Lake*, or *The Fresh-water Sea of the Hurons*, is so call'd from the *Hurons*, certain People who have settled themselves in the adjacent Parts, and otherwise *The Lake of Orleans*: Some take it for the greatest Lake of the whole Continent of Northern *America*, and it is supposed to reach in Compass, for the space of above 700 Leagues, as also 200 in Length from North to South; but its Breadth is of a different Extent, and largest in the middle. Many Islands are contain'd in this Lake, which by means of

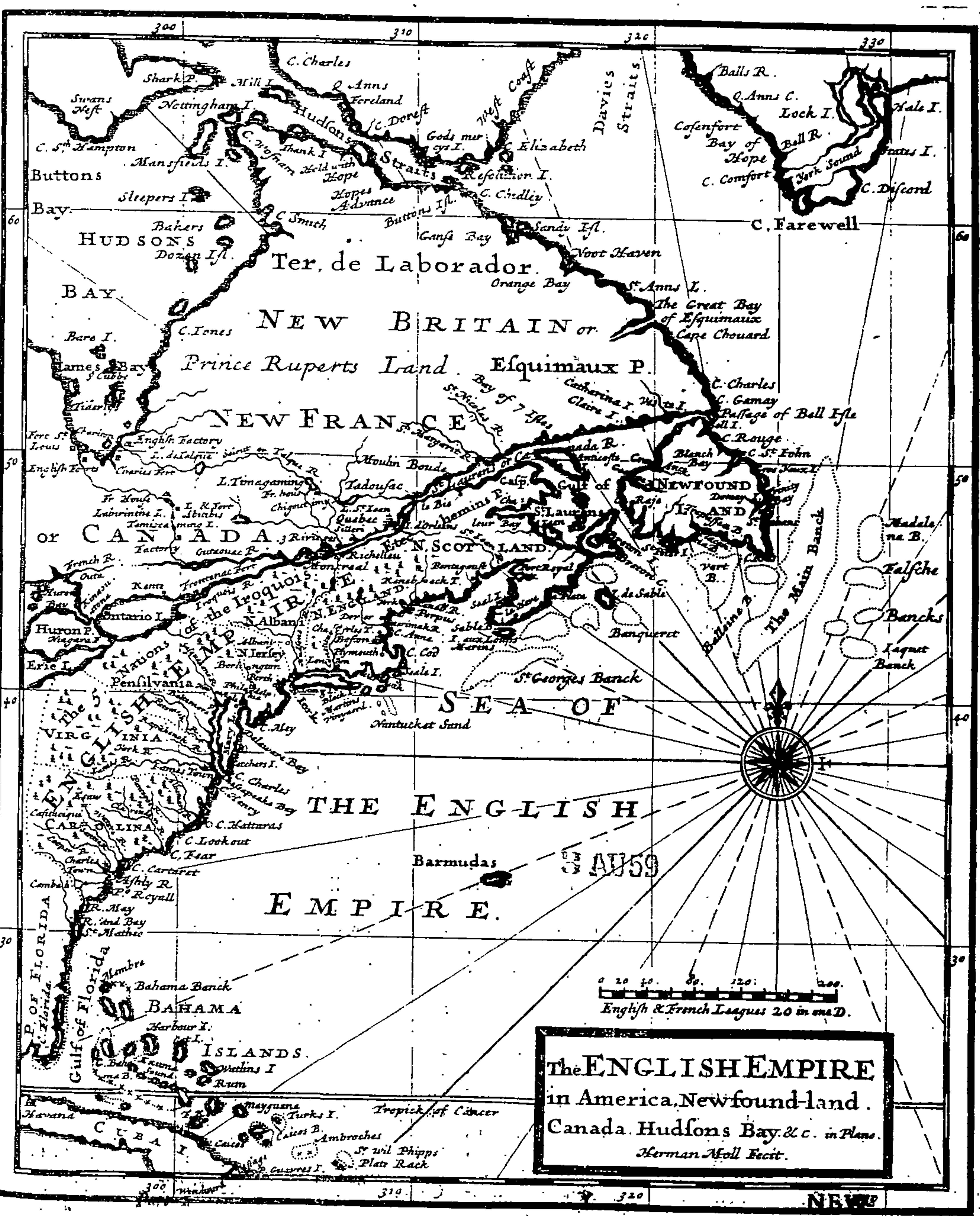
the Straight of *Mishimakinack*, has a Communication with that of the *Illinois*, i. e. *The Lake of the Mon.* The latter is so term'd from the People, *Lake* who inhabit its Western and Southern Coasts, as also the *Dauphin's-Lake*, by modern Writers, and takes up 400 Leagues in Compass: It is distant about 15 Leagues Southward from the *Upper Lake*, and its Northern Part lying next to that of the *Hurons*, is known by the Name of *Sauk-Bay*. The Lake of *Erie*, or *Érie*, being more Southern than *Erie*, the former, and nearest to Northern *Florida*, is said to extend itself from West to East, for the space of 140 Leagues: It receives four Rivers into its Channel, besides the Lake of the *Hurons*, on the North, through a most eminent Straight: and at last runs into *Frontenac-Lake* likewise on the Northern Quarter. The last of these Lakes *Frontenac*, which owes its Name to Count *Frontenac* Governor of New *France*, was formerly call'd *Ontario*, i. e. *The Fair* by the *Iroquois*, who inhabit the adjacent Territories. It is almost of an Oval Figure, and lyes out from West to East, for the space of 80 Leagues; abounding with Islands. In the Description of these Lakes, we have not follow'd the common Maps, which are very faulty, but that which *M. Hennipin* has annex'd to his Relation of *Louisiana*.

The River *Canada* is the largest of all those of *Canada* this Part, and even of the whole Continent of *Northern America*, and is so call'd from the Country it waters; although others will have the Country rather to derive its Name from the River, which is also termed St. *Laurence's River*. Several modern Authors are of Opinion, that it takes its Rise in the Lake of the *Hurons*, and on the Confines of *Florida*; from whence it runs into the Lake *Erie*, and afterwards passes through that of *Frontenac*: But Father *Hennepin* in his History of *Louisiana*, affirms, That the River of St. *Laurence* springs out of divers Lakes, the largest of which are the five but now specify'd, and that as soon as it has issu'd forth from that of *Frontenac*, it directs its Course towards the North-East: Afterwards having receiv'd on the left side, the Rivers *Des Prairies*, i. e. *The Meadow-River*, *De Riv. des Prairies.* *Mons.* and *Les trois Rivières*, or the *Triple River*, it *Riv. de Mons.* waters *Quebec*, and *Tadoussac* lower; where it is augmented, on the same side, by the *Saguenay*: *Les trois Rivières* At last, having divided *Canada* in two Parts, and made many Islands; it rolls with a wide Mouth *Saguenay* by the Island *Anticosti*, into St. *Laurence's Gulph*, *Flu.* after a Course of 800 Leagues. Men of War may conveniently sail up this River, to the Town of *Tadoussac*, and Merchant-Ships of a considerable Burthen, as far as *Quebec*, but above *Mont-Real* it does not admit of Boats by reason of the Cataracts.



CHAP. IV.

The English Plantations on the Continent of Canada, viz. NEW-ENGLAND, NEW-JERSEY, NEW-YORK, PEN-SYLVANIA, MARY-LAND, and VIRGINIA. Togeth-er with the Islands of Newfound-Land, the other Islands on the Coasts, and Bermudas.





NEW ENGLAND, the most Northern of all the English Colonies in *America*, was first discover'd by *Sebastian Cabot*, a Portuguese, A. D. 1497; but was not inhabited by any Christians, till Sir *Poult Amadis*, and Captain *Arthur Barlowe* having taken Possession of it for Queen *Elizabeth*, in 1584, a Colony was establish'd there next Year, under the Government of Mr. *Ralph Lane*: And although K. *James I.* 1606, gave all Encouragement to another Colony sent thither, to plant and improve it for the Benefit of the Crown; nevertheless so many Obstructions and Accidents befell the Adventurers, that it turn'd to no Account, till about the Year 1620, when *New Plymouth* being built, it became a Place of good Trade, and one of the most flourishing Plantations of the English, as it continues at this day.

The whole Country is situated between the 41 and 45 Degr. of Northern Latitude, under the Temperate Zone, at an equal distance from the Arctic Circle and the Tropick of *Cancer*. It is bounded on the East, by the Atlantick, or Great Western Ocean; on the North and West, by *Canada*, or *New France*, particularly the Country of the *Erechimons*: and on the South by *New York*.

The Air is very wholesome, and agreeable to the temper of the English, and the Soil is not only fruitful of such things as are the peculiar Productions of the Country, but also of all sorts of Grain convey'd thither from *England*; which it as kindly cherishes, as if it were the natural Mother. The Woods afford Oak, Elm, Fir, Alder, Ash, Asp, Pine, Birch, Maple, Walnut, Chestnut, Cedar, Cypress, Sassafras, Sumach, &c. The Fields and Orchards yield abundance of Fruit, as Apples, Pears, and Plums, with several other kinds that are common to this Province, with *Maryland* and *Virginia*. The Forests and Swamps are full of Bears, Lions, Foxes, Deer, Hares, Rabbits, *Moose*, *Musquashers*, Raccoons, Otters, Beavers, &c. The Plains and Meadows have Pasture for numerous Herds of tame Cattel; as Horses, Cows, Sheep, Goats and Swine. The Rivers and adjacent Sea abound with excellent Fish, viz. Alewives, Basses, Clams, Cod, Cockles, Crab-fish, Eels, Grampuses, Haddock, Herrings, Halibuts, Lampreys, Lobsters, Mackarel, Mussels, Oysters, Porpoises, Salmon, Sturgeon, Seals, Sharks, Smelts, Thornback, Tortoises, Whales, &c. Moreover, there is great variety of wild and tame Fowl; as Partridges, Pheasants, Heath-cocks, Cranes, Cormorants, Snipes, Herons, Black-birds, Humming-birds, Widgeons, Didappers, Loons, Turkeys, Swans, Geese, Ducks, Sheldrakes, &c. Among the noxious Animals, the Rattle-Snake is most formidable, and different sorts of stinging Flies, that are very troublesome. The staple Commodities of these Parts, are rich Furrs, Tobacco, Flax, Linnen, Cotton, Amber, Iron, Pitch, Tar, Cables, Masts, Timber for the building of Ships, divers sorts of Grain, &c. The Inhabitants usually supply *Barbadoes* and other English Plantations, with Flower, Bisket, Fleth, Fish, Salt, &c. receiving in exchange Sugar and other Merchandizes, both for their own use, and to sell again: They also maintain a great Traffick with *England*, for Wearing-apparel, Cloth, Silks, Stuffs, Iron, Brasse, Household-furniture, and other necessary Provisions.

The Natives are generally Canibals, or Man-eaters, and are often at variance one with ano-

ther: They are very inconstant, timorous, subtil, soon angry, and so malicious, that they seldom forget an Injury, nevertheless, they are Ingenious, of a quick Apprehension, and of a tractable Temper: They cloath themselves with loose Mantles of Deer-skin, and Aprons of the same; and paint their Bodies, thinking those most gallant that are most deformed: They have several Towns and Settlements, and their Riches consist chiefly in Furrs and Skins, which they sell to the English; with whom for the most part, they have kept a fair Correspondence; making Leagues, and carrying on a Trade with them: But this Compliance seems to proceed rather from Fear than Love; as it evidently appears from the frequent Breaches and Violations of their Contracts made at several times. As for their Religion, they are meer Idolaters, and worship the Devil, under the Name of *Okee*, having Conference with him, and fashioning themselves according to his Shape: Besides him, whom they make their chief God, they are also us'd to adore every thing they fear will hurt them; as Thunder, Lightning, Fire, &c.

These Savages are distinguish'd into several Tribes, observing different Customs, and Manners, as those Indians that inhabit *Maryland* and *Virginia* with the other Parts of *America*; and are subject to their particular Kings, *Sachams* and *Sagamores*, who command them with sovereign and absolute Authority: Neither have they any Laws, but what they receive from the Mouths of their Governours.

The English, who are very numerous and potent, demean themselves conformably to the Manners of their Ancestors in Old *England*, and are govern'd by Constitutions of their own making: They have several Courts of Judicature, and other publick Places, where they assemble once a Month, to enact or repeal Laws; to determine Causes, and to chuse a Governour, Deputy-Governour, Assistants, Burgesses, and other inferior Magistrates; each County electing such Officers every Year, for the management of State-Affairs. But it is observable, That the Government both Ecclesiastical and Civil, is in the Hands of Presbyterians and Independents.

The three principal Colonies of New *England*, are those of *Plimouth*, *Connecticut* and *Massachusetts*, which contain five Counties, viz. *Pecquid*, *Naraganset*, *Pocasset*, *Mohecgans*, and *Nipnak*, with a great number of fine Towns advantageously situated for Traffick, either upon the Sea-coasts, or on navigable Rivers, and well inhabited: Among others, the following are chiefly remarkable, viz. BOSTON, the Metropolis, commodiously seated on the Sea-shore, to the West of Cape *Ann*, where the Governour usually keeps his Residence: A large City, very populous; having uniform Streets, and fair Houses, inhabited by Merchants and Tradesmen; who maintain a great Commerce to *Barbadoes*, and the other Plantations in *America*; as also to *England* and *Ireland*: It is a Place of considerable Strength, surrounded with two or three Hills, on which several Fortifications and Batteries are rais'd; and its Harbour is very capacious. *Charles-Town*, remarkable for its Situation between the Rivers *Charles* and *Mistick*, and beautify'd with a spacious and well-built Church: The Market-place is near the River-side,



and two Streets take their Rise from thence, containing several good Houses. *Dorchester*, a considerable Town, built near the Sea, and water'd by two Rivulets. *Cambridge*, on the River *Quinobequin*, formerly call'd *New Town*, the Seat of an University, adorn'd with two Colleges and divers elegant Structures; besides a Printing-House, where the Holy Bible was printed a few Years ago, in the Indian Language, and publish'd for the benefit of the Savage Natives. *St. George's Fort*, on the Mouth of the River *Sagadehock*. *New Plimouth*, on the spacious Bay of *Potuxet*. *Reading*, a well-inhabited Town, conveniently seated about a great Pond; where there are two Mills, one for Corn and the other for Timber: And *Salem*, pleasantly situated between two Rivers.

The other noted Towns on or near the Seashore, are, *Westchester*; *Merrenuck*; *Greenwich*; *Stanford*; *Chichester*; *Fairfield*; *Shatford*; *Milford*; *New-haven*; *Brentford*; *Guilford*; *Saybrook*; *Lime*; *Stoniton*; *Ninicroft*; *Wickford*; *East-ham*; *Warwick*, on the River *Patuxet*; *Providence*, on a River of the same Name; *Seaconck*; *Swansey*; *Taunton*; *Sandwich*; *Barnstable*; *Yarmouth*; *East-ham*; *Marshfield*; *Bridgewater*; *Duxbury*; *Hingham*; *Hull*; *Weymouth*; *Braintree*; *Milton*; *Roxbury*; *Medfield*; *Dedham*; *Newton*; *Water-Town*; *Woburne*; *Malden*; *Lynn*; *Shosheen*; *Beverley*; *Manchester*; *Glocester*; *Wenham*; *Ipswich*; *Rowley*; *Newbury*; *Salisbury*; *Hampton*; *Portsmouth*; *Exeter*; *Dover*; *Ketry*; *York*; *Heddeck*; *Wells*; *Scarborough*; *Falmouth*; and *Shipwits*, on a River that bears the same Denomination. On or near the sides of *Connecticat* River, are *Middletown*; *Wethersfield*; *Hartford*; *Windfor*; *Westfield*; *Springfield*; *Northampton*; *Hadley*; *Hadfield*; *Diersfield*; *Swamfield*, *Squabecq*, &c. On the River *Thames*, are *London*; *Norwich* and *Uncas-Mendon*, near *Providence* River. Farther in the inland Country, appear *Worcester*; *Marlborough*; *Lancaster*; *Groton*; *Sudbury*; *Concord*; *Billericay*; *Chelmsford*, &c. Lastly, on or near the River *Marimake*, are *Bradford* *Amsbury*; *Andover*; *Haveril*; and *Penicook*. *Kenebeck*, on a River of the same Name, &c. The greatest part of these Towns derive their Names from those in *Old England*, and are also known to the Indians by other Terms.

The Sea-coasts of this Country, are fenc'd, especially on the South, by the great Sand-beach of *Malabar*; and the inland Parts are water'd by many Rivers, the chief of which, are the *Connecticut*, Navigable above 50 Miles; *Thames*, which receives the *Glass-River*; *Patuxet*; *Ware*, that falls into the *Providence*; *Quinebequin*; *Marimake*; *Saco*; *Casco*; *Sagadehock*; *Kenebeck*; and *Penobscot*.

II. The Province, or Colony of *NEW JERSEY*, lies between the 39 and 41 Degr. of Northern Latitude, having for its Bounds on the South and East, the Western Ocean; on the North-East, *Hudson's River*, which parts it from *New York*; and on the West, the River *Delaware*, by which it is separated from *Pennsylvania*; extending itself in length on the Sea-coast, and along *Hudson's River*, above an hundred English Miles. It is divided into two Parts, viz. *East-Jersey* and *West-Jersey*, by reason of the different Proprietors; for the greatest Part of the former belongs

Part 2.

to Mr. *William Pen*, Mr. *Robert West*, &c. and the latter is the Possession of Mr. *Edward Billing*, or his Assigns.

The Temperature of the Air is healthful, and the nature of the Soil, with respect to its Richness, different in several Places, but it is generally fertile; bringing forth plentiful Crops of all sorts of English Corn, besides Indian Wheat, which increases here prodigiously, and is found very wholesome: It also produces good Flax and Hemp, proper for Linnen-Manufactures, with abundance of Oak Timber fit for Shipping, Cedar, Ash, Firr, &c. and variety of delicious Fruits, as Apples, Quinces, Pears, Peaches, Plums, Grapes, Mulberries, &c. The Tobacco planted by the River *Delaware*, is more especially remarkable for its Excellency. In the Woods are bred Deer, Conies and Wild-Fowl of several sorts, as Turkeys, Partridges, Swans, Geese, Ducks, &c. and the Pastures feed numerous Herds of Horses, Cows, Hogs, and some Sheep. Lastly, Some Mines and Minerals have been already discover'd, and many more might probably be found out, if the Inhabitants apply'd themselves to the search of them: However, a Smelting-Furnace and Forge are already set up, for the making of good Iron, which proves very advantageous to the Country. As for the Commodities of these Parts, Whale-Oil and Whale-Fins, with Bever, Monkey, Rackoon and Martin-Skins, are often transported thence for *England*. In like manner, great store of Horses, Beef, Pork, Pipe-staves, Boards, Wheat, Barley, Rye, Indian Corn, Bread, Flower, Butter and Cheese, is convey'd to *Barbado's*, *Jamaica*, *Mevis*, and the other adjacent Islands; as also to *Portugal*, *Spain*, the *Canaries*, &c.

The Indian Natives are but few in number, if compar'd with those of the neighbouring Colonies; but they are very serviceable to the English, not only in Hunting, and taking Deer, and other Wild Beasts, and catching Fish and Fowl for them, but also in killing and destroying Bears, Wolves, &c. whose Skins they bring, and sell for small Matters. The Political Constitutions of the Country, were establish'd *A. D.* 1666, by *John Lord Berkley*, and Sir *George Cartaret*, the first Proprietors, in which such Provision was made for Liberty in Matters of Religion, and Property in Estates, that all Persons may live happy under the Government, and by that means this Colony has been actually much encreas'd; a great number of Inhabitants continually resorting thither from the adjoining Plantations. The present Proprietors have likewise confirm'd and enlarg'd the same Constitutions, for the benefit of Planters and Adventurers, and for the complete Settlement of this advantageous Colony; which is divided into Six Counties, viz. *Bergen*, *Essex*, *Middlesex*, *Jersey* properly so call'd, *Monmouth*, and *Cape-May*.

The principal Towns and Places of *New Jersey*, are *Bergen*; *Newark*; *New-Barbados*; *Proprietors Farin*; *Elizabeths-Town*; *Woodbridge*; *Pascataway*; *PERTH*, or *Amboy-Perth* the chief City, near which within *Sandy-Point*, lies a noted Bay, well known not to be inferiour to any of the American Ports, and where Ships of 400 Tun ride safe with all Winds, and arrive before the Houses of the Town, within a Plank's length

Y 2

of



of the Shore. *Middletown; Shrewsbury; York; Manalapan; Cape-Mary Town; Doncaster; Bridlington; or Burlington, &c.* The Country is every where plentifully supply'd with lovely Springs, Inland-Rivers, Brooks and Creeks, which not only afford many convenient Harbours for Shipping, but also great store of excellent Fish, both for Merchandize and Food, as Whales, Cod-Fish, Cole, Hake-Fish, Surgeon, Basses, Eels, Oysters, &c. with many other Kinds of flat and small Fish. The most remarkable of these Rivers and Creeks are, Part of *Hudson's River*, where is plenty of fresh Fish and Water-Fowl: the *Pisack; Hocking; Raritan; South-River; Mill-River; Neversink; Manasqua; Prince Maurice's River; and Delaware River*: With *Fishing-Creek; Stephen's Creek; Agreement Creek; Conansy's Creek; Halfway Creek; Ceden Creek; Crabick Creek* and *Lawrence Creek*, besides a great number of Inlets, Bays, Rivulets, &c.

III.  
New  
York.

The next English Colony is *NEW-YORK*, which took its Name from the late King *James* the Second, when Duke of *York*, to whom it was granted by King *Charles* the Second, *A. D.* 1664, who the same Year, convey'd all that Part of it which lyes between *Hudson's River* and *Delaware River*, to *John Lord Berkley* and *Sir George Carteret*, jointly, by the Name of *Nova Cesarea*, or *New Jersey*: So that *New York* now only contains that Part of *New England* which the Dutch formerly seiz'd, being situated between *Hudson's* and *Connecticut Rivers*, with the Isles of *Manhattan* and *Long-Island*, over against the Continent; that is to say, between the 41 Degr. 30 Min. and the 43 Degr. 15 Min. of Northern Latitude. It is bounded on the North-East by *New England*; on the South-West, by *New Jersey* and *Maryland*; on the East, by the Western Ocean; and on the West, by Part of *New Jersey* and *Pennsylvania*. This Country was sold *A. D.* 1668, by *Mr. Hudson*, its first Discoverer (but without Authority from his Sovereign King *Charles I.*) to the *Hollanders*, who impos'd on it the Names of *Nova Belgia* and *New Netherland*, and continu'd in the possession of it till 1664, when they were expell'd by the Forces which King *Charles II.* sent to subdue it, under the Command of *Sir Robert Carr*. The Colony of *New York* likewise comprehended *New Sweden*, which was at first possess'd by the *Swedes*, and afterwards by the *Hollanders*. That Tract extended itself along the lower Course of *Delaware River*, but its Name is now almost grown out of use; neither is it any longer express'd in the Maps. Thus the English having settled themselves there, improv'd their Plantations from time to time, with good Success, and had *Col. Nichols* for their first Governour, who reduc'd several Parts under his Majesty's Obedience, and made so firm a League of Peace and Amity with the *Indians*, that no particular Person has been since disturb'd in the peaceable Enjoyment of his Lands or Possessions. Towards the Spring-head of *Hudson's River*, *New Albany* is situated, a Place of great Trade with the *Indians*; between which and *New York*, for the space of above 100 Miles, lyes as good Arable Land, as can be found in any other Part of the habitable World: But it could not be brought to perfection during the Dutch Government; in re-

Nova  
Belgia.

New  
Swe-  
den.

New  
Albany.

gard that the Savages then possess'd all, except one *Garison*, call'd *The Sopers*.

The Air is of a very good Temperature; the Country every where extremely pleasant; and the Soil so rich and fertile, that it is reported, to have produc'd 100 Bushels of Wheat out of one Bushel brought from Europe, and sown there. Besides the Fruits, which this Province naturally yields, as Wild Grapes and Nuts, with plenty of Herbage and Plants; it also abounds with variety of Grain and the best sorts of European Fruits, viz. Apricocks, Peaches, Grapes, Chestnuts, Olives, &c. Moreover, it affords as good Tobacco as any that is usually made in *Maryland*, or the other English Plantations, with Hemp, Flax, Hops, Rape-seed, Madder, Wood, Oil, Beef, Pork, Peas, Furs, Elk-Skins, &c. Lastly, The Woods are well stock'd with Deer, and other Kinds of Wild Beasts and Fowl, and the Pastures have Fodder for numerous Herds of tame Cattel.

The Old Inhabitants are several sorts of *Indians*, not much different from those of *Virginia*; swarthy, and black-hair'd, but well-proportion'd, robust, of quick apprehension, and very tractable. They live chiefly upon Hunting, Fowling and Fishing, and are very dexterous at their Bows and Arrows; their Wives being generally employ'd in planting their Corn, and tilling the Ground. Their cloathing is a Mantle of Broad-cloth, about half a Yard of which is put between their Leggs, and fasten'd at two Corners to their Girdle before and behind; their Food is Venison, Fowl, Fish, Turtles, Rackoons, Pole-cats, &c. and their Money is Periwinkle-Shells strung like Beads. They live in movable Tents, generally set up where their Corn grows, and are much addicted to Sports and Pastimes, which consist chiefly in Dancing, Foot-Ball and Cards, at which they'll play away all they have, except a Flap to cover their Nakedness. They love strong Drink, but will not drink at all, unless they have a quantity sufficient to be drunk with, and therefore never carouze in greater Companies, than they have Liquor enough to intoxicate their Brain: In their Drinking-bouts, they drink all alike, and pour the share of those that are first fuddled, down their Throats; often murdering one another in these Debauches: They marry many Wives, but turn them away upon the least Dislike, and the Women are forc'd to take care of the Children. The Virgins are permitted to lye with any Man for Money, and the same Liberty is allow'd to Wives, if they can get their Husbands leave. However, these People are extremely good-natur'd, and freely impart to their Friends what they can spare, or what they take in Hunting. They are also very serviceable and courteous to the English, and have never given them any Disquiet since their first Arrival; nevertheless, they cannot endure them to be present at their Religious Solemnities, because say they, their God will not come till their Departure. And indeed, they are said to worship the Devil with Magical Rites and Ceremonies, who often visits them in the Shape of a Man, Beast or Fowl, and is commonly call'd by the Name of *Monetto*: Their Priests are so many Conjurors, who cause him to appear by their Pawawing, or strange Incantations. They usu-

ally



ally bury their Dead sitting upon a Seat, and furnish'd with a Gun, Money and Goods, to serve for their use in the other World. To conclude, They frequently make War one against another, and seldom give quarter to any but Women and Children, whom they preserve for the recruiting of their Strength.

The Indian Natives are subject to a King, or *Sachem*, who in all Affairs of State, takes the Advice of a Council; but passes the definitive Sentence himself, which the People generally accept with great Shouting and Applause. They rarely inflict Capital Punishment upon Malefactors, but for Incest, or Murder: So that when any are found guilty of those Crimes, they do not confine them, (for they have no Prisons,) but the King and his Guards pursue them, and shoot them to Death. The English are govern'd by a Deputy, appointed and sent over by the King of Great Britain.

The most remarkable Places and Towns of this Colony, are *Orange-Fort*, now nam'd *Albany*, or *New Albany*, seated on the West-side of *Hudson's River*; *The Fort of Good Hope*, on the Western Bank of the Fresh-water River; *Arasapha*, that has the advantage of a strong Castle; and *NEW-YORK*, formerly call'd *New-Amsterdam*, the Capital Town of the whole Country, and the Seat of the Governour; conveniently situated for Trade, Security and Pleasure, on the Southern Part of the little Island of *Manahattens*, which lyes at a small distance from the Continent, at the Mouth of *Hudson's River*: It is wall'd and fenc'd by the strong Fort of *St. James*, and contains 500 Houses, built for the most part, of Dutch Brick and Stone, and cover'd with red and black Tiles; so that the Land being high, it affords a very pleasant Prospect to Spectators afar off. This Town is govern'd by a Mayor, Aldermen, Sheriffs and Justices of the Peace, and chiefly inhabited by the English and and Hollanders, who drive a considerable Trade among the Indians, for the Skins of Bears, Deer, Elks, &c. as also for those of Beavers, Otters and Raccoons, with other Kinds of Furr. They likewise buy Fish in the Summer, with Venison and Fowl in the Winter, of the Natives at an easie rate, and receive continual Supplies of all sorts of necessary Provisions from the neighbouring Territories and Colonies.

The Province of *New York* is water'd by several Rivers; among which, the most remarkable are *Hudson's River*, about two Leagues broad, and very commodious for Shipping; and the *Raritan*.

IV. The Country of *PENNSYLVANIA*, derives its Name from the Proprietor of that Tract of Land, *William Penn*, to whom King *Charles II.* in consideration of his Father's and his own Sufferings for their Loyalty, gave it by Patent, *March 4. 1680.* It is bounded on the North, by *Canada*; on the East, by *Delaware River* and Bay; on the South, by *Maryland*; and on the West, by *New France*.

The Air is wholsom and clear, and will refine, as the Woods are more clear'd: The Sky is also very serene, as in the Southern Parts of *France*, and seldom over-cast with Clouds. The Soil is different, containing divers sorts of Mould, as Sand

yellow and black, Gravel loomy and dusty, and and in some places a fast fat Earth, especially by the inland Rivulets: There is also great store of a black hael Mould, upon a stony Bottom; and the Back-lands are much richer than those that lye on Navigable Rivers. The Woods afford great plenty of Trees, viz. Ash, Beach, Cedar, Chestnut, Cypress, Gumwood, Hickory, Oak of several Kinds, as Red, White and Black, Poplar, Sassafrax, Swamp, Black Walnut, Wild Myrtle, &c. They are also adorn'd with great variety of fragrant Flowers, and divers Kinds of Plants, some of which are Medicinal, and of singular Efficacy in the curing of Burns, Cuts, Swellings, &c. The Country likewise naturally brings forth good store of delicious Fruit, as Chestnuts, Walnuts, Plums, Strawberries, Cranberries, Hurtleberries, and several sorts of Grapes, little inferior to *Frontinack's* and *Muscadel's*. Its artificial Products, are, Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats, Beans, Peas, Squashes, Water-Melons, Musk-Melons, Pumpkins, &c. with all manner of Plants, Herbs and Roots, that usually grow in our Gardens in *England*. Moreover, this Province is well stock'd with wild and tame Beasts both for Food and Profit, as Bears, Elks, Deer, Horses of considerable value, Neat Cattel, Sheep, Beavers, Raccoons, Rabbits, Squirrils, &c. Neither is there any want of Fowl, as Turkeys of 40 or 50 Pound weight, Pheasants, Partridges, Pigeons and Heath-birds.

The Natives, like those of the other Parts of Northern America, are of a tawny and swarthy Complexion; yet not naturally, but by anointing their Skin on purpose. Their Houses are made of Poles, cover'd with the Bark of Trees and Mats, and their Diet is *Mayz*, or Indian Wheat, dress'd after divers manners: They eat twice a day, and sit on the Ground at Meals; taking great delight in strong Liquors, especially Rum, and drinking of it till they fall asleep. In Sickness they are very impatient for Cure, and will part with any thing upon that account. Their Language is lofty and very significative: they treat Strangers with extraordinary Civility, but look for Respect themselves, and think nothing too good for their Friends. They bring up their Children to Fishing, till Fifteen years old; and send them a Hunting in the Woods: So that when by their Skill in Archery, they can make a good Return of Skins, they Marry, which is usually about Eighteen years old for the Man, and Fourteen for the Woman. These Indians believe a God, and the Immortality of the Soul; affirming, There is a great King that made them, who dwells in a glorious Country Southwards, and that the Souls of the Vertuous shall be convey'd thither, where they shall enjoy everlasting Bliss. Their Worship of the Deity, is made up of Sacrifices and Cantico's: The former consist in the first Fruits of their Hunting, which they burn with a great deal of Ceremony: Their Cantico's are perform'd, by tuning a mournful Ditty over their Sacrifices, with Dances, Songs and Shouts. They bury their Dead, both Men and Women, in their Apparel, and their Kindred throw in some pretious Things into their Graves, as a token of their Love: They Mourn by blacking their Faces, and preserve the Graves, which are heaps of Earth neatly made, by plucking



ing off the Grass that grows on them.

These Savage People are govern'd by Kings, or *Sacienias*, who attain to that Dignity by Succession; but always by the Mothers sides, yet no Woman is suffer'd to aspire to the Royal Authority. The King's Council consists of Two hundred of the eldest and wisest Men of his Tribe, and no Affairs of moment are transacted without their Advice. These Princes are powerful, and very exact in the Administration of Justice, but their Mulcts are generally Pecuniary, even for Murder itself; in which case, they pay twice as much for a Woman as a Man, and the Reason alledg'd by them, is, because they breed Children. The English that inhabit *Pennsylvania*, are for the most part, advantageously settled upon the Upper Rivers, which are pleasant, and generally bounded by fruitful Territories: They are of different Persuasions, but generally Quakers, who went over with their Governour *William Penn*. As for their Government, it is conformable as near as conveniently may be, to the Grant express'd in the Patent; in general, aiming at Duty to the King, Preservation of Right to all, the suppression of Vice and Immorality, and the encouragement of Virtue and Arts: To that purpose, Courts of Judicature are establish'd in every County, which are six in number, viz. *Philadelphia*, *Buckingham*, *Chester*, *Newcastle*, *Kent* and *Sussex*.

The Capital Towns of this Colony, is *Philadelphia*, seated on a Neck of Land between the Rivers *Delaware* and *Skunkill*, both Navigable, with convenient Harbours for Ships: It is well built, populous and large, and furnish'd with all useful Trades. About two Miles from hence, are several Springs of Mineral Waters, which are of the same Efficacy with those of *Barnet* and *North-hall* in *England*. The other Places of Note, are *Newcastle*, *Chichester*, *Chester*, &c.

Lastly, *Pennsylvania* has the advantage of many considerable Rivers and Creeks; the chief of which are, the *Sasquesahanough*, or *Sasquahana*, a great River, which runs up Northward to the *Sinnicus*, above 200 Miles, with several Rivers and Branches on both sides, on the East and West; being full of Falls, and Islands till about 10 or 12 Miles above the Indian Fort that bears the same Name: From whence it flows clear, yet is not Navigable downwards, but with great danger, with Canoes steer'd by Indian Pilots. The *Delaware*, a fine River, which is common to this Province and *New Jersey*, and ends in a commodious Bay of the same Denomination. And the *Skunkill*, which affords a Passage to Boats 100 Miles above its Falls, and after having water'd *Philadelphia*, rolls into the *Sasquesahanough*. The lesser Rivers and Creeks, yet convenient for Sloops and Ketches, and other Vessels of considerable Burthen, are *Christian Creek*, *Brandy-wine River*, *Filpot Creek*, *Chichester Creek*, *Chester Creek*, *Pre Creek*, *Crum Creek*, *Derby Creek*, *Wall Creek*, *Hollander Creek*, *Frankford Creek*, *Dublin Creek*, *Potquesin Creek*, and *Neshamun River*, that all empty themselves into the *Delaware*. Moreover, it is observable, That these Rivers and Brooks which are so numerous, have for the most part gravelly and stony Bottoms, and consequently their Waters are very whelsom.

*MARYLAND*, has for its Bounds on the North, *Pennsylvania*, *New England* and *New York*; on the East, the Atlantick Ocean *Delaware Bay*, and Part of *New Jersey*; on the South, *Virginia*, from which it is separated by the River *Potomack*; and on the West, a Meridian Line drawn from the first Spring-head of the *Potomack*; which is continu'd Southward to the farther Bank of the same River, following the Western and Southern Course of it, to a certain Place call'd *Cinquak*, near its Mouth; and from thence to the Promontory, or Cape of Land nam'd *Wakins-Pont*, which lyes in 37 Degr. 50 Min. of Northern Latitude.

This Country was formerly reckon'd as a Part of *Virginia*, till the Year 1631, when King *Charles I.* erected it into a distinct Province, and granted the Propriety of it to the Right Honourable Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*. At the signing of the Bill, his Majesty nam'd it *Maryland*, in honour of *Henrietta Maria*, his Queen Consort: but his Lordship dying before the Patent pass'd the Great Seal of *England*, the said King made a new Grant of the Country to his Son *Cecil Calvert* Lord *Baltimore*, which bears Date *June 20, 1632*. By this Patent, his Lordship and his Heirs were created the true and absolute Lords and Proprietors of the said Province, saving the Allegiance and Sovereign Dominion due to his Majesty, his Heirs and Successors: Moreover, not only the whole Continent and adjacent Islands, with all Royal Mines and Quarries, were granted to the said Lord, his Heirs and Assigns: but also all manner of Royal Prerogatives and Jurisdictions Military and Civil, both at Sea and Land: As Power of enacting Laws Civil and Martial, conferring Honours, pardoning Offences, making War and Peace, coining Money, &c. All to be held of the Crown of *England*, in common Soccage, yielding and paying yearly for the same to his Majesty, his Heirs and Successors, two Indian Arrows at *Windsoor-Castle*, on Easter-Tuesday, and the fifth Part of all the Gold and Silver Oar, which should happen to be found in the said Province. Whereupon his Lordship in *Novemb. 1633*, sent thither his second Brother, Mr. *Leonard Calvert*, in Quality of his Governour, accompanied with Mr. *George Calvert*, his third Brother, and several other Persons of Quality, to take possession of this Province, and to settle a Plantation therein.

The Air since the felling of the Woods, is sufficiently healthful, and not disagreeable to the Constitution of the English, who at their first Arrival, were seiz'd by a Distemper somewhat like an Ague, usually termed *Seasoning*; of which for some Years, many dy'd for want of good looking to, and a right Management of themselves. But since the Country has been more clear'd from Woods, and that a better Provision is made for Diet and Lodging, with the improvement of the Art of Physick, in applying proper Remedies; very few die of these *Seasonings*, and many now are not troubled with them at all. As for the Temperature of the Air, the Heats in Summer, which are as intense here as in *Spain*, generally receive seasonable Allays about Noon, sometimes from gentle Breezes, and sometimes by fresh Showers. The Cold of the

Winter



Winter is seldom excessive; neither do the Frosts continue long; but the Vernal and Autumnal Seasons are extremely pleasant, mild and temperate.

The Country is very fertile, plain and for the most part level; yet rising in some places with gentle Ascents, up to pleasant Hills of a moderate height, which set off the Beauty of the adjacent Valleys. The Trees, Fruits, Fish, Fowl, Birds, and Commodities naturally produc'd here, are much the same with those Plants of the neighbouring Colony of *Virginia*. There is also plenty of Indian Corn, commonly call'd *Mayz*, with all sorts of English Grain and Pulse, as Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats, Peas, Beans, &c. besides Garden-Herbs and Roots. Among the great variety of Birds, the Eagles, Falcons, Lamers and Sparrow-hawks, are more especially remarkable, besides a beautiful Bird with black and yellow Feathers, which is call'd the *Baltimore-Bird*, in regard that the Colours in the Field of his Lordship's Coat of Arms, are *Or* and *Sable*. There are also most other kinds of wild and tame Fowl, that are commonly known in *England* and other Parts of *Europe*. Great store of Cider, Perry, and Quince-drink is made here and in *Virginia*, as good as in any Country whatsoever; and considerable Quantities of Furs, Hides, Beef, Pork, Bacon, Butter and Cheese have been often exported from hence: But the chief Trade of *Maryland*, consists in Tobacco, which being esteem'd most proper for a foreign Market is for the most part vend'd abroad, to the great advantage of the Planters, who in exchange for it and some other Merchandizes, receive all manner of necessary Provisions; inso-much that 100 Sail of Ships have of late been known to trade thither in one Year from *England*, and the rest of the English Plantations in *America*. The general way of Traffick in these Parts is by bartering or exchanging one Commodity for another; although there is a competent stock of English and other sorts of Money, besides the Coyn that is peculiar to the Lord Proprietary.

The Customs, Dispositions, and Manners of the Natives are much the same with those of *Virginia*, and they are likewise distinguish'd into many different Tribes, each govern'd by a particular King. The Men are robust and well proportion'd, delighting chiefly in hunting and warlike Enterprizes: The Women are employ'd not only in managing their Household-Affairs, but also in planting, manuring and improving their Land. They cut their Hair (which is long, black, and uncurled) after odd fantastick Modes, and dye it of divers Colours; anointing their Skins with Bears-grease; by which means, their Complexion becomes more tawny, and their Bodies more capable of enduring the hardship of Weather. They live in Huts that have but one large Room, and a Fire-place in the middle; lying round about it upon Mats, which are their own proper Manufacture. They are usually cloath'd in Winter with a shagged Mantle, and in Summer the greatest Bravery their Grandees pretend to, is the wearing of *Wan-Pompeag* and *Roanoack*, a kind of Fish-shells, which they string like Beads and also use instead of Money. Their military Furniture consists only of a Bow and Arrows, with a Gun, a Hatchet and *Cano*, or

little Boat made of the Trunk of a large Tree. These Indians have many strange Rites in their Divine Worship, and maintain a plurality of Deities; but acknowledge one independent Sovereign and eternal Being, who created the inferior Gods to be subservient to him, in the Works of Creation and Providence; among whom they reckon the Sun, Moon, and Stars. They Believe that in a future State, the Soul shall be dispos'd of according to its Works done upon Earth, either to the Mansions of the Gods, there to enjoy everlasting Happiness, or to *Popogusso*, i. e. *A Pit of unquenchable Fire*. They also worship Idols, the chief of which is call'd *Kimasa*.

The Government of *Maryland*, is fram'd according to the model of that of *England*, and maintain'd by wholesome Laws, that tend much to the Advantage of the Inhabitants; Liberty of Conscience being allow'd to all that profess Christianity though of different Persuasions: So that none is molested for difference of Judgment, in matters of Religion, and this Liberty is establish'd there, by an Act of Assembly, to continue for ever; by which means so many have been induc'd to settle under this Government, that the number of the English in the Year 1670, amounted to near 20000, and they all live together in the greatest Peace, Order and Concord imaginable. Upon emergent Occasions the Governour calls a *General Assembly* of the Estates of the Province, which is distinguish'd into an upper and lower House: In the former sits the Governour and Council, with such Lords of Manours and other Persons, as the Lord Proprietary, or his Deputy shall summon thither by Writ, from time to time; and the other House consists of Delegates chosen by Free-holders in the respective Counties. This Assembly is conven'd, prorogu'd, or dissolv'd at his Lordship's Pleasure; and whatsoever is decreed therein, with his Approbation, is of the same force there, as an Act of Parliament in *England*. The chief Court of Judicature is the Provincial, held every quarter of a Year, at *St. Mary's City*, of which in the absence of the Lord Proprietary, his Deputy, or Governour and Council are Judges. There are other inferior Courts which are kept six times of the Year in every particular County, for the Tryal of Causes, not relating to Life or Limb, nor exceeding the value of 3000 weight of Tobacco; from whence Appeals lye to the Provincial Court.

The whole Country of *Maryland* in the Possession of the English is divided into ten Counties, five of which are situated on the West-side of *Chesapeake-Bay*, viz. *St. Mary's*, *Charles*, *Calvert*, *Ann-Arundel*, and *Baltimore*. The other five lye on the Eastern Coast, viz. those of *Somerset*, *Dorchester*, *Talbot*, *Cecil* and *Kent*. There are Foundations laid for Towns more or less, in all these Counties, which in a little time may come to due Perfection. In *Calvert* County about the River *Patuxent*, and the adjacent Territories, the Bounds of three Towns are set out, viz. one over against *Point-Patience* call'd *Harrington*, or *Harvey-Town*; *Calverton*, or *Calvert's Town*, in *Battel Creek*; and *Herrington*, upon the Cliffs. The other noted Places are *Warrington*, *Arundelton*, *Darrington*, *Baltimore-Town*, *Caxilton*, *Newark*, *Somerset-Town*, &c. But the Metropolis of the whole Province is *St. MARYS*, seated on the East-side of *St. George's River*;



River; which has impos'd its Name on the County, and is dignify'd with the Privilege of a City; where the Governour resides, and the Provincial Courts are kept, with the publick Offices. The Ground-plot of a Fort and Prison is lately laid upon a Tract of Land nam'd *Windmill-Point*, from a Windmill which formerly stood there, being a very proper Situation for the commanding of *St. Georges River*. Besides the Governour's Mansion-house in this City, known by the Name of *St. Johns*, the present Governour has another very fair and pleasant House, built partly of Brick and partly with Timber, about eight Miles distant from *St. Marks*.

The spacious Bay of *Chesapeake* gives entrance for Ships into this Country, and passes through the Heart of it; receiving many considerable Rivers, viz. the *Potomack* before-mention'd, which is the largest of all, and separates *Maryland* from *Virginia*, the *Pamunkey*, the *South-River*, the *Annamundel*, alias *Sacrum*, the *Potomack*, the *Gun-powder River*, the *Bush-River*, and the *Selqueshanough*, all on its Western side: On its East-side in like manner fall in the *Wicomico* alias *Potomack*, the *Wicocomoco*, the *Nomoke*, the *Tropiquan*, otherwise call'd *St. Catherine's River*, the *Little* and *great Chapman's*, *St. Michaels River*, *Chesler River*, the *Saxatrap*, the *North-East River*, &c.

VI. The most Southern of all these Parts is VIR-  
GINIA, which was first discover'd in the Year  
1497, with all the other Coasts of North America, from the Cape of Florida on the South, to  
Newfoundland in the North, and even as far as  
the 37 Deg. 30 Min. of North Latitude, by Se-  
bastian Cabot the Veretian, upon Account of Hen-  
ry VII. King of England. In 1584 Capt. *Pierre*  
*Amadas* and Capt. *Arthur Barlow* made a parti-  
cular Discovery of the Country, at the proper  
Costs and Charges of Sir *Walter Raleigh* Knight,  
who is said to have given it this Name, in  
Honour of *Elizabeth* the Virgin-Queen of En-  
gland. The next Year Sir *Richard Greenville* set-  
ting out with seven Ships from *Plimouth* on the  
9th. of April, arriv'd at *Wakokon* May 26, and  
began to make a Settlement in August following,  
at *James*, which lyes in 36 Degr. of Northern  
Latitude: He continuing there till June 1586,  
and made several Discoveries; but was forc'd to  
return to England, by reason of the incessant  
Molestations and treacherous Practices of the Na-  
tives, and landed at *Portsmouth* July 27. 1586.  
The same Sir *Richard Greenville* undertook a second  
Voyage to Virginia, not long after with three  
Ships, and touch'd again upon *Roanoke*, but found  
the Place deserted. Many other Attempts were  
made to establish an English Colony in those  
Parts, which likewise prov'd ineffectual; for all  
that had been hitherto left, were either utterly  
destroy'd by the Savages, or having made their  
Escape, got home again, with a great deal of  
difficulty. However, some other Discoveries were  
carry'd on, notwithstanding these Discourage-  
ments, particularly of *Martin's Vineyard*, and *E-*  
*lizabeth's Isle*, by Capt. *Gossett*; of *Wright's Bay*,  
by *Martin Prigge*; and of *Pemosee-Harbour*, by  
Capt. *George Wermouth*, who set forth at the Charge  
of *Thomas* the first Lord *Arundel* of *Warder*. At  
last, King *James I.* having granted a Commission  
for the Plantation and farther Discovery of the

Country, Capt. *Nearne* set sail with two Ships,  
and being cast upon Cape *Henry* at the Mouth of  
*Chesapeake-Bay*, rais'd a Fort near the Mouth of  
the *Potomack*, now call'd *James-River*; where he  
left a Garison of 100 Men, and return'd to En-  
gland. This was the first Colony that maintain'd  
their Post, and which encreasing by continual  
Supplies from time to time, has attain'd to that  
flourishing Condition which it now enjoys. Af-  
terwards several new Discoveries were made, on  
the Eastern Coast, and to the Head of *Chesapeake-*  
*Bay*, by the singular Industry of Capt. *John Smith*  
and other worthy Personages. However, the in-  
veterate Hatred and Cruelty of the Indians did  
not cease for several Years after, but broke out  
with greater Fury, when all things seem'd to be  
in a state of Peace and Tranquility; for in 1621,  
Sir *Francis Wint* being Governour, they conspired  
the total Destruction of the English, and ma-  
nag'd their Plot with so much Secrecy and Sub-  
tily, that no less than 700 Men, Women  
and Children were murder'd in one day, when  
the Colony did not consist of above 1500. A-  
gain, in 1643 another barbarous Massacre was  
committed, wherein 500 English miserably lost  
their Lives. But these savage Infidels were pun-  
ish'd for their Cruelty by Sir *William Berkly*, who  
almost entirely decated their whole Party, and  
took their Emperor *Opichancono* Prisoner, since  
when they have not been able to make any con-  
siderable Attempt upon the English; however,  
their chief Security does not so much depend on  
a change of the Disposition of the Indians as upon  
the encrease of their own Strength and Number,  
which now amounts to above 40000.

This Country was call'd *Apalchen* by the Natives,  
and formerly comprehended all that Tract of Land  
which reaches from *Norumbegue* to *Florida*, that is to  
say, the Provinces of *New England*, *New York*, *Ma-*  
*ryland*, and Part of *Carolina*, besides that which  
now bears the Name of *Virginia*. But at present  
it lyes between the 33 Degr. 40 Min. and the 42  
Degr. of Northern Latitude; being bounded on  
the North, by *Maryland*; on the West, by the  
Territories of the *Eriechronons*, a particular Indi-  
an People; on the South, by English *Florida*, or  
*Carolina*; and on the East, by the Western Ocea-  
n, on which it has impos'd its Name. The Ex-  
tent of it from South to North takes up about  
150 Leagues, as also 80 from East to West, and  
it is distant 1200 Leagues from the Coasts of En-  
gland. The Climate of *Virginia* is generally health-Climate.  
ful, and not disagreeable to English Constitu-  
tions, if Diet and Lodging be duly regulated.  
The Temperature of the Air and Seasons is much  
govern'd by the Winds, with respect to Heat and  
Cold, or Driness and Moisture. The North and  
North-West Winds are extremely Cold and Pier-  
cing and cause very sharp Frosts, so as to freeze  
over the biggest Rivers from 3 to 9 Miles wide;  
though they are not of long continuance, as nei-  
ther the somewhat deep Snows, with which they  
are accompany'd. The South and South-East  
Winds bring Heat in the Summer-months, and  
cease in July and August, when the Air grows  
excessive hot and troublesome. The Weather breaks  
suddenly in September, and turns into great Rains;  
occasioning an Epidemical Sickness, commonly  
call'd *Seasoning*, which nevertheless of late is not  
so frequent, and much less mortal than formerly;  
with



wine: *Cachexies*, Fluxes, Gripes, Scorbütick Dropsies, &c. The Thunder is often attended with fatal Circumstances, killing many Persons, and overthrowing their Houses; and in one Particular is very remarkable, That it generally does most hurt nearest the Fire, and frequently comes down the Chimney; especially if they have any Fire in them: It beats down great Trees, and twists others like a Withy; leaving a Sulphureous Smell in the Air, when 'tis over. There also often happens a kind of Whirl-wind, which whisking round in a Circle, carries up Leaves into the Air, that fall again in calm days, some time after in great Showers.

Soil.

The Country for the most part lyes low, and has but few Stones, yet there are very pleasant Hills. The Earth in some Places is intermix'd for several Miles together with Oyster-shells, so thick that they are equal in quantity to the other Mould, and continues so for some Yards under Ground. These Oyster-shells in other Places, lye in Mines cemented together as hard as Rocks, three or four Yards thick, and the Inhabitants usually make Lime of them. In the loose Banks of Shells have been found Teeth two or three Inches long, with the Back and Ribs of a Whale. The Country is also over-spread with Woods, and seems to be as it were one entire Forest, consisting of large Trees of several sorts of Oak, Ash, Poplar, Pine, Cedar, Elm, Hickory, Dog-wood, Black Walnut, Chesnut, Cypress, &c. Yet it is free from Thickets, or Under-Wood, the small Shrubs growing only on Lands that have been clear'd, or Swamps, and thus it holds for several hundreds of Miles. The Soil is generally sandy; and even more fertile of Corn than *England*, yielding for the most part, between 25 and 30 fold; so that an Acre of Ground commonly produces 200 Bushels of Corn. There are few or no Meadows, by reason that the Natives have not as yet learn'd the manner of drayning their boggy Marshes, or Swamps, which would make excellent Pasture-ground, so that they are extremely put to it, for Fodder for their Cattel in the Winter, and lose many. The Uplands are weak and will not bear above three Years good Tobacco, because they have no means to enrich them; but folding Cows therein, as we do Sheep in *England*; though they have good Marle and Stith, the Use of which is unknown to them. They have likewise a sort of Clay that is very proper for Pipes and Pots; and Talk of which is made a delicate White-wash: besides great store of Pitch, Turpentine, a kind of Earth like *Terra Sigillata*, Allum, Black Lead, Copper and Iron. As for Fruits, there is abundance of divers sorts, which may well be compar'd with those of *Italy*, or *Spain*, as Apples, Pears, Quinces, Apricocks, Peaches, Plums, Grapes, Cherries, Figs, Chesnuts, Walnuts, Chinco-Pines, Melons, Olives, Strawberries, Rasberries, Goosberries, Mulberries, &c. There are also several sorts of Fruits peculiar to this Country and *Maryland*; as the *Putchamines*, a kind of Damsons, *Messamines*, a kind of Grapes; *Chechinquamins*, a Fruit that resembles a Chesnut, as the *Raucomen* does the Goosberry; *Macoquer*, a sort of Apple; *Mattaquesunnauks*, like Indian Figs; *Morococks*, a kind of Strawberry, and a Berry call'd *Ocoughtanannis*, somewhat like to Capers. All sorts of Roots and Gar-

Part 2

den-herbs grow there plentifully; as Potatoes, Carrets, Turneps, Onions, Asparagus, Artichokes, Cabbages, Colly-flowers, &c. with many Physicall Plants, as *Radix Serpentaria*, Dittany, Turbith, *Mechoacan*, Ague Root, the best Tobacco, &c. The Roots peculiar to *Virginia* and *Maryland*, *Herbs*, are *Tockawagh*, both wholesome and savoury to the Taste; *Wichakan*, very efficacious in the healing of all manner of Wounds; *Poconis* of admirable Vertue to assuage Swellings and Aches; and *Musquaspes*, with the Juice of which affording a pleasant Colour, the Indians paint their Mats and Targets. The Plant call'd *Muttouna* is no less esteem'd among them, of which they make Bread, besides the *Assentamen*, a kind of Pink, and a rare Plant commonly call'd Silk-grass, having thin and fibrous Leaves, of which is made a kind of fine Stuff, with a Gloss like Silk, and Cordage much better than of Hemp, or Flax, both for continuance and Strength.

Before the coming of the English, there was not so much as one Horse, Bull, Cow, Hog, *Cattle*, or Goat, but now there is plenty of most sorts of Cattel, except Sheep, which the Inhabitants are discourag'd from keeping, because the Wolves devour them so fast. In the Woods are numerous Herds of red Deer, and Elks, whose Flesh *Wild-Beasts*, is said to be as good as Beef, Buffles, Lions, Bears, Leopards, Tigers, Wolves, Dogs that are like Wolves, but do not bark, Rackoons (which are a Species of Monkeys) Hares, Squirrels, Martins, Pole-cats, Weasils and Foxes. There is also great store of Land and Water-Tortoises, Beavers, Otters, different sorts of Froggs, of which one is eight or ten times as big as any in *England*, and make a Noise like the bellowing of a Bull; Lizards, and several kinds of Snakes, of which the most remarkable are Rattle-Snakes that have a Rattle in their Tails, made of Bones, enclos'd in a dry Husk; their Bite is deadly, yet they never meddle with any thing unless provoked. The blowing-Snake, a kind of Viper so nam'd, *Serpents*, because it blows and Swells the Head very much e'er it gives a Bite, which is accompanied with fatal Consequences: Moreover the Bite of the red Snake and Horn-Snake is mortal; but the Black, Corn and Water-Snakes are not so venomous. Other sorts of wild Beasts bred here and in *Maryland*, are the *Aroughena*, somewhat like a Badger; the *Mussascus*, a kind of Water-rat, or rather Musk-rat, that smells very strong of that Perfume; the *Urchunquois*, a sort of Wild Cat; the *Opassum*, a certain Beast, the Female of which has a Bag under her Belly, wherein she carries her young ones, and the *Assapanic*, or Flying-Squirrel.

*Virginia* affords great variety of Birds, as three *Birds*, sorts of Eagles, viz. the Gray, Bald and Black; the last of which is usually very destructive to young Lambs, Pigs, &c. Some Species of Hawks, as the Fishing-Hawk, Goss-Hawk, Falcon and Stannel. There is an Owl as big as a Goose, that kills the Poultry in the Night; a delicate feather'd Bird, Milk-white and tip with a Punctal of Jet-black. The Wood-peckers are many of them lovely to behold, being variegated with Green, Yellow, Black and white, and having a large Scarlet Tuft on their Crown. The Turkeys are here very large, some weighing between 50 and 60 Pounds. There are also Cocks and Hens; without



without Rumps or Tails, or Partridges, Pigeons, Turtle-Doves, Herons, of which there is one kind Milk-white, Cranes, Swans, Wild Geese, Bitterns, Curlews, Sandpipers, Snipes, Tewits, Wild Ducks, Teal, Widgeons, Dotterils, Heath-cocks, Brants, &c. To these may be added innumerable Flocks of small Birds of divers sorts, as Black-birds, very voracious of Corn; the Mocking-bird, which imitates the Notes of all Birds; it hears, and is esteem'd the finest Singing-bird in the World; the *Virginia* Nightingale, of a pure Scarlet colour, with a Tuft on the Head; Larks, Swallows, Ox-eyes, Martins, Red Birds, Blue Birds of a curious Azure colour; Gold-finches that are very beautiful, with Red, Orange-colour'd and yellow Feathers; Sparrows, Snow-birds, Humming-birds, &c.

*Fish.* The Rivers abound with variety of excellent Fish, as Sturgeon, Perch, Crokers, Taylers, Cods, Thorn-backs, Grampuses, Porpoises, Bailes, Coney-fish, Rock-fish, white Salmons, Mollers, Soles, Plaice, Mackerel, Trouts, Eels, Roach, Shad, Herrings, Oysters, Cockles, Muscles, Crey-fish, Crabs, Shrimps, &c. Beside some other kinds of Fish that are peculiar to this Climate, as Drums, Sheeps-heads, of which Broth may be made like that of Mutton, Cat-fish, Sting-rays, &c. The natural Productions of the Country, are, Wood, Madder, Hemp, Flax, Hops, Rape-seed, Am-seed, Pitch, Tar, Rosin, Turpentine, Wax, several sorts of Gums, and Balsoms of admirable Vertues; Elk-Skins that make excellent Buff, and other Hides; but the most staple Commodity at present, is Tobacco, being the General Standard by which all others are rated: There are two sorts of it, viz. one call'd *Sweet-scented*, the best sort of which is planted about *Tork-River*, and the other *Oranoco*, i. e. *brilliant and large*; the former bears the greatest Price, and the latter is more common: It is observable, That such vast quantities of Tobacco are transported from *Virginia* to *England*, that the Custom and Excise paid for it, yields the King a yearly Revenue of Fifty or sixty thousand Pounds *Sterling*: For above 100 Sail of Ships are bound thither every Year from *England*, and other English Plantations, on purpose to take off this Commodity. But the Plenty of it extremely diminishes its Value, and makes it so great a Drug, that the Merchant sometimes had rather lose it, than defray the charges of Freight, Custom, &c. in so much that the Inhabitants might perhaps, employ their Time to better purpose, in improving some other Products, and more especially in the making of Silk, in regard that Mulberry-Trees, proper for the breeding of Silk-worms, thrive so well in these Parts. Trades-men find good Encouragement there, and the usual way of Traffick is by bartering one Commodity for another; altho' upon occasion, there is no want of English and other Foreign Coins: They receive from *England* all sorts of Apparel, Silks, Stuffs, Linnen and Woollen-cloth, Household-Stuff and Utensils, with Wine, Brandy, and other strong Liquors, in exchange for Tobacco, and other Commodities above-mention'd.

*Indians.* The principal Tribes of the Indian People, whose Names were known to the English at their first Arrival, were the *Keoughans*, *Wenocks*, *Archeboks*, *Appametocks*, *Nansamunds* and *Che-*

*peaks*, who inhabited the Country about the River *Powhatan*; the *Paspaheghes*, who possess'd the Territory where *James-Town* is now seated; upon the River *Pamunkee*, were those of the *Young-*  
*amunds* and *Mutapaments*: And the *Manaboacs*, with the *Mocoughracunds* and *Cuttatamoms*, liv'd near the River *Toppahanock*. The Natives are somewhat tall, yet not corpulent, their Hair black and flaggy, and their Skin tawny, which they anoint with certain Oils mingled with Bears-grease. They usually wear Deer-Skins for cloath-  
*Their*  
*Manners.* ing, and Shoes, paint their Faces, and suffer their Hair to grow to an extraordinary length. They dwell in Cabins or Huts made of Poles and Boughs, cover'd with the Barks of Trees, and the Chimney or Fire-hearth is plac'd in the middle: They lye on Mats, and sit on Banks of Earth; their ordinary Food being Venison, Fowl, Fish, &c. They sit on the Ground to eat their Meals, the Men on one side, and the Women on the other; and burn the Bodies of the Dead. The Features of the Female Sex are very agreeable, only they have small Eyes, broad Noses and wide Mouths. As to the Dispositions, Manners, Customs, Religion, &c. of these People there is some Difference, but most of all in their Languages; so that they may well be reckon'd as so many distinct Nations. They are of a quick Wit, very Subtil, Treacherous, and great lovers of their Ease: They are also much addicted to Hunting and going to War, and are very expert in Shooting.  
*Traffick.* Their Traffick consists in the Skins of Deer, Beavers, and other wild Beasts, which they exchange with the English, for Guns, Powder, Shot, small Iron-tools and Brandy. Their Arms are Bows, Arrows and Clubs, with two Knobs at the end: They fight only upon Surprise, but are very vindictive, and will revenge the Death of a Person, upon the Family of the Murderer, two or three Generations after. These Indians  
*Religion.* are Idolaters, believing that there are several Gods of different Orders, who are subject to one Eternal Being: They maintain the Transmigration of the Soul, and have odd Fancies about the Creation of the World: But they have a particular Veneration for a certain God, call'd *Okee*, who (as they say) often appears to them, and discovers his Will, answering Questions put to him, about Hunting, Journeying, Trafficking, &c. They offer to him the first Fruits of all Things every Year, affirming, They cannot expect good Luck without so doing. They account the God of the English better than theirs, because he often beats them; yet they observe strange Ceremonies, and their Priests are generally thought Conjurers: For in the time of a Drought, they are us'd to bring abundance of Rain, by their Pawawing or Incantions: The English keep themselves to the Forms of Divine Worship establish'd in the Church of *England*.

Almost every Indian Town, or rather poor Village, is the Seat of a Monarch, and the People wear certain Marks, or Badges on their Backs, shewing to what Kings or Lords they belong, whom they call *Weraams*: However, there are no Courts of Judicature, nor any Justice administer'd among them, but what particular Persons do themselves, by revenging their own, or their Friends Quarrels. They live in continual Wars one with another, and by that means



are in a great measure destroy'd.

English  
Govern-  
ment.

The Supreme Magistrate of the English Colonies, is a Deputy sent over by the King of Great Britain, who governs the Country by Laws agreeable to those of England, for the decision of all Causes both Civil and Criminal. The Legislative Power is lodg'd in the Governour and a General Assembly, consisting of two Houses, viz. the Upper, which is his Council, and the Lower, wherein sit Burgesses chosen by the Free-holders. These Laws are put in execution, by the Sheriffs, Justices of Peace and other Officers, in every County; and Causes are decided by the Monthly Courts, from whence there may be an Appeal to the chief Court of Judicature at James-Town, commonly call'd the *Quarter-Court*; as being held every Quarter of a Year, where the Governour and Council are Judges. Upon that account, the whole Country of Virginia, as far as the English Colonies reach, is divided into nineteen Provinces or Counties, the greatest part of which take their Names from those of England: On the Eastern Shore, appears the County of Northampton, in Accomack; and on the Western Coasts, are those of *Camotuck*, *Lower Norfolk*, *Nar-semund*, *Isle of Wight*, *Surrey*, *Warwick*, *Henrico*, *James*, *Charles*, *York*, *New Kent*, *Glocester*, *Middlesex*, *Lancaster*, *Northumberland*, *Westmoreland*, *Rappahanock* and *Hartford*.

Besides the Indian Villages, which are only Knots of sorry Huts, or Cabbins, scarce deserving that Name, there are several considerable Towns, for the most part built by the English since their Settlement, either on the Sea-coasts, or upon or near the Rivers, with respect to the advantage of Trade, or the richness of the Soil. The chief of these are, *Cumawoc*; *Secotan*; *Pomejoc*; *Demamotiqua*; *Passenon*; *Catoking*; *Powhatan*, or *Pawhatan*, on the North-side of a large winding River of the same Denomination, call'd *James River* by the English.

James-  
Town.

JAMES-TOWN, or rather *James-City*, conveniently seated a great deal lower in a *Peninsula*, on the North-side of the same River: It was first founded and so nam'd by James I. King of Great Britain, A. D. 1606; but it has been since fortify'd with regular Bulwarks, and adorn'd with many beautiful Brick Buildings; being the Capital Town of the whole Country, where the Courts of Judicature and Publick Offices are constantly kept: At a little distance from this City, Northward, stands a fair Brick-house, call'd *Green-Spring*, where the Governour usually resides. The other Places of Note, are *Elizabeth-City*, a well built Town; containing several good Houses of Brick and Stone, and remarkable for its Situation, on the Mouth of *Powhatan*, or *James-River*: *Henricopolis*, or *Henry's Town*, so call'd in honour of Prince Henry, eldest Son of King James I. to whom it owes its Foundation, in a commodious Part of the Inland Country, at the distance of 80 Miles from James-Town: *Dale-gift*, built and planted at the proper Costs of Sir Thomas Dale, Deputy-Governour, A. D. 1610; *Bermuda*; *Wicocomoco*; *Ketoughtan*, a Sea-Port Town much frequented, on *Chesapeake Bay*, &c.

Rivers.

No Country is better water'd with many large and swift Rivers; the chief of which are *James-River*, *York-River*, *Rappahanock*, and *Potomack*,

Part 2

that all run into the Gulph or Bay of *Chesapeake*, which divides the Country into two unequal Parts, and gives Entrance for Shipping into it, and the adjacent Province of Maryland. This large and commodious Bay is said to extend itself Northwards for the space of 75 Leagues in length; its Breadth in many Places, taking up 5, 6 or 7 Leagues, and sometimes more: It is 6 or 7 Fathom deep, and its Opening on the South between Cape Henry and Cape Charles, is about 10 or 12 Leagues wide. The *Powhatan*, or *James-River*, on the West-side of the Mouth of this Bay, is three Miles wide at its Entrance, and Navigable about 150 Miles. *York-River*, formerly call'd *Pamunkee*, at the distance of 14 Miles Northward from the former, is likewise Navigable for 60 or 70 Miles, and carries small Vessels about 30 or 40 Miles farther. The *Rappahanock*, antiently termed *Toppahanock*, admits of a Passage for Ships, about 130 Miles; but the *Potomack* is the biggest River, being 9 Miles over, in many Places, and serves as a Boundary between this Country and Maryland. They all ebb and flow, but when the Wind is at North-West, their Course is scarce discernable; at other times, they rise at high Tides about two Foot. Besides these navigable and principal Rivers, there are several others of less Note that run into some of them; particularly, the *Poyankatome* and *Mattapeny*, which fall into the *Pamunkee*, or *York-River*: In like manner, the *Powhatan*, or *James-River*, receives the *Apumattuck* or *Elizabeth-River*, Southward; the *Quyonycabanuck*, *Nar-semund* and *Chesapeake*, Eastward; and the *Chickamahania*, or *Chicohomin*, on the North; near the Source of which, out of a Hill, issu'd forth a kind of glistering Sand, like the Filings of Brass, and so continu'd downwards, that the Ground seem'd to be cover'd all over with the same Brassy-stuff.

It is now requisite to give an Account of the principal Islands that lye over against Canada, and constitute its Third Part, according to the above-mention'd Division. In St. Laurence's Gulph, are *Anticosti*, or *L'Assomption*, taking up 35 Antico-Leagues in length and about 7 in breadth; which was first discover'd by James Quartier, and is remarkable for its Situation at the Mouth of St. Laurence's Gulph, where several French Colonies are settled. St. Jean, or St. John's Isle, lying in St. Jean the innermost Bay of the same Gulph, and likewise possess'd by the French: Cap Breton, an Island, with a Promontory of the same Name, somewhat farther towards the East, of a larger Compass, and full of Bays; in which is the Town St. Pierre, or of St. Peter.

NEW-FOUND-LAND, a very large Island, situated at the Mouth of St. Laurence's Gulph, between the 46 and 53 Degr. of Northern Latitude, found at the distance of about 600 Leagues from England land, and only separated from the Continent of Northern America, by a little Straight call'd St. George's Channel. It extends itself (as some say) from North to South, for the space of 120 Leagues, as also 100 from West to East, and takes up 340 in Compass; but these Dimensions are much enlarg'd by others. It is almost of a Triangular Figure; and more especially noted for the multiplicity



plenty of admirable Bays, Harbours and Creeks, on the Sea-coasts.

This Island was first discover'd A. D. 1492, by *Sebastian Cabot*, the Portuguese, for *Henry VII.* King of *England*, and was review'd by Mr. *Tiern* and Mr. *Ellis*, in 1535, in order to a more accurate Discovery of it; but no Trade was manag'd thither by the English, many Years after, only the Portuguese, Normans and Britains of *France*, made some settlements there; changing the Names of the Bays and Promontories. However, the English did not quit their Claim; for in 1553, Sir *Humphrey Gilbert* was order'd to take possession of the Island for Queen *Elizabeth*, who had a Design to establish a Colony therein; but his misfortune in suffering Shipwrack, as he return'd, quash'd that Purpose: In-somuch that no Colony was sent till 1611, when Mr. *Guy*, a Merchant of *Brussels*, having receiv'd a Commission from King *James I.* undertook the Matter, and arriv'd safe there, in 23 Days. This Colony thriv'd, and turn'd to so good account, that in the Year 1623, Sir *George Calvert*, then principal Secretary of State, afterwards Lord *Baltimore*, obtain'd a Patent to settle a Plantation in the Province of *Acadia*, and caus'd a stately House and Fort to be built at *Ferryland*: where he resided with his Family, for some time, and manag'd the Government himself: Afterwards he left it to a Deputy, and his Posterity are still Proprietors of this Province.

The Air is very healthful, yet somewhat cold in Winter and hot in Summer, but never exceeds. The Country in most Places, is fertile, and naturally beautify'd with Roses and stately Trees; producing abundance of Peas, Filberds, and other Fruits, necessary for Humane Life and Delight; it has also afforded to the English, when Till'd, good Wheat, Rye, Turneps, Coleworts, &c. The Woods are well stock'd with Deer, Hares, Foxes, Squirrels, Otters, Musk-rats, Musk-oxen, and other Wild Beasts that yield excellent Furrs. There is also no less plenty of Land and Water-Fowl, and Fish, with variety of fresh Springs, the Waters of which are extremely delicious. On the Sea-coasts many Morfies, or Sea-Oxen, are catch'd and kill'd, which is an amphibious Creature, as big as an Ox, tho' its Shape rather resembles that of a Lion: They have Teeth like those of Elephants, of as large a size, and as good Ivory. Their Paunches serve to make Train-Oil, and their Skin is twice as thick as an Ox's or Bull's, and short-haired, like that of a Seal.

The Natives are of a middle-siz'd Stature, beardless and broad-faced, colouring their Faces with Oker, and some of them go naked, all but their Privities. Their Houses are nothing but Poles set round like our Arbours, and cover'd with Deer-Skins, the Hearth, or Fire-place, being set in the middle. Ten or twelve Families live together in one of these Huts, and lye upon Skins, with their Dogs: often make Feasts, during which they dance and sing; they pass the Rivers in Canoes, or Boats, made of Birch-tree Bark, strengthened with little wooden Hoops. These savage People are said to believe in one God, the Creator of all Things, but have many fantastical Notions and ridiculous Opinions about his Essence, Providence, &c. They also acknowledge the

Immortality of the Soul, and usually bury all the Goods of their deceased Friends in the same Grave with them, to serve for their use in the other World. They have recourse to a certain Demon, when they go a Hunting, to know where they shall find Game, and often speed; but do not otherwise worship him. Lastly, There are many Conjurers among them, whom they use for Physicians and Priests to consult their Oracle.

Their peculiar Form of Government is not known; but 'tis certain, they are rul'd by a *Sagamore*, or King, as the English, by their Governors. The Europeans do not inhabit the middle of the Isle, but content themselves to live about the Ports, which are very convenient, where they carry on a great Trade with Morfies, Whale-Oil, Cod, Stock-fish, Poor-John, and other Kinds of Fish. The English are settled in the Province of *Acadia*, and are Masters of the following Ports, viz. *Conception-Bay*, a spacious Bay, five Miles broad in the narrowest place; yet safe and of very good Anchorage. *Trinity-Bay*; and the Bay *des Trefasses*, i. e. of the Dead. The French retain in their possession, the Port of *Plaisance*, and some other Places.

About 25 Leagues from this Island, to the South-East, over against Cape *Raz*, lyes a vast Bank, or ridge of Ground, which is cover'd with Water, when the Sea is high, and uncover'd and dry at the ebb; extending itself in length, from North to South, almost for the space of 150 Leagues, and above 50 in its greatest breadth, from West to East: The Sea is 200 Fathom deep all round it, and the Sand so movable, that Ships of a considerable Burthen may ride over it. About this Bank are several little Islands, on which *Sebastian Cabot* impos'd the name of *Los Baccalao*, i. e. The Cod-fish Isles, from the prodigious quantities of Cod-fish and Stock-fish there found, which were said to obstruct the Passage of his Vessels: So that every Summer, three or four hundred Sail of Ships, from *England*, *France* and *Holland*, come to these Parts, where they are sure of sufficient Freight of such Fish; this Cod-fishing continues from *April* to *September*. Moreover it is observable, That with the Livers of the Cods, (which are immediately disbowell'd and salted) the Mariners bait Hooks, and catch a large sort of Bird, call'd by them, *Tauquets* and *Hyppogyses*, which serve them for Food in this Voyage.

Over against the Eastern Part of *Acadia*, appears IX. *Isle de Sable*, i. e. The Sand-Island, so call'd by the French, who settled themselves there for Sable. Some time, but were afterwards forc'd to abandon it for want of fresh Water: It takes up 15 Leagues in compass, and is distant as many from Cape *Breton*. The principal Islands situated over against *New England*, are *Nanauket*; I. *The Surgeon-Isles*; *Martin's Vineyard*; *Vineyard*, call'd *Nauoke* by the Natives, and formerly possess'd by the Hollanders; *Texel*, or *Elizabeth's* I. *Block Isle*; *Rode Isle*, the Towns of which are, *Newport* and *Portsmouth*; *Isle of Wight*; *Plum* I. *Eliz. I.* *Rode I.* and *Fishers Isle*.

Over against the Province of *New York*, lye *Manhattan*, an Island so nam'd by the Indians, about 14 Miles long and two broad; chiefly remarkable



markable for the City of New York, built on the South-end of it. *Saten Island*, of a square Figure, taking up about 10 Miles in length and as many in breadth: and containing *Long Island*, several confideral Towns, viz. *Wells*; *Dover*; *Billop*, Old Town, New Town, &c. And *Long Island*, formerly call'd *Muonwaks*, and *Turk-hire*, after it was united to the English Plantations: It is parted from the Continent by the Mouth of *Hellson's River*, and lyes out about 150 Miles from West to East; being in some places eight, in others twelve, and in others fourteen or twenty Miles broad. The whole Island is well inhabited, and exceeding plentiful of all sorts of English Grain, with an admirable variety of Trees, Plants and Fruits, particularly Tobacco, Flax, Pumpkins, Melons, &c. In the Month of *May*, the Fields and Woods are so finely balck'd with Roses and other fragrant Flowers, that all seem to be but one entire and most delightful Garden. In the middle of this Island, a spacious Champain Tract, commonly call'd *Salisbury-Plain*, extends itself above 10 Miles in length and four in breadth, which brings forth very fine Grass, and affords good Pasture for Sheep and other Cattel: A Horse-race is also run there every Year, and the Victor rewarded with a Silver-cup. Moreover, there are two or three other little Plains of about a Mile square, which tend much to the Advantage of the neighbouring Towns; and the Southern Coasts are frequented by Whales and Crampules; besides an innumerable multitude of Seals that lye all the Winter upon the broken Marthes and Beaches, or Bars of Sand. The Dutch Towns of *Long-Island*, noted for the making of China Ware, are *Utrecht*, *Middleburg*, and *Flushing*. The chief English Towns are, *Dover*; *Gravesend*; *Elmhurst*; *Bedford*; *Greenwich*; *Jamaica*; *New Town*; *Hamsted*; *Huntington*; *Chatham*; *Albford*; *Egerton*; *Nettlested*; *Norfolk*; *Faversham*; *East-hampton*; *South-hampton*, &c.

X. Lastly, over against *Virginia* and *Carolina*, but at the distance of 300 Leagues Eastward, the Islands of *BERMUDAS* present themselves to our View, in the 32 Degr. 30 Min. of Northern Latitude: They are likewise distant about 15 or 1600 Leagues from *England*, 1000 or 1200 from the *Madera Isles*, and 400 from *Hispaniola*. They take their Name from the first Discoverer of them, *John Bermudas* a Spaniard; and are also call'd *The Summer-Islands*, from *Sir George Summers*, who suffer'd Shipwrack upon those Coasts, *A. D.* 1609. But the Mariners usually style them *The Devil's Islands*, by reason of the Storms that often arise thereabouts, and the extreme difficulty of the Passage. There are a great cluster of Islands, amounting (as some say) to the number of 47, and the Shape of all taken together, resembles that of a Crescent or Half-moon: *Bermudas* properly so call'd, being the largest, is 15 Miles long, yet scarce three broad in its widest Extent; and all the rest, which bear the Names of *St. George*, *St. David's*, *Coopers Isle*, *Nonessuch*, *Longbrid*, *Ireland*, *Daniel*, *Somerset*, &c. are of a great deal less compass. They have the Advantage of many convenient Ports, Bays and Roads, the chief of which are, *The Great Sound*, *Page's Bay*, *Abbot's Bay*, *Harring-*

*ton's Sound*, *Whalebone Bay*, *Southampton Harbour*, *Harris's Bay*, *Elbow Bay*, *Great Turkle Bay*, *Port-Royal*, &c. The Avenues are every where well fortify'd by Nature, and fenc'd about with Rocks; insomuch that the English by the means of their numerous Block-houses and strong Forts, especially those of *Dover* and *Warwick* have made them altogether impregnable: Neither can a Boat of ten Tuns come near the Harbours, unless the Passages are well-known; altho' Ships of the greatest Burthen may be brought in by a skilful Pilot.

As for the Air, it is of an admirable Temperature, and so exceeding wholsom, that few Persons die of any Distemper but Old Age: So that many have caus'd themselves to be convey'd thither from *England*, and other Parts, on purpose to enjoy the benefit of a long and healthful Life; and those that have resided there for a considerable time, are fearful of removing out of so pure a Climate. The Sky is almost continually serene and clear; altho' this Tranquility is sometimes disturb'd by very tempestuous Weather; with Thunder and Lightning even for the space of 48 Hours. The North and West Winds occasion a kind of Winter, in the Months of *December*, *January* and *February*; which nevertheless is so moderate, that the Marks of Spring appear in the Growth of Plants, and Breeding of Birds. The Soil is extremely Fruitful, and yields two Crops every Year, which are generally gather'd in *July* and *December*. There are several sorts of excellent Fruit, as Oranges, Dates, Palmitos, Mulberries, both White and Red, breeding abundance of Silk-worms, &c. The Cedar-Trees are much different from those in other Places, but very sweet. Our English Corn and Plants thrive well here, besides Tobacco and Cochineal, with which the Inhabitants drive a considerable Trade; not to mention their Pearl and Ambergrece. They have plenty of Tortoises, the Flesh of which is very delicious, and a great increase of Hogs, that were left by the Spaniards: They are also well provided with Fowls and Birds, chiefly Cranes, and a sort of Wild-Fowl that nest in the holes of the Rocks, like Rabbits. Moreover, it is observable, That no venomous Creatures are found in these Islands, and that none will live, if brought thither. The Spiders in particular, are not poisonous, but large, and of different Colours; making their Webs so strong; that the small Birds are often entangled and catch'd in them.

The English are the sole Proprietors of the *Bermudas Islands*, and began their first Settlement there, *A. D.* 1612; so that the Colony is now become very powerful, and consists of about Five thousand Inhabitants. They have divided the whole Cluster of Islands, into several Tribes or Cantreds, viz. those of *Sands*, *Southampton*; *Warwick*, *Page*, *Penbroke*, *Devonshire*, *Smith*, *Hamilton*, &c. in every one of which is a Borough Town, regulated by the Magistrates, according to the Government of *England*, both in Church and State: To conclude, Every thing seems to contribute somewhat towards the compleating of their Happiness, and they have but one great inconvenience, which is scarcity of Fresh Water; in regard that there are no Springs, Rivers or Brooks; in any of these Islands: But this Defect



is in some measure supply'd by Wells and Pits that ebb and flow with the Sea, and Cisterns for Rain-Water. About Midsummer, *A. D.* 1600. five Men set out from these Islands, in a Boat open at top, only capable of containing

three large Tuns, or Hogheads; and after having sail'd seven Weeks, they all arriv'd safe in one of the Ports of *Ireland*; so that it may well be presum'd, The like Undertaking was scarce ever perform'd within the Memory of Man.

## C H A P. V.

### FLORIDA and CAROLINA.

I. FROM the *Bermudas Islands*, we return to the Continent, there to take a View of *FLORIDA*, which is said to have receiv'd its Name from *Ferdinand Soto*, who arriv'd there after some other Navigators, *A. D.* 1534, on *Palm-Sunday*, commonly call'd by the Spaniards, *La Puerta de Enero*: Others affirm, That he impos'd this Name on the Country, upon account of the bloud and fragrant Fields, verdant Meadows, delightful *Savannahs*, &c. that were observ'd by him at his Arrival. However it is certain, That *Sebastian Cabot* a Portuguese, first discover'd it in 1496, for *Henry VII.* King of *England*, but did not stay there, having a Design to find out a Passage that Way into the East. In 1512, *John Ponce* of *Leon* (to whom some attribute the naming of this Province,) was sent thither by the King of *Castile*, but was expell'd by the Natives in 1520. *Luke Vailquez*, *D' Aillon*, with some other Spaniards, undertook an Expedition in 1524, to subdue these People, and to force them to work in the Mines in the Spanish Islands, and *Panfilo Narvaez* cross'd the Country in 1528. Lastly, *Ferdinand Soto* first above-mentioned, after the Conquest of *Peru*, invaded it *May 24*, 1538. and dy'd there of Grief, because he could not accomplish his Designs. Afterwards, the French under *Charles IX.* got footing in several Places, and built the *Caroline* Fort: but were often attack'd by the Spaniards with various Success, and at last oblig'd to give Place to the English.

II. The whole Continent of *Florida* is bounded on the North by *Canada*, and the Tracts of Land that are hitherto unknown, the *Apalachean* Mountains separating it from them; on the West, by the New Kingdom of *Mexico* and the Northern Part of *New Spain*; on the South likewise, by *New Spain* and the Gulph of *Mexico*; and on the East, by the dangerous Straight, or Canal of *Bahama* and the *Atlantick* Ocean. It extends itself from the 25 to the 35 Degr. of Northern Latitude, and from the 273 to the 297 Degr. of Longitude.

III. The Air is very pure and temperate, and the Soil made extremely fruitful by the frequent Dews. The Country near the Sea-coasts, is Sandy: but the inland Parts are for the most part Champain and well Water'd, altho' they have the ill Fortune not to be thoroughly Till'd. It brings forth abundance of Trees, as Pines, Laurels, Palm-trees, Cedars, Cypresses, &c. with Nuts, Chestnuts, Grapes, Plums, Medlars, and other Kinds of most delicious Fruit, besides variety of Pulse. It likewise produces great store

of Cattel and Wild Beasts, viz. Lions, Leopards, Bears, Wolves, Deer, Hares, wild Dogs, wild and tame Cats, Crocodiles and Serpents of a prodigious Size, that devour Men as often as they can surprize them: Neither is there any want of Fish or Fowl, more especially Partridges, Peacocks and Parrets. There are also precious Stones, and some Mines of Gold and Silver; the Rivers in like manner, affording Gold-Sands and Pearls.

The Natives are naturally of a white Complexion, but by anointing themselves with certain Ointments made on purpose, they become of an Olive-colour: They are brawny, robust, and of a tall Stature, especially those that dwell in the Plains: They are addicted to Robbery and Lasciviousness, and go for the most part naked, altho' some of them are cloath'd with the Skins of Animals, taking great delight in adorning themselves with Plumes of Feathers of divers Colours: They often make War, and are very obedient to their Captains, termed *Pirouajies*: There are many Hermaphrodites among them, who serve for their Slaves, and are commonly us'd instead of Labouring-Beasts. These Savage People have a great veneration for the Sun and Moon, and believe the Immortality of the Soul: They likewise pay much respect to their Priests, call'd *Joanas*, who are also their Physicians and Surgeons; and are thought to be meer Sorcerers.

The greatest Part of *Florida*, especially the inland Country, is still in the possession of the Natives; and the Spaniards were sometime Masters of almost all the Sea-coasts, but by degrees they abandon'd the most part of them. At present, the English possess the Maritime Coasts, which are extended from *Cararack-Inlet*, near the Frontiers of *Virginia* on the North, to the River *St. Mathes* on the South, and formerly belong'd to the Jurisdiction of the French, lying between the 29 and 36 Degr. of Northern Latitude.

This spacious Country was united to the Imperial Crown of *England*, *A. D.* 1660, and Carolina, call'd *CAROLINA*, in honour of King *Charles* the Second, who granted it by Patent to *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkley*, *Anthony* Earl of *Shaftsbury*, *Sir George Carteret* Baronet, *Sir William Berkley* Knight and Baronet, and *Sir John Colleton* Knight and Baronet, and to their Heirs and Successors. It has *Virginia* for its Bounds on the North; the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the East; the *Apalachean* Mountains and Spanish



*Florida*, on the West; and on the same Sea, with the Peninsula of *Tequesta*, and the Canal of *Bahama*, on the South.

The Air is very wholesome and temperate, so as the Heat is not offensive in Summer, nor the Cold in Winter, which is not so sharp as to check the growth of Trees, Plants, &c. inasmuch that several Inhabitants of the *Bermudaz Islands*, who live in a most pure Air, and durst not venture themselves in any other Country, have remov'd thither; with many others, from most of the English Colonies in *America*. The Soil is generally rich and fruitful, producing, besides what is proper to the Climate, good Wheat and Barley, with all other English Grain, Herbs, Roots, &c. particularly, Turneps, Carrets, Parsnips, Potatoes, and many kinds of Pulse which are not to be found in *England*: The Fields are full of English and Indian Corn, and the Gardens are adorn'd with the choicest Flowers and Fruits, viz. Apples, Pears, Apricocks, Peaches, Cherries, Figs, Grapes, Plums, Olives, Quinces, Marachocks, Mulberries, Strawberries, Walnuts, Water-melons, &c. The Southern Tracts yield abundance of Oranges, Limes, Lemons, Pome-citrons and Pomegranates. The Woods not only afford all Trees useful for Timber, as red and white Oak, Poplar, Ash, Pine, &c. but likewise many sweet-smelling Trees and Shrubs, as Bay, Cedar, Cypress and Myrtle; among which, there harbour Hares, Conies, Squirrels and Rackoons. The spacious and most delightful *Savannas*, are croud'd with fat Deer; the Meadows are well stock'd with stately Herds of Cattel; and the pleasant Pastures abound with Sheep. To these may be added several sorts of Wild Beasts, as Otters, Bears, Wolves and Leopards, but no Lions, with some strange and monstrous Creatures, as Rattle-Snakes of two Yards and a half long, and Wild Cats bigger than a Fox. Moreover, there is great store of Hogs, which increase wonderfully; as also of Fowl, as Paroquets, Cranes, Herons, Curlews, Heath-cocks, Swans, Geese, Wild Turkeys, Doves, Dotterels, Widgeons, Brants, Ox-eyes, Teals, Ducks, Mallards, and divers other Birds, whose Flesh is most grateful to the Taste.

The Natives are a strong, lively well-shap'd People, generally of a good Disposition, and ready Wit, honest, and sincere in their Dealings: So that they maintain a perfect Friendship with the English, and are ready to serve them upon all Occasions. They are not inclin'd to Vice or Extravagance, but are moderate in their Diet and Apparel, and live a long and pleasant Life, taking little care for the future: Their Old Women are usually employ'd in planting *Mays*, and for the rest, the Rivers and Woods afford them sufficient plenty of Provisions. They are much addicted to Mirth, and take delight in Dancing. For the account of Time, they are said to make use of *Hieroglyphicks*, and instruct their Children in Matters relating to their Country and private Families. Where a signal Battel has been fought, or a remarkable Colony establish'd, they erect a Stone-Pyramid, expressing the number of Persons kill'd, or settled at such a Colony. They are great admirers of Valour, preferring it to all other Vertues, and conse-

quently very often engag'd in War; which tends much to their Destruction. As for their Religion, they worship one God; the Creator of all Things, under the Name of *Okee*, and their High Priests offer Sacrifice to him; but they maintain, that he minds not Humane Affairs himself, but commits the Government of them to lesser Deities, i. e. to good and evil Spirits: They believe the Transmigration of Souls, and future Happiness after Death: They are of Opinion, That the whole Race of Mankind was propagated from four Women, and upon that account divide themselves into so many Tribes. Lastly, They observe many superstitious Ceremonies at their Marriages, and bury their Dead in four several Burying-places, according to the number of their Tribes: They also inter with the Corps, all sorts of Provisions and Household-stuff, for their use in Paradise, which they imagine to be situated beyond the Mountains and Indian Ocean.

There are many petty Kingdoms throughout the Country, and several Indian Towns, that afford a place of Residence to the Monarch of the adjacent Territory. The Savages are subject to these Kings, whose Will is their Law; but the English are govern'd according to the Statutes and Constitutions of *England*, and such By-Laws, as their Governours find necessary for that Province, and there are proper Magistrates to put them in Execution. No Money can be rais'd, nor Laws made, without the consent of the People, or their Representatives, in a general Assembly. A Register is kept of Grants and Conveyances of Land, to prevent Law-Suits and Controversies: Liberty of Conscience is also allow'd to all Persons of different Persuasions; but Atheism, Irreligion, Immorality and lewd Practices, are condemn'd and discountenanc'd. In short, the whole Model of Government has been so well fram'd by the Proprietors, for the welfare and advantage of the Inhabitants, that it is generally esteem'd beyond compare. These Encouragements have given Rise to two considerable Colonies, or Settlements of the English in those Parts, viz. one situated Northward on *Albemarle River*, in 35 Degr. 30 Min. of Northern Latitude; and the other much farther towards the South, in the Heart of the Country, on the Navigable Rivers of *Ashley* and *Cooper*. The latter is a most flourishing Colony, and the principal Mart for the whole Country, by reason of the healthfulness of the Place, and its convenient Situation for Shipping. The Commodities usually Exported thence, are Tobacco, Silk, Cotton, Indico, Ginger, Oil, Wine, &c.

The Province of *Carolina* is divided into several Counties, which take their Names from the Proprietors, viz. those of *Albemarle*, *Clarendon*, *Craven*, *Berkley*, and *Colleton*. The principal Towns are, *CHARLES-TOWN*, remarkable for its Situation upon a Promontory or Neck of Land, between the Mouths of *Ashley* and *Cooper Rivers*: Old *Charles-Town* over against the former, on the farther side of the *Ashley*: *New London*, seated on the Northern Bank of *South-Edisto* River: And *Cambake*, on a River of the same Name. The Country is every where well water'd with many great Rivers, about which the numerous Plantations are advantageously settled:



settled: Some of them are Navigable, and abounding with variety of excellent Fish, which are for the most part, of the same Kind as those of Virginia. The most eminent of these Rivers, beginning to reckon them from North to South, are *Albemarle* River, which receives the *Namaway* and the *Norwoke*; the *Pamunkey*; the *Nouse*, or *Nas*; *Cape Fear*, or *Clarendon* River, divided into two Branches; the *Wingoe*; *Waters*; *Santee*, or *Craven*; *Savannah*; *Cooper* River, into which fall the *Wando*, the *Back* River; *Goose* Creek, *Turkey* Creek, &c. *Ashley* River; *Sono* River; *North-Edisto*; *South-Edisto*; *Colleton* River; the *Catahache*; *Savilla*; *Walter*; *May* River; and *St. Marks*. Lastly, There is a great number of convenient, spacious and safe Harbours, besides innumerable Rivulets, Brooks, Bays, Creeks, Inlets, &c.

VII.

The most considerable Places of Spanish Florida on the East, are *S. Marcos*, a little Town, now almost ruin'd with its Fort and Harbour, near the River of the same Name: And *S. Augustine*, a Town likewise of a small Extent, defended by a Castle, and built a little farther towards the South: Both these Towns are seated in the Province of *Tegeja*, a Peninsula lying between the Gulph of *Mexico*, on the West; and the Strait of *Bahama*, and the North-Sea, on the East; which is also call'd *Proper Florida*, by the Spaniards: They were also sometime Masters of *Savanna*; in *Carolina*; *Mollona*, on the West-side of the River *May*, abounding with Gold and Silver; *Edelmo*, on the Eastern Bank of the same River; *Anacagua*, or *Onasheagua*;

and the *Caroline* Fort, nearer to the Sea-coasts and the Confines of *Virginia*: This last Place was the chief of all those that were in the possession of the French, till at last it was taken, and demolish'd by the Spaniards. To these Towns may be added *Melilot*, the Capital of the Country of the *Apalachites*, situated not far from the *Apalachean* Mountains, and the most spacious Lake *Theomy*, and comprehending six well-cultivated Provinces; which are subject to a Monarch, who keeps his Royal Court in the same City. On the side of *Espiritu Santo* River, the Spaniards have *Achalaque*; *Offachile*, somewhat lower; *Guxi*: And *Hirribigua*, otherwise termed *Hirritigua* and *Hirriga*, not far from the Mouth of the said River, and the Sea-coasts.

The other Towns farther Westward, belonging to the Spanish Jurisdiction, are *Colima*; *Capaha*, water'd according to *M. Sanfon*, by the River *Chucagua*; *Coza*, or *Coca*, which the same Author places on *Rio Grande*, and where admirable Gems are said to be found; *Tascaluca*, nearer to the Sea; *Quigara*; *Xualatino*, or *Xaulatino*; *Chillano*, on the West-side of *Espiritu Santo* River; *Chagus*; and *Naguater*, or *Naguater*, higher on the same River. But *M. Sanfon's* Descriptions are dissonant one from another, with respect to the Situation of these Places, as also the Situation and Names of the Rivers of this Country; among which the most remarkable are, *S. Marcos*, *Rio Grande*, *R. de Canaveral*, *R. del Espiritu Santo*, *R. de Montanhas*, *R. Bravo*, *R. de la Madalena*, *R. Escondido*, *R. de Pabnas*, &c.

## CHAP. VI.

### The New Kingdom of MEXICO, with CALIFORNIA, and the other Islands over against it.

I.  
New  
King-  
dom of  
Mexico.

THE New Kingdom of *Mexico*, otherwise call'd *New Granada*, is bounded on the East, by *Florida* and *Louisiana*; on the South, by *New Spain*; and on the West, by the Gulph of *California*, or *Purple Sea*; but its utmost Extent on the North is not as yet known. It reaches (according to the most modern Maps,) from the 240 to the 268 Degr. of Longitude, and the Latitude takes up almost 27 Degrees. So that it is a most spacious Country; which the Spaniards discover'd, *A.D.* 1598, and still retain Part of it in their Possession.

II.

The Air of this Kingdom is said to be wholesome, altho' hot during the Summer-Season, and very sharp in the Winter. The Country is beset with many high Mountains and Woods; affording numerous Cedars and Pine-Trees, rich Pastures for wild Beasts and tame Cattel, and several kinds of Pulse, with Mines of Gold and Silver, Crystal and Precious Stones, which the *Purple Sea* likewise produces: There are also divers Lakes abounding with Fish, and considerable Rivers: the chief of the latter is, *Rio del Norte*, i. e. *The North-River*, which flows thro'

the middle of the Kingdom, and (as it is express'd in the common Maps) falls into the *Purple Sea*; but (according to *Baudrand*,) into the Gulph of *Mexico*; for this Author assures us, He receiv'd that Information from a certain Learned Person, who had an opportunity to take a particular View of those Parts, a few Years ago. The Country is inhabited by many Nations, whose Languages, Constitutions and Manners, are different; yet some of them are tractable, and get their Livelihood by keeping Cattel and Hunting: They are govern'd by their own Princes, and the greatest Part of them are addicted to Idolatry; altho' some (as it is reported,) worship one God, the Lord of Heaven and Earth, whose Throne is in Heaven; and the Spaniards endeavour to convert them to their Religion.

*M. Baudrand* divides the New Kingdom of *Mexico* into eighteen Provinces; which Division he declares, to have receiv'd from an illustrious Personage, nam'd *Senor de Penalosa*, who was sometime General Governour of those Parts; but in regard that these Provinces are not delineated

III.



lineated in the Maps, we shall omit this Division.

IV. *M. Sanfon* reckons up many People and Provinces, that are not as yet distinctly known. The *Apaches*, a warlike People, have enlarg'd their Territories farthest of all throughout the Northern Part of *New Mexico*; and both Men and Women are said to cloath themselves with Stags-Skins: They are distinguish'd by the Spaniards into four Nations, two of which live on the South, viz. *Apaches de Perillo*, between the North River and the Purple Sea, and *Apaches Vaqueiros* between the same River and Florida: The other two Nations, whose Seats are more Northern, are nam'd *Apaches de Navaio*, or *Nava-jox*, and *Apaches de Xila*.

V. We shall not take any farther notice of the other People and Provinces of this Country, but proceed to the Description of its most remarkable Places and Towns, and first of those that are situated nearest to the North-River. The most eminent of them, is *Santa Fé*, call'd also by the Inhabitants *Santa Fé de Granada*, and *New Mexico* by others, a neat City dignify'd with an Episcopal See, and the Spanish Governor's Court; being built altogether with Stone, by the Spaniards, a few Years ago in the middle of the Kingdom. It is plac'd in several Maps, on the Western-side of the North River; but *M. Baudrand* says, it is distant nine Leagues from it. Farther on the South, appear *Sevilleta*; *Pilabo*; *Senecu*; and *Socorro*, which in *M. Sanfon's* larger Map, are likewise set down on the Western Bank of the same River.

VI. The following Places are situated at a greater distance from the North River, viz. *Acoma*, a very strong hold, built on a high and steep Rock; *Zaguato*; *Rey Coromedo*; *S. Miguel*, and *Porto de Santa Clara*, on the Coasts of the Purple Sea.

VII. Many Islands lye over against the New Kingdom of Mexico, and the nearest are contain'd in the Purple Sea, or Gulph of California, particularly *La Isla de Santa Cruz*,

i. e. *Holy Cross Island* and *La Isla de Gigante*, or the *Giants-Isle*, both of a small Compass: *CA-CALIFORNIA*, being somewhat more remote, is wash'd on the East by the Purple Sea, which separates it from *New Mexico*; as also, on the South, West, and North, by the Pacifick Sea. Several Authors have doubted, Whether it is a Peninsula, or an Island, and some have taken it for the former; but that Scruple has been since remov'd by the Experience of Navigators. This Island was first discover'd by *Ferdinand Cortez*, A. D. 1535, and is situated between the 23 and the 46th Degr. of Northern Latitude: Its most Southern and least Tract lyes under the Torrid Zone, and the Tropick of Cancer, and the rest take up the most part of the Northern Temperate Zone; extending itself from North to South, for the space of 460 Leagues, and 140, in its greatest breadth; which is widest in the Northern Part, and narrowest in the Southern: So that it is apparently the most spacious Island of all Northern America, and even one of the greatest in the whole World: It is of a long Figure, and very full of Bays, on the North and West. The temperature of the Air and Soil, is supposed to be agreeable to that of *New Spain*; but no certain Account can be given of the Manners, Religion and Government of the Natives; in regard that only some Bays, Harbours, and Promontories, are as yet known to the Europeans. *M. Baudrand* tells us, That the Spaniards have lately erected in a fruitful Territory, on the Southern Coasts, a Colony, or little Town, of the same Name with the Island; which nevertheless, is not express'd in the modern Maps.

On the West and South of California, many little Islands appear in the Pacifick Sea; the chief of which are, *S. Clement*; *Isla de Poraros*; *I. de Ceintas*; *Ulloa*; *Lanublada*; *St. Thomas*; and *Las tres Marias*, three small Isles that lye next to the Continent of *New Spain*.



## CHAP. VII.

## New SPAIN, or the Kingdom of MEXICO.



I.  
New  
Spain.

WE are now come to *New Spain*, the best and most noted Part of the Continent of *Northern America*, which is more inhabited by the Spaniards than any other Country of the New World, and is often call'd *The Kingdom of Mexico*, from its Metropolis City. It is bounded on the West, by the *Purple Sea*, and that Part of the Southern Ocean on which it has impos'd its Name; the latter serving also for its Boundary, on the South; on

the East, by the Isthmus of *Panama* and the Gulph of *Mexico*; and on the North, by *Florida* and the New Kingdom of *Mexico*. It is situated between the 5th and 30th Degr. of Northern Latitude, and between the 254 and 293 Degr. of Longitude; being broadest under the Tropick of *Cancer*, but very narrow in many Places on the South-East: So that its most considerable Part is only an *Isthmus*, and is justly termed by the Natives, *Anahuac*, i. e. *Near the Water*.

The



II. The Air of this Kingdom is said to be exceeding temperate and healthful, although its greatest Part lyes under the Torrid Zone. The Storms of Wind and Showers of Rain, sometimes continue for a long time; but the Country abounds with Pasture, Corn, *Mayz*, excellent Fruits and Cattel, particularly Cows, Sheep, that bring forth Lambs twice a Year, and fine Horses of the Spanish breed; besides many other sorts of Beasts, that are often kill'd for their Skins, and variety of Birds; among which one call'd *Cincon* is more especially remarkable, being no bigger than a Beetle, yet adorn'd with delicate Feathers: This little Bird lives upon the Dew and the Smell of Flowers, and sleeps in the hollow of a Tree till the Month of *April*. There is also an admirable Tree, known by the Name of *Maquey*, or *Maygney*, which yields Wine, Vinegar, Honey, Thread, Needles, Stuffs, and Timber for Buildings. The Commodities usually transported hence into *Europe*, are Gold and Silver, which are not only produc'd in the Mines, but also in the Rivers; Precious Stones, Balm, *Cocheneal*, *Salsaparilla*, *Mechoacan-Roots*, Brimstone, Furrs, Wool, Silk, Sugar, *Cacao-nuts* to make Chocolate. This Country scarce affords any Wine, because the Weather is always rainy during the time of Vintage. It has been united to the Dominions of the King of *Spain*, ever since *Ferdinand Cortez* subdu'd it in less than four Years, viz. from 1518 to 1521, notwithstanding the numerous Armies that oppos'd his Progress: For the Kings were then able to bring 3 or 400000 fighting Men into the Field. The whole Kingdom is still govern'd by a Spanish Vice-Roy, who keeps his Court in the City of *Mexico*, and presides over all the Governments of those Provinces which his Catholick Majesty possesses in Northern *America*.

The Natives are civil, tractable, courteous to Strangers, and sincere in their Dealings, but not easily reconcil'd to those that deceive them, or do them an injury. They are somewhat slothful, but have a great Inclination to Musick, Painting and making Pictures, with the Feathers of the above-mention'd Birds nam'd *Cincons*: They are also so expert in curious Gold and Silver-works, that nothing can be more ingeniously and artificially done: These People in appearance conform themselves to the Roman Catholick Religion, which is generally profess'd in this Country. But as the Censure of *Thomas Gage*, a Dominican is too true, viz. *That most of the Spanish Priests are abominable Hypocrites and extremely covetous*, their Converts cannot be expected to be very good Christians. The want of Charity among these Priests is no less evident; by the Hatred between the two different sorts of Monks of the same Order, in the same Convent; that is to say, the natural Spaniards, who are sent from *Spain*, from time to time, in the Quality of Missionaries to fill up the vacant Benifices, and strengthen the Spanish Faction; and the *Ciroles*, or Religious Persons descended of the Spanish Race in *America*, who seldom come to any Preferment, or are entrusted with any publick Office; because it is the Interest of the former to keep them under; being admitted to no considerable Employments, lest they should tempt the Natives to revolt from the Spanish Government.

Part 2

III. The Kingdom of *New Spain* is divided by the Spaniards into three Jurisdictions, or general Governments; commonly call'd *Audiencias*, viz. those of *Guadalajara*, *Mexico*, and *Guatimala*.

The Audience of *Guadalajara*, otherwise termed *New Gallecia*, or *La Nueva Galizia*; being the most Northern of all, is bounded on the North, by the New Kingdom of *Mexico*; on the East, by *Florida* and the Audience of *Mexico*, which with the Sea of *New Spain*; bounds it likewise on the South, and on the West, by the same Sea, and *El Mar Vermejo*, or the Purple Sea. The Country in many Places rises up very high, and is full of Woods; abounding with Silver, Copper, Lead, and the same sorts of Fruit that are produc'd in the Kingdom of *Castille*: But it is often infested with terrible Earth-quakes, impetuous Storms of Wind; violent Thunder and Lightning, and hasty Showers of Rain even in the Summer-Season. The Magpies hereabouts are not bigger than Sparrows, yet make great havock of the Grain, and the Bees have no Sting. The Inhabitants are said to be long-liv'd, by reason of the extreme healthfulness of the Air, which is altogether free from Infection.

The Provinces of this Audience are seven in number, viz. *Cinaloa*, *Culiacan*, *Chametlan*, *Xalisco*, Proper *Guadalajara*, *Zacateca*, and *New Biscay*. The five first are maritum, and the two others are situated in the inland Country. The Province of *Cinaloa* is the most Northern of all, lying between the Purple Sea, on the West, and the New Kingdom of *Mexico*, on the North and East. Its chief Town bears the Name of *St. Juan*, or *St. John*.

The Province of *Culiacan* borders upon *Cinaloa*, on the South, at the entrance of the Purple Sea; and contains the following Towns, not far distant from the Sea-coasts, viz. *Petatlán*; *Culiacan* the Capital; *St. Michael*; and *Quinola*.

The Province of *Chametlan*, or *Chiametlan*; lyes next to *Culiacan*, on the South, under the Tropick of *Cancer*, and is wash'd by the Sea of *New Spain*; having *Aguacara*, for its chief Town.

The most Southern maritum Province of this Government, or Audience, is *Xalisco*, which (according to *M. Baudrand*) is otherwise nam'd *New Gallecia*. The most remarkable Places, are *Compostella*, founded by *Nunio Guzman*, a Knight of *Guadalajara*, who first discover'd this Province; *Xalisco* the Capital Town; and *La Purificación*.

The Province of *Guadalajara*, the least Part of which lying between *Chametlan* and *Xalisco* only borders upon the Sea, is not distinguish'd from the latter, by *M. Baudrand*. Its principal Towns are *Chutiquipagua*, or *Cenitiquipagua*, built on the Sea-coasts, and at the Mouth of a River; *Quazacatlan*, or *Guaxacatlan*; *Zaporaco*, on the South of the Lake *Chapala*, in Spanish *La Laguna di Chapala*, which takes up 40 Leagues in Compass: And *Guadalajara*, seated on the North of the same Lake, and on the River *Baranja*, the Metropolis not only of the Province; but also of the whole Government of the same Name: It was built by the Spaniards, A. D. 1531; and erected into an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Mexico* in 1570. The

A a 2

Cours



Courts of Judicature, or general Affizes of the Provinces are usually kept in this City, which is distant 80 Spanish Leagues Westward, from that of *Mexico*, and 40 from the Coast of the South-Sea.

XI. The two last Inland Provinces of this Audience, are that of *Los Zacatecas*, and *New Biscay*. The former is so nam'd from the People who are its Inhabitants, and is partly situate under the Tropick of *Cancer*. Its most eminent Towns, are *Xerez de la Frontera*, on the Confines of *Guadalajara* *San Luis de los Zacatecas*, or simply *Zacatecas* the Capital, near the Tropick: *Encarnación Durango*, on the Foot of the Mountains, dignify'd with an Episcopal See; and *Nombre de Dios*.

XII. The other inland Province, is *La Nueva Biscaya*, or *New Biscay*, situate on the North of *Zacatecas* and extending to the Kingdom of *New Mexico*, and remarkable for its Silver-Mines. The Places of Note in this Province, are *Endeja*; *Mesquite*; *San Juan*; and *Santa Barbara*.

XIII. The general Government, or Audience of *New Mexico*, has for its Bounds on the West, that of *Guatemala*; on the North *Florida*; on the East, the Gulph of *Mexico*, Bay of *Honduras*, and the Audience of *Guatemala*, and on the South, the *Pacifick* Ocean. It is inferior to none of the Countries of the New World, in the richness of its Soil, and number of Inhabitants; enjoying an admirable temperature of the Air. It abounds with all sorts of Cattel, *Mays*, Wheat, Fruit, Salt, Honey, Wax, Precious Stones, Gold, and more especially Silver; but it is almost destitute of Wine and Oil.

XIII. This Audience likewise contains seven Provinces, viz. those of *Mechoacan*, Proper *Mexico*, *Panuco*, *Tlaxcala*, *Guaxaca*, *Tabasco*, and *Jucatan*; the two first of which are situated on the Sea of *New Spain*, or the *Pacifick*, and the rest in their Order, on the Gulph of *Mexico*. The Province of *Mechoacan*, from whence the *Mechoacan-River* derives its Deromination, is very fruitful, and borders upon *Guadalajara*: Its most considerable Towns are *San Philippe*, or *St. Philip*; *S. Miguel*, or *S. Michael*; *La Concepcion de Salaya*; *Vila de los Lagos*; *Casco*; *Mechoacan* i. e. *A Fishing-place*, call'd *Valladolid de Mechoacan*, by the Spaniards; a large City, the Capital of the Province, and a Bishop's See; being distant but seven Spanish Leagues Southward from the Lake of *Mechoacan*. and 47 South-West from the City of *Mexico*: *Tuxpa*: *Colima*: And *Sacacola*, on the Mouth of a River of the same Name.

XIV. Next to *Mechoacan* lyes the Province of *Mexico*, properly so call'd; and otherwise *Themistitan*, the Principal not only of this Audience, but also of the whole Continent of *America*, under which *Tlaxcala* is often comprehended; but we shall describe them separately: The inland Country hereabouts affords the best sort of Metals, and the Coasts yield abundance of Oysters. The most remarkable Ports on the South Sea are *Petalan*; *Catalpa*; and *Acapulco*, a little Town newly built, with *St. James's* Castle, most strongly fortify'd on a Hill; having five Bastions and a very capacious Harbour, from whence Ships set sail every Year to the Philippine Islands and *China*. The chief inland Towns are *Chihuahua*; *Ozuma*; *Tasco*; *Cuer-*

*nabaca*; *Atlixco*; *Suchimaleo*; *Xulucaro*; *Tulasco*; and *Mexico* a famous City, which has impos'd its Name not only on this Province and Audience, but also on the Kingdom of *Mexico*, or *New Spain*, and even on the whole Continent of Northern *America*. It was heretofore the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Mexico*, of a very large Extent, adorn'd with a stately Palace and many fine Temples, and built like *Venice*, in a spacious Lake: But the greatest Part of it was burnt and ruin'd by the Spanish Forces, under the Command of *Ferdinand Cortez*, who having taken the whole Town after a long Siege Aug. 13. A. D. 1521, remov'd it to the side of the same Lake, and caus'd it to be magnificently rebuilt on a most pleasant Plain: So that its Streets are very broad and all uniform, and the publick Buildings extremely sumptuous; the chief of which are the Cathedral Church, the Royal Palace, and that of the *Marquess de Velle* of the *Cortesian* Family; besides a great number of Colleges, Monasteries, and Hospitals, a fair Printing-House, and a most admirable Aqueduct, three Miles long: However, this great City is destitute of Gates, Walls, Trenches, Fortifications, and Pieces of Ordinance: And it has often suffer'd much damage by the overflowing of the adjacent Lake, more especially on September 21. 1629, when 40000 Inhabitants were destroy'd: But it is now well repair'd, and sufficiently secur'd against such Inundations, by the means of vast Ramparts of Earth; and the Waters of the Lake are somewhat abated, ever since their Course, has been turn'd another way; so as to discharge themselves between the Mountains: Leaving only long Causeways to the Town, viz. one on the West, another on the North, and the third, which is the longest, on the South; as we are inform'd by *Thomas Gage* an English-man, who travell'd through those Parts. The City of *Mexico* was first dignify'd with an Episcopal See, by *Pope Clement VII.* in 1527, and afterwards rais'd to a Metropolis by *Paul III.* in 1547. A University was erected there by the Emperor *Charles V.* in 1551, and farther endow'd in 1553. It is the Seat of the Vice-Roy, whom the King of *Spain* sends to Northern *America*, of the Arch-Bishop, and of the Court of Inquisition: There also is establish'd the chief Tribunal or Supreme Court of Judicature, commonly call'd *La Audiencia Real*, and the Mint for the coining of Money. To conclude, it is said to be inhabited by above 4000 Spaniards and 30000 Indians; being a most famous Mart, into which the Merchandizes of *America*, the *East-Indies*, and *Spain*, are imported; so that it may be justly reckon'd among the finest Cities of the whole Universe: It is distant 80 Spanish Leagues Westward from the Port of *Vera Cruz* and the Coast of the North-Sea, as many Eastward, from *Guadalajara*; as also Northward from *Acapulco*, on the *Pacifick*, or South-Sea; about 500 from *Santa Fe* in the New Kingdom of *Mexico*; and 300 from *Guatemala*, to the North-West.

Moreover it is observable, That *Ferdinand Cortez*, who subdu'd the whole Country of *New Spain*, and took this City, dyed there in the 63 Year of his Age, Decemb. 2. 1547. The Lake on which it stands, in Spanish, *La Laguna de Mexico*, is twofold,



twofold, or divided into two Parts, one of which contains fresh potable Water, and is full of Fish, extending itself for the space of seven Leagues in Length, six in Breadth, and twenty in Compass: The other Part, the Waters whereof are brackish and bitter, yielding great quantities of Salt, is almost of the same Extent: So that the whole Lake takes up about 40 Leagues in Compass: This Lake was formerly surrounded with 60 Cities, or well-built Towns; but now only six Towns, and 30 Villages are seated near it; ever since the Spaniards reduc'd the Natives to the utmost extremity, and still continue to harass them. On the East of Mexico City, are the Towns of Chaco and Cacatlan.

XV. Having thus given a particular Account of the two Provinces that border upon the Pacifick Sea, we proceed to the rest belonging to this Audience, which are wash'd by the Gulph of Mexico. The most Northern of these is Panuco, situated in the middle, between the Country of Florida and the Provinces of Mechoacan and Mexico. It contains the following noted Towns, viz. *S. Jago de las Villas*, i. e. *St. James of the Valleys*; Panuco, which some call *Sant Estevan del Puerto*, or *St. Stephen of the Port*, a little Town, yet the Capital of the Province, built on the South side of a River of the same Name: *S. Luys*, or *St. Lewis*, near the Sea-coasts: *Tampica*: *Aquacatlan*: And *Tilicipozapan*.

XVI. Tlascala, otherwise nam'd *Los Angeles*, or the Province of Angels, and Guastacan lies between two Seas; a large Tract of it on the East, being wash'd by the Gulph of Mexico, and its least Part, by the Pacifick Sea: It is bounded on the West, by the Province of Mexico; and on the South, by Guaxaca; and on its Western Part, the Mountains of Tlascala extend themselves for the space of 18 Leagues, which are of a great height, very pleasant, and well cultivated. The most considerable Places of this Province, are Tlascala, an ancient Town seated at the Foot of a Hill, on the little River *Zahuatla*, and on the Confines of Mexico; formerly very potent, and govern'd in form of a Common-wealth, but now much fallen to decay, since the Spaniards became Masters of it; although 28 Villages still depend on its Jurisdiction: *Los Angeles*, or *La Puebla de los Angeles*, the capital City, large and populous, built by the Spaniards, A. D. 1630, in a most fruitful Valley, on the very borders of the Province of Mexico; so that the Episcopal See of Tlascala was translated thither in 1550, and its Grandeur seems daily to encrease: *Xalipa*; *Segura*; *Mallatlan*; *Almeria*, termed also *Villa Rica*, i. e. *The rich City*, a little Town, on the Coast of the Gulph of Mexico and the Mouth of a River of the same Name; *La Vera Cruz Vieja*, i. e. *The Real Cross*, so call'd by Ferdinand Cortez, because he first discover'd it, on Holy-Cross day, in the Year 1519, sometime a large Town, seated on the Coast of the Bay of Mexico, with a wide Harbour, of difficult and dangerous Access: Upon which Account it was abandon'd by the greater part of the Inhabitants, who remov'd their Effects to *S. Juan de Ulua*, which is now often call'd *Vera Cruz*, and is distant six Leagues Eastward from the former: Its Harbour is likewise capacious, but not very safe for Ships to ride in, by reason of the Rocks: The Town also wants Walls,

and the Air is unwholsome: Over against the same Harbour, and for its Defence, the Fort of *S. Juan de Ulua*, of a Triangular Form is built on a little Island, or rather a Rock, near the Continent: This Place is very considerable, because it is the Port to Mexico. Passengers arriving from Europe, to go to that City, usually landing here, and the Merchandizes are likewise brought ashore here; as on the contrary, those that are to be transported from Mexico to Europe, are first convey'd hither. The other Towns of the Province of Tlascala seated near the Pacifick Sea, are *Pacla* and *Castla*.

The Province of Guaxaca, or Oaxaca, is no less remarkable than the former, for its Situation between the two Seas; and borders on the South, upon Tlascala: It is extremely fertile, and was formerly dignify'd with the Title of a Marquitate, in favour of the Family of Cortez, which is now enjoy'd by that of Pignatella. The Towns near the Coast of the Pacifick Sea, are *Tuculula* and *Aguanulca*. And on the North and East, appear *Antequera* frequently call'd also *Guaxaca*, the Metropolis of the Province, built in a fruitful Valley, and erected into an Episcopal See, by Pope Paul III. 1535, although it is but of a small Extent, and not very populous. *S. Jago*, or *St. James*; *S. Ilesonso*; and *Espiritu Santo*.

The Province of Tabasco, being the least of all, lies between Guaxaca, on the West; and Jucatan on the East; extending it self farthest between those Bounds, and for a great deal less space, from South to North: Its Northern Coasts are wash'd by the Gulph of Mexico, and its chief Town is Tabasco, or *Nuestra Sennora de la Victoria*: Near this Town Ferdinand Cortez obtain'd a great Victory over Motekuma II. the last King of Mexico, insomuch that 300000 Indians of those Parts, were killed in the Fight.

The last and most Eastern Province of the Government of Mexico, is Jucatan, or Yucatan, lying in form of a Peninsula, which is made by the Gulphs of Mexico and Honduras. This Province being mountainous, abounds with Staggs, and wild Boars, and is water'd with very few Rivers; but that defect is supply'd by a considerable number of Springs. Its chief Towns are four in number, viz. *Campeche*, or *S. Francisco de Campeche*; *Merida*, the capital City and a Bishop's See; *Valladolid*; and *Salamanca*, a little Town, the most Southern of all, near the Coast of the Gulph of Honduras.

We are now come to the third and last general Government of New Spain, which is commonly call'd *The Audience of Guatimala*, and lies out farthest on the East and South: It is the Isthmus that unites North and South America, having the Bay of Honduras and the North-Sea on one side, and the Pacifick or South-Sea on the other; with Mexico on the West, and Terra Firma on the East: It is above 300 Leagues Long, but in some Parts not 40 Broad. The Country produces store of Cotton, Mayz, all sorts of Grain and Fruit-Trees, and is well stock'd with wild and tame Beasts, Mountains and Springs, neither is it destitute of Rivers.

The particular Provinces of this Audience are eight in number, viz. *Chiapa*, *Soconusco*, Proper *Guatimala*, *Vera-Paz*, *Honduras*, *Nicaragua*, *Costa Rica*,



*Rica*, and *Veragua*. The first is only situated in the inland Country; the second and third are wash'd by the *Pacifick* Ocean, the rest by the North-Sea.

Chiapa P. The Province of *Chiapa* is the most Northern of all, and borders upon those of *Jucatan*, *Tabalco*, and *Guaxaca*, being almost of a Triangular Figure: It abounds with all kinds of Trees, Pulse and Animals, more especially well-shap'd Horses, which surpass the rest of those that are bred in *New-Spain*; but the Country is infested with most venomous Serpents of a prodigious size. The principal Towns are *Chiapa de los Indos*, the Metropolis seated in a spacious and fruitful Valley, and made an Episcopal See by Pope *Paul III.* A. D. 1547, which was sometime fill'd up by *Bartholomeu de los Casas* a Dominican, who acquir'd a great Reputation by his Writings under the Emperor *Charles V.* and was highly offended at the Cruelty which the Spaniards exercis'd upon the poor unarm'd Natives of *America*. And *El Real Chiapa*, or *Ciudad Real*, i. e. *The Royal City*, built likewise in a fertile Territory.

XXII. The Province of *Soconusco*, lying between *Chiapa* and the *Pacifick* Sea, yields all sorts of Grain, except Wheat, and is famous for the Merchandize of *Cocoa-nuts*, which are here produc'd in great plenty. The *Cocoa* (according to *Herrera's* Description) is a Tree of a middle size, and the Fruit of it is like a Chestnut, but somewhat bigger: It brings forth Flowers and Fruit every Month, and thrives much better in moist Grounds than in those that are expos'd to the Sun-Beams; so that they are usually planted only in shady Places. The chief Town of this Province call'd *Guerrero* is a Sea-port, but not much frequented.

XXIII. The Province of *Guatemala*, being a great deal larger than the former, borders upon *Soconusco*, on the South-East; and extends itself farthest on the *Pacifick* Sea, between the Territories of the *Soconusco* and *Nicaragua*. The Air is not very healthful, by reason of the Heat and abundance of Rain, which falls in the Months of *April* and *October*. The Country is mountainous, yet produces great store of Spanish Fruit; as also *Cocoa-nuts*, *Mayz*, Cotton, and the finest Brimstone; and in the Rivers are bred Crocodiles of a prodigious bulk. The most eminent Towns of Proper *Guatemala* on the Coast of the *Pacifick* Sea are, *La Trinidad*, and *S. Miguel*: At a little farther distance from the Shore, appear *Xerez*, and *S. Salvador*, a Town of a small Compass. *S. Jago de Guatemala*, the Metropolis of this Province and Audience, on which it has impos'd its Name, is the most remote of all the Towns from the Coast; being seated in a very pleasant Valley, on the River *Miscaya*, and near a *Volcano*, or burning Mountain, that often casts forth Flames. It was built A. D. 1524, and adorn'd with an University, founded by *Philip IV.* King of *Spain*, in 1628. It is also the See of a Bishop, who is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Mexico*, and the Supreme Court of Judicature for the whole Country is usually kept there. From thence we pass to the rest of the Provinces of this Government, which are wash'd by the North-Sea.

XXIV. The Province of *Vera-Paz*, i. e. *Real Peace* owes its Name to the Dominican Monks, be-

cause it is said to have been reduc'd to Obedience and peaceable Subjection, by the means of their Preaching: It is situated on the innermost Bay of the Gulph of *Honduras*, between the Territories of *Chiapa*, *Soconusco*, *Guatemala* and *Honduras*. This Province is of a great deal less Extent than *Guatemala*, but is water'd with many Rivers: It is more especially noted for its Lakes, Hot Baths, Medicinal Springs and high Mountains, and is very fruitful of *Mayz*, as also of *China* and *Mechoacan* Roots, *Salsaparilla*, and Cedar-trees: There are divers sorts of wild Beasts, particularly Lions, Tigers, Fallow Deer, Apes, Monkeys, and Serpents, besides Eagles, Parrets, and other kinds of Birds, the Feathers of which are highly esteem'd. The Weather continues rainy for a long time, and the Serenity of the Air is often disturb'd by Thunder, Lightning and impetuous Storms of Wind. The capital Town likewise nam'd *Vera-Paz* stands in the inland Country, on the Foot of the Mountains, near the River *Dolce*, and is but of a small Extent: Its Episcopal See establish'd A. D. 1556 was united to that of *Guatemala* in 1607.

The Province of *Honduras*, i. e. *The Deep*, being XXV. the largest of this Audience presents itself to our View, next to *Vera-Paz*. It is bounded on the North, by the Northern Sea, and the Gulph to which it has communicated its Name; on the East, by the same Sea; on the South, by *Nicaragua*; on the South-West by *Guatemala*; and on the West, by *Vera-Paz*: Its greatest Extent from West to East, between *Vera-Paz* and the North Sea, takes up about 200 Leagues, but its Breadth scarce contains 100. It is beset with Mountains, and affords great plenty of *Mayz* and Wheat, besides Pasture for all sorts of Cattel, and Mines of Gold and Silver. The most considerable Towns of this Province, are *Truzillo*, or *Trugilho*, seated on the Gulph, with a fine Harbour, *Villa de Naco*, not far from the Sea-coast; *S. Pedro*, or *St. Peter's* in the inland Country; as also *Gracias a Dios*; *S. Forge d'Olancho*, so nam'd by *Herrera*, and *St. Jago de Olancho* by others; and *Valladolid*, which the Inhabitants generally call *Comayagua*, a little City; yet the Metropolis of *Honduras* built near the Mountains, in the middle, between the Northern and *Pacifick* Seas. It was erected into an Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *S. Domingo*, A. D. 1558, and is distant 100 Leagues from *S. Jago de Guatemala*.

The Province of *Nicaragua*, otherwise termed XXVI. *The New Kingdom of Leon*, lies next to *Honduras* and *Guatemala*, on the South, and its Coasts are wash'd by two Seas, viz. the Northern on the East, and the *Pacifick* on the West. It extends itself farthest between those Seas, and is reckon'd among the largest Provinces of this Audience, or general Government. The Country produces good store of *Mayz*, *Cocoa-nuts*, Cotton, Cloth, and several kind of Cattel; but it wants Wheat and Sheep, and is water'd by few Rivers. However, some make no scruple to style it the Paradise of *Mahomet*, upon Account of its fruitfulness and plenty of Gold. The most noted Places and Towns of *Nicaragua*, are *Segovia la Nueva*; *Realejo*, on the Coast of the *Pacifick* Sea; *La Possefion*, a very convenient and safe Harbour, distant only one League from that Town; *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, the chief City of the Province, seated



seated on the Lake of *Leon*; in Spanish, *La Laguna de Leon*, which takes up 25 Leagues in Compass, and not far from a burning Mountain. This City is the Sec of a Prelate; who is suffragant to the Arch-bishop of *Mexico*, and is distant 12 Leagues Eastward from the Coast of the *Pacific Ocean*, and the Town of *Realejo*; as also 18 from *Granada*: This last Town stands on a spacious Lake of the same Name, otherwise call'd the Lake of *Nicaragua*; extending itself in length from West to East, for the space of 35 Leagues; as also 20 in Breadth from North to South, and about 90 in Compass: The Lake receives several considerable Rivers, and contains many Islands, among which six are chiefly eminent and well cultivated: At a little distance Southward from *Granada* appears Mount *Massaya*, which casts forth Flames. Lastly, the Town of *Jaen* is remarkable for its Situation, at the farther end of the Lake of *Granada*, where the River *Desaguadero* issues forth; which is also call'd *El Rio de S. Juan*, or *S. John's River*, by the Spaniards, who inhabit those Parts: It flows from thence Eastward, and after a Course of 30 Leagues, discharges itself with three Mouths into the North-Sea: This River is very broad, but its Passage is obstructed by three Cataracts.

XXVII. The Province of *Costa Ricca*, or *Rica*, i. e. *The Costa Ricca Coast*, borders on the South of *Nicaragua*, Ricca P.

of which some will have it to constitute a Part; lying in like manner between the two Seas, so that its largest Tract is wash'd by the *Pacifick*; and the other by the North-Sea. It is of a lesser Extent than *Nicaragua*, but not inferior to that Province in Fruitfulness, affording also several Mines of Gold and Silver. Its Towns are *Nicoya*, on the Coast of the *Pacifick Sea* and the Gulph of *Salinas*: *Aranjuez*, on the same Coast; but a great deal farther towards the South-East: *Castro d' Austria*, in the inland Country: And *Carriago*, the Capital, almost in the middle of the Province.

The eighth and last Province of this Audience, XXVIII. or general Government, is *Veragua*, which lyes Veragua next to *Costa Ricca*, on the East, between the P. Northern and Southern Seas, and on the Borders of *Terra Firma*, a Province of Southern *America*: It was dignify'd with the Title of a Dukedom in favour of the Family of *Colon*, or *Columbus*, and contains the following Towns, viz. *Parita*, with a convenient Harbour on the Coast of the *Pacifick Sea*, to which the adjacent Gulph owes its Name: *Carlos*, on the same Coast: *Santa Fe*, in the inland Country: *La Trinidad*, near the North Sea: And not far from thence, *La Concepcion*, a little Town, but the Capital of the whole Province.

## C H A P. VIII.

*The Antilles Islands, viz. Cuba, Jamaica, Hispaniola, Porto Rico, and the Caribbee Islands, as Barbados, Nevis, Antego, St. Christophers, &c.*

Consult the Map of *Terra Firma*.

I. **A**FTER having made a distinct Description of the several Parts of the Continent of Northern *America*, together with some of the principal Islands that lye over against them; it is requisite in like manner to describe the sixth and last Part of the same *America*, that is to say, the Islands of the Archipelago of *Mexico*. They are all in general call'd by divers Geographers *Antilla*, q. d. *Ante Insula*, i. e. *The Fore-Islands*, by reason of their Situation before the Gulph of *Mexico*, and in regard that they first come in sight to those that sail from *Europe*, or *Africa*, before the Coasts of *New Spain*: Others only understand by that Name, the four greater Islands, viz. *Cuba*, *Jamaica*, *Hispaniola*, and *Porto Rico*; to which some add the *Caribbee-Isles*. But we shall here take the Term *Antilles* in its largest Signification, comprehending all the Islands which appear between *Florida*, a Part of Northern *America*, on the North; and *Terra Firma*, a Province of Southern *America*, on the South.

II. The *Antilles* may be conveniently divided into the *Lucayas*, the *Great Antilles*, the *Caribbees*, and the *Sottovento-Isles*. The *Lucayos-Isles*, or *Bahama Islands*, lye in the middle, between the Eastern Coasts of the Province of *Te-*

*gesta*, or Proper *Florida*; and the Northern Coast of *Hispaniola*; that is to say, between the 295 and 305 Degr. of Longitude, and the 21 and 28 Degr. of Northern Latitude: They are said to have the Advantage of a more temperate Air, than the rest of the *Antilles*, abounding with *Mayz*, several sorts of Fruit and Fowl, among which there are numerous Flocks of Pigeons and Doves. *Bristochius* assures us, that the chief of these Islands on the North, are inhabited by the English; but since no mention is made of any Colonies in the newest Relations, several Authors are of Opinion, that they are under the Government of their own Princes; and that there are no Plantations belonging either to the English, or Spaniards, although both these Nations have often made Descents upon them.

III. The *Lucayos-Isles* are many in number, so that it is sufficient only to give an Account of the chief of them. The following Islands reach from the Tropick of *Cancer* Northward, viz. *Bahama*, to which the adjacent rapid and formidable Straight call'd *El Canal de Bahama* by the Spaniards, owes its Name; *Lucayonequa*, the most Northern and most eminent of those Isles; *Bimini*, which is surrounded by the *Quick sands*; as also *Abacoa*; *Ciguareo*;



*Ciguaco*; *Guaro*; *Cumaco*, from whence a very large Sand-bank extends itself on the West and South; *Jama*; *Coloniera*; *Guanabani*, with a capacious and safe Harbour, which was discover'd first of all the Parts of the New World, on Thursday Octob. 11. 1492, by *Christopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, who gave it the Name of *S. Salvador*, in Honour of our Saviour, by whose Divine Providence he escap'd Death, to which the Spaniards design'd to put him, unless some Land, or Coast were descri'd that very day, *Guanima*, a long Island, reaching 12 Leagues from North to South, which the same *Columbus* found out, and call'd *Santa Maria de la Concepcion*; *Triangula* so nam'd from its Figure; and *Samana*. *Yumeca* lyes under the Tropick of *Cancer*, and the rest of these Islands are extended Southward from the same Tropick, viz. *Majaguana*; *Caicas*; *Aumana*; *Linaga*; *Hinagua*; and *Toruga*, a little Island call'd *La Tortue* by the French, who have been Masters of it for some Years: It takes up 7 Leagues in Length from East to West, and about 4 in Breadth from North to South; being scarce distant 8 Miles from the Northern Coast of *Hispaniola*, and only 35 Spanish Leagues from the Eastern Part of *Cuba*: This Island is mountainous, but has a convenient Harbour and a little Town, which stands on an Hill, and is defended by *Dogeron-Fort*, so call'd from *Bertrand Dogheron* who built it, and first planted the French Colonies in *Hispaniola*.

IV. From the *Lucayos-Isles*, we pass to the great *Antilles*, to which *A. Cæsa* thinks fit to appropriate that Name, excluding all the rest: They are four in number, viz. *Cuba*, *Jamaica*, *Hispaniola* and *Porto Rico*, which with the neighbouring Islands, *M. Sanson* supposes to have been the *Hesperides* of the Ancients.

*Cuba Isle*. C U B A formerly nam'd *Ferdinanda*, by *Columbus*, the first Discoverer of it, is the most Northern and Western of the four Islands but now mention'd, the largest of all the *Antilles*, and one of the chief that belong to the whole Continent of *America*; the Coast of its Western Part lying out but a little Southward from the Tropick of *Cancer*. It is distant 18 Leagues Westward from *Hispaniola*, and 20 Northward from *Jamaica*; extending itself for the space of 220 Spanish Leagues from East to West; but its Breadth, where it is widest, scarce takes up 35 Leagues, and only 12 in its narrowest Extent. This Island is beset with Mountains, one of which yields a kind of *Bitumen*, or Pitch, that is of singular use in the calking of Ships. There are also many Woods, and several Rivers with Golden Sands, besides great quantities of Madder for Dyers, and Ox-hides. The Country breeds Serpents of a prodigious size, but free from Poison, and certain Stone-Balls, which Nature makes so round, that it cannot be exceeded by Art. The Island of *Cuba* has continu'd in the Possession of the Spaniards, ever since the Year 1510, when it was first subdu'd by *Diego Velasquez*, and its Metropolis is *Havana*, or *S. Christoval de Havana*, a most strongly fortify'd Mart-Town, with the most renowned and most capacious Harbour of all Northern *America*, on the North-Coast; where the Royal Fleet is usually fitted out, and continues in that Station till the Season of the Year,

and the favourable Winds seem to promise a prosperous passage to *Spain*. This City is also the Seat of the Governour, and the whole Island is often call'd *Havana* from its Name. *Santa Cruz* is seated somewhat more Eastward; as also *Porto del Principe*, a great deal farther; *Espiritu Santo*, on the Southern Coast; *Mancanilla*, on the innermost Bay of the Gulph; and *S. Fago de Cuba* on the Eastern Part of the Southern Coast; formerly the Capital Town, but now almost reduc'd to a Village; nevertheless it still retains its Episcopal See under the Metropolitan of *S. Domingo*, and has the advantage of a Fort, with a very large Harbour.

The Island of J A M A I C A, being a great deal less than the former, was first discover'd by *Christopher Columbus*, the Genoese, in his second Voyage to *America*, and by him call'd *St. Fago*, or *S. James's Isle*; where he was in great danger of losing his Life, for want of Provisions, and procur'd a timely Relief for himself and Company, by an accurate Prediction of an approaching Eclipse of the Moon. Thus the Spaniards became Masters of it, and retain'd it in their Possession; till they were expell'd by the English, under the Conduct of Col. *Venables* and *Penn*, in the time of O. *Cromwell's* Usurpation, A. D. 1654. This Island is situated between the 17 and 18 Degr. of Northern Latitude, and is distant about 20 Spanish Leagues Southward from *Cuba*; as also 35 Westward from *Hispaniola*, and 150 to the North-West, from *Cartagena*, on the Continent of Southern *America*. It takes up 170 English Miles in Length from East to West, about 70 in its greatest Breadth, from North to South, and 350 in Compass. Its Shape comes near to an Oval Figure, lying out farthest in the middle and growing narrower by degrees, at both ends. A continual Ridge of lofty Mountains runs quite through the Heart of the inland Country, from East to West: They rise up on all sides with a gentle Ascent, and abound with Springs, that give rise to the great number of Rivers, with which the whole Island is so plentifully water'd.

The Air is very serene and calm, and more temperate than in many of the neighbouring Isles: the Heat being much qualify'd by fresh Breezes, which continually blow Eastwardly, frequent Showers of Rain, and great Dews that fall in the night and extremely promote the growth of Plants: Neither do those destructive Hurricanes and Earthquakes happen here, with which the rest of the *Caribbees*, and other Places are so often infested. Upon which Account, the late terrible Earth-quake in 1692, may well be look'd upon by the Inhabitants, as a special Judgment of God, drawn upon them by their great Sins. It is observable, that the Western and Eastern Parts are most subject to Winds and Rain; the thick Woods making the Air less agreeable, than in the Northern and Southern Territories, which are more Champion and open. The mountainous Tracts are a great deal cooler, and small Hoar-Frosts are often seen there in the Morning. The most remarkable wet Seasons are in *November*, or *May*, and the Winter can scarce be perceiv'd, but by a little more Rain and Thunder than is usual in the Summer. The Winds constantly blow

V. Jamaica Isle.



blow from the Eastern Quarter, all the Day, from nine a Clock in the Morning, and become more fresh, as the Sun rises higher; by which means hard Labour is render'd tolerable, even at Noon: But from eight at Night to the same Hour in the Morning, the Western Winds are often predominant; and by the help of those gentle Gales or Breezes, the Vessels get out of the Harbours. The Days and Nights are almost always of an equal length, without any sensible Increase, or Diminution.

The Soil in most Parts, especially the Northern, is rich and fat, consisting of a blackish Mould; in many places it is intermix'd with a kind of Clay; and in the Southern and Western Tracts, it partakes of a more reddish and loose Earth. But it is every where wonderfully fruitful, being often refresh'd with moderate Showers of Rain and flattering Dews; so that the Country enjoys a continual Spring, and is extremely delightful, in regard that the Trees and Plants are never disrob'd of their Summer-Livery. The Forests afford great variety of useful Woods, both for Dyers and Artificers, as Brasiletto, Cedar, Fustick, Red-wood, *Lignum Vitæ*, Mothogeny, Ebony, Granadilla, &c. of which great quantities are Exported, and much Advantage made of them. The Ground likewise by Labour in Tillage, brings forth great store of Corn, Tobacco, Peas, Beans, Collyflowers, Cabbages, and all sorts of Garden-herbs, Pot-herbs and Roots, as Parsley, Lettice, Purslain, Lavender, Rosemary, Sage, Sweet-Marjoram, Savoury, Time, Potatoes, Radishes, Carrets, Turneps, &c. It also produces plenty of choice Fruits, as *Avocates*, *Cacao-Nuts*, *Alumee-Sipota's*, Cucumbers, *Bonames*, Custard-Apples, *Cashues*, Grapes, *Greavars*, Limes, *Mainmee*, Oranges, *Phaintains*, Prickle-Apples, Prickle-Pears, Pines, Pomegranates, Sower-Sops, *Suppotillia's*, &c.

There are many delightful *Savanna's*, diversify'd with Hills and Woods, which formerly were Fields of *Mays*, or Indian Corn, and were converted into Pasture by the Spaniards. These Plains, altho' otherwise barren, as being left so long untill'd, yield abundance of luxuriant Grass, for the feeding of numerous Herds of Cattel, as Horses, Cows, Afnegroes, Mules, Goats, Sheep, and Hogs both wild and tame, whose Flesh is far more agreeable to the Palate, more nourishing, and of easier Digestion, than those of *England*; upon that account it is much eaten in this Island, and even throughout all the American Plantations. Among the noxious Animals, which are very few, the most remarkable are, the *Munchonel*, a sort of Crab, common in all the *Caribbee Isles*, and the *Alligator*, a kind of Crocodile: The latter are extremely voracious, and some of them are ten, fifteen, or twenty Foot long, having four Feet, or Fins, with which they go, or swim: Their Backs are scaly and impenetrable, and they are hardly to be kill'd, unless wounded in the Belly, or Eye: They are very swift in running forwards, and as slow in turning; so that they may be easily avoided, and may likewise be discover'd by the smell of their Musk-cods, which are stronger scented, than those of the *East-Indies*: They are observ'd to make no manner of Noise, but usually lye on the Banks of Rivers, resembling a

dry Log of Wood, or dead Carcass, and suddenly seize on any Beast or Fowl that comes to drink; these Creatures lay their Eggs in the Sand, of the bigness of a Turkey's, and carefully cover them; afterwards the Young ones are hatch'd by the heat of the Sun, and naturally creep into the Water. However, an Ointment made of their Fat, is said to be an efficacious Remedy, for any internal Aches in the Joints, or Bones. There are also Snakes and *Guiana's*, but they do little hurt; besides, *Musketoes*, and *Merry-wings*, a sort of stinging Flies that are very troublesome in some Parts of the Isle, but seldom annoy the English Plantations.

The Sea-coasts and Inland Tracts, are frequented by innumerable Flocks of Wild Fowl; as Geese, Ducks, Turkeys, *Guinea Hens*, Teals, Plovers, Widgeons, Snipes, Flemmings, Parrets, Parroquetto's, &c. To which the tame Fowls, as Hens, Turkeys, Geese, and Ducks, Pigeons and Turtle-doves, are not much inferiour. The Rivers, Brooks, Bays and Creeks, afford great store of admirable Fish, and especially such as are peculiar to the *West-Indies*; the chief of which are Tortoises, taken in great quantities on the Coast, as also about 20 or 30 Leagues to the Leeward of Port Negril, by the *Camavos Isles*; where many Vessels resort in the Months of *May*, *June* and *July*, to be loaded with this Fish, which is reckon'd among the most wholesome and best Provisions of these Parts; for the Commodities of this Island, the chief and most beneficial are *Cacao-Nuts* and *Chocolate*, by reason of the aptness of the Soil to bring forth that sort of Fruit, above other Places: Inasmuch that above 100 *Cacao* Walks are already completed, besides abundance of young Walks that are growing up, and still more a planting. The other considerable Productions, are Sugars, so good that they out-sell those of *Barbadoes* Five Shillings per Cent. *Indico*; Cotton of an extraordinary Fineness; Tobacco; Hides; Salt; Tortois-shells, which are us'd in *England* for several curious Works; *Cocheneal*, Ginger, Cod-peper; and *Jamaica* Pepper, that has the Taste of divers Spices, and grows here plentifully, even Wild on the Mountains. To these Commodities may be added an admirable variety of Physical Druggs, Gums, Roots, and Balsams, as *Acacia*, *Achiets*, *Alocs*, *Benjamin*, *Cassia*, *Contrayerva*, *Cyperas*, *China-Root*, *Fistula*, *Guaiacum*, *Sarsaparilla*, *Sumach*, *Tamarinds*, *Vinello's*, and several others; the Virtues and Names of which are not yet known.

The Indians or Original Natives of *Jamaica*, were utterly destroy'd by the Spaniards, to the number of above 60000; and as for the *English*, who are the present Inhabitants, they are govern'd by Laws, made as consonant to those of *England*, as the different Circumstances of the Places will admit: They have their several Courts, Magistrates, and Officers, for putting these Laws in Execution; hearing and determining all Causes and Controversies between adverse Parties, &c. Divine Service in their Parish-Churches, which are Fourteen in Number, is perform'd according to the Form and Ceremonies of the present establish'd Church of *England*, and under the Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *London*. The whole Island is divided into Fourteen Precincts, or Parishes, viz. *St.*



*Elizabeth's, Clarendon, St. Catherine's, St. John's, Port-Royal, St. Andrew's, St. David's, St. Thomas's, St. James's, St. Ann's, St. Mary's, St. George's;* and two Precincts, that have not as yet any particular Names, but both border upon *St. Elizabeth's*, one Northwards and the other Eastwards. All these Precincts (according to an Account taken by Sir *Thomas Mordaunt*, the third Governor of this Isle, and set down by *M. Blome*,) contain'd 17095 Inhabitants; besides 3000 lusty Mariners and Boat-men belonging to the Island, who have signaliz'd their Valour in their late Attempt upon the Spaniards at *Panama*: But this Number has been extremely encreas'd since that time, and may well be supposed at present, to be above thrice as great as it was under the Regey of the aforesaid Governour.

English  
Towns.

The Island of *Jamaica*, as yet has but few noted Towns; the chief of which are, the Spanish Town nam'd *S. JAGO de la Vega*, v. e. *St. James of the Plain*, seated in a Champain Territory, on the Copper-River, at the distance of 6 Miles Westward from the Harbour, and 10 on the North-West, from the Town of *Port-Royal*. When the Spaniards were in possession of it, 'twas a large and noted City, and is still the Capital of the Island; containing about 4000 fair and convenient Houses, with two Churches. It is very well fill'd with Inhabitants, as being the Governour's Seat, and the place where all the Courts of Judicature are held: It is also more especially remarkable for its *Harem*, where the better sort of Citizens usually divert themselves every Evening in their Coaches, or on Horseback, as the Gentry do here in *High-Park*. *Port-Royal*, formerly nam'd *Cagway*, a large and populous Town, built on the end of a Point of Land that lyes cut near ten Miles from the Shore, towards the South-West, and makes the Harbour exceeding safe and commodious; it is also secur'd by a strong Castle, on which above 60 Pieces of Ordnance are well mounted. The Copper River that waters *Los Angeles* and *St. Jago*, empties it self into this Harbour, which is about three Miles broad in most Places, and so deep, that before the late Earth-quake, a Ship of 1000 Tun might have laid her Side to the Shore, so as to load and unload at pleasure. The Town is a famous Mart, and the Seat of all the Trade in the Isle; being inhabited upon that account, by Merchants, Factors, Vintners and Victuallers, and frequented by Traders of all sorts. It contain'd about 800 Houses; which for the most part, are Let at as high Rents, as if they stood in well-traded Streets in *London*: altho' its Situation is very inconvenient and unpleasant: for there is an absolute want of Wood, fresh Water, and even Earth, the Soil consist'g only of a hot loose Sand. The Earth-quake, and following inundation of the Sea, which happen'd here *July 7. 1692*, was but of a very short continuance, yet so violent, that it not only ruin'd this Place, but also extremely indamaged the greatest part of the Island. *Passage*, so call'd, because it is the common Thoroughfare to *St. Jago*, and other adjacent Plantations; a Town not very large, but of Note for Storage, and convenient for Passengers into the Country: It stands near the Mouth of the River, six Miles distant from *St. Jago*, and four from *Port-*

*Royal*: and is defend'd by a considerable Fort. *St. Mary's*, a considerable Town seated in the Northern Part of the Isle, on *New-Port Bay*, formerly call'd *Porto Maria*, by the Spaniards. And *St. Margaret's Town*, farther Eastward, on *Rio Grande River*.

Besides these Towns, the Spaniards, during their Spanish abode in the Isle, built several others, which are now almost reduc'd to Ruins: The most remarkable among them, were *Los Angeles*, or *The Angel's-Town*, on the Copper River, about 5 Miles Northward from *St. Jago*: *Sevilla*, or *Sevilla del Oro*, situated on the Northern Coast, and once adorn'd with a Collegiate Church, of which *Peter Maron* was some time Abbot, who wrote the History of the *West-Indies* in Decades. *Melilla*, farther Eastward, near which the Spaniards had their first Settlement, and where *Columbus* refitted his Vessels that were very much shatter'd by a Storm at *Veragua*: And *Orihan*, on the Southern Coast, over against which lye many Rocks and Shelves, with some Isles; as, *Bivoras*; *Serravilla*, or *Serranilla*; *Quitojrena*; and *Serrana*: In the last of these little Islands, *Augustin Peter Serrana*, having lost his Ship, continu'd in a solitary and disconsolate condition for the space of three Years; and at the end of that Term, had the Company of a Mariner for four Years more, who was likewise shipwreck'd there, and only found means to save himself. Moreover, there are many other Villages in *Jamaica*, well-stor'd with plenty of all necessary Provisions, in which the English dwell in great Numbers, and enjoy their rich and large Plantations.

The principal Mountains and Hills of this Island, are the Long Blue Mountains; those of *Negril*, *Capurito Hills*, *Bread-nut Hills*, *La Montes de Santa Cruz*, the *Pearl Hills*, *May-day Hills*, *Montes dos Heveas*, *Portland Hills*, the *Sand-hills*, &c. As for the Rivers, none of them are fair, or navigable, far up the Country; yet the Seacoasts abounds with commodious Bays, Roads and Harbours: Among these the chief are, *Port-Royal*, or *Cagway Harbour*, of which we have already given a particular Description: *Old Harbour*, a convenient Port for Shipping, on the West of *St. Jago*; formerly the only Road the Spanish Vessels rid in, and the Landing-place to the Town: *Port Morant*, now call'd *Port Thomas*, near the Eastern Point of the Isle; a very capacious and safe Harbour, about which the English have numerous Plantations: *Negril-Harbour*, at the farthest Western Point, a large and secure Port, where Men of War frequently ride, when they look out for the Spanish Ships: And *Port Antonio*, now known by the Name of *St. George's Port*, on the North-East; a very safe Land-lock'd Harbour, altho' its Entrance is somewhat difficult, the Channel being made narrow, by a little Island that lyes before the Mouth of this Port. The other considerable Havens, Bays and Roads, situated on the Southern Part of the Isle, as they appear from West to East, are *White Bay*; *Blewfield's Bay*; *Banister's Bay*; *Hudson's Harbour*; *Black-River Bay*; *Starve-gut Bay*; *Frenchman's Bay*; *Devil's Hole*; *Alligator-Pond*; *Coguer-Plur Bay*; *Maccary Bay*; *Michael's Hole*; *Taylor's Bay*; *Ball Bay*; *Cox Bay*; *Yallagh Bay*; *Fibernick's Bay*; *Crawl Bay*; *Sedgy Bay*; *Mangrove Bay*, &c. On the North, are *Orange Bay*; *Mulpetto Hole*;



Hole; Lucia Harbour; Cove Harbour; *Antica* Bay; Long Bay; Belisi Bay; *Marmette* Bay; Island Bay; Platform Bay; Dry Harbour; Whifan's Bay; S. Ann's Harbour; Drax's Bay; Rio Nuevo, where the Spaniards fortify'd themselves in order to recover the Island; Charles Bay; Fig-tree Bay; Buff Bay; Drivers Bay; Plum-tree Bay; Cold Harbour; Hunt's Cove and Hobb's Cove. On the East, are Long Bay; Little Bay; Sandy Bay; Bassnet's Cove; Hobb's Hole; *Man-chanel's* Harbour; *Gonzalez-Savanna* Bay, and *Plantain-Cully*.

VI. *HISPANIOLA*, call'd *Espanola*, *Spagnuola*, and *S. Domingo* by the Spaniards, as also *La Isla de San Domingo*, lyes in the middle between *Jamaica* and *Cuba*, on the West (being separated from the latter by a narrow Strait, but from the other by a great deal wider Channel,) and the Island of *Porto Rico*, on the East. It is almost of the same Extent and Figure with *Cuba*, but not altogether so long; taking up 130 Spanish Leagues in length from East to West, 60 in breadth, and 350 in compass. The inland Country is Mountainous, yet very fertile and pleasant, producing all kinds of Fruit-trees that thrive in the Climate of *Spain*, with great store of Sugar, Cassia, Mastic, Lignum Albes, Cinnamon, and the best Ginger: It also abounds with Gold, Silver, and several sorts of Minerals, more especially of a blue Colour; and the Herds of Cattel are so numerous, that vast quantities of Skins are transported every Year to *Spain*. This Island was first discover'd by *Christopher Columbus*, A. D. 1492, and has for a long time continu'd in the sole possession of the Spaniards, who still retain the Eastern and Southern Tracts under their Jurisdiction; but the French have made themselves Masters of its greater Part, on the West and North: So that the following Colonies belong to the latter, viz. *La petite Anse*, i. e. *The little Bay*; *Le Cap*, or the Promontory; *Les trois Rivières*, or *The three Rivers*; *Leogane*; *Le grand Gouave*; *Le petit Gouave*; *Nipe*; and *La grand Anse*, or *The great Bay*; altho' these Colonies are not delineated in the common Maps, except *Gouave*, a little Town on the Western Bay. The chief Towns of the Spanish Territories, are *S. Jago*, not far from the Northern Coast; *La Concepcion de la Vega*; and *S. Domingo*, seated on the Southern Shore at the Mouth of the River *Ozam*, with a commodious Harbour, and a Castle built by *Bartholomew*, the Brother of *Christopher Columbus*, A. D. 1494; it is the most eminent of all the Towns that are possess'd by the Spaniards, and has impos'd its Name on the whole Island: It is dignify'd with the Residence of an Archbishop and University, and the Court of the principal Governour, whose Authority is not only supreme in this Island, but likewise throughout all the other *Antilles*, that are subject to the King of *Spain*: Here also is kept the highest and most ancient Court of Judicature of *America*, commonly call'd *La Audiencia Real*, the Jurisdiction of which extends to the *Antilles*, *Florida*, and Part of *Terra Firma* in Southern *America*. This City had its Metropolitan See establish'd by Pope *Paul III.* A. D. 1547, and was taken by the English under the Conduct of Sir *Francis Drake*, in 1586. Farther on the East, ap-

Part 2

pear the Towns of *Sylo*, or *Zeybo*; and *Higael*.

The fourth and last of the great *Antilles* is the VII. Island of *Porto Rico*, otherwise styl'd *La Isla de Porto Rico*, and *Boriquem*, or *Borico* I. given by the Inhabitants, being the most Eastern of all, situated in the middle between *Hispaniola*, on the West, and the *Caribbee-Isles* on the East. Its length from East to West, takes up 30 Spanish Leagues, and its breadth about 16. The Weather is often rainy; and in the end of Summer, those most tempestuous Winds commonly call'd *Hurricanes*, are predominant; especially at the New Moon. The Country is beset with Mountains, yet remarkable for its Fruitfulness; affording great plenty of Furrs, Sugar and excellent Ginger, besides Gold and several other sorts of Metal. This Island was first discover'd by the Spaniards, A. D. 1493, who sent a Colony thither in 1510, and still retain it in their Possession: Its chief Towns are, *S. German*, on the Western Coast; and *Puerto Rico*, or *S. Juan de Puerto Rico*, on the Northern: The latter being the Metropolis of the Island, to which it has communicated its Name, and a Bishop's See, is fortify'd with two Castles, and has a very capacious Harbour.

The *Caribbee*, or *Canibal Islands*, are so nam'd VIII. from certain savage People feeding on Man's Caribbee Flesh, by whom they were formerly inhabited. *Isles*. Some will have all those Isles comprehended under this Name, which are situated between the Eastern Tract of the Island of *Porto Rico*, and those of *New Andalusia*, and *Venezuela*, two particular Governments of *Terra Firma*. But many take them in a stricter sense, and only appropriate the Term of *Caribbees*, to those Islands which are extended from the Eastern Coast of *Porto Rico Isle*, in form of a Bow, as far as the Government of *New Andalusia*; being the most Eastern of all the *Antilles*, and lying between the 10 and 19 Degr. of Northern Latitude; which are also term'd, *The Proper Antilles*, and by the Spaniards, *Las Islas de Barlovento*, i. e. *The Islands by the Wind*. They are more especially fruitful of Sugar and Tobacco; besides Cassia, Cotton, Indigo, several sorts of Fruits and Roots; and now depend for the most part, on the Jurisdiction of the English, French and Hollanders.

The chief of these Islands, in which the English IX. have settled any considerable Plantations, are *Anguilla*, *S. Christophers*, *Nevis*, *Montserrat*, *Dominica*, *Barbuda*, *Antego*, *Barbadoes*, *S. Vincents*, and *Tobago*.

ANGUILLA, or *Snake-Island*, the most Anguilla. Northern of the *Caribbees*, that are possess'd by the English, is so nam'd from its Shape, which resembles that of a Snake; for it is ten Leagues long, and but three wide: It lyes in the 18th Degr. 21 Min. of Northern Latitude, at the distance of about 9 Miles Northward from *S. Martin*, and 40 from *S. Christophers*.

The English are still Masters of this Island, and raise much Tobacco there, which is highly esteem'd by the Judicious in the Art of Smoking. There is also great plenty of Horses, Kine, Oxen, Sheep,



Sheep, Goats, and some Hogs: but they were put on the Place by Sailors, since its Discovery, and have extremely encreas'd: but it does not naturally breed any such Creatures. However, there were some Animals of a very strange Nature: As, 1. The *Oryzomys*, as big as a Cat, having a Bag, or Purse under the Belly, which it can open and shut at pleasure: So that these Creatures are us'd to carry their Young Ones in this Bag, and the Male and Female perform that Office by Turns. 2. The *Agouti*, a little Beast, much resembling a Rabbit in Shape and Size; having but two Teeth in each Jaw, and feeding itself like a Squirrel: But they are fierce, and when angry, stamp with their Hind-feet, and set their Hair perfectly upright. 3. Musk-rats, that live in Burrows, like Rabbits, and have a Scent like Musk; by which means they are easily discover'd, but their Smell is said to cause Melancholy. 4. The *Taxo*, a Beast as big as a Fox, and cover'd with Scales, like Armour: It can wrap itself up so artificially in them, as to be secur'd from all the attempts of the Huntsmen, or Dogs, and can roll itself down a Precipice, like a Bowl, without Harm. 5. The *Tapi*, a sort of Swine, with the Navel on the Back, good Meat, but hardly taken; because it is almost indefatigable in running, and so fast, that when it is tired, it tears every Thing to pieces with its Tusks. 6. The Alligator, or Crocodile, that keeps both in the Water and on the Land: These monstrous Creatures grow as long as they live, and are sometimes 15 Feet long, and as big as an Hoghead: They only move their upper Jaw, but can open it so wide, as to swallow a Man: They smell like Musk, so strongly, that the Air is scented for 100 Paces about them, and the Water in which they live: Their Bulk is like that of a huge Tree, or Log of Wood, and they know, how to counterfeit it so well, that both Men and Beasts are often deceiv'd by them, and devour'd, when they suspect no Danger.

X. S. CHRISTOPHERS, which owes its Name to S. Christopher Columbus, its first Discoverer, is situated in the 17th Degr. 25 Min. of Northern Latitude, and takes up about 75 Miles in compass. The English and French took possession of this Island, at the same time, A. D. 1655, and divided it by Agreement, into two equal Parts, that is to say, into four Cantons, or Quarters; two of which are possess'd by the French, and the other two by the latter: So that to prevent difference, both Parties keep continual Guard upon the Avenues of their respective Divisions or Territories.

The Air is sufficiently pleasant and agreeable; and the Soil being light and sandy, is apt to produce all sorts of Fruits, Provisions and Commodities natural to these Countries; as Sugar, Tobacco, Cotton, Ginger, &c. The Land lies high and mountainous, especially in the middle of the Isle: in such that the Rivers, which have their Source in the Mountains and the Torrents, caus'd by impetuous Storms of Rain, often overflow the lower Grounds. There are also steep Rocks, dreadful Precipices, Springs of hot sulphureous Water, and thick Woods, that render these Parts almost unpassable; altho the Arcents are divided into several Stages, or Stories, in which are some spacious Ways. However, the whole Island is

extremely delightful, and yields a very fine Prospect of curious Gardens, and numerous Plantations, bounded by rows of Trees, always in their Verdure, and adorn'd with fair Houses, cover'd with glazed Slates: all gently descending towards the Sea-shore: So that the Lowest Stage does not hinder the Beholders from taking a clear view of those that are situated at a greater distance, and terminated by the utmost height of the Mountains. Near the Sea-coast, is a Salt-pit nam'd *Sal de Sac*, and not far from thence a narrow Isthmus, or Neck of Land, extending itself within a Mile and half of the adjacent Isle of *Nievis*.

As for the Living-creatures bred in this Island, some of them are very remarkable and wonderful, viz. 1. The *Roraima*, a four-footed Beast, having its Skin of the Colour of a faded Leaf, marked with yellow or blewish Spots, they leap up and down perpetually, and take great delight in looking upon Men. 2. The *Orinoca-Eagle*, a Bird in shape much like the common Eagle, but its Feathers are curiously diversify'd with Black Spots, and the ends of the Wings and Tail yellow: This Bird lives upon Prey, but shews so much Generosity, that he never sets upon the weaker sort of Fowl, but such as have crooked Beaks and sharp Talons like himself, and that never but in the Air. 3. The *Crane Fowl*, about the bigness of a large Duck, cover'd with Feathers, very hideous to the Eye, and having under the Neck a Bag, capable of holding two Gallons of Water: They live by Fishing, and can discern a Fish above a Fathom under Water. 4. The *Pinzaco*, a kind of Pheasant, adorn'd with that variety of Colours, as if they were most artificially painted. 5. The *Colibri*, or Humming-Bird, so call'd, because in its Flight it makes a Noise like a Whirl-wind, tho' tis no bigger than a large Fly: It feeds on Dew; the Colours of its Feathers are admirable, and the Smell is as Odiferous, as Musk, or Amber.

The Natives are either nearly destroy'd, or have made their escape out of the Island. The French, besides several Habitations dispersed up and down their Quarters, have a Town of a considerable Extent, nam'd *Bajé Terre*, built of Brick and Free-stone near the Harbour, and well inhabited by Merchants, Trades-men, &c. It is defended by four strong Forts, and adorn'd with a large Church, a fair Hospital, a Town-House, in which the Courts of Judicature are held, and a stately Castle: This Castle is more especially remarkable for the Governour's Residence; as also, for its pleasant situation on the foot of a high Mountain, at a little distance from the the Sea-coast; its spacious Courts, fine Gardens, delightful Walks, &c.

The English are more numerous than the French, and have three good Towns, five Churches and two Forts, at *Sandy Point*, *Palm-tree* and *Cayonne*, with many elegant Structures. Their Territories are much better water'd than those of the French; but the latter are more fit for Tillage. Ecclesiastical and Civil Affairs are manag'd according to the different Constitutions of the two Nations to which they belong.

NIEVIS, i. e. *The Snow-Is.*, now call'd NEVIS, or MEVIS, lies at a little distance South-wards

XI. Nevis.



wards from *S. Christopher's*, in the 17 Degr. 19 Min. of Northern Latitude. It is but of a small Extent, and does not take up above 18 Miles in compass. The English settled themselves there in the Year 1628, and are still possess'd of it; driving a very good Trade, by exchange of the natural Productions of the Island, for such Commodities as they have occasion for.

The Air is very temperate, and its Heat is allay'd by the constant Breezes; neither is any Ice to be seen there at any time. The Soil is indifferent fruitful of Sugar, Cotton, Ginger, Tobacco, &c. There are several Hills and Mountains, especially one in the middle of the Isle of a great Height, but call'd Accels, beset with Trees from top to bottom; besides, Woods replenish'd with store of Deer and other sorts of Wild Beasts. There are also divers Springs of fresh Water, and one of hot Mineral Waters, of which the Inhabitants have made several Baths, by Experience found useful in curing of many Distempers.

This Island as the rest of the *Caribbees*, is infested by *Mosquitoes*, *Cigars*, *Amerigians*, and other stinging Flies and Lizards; but it breeds some strange and wonderful Creatures, viz. The *Anolis*, about the bigness of a Lizard and of a yellowish Skin: In the Day-time it is continually prowling about the Cottages for Food, and in the Night lyes under Ground, making a great Noise. 2. A *Land-Pike*, which is like the Fish of the same Name, but has Leggs instead of Fins, with which it crawls very oddly upon the Ground: These Creatures lurk about the Rocks, and are seldom seen but towards Night, when they make a noise more sharp and grating than Toads. 3. The Snail, call'd *A Soldier*, which having no Shell of its own, harbours in that of the Periwinkle; they have a Foot like a Crab's Claw. 4. A monstrous Spider with ten Feet, which have every one four joints, and are horny at the ends; these Feet when they crawl, are spread as wide as a Man's Hand: She has also two solid sharp black Tusks, big enough for a Tooth-picker, and often apply'd to that use: These Creatures prey upon Flies and other Vermin of the like nature; and their Webs are so strong, that a little Bird can scarce break thro' them. 5. The Palm-Worm, remarkable for its infinite number of Feet, and two Claws at Head and Tail, with which it wounds and poisons Men; putting them to very great pain for 24 hours. This Insect is half a Foot long, and extremely swift in its Motion. 6. The Fly-catcher, a little Animal with four Leggs, and naturally of a great variety of Colours; but seems to convert itself (like the Chameleon) into the colour of any thing it approaches; for about a Palm-tree 'tis green, and about Orange-trees yellow: It does no mischief, but clears all places of Flies, and such kind of Vermin: These Creatures are very tame and familiar, and come upon the Tables to pursue their Game. 7. The Horn-fly, which has two Snouts like an Elephant, painted all over by Nature, with an admirable diversity of Colours. 8. The Flying-Tiger, spotted like the Land-Tiger, having six Wings and as many Leggs: It feeds on Flies and other small Insects, and spends the Night in singing upon a Tree.

Of all the *Caribbee-Islands*, none is so well govern'd as this; Justice being administer'd with great impartiality, and all Debaucheries and Immoralities severely punish'd, by a Council of the most eminent and ancient Inhabitants. It contains three Churches for the celebration of Divine Service, and is defended by a Fort, on which are mounted several Pieces of Ordinance, that command at a great distance, for the security of Ships in the Road, or Harbour, commonly call'd *Barb-Bay*; where all sorts of Commodities imported for the use of the Inhabitants, are laid up in the Publick Store-house, to be distributed to them as occasion may require.

MONTSERRAT, is an Island of a small Extent, being not above 10 Miles long, and 9 Montseerrate wide, distant about 8 Leagues Northward from *Guadalupe*, and lying in the 17th Degree of Northern Latitude: It was so call'd by the Spaniards, the first Discoverers from one of its Mountains, which they imagin'd to resemble that of *Montserrat*, near *Barcelona* in *Spain*. And indeed, the whole Island is very Mountainous; but these Hills produce abundance of Cedar, and many other useful sorts of Trees. The Valleys and Plains are likewise exceeding pleasant and fertile: It is chiefly inhabited by the Irish, intermix'd with some English, and has the advantage of a very fair Church, adorn'd with curious Seats, fram'd by great Art out of the most precious Sweet-scented Woods.

About this Island several strange Creatures are found in the Sea, viz. 1. The Flying-Fish, which have Wings like Bats, and sometimes to avoid being made a Prey by the greater Fish, fly 20 Foot above Water, 100 Paces in length, and then fall again into the Sea: They are like Herrings, and thought good Meat by hungry Seamen. 2. The *Lamantine*, *Manafy*, or Sea-Cow, a Fish that is 18 Foot long and delicate Food; its Head resembling that of a Cow: It has no Fins, but two short Feet with which it creeps upon the Rocks and Shallows for Meat. 3. The Sea-Devil, so call'd by reason of his terrible Aspect, and black Horns like a Ram: It is a strange kind of Monster, having a Bunch on the Head like a Hedge-hog, Tusks like a Boar, and a forked Tail; and the Flesh is of a poisonous Quality. 4. The Sea-Unicorn, a Fish 18 Foot long, with Scales as big as a Crown-piece, six large Fins, like the end of a Galley-Oar, a Head like a Horse, and an Horn issuing out of the Forehead 9 Foot long, so sharp as to pierce the hardest Bodies; its Flesh is wholsome and very grateful to the Palate. 5. The Sword-fish, which has at the end of the upper Jaw, a Weapon like a Sword, with Teeth on each side of it, five Foot long and six Inches broad, near the Jaw: It also has Vents near the Eyes, to spout out Water, and seven Fins; and is at perpetual enmity with the Whale, which it often wounds to Death.

The Island of DOMINICA, so call'd, because it was first discover'd by the Spaniards on the Dominick's Day, is situated in the 15 Degr. 30 Min. of Northern Latitude, between *Guadalupe* on the North, and *Martinico* on the South, at the distance of 8 Leagues from the latter: It takes up about



about 12 Leagues in Length, eight in Breadth, and 20 in Compaſs. It is very mountainous in the middle, harbouring Dragons, Vipers, and other moſt venomous and dreadful Creatures; nevertheless there are many fruitful Valleys, yielding ſeveral Productions, but chiefly Tobacco, and a convenient Harbour, on the Weſtern Coaſt.

The Engliſh have ſome Plantations in this Iſland, but are hindered from making an abſolute Settlement by the Natives, who are Canibals, and very numerous. For though they are very friendly to the French; yet they have an aversion to the Engliſh, upon account of a former Grudge, and will not by any means be reconciled to them. Theſe Savage People, are for the moſt Part of a tractable Diſpoſition, and ſuch Enemies to Severity, that they dye of Grief, whenever they meet with any hard Uſage from other Nations. They deſpiſe Riches, and often reproach the Europeans for their Covendiſhes, ſaying *The Earth afford ſufficiency for all Men*. They are very neat, living free from Ambition and Thoughtfulneſs for future Events: they are extremely averſe from Thieving and Pilfering, and live without Diſtruſt, frequently leaving their Houſes and Plantations, without any to guard them; nay, they love one another entirely, and are very ſeldom or never at Variance: Laſtly, they ſhew a great deal of reſpect to aged Perſons, and were very chaste, both Men and Women, till the Europeans corrupted them by their ill Example, and made them more diſolute.

XIV. *Barbada*. BARBADA, or BARBUDA, is a ſmall Iſland lying in 17 Degr. 30 Min. of Northern Latitude, on the Eaſt of St. Chriſtopher, extending itſelf 15 Miles in Length, and not ſo much in Breadth. The Air as in the reſt of the Caribbees, is temperate and pleaſant, and the Soil being generally fruitful, as alſo ſufficiently ſtored with Sheep and other Cattel, might produce ſeveral good Commodities, were it well cultivated by the Inhabitants; who are only the Engliſh, beſides the Natives: But they are ſuch Enemies one to another, that as the latter have no Inclination to it; ſo the former dare not make chargeable Improvements, by reaſon of the frequent Inroads of theſe Savages, who once or twice a Year, break in upon them with great Fury; deſtroying and laying all waſte with Fire and Sword.

This Iſland naturally brings forth variety of excellent Fruit, viz. Citrons, Oranges, Pomegranates, Raiſins, Indian Figs, and Coco-nuts, the Shells of which ſupply the Natives with Barrels, Tubs and Diſhes, and the Kernels with delicious Meat, (in taſte like an Almond) and with Drink better than Florence Wine: Beſides divers rare kinds of Wood, Herbs, Roots, and Druggs, as Braſil, Ebony, Caſſia, Cinnamon, Pine-apples, Sugar-canes, Cotton, Tobacco, Pepper, Ginger, Indico, Potatoes, &c. But the moſt admirable Plant here, is the *Senſible*, or as ſome call it *The ſenſible Plant*; becauſe when touch'd, the Leaves hang down and run together, as if they were wither'd and dead; but as ſoon as the Hand is remov'd, it ſpreads itſelf open, and flouriſhes again. There are alſo ſeveral ſorts of Serpents, very large, and ſome of them not venomous, but ſerviceable to the Inhabitants, by deſtroying Rats, Toads and Frogs; and others ſo poiſonous,

that a Wound made by their Teeth, if no Remedy is apply'd in two Hours, becomes incurable.

The Natives are handſome, and well-proportion'd; black-ey'd and hair'd; never lame, or crooked; but as for the Scars got in War, they look upon them as ſo many Badges of Honour. The Men uſually pluck off their Beards and count them Deformities to the Europeans: Both Men and Women go ſtark naked, but ſuffer none to touch their privy Parts. Laſtly, theſe Savages dye their Skins with a red Ointment, and when they would appear Gallant, they draw black Circles about their Eyes, with the Juice of Juniper-apples; wear a Crown of Feathers, adorn their Lips, Noſes and Ears with Rings, Fiſh-bones and other Toys, made of Gold, Silver, or Tin, and put on Neck-laces of Coral, Chryſtal, or Amber.

ANTEGO, or ANTIGOA, another little Iſland is ſituated in the 16 Degr. 11 Min. of Northern Latitude; taking up fix or ſeven Leagues in Length, and about as much in Breadth. The Engliſh after having ſettled themſelves in it, found out ſome freſh Springs, for want of which 'twas before thought inhabitable; this Defect is likewiſe ſupply'd in a great Meaſure, by the means of Ponds and Cifterns, for preſerving Rain-water. It is of a difficult and dangerous Access for Ships, by reaſon of the Rocks that lye round about on all ſides. The Soil is ſufficiently fruitful of Sugar, Ginger, Indico, Tobacco, &c. There are ſpacious Woods and Fens, which furniſh the Inhabitants, with moſt ſorts of Wild Fowl and Veniſon, and feed great ſtore of tame Cattel.

Among the Birds and Fowl, ſome are of an unuſual and admirable Species, as 1. The *Canades*, which ſome eſteem as the moſt beautiful Bird in the World, upon account of the curious variety of its Feathers: Its Eyes are red like a Ruby, and the Head adorn'd with a Cap of Vermilion-colour'd Feathers, ſparkling like a live Coal: It is about the bigneſs of a Pheasant, very kind to Friends, but ſevere to its Enemies. 2. The *Flamet*, a large and fine Fowl, as big as a wild Goose, having the Legs and Neck very long, with ſo exquisite a Scent and quick Sight, that it is hard to be ſhot. Inſomuch that the Fowler is oblig'd to get the Wind of them, and to creep along in an Ox-hide, till he is within Gun-shot.

The Sea-coaſts afford plenty of all ſorts of Fiſh, and ſome of them are very remarkable, viz. 1. The Sea-Parret, which has very ſparkling and beautiful Eyes, the Balls of which are as clear as Chryſtal: no Teeth, but Jaws ſo ſolid, that it can crush Ojſters, Muſcles, Cockles, and other Shell-fiſh to pieces, to get out their Fleſh: Theſe Sea-Parrets are excellent Meat, and ſome weigh 20 Pounds. 2. The Dorado, Sea-bream, or Amber-fiſh, which is very ſwift in ſwimming, and not taken without great difficulty. The Head in the Water, is green, and the Body as yellow as Gold: It is as good Meat as a Trout or Salmon, and is uſually catch'd with a piece of white Linnen, faſten'd to an Hook. 3. The Shark, a kind of Sea-Wolf, or Sea-Dog, the moſt ravenous of all Fiſh, and of a vaſt Length and Bigneſs: Swimmers are in great danger from them; for



for they'll chop a Man in two at a bite, their devouring Jaws being set with three or four rows of sharp broad Teeth: Their Flesh is not good to eat; but their Brains are said to be an efficacious Medicine against the Stone and Gravel.

4. The Beam, a Sea-monster, in shape resembling a Pike, a most dreadful Enemy to Mankind, whom he seizes like a Blood-hound, and will never let him go, if he can get fast hold: His Teeth are so venomous, that the least touch of them is mortal, unless an Antidote be immediately apply'd. There is a sort of these Fishes that have a Beak four Foot long, like a Woodcock's Bill, a large Plume under the Belly like a Cock's Comb, and two Horns under the Throat, which may be sheath'd in an hollow place under the Belly. 5. The Sea-Urchin, or Sea-Hedge-hog, because it is round, and full of Prickles, like a Land Hedge-hog roll'd up. These Fish are often sent as Presents to the Curious, to hang in their Repositories, Closets, &c.

XVI.  
Barbadoes.

BARBADOES is the most considerable of all the lesser *Charibbee-Islands*, that are in the Possession of the English, and ought to be distinguish'd from *Barbada*, or *Barbuda* already describ'd. It is also situated farthest towards the East in the 13 Degr. 20 Min. of Northern Latitude, at the distance of 25 Leagues Eastward from the Isle of *St. Lucia*, and a little more from *Martinita*, on the South-East: It extends itself about eight Leagues in Length, five in its greatest Breadth, and 25 in Compass; being of great Strength and very populous. This Island was first discover'd by Sir *William Curteen*, under King *James I.* but had no Inhabitants; for it was all over-run with Wood, in which were no Beasts, but Swine, left there by the Portuguese. The English took much pains in the clearing of it, and suffer'd great Hardships, before they could make any Advantage to themselves, by planting Tobacco, Indico, Cotton, and Fustick-Wood; but at last they master'd all Difficulties, and became a flourishing Colony, as they still continue to this day.

The Air is very hot for eight Months, but made tolerable by the constant Breezes of the North-East Wind, which rises with the Sun, and blows brisker as the great Luminary ascends higher. 'Tis also observable, That although the Inhabitants sweat very much, nevertheless they are not subject to that Faintness as we are in *England*, in the Months of *July* and *August*; nor to Thirst, unless occasion'd by excess of Labour, or of drinking strong Liquors. Notwithstanding the Heat of the Air, it is very moist; insomuch that all Iron-tools, as Swords, Knives, Locks, Keys, &c. if not constantly us'd, will be eaten up with Rust: But this Conjunction of Heat and Moisture causes the Trees and Plants to shoot out to an extraordinary Largeness and Height. The days and nights are almost of an equal Length throughout the Year; the Sun rising and setting at six a Clock, except in *October*, when there is some small Variation.

The Soil is extremely fruitful, and bears Crops all the Year round, the Trees being in a perpetual Verdure; but the two principal Seasons for planting are in *May* and *November*: It brings forth abundance of all sorts of Fruit, as *Acajous*, *Bonanoes*, Cherries, Citrons, Cocos, Custard-ap-

ples, Dates, Grapes, *Guaivers*, *Isaacoes*, Indian Figs, Juniper-apples, Lemmons, Limes, Land and Water-Melons, *Macones*, *Momins*, *Monbains*, Oranges both sweet and sower, *Papayers*, Pine-apples, Plantains, Pomegranates, Prickle-apples, Prickle-pears, Raisins, &c. As also most sorts of English Plants, Pot-herbs and Roots, as Cabbages, Colworts, Colliflowers, Lavender, Lavender-Cotton, Lettice, Marigolds, Marjerom, Onions, Parsley, Purslain, Rosemary, Sage, Tansey, Time, Winter-Savoury, Garlick, Potatoes, Radishes, Turneps, Carrets, &c. As for Trees, there is great variety of them, both for Building and other Uses, viz. The Calabash Tree, the Shell of whose Fruit, being of the Nature of a Gourd, serves to make Dishes, Bowls, Cups, &c. Cassia, *Cassary*, of which a kind of Bread is made; Cedar, *Coloquintida*, Fistula, the Iron-wood Tree, *Lignum Vitæ*, Locust, Mangrafs, that grows to a vast Bulk; Matlick, Palmeto, very large and beautiful Tree, Physick-nut, Poyson-tree, Redwood, *Raccon*, the Bark of which is of great Use for the making of Flax and Ropes, Tamarind, &c.

The Inhabitants have no Beasts and Cattel, but what are tame, and brought them from other Countries, as Bulls, Cows, Oxen, Camels, Horses, Afnegroes, Sheep, Goats and Hogs, which are very plentiful in every Plantation, and yield them wholsom Food: But they have great store of Fowl and small Birds, as Hens, Muscovy-Ducks, Pigeons, Turtles, Turkeys, Black-birds, Sparrows, Thrushes, &c. The Sea affords abundance of Fish, as *Cavallos*, Coney-fish, Crabs, Lobsters, Mackarel, Mullers, Parret-fish, Snappers, Terbuns, Green Turtles of a most delicious Taste, and several other sorts peculiar to this Isle and the rest of the *Caribbees*; although there are few or none in the inland Ponds and Brooks. The Snakes, some of which are a Yard and half long, and the Scorpions as big as Rats, do no manner of hurt: The Lizzards are likewise exceeding harmless, much frequenting the Houses, and delighting in the company of Men. But the Musketoos, Cock-roches, and Merry-wings are very troublesome in the night. Moreover, there are some things in this Island very remarkable, viz. 1. Several spacious and deep Caves, big enough to contain 500 Men, suppos'd to have been heretofore the Habitation of the Natives, and now only the Harbour of fugitive Slaves, who run from their Masters, and lurk here a great while before they are discover'd. 2. Land-crabs that are good to eat, and very numerous. 3. The Rock-fish, taken in the adjacent Sea, which is red mix'd with divers other Colours, very delightful to the Eye. 4. The *Cucuyos*, a kind of Fly, which gives such a lustre in the night, that Men may not only travel, but also write and read by the Light of it: The Indians go a hunting at midnight by the Help of these Insects, fastening them to their Hands and Feet. 5. The River *Tuigh*, the Waters of which yield an Oil, on their Surface, which serves to burn in Lamps.

The Inhabitants of *Barbadoes* are very numerous, and may be distinguish'd into three several Ranks, viz. Masters, Christian Servants and Negroe-Slaves. The Masters are English, Scotch and Irish, with some few Hollanders, French and Jews, who dwell upon and manure their own Plantations, which yield them so large a Profit, that



that they are generally Wealthy, have plenty of all things, and enjoy all manner of Pleasure. Their Apparel, especially that of the better sort, is exceeding profuse and costly, and their Fare is no less delicious: For the Tables of the Master-Planters, Merchants, and Factors, are generally well furnished with dainty Dishes, as Botardo, Neats-Tongues, Anchovies, Sturgeon and Caviary; besides variety of other sorts of Fish, Fowl, Beef, Mutton, Kid, Pork, Peas, Beans, divers Roots, Cucumbers, Cucumber-cakes, Turneps, &c. For Drink, they have Wine, Brandy, Strong-waters, and English Beer, to which are added several other Liquors peculiar to the Country, as Beveridge of Spring-water, Sugar and Orange-juice; a delicious kind of Wine made of the Juice of Pines, Cripps, Punch, &c. The profitable Commodities, in which their Merchandize chiefly consists, are Sugar, Cotton, Indico, Ginger, Logwood, Fustick, and *Lignum Vitæ*: Of these Commodities they have so great store, that above 200 Ships are yearly freighted for *England* and *Ireland*.

The Christian Servants, as well as the Negroes, are bought at a certain Rate, that is to say, about Ten Pounds a Head; but those that have learn'd a good Trade, as that of a Carpenter, Joiner, Bricklayer, Smith, &c. yield a much greater Price: a higher value is likewise set upon such of the Female Sex, as are young and beautiful. These Servants are usually bound for five Years, and at the expiration of that Term, are made free of the Island: So that then they are at liberty to make their Fortunes, according to their several Abilities, either in procuring a Plantation of their own, or in working in those of others, or else in following any Trade or Occupation. During their Servitude, the Men are allow'd yearly six Shirts, as many pair of Drawers, three *Monmouth* Caps, and 12 pair of Shoes. The Women have four Corsets, three Petticoats, and 12 pair of Shoes, besides a Rug-Gown, to keep them warm in the Night, and to put on when they come sweating from their Labour.

The Negroe-Slaves are likewise bought on Ship-board, as it were Horses in a Fair, and are more or less valu'd according to their Age, Strength, Shape, and Beauty. The common Rate for the better sort of Men, is 20, or 25 Pounds Sterling, and about Fifteen Pounds for Women; an equal number of both Sexes being generally taken for the increase of Stock: In regard they are never free from Bondage, and the Children they get are also perpetual Slaves. Their allowance of Cloaths is very little, that is to say, only three pair of Canvas Drawers a Year for the Men, and three Petticoats for the Women: Neither is their Lodging more commodious: for after having labour'd all the Day in so hot a Country, they content themselves only to take their Rest in Huts, or rather Hog-sties, on the bare Boards, without any Rugs or Coverlets; but the Christian Servants have a peculiar privilege to lie in Hammocks. As for the maintenance of these Servants and Slaves, their ordinary Food is Lob-lolly, made of beaten *Maz*, mingled with Water, Potatoes, Cassander-bread, Bonavit, &c. Their Stomachs are seldom over-charg'd

with Meat: yet on the Festivals of Christmas, Easter, and Whitsontide, they usually receive a Dole of Hogs-flesh: and of late, the Servants are allow'd every Week a small quantity of Pork, or Salt-fish. When any of the Cattel die accidentally, or of a Distemper, they are given to the Negroes, who feed on them like Epicures, and count it a sumptuous Banquet. Their Drinks are *Mobbs*, or an infusion of Potatoes in Water; *Pommo*, made of *clapany-Root*, which is poisonous of itself, but render'd wholesome by Art; Plantain-drink, or the Juice of that Fruit, &c. These poor Wretches are under the severe Discipline of their Overseers, whose business it is to call them to Work, by the Ring of a Bell, at six a Clock in the Morning, to set out their several Tasks, and to give them due Correction for Misdemeanours: The same Officer likewise orders them to go to Dinner at Eleven a Clock; calls them again by the Bell, at One, and discharges them at Six in the Evening.

The whole Island is divided into Eleven Precincts, or Parishes, viz. *Christ-church*, *St. Michael's*, *S. George's*, *S. Philip's*, *S. James's*, *St. Thomas's*, *S. John's*, *S. Joseph's*, *All-Saints*, *S. Andrew's*, and *S. Lucy's*; containing Fourteen Churches and Chapels: However, 'tis observable, That altho' the English set apart Sunday themselves for Divine Worship, nevertheless they take little or no care to convince the Negroes of the necessity they lye under, of serving their Creator: For being left to their own liberty, they are either employ'd in getting the Bark of Trees and making Ropes, to be exchanged for Shirts, Drawers, &c. or else they spend the Day in Sports, more especially Dancing and Wrestling, which they take much delight in, yet are not very expert in either of those Exercises: For in their Dancing they use antick Actions, their Hands moving faster than their Feet, and their Head than either: Their Musick is a sort of Kettle-drums of different Sizes, which make a strange and confused Noise. The Government of *Barbadoes* is establish'd by Laws agreeable to those in *England*, with some few Constitutions peculiar to the State of the Isle, which is divided into four Circuits. For the due Administration of Justice, five Sessions are held yearly, with several superiour and inferiour Courts of Judicature. There are also Justices of the Peace, Constables, Church-wardens, Tithing-men, and other Officers, for putting the Laws in execution.

The most considerable Towns are, *St. Michael's*, or *Bridge-Town*, seated on the Southern Part of the Island, and on *Carlisle-Bay*, which is very deep, and capable of containing 500 Vessels: 'Tis a convenient, well-built and populous Town, the Governour's Residence, the chief Place of Judicature, and the Staple of Trade; where most of the Merchants and Factors have their Store-houses. But it is not very healthy, by reason that the Ground lying lower than the Sea-banks, the Spring-tides overflow, and make a kind of morish Bog: This Town, for its security and the defence of the Ships, has two strong Forts, with a Platform in the middle, which also commands the Road, all being well furnish'd with Pieces of Ordinance, &c. *James-Town* on the East-side the Island, is a place of considerable



able Trade and a good Road for shipping: It has the Advantage of several fortified Breast-works; and in it are kept the monthly Courts for the Precinct. *Little-Bristol*, formerly nam'd *Sprites-Bay* on the same Coast but more Northward, and reckon'd about four Leagues distant from *Bridge-Town*; enjoys the Benefit of a great Trade; having a commodious Road for Ships; and likewise defended by two Forts. And *Charles-Town*, situated on Oyster-Bay, at the distance only of two Leagues Eastward from *S. Michaels*, and fenc'd by two strong Forts, with a Platform in the middle: In this Town good weekly Markets are kept, and monthly Courts for the Precinct. The noted Bays and Creeks beginning to count them from the Eastern Quarter, are *Michael's Bay*, *Skull-Bay*, *Foul-Bay*, *Penney-Hole*, *Mills-Bay*, *Autin's Bay*, *Long-Bay*, *Maxwell's Bay*, *Black-rock*, *Pellicans-Bay*, the *Hole*, *Read's Bay*, *Sprights-Bay*, *Six-men Bay*, *Humphry's Bay*, *Meacock's Bay*, *Balises Bay*, *Clark's Bay*, *Confets Bay*, *Knots-Bay*, *Baker-Bay*, &c.

Lastly the Island of *Barbadoes* is remarkable for its great Strength both Natural and Artificial: For in some Places chiefly on the South-East, it is fenc'd by a continued Course of Rocks and Shelves, besides the Woods that grow quite round along the Sea-coasts. In the other Places that are not thus defended by Nature, it is well fortify'd with Ramparts, Trenches, Curtains, Countercarps, Pallisadoes, and several considerable Forts. Moreover for its farther Security, a standing Militia is establish'd, consisting of valiant and well disciplin'd Men, who are to be always ready to appear upon the first Alarm, or beat of Drum: So that it is in a Condition to bid defiance to the most resolute Enemies, and has at several times actually baffled the Attempts of the Spaniards.

This Isle is not over-plentifully water'd with Rivers, Brooks or Fresh-Springs; there being but one River, or rather Lake, which may deservedly lay claim to that Denomination: However, the Land lying low, and for the most part level, gives rise to several Ponds or Pools; and the Inhabitants in most Houses have Cisterns, or Wells, which are continually supply'd with Rain-water.

XVII.  
S. Vincent.

**S. VINCENTS** lyes in 13 Degr. of Northern Latitude, between *S. Lucia*, on the North, and the little Isle of *Bequia*, on the South, about 24 Miles in Length, and 18 in Breadth: It has many Mountains, with fruitful Plains, yielding store of Sugar-Canes, even without the Labour of planting: It is also well water'd with Rivers, and has very convenient Harbours for shipping. The English have some Settlement here; but the *Caribbee-Indians* are most powerful, and inhabit many pleasant Villages.

These Wretches have no Notion of the Deity, nor Form of Worship; their Religion consisting only in invoking their false Gods, to revenge them of their Enemies, to heal their Diseases; to know the event of their Wars, and to protect them from their Grand Devil *Mobaya*: For it is certain, This evil Spirit cruelly beats and torments them, when they are not so forward upon War, as he would have them, and that in a visible Form. They devour the Flesh of their Enemies, not so much out of Delight in such Food, as for the Pleasure

Part 2

they take in Revenge. They cannot be persuaded to eat Swine-flesh, lest they should have small Eyes, which they judge a great Deformity; nor Turtles, lest they should partake of their Laziness. However, they are very peaceable Neighbours, and give the English no Disturbance at all; but blame them often, for coming so far to gratify their covetous Minds, and that through so many Dangers.

**TOBAGO**, or **TABAGO**, is situated in XVIII. the 11 Degr. of Northern Latitude, not far from *Tobago*: the Island *La Trinidad* and the Continent of Southern *America*: Its Extent is not above 32 Miles in Length, and 11 in Breadth. Some part of this Island was formerly possess'd by the Hollanders, who built the Town of *New Flushing*, and were rudely attack'd by the French in the Year 1677.

The Country is very happy in a temperate and wholesome Air, notwithstanding it is so near a Neighbour to the Equinoctial Line; for the gentle Breezes so moderate the Heat, that the Inhabitants have no inconvenience by it, but enjoy a perpetual Spring. The Soil naturally produces Indian Corn, but no English Grain will grow here, except Peas and Beans; yet there is good store of Guinea-Corn, *Bonevis*, the French Pea and Bean, the Kidney and Pigeon-Pea. There are also several sorts of Roots and Plants, as Potatoes, Eddies, Yanis, Carrets, and other English-Roots, Tobacco, which is said to take its Name from this Isle, Tea, Cinnamon, Long Cod-bell, Round and Jamaica Pepper, &c. Neither is there any less variety of delicious Fruits, as the Cushion-apples, Prickle-apples, divers other kinds of Apples, *Bonano's*, Cherries, Plums, Spanish Figgs, Oranges, Lemmons, Melons, Cucumbers, Pumpkins and Penguins: But above all, the Coco-nut Tree, and the Fruit of it is that which the Indians chiefly admire, because it serves for Meat, Drink, and Cloath, and therefore they commonly call it *God's Tree*; besides the *Maccaw-nut*, *Physick-nut*, *Lignum Vitæ*, *Brasil*, *Ebony*, *Yellow Saunders*, *Cedar*, *Box*, and many others. Numerous Herds of wild and tame Beasts are likewise bred in this Isle, as Wild Boars, Pickeries a Beast like a Hog, *Apostas*, a Creature so much in love with Mankind, that it follows them, and delights to gaze on them; Armadilloes, *Guanos*, Coneys, Deer, Horses, Cows, *Asnegroes*, Sheep, Swine, Goats and Land Tortoises. The Sea affords different kinds of excellent Fish, as the Gro-pers, *Porgo's* of two sorts; *Cavallo's*, Mulletts, the *Manafy*, or Sea-cow, Turtles, &c. There is also great plenty of Fowl, and among them the Bill-bird is admirable, because the Bill of it is as big as its whole Body.

The English are rul'd by a Governour, Deputy-Governour and Assembly, chosen by the Freeholders, to make wholesome Laws for the Benefit of the Island; and all Controversies are decided by the majority of Votes. Liberty of Conscience is allow'd to Persons of all Persuasions, except Roman Catholicks: Their vendible Commodities are Sugar, Tobacco, Indigo, Ginger, Balm, Balsam, *Sarsaparilla*, Silk-grass, Tar, &c.

The French have establish'd Colonies in the following Islands, viz. 1. *L' Isle de Sainte Croix*, i. e. *Holy-Cross Isle*, of which they took Possession, A. D. 1650. It lyes between *S. Christophers*, on the East,

XIX.

C c

and







# Southern AMERICA.

105

notice of seven principal Parts, viz. *Terra Firma*, *Brasil*, *Paraguay*, the Country about the River of the *Amazons*, *Peru*, *Cile* or *Chili*, and *Magellanica*. The first of these Divisions or large Provinces lyes on the North; the second, on the East; the third and fourth in the middle of the Continent; the two next, on the West; and the last, on the South. The more particular Division and chief Towns of every Part are seen in this Table.

A General Table of Southern America.

SOUTHERN AMERICA, divided into seven Parts, viz.	I. <i>Terra Firma</i> containing XI. Governments.	Seven on the Sea-coasts	Terra Firma properly so call'd Cartagena S. Martha Rio de la Hacha Venezuela New Andalusia Caribana
		Four in the inland Country	The Northern Part of Popayan The New Kingdom of Granada Paria. Guyana
		Three on the Northern Coast	Para Maragnan Siara
		Nine on the Eastern Coast	Rio Grande Paraiba. Tamaraca Pernambuco Seregippe All-Saints-Bay Ilheos. Porto Seguro Espiritu Santo
	II. <i>Brasil</i> in which are XIV. Captainries	Two on the Southern Coast	Rio Janeiro S. Vincent
		Four on the hither side of Paraguay fluv.	Guayr Proper Paraguay Parana Uruguay
		One on both sides of the Riv.	Rio de la Plata
		Two beyond the same River	Tucuman Chaco
	IV. The Country about the <i>Amazons</i> -River containing	On the Southern side	Cayana Mataya Tapayfa Paranyba Several sorts of People
		On the Northern side	Aparia Caribana Apanta Coropa Different sorts of People

V. <i>Peru</i> in which are three Governments	Quito	The Southern Part of Popayan Proper Quito Los Quixos Pacamores
	Los Reyes divided into	The Eastern Part The Western Part
	Los Charcas	Los Charcas Province La Sierra, or The mountainous Tract
VI. <i>Chili</i> including three Governments	Chili	Serena Territory Quillata S. Jago de Cile
	Chucuito	S. Juan de la Frontera Mendoca
	The Imperial	Villa Ricca Angel Chillan La Concepcion The Imperial Territory Baldivia Oforno Chilue Island
VII. <i>Magellanica</i> in which are	The Magellanick Continent	Several sorts of People and Places
	The Islands over against it	Madre de Dios Los Evangelistas Los Apostolos La Tierra del Fuego Staten-Landt Heremitens Eylands Gonsalo Barnevelt-Isles S. Ilesonfo Diego Ramirez-Isle

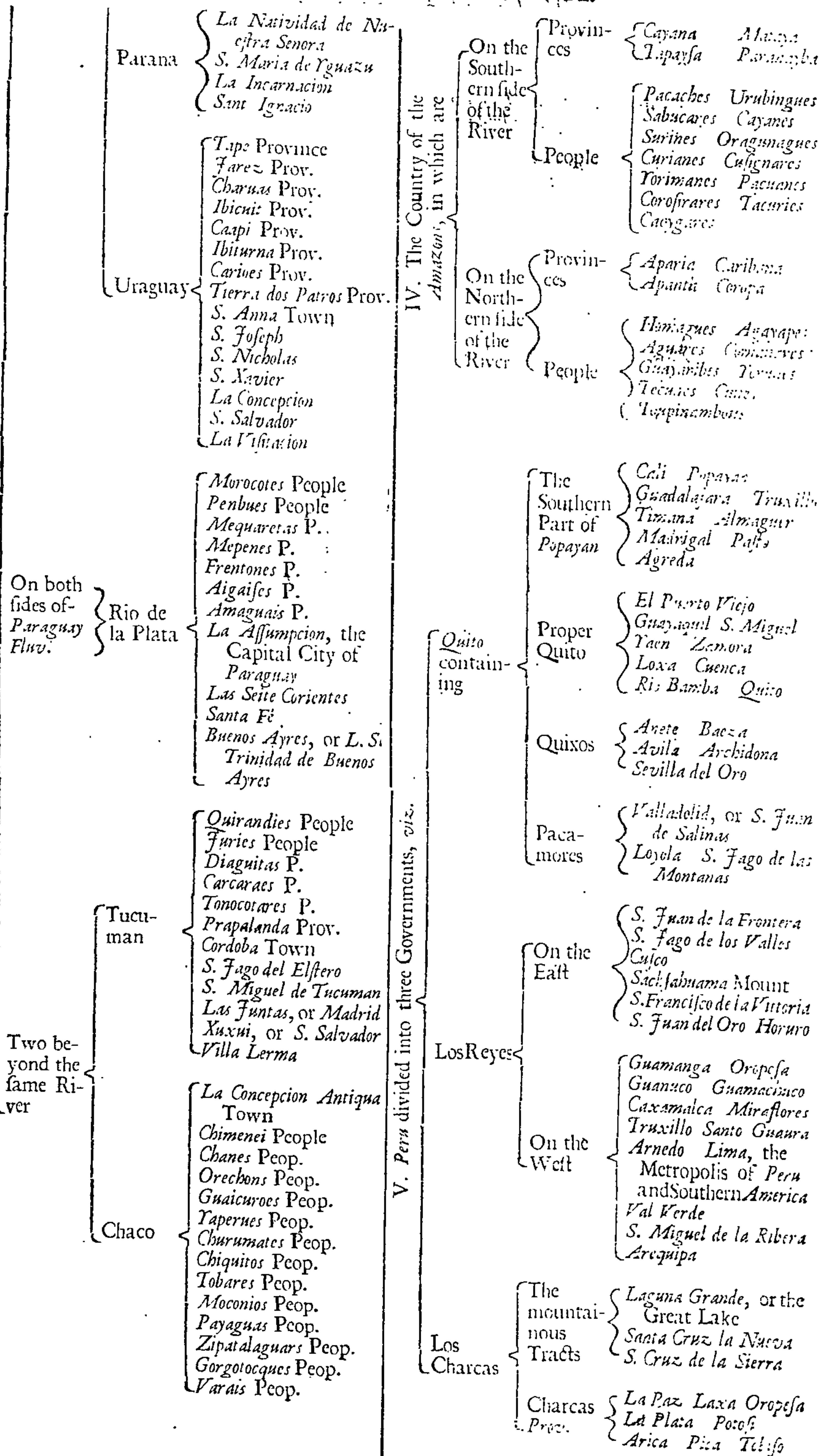
Seven particular Tables of Southern America.

I. <i>Terra Firma</i> containing eleven Governments, viz.	Seven Maritim	Terra Firma	Nata Panama Porto Belo Nombre de Dios Comagre Darien
		Cartagena Government	S. Sebastian Mopox Santa Maria Cenu Tonn Cartagena Nueva
		S. Martha Gov.	Baranca Tenerife Tamalamequa Al Puerto Ocanna Cividad de los Reyes S. Martha Ramada
		Rio de la Hacha Gov.	Nuestra Sennora de los Nieves, or Rio de la Hacha Rancheria Quibazon

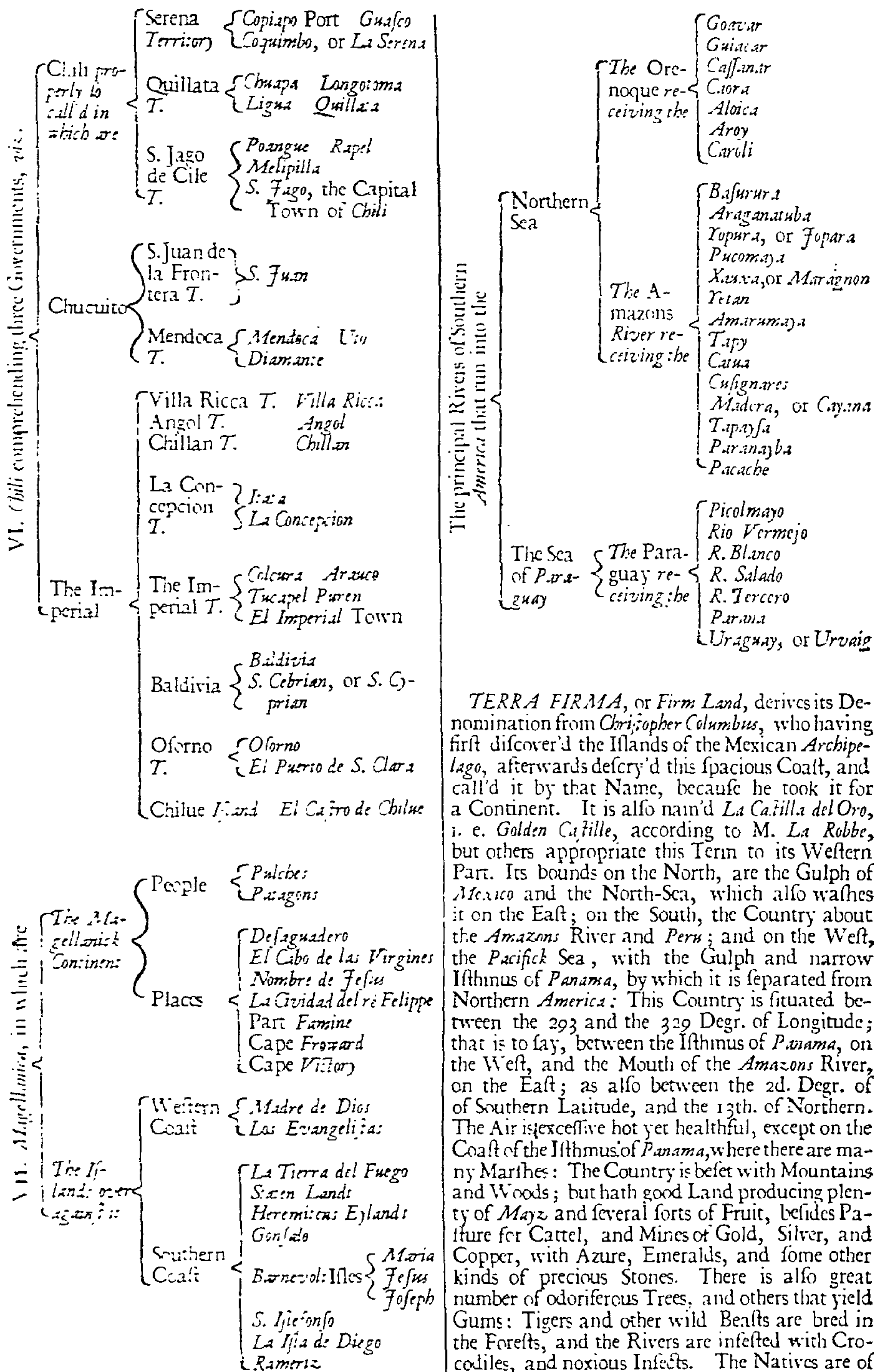


Four in the inland Country	Venezuela, or Coro	Para Captainry	Commodore Para S. Fago
	Maracaibo Lake	Three on the Northern Coast	Maraguan Cap. { Junipara San Luis de el Marañón
	Trujillo, or N. S. de la Paz		Siara Cap. { S. Fago Siara El Cabo Corso
	Pavilla de Carra		Rio Grande Natal, or Los Reyes Paraiba. Paraiba
New Andalusia	Tucumá Nueva Segovia	Nine on the Eastern Coast	Tamaraca { Santa Maria de la Concepcion
	Nueva Xerez		Pernambuco { Pernambuco Recife
	Nueva Valencia		Seregippe. Seregippe del Rey
	S. Fago de Leon		All Saints Bay { San Salvador the Metropolis of Brazil
Caribbean	Nuestra Señora de Corollada	Two on the Southern Coast	Los Ilheos Ilheos
	Camagucia		Porto Seguro { Santa Cruz Porto Seguro
	Commodore, or New Cordoba		Espiritu Santo. Espiritu Santo
	S. Fago S. Joseph		Rio Janeiro { S. Sebastian Angra dos Reyes
The Northern Part of Popayan	Atacama	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	S. Vincent { S. Vincent Santos Hitachi S. Paulo Philippovilla
	Saruman-Fort		Guayr
	Canara Isle		
	Wacadi Mirebaga		
The New Kingdom of Granada	Tamparacumen	III. Paraguay containing seven Provinces viz.	Paraguay Prov.
	Arracama People		
	Arracama P.		
	Kiri P.		
The Northern Part of Popayan	Wacama P.	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	Caribbean P.		
	Certagena Anzerma		
	Arma Curamanta		
The New Kingdom of Granada	S. Fe de Antiochia, or Ansequera	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	N. S. de los Remedios		
	Marique Ybague		
	S. Juan de los Llanos		
The New Kingdom of Granada	Santa Fe de Bogota, the Metropolis of Terra Firma	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	Tecayma Palma		
	S. Miguel Tunia		
	Tudela		
Paria	La Trinidad	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	Plasencia		
	Pamplona		
	Velez Caseres		
Paria	S. Christoval	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	Merida		
	Goroguanza Prov.		
	Caaparo P.		
Paria	Urraba P.	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	Orenoquepon P.		
	Axaraxueri People		
	Cassipagora P.		
Paria	Ezupatoma P.	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	Arazagori P.		
	Eparagori P.		
	Macmencara Town		
Guiana	Parime Lake	Four in the further side of the River Paraguay.	Paraguay Prov.
	Manoa Town		
	Muckikeri People		









**TERRA FIRMA**, or *Firm Land*, derives its Denomination from *Christopher Columbus*, who having first discover'd the Islands of the Mexican Archipelago, afterwards descry'd this spacious Coast, and call'd it by that Name, because he took it for a Continent. It is also nam'd *La Castilla del Oro*, i. e. *Golden Castille*, according to *M. La Robbe*, but others appropriate this Term to its Western Part. Its bounds on the North, are the Gulph of Mexico and the North-Sea, which also washes it on the East; on the South, the Country about the *Amazons* River and *Peru*; and on the West, the *Pacifick* Sea, with the Gulph and narrow Isthmus of *Panama*, by which it is separated from Northern America: This Country is situated between the 293 and the 329 Degr. of Longitude; that is to say, between the Isthmus of *Panama*, on the West, and the Mouth of the *Amazons* River, on the East; as also between the 2d. Degr. of Southern Latitude, and the 13th. of Northern. The Air is excessive hot yet healthful, except on the Coast of the Isthmus of *Panama*, where there are many Marthes: The Country is beset with Mountains and Woods; but hath good Land producing plenty of *Mayz* and several sorts of Fruit, besides Pasture for Cattel, and Mines of Gold, Silver, and Copper, with Azure, Emeralds, and some other kinds of precious Stones. There is also great number of odoriferous Trees, and others that yield Gums: Tigers and other wild Beasts are bred in the Forests, and the Rivers are infested with Crocodiles, and noxious Insects. The Natives are of a tawny Complexion, usually going naked to the Waste, and some of them are notorious Robbers.

III.

The



## TERRA FIRMA.



IV. The Spaniards have made themselves Masters of Part of *Terra Firma*; the Natives inhabit another Part, and Part of it is possess'd by the English, French and Hollanders. It is divided into eleven Governments, viz. Proper *Terra Firma*, Cartagena, S. Martha, Rio de la Hacha, Venezuela, New Andalusia, Caribana, the Northern and inland Part of Popayan, the New Kingdom of Granada, Paria, and Guiana. The seven first are remarkable for their Situation on the Sea-coasts, and the four last extend themselves in the Heart of the Country: All the Maritim Provinces, except Caribana, are subject to the Spaniards, besides Part of Popayan, and the new Kingdom of Granada, in the inland Territories.

V. *Terra Firma* properly so call'd, or *Tierra Firme* (according to the Spanish Dialect) adjoins on the

West, to the Audience of *Veragua*, a Province of North America, the last mention'd in our Account of that Continent; on the East, the Gulph of *Uraba* and the great River of *Darien*, part it from *New Granada* and *Popayan*; on the North, the Gulph of *Mexico*; and on the South, the *Pacifick* Sea wash its Shores. The Western part of it is sometimes call'd the *Isthmus of Panama*; and of late Years has been known to us by the Name of the *Isthmus of Darien*: Over which *Dampier* pass'd by Land, and he and Mr. *Wafer* have given us a very particular Account of that part of the Country. In his first Journey Mr. *Dampier* travell'd but 60 Miles from a Bay near *Golden-Island* to *St. Maria*, a Spanish Fort seated on a River which gave him Passage to the *South-Sea*. And though in returning he spent 23 days and travell'd



travelled the Miles through bad Grounds and over Rocks, which made the Journey very troublesome: yet so that was overbrought by a fear of the Spaniards, he declines that a Journey over the Isthmus is to be made in three days time. This was the Prophecy was the motive that tempted the Scots Company of Merchants to land shipping, Plant a Colony, and build a Fort on *Panama*. The Success of that Expedition is known to every body, so that it is unnecessary to say when and how the Spaniards beat them off. The Weather is generally very hot, and the Country abounds with Mountains and Marshes, inasmuch that the Vapours which rise from them, extremely infect the Air and cause great Rains, which are often accompanied with terrible Thunder and Lightning. However, it affords Pleasant-Woods, Pastures, verdant Pastures, Woods, divers kinds of beasts, particularly wild Cats, tame Cattle, Hens and Eggs. Its most remarkable Towns, are

*Panama*, a little City, the Houses of which are built of Timber: Nevertheless it is the Capital of the Province, and a Bishop's See, under the Metropolis of *Lima*, seated on the South-Sea Coast, in the narrowest Part of the Isthmus, on a Gulph to which it gives Name, and having the advantage of a strong Fort and safe Harbour: It is a most famous Mart, and the Store-house of the Spanish Bullion, which being brought thither from *Lima* by Sea, is conveyed by Land over the Isthmus which is about 15 Leagues wide, to *Porto Belo*, on the Gulph of *Mexico*, on the Coast of the North-Sea, where it is shipped off again for *Spain*. Merchandizes are likewise transported from *Spain* by the Ports of *Porto Belo* and *Panama* to *Peru*: Moreover the high Court of Judicature, commonly call'd *La Audiencia Real*, is kept in this City, which was taken and burnt by the *Bachagueres*, under the Command of Sir *Henry Morgan* in the Year 1656; but the Spaniards have rebuilt it a little more Westward. It stands in the 8 Degr. 30 Min. of North Latitude, and in the 79. Degr. Longit.

Over against the Town of *Panama*, at the distance of 12 Leagues, at the entrance of the Gulph of the same Name, appear the *Pearl-Islands*, in Spanish *Las Islas de Perlas*, formerly of good Note: Among these there are two somewhat large, nam'd *Del Rio*, and *Torresqui*, with about 20 of a lesser Extent, which may be more properly term'd Rocks.

*Porto Belo*, i. e. *The fair Port*, is situated opposite to *Panama*, on the Coast of the North-Sea, with a safe and capacious Harbour, and two well fortified Castles built on an Hill, which bear the Names of *S. James* and *S. Philip*: It is a considerable Mart-Town, and famous for its Fairs and Markets, but it was taken and pillag'd by the English and French in 1665. The other Towns are *Nombre de Dios*, i. e. *The Name of God*, which stood farther Eastward on the same Coast, but it has fallen quite to Ruin, within a few Years, the Inhabitants having abandoned it by reason of the unwholesomeness of the Air, and remov'd their Effects to *Porto Belo*: *Cole*, near the same Sea; and *Darien*, on the North side of the Gulph of *Urraba*, noted for the Expedition of the Scots.

The following Governments lye on or near the North Sea, and the most Western of them is Cartagena, styl'd *La Governacion de Cartagena*: It is bounded on the West, by *Terra Firma* and the Gulph of *Urraba*; on the East, by the Government of *S. Martha*; and on the South, by *Popayan*, and is water'd by the River of *S. Martha*. The chief Towns are *S. Sebastian*, or *S. Sebastian de Buenavista*, at the entrance of the Gulph of *Urraba*; *Mopox*, on the Western side of the River *Magdalen*; *Santa Maria*, beyond the same River; *Cinna*; *Tolu*, and *Cartagena Nueva*, or *Cartagena la Inda*, the Metropolis of the Province, and the See of a Prelate, who is Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Santa Fe*. It stands on the Sea-coast, and has a safe and very spacious Harbour. It was also walled the first of all the American Towns, and is well fortified with two Castles: nevertheless it was taken and laid waste by the English, and again by the French in the late War, *A. D.* 1696. Moreover, this City is the Port for the Ships that arrive in these Parts from *Cuba*, and the adjacent Territory is stor'd with Balin, Rotin, and several sorts of Gums.

From the Province of *Cartagena*, we pass to that of *S. Martha*, or *La Governacion de Santa S. Martha*, which affords great store of *Brass* Wood, the Gold, precious Stones, and divers kinds of Fruit, and contains the following Towns, viz. *Baranca*, otherwise call'd *Baranca de Mambo*, and *de Malemba*, built on the Eastern side of the great River, not far from the Sea-coast, and dignify'd with a Bishop's See: *Tenerra*, higher at the Confluence of the Rivers *Martha* and *Magdalen*; *Tamalamaca*, on the *Magdalen*; *Al Puerto*, higher on the same River; *Ocumá*; *Ciudad de los Reyes*; *S. Martha*, the Capital Town of the Province, and an Episcopal See, with a Harbour and a strong Castle, which nevertheless was taken by the English and Hollanders; and *Ramada* farther Eastward, on the Coast of the same Sea.

The Government of *Rio de la Hacha*, the most Northern of all the Provinces of *Terra Firma*, as also of the whole Continent of Southern America, is but of a small Extent; lying in the middle, between the Government of *S. Martha*, on the West, and the Gulph of *Venezuela* and the Lake of *Maracaybo*, on the East. The Soil is fruitful, and the Country affords plenty of Salt, with variety of Grains: Its Capital Town is *Nuestra Señora de las Nieves*, otherwise call'd *N. S. de Remedios*, and frequently *Rio de la Hacha*, i. e. *The Torch-River*, from a River of the same Name, at the Mouth of which it is seated. The other Places of Note, are *La Rancheria*, a neighbouring Sea-port Town, and *Coquibacoa*, at the entrance of the Gulph of *Venezuela*, from which the adjacent Promontory *El Cabo de Coquibacoa*, or *Coquibacoa*, the most Northern of this Continent of America, derives its Name.

Beyond the Gulph of *Venezuela*, and the Lake *Maracaybo*, to the East, appears *La Governacion de Venezuela*, a large, pleasant and fertile Country, reputed the Granary of the other Provinces: The Metropolis of it is *Cero*, or *Venezuela*, situated between the Lake *Maracaybo* and the North-Sea, as it is commonly set down in the Maps: But *M. Baudrand* places *Venezuela* in the inland Country at the distance of 50 Leagues from the Sea-coast.



coast, and dignifies it with an Episcopal See translated thither from *Coro*. The other Towns, are *Trujillo*, or *Nuestra Señora de la Paz*; *Portilla de Coro*; *Tucuyo*; *Nueva Segovia*; *Nueva Nerez*; *Nueva Valencia*, on the West of the Lake *Tocuyana*; *S. Jago de Leon*; *N. S. de Carvelleda*, or *Carvelledes*; and *Comanagotta*, on the farthest Eastern Boundary.

X. *New Andalusia*, lyes between *Venezuela*, on the New An- West; and the River *Oronoque*, on the East; and dalusia. its principal Part is call'd *Paria*, which Name is also often attributed to the whole Country: Its East and South Boundaries are washed by the vast River *Oronoque*, or *Paria*, and its Sea-coasts afford good store of Pearls. Its chief Towns are *Comana*, or *New Corduba*, near the Gulph of *Caria-co*; or *Caria-co*, where there are several Salt-Pits. *S. Jago*, over against the Gulph; *S. Joseph*, on the Gulph of *Paria*; and *Acamacan*, on the West-side of the River *Paria*; beyond which lyes the Territory of *Aromain*.

XI. Lastly, *Caribana*, or the Coast of the *Caribbees*, a very large Province, is wash'd by the Northern Sea, from the Mouth of the River *Oronoque*, to that of the *Amazons* River, and (according to several Authors) constitutes a Part of *Guiana* taken at large. It extends itself a great deal farther, between the Mouths of the said Rivers, than between the Sea and Proper *Guiana*, which is its Boundary on the South. The heat of the Air is here much moderated by the East-winds, the plentiful Dew, thick Woods and Mountains: This Country, the Natives of which are long-liv'd, abounds with wild Beasts, tame Cattel, Fish, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wax, and several sorts of Fruit, and is water'd by many Rivers that fall into the North-Sea: Its Coasts are often discover'd by the Europeans, who have settled divers Colonies between the River *Oronoque*, and the Promontory of *Conde*, otherwise term'd *Orange-Cape*, and *Cecil-Cape*. The Hollanders are Masters of some Places near the Mouth of the Rivers *Essekebe* and *Berbice*; as also of *Surinam* a noted Fort, built five Leagues above a River of the same Name, on its Western side, and on a Rock near the spacious Marthes: The French about the Year 1640 first erected this Fort; which was afterwards possess'd with the adjacent Territory, by the English, and at last granted to the Hollanders, by the Treaty at *Breda*. But several other Forts (according to M. *Baudrand*) are still in the Possession of the French, who commonly call the Territories under their Jurisdiction, by the Name of *Equinoctial France*, with respect to the Situation of the Country: They have also a Colony in *Cayena*, an Island that lyes near the Mouth of the River *Cayena*, to which it owes its Name, and that of *Wia*: This Island takes up 18 Leagues in Compass, and is distant about 100 Northward from the *Amazons* River; having *St. Lewis's* Fort for its Defence, which was taken by the Hollanders, and recover'd by the French in the Year 1676. The English have likewise settled several considerable Colonies along the Coasts of this Province, which generally lye low, and are extended above 250 Leagues in Length. There are some other Places of Note, in *Caribana*, viz. *Waetali*, near the Mouth of the *Amazons* River, with a Promontory of the same Name: *Moreshogo*, on the East-side of the River *Marwyn*, and *Taupu*.

Part 2

*rannunen*, somewhat lower, on the opposite Bank: Moreover, these Parts are inhabited by many different sorts of People, among whom the most eminent are the *Arrawari*, *Arriari*, *Arwacca*, *Arracosi*, *Kiari*, *Wacoewai* and *Caribbees*: These last seiz'd on the Eastern *Antilles* Islands (as it has been already hinted) and turn'd out the ancient Inhabitants; but they themselves being afterwards expell'd by the Europeans, were forc'd to return to their former Seats.

We must now travel into the inland Countries. XII. of *Terra Firma*, viz. the Northern Part of the Government of *Popayan*, the new Kingdom of *Granada*, *Paria*, and *Guiana*. The Government of *Popayan* in Spanish, *La Gobernacion de Popayan*, is situated in the middle, between *Terra Firma*, on the West; *Cartagena*, on the North; and Proper *Quito*, with the Territory of *Quixos*, on the South; the two last being Parts of the Province of *Quito*, which is the most Northern of all the Governments of *Peru*. The Country is beset with very high Mountains, wherein a great number of Springs and Rivers take their Rise, and the Soil affords admirable Veins of Gold. The greater Part of *Popayan*, which lyes out farther on the South and West, is comprehended with the Government of *Quito*, and shall be hereafter describ'd under the Article of *Peru*: So that the Northern and Inland Part of *Popayan* is only reckon'd among the Provinces of *Terra Firma*; and its chief Towns, are *Cartagena*; *Santa Anna de Anzerma*, or simply *Anzerma*; *Arma*; *Caramanta*; and *Santa Fe de Antiochia*, or *de Antequera*.

The New Kingdom of *Granada*, call'd *El Nuevo Reyno de Granada* by the Spaniards, as also *La Nueva Granada*, or *New Granada*, and *Bogota* by the Natives, lyes in the middle, between *Popayan*, on the West; and *Paria*, on the East. It is furnish'd with Mines of divers sorts of Metal, more especially Silver and Copper, besides Emeralds and other pretious Stones: The River *Magdalen* has its Source in this Kingdom, and runs through it. The most considerable Towns, are *Nuestra Señora de los Remedios*, on the Frontiers of *Popayan*; *Mariguat*; *Ybagua*; *S. Juan de los Llanos*, next to the Spring-head of *Magdalen* River; *Santa Fe de Bogota*, the most eminent City of *New Granada*, and (according to M. *La Robbe*) of the whole Country of *Terra Firma*; dignify'd with the Title of a Metropolitan See; and built at the Foot of Mount *Bogota*, from which its Name is deriv'd; as also near the River *Pari*, and the Lake *Guaravita*: *Tocayma*, lower on the same River, at its Confluence with the *Magdalen*; *Palma*; *S. Miguel*; *Tunia*; *Tudela*; *La Trinidad*; *Plasencia*; *Pamplona*; *Velez*; *Caceres*; *S. Christoval* on the Borders of the Government of *S. Martha*; and *Merida*.

The spacious Province of *Paria* borders on the West, upon *New Granada*, and on the East, upon *Guiana*; and the River *Paria*, or *Oronoque* (as it is express'd in some Maps) runs through its Southern and Eastern Parts. In this Country, which is little known to the Europeans, the Provinces of *Goioguancya*, and *Gatapararo* usually are plac'd towards *New Granada*, the former on the North, and the other more Southward; as also *Urraba* along the Western side of the River *Paria*. Beyond the same River is situated the Province.

D d

of



of *Orenoquepons*, with the Territories of the People nam'd *Aparanaperi*, *Cassipagoze*, *Epaipanoma*, *Arapagori*, and *Eparagori*, whose chief Town is *Macanassaray*, on the Eastern side of the Lake *Cassipa*: All these People inhabit the Country that lyes round about the said Lake, which empties itself through several Rivers, into that of *Paria*.

XV. *Guiana*, the most Eastern of all the inland Provinces of *Terra Firma*, is separated from *Paria* by a continu'd ridge of Mountains; bordering on the North and East, upon *Caribana*, and on the South, upon the Country about the *Amazon* River. But it ought to be understood in a strict Sense: for this Province taken at large, comprehends Proper *Guiana* and *Caribana*, as it has been already observ'd. Its Southern Tract lyes under the Equinoctial Line, and the Country is very mountainous; neither have the Europeans any distinct Knowledge of its several Parts. It is said to contain a Lake of a vast Extent, like a Sea,

which the *Caribbees* call the Lake, or Sea of *Parimi*; but the *Jayji*, or *Jaji*, another sort of People term it *Reponoxini*: However, this Lake is only known to the Europeans by Hear-say and Name; since none of them ever as yet travell'd so far as to discover it. On the Western side of the same Lake, the Town of *Manna*, in Spanish *El Dorado*, is commonly plac'd in the Maps, which the Inhabitants affirm to be an exceeding large and magnificent City, the Metropolis of a Kingdom of the same Name, which is very potent, and may well be compar'd with *Peru*; abounding with Gold and precious Stones. But others look upon all the specious Reports that are spread abroad concerning this Country, as meer Fictions. Lastly the Territories of the *Muckikeri*, a particular People, are set out in the Maps, on the Frontiers of *Paria*, and on the Northern Coast of the Lake of *Parimi*.

## CHAP. X.

### BRASIL.

I. *Brasil*.

AFTER having taken a View of *Terra Firma*, we proceed to the second Part of Southern *America*, which lyes out farthest Eastward, and is commonly call'd *Brasil*. It is reported, That *Peter Alvarez Caprale*, a Portuguese, as he was prosecuting a Voyage to *East-India*, was accidentally driven by a furious Tempest, whereby his Life was much endanger'd, from the Coast of *Africa*, to this Country; which was at first nam'd *Hib-Guiss* Province, because he discover'd it on *Hib-Cross* day, or *Easter-Eve*, *A. D.* 1501. A little while after, *Americus Vesputius* the Florentine, by Commission from *Emmanuel* King of *Portugal*, made a more accurate Discovery of the same Country, and afterwards several Colonies were settled there by the Portuguese, who still possess the Sea Coasts, and as far up the Country as they have thought fit to cultivate. The Country was at first nam'd *America*, from *Americus* the first Discoverer of it; which Denomination in process of time, being translated to the whole Continent of the New World, the Name of this Province was chang'd and deriv'd from a kind of red Wood call'd *Brasil*, which is there produc'd in great abundance, and is of singular Use in the dying of Clothes.

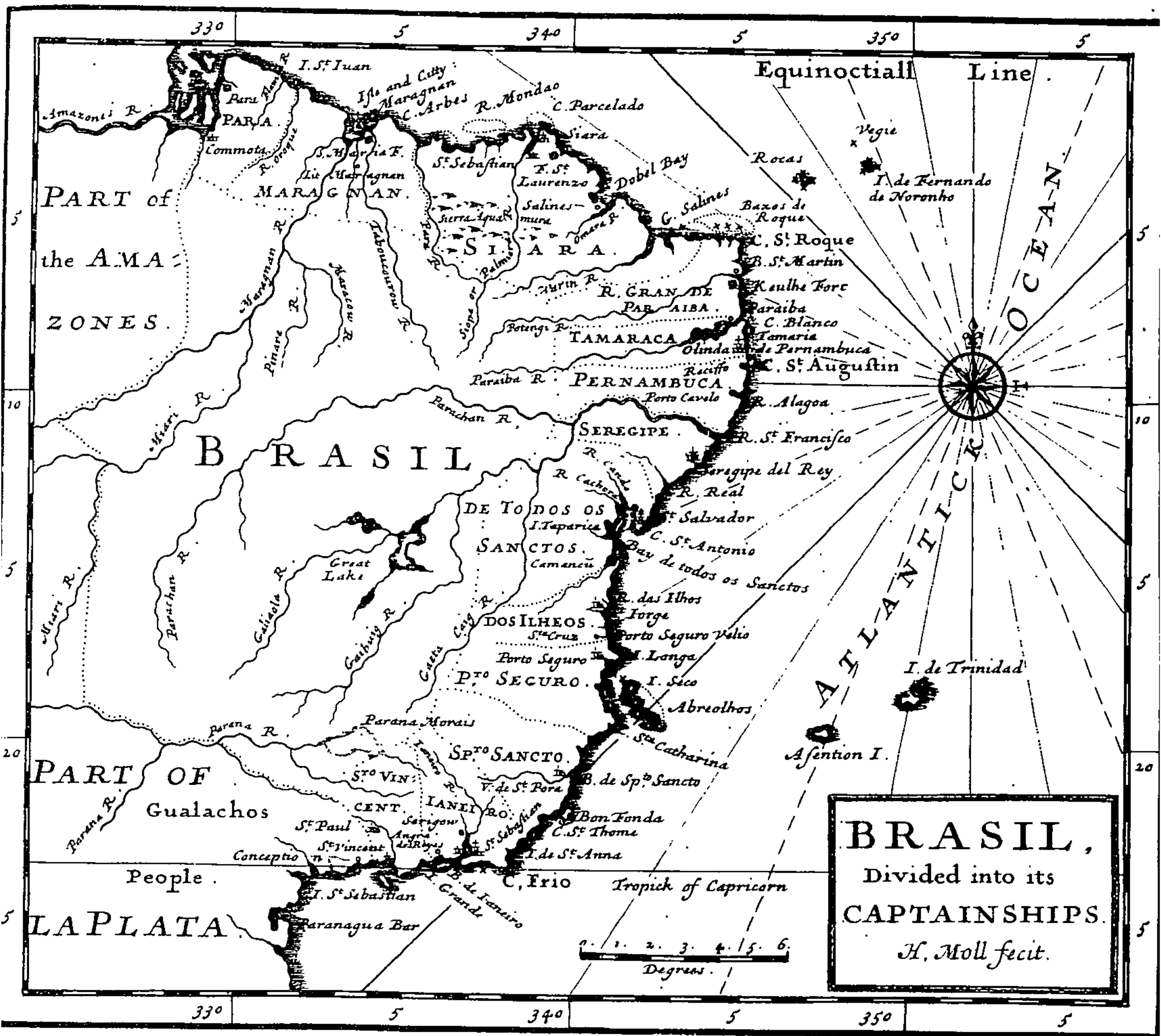
II. *Brasil* is bounded on the North and East, by the Sea on which it has impos'd its Name; on the South by the same Sea and *Paraguay*; and on the West, by *Paraguay*, and the Country about the *Amazon* River. It is situated between the 301 and the 325 Degr. of Longitude, and reaches almost from the first to the 24th Degree of Southern Latitude, or to the Tropick of *Capricorn*; beyond which its Bounds are extended by several Geographers after different manners. The Air of this Country, notwithstanding its Situation under the Southern Tract of the Torrid Zone is not excessive hot, but admirably well temper'd, not

only by the continual Length and Coolness of the Nights, the abundance of Dew, and plentiful Showers of Rain, but more especially by the gentle Gales of Wind coming from the Sea, which daily disperse the Mists and Vapours: By which means the Air becomes serene and very healthful; insomuch that the Inhabitants are said sometimes to attain to the Age of 150 Years.

The Country is partly Champain, and partly rises up by degrees to fine pleasant Hills, abounding with arable Lands, rich Pastures, and well water'd Meadows, that are always verdant: The Soil is very fruitful of Sugar growing in long Canes, out of which the most delicious Liquor being press'd by Mill, is boyl'd in Cauldrons and clarify'd: It also brings forth great store of Tobacco, Cotton, Apple-Trees, *Brasil*-wood, Millet and *Moyz*, with an admirable variety of Roots, as *Ananas*, *Acarous*, *A-ai-cous*, *Api's*, Potatoes, and *Marrioc*, or *Manduc*, which last the Natives grind to Flower, and eat instead of Bread. Moreover all sorts of Grain and Fruit, brought over from *Europe* by the Portuguese, thrive there mightily, more especially Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranates, Grapes, Figs, Cucumbers, Melons, &c. It is commonly said that the Mountains of *Brasil*, are noted for Wood, the Valleys for Tobacco, the Fields for Sugar, and the Coasts for flying Fish, which rise in great Flocks above the Sea, as Starlings or other Birds upon the Land. They are of the bigness of a large Herring, and their Wings resemble those of a Bat. There are also several other sorts of excellent Fish, the various Colours of which are extremely delightful to behold, particularly *Albacores*, Cod-Fish, *Bonites*, and Tortoises of a prodigious Bulk and Strength, that are very full of Eggs. The Country likewise affords variety of Fowl, and Beasts both wild and tame; besides numerous Herds of Horses and other sorts of Cattel transported

III.





ported from *Portugal*, which bring forth Young in great abundance. There are several kinds of Creatures unknown to the Europeans, among which the most remarkable, are the *Tatusi*, that is cover'd with Scales, and the *Pigritia* or *Sloth*, of the bigness of a Fox, which, although it has Feet and is always in motion, creeps so slowly upon the Belly, that it scarce goes 100 Paces in twelve or fifteen days. The Lizards, Serpents and Toads are not venomous, but are usually eaten by the Inhabitants.

IV. The Natives of *Brasil* of both Sexes generally go naked, only with their Hair hanging down from the Crown of the Head; for they sometimes shave the other Parts of the Body: They anoint their Skin with the black Juice of a kind of Apple, and paint it with divers Colours, adorning their

Part 2

Face and Lips with little Stones, that are of no value: These People are capable of enduring the hardest Labour and the greatest Hunger, being able to live three days together without eating: They are very expert in the Arts of shooting with Arrows, swimming and diving, and when occasion requires it, continue under Water for a long time, with their Eyes open: They are addicted to Lasciviousness, Anger, Cruelty and Revenge; their Courage engaging them in many rash Attempts, so that they are always at War with their Neighbours: After having taken their Enemies in Battel, they cause them to be fatted many days for Slaughter; then they kill them in a solemn manner, with great Acclamations and Dancing, roast their Limbs on Spits, and feed upon the Flesh; esteeming it as a most delicious Banquet.

D d 2



Banquet. They dwell in Cottages scatter'd here and there. Several Families often lodging in the same Hut; and they sleep in Hammocks made of Cotton-threads, hang'd up above the Ground, to secure themselves from noxious Animals. They live from Hand to Mouth, only ~~living~~ <sup>holding</sup> hold of the present Opportunities, without being solicitous for the future, and take great delight in the Art of Divination, but extremely dread evil Spirits. They have little regard to Matters of Religion, yet they believe the Immortality of the Soul, and have some notions of a God, who makes the Thunder, and of certain Demons that come to torment them. This is the Character of the *Bra-juns*, who retain the Customs of their Country, and inhabit the inland Territories; but those that live on the Sea-coasts, are more civiliz'd, and reclaim'd from their Savage Disposition; by the means of their Commerce with the Portuguese and other European Nations. As to the Government of these Savages, some of them are subject to a Supreme Governour, whom they choose out of their principal Tribes, as the *Tupinambous*, *Marguas*, *Omatzeis*, *Paraiba's*, *Tapouges*, &c. Others live without any Law, or Ruler, as the *Miramomins*, *Coriges*, &c.

The memorable Decision of Pope *Alexander VI.* who invest'd King *Ferdinand* of *Arragon*, and Queen *Isabel* of *Castile* his Consort, with all the Land that they should discover on the West-side of an imaginary Line drawn from Pole to Pole, 100 Leagues beyond the *Azores* Islands; and granting at the same time the Countrys that could be discover'd Eastward of that Line to the King of *Portugal*; occasion'd great Contests between these two Crowns, about the Place where this Line ought to be fixed, and about the Limits of *Brasil*: The Portuguese made it reach from the River *Maranhon*, or *Maragnan*, to that of *Para*, whereas the Spaniards would not allow it to lye beyond the Captainry of *St. Vincent* in *Brasil*.

V. However, the Portuguese still possess the Sea-coasts and 60 or 70 Leagues up the Land. The Coasts are divided into fourteen distinct Governments, commonly call'd *Capitanias*, or Captainries, viz. those of *Para*, *Maragnan*, *Siara*, *Rio Grande*, *Paraiba*, *Tamaraca*, *Pernambuco*, *Seregippe*, *All-Saints Bay*, *Ilheos*, *Porto Seguro*, *Spiritu Santo*, *Rio Janeiro*, and *St. Vincent*. The three first are situated on the Northern Coast; the nine next, on the Eastern; and the two last on the Southern. Every one of these Divisions, has its peculiar Government; but they are all accountable to the King of *Portugal's* Vice-Roy, who keeps his Court at *S. Salvador*.

VI. Among the Governments of the Northern Coast, (beginning to count them from the West) that of *Para*, or *La Capitanie de Para*, first presents itself to our View, and contains the following Towns, viz. *Comma*, on the Mouth of the *Amazon* River; *Para*, the Capital to which this Province owes its Name, being distant 130 Leagues Westward from *Maragnan*; and 40 above the Mouths of the *Amazon* River, and *S. Jago*.

Mirag-  
nan C. The Captainry of *Maragnan* lyes on the East of the former, and its chief Towns are *Juapara* and *Maragnan*, or *S. Joze de el-Maranhan*, (as it is call'd by the Portuguese) the Metropolis of the Province on which it has impos'd its

Name, seated in the Island of *Maragnan* over against the River *Mary*. It was erected into an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *S. Salvador*, by Pope *Innocent XI.* Aug. 30. 1677. This little City was first built by the French in 1612. and was taken by the Hollanders, but it is now subject to the King of *Portugal*. *Peter Texeira* affirms, That the Province of *Maragnan* depends on that of *Para*; so that some only reckon up thirteen Captainries on the Coast of *Brasil*.

The Captainry of *Siara* is of a larger Extent, *Siara C.* and lyes farther Eastward than those above-mention'd. Its most remarkable Places, are *S. Jago*; *Siara* the chief Town, with a Castle built on an Hill, and a capacious Harbour, although its compass is but small, and the Inhabitants few in number: And *El Cabo Corso*, or *Cape Cors*.

The Eastern Coast of *Brasil* appears next, comprehending nine Captainries. The six first extend themselves farthest on the East, and the first of them bears the Name of *La Capitanie de Rio Grande*, i. e. *The Captainry of the Great River*; the Coasts of which on the North and East, are wash'd by the Northern Ocean. The said River divides this Province into two Parts, and *Natal*, or *Los Reyes*, i. e. *The King's-City*, stands on the Mouth of it.

The Captainry of *Paraiba*, the next in Order, *Paraiba Capt.* takes up but a small space in Compass, and is water'd by a River of the same Name, on which the chief Town likewise nam'd *Paraiba* is seated, scarce 8 Miles from the Ocean. It is well fortify'd with the two Castles of *St. Catherine* and *St. Anthony*, and has a large Harbour. However, the Hollanders made themselves Masters of it in the Year 1624, and impos'd on it the Name of *Frederickstadt*. But it was afterwards retaken by the Portuguese, who are still in the Possession of it, and often call it *Nossa Senhora das Neves*.

The Captainry of *Tamaraca* is likewise of *Tamaraca Capt.* a small Extent, and over against its Coast lyes an Island of the same Name, taking up 22 Miles in Compass, in which is a little Town commonly call'd *Santa Maria de la Concepcion*.

The Province or Captainry of *Pernambuco* is *Pernambuco C.* larger and more considerable than the former, extending itself for the space of 60 German Miles along the Coast, and containing eleven Towns and Villages: The chief of these, are *Pernambuco*, or *Olinda de Pernambuco*, built on an Hill, near the Mouth of the River *Bibirida*, with *S. George's* Fort and a large Harbour. The Hollanders took this Town, *A. D.* 1629, but abandon'd it some time after, and it was made a Bishop's See in 1676. And *Reciffa*, or *Recif*, so termed as it were a Rock, a well frequented Village on the Sea-coast, which continu'd for some time in the Possession of the Hollanders, and was taken by the Portuguese, *A. D.* 1654.

The Captainry of *Seregippe*, otherwise call'd of *Seregippe C.* *Ciriz*, from a River of the same Name, is of less Extent than the Province of *Pernambuco*, and is separated from it by the River of *St. Francis*. The capital Town of this Government *Seregippe del Rey*, is but a small Place, and stands on an Hill, at the Mouth of the said River.

The Captainry of *All-Saints Bay*, in *Portu-All-guese A Capitanie de Bahia de Todos. los Santos*, is *Saints the Bay C.*



the most eminent of all the Provinces of this Country; lying between *Seregippe*, on the North; and *Ilheos*, on the South. The Metropolis of this Government, as also of the whole Country of *Brasil* is *San Salvador*, i. e. *S. Saviour*, often call'd *A Bahia*, *The Bay*, by reason of its advantageous Situation at the entrance of *All-Saints Bay*, in which are many Islands: It stands on an Hill, and is fortify'd with three Castles, and has a very fine Harbour. It affords a Place of Residence to the King of *Portugal's* Vice-Roy and to an Archbishop, and the Royal Tribunal, or Court of Judicature is kept therein. This City was taken by the *Hollanders*, *A. D.* 1624, but the *Portugueses* recover'd it the next Year, and its Episcopal See was erected into a Metropolitan by Pope *Innocent XI.* in 1676.

*Ilheos C.* The next Government or Captainry nam'd *Dos Ilheos*, i. e. *Of the Islands*, is water'd by the River *Patipa*, and its chief Town is *Ilheos*, a Sea-port of a small Compass, on the Mouth of a River of the same Name, which it has communicated to the whole Province. It is distant 40 Leagues Southward from *All-Saints Bay*.

*Porto Seguro C.* In the Captainry of *Porto Seguro*, on the Sea-coast, are the Towns of *Santa-Cruz*, or *Holy-Cross*, and *Porto Seguro*, i. e. *A safe Harbour*, where *Peter Alvarez Cabral* first arriv'd, when he accidentally discover'd the Country of *Brasil*.

*Espiritu Santo C.* The Captainry of *Espiritu Santo*, i. e. *Of the Holy Ghost*, is water'd by the Rivers *Parayba* and *Espiritu Santo*, and the chief Town of this Province likewise nam'd *Espiritu Santo*, is seated not far from the Mouth of the

latter; being of a small Compass, but well fortify'd.

The two remaining Governments of *Rio Janeiro* and *S. Vincent*, are extended farthest of all *Rio Janeiro C.* Westward, and on the Southern Coast of *Brasil*. The former takes its Name from the great River *Janeiro*, call'd *Ganabara* by the Natives, and *La Riviere de Genevre* by the French, which runs through the middle of the Province, and discharges itself through a very wide Mouth, into the Sea of *Brasil*. On the Western side of the same River, appears *S. Sebastian* the chief City of this Captainry, dignify'd with the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *S. Salvador*, and having a capacious Harbour with two Forts: *Angra dos Reyes*, another considerable Sea-port Town, is situated farther Westward, on the same Coast.

The last Government or Division of *Brasil*, is *S. Vincent* the Captainry of *St. Vincent*, which lyes under cent C. the Tropick of *Capricorn*. Its most remarkable Towns, are *St. Vincent*, the Capital, seated on the Southern Coast, with a large and convenient Harbour; *Santos*; *Hitauchi*; *S. Paulo* and *Philippovilla*.

IX. Having thus describ'd the Maritim Coasts of *Brasil*, we should now proceed to give an Account of its inland Part; but it is inhabited only by savage and fierce People, who are not subject to any Government, and whose Names, for the most part, are scarce known to the Europeans: So that no certain Description can be made of the Situation and Bounds of those Countries, the farther Discovery of which must be left to future Ages.

## CHAP. XI.

### PARAGUAY, or RIO DE LA PLATA.

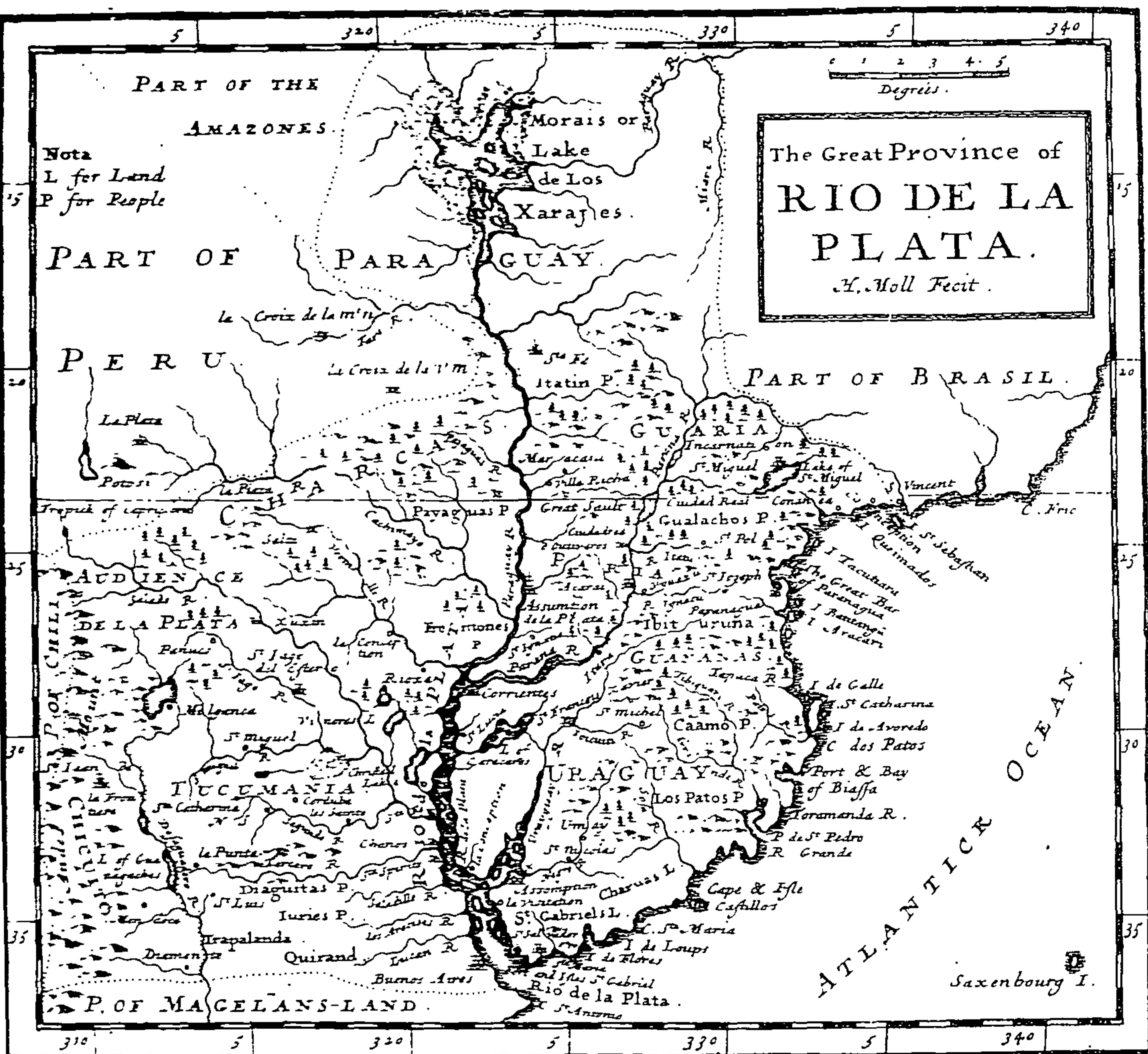
I. WE are now come to the middle Part of Southern America, that is to say, *Paraguay*, and the Country which lyes about the River of the *Amazons*. The former call'd *Paraguay* by the Natives, and *Rio de la Plata* by the Spaniards, derives its Denomination from the River of the same Name: Its Boundaries on the East, are the Seas of *Paraguay* and *Brasil*; on the North, the Country about the *Amazons* River; on the West, *Pern*, and *Chili*; and on the South, *Magellanica*, with the Sea of *Paraguay*.

II. This spacious Country extends itself from the 11th. or 12th. Degree to the 37th Degr. of Southern Latitude, and consequently is divided into two Parts by the Tropick of *Capricorn*; the lesser of which is included within the Southern Tract of the Torrid Zone, and the greater within the Northern Part of the Southern Temperate Zone. It is also situated between the 310 and the 334 Degr. of Longitude. The Air is said to be temperate and wholesome, and the Soil very fruitful; yielding abundance of Corn, Fruits, Cotton, and several sorts of Herbs, among which the Plant *Coparubus* is more especially remarkable, the Juice

whereof is a Balsam of admirable Virtue; in so much that the brute Beasts bitten by Serpents, or wounded by Hunting, by instinct of Nature resort to it for Cure. There are fine Meadows and Pastures along the sides of the Rivers, which are very numerous, and the Marshes are full of Sugar-canes. There is also great store of Cattel, more especially Horses, Cows, and Sheep, with variety of wild Beasts, as Bears, Tigers, Cerigons, &c. Lastly, the River *Paraguay*, otherwise termed by the Spaniards *Rio de la Plata*. i. e. *The Silver-River*, affords plenty of that rich Metal; neither is the Land destitute of Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron and Copper.

The Natives are of a tall Stature, almost as big as the *Patagons*, have the same disposition of Mind and Body, and speak the same Language: They are very swift in running, and their chief Arms, are a Bow, Arrows and Sling. Several Companies of these People live together in Huts, so that eighteen or twenty Families sometimes lodge under one Roof, which is supported by Trees. Many of them who are not as yet brought into Subjection, are addicted to Idolatry, and do not acknowledge any God; but they stand in awe





awe of the Devil, and paint him with great Horns.

III. The greatest part of the Country is subject to the King of Spain, and is divided into seven Provinces, viz. Guayr, Paraguay, Parana, Uruguay, Rio de la Plata, Tucuman and Chaco. Some Geographers refer Tucuman to Peru, or make it a distinct Province. The four first of these Provinces are situated on the hither side of the River Parana; the fifth is divided by it; and the two last lie beyond it.

IV. Among the Provinces of this Country that are extended Eastward on the hither side of the River Parana, the most remote is Guayr, which borders upon Brasil, on the North and East, and is wash'd on the South-East by the Sea of Paraguay: It lies under the Tropic of Capricorn, and

is water'd by several Rivers, the chief of which bears the Name of Parana. The most remarkable Places of this Province, are or were La Concepcion, a Sea-port Town, which nevertheless is plac'd in some Maps, in the neighbouring Captainry of S. Vincent, a Part of Brasil; La Incarnation; Los Seite Archangles, i. e. The seven Archangels; Villa Rica, or Villeriche now ruin'd; Sant Ignacio; Nuestra Senora de Loreto; and Ciudad Real, i. e. The Royal City, otherwise call'd Guayr and Oliveros; seated on the River Parana, near the Frontiers of the Province Parana: It was formerly the Capital Town of Guayr, built by the Spaniards, but it was afterwards raz'd by the Natives of the Country, and still lies bury'd under its own Ruins.

The



v. The Province of *Paraguay*, call'd also *Proper Paraguay* for distinction sake, extends itself in the middle, between the upper Course of the River *Paraguay*, the Lake *Xarayes*, and the Province of *Chaco*, on the West; and *Brasil*, on the East; Its greatest Extent reaches from North to South, and its most Southern Part lyes under the Tropick of *Capricorn*. The Inhabitants are said to be more civiliz'd, docible, and apt to learn the Principles of Religion, as well as Arts and Sciences: So that some of them have Skill in Husbandry, and the Women know how to make Cotton-cloth. The People of this Country are very numerous, among whom (in beginning to reckon them according to their several Territories that lye from South to North) are the *Payembos*, *Bascherepos*, *Sarucuses*, *Guebecuses*, *Itatins*, or *Itakins*, *Guaxarapos*, or *Guaxarapos*, *Xacoues*, *Xagueses*, *Chanasses*, *Tapapecones*, *Payzunoes* and *Xarayes*, who have impos'd their Name on the neighbouring Lake. The most considerable Places and Towns, are or were *Xerez*, now demolish'd; *Nuestra Senora de la Fé*; *Maracaju*, just under the Tropick; *Guaybiano*, a little lower, on the River *Paraguay*; and *Villa Rica*.

IV. The Province of *Parana* being of a lesser Extent than the former, borders upon them on the South; and is water'd by the lower Part of the River of the same Name. The Country is woody and fertile, and there are some Cataracts or Water-falls above 20 Cubits high, in the River, which the Natives are us'd to pass in Boats call'd *Zains*, made of one entire piece of Timber. The chief Towns of this Province, are *La Natividad de Nuestra Senora*, i. e. *Our Lady's Nativity*; otherwise call'd *Acaras*; *Santa Maria de Yguazu*, *La Incarnacion*, or *Itapoa*, lower on the *Parana*, and *Sant Ignacio*.

VII. On the South of *Parana*, beyond the River appears the fourth and last Province that lyes on the hither side of *Paraguay* River, and is known by the Name of *Uruguay*, or *Urvaig*: It is of a great deal larger Compass than *Parana*, and is wash'd by the Sea from the Mouth of the River *Paraguay*, to the Coast of *Guayr*. This Country is fruitful, and water'd by many Rivers, the chief of which is *Uruguay*, or *Urvaig*, so termed as it were the *Snail River*, from the abundance of Snails that are bred in those Parts. It contains several Provinces, or particular Territories, as *Tape*, *Jarez*, *Charuas*, *Ibicuit*, *Caapi*, *Ibiturna*, *Carioes*, *Tierra dos Patos*, &c. with the following noted Towns, viz. *Santa Anna*; *S. Joseph*; *S. Nicholas*, on the River *Piratin*; *S. Xavier*, on the *Uruguay*; *La Concepcion*, lower on the same River; *S. Salvador*, on the Mouth of the *Paraguay*; *La Visiacion*, or *Tapaya*, somewhat higher; and *La Purificacion*, or *Ibicuit*.

VIII. The next Province is that of *Rio de la Plata*, through which the lower Course of *Paraguay* River, otherwise call'd *Rio de la Plata*, is convey'd, and divides it into two Parts. It extends itself farthest between *Proper Paraguay*, on the North; and *Magellanica*, on the South. So that it is one of the Principal Provinces of this spacious Country, and its most eminent People are the *Morocotes*, *Penbues*, *Mequareta's*, *Mepenes*, *Frentones*, *Aigaises*, *Amagnais*, &c. The capital City of these

Parts is *La Assuncion*, seated on the Eastern side of *Paraguay* River, near the Confines of *Proper Paraguay*. It is the Seat of the chief Governour of the whole Country, under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, as also of a Prelate, who is Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *La Plata*, and of the Royal Court of Judicature: It is distant 80 Leagues Westward from the Town of *Guayr*, and 200 Eastward from *S. Cruz de la Sierra*: The other Places of Repute are *Las Seite Corrientes*, i. e. *The seven Currents*; a considerable Town, on the Confluence of the Rivers *Paraguay* and *Parana*; *Santa Fé*, lower on the opposite side of the *Paraguay*; as also *S. Espiritu*, or *Torre de Gabolo*; and *Buenos Ayres*, otherwise call'd *Ciudad de la Trinidad*; or *La Santa Trinidad de Buenos Ayres*, and *Bonaire* by the French, a noted Mart Town which M. *Baudrand* takes for the Metropolis of the whole Country, built at the Mouth of the great River *Paraguay*. It is dignify'd with a Bishop's See and a Sovereign Court of Judicature, and has the advantage of a very convenient Harbour.

IX. It only remains to account for the two last Provinces, which are situated beyond the River *Tucuman*, on the West. The most Southern of these, and more remote from the River (although some will have it extended even to its side) is *Tucuman*, which lyes in the middle, between the Province of *Rio de la Plata*, on the East, and the Mountainous Tracts of *Chili* and *Peru*, on the West. It is a very Champain Country, abounding with Cotton, and verdant Pastures for Sheep. The Natives are said to be docible and averse to War, and their Riches consist in Cattel. The Southern Part is inhabited by certain People named *Quirandies*, who live in Tents and wander up and down like the Scythians, being always well arm'd against the Spaniards; besides the Territories of the *Juries* and *Diagnitas* and the Country of *Trapalanda*: Farther on the West and North are the *Carcaraes* and *Tonocoteres*. The noted Places of this Province, are *Cordoba*; *S. Jago del Estero*, formerly call'd *Varco*, on the River *Estero*, i. e. *The Mat-River*; which some take for the capital Town; *S. Miguel de Tucuman*, otherwise termed *S. Miguel del Estero* by the Inhabitants, the Metropolis (according to M. *Baudrand*) of the whole Province, remarkable for its Situation on the foot of the Mountains, and its Episcopal See; *Las Juntas*; or *Madrid*; *Xuxui*, or *S. Salvador*; and *Villa Lerma*, or *Salta*.

X. The other Province beyond the *Paraguay* is *Chaco*, situated between that River, on the East; the Lake *Dos Xarayes* and *Proper Paraguay*, on the North; and the Kingdom of *Peru*, on the West. Its farthest Extent lyes between *Amazonia*, on the North; and the Confines of *Tucuman* and *Rio de la Plata*, on the South. It does not contain any considerable Places within its Jurisdiction; nevertheless the Town of *La Concepcion Antiqua*, which is now fallen to Ruin, is plac'd in some Maps in its Southern Tract, next to the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. This Country is inhabited by a great number of different People, viz. the *Chimenei*, *Chanes*, *Orechons*, *Guaicuroes*, *Taperues*, *Chumurates*, *Chiquitos*, *Tobares*, *Moconios*, *Payaguas*, *Zipatalaguars*, *Gorgotocques*, *Varais*, and others, whose Names are scarce known.



## C H A P. XII.

## The Country about the River of the A M A Z O N S, or A M A - Z O N I A.

I. **B**ESIDES the spacious Province of *Paraguay* but now described, the middle of Southern *America* is also taken up by a vast Country lying about the River of the *Amazons*: which is bounded on the South, by *Paraguay*; on the East, by *Brazil*, and the Mouths of the said River; on the North, by *Terra Firma*; and on the West, by *Peru*. It extends itself from the 22<sup>d</sup> to the 32<sup>d</sup> Degree of Longitude, and from the first Degree of Northern Latitude to the 15 or 16 Degree of Southern Latitude.

II. The Heat of the Air (notwithstanding the Situation of the whole Country under the Torrid Zone) is extremely moderated, not only by the length of the Nights, but also by the frequent blowing of the East Wind, the yearly overflowing of the *Amazons* River, the great number of Woods, and other Accidents of the like nature. The Country is said to abound with Meadows, along the sides of the Rivers, which are very numerous, Apple-trees, Brazil-Wood, and Ebony; besides much variety of Grain, Herbs, Flowers, Honey, Cotton, Tobacco, and Sugar-canes: There are also several Mines of Gold and Silver, and good store of Fish, some think the Soil to be of the same Nature with that of *Brazil*: because it produces the same kinds of Fruits and Animals, besides those that are transported thither out of *Europe*.

The natural Disposition and Manners of the Natives are much like those of the *Brazilians*; for they are said to be cruel Man-eaters, altogether savage, fierce, robust, and of a strong Constitution. As they shew no Pity or Compassion, so neither have they any Shame, but go all naked both Men and Women, painting their Bodies with divers Colours. Their Faces are likewise chequer'd with several sorts of Stones, which were set in their Skin, in their Childhood: They usually sleep in Cotton-sheets or Blankets hang'd up in the Air, between two Trees, to avoid the Hurt they might otherwise receive by Wild Beasts and noxious Animals; which Custom is generally observ'd in most Parts of *America*, where the Air is either hot, or temperate.

It is reported that these People have no Kings, Laws, or political Governments; but every one is at liberty to follow the Dictates of his own Will and Capricious Humour: Neither have they any Notion of a God, or Religion; so that many of them have only the Shape of a Man, without any other marks of Humanity.

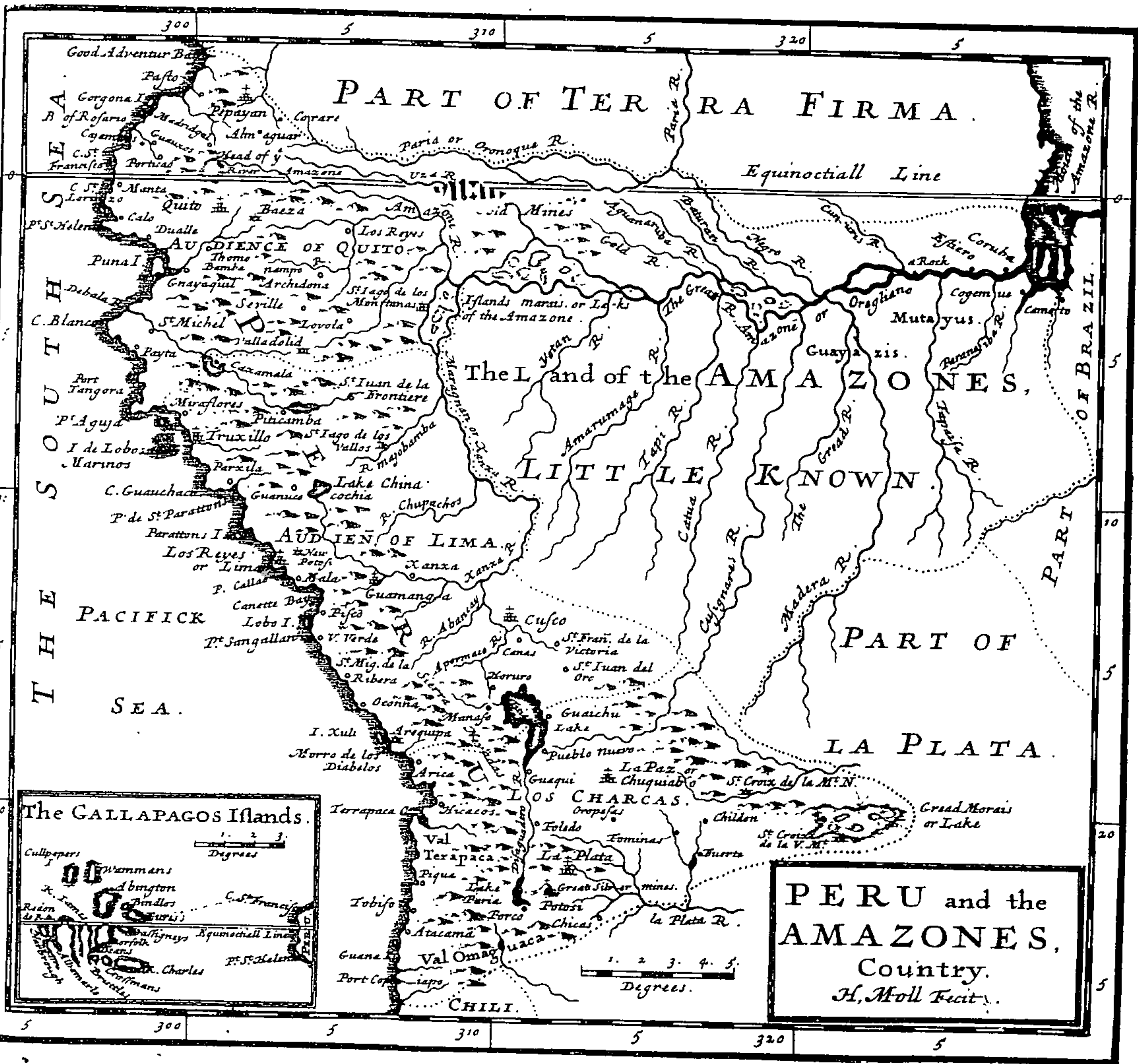
III. The Country is divided by the *Amazons* River into its Southern and Northern Parts, the former of which is of a great deal larger Extent than the other, and lyes out much farther beyond the said River. The Southern Part, on the hither side of the *Amazons* River, contains many different sorts of People and several Provinces, of which the Europeans have but little Knowledge. The principal Provinces are *Cayana*, *Maiaya*, *Tapayfa*, and *Parimayba*, situated in the Eastern Tract of this Part and towards *Brazil*. The most eminent People are the *Pacaches*, *Urubingues*, *Sabucares*, *Cayanes*, *Sarines*, *Oragunagues*, *Curianes*, *Casignares*, *Yorimanes*, *Pacuanes*, *Corosirares*, *Tacurics*, *Carygares*, and several others.

IV. The Northern Part of the Country about the *Amazons* River or beyond it, affords the like variety of People and Provinces, of which there are no Accounts as yet extant, that are more certain or accurate than those of the former. The chief Provinces best known to us, are *Aparia* bordering upon the Kingdom of *Peru*; *Caribana*, a great deal farther Eastward; *Apana* and *Coropa*, lying in the middle, between the Lake of *Parime* and the *Amazons* River. Among the People, we meet with the *Homaguas*, *Agayapes*, *Agnares*, *Comanares*, *Guayaribes*, *Yorunes*, *Tecunes*, *Cunes*, &c. Besides the *Toupinambous*, a famous People, who inhabit a great Island made by the *Amazons* River, on the South of the Lake of *Parime*. To conclude, Time will no doubt, make a more accurate Discovery of the several Parts of this Country, as well as of many others that belong to the vast Continent of *America*, of which we have as yet little more than the bare Names.



C H A P. XIII.

The Kingdom of PERU.



1. WE proceed now to the Western Part of Southern America, where the Countries of Peru and Chili, present themselves to our View. The Kingdom of Peru, in Latin Peruvia, or Perua, in French Le Perou, and in Spanish El Peru, is said to have been erroneously so nam'd by the Spaniards, who, when they ask'd one of the Natives by what Name his Countrey-men were call'd, and he made answer; that his own

Part 2

was Beru; the Spaniards mistook it for the Name of the Country. Others say the Native reply'd, that the Country was call'd Pelu, and was water'd by the River Velu, from whence the Spanish Term Peru was deriv'd, only by variation of one Letter; but that its ancient Name was Tavantinsuyu. Let the Case be how it will, 'tis evident, that no Argument can be infer'd from the likeness of the Terms Peru and Ophir, by the

E c the



the Alphabet of Letters, to prove, that *Peru* is the same with King *Solomon's Ophir*, as some vainly imagine.

- II. This most famous Kingdom, from which the whole Continent of Southern *America* is sometimes call'd *Peruiana*, is bounded on the North, by Proper *Terra Firma*, with the Southern and Eastern maritime Parts of *Peru*, which are included within the Bounds of *Terra Firma* taken at large; on the East, by the Country about the *Amazon* River and *Paraguay*; on the South likewise, by *Paraguay* and *Chili*; and on the West, by the *Peruvian Sea*, part of the *Pacifick Ocean*. It is situated between the 293 and 316 Degr. of Longitude, as also between the 4 Degree of Northern Latitude, and the 20 Degr. of Southern Latitude: It extends itself farthest from North to South, and is narrowest in its Northern and Southern Tract: the former lying under the Equinoctial Line, and the other under the Tropick of *Cancer*. Its utmost Length (according to *M. Baudrand* and others) from North to South, on the Coast of the *Pacifick Ocean* takes up 600 Leagues, and its Breadth about of from East to West, or from the Mountains to the Sea-shore; although in some Places it is somewhat wider, and in others narrower. The Country was first discover'd and subdued in the Year 1532 by *Francis Pizarro*, who being assisted by *Diego Almagro*, made himself absolute Master of it, taking advantage of the Discord between two Brothers that contended for the Crown. The insatiable Desire these Spanish Generals had for Gold, hurried them on to commit most horrible Outrages and Massacres upon the poor Indians, under pretence of Religion, and to put their King named *Atahualpa* to a cruel Death; till at last the Divine Vengeance overtaking them, they were brought to condign Punishment: For when they could no longer agree about the dividing of the Spoil, *Ferdinand* the Brother of *Pizarro* took an opportunity to assassinate *Almagro*; whereupon one of *Almagro's* Sons treated *Francis Pizarro* after the same manner: Then *Gonzalez* the third Brother of *Pizarro* reveng'd his Death, and behaved himself so insolently in the Country, that the Emperor *Charles V.* was oblig'd to send *Peter Gasca* a Lawyer to regulate Matters, A. D. 1546.

- III. The Air of *Peru* is very different, according to the diversity of the Climates; for in some Places it is excessive hot, in others cold, in others extremely kind and temperate, and elsewhere foggy and unwholesome: In some Places the Weather is continually rainy, in others the Rain falls now and then, and in others it never Rains. The inland Country is beset with Mountains, among which the *Andes* are the highest, and their Tops are always covered with Snow. There are also very low Valleys, and spacious Plains, where the Rain seldom or never falls. The Sea-coasts are level, sandy, full of Deserts, barren, hot and dry, by reason that the parched Ground is not refresh'd with Showers of Rain, neither is it water'd by any Springs, Rivers or Lakes. However the Valleys are well inhabited and made wonderfully fertile by means of the moderate temperature of the Air, and the great number of Rivulets that run down from the Mountains: So that they stand every where with green Fields, Meadows full of Grass, and rich Pastures, plentifully bringing forth many sorts of Trees, Fruit, Grain,

Herbs and Pulse, particularly Corn, *Mays*, Sugar-canes, Cotton, and excellent Grapes. Moreover, the Soil is not only fruitful of such things as are peculiar to the Climate, but also yields great increase of those that are sown, or planted by the Spaniards. Among the Herbs some have admirable Virtues, more especially a certain Plant commonly call'd *Coca* by the Natives, the Leaf of which being put into the Mouth, nourishes and allays Hunger and Thirst; and the *Coparuba* Plant, a Sovereign Medicine for all Wounds, and a singular Antidote against Poison. The Pastures afford Fodder for numerous Herds of Cattel, more especially Sheep as big as Horses, which are frequently used for drawing and Carriage; being able to carry a Man with a considerable Load on their Back for several Miles: The Wool of their Fleeces surpasses that of our Sheep in thickness, fineness and in length, and their Flesh is very grateful to the Palate. There are also divers sorts of wild Beasts, as Hairs, Foxes, and *Ceryons* that have under their Belly a Skin like a Sack wherein they carry their young ones till they are able to travel, with some few Lions, Tigers, and Bears in the mountainous Tracts; besides great variety of Birds both wild and tame, as Ostridges, Parrots, Pigeons, Turtles, &c. Some of the Rivers and Lakes have Salt at the bottom, though the Water of them be fresh, and there are several Springs of hot Water. Earthquakes are very frequent and dangerous in those Parts, and there happen'd so violent an one in the Year 1633, that the Town of *Truxillo* was quite swallow'd up.

But the Excellency of this Country is not in any respect so transcendent, as in the number and quality of its Gold and Silver-Mines, which are the finest of all that ever were found throughout the whole Universe: So that it may be justly esteem'd the richest Treasury upon Earth, and the best Jewel in the Crown of *Spain*. And even so wealthy is this Country, that when *Pizarro* first arriv'd, the Kitchen-vessels us'd by the Natives were all of pure Gold, and their Houses cover'd with Plates of that Metal: The Spaniards for want of Iron, were oblig'd to shoe their Horses with Gold and Silver. Neither will this account seem incredible if it be consider'd, That one single Mine at *Porosi* has yielded to the King of *Spain*, in less than fifty Years, for his fifth Part above three Millions Weight, at three Royals and a Quarter, each Weight; as it is related by *Linschoten*, *Herrera*, *Acosta*, *Garcilasso*, *Bartholomew de las Casas*, and other Authors. It is also reported, That the ancient Peruvians made a Rope of massive Gold, and call'd it *The Rope of Pleasure*, of so prodigious a thickness and length, that six hundred lusty Men were not able to lift it up from the Ground, which they afterwards cast into a Lake, lest the Spaniards should get the Possession of it. Their Temple in Honour of the Sun was not only adorn'd with a vast deal of Gold, but had also in it a huge Statue and a Table made entirely of the same Metal; several other Temples dedicated to the Moon, Stars, Thunder, Lightning, Rain-bow, &c. were beautify'd in like manner and fill'd with Golden Statues: Nay they are said to have had all sorts of Animals and Plants form'd in Gold, according to the full size, proportion and shape of every



every one of them, with minute quantities of precious Stones. *Atabalipa* the last King of *Peru* (so he is commonly call'd, and *Atabalipa* by others) was carried in a Golden Chair upon the Shoulders of his Guards; but when this unfortunate Prince was taken by the Spaniards and loaded with Chains, he offer'd *Pizarro* their chief Commander for his Ransom, an heap of Gold sufficient to fill the outer Court or Hall of the Royal Palace, at *Cuzco* (which was 22 Feet long and 17 broad) to such an height, that *Pizarro* standing on the Pavement might only reach to the top of it with the tip of his Finger: Otherwise if the General thought fit to have the Ransom paid in Silver, he promis'd such a quantity of that Metal as might serve twice to fill up the whole space of the said Hall. To conclude, both the Peruvians and Spaniards formerly were us'd to boast, not without good Grounds, That the Foundation of this Kingdom consisted of Gold and Silver. Neither is there any want of these rich Metals even at this day, as it appears from the *Elca* so richly laden with Bullion that fails every Year from thence to *Spain*. The Mines likewise afford great store of Quick-Silver, red Lead, *Sulphur*, and such kinds of Earth of different Colours, that are much us'd in the dying of Clothes; besides Gems, Bezoar-Stones, *Sulphurilla*, and other sorts of Minerals.

- IV. The Natives of *Peru*, who are of a fairer Complexion than the Spaniards, wear long Hair, with woollen Shirts and Waistcoats: The Women have a long sleeveless Garment, which is girt about with several Folds below the Navel. These People are generally simple and inconstant, having little regard to their Words; but the Mountaineers are more subtil, and well vers'd in the Art of Dissimulation, and implacable Enemies to the Spaniards; nay, the Christians there are look'd upon by those that are not yet converted, as Monsters for Malice and Barbarity, by reason of the outrageous Cruelties that were exercis'd by them: Insomuch, that the *Amazons* and other People who live on the Mountains, make no scruple to kill as many of them as they can meet. The Peruvians before the Government of the *Incas*, or *Incas* had a great number of Gods, both natural and artificial, whose Worship was often perform'd with Humane Sacrifices: But when that Family reign'd, they ador'd the Supreme and Invisible God, Creatour of the Universe; and the Sun, by reason of the innumerable Benefits which that great Luminary confers on Mankind; to whom likewise they offer'd Sacrifices, but only brute Beasts and Herbs: They also render'd Divine Honours to the Moon, in Quality of the Sun's Sister, and to Thunder and Lightning, as the Managers of his Justice. It is said that their political Government had some resemblance to that of the ancient Greeks and Romans, that it was very easy and advantageous to all the Members of the Commonwealth: And indeed, many excellent Laws were then enacted, and amongst others, *That no Person should do that to another which they would not have done to themselves*. Strict Prohibitions were set forth against Adultery, the Marriage of Children without their Parents Consent, Robbery and Rapine, and an extraordinary Provision was made for the Poor.

Part 2

Neither was the Industry and Magnificence of these People less remarkable; for they made two great Roads, *viz.* one through the Plains, and another through the Mountains, each five hundred Leagues in Length, and built Houses upon them at convenient Distances, for the Lodging and Entertainment of Strangers, that they might travel quite through them without Charge. And so Polite, Virtuous and Ingenious were these People, that Sir *William Temple* thinks fit to rank *Peru* among the Nations that might vie with *Greece* and *Rome* for Heroick Virtue. Thus the Kingdom of *Peru* was govern'd above three hundred Years before the Arrival of the Spaniards, by the Royal Progeny of the *Incas*, which *Francis Pizarro* and *Diego Almagro*, the above-mention'd Generals for the Emperor *Charles V.* almost extinguish'd in Favour of the Crown of *Spain*. The thirteenth and last of those Princes was *Atabalipa*, who being taken in Battle, in which 5000 of his Subjects were killed (notwithstanding his Proffer of so vast a quantity of Gold and Silver for his Ransom, and the Promise *Pizarro* had actually made to spare his Life) was cruelly strangled by the Order of the same General, *May 3. 1531*. Neither did the Spaniards shew more Compassion to his distressed Subjects: For it is affirm'd by some Authors, That they destroy'd above 15 Millions of these poor innocent People in less than fifty Years, and that the Blood of those who perish'd in the Mines, where they continually labour'd, outweighed all the Gold and Silver taken out of them: By such means they made themselves Masters of this ancient Kingdom, and still retain it in their Possession.

The whole Country of *Peru* is usually divided into three Governments, *viz.* those of *Quito*, *Los Reyes* and *Charcas*, the first of which lyes on the North, the second in the middle of the Kingdom, and the third on the South.

The Government of *Quito*, in Spanish *La Governacion*, or *La Audiencia de Quito*, is situated between *Terra Firma*, on the North; the Government of *Los Reyes*, or Audience of *Lima*, on the South; and the Peruvian Sea on the West; extending both Northward and Southward of the Equinoctial Line: It contains four principal Parts, *viz.* the Southern and middle Tract of the Government of *Popayan*, the other Tract having been already accounted for in the Description of *Terra Firma*; *Proper Quito*; the Province *Los Quixos* and that of *Pacamores*.

The Southern and middle Tract of the Government of *Popayan* is the most Northern Province of the Government of *Quito*; lying in the middle, between *Terra Firma* strictly taken, on the North; *Proper Quito*, with *Los Quixos*, on the South; and the Sea, on the West. The chief Places and Towns of this Province are *Cali* built on the foot of the Mountains, in a Plain, near the Western side of the River *Cauca*, or *S. Martha*; *Popayan*, the Metropolis of a Government of the same Name, dignify'd with a Bishop's See, and situated higher on *S. Martha's* River, at the distance of 140 Miles Eastward from the Coast of the Pacifick Sea, and 22 Leagues Southward from *Cali*; *Guadalajara*, or *Guadalajara de*

E c 2

Bag 3



*Baga; Truxillo; Timana; Almaguer*, near the Spring-head of *S. Mark's* River; *Madrizal; Paño* and *Agrada*.

Proper  
Quito.

On the South of *Popayan*, appears the Province of *Quito* strictly taken, which is bounded on the East, by *Los Quixos* and *Pacamores*; and on the West, by the *Pacifick* Ocean. Its most remarkable Towns on or near the Sea-coasts, are *Puerto Viejo*, i. e. *The Old Port*; *Guayaquil*; and *S. Miguel*. In the inland Country are *Yan*; *Zamora*; *Loxa*; *Cuenca*; *Rio Bamba*; and *Quito*, or *S. Francisco del Quito*, seated in a Valley between the Mountains, at a little distance Southward from the Equinoctial Line; as also 50 Spanish Leagues from *Paño*; 250 Northward from *Lima*; 60 Eastward from the Sea-shore, and only eight (as *Peter Texiera* assures us) from the Source of the great River of the *Amazons*: It was heretofore one of the most eminent Cities of the Kingdom of the *Incas*, and is still the Capital of the Province and of the whole Government of *Quito*. It is also the Seat of a Prelate, who is Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *Lima*; of an high Court of Judicature, commonly call'd *La Audiencia Real*, and of an University founded *A. D.* 1586. Near this City (as we are inform'd by *Girava* a Spanish Author) were certain Mines which yielded a greater quantity of Gold than of Earth, or Soil.

Los

Quixos  
P.

The Province of *Los Quixos*, otherwise call'd *Camela*, is of a great deal less Extent than *Quito*, and borders upon it, on the East: It is water'd on the North and East, by the upper Part of the *Amazons* River, and comprehends the following considerable Places, viz. *Anco*, noted for its Situation upon the same River, very near the Equator; *Baeza* the capital Town of the Province, *Avila*; *Archidona*; and *Sacalla del Oro*.

Paca-

more P.

The last Part of the Government of *Quito*, is the Province of *Pacamores*, having that of *Los Quixos* for its Boundary, on the North; and the *Amazons* River, partly on the East; which receives the *Cuzco* and *Moragon*, two other Rivers of this Province: Its principal Towns are *Valladolid*, or *S. Juan de Salinas* the Metropolis, with an Episcopal See; *Loyola*; and *S. Jago de las Monzanas*.

VII.

Los Rey-  
es Oro.

From the Territories of *Quito*, we pass to those of *La Gobernacion à Audiencia de los Reyes*, i. e. *The Government of the Kings* (otherwise nam'd the Audience of *Lima*) the most eminent of all; being bounded on the North, by the Government of *Quito*; on the South by that of *Charcas*; and on the West, by the *Peruvian* Sea. It comprehends within its Bounds *Proper Peru*, a very spacious Country, through which the Mountains *Andes* of a great Height, extend themselves from North to South. The most noted Places of this Government, on the East, are *S. Juan de La Frontera*, or *Chacapoyas*; *S. Jago de los Valles*; and *Cusco* formerly the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom of *Peru*, and the most opulent Seat of the Monarchs call'd *Incas*, or *Inzas*, where the Spaniards found many Houses cover'd with Golden Plates (as it has been already hinted) both on the inside and outside, and *Francis Pizarro* their General took away a prodigious quantity of Gold and Sil-

ver. The ancient Kings kept their Court in a strong Castle, which was built on Mount *Sachabuanma*, but is now quite demolish'd. However, this City enjoys the Title of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Lima*, and stands near the Hills between the Rivers *Acay* and *Apurina*, about 120 Spanish Leagues Eastward from *Lima*. It is divided into the upper Town, commonly call'd *Hanan-Cusco* and the lower nam'd *Huran Cusco*; but it is now much fallen to decay, and suffer'd a great deal of Damage some few Years ago by an Earthquake: The next Towns are *S. Francisco de la Victoria*; *S. Juan del Oro*; and *Huuro*, on the Northern side of the Lake *Titicaca*.

In passing farther Westward we meet with *Guamanga* a Bishop's See; *Oropeza*; *Guanuco* seated near the Lake *Chincacocha*, and otherwise nam'd *Leon de Guanuco*, or *Guanuco de los Caballeros*; *Guamachuco*; *Caxamalca*; *Miraflores*; *Truxillo*, a large and neat City built in a fertile and well water'd Country, and dignify'd with an Episcopal See; about two Leagues distant from the Sea-coast, where it has a capacious Harbour; *Santo*; *Gauara*; *Arnedo*; and *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, i. e. *The City of the Kings*, so nam'd by its Founder *Francis Pizarro*, because the Inhabitants began to settle themselves there on the Festival of *Epiphany*, or Twelfth-day, It is the Metropolis not only of the Government of *Los Reyes* but also of the whole Continent of Southern *America*, and was built *A. D.* 1535, in the fruitful Valley of *Lima*, call'd *Rimac* by the Natives, on a River of the same Name; where the Air is very temperate, and the adjacent Country no less fertile. The City is very magnificent, although it has no Walls and the Houses built of Timber. It is adorn'd with a great number of fine Buildings and Churches, among which the Cathedral dedicated to *St. John* is more especially remarkable. It is also the Seat of the Vice-Roy, of an Arch-Bishop, and of an University founded *A. D.* 1614; besides the Royal Court of Judicature, and that of the Inquisition: It is a notable Mart, being the Port whence the Silver that comes from the Mines of *Potosi* is shipped off, to be carried to *Panama* thence over Land to *Portobelo*, from which it is again shipped off for *Spain*; but no other Nations than Spaniards are permitted to traffick there, or indeed in any Town all along this Coast; nay, they will not permit any other Nation to set foot there; and make it their utmost Care to destroy any other Shipping that come into the South-Sea. For the Wealth of the Plate-Mines is Temptation enough to the Spaniards to take Care of them, and to the Buccaneers sometimes to pillage them. This City is only distant one League Eastward from the Coast of the *Pacifick* Sea; two Eastward from its Harbour commonly call'd *El Callao de Lima*; 120 from *Cusco* formerly the capital Town of *Peru*, on the North-West; and as many Northward from *Arequipa*. The other Places of Note are *Val Verde*; *S. Miguel de la Ribera*; and *Arequipa*, a little Town on the River *Quilca*, erected into an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Lima*.

The



VIII. The third and last Government of Peru is *Los Charcas*, in Spanish *La Gobernacion, ó las Gov. Audiencia de los Charcas, ó de la Plata*; which borders on the North, upon the Government of *Lima*; on the East, upon *Paraguay*; on the South, upon the same Country, and the Kingdom of *Chili*; and on the West, upon the Southern or Pacifick Sea. This Government extends farthest of all Eastward, and Part of it lyes under the Tropick of *Capricorn*: It may conveniently be divided into the Province of *Los Charcas* and the Mountainous Tract; to which some add *Tucuman*; but an Account of this Country has been already given in the Description of *Paraguay*.

*La Sierra.* The Mountainous Tract, or *La Sierra*, being of a less Extent, is situated on the East, in the inland Country, and its Eastern Part contains *Laguna Grande*, or the Great Lake. The Towns of this Tract are *Santa Cruz la Nueva*, and *S. Cruz de la Sierra*, on the foot of a Hill, near the Confines of *Paraguay*, having the Advantage of an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *La Plata*; although some say, it is quite ruin'd, and its Bishop usually resides in the Town of *Misique*.

*Los Charcas Prov.* The Province of *Los Charcas* lyes between the mountainous Tract and the Peruvian Sea, and comprehends the following remarkable Places, viz. *La Paz*, *Laxa*; *Oropesa* *La Plata*, a large, rich and populous City, more especially famous for the neighbouring Silver-Mines, from which it

derives its Denomination. It was lately built by the Spaniards, in the Valley or Territory of *Chuquisaca*, near the River *Picolmajo*, and dignify'd with an Episcopal See; which was afterwards erected into a Metropolitan by Pope *Paul V.* So that it is now the capital City of the whole Government of *Los Charcas*, to which it sometimes communicates its Name, and affords a Place of Residence to a Prelate, who has four Suffragan Bishops under his Jurisdiction, and is often styl'd *The Arch-Bishop of Los Charcas*. This City is distant 165 Spanish Leagues on the South-East from *Cusco*; 18 Eastward from *Potosi*; and about 110 from the Sea-coast: *Potosi*, a spacious, neat City, famous for the rich Silver-Mines, well frequented, and flourishing daily more and more, although it is built in a dry Territory, at the foot of a Mountain, call'd by the Spaniards *El Cerro de Potosi*; the Silver-Mines of which excell all the others of *Peru*, and were discover'd A. D. 1544. It is reported that twenty thousand Men are employ'd there in digging the Ground, and that they are oblig'd to descend into the Pit at least 400 Steps; but these Mines are not now so considerable as at first, when they afforded that vast Revenue to the King of *Spain*, which has been already mention'd in the third Section of this Chapter. The other Towns near the Sea are *Arica*, the Inhabitants of which are few in number, although it has a capacious and safe Harbour, with a strong Castle; *Pica*; and *Tobiso*.

## CHAP. XIV.

### CHILI.

I.  
*Chili.*

THE Western Part of Southern America, besides *Peru*, contains also the Country of *Chili*, or *El Gile*, as it is termed by the Spaniards, who first discover'd, it A. D. 1535. It is bounded on the North, by the Kingdom of *Peru*; on the East, by *Tucuman*, a Province of *Paraguay* and *Terra Magellanica*; on the South, by the same *Magellanica*; and on the West, by the Sea of *Chili*. It is situated between the 296 and the 308 Degree of Longitude; as also between the 26 and 50 Degree of Southern Latitude. The Extent of this Country is narrowest in its Northern and Southern Parts; and the *Andes*, a very high continued Ridge of Mountains, which the Spaniards call *La Cordillera de los Andes*, and *La Sierra Nevada*, run through its whole Eastern Tract from North to South.

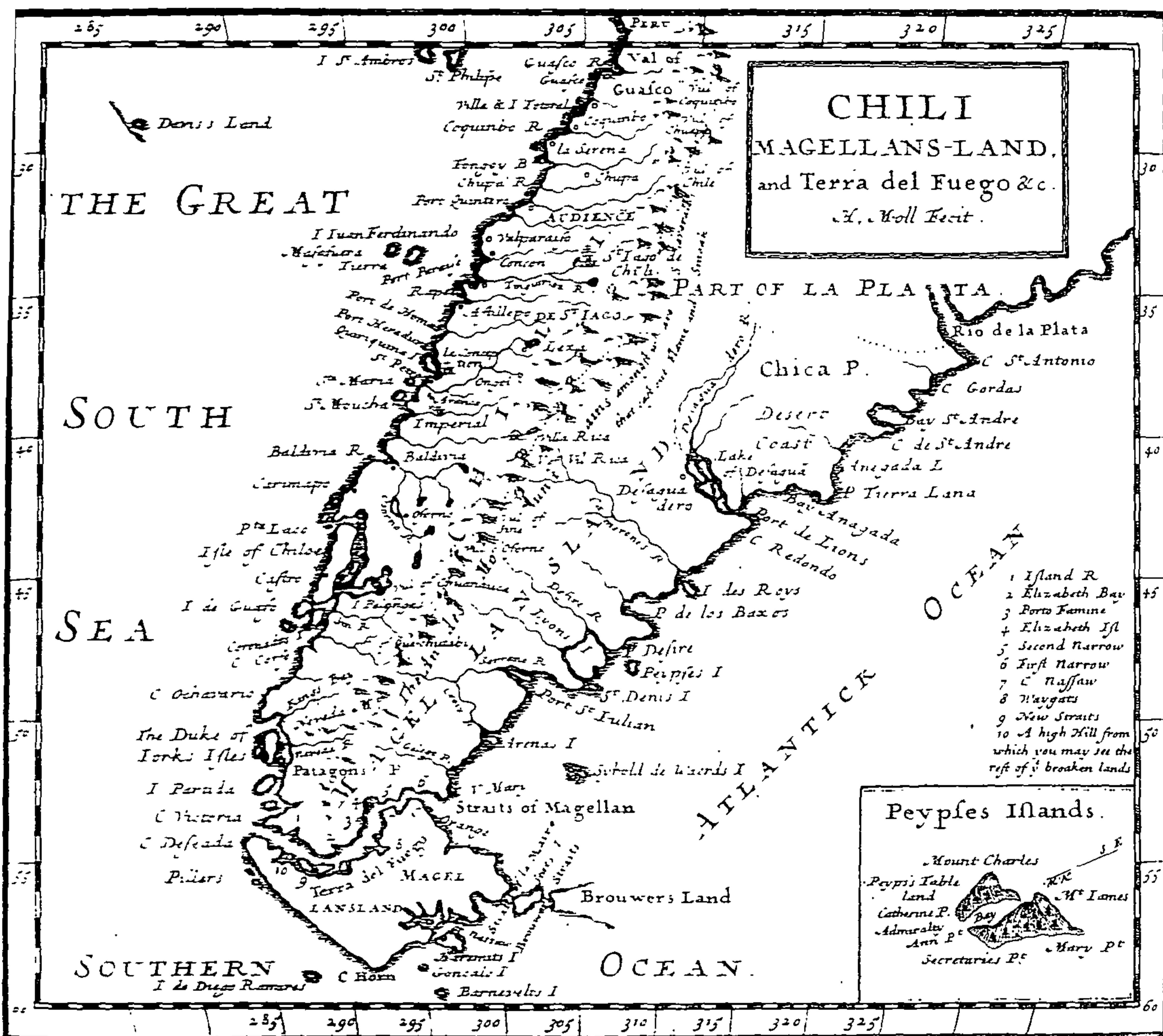
II. The Air of *Chili* is healthful, and hottest in the maritim Parts; the Temperature of the Climate in the Summer-Season being almost the same with that of *Spain*, but colder in Winter; when most part of the Rivers freeze in the Night, but thaw in the Day, and continue their usual Course: In the mountainous Tracts, the Winter is said to be so severe, That Men and Beasts are often starv'd to Death, and Hor-

ses with their Riders are quite froze up as hard as a Stone: Infomuch that 'tis no wonder the Natives call their Country *Chili*, i. e. Cold, in their Mother-Tongue; However it abounds with Pastures, and numerous Herds of Cattel, more especially Weather-Sheep, which are almost as big as Camels, and are us'd to carry Burthens. It likewise brings forth variety of Fruit, with plentiful Crops of Corn and *Mayz*, which bears an Ear 15 or 18 Inches long, upon a Stalk seven or eight Foot high; besides those Fruits that are transplanted out of *Spain*, and thrive as well as in their natural Soil. There is also abundance of Ostriches, and the Mines afford great store of the purest Gold and Silver, with Copper, Lead, Quick-Silver, and divers kinds of Minerals; but Earth-quakes sometimes happen in several Places of this Kingdom, and there is a great number of *Volcanos* or burning Mountains.

The Natives are of a huge Bulk and strong Constitution, their Limbs being compact and well set. They are hardy, bold, cruel, ambitious, impatient, inur'd to Labour, Fatigues and War, and are reckon'd valiant, especially the *Araucans*, whom the Spaniards have not been yet able to subdue: They are also very swift in running,

III.





running, admirable Hunters, and most skillful Archers: They are usually cloth'd with the Skins of wild Beasts, and Sea Wolves, and many of them are addicted to Idolatry; worshipping the Devil, whom they invoke by the Name of *Epo-manan*, i. e. *The Powerful*, that he may do them no Mischief. The greatest Part of *Chili* is subject to the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, but under the immediate Jurisdiction of a particular Spanish Governor. Another Part is still possess'd by the Natives, who have courageously defended themselves against the Attacks of the Spaniards, above an Age and a half, and have often defeated them, with a great Slaughter.

IV. The whole Country is divided into three Go-

vernments, viz. *Proper Chili*, *Chiriquio* and *The Imperial*: every one of which is subdivided into several Territories, that take their Names from the chief Towns.

The Government of *Chili*, or *Cile* properly so call'd, is maritim and the most Northern of all; *Proper* lying between the Kingdom of *Peru*, on the *Chili* North; and the *Imperial* Government on the South: Its particular Territories are three in number, viz. *Serena*, *Quilima* and *S. Fago de Cile*: *Serena* The first and most Northern of these Provinces contains the following noted Places, viz. *Port Copiapo*, *Gualco* and *Copimbo*, otherwise nam'd *La Serena*, the capital Town; all situate not far from the Mouth of the River *Copimbo*.

The



*Quillata*. The Territory of *Quillata* is situated in the middle, and its principal Places are *Chupa*; *Longotoma*; *Ligua*; near the Rivers that bear the same Denominations; and *Quillata* the chief Town of the Province.

*S. Jago de Chile*. The Territory of *S. Jago de Chile* is the most Southern, and its most remarkable Places are *Pangue*; *Rapel*, on a River of the same Name; *Melipilla*, or *Melivila*; and *S. Jago de Chile*, the Metropolis not only of this Territory, but also of the Government, and even of the whole Country of *Chili*; where the Supreme Court of Judicature is usually kept; It is a large and populous City built by the Spaniards, on the River *Mapo*, at the foot of the *Andes*, and dignify'd with an Episcopal See, under the Metropolitan of *Lima*: It is distant 25 Leagues Eastward from the Coast of the Pacifick Sea.

VI. The second Government of *Chili* is *Chucuito*, otherwise call'd *Cuyo*, being the most Eastern, and of the least Extent: It is also remarkable for its Situation in the inland Country, and is separated from Proper *Chili* and the *Imperial* Government by the continued Ridge of the *Andes* Mountains: It contains several Lakes in the Northern Part, on the Confines of *Tucuman*, a Province of *Paraguay*, and its distinct Territories are only two, viz. *S. Juan de la Frontera* and *Mendoza*. The former lyes on the North, and its chief Town likewise nam'd *S. Juan*, &c. stands at the foot of the *Andes*, on the West of the Lake *Guanagache*. The Territory of *Mendoza* borders upon the other, on the South; in which are *Mendoza* the capital Town; *Uto*; and *Diamante*.

VII. The third and last Government of *Chili* being the most Southern, is *The Imperial*, in Spanish *La Gobernacion del Imperial*; which has for its Boundaries on the North, Proper *Chili*; on the East, the *Andes Mountains*; and on the West, the Sea of *Chili*. It comprehends eight particular Territories or Provinces, the Names of which are *Villa Rica*, *Angol*, *Chillan*, *La Concepcion*, *La Imperial*, *Baldivia*, *Osono*, and *Chilue*: The three first of these Tracts lye in the inland Country, near the *Andes*, and the rest on the Sea-coasts.

*Villa Rica*. The Territory of *Villa Rica* is the most Southern of the inland ones; and its chief Town call'd *Villa Rica* stands on the foot of the *Andes*; although it is of a small Compass and not well inhabited.

*Angol*. The little Province or Territory of *Angol* is situated between the *Imperial* and that of *Chillan*, and its chief Town is likewise nam'd *Angol*. The Territory of *Chillan*, borders upon the former on the North, and its capital Town bears the same Name.

*La Concepcion*. The most Northern of the maritim Tracts is that of *La Concepcion*; the principal Towns of which are *Itata*, on a River of the same Name; and *La Concepcion*, one of the most eminent Ci-

ties of the whole Country, with a capacious Harbour, on the innermost Part of the Bay. It is noted for the See of a Prelate, Suffragan to the Arch-Bishop of *La Plata*, and is well fortify'd; although it has been several times storm'd by the *Araucans* and other Savage People of *Chili*.

The *Imperial* Province or Territory is of a larger Compass than that of *La Concepcion*, extending itself from the Ocean to the *Andes* Mountains and the Frontiers of *Magellanica*: Its most considerable Places are *Colcura*; *Arauco*, a strong Fort belonging to the Spaniards, not far from the Mouth of the River *Lebo*, with a well cultivated Valley of the same Name, inhabited by the *Araucans*, who often maintain their Liberty against the former with a great deal of Valour and prosperous Success; as well as the People who live in the Mountains and Valleys of *Tucapel* and *Puren*, which are likewise Parts of the *Imperial* Territory: And *El Imperial* a little Town, yet reckon'd the Metropolis of this Province, and of the whole Government: It is seated on a River of the same Name, and was lately repair'd by the Spaniards, after the great Damage it received from the *Araucans*.

The Territory of *Baldivia* borders upon the *Imperial* on the South, and its capital Town bears the same Name; which is seated on the Mouth of the River *Chabin*, and has the advantage of a very capacious Harbour; at the distance of 200 Miles Southward from the City of *La Concepcion*, and 75 from that of *El Imperial*. This Town has been often ruin'd by the *Araucans*, but is now rebuilt and stands near a Lake to which it has communicated its Name. Near the Southern Coast of this Province is the Town and Harbour of *S. Cebrian*, or *St. Cyprian*.

The Province of *Osono* lyes in the middle, between *Baldivia* and the *Archipelago* of *Chilue*, on the West; and the *Andes* Mountains, on the East. The principal Towns of this Tract are *Osono*, on the Borders of *Baldivia*, and *El Puerto de S. Clara*.

Over against the Territory of *Osono*, in the *Archipelago* of *Ancud*, or *Chilue*, above fifty Islands are situated which are of a small Compass, and are partly subject to the Spanish Jurisdiction. The Island of *Chiloe*, or *Chilue*, being the most Western, surpasses all the rest in largeness, and serves for the Boundary of the *Archipelago*, on the West, extending itself farthest from North to South: It is the eighth and last Province of the *Imperial* Government, and contains several Gold-Mines; but the Natives durst not dig them, lest they should be for ever condemn'd to that Drudgery. It has a Town of the same Name, commonly call'd *El Castro de Chilue*, and built on the Eastern Coast of the Southern Part; which it taken for the Capital of the Island and of the whole Province.



## C H A P. XV.

## M A G E L L A N I C A.

I. **I**T remains only to give an Account of the seventh and last Part of Southern *America*, which is situated on the South, and commonly call'd *Magellanica*, or *Terra Magellanica*: It was first discovered *A. D.* 1520, by *Ferdinand Magellanus*, or *Magalhães* the Portuguese, whom we have often mention'd, in the Name of the King of *Spain*: when he sought for a Passage out of the Ethiopick Ocean, into the Pacifick, and found out the famous Strait, which as well as the adjacent Country derives its Name from its first Discoverer: Afterwards the Sea-coasts of this Country were more particularly discover'd not only by the Spaniards, but also by the English and Hollanders; but its inland Parts are very little known.

II. Some Authors think fit to comprehend under the Term *Magellanica* not only the remaining Part of the Continent of Southern *America*, but also the Islands that lye over against it in the Magellanick Sea. However, *Magellanica* strictly taken, being the most Southern Part of *America*, is bounded on the North, by *Paraguay*; on the West, by *Chili*, and the Magellanick Sea; on the South, by the Strait of *Magellan*; and on the East, by the same Sea.

III. The whole Country is included between the 296 and the 323 Degree of Longitude, and between the 37 and the 54 Degree of Southern Latitude. Its Extent is nam'd towards the Magellanick Strait, and the continued Ridge of the *Andes* Mountains runs thro' its Western Part, to the same Strait: It is water'd by several Rivers, the chief of which are the two most Northern, viz. *Desaguadero*, and *Rio de los Camarones*.

IV. The Northern Part of *Magellanica* which borders upon the two Governments of *Chili*, nam'd *Chiriqui* and the *Imperial*, are inhabited (according to *M. Sæfken*) by certain People call'd *Puiches*, and the Southern Part by the *Patagonians*. The latter (according to the Spanish Relation) are of a prodigious Bulk and Gigantick Stature, above ten or twelve Foot high: They generally shave their Heads like Monks, and paint their Faces with divers Colours made of the Juice of several Herbs: They live in Caves, cloath themselves with the Skins of wild Beasts, and use a kind of Root call'd *Cajup* for Bread: These Savages are of a very strong Constitution, fierce, audacious, swift at running, and arm'd with Clubs, Pows and Arrows, taking great Delight in Hunting and Dancing. They are voracious Gluttons, and devour Man-flesh raw, they are also said to drink a Bucket of Wine, and to eat a Calve at a Meal: Nay, it is reported that they can put Arrows a Cubit and half long down their Throat to the bottom of the Stomach, without any harm. They are Idolaters and worship the Devil under the

Name of *Sacchos*. Moreover it is said, that one of these Demi-Giants has Strength enough to carry a Tun of Wine, that three or four of them make no difficulty to row a huge Ship at Sea; that they run as swift as a Stag; and that fifty Spaniards are scarce able to bind one of them: However, the English, who have sometimes made Descents upon those Coasts, are of a quite contrary Opinion, and say, the Natives of this Country are of no bigger size than our Europeans.

The most remarkable Places of *Magellanica*, are or were *Desaguadero*, a Town seated in the inland Country, on the Western side of a River of the same Name; *El Cabo de las Virgines*, i. e. *The Virgins-Cape*, a Promontory at the entrance of the Magellanick Strait, so nam'd by *Magellanus*, because it was discover'd on the Festival of *St. Ursula*, and the 11000 Virgins her Companions: as also, *The Virgin Mary's Cape* by the English: *Nombre de Jesus*, i. e. *The Name of Jesus*, a Town built by the Spaniards near that Promontory, for the Defence of the Strait, but it soon fell to Ruin: *La Ciudad del Re Felipe*, or King Philip's City, which the Spaniards likewise founded, *A. D.* 1585, in the middle of the Strait, on purpose to obstruct the Passage of the English and Hollanders, but their Design was frustrated; for all the Inhabitants perish'd a little while after, being either destroy'd by the Savages, or starv'd with Hunger; insomuch that the English arriving at that Place two Years after, deservedly impos'd on it the Name of *Port Famine*: *Cape Froward*, or *Cape Fruerd*, not far from thence; and *El Cabo de Vitoria*, or *Cape Victory*, at the Mouth of the same Strait, where it runs into the Pacifick Sea.

From the Continent we pass over to the Magellanick Islands, situated over against it, in the Sea that bears the same Name. Among these *Madre de Dios*, i. e. *The Mother of God*, a large Island, and *Los Evangelistas*, or the *Evangelist-Isle*, call'd *Soringues* by the French, of a small Compass, lye opposite to the Western Coast: Over against the Southern Shore, appear the little Islands nam'd *Los Apostolos*; and *Tierra La Tierra del Fuego*, i. e. *The Land of Fire*, so call'd by *Magellanus*, because he saw a great number of Fires there in the Night: Others term it *The Magellanick Island*, by way of Excellency; and indeed it is the largest of all, being separated from *Magellanica*, by the above-mention'd Strait, and extending itself farthest from West to East, between the 285 and the 300 Degree of Longitude: Its Figure resembles that of a Triangle, and its most Southern Promontory is call'd *Cape-Horn*, by reason that *Jacob Le Maire*, a Native of *Horn* in *Holland* first discover'd it, *A. D.* 1616, with the adjacent Strait: but the Spaniards impose on it the Name of *El Cabo de S. Salvador*, i. e. *S. Saviour's Cape*: At the same time the most Eastern Part



of this Island lying next to *Le Maire's* Strait, was nam'd *Maurice-Land*, in Honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*: However, there is no Town or Colony belonging to the Europeans, who only had an opportunity to descry the Sea-coasts.

*Staten-Land*, an Island likewise discover'd by the Hollanders in 1616, is remarkable for its Situation, in the middle, between *Brower's* Strait on the East; and that of *Le Maire* on the West; being separated by the latter from *Tierra del Fuego*, or *Maurice-Land*. Several other Islands of lesser Note lye between *Staten-Land* and Cape Horn, viz. *Heremits Eylandt*, i. e. *The Hermits Island*, the largest of all; those of *Gonsalo*, *Barnevelt*, *Maria*, *Jesus*, *Joseph*, *S. Islefonso*, &c. Lastly, the Island of *Diego Ramirez* appears on the West of Cape Horn.

It may not be improper perhaps to take some notice of the principal Navigators that made Discoveries toward the Southern parts of the Globe, both South-East and South-West. The first of these was *Ferdinand Magalians*, or *Magellanus*, a Portuguese Gentleman, who not being (as he thought) sufficiently encourag'd by his Master King *Emanuel*, apply'd himself to the Court of *Castile*, and obtain'd of the Emperor *Charles V.* five Ships well furnish'd with necessary Provisions, and 250 Men. These set sail from *Sevil*, Aug. 10. 1519. And at first endeavouring to find a Passage through the great River *Plata*, were oblig'd to Winter in Port *S. Julian*, but afterward they happily sail'd through that famous Strait call'd the *Magellanick*, from the Inventer's Name, and to pass'd from the Atlantick into the Pacifick Ocean, as far as the Islands *de los Ladrones*, or of *Thieves*, where *Magellanus* himself was poison'd; although others affirm that he perish'd in an Engagement at *Maran*, one of the *Philippine* Islands, after he had subdu'd that of *Cebu*, in 1520. However, one of his Ships having sail'd round the Globe, came by the *Molucco's* and *Cape of good Hope*, and at length arriv'd safe at *Sevil*, Sept. 8. 1522.

In the Year 1525, *Garcias de Loyasa*, a Spaniard, entred into the same Strait, giving Names to several Places; and was follow'd by *Simon de Alcazova*, in 1534. Afterward three Ships were equipp'd by the order of the Bishop of *Placentia*, in 1539, and one of them got through the Strait to *Arica*, a Port of *Peru*.

On the thirteenth of November 1577, Sir *Francis Drake* with five Ships, and 164 Seamen, set out from *Plimouth*, and having sent back two of them as Impediments, pass'd the *Magellan* Straights only with three, and enter'd into the Pacifick Sea, where these Ships were dispers'd by a violent Storm, and one of them was never heard of after; nevertheless *Drake* continu'd sailing along the Coasts of *Peru*, *New Spain*, *Mexico*, *California*, and other Parts of *America*, and took several Spanish Vessels richly laden during this famous Voyage round the World, which he finish'd within the space of three Years, returning by the *East Indies* and *Cape of good Hope* to the Coasts of *England*, where he

Part 2

arriv'd on November 3d. 1580. In the mean while Captain *John Winter* having been separated from Sir *Francis*, upon their Entrance into the South-Sea, was driven back again into the Strait of *Magellan*, which he repass'd, and was the first that sail'd through this Passage from the Pacifick into the Atlantick Ocean.

The third Compasser of the World was *Thomas Candish* Esq; who set out in 1586, and very fortunately finish'd that Course in two Years and two Months; in the carrying on of which, both *Magellanus* and Sir *Francis Drake* had spent three whole Years. The same renowned Navigator pass'd the *Magellanick* Straights a second time in 1591, but died in this last Voyage. In 1593, Sir *Richard Hawkins* sail'd for a long while in sight of *Terra Australis*, in the Latitude of fifty Degrees, run through the Straights of *Magellan* the next Year, and was at last taken by the Spaniards, after a sharp fight, on the Coasts of *Peru*.

The fourth Circum-navigation of the Globe, was perform'd by *Oliver Noort*, or *Nordt*, a Hollander, his chief Pilot being Captain *Melis* an English-man, who had accompanied *M. Candish* in his Voyage. This *Noort* steer'd much the same Course with *Magellan*, *Drake*, and *Candish*, and spent three Years in encompassing the Earth. About the same time also, the Dutch Fleet under Sir *James Mahe*, *Simon de Cordes*, *Sebast de Wart*, &c. wherein *William Adams* was chief Pilot, suffer'd great inconveniencies in these Straights. They discover'd *Sebaldis* Isles, and a Gulph call'd by them *Green Bay*, in 54 Degree Latitude. In 1614, *George Spilberg*, Commander in chief of another Dutch Fleet of six Ships, sail'd through the Straights of *Magellan*, and the South-Sea, to the *East-Indies*, and came back from thence by the *Cape of good Hope*, to the *Texel*, after having been out near three Years, and finish'd the fifth Circum-navigation of the World.

In 1609 and 1610, *Pedro Fernandez Giros*, a Portuguese, and *Ferdinand de Quir*, a Spaniard, (as they both affirm) sail'd at several times about 800 Leagues together on the Coasts of a Southern Continent, to the height of 15 Degree of South Latitude; where they met with a very fruitful, pleasant and populous Country. This vast Tract of Land may be perhaps some part of *Jansen Tasmen's* Land, *Van Diemen's* Land, *New Zealand*, *New Holland*, *New Carpentaria*, and *New Guinea*, which were discover'd and coasted by the Dutch, who gave Names to many Bays, Rivers, and Capes hereabouts, in the Years 1619, 1622, 1627, 1628, 1642, and 1644, from the Equinoctial Line, as far as the 44th. Degree of South Latitude. And indeed the Hollanders have made the greatest Discoveries toward the South *Terra incognita*, but have publish'd very little concerning their Expeditions in those Parts.

In 1615, *William Cornelius Schouten* of *Horn*, and *Jacob le Maire* of *Amsterdam*, encompass'd the Globe a sixth time, discovering a new Entrance Southward from the Straights

F f

of



of *Magellan* into the South-Sea, by *Cape Horn*, in the 57 Degree of South Latitude; which Passage has been ever since known by the Name of *Le Maire's Strait*. Here they imposed Names on several Islands and Counties, and having spent two Years and eighteen Days in this Voyage return'd by the *El Estrecho* to *Holland*. Afterwards in 1618, a Spanish Fleet under the Conduct of *Bartolomé García de Nodal*, sail'd through *Le Maire's Strait*. And in 1623, part of *Prince Maurick's* Fleet steer'd the same Course, discovering some small Islands in their Passage.

In 1642, *Abel Tasman*, a Hollander, made a very remarkable Voyage toward the South *Terra Incognita*. And in 1643, Captain *Bremer*, or *Broner*, found out a new way into the South-Sea, by a Passage call'd after his own Name, lying East of *Le Maire's Strait*. But in 1669, that famous Navigator and valiant Commander Sir *John Narborough*, having receiv'd a Commission from King *Charles II.* to make a better Discovery of these Parts, more especially of the Country of *Chili*, set out with two Ships, viz. the *Sweepstake* and *Parliament*; the former of 300 Tuns burthen, and the other of 70, and return'd in 1671, after having spent above two Years in going and re-passing the Strait of *Magellan*, and sailing along the Coasts of *Paragonia* and *Chili*, whose Observations and Draughts since publish'd are most judicious and accurate.

In 1680 and 1681, Captain *Sharp* sail'd over the South-Sea, steering one while near 800 Leagues to the Eastward, and at another time as many to the Westward; and beating

about many Islands and Coasts: But in his return not being able to recover the Straights of *Magellan*, or those of *Le Maire*, or *Bremer*, he was constrain'd to seek for a new Passage farther South than by *Cape Horn*, and sail'd to the 60 Degree of South Latitude, where in departing from a small place call'd by him the *Duke of York's Island*, he met with abundance of Ice, Snow, Frost, and Whales, and saw no Land for three Months together, till his arrival at the Island of *Barbadoes*. Since these Attempts, divers English Ships have pass'd on several Occasions into the South-Sea, both by the *Magellanick Straights*, and by the South of *Cape Horn*. Among which that wherein Mr. *William Dampier* travell'd, in the Years 1684, 1685, and 1686, sail'd round the *Terra del Fuego* by *Cape Horn*, and pass'd all along the Coasts of *Paragonia*, *Chili*, *Peru*, *Terra-Firma*, *Mexico*, and even to the height of *California*, whence they stood over to the *Ladrones* and *Philippine* Islands, and so came home to *England* by the Cape of *Good Hope*. None that ever sail'd this Course have done such Service to future Navigators as that ingenious Person; for in the Relation of this Voyage which he printed, all those Coasts are so plainly describ'd, the Latitudes and Longitudes so exactly set down, the Tides, Currents, Trade-Winds, &c. so judiciously and (in all probability) faithfully given an Account of, that his Work would be of inestimable Value, if the State of Affairs ever happen to be such that our Nation may have Occasion to navigate those Seas.

## C H A P. XV.

### The principal Mountains and Rivers of Southern America.

AFTER having made a Description of the whole Continent of Southern America, it is requisite to give a short Account of its principal Mountains and Rivers. The highest Mountains, before mention'd, are the *Andes* commonly call'd *Los Andes* by the Spaniards, as also, *La Cordillera de los Andes*, and *La Sierra Nevada*, which take their rise in the Province *Dos Quixos*, in the Northern Part of *Peru*; from whence they extend themselves in Length with a continu'd Ridge, above 1000 Leagues, through the Countries of *Peru*, *Chili*, and *Magellanica*, as far as the Strait of the same Name. They are distant from the Coast of the Pacifick Sea in some Places twenty Spanish Leagues, in other thirty, and elsewhere forty, and among them are many burning Mountains that cast forth Flames, call'd in Spanish *Los Volcanos*; more especially in the Country of *Chili* and its Confines.

II. Among many Rivers that water Southern America, the most eminent are the *Orenoque*, the *Amazons* River, and the *Paraguay*. The River *Orenoque*, or *Orinoque*, is otherwise call'd *Paria*,  
Orenoque Fluv.

and *Tuyapari*, or *Tavapari* by the Natives of the adjacent Country: Its Spring-head is plac'd in some Maps in the Southern Tract of that Part of *Popayan* which is comprehended under *Terra Firma*, and near the Borders of the Country, which lyes about the *Amazons* River: From thence it passes a great way Eastward through the Southern Part of the vast Province of *Paria*, and is thus far termed by others *Cabeta* or *Caketa*: Afterwards it divides itself into two great Arms, one of which assuming the Name of *Negro*, flows Southward, waters the most Southern Part of *Paria* with a small Tract of the Country about the *Amazons* River, and at last falls into the same River. The other Arm of the *Orenoque* retaining its Proper Name, directs its Course Northward, and receives several Rivers during its Passage through *Paria*; particularly on the West, the *Gozzar*, the *Guicacar*, and the *Cassanar*, which falls into it in the Confines of *Paria* and New *Andalusia*: On the East it takes in the *Caora*, the *Aloica*, the *Arey*, and the *Caroli*, by the means of which the spacious Lake *Cassipa* empties itself into its Channel.  
Negro Fluv.



nel. Then this mighty River leaving *Paria*, traverses *New Andalusia*, where it is also augmented with several Rivers, and at last disburthens it self thro' a very wide Mouth, which contains a great number of Islands, into the Northern Ocean.

III. We come next to take a view of the *Amazons* River, commonly call'd *El Rio de las Amazonas*, and *Amazone Rio* by the Spaniards; altho' the Country be not inhabited by any of the Race of that Warlike Nation of Women anciently known by the Name of *Amazons*. This vast River has its Source at the foot of the *Andes* Mountains, in the Province of *Proper Quito*, in the Kingdom of *Peru*, about eight Leagues from the City of the same Name, near the Equinoctial Line and the Frontiers of the Province *Du Quixos*: taking its Rise out of two Pools, the greater of which lies on the Hill *Guamana*; and the lesser, on that of *Pulcan*, at the distance only of two Leagues one from the other. Thence it flows towards the East and South, thro' the Borders of the Provinces *Dos Quixos* and *Picamores*; and afterwards from West to East, thro' the Northern part of that spacious Country that lies along its Banks; making many Islands, especially towards *Peru*; which are the Seat of a certain People nam'd *Homagnes*: It likewise encompasses a large Island, on the South of the Lake *Parimé*, where the *Toupinambous* have their Habitation, as it has been elsewhere observ'd. Many Rivers run into that of the *Amazons*, on its Northern and Southern sides; but we shall only take notice of some of the principal. The River *Negro*, the largest of all, falls in on the North, with those of *Basurara*, *Aragamatuba*, *Topura*, or *Jopara*, and *Pucomaya*: On the South, are receiv'd, the *Xauxa*, or *Maragnon*, the *Tetan*, the *Amarumaya*, the *Tapy*, the *Caina*, the *Cusignares*, the *Madera* or *Cayana*, the *Tapayta*, the *Paranayba* and the *Pacache*. Lastly, the *Amazons* River continues its course for the space of 1200 Leagues, and towards the end becomes extremely wide; and discharges it self thro' two remarkable Mouths, into the *Mar del Nrt*, or Northern Sea; between *Caribana*, a Province of *Terra Firma*, and the Country of *Brasil*. These Mouths are said to extend themselves 84 Spanish Leagues, in breadth, and are beset with a great number

of Islands. Moreover, some call it *Orellan's* River, from *John Orellan*, a Spaniard, who first discover'd it *A. D.* 1541; and *M. Sacson* observes, that it overflows the adjacent Countries like the *Nile* in *Egypt*. The *Amazon's* River is describ'd at large by *Peter Texeira*, who view'd it with great accuracy, and spent ten Months in travelling along its whole Course, *A. D.* 1639.

The third and last noted River of Southern *Paraguay* *America* is the *Paraguay*, so call'd by the *Na-Flav*. natives, as it were, *The River of Feathers*; and *Rio de la Plata*, by the Spaniards, from the pieces of Silver that are found therein. It is a great deal wider than the former, and may justly be reckon'd among the largest Rivers of the whole World. It was first discover'd *A. D.* 1513, by *John Diaz* a Portuguese, and takes its Rise (according to the opinion of several Authors) in the most Northern Tract in the Country of *Paraguay*, above the Lake *de los Xarayes*; at least it flows out of that Lake Southward, and at first separates the Province of *Charcas* from *Proper Paraguay*: It divides the Province of *Rio de la Plata* into two Parts, and is there augmented by several other Rivers. On the West, it receives the *Piccolmayo*, almost over against the City of *L'Assencion*, with the *Rio Vermejo*, *R. Blanco*, *R. Salado* and *R. Tercero*: On the East, the River *Parana* falls into it, at the Town of *Corrientes*; as also, the *Uruguay*, or *Urvaig*, on the Confines of the Provinces of *Rio de la Plata* and *Urvaig*. At last, below the City of *Buenos Ayres*, between the same Provinces it rolls into the Sea of *Paraguay*, thro' a very wide Mouth, which lies out for the space of 40 Leagues, between the Promontories of *Sant Antonio* and *Santa Maria*. The Course of this River is so swift, that the Waters are said to continue fresh at the distance of 20 Miles from its Mouth; and *Maffeus* assures us, that it overflows the neighbouring Territories, every Year: Its first Increase, which happens in the Month of *June*, is inconsiderable; but afterwards it rises up to a great Height, and when it returns to its proper Channel, the Mud that is left behind, renders the Ground extremely fruitful: So that it is in some respects very like the River *Nile*, of which we have before given a particular Account, in *Chap. VIII.* of the preceding Part, among the principal Rivers of *Ethiopia*.



# COUNTRIES about the POLES,

## North and South.

**B**Y the Countries about the Poles I understand not only the Countries that lie near the Poles, but also those Islands and *Peninsulas* lying over against the old and new Continents, that have been lately discovered; which I shall divide into the Arctick or Northern, and Antarctic or Southern, as they are set down in this Table, &c.

1. Arctick, or Northern. { Estland.  
Greenland.  
Nova-Zembla.  
Spitsberg.  
Terra de Jesse.  
New-Denmark.  
New North-Wales.  
Isles of Cumberland.

2. Antarctic, or Southern. { Nova-Guinea.  
Isles of Solomon, S. Jable, S. Forge.  
Isles, &c. { *Horn, also, Montee, Saint-  
John, Prince-William, Good-  
Hope, Tramore, Muldberg.*  
Eleven Island Virgins.  
Terra del Fuca, or Fugate.  
Scotland.  
Hermes Isle.  
Diego Ramires Isle.  
Kings-Isle.

*Terra Australis Incognita.* { Carpentery.  
The Country of Diemen.  
New-Zeland. { *Port S. Philip,  
Port S. James.*  
Quiri.  
The Country of Brionia.  
The Country of Parramatta.  
The Country of Parramatta.  
The Kingdom of Beche.  
The Kingdom of Lucas.  
The Kingdom of Malheur.

New-Holland, in Six Parts. { 1. Country of Leontenor.  
2. Country of Etna.  
3. Country of Nova.  
4. Country of Concord.  
5. De Witt's Land.  
6. Country of Arment.

### S E C T. I.

#### The Arctick, or Northern Countries.

I call by the name of the *Arctick* Countries all those Regions, which lye toward the Northern or *Arctick* Pole, which are newly discovered. Their situation is almost all in the Frigid or Cold Zone. The Extent of them is so irregular, that I know not how to write any thing of that. 'Tis enough, That they are discovered, and to set down the Names by which the Natives call them, as we have them from divers Travellers thither. Nevertheless we may describe their Bounds which part them in our Upper Hemisphere, from *Muscovy* and *Tartary* by the Frozen-sea; and in the other Hemisphere by the South-sea, Christian-Sea, and *Hudson's* Streights, which separate them from the Northern *America*.

According to our last Relations, the Air is extremely cold: the Sun appears but little in several places for above the greatest parts in the Year: but in some places more, in some less, according to their distance from the Equator. In general it may be said of them, They have much Pasture, little Meadows, many Forests, where the Inhabitants maintain a great number of Beasts: That they live in some of the Countries upon Hunting and Fishing; That they have no Common Wine. All the Country is Islands and *Peninsulas*. They have divers sorts of Beasts, especially Bears, Foxes and Deer. *Hughes*, *Davis* and *Frobisher's* Streights are in this Lower Hemisphere: so called, because *Gazet*, *Willoughby*, *Frobisher*, *Darrell*, *Hull*, and some other Englishmen, endeavouring to find a Passage that way to the *East-Indies*: as the Dutch did, by the Streights of *Wiccas* or *Nassau*, which are on the North of our Continent; but both to no purpose, because of the continual Ice which hinders their Sailing, and prevents all Navigation, beyond the 57 Degree of Latitude. Tho' it be said, That some Dutch Pilots went to the 58 Degree, and found a Passage towards *China*: that Passage is unknown to the other Nations of *Europe*, who make ordinarily but three Voyages towards the North: 1. To *Archangel* in *Russia*, for Furs. 2. To *Sydney* in *Greenland*, for Whale-fishing. 3. To *Norway*, for Wood and Herbs.

However, it may not be improper here to *Dispute* give a brief Account of the several Navigations, and Discoveries made toward the North-east North-west, &c. *Nova Zembla*, North-east *East of Greenland* or *Spitzberg*, and North-west *Greenland*, *West*.



*Land*, commonly call'd *Greenland* and *Engroneland*. The first Discovery of these Countries is owing to an Accident: For in 1357, *N. Jolan* and *Anany Zan*, two Brothers and rich Citizens of *Novgorod*, having set Sail from the Straights of *Gibraltar* for *Flamberg* and *England*, were accidentally driven Northwards by violent Storms, even as far as *Frisland*, *Iceland* and *Greenland*. But in 1497, *John Cabot* and *Sebastian* his Son of the same Nation received a Commission from our King *Henry VII.* to undertake the like Voyage, who made a Draught and Description of some North-west parts of *America*, and brought along with them four of the Natives.

These Discoveries gave rise to a Project of finding out a nearer Passage that way to the *East-Indies*: which was attempted many times, but without success. A short Account of those Voyages is as follows.

Sir *Joh. Willoughby* was the first that attempted to discover a North-east Passage into the *Indies*; and to that purpose set out with three sail of Ships in the year 1555. It is very probable that he landed on *Nova Zembla* and *Greenland*; but we have no Memoirs of this Voyage, except certain short and imperfect Notes which were taken off from his Table after his death: wherein it is express'd, That the Fleet under his Command parted from *Semen*, which lies in 77 Deg. of North Lat. on the second day of *August*: That on the fourteenth they were above 100 Leagues from the same place to the North-east, and continu'd sailing until *Septemb.* 14. when they came ashore on a high, rocky and desert Country: from whence the Cold and Ice forc'd them to return more Southerly, which they did till they reach'd a River in *Lapland* call'd *Arzina*, where, by the continuance of foul Weather they were shut up in the Harbour, and the next Spring were all found frozen to death in their Ship.

A few years after this misfortune, *viz.* about 1556, our Captain *Stephen Burroughs*, sometime Comptroller of the Navy to Queen *Elizabeth*, prosecuting the same Design, pass'd the North Cape, and sailing farther Eastward, discover'd the *Wygats*, or Streight that runs between the South part of *Nova Zembla* and the Country of the *Samieds*; thus, continuing his Courte, he arriv'd in 112 Deg. 25 Min. of Longitude, and 75 of Northern Latitude. Afterward he sail'd to 80 Deg. 11 Min. Latitude, and return'd thence to *Nova Zembla*; having cruiz'd (as it most probable) on the Coasts of *Greenland*; since he makes mention of the desolate Country, the blew Ice, and great numbers of various Fowl thereabouts.

The first Person whose Name we find celebrated in History for endeavouring to search out a North-west Passage into *China*, was Sir *Martin Frobisher*, who, in three several Voyages, made divers new Discoveries of large Bays, Streights, Islands, Capes, &c. and impos'd on them different Names. For in the year 1576, arriving with two Barks at the height of 62 Deg. North Latitude, he descri'd a great Inlet, since call'd *Frobisher's Streights*, and sail'd into it 60 Leagues, with main Land on each side. He met with Inhabitants along the Coasts, whose Canoes or little Boats were made of Seal-skins, but had wooden Keels. The Ships Company exchange'd

Toys with these Natives for Salmon and other Fish, and brought home certain Marcasites, which were taken for Gold-ore; but after they had made a more exact search the next Year, with a Design to carry away a quantity thereof, it prov'd to be nothing but black Lead. At the same time they found a Silver-mine, which nevertheless lay so deep within the Rocks, that it could not be dug: as also a dead Fish about 12 Foot long, somewhat resembling a *Porpois* in shape. It had a Horn growing out of its Snout (of the same nature as those commonly call'd Unicorns Horns) which is still preserv'd in a Repository at *Windsor*, and is six Foot in length. In 1578 the same Sir *Martin* undertook his third Voyage, wherein, having pass'd as far as seem'd convenient to him, he took possession of the Land in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, and call'd it *Meta Incognita*.

In the Year 1580, *Arthur Pett* and *Charles Jackman* having receiv'd a Commission from Queen *Elizabeth* to follow the Track of *Stephen Burroughs*, rambled over the Northern Seas, and in all likelihood landed in *Greenland*; but there is nothing particularly known concerning their Voyage, except that they pass'd the Streights of *Wygats* and launch'd into the Ocean to the Eastward, where, meeting with vast heaps of Ice, they were constrain'd to return with great peril and labour; insomuch, that they lost one another by reason of the foul Weather, and *Pett* was never heard of after.

In 1583, Sir *Humphrey Gilbert*, by the direction of Sir *Francis Walsingham*, Principal Secretary of State, sail'd, upon the same Design, to *Newfoundland* and the great River of *St. Lawrence* in *Canada*, took possession of the Country in the Name of Queen *Elizabeth*, and settled a Fishing-trade there. This Voyage was made upon suggestion of a certain *Greek* Mariner, who positively affirm'd to some English Gentlemen, That himself had pass'd through a great Streight to the North of *Virginia* from the North-west Ocean, and offer'd to be Pilot for the Discovery, but died before he came into *England*.

In 1585, Mr. *John Davis* having undertaken with two Barks to search out the North-west Coasts, made farther Discoveries in those Parts, and nam'd the Land he came to *Cape Desolation*, being a part of *Greenland*; where he found many pieces of Furr and Wool like Beaver, and exchange'd some Commodities with the Natives, who often repair'd to him in their Canoes bringing Stag-skins, white Hairs, small Cod, Muscles, &c. Afterward he arriv'd in the Latitude of 64 Deg. 15 Min. where was found a great quantity of such Ore as *Frobisher* had before brought into *England*; and steer'd thence to 66 deg. 40 min. as far as Mount *Raleigh*, *Totness-sound*, &c. In 1586 he made a second Voyage to the same Coasts, searching out many places toward the West; and the next Year, in a third Voyage, came to 72 Deg. 12 Min. the Compass varying to 82 Deg. Westward. He gave the Name of *London-Coast* to the Land, and the Streight (being 40 Leagues wide) was from him call'd *Fretum Davis*.

Thus the English Nation alone, for a long time, frequented those Northern Seas till 1578, that a Dutch Ship came to *Kola* in *Lapland*, and a Year or two after another to *St. Nicholas*, by the instiga-



and gain of an English Man who set himself against the Company of Russian Merchants; whereupon the Hollanders crept in more and more, and in 1594, sent *William Barents*, a skilful Navigator, and some others, to find out a Passage from thence to the *Indies*. In 1596 the same *William Barents*, accompanied with two other Dutch Pilots, viz. *Jacob Heemskirk* and *Cherry* *John Vermeer* Ay, first discover'd *Bea* or *Cherry* *Island*, and pass'd from thence to *Greenland*; but *Barents* being separated from them, sail'd along the Coasts of *Nova Zembla* to the 76 Degree of Latitude, until at length his Ship was driven ashore, and broke in pieces by the Ice, so that all the Mariners were compell'd to Winter there, and endur'd the utmost extremity of Cold. Afterward with much difficulty, and at last they got to *Kola* in *Lapland*; but *William Barents* dyed before their Arrival, to the great grief of the whole Company.

In 1603 *Stephen Bennet* was employ'd, but went no farther than *Cherry Island*, and brought from thence a certain quantity of Lead Ore. In 1605, that famous Navigator Mr. *Henry Hudson*, was first sent to discover the North Pole, and sail'd even to the 82 Degree of North Latitude; but being satisfied that there was no North-East-Passage, he was appointed to make the like trial in the North-West Seas. Therefore in 1609 he set sail again, and proceeded 100 Leagues farther than any had done before, and gave several Denominations to certain Places, as *Davis's Bay*, *the* *of* *God's* *Mary*, *Prince Henry's Cape*, *King James's Cape*, *Queen Anne's Cape*, &c. besides the Strait and Bay that still bear his Name. But the Ice hinder'd him from continuing his Course farther, and the Sedition of his Men from returning home.

In 1610 Sir *Thomas Burton*, Servant to *Henry Prince of Wales*, eldest Son of King *James I.* being employ'd by that renowned young Prince to pursue the North-West Discoveries, pass'd through *Hudson's Strait*; and sailing above 100 Leagues to the South-Westward over a Sea above 50 Fathoms deep, discover'd a large Continent, call'd by him *New Wales*. Afterward, having endur'd great Fatigues in his wintering at *Port Nelson*, notwithstanding the loss of many of his Men, he search'd out the whole Bay, which is now known by his Name, even back again almost to *Digge's Island*, and found out the large Tract of Land which he nam'd *Cory's Sound*. Moreover in the Years 1612, 1615, 1616, *James Hall*, and *William Baffin*, proceeded much farther in the North-West parts, and impos'd Names on divers Places discover'd by them. Besides that the English Merchants pursuing these Northern Voyages to be so very profitable, increased the number of their Shipping to thirteen or fourteen yearly, under the Conduct of *Poole*, *Faberby*, *Elge*, *Hely*, and other skilful Pilots, from whom several Sounds, Bays, Promontories, &c. have receiv'd their respective Names.

In the mean while the King of *Denmark* observing the Progress of the neighbouring Nations in these Northern Seas, began to consider that the Traffick of his own might be much advanced by the like discoveries, being also desirous to renew his ancient Pretensions to these

Countries, in case any thing should be found out worth the claiming. Therefore he caus'd two Ships and a Pinnace to be fitted out in the Year 1605. Of these, Captain *John Cunningham*, a Scot was Admiral; *Godske Lindenaw*, a Danish Nobleman was Vice-Admiral, and the chief Pilots were *James Hall* and *John Knight*, Englishmen. *Godske* arriving on some part of the Country, barter'd some small Wares with the Natives, took two of them, and return'd to *Denmark*. The other two Vessels came to Cape *Farewell*, sail'd from thence to *Frobisher's Straights*, gave Danish Names to certain Places, seiz'd on three of the Inhabitants, and at *Cunningham's* Ford met with a kind of Silver Mine, which was afterward try'd by the English, and found to be of no value. In 1606, four Ships and a Pinnace were sent thither under the same *Godske Lindenaw* Admiral, and *James Hall* Pilot-General, who brought away five of the Natives. In 1607 *James Hall* receiv'd a new Commission; but the Sea-men mutining as soon as they made the Coast, brought the Ship back again into *Denmark*, without effecting any thing. However, his Danish Majesty set out two other Ships mann'd with *Norwegian* and *Iselanish* Mariners, and commanded by *Christian Richardson*, a *Holsteiner*; but these returned before they came in view of the Shore. The rest of their Expeditions are unknown until An. 1619, when *John Munck* was sent out with two Ships, which arriv'd safe at Cape *Farewell*, from thence this Pilot steer'd to 63 Degree 20 Min. (as it is probable near *Digge's Island*) and winter'd there, calling the Place *Munck's Winter Harbour*, and the Continent *New Denmark*. The South-part of *Hudson's Bay* New he likewise nam'd *Mare novum*, and that part toward *Greenland*, *Mare Christianum*. But of all his Company, which consisted of forty six in a Ship, and sixteen in a Pinnace, scarce so many were left alive, as were able to bring the Pinnace through extrem Danger to their own Country. However, in the Year 1653, *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark*, resolving to advance the Northern Discoveries, caus'd three Ships to be fitted out with skilful Mariners, enjoining them to take a most exact Account of all the Coasts and Places where they arriv'd. These having pass'd the Strait of *Waygat*, met with some Inhabitants of *Nova Zembla* in their Canoes or little Fishing-boats, and steer'd from thence to *Greenland*. Their particular Adventures are contain'd in the French Relations of the Danish Voyages publish'd at *Paris* by M. *Peyrere* and *Marcinire*.

We do not read of any more Voyages from *England* to find out the North-West Passage since the last Expedition of *William Baffin* in 1616, until the Reign of King *Charles I.* when Captain *Luke Fox* was sent upon the same design in 1630, in his Majesty's Pinnace nam'd the *Charles*, victuall'd for eighteen Months. He traced *Frobisher*, *Hudson*, *Davis*, *Burton* and *Baffin*, meeting with Whales, much Ice and Fowls, and built a Pinnace in *Port Nelson*, where he found several Remains left by Sir *Thomas Burton*, but no Natives or Inhabitants, though in other parts of those Seas he saw some Savages. About the same time, viz. in 1631, Captain *Thomas*

Fox's  
Voyage.

Thomas



*Thomas James* being employ'd by the Merchants of *Bristol* for the like purpose, sail'd from *Cape Farewell* by the *Islands of Resolution to Asilli and Nottingham Isles*, as also those of *Alansfield*, from whence he steer'd over a large Bay to the Westward near *Port Nelson*, and nam'd the Land *New South Wales*, Hereabouts meeting with Captain *Fox*, they congratulated one another, but were soon separated by foul Weather; so that Captain *James* still continu'd roving up and down, and giving Name to divers Places; as *Cape Henrietta Maria*, *Lord Wotton's Island*, *The Earl of Bristol's Island*, *Sir Thomas Roe's Island*, *Earl of Danby's Island*, *Charlton Island*, &c. in this last he Winter'd in the Latitude of 52 Deg. 3 Min. and having built a little Pinnacle out of his Ship, pass'd over to *Cory's Swan's Nest*, whence he return'd by *Cape Charles* and *Salisbury Isle*, and arriv'd on the Coasts of *England* in 1632. The Voyage of this most skilful Navigator was publish'd in 1633, by the special Command of King *Charles I.* containing a very accurate and judicious Account of the Hardships he endur'd; as also of the Straights, Capes, Bays, Tides, Soundings, Variations of the Compass, Natural Rarities, &c.

Wood's  
Page.

The last Voyage, in order to make a more perfect Discovery (if it were possible) of the North-east Seas; for a Passage to the *East Indies*, was undertaken in the Year 1676, by the Ingenious Captain *John Wood*. Having receiv'd a Commission from King *Charles II.* he arriv'd in the 76 Degree of North Latitude, but unfortunately lost his Ship nam'd the *Speedwell* on the Coast of *Nova Zembla*, and return'd home in the *Prosperous Pink* that accompanied him under the Command of Captain *Flawes*. His Opinion is, that it is impossible to Sail this Way to *China* and *Japan*, as Captain *James* before had declared, being both induc'd thereto by the situation of the Land, the reversion and uncertainty of half Tides, the motion of the Ice, &c. Besides, that the Fogs, Snow, Frosts, the vast Islands of Ice, and the tempestuousness of the Weather, are altogether insuperable.

Estori-  
land.

**ESTOTILAND** is on the North of *America*, and is divided from it by *Hudson's Strait*. *Antonius Zomi* the *Venetian*, is said to have discover'd it in 1390, or thereabouts; and *John Scolve*, a *Polonian*, found it out again in 1477. He was lost in the Sea, as well as *Michael Corterealis*. This Country is very fruitful, especially in Gold. The Inhabitants are very industrious. The English possess on the Coast, *Terra Labrador*, or *New Britain*, or *Terra Cortereales*; but they know nothing but the Coast.

Green-  
land.

**GROENLAND**, *Groenlandia*, call'd also *Groinland*, and more anciently *Engroenland*, lies (according to the report of the *Islanders*) like half Moon about the North of the Country, at the distance of four Days sailing. *Cape Farewell*, its most Southern Promontory, is situated in the Latitude of 60 Degr. 30 Min. but how far the Continent may extend it self Northward, is unknown. The Eastern and Western sides are encompass'd with two vast Oceans, but at what Degrees of Longitude, is

not yet discover'd. This Land is suppos'd to have been first discover'd by a *Norwegian* Gentleman nam'd *Eric Rotcop*, or *Red-head*, who having committed a Murder in *Island*, to save his Life attempted to make an escape into another Country, whereof he had only heard some obscure flying Reports. This Gentleman was so fortunate as to get safe to the Harbour of *Sandsbain*, lying between two mountainous Promontories, one on an Isle over against *Groenland*, which he call'd *Huidserken* or *White Shirt*, by reason of its being covered with Snow; the other on the Continent, bearing the Name of *Huaf Eric*. He Winter'd in the Island, and afterward passing into the Continent, impos'd on it the Name of *Groenland* or *Greenland*, from its flourishing Verdeur. His Son being sent to *Olaus Trugger* King of *Norman*, to procure a Pardon, easily obtain'd it upon Information of the new Discovery. Thus, in process of time, a Plantation was settled there, and two Cities were built, *viz. Garde* and *Albe*; the latter was honoured with a Bishop's See and the Residence of the *Norwegian* Vice-Roy, the Cathedral Church being dedicated to *St. Antony*. However, these new Inhabitants having been long since destroy'd, either by the Natives, the Rage of an Epidemical Disease call'd the Black Plague, or otherwise, very little Intelligence concerning *Groenland* has come to us since the Year 1349. Nevertheless in 1389 (as they say) the King of *Denmark* determining to re-establish his Dominion in those Parts, sent a Fleet thither; which having suffer'd Shipwreck, he was discourag'd from any farther Enterprize, until of late that Navigation was somewhat renew'd by *Christian IV.* who was wont to call this Country his *Philosopher's Stone*; in regard that it was sometimes not to be found when his Ships undertook a Voyage thither; and because a certain *Dane* in 1626 brought some Sand from thence which was of the same colour and weight with Gold.

The Air in *Groenland* is so excessive cold that the *Danes* cannot dwell there; neither does the Soil produce any thing but Moss, with some few Bushes and Plants; the Country consisting for the most part in High-lands and Mountains continually cover'd with Snow; but the Southern parts more than the Northern, which by reason of the terrible Ice and Cold, are very little known. Among the Beasts, the chief are Bears, Foxes, Rain-deer and Dogs; there is also great plenty and variety of Fish, as Whales, Seals, Dog-fish, &c. But on these Coasts are caught the greatest quantities of Sea-Unicorns, whose Horns are so much esteem'd, and kept as Rarities even in the Cabinets of Princes. All the Navigators that arrive here often observe a wonderful Meteor call'd a North-light, which usually appears about the time of the New Moon, and tho' only in the North, yet enlightens the whole Country; perhaps it may be the same which is sometimes seen in *England*, especially in the Northern Parts, and commonly termed *Streaming*. It is said to resemble a great Pillar or Beam of Fire, darting out Rays and Streams every where. It also moves from one place to another, leaving behind it a kind of Mist and Cloud, and continues till hid by the Sun-beams.

The *Groenlanders* are generally of a low Inhabitant's Stature, of a ripe Olive Colour, and some of them



them quite Black: having black Hair, flat Noses, broad Faces, and Lips turned up. The Women frequently stain their Faces in blew, and sometimes black Streaks, letting the Colour into their very Skin by pricking it with a sharp Bone, so that it can never be worn out. These Natives are not unlike the *Somovids* and *Laplanders*; being very healthy, active and strong. They are all courageous, and sometimes desperate, often preferring rather to throw themselves down the Rocks, than stand to be taken. But they are true Barbarians, extremely thievish, treacherous and revengeful, not to be won by any kind of trade or dealing. They live altogether by Hunting and Fishing, make Bread of Fish-bones ground to Meal, and drink the Sea-water without receiving any prejudice by it. They employ a Fishing with Darts, which are made of Bones, and have Bladders fasten'd to the end of the other end; that the Fish, when struck, may spend its strength in struggling to get under Water, yet cannot do it, and so is easily taken. Their Cloaths are either made of Bird-skins with the Feathers and Down upon them, or of the Skin of Seals, Dogs, Fish, or Wild Beasts. They wear the hairy Hides of them outward in Summer, and inward in Winter, and in vehement cold Weather carry two or more Suits one upon another. They also dress their Skins very well, and sew them exceeding strong with Sinews of Beasts and Needles made of Fish-bones. But their Ingenuity appears in nothing so much as in their Canoes or Boats, which are made of Whale-bone about an Inch thick and very broad, sitch'd close together with strong Sinews and cover'd with Seal-skins. These Boats are wrought sharp at both ends in form of a Weaver's Shuttle, so as they may be row'd either way, being from ten to twenty Foot long, and two broad: they have a Deck of the same Materials fasten'd to the sides, in the midst whereof is a round hole as big as the waist of a Man: so that when he goes to sea he sits himself in that Hole, stretching out his Feet forward into the hollow of the Vessel, which is row'd with one Oar about six Foot long, having a Paddle six Inches broad at each end, serving both to balance and move the Boat, which is done with incredible swiftness, insomuch that a fleet of our Skiffs with ten Oars is not able to accompany them. And we are inform'd by the Danish Relations, That the *Groenlanders* would so fast, that they even dazzl'd the Eyes of the Spectators; and that they often crossed, yet never interfer'd or fell foul one upon another. As for their Religion they are Idolaters, and seem to have a great veneration for the Sun. They have also been seen lying flat on the Earth, and muttering certain Prayers or Charms to the Devil, whose proper Habitation they believe to be under Ground. *Joh. Munck*, and divers others that have travell'd farther into the Country, found many Images, such as we commonly make of *Demons* and hellish Fiends with Horns, Beaks, Claws and cloven Feet; near which lay quantities of Bones of Beasts, as of Deer, Foxes, Dogs, &c. suppos'd to have been offer'd to them in Sacrifice.

**NOVA ZEMBLA**, was so call'd by the *Russians*, the word in their Language signifying

*New Land*; but was known to the Ancients (as it is probable) under the Name of *Cerambria*. It lies on the North of *Moscovy*, separated from thence by the Straights of *Wygatz* or *Nassau*; but whether it be an Island, or join'd to the Continent of *Tartary*, is not certainly known. It was discovered by *Stephen Burroughs*, in the Year 1556; and since visited by several Persons both of the *English* and *Dutch* Nation; who have in vain attempted to find out a Passage that way into the *Tartarian* Sea, and so farther to *Cathay*, *China*, *Japan*, &c.

This Country (according to the Information of Captain *John Wood*, who lost his Ship there) is for the most part perpetually cover'd with Snow, neither can one walk on the few bare Plats of Ground, by reason that they are boggy; upon the Surface whereof grows a kind of Moss, bearing a small blew and yellow Flower; under which Green-fod, in digging about two Foot deep, appears a firm Body of Ice. The same Ingenious Pilot assures us, That the Snow lies here, contrary to what it does in any other Country; since in all other Climates it melts soonest away near the Shoar, but here the Sea beats against the snowy Cliffs, that in some places are as high as either of the *Forelands* in *Kent*; the Sea having wash'd underneath the Snow a prodigious way, and the Snow hanging over, most fearful to behold: But there are many Rivulets of very good Water, melted from the Snow, which run down every quarter of a Mile from Hills into the Sea. On the Hills are found abundance of Slate-Stone, and on the Shoar very good black Marble with white Veins. The *Dutch*, who wintered in *Nova Zembla*, mention no other Beast than Bears, Foxes, and such others as live upon Prey; for that (say they) there is neither Leaves nor Grass to afford any Fodder for tame Cattel; nevertheless Captain *Wood* found the track of many large Deer, and saw a small Creature much like a Coney, but not so big as a Rat, together with some few little Birds like Larks. Moreover some *English* Merchants that resided in *Russia*, have affirm'd that there is a spacious Lake upon *Nova Zembla*, wherein are bred a great number of Swans and Geese, which molt their Feathers about *St. Peter's Day*; and that at that Time the *Russians* pass over thither to gather these Feathers and kill the Fowls, which they dry and bring into their own Country for Winter-Provision.

**SPITSBERG**, otherwise call'd *North-east Green* **GREENLAND**, took its *Dutch* Name from the land-sharp-pointed Rock and Mountains with which it is environ'd: *Spijs* in that Language signifying *pointed*, and *Berg* a *Hill* or *Mount*. It reaches from the 76 Deg. of North-Latitude, to Deg. 82, but how much farther, as also whether Island or Continent, is not as yet discovered. Indeed our Mariners generally take it for an Island, and the *Dutch* only conjecture that the Land is extended more North, because the Ice stands firm, and does not float as in the open Sea. The South Parts look toward the Promontories of *Finland*, *Lapland*, the *North-Cape*, &c. The next Land on the East is *Nova Zembla*, and the large Territories of *Greenland* or *Fennoscandia* on the West, but thole at so vast a distance, that they cannot be



be reckoned as its Confines. The principal Harbours are, 1. *South-haven*, which is capable of containing above 40 Ships at one time, and wherein faulty Vessels are often repair'd. 2. *Mauritius-Bay*, so call'd by the *Hollanders*, where some have winter'd; and near it stand a few Cottages, which they built for the trying up their Oil, with a Piece of Ordnance for their Defence. These Houses they termed *Schmearemberg*, from *Schmer*, signifying *Grief*, and the *Herlem-Cookery*, but all other Nations usually burn theirs before their Departure. 3. The *Northern-Bay*, where is an Island the *Dutch* name *Vogel-Sang*, from the great Noise the Fowl make there in taking their Flight. 4. *Monyer's-Bay*, the farthest North of the Western-part of *Greenland*. 5. *Muscle-Haven*, lying at the Mouth of the Straits of *Wagats*. 6. *Walter Thymen's Ford*, which the *English* commonly call *Alderman Freeman's Inlet*, and is a large Mouth of a River, as yet undiscover'd.

The whole Country is so encompassed with Ice that it is very difficult to come near the Shores, and the Air is so extreme cold that the *Europeans* cannot dwell there with safety of their Lives; as neither in *Greenland* nor *Nova Zembla*. The Soil, as much as hath been hitherto discovered, is nothing but Rocks or Heaps of vast Stones, so steep that they seem ready to tumble down; and indeed many great Pieces often break off from the Tops with a terrible Noise. The greatest part of the Mountains are of Red Earth, and communicate that Colour to the Snow upon them, which often appears marbled, and resembles as it were the Boughs and Branches of Trees, giving a bright Lustre to the Air or Skies, as if the Sun shone. There are also 7 bright blue Mountains in a Line, which tinge the Snow and Ice with the same colour, and betwixt them many sharp-pointed Rocks, the Holes whereof afford Nests to an infinite multitude of Fowls, whose Dung being mixt with the Moss, washed down by the melted Snow, makes Mould in the Clefts and Valleys, which lying open to the Sun-Beams, when the Ice is dissolv'd produceth some few Plants, as a kind of Cabbage-Lettice, Scurvy-Grass, Sorrel, Snakeweed, Mouse-ear, a kind of wild Strawberry, divers sorts of *Ranunculus's* *semper vives*, &c.

The Beasts of this Country are only these, *viz.* Foxes white, grey, tawny and black; Rain-Deer, which grow extreme fat by feeding upon yellow Moss; white Bears of a prodigious Size, some of them being 6 Foot high, and their Skins 14 foot long; Water Bears, that live by what they catch in the Sea, where they have been seen swimming 12 Miles from any Shore, Seals or Sea-Dogs and Morfes. Very few Land-fowl breed here, of which the most remarkable is the Snite or Strand-Runner, of the bigness of a Lark, with a four-square Bill resembling a Rasp, that feeds on Worms and does not taste fishy: But of Water-Fowl there is great variety, as Snow-Birds and Ice-Birds, so call'd from their running upon the Ice; Mountain-Ducks, Willocks, Red-Geese, Stints, Gulls, Noddies, Sea-Pigeons, Sea-Parrots, Kirmews, Malle-mucks, Pigeon-divers, Lumbs, Rathishers or Aldermen, Burgermeisters or Mayors, Rotger-Divers, Strunt-Jagers or Dung-Hunters, &c. Most of these Birds, except the Strunt-Jager, Kirmew and Mountain-Ducks, make their Nests upon the high Rocks, to be secured from the

Bears and Foxes. They sit in so numerous Flocks, especially at the time when their young ones are hatch'd, about the latter End of *June* and beginning of *July*, that at their taking Flight they shade the Ground from the Sun-Beams, as it were a Cloud, and make such a Noise that one can hardly hear another speak. There are also great quantities of Fish in these Seas, as Seals or Sea-Dogs, Morfes or Sea-Horses, Hays, Dragon-Fish, Buts-Head, Unicorns, Sword-Fish, Mackarel, Lobsters, Garnels, Shrimps, Star-Fish, &c. But the chiefest Profit that draws Men to these desert and disconsolate Places, ariseth from the Whale-Fishing, of which perhaps it may not be impertinent here to give a Description.

As to the natural History of Whales, the Writings of Authors are confus'd, some reckoning *Fishing* 10 several Species, and others, as *Wormius* and *Bartholinus*, making them up 22; giving them various Names from their Difference in Colours, Fins, Teeth, Whalebone, Oyl. *Sperma Ceti*, &c. But the Fish properly call'd the *Whale*, for the catching of which our Ships chiefly undertake the Voyage to *Spitzberg* and *Greenland*, differs from other Whales in his Fins and Mouth, that is altogether destitute of Teeth, instead whereof there are long, black, somewhat broad and horny Flakes, all jagg'd like Hairs. The Head is commonly the third part of the whole Fish, yet some have bigger than others. Their Lips are plain smooth and black, somewhat bended, like the Letter S, and end underneath the Eyes, before the two Fins, being lock'd one into another when drawn together. Within, on the uppermost Lip, lies that which we call Whale-bone, of a brown, black and yellow Colour, with Streaks of several Colours, others being of a blue and light blue Tincture, are reputed to come from young Whales; the smallest Whalebone is before, in the Mouth, and behind toward the Throat, but the middlemost is the largest and longest, reaching sometimes about the length of 2 or 3 Men; these are covered all over with long Hairs, like Horse-Hair, hanging down on both Sides round about the Tongue; on one Side, all in a Row, are 250 pieces of Whale-bone, and as many on the other, besides some others so small that they cannot be conveniently cut out, which is a peculiar Trade, abundance of Iron-Tools belonging thereto. The lower part of the Whale's Mouth is generally white, and the Tongue, lying amidst the Whale-bones, is very close ty'd to the undermost Chap or Lip; it is large and white, with black Spots at the Edges, consisting of a soft spongy Fat, so hard to be cut that it is often flung away, tho' otherwise it would yield 6 or 7 Barrels of Train-Oil. On the Head stands a Hovel or Bump, and at the Top of it, on each side is a Spout hole, bended like an S, or the Hole of a Violin, out of which the Whale blows the Water, especially when wounded, so fiercely that it roars like a hollow Wind, or the Waves of the Sea in a Storm; which Noise may be heard at a League's Distance. The Eyes lye very low almost at the End of the Upper-Lip, and are not much bigger than those of a Bullock, with Eye-Lids and Hair like those of a Man; the Chrystal of the Eye is not much bigger than a Pea, clear white, and transparent, the Colour of some is yellowish, and of others pure white. The Shape of the whole Fish is not unlike that of a Shoe-Maker's Last, if you look upon



on it from beneath; their Belly and Back are generally reddish, but underneath the Belly they are white; yet some of them are Coal-black, some of them are also curiously marbled on their Fins, Back and Tail. The young ones are bigger than a Hoghead, when first brought forth. At the Sides of the *Paudentis*, of the Female, stand out two Breasts, with Teats on them like those of Cows, which nevertheless are, as it were, sheath'd within till the young one comes to suck: some of these Beasts are all over white, others speckled with black and blue Spots, like a Lapwing's Egg, the Milk that issues from them being white and sweet, but of a somewhat fishy Taste. The Bones of the Whale are hard as those of large four-footed Beasts, but porous as a Sponge, and filled with Marrow. His Flesh, which appears coarse and hard, like that of a Bull, is alive by it self, and the Fat lying at the Top, between the Flesh and Skin, is about 6 Inches thick on the Back and Belly, as also a Foot thick upon the Fins, proportionable to the Size of the Fish, but the Fat of the under Lip is often thicker than two Foot. The Tail does not stand up as those of most other Fishes, but lies horizontal, as that of the Fin-Fish, But's-Head, Dolphin, &c. being three, three and a half, and sometimes four Fathom broad: with this the Whale winds himself as a Vessel is turned by the Rudder, and his Fins serve instead of Oars, so that he rows along as swiftly as a Bird flies, and makes a long Track in the Sea, which remains divided for a while as that of a huge Ship under Sail.

As for the Food of the Whale, the Ancients thought that he liv'd upon the Froth of the Sea, churn'd with his violent beating on the Water; others say, he is nourish'd with such Weeds and Plants as the Sea affords, since good store of them have been sometimes found in his Stomach: But it is most probable that his chiefest Meat are a certain sort of small Crabs, otherwise call'd Sea-Beetles or Sea-Spiders, with which the Bays of *Greenland* are so cover'd that they seem all over black: these frequently hang thick on his Fins and Hairs, and are afterward suck'd into his Mouth. Indeed not only the Crabs themselves, but also great quantities of little Stones, call'd *Oculi Cancrorum*, have been taken out of his Stomach. The Whales, as well as other Beasts, have their peculiar Distempers and divers Enemies; of these last the chief are, 1. A kind of Louse or Insect, having many Feet and a Head like an Acorn, with 4 Horns, which eats through the Skin and devour the Fat. 2. The Saw-Fish or Sword-Fish, which has a long Bone on the End of his Snout, set on each side with Teeth like a Saw; he seldom gives over encountering the Whale till he has kill'd him, yet eats up nothing but his Tongue. 3. The Hay, a long round and thin Fish, yet very voracious, whose Mouth, shap'd as that of the Sword-Fish, is full of sharp Teeth, three upper and three under Rows one by another; with these he bites great Pieces from the Whale, as if dug out with a Spade, and often devours all his Fat. These Fishes are also very eager after the Flesh of Men, and assault many that go to swim or wash in the Sea: they are usually taken with a Bait of Flesh fasten'd to a Hook with a strong Iron Chain, for they would soon shear a Rope a-stander with their Teeth.

The manner of Catching Whales is thus: When any are seen or discov'rd by their Blowing or Spouting up of Water, which may be discern'd at a great distance, upon notice given, all the Mariners get into the Long-Boats, which hold about 6 or 7 Men apiece. These row till they come very near the Whale, and then the Harpooner, who always sits before in the Boat, takes an opportunity to throw out his Harpoon; which is an Iron shap'd at the Point like an Arrow, and fix'd at the End of a Stick or Pole, having two Beards, sharp at the Edge and blunt on the Backs, otherwise it would tear out and all the Labour would be lost. The best Harping-Irons are made of clean and fine Steel, not too much harden'd, so that they may be bended without snapping, for 200 Pound (a middling Whale being valued at so much) is often lost for want of such a well-temper'd Instrument, which is light behind and heavy toward the Point, so that flung it which way you will, it always falls upon the Point: To the End or Handle of the Harpoon is fasten'd a Rope 5 or 7 fathom long, and about an Inch thick, being more pliable than the other Cords that are afterward tyed to it (for it is made of the finest and softest Hemp, not daub'd with Tar, so that it swells and grows hard in the Water.) In every one of the Sloops a whole Heap of Lines lye between the Seats, divided into 3, 4, or 5 parts, and each of them is of 80, 90 or 100 Fathom long. The first of them is tyed to the Fore-runner or small Line, and as the Whale dives they tie more and more Line to it. These Ropes are thicker than the Fore-runner, wrought with strong and tough Hemp, and turr'd over; but the Line-Furnisher or person whose business it is to look after the Ropes, as also the other Men in the Long-boat, must take great Care that they be not entangled, or that they may not run toward the Side of the Boat, lest it should be thereby overset, but they must run out just before in the middle, commonly call'd the *Slaze* by the Sea men. The Harpooner darts the Harpoon with his Right-Hand just behind the Spout-Hole of the Whale (if he can conveniently) or in the thick Fat of his Back, for he dies sooner if wounded thereabout than if he were launch'd into the Belly or through the Guts; but about the Head the Harpoon can do him little Hurt, because the Fat is very thin there upon the Bones, so that it breaks out more easily, and the Whale finds means to escape. However, for the most part the Seamen do not much mind where they lance or push them, doing it as well as they can, since there is no Time to take great Deliberation. The Beast, as soon as wounded, runs away with the Long-Boat as swift as Wind, and diving underneath draws the Rope very hard, so that great Care must be taken to give him Rope enough lest the Boat be overset. In the mean while all the other Sloops row out before, and take notice which way the Line stands, for if it is stiff and heavy, the Whale still draws it with main Strength; but if it hangs loose, so that the Boat both before and behind is equally high out of the Water, then the Men hale in the Rope, laying it in good order, that if the Whale should draw on again, it may be given him without being entangled. It is also to be observ'd, That if the Whale runs upon the Level, too much Rope must not be allow'd, lest in turning much and often about he should wind it about a Rock



a Rock or heavy Stone, so that the Harping-Iron would be loos'n'd and tear out, which has often happen'd. Whensoever the Whale rolls upon the Ground, the Long-boat lying still, the Lines are drawn in again by degrees, and the Rope-Master lays them down in their proper Places. If he runs underneath a great Ice-field, and the Rope is not long enow to follow him, they draw it in as much as is possible, and cut it off, losing the piece of Rope and the Whale; and indeed they frequently run away with the Lines belonging to 5 or more Sloops. Where great quantities of small Ice are crouded together it is very dangerous and difficult to pursue the Whale, for he is so cunning as to retire thither immediately, and the Long-Boats are very often dash'd to pieces against the Rocks of Ice. But when he rises they fling one or two more Harping-Irons into him, accordingly as they perceive him more or less tir'd, and then he dives under Water again, some swim even all-a-long, playing with their Tail and Fins, so that great Care must be taken not to come too near them, for they can beat a Long-Boat to pieces at a Blow. Thus the Seamen wait till the Whale is pretty well tir'd, and then kill him outright with Launces, nevertheless not without great Danger, for they strike as well upon his Body as at his Sides, and receive many severe Blows, all the other Men in the Sloops rowing diligently, sometimes forward and sometimes backward, whilst the Whale lifts himself up and often beats so violently with his Tail and Fins that the Water dashes up into the Air like Dust. The Launces are fixt to a wooden Pole above two Fathom long, or somewhat shorter than a Pike-staff; the other part of the Lance being commonly a Fathom long, and pointed before, as that of a Pike; is made of Steel or tough Iron, so as to bend without breaking: For the Harpooniers, having made a deep Hole in the Whale's Back or Sides with their Launces, continue thrusting them first one way then another; but if one or more are got out of their Hands they soon take another, every Sloop being furnished with at least 5, 6 or 7; yet sometimes the Whale has them all out of 3, 4 or more Boats sticking in his Body. After he is struck he spouts Water or Blood with all his force, so that the Noise thereof may be heard as far as the Report of a Cannon; but when when he is quite wearied it comes out only by Drops, for he has not Strength enough to force it upward; some Whales blow Blood to the very last, dashing the Men most filthily, and dying their Sloops as deep as if they were painted with Vermillion, nay the very Sea is tinged red along wheresoever they swim. Those Whales that are mortally wounded, heat themselves so-excessively that they reek, and the Birds sit on them and eat their Flesh whilst yet alive. They are surest struck with a Harpoon, as they spout Water, and so do not mind the striking of the Oars, for when they lie still they listen, and are sometimes above and sometimes under Water; but it is very dangerous to assault the Females, especially when big with young, for they defend themselves very long and are harder to be dispatch'd than the Males.

The Long-Boats often waste 6 or 7 hours, nay even a whole Day before one is seen; but when he is thus kill'd they convey him to the Ship's Side, fastning that part where the Tail is cut off to the

Fore-Castle, and the Head toward the Stern: Then 2 Sloops hold at each End of the Fifth, whilst the Harpooniers stand in them before or upon the Whale, clad with a leathern Suit. These 2 Men, who have their peculiar Wages, viz. about 4 or 5 Crowns apiece, slice his Sides with long Knives, raising the Blubber or Fat from the Flesh, which the more it is loos'n'd, as the Hide is flea'd from an Ox, the higher it must be hal'd up with the Pulleys, that it may be more easily cut. Afterward the Fat is cut into small pieces in the Ship, and kept in Vessels or Cardels (as they call them) until they try it up into Train-Oil. The Blubber of some Whales is White, others Yellow; and some of Red: The White, being full of small Sinews, does not yield so much Oil, as the Yellow; the Red and watery Fat comes from dead Whales, taking its Colour from the Settling of the Blood, and affords the worst and least Oil, but the Yellow Fat, which looks like Butter, is the best. The Fat being thus chopt into small Pieces, and slic'd thin, is boyl'd in Cauldrons or Coppers: Afterward the Liquor is laded out into a Vessel, half full of Water, that it may be cool'd, and that the Dirt, Blood and other Dregs may fall to the bottom; then it is put into Troughs, to be more cool'd, and conveyed thence into the Cardels or Hogheads, which generally hold 64 Gallons. It is reported that one *Housson*, a *Diep-man*, in the Year 1634. got 26 Hogheads (*Cados*) out of the Tongue of one Whale, and 120 out of its Body. The Train-Oil is us'd by divers Tradesmen, as Frize-makers, Curriers, Cloth-Workers and Soap-Boilers. The *Greenland* Ships, of the largest size, carry 30 or 40 Men, and sometimes more, having 6 Sloops to tend them, and hold from 800 to a 1000 Cardels of Fat: The lesser Ships contain fewer Cardels, viz. from 400 to 700, and have commonly 5 Sloops or Boats belonging to them. There also go some Galliot to *Spitsburg* to catch Whales, which have only 3 or 4 Sloops.

The *Hollanders* attribute the first Discovery of *Greenland* or *Spitsberg* to three of their own Pilots, viz. *Jacob Heemskirk*, *William Barents* and *John Cornelius Ryp*, imposing Names on several Creeks and Promontories, according to their Fancy. But it is certain that they only followed our Steps, and that had our Men been as diligent in that particular from time to time, as also no less careful in making of Sea-Charts on such occasions, divers Discoveries would have been unquestionably asserted to this Nation, which are now almost disputed from us. Indeed it is not to be doubted but that Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, in the Year 1553, and *Stephen Burroughs* in 1556, landed in this Country long before the arrival of the *Dutch* Fleet; therefore the latter had no other way to derogate from Sir *Hugh's* Honour, but by conferring on him an imaginary Title of an Island, which they call *Willoughby's Land*, a Place near *Nova Zembla*: However, in 1610. the *Russia* Company of *English* Merchants, sent a Ship, nam'd the *Amity*, under the command of *Jonas Pool*, for Whale-Fishing, who fell upon this Country formerly discover'd, tho' not much regarded, and call'd it *Greenland*; either by reason of the green Moss with which it was cover'd; or perhaps mistaking it for *Groenland*, a large Northern Continent before discover'd. He also



and Nets to many of the principal Places on the Western Side, as *Hus-jund*, (because a *Ussak-Hut* was there found) *Ire-Point*, *Bell-Point*, *Loose-Point*, *Knapp-Point*, *Lyness Island*, *Loose-Island*, *Loose-Sound*, *Deer-Sound*, &c. This was the first Time that any Benefit was made by Fishing in these Seas. In 1611 the Company sent six Basques, expert Fishermen, and sent them with two Ships to fish for Whales: the first that was taken by them yielded 12 Tuns of Oil, and they likewise kill'd 500 Morfles. In 1622 two other Ships were sent, which caught seven-hundred Whales, together with some Morfles, and made 150 Tuns of Oil. The *Hollanders* came thither the first Year with one Ship, conducted by *Adriaen Stuyvenant*, an Englishman, whilst another *English* Pilot likewise brought a Spanish Vessel. Afterward many other Voyages were undertaken on the Company's account, and these Coasts were frequented by the *English*, *Dutch*, *Danish*, and other Nations: nevertheless we find little worth relating of *Greenland* till the Year 1696, when some *English*, commanded by Captain *William Godley*, were forced to wander up and down the Country, and to winter there; a large Relation whereof has been publish'd by Dr. *W. Mearns*, to which we shall refer the Reader. Some *English* in like manner, winter'd in *Greenland*, A. D. 1633, and another Company in 1634, but the latter all perished there. The last that has brought us any considerable News from this Country is *Frederick Marten*, a *Hamburger*, who set sail from the River *Elbe* April 15, A. D. 1671, and return'd thither on Aug. 21. He set forth a large and very accurate Description of the Land, and all things therein, as Mountains, Plants, Beasts, Fowls, &c. chiefly to give a desire to satisfy the Curiosity of some Gentlemen of the Royal Society. This Work was first written in *High-Dutch*, and after printed in *English*.

In these Countries there is a continued Day for four or five Months in a Year, and a perpetual Night for three Months: so that for the most part there is either all Light, or all Darknes. The *English* that winter'd in *Greenland* in the Year 1696, continu'd to see the Light of the Sun Octob. 12, and saw it not again till Feb. 3. It is reported by them that staid there in 1633, that Oct. 18, was the last Day that they beheld the Sun: and they could see it read in the Twi-light, till Octob. 17. That on the twenty-second the Stars plainly appear'd all the twenty-four Hours, and were visible during the whole Winter. That on Feb. 15 they perceiv'd for six or seven Hours about Noon, so much Light as they could make a shift to read by it: And that on Feb. 12 they discern'd the Sun-Beams upon the tops of the Mountains, and the next day his whole Body. Our Men that remain'd in *Greenland* in 1634, and all perish'd there, left in Writing before their Deaths, that the Sun disappear'd Octob. 10, and was seen again Feb. 14. The *Hollanders* that winter'd in *Nova Zembla* A. D. 1596, on Novemb. 2, New Stile, or Oct. 23, Old Stile, (according to *Purchas*) saw the Sun set fully above the Earth; when it rose South-eastward, and set South-south-west. After Novemb. 2, New Stile, or Oct. 2, Old Stile, the Sun was no longer seen, but the Moon ap-

pear'd Day and Night, as long as she continu'd in the highest Degrees. On Jan. 24, they perceived the edge of the Sun above the Horizon, and on Jan. 27, he came totally in view; being in 5. Deg. 25. Min. of *Aquarius*. It is difficult to assign a Reason of these various Appearances, unless they proceed from the differences, of Latitude, wherein the *English* and *Dutch* took up their Winter-Quarters: But the Cold in *Nova Zembla*, was more intense than that in *Greenland*.

The *English* that Winter'd in this Country lived upon Venison, as Rain-Deer, Bears, Foxes, Morfles, &c. The Bear's-flesh was tolerably pleasant and wholesom, but the Liver caus'd their Skins to peel off; which was also observ'd by the *Hollanders*, that abode in *Nova Zembla*. As the Sun and Day began to appear, the Fowls and Foxes crept abroad, for which they set many Traps and Ginns; insomuch that a vast number of Birds were taken, and at several times, above 50 Foxes: These last prov'd very good Meat, and the *Dutch* in *Nova Zembla* were likewise much reliev'd by them in their Scurvies. Afterward, in going abroad to seek Provisions, they found great quantities of Willock's Eggs, that afforded no small Refreshment: But the effects of the Cold upon their Bodies were wonderful, raising Blisters on their Flesh, as if they had been burnt: Iron stuck to their Fingers when touch'd, and their Stockings were all over sing'd as they sat by a great Fire, yet their Feet felt no warmth, and their Backs were frozen. However, our Men either had not altogether endur'd so much hardship, or at least were not so ready to complain as *William Barents's* Company in *Nova Zembla*; for the Cold was so excessive sharp in these Parts, that (as it was related by them at their return) their Shoes froze as hard as Horn to their Feet, their Sack and other strong Liquors were likewise frozen, and a Barrel of Water became perfect Ice in one Night. They also add, that their Carpenter taking a Nail out of his Mouth, the Skin and Flesh follow'd, glu'd to it with Ice; that in their Huts they were wont to apply Stones heated at the Fire to their Feet, and other Parts of their Body, to keep them from freezing: and that they suffer'd many other Calamities, the particular Circumstances whereof it would be too tedious to recite.

The Land of *JESSO*, *Terra ESONIS* (of Land, which we have already spoken in our Account of *Jesso China*) is altogether unknown, except some Coasts of it which lie in 42 Deg. of Latitude. It is seated between *Asia* and *America*, and is a long continued Tract of Land; by some thought to be contiguous to both Continents, and that thereby *America* was Peopl'd. But the Strait of *Jesso*, or *Tessay* which parts it from *Tartary*, and the Strait of *Anian* that separates it from that part of *America* which has been yet discover'd, seem to contradict that Opinion. The Nature of the Soil and Air is not known; 'tis thought that they are like *Canada*, and that the Country is fruitful in all things. The Inhabitants, so far as we know of them, live upon Fishing and Hunting, and they are cloath'd with the Skins of Beasts. Their Canoes, or little Gallies, are fastned



fastned together with Cords made of the Bark of Coco's, which never rots in the Water. They Trade with the People of *Japan*, and are subject to that Emperor, paying him Tribute: Upon which account it is, that this Prince forbids all Strangers which Trade to his Kingdom, to have any Commerce in the Land of *Jesso*. The Natives are Idolaters.

As for NEW DENMARK, NEW NORTH-WALES, the Isles of CUMBERLAND and RAWLEY, we know nothing of them but the Names, and some Coasts; so that all we have to say of them is, That these Countries lie on the North of *America*, toward *Hudson's-Sea*, that they are very Cold, and that we have little Account of them.

## S E C T. II.

### *The Antartick, or Southern Countries.*

These Countries are call'd ANTARCTICK from the Pole of that Name, near which they lie; they are also nam'd Southern, because of their Situation. The *Dutch* Relations pretend, that they are not less than *America*, and as Fruitful and well Peopled as *Europe*. They reach not farther than the Sixtyeth Degree of Southern Latitude: *Magellan*, who discover'd them first, gave them the Name of *Magellanica*.

The Air is very different, according to the several Regions of it; but it is said, the Soil is generally fertile in all sorts of Fruit, wild and tame Beasts, some of which are unknown to us. *Fernando Quiros* the Spaniard, *Mayre*, *Browers* and *Schouten*, Dutchmen, observ'd several Mouths of Rivers, but durst not venture upon the Land; they only entred some Gulphs and commodious Havens. The Strait of *Magellan*, discover'd in 1520, is two hundred Leagues in length; and in some places two or three, in other six or ten Leagues wide. *Mayre's* Straights, on the East of *Terra del Fuogo*, discover'd in 1615, is ten Leagues long, and as many wide. *Brower's* Strait, found out in 1643, is much like *Mayre's*. The *English* and *Dutch* go that way sometimes to the *East-Indies*; and *Dampier* chose rather to go this Way, and Coast the *Terra del Fuogo*, than venture thro' the *Magellanick* Strait; because of the difficulty of that Passage.

New Guinea. NEW GUINEE, *NOVA GUINEA*, is near the Equinoctial Line; it is one of the biggest Isles in the World. It is so call'd, because it seems to be diametrically opposite to *Guinee* in *Africa*, and because 'tis part of the *West-Indies*: It is separated from the Continent by a Strait or Current of the Sea of the Land of *Papua*, which is a very considerable Island on the East of *Gilolo*; it is a good Country, but little frequented by the *Europeans*.

Terra del Fuogo. TERRA del FUOGO, already mention'd, is on the South of *America*; it consists of several Islands, call'd the *Magellanick*, the *Straights of Magellan*, and the *Fires* which they observ'd

there gave Name to the Land. The Air and Soil are very good.

The STATES ISLAND lies South-east States of it, and hath almost the same Nature and Island Air.

The SOUTHERN UNKNOWN Terra REGION, or *TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA*, is a vast Tract of Land, as Incogni- we judge by the Coasts. I have distinguish'd the Parts of it by the several Names given it by Pilots and Captains, who have sail'd by them, which are to be seen in the foregoing Table. The Inhabitants are white, of a large Stature, strong, industrious and courageous; it is very sad to fall into their Hands, as some *Europeans* have found by unhappy Experience. Some modern Relations tell us, That in all that vast Country they have neither King nor Prince, all the People are only combin'd together in several Factions, in the Form of a Commonwealth. They chuse Governours only to make the Lazy work, punish Offenders, and render Justice to every Man. They are Idolaters, and have Oratories to pray to their Idols in: They observe certain Fasts, and Wash their Bodies on certain Days every Year.

The Country of NEW ZEALAND is New Antipodes to France; the *Dutch*, in the Year 1642, were used cruelly by the Men they found there of an extraordinary Stature. *Fernando de Quiros*, who spent 14 Years in these Voyages, discover'd it before those Republicans. He was fourteen Months at the Court of the King of *Spain*, to persuade his Catholick Majesty by eight several Petitions, to send Colonies thither; and represented a thousand Advantages that would arise to them by the Extent of it, Fruitfulness, People, and Conveniency of the Ports, but was not regarded. It is placed in the Dutch Maps between the 34 and 44 Degr. of South Latitude, and between the 189 and 194 Degr. of Longitude.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND is situated Van Diemen's farther Westward, between the 163 and 169 Degr. of Longitude; and between the 41 and 44 Degr. of Southern Latitude. This Country was first discover'd Novemb. 24. A. D. 1642, by *Abel Tasman* a Hollander, who impos'd on it that Name in Honour of *Anthony van Diemens*, Governour of the Dutch *East-India* Company; whence it is also termed, *The Country of Anthony van Diemens*: But 'tis not known, whether it be an Island, or a Continent; in regard that its Northern Coast only was descry'd, with *Frederick-Henry's Bay*, &c.

The other Parts of *Terra Australis* lie farther Northward, and follow in their Order.

NEW HOLLAND is wash'd on the New North, by the Seas of the *Molucca's* and *Anchidol*, Holland and on the West and South by the *Indian Ocean*. Its Sea-coasts were discover'd by the *Hollanders*, above Fifty Years ago; and its Bounds are usually set out in the Maps, between the 12 and 35 Degrees of Southern Latitude, and between the 134 and the 169 Degr. of Longitude. This



The Countries divided into several Parts, viz. *St. Jago's Land*, which derives its Name from the first Dutch Viceroy, who arriv'd on those Coasts A. D. 1625; *His Land van Texinnen*, or, *The Land of Peace*; *The Land of Concord*, in Dutch, *Land van Eertrijck*, accidentally found out, and found by the Hollanders, as they were making a Voyage to the *Moluccas*, A. D. 1618; the Countries of *Edele*, *Dallie*, and *Arnon*.

*Carpenter's Land*, owes its Denomination to one *Carpenter*, a Dutch Commander, who first made discovery of its Coast: and is remarkable for its situation between *New Holland* and *New Guinea*, in the innermost part of the Indian Ocean.

*LA TIERRA AUSTRAL DEL ESPIRITU SANTO*, i. e. THE SOUTHERN COUNTRY OF THE HOLY GHOST, a large Tract of *Terra Australis*, in the Southern part of the Pacifick Sea, was first found out and so call'd, by *Peter Ferdinand de Quiros*, in the Name of *Philip III.* King of Spain, A. D. 1606. It is extended very far from the North-west, to the South-east; and to 15, or 16 Deg. of Southern Latitude: It contains the Harbours of *S. Felipe*, *S. Jago*, and *Vera Cruz*, near the Rivers *Jordan* and *S. Sider*; and many Islands lie over against its Northern Coast, according to the Relation of *Joan de Torresminia*, in the Voyage of the said *Ferdinand Quiros*. *M. Sanson* places this Country on the South-east of *New Guinea*, and on the North of it the *Islands of Solomon*; but both are omitted in the Dutch Maps. *Jacob le Maire* took the *Island of Good Fortune*, and the *Horn-Isles*, which he discover'd in his Voyage to *New Guinea*, for those of *Solomon*; because he found them to agree with *Ferdinand Quiros's* Description. Others make the Number of *Solomon's* Islands to amount to 20, but their Names are scarce known; neither are they inhabited by any Euro-

pean Colony. The chief of them are, *S. Isabella*, which is of a larger extent than the rest; *Guadalcanale*, and *S. Nicholo*. *Anthony of Leon* informs us, That the Spaniards made three several Discoveries of these Islands: viz. The first by *Alvarez de Mendana*, A. D. 1567; the second by the same *Alvarez*, in 1599, who was then accompanied by *Peter Ferdinand de Quiros*, and died there; and the third by the same *Ferdinand de Quiros*, in 1605.

We have but lightly touch'd upon the Parts of *Terra Australis*, in regard that its Sea-coasts only were discover'd by the Hollanders about 50 Years ago; but the nature of the inland Country, is altogether unknown to them, as well as to the rest of the European Nations.

Neither indeed can much more be deliver'd, concerning a great number of Islands of the Pacifick Sea, which are but of small compass, and were only discover'd accidentally upon several Occasions. Those that lye on the North of the Equinoctial Line, were discover'd and nam'd by the Spaniards, as they were sailing from *America*, to the *Ladrones* and the *Philippines*: But those that appear on the South of the same Line, were found out, for the most part, by *Jacob Le Maire*, and *William Cornelius Schouten*, and call'd by their Names, when after having pass'd the New Strait, they sail'd from South *America* to *New Guinea*.

Time may possibly bring to Light as particular Accounts of all these Countries, as we now have of *America*, which was as much unknown to former Ages. But for the Present these Descriptions are as succinct as are to be had, or at least as good as needs of Countries which are never travell'd to, nor from which anything is brought for our use. And with them we shall close our Description, which we hope has answer'd the Reader's Expectation, and given him an *Idea* of all the Known Parts of the Earth. We heartily wish him as much Pleasure and Profit in reading it, as we have had Care and Pains in composing it, and then I am sure we shall both be pleas'd.

FINIS.

F I N I S.

A N



# A N I N D E X

## Of all the Countries of ASIA, AFRICA, and AMERICA: W I T H

The Provinces, Territories, Seas, Coasts, Lakes, Gulphs, Bays, Rivers,  
Islands, Capes, Mountains, Valleys, Cities, Towns, Castles, Forts, &c.

A	A.	Addus	23	Alberton	145	Amblam Prov. and Town	112
	Afar	Aden Kingd.	114	Alberfus	138	Ambiancanta Pro.	111
	Abacoa Isl.	Adel Kingd. 113. --- Fluv. &	ibid.	Albor Mount	38	Town	ibid.
	Abaria Fluv.	Oppid.	ibid.	Alderrada	124	Ambodara Isl.	112
	Ahanbi Fluv.	Aden	95	Aleppo	13, 30	Ambony Isle and Town	54
	Aburim Moun.	Adena	1.	ALGIER Kingd.	141, 142,		63
Abascia Prov.	38	Aderbejan Pro.	91	146 --- City	141	Ambw Perth	163
Abdallah	145	Adia	117	Alexandria	105	AMERICA 148, 149, 150, &c.	
Abden	21	Adjada	26	Alexandretta	14, 30	Amid	7
Abes Fluv.	121	Admore	54	Alexandrium Castle	22	Ammar Castle	85
Abela	20	Adoumarus Isles	59	Alimali	95	Ammon	131
Abel-berh-Mascha	20	Adrach Town and Territ.	20	Alican	84	Ammon's Temple	145
Abel-maula	22	Adramelech Fluv.	31	Aliga Fluv.	65		146
Abex Coast	113	Adirere	81	Alila Isle	115	Ammunites Peop.	19
Abex	22	Adullam	26	Al Gezira Prov.	32	Amnatian	10
Abilah	18	Aen, or Ain	26	Algonquins Peop.	159	Amvites Peop.	18
Abind Kingd.	85	Aenon	22	Alguchet	131	Amvitis Territ.	18
ABISSINIA 110, 111, 112		Aeria	104	Alhayad	130	Amesja	23
Ahoras	124	Afra	132	Allachskir	8	Amothdor	21
Abshash Fluv.	42	AFRICA 99, 100, 101,		All Saints Bay Cape	204	Amul	90
Abuhinan	132	& sequ.		Almahara	129	Ana	52
Abuyo Isl.	53	Agades Kingd. and Town	125,	Almacharan	95	Anaarith	22
Acadia Prov.	159		130	Almanfor	139	Anah	98
Acamazan	201	Agag Princ. and Town	111,	Almeimas Fluv.	14, 31	Anashuc	178
Acenes grandes 124. --- peque-			116	Almeria	181	Anathon	21
nes	ibid.	Ageladia	131	Almon	24	Anatbarh	24
Acapules	180	Agilymba	119, 121	Almona	105	ANATOLIA	7
Acaras	207	Agmet	139	Alota Fluv.		Anca Fluv.	212
Accain	25	Agoli	114	Aloudia	140	Anchedira Isle	66
Accaron	26	Agotton	124	Althai Mount	42	Ancud Archipelago	215
Achan	53	AGRA Kingd. and City	62, 82	Aluncan	90	Andalusia New	201
Akem Kingd. and Town	57	Agrateda	117	Aly Fluv.	11	Andanagar	67
Achillas-Hill	25	Agreda	212	Alzete	15	Andes Mountains	210, 212.
Achiavel	84	Agro	112	Amadabat	62, 80, 81		213, 217
Achin	62	Aguacava	179	Amadia	33	Anemora	10
Acoma	177	Aguada Fort.	67	Amalekites	28	Anete	212
Acon	14, 21, 29	Aguilunda Lake	119	Amama	138	Aner	22
Akra Mount.	24	Aharas	91	Amama Fluv.	29	Angamale Kingd.	65
Acrabat	22	Abineli	65	Amanguchi	52	Los Angeles Prov.	181
Acrabbim	25	Abia	95	Amanus Mount	7, 14	Town	ibid.
Acre, or Acri	14, 21	Ai	24	Aman-zinden Kingdom and		Angelim	79
Acsu Lake in Natalia	7	Ajan Coast	113	Town	95	Angimi	110
--- Town in Tartary	41	Ajalon	25	Amara Prov. 111. Mount		Angel Territ. and Town	215
Adadremmon	22	Ajacabuck	9	and Town	112, 117	Angola Kingd.	119
Adama	25	Aidinelli Prov.	9	Amarumaya Fluv.	219	Angot	114
Adami	20	Aiducal Mount	147	Amalen in Abissinia	111	Angota Prov. and Town	112,
Adam's Mountain	58	Abbiar	9	--- in Zaara	130		119
Adar	26	Akra Kingd. and Town	124	Amasia Prov.	10	Angotina	112
Adarfa	23	Aladulia Prov.	10	Amatado	127	Angouri	7
Adazar Mount	38	Alagranza Isle	134	Amath	21	Angowan IL	115
Adca	134	Albany New	164, 165	Amathites Territ.	ibid.	Angra	127, 139
Adenduin Town and Territ.	139	Albemarle County	175	AMAZONIA	208	Angra dos Reyes	205
	139	--- River.	175, 176	Amazons Peop.	39	Anguillas Isl.	187
Addoa Ile	59	Adlena	132	Fluv.	229	Anian Straight	228

Anim



*An Index of Asia, Africa, and America.*

26	Accifer Isles	54	Acta in Japan	52	Bambra Dutchy	119, 120
122	Ad Fluv.	132	Avalon Prov.	172	Town, <i>ibid.</i>	
152	Adipiti	222	Angela	131	Bambouch-Kala	8
71	Agib Territ.	15, 20	S. Angulino	175	Bamoch-baal	18
26	Agnez	134	Arado	8	Banca Ill. and Town	57
124	Agryn	127	Avila.	212	Bancals	<i>ibid.</i>
157	Agutaden Isles	59	Aumara Ill.	184	Banda Ill.	54, 53
162	Animathaz	23	Augasia Prov.	32	Bander-abaffin	52
110	Arca	213	Auran	20	Bander-lyngo	<i>ibid.</i>
132	ARMENIA	35, 35	Aurantis Territ.	19, 20	Bandermassin	62
115	Amara	117	Auregabab	82	Eando Kingd. and Town	81
124	Amata Territ.	201	Amrith	66	Banians Sect	60
229	Amado	212	Axym Kingd. and Town.	124	Banish	23
14	Amant Country	228	Ayala Fluv.	8	Bankish Kingd.	83
107	Arnon Fluv.	13, 19, 31	Aynan Ill.	53	Bantachaia	55
121	Arnon Mount	17, Town 19	Azach	38	Bantam Kingd. and Town	57
26	Arctia, m	124	Azafi	138	Banten Ill.	53
159	Arbes	142	Azech	25	Banza	119
160, 171	Arer	19	Azecha	26	Baraba	97
17, 20, 22	Arerth	20	Azgar Prov.	140	Beranguerlis Lake	97
123, 124, 125	Arer Fluv.		Aznur	106	Baranja Fluv.	179
14, 20	Asphas	28	Azores Ill.	135	Barbada, or Barbuda Ill.	190
119	Aspica	113	Aztus	15, 26, 29	Barbadoes Ill.	191, 192
115	Amazon Kingd. and Town	72	Azuga	111	Barbanda	106
122, 123, 124	Asopore	79	Azama	113	BARBARY	136, 137, 138 and sequ.
219	Atimager Ill.	54			Barbasuco Bay,	143
201	Ata Ill. 54	57			Barbora	113
176	Aruma	23			Barca Desert, 131 Kingd.	144, 145. Town
174	Arundelen	157			Barcelor	63, 66
176	Asteran Prov.	32, 35			Bar-Damcha Lake	112
172, 175	Atulla	140			Bardes Territ. and Town	67
12	Arzina Fluv.	221			Barlovento Ill.	187
2	Alanchif	32			Barnagallo Kingd.	112
218	Alin-chamar	25			Baruche	62, 81
218	Ata	90			Barraboa	114
20	Acalon	15, 26, 29			S. Bartholomew Ill.	194
102	Arer	131			Baruti	14
102	Arerth	26			Bajaim, Coasts and City	80
116	Arerth	<i>ibid.</i>			Bajanitis Territ.	19
171	Arerth	23			Baffafouch Prov.	38
212	Arerth	26			Town	<i>ibid.</i>
121	Arerth	142			Basse Terre	187, 194
102	Arerth	26			Baffora	32
102	Arerth	142			Bajurra Fluv.	219
102	Arerth	26			Batabe Ill.	54
102	Arerth	142			Batenai Territ.	19
102	Arerth	26			Batavia,	57, 63
102	Arerth	142			Bathuel,	26
102	Arerth	26			Baticala Kingd. and Town	58, 63, 65.
102	Arerth	142			Baton Ill.	54
102	Arerth	26			Batta Dutchy and Town	119
102	Arerth	142			Batymena Kingd.	65
102	Arerth	26			Baxila Fluv.	121
102	Arerth	142			Bayur	14, 30
102	Arerth	26			Bayna Town and Territ.	82
102	Arerth	142			Baxos Judea,	115
102	Arerth	26			Baza	111
102	Arerth	142			Beach Kingd.	
102	Arerth	26			Eechria Prov.	105.
102	Arerth	142			Eechangil	7
102	Arerth	26			Beduins Peop.	95, 113



# An Index of Asia, Africa and America.

Berberies Peop.	55	Bider	57	Brum	124	Calanchi Peop.	42
Bergia Mount	42	Bilgis Peop.	127	Bachur Kingd.	42	Calpatin Ill.	59
Bergue	112	Bilata Ill.	54	Buckingham Country in Pen-	156	Calceci	82
Berianin Tribe	22	BILEDULGERID	130, 131, 132	yl.	84	Calvary Mount.	24
Berig. Ill.	422	Billap	173	Buckor Prov. and Town	84	Calvert	157
Benin Kingd. and Town	124	Bima Ill.	63	Eudemel	127	Camarens Fluv.	123
River	ibid.	Bimini Ill.	183	Buenos Ayres	207	Camars Isles	125
Ber. sej	105	Bimilipatan	62	Bugia Prov.	142, 146	CambaleT. and Riv.	175, 176
Bentio	23	Bintara Territ.	58	Town	142	Cambala Kingd.	62, 80
Beriz	139	Bijar	65	Bugas	124, 125	Bay and Town	80, 81
Berget	143	Bir	32	Eugub. Ill.	126	Cambalu	41
Begula Ill.	192	Biscay New	182	Eulaly	105	Cambura Prov.	112
Berar Kingd.	79	Biferta	143	Buler	132	Cambusia Kingd.	62, 71
Berice Fluv.	201	Bilnagar Kingd.	57, 68	Bulches Peop.	84	Town	71
Berdea Paj.	130	City	68	Bamas	124	Camalea	72
Kingd. and Town	ibid.	Bitlis	33	Banci	125	Camam	73
Berdin	71	Bizarras Ill.	185	Bunga Ill. and Town	52	Camper Kingd. and Town	57
Bergen County and Town	153	Bizam Prov.	112, 121	Bano Theves	105	Camul	41
Berit-Ar. Villen	95	Blanco Ill. 154. River	219	Buragrag	139	Camulian	50
Berim Prov.	20	Black Ill.	172	Burio	21	Camut	110
Berilla	127	La Bocca del Dr.	194	Burfa	7	CANADA	158
Berkley County	175	Bachura	41	Bafferet	97	Fluv.	ibid. & 160
Bermasier	92	Bachur	105	Buff	90	Canagreater	21
Bermudas Isles	173, 174	Balego	72	Butten's-Bay	157, 222	Of Galilee	ibid. & 27
Bernick	145	Bacemcala	120	Butua Kingd. and Town	117	Cananer Kingd.	63, 65
Berath	24	Bogia	124	Town	117	Town	65
Berjake	21	Bogla	127	Butuapa	114	Canara Prov.	65
Berjack	143	Bogota Prov. and Mount	201	Buzader Fluv. & Oppid.	132	Canarana Kingd.	72 Town ib.
Bernan Town and Lake	41	Boldia Kingd. and Town	72	Byfa Citadel	143	Canary Isles	152, 154
Berygeon	32	Bolli	7	Bzo	139	Cancheu	49
Befegua Kingd.	125	Bombay Ill.	62, 80	C.		Canfa Fluv.	78, 85
Befegua	119	Bomma	120	Caupi Territ.	207	Candahera	84
Bethanara on Jordan	18	Bona	142	El Cabo del Espiritu Santo	53	Candahar Prov. and Town	85, 90
Of Benjamin	24	Bonaire	207	De Bona Esperanza	118	Candalor	10
Bethany	25	Ban Andrea	145	De Las Aguas	ibid. De Infante	Canadera	81
Bethany Territ. and Vill.	25	Ban Ayre Ill.	194	ibid. De Tres Puntas	124	Candayil	50
Betharan	19	Bana Wjla Ill.	182	De Tres Frcas	141	Cande, y	53
Betharen of Ephraim	23	Boni	124	De Las Virgines	215	Cangan	53
Of Benjamin	24	Borca	120	De Vittoria ib.		Canerocora Fluv.	65
Bethera	22	Bordelong	71	Cabieel	25	Cangou	119
Bethera	26	Borgiu	131	Cabul Prov. in India	84	Cannowe	79
Beth-Dagm of Judah	26	Boriquem Ill.	187	Town ibid. Territ. in Pale-		Cano Kingd. and Town	125
Of Ather	21	Borneo Ill. and Town	56, 62	stine 21	Town ibid.	Canola	53
Bethel of Ephraim	23	Borno Desert and Kingd.	130	Cacambout Port	115	Canorein Ill. 80	Town ib.
Of Benjamin	24	Town ib. Lake	127, 129, 130	Caccin, am	72	Canton	49
Bethetath	21	Botes Rock	24	Caceres Bmaes	126	Cantoy Kingd. and Town	125
Bethera	24	Bofor	18	De Camarinha	53	Canvia	127
Beth-Jefimoth	18	Bjra	32	Caceres in Guinea	124	Carochen	49
Betheleharth	26	BOSTON in New Engl.	152	Cadonafcan	72	Caor Fluv.	60, 72
Bethlehem of Zabulon	21	Botevon	30	Cafates Prov. and Town	111, 121	Capaha	175
Of Judah	25	Burbon Ill.	115	Caffaria	117	Cap Breton Ill.	171
Bethwan Upper	23	Bourles	105, 122	Caffers Peop.	ibid.	Cape of Good Hope	118
— Lower	ibid.	Bouton Ill.	54	Cagway	125	Cape May County	163, Town 154.
Bethphage	25	Bowat Fluv.	175	Cagajm	53	— Of Three Points	124
Bethphyes	22	Boyla	127	Cajumalca	211	Three Forks	141
Bethphagar	18	Bozoch Territ.	10	Caticas Ill.	184	— Forward	
Bethsaida	19, 21	Bzrah of Manasseh	20	Caisung	48	215 -- Victory	215 -- Horn ib.
Of Galilee	28	In Idumæa	28	Calipatan	70	Capernaum	20, 22, 27, 28
Bethjames	25	Brachmans Peop.	60, 61	CAIRO Prov. and City	105	Capes Fluv.	131, 142
Bethlan	15, 22	Brama Kingd. and Town	72	Cairoan	145	Gulph and Town	144, 146
Bethhemesh of Naphthali	21	Bramins	60	Caifar in Natolia	10	Capja	142
Of Issachar	22	Brampre	79	In Palestine	15	Capul Ill.	53
Bethsur, ora	25	Brandy-wine River	166	Calabari	124	Caragoti	127
Bethul	26	Branti Fluv.	121	Calajata	95	Carania Prov.	9
Bthulia	21	BRASIL 202, 203, & seq.		Calamianes Ill.	53	Caranora Fluv.	41
Bevrut	14, 30	Brava Territ. and Town	114	Caldero	ibid.	Carania Ill.	80
Bezeli of Manasseh	22	Isle	128	Calecoulam Kingd.	55, Town ib.	Carantia Town and Lake	41
Of Judah	25	Bravo Fluv.	175	Caletour	69	Carapara	79
Bezer	18	Brema	72	Cali	211	Carapatan	67
Bezo	139	Bridge-Town	19	Calicut Kingd.	65, 66	Carasia Prov.	8
Bezar Fluv.	26	Brincalattre	78	California Ill.	177	Carasou Fluv.	11
Biafar Kingd. in Ethiopia	120	Bristol little	192	Calionbech Prov.	105	Carasu Fluv.	10, 11
— Town	ibid.	Britain New	157	El Calao de Lima	212	Carcad	69
— Kingd. in Guinea	126	Brodia	62	Callamacha	83	Carceiro	69
Bibrida Fluv.	204	Brower's Country		Calleada	81	Carduelia Kingd.	37
Bicanor	82	Brulli	122	Callebaf	124	Carfur	113
						Caribana Prov.	201, 208
						Caribbe Isles	145, 187
						Carier	



# An Index of Asia, Africa and America.

Ca. . . . .	200	Ca. . . . .	47	Chelapach Bay	162, 171	Chili Prov. & Fluv.	24
Ca. . . . .	117	Ca. . . . .	215	Chelapach Bay	21	Chilifia	37, 38
Ca. . . . .	22	Ca. . . . .	25	Chelapach Bay	25	Chilifia	20
Ca. . . . .	23	Ca. . . . .	21	Chelapach Bay	154	Chilifia	154
Ca. . . . .	212	Ca. . . . .	212	Chelapach Bay	172	Chilifia	212
CAROLINA 174, 175, 176		Ca. . . . .	121	Chelapach Bay	21	Chilifia	52
Ca. . . . .	174, 175	Ca. . . . .	72	Chelapach Bay	55	Chilifia	134
Ca. . . . .	171	Ca. . . . .	41	Chelapach Bay	53	Chilifia	175
Ca. . . . .	237	Ca. . . . .	55	Chelapach Bay	6	Chilifia	175
Ca. . . . .	237	Ca. . . . .	55	Chelapach Bay	71	Chilifia	131
Ca. . . . .	123	Ca. . . . .	51	Chelapach Bay	122	Chilifia	177
Ca. . . . .	21	CHALDIA	33	Chelapach Bay	15	Chilifia	115
Ca. . . . .	143	Chal	33	Chelapach Bay	117	Chilifia	119, 122
Ca. . . . .	21	Des Chalons Bay	151	Chelapach Bay	153	Chilifia	38
Ca. . . . .	27	Chalrag Kingd.	42	Chelapach Bay	43	Chilifia	52, 55
Ca. . . . .	231	Chamereux	42, 43	Chelapach Bay	171	Chilifia	55
Ca. . . . .	232	Chamerian P. . .	175	Chelapach Bay	35	Chilifia	62, 63, 65
Ca. . . . .	14, 111	Chamia	114	Chelapach Bay	52	Chilifia	71
Ca. . . . .	127	Chamia	49	Chelapach Bay	213, 214, 215	Chilifia	57
Ca. . . . .	127	Chamshir	21	Chelapach Bay	215	Chilifia	127
Ca. . . . .	127	Chamshir	49	Chelapach Bay	175	Chilifia	172
Ca. . . . .	127	Chamshir	105	Chelapach Bay	93	Chilifia	124
Ca. . . . .	162	Chamshir	17	Chelapach Bay	215	Chilifia	10
Ca. . . . .	162	Chamshir	13, 25	Chelapach Bay	43, 49	Chilifia	144
Ca. . . . .	20	Chamshir	84, 26	Chelapach Bay	43	Chilifia	215
Ca. . . . .	10	Chamshir	126	Chelapach Bay	43	Chilifia	58, 62
Ca. . . . .	24	Chamshir	52	Chelapach Bay	43	Chilifia	142
Ca. . . . .	37, 12, 30	Chamshir	79	Chelapach Bay	212	Chilifia	175
Ca. . . . .	127	Chamshir	65	Chelapach Bay	42	Chilifia	175
Ca. . . . .	212	Chamshir	65	Chelapach Bay	42	Chilifia	59
Ca. . . . .	126	Chamshir	49	Chelapach Bay	42	Chilifia	200
Ca. . . . .	62, 79	Chamshir	175	Chelapach Bay	42	Chilifia	201
Ca. . . . .	24	Chamshir	162	Chelapach Bay	42	Chilifia	201
Ca. . . . .	202	Chamshir	57	Chelapach Bay	52	Chilifia	37, 38
Ca. . . . .	193	Chamshir	13	Chelapach Bay	52	Chilifia	182
Ca. . . . .	11	Chamshir	33	Chelapach Bay	81	Chilifia	124
Ca. . . . .	125	Chamshir	41	Chelapach Bay	21	Chilifia	115
Ca. . . . .	215	Chamshir	112	Chelapach Bay	3	Chilifia	7
Ca. . . . .	51	Chamshir	107	Chelapach Bay	35	Chilifia	114
Ca. . . . .	127	Chamshir	193	Chelapach Bay	35	Chilifia	204
Ca. . . . .	127	Chamshir	152	Chelapach Bay	8	Chilifia	64, 65
Ca. . . . .	57	Chamshir	175	Chelapach Bay	50	Chilifia	44
Ca. . . . .	162	Chamshir	127	Chelapach Bay	21, 22	Chilifia	183
Ca. . . . .	41	Chamshir	41	Chelapach Bay	124	Chilifia	172
Ca. . . . .	65	Chamshir	25	Chelapach Bay	157, 222	Chilifia	230
Ca. . . . .	130	Chamshir	207	Chelapach Bay	127	Chilifia	62
Ca. . . . .	219	Chamshir	132	Chelapach Bay	134	Chilifia	160
Ca. . . . .	211	Chamshir	141	Chelapach Bay	124	Chilifia	53
Ca. . . . .	26	Chamshir	2, 79	Chelapach Bay	215	Chilifia	118
Ca. . . . .	212	Chamshir	65	Chelapach Bay	175	Chilifia	52
Ca. . . . .	210	Chamshir	62	Chelapach Bay	49	Chilifia	162
Ca. . . . .	201	Chamshir	66	Chelapach Bay	215	Chilifia	153
Ca. . . . .	122	Chamshir	84	Chelapach Bay	42, 53	Chilifia	12
Ca. . . . .	142	Chamshir	67	Chelapach Bay	43	Chilifia	142, 142
Ca. . . . .	72	Chamshir	42	Chelapach Bay	10	Chilifia	142
Ca. . . . .	142	Chamshir	145, 147	Chelapach Bay	57	Chilifia	138
Ca. . . . .	140	Chamshir	112	Chelapach Bay	51	Chilifia	159
Ca. . . . .	215	Chamshir	72	Chelapach Bay	179	Chilifia	150
Ca. . . . .	5	Chamshir	111	Chelapach Bay	50	Chilifia	175, 176
Ca. . . . .	201	Chamshir	49	Chelapach Bay	63	Chilifia	173
Ca. . . . .	22	Chamshir	114	Chelapach Bay	184	Chilifia	104
Ca. . . . .	25	Chamshir	21	Chelapach Bay	52	Chilifia	218
Ca. . . . .	177	Chamshir	104	Chelapach Bay	118	Chilifia	185
Ca. . . . .	54, 63	Chamshir	26	Chelapach Bay	25	Chilifia	200
Ca. . . . .	215	Chamshir	50	Chelapach Bay	179	Chilifia	ibid.
Ca. . . . .	30	Chamshir	33	Chelapach Bay	50	Chilifia	214
Ca. . . . .	67	Chamshir	143	Chelapach Bay	48, 50	Chilifia	41
Ca. . . . .	54	Chamshir	54	Chelapach Bay	155	Chilifia	38
Ca. . . . .	12	Chamshir	106	Chelapach Bay	124	Chilifia	124
Ca. . . . .	213	Chamshir	38	Chelapach Bay	72	Chilifia	12
Ca. . . . .	22	Chamshir	52	Chelapach Bay	55	Chilifia	213
Ca. . . . .	140	Chamshir	54	Chelapach Bay	49	Chilifia	213
		Chamshir	222	Chelapach Bay	68	Chilifia	213
		Chamshir	140	Chelapach Bay		Chilifia	213



# An Index of Asia, Africa and America.

Cadaba	201	Cushites	97	Delta Territ.	106, 122	Middle ib.	Upper 106
Cera Kingd.	57	Cusignares Fluv.	219	Demesor Prov.	105	Eilan	97
Cere	145	Cutteries Peop.	60	Demir-Capi	90	Eirack Prov.	91
Cerico	121	Cutumba	126	Denmark New	157	Eitbiad	139
Ceslen	124	Cyprus Isl.	12	Deppa	124	Elabass Prov.	78
Cumantin	124	Cyrinus	30	Derbent	90	Elam	87
Cio	200			Derna Fluv.	139	Elbeyan	15
Coromandel Coast	67, 68	D.		Dervasia	10	Elbours Mount	38
Crota Prov.	208	<b>D</b> Akerech, or Dabrath	22	Delaguadero Fluv.	183, 216	Elchaus Prov.	140
Crozzim	20, 28	Dabir of Gad	19	Town	ibid.	Eleale	18
Croze Cape	204	Of Simcon	26	La Desiderade Isl.	194	Elceffar	139
Croze Cape and Castle	124	Dabul	62, 67	Desiarta Isl.	54, 134	Eleacath	131
Croze Isl.	135	Dacati	106	Devils-Islands	173	Eleph	24
Croze Cape	65	Dacca	62, 79	Deusen	131	Elephantino Isl.	80
Croze Fluv.	60, 72	Dademi, ni	41	De Wit's Land	230	Elgiumha	138
Croze de Bomegens	124	Daddos	84	Dhafar	95	Elhabatchi	110
De Malegens	ibid.	Dagar	119	Diamante	215	Elhamma	144
Deerta	118	Daghestan Prov.	39	Diar-Bechir Prov.	31, 32	Elkabil	15
Costa Rica Prov.	183	Dagon Fort	23	Town	32	Elkath	21
Cotate	65	Dagva	110	DIARBECK	31 & sequ.	Elkodi	15, 24
Cotatus	37, 38	Dalanguer Mount	42, 83, 85	Diemen's Country		Ella	34
Cotomal Territ.	58	Dalmanutha	19	Diban	19	Elmadin	139
Cotigan	65	Damaon	81	Digge's Island	222	Elmala	105
Cotoniera Isl.	184	Damascus	13, 14, 29	Digur	130	Elmena	105
Couca	142	Dambea Prov. and Town	111, 112	Diglath Fluv.	37	El Media	142
Coul	152	Damiadee Fluv.	83, 85	Digligy-neur	58	Elon	25
Coul Fluv.	185	Damiata	105	S. Dimitri	8	Elpha	21
Coulam King. 63, 55 Town	65	Damma	21	Dimjat	105	Eltece	26
Coulour	68	Damola	110	Dinphoan	72	El Tor	97
COUNTRIES about the		Dampin	57	Dio Isle and City	81	Emacen	112
Fales	220, 221 & sequ.	Damut Prov. and Town	111, 112	Diul, or Diu	61, 85	Emander	138
Cuzzu	131	Dan Spring	20, 31	Doar Prov.	112	Emath Town 17 Prov.	20, 21
Cza	175	Territ. and Town	20, 26, 28	Dobas Prov. and Town	112	Emathæa Territ.	21
Cranganor Kingd.	63, 65	Tribe	26	Dobdal	117	Emaus	25
Town	65	Danagar	67	Doch Fort	23	Emboul	127
Craven County	174	Dancala in Nubia	110	Doer Fluv.	144	Emelcofena	106
River	175	Kingd. in Zanguebar	113	Dogazim Fluv.	67	Emenbade	83
Crevecoeur Fort	159	Dangar	119	Doyeron Fort	184	Emoui Isl.	49
Croze Cape	9	Daniel Isl.	73	Dolce Fluv.	182	Endecha	180
S. Croix Isl.	193	Dansburg	63	Dolfar	95	Endor of Issachar	22
S. Cruz de la Palma	133	Daphnis Fluv.	20	Doltabad	67	Of Manasseh	23
De Cuba	184	Dapyto	53	Dolusbaug Prov.	58	Endromit	8
La Nueva	213	Daranda	41	S. Domingo Fluv.	127	Engaddi Mount	25
De la Sierra	ibid.	Dardanelles Castles	8	Isle and Town	187	Town	ibid.
Cuamo Isl.	116, 122	Dardura	113	Dominica Isl.	189	Engannim	22
Cuasay	72	Darha Prov. and Town	132	Dongo	119	Engaza	119
Cuba Isl.	149, 184	River	ibid.	Dor	17	ENGLAND New	162, 163
Cucuram	66	Darien	200	El Dorado	202	English Plantations in Ame-	
Cudjembarich	15	Daroera	124	Dorchester County	167	rica	161, 162, & sequ.
Cuenca	212	Daubaha	41	Dothaim	21	Engroneland	221
Cuenchen	49	St. David's Fort	62, 69	Dover	173	Enhadda	22
Cuirag	48	Isl.	173	Doulpore	82	Ennon of Manasseh	22
Culiacan Prov.	179	Davis's Bay	157, 220, 221	Drake-Straight	194	Of Ephraim	23
Town	ibid.	Dauphin's Isl.	115	Dubdu	140	Epha	21
Cuma	54	Lake	160	Duccala Prov.	138	Ephta	22
Cumbava Isl. and Town	57	Daytatote	80	Ducha	84	Ephraim Forest	19
Cumbello	54	The Dea Sea	31	Durango	180	Tribe	23
Cumberland Isl.	157	Debaroa	112			Ephron of Manasseh	19
Bay	ibid.	Debera	25	<b>E</b>		Of Ephraim	23
Cumissa	117	Debir	26	Baida	131	Ephrata	25
Cuncan Kingd.	67	Debra-mariam Isl.	113	Ebal Mount	23	Equinoctial France	201
Cunchang	48	Dehsun	116	Ebensuef Prov. and Town	106	Erack-Aizem Prov.	91
Cundavera Fort	68	Deca Isl.	113	Edelano	176	Eraclea	143
Cundi	119	Decan Prov. 65 Kingd.	67	Edels Country	230	Erat	90
Curacao Isl.	194	Decapolis	28	Eden Garden	34	Ercoc	113
Curamo Town and Lake	184	Dedancans Peop.	97	Eder	25	Ereng-Abad	68
Curaray Fluv.	212	Dedes Mount	147	Edistow Fluv.	175, 176	Erie Lake	160
Curater Isl.	184	Degibeldara	113	Edom Territ.	28	Eriechronons Peop.	168
Curdistan Prov.	32, 35	Degir	130	Edomæi	ibid.	Erivan	35, 36
Curds Peop.	ibid.	Delaware Fluv.	164, 166	Edraï	19	Ermenick	35
Curiga	66	Bay	ibid.	Edzerbayan Prov.	91	Ermita	111
Curvan	50	Delgumuba	138	Efeso	9	Erquico	113
Cusa in Asia	32	Delly Prov. and City	83	Efza	139	Errif Prov. of Egypt	105
In Africa	110	Del Rio Isl.	200	Eglon	25	Of Morocco	149
Cuscheana	50			Egypt	104	— Mount	147
Cucfo	212			Lower	105	Erzerum	35
Cush Land	34, 95					Esben	18

Ejcon-



# An Index of Asia, Africa and America.

Eden, River	176	The Erythraean Sea	124	Gang Gulph	49	Gismalad	82	
Eden, River	22	Erma	12	Gargara Kingd. and Town	126	Gizaba	41	
Eden, River	111	Erma	92	Gargara Fluv.	52, 72, 85	Gibbeton	26	
Eden, River	111	Erma	172	Gargara	119	Gibbeton of Saul	24	
Eden, River	8	Erma	72	Gargara	45	Gibbeton Mount	97	
Eden, River	ibid.	Erma	105	Gargara K. De. and Town	131	Gilead	23	
Eden, River	121	FLORIDA	54, 135, 174, 175, 176	Gargara	142	Gibraltar Strait	177	
Eden, River	42	Florida in Long Island	173	Gargara Prov.	115	Gigeri	142	
Eden, River	137	New	153	Gargara	142	Giron Mount	24	
Eden, River	105	Erma	49	Gargara Mount	23	Giron Fluv. Mof. par. 34, 35, 36	42	
Eden, River	ibid.	Erma	ibid.	Gargara	142	Fluv. Tartar.	42	
Eden, River	117, 122	Erma	124	Gargara Kingd. and Town	66	Gilan Prov.	90	
Eden, River	176	Erma	49	Gargara	201	Giltha Mount	22	
Eden, River	26	Erma	127	Gargara	62, 64	Gilead Mount	17	
Eden, River	201	Erma	124	Gargara	25	Territ. 19 Town	ibid.	
Eden, River	153	Erma	51, 52, 62	Gargara	112	Gilgal	24	
Eden, River	201	Erma	118	Gargara	20	Gila	25	
Eden, River	26	Erma	115	Gargara	19, 20, 27	Gileb Isl. and Town	54	
Eden, River	157	Erma	134	Gargara	7	Gingi Princ.	57, 60	
Eden, River	159	Erma	ibid.	Gargara	15, 26, 29	Town	69	
Eden, River	25	Erma	124	Gargara	112	Giras Fluv.	149	
ETHIOPIA	107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855, 856, 857, 858, 859, 860, 861, 862, 863, 864, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 870, 871, 872, 873, 874, 875, 876, 877, 878, 879, 880, 881, 882, 883, 884, 885, 886, 887, 888, 889, 890, 891, 892, 893, 894, 895, 896, 897, 898, 899, 900, 901, 902, 903, 904, 905, 906, 907, 908, 909, 910, 911, 912, 913, 914, 915, 916, 917, 918, 919, 920, 921, 922, 923, 924, 925, 926, 927, 928, 929, 930, 931, 932, 933, 934, 935, 936, 937, 938, 939, 940, 941, 942, 943, 944, 945, 946, 947, 948, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 954, 955, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 964, 965, 966, 967, 968, 969, 970, 971, 972, 973, 974, 975, 976, 977, 978, 979, 980, 981, 982, 983, 984, 985, 986, 987, 988, 989, 990, 991, 992, 993, 994, 995, 996, 997, 998, 999, 1000							
Eden, River	176	The Erythraean Sea	124	Gang Gulph	49	Gismalad	82	
Eden, River	22	Erma	12	Gargara Kingd. and Town	126	Gizaba	41	
Eden, River	111	Erma	92	Gargara Fluv.	52, 72, 85	Gibbeton	26	
Eden, River	111	Erma	172	Gargara	119	Gibbeton of Saul	24	
Eden, River	8	Erma	72	Gargara	45	Gibbeton Mount	97	
Eden, River	ibid.	Erma	105	Gargara K. De. and Town	131	Gilead	23	
Eden, River	121	FLORIDA	54, 135, 174, 175, 176	Gargara	142	Gibraltar Strait	177	
Eden, River	42	Florida in Long Island	173	Gargara Prov.	115	Gigeri	142	
Eden, River	137	New	153	Gargara	142	Giron Mount	24	
Eden, River	105	Erma	49	Gargara Mount	23	Giron Fluv. Mof. par. 34, 35, 36	42	
Eden, River	ibid.	Erma	ibid.	Gargara	142	Fluv. Tartar.	42	
Eden, River	117, 122	Erma	124	Gargara Kingd. and Town	66	Gilan Prov.	90	
Eden, River	176	Erma	49	Gargara	201	Giltha Mount	22	
Eden, River	26	Erma	127	Gargara	62, 64	Gilead Mount	17	
Eden, River	201	Erma	124	Gargara	25	Territ. 19 Town	ibid.	
Eden, River	153	Erma	51, 52, 62	Gargara	112	Gilgal	24	
Eden, River	201	Erma	118	Gargara	20	Gila	25	
Eden, River	26	Erma	115	Gargara	19, 20, 27	Gileb Isl. and Town	54	
Eden, River	157	Erma	134	Gargara	7	Gingi Princ.	57, 60	
Eden, River	159	Erma	ibid.	Gargara	15, 26, 29	Town	69	
Eden, River	25	Erma	124	Gargara	112	Giras Fluv.	149	
ETHIOPIA	107, 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 129, 130, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 139, 140, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188, 189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 194, 195, 196, 197, 198, 199, 200, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 208, 209, 210, 211, 212, 213, 214, 215, 216, 217, 218, 219, 220, 221, 222, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 229, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 268, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 291, 292, 293, 294, 295, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 337, 338, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393, 394, 395, 396, 397, 398, 399, 400, 401, 402, 403, 404, 405, 406, 407, 408, 409, 410, 411, 412, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 422, 423, 424, 425, 426, 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 432, 433, 434, 435, 436, 437, 438, 439, 440, 441, 442, 443, 444, 445, 446, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488, 489, 490, 491, 492, 493, 494, 495, 496, 497, 498, 499, 500, 501, 502, 503, 504, 505, 506, 507, 508, 509, 510, 511, 512, 513, 514, 515, 516, 517, 518, 519, 520, 521, 522, 523, 524, 525, 526, 527, 528, 529, 530, 531, 532, 533, 534, 535, 536, 537, 538, 539, 540, 541, 542, 543, 544, 545, 546, 547, 548, 549, 550, 551, 552, 553, 554, 555, 556, 557, 558, 559, 560, 561, 562, 563, 564, 565, 566, 567, 568, 569, 570, 571, 572, 573, 574, 575, 576, 577, 578, 579, 580, 581, 582, 583, 584, 585, 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591, 592, 593, 594, 595, 596, 597, 598, 599, 600, 601, 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611, 612, 613, 614, 615, 616, 617, 618, 619, 620, 621, 622, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 637, 638, 639, 640, 641, 642, 643, 644, 645, 646, 647, 648, 649, 650, 651, 652, 653, 654, 655, 656, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 665, 666, 667, 668, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 676, 677, 678, 679, 680, 681, 682, 683, 684, 685, 686, 687, 688, 689, 690, 691, 692, 693, 694, 695, 696, 697, 698, 699, 700, 701, 702, 703, 704, 705, 706, 707, 708, 709, 710, 711, 712, 713, 714, 715, 716, 717, 718, 719, 720, 721, 722, 723, 724, 725, 726, 727, 728, 729, 730, 731, 732, 733, 734, 735, 736, 737, 738, 739, 740, 741, 742, 743, 744, 745, 746, 747, 748, 749, 750, 751, 752, 753, 754, 755, 756, 757, 758, 759, 760, 761, 762, 763, 764, 765, 766, 767, 768, 769, 770, 771, 772, 773, 774, 775, 776, 777, 778, 779, 780, 781, 782, 783, 784, 785, 786, 787, 788, 789, 790, 791, 792, 793, 794, 795, 796, 797, 798, 799, 800, 801, 802, 803, 804, 805, 806, 807, 808, 809, 810, 811, 812, 813, 814, 815, 816, 817, 818, 819, 820, 821, 822, 823, 824, 825, 826, 827, 828, 829, 830, 831, 832, 833, 834, 835, 836, 837, 838, 839, 840, 841, 842, 843, 844, 845, 846, 847, 848, 849, 850, 851, 852, 853, 854, 855, 856, 857, 858, 859, 860, 861, 862, 863, 864, 865, 866, 867, 868, 869, 870, 871, 872, 873, 874, 875, 876, 877, 878, 879, 880, 881, 882, 883, 884, 885, 886, 887, 888, 889, 890, 891, 892, 893, 894, 895, 896, 897, 898, 899, 900, 901, 902, 903, 904, 905, 906, 907, 908, 909, 910, 911, 912, 913, 914, 915, 916, 917, 918, 919, 920, 921, 922, 923, 924, 925, 926, 927, 928, 929, 930, 931, 932, 933, 934, 935, 936, 937, 938, 939, 940, 941, 942, 943, 944, 945, 946, 947, 948, 949, 950, 951, 952, 953, 954, 955, 956, 957, 958, 959, 960, 961, 962, 963, 964, 965, 966, 967, 968, 969, 970, 971, 972, 973, 974, 975, 976, 977, 978, 979, 980, 981, 982, 983, 984, 985, 986, 987, 988, 989, 990, 991, 992, 993, 994, 995, 996, 997, 998, 999, 1000							
Eden, River	176	The Erythraean Sea	124	Gang Gulph	49	Gismalad	82	
Eden, River	22	Erma	12	Gargara Kingd. and Town	126	Gizaba	41	
Eden, River	111	Erma	92	Gargara Fluv.	52, 72, 85	Gibbeton	26	
Eden, River	111	Erma	172	Gargara	119	Gibbeton of Saul	24	
Eden, River	8	Erma	72	Gargara	45	Gibbeton Mount	97	
Eden, River	ibid.	Erma	105	Gargara K. De. and Town	131	Gilead	23	
Ed								



# An Index of Asia, Africa and America.

Grand	104	Hamadan	91	Hippus	19, 27	Jair	10
Grand	114	H. m. l. l. Mount.	58	Hirribigaa	175	Jalac	110
Grand Ill.	57	Hunchen	49	Hispahan	91	Jaloffes Peop.	127
Guadalajara Ad.	179	Hunchuan	140	Hispaniola Ill.	149, 187	Jallamaka	82
Guadalajara City ib. &	211	Hummamet	143, 145	Hutachi	205	Jamaica Ill.	149, 184
Guadalajara Ill.	174	Hummab	21	Hixites Peop.	12, 19	Jamaica Prov.	52
Guadalupe Fluv.	131, 144	Hummans Temple	145	Hozigan	50	Jamama Prov. and Town	55
Guadalupe Kingd. and Town	127	Grove	143	Hoziking	48	Jamba Prov. and Town	82
Gualeor Kin. and Town	21, 22	Hun 7 Oppid. & Fluv.	144	Humb, or Hong Fluv.	45	Jamban Gallas Peop.	119
Guamanga	212	Hunabon	21	Huamcheu	49	Jambe Kingd.	57, 52
Guano Ill.	54	Hunchung	48	Hoden	127	James County in Virginia	171
Guarayche Lake	215	Honyan	49	Hochien	49	Town	ibid.
Guarabani Ill.	145, 124	Huan, or Hanan	33	Hogare	78	Town in Barbadoes	192
Guarima Ill.	124	Huamane	83	Hokien	50	- In Jamaica	186
Guamora	212	Hama	25	Holcalt Prov.	112	James-Ille	157
Guayra Ill.	ibid.	Haroeth	20	Holland New	229	River	168, 171
Guayvita Lake	201	Harrington	157	Holm	25	Jamnia	26
Guardafoni Cape	112	Hartford County	171	The HOLY LAND	14, 17	Janagar	85
Guageffen	138	Hatcora Pra.	139, 147	Holy Haven	135	Janeiro Fluv.	205
Guafucha	140	Hajenath	25	Honduras Prov.	182	Jannizari Cape	11
Guafutan Prov.	181	Hajer	21	Honen Prov. and Town	48	Janoe	23
Guatemala Ad. 181 Prov.	182	Hajlanabjal	84	Harsi	28	Jachen	49
Guaxaca Prov. and Town	181	Hajjera Port	80	Hareb Mount	97	Japan Isles	51
Guayr Fe. and Town	205	Havana	184	Horma	26	Japan	57
Guayllara	207	Havilah Territ.	34, 95	Hormata	56	Japhie	21
Guber Kingd. and Town	126	Hayan Ill.	51, 53	Horn Cape	215	Jaquette	81
Guchen	48	Hea Prov.	138	Horsepot Territ.	58	Jaramath	22
Guebelhaman	95	Hebal Mount.	23	Horse-River	129	Jarephel	24
Gueguera	127	Hebeleser	127	Horuro	212	Jarez Territ.	207
Gueguere	111, 121	Hebrews Peop.	17	Hotcourly Prov.	58	Jarim Fluv.	127
Guevezhan	182	Hebron Town	15, 25	Hottentots Peop.	117, 118	Jarmuth	25
Guedidia Fort	60	Mount.	25, 27	Hotteracurly Prov.	58	Jesa	18
Guenga Fluv.	60, 63, 85, 86	Heeron	25	Huchen	49	Jakes, or Jafques	92
Guer Cape	147	Heden	34	Hudson's Bay	157, 222	Jatrippa	96
Guerquela	131	Henriemes	26	Straight	157, 220, 222	Java Ill.	57
Guga	111	S. Helena Isles	118	River	164, 165, 173	Jazer	19
Guharan	141	Heleph, or Eleph	24	Hugat	114	La Jazzo	10
Guicay Fluv.		Heleph, or Heleb	20	Hugley	62	Ibicut Territ.	207
Guiana Pra.	202	Heliobast Prov. and City	78	Huid Nijar Fluv.	127	Town	ibid.
Goldan	120	Helkath	21	Humeledag	132	Ibiturna Territ.	207
Guiga Ill.	54	Helon of Reuben	18	Hunain	141	Ichmin	106
Gulker	48	Of Dan	25	Huquang Prov.	48	Idaicar	67
Guinea	126	Hemid	7	Hurons Peop.	159	Idevacal Mount.	147
GUINEA	123, 124	Hemcheu	49	Lake	160	Idumaa	28
New	225	Hemz	14, 30	Hustrebit Prov.	113	S. Jean Ill.	171
Guinda Fluv.	202	Hendowns Pra.	84	Hyanan	95	Jebaan	22
Guligian Ill.	54	City	85	Hyo	52	Jehrael	20
Gumamapi	ibid.	Henrico County	171	Hyracanium Castle	23	Jebus	24
Gundruck Fluv.	78	Henry's-Cape	168			Jebusites Peop.	18, 24
Gurpowder-River	168	Town	171			Jechmaan	23
Gurgien	37	Hephron	19			Jedo City	52
Gurjist in Prov.	ibid.	Herac	97			Jegwonga	124
Gurgitta Castle	81	Heremiten Eylandt	220	J Ahbak Fluv.	19, 31	Jehanabad	83
Guria, el Kingd.	38	Hermon Mount.	17, 19, 28	Jakelezait	105	Jehoshaphat Valley	25
Guzarat Kingd.	80	Herrington	157	Jabesh-Gilead	19	Jeha-Moal Territ.	42
Guzula Pra.	138	Heshbon	18	Jabnia	26	Jekanan	78
		Hesperides Gardens	140, 145	Jacancury	70	Jeloure Castle	81
		Islands	184	Jacatra	57	Jema Fluv.	121
		Hesron	26	Jaciah	95	Jemena Kingdom and Town	
		Heth	ibid.	Jadia	110		95
H Abat Prov.	140	Heth	ibid.	Jacn	183	Jenupar Prov.	83
H. Habbia	110	Hethites Peop.	18, 25	Jafz, or Jassa	15, 23, 26	City	ibid.
Habaza	113	La Heve	160	Jasanafapatan	58	Jephleti	23
Habelth Prov.	113	Hevai	19	Jassarim	141	Jercon Waters	26
Hackingeack Fluv.	164	Hevoihattai Territ.	58	Jaffriapatam	63	Jericho Plains	23, 27, 34
Hadanija	95	Hian	41	Jagannet Prov.	78	City	24
Haddaggia	140	Hiddekel Fluv.	37	S. Jago Ill. and Town	128	Jerimoth	25
Hadramu	95	Hienking	50	De Cuba 184	Del Estero 207	JERSEY New	163, 164
Hadramut Prov.	95	Hierak-Agemi Prov.	91	De Guatemala 182	In Ja-	JERUSALEM	15, 24, 27
Hagala	117	Hierak-arabi Prov.	32	maica 185	De Olancho 182	De	85
Hagiaz Prov.	95	Hierapolis	8, 30	De los Valles 181, 212	De	Jesselmere Prov.	ibid.
Habar-afcalb Fluv.	31	Hierro Ill. and Town	133	los Montanos	212	Town	ibid.
Hai	24	Hihelzeit	105	S. Jago de Cile Territ.	215	Jeiso-Land	43, 228
Haiakan Pra.	84	Hilan	97	City	ibid.	Jessual Kingd.	78
Hain	25	Himbaz	49	Jagog Territ.	42	Jethela	25
Hair Defart and Town	130	Hinagua Ill.	184	Jagur	25	Jether	ibid.
Hulati	35	Hindows Peop.	59, 60, 74, 75	Jahafah	18	Jethon	18
Hamacoles	12	Hinnam-Valley	25	Jaic Fluv.	41, 42	Jethen Prov.	52
						Jewisk.	



# An Index of Asia, Africa and America.

Thames River	115	J-ich	-	Kazakh	151	Lapaz	1
Thames Valley	22	Jikhun of Suez	100	Kazanka	120	Lachen	5
City of Hissar	100	Jila Larga	12	Kaznan	21	Lake, or Lake	2, 12
At Jilch	25	ISPAHAN	51	Kazna	72	Lalib	22
At Jilch	122	Israelites Peop	17, 12, 35	Kedar Town	19	Lamun Kingd.	111
At Jilch	122		92, 97, 106	Tents	21	Lampada Ill.	12
At Jilch	171	Jordan Tribe	21	Kedron Fluv.	24, 31	Lancaster County	171
At Jilch	22	Town	22	Valley	25	Lancarg Fluv.	40
At Jilch	66	Jadymon Mount	21	Kells	26	Lancetta Ill. and Town	122
At Jilch	21	Jappa	217	Kellen	127	Land of Promise	17
At Jilch	57	Jasta Town and River	215	Kelli Fluv.	121	Of Raphaim	11
At Jilch	122	Jasta	20	Kemi Peop.	71	Of Uz	22, 23
At Jilch	122	Jasta	217	Kerebeck Fluv. & Oppid.	153	Landimire	8
At Jilch	215	S. Jasta de Caraba	279	Kent County in Pentyv.	155	Large Ill. and Town	12
At Jilch	100	Jasta de Caraba	212, 215	In Maryland	157	Largia	82
At Jilch	2	Jasta de Caraba	211	In Virginia	171	Lanabada Ill.	177
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	127	Kerli	67	Lar Kingd. and Town	22
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	121	Kerman	92	Larache	121
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	212	Kesh	41	Larcadia	144
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kethven	21	Largia	72
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	121	Ketorghan	171	Lash	13
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kherman Fort.	92	Lijach	90
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	14	Khoemus Fort.	92	Laudichia	8, 14
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	15, 17, & sequ.	Kichin	40	Laudieja	14
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	27, 28, 29	Kiam, or Kiang Fluv.	45, 48	S. Laurence's Is.	115
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kiamin	49	River	120
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kiangi Fort.	49	Gulph	ibid. & 171
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kigan	ibid.	Lauwack	71
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	ibid.	Laza	212
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienan	ib.	Lays Peop.	72
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienchen	ib.	S. Lazarus's Archipelago	52
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	ib.	Lazara Fluv.	11
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	52	Leatung Fort.	50
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	49	Leatung	ibid.
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	50	Lebeda	144
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	48	Lebra	26
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	42	Lebs Fluv.	215
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	50	Lebuffi	7
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	65	Lebi Cape	117
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	65	Leba	72
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	220	Leeman	10
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	49	Leeward Isles	144
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	45	Legio	21
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	220	Lelunda Town	210
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	50	River	120
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	25	Lepta Del. & T. in Zaara	15
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	25	Town in Tunis	143
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	ibid.	Lept de Neomagna	122, 123
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	ib.	Lake	123
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	12, 21	Lepeda	144
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	15, 21, 21	Lerr Ill.	12
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	41	Lelem	20
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	48	Lewennen County	220
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	127	S. Lewis's Fort	211
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	22	Lihanus Mount.	14, 17, 19
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	ibid.		50, 51
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	14	Libnah	26
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	60	Lilya	145, 146, 147
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	63	Licht Fluv.	8
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	12	Lienchen	49
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	92	Lienchen	42, 49
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	83	Liger	71
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	36, 37	LIMA	212
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	91	Limijj	12
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	0	Limira Ill.	143
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	0	Linaga Ill.	124
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	0	Linda	12
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	0	Lingan	48
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	0	Lirkiam	49
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	0	Limanc	48
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	157	Luring	ibid.
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	95	Lurias	12
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	25	Loan da S. Paulo	120
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	20	Is.	ibid.
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	224	Large Kingd. and Town	12
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	112	Lala Ill.	144
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	83	Lalabado	24
At Jilch	159	Jasta de Caraba	25	Kienham	0		144



# An Index of Asia, Africa and America.

<i>Ischia</i>	124	<i>Magad. Fluv.</i>	142	<i>Marm. Lake</i>	35	<i>Mel. Fluv.</i>	131, 144
<i>Isigman</i>	41	<i>Magarim</i>	19	<i>Mary's Territ.</i>	82	<i>Oppid.</i>	132
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	57	<i>Mahmud</i>	139	<i>Mas. al-palir</i>	141	<i>Mellera</i>	141
<i>Isometan</i>	53	<i>Mahmetta</i>	142	<i>M. an</i>	41	<i>Mellipon</i>	69
<i>Isle in New England</i>	123	<i>Mahsajikur</i>	35	<i>Mata Kingd.</i>	65	<i>Mellila</i>	141, 135
<i>New Town in Carolina</i>	175	<i>Malaguana Ill.</i>	184	<i>Martaban Kingd.</i>	71	<i>Meller</i>	175
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	173	<i>Malir Fluv.</i>	141, 142	<i>Town and Bay</i>	ibid.	<i>Melinas Kingd. and Town</i>	125
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	ibid.	<i>Malup Fluv.</i>	215	<i>S. Martha Gr. and Town</i>	212	<i>Melipilla</i>	215
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	215	<i>Maluazai</i>	111, 117	<i>River</i>	212, 211	<i>Mell. Kingd. and Town</i>	125
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	ibid.	<i>Maluma</i>	27	<i>Martiana</i>	9	<i>Mell.</i>	23
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	150	<i>Mapumba</i>	120	<i>S. Martin Ill.</i>	154	<i>Melland</i>	50
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	115	<i>Makeram Prov.</i>	60	<i>Martinez Ill.</i>	ibid.	<i>Memphis</i>	105, 106
<i>Isle of Ill.</i>	85	<i>Town</i>	ibid.	<i>Martin's Island Ill</i>	153, 172	<i>Menar Fluv.</i>	65, 71, 72
<i>S. Lucia</i>	124	<i>Makkedah</i>	25	<b>MARYLAND</b>	155, 157	<i>Menares's Kingd.</i>	57
<i>Isle</i>	212	<i>Malabar Prov.</i>	64, 65		153	<i>Town</i>	ibid.
<i>Lucat Kingd.</i>	225	<i>Sambeech</i>	163	<i>S. Mary's County</i>	157	<i>Merchus</i>	115
<i>Lucayra Ill.</i>	183	<i>Malabrig. Ill.</i>	54	<i>City</i>	ibid. & 158	<i>Mendica Territ. and Town</i>	215
<i>Lucayos Isles</i>	145, 123, 184	<i>Malacca Kingd. and Town</i>	64, 71	<i>Town in Jamaica</i>	175	<i>Mereyza</i>	82
<i>Lucien</i>	50	<i>Malaguatta Prov.</i>	124	<i>Murru Fluv.</i>	201	<i>Mengreha Prov.</i>	37
<i>S. Lucia Ill.</i>	154	<i>Malano</i>	56	<i>Malachtets Colery</i>	152	<i>Kingd.</i>	53
<i>Lucm Ill.</i>	53	<i>Malatiah</i>	10	<i>Masbat Ill.</i>	53	<i>Mennith</i>	19
<i>Luc</i>	115	<i>Malatib</i>	54	<i>Masalat</i>	55	<i>Mencasia Prov.</i>	115
<i>Lucians Peop.</i>	ibid.	<i>Malayo</i>	59	<i>Meanequa Ill.</i>	115	<i>Mentefeli Prov.</i>	9
<i>Lucien</i>	40	<i>Maldiva Isles</i>	ibid.	<i>Malcata</i>	55	<i>Mephat</i>	18
<i>Lucin</i>	48	<i>Male-attellm Isles</i>	ibid.	<i>Maffha of Gad</i>	19	<i>Meromer</i>	153
<i>Lucy</i>	71	<i>Malemba Territ.</i>	111	<i>Territ.</i>	21	<i>Mercat Territ.</i>	42
<i>S. Luis de Los Rios</i>	180	<i>Kingd.</i>	115	<i>Of Benjamin</i>	23	<i>Merdin</i>	21
<i>De el Moanhan</i>	204	<i>Malecur Kingd.</i>	220	<i>Maffargan</i>	119	<i>Mergen Fluv.</i>	65
<i>Lucia</i>	54	<i>Malapir</i>	60	<i>Maffaya Mount.</i>	123	<i>Merida</i>	181
<i>Lucia Ill. and Town</i>	53	<i>Mal's Madra Isles</i>	59	<i>Mahim Fluv.</i>	124	<i>Merze Ill.</i>	55, 111, 121
<i>Lucia Fluv.</i>	140	<i>Malvay Kingd.</i>	81	<i>Majogian</i>	55	<i>Meran, on Waters</i>	30
<i>Lucia</i>	23, 24	<i>Mamie-Oak</i>	25	<i>Mataman Kingd.</i>	118	<i>Mesita</i>	117
<i>S. Lucia Isles</i>	129	<i>Mamunna</i>	132	<i>Matan Isles</i>	53, 54	<i>Mechasipi Fluv.</i>	159
<i>Lydda</i>	23	<i>Manadela</i>	112	<i>Mataya Prov.</i>	208	<i>Mefesfar Mount.</i>	35
		<i>Manabattens Ill.</i>	155, 172	<i>Mateltes Isles</i>	54	<i>Megran</i>	141
		<i>Manapatam Port</i>	115	<i>Matoran Kingd. and Town</i>	57	<i>Mesopotamia</i>	33
		<i>Manapar</i>	70	<i>S. Matho Town</i>	175	<i>Mesjke</i>	23
		<i>Manar Ill.</i>	58	<i>River</i>	ibid.	<i>Mesja</i>	133
		<i>Manajpa Fluv.</i>	154	<i>Matinga</i>	120	<i>Messal</i>	21
		<i>Manasseh Tribe</i>	15, 22	<i>Matals</i>	ibid.	<i>Mesulomara</i>	145
		<i>Manath Castle</i>	23	<i>Matanwach's Isle</i>	173	<i>Meta</i>	113
		<i>Manatians Peop.</i>	211	<i>Matulipatan</i>	62, 58, 69	<i>Metelino Ill. and Town</i>	11
		<i>Manchepatam</i>	68	<i>Mavelagenga Fluv.</i>	58	<i>Metit Territ.</i>	42
		<i>Mandaa Kingd.</i>	81	<i>Machycare</i>	65	<i>Meron Fluv.</i>	72
		<i>Mandranella Kingd.</i>	72	<i>Pr. Maurice's Isle</i>	115	<i>Mevat Kingd.</i>	78
		<i>Town</i>	ibid.	<i>River</i>	154	<i>Mevu Ill.</i>	128
		<i>Manfelow Prov. and Town</i>	155	<i>Mautali Prov.</i>	58	<i>Mexicana</i>	152
		<i>Mangalw</i>	63	<i>Murmalnaker Prov.</i>	41, 42	<b>MEXICO Kingd.</b>	178, 179, & sequ.
		<i>Mangata Kingd.</i>	65	<i>May Ill.</i>	128	<i>New Kingd.</i>	176, 177
		<i>Margeral</i>	81	<i>Maytta Ill.</i>	115	<i>Audience 180. Prov.</i>	ibid.
		<i>Mangrefia</i>	9	<i>May River</i>	175	<i>City</i>	ibid.
		<i>Manicapatam</i>	79	<i>Mazalig</i>	132	<i>Lake</i>	ibid. & 121
		<i>Manilla Isles and Town</i>	53	<i>Mazagan</i>	141	<i>Mezemma</i>	140
		<i>Mannajara Port</i>	115	<i>Mazanderan Prov.</i>	90	<i>Mezzab Town and Territ.</i>	131
		<i>Mann Ill.</i>	54	<i>Mazua Ill.</i>	113	<i>Mimus Fluv.</i>	159
		<i>Mannow</i>	70	<i>Mazma</i>	141	<i>Fort</i>	ibid.
		<i>Mansfeld Ill.</i>	157	<i>Meaco</i>	52	<i>Mary Fluv.</i>	204
		<i>Manfara Prov. and Town</i>	105	<i>Menta</i>	85	<i>S. Michael Ill.</i>	135
		<i>Mania Fluv.</i>	124	<i>Mecavar Ill.</i>	113	<i>River 162</i>	Town 152
		<i>Mamicut</i>	35	<b>MECCA Princip.</b>	95	<i>Midello</i>	8
		<i>Manza Prov.</i>	112	<i>City</i>	ibid.	<i>Middleborg 173</i>	Ill. 221
		<i>Maen Town and Defart</i>	25	<i>Meched</i>	90	<i>Middlesex in N. Jersey</i>	143
		<i>Mara</i>	20	<i>Meches</i>	139	<i>In Virginia</i>	171
		<i>Maracanda</i>	41	<i>Mechoacan Prov.</i>	180	<i>S. Miguel de Tucuman</i>	207
		<i>Maracaybo Lake</i>	200	<i>Town and Lake</i>	ibid.	<i>De la Riera</i>	212
		<i>Maragnon Fluv.</i>	219	<i>Meson Fluv.</i>	71, 72	<i>Millanea Madra Isles</i>	59
		<i>Marafa</i>	126	<i>Medebath</i>	18	<i>Mindano Ill. and Town</i>	53
		<i>Mareb Fluv.</i>	121	<i>Medaneans Peop.</i>	97	<i>Mindwa Ill.</i>	54
		<i>Mareth</i>	25	<i>Medemema</i>	25	<i>Mingrela</i>	69
		<i>Margarita Ill.</i>	149, 154	<i>Medina in Asia</i>	95	<i>Mirie Prov. and Town</i>	102
		<i>S. Maria Ill.</i>	115, 135	<i>In Africa</i>	138	<i>Mirikella</i>	90
		<i>Cape</i>	219	<i>Mediner Fives</i>	105	<i>Mirak. t</i>	55
		<i>Marioco Fort</i>	54	<i>Medra Kingd. and Town</i>	120	<i>Mir. Pao</i>	212
		<i>Marigalante Ill.</i>	104	<i>Meghreli Prov.</i>	38	<i>Nam Fluv.</i>	141
		<i>Marimake Fluv.</i>	163	<i>Mejajarcem</i>	25	<i>Namra</i>	ibid.
		<i>Marmagen</i>	142	<i>Mela</i>	142	<i>Miffal</i>	
		<i>Marmira Ill.</i>	8	<i>Melajf</i>	9		



*An Index of Asia, Africa and America.*

[illegible]



*An Index of Asia, Africa and America.*

[illegible]



*An Index of Asia, Africa and America.*

[illegible]



•

A



*An Index of Asia, Africa and America.*

[illegible]



# A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

Town in New Jersey	154	Zagan, ain	37	River	ibid. & 122	Ziden	95
Yorkshire Ill.	173	Zagari Fluv.	8, 11	Zarephat	29	Zigida	110
Yusbeck Prov.	41	Zagatha Prov.	41, 75	Zaria	139	Zikhig	26
Yerack Prov.	32	Zaghaira	110	Zarvas	144	Zilia	140
Ytata Territ.	122	Zagihara	110, 130	Zeb Prov.	131	Zimbala Ill.	143
Yucatan Prov.	181	Zagham	142	Zedaya	117	Zimbaoe	117
Yumeta Ill.	183	Zagato	177	Zedico	144	Zimbra	ibid.
Yunnan Prov. and City	48	Zacuatla Fluv.	181	Zegzeg Kingd. and Town	126	Zin Defart	97
		Zama	112	Zeila	113	Zif Town and Defart	25
		Zambaza Town	115	Zeland New	229	Ziz Fluv.	129
		River	122	Zelu	140	Town	130, 132
Z A A R A	129, 130	Zambra Lake	112	Zembla Nova	224	Zizi Mount	147
Zab	32	Zamua	212	Zephala Kingd.	117	Zear	25
Zabulan Tribe	21	Zanfara Kingd. & Town	126	Zet Prov. and Town in Abissi-	111	Zoara	144
Town	ibid.	ZANGUEBAR	113, 114	nia In Monamotapa	117	Zocotara Ill.	113
Zacatecas Prov. and Town	185	Zanhaga Defart and Town	129	Zeth Defart	125	Zofala Kingd.	117
Zachaj Lake	117, 122	Zanne	25	Zetta	120	Zona	26
Zacher	114	Zanzibar Ill.	115	Zeu Defart and Wood	110	Zuermziga Defart	129
Zacheri Kingd.	37	Zarzora	144	Zeybo	187	Town	ibid.
Zaffa Prov.	114	Zaporaco	179	Zhas Fluv.	139, 140	Zulfa	91
Zaffna	142	Zara, or Zaire Lake	112	Zibit Kingd. and Town	95	Zungaar Straight	43
Zaffan Prov. and Town	112	Town	119	Zibith	106	Zur Defart	97
Lake	ibid.						

## T A B L E O F

The Ancient *Latin* Names of Places and People, contain'd  
in this System of GEOGRAPHY.

[NOTE. Where the Order of the Pages is interrupted, the Figures have an Asterisk \* affix'd to them; and those that belong to the Second Part, viz. Asia, Africa and America, are distinguish'd by an Obelisk †.]

A.	Aclium	414	Æqui	288	Albanopolis	414	
	Acumincum	406	Aeria Insula	424	Albanum	290	
A	Acusio	122	Æsernia	* 296	Albintemilium	262	
Ballaba	37	Adane	† 10	Æsica	38	Albius Mons	406
Abdera	433	Ad Anjam	23	Æsis Fluv.	253	Alcidonia	* 293
Abela Lyfania	† 29	Alabere	† 35	Æstræis	412	Alethum	51
Abellinum	* 293	Adonis Fluv.	† 30, † 31	Æthalia Inf.	302	Aleria	301
Abila	† 29	Ad Pontem	28	ÆTHIOPIA	† 109,	Aletium	297
Abilene	ibid.	Adria	275, 276, * 295	† 110 & seq. Inferior	† 121	Alexandria Ægypti	† 105
Abone	18	Adrianopolis	433	Sub Ægypto	ibid.	Syriæ † 14, † 30	Troadis † 8
Aborigines	3, 254	Adriaticum Mare	276	Æthusia Inf.	† 143	Allobroges	233, 247
Abrievanus Fluv.	51	Adramyttum	† 8	Ætna Mons	299	Allobrogum Insula	123
Abjorus Inf.	ibid.	Adrumetum	† 143, † 145	AFRICA † 103, 104, & seq.		Almena	414
Abfyrcides Insula	279	Ad Statuas Colossas	398	Propria † 146	Carthaginer-	Almopia	412
Abjytium Inf.	ibid.	Aduatica Tungorum	145	sis ibid. Proconularis	ibid.	Alme	39, 317
Abula	313	Æcea, ana	* 296	Agatha	115	Alenefus Inf.	427
Abus Æstuarium	34	Ægialia	419, 424	Agelacum	29	Alpes Montes	253
Abylus, os	† 434	Ægida	272	Agendicum Senonum	79	Cotie	251
Abyla Mons	320, † 140	Ægina Inf.	427	Agionum	107	Graia & Penins	60, 247
Acalene	† 33	ÆGYPTUS	106	Aglymna	† 121	Maritima	60
Acaranania	414	nemos ibid. Inferior	ibid.	Agriadinus	† 82	Alphateina	* 294
Acci	322	Media ibid. Superior	† 107	Agragar Urbs & Fluv.	209	Alpheus Fluv.	419, 421
Accdum	273	Ælia Capitolina	† 24	Agrigentum	ibid.	Alteum	* 296
Acernum	* 293	Æmate	430	Alani	304	Aluta Fluv.	440
Achaia	415, 419	Æmarbia	412	Alauna Flu. 51	Urbs Gallie	Alybe Mons	† 140
Achelous Fluv.	414	Æmia Regio	295	Alauni Ostium	13	Amalpus	* 293
Acherontia, tas	* 294	Æmonia	272	Alaunus	39	Amantia	* 295
Acelhene	† 36	Æmaria Inf.	202	Alba Helvetiorum	116	Amanus Portus	310
Acem	† 14	Æmna	278	Julia 404	Longa	Mons	† 11
Acritas Promonterium	420	Æoli Gracie	297	Pompeia	264	Amasia	† 10
Acroceraunii Montes	279, 414	Æolia Insula	301	Albana	† 39	Amathus	† 12
Acr-Cynthia, Arx	423	Æolia Aræ	† 9	Albania	412, † 39	Amathusia	ibid.
Acr-pilis Arx	417					Ambianum	



A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

[illegible]



# A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

<i>Adrianum</i>	256	<i>Calpurnia Lucenses</i>	311	<i>Catana, ins.</i>	299	<i>Campestris</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Adriada Fluv.</i>	55	<i>Eracarum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Catini</i>	51	<i>Trachetis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Adriam</i>	41	<i>Calpurnia</i>	297	<i>Catti</i>	157, 185, 182	<i>Citannum</i>	30
<i>Adriaticus Fluv.</i>	354, 377, 442	<i>Calliope</i>	† 18	<i>Cattiacellani</i>	7	<i>Cicabri</i>	233, 237, 332, 338
<i>Adriaticus Tiberius</i>	434	<i>Calliope Inf.</i>	427	<i>Catura</i>	† 85	<i>Cimbrica Cheroneus</i>	331, 338
<i>Cimnerius</i>	444	<i>Calliope-flum</i>	421	<i>Caturastinium</i>	25	<i>Cincrii</i>	† 300
<i>Adriatic</i>	412	<i>Calpe Mons</i>	315	<i>Caucasus Mons</i>	† 38, † 50	<i>Cimmeria Paludes</i>	444
<i>Adriatic</i>	325	<i>Urbs</i>	320		† 83 † 26	<i>Cimmerium</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Adriatic</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Cama</i>	† 52	<i>Capei</i>	55	<i>Cimbricus Bosphorus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>
<i>Adriaticum</i>	35	<i>Cameledunum</i>	23	<i>Caonu</i>	9	<i>Cinobus Inf.</i>	280, 426
<i>Adriatic</i>	13	<i>Cambrianum</i>	34	<i>Cauris Inf.</i>	427	<i>Circus in Promont.</i>	302
<i>Adriaticum</i>	25	<i>Cambrianum</i>	25, 26	<i>Ceycus Fluv.</i>	8	<i>Cirta, ins. Julia</i>	† 142
<i>Adriaticum</i>	31	<i>Cambri</i>	37	<i>Cyllrus, or Fluv.</i>	† 11	<i>Cirta</i>	249
<i>Adriaticum</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Carcinum</i>	293	<i>Cecropia</i>	417	<i>Claudiopolis</i>	† 7
<i>Adriatic Inf.</i>	279	<i>Carnius</i>	† 12	<i>Celadon Fluv.</i>	410	<i>Cladus Inf.</i>	426
<i>Adriaticum</i>	35	<i>Carnissus Fluv.</i>	421	<i>Celcer</i>	8	<i>Clagnum</i>	13
<i>Brentium</i>	297	<i>Campani</i>	284	<i>Celcius Fluv.</i>	51	<i>Clagha Capia</i>	† 91
<i>Adriatic Britannia</i>	7	<i>Campania Felix</i>	253, * 269	<i>Celica in Gallia</i>	50	<i>Clazumene, &amp;</i>	† 9
<i>Hibernia</i>	55		† 270	<i>In Hispania</i>	44	<i>Clelia Folia</i>	275
<i>Adriatic</i>	327	<i>Campi Catalaunici</i>	75, 113	<i>Celticorum Promont.</i>	303, 312	<i>Clelia</i>	231
<i>Adriaticum</i>	123	<i>Secalaunici 77 Lapidei</i>	118	<i>Celtiberia</i>	304, 312	<i>Clelia</i>	† 9
<b>BRITANNIA</b>	3	<i>Campanum</i>	109	<i>Cemerellum</i>	251	<i>Clelia</i>	332, 340
<i>Fluv. Cataractis</i>	7	<i>Canania Inf.</i>	† 132	<i>Cemerex</i>	423	<i>Codanua Inf.</i>	340
<i>Maxima Cataractis</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Candida Capa</i>	51	<i>Cerethum</i>	301	<i>Codanus Sinus</i>	339, 355, 356
<i>Prima ibid. Secunda ibid.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Canganum Promont.</i>	43	<i>Cenobis Ostium</i>	8	<i>Cochylia</i>	† 29 † 30
<i>Valentia ibid. Tarta</i>	52	<i>Cangi</i>	32	<i>Ceramani</i>	265	<i>Cochyl</i>	272
<i>Belates Patus</i>	90	<i>Canenium</i>	23	<i>Cerematum</i>	93	<i>Cochis</i>	† 38
<i>Belatium</i>	258	<i>Canphum Ostium Nili Fluv.</i>		<i>Cereres</i>	247, 250	<i>Colles Surrentini</i>	* 300
<i>Briata</i>	277		† 122	<i>Centumcella</i>	291	<i>Colaps Magnus</i>	† 142
<i>Briatieri</i>	60	<i>Cantalari</i>	304	<i>Cephalonia Inf.</i>	279, 424	<i>Colcia, zia</i>	393
<i>Brandisium</i>	297	<i>Cantalaticum Mare</i>	310	<i>Cephalidis</i>	298	<i>Colonia Agrippina</i>	185
<i>Brutii</i>	254, * 293	<i>Canta</i>	51	<i>Cephissus Fluv.</i>	416	<i>Allobrogum</i>	243
<i>Badini</i>	399	<i>Cantenna</i>	† 141	<i>Cenamicus Sinus</i>	† 9	<i>Angulia</i>	277
<i>Bulua</i>	429	<i>Cantiam Prov. 7. Promont.</i>	17	<i>Ceramus</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Augusta Arva Patensis</i>	420
<i>Bulleum Silurum</i>	41	<i>Caplerus Promont.</i>	427	<i>Cerania</i>	† 12	<i>Acerisium</i>	321
<i>Burdegala</i>	127	<i>Capitolinus Mons</i>	288	<i>Ceranii Montes</i>	414	<i>Britannia</i>	23
<i>Burgundia</i>	58	<i>C. padua</i>	† 10	<i>Ceretanum Jugum</i>	316	<i>Cincordia</i>	* 301
<i>Cajurana</i>	101, 103	<i>Captaria Inf.</i>	302	<i>Cerne Inf.</i>	† 115	<i>Constantia</i>	292
<i>Transjavana</i>	103	<i>C. picea Inf.</i>	<i>ibid.</i>	<i>Atlantica</i>	† 134	<i>Decumanorum</i>	114
<i>Burium</i>	41	<i>Captus Fluv.</i>	† 35, † 37	<i>Cerres</i>	51	<i>Julia Bonna</i>	185
<i>Buthoe</i>	429	<i>Captia</i>	* 292	<i>Certesi</i>	† 146	<i>Julia Pijana</i>	283
<i>Buthrotum, us</i>	414	<i>C. cassum</i>	115	<i>Cervia</i>	295	<i>Maritima</i>	121
<i>Butus</i>	429	<i>C. dachy Montes</i>	† 36	<i>Cetubica</i>	328	<i>Metallensis</i>	319
<i>Byblus</i>	30	<i>C. dachy</i>	† 9	<i>Chalera</i>	† 33, † 34	<i>Pacensis</i>	319
<i>Byssa Arx</i>	† 143	<i>Carmania</i>	† 92, † 93	<i>Chaboras Fluv.</i>	† 33	<i>Patricia</i>	320
<i>Byzacena</i>	† 145	<i>Carni</i>	272	<i>Mons</i>	† 35, † 93	<i>Secundarum</i>	120
<i>Byzantium</i>	454	<i>Carnatium</i>	93	<i>Chalcedon</i>	† 7	<i>Senensis</i>	284
		<i>Carsanum</i>	367	<i>Chalcidice</i>	† 30	<i>Colophon</i>	† 9
		<i>Carpates Montes</i>	364	<i>Chalcidices</i>	295 * 299	<i>Colossæ</i>	† 8
		<i>Carpateus Mons</i>	402	<i>Chalcidicia</i>	412	<i>Colthone</i>	36
		<i>Inf. &amp; Urbs</i>	† 12	<i>Chalcis</i>	427 † 30	<i>Comagena</i>	† 30
		<i>Carpentaria</i>	120	<i>Chalcitis</i>	† 33	<i>Comaria extrema</i>	† 65
		<i>Carpertani</i>	317, 318	<b>CHALDÆA</b>	† 33	<i>Combreclonium</i>	24
		<i>Carræ</i>	33	<i>Chaladitis</i>	† 35	<i>Comenses</i>	265
		<i>Canthagenii</i>	145	<i>Chalybon</i>	† 13, † 30	<i>Comum</i>	265
		<i>Carthago</i>	† 143, † 145	<i>Chalybmitis</i>	† 30	<i>Complutum</i>	319
		<i>Nova</i>	321	<i>Chamia</i>	414	<i>Compla</i>	293
		<i>Carylus</i>	427	<i>Chattani</i>	† 146	<i>Concana</i>	311
		<i>Cosinam</i>	292	<i>Chelamates</i>	421	<i>Concani</i>	55
		<i>Casius, aut Cassius Mons Sy-</i>		<i>Cheroneus Aurea</i>	† 70	<i>Concordia Colonia</i>	* 301
		<i>ria † 30 Arabia</i>	† 97	<i>Cimbrica</i>	331, 338	<i>Condate Rhedorum</i>	88
		<i>Cassia Pyle</i>	† 91	<i>Tawica</i>	442, 443	<i>Condatum</i>	32
		<i>Cassii Pop.</i>	† 93	<i>Urbs</i>	443	<i>Condercum</i>	36
		<i>Cassiam Mare</i>	† 37, † 38	<i>Cherulci</i>	60	<i>Confluentes</i>	187
		<i>Cassius Mons</i>	† 36	<i>Chios, us Inf.</i>	† 11	<i>Crimbrica</i>	327
		<i>Cassaniti</i>	96	<i>Cibisum</i>	284	<i>Congratia</i>	38
		<i>Cassiope</i>	279	<i>Chiatras Mons</i>	† 93	<i>Conoviam</i>	43, 44
		<i>Cassius</i>	† 30	<i>Choromithena</i>	† 92, † 93	<i>Corovius Fluv.</i>	44
		<i>Cassiterides Insula</i>	2	<i>Chorvius Fluv.</i>	† 29	<i>Consa</i>	* 301
		<i>Cassellari</i>	315	<i>Chrynes Fluv.</i>	364, 371	<i>Consedice</i>	70
		<i>Cassellum Cottorum</i>	189	<i>Chryspolis</i>	435	<i>Consentia</i>	* 302
		<i>Morinorum</i>	133	<i>Chryarrhus</i>	† 14	<i>Conforani</i>	111
		<i>Cassia Plata 51 Constantia</i>	70	<i>Chalrus Fluv.</i>	430	<i>Constantia</i>	200
		<i>Exploratorum</i>	38	<i>Cibotus</i>	† 8	<i>Constantia Colonia</i>	292
		<i>Regina</i>	202	<i>Ciceris Villa</i>	* 252	<i>Contestani</i>	317, 321
		<i>Cassimena</i>	† 7	<i>Cidamusi</i>	† 145	<i>Contra</i>	111
		<i>Catalanum</i>	--	<i>Cilicia</i>	† 10		



A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

[illegible]



# A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

Novempopulani 253 Sequania ib. Subalpina 252, 256	Tegula 253 Transalpina 55, 253, 272	Viennensis 253, 272	Gallipolis 27	Gallugraia 7	Gamaia 25	Gangamela 7	Gangarides 78	Ganges Fluv. 6, 72, 85	Gangeticus Sinus 78	Gangetes 330	Garama 35	Garamai 7	Garamantes 145	Garianum 24	Gariensis Ostium 25	Garcelli 247	Gasionum 24	Gauzaria 93	Gauzanitis 33	Gauzena 28	Gebrasia 83, 92, 93	Gelerfes 259	Genabum 92, 97	Geneseritis Lacus 30	Gepidia 440	Gergaria 105	GERMANIA Inferior 125	Prima 60, 175	Secunda 7	Germanicia 30	Gerum Promont. 147	Gerunda 315	Gescribate 90	G E T Æ 430, 440	Getara 39	Getuli 145	Glanateva Capillatorum 119	Glandata, te 7	Glanoventa 39	Glavicus Sinus 9	Glevum 18	Glotta Inf. 51	Gnidus 9	Gnostus 425, 426	Gobannium 41	Godanis 340	Gamaia 35	Gordene, iene 35	Gordiei Populi Montes 7	Gordium 8	Gorgades Insula 128	Gorgon Inf. 302	Gorgus Fluv. 37	Gortyna 425	Gothi 60, 254, 304	GRÆCIA 410	Magna 254, 289	Grampius Mons 47, 151	Granianum Promont. 300	Granicus Fluv. 8, 11	Gratianopolis 122	Gravice 291	Guta, i 330	Gymnesia Insula 322	II.	Habitancum 30	Hadria 276, 295	Hamus Mons 432, 433	Haliacmon Fluv. 419	Halicarnassus 0	Halis Fluv. 11	Hamastus 37	Hammanita 145	Hammoniaci Regio 7	Hammonis Templum 7	Nemus 145	Hebrus Fluv. 52	Helada Inf. 52	Helades aut Helrides Inf. 52	Hecatompolis 424, 425	Hecatompylus 51, 93	Heili 330	Helicon Mons 418	Heliopolis 29	H. E. L. L. A. S. 415	Hellepontus 433	Hellasi 330	Helvetii 233	Helcia Recina 293	Helvii 116	Helvici 113	Hemattus Mons 417	Hereti 254	Hephastides Insula 301	Heraclea Ponti 7	Hispania 320	Heracleoticum Ostium 122	Herbanum 291	Herculeum Pictum 147	Hercule Promontorium 9	Italia 295	Herculis Manzi Portus 262	Hermus Mons 9	Hernici 288	Hesperidani 146	Heruli 254	Hesperia 253	Ultima 304	Hesperides Insula 128, 124	Horti 142, 145	Hesperium Cornu 127	Hetruria 253, 281, 291	Hexamilion 423	Hiera Insula 301	Hiera Petra 425	Hierapolis 8, 30	Hieron Promontorium 55	HIEROSOLYMA 15, 24	Hilleviones 330	Hippo, on Regius 142	Hippas, us 19, 27	Hirpini 293	Hispalis 320	HISPANIA 303	Britannica 303	Citerior 304	Tarraconensis 303	Ulterior 303, 304	Horvordene 36	Horelli 51	Hortanum 291	Humnus 39	Hydaspes Fluv. 86	Hydrussa Inf. 280, 427	Hydruntum 297	Hypsa Inf. 121	Hypasus Fluv. 86	Hyrcania 92, 93	I.	Jacca 317	Jadera 278	Jamna 323	Janiculus Mons 288	Japygium Promont. 279, 297	Jatinum Meldarum 79	Jarrinum 394	Jaxarte 42	Jaxartes, es Fluv. 42	Jazyges Metanaita 393	Iberi 298, 304	Iberia Europa 304	Asia 37	Iberni 55	Iberus Fluv. 304	Icaria Inf. 12	Iceni 7	Ichnisa Inf. 300	Iciani 25	Ida Mons Cretæ 425, 426	Phrygia 8, 11	Idubeda Mons 306	Idumæa 17, 28	Idumæi 28	Idumani Fluv. Ostium 23	Ierna Inf. 52	Iernus Fluv. 55	Igeditu 327	Igilgili, ium 142	Igilium Inf. 302	Iguvium 294	Iza Fluv. 51	Ierda 316	Iergetes 315, 317	Iissus Fluv. 416	Ilium 8	Iovis 321	Iliu Inf. 302	Iluo 111	Ilergetes 315	Illyris 114, 322	Illyricum 278, 405, 406, 428	Illyricus Sinus 413	Imus Mons 42, 60, 85	Imbros Inf. 428	Imum Pyrenai 110	Inachus Fluv. 419, 423	Inarime Inf. 302	INDIA 95, 61	Intra Gangem 63	Extra Gangem 7	Indigetes 315	Indus Fluv. 60, 85, 86	Indultria 264	Inferum Mare 254	Ingena Abrincanturorum 71	Ingire 33	Insulres 264	Insula, Ericannorum 52	Magna 1	Interamna, ia Umbria 292	Interamna Samnitum 295	Interacrea 292	Iones 79	Ionia 424, 9	Joppe 15, 23, 25	Jordanis, es Fluv. 31	Iria 412	Iria Flavia 311	Iris Urbs 25	Flav. 10, 11	Ijanium Promont. 55	Iaura 10	Iica Fluv. 9, 41	Iica Danmoniorum 7	Iichalus 11	Iichia aut Iicha 302	Isteno 10	Iilvi 272	Iicria 253	Iilropetis 432	Isticus Sinus 14, 30	Istus 10	Istium 34	ITALIA 253	Ituna Fluv. 37	Itura 28	JUDÆA 14	Jugum Corvetanorum 316	Julia Casarea 141, 146	Fidentia 267	Pietas 272	Julias 19, 28	Juliabona 70	Juliomagus 94	Julium 216	Julium Præsidium, 328	Justinopolis 272	Jute 332	Juverna 52	L.	Abbana 33	Labrus 55	Labro 284	Lacademon 421	Lacertani 315	Lachia 420	Laconicus Sinus 421	Lactodorum 20	Lactorum, ura 109	Lacus Thrasimienus 293	Lactani 315	Lavi 256	Lampascus 8	Langunum 44	Laodicea Phrygia 8	Scabiosa 14, 30	Syria 7	Laodice 30	Lapithia 12	Lapurdum 110	Lappones, aut Lappii 330	Larissa 415	Latini 254, 288	Latium 253, 288	Novum 290	Latobriges 233	Lavatra 35	Laudunum 86	Lauranus Fluv. 55	Laureacum 204	Laus Pompeii 266	Lebedus 9	Lebrnia 263	Lechæus Portus 423	Legedia 71	Legolium 94	Legio Germanica 314	Lalanonius Fluv. 51	Lelegia 421	Lemanis 17	Lemnos Inf. 427	Lemovicum 108	Leons Castrum 44	Leoponticum Vallis 237	Lepinus Mons 288	Leptis Magna 144	Parva 143	Lerina Inf. 121	Lero Inf. 7	Leros Inf. 12	Lesbos Inf. 11	Lestrigones 298	Lethæus Fluv. 426	Leucadia Inf. 424	Leucorum 41	Lenci Montes 426	Leucopibia 51	Leucosia 12	Libanus Mons 14, 17, 30	Libnius Fluv. 55	Libo-
---	-------------------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--------------	-----------	-------------	---------------	------------------------	---------------------	--------------	-----------	-----------	----------------	-------------	---------------------	--------------	-------------	-------------	---------------	------------	---------------------	--------------	----------------	----------------------	-------------	--------------	-----------------------	---------------	-----------	---------------	--------------------	-------------	---------------	------------------	-----------	------------	----------------------------	----------------	---------------	------------------	-----------	----------------	----------	------------------	--------------	-------------	-----------	------------------	-------------------------	-----------	---------------------	-----------------	-----------------	-------------	--------------------	------------	----------------	-----------------------	------------------------	----------------------	-------------------	-------------	-------------	---------------------	-----	---------------	-----------------	---------------------	---------------------	-----------------	----------------	-------------	---------------	--------------------	--------------------	-----------	-----------------	----------------	------------------------------	-----------------------	---------------------	-----------	------------------	---------------	-----------------------	-----------------	-------------	--------------	-------------------	------------	-------------	-------------------	------------	------------------------	------------------	--------------	--------------------------	--------------	----------------------	------------------------	------------	---------------------------	---------------	-------------	-----------------	------------	--------------	------------	----------------------------	----------------	---------------------	------------------------	----------------	------------------	-----------------	------------------	------------------------	--------------------	-----------------	----------------------	-------------------	-------------	--------------	--------------	----------------	--------------	-------------------	-------------------	---------------	------------	--------------	-----------	-------------------	------------------------	---------------	----------------	------------------	-----------------	----	-----------	------------	-----------	--------------------	----------------------------	---------------------	--------------	------------	-----------------------	-----------------------	----------------	-------------------	---------	-----------	------------------	----------------	---------	------------------	-----------	-------------------------	---------------	------------------	---------------	-----------	-------------------------	---------------	-----------------	-------------	-------------------	------------------	-------------	--------------	-----------	-------------------	------------------	---------	-----------	---------------	----------	---------------	------------------	------------------------------	---------------------	----------------------	-----------------	------------------	------------------------	------------------	--------------	-----------------	----------------	---------------	------------------------	---------------	------------------	---------------------------	-----------	--------------	------------------------	---------	--------------------------	------------------------	----------------	----------	--------------	------------------	-----------------------	----------	-----------------	--------------	--------------	---------------------	----------	------------------	--------------------	-------------	----------------------	-----------	-----------	------------	----------------	----------------------	----------	-----------	------------	----------------	----------	----------	------------------------	------------------------	--------------	------------	---------------	--------------	---------------	------------	-----------------------	------------------	----------	------------	----	-----------	-----------	-----------	---------------	---------------	------------	---------------------	---------------	-------------------	------------------------	-------------	----------	-------------	-------------	--------------------	-----------------	---------	------------	-------------	--------------	--------------------------	-------------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------	----------------	------------	-------------	-------------------	---------------	------------------	-----------	-------------	--------------------	------------	-------------	---------------------	---------------------	-------------	------------	-----------------	---------------	------------------	------------------------	------------------	------------------	-----------	-----------------	-------------	---------------	----------------	-----------------	-------------------	-------------------	-------------	------------------	---------------	-------------	-------------------------	------------------	-------



# A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua Mons</i>	410	<i>Marebia</i>	432	<i>Neapolis It. It.</i>	* 200
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 2	<i>Mareia Inf.</i>	† 144	<i>Palaestina</i>	† 15, † 23
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua Fluv.</i>	442, 444	<i>Marethias Inf.</i>	† 56, † 111, † 121	<i>Africa</i>	† 144
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Meroe Jr.</i>	† 56, † 111, † 121	<i>Nema:</i>	424
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mervia</i>	43	<i>Nemayus, am.</i>	115
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mesembria</i>	432	<i>Nemetes</i>	154
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Melopotamia</i>	32	<i>Nemetocerra</i>	130
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Melana, e</i>	† 129	<i>Nen Fluv.</i>	27
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Melaphia</i>	* 254	<i>Neraca</i>	† 17
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Melaniacus Sinus</i>	421	<i>Nesidion</i>	63
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Melagrinia</i>	† 146	<i>Neomagus Belgia</i>	109
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Meladunum</i>	319	<i>Gallia</i>	123
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Metapontus</i>	297	<i>Nepeta, tes, te</i>	251
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Methone</i>	420	<i>Neptunus Fl.</i>	250
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Methia</i>	† 11	<i>Nepitum</i>	252
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Milsum</i>	† 2	<i>Nerigon</i>	335, 344
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Miletus</i>	† 9	<i>Nesum Promont.</i>	312
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Milecom, is</i>	† 142	<i>Nesum</i>	209
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mimallus Inf.</i>	426	<i>Nica</i>	† 7
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mimallus, is</i>	116	<i>Nicephorium</i>	† 33
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Minsi</i>	† 96	<i>Nicomedia</i>	† 7
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mireia Promont.</i>	* 292	<i>Nicopolis Epiri</i>	414
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mircha Mons</i>	415	<i>Mafia</i>	432
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mylere</i>	† 11	<i>nae</i>	† 25
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mycetium</i>	127	<i>Thracia</i>	453
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Madina Fluv.</i>	55	<i>Nidum</i>	41
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Madara</i>	70	<i>Nigleri</i>	† 145
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Moesia Superior</i>	430	<i>Niger Fluv.</i>	† 127
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Inferior</i>	432	<i>Nigritia</i>	† 145
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mina</i>	44, 45	<i>Nilus Fluv.</i>	† 121, † 122
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mirabilia</i>	45	<i>Ninus</i>	† 32, † 35
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mirveda</i>	ibid.	<i>Niphates Mons</i>	† 33, † 30
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mirzas Portus</i>	262	<i>Nisaa, aut Nijla</i>	417
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misium</i>	38	<i>Nisibis</i>	† 33
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Miscamli</i>	88	<i>Nittriges</i>	107
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mividunum</i>	9	<i>Nitrata</i>	† 140
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misini</i>	† 133	<i>Nizaria Inf.</i>	† 133
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misli</i>	379	<i>Nidus Fluv.</i>	51
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Mickici Montes</i>	† 36	<i>Nola</i>	* 292
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misimacum</i>	275	<i>Nomades</i>	† 94
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misungi</i>	312	<i>Nemi Aegyptii</i>	† 107
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misla</i>	405	<i>Nenacis Mons</i>	419
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	268	<i>Norba Casarea</i>	319
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	424	<i>Noreia</i>	207
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	426	<i>Nrici</i>	192
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	412	<i>Nricum</i>	201
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 9	<i>Nricum Promont.</i>	55, 56
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 10	<i>Nevantes</i>	47
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 11	<i>Nevantum Cherfoneus</i>	51
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 12	<i>Nicaria</i>	266
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 13	<i>Necempagi</i>	291
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 14	<i>Necempulania</i>	60
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 15	<i>Nicemlia</i>	412
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 16	<i>Nicidunum</i>	87, 93
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 17	<i>Vadicassum</i>	97
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 18	<i>Naviomagus Belgarum</i>	169
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 19	<i>Britannia</i>	15, 17
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 20	<i>Nemetum</i>	194
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 21	<i>Nuba, i</i>	† 170, † 127
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 22	<i>Nuceria</i>	292, * 204
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 23	<i>Numantia</i>	313
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 24	<i>Nymphaeus Fluv.</i>	† 35
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 25		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 26		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 27		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 28		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 29		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 30		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 31		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 32		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 33		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 34		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 35		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 36		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 37		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 38		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 39		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 40		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 41		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 42		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 43		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 44		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 45		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 46		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 47		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 48		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 49		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 50		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 51		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 52		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 53		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 54		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 55		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 56		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 57		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 58		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 59		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 60		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 61		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 62		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 63		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 64		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 65		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 66		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 67		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 68		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 69		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 70		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 71		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 72		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 73		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 74		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 75		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 76		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 77		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 78		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 79		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 80		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 81		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 82		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 83		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 84		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 85		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 86		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 87		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 88		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 89		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 90		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 91		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 92		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 93		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 94		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 95		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 96		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 97		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 98		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 99		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 100		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 101		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 102		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 103		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 104		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 105		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 106		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 107		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 108		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 109		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 110		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 111		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 112		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 113		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126	<i>Mantua</i>	† 1	<i>Misra</i>	† 114		
<i>Lugdunum</i>	† 126						



# A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

Ceta Mons	415	Perseum	145	Phryges	† 8		
Cygie	415	Pergamum	272	Phrygia Major	† 8		
Claudi	271	Pachinus, i. Mons	35	Minor	ibid.		
Claudia	112	Parisi	81	Piceni	254	R	Andarna 41
Cleisium	413	Parva	† 8	Picentini	* 253 * 255	R	Raphia † 27
Clerus	420	Parma	257	Picram	253, 253		Ratis 27
Clema	34	Parnassus Mons	417	Picra	412, † 30		Ratigum 95
Cluppo	327	Parnassus Mons	418	Picus Mons	ibid.		Ratibius 41
Circula Portus	251	Paropamisus Mons	† 85	Pinn	* 255		Ratona 255
Cleopatra Fl.	421	Paropamisus	† 92 † 93	Pincus Mons	288		Ratus Fluv. 56
Olympus Mons	415	Pars Inf.	426	Pindus Mons	414		Ramara 238
Urbs	† 10	Parthaps	* 290	Pintia	313		Rarari 233
Olympia Inf.	427	Parthenopolis	214	Pisa	283		Rarus Inf. 97
Opi	254	PARTHIA	† 92 † 93	Pisani	ibid.		Reate 292
Cyprium	273	Parthys	412	Pisaurum	294		Rebus Mons 415
Cyprian Tanicene	† 143	Paryades Mons	† 36	Pisidia	† 10		Reche 52
Cibelia	412	Patara	† 10	Pistorium	283		Regia 55
Cibellus Mons	431	Patavium	276	Pityulae Inf.	323		Regium 222
Orcades Insule	2, 51, 52	Pathmeticum Nilum Nili Fluv.	† 122	Placentia Aramantiam	257		Regium Julium 268
Orcas Promont.	51	Pathmus Inf.	† 12	Plania Inf.	121		Lepidi ibid.
Orcelis	317	Patra	420	Platæ	416		Regni 7
Orchre	† 34	Patricia Colonia	320	Pæni	† 29 † 145		Regnum 13
Crechmenus	415	Parrus	404	Pola	* 272		Regulbari 17
Oderices	7	Paustypus Mons	* 291	Polyxos Inf.	427		Reii, seu Reii Apollinarii 117
Orellis	412	Pax Augusta	319	Pomona Inf.	52		Remurum Caput 73
Oretani	317	Julia	328	Pompeopolis 312 Cilicia	† 10		Reugimium 51
Oretum	310	Pelagusa	412	Paphlagonia	† 7		Rha Fluv. 380
Orobii	278	Pelagus Barbaricum	† 121	Pomptinus Ager	290		Rhætia Inferior 267
Orontes Fluv. † 14 † 30	† 31	Pelagi	283	Lacus	ibid.		Prima 240 Propria 241
Orygium	291	Pelagicus Sinus	415	Pons Ælii	39		Vindelicia 201, 233
Oribia	† 30	Peligni	254, * 295	Pontes	20		Rheba 55
Ouma	* 295	Pellon Mons	415	Ponti Euxini Mater	444		Rhedones 88
Otygia Inf.	292	Pella Macedonia	413	Pontia Inf.	302		Rhegium Julium * 295
Ota	317	Celestia	† 19 † 28	Pontus	† 7		Rhemi 60
Oci	254, * 292	Peloponnesus	419	Populonium	284		Rhera Inf. 427
Osimii	60	Pelorum Promont.	298	Porphyris Inf.	279		Rhinocorura † 17, † 27
Ossa Mons	415	Pelusiaceum Nilum Nili Fluv.	† 122	Portus Adurni	16		Rhitymna 426
Olia	290	Pelusium	† 105	Amanus	310		Rhium Promont. 418
Othma	23	Peneus Fluv.	415	Phalareus	417		Rheda, de 316
Ottadini	7	Pennocrucium	31	Pulcher	426		Rhodope Mons 433
Oveca Fluv.	55	Pentapolis Asia	† 25	Sandorum	95		Rhodus Inf. & Urbs † 12
Oximum	71, 293	Africa	† 145 † 146	Stalicanus	90		Rhoffus † 30
Oaus Fluv.	42	Pentelicus Mons	417	Potentia	294		Rhutupia 17
P.		Peraa	† 28	Prænesti	290		Ribadunum 36
Paccis Colonia	319	Perga, e	† 10	Præsidium	30		Riduna 52
Pachynum Promont.	298	Pergamus	† 8	Prætoria Augusta	403		Rigia 56
Pachinus Fluv.	† 2 † 11	Pervadium	293	Prætorium	35		Ripe alba 145
Pæmia	412	PERSEPOLIS	† 91 † 93	Praxia	412		Riphei Montes 388, 390
Pæsum	* 294	PERSIS	† 92 † 93	Prentini	254		Robogdii 55, 56
Pagasicus Sinus	415	Perusia, ium	293	Priene	† 9		Robogdium Promont. 56
Palantia	314	Perusinus Lacus	ibid.	Prochyta Inf.	302		ROMA 253, 288
Palatinus Mons	288	Pessinus	† 7	Præconnesus	† 8		Romulensis Colonia 320
PALÆSTINA	† 17	Petra Deserti	† 97	Promontorium Crumerum	293		Roscianum * 294
Palæstini	ibid.	Petricane	38	Heperium	† 127		Rotomagus 68
Paliothra	† 78	Petrovii	108	Japygium	297		Ruesium 116
Palirium Promont.	* 294	Phæcia Inf.	279, 414	Minerva	* 292		Rupes Tarpeia 289
Palladia	112	Phellus	425	Sacrum	300, 303		Ruscium † 141
Palmyra	† 14 † 30	Phalacrus Portus	417	Zephyrium	* 295		Ruscada † 142
Palmyrene	† 30	Pharax Antiochi	† 20	Propontis	433, 434		Ruspina † 143
Palus Martis	442, 444	Pharulus	415	Protolitia	39		Russella 284
Samaris	ibid.	Phælis	† 10	Provincia	117		Ruteni 108
Pamissus Fluv.	419	Phasis Fluv.	† 34 † 26 † 38	Prusa	† 7		Rutuba Promont. 347
Pamphylia	† 10	Urbs.	† 38	Prusias ad Olympum	† 7		Rutuli 288
Pandataria Inf.	302	Phatmicum Nilum Nili Fluv.	† 122	Psylli	† 145		
Pangæus Mons	413	Phicele	295	Ptolemais Asia	† 21, † 29		
PANNONIA Superior	293, 406	Philadelphæ Asia Minoris	† 8	Ægypti	† 145	S	Abi † 111
Prima Consulatis	ibid.	Palæstina	† 28	Pyle Caspia	† 91	S	Sabæa † 95
Inferior	393, 429	Philippi	413	Pylus Messeniacus	421		Sabai ibid.
Secunda Consulatis	ibid.	Phocæ Nova	† 9	Pyramus Fluv.	† 10		Sabrata, athra † 144
Pannonii	ibid.	PHOENICE	† 14 † 29	Pyrrhæa	414		Sabini 254
Panormus, am	298	Libani	† 29				Sacæ 42
Panticapæum	444	Maritima	ibid.				Sacana Fluv. 56
Paphia	† 12	Phæniciæ Inf.	301				Sacæne † 36
Paphlagonia	† 7	Phœnix	† 29				Sacrum Promontor. Italiae 300
bas	† 12						Hispaniæ 303
							Saguntum 317
							Sala-



# A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

<i>Salamina, in</i>	† 12	<i>Seberritum, in Nil Fluv</i>	<i>Sieris</i>	† 142	† 145	<i>Tarantasia</i>	250
<i>Salamis Inf. &amp; Urbs</i>	427, † 12		<i>Siracus</i>		25	<i>Tarus</i>	297
<i>Salaffi</i>	247, 248	<i>Sebujani</i>	<i>Sitones</i>	330, 344		<i>Tarentum</i>	ibid.
<i>Salax</i>	† 142	<i>Sebura</i>	<i>Situnt</i>	† 35		<i>Tarpeia Rupes</i>	289
<i>Salentini</i>	257	<i>Sedani</i>	<i>Smyrna</i>	† 9		<i>Tanqueria</i>	291
<i>Salernum</i>	* 233	<i>Sedunum</i>	<i>Solunt</i>	† 50		<i>Tarquinia</i>	290
<i>Salvi</i>	61	<i>Segedunum, in Rhodanus</i>	<i>Sogiana</i>	† 52	† 52	<i>Taraco</i>	316
<i>Salva</i>	20	<i>Ratumum</i>	<i>Solunt</i>	† 10		<i>Tarracensis Prov.</i>	303, 316
<i>Salinum</i>	405	<i>Segelocum</i>	<i>Sotia</i>	118		<i>Tartus</i>	† 10
<i>Salmarica</i>	314	<i>Segis</i>	<i>Sotia</i>	† 35		<i>Tarcedum</i>	51
<i>Salmarum</i>	233	<i>Segintiaci</i>	<i>Sotia</i>	* 292		<i>Tarajum</i>	51, 273
<i>Salmaria</i>	279	<i>Segintium</i>	<i>Sotidunum</i>	12		<i>Tarantia</i>	412
<i>Salvile</i>	313	<i>Segula, alia</i>	<i>Sotia</i>	304		<i>Tarica Chersonesus</i>	442, 443
<i>Salumbria</i>	251	<i>Seguntia</i>	<i>Sparta</i>	421		<i>Tarimium</i>	258
<i>Samarina</i>	† 23	<i>Segufiani</i>	<i>Spartum</i>	292		<i>Tarpeia</i>	245
<i>Samaris</i>	† 27	<i>Segufiri</i>	<i>Sporades Ins.</i>	† 12		<i>Tarso Scythia</i>	377
<i>Samaritania</i>	74	<i>Segulium</i>	<i>Sora</i>	14		<i>Tarunum</i>	431
<i>Sami</i>	* 231	<i>Segulio</i>	<i>Stagna Scythia</i>	413		<i>Taurus Mons</i>	† 11
<i>Saminus</i>	252, * 235	<i>Selenus</i>	<i>Stagna</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 36
<i>Saminum</i>	253, * 230	<i>Selgi</i>	<i>Stagna Pates</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnis, in Inf.</i>	† 12	<i>Selgia</i>	<i>Stagna</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnia</i>	† 13	<i>Selucia Alpe</i>	<i>Stagna</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnensis Lacus</i>	† 37	<i>Me. p. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnensis Inf.</i>	† 37	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sargatus Fluv.</i>	† 3	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnium</i>	118	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnes</i>	110	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnum Pates</i>	† 35	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnus Fluv.</i>	† 35	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnus</i>	† 35	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnus, in</i>	† 3	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sardia</i>	430	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sardina Inf.</i>	200	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarpe</i>	† 29	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarmata</i>	353	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarmatia Europa</i>	353, 359	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Asiatia</i>	† 39	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarmatia Palus</i>	444	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarmia Inf.</i>	55	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnes</i>	245	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnium Mare</i>	415	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnicus Sinus</i>	423	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarni Promontium</i>	303	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarnia</i>	253	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Sarna</i>	† 10	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scalabis</i>	303	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scamander Fluv.</i>	† 11	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<b>SCANDINAVIA</b>	329, 330	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scania, in Scandii</i>	330	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scardia, in</i>	423	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scardus Mons</i>	410	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scania</i>	94	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia Inf.</i>	425	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia Inf.</i>	427	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythi</i>	353, 405	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	413	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythus Mons</i>	410, 428	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia Inf.</i>	301	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia Inf.</i>	427	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	428	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	429	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	430	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	431	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	432	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	433	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	434	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	435	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	436	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	437	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	438	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	439	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	440	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	441	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	442	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	443	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	444	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	445	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	446	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	447	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	448	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	449	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	450	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	451	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	452	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	453	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	454	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	455	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	456	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	457	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	458	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	459	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	460	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	461	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	462	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	463	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	464	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	465	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	466	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	467	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	468	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	469	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	470	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	471	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	472	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	473	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	474	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	475	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	476	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	477	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	478	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	479	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	480	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	481	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	482	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	483	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	484	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	485	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	486	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	487	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	488	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	489	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	490	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	491	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	492	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	493	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	494	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	495	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	496	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	497	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	498	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	499	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81
<i>Scythia</i>	500	<i>Pal. rama</i>	<i>Stagna Inf.</i>	† 10		<i>Tauris Mons</i>	† 81



## A Table of the Ancient *Latin* Names of Places, &c.

Tifernum Tiberinum	293	Tugeni	233	Venebentus	* 293	Ulmirurgus	349
Tigranocerta	† 36	Tullum Leucorum	126	Venedi	336	Ulyssippo	327
Tigri. Fluv.	† 32 † 33 † 36 † 37	Tuhici	† 141	Veneri	254, 272	Umbri	264, 283
Tigurini	233	Tunes, is	† 143	Venetia Gallia	91	Umbria	253, 292
Tigurum	235	Tunocellum	39	Italia	273	Unconium	32
Tingine	† 33	Turde	292	Vennicinium Promont.	56	Voconii Forum	249
Tingis	† 140 † 146	Turdetani	328	Venones	241	Vocontii	123
Tingitanum Fretum	† 140	Turiaso	317	Venta Belgarum	13	Vodia	56
Tinurtium	100	Turingi	233	Icenorum	24, 25	Volantium	38
Titamus Mons & Urbs	296	Turones	96	Silurum	41	Volaterræ	284
Titius Fluv.	278	Turris Libissonis	300	Veragri	233, 242, 247, 248	Volca	112
Tmolus Mons	† 8	Tuscanæ	291	Vercellæ	260	Volgesia	34
Tobius Fluv.	42	Tusci	254	Vergilia	321	Volsi	288, * 292
Toduce	146	Tuscia	253, 291	Verlucio	12, 126	Voluba	8
Tolentinum	294	Tusculanum	290	Vermundis	74	Volubiliani	† 146
Toletum	318	Tusculum	ibid.	Verodunum	99	Volubilis, le	† 139
Tolosæ Tectosagum	112	Tybris Fluv.	253, 288	Verometum	27	Voluntii	55, 56
Tomi	432	Tybur	289	Verona	277	Vorganium	89
Tongri, aut Tungri	145	Tyde	312	Vertice	37	Ura	† 34
Torone	414	Tylium	300	Verucia	277	Urba	233, 245
Tosarene	† 36	Tyndaris	299	Verulamium Mons	21	Urbegei	ibid.
Totene	ibid.	Tyras Fluv.	364	Vesontiorum	102	Urbevetanum	291
Totatis Inf.	414	Urbs	442	Veslini	254, * 295	Urbs Bætica	320
Trachones Colles	† 28	Tyrtænia	291	Vesuna	108	Martis	412
Trachonitis	ibid.	Tyrus	† 14, † 29	Vesuvius Mons	291, * 253	Urchôa	† 34
Tragurini	278			Vettones	314	Urcinium	301
Tragurium	279		U.	Vfens Fluv.	290	Urge Inf.	302
Trajanopolis	433, † 10			Vicentia	277	Uria Italia	297
Trajectum ad Rhenum,	157	V Accæi	312, 313	Vico-Julius	109	Asia Minoris	† 34
Trajectus	18	Vacomagi	51	Victoria	51	Uridonum	31
Transfretana Hispania	† 146	Vada Volaterrana	284	Vidagara	ibid.	Uterini	55
Trapexus	† 11	Vadicassæ	97	Vidia Fluv.	56	Utinum	272
Trasimenus Lacus	253	Vagienni	261	Vierina Allobrogum	123	Utica	† 143
Treviri	125	Vagniacæ	17	Villa Ciceronis	292	Vulgentes	120
Triballi	430	Vagoricum Sessuorum	71	Faustini	24	Vulcania Insula	310
Triboces	195	Valentia Gallia	124	Pompei	290	Vulturinus Fluv.	354, * 291
Tricasses	77	Hispaniæ	317	Vilumbri	294	Uxama	313
Tricastini	124	Valeria	319	Viminalis Montis	288	Uxantus Inf.	90
Tricca	415	Vallis Leopontiorum	237	Vindausca	120	Uzella Aestuarium	11 Urbs 8
Tricollores	122	Vandali	254, 304	Vindelici	199		
Tridentum	208	Vangionēs	195	Vindelicia	233		
Trimontium	433	Vapincum	123	Vindarius Sinus	56		
Trinacria	298	Vararis Sinus	51	Vindinum	93		
Trinobantes	7	Varia	297	Vindobala	39		
Tripolis Syria	† 14 † 30	Varini	212	Vindobona	204		
Tripolitana Regio	† 146	Varis	44	Vindogladia	10		
Triquetra	298	Vasates	107	Vindolama	39		
Trifanionis Ostium	13	Vastones	312	Vindomara	ibid.		
Trischene	* 295	Vasio, on	120	Vindonum	13		
Truventinum	* 296	Vaticanus Montis	288	Vinovium	36		
Troas † 8	Alexandri ibid.	Ubii	185	Vintemelium	262		
Trogodytica	121	Vediahtri	251	Vintium	119		
Trontino Fluv.	* 295	Vedri Fluv.	36	Virodunum	† 126		
Tropea Pompei	312	Vegia Inf.	407	Viroedrum Promont.	5		
Tropatena	† 92, † 93	Vegus Fluv.	364	Vistula Fluv.	364		
Truncum	94	Velabri	55, 56	Vitarum Mons	217		
Tuder	292	Velduni	116	Vitodurum	233, 236		
Tuerobius Fluv.	42	Velitæ	290	Vitulo	422		
Tuesis Fluv.	36	Venasfruti	* 292	Vulcinium	413		



# A

# GENERAL INDEX

## OF THE

## PRINCIPAL MATTERS.

The Obelisk, [+ ] denotes the Second Part; and the Asterisk, [\*] Disorder'd Pages.

A.			
<b>A</b>	<i>Academies-Royal in Paris</i>	82	
	<i>Achilles, where Born</i>	415	
	<i>Aetium, where the Battel between Anthony and Augustus</i>	414	
	<i>Adad, a Painsus Plant</i>	122	
	<i>Adam and Eve, their Sepulchre</i>	125	
	<i>Adriatick-Sea, whence so named</i>	275	
	<i>Aeacus, his Country</i>	427	
	<i>Aeneas, his Country</i>	290	
	<i>Agamemnon, Argos the Metropolis of his Kingdom</i>	422	
	<i>Agra, the Metropolis of India, describ'd</i>	432	
	<i>Aix la Chapelle, or Aken: Treaty there</i>	56, 231	
	<i>Aken, the Seat of the Emperor Charlemain</i>	231	
	<i>Alanus for its Bark</i>	15	
	<i>Albigenses and Waldenses, their Origin</i>	112	
	<i>Alexander the Great, how far he pass'd in India</i>	461	
	<i>Where his last Beds, Armour, &amp;c. were placed</i>	ibid.	
	<i>Pope Alexander's Grant of the East and West Indies</i>	424	
	<i>Algier City describ'd</i>	441	
	<i>Alligator or American Crocodile describ'd</i>	425, 428	
	<i>Alman, whence that Name deriv'd</i>	175	
	<i>Amber found in Prussia</i>	369	
	<i>Amazons, where they liv'd</i>	435	
	<i>America, Opinions about its first Inhabitants</i>	451	
	<i>When Discover'd, and Conquer'd by the Spaniards</i>	449	
	<i>Annonces, their Country</i>	419	
	<i>Amerites, their Country</i>	412	
	<i>Amphibastres, vide Roman</i>		
	<i>Amsterdam describ'd</i>	459	
	<i>St. Andrew's Bones removed to Scotland</i>	49	
	<i>Anales, from whom England nam'd, their Original Country</i>	327	
	<i>Anjou, how annex'd to the English Crown</i>	54	
	<i>Antwerp, the vast Trade there for some time</i>	152	
	<i>Antilles Islands, why so named</i>	423	
	<i>Aquila, how considerable anciently</i>	272	
	<i>Aquitain Duchy, its Succession and Conveyance to the English</i>	106	
	<i>Arabia, its Wealthy Soil</i>	454	
	<i>Arabic Language, of great Extent</i>	454	
	<i>Archangel describ'd 222 The English first Traded thither</i>	ibid.	
	<i>Arcopagus-Church at Athens, describ'd</i>	417	
	<i>Argonauts, the Port whence they sail'd</i>	415	
	<i>Arithmetical Characters invented by the Arabians</i>	454	
	<i>Aristotle, where Born</i>	413	
	<i>Armenian Monarchy</i>	413	
	<i>Armenian describ'd</i>	392	
	<i>Arms, Invasions the Gauls</i>	61	
	<i>Athens City describ'd 415 The Air of it remarkably Healthy</i>	415	
	<i>Athenians, the Founders of Law and Science</i>	415	
	<i>Atlantis of the Ancients, was probably America</i>	451	
	<i>Doctors Opinions about it</i>	ibid.	
	<i>Atlas Mount, Pliny's Description of it</i>	414	
	<i>Atahualpa Emperor of Peru, his great Offer to the Spaniards for Ransom</i>	411	
	<i>Augustan or Lutheran Confession, when and where made</i>	445	
	<i>Avizoba, Pines resid'd there for Seventy Years</i>	429	
	<i>Aureng-Zebe, his Story</i>	476	
	<i>Australia, part of France</i>	61	
	<i>Austrian Family, History of it</i>	203	
	<i>Azoph, its Situation</i>	389, 444	
	<i>Azores Islands, by whom discover'd</i>	435	
	<b>B.</b>		
	<i>Babylon describ'd</i>	433	
	<i>Bacchus, where Born</i>	416	
	<i>Bactrians in India, where</i>	460	
	<i>Barbad, city by whom discover'd</i>	491	
	<i>Barcelon describ'd</i>	315	
	<i>Basil describ'd</i>	238	
	<i>Bath and Wells, when united in the Bishop's Title</i>	11	
	<i>Baths, of Dax 110 many in Germany 198, 231, &amp;c.</i>		
	<i>Battel of Spire</i>	131	
	<i>Beam, a common Fish</i>	491	
	<i>Beemster, formerly a Lake</i>	163	
	<i>Belgium, where so named 125 ancient State</i>	127	
	<i>Belgrade describ'd</i>	431	
	<i>Bel. great one at Rouen 43 at Ghent 143 at Moscow 385</i>		
	<i>Benach, a rich City 478 the Wealth of the Kingdom</i>	478	
	<i>Berlin describ'd</i>	213	
	<i>Berg-Towns in Hungary</i>	397	
	<i>Bermudas, Islands named Summer, from Sir Geo. Summers</i>	473	
	<i>When the English settled there</i>	473	
	<i>Bezer-Sore</i>	475	
	<i>Bilnagar, King of it, sometime very powerful</i>	68	
	<i>Bithemia, Succession of its Dukes and Kings</i>	209	
	<i>Boiars in Russia, the Emperor's Counsellors</i>	381	
	<i>Bologna describ'd</i>	289	
	<i>Bombay, when surrender'd to the English 480 its Description</i>	ibid.	
	<i>Buling-Spring in Dauphine</i>	119	
	<i>Bramins, or Indian-Priests</i>	460, 461	
	<i>Brampore, whence the Kingdom Chandis is sometimes denominated</i>	459	
	<i>Brasil, when discover'd</i>	4203	
	<i>Brandenburg, its Revolutions 12 in the possessions of the Elector</i>	213	
	<i>Bremen Duchy, its Revolutions 221 Bremen City describ'd</i>	220	
	<i>Breda, how surrender'd to the E. of Nassau 139 taken by a Stratagem of a Troop-Brat</i>	ibid.	
	<i>Bretaign, how united to the Crown of France</i>	87	
	<i>Brietius the Geographer, where Born</i>	75	
	<i>Bruges, the great Trade sometime there</i>	127, 134	
	<i>Brunswick, its Revolutions</i>	218	
	<i>Buda describ'd</i>	399	
	<i>Buman's-Hole, a notable Cave in Germany</i>	219	
	<i>Burg-grave, what</i>	180	
	<i>Burgundy-Kingdom, the Succession 113, 125 How it deriv'd</i>	ibid.	
	<i>Burgundy Province, how obtain'd by the French</i>	103	
	<i>Burgundians, their Origin</i>	103	
	<i>Burg-Fish, what</i>	29	

C.



# A General Index of Principal Matters.

## C.

<b>C</b> acao, the Nut of which Chocolate is made, describ'd	† 182
Cadmus, the history of him	416
Cadiz Island	321
Caffres People, why so called	† 117
Calais, when taken and lost by the English	76
Calepin (Ambr.) where Born	278
Calvin (John) where Born	87
Caminiac, when taken by the Turks	376
Canal of Languedock 112 its Sluices	113
Canal between the Red Sea and Mediterranean endeavour'd	† 106
Canal attempted from the Don to the Volga	380
Campi Catalaunici, noted for a Famous Battel	77, 113
Canaanites, their Country	† 25
Canary-Islands, when discover'd † 133 why so named	† 132
Candia, Account of its Siege	425
Carmelite-Monks, whence deriv'd	† 22
Carolina, when granted to the Duke of Albemarle	† 174
Casmeer in India, the extraordinary Fertility and good Climate of that Country	† 84
Carthage, the Situation and ancient State of it	† 143
Catullus, where Born	277
Catalonia, sometimes subject to the French	315
Cecrops, the Founder of Athens, when he lived	417
Cedina, Waters there suck in all things	325
Chambers of Accounts of France; what, and where seated	63
Champaign, the Succession of its Counts	80
How convey'd to the French King	ibid.
Charlemagne, his Actions 61 and Grandeur	177
Chili, when discover'd	† 213
Children of Hamelen seduc'd into Cave by a Piper	219
China, the Government of it very regular † 45 the Magni- cence of its Emperors † 46 Number of Cities, Fa- milies and People ibid. the Wall of China ibid. the Inge- nuity of the Chinese People	† 45
Christian, Name first used in Antioch	† 14
Christianity Preach'd very early in India	† 60
Churches. The Seven Churches of Asia Laodicea † 8 Phil- adelphia ibid. Lydia ibid. Smyrna 9 Ephesus Thiatira † 9 Sardis † 8	ibid.
Cicero, where Kill'd * 300 where Exil'd	413
Cimbri, whence so nam'd	338
Cinque-Ports	17
Circles of the Empire	182
Cistercian-Monks; when founded, and why so named	99
Cleve and Juliers dispute about the Succession, and to whom awarded	230
Cloth incombustible, the Stone whereof it was made	427
Clock at Lund in Sweden, extraordinary ingenious	355
Cluniack-Monks, when instituted	100
Codrus King of Athens; his Story	417
Colleges of Oxford, the Founders Names and Times	19
Colleges of Cambridge, the Founders Names and Times	25
Cologne, Account of its Revolutions 185 Treaty there	ibid.
Colossus of Rhodes	† 12
Columbus (Christ.) dwelt at Madera † 125 his Discovery of America † 149 the Place he first touch'd upon	† 184
Constance Council held there	200
Constantinople describ'd	434
Copenhagen describ'd	340
Cophtites live in Egypt	† 104
Corinth, its Ancient and Present State	423
Cortez (Ferd.) when he subdued Mexico	† 178
Cossacks, an Account of that People	377
Court of Aids in France; what, and where seated	64
Cracow describ'd	367
Crau, or Campi Lapidei, near Arles	118
Cretans, Inventors of Navigation, Arrows, &c.	425
Cressly, Battel there	75
Criolians in America, what they are	† 150
Croatia, its Ancient and Present State	406
Cuth and Havilah, the Lands, where seated	† 96
Cutterys in India, what	† 60

## D.

<b>D</b> anewalk, a notable Ancient Wall in Slefwick	337
Dantzick describ'd	370
Sr. Davids, sometime an Archbishoprick	42
Dauphine; whence so nam'd 119 how convey'd to France	ibid.
A Day lost in encompassing the Globe † 59 Introduction	11
Delly the Mogul's Palace, describ'd	† 183
Delphian-Oracle describ'd	418
Denmark, its ancient Inhabitants 332 Government	ibid.
when the Crown was made Hereditary ibid.	Royal
Revenue 333 Succession of the Kings	ibid.
Denis the Arcopagite not in France, as pretended	59
Despates of the Morea	419
Derbent, a very strong City	† 91
Deucalion Reign'd in Thessaly	415
Diamond-Mines in Golconda, how discover'd	† 67
Diana's Temple at Ephesus	† 9
Dieren-Palace	168
Dort, Synod there	162
Dresden describ'd	217
Dunkirk, when taken by the English	133
Duns Scotus, where Born	50
Diet of the Empire 182 where held	202

## E.

<b>E</b> agle; Artificial one, that flew a Mile	178
East; Emperors of the East, a Table of their Succession	436
Eckbar the Great, Emperor of Indostan	† 75
Egypt stiled the Granary of the World	† 104
Egyptian Calendar	† 104
Elbing describ'd	370
Election-Court in France, what	64
Electors of the Empire	181
Embsden, sometime the Staple for English Cloth	228
Emperors of Germany 179 the Emperor's Power	180
England, the Christian Religion planted there 3 Ancient State and first Inhabitants 2, 4 Government 5, 6, 7 Saxon Hep- tarchy 5 Succession of the Kings from Egbert 5 Eccles. Government	6, 7
English Language	3
Erasmus (Desid.) where Born 161 Buried	238
Esau, the Country of his Posterity	† 28
Esbeck; its Bridge describ'd	405
Estates of France, formerly like the English Parliament	63
Ethiopians, the Temper of that People	† 111
Exhalation from the Earth in Wales	43

## F.

<b>F</b> arnese (Alex. D. of) the Story how his Life was sav'd	267
Fer, the Island where the French place the first Meridian	† 133
The difference between that and Teneriff.	Introd. 6
Ferden Principality, its Revolutions	220
Fez the most considerable City of Barbary	† 139
Florence, its Rise and Revolutions 281, 283 City Describ'd	282
A Fly that shines so as its Light may be Read by	† 191
Flying-Fish	† 189
Fortunate Islands of the Ancients	† 122
Franche Comte, when taken by the French	101
Franconia, whence denominat'd	191
Franks, whence they came, and why so nam'd	61, 191
Conquer Gaul	61
France, Taxes, 64 King's Revenue 64 Government and Courts 63 Provinces &c.	67
French Kings, the Succession of them from Pharamond	61, 62
Frizii Antiqui, their Country	172
Fuggers, a noble Family at Augsburg	196

## G.

<b>G</b> anges River, its Course describ'd † 83 Shallow at the Mouth	ibid.
Gavel-kind, what	17
Gauls;	



# A General Index of Principal Matters.

Gaul Ancient, its several Divisions 51	Goths in Gaul 51	Jerusalem, its Revolutions, and Present State †15, †24
Burgundians 51		Neighbouring Places of Note †25
Gauls, their ancient Language the same with the British 59	Be-	Illyricum, its Ancient Extent 428
seize the Capitol 60	Conquer'd by the Romans 60	Imperial-City, what 181
Generality in France, what 64		Imperial-Chamber 182 where held 194
Geneva, its ancient State, Revolutions and present Condition 243		India, its Extent and Division †53, †64. first European
Genoa describ'd 252 its Government, Doge, &c. 253		Voyages thither †61 English Settlement and Factories
St. George's Fort in India describ'd †59		there †62 Dutch Factories †63
Georgian-Women, notably Fair †37		Indian-Trade, formerly carried on by Sarazens †61
Gerages, their Country †19		Indian-Herbs, what it is †72
German, whence that name deriv'd 175		Indians Buy their Wealth †75
Germany, its ancient Bounds 176 how first Peopled 175 how		Indostan, whence that Name †74
it became an Empire 179 Succession of its Emperors 179 Pre-		Joan of Ark, the Maid of Orleans 92
sent State, Government, &c. 181, 182		John of Leyden, the Anabaptist 228
Goa describ'd †66		Ireland, probably first Peopled from Britain 52 Christianity
Godiva rode Naked thro' Coventry 30		planted there ibid. anciently very Learned 53 when
Golconda King of, his former Grandeur †67 now Prisoner ibid.		Conquer'd 52 Provinces and Countries 54
Golden Ball why so called 181 kept at Frankfurt 192		Island, its Soil and Inhabitants 347
Gold Coast in Guinea †124		Ishmaelites †97
Gold Mines at Sidero-capla 412		Isle of Pheasants, where the Pyrenean Peace was made 310
Gombroom describ'd †32		Israelite-Spies, the Place where they cut the Bunch of Grapes †26
Gordium, where the Gordian Knot †8		Ispahan describ'd †91
Goshen, the Land of †106		Isthmus of Corinth describ'd 423
Goths their origin in Sweden 349 their actions ibid.		Isthmian-Games, whence named 424
Gothic-Kings in Spain 307		Italy, its Names 253 Ancient Division ibid. Ancient
Gowra in India, once the largest City in the World †79		Inhabitants 254 Present State 256 and Division ibid.
Granada describ'd 322		Jupiter-Ammon's Temple, Oracle and Grove †145, †146
Greece the part of Europe first Inhabited 410		Ivory-Coast in Guinea 124
Greenland, some English-men Winter there 228		Jutes that Invaded England, their Country 338
an account of the Cold, and long Night there ibid.		
Grifone-Country, ancient and Present State 240		K.
Guakeor, the Prison where Aureg-Zebe confines his Kindred †82		<b>K</b> ING of the Romans 180
Guelfs Family of, a notable Story of their origin 218		L.
Guinea, the Temper of the Inhabitants †123		<b>L</b> abyrinth of Dædalus 426
Guise (Duke of) slain by Poltrot 92		Lacedæmon, its Ancient and Present State 421
Guns invented 175		Latitude and Longitude; Definition of those Terms Introd. 6
Guzurat, the Wealth of that Kingdom †80		Lahor in India, its great Extent †83
		Lake, call'd Czernickzer-Zee, in Germany; of wonderful Na-
H.		ture 206
<b>H</b> agar and Ishmael, their Habitation †16		Landen, Battel there 137
Haque describ'd 160		Landgrave, what 180
Halle, Shrine of the Virgin Mary there much reverenc'd 141		Laplanders, a particular Account of the Names of those People 357
Hallifax-Law 34		Latona, the Mother of Apollo and Diana 426
Hamburg describ'd 221		Lawenburgh Dutchy 226
Hans Towns, what 182		Lead-Mines of Sir Carb. Fryse 43
Hefion 418		Leap-Year, or Bissextile; when and why instituted Introd. 15
Henry the Lion Duke of Saxony 216, 218		Lepanto, the Famous Battel there 418
Hercules, where born 416		Levites; Cities of the Levites in Judea, viz. Jethson †18
Herdakes, what 395		Mephat ibid. Esbon ibid. Jafa ibid. Jazer †19
Hindows, the ancient Inhabitants of India †59		Malpha ibid. Mahanzaim ibid. Ashtaroth 20
Hispaniola, when taken by the Spaniards. †187		Eozra ibid. Carthan †21 Kirjathaim ibid. Hel-
Hittites, their Country †26		kath ibid. Roob ibid. Abdon ibid. Messal ibid.
Hivites, their Country †19		Damna ibid. Remmon ibid. Cartha ibid. Cefion ibid.
Holland its ancient State 157		Ramoeh †22 Engannim ibid. Cedec ibid. Jara-
Holstein its ancient and present State 334		moth ibid. Gethremmon in Manasseh †22 Tanac ib.
Holy-Well or St. Winifreds Well 43		Aner ibid. Bethoron 23 Jechmaan ibid. Geth-
Homer, his Birth-place †9		remmon in Ephraim †23 Gazer ibid. Ramathaim-
Honlaerdye 161		Sophim †25 Nob ibid. Gibeon ibid. Ga-
Hottentots-People, why so called 117		baah †24 Anathoth ibid. Ahton ibid. Ho-
Houses in India but small Huts †58		lon †26 Jether ibid. Lebna ibid. Gethremmon
Hugely in Bengal describ'd †79		in Dan †26 Helen ibid. Estece ibid. Gab-
Hungary, its ancient and present State 354 Kings 395		bathon ibid. Aen ibid.
Hussars, what 395		Lice and other Vermin dye in the Ships that pass by the Azores
Husse (Jen) 209		†135
I.		Lima in Peru describ'd †212
<b>J</b> amaica, when Conquer'd by the English 184		Lisbon describ'd 327
James VI. K. of Scotland, Married at Christina 345		Lithuania, how united to Poland 372
St. James, his Body at Compostella much reverenc'd 311		Livonia, its Revolutions 360
Jaron, of the Expulsion of the Portuguese thence 325, †52		Lodowick King of Hungary defeated by the Turks 401
The Dutch deny their Christianity there ibid.		The Fatal Consequence of it ibid.
Jascon's Voyage †38		Lombards in Italy 264
Jehusites, their Country †24		Pavia the Metropolis of their Kingdom 266
Jerry of Moamouth 41		Longitude from Ferri Isl. how much different from that of Tene-
Jerom of Prague 209		riff Introd. 6
		Longi-



# A General Index of Principal Matters.

Longitude of Surat corrected	† 59	Neustria Part of France	61
Loo-Palace	168	Newbury Duke, his three Daughters married to Kings, &c.	202
Loretto, the House of the Virgin Mary, and the Shrine described	293	New England, when discover'd and Planted by the English	† 162
Loudun, a note of Impiety there	94	Newfoundland, when discover'd	† 170
Louvestine-Edition, whence so nam'd	162	ment	ibid.
Louvre in Paris describ'd	81	New Jersey, the Proprietors of it	† 163
Lubeck describ'd	226	New-York Granted to Lord Berkley, &c.	† 164
Lucca Republick, its Government and Present State	280	Nimeguen-Treaty	65
The City describ'd	ibid.	Noah's Ark, where it rested	† 35
Luther, when and where he oppos'd Popery	177	Nomi, Egyptian Governments	† 107
Lycurgus	421	Normandy, the Succession of its Dukes from Rollo	79
<b>M</b> acao, a Portuguese Factory in China	† 49	North-East and North-West Passage to India, the several attempts to find 'em out.	† 221
Macedon, when Conquer'd by the Romans	412	Norway, a Summary of its History, a Table of its Kings	344
Madera-Islands, when discover'd	135	Nostredamus, where born	118
Madianites	† 97	<b>O</b> bla's-Dike describ'd	40
Madrid describ'd	318	Og King of Easan, his Country.	† 19
Maestricht, the Bishoprick remov'd to Liege	140	Olympian-Games, and thence Olympiads in Chronology	421
When that City was gain'd by the Hollanders	ibid.	Ophir to which Solomon sent his Ships for Gold, Several Opinions about its Situation	† 73 † 117 † 151
Magailans (Perd.) first Sailed round the Globe	† 217	Orange Principality 120 how convey'd to the House of Nassau	121, 190
His Death	† 59	Orange Princes of that Family that have been Statcholders	156
Magdeburg-Dutchy; how descend'd to the Marquess of Brandenburg	214	Organ, a very great one at Ulm	196
Majorca Island, its History and Description	322	Ormus-Island, sometime possess'd by the Portuguese	† 92
Maire of the Palace in France, what that Office was	61	when taken by the Persians	ibid.
Mahomet, his History	409	Ostende sustain'd a Siege of three Years and three Months	134
The Rise and Doctrine of his Religion ib. 438 his Tomb	† 95	Ovid Born 296	where Banish'd
Malaick-Language understood throughout India	† 71	Oxendine (Sir George) his Valour at Surat	80
Maldiv-Islands, whence so named	† 59		
Man-Isle, when taken by the English	45	<b>P</b> adua describ'd	276
Mandevil (Sir John) Buried at Leige	145	Palatine of Chester his Power	32
Marathon, the famous Battle there	417	Palatine of the Rhine made an Elector	193
Margrave what	180	Papal-Monarchy, History of its Rise and present State, &c.	285
Mary-Land, when Granted to Sir G. Calvert and Lord Baltimore	† 166	Paper first made, when and where	238
Massacre at Paris	59	Panathenæ Games	417
Mausolæum built by Artemesia	† 9	Pannonia, its ancient Extent	393
Mecca describ'd	† 95	Paracelsus (Theophr.) Buried	203
Media Antiqua, its extent and division	† 93	Paradise, its Situation	† 34
Merlin where born	42	Paris Describ'd	81
Meschasipi River, the great Cataract in it	† 159	Parliaments of France, how many and where seated	63
Mexico, when Conquer'd by the Spaniards	† 179	Parma a Fief of the Pope's 257 the City describ'd	267
Mexico City describ'd	† 181	Parnassus Mount describ'd	418
Mice and Rats, a Bishop of Mentz devour'd by 'em	188	Parthians, an account of that People	† 93
Milan Duchy, its Revolutions 264 the City describ'd	265	Pasquin a Statue at Rome, why so call'd	289
Milford-Haven	4	Pearls, the best are found in Persia	88
Mineral-Waters at Bourbon 99	Spaw	Pearl-fishing in India	† 70
Misitra or Lacedemon describ'd	422	Pekin in China describ'd	† 47 † 50
Moabites, their Country	† 18	Pennsylvania, when granted to W. Penn	† 165
Mogul signifies white	† 74	Perezites, their Country	† 22
Great Mogul Emperor of India, his Wealth and Grandeur	† 76	Persia, its ancient and present State	† 88
his Throne exceeding wealthy	† 83	Grandeur of its Emperor	† 88
Mondovi, the Rebellion there	259	Persians, their Luxury	† 88
Mons Surpriz'd by Stratagem 141 Prince of Orange obtain'd	141	form of their Houses	† 88
great Victory there	† 59	Persepolis, its Situation	† 91
Monsoons or Rainy Seasons in India	† 59	account of its ancient State	† 91
Monte Nuovo made in a Night	* 299	Peru, whence so named	† 209
Moscow describ'd	385	when discover'd	† 210
Munster, Treaty there	228	the great Wealth of that Country	ibid.
Muscovy, ancient and present State 380, 381, &c. Govern-ment	381	St. Peter's Church at Rome describ'd	289
temper of the Inhabitants 380 Succession of the	383	Phalaris's Bull	299
Czars 381, 382 Czar's Revenue and Army	383	Pharsalian Battle	415
N.		Phenicians, their ancient Grandeur	† 29
<b>N</b> aboth's Vineyard were seated	† 22	Philippians, Epistle to, where that City	413
Nantes-Edict, when made	88	Piets-Wall describ'd	38
Naples Kingdom, its Rise and Revolutions 289 City describ'd	290	Picus Mirandula	268
Nassau Princes, an account of that Family	190	Piedmont, its Revolutions	258
Natolia its present and ancient State	† 7	Pignerol, Battle there	259
Navel of the Earth; why Delphia so call'd	418	Piper of Hamelen; a remarkable Story	219
Navigators round the Globe	† 217	Plataea, the Battle there	416
Negroes sell their Children	126	Poland, its ancient Inhabitants 364 present State and Govern-ment	365
Nemizan-Games	424	Succession of the Kings	365
Netherlands, why so called 126 how divided into so many		Pomerania, how it became divided between the Sweds and Bran- denburger	214
States 127, 128 and how at last united in the house of Bur- gundy 128 and convey'd to the King of Spain	129	Pope Alexander's Grant of the East and West-Indies	† 204
Netherlands (Spanish) its Government and present State	129	Portugal its ancient State and History 324 Present State	325
Netherlands (United) Short History of their defection from	155, 156	Succession of the Kings	ibid.
Spain 154 Present State	155, 156	Portuguese Dominions out of Europe	325
Neuschatelle Principality, the History of its Succession	243	Portuguese discovery of India	† 61
		their Dominions there	† 62
		Potosi, the Wealth of the Silver-mine there	† 210 † 213
		Prague describ'd	210
			Priests



# A General Index of Principal Matters.

Priests office perform'd by Women	† 38	States-General of the United Netherlands, the Establishment	145
Presidial in France, what	64	Sreenkirk-Battel	142
Prester-John, whence that name deriv'd	† 110	Stockholm describ'd	143
Printing Invented	145, 176, 182	Straelfond, its ancient Strength	213
Protestants, whence that name	177	Strabo, where Born	† 10
Provence, how convey'd to the French King	117	Swaben, its Revolutions	107
Prussia, its Revolutions	365	Sweden, its Ancient State 349 Kings 350 Government 353	
Pyrenean Treaty	65	When the Crown was made Hereditary ib. King's Revenue 145	
Pyrenean Mountains	111	Switzerland, its Ancient Inhabitants 233 History and Revolu-	
Pythagoras Born	† 12	tions 233 how the Cantons became united 234	
R		State	T.
Rasbores in India, what	† 60, † 80	Tahaque, the Title of the Emperor of Monomotapa	† 115
Ravenna, anciently a great Haven	295	Tapestry invented at Arras	130
Reformation of Religion in Germany; an Account of it	177	Tarantula-Poison cur'd by Musick	425
Refuge; Cities of Refuge in Judaa: Basor † 18 Ramoth-		Tartars, the Temper of the People	443
Gilead † 19 Gaulon † 20 Kadesh-Nephtulim ib.		Tavernier Travell'd Six times through Persia	† 50
Dabrah † 22 Sichem † 23 Hebron	† 24	Tauris in Persia, an eminent City	† 21
Rachel, when Taken	95	Tellie (Will.) of Switzerland condemn'd to Shoot an Apple off his	
Rome describ'd	288	Sen's Head	234
Roman-Empire; an Account of its Rise and Fall	254	Ten Captive-Tribes of Israel, where they dwelt	† 52
Succession of its Emperors	255	Terra Lemnia, an esteem'd Medicine	423
Roman-Statues still remaining: viz. Triumphal-Arches,		Tercera-Islands, vide Azores	
Amphitheatres, &c. at Reims 78 Lyons 104 Peri-		Thebes, a City in Greece, describ'd	416
seus 109 Statues ibid. Toulouse 112 Nar-		St. Thomas Preach'd in India † 60 Martyr'd at Meliapur	† 60
bon 114 Nimes 115 Arles 118 Orange 120		Thessalians first tamed Horses, and set out Ships	415
Aoutie 257 Sufa 260 Verona 277 Anco-		Thessalonians, Epistle to, where that City	412
na 283 Rimini 295 Puzzoli 299, &c.		Throne of Great Mogul, its excessive Wealth	† 83
Rugen-Isle, its Revolutions	215	Thule, the North-East Part of Scotland	52
Rufus, whence that Name 370 Vide Mithras.		Thuringen, its Revolutions	277
Ruswick-Palace 161 Treaty there	66	Tyde at Negropont very remarkable 427 at Cambaia 10	
S		India, wonderful swift	† 21
Sabazians, where they lived	56	Toledo describ'd	313
Sal Sal Ammoniac	83	Transfiguration of Christ, where perform'd	† 21
Salique-Law; what, and why so named	63	Transilvania, its ancient and present State	402
Sampetia, when and how discover'd by the Muscovites	391	Trent, Council there	213
Sanson the Geographer, where Born	75	Treaty, Pyrrhenean 65 Aix la Chapelle	66
Saracens, whence they originally came	† 55	Nineguen 66 Rywick 66 Cambray	142
Sardinia, its Revolutions	301	Triumphal Arch vide Roman	Troy where seated
Savoy, its Ancient Inhabitants 247 and Revolutions 248		Turin describ'd	258
Present State ibid. Succession of its Dukes	ibid.	Uca whence the Turks their original habitation	† 35
when erected into a Duchy	247	Turks Government and Customs 437 their origine	409, 437
Saxons, History of that People 216 overcome by Charlemain	1	worked in Europe, its Extent and Provinces	409
Saxony, its Revolutions 216 the Dominions and Power	21	Turk in Asia, its Provinces and chief Cities	† 4, 5, 6
Electors	21	Turk's Dominions in Asia and Africa	444
Scaliger, where Born	107	Turk's City describ'd	† 143
Scanderberg, his Country 413 where Buried ib. his Relicks	413	Turkey the Rise and Revolutions of that Duchy	281
highly valued by the Turks	413	U.	
Scandinavia, its Ancient Inhabitants	330	U. its People, vide Waldenses	
Sclavi People, Powerful in Europe	41	Venice, when founded 270 City describ'd	272
Sclavonia, its Ancient and Present State	41	Venicians, their Origine 269 Ancient State 270 Government	
Sclavonian Language extends very far	ibid.	and present State	270, 271
Scots and Picts 46 Scots came out of Scythia	50	Versailles, Castle, Garden and Water-works describ'd	82
Scotland first Peopled from Ireland 2 High-Lands and Low-		Vesuvius Mount, its irruption	* 290
Lands 47 three Peninsulæ 47 Ancient People 46		Vienna describ'd	204
Modern Countries 47 Universities ib. Courts of Judicature 48		Virginia discover'd at the Charge of Sir W. Raleigh	† 163
Serpentine-Stone	† 75	Virgil Born 269 Union of Utrecht	155
Serapiazin-Translation, the Horse where it was made	† 105	United-Netherlands, vide Netherlands	
Sevil describ'd	320	Vocal-Trees in Dodona's Grove	414
Sevaz, a notable Rebel in India	† 67 † 80	Utrecht, shamefully deliver'd to the French	167
Shark-Fish	† 130	Uz, the Land of Job	† 28 † 29 † 97
Sheba the Country of the Queen that Married Solomon	† 56 † 112	W	
Shell-pail for Money	† 120	W Alcourt-Battel	W.
Shem the Wealthy Commonwealth of that Country	† 71	Waldenses, whence denominated	113, 261
Shiva, its Revolutions	298	The Persecutions they suffer'd	261
Shivon's Isle	229	Wales, when Conquer'd 40	Warsaw describ'd
Sidney (St. Phil.) slain	170	Wax and Tallow grow on Trees	† 44
Sigmund King of Hungary, defeated by the Turks	422	West-Friesland	155
Silesia, its Ancient and Present State	325	Westphalia, whence so nam'd 227 its Revolutions	227
Smolodan-League	189	Whales, several species † 225 manner of Killing 'em	† 226
Sodom, Gomorrah, &c. where they lived	† 25	Wittikind King of Saxony	216
Solomon's Palace 167 Solon, where Born	427	Women of Argentiene, notable for Whoredom	426
Sophy of Persia, his Grandeur	† 88	Georgian-Women notably fair	† 37
Sound, the Toll on Ships passing that Strait	333	perform the Sacerdotal Office in Mingrelia	† 38
Spain, its Name and Ancient Inhabitants 304 the Goths		Woronics, where the Czar's Ships are Built	389
there ib. Moors there ib. several Kingdoms and Earldoms		Z	
erected ib. Moors expell'd 305 the Kingdoms united 305		Z Amorin, or King of Calcut; his former Grandeur	66
Succession of Kings 307 Courts and Councils 308 Grandees 309		Zisca, the Hussite-General; a Drum made of his Skin had	
Spider of marvellous bigness	† 189	a strange Effect on the Enemy	211
Spondanus (Hen.) where Born	110	Zuyder-zee in Holland, formerly dry Land	164
Stamford, sometime a University	28		